

**THE BOOK OF
MORMON**

**AFRIKAANS – ENGLISH
PARALLEL EDITION**

Version 1, published April 2023. bencrowder.net/book-of-mormon-parallel-edition/

This parallel edition © 2023 Benjamin Crowder. All rights reserved. You have permission to print this document for your own use. For other uses, send requests to ben.crowder@gmail.com.

Text of the Book of Mormon © 2023 Intellectual Reserve, Inc. All rights reserved.

The text of this edition is licensed from The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints with the following disclaimer: *The Product offered by Benjamin Crowder is neither made, provided, approved, nor endorsed by, Intellectual Reserve, Inc. or The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. Any content or opinions expressed, implied, or included in or with the Product offered by Benjamin Crowder are solely those of Benjamin Crowder and not those of Intellectual Reserve, Inc. or The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.*

Die Boek van Mormon

'n Kroniek Geskryf deur die Hand van Mormon op Plate Geneem van die Plate van Nefi

Daarom, dit is 'n verkorting van die kroniek van die volk van Nefi, en ook van die Lamaniete—Geskryf aan die Lamaniete, wat 'n oorblyfsel is van die huis van Israel; en ook aan Jood en nie-Jood—Geskryf by wyse van gebod, en ook deur die gees van profesie en van openbaring—Geskryf en verseël, en weggebêre vir die Here, dat hulle nie vernietig mag word nie—Om voort te kom deur die gawe en mag van God deur die vertaling daarvan—Verseël deur die hand van Moroni, en weggebêre vir die Here, om voort te kom op die gegewe tyd deur middel van die nie-Jood—Die vertaling daarvan deur die gawe van God.

'n Verkorting geneem van die Boek van Ether ook, wat 'n kroniek is van die volk van Jared, wat verstrooi was in die tyd toe die Here die taal van die mense verwar het toe hulle 'n toring gebou het om die hemel te bereik—Wat aan die oorblyfsel van die huis van Israel moet toon watter groot dinge die Here vir hulle vaders gedoenhet; en dat hulle die verbonde van die Here mag ken, dat hulle nie vir ewig verwerp is nie—En ook tot die oortuiging van die Jood en nie-Jood dat JESUS die CHRISTUS is, die EWIGE GOD, wat Homself openbaar aan alle nasies—En nou, as daar foute is, is hulle die foute van mense; daarom, moet nie die dinge van God veroordeel nie, sodat julle vlekkeloos bevind mag word voor die regterstoel van Christus.

OORSPRONKLIKE VERTALING VAN DIE PLATE IN ENGELS DEUR JOSEPH SMITH, JR.

The Book of Mormon

An Account Written by the Hand of Mormon upon Plates Taken from the Plates of Nephi

Wherefore, it is an abridgment of the record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites—Written to the Lamanites, who are a remnant of the house of Israel; and also to Jew and Gentile—Written by way of commandment, and also by the spirit of prophecy and of revelation—Written and sealed up, and hid up unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed—To come forth by the gift and power of God unto the interpretation thereof—Sealed by the hand of Moroni, and hid up unto the Lord, to come forth in due time by way of the Gentile—The interpretation thereof by the gift of God.

An abridgment taken from the Book of Ether also, which is a record of the people of Jared, who were scattered at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, when they were building a tower to get to heaven—Which is to show unto the remnant of the house of Israel what great things the Lord hath done for their fathers; and that they may know the covenants of the Lord, that they are not cast off forever—And also to the convincing of the Jew and Gentile that JESUS is the CHRIST, the ETERNAL GOD, manifesting himself unto all nations—And now, if there are faults they are the mistakes of men; wherefore, condemn not the things of God, that ye may be found spotless at the judgment-seat of Christ.

TRANSLATED BY JOSEPH SMITH, JUN.

Die Getuienis van Drie Getuies

Laat dit bekend wees aan alle nasies, stamme, tale, en volke, tot wie hierdie werk sal kom: Dat ons, deur die genade van God die Vader, en onse Here Jesus Christus, die plate gesien het wat hierdie kroniek bevat, wat 'n kroniek is van die volk van Nephi, en ook van die Lamaniete, hulle broers, en ook van die volk van Jared, wat gekom het van die toring waarvan gespreek is. En ons weet ook dat hulle vertaal is deur die gawe en mag van God, want sy stem het dit aan ons verklaar; daarom weet ons vir seker dat die werk waar is. En ons getuig ook dat ons die graveerwerk gesien het wat op die plate is; en hulle is aan ons getoon deur die mag van God, en nie van 'n mens nie. En ons verklaar met woorde van alle erns, dat 'n engel van God neergedaal het uit die hemel, en dat hy gebring en voor ons oë neergelê het, dat ons die plate gesien en aanskou het, en die graveerwerk daarop; en ons weet dat dit deur die genade van God die Vader, en ons Here Jesus Christus is, dat ons hierdie dinge aanskou het en lewer getuienis dat hierdie dinge waar is. En dit is wonderlik in ons oë. Nietemin, die stem van die Here het ons beveel dat ons daarvan getuienis moet lewer; daarom, om gehoorsaam te wees aan die gebooie van God, getuig ons van hierdie dinge. En ons weet dat as ons getrou is in Christus, ons ons kleding sal reinig van die bloed van alle mense, en vlekkeloos bevind sal word voor die regterstoel van Christus en ewig met Hom sal woon in die hemele. En die eer kom die Vader, en die Seun, en die Heilige Gees toe, wat een God is. Amen.

OLIVER COWDERY
DAVID WHITMER
MARTIN HARRIS

The Testimony of Three Witnesses

Be it known unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, unto whom this work shall come: That we, through the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, have seen the plates which contain this record, which is a record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites, their brethren, and also of the people of Jared, who came from the tower of which hath been spoken. And we also know that they have been translated by the gift and power of God, for his voice hath declared it unto us; wherefore we know of a surety that the work is true. And we also testify that we have seen the engravings which are upon the plates; and they have been shown unto us by the power of God, and not of man. And we declare with words of soberness, that an angel of God came down from heaven, and he brought and laid before our eyes, that we beheld and saw the plates, and the engravings thereon; and we know that it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, that we beheld and bear record that these things are true. And it is marvelous in our eyes. Nevertheless, the voice of the Lord commanded us that we should bear record of it; wherefore, to be obedient unto the commandments of God, we bear testimony of these things. And we know that if we are faithful in Christ, we shall rid our garments of the blood of all men, and be found spotless before the judgment-seat of Christ, and shall dwell with him eternally in the heavens. And the honor be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost, which is one God. Amen.

OLIVER COWDERY
DAVID WHITMER
MARTIN HARRIS

Die Getuienis van Agt Getuies

Laat dit bekend wees aan alle nasies, stamme, tale, en volke, tot wie hierdie werk sal kom: Dat Joseph Smith, Jr., die vertaler van hierdie werk, die plate aan ons getoon het waarvan gespreek is, wat die voorkoms van goud het; en soveel van al die blaaie wat voornoemde Smith vertaal het, het ons hanteer met ons eie hande; en ons het ook die graveerwerk daarop gesien, wat alles die voorkoms het van antieke werk en sonderlinge vakmanskap. En dit getuig ons in alle erns, dat voornoemde Smith hulle aan ons getoon het, want ons het hulle gesien en opgetel en weet vir seker dat voornoemde Smith die plate het waarvan ons gespreek het. En ons maak ons name wêreldkundig, om aan die wêreld te getuig van dit wat ons gesien het. En ons lieg nie, want God getuig daarvan.

CHRISTIAN WHITMER

JACOB WHITMER

PETER WHITMER, JR.

JOHN WHITMER

HIRAM PAGE

JOSEPH SMITH, SNR.

HYRUM SMITH

SAMUEL H. SMITH

The Testimony of Eight Witnesses

Be it known unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, unto whom this work shall come: That Joseph Smith, Jun., the translator of this work, has shown unto us the plates of which hath been spoken, which have the appearance of gold; and as many of the leaves as the said Smith has translated we did handle with our hands; and we also saw the engravings thereon, all of which has the appearance of ancient work, and of curious workmanship. And this we bear record with words of soberness, that the said Smith has shown unto us, for we have seen and hefted, and know of a surety that the said Smith has got the plates of which we have spoken. And we give our names unto the world, to witness unto the world that which we have seen. And we lie not, God bearing witness of it.

CHRISTIAN WHITMER

JACOB WHITMER

PETER WHITMER, JUN.

JOHN WHITMER

HIRAM PAGE

JOSEPH SMITH, SEN.

HYRUM SMITH

SAMUEL H. SMITH

Die Eerste Boek van Nefi

Sy Heerskappy en Bediening

'n Kroniek van Lebi en sy vrou Saria, en sy vier seuns, wat genoem is, (beginnende by die oudste) Laman, Lemuel, Sam, en Nepfi. Die Here waarsku Lebi om te vertrek uit die land Jerusalem, omdat hy profeteer tot die volk aangaande hul ongeregtheid en hulle soek om sy lewe te vernietig. Hy onderneem 'n reis van drie dae die wildernis binne met sy gesin. Nepfi neem sy broers en keer terug na die land Jerusalem om die kronieke van die Jode in die hande te kry. Die kroniek van hul verdrukkinge. Hulle neem die dogters van Ismael tot vrou. Hulle neem hul gesinne en trek die wildernis binne. Hul ontbering en verdrukkinge in die wildernis. Die roete van hulle reise. Hulle kom by die groot waters aan. Nepfi se broers rebelleer teen hom. Hy beskaam hulle en bou 'n skip. Hulle noem die naam van die plek Oorvloed. Hulle seil oor die groot waters na die beloofde land, ensovoorts. Dit is volgens die kroniek van Nepfi; of, met ander woorde, ek, Nepfi, het hierdie kroniek geskrywe.

1 Nepi 1

- 1 Ek, Nepfi, omdat ek gebore is uit eerbare ouers, daarom is ek in 'n mate onderrig in al die geleerdheid van my vader; en omdat ek baie verdrukkinge in die loop van my dae gesien het, desnieteenstaande, omdat ek hoog begunstig is deur die Here in al my dae; ja, omdat ek 'n groot kennis gehad het van die goedheid en verborgenhede van God, daarom stel ek 'n kroniek op van my handelinge in my dae.
- 2 Ja, ek stel 'n kroniek op in die taal van my vader, wat bestaan uit die geleerdheid van die Jode en die taal van die Egiptenare.
- 3 En ek weet dat die kroniek wat ek opstel, waar is; en ek maak dit met my eie hand; en ek maak dit volgens my kennis.

The First Book of Nephi

His Reign and Ministry

An account of Lebi and his wife Sariah, and his four sons, being called, (beginning at the eldest) Laman, Lemuel, Sam, and Nephi. The Lord warns Lebi to depart out of the land of Jerusalem, because he prophesieth unto the people concerning their iniquity and they seek to destroy his life. He taketh three days' journey into the wilderness with his family. Nephi taketh his brethren and returneth to the land of Jerusalem after the record of the Jews. The account of their sufferings. They take the daughters of Ishmael to wife. They take their families and depart into the wilderness. Their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness. The course of their travels. They come to the large waters. Nephi's brethren rebel against him. He confoundeth them, and buildeth a ship. They call the name of the place Bountiful. They cross the large waters into the promised land, and so forth. This is according to the account of Nephi; or in other words, I, Nephi, wrote this record.

1 Nephi 1

I, Nephi, having been born of goodly parents, therefore I was taught somewhat in all the learning of my father; and having seen many afflictions in the course of my days, nevertheless, having been highly favored of the Lord in all my days; yea, having had a great knowledge of the goodness and the mysteries of God, therefore I make a record of my proceedings in my days.

Yea, I make a record in the language of my father, which consists of the learning of the Jews and the language of the Egyptians.

And I know that the record which I make is true; and I make it with mine own hand; and I make it according to my knowledge.

- 4 Want dit het gebeur aan die begin van die eerste jaar van die heerskappy van Sedekía, koning van Juda, (my vader, Lehi, het al sy dae by Jerusalem gewoon); in daardie selfde jaar het daar baie profete gekom, wat profeteer tot die volk dat hulle moet bekeer, anders moet die grote stad Jerusalem vernietig word.
- 5 Daarop het dit gebeur dat my vader, Lehi, terwyl hy verder gaan, tot die Here gebid het, ja, en wel met sy hele hart, ten behoeve van sy volk.
- 6 En dit het gebeur terwyl hy tot die Here gebid het, kom daar 'n kolom van vuur en bly staan op 'n rots voor hom; en hy het baie gesien en gehoor; en vanweë die dinge wat hy gesien en gehoor het, het hy uitermate gesidder en gebeef.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat hy teruggekeer het na sy eie huis by Jerusalem; en hy het homself neergewerp op sy bed, omdat hy oorweldig was deur die Gees en die dinge wat hy gesien het.
- 8 En terwyl hy so oorweldig was deur die Gees, is hy weggevoer in 'n visioen, en wel só dat hy die hemele geopend gesien het, en hy het gemeen dat hy God op sy troon sien sit, omring deur tallose skares engele in 'n houding van sang en lofbetuiging tot hulle God.
- 9 En dit het gebeur dat hy Een sien neerdaal het uit die middel van die hemel, en hy het gewaar dat sy glans meer was as dié van die son op die middag.
- 10 En hy het ook twaalf ander Hom sien volg, en hulle helderheid het dié oortref van die sterre aan die uiterspansel.
- 11 En hulle het neergedaal en heengegaan op die aangesig van die aarde; en die eerste het gekom, en gestaan voor my vader, en aan hom 'n boek gegee, en hom beveel dat hy moes lees.
- 12 En dit het gebeur dat terwyl hy lees, was hy vervul met die Gees van die Here.
- 13 En hy het gelees, en gesê: Wee, wee Jerusalem, want ek het jou gruwels gesien! Ja, en baie dinge het my vader gelees aangaande Jerusalem—dat dit verwoes sou word, en die inwoners daarvan; baie sou omkom deur die swaard, en baie sou gevange weggevoer word na Babilon.

For it came to pass in the commencement of the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah, (my father, Lehi, having dwelt at Jerusalem in all his days); and in that same year there came many prophets, prophesying unto the people that they must repent, or the great city Jerusalem must be destroyed.

Wherefore it came to pass that my father, Lehi, as he went forth prayed unto the Lord, yea, even with all his heart, in behalf of his people.

And it came to pass as he prayed unto the Lord, there came a pillar of fire and dwelt upon a rock before him; and he saw and heard much; and because of the things which he saw and heard he did quake and tremble exceedingly.

And it came to pass that he returned to his own house at Jerusalem; and he cast himself upon his bed, being overcome with the Spirit and the things which he had seen.

And being thus overcome with the Spirit, he was carried away in a vision, even that he saw the heavens open, and he thought he saw God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels in the attitude of singing and praising their God.

And it came to pass that he saw One descending out of the midst of heaven, and he beheld that his luster was above that of the sun at noon-day.

And he also saw twelve others following him, and their brightness did exceed that of the stars in the firmament.

And they came down and went forth upon the face of the earth; and the first came and stood before my father, and gave unto him a book, and bade him that he should read.

And it came to pass that as he read, he was filled with the Spirit of the Lord.

And he read, saying: Wo, wo, unto Jerusalem, for I have seen thine abominations! Yea, and many things did my father read concerning Jerusalem—that it should be destroyed, and the inhabitants thereof; many should perish by the sword, and many should be carried away captive into Babylon.

14 En dit het gebeur dat nadat my vader baie groot en wonderbaarlike dinge gelees en gesien het, hy baie dinge tot die Here uitgeroep het; soos: Groot en wonderlik is u werke, o Here God Almagtig! U troon is hoog in die hemele, en u mag, en goedheid, en barmhartighede is oor al die inwoners van die aarde; en, omdat U barmhartig is, sal U nie toelaat dat diegene wat na U toe kom, sal vergaan nie!

15 En volgens hierdie wyse was die taal van my vader in die verering van sy God; want sy siel het gejubel, en sy hele hart was gevul, vanweë die dinge wat hy gesien het, ja, wat die Here aan hom getoon het.

16 En nou stel ek, Nephi, nie 'n volledige kroniek op van die dinge wat my vader geskryf het nie, want hy het baie dinge geskryf wat hy in visioene en in drome gesien het; en hy het ook baie dinge geskryf wat hy geprofeteer en gespreek het met sy kinders, waarvan ek nie 'n volledige kroniek sal opstel nie.

17 Maar ek sal 'n kroniek opstel van my handeling in my dae. Kyk, ek maak 'n verkorting van die kroniek van my vader, op plate wat ek met my eie hande gemaak het; daarom, nadat ek die kroniek van my vader verkort het, dan sal ek 'n kroniek van my eie lewe opstel.

18 Daarom wil ek hê dat julle moet weet, dat nadat die Here soveel wonderlike dinge aan my vader, Lehi, getoon het, ja, aangaande die verwoesting van Jerusalem, kyk, hy het uitgegaan onder die volk, en begin om te profeteer en om te verkondig aan hulle aangaande die dinge wat hy beide gesien en gehoor het.

19 En dit het gebeur dat die Jode hom bespot het vanweë die dinge wat hy van hulle getuig het; want hy het waarlik getuig van hul boosheid en hul gruwels; en hy het getuig dat die dinge wat hy gesien en gehoor het, en ook die dinge wat hy in die boek gelees het, het duidelik die koms van 'n Messias geopenbaar, en ook die verlossing van die wêreld.

And it came to pass that when my father had read and seen many great and marvelous things, he did exclaim many things unto the Lord; such as: Great and marvelous are thy works, O Lord God Almighty! Thy throne is high in the heavens, and thy power, and goodness, and mercy are over all the inhabitants of the earth; and, because thou art merciful, thou wilt not suffer those who come unto thee that they shall perish!

And after this manner was the language of my father in the praising of his God; for his soul did rejoice, and his whole heart was filled, because of the things which he had seen, yea, which the Lord had shown unto him.

And now I, Nephi, do not make a full account of the things which my father hath written, for he hath written many things which he saw in visions and in dreams; and he also hath written many things which he prophesied and spake unto his children, of which I shall not make a full account.

But I shall make an account of my proceedings in my days. Behold, I make an abridgment of the record of my father, upon plates which I have made with mine own hands; wherefore, after I have abridged the record of my father then will I make an account of mine own life.

Therefore, I would that ye should know, that after the Lord had shown so many marvelous things unto my father, Lehi, yea, concerning the destruction of Jerusalem, behold he went forth among the people, and began to prophesy and to declare unto them concerning the things which he had both seen and heard.

And it came to pass that the Jews did mock him because of the things which he testified of them; for he truly testified of their wickedness and their abominations; and he testified that the things which he saw and heard, and also the things which he read in the book, manifested plainly of the coming of a Messiah, and also the redemption of the world.

20 En toe die Jode hierdie dinge hoor, was hulle kwaad vir hom; ja, net soos met die profete van ouds, vir wie hulle uitgewerp, en gestenig, en doodgemaak het; en hulle het ook sy lewe gesoek, om dit te neem. Maar kyk, ek, Nephi, sal aan julle toon dat die tere barmhartighede van die Here oor al diegene is wat Hy gekies het, vanweë hul geloof, om hulle magtig te maak selfs tot die mag van verlossing.

And when the Jews heard these things they were angry with him; yea, even as with the prophets of old, whom they had cast out, and stoned, and slain; and they also sought his life, that they might take it away. But behold, I, Nephi, will show unto you that the tender mercies of the Lord are over all those whom he hath chosen, because of their faith, to make them mighty even unto the power of deliverance.

1 Nefi 2

- 1 Want kyk, dit het gebeur dat die Here met my vader gespreek het, ja, en wel in 'n droom, en vir hom gesê het: Geseënd is jy, Lehi, vanweë die dinge wat jy gedoen het; en omdat jy getrou was en aan hierdie volk die dinge verkondig het wat Ek jou gebied het, kyk, hulle soek om jou lewe te neem.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat die Here my vader gebied het, en wel in 'n droom, dat hy sy gesin moes neem en die wildernis intrek.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat hy gehoorsaam was aan die woord van die Here, daarom het hy gedoen soos die Here hom gebied het.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat hy die wildernis ingetrek het. En hy het sy huis verlaat, en die land van sy erfenis, en sy goud, en sy silwer, en sy kosbare dinge, en het niks met hom saamgeneem nie, behalwe sy gesin, en voorrade, en tente, en het die wildernis ingetrek.
- 5 En hy het onder by die grense naby die kus van die Rooi See aangekom; en hy het die wildernis ingetrek by die grense wat nader is aan die Rooi See; en hy het in die wildernis gereis met sy gesin, wat bestaan het uit my moeder, Saria, en my ouer broers, wat Laman, Lemuel en Sam was.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat toe hy drie dae in die wildernis gereis het, hy sy tent opgeslaan het in 'n vallei aan die oewer van 'n rivier van water.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat hy 'n altaar van klippe gebou het, en 'n offerande gebring het aan die Here, en dank betuig het teenoor die Here onse God.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat hy die naam van die rivier Laman genoem het, en dit het uitgeloop in die Rooi See; en die vallei was binne die grense naby die monding daarvan.
- 9 En toe my vader sien dat die waters van die rivier uitloop in die fontein van die Rooi See, het hy met Laman gespreek, en gesê: O dat jy soos hierdie rivier mag wees, wat voortdurend invloei in die fontein van alle regverdigheid!

1 Nephi 2

For behold, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto my father, yea, even in a dream, and said unto him: Blessed art thou Lehi, because of the things which thou hast done; and because thou hast been faithful and declared unto this people the things which I commanded thee, behold, they seek to take away thy life.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded my father, even in a dream, that he should take his family and depart into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that he was obedient unto the word of the Lord, wherefore he did as the Lord commanded him.

And it came to pass that he departed into the wilderness. And he left his house, and the land of his inheritance, and his gold, and his silver, and his precious things, and took nothing with him, save it were his family, and provisions, and tents, and departed into the wilderness.

And he came down by the borders near the shore of the Red Sea; and he traveled in the wilderness in the borders which are nearer the Red Sea; and he did travel in the wilderness with his family, which consisted of my mother, Sariah, and my elder brothers, who were Laman, Lemuel, and Sam.

And it came to pass that when he had traveled three days in the wilderness, he pitched his tent in a valley by the side of a river of water.

And it came to pass that he built an altar of stones, and made an offering unto the Lord, and gave thanks unto the Lord our God.

And it came to pass that he called the name of the river, Laman, and it emptied into the Red Sea; and the valley was in the borders near the mouth thereof.

And when my father saw that the waters of the river emptied into the fountain of the Red Sea, he spake unto Laman, saying: O that thou mightest be like unto this river, continually running into the fountain of all righteousness!

- 10 En hy het ook met Lemuel gespreek: O dat jy mag wees soos hierdie vallei, ferm en standvastig, en onbeweeglik in die onderhouding van die gebooie van die Here!
- 11 Nou dit het hy gespreek vanweë die hardnekkigheid van Laman en Lemuel; want kyk, hulle het gemurmureer in baie dinge teen hulle vader, omdat hy 'n man was wat visioene gesien het, en hulle uitgelei het uit die land Jerusalem, om die land van hulle erfenis te verlaat, en hulle goud, en hulle silwer, en hulle kosbare dinge, om om te kom in die wildernis. En dit het hulle gesê het hy gedoen vanweë die dwase inbeelding van sy hart.
- 12 En so het Laman en Lemuel, as die oudstes, teen hulle vader gemurmureer. En hulle het gemurmureer omdat hulle nie die handelswyse van daardie God geken het wat hulle geskape het nie.
- 13 Nóg het hulle geglo dat Jerusalem, daardie grote stad, verwoes kon word volgens die woorde van die profete. En hulle was soos die Jode, wat by Jerusalem was, wat gesoek het om my vader se lewe te neem.
- 14 En dit het gebeur dat my vader met krag met hulle gespreek het in die vallei van Lemuel, omdat hy vervul was met die Gees, totdat hulle liggame gebewe het voor hom. En hy het hulle beskaam, sodat hulle nie teen hom durf uiter nie; daarom het hulle gedoen soos hy hulle beveel het.
- 15 En my vader het in 'n tent gewoon.
- 16 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Nefi, aangesien ek baie jonk was, en desnieteenstaande groot van gestalte was, en ook omdat ek brandende begeertes gehad het om die verborgenhede van God te ken, daarom het ek tot die Here geroep; en kyk, Hy het my besoek, en het my hart versag, sodat ek al die woorde geglo het wat gespreek was deur my vader; daarom het ek nie teen hom gerebelleer soos my broers nie.
- 17 En ek het met Sam gespreek, en aan hom die dinge bekend gemaak wat die Here aan my geopenbaar het deur sy Heilige Gees. En dit het gebeur dat hy in my woorde geglo het.
- 18 Maar kyk, Laman en Lemuel wou nie ag slaan op my woorde nie; en omdat ek bedroef was weens die hardheid van hulle harte, het ek tot die Here om hulle ontwil geroep.

And he also spake unto Lemuel: O that thou mightest be like unto this valley, firm and steadfast, and immovable in keeping the commandments of the Lord!

Now this he spake because of the stiffneckedness of Laman and Lemuel; for behold they did murmur in many things against their father, because he was a visionary man, and had led them out of the land of Jerusalem, to leave the land of their inheritance, and their gold, and their silver, and their precious things, to perish in the wilderness. And this they said he had done because of the foolish imaginations of his heart.

And thus Laman and Lemuel, being the eldest, did murmur against their father. And they did murmur because they knew not the dealings of that God who had created them.

Neither did they believe that Jerusalem, that great city, could be destroyed according to the words of the prophets. And they were like unto the Jews who were at Jerusalem, who sought to take away the life of my father.

And it came to pass that my father did speak unto them in the valley of Lemuel, with power, being filled with the Spirit, until their frames did shake before him. And he did confound them, that they durst not utter against him; wherefore, they did as he commanded them.

And my father dwelt in a tent.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, being exceedingly young, nevertheless being large in stature, and also having great desires to know of the mysteries of God, wherefore, I did cry unto the Lord; and behold he did visit me, and did soften my heart that I did believe all the words which had been spoken by my father; wherefore, I did not rebel against him like unto my brothers.

And I spake unto Sam, making known unto him the things which the Lord had manifested unto me by his Holy Spirit. And it came to pass that he believed in my words.

But, behold, Laman and Lemuel would not hearken unto my words; and being grieved because of the hardness of their hearts I cried unto the Lord for them.

- 19 En dit het gebeur dat die Here met my gespreek, en gesê het: Geseënd is jy, Nefi, vanweë jou geloof, want jy het My getrou gesoek, met nederigheid van hart.
- 20 En in soverre jy my gebooie sal onderhou, sal jy voorspoedig wees, en sal gelei word na 'n land van belofte; ja, en wel 'n land wat Ek berei het vir jou; ja, 'n land wat uitverkore is bo alle ander lande.
- 21 En in soverre jou broers teen jou sal rebelleer, sal hulle afgesny word van die teenwoordigheid van die Here.
- 22 En in soverre jy my gebooie onderhou, sal jy 'n heerser en 'n leraar oor jou broers gemaak word.
- 23 Want kyk, in daardie dag wanneer hulle teen My sal rebelleer, sal Ek hulle vervloek, en wel met 'n swaar vervloeking, en hulle sal geen mag hê oor jou saad nie, behalwe as hulle ook teen My sal rebelleer.
- 24 En as dit so is dat hulle teen My rebelleer, sal hulle 'n gésel wees vir jou saad, om hulle aan te spoor tot die weë van herinnering.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Blessed art thou, Nephi, because of thy faith, for thou hast sought me diligently, with lowliness of heart.

And inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper, and shall be led to a land of promise; yea, even a land which I have prepared for you; yea, a land which is choice above all other lands.

And inasmuch as thy brethren shall rebel against thee, they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And inasmuch as thou shalt keep my commandments, thou shalt be made a ruler and a teacher over thy brethren.

For behold, in that day that they shall rebel against me, I will curse them even with a sore curse, and they shall have no power over thy seed except they shall rebel against me also.

And if it so be that they rebel against me, they shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in the ways of remembrance.

1 Nefi 3

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Nefi, teruggekeer het na die tent van my vader nadat ek met die Here gespreek het.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat hy met my gespreek, en gesê het: Kyk, ek het 'n droom gedroom, waarin die Here my gebied het dat jy en jou broers sal terugkeer na Jerusalem.
- 3 Want kyk, Laban het die kronieke van die Jode en ook 'n geslagsregister van my voorvaders, en hulle is gegraveer op plate van brons.
- 4 Daarom, die Here het my gebied dat jy en jou broers na die huis van Laban moet gaan en die kronieke bekom, en hulle hierheen afbring in die wildernis.
- 5 En nou, kyk, jou broers murmureer, en sê dat dit 'n moeilike ding is wat ek van hulle verwag het; maar kyk, ek het dit nie van hulle vereis nie, maar dit is 'n gebod van die Here.
- 6 Daarom gaan, my seun, en jy sal begunstig word deur die Here, omdat jy nie gemurmureer het nie.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Nefi, aan my vader gesê het: Ek sal gaan en die dinge doen wat die Here gebied het, want ek weet dat die Here geen gebooië gee aan die kinders van mense nie, tensy Hy 'n weg vir hulle sal voorberei dat hulle die ding mag uitvoer wat Hy hulle gebied het.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat toe my vader hierdie woorde gehoor het, was hy uitermate verheug, want hy het geweet dat ek geseën was deur die Here.
- 9 En ek, Nefi, en my broers, het toe op reis gegaan in die wildernis, met ons tente, om op te gaan na die land Jerusalem.
- 10 En dit het gebeur dat toe ons opgegaan het na die land Jerusalem, het ek en my broers mekaar geraadpleeg.
- 11 En ons het die lot gewerp—wie van ons moes ingaan na die huis van Laban. En dit het gebeur dat die lot op Laman geval het; en Laman het ingegaan na die huis van Laban, en hy het met hom gespreek terwyl hy in sy huis gesit het.
- 12 En hy het van Laban die kronieke gevra wat gegraveer was op die plate van brons, wat die geslagsregister van my vader bevat het.

1 Nephi 3

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, returned from speaking with the Lord, to the tent of my father.

And it came to pass that he spake unto me, saying: Behold I have dreamed a dream, in the which the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brethren shall return to Jerusalem.

For behold, Laban hath the record of the Jews and also a genealogy of my forefathers, and they are engraven upon plates of brass.

Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brothers should go unto the house of Laban, and seek the records, and bring them down hither into the wilderness.

And now, behold thy brothers murmur, saying it is a hard thing which I have required of them; but behold I have not required it of them, but it is a commandment of the Lord.

Therefore go, my son, and thou shalt be favored of the Lord, because thou hast not murmured.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto my father: I will go and do the things which the Lord hath commanded, for I know that the Lord giveth no commandments unto the children of men, save he shall prepare a way for them that they may accomplish the thing which he commandeth them.

And it came to pass that when my father had heard these words he was exceedingly glad, for he knew that I had been blessed of the Lord.

And I, Nephi, and my brethren took our journey in the wilderness, with our tents, to go up to the land of Jerusalem.

And it came to pass that when we had gone up to the land of Jerusalem, I and my brethren did consult one with another.

And we cast lots—who of us should go in unto the house of Laban. And it came to pass that the lot fell upon Laman; and Laman went in unto the house of Laban, and he talked with him as he sat in his house.

And he desired of Laban the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, which contained the genealogy of my father.

- 13 En kyk, dit het gebeur dat Laban kwaad was, en hom uit sy teenwoordigheid uitgewerp het; en hy wou nie hê dat hy die kronieke moes besit nie. Daarom het hy aan hom gesê: Kyk, jy is 'n rower, en ek sal jou doodmaak.
- 14 Maar Laman het gevlug uit sy teenwoordigheid, en die dinge wat Laban gedoen het, vir ons vertel. En ons het begin om uitermate bedroef te word, en my broers het op die punt gestaan om terug te keer na my vader in die wildernis.
- 15 Maar kyk ek het vir hulle gesê dat: Sowaar as die Here leef en soos ons lewe, ons sal nie afgaan na ons vader in die wildernis totdat ons die ding volbring het wat die Here ons gebied het nie.
- 16 Daarom, laat ons getrou wees om die gebooie van die Here te onderhou; daarom, laat ons afgaan na die land van ons vader se erfenis, want kyk hy het goud en silwer en allerhande rykdom agtergelaat. En dit het hy alles gedoen vanweë die gebooie van die Here.
- 17 Want hy het geweet dat Jerusalem verwoes moet word, vanweë die boosheid van die volk.
- 18 Want kyk, hulle het die woorde van die profete verwerp. Daarom, as my vader sou woon in die land nadat hy gebied is om te vlug uit die land, kyk, dan sou hy ook omkom. Daarom moes hy noodwendig vlug uit die land.
- 19 En kyk, dit is wysheid in God dat ons hierdie kronieke moes verkry, sodat ons vir ons kinders die taal van ons vaders kon behou;
- 20 En ook dat ons vir hulle die woorde kan behou wat gespreek is by monde van al die heilige profete, wat aan hulle oorgelewer is deur die Gees en die mag van God, sedert die wêreld begin het, en wel tot hierdie huidige tyd.
- 21 En dit het gebeur dat volgens hierdie wyse van spraak ek my broers oorreed het, dat hulle getrou mag wees om die gebooie van die Here te onderhou.
- 22 En dit het gebeur dat ons afgegaan het na die land van ons erfenis, en ons het ons goud bymekaar gemaak, en ons silwer, en ons kosbare dinge.
- 23 En nadat ons hierdie dinge bymekaargemaak het, het ons weer opgegaan na die huis van Laban.

And behold, it came to pass that Laban was angry, and thrust him out from his presence; and he would not that he should have the records. Wherefore, he said unto him: Behold thou art a robber, and I will slay thee.

But Laman fled out of his presence, and told the things which Laban had done, unto us. And we began to be exceedingly sorrowful, and my brethren were about to return unto my father in the wilderness.

But behold I said unto them that: As the Lord liveth, and as we live, we will not go down unto our father in the wilderness until we have accomplished the thing which the Lord hath commanded us.

Wherefore, let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; therefore let us go down to the land of our father's inheritance, for behold he left gold and silver, and all manner of riches. And all this he hath done because of the commandments of the Lord.

For he knew that Jerusalem must be destroyed, because of the wickedness of the people.

For behold, they have rejected the words of the prophets. Wherefore, if my father should dwell in the land after he hath been commanded to flee out of the land, behold, he would also perish. Wherefore, it must needs be that he flee out of the land.

And behold, it is wisdom in God that we should obtain these records, that we may preserve unto our children the language of our fathers;

And also that we may preserve unto them the words which have been spoken by the mouth of all the holy prophets, which have been delivered unto them by the Spirit and power of God, since the world began, even down unto this present time.

And it came to pass that after this manner of language did I persuade my brethren, that they might be faithful in keeping the commandments of God.

And it came to pass that we went down to the land of our inheritance, and we did gather together our gold, and our silver, and our precious things.

And after we had gathered these things together, we went up again unto the house of Laban.

24 En dit het gebeur dat ons ingegaan het na Laban, en hom versoek het dat hy aan ons die kronieke sou gee wat gegraveer was op die plate van brons, waarvoor ons aan hom ons goud sou gee, en ons silwer, en al ons kosbare dinge.

25 En dit het gebeur dat toe Laban ons besittings sien, en dat dit besonder baie was, het hy dit begeer, in soverre dat hy ons uitgewerp het, en sy diensknegte gestuur het om ons dood te maak, sodat hy ons besittings kon kry.

26 En dit het gebeur dat ons gevlug het voor die diensknegte van Laban, en ons was verplig om ons besittings agter te laat, en dit het geval in die hande van Laban.

27 En dit het gebeur dat ons die wildernis binnegevlug het, en die diensknegte van Laban het ons nie ingehaal nie, en ons het ons versteek in die holte van 'n rots.

28 En dit het gebeur dat Laman kwaad was vir my, en ook vir my vader; en ook was Lemuel, want hy het ag geslaan op die woorde van Laman. Daarom het Laman en Lemuel baie harde woorde gespreek met ons, hul jonger broers, en hulle het ons geslaan en wel met 'n roede.

29 En dit het gebeur dat terwyl hulle ons slaan met 'n roede, kyk, 'n engel van die Here het gekom en voor hulle gestaan, en hy het met hulle gespreek, en gesê: Waarom slaan julle jul jonger broer met 'n roede? Weet julle nie dat die Here hom gekies het om 'n heerser oor julle te wees nie, en dit vanweë julle ongeregtighede? Kyk, julle sal weer opgaan na Jerusalem, en die Here sal Laban uitlewer in julle hande.

30 En nadat die engel met ons gespreek het, het hy vertrek.

31 En nadat die engel vertrek het, het Laman en Lemuel weer begin murmureer, en gesê: Hoe is dit moontlik dat die Here Laban sal uitlewer in ons hande? Kyk, hy is 'n magtige man, en hy kan vyftig gebied, ja, hy kan selfs vyftig doodmaak; hoekom dan nie vir ons nie?

And it came to pass that we went in unto Laban, and desired him that he would give unto us the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, for which we would give unto him our gold, and our silver, and all our precious things.

And it came to pass that when Laban saw our property, and that it was exceedingly great, he did lust after it, insomuch that he thrust us out, and sent his servants to slay us, that he might obtain our property.

And it came to pass that we did flee before the servants of Laban, and we were obliged to leave behind our property, and it fell into the hands of Laban.

And it came to pass that we fled into the wilderness, and the servants of Laban did not overtake us, and we hid ourselves in the cavity of a rock.

And it came to pass that Laman was angry with me, and also with my father; and also was Lemuel, for he hearkened unto the words of Laman. Wherefore Laman and Lemuel did speak many hard words unto us, their younger brothers, and they did smite us even with a rod.

And it came to pass as they smote us with a rod, behold, an angel of the Lord came and stood before them, and he spake unto them, saying: Why do ye smite your younger brother with a rod? Know ye not that the Lord hath chosen him to be a ruler over you, and this because of your iniquities? Behold ye shall go up to Jerusalem again, and the Lord will deliver Laban into your hands.

And after the angel had spoken unto us, he departed.

And after the angel had departed, Laman and Lemuel again began to murmur, saying: How is it possible that the Lord will deliver Laban into our hands? Behold, he is a mighty man, and he can command fifty, yea, even he can slay fifty; then why not us?

1 Nefi 4

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat ek met my broers gespreek het, en gesê het: Laat ons weer opgaan na Jerusalem, en laat ons getrou wees om die gebooie van die Here te onderhou; want kyk Hy is magtiger as die hele aarde, waarom dan nie magtiger as Laban en sy vyftig, ja, of selfs sy tienduisende nie?
- 2 Daarom, laat ons opgaan; laat ons sterk wees soos Moses; want hy het waarlik gespreek tot die waters van die Rooi See en hulle het verdeel hiernatoe en daarnatoe, en ons vaders het deurgekom uit gevangenskap, op droë grond, en die leërs van Farao het gevolg en het verdrink in die waters van die Rooi See.
- 3 Nou kyk, julle weet dat dit waar is; en julle weet ook dat 'n engel met julle gespreek het; waarom twyfel julle? Laat ons opgaan; die Here is in staat om ons te verlos, net soos ons vaders, en om Laban te vernietig, net soos die Egiptenare.
- 4 Nou, toe ek hierdie woorde gespreek het, was hulle nog vertoornd, en het steeds aangehou om te murmureer; desnieteenstaande het hulle my gevolg tot dat ons aangekom het buite die mure van Jerusalem.
- 5 En dit was nag; en ek het hulle hul laat versteek buite die mure. En nadat hulle hul versteek het, het ek, Nefi, die stad binnegesluip en gegaan na die huis van Laban.
- 6 En ek is gelei deur die Gees, sonder dat ek vooraf geweet het wat die dinge was wat ek moes doen.
- 7 Nogtans het ek gegaan, en toe ek naby die huis van Laban kom, gewaar ek 'n man, en hy het op die grond neergeval voor my, want hy was dronk van wyn.
- 8 En toe ek by hom kom, ontdek ek dat dit Laban was.
- 9 En ek het sy swaard gewaar, en ek het dit uitgetrek uit die skede; en die hef daarvan was van suiwer goud, en die vakmanskap daarvan was uitermate goed, en ek merk dat die lem daarvan van die beste staal was.
- 10 En dit het gebeur dat ek gedwing was deur die Gees dat ek Laban moes doodmaak; maar ek het in my hart gesê: Nooit te eniger tyd het ek 'n mens se bloed gestort nie. En ek het teruggedeins en wou dat ek hom nie hoof dood te maak nie.

1 Nephi 4

And it came to pass that I spake unto my brethren, saying: Let us go up again unto Jerusalem, and let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; for behold he is mightier than all the earth, then why not mightier than Laban and his fifty, yea, or even than his tens of thousands?

Therefore let us go up; let us be strong like unto Moses; for he truly spake unto the waters of the Red Sea and they divided hither and thither, and our fathers came through, out of captivity, on dry ground, and the armies of Pharaoh did follow and were drowned in the waters of the Red Sea.

Now behold ye know that this is true; and ye also know that an angel hath spoken unto you; wherefore can ye doubt? Let us go up; the Lord is able to deliver us, even as our fathers, and to destroy Laban, even as the Egyptians.

Now when I had spoken these words, they were yet wroth, and did still continue to murmur; nevertheless they did follow me up until we came without the walls of Jerusalem.

And it was by night; and I caused that they should hide themselves without the walls. And after they had hid themselves, I, Nephi, crept into the city and went forth towards the house of Laban.

And I was led by the Spirit, not knowing beforehand the things which I should do.

Nevertheless I went forth, and as I came near unto the house of Laban I beheld a man, and he had fallen to the earth before me, for he was drunken with wine.

And when I came to him I found that it was Laban.

And I beheld his sword, and I drew it forth from the sheath thereof; and the hilt thereof was of pure gold, and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine, and I saw that the blade thereof was of the most precious steel.

And it came to pass that I was constrained by the Spirit that I should kill Laban; but I said in my heart: Never at any time have I shed the blood of man. And I shrunk and would that I might not slay him.

11 En die Gees het weer vir my gesê: Kyk die Here het hom uitgelewer in jou hande. Ja, en ek het ook geweet dat hy gesoek het om my eie lewe te neem; ja, en hy wou nie ag slaan op die gebooie van die Here nie; en hy het ook ons besittings van ons afgeneem.

12 En dit het gebeur dat die Gees weer vir my gesê het: Maak hom dood, want die Here het hom uitgelewer in jou hande;

13 Kyk die Here maak die goddelose dood om sy regverdige oogmerke te bereik. Dit is beter dat een man moet omkom as dat 'n nasie sou kwyn en vergaan in ongelooft.

14 En nou, toe ek, Nephi, hierdie woorde gehoor het, het ek die woorde van die Here onthou wat Hy met my in die wildernis gespreek het, en gesê het dat: In soverre jou saad my gebooie onderhou, sal hulle voorspoedig wees in die land van belofte.

15 Ja, en ek het ook gedink dat hulle nie die gebooie van die Here kon onderhou volgens die wet van Moses nie, behalwe as hulle die wet sou hê.

16 En ek het ook geweet dat die wet gegraveer was op die plate van brons.

17 En verder, ek het geweet dat die Here Laban uitgelewer het in my hande om hierdie rede—dat ek die kronieke mag verkry volgens sy gebooie.

18 Daarom het ek die stem van die Gees gehoorsaam, en vir Laban aan die hare van sy hoof geneem, en ek het sy hoof afgekap met sy eie swaard.

19 En nadat ek sy hoof afgekap het met sy eie swaard, het ek Laban se klere geneem en dit aan my eie lyf gesit; ja, en wel elke stuk; en ek het sy wapenrusting om my lendene gegord.

20 En nadat ek dit gedoen het, het ek na Laban se skatkamer gegaan. En terwyl ek na Laban se skatkamer gegaan het, kyk, het ek die dienskneg van Laban gesien wat die sleutels van die skatkamer gehad het. En ek het hom in die stem van Laban beveel dat hy saam met my die skatkamer moes binnegaan.

21 En hy het veronderstel dat ek sy meester, Laban, was, want hy het die klere gesien, en ook die swaard vasgegord om my lendene.

22 En hy het met my gespreek aangaande die oudstes van die Jode, hy wetende dat sy meester, Laban, uit was gedurende die nag onder hulle.

And the Spirit said unto me again: Behold the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands. Yea, and I also knew that he had sought to take away mine own life; yea, and he would not hearken unto the commandments of the Lord; and he also had taken away our property.

And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me again: Slay him, for the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands;

Behold the Lord slayeth the wicked to bring forth his righteous purposes. It is better that one man should perish than that a nation should dwindle and perish in unbelief.

And now, when I, Nephi, had heard these words, I remembered the words of the Lord which he spake unto me in the wilderness, saying that: Inasmuch as thy seed shall keep my commandments, they shall prosper in the land of promise.

Yea, and I also thought that they could not keep the commandments of the Lord according to the law of Moses, save they should have the law.

And I also knew that the law was engraven upon the plates of brass.

And again, I knew that the Lord had delivered Laban into my hands for this cause—that I might obtain the records according to his commandments.

Therefore I did obey the voice of the Spirit, and took Laban by the hair of the head, and I smote off his head with his own sword.

And after I had smitten off his head with his own sword, I took the garments of Laban and put them upon mine own body; yea, even every whit; and I did gird on his armor about my loins.

And after I had done this, I went forth unto the treasury of Laban. And as I went forth towards the treasury of Laban, behold, I saw the servant of Laban who had the keys of the treasury. And I commanded him in the voice of Laban, that he should go with me into the treasury.

And he supposed me to be his master, Laban, for he beheld the garments and also the sword girded about my loins.

And he spake unto me concerning the elders of the Jews, he knowing that his master, Laban, had been out by night among them.

23 En ek het met hom gespreek asof dit Laban was.

24 En ek het ook met hom gespreek dat ek die grave-rings moes dra, wat op die plate van brons was, na my ouer broers, wat buitekant die mure was.

25 En ek het hom ook beveel om my te volg.

26 En hy, veronderstellend dat ek gepraat het van die broers van die kerk, en dat ek waarlik daardie Laban was wat ek doodgemaak het, daarom het hy my ge-volg.

27 En hy het baie keer met my gespreek aangaande die oudstes van die Jode, terwyl ek na my broers ge-gaan het, wat buite die mure was.

28 En dit het gebeur dat toe Laman my sien, was hy uitermate bevrees, en ook Lemuel en Sam. En hulle het gevlug van my teenwoordigheid; want hulle het veronderstel dat dit Laban was, en dat hy my dood-gemaak het en gesoek het om ook hulle lewens te neem.

29 En dit het gebeur dat ek na hulle geroep het, en hulle het my gehoor; daarom het hulle opgehou om te vlug van my teenwoordigheid.

30 En dit het gebeur dat toe die dienskneg van Laban my broers sien, het hy begin bewe, en hy was op die punt om van my af te vlug, en terug te keer na die stad Jerusalem.

31 En nou, ek Nephi, omdat ek 'n man van groot gestal-te was, en wat ook baie krag ontvang het van die Here, daarom het ek die dienskneg van Laban ge-gryp, en hom vasgehou sodat hy nie kon vlug nie.

32 En dit het gebeur dat ek met hom gespreek het, dat as hy sou ag slaan op my woorde, sowaar as die Here leef, en ek lewe, en wel sodat as hy sou ag slaan op ons woorde, ons sy lewe sou spaar.

33 En ek het met hom gespreek, en wel met 'n eed, dat hy nie hoef te vrees nie; dat hy 'n vry man sou wees soos ons, as hy sou afgaan in die wildernis saam met ons.

34 En ek het ook met hom gespreek, en gesê: Waarlik, die Here het ons gebied om hierdie ding te doen; en sal ons nie ywerig wees om die gebooie van die Here te onderhou nie? Daarom, as jy sal afgaan in die wildernis na my vader sal jy 'n plek saam met ons hê.

And I spake unto him as if it had been Laban.

And I also spake unto him that I should carry the engravings, which were upon the plates of brass, to my elder brethren, who were without the walls.

And I also bade him that he should follow me.

And he, supposing that I spake of the brethren of the church, and that I was truly that Laban whom I had slain, wherefore he did follow me.

And he spake unto me many times concerning the elders of the Jews, as I went forth unto my brethren, who were without the walls.

And it came to pass that when Laman saw me he was exceedingly frightened, and also Lemuel and Sam. And they fled from before my presence; for they supposed it was Laban, and that he had slain me and had sought to take away their lives also.

And it came to pass that I called after them, and they did hear me; wherefore they did cease to flee from my presence.

And it came to pass that when the servant of Laban beheld my brethren he began to tremble, and was about to flee from before me and return to the city of Jerusalem.

And now I, Nephi, being a man large in stature, and also having received much strength of the Lord, therefore I did seize upon the servant of Laban, and held him, that he should not flee.

And it came to pass that I spake with him, that if he would hearken unto my words, as the Lord liveth, and as I live, even so that if he would hearken unto our words, we would spare his life.

And I spake unto him, even with an oath, that he need not fear; that he should be a free man like unto us if he would go down in the wilderness with us.

And I also spake unto him, saying: Surely the Lord hath commanded us to do this thing; and shall we not be diligent in keeping the commandments of the Lord? Therefore, if thou wilt go down into the wilderness to my father thou shalt have place with us.

- 35 En dit het gebeur dat Zoram moed geskep het by die aanhoor van die woorde wat ek gespreek het. Voorts, Zoram was die naam van die dienskneg; en hy het belowe dat hy sou afgaan in die wildernis na ons vader. Ja, en hy het ook 'n eed teenoor ons afgelê dat hy van toe af by ons sou bly.
- 36 Nou was ons begerig dat hy by ons moes bly om hierdie rede, dat die Jode nie mag weet aangaande ons vlug die wildernis in nie, omdat hulle ons sou agternasit en vernietig.
- 37 En dit het gebeur dat toe Zoram 'n eed teenoor ons afgelê het, het ons vrese aangaande hom opgehou.
- 38 En dit het gebeur dat ons die plate van brons en die dienskneg van Laban geneem het, en weggetrek het die wildernis in, en gereis het na die tent van ons vader.

And it came to pass that Zoram did take courage at the words which I spake. Now Zoram was the name of the servant; and he promised that he would go down into the wilderness unto our father. Yea, and he also made an oath unto us that he would tarry with us from that time forth.

Now we were desirous that he should tarry with us for this cause, that the Jews might not know concerning our flight into the wilderness, lest they should pursue us and destroy us.

And it came to pass that when Zoram had made an oath unto us, our fears did cease concerning him.

And it came to pass that we took the plates of brass and the servant of Laban, and departed into the wilderness, and journeyed unto the tent of our father.

1 Nefi 5

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat nadat ons na ons vader afgekom het in die wildernis, kyk, hy was vervul met vreugde, en ook my moeder, Saria, was uitermate bly, want sy het waarlik getreur oor ons.
- 2 Want sy het veronderstel dat ons in die wildernis omgekom het; en sy het ook gekla teenoor my vader en vir hom gesê dat hy iemand was wat visioene sien; en het gesê: Kyk, jy het ons uit die land van ons erfenis uitgelei, en my seuns is nie meer nie, en ons kom om in die wildernis.
- 3 En volgens hierdie wyse van spraak het my moeder gekla teenoor my vader.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat my vader met haar gesprek het, en gesê het: Ek weet dat ek 'n man is wat visioene sien; want as ek nie die dinge van God in 'n visioen gesien het nie, sou ek nie die goedheid van God geken het nie, maar ek sou by Jerusalem gebly het, en sou omgekom het met my broers.
- 5 Maar kyk, ek het 'n land van belofte verkry, in welke dinge ek my verbly; ja, en ek weet dat die Here my seuns sal verlos uit die hande van Laban, en hulle weer afbring na ons in die wildernis.
- 6 En volgens hierdie wyse van spraak het my vader, Lehi, my moeder Saria getroos aangaande ons, terwyl ons gereis het in die wildernis na die land Jerusalem, om die kronieke van die Jode te verkry.
- 7 En toe ons teruggekeer het na die tent van my vader, kyk, hulle vreugde was vol, en my moeder was getroos.
- 8 En sy het gesprek, en gesê: Nou weet ek vir seker dat die Here my man gebied het om die wildernis in te vlug; ja, en ek weet ook vir seker dat die Here my seuns beskerm het, en hulle gered het uit die hande van Laban, en hulle mag gegee het waardeur hulle die ding kon uitvoer wat die Here hulle gebied het. En volgens hierdie wyse van spraak het sy gesprek.
- 9 En dit het gebeur dat hulle hul uitermate verbly het, en offerandes en brandoffers geoffer het aan die Here; en hulle het dank betuig aan die God van Israel.

1 Nephi 5

And it came to pass that after we had come down into the wilderness unto our father, behold, he was filled with joy, and also my mother, Sariah, was exceedingly glad, for she truly had mourned because of us.

For she had supposed that we had perished in the wilderness; and she also had complained against my father, telling him that he was a visionary man; saying: Behold thou hast led us forth from the land of our inheritance, and my sons are no more, and we perish in the wilderness.

And after this manner of language had my mother complained against my father.

And it had come to pass that my father spake unto her, saying: I know that I am a visionary man; for if I had not seen the things of God in a vision I should not have known the goodness of God, but had tarried at Jerusalem, and had perished with my brethren.

But behold, I have obtained a land of promise, in the which things I do rejoice; yea, and I know that the Lord will deliver my sons out of the hands of Laban, and bring them down again unto us in the wilderness.

And after this manner of language did my father, Lehi, comfort my mother, Sariah, concerning us, while we journeyed in the wilderness up to the land of Jerusalem, to obtain the record of the Jews.

And when we had returned to the tent of my father, behold their joy was full, and my mother was comforted.

And she spake, saying: Now I know of a surety that the Lord hath commanded my husband to flee into the wilderness; yea, and I also know of a surety that the Lord hath protected my sons, and delivered them out of the hands of Laban, and given them power whereby they could accomplish the thing which the Lord hath commanded them. And after this manner of language did she speak.

And it came to pass that they did rejoice exceedingly, and did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto the Lord; and they gave thanks unto the God of Israel.

10 En nadat hulle dank betuig het aan die God van Israel, het my vader, Lehi, die kronieke geneem wat gegraveer was op die plate van brons, en hy het hulle deursoek vanaf die begin.

11 En hy het gemerk dat hulle die vyf boeke van Moses bevat het, wat 'n kroniek gegee het van die skepping van die wêreld, en ook van Adam en Eva, wat ons eerste ouers was;

12 En ook 'n kroniek van die Jode van die begin af, tot die aanvang van die heerskappy van Sedekía, koning van Juda;

13 En ook die profesieë van die heilige profete, van die begin af, en wel tot die aanvang van die heerskappy van Sedekía; en ook baie profesieë wat gespreek is by monde van Jeremia.

14 En dit het gebeur dat my vader, Lehi, ook op die plate van brons 'n geslagsregister van sy vaders gevind het; daarom het hy geweet dat hy 'n afstamming was van Josef; ja, en wel daardie Josef wat die seun van Jakob was, wat verkoop is na Egipte, en wat behoed is deur die hand van die Here, dat hy sy vader Jakob mag behoed, en sy hele huisgesin, dat hulle nie omkom van hongersnood nie.

15 En hulle is ook uitgelei uit gevangenskap, en uit die land Egipte, deur dieselfde God wat hulle behoed het.

16 En dus het my vader, Lehi, die geslagsregister ontdek van sy vaders. En Laban was ook 'n afstamming van Josef, daarom het hy en sy vaders die kronieke bygehou.

17 En nou toe my vader al hierdie dinge sien, is hy met die Gees vervul, en het begin profeteer aangaande sy saad—

18 Dat hierdie plate van brons moes uitgaan na alle nasies, stamme, tale, en volke wat van sy saad was.

19 Daarom het hy gesê dat hierdie plate van brons nooit sou vergaan nie; nóg sou hulle verdof word deur die tyd. En hy het baie dinge geprofeteer aangaande sy saad.

20 En dit het gebeur dat tot dusver het ek en my vader die gebooie nagekom wat die Here ons gebied het.

And after they had given thanks unto the God of Israel, my father, Lehi, took the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, and he did search them from the beginning.

And he beheld that they did contain the five books of Moses, which gave an account of the creation of the world, and also of Adam and Eve, who were our first parents;

And also a record of the Jews from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah;

And also the prophecies of the holy prophets, from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah; and also many prophecies which have been spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah.

And it came to pass that my father, Lehi, also found upon the plates of brass a genealogy of his fathers; wherefore he knew that he was a descendant of Joseph; yea, even that Joseph who was the son of Jacob, who was sold into Egypt, and who was preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he might preserve his father, Jacob, and all his household from perishing with famine.

And they were also led out of captivity and out of the land of Egypt, by that same God who had preserved them.

And thus my father, Lehi, did discover the genealogy of his fathers. And Laban also was a descendant of Joseph, wherefore he and his fathers had kept the records.

And now when my father saw all these things, he was filled with the Spirit, and began to prophesy concerning his seed—

That these plates of brass should go forth unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people who were of his seed.

Wherefore, he said that these plates of brass should never perish; neither should they be dimmed any more by time. And he prophesied many things concerning his seed.

And it came to pass that thus far I and my father had kept the commandments wherewith the Lord had commanded us.

21 En ons het die kronieke verkry wat die Here ons gebied het, en hulle deursoek, en gevind dat hulle begeerlik was; ja, en wel van groot waarde vir ons, in soverre dat ons die gebooie van God kon bewaar vir ons kinders.

22 Daarom, dit was wysheid in die Here dat ons hulle saam met ons moes dra, terwyl ons gereis het in die wildernis na die land van belofte.

And we had obtained the records which the Lord had commanded us, and searched them and found that they were desirable; yea, even of great worth unto us, insomuch that we could preserve the commandments of the Lord unto our children.

Wherefore, it was wisdom in the Lord that we should carry them with us, as we journeyed in the wilderness towards the land of promise.

1 Nefi 6

- 1 En nou gee ek, Nefi, nie die geslagsregister van my vaders in hierdie deel van my kroniek nie; nóg sal ek dit te eniger tyd daarna gee op hierdie plate wat ek skryf; want dit is gegee in die kroniek wat bygehou is deur my vader; daarom, ek skryf dit nie in hierdie kroniek nie.
- 2 Want dit is genoegsaam vir my deur te sê dat ons afstammeling is van Josef.
- 3 En dit maak nie vir my saak dat ek nie nougeset 'n volledige kroniek kan gee van al die dinge aangaande my vader nie, want hulle kan nie geskryf word op hierdie plate nie, want ek benodig die ruimte dat ek van die dinge van God mag skrywe.
- 4 Want die volheid van my bedoeling is dat ek mense mag oorreed om na die God van Abraham, en die God van Isak en die God van Jakob te kom, en gered te word.
- 5 Daarom, die dinge wat aangenaam is vir die wêreld skryf ek nie, maar die dinge wat aangenaam is vir God, en vir diegene wat nie van die wêreld is nie.
- 6 Daarom, ek sal 'n bevel gee aan my saad, dat hulle nie hierdie plate sal beset met dinge wat nie van waarde is vir die kinders van mense nie.

1 Nephi 6

And now I, Nephi, do not give the genealogy of my fathers in this part of my record; neither at any time shall I give it after upon these plates which I am writing; for it is given in the record which has been kept by my father; wherefore, I do not write it in this work.

For it sufficeth me to say that we are descendants of Joseph.

And it mattereth not to me that I am particular to give a full account of all the things of my father, for they cannot be written upon these plates, for I desire the room that I may write of the things of God.

For the fulness of mine intent is that I may persuade men to come unto the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, and be saved.

Wherefore, the things which are pleasing unto the world I do not write, but the things which are pleasing unto God and unto those who are not of the world.

Wherefore, I shall give commandment unto my seed, that they shall not occupy these plates with things which are not of worth unto the children of men.

1 Nefi 7

- 1 En nou wil ek dat julle mag weet, dat nadat my vader, Lehi, 'n einde gemaak het om te profeteer aangaande sy saad, dit gebeur het dat die Here weer met hom gespreek het, en gesê het dat dit nie gepas was vir hom, Lehi, dat hy sy gesin alleen die wildernis binneneem nie; maar dat sy seuns dogters tot vrou moes neem, sodat hulle saad kon voortbring vir die Here in die land van belofte.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat die Here hom gebied het dat ek, Nephi, en my broers weer moes terugkeer na die land Jerusalem, en vir Ismael en sy gesin moes afbring die wildernis in.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Nephi, weer saam met my broers, die wildernis binnegegaan het om na Jerusalem op te gaan.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat ons opgegaan het na die huis van Ismael, en ons het guns verkry in die oë van Ismael, sodat ons die woorde van die Here met hom gespreek het.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat die Here die hart van Ismael versag het en ook dié van sy huisgesin, sodat hulle saam met ons afgereis het in die wildernis na die tent van ons vader.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat terwyl ons in die wildernis gereis het, kyk, Laman en Lemuel, en twee van die dogters van Ismael, en die twee seuns van Ismael en hulle gesinne, het gerebelleer teen ons; ja, teen my, Nephi, en Sam, en hulle vader, Ismael, en sy vrou, en sy drie ander dogters.
- 7 En dit het gebeur in welke rebellie, dat hulle begeer het om terug te keer na die land Jerusalem.
- 8 En nou ek, Nephi, omdat ek bedroef was oor die hardheid van hulle harte, daarom het ek gespreek met hulle, en gesê, ja, en wel tot Laman en tot Lemuel: Kyk julle is my ouer broers, en hoe is dit dat julle so hard is in julle harte, en so blind in julle verstand, dat dit vir julle nodig is dat ek, julle jonger broer, met julle moet praat, ja, en 'n voorbeeld vir julle stel?
- 9 Hoe is dit dat julle nie ag geslaan het op die woord van die Here nie?
- 10 Hoe is dit dat julle vergeet het dat julle 'n engel van die Here gesien het?

1 Nephi 7

And now I would that ye might know, that after my father, Lehi, had made an end of prophesying concerning his seed, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto him again, saying that it was not meet for him, Lehi, that he should take his family into the wilderness alone; but that his sons should take daughters to wife, that they might raise up seed unto the Lord in the land of promise.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that I, Nephi, and my brethren, should again return unto the land of Jerusalem, and bring down Ishmael and his family into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did again, with my brethren, go forth into the wilderness to go up to Jerusalem.

And it came to pass that we went up unto the house of Ishmael, and we did gain favor in the sight of Ishmael, insomuch that we did speak unto him the words of the Lord.

And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the heart of Ishmael, and also his household, insomuch that they took their journey with us down into the wilderness to the tent of our father.

And it came to pass that as we journeyed in the wilderness, behold Laman and Lemuel, and two of the daughters of Ishmael, and the two sons of Ishmael and their families, did rebel against us; yea, against me, Nephi, and Sam, and their father, Ishmael, and his wife, and his three other daughters.

And it came to pass in the which rebellion, they were desirous to return unto the land of Jerusalem.

And now I, Nephi, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts, therefore I spake unto them, saying, yea, even unto Laman and unto Lemuel: Behold ye are mine elder brethren, and how is it that ye are so hard in your hearts, and so blind in your minds, that ye have need that I, your younger brother, should speak unto you, yea, and set an example for you?

How is it that ye have not hearkened unto the word of the Lord?

How is it that ye have forgotten that ye have seen an angel of the Lord?

- 11 Ja, en hoe is dit dat julle vergeet het watter groot dinge die Here vir ons gedoen het, deur ons te verlos uit die hande van Laban, en ook dat ons die kronieke sou verkry?
- 12 Ja, en hoe is dit dat julle vergeet het dat die Here in staat is om alle dinge te doen volgens sy wil, vir die kinders van mense, as dit so sal wees dat hulle geloof beoefen in Hom? Daarom, laat ons getrou wees aan Hom.
- 13 En as dit so is dat ons getrou is aan Hom, sal ons die land van belofte verkry; en julle sal op een of ander toekomstige tyd weet dat die woord van die Here vervul sal word aangaande die vernietiging van Jerusalem; want alle dinge wat die Here gespreek het aangaande die vernietiging van Jerusalem moet vervul word.
- 14 Want kyk, die Gees van die Here sal spoedig op-hou om te werk met hulle; want kyk, hulle het die profete verwerp, en hulle het Jeremia in die gevangenis gewerp. En hulle het gesoek om die lewe van my vader te neem, in soverre dat hulle hom uitgedrywe het uit die land.
- 15 Nou kyk, ek sê vir julle dat as julle na Jerusalem sou terugkeer, sal julle ook omkom met hulle. En nou, as julle 'n keuse het, gaan op na die land, en onthou die woorde wat ek met julle spreek, dat as julle gaan, sal julle ook omkom; want so dwing die Gees van die Here my om te spreek.
- 16 En dit het gebeur dat toe ek, Nephi, hierdie woorde met my broers gespreek het, was hulle kwaad vir my. En dit het gebeur dat hulle hul hande op my gelê het, want kyk, hulle was uitermate vertoornd, en hulle het my vasgebind met toue, want hulle het gesoek om my lewe te neem, want hulle wou my in die wildernis laat om deur wilde diere verslind te word.
- 17 Maar dit het gebeur dat ek tot die Here gebid, en gesê het: O Here, volgens my geloof wat in U is, sal U my verlos uit die hande van my broers; ja, gee my wel die krag dat ek hierdie toue kan losbreek waarmee ek gebind is.
- 18 En dit het gebeur dat nadat ek hierdie woorde gesê het, kyk, die toue is losgemaak van my hande en voete, en ek het voor my broers gestaan, en weer met hulle gespreek.

Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten what great things the Lord hath done for us, in delivering us out of the hands of Laban, and also that we should obtain the record?

Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten that the Lord is able to do all things according to his will, for the children of men, if it so be that they exercise faith in him? Wherefore, let us be faithful to him.

And if it so be that we are faithful to him, we shall obtain the land of promise; and ye shall know at some future period that the word of the Lord shall be fulfilled concerning the destruction of Jerusalem; for all things which the Lord hath spoken concerning the destruction of Jerusalem must be fulfilled.

For behold, the Spirit of the Lord ceaseth soon to strive with them; for behold, they have rejected the prophets, and Jeremiah have they cast into prison. And they have sought to take away the life of my father, insomuch that they have driven him out of the land.

Now behold, I say unto you that if ye will return unto Jerusalem ye shall also perish with them. And now, if ye have choice, go up to the land, and remember the words which I speak unto you, that if ye go ye will also perish; for thus the Spirit of the Lord constraineth me that I should speak.

And it came to pass that when I, Nephi, had spoken these words unto my brethren, they were angry with me. And it came to pass that they did lay their hands upon me, for behold, they were exceedingly wroth, and they did bind me with cords, for they sought to take away my life, that they might leave me in the wilderness to be devoured by wild beasts.

But it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, according to my faith which is in thee, wilt thou deliver me from the hands of my brethren; yea, even give me strength that I may burst these bands with which I am bound.

And it came to pass that when I had said these words, behold, the bands were loosed from off my hands and feet, and I stood before my brethren, and I spake unto them again.

- 19 En dit het gebeur dat hulle weer kwaad vir my was, en het gesoek om hul hande op my te lê; maar kyk, een van die dogters van Ismael, ja, en ook haar moeder, en een van die seuns van Ismael, het gepleit by my broers sodat hulle hul harte versag het; en hulle het opgehou om te probeer om my lewe te neem.
- 20 En dit het gebeur dat hulle bedroef was vanweë hul boosheid, sodat hulle neergebuig het voor my, en by my gepleit het dat ek hulle die ding moes vergewe wat hulle gedoen het teen my.
- 21 En dit het gebeur dat ek hulle onvoorwaardelik alles vergewe het wat hulle gedoen het, en ek het hulle vermaan om tot die Here hulle God te bid om vergifnis. En dit het gebeur dat hulle dit gedoen het. En nadat hulle gebid het tot die Here, het ons weer ons reis voortgesit na die tent van ons vader.
- 22 En dit het gebeur dat ons afgekom het na die tent van ons vader. En nadat ek en my broers en die hele huis van Ismael afgekom het na die tent van my vader, het hulle dank betuig aan die Here hulle God; en hulle het offerandes en brandoffers aan Hom geoffer.

And it came to pass that they were angry with me again, and sought to lay hands upon me; but behold, one of the daughters of Ishmael, yea, and also her mother, and one of the sons of Ishmael, did plead with my brethren, insomuch that they did soften their hearts; and they did cease striving to take away my life.

And it came to pass that they were sorrowful, because of their wickedness, insomuch that they did bow down before me, and did plead with me that I would forgive them of the thing that they had done against me.

And it came to pass that I did frankly forgive them all that they had done, and I did exhort them that they would pray unto the Lord their God for forgiveness. And it came to pass that they did so. And after they had done praying unto the Lord we did again travel on our journey towards the tent of our father.

And it came to pass that we did come down unto the tent of our father. And after I and my brethren and all the house of Ishmael had come down unto the tent of my father, they did give thanks unto the Lord their God; and they did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto him.

1 Nefi 8

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat ons allerlei sade van elke soort versamel het, beide van graan van elke soort, en ook van die sade van vrugte van elke soort.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat terwyl my vader vertoef het in die wildernis, het hy met ons gespreek, en gesê: Kyk, ek het 'n droom gedroom; of, met ander woorde, ek het 'n visioen gesien.
- 3 En kyk, vanweë die ding wat ek gesien het, het ek rede om my te verheug in die Here as gevolg van Nefi, en ook van Sam; want ek het rede om te veronderstel dat hulle, en ook baie van hulle saad, gered sal word.
- 4 Maar kyk, Laman en Lemuel, ek is uitermate bevrees oor julle; want kyk, ek het gedink ek sien in my droom 'n donker en somber wildernis.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat ek 'n man gesien het, en hy was geklee in 'n wit kleed; en hy het gekom en voor my kom staan.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat hy met my gespreek het, en my beveel het om hom te volg.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat terwyl ek hom volg, het ek myself gesien dat ek in 'n donker en somber woesteny was.
- 8 En nadat ek vir 'n tydperk van baie ure in duisternis gereis het, het ek tot die Here begin bid dat Hy my barmhartig moes wees, volgens die grootheid van sy tere barmhartighede.
- 9 En dit het gebeur dat nadat ek tot die Here gebid het, ek 'n groot en uitgestrekte veld gewaar het.
- 10 En dit het gebeur dat ek 'n boom gesien het, waarvan die vrugte begeerlik was om 'n mens gelukkig te maak.
- 11 En dit het gebeur dat ek gegaan het en van die vrugte daarvan geëet het, en ek het gesien dat dit uitermate soet was, bo alles wat ek nog ooit voorheen geproe het. Ja, en ek het gesien dat die vrug daarvan wit was, om alle witheid te oorskry wat ek nog ooit gesien het.
- 12 En terwyl ek van die vrug daarvan geëet het, het dit my siel vervul met uitnemende groot blydschap; daarom, ek het begin begeer dat my gesin ook daarvan moes eet; want ek het geweet dat dit begeerlik was bo alle ander vrugte.

1 Nephi 8

And it came to pass that we had gathered together all manner of seeds of every kind, both of grain of every kind, and also of the seeds of fruit of every kind.

And it came to pass that while my father tarried in the wilderness he spake unto us, saying: Behold, I have dreamed a dream; or, in other words, I have seen a vision.

And behold, because of the thing which I have seen, I have reason to rejoice in the Lord because of Nephi and also of Sam; for I have reason to suppose that they, and also many of their seed, will be saved.

But behold, Laman and Lemuel, I fear exceedingly because of you; for behold, methought I saw in my dream, a dark and dreary wilderness.

And it came to pass that I saw a man, and he was dressed in a white robe; and he came and stood before me.

And it came to pass that he spake unto me, and bade me follow him.

And it came to pass that as I followed him I beheld myself that I was in a dark and dreary waste.

And after I had traveled for the space of many hours in darkness, I began to pray unto the Lord that he would have mercy on me, according to the multitude of his tender mercies.

And it came to pass after I had prayed unto the Lord I beheld a large and spacious field.

And it came to pass that I beheld a tree, whose fruit was desirable to make one happy.

And it came to pass that I did go forth and partake of the fruit thereof; and I beheld that it was most sweet, above all that I ever before tasted. Yea, and I beheld that the fruit thereof was white, to exceed all the whiteness that I had ever seen.

And as I partook of the fruit thereof it filled my soul with exceedingly great joy; wherefore, I began to be desirous that my family should partake of it also; for I knew that it was desirable above all other fruit.

- 13 En terwyl ek my oë rondomheen laat kyk, of ek miskien ook my gesin kon sien, gewaar ek 'n rivier van water; en dit het voortgevloei, en dit was naby die boom waarvan ek die vrugte geëet het.
- 14 En ek het gekyk om te bepaal waar dit vandaan kom; en ek het die bron daarvan 'n entjie daarvan gesien; en by die bron daarvan het ek julle moeder Saria gewaar, en Sam en Nefi; en hulle het gestaan asof hulle nie weet waarheen hulle moes gaan nie.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat ek vir hulle gewink het; en ek het ook vir hulle met 'n luide stem gesê dat hulle na my moes kom, en moes eet van die vrugte, wat begerliker was bo enige ander vrugte.
- 16 En dit het gebeur dat hulle na my gekom het en ook van die vrugte geëet het.
- 17 En dit het gebeur dat ek begerig was dat Laman en Lemuel ook van die vrugte moes kom eet; daarom het ek gekyk in die rigting van die bron van die rivier, of ek hulle dalk kon sien.
- 18 En dit het gebeur dat ek hulle gesien het, maar hulle wou nie na my kom en van die vrugte eet nie.
- 19 En ek het 'n staaf van yster gesien, en dit het al langs die wal van die rivier gestrek, en gelei na die boom waarby ek gestaan het.
- 20 En ek het ook 'n eng en smal pad gesien, wat al langs die staaf van yster geloop het, selfs tot by die boom waarby ek gestaan het; en dit het ook verby die bron van die fontein gelei, na 'n groot en uitgestrekte veld, asof dit 'n wêreld was.
- 21 En ek het tallose skares van mense gesien, baie van wie vorentoe beur om die pad te bereik wat na die boom gelei het waarby ek gestaan het.
- 22 En dit het gebeur dat hulle vorentoe beweeg het, en in die pad begin loop het wat na die boom toe lei.
- 23 En dit het gebeur dat daar 'n miswolk van duisternis opgekom het; ja, en wel 'n uitermate groot miswolk van duisternis, sodat hulle wat in die pad begin loop het, verdwaal het, dat hulle afgedwaal en verlore geraak het.

And as I cast my eyes round about, that perhaps I might discover my family also, I beheld a river of water; and it ran along, and it was near the tree of which I was partaking the fruit.

And I looked to behold from whence it came; and I saw the head thereof a little way off; and at the head thereof I beheld your mother Sariah, and Sam, and Nephi; and they stood as if they knew not whither they should go.

And it came to pass that I beckoned unto them; and I also did say unto them with a loud voice that they should come unto me, and partake of the fruit, which was desirable above all other fruit.

And it came to pass that they did come unto me and partake of the fruit also.

And it came to pass that I was desirous that Laman and Lemuel should come and partake of the fruit also; wherefore, I cast mine eyes towards the head of the river, that perhaps I might see them.

And it came to pass that I saw them, but they would not come unto me and partake of the fruit.

And I beheld a rod of iron, and it extended along the bank of the river, and led to the tree by which I stood.

And I also beheld a strait and narrow path, which came along by the rod of iron, even to the tree by which I stood; and it also led by the head of the fountain, unto a large and spacious field, as if it had been a world.

And I saw numberless concourses of people, many of whom were pressing forward, that they might obtain the path which led unto the tree by which I stood.

And it came to pass that they did come forth, and commence in the path which led to the tree.

And it came to pass that there arose a mist of darkness; yea, even an exceedingly great mist of darkness, insomuch that they who had commenced in the path did lose their way, that they wandered off and were lost.

24 En dit het gebeur dat ek ander vorentoe sien beur het, en hulle het uitgekom en die punt van die staaf van yster vasgegryp; en hulle het vorentoe gebeur deur die miswolke van duisternis, en geklou aan die staaf van yster, en wel totdat hulle uitgekom het en geëet het van die vrugte van die boom.

25 En nadat hulle geëet het van die vrugte van die boom, het hulle hul oë rondomheen laat gaan asof hulle skaam was.

26 En ek het ook my oë rondomheen laat kyk, en aan die ander kant van die rivier van water, 'n groot en ruim gebou gewaar; en dit het as't ware in die lug gestaan, hoog bokant die aarde.

27 En dit was vol mense, beide oud en jonk, beide manlik en vroulik; en hulle manier van aantrek was besonder keurig; en hulle was in 'n spottende houding en het met hulle vingers na diegene gewys wat by die vrugte uitgekom het en daarvan geëet het.

28 En nadat hulle van die vrugte geproe het, was hulle skaam vanweë diegene wat hulle gespot het, en hulle het afgedwaal in verbode paaie en was verlore.

29 En nou ek, Nepi, spreek nie al die woorde van my vader nie.

30 Maar om bondig te wees met die skrywery, kyk, hy het ander skares gesien vorentoe beur; en hulle het gekom en die punt van die staaf van yster vasgegryp; en hulle het hulle weg vorentoe gebeur en aanhoudend aan die staaf van yster vasgehou; totdat hulle uitgekom en neergeval en geëet het van die vrugte van die boom.

31 En hy het ook ander skares gesien wat hul pad voel na die groot en ruim gebou.

32 En dit het gebeur dat baie verdrink het in die dieptes van die fontein; en baie het verdwyn uit sy gesigsveld, dwalende op verkeerde paaie.

33 En groot was die skare wat dié vreemde gebou binnegegaan het. En nadat hulle daardie gebou binnegegaan het, het hulle met spottende vinger gewys na my en na diegene wat besig was om ook van die vrugte te eet; maar ons het nie ag geslaan op hulle nie.

34 Hierdie is die woorde van my vader: Want almal wat op hulle ag geslaan het, het afgedwaal.

35 En Laman en Lemuel het nie geëet van die vrugte nie, het my vader gesê.

And it came to pass that I beheld others pressing forward, and they came forth and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press forward through the mist of darkness, clinging to the rod of iron, even until they did come forth and partake of the fruit of the tree.

And after they had partaken of the fruit of the tree they did cast their eyes about as if they were ashamed.

And I also cast my eyes round about, and beheld, on the other side of the river of water, a great and spacious building; and it stood as it were in the air, high above the earth.

And it was filled with people, both old and young, both male and female; and their manner of dress was exceedingly fine; and they were in the attitude of mocking and pointing their fingers towards those who had come at and were partaking of the fruit.

And after they had tasted of the fruit they were ashamed, because of those that were scoffing at them; and they fell away into forbidden paths and were lost.

And now I, Nephi, do not speak all the words of my father.

But, to be short in writing, behold, he saw other multitudes pressing forward; and they came and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press their way forward, continually holding fast to the rod of iron, until they came forth and fell down and partook of the fruit of the tree.

And he also saw other multitudes feeling their way towards that great and spacious building.

And it came to pass that many were drowned in the depths of the fountain; and many were lost from his view, wandering in strange roads.

And great was the multitude that did enter into that strange building. And after they did enter into that building they did point the finger of scorn at me and those that were partaking of the fruit also; but we heeded them not.

These are the words of my father: For as many as heeded them, had fallen away.

And Laman and Lemuel partook not of the fruit, said my father.

36 En dit het gebeur dat nadat my vader al die woorde van sy droom of visioen gespreek het, wat baie was, het hy vir ons gesê, vanweë dié dinge wat hy gesien het in 'n visioen, was hy uitermate bevrees vir Laman en Lemuel; ja, hy het gevrees dat hulle uitgewerp sou word van die teenwoordigheid van die Here.

37 En hy het hulle toe vermaan met al die gevoel van 'n liefdevolle ouer, dat hulle moes ag slaan op sy woorde, dat die Here miskien barmhartig sou wees teenoor hulle, en hulle nie uitwerp nie; ja, my vader het vir hulle gepreek.

38 En nadat hy vir hulle gepreek het, en ook baie dinge aan hulle geprofeteer het, het hy hulle gebied om die gebooie van die Here te onderhou; en het opgehou om met hulle te spreek.

And it came to pass after my father had spoken all the words of his dream or vision, which were many, he said unto us, because of these things which he saw in a vision, he exceedingly feared for Laman and Lemuel; yea, he feared lest they should be cast off from the presence of the Lord.

And he did exhort them then with all the feeling of a tender parent, that they would hearken to his words, that perhaps the Lord would be merciful to them, and not cast them off; yea, my father did preach unto them.

And after he had preached unto them, and also prophesied unto them of many things, he bade them to keep the commandments of the Lord; and he did cease speaking unto them.

1 Nefi 9

- 1 En al hierdie dinge het my vader gesien, en gehoor, en gespreek terwyl hy in 'n tent in die vallei van Lemuel gewoon het, en ook baie meer dinge, wat nie geskrywe kan word op hierdie plate nie.
- 2 En nou, soos ek gespreek het aangaande dié plate, kyk, hulle is nie die plate waarop ek 'n volledige kroniek maak van die geskiedenis van my volk nie; want die plate waarop ek 'n volledige kroniek maak van my volk, het ek die naam van Nefi gegee; daarom, hulle word die plate van Nefi genoem, na my eie naam; en hierdie plate word ook die plate van Nefi genoem.
- 3 Desnieteenstaande, ek het 'n gebod van die Here ontvang dat ek hierdie plate moes maak vir die besondere doel dat daar 'n kroniek gegraveer sou word van die bediening van my volk.
- 4 Op die ander plate moes 'n kroniek gegraveer word van die heerskappy van die konings, en die oorloë en twiste van my volk; daarom handel hierdie plate grotendeels oor die bediening, en die ander plate handel grotendeels oor die heerskappy van die konings en die oorloë, en twiste van my volk.
- 5 Daarom, die Here het my gebied om hierdie plate te maak, vir 'n wyse doel in Hom, welke doel ek nie ken nie.
- 6 Maar die Here weet alle dinge van die begin af; daarom berei Hy 'n weg om al sy werke te volbring onder die kinders van mense, want kyk, Hy het alle mag tot die vervulling van al sy woorde. En so is dit. Amen.

1 Nephi 9

And all these things did my father see, and hear, and speak, as he dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel, and also a great many more things, which cannot be written upon these plates.

And now, as I have spoken concerning these plates, behold they are not the plates upon which I make a full account of the history of my people; for the plates upon which I make a full account of my people I have given the name of Nephi; wherefore, they are called the plates of Nephi, after mine own name; and these plates also are called the plates of Nephi.

Nevertheless, I have received a commandment of the Lord that I should make these plates, for the special purpose that there should be an account engraven of the ministry of my people.

Upon the other plates should be engraven an account of the reign of the kings, and the wars and contentions of my people; wherefore these plates are for the more part of the ministry; and the other plates are for the more part of the reign of the kings and the wars and contentions of my people.

Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me to make these plates for a wise purpose in him, which purpose I know not.

But the Lord knoweth all things from the beginning; wherefore, he prepareth a way to accomplish all his works among the children of men; for behold, he hath all power unto the fulfilling of all his words. And thus it is. Amen.

1 Nefi 10

- 1 En nou gaan ek, Nephi, voort om 'n kroniek op hierdie plate te gee van my handelinge, en van my heerskappy en bediening; daarom, om voort te gaan met my kroniek, moet ek ietwat spreek oor die dinge van my vader, en ook oor my broers.
- 2 Want kyk, dit het gebeur nadat my vader 'n einde gemaak het om die woorde van sy droom te spreek, en ook om hulle te vermaan tot alle ywer, het hy met hulle gesprek aangaande die Jode—
- 3 Dat nadat hulle vernietig sou word, en wel daardie groot stad Jerusalem, en baie weggevoer sou word in gevangenskap na Babilon, volgens die eie bepaalde tyd van die Here, hulle weer sal terugkeer, ja, en wel teruggebring word uit gevangenskap; en nadat hulle teruggebring sal word uit gevangenskap, sal hulle weer die land van hulle erfenis in besit neem.
- 4 Ja, naamlik seshonderd jaar van die tyd af dat my vader Jerusalem verlaat het, sou die Here God 'n profeet opwek onder die Jode—en wel 'n Messias, of met ander woorde, 'n Saligmaker van die wêreld.
- 5 En hy het ook gesprek aangaande die profete, hoe groot 'n aantal getuig het van hierdie dinge, aangaande hierdie Messias, van wie hy gesprek het, of hierdie Verlosser van die wêreld.
- 6 Daarom, die ganse mensdom was in 'n verlore en gevalle toestand en sou vir ewig wees, tensy hulle sou staatmaak op hierdie Verlosser.
- 7 En hy het ook aangaande 'n profeet gesprek wat voor die Messias sal kom om die weg van die Here te berei—
- 8 Ja, tot so 'n mate sal hy uitgaan en uitroep in die wildernis: Berei julle die weg van die Here, en maak sy paaie reguit; want daar staan Een onder julle wat julle nie ken nie; en Hy is magtiger as ek, wie se skoenriem ek nie waardig is om los te maak nie. En veel het my vader gesprek aangaande hierdie ding.
- 9 En my vader het gesê dat hy sal doop in Betabara, anderkant die Jordaan; en hy het ook gesê dat hy sal doop met water; selfs dat hy die Messias sou doop met water.

1 Nephi 10

And now I, Nephi, proceed to give an account upon these plates of my proceedings, and my reign and ministry; wherefore, to proceed with mine account, I must speak somewhat of the things of my father, and also of my brethren.

For behold, it came to pass after my father had made an end of speaking the words of his dream, and also of exhorting them to all diligence, he spake unto them concerning the Jews—

That after they should be destroyed, even that great city Jerusalem, and many be carried away captive into Babylon, according to the own due time of the Lord, they should return again, yea, even be brought back out of captivity; and after they should be brought back out of captivity they should possess again the land of their inheritance.

Yea, even six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem, a prophet would the Lord God raise up among the Jews—even a Messiah, or, in other words, a Savior of the world.

And he also spake concerning the prophets, how great a number had testified of these things, concerning this Messiah, of whom he had spoken, or this Redeemer of the world.

Wherefore, all mankind were in a lost and in a fallen state, and ever would be save they should rely on this Redeemer.

And he spake also concerning a prophet who should come before the Messiah, to prepare the way of the Lord—

Yea, even he should go forth and cry in the wilderness: Prepare ye the way of the Lord, and make his paths straight; for there standeth one among you whom ye know not; and he is mightier than I, whose shoe's latchet I am not worthy to unloose. And much spake my father concerning this thing.

And my father said he should baptize in Bethabara, beyond Jordan; and he also said he should baptize with water; even that he should baptize the Messiah with water.

10 En nadat hy die Messias gedoop het met water, sal hy erken en getuienis lewer dat hy die Lam van God gedoop het wat die sondes van die wêreld sal wegneem.

11 En dit het gebeur, nadat my vader hierdie woorde gespreek het, het hy met my broers gespreek aangaande die evangelie wat onder die Jode verkondig sal word, en ook aangaande die kwyning van die Jode in ongeloof. En nadat hulle die Messias doodgemaak het, wat sal kom, en nadat Hy doodgemaak is, sal Hy opstaan uit die dood, en sal Homself bekendmaak, aan die nie-Jode deur die Heilige Gees.

12 Ja, en wel het my vader veel gespreek aangaande die nie-Jode, en ook aangaande die huis van Israel, dat hulle vergelyk moes word met 'n olyfboom, waarvan die takke afgebreek sal word en verstrooi sal word oor die hele aangesig van die aarde.

13 Daarom, hy het gesê dat dit noodsaaklik is dat ons almal eendragtiglik die land van belofte binnegelei sal word, ter vervulling van die woord van die Here, dat ons verstrooi sal word oor die hele aangesig van die aarde.

14 En nadat die huis van Israel verstrooi sou word, sou hulle weer versamel word; of, kortom, nadat die nie-Jode die volheid van die Evangelie ontvang het, sal die natuurlike takke van die olyfboom, of die oorblyfsel van die huis van Israel, geënt sou word, of kom tot die kennis van die ware Messias, hulle Here en hulle Verlosser.

15 En volgens hierdie wyse van spraak het my vader geprofeteer en met my broers gespreek, en ook baie meer dinge wat ek nie skryf in hierdie boek nie; want ek het soveel van hulle geskryf as wat vir my van nut was in my ander boek.

16 En al hierdie dinge, waarvan ek gespreek het, is gedoen terwyl my vader gewoon het in 'n tent, in die vallei van Lemuel.

And after he had baptized the Messiah with water, he should behold and bear record that he had baptized the Lamb of God, who should take away the sins of the world.

And it came to pass after my father had spoken these words he spake unto my brethren concerning the gospel which should be preached among the Jews, and also concerning the dwindling of the Jews in unbelief. And after they had slain the Messiah, who should come, and after he had been slain he should rise from the dead, and should make himself manifest, by the Holy Ghost, unto the Gentiles.

Yea, even my father spake much concerning the Gentiles, and also concerning the house of Israel, that they should be compared like unto an olive tree, whose branches should be broken off and should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.

Wherefore, he said it must needs be that we should be led with one accord into the land of promise, unto the fulfilling of the word of the Lord, that we should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.

And after the house of Israel should be scattered they should be gathered together again; or, in fine, after the Gentiles had received the fulness of the Gospel, the natural branches of the olive tree, or the remnants of the house of Israel, should be grafted in, or come to the knowledge of the true Messiah, their Lord and their Redeemer.

And after this manner of language did my father prophesy and speak unto my brethren, and also many more things which I do not write in this book; for I have written as many of them as were expedient for me in mine other book.

And all these things, of which I have spoken, were done as my father dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel.

17 En dit het gebeur nadat ek, Nefi, al die woorde van my vader gehoor het, aangaande die dinge wat hy gesien het in 'n visioen, en ook die dinge wat hy gespreek het deur die mag van die Heilige Gees, welke mag hy ontvang het deur geloof in die Seun van God—en die Seun van God was die Messias wat sou kom—was ek, Nefi, ook begerig dat ek mag sien, en hoor, en weet, van hierdie dinge, deur die mag van die Heilige Gees, wat die gawe is van God aan al diegene wat Hom ywerig soek, beide in die dae van die voortyd sowel as in die tyd wat Hy Hom sal openbaar aan die kinders van mense.

18 Want Hy is dieselfde gister, vandag en vir ewig; en die weg is berei vir alle mense vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld, as dit so is dat hulle hul bekeer en na Hom kom.

19 Want hy wat ywerig soek, sal vind; en die verborgenhede van God sal ontvou word aan hulle, deur die mag van die Heilige Gees, sowel as in hierdie tye en sowel as in die dae van die voortyd, as in die tye wat moet kom; daarom is die verloop van die Here een ewige kringloop.

20 Daarom, onthou, o mens, oor al jou werke sal jy tot oordeel gebring word.

21 Daarom, as jy gesoek het om boos te handel in die dae van jou toetsing, dan word jy onrein bevind voor die regterstoel van God; en geen onreine ding kan inwoon by God nie; daarom moet jy vir ewig uitgewerp word.

22 En die Heilige Gees gee gesag dat ek hierdie dinge moet spreek en hulle nie weerhou nie.

And it came to pass after I, Nephi, having heard all the words of my father, concerning the things which he saw in a vision, and also the things which he spake by the power of the Holy Ghost, which power he received by faith on the Son of God—and the Son of God was the Messiah who should come—I, Nephi, was desirous also that I might see, and hear, and know of these things, by the power of the Holy Ghost, which is the gift of God unto all those who diligently seek him, as well in times of old as in the time that he should manifest himself unto the children of men.

For he is the same yesterday, today, and forever; and the way is prepared for all men from the foundation of the world, if it so be that they repent and come unto him.

For he that diligently seeketh shall find; and the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto them, by the power of the Holy Ghost, as well in these times as in times of old, and as well in times of old as in times to come; wherefore, the course of the Lord is one eternal round.

Therefore remember, O man, for all thy doings thou shalt be brought into judgment.

Wherefore, if ye have sought to do wickedly in the days of your probation, then ye are found unclean before the judgment-seat of God; and no unclean thing can dwell with God; wherefore, ye must be cast off forever.

And the Holy Ghost giveth authority that I should speak these things, and deny them not.

1 Nefi 11

- 1 Want dit het gebeur nadat ek begeer het om die dinge te wete te kom wat my vader gesien het, en omdat ek geglo het dat die Here in staat was om dit bekend te maak aan my, terwyl ek dit in my hart sit en bepeins het, is ek weggevoer deur die Gees van die Here, ja, na 'n uitermate hoë berg, wat ek nog nooit vantevore gesien het nie, en waarop ek nog nooit vantevore my voet gesit het nie.
- 2 En die Gees het aan my gesê: Kyk, wat begeer jy?
- 3 En ek het gesê: Ek begeer om die dinge te aanskou wat my vader gesien het.
- 4 En die Gees het aan my gesê: Glo jy dat jou vader die boom gesien het waarvan hy gespreek het?
- 5 En ek het gesê: Ja, U weet dat ek al die woorde van my vader glo.
- 6 En nadat ek hierdie woorde gespreek het, het die Gees geroep met 'n luide stem, en gesê: Hosanna aan die Here, die allerhoogste God; want Hy is God oor die hele aarde, ja, ook bo alles. En geseënd is jy, Nefi, omdat jy glo in die Seun van die allerhoogste God; daarom, jy sal die dinge aanskou wat jy begeer het.
- 7 En kyk, hierdie ding sal gegee word aan jou as teken, dat nadat jy die boom gesien het wat die vrugte gedra het wat jou vader geproe het, jy ook 'n man sal sien neerdaal uit die hemel, en Hom sal jy aanskou; en nadat jy Hom aanskou het, sal jy getuig dat dit die Seun van God is.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat die Gees aan my gesê het: Kyk! En ek het gekyk en 'n boom gesien; en dit was soos die boom wat my vader gesien het; en die skoonheid daarvan was bomatig, ja, bo alle skoonheid; die witheid daarvan het die witheid van die windverstrooide sneeu oortref.
- 9 En dit het gebeur nadat ek die boom gesien het, het ek vir die Gees gesê: Ek sien dat U my die boom getoon het wat kosbaar is bo alles.
- 10 En Hy het vir my gesê: Wat begeer jy?

1 Nephi 11

For it came to pass after I had desired to know the things that my father had seen, and believing that the Lord was able to make them known unto me, as I sat pondering in mine heart I was caught away in the Spirit of the Lord, yea, into an exceedingly high mountain, which I never had before seen, and upon which I never had before set my foot.

And the Spirit said unto me: Behold, what desirest thou?

And I said: I desire to behold the things which my father saw.

And the Spirit said unto me: Believest thou that thy father saw the tree of which he hath spoken?

And I said: Yea, thou knowest that I believe all the words of my father.

And when I had spoken these words, the Spirit cried with a loud voice, saying: Hosanna to the Lord, the most high God; for he is God over all the earth, yea, even above all. And blessed art thou, Nephi, because thou believest in the Son of the most high God; wherefore, thou shalt behold the things which thou hast desired.

And behold this thing shall be given unto thee for a sign, that after thou hast beheld the tree which bore the fruit which thy father tasted, thou shalt also behold a man descending out of heaven, and him shall ye witness; and after ye have witnessed him ye shall bear record that it is the Son of God.

And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me: Look! And I looked and beheld a tree; and it was like unto the tree which my father had seen; and the beauty thereof was far beyond, yea, exceeding of all beauty; and the whiteness thereof did exceed the whiteness of the driven snow.

And it came to pass after I had seen the tree, I said unto the Spirit: I behold thou hast shown unto me the tree which is precious above all.

And he said unto me: What desirest thou?

11 En ek het vir Hom gesê: Om die uitlegging daarvan te ken—want ek het gespreek met Hom soos ’n mens spreek: want ek het gesien dat Hy in die vorm van ’n mens was; tog, desnieteenstaande, het ek geweet dat dit die Gees van die Here is; en Hy het met my gespreek soos ’n mens met ’n ander sou spreek.

12 En dit het gebeur dat Hy vir my gesê het: Kyk! En ek het gekyk om na Hom te kyk, en ek het Hom nie gesien nie; want Hy het weggegaan van my teenwoordigheid af.

13 En dit het gebeur dat ek gekyk het, en die grote stad Jerusalem gesien het, en ook ander stede; en ek het die stad Násaret gesien; en in die stad Násaret sien ek ’n maagd, en sy was uitermate rein en wit.

14 En dit het gebeur dat ek die hemele geopend gesien het; en ’n engel het neergedaal en het voor my kom staan; en hy het vir my gesê: Nepfi, wat sien jy?

15 En ek het aan hom gesê: ’n Maagd, uitermate mooi en rein bo alle ander maagde.

16 En hy het vir my gesê: Ken jy die neerdalendheid van God?

17 En ek het vir hom gesê: Ek weet dat Hy sy kinders liefhet; desnieteenstaande, ek ken nie die betekenis van alle dinge nie.

18 En Hy het vir my gesê: Kyk, die maagd wat jy sien, is die moeder van die Seun van God, volgens die vlees.

19 En dit het gebeur dat ek gewaar het dat sy weggevoer was in die Gees; en nadat sy weggevoer was in die Gees vir ’n tydperk, het die engel met my gespreek en gesê: Kyk!

20 En ek het gekyk en weer die maagd gesien, terwyl sy ’n kind in haar arms dra.

21 En die engel het vir my gesê: Aanskou die Lam van God, ja, en wel die Seun van die Ewige Vader! Ken jy die betekenis van die boom wat jou vader gesien het?

22 En ek het hom geantwoord, en gesê: Ja, dit is die liefde van God, wat hom ver en wyd uitstort in die harte van die kinders van mense; daarom, dit is die begeerlikste bo alle dinge.

23 En hy het met my gespreek, en gesê: Ja, en die verblydendste vir die siel.

And I said unto him: To know the interpretation thereof—for I spake unto him as a man speaketh; for I beheld that he was in the form of a man; yet nevertheless, I knew that it was the Spirit of the Lord; and he spake unto me as a man speaketh with another.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look! And I looked as if to look upon him, and I saw him not; for he had gone from before my presence.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the great city of Jerusalem, and also other cities. And I beheld the city of Nazareth; and in the city of Nazareth I beheld a virgin, and she was exceedingly fair and white.

And it came to pass that I saw the heavens open; and an angel came down and stood before me; and he said unto me: Nephi, what beholdest thou?

And I said unto him: A virgin, most beautiful and fair above all other virgins.

And he said unto me: Knowest thou the condescension of God?

And I said unto him: I know that he loveth his children; nevertheless, I do not know the meaning of all things.

And he said unto me: Behold, the virgin whom thou seest is the mother of the Son of God, after the manner of the flesh.

And it came to pass that I beheld that she was carried away in the Spirit; and after she had been carried away in the Spirit for the space of a time the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!

And I looked and beheld the virgin again, bearing a child in her arms.

And the angel said unto me: Behold the Lamb of God, yea, even the Son of the Eternal Father! Knowest thou the meaning of the tree which thy father saw?

And I answered him, saying: Yea, it is the love of God, which sheddeth itself abroad in the hearts of the children of men; wherefore, it is the most desirable above all things.

And he spake unto me, saying: Yea, and the most joyous to the soul.

24 En nadat hy hierdie woorde gesê het, het hy vir my gesê: Kyk! En ek het gekyk en die Seun van God gesien wat uitgaan onder die kinders van mense; en ek het baie sien neerval aan sy voete en Hom aanbid.

25 En dit het gebeur dat ek gesien het dat die staaf van yster, wat my vader gesien het, die woord van God was, wat gelei het na die bron van lewende waters, of na die boom van die lewe; welke waters die liefde van God voorstel; en ek het ook gesien dat die boom van die lewe 'n voorstelling was van die liefde van God.

26 En die engel het weer vir my gesê: Kyk en aanskou die neerdalendheid van God!

27 En ek het gekyk en die Verlosser van die wêreld gesien, van wie my vader gespreek het; en ek het ook die profeet gesien wat die weg voor Hom sou berei. En die Lam van God het uitgegaan en is gedoop deur hom; en nadat Hy gedoop is, het ek die hemele sien oopgaan, en die Heilige Gees uit die hemel sien neerdaal en op Hom bly in die vorm van 'n duif.

28 En ek het gesien dat Hy uitgaan en die mense dien, in krag en groot heerlikheid; en die skares het bymeekaargekom om Hom te hoor; en ek het gesien dat hulle Hom uitgewerp het uit hulle midde.

29 En ek het ook twaalf ander Hom sien volg. En dit het gebeur dat hulle weggevoer was in die Gees van voor my aangesig, en ek het hulle nie gesien nie.

30 En dit het gebeur dat die engel weer met my gespreek, en gesê het: Kyk! En ek het gekyk en gesien, en ek het die hemele weer sien oopgaan en ek het engele sien neerdaal op die kinders van mense, en hulle het hulle gedien.

31 En hy het weer met my gespreek, en gesê: Kyk! En ek het gekyk en gesien, en ek het die Lam van God sien uitgaan onder die kinders van mense. En ek het 'n skare mense gesien wat siek was, en wat verdruk was deur allerhande kwale en met duiwels en onrein geeste; en die engel het gespreek en al hierdie dinge aan my getoon. En hulle is genees deur die mag van die Lam van God; en die duiwels en die onrein geeste is uitgewerp.

And after he had said these words, he said unto me: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Son of God going forth among the children of men; and I saw many fall down at his feet and worship him.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the rod of iron, which my father had seen, was the word of God, which led to the fountain of living waters, or to the tree of life; which waters are a representation of the love of God; and I also beheld that the tree of life was a representation of the love of God.

And the angel said unto me again: Look and behold the condescension of God!

And I looked and beheld the Redeemer of the world, of whom my father had spoken; and I also beheld the prophet who should prepare the way before him. And the Lamb of God went forth and was baptized of him; and after he was baptized, I beheld the heavens open, and the Holy Ghost come down out of heaven and abide upon him in the form of a dove.

And I beheld that he went forth ministering unto the people, in power and great glory; and the multitudes were gathered together to hear him; and I beheld that they cast him out from among them.

And I also beheld twelve others following him. And it came to pass that they were carried away in the Spirit from before my face, and I saw them not.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the heavens open again, and I saw angels descending upon the children of men; and they did minister unto them.

And he spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Lamb of God going forth among the children of men. And I beheld multitudes of people who were sick, and who were afflicted with all manner of diseases, and with devils and unclean spirits; and the angel spake and showed all these things unto me. And they were healed by the power of the Lamb of God; and the devils and the unclean spirits were cast out.

32 En dit het gebeur dat die engel weer met my gespreek, en gesê het: Kyk! En ek het gekyk en die Lam van God gesien, dat Hy gevange geneem is deur die mense; ja, die Seun van die ewigdurende God is veroordeel deur die wêreld; en ek het gesien en getuie-nis gelewer.

33 En ek, Nepi, het gesien dat Hy opgehef is op die kruis en gedood is vir die sondes van die wêreld.

34 En nadat Hy doodgemaak is, het ek die skares van die aarde gesien, dat hulle bymekaargekom het om te stry teen die apostels van die Lam; want so is die twaalf deur die engel van die Here genoem.

35 En die skare van die aarde het bymekaargekom; en ek het gesien dat hulle in 'n groot en ruim gebou was, soos die gebou wat my vader gesien het. En die engel van die Here het weer met my gespreek, en gesê: Kyk die wêreld en die wysheid daarvan; ja, kyk, die huis van Israel het bymekaargekom om te stry teen die twaalf apostels van die Lam.

36 En dit het gebeur dat ek gesien en getuie-nis gelewer het dat die groot en ruim gebou die hoogmoed van die wêreld was; en dit het geval, en die val daarvan was uitermate groot. En die engel van die Here het weer met my gespreek, en gesê: So sal die vernietiging wees van al die nasies, stamme, tale en volke, wat sal stry teen die twaalf apostels van die Lam.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld the Lamb of God, that he was taken by the people; yea, the Son of the everlasting God was judged of the world; and I saw and bear record.

And I, Nephi, saw that he was lifted up upon the cross and slain for the sins of the world.

And after he was slain I saw the multitudes of the earth, that they were gathered together to fight against the apostles of the Lamb; for thus were the twelve called by the angel of the Lord.

And the multitude of the earth was gathered together; and I beheld that they were in a large and spacious building, like unto the building which my father saw. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying: Behold the world and the wisdom thereof; yea, behold the house of Israel hath gathered together to fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

And it came to pass that I saw and bear record, that the great and spacious building was the pride of the world; and it fell, and the fall thereof was exceedingly great. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying: Thus shall be the destruction of all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, that shall fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

1 Nefi 12

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat die engel vir my gesê het: Kyk, en aanskou jou saad en ook die saad van jou broers. En ek het gekyk, en die land van belofte gesien. En ek het skares mense gesien, ja, en wel as't ware in getal so veel soos die sand van die see.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat ek menigtes bymekaar versamel gesien het om oorlog te voer, die een teen die ander; en ek het oorloë gesien, en gerugte van oorloë, en groot slagtinge met die swaard onder my volk.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat ek baie geslagte sien verbygaan het, volgens die verloop van oorloë en twiste in die land; en ek het baie stede gesien, ja, en wel dat ek hulle nie kon tel nie.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat ek 'n miswolk van donkerheid op die aangesig van die land van belofte gesien het; en ek het weerligte gesien, en ek het donderslae gehoor, en aardbewings, en allerhande rumoere; en ek het die aarde en die rotse gesien, dat hulle skeur; en ek het berge in stukke sien tuimel; en ek het die vlaktes van die aarde gesien, dat hulle verbrokkel was; en ek het baie stede gesien dat hulle weggesink het; en ek het baie gesien dat hulle met vuur verbrand was; en ek het baie gesien wat op die aarde neergeval het vanweë die skudding daarvan.
- 5 En dit het gebeur nadat ek hierdie dinge gesien het, het ek die mis van die duisternis gesien, dat dit vanaf die aangesig van die aarde verbygegaan het; en kyk, ek het menigtes gesien wat nie geval het vanweë die groot en verskriklike oordele van die Here nie.
- 6 En ek het die hemele sien oopgaan, en die Lam van God neerdaal uit die hemel; en Hy het neerge-daal en Homself getoon aan hulle.
- 7 En ek het ook gesien en getuienis gelewer dat die Heilige Gees op twaalf ander neergedaal het; en hulle is deur God geordineer en gekies.
- 8 En die engel het met my gespreek, en gesê: Aanskou die twaalf dissipels van die Lam wat gekies is om jou saad te dien.
- 9 En hy het vir my gesê: Jy onthou die twaalf apostels van die Lam? Kyk, dit is hulle wat die twaalf stamme van Israel sal oordeel; daarom sal die twaalf dienaars van jou saad deur hulle geoordeel word; want julle is van die huis van Israel.

1 Nephi 12

And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Look, and behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren. And I looked and beheld the land of promise; and I beheld multitudes of people, yea, even as it were in number as many as the sand of the sea.

And it came to pass that I beheld multitudes gathered together to battle, one against the other; and I beheld wars, and rumors of wars, and great slaughters with the sword among my people.

And it came to pass that I beheld many generations pass away, after the manner of wars and contentions in the land; and I beheld many cities, yea, even that I did not number them.

And it came to pass that I saw a mist of darkness on the face of the land of promise; and I saw lightnings, and I heard thunderings, and earthquakes, and all manner of tumultuous noises; and I saw the earth and the rocks, that they rent; and I saw mountains tumbling into pieces; and I saw the plains of the earth, that they were broken up; and I saw many cities that they were sunk; and I saw many that they were burned with fire; and I saw many that did tumble to the earth, because of the quaking thereof.

And it came to pass after I saw these things, I saw the vapor of darkness, that it passed from off the face of the earth; and behold, I saw multitudes who had not fallen because of the great and terrible judgments of the Lord.

And I saw the heavens open, and the Lamb of God descending out of heaven; and he came down and showed himself unto them.

And I also saw and bear record that the Holy Ghost fell upon twelve others; and they were ordained of God, and chosen.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the twelve disciples of the Lamb, who are chosen to minister unto thy seed.

And he said unto me: Thou rememberest the twelve apostles of the Lamb? Behold they are they who shall judge the twelve tribes of Israel; wherefore, the twelve ministers of thy seed shall be judged of them; for ye are of the house of Israel.

- 10 En hierdie twaalf dienaars wat jy sien, sal jou saad oordeel. En kyk, hulle is regverdig vir ewig; want vanweë hul geloof in die Lam van God is hulle kleding wit gemaak in sy bloed.
- 11 En die engel het vir my gesê: Kyk! En ek het gekyk en gesien dat drie geslagte heengaan in regverdigheid; en hulle kleding was wit soos dié van die Lam van God. En die engel het vir my gesê: Hulle word wit gemaak in die bloed van die Lam, vanweë hulle geloof in Hom.
- 12 En ek, Nepi, het ook baie van die vierde geslag gesien wat heengegaan het in regverdigheid.
- 13 En dit het gebeur dat ek die menigtes van die aarde versamel gesien het.
- 14 En die engel het vir my gesê: Aanskou jou saad, en ook die saad van jou broers.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat ek gekyk en die mense van my saad gesien het, wat versamel het in menigtes, teenoor die saad van my broers; en hulle het versamel om oorlog te maak.
- 16 En die engel het met my gespreek, en gesê: Aanskou die fontein van vieslike water wat jou vader gesien het; ja, en wel die rivier waarvan hy gespreek het; en die dieptes daarvan is die dieptes van die hel.
- 17 En die miswolke van duisternis is die versoekings van die duiwel, wat die oë verblind, en die harte van die kinders van mense verhard, en hulle weglei in breë weë, dat hulle vergaan en verlore is.
- 18 En die groot en ruim gebou, wat jou vader gesien het, is ydele inbeeldinge en die hoogmoed van die kinders van mense. En 'n groot en 'n verskriklike kloof skei hulle; ja, en wel die woord van geregtigheid van die Ewige God, en die Messias wat die Lam van God is, van wie die Heilige Gees getuienis lewer, vanaf die begin van die wêreld tot nou toe, en van nou af en vir ewig.
- 19 En terwyl die engel hierdie woorde gespreek het, het ek gekyk en gesien dat die saad van my broers geveg het teen my saad, volgens die woord van die engel; en vanweë die hoogmoed van my saad, en die versoeking van die duiwel, het ek gesien dat my broers se saad die volk van my saad oorweldig het.

And these twelve ministers whom thou beholdest shall judge thy seed. And, behold, they are righteous forever; for because of their faith in the Lamb of God their garments are made white in his blood.

And the angel said unto me: Look! And I looked, and beheld three generations pass away in righteousness; and their garments were white even like unto the Lamb of God. And the angel said unto me: These are made white in the blood of the Lamb, because of their faith in him.

And I, Nephi, also saw many of the fourth generation who passed away in righteousness.

And it came to pass that I saw the multitudes of the earth gathered together.

And the angel said unto me: Behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the people of my seed gathered together in multitudes against the seed of my brethren; and they were gathered together to battle.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the fountain of filthy water which thy father saw; yea, even the river of which he spake; and the depths thereof are the depths of hell.

And the mists of darkness are the temptations of the devil, which blindeth the eyes, and hardeneth the hearts of the children of men, and leadeth them away into broad roads, that they perish and are lost.

And the large and spacious building, which thy father saw, is vain imaginations and the pride of the children of men. And a great and a terrible gulf divideth them; yea, even the word of the justice of the Eternal God, and the Messiah who is the Lamb of God, of whom the Holy Ghost beareth record, from the beginning of the world until this time, and from this time henceforth and forever.

And while the angel spake these words, I beheld and saw that the seed of my brethren did contend against my seed, according to the word of the angel; and because of the pride of my seed, and the temptations of the devil, I beheld that the seed of my brethren did overpower the people of my seed.

- 20 En dit het gebeur dat ek gekyk, en gesien het dat die volk van my broers se saad my saad oorweldig het; en hulle het uitgegaan in menigtes oor die aangesig van die land.
- 21 En ek het hulle in skares sien versamel; en ek het oorloë en gerugte van oorloë onder hulle gesien; en in oorloë en in gerugte van oorloë het ek baie geslagte sien heengaan.
- 22 En die engel het vir my gesê: Kyk hulle sal kwyn in ongeloof.
- 23 En dit het gebeur dat ek gesien het, dat nadat hulle gekwyn het in ongeloof, hulle 'n donker, en 'n verfoeilike en 'n vieslike volk geword het, vol luiheid en allerlei gruwels.

And it came to pass that I beheld, and saw the people of the seed of my brethren that they had overcome my seed; and they went forth in multitudes upon the face of the land.

And I saw them gathered together in multitudes; and I saw wars and rumors of wars among them; and in wars and rumors of wars I saw many generations pass away.

And the angel said unto me: Behold these shall dwindle in unbelief.

And it came to pass that I beheld, after they had dwindled in unbelief they became a dark, and loathsome, and a filthy people, full of idleness and all manner of abominations.

1 Nefi 13

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat die engel met my gespreek, en gesê het: Kyk! En ek het gekyk en baie nasies en koninkryke gesien.
- 2 En die engel het vir my gesê: Wat sien jy? En ek het gesê: Ek sien baie nasies en koninkryke.
- 3 En hy het vir my gesê: Hierdie is die nasies en koninkryke van die nie-Jode.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat ek onder die nasies van die nie-Jode die oprigting van 'n groot kerk gesien het.
- 5 En die engel het vir my gesê: Aanskou die oprigting van 'n kerk wat gruweliker is as alle ander kerke, wat die heiliges van God doodmaak, ja, en hulle pynig en hulle vasbind, en hulle juk met 'n juk van yster, en hulle afbring in slawerny.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat ek hierdie groot en gruwelike kerk aanskou het; en ek het die duiwel gesien, dat hy die stigter daarvan was.
- 7 En ek het ook goud, en silwer, en sy, en skarlaken, en fyngeweefde linne, en allerhande kosbare kleding gesien; en ek het baie hoere gesien.
- 8 En die engel het met my gespreek, en gesê: Aanskou die goud, en die silwer, en die sy, en die skarlaken, en die fyngeweefde linne, en die kosbare kleding, en die hoere, is die begeertes van hierdie groot en gruwelike kerk.
- 9 En ter wille van die lof van die wêreld vernietig hulle die heiliges van God, en bring hulle af in slawerny.
- 10 En dit het gebeur dat ek gekyk en baie waters gesien het; en hulle het die nie-Jode geskei van my broers se saad.
- 11 En dit het gebeur dat die engel vir my gesê het: Kyk, die toorn van God is op jou broers se saad.
- 12 En ek het gekyk en 'n man onder die nie-Jode gesien wat geskei was van my broers se saad deur die baie waters; en ek het gesien hoe die Gees van God neerdaal en op die man inwerk; en hy het uitgegaan op die baie waters, en wel na my broers se saad, wat in die beloofde land was.

1 Nephi 13

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld many nations and kingdoms.

And the angel said unto me: What beholdest thou? And I said: I behold many nations and kingdoms.

And he said unto me: These are the nations and kingdoms of the Gentiles.

And it came to pass that I saw among the nations of the Gentiles the formation of a great church.

And the angel said unto me: Behold the formation of a church which is most abominable above all other churches, which slayeth the saints of God, yea, and tortureth them and bindeth them down, and yoketh them with a yoke of iron, and bringeth them down into captivity.

And it came to pass that I beheld this great and abominable church; and I saw the devil that he was the founder of it.

And I also saw gold, and silver, and silks, and scarlets, and fine-twined linen, and all manner of precious clothing; and I saw many harlots.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the gold, and the silver, and the silks, and the scarlets, and the fine-twined linen, and the precious clothing, and the harlots, are the desires of this great and abominable church.

And also for the praise of the world do they destroy the saints of God, and bring them down into captivity.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld many waters; and they divided the Gentiles from the seed of my brethren.

And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Behold the wrath of God is upon the seed of thy brethren.

And I looked and beheld a man among the Gentiles, who was separated from the seed of my brethren by the many waters; and I beheld the Spirit of God, that it came down and wrought upon the man; and he went forth upon the many waters, even unto the seed of my brethren, who were in the promised land.

13 En dit het gebeur dat ek die Gees van God gesien het, dat dit op ander nie-Jode ingewerk het; en hulle het uitgegaan uit gevangenskap op die baie waters.

14 En dit het gebeur dat ek baie menigtes van nie-Jode in die land van belofte gesien het; en ek het gesien dat die toorn van God op my broers se saad was; en hulle is verstrooi voor die nie-Jode en verslaan.

15 En ek het die Gees van die Here gesien, dat dit oor die nie-Jode was, en hulle was voorspoedig en het die land vir hulle erfenis verkry; en ek het gesien dat hulle wit was, en uitermate skoon en rein, soos my mense voordat hulle doorgemaak is.

16 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Nepi, gesien het dat die nie-Jode wat uitgegaan het uit gevangenskap, hulle verootmoedig het voor die Here; en die mag van die Here was met hulle.

17 En ek het gesien dat hulle moedervolk op die waters versamel was, en ook op land, om te stry teen hulle.

18 En ek het gesien dat die mag van God met hulle was, en ook dat die toorn van God op al diegene was wat teen hulle versamel om oorlog te maak.

19 En ek, Nepi, het gesien dat die nie-Jode wat uitgegaan het uit gevangenskap, verlos is deur die mag van God uit die hande van alle ander nasies.

20 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Nepi, aanskou het dat hulle voorspoedig was in die land; en ek het 'n boek gesien, en dit is uitgedra onder hulle.

21 En die engel het vir my gesê: Ken jy die betekenis van die boek?

22 En ek het vir hom gesê: Ek weet nie.

23 En hy het gesê: Kyk, dit kom voort uit die mond van 'n Jood. En ek, Nepi, het dit gesien; en hy het vir my gesê: Die boek wat jy sien, is 'n kroniek van die Jode, wat die verbonde bevat van die Here wat Hy gesluit het met die huis van Israel; en dit bevat ook baie van die profesieë van die heilige profete; en dit is 'n kroniek soos die graverings wat op die plate van brons is, behalwe dat daar nie so baie is nie; desnieteenstaande, hulle bevat die verbonde van die Here, wat Hy met die huis van Israel gesluit het; daarom is hulle van groot waarde vir die nie-Jode.

And it came to pass that I beheld the Spirit of God, that it wrought upon other Gentiles; and they went forth out of captivity, upon the many waters.

And it came to pass that I beheld many multitudes of the Gentiles upon the land of promise; and I beheld the wrath of God, that it was upon the seed of my brethren; and they were scattered before the Gentiles and were smitten.

And I beheld the Spirit of the Lord, that it was upon the Gentiles, and they did prosper and obtain the land for their inheritance; and I beheld that they were white, and exceedingly fair and beautiful, like unto my people before they were slain.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles who had gone forth out of captivity did humble themselves before the Lord; and the power of the Lord was with them.

And I beheld that their mother Gentiles were gathered together upon the waters, and upon the land also, to battle against them.

And I beheld that the power of God was with them, and also that the wrath of God was upon all those that were gathered together against them to battle.

And I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles that had gone out of captivity were delivered by the power of God out of the hands of all other nations.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that they did prosper in the land; and I beheld a book, and it was carried forth among them.

And the angel said unto me: Knowest thou the meaning of the book?

And I said unto him: I know not.

And he said: Behold it proceedeth out of the mouth of a Jew. And I, Nephi, beheld it; and he said unto me: The book that thou beholdest is a record of the Jews, which contains the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; and it also containeth many of the prophecies of the holy prophets; and it is a record like unto the engravings which are upon the plates of brass, save there are not so many; nevertheless, they contain the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; wherefore, they are of great worth unto the Gentiles.

- 24 En die engel van die Here het vir my gesê: Jy het gesien dat die boek voortkom uit die mond van 'n Jood; en toe dit voortgekom het uit die mond van 'n Jood, het dit die volheid bevat van die evangelie van die Here, van wie die twaalf apostels getuienis lewer; en hulle lewer getuienis volgens die waarheid wat in die Lam van God is.
- 25 Daarom, hierdie dinge gaan in suiwerheid uit vanaf die Jode tot die nie-Jode, volgens die waarheid wat in God is.
- 26 En nadat hulle uitgaan deur die hand van die twaalf apostels van die Lam, vanaf die Jode na die nie-Jode, sien jy die oprigting van daardie groot en gruwelike kerk, wat gruweliker is bo alle ander kerke; want sien, hulle het baie dele weggeneem uit die evangelie van die Lam wat duidelik en uiters kosbaar is; en ook baie verbonde van die Here het hulle weggeneem.
- 27 En dit alles het hulle gedoen sodat hulle die reguit weë van die Here mag verdraai, sodat hulle die oë mag verblind en die harte mag verhard van die kinders van mense.
- 28 Daarom sien jy, dat nadat die boek uitgegaan het deur die hande van die groot en gruwelike kerk, dat daar baie eenvoudige en kosbare dinge is wat weggeneem is uit die boek, wat die boek van die Lam van God is.
- 29 En nadat hierdie duidelike en kosbare dinge weggeneem is, gaan dit uit na al die nie-Joodse nasies; en nadat dit uitgegaan het na al die nasies van die nie-Jode, ja, tot so mate oor die baie waters wat jy by die nie-Jode gesien het wat uitgegaan het uit gevangenskap, dan sien jy—vanweë die baie eenvoudige en kosbare dinge wat weggeneem is uit die boek, wat duidelik was vir die begrip van kinders van mense, volgens die duidelikheid wat in die Lam van God is—vanweë hierdie dinge wat weggeneem is uit die evangelie van die Lam, struikel 'n uitermate groot getal, ja, sodat Satan groot mag oor hulle het.

And the angel of the Lord said unto me: Thou hast beheld that the book proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew; and when it proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew it contained the fulness of the gospel of the Lord, of whom the twelve apostles bear record; and they bear record according to the truth which is in the Lamb of God.

Wherefore, these things go forth from the Jews in purity unto the Gentiles, according to the truth which is in God.

And after they go forth by the hand of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, from the Jews unto the Gentiles, thou seest the formation of that great and abominable church, which is most abominable above all other churches; for behold, they have taken away from the gospel of the Lamb many parts which are plain and most precious; and also many covenants of the Lord have they taken away.

And all this have they done that they might pervert the right ways of the Lord, that they might blind the eyes and harden the hearts of the children of men.

Wherefore, thou seest that after the book hath gone forth through the hands of the great and abominable church, that there are many plain and precious things taken away from the book, which is the book of the Lamb of God.

And after these plain and precious things were taken away it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles; and after it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles, yea, even across the many waters which thou hast seen with the Gentiles which have gone forth out of captivity, thou seest—because of the many plain and precious things which have been taken out of the book, which were plain unto the understanding of the children of men, according to the plainness which is in the Lamb of God—because of these things which are taken away out of the gospel of the Lamb, an exceedingly great many do stumble, yea, insomuch that Satan hath great power over them.

30 Desnieteenstaande sien jy hoe die nie-Jode wat uitgegaan het uit gevangenskap, en verhef is deur die mag van God bo alle ander nasies, op die aangesig van die land wat uitverkore is bo alle ander lande, wat die land is waaroor die Here God met jou vader 'n verbond gesluit het dat sy saad die land van hulle erfenis sou hê; daarom, sien jy dat die Here God nie sal toelaat dat die nie-Jode die vermenging van jou saad wat onder jou broers is, heeltemal sal vernietig nie.

31 Nóg sal Hy toelaat dat die nie-Jode jou broers se saad vernietig.

32 Nóg sal die Here God toelaat dat die nie-Jode vir ewig sal bly in daardie aaklige toestand van blindheid, wat jy sien waarin hulle verkeer, as gevolg van die duidelike en uiters kosbare dele van die evangelie van die Lam wat teruggehou is deur daardie gruwelike kerk waarvan jy die oprigting gesien het.

33 Daarom sê die Lam van God: Ek sal barmhartig wees teenoor die nie-Jode, tot die besoeking van die oorblyfsel van die huis van Israel met 'n groot oordeel.

34 En dit het gebeur dat die engel van die Here met my gespreek, en gesê het: Kyk, sê die Lam van God, nadat Ek die oorblyfsel van die huis van Israel besoek het—en hierdie oorblyfsel waarvan Ek spreek, is die saad van jou vader—daarom, nadat Ek hulle met oordeel besoek het, en hulle geteister het deur die hand van die nie-Jode, en nadat die nie-Jode uitermate struikel, vanweë die eenvoudigste en kosbaarste dele van die evangelie van die Lam wat teruggehou is deur daardie gruwelike kerk, wat die moeder van hoere is, sê die Lam—sal Ek barmhartig wees teenoor die nie-Jode in daardie dag, sodat Ek deur my eie mag veel van my evangelie aan hulle sal voortbring, wat eenvoudig en kosbaar sal wees, sê die Lam.

35 Want kyk, sê die Lam: Ek sal my openbaar aan jou saad, dat hulle baie dinge sal skrywe wat Ek aan hulle sal leer, wat eenvoudig en kosbaar sal wees; en nadat jou saad vernietig sal word, en kwyn in ongeloof, asook die saad van jou broers, kyk, hierdie dinge sal verberg word om na vore te kom tot die nie-Jode, deur die gawe en mag van die Lam.

Nevertheless, thou beholdest that the Gentiles who have gone forth out of captivity, and have been lifted up by the power of God above all other nations, upon the face of the land which is choice above all other lands, which is the land that the Lord God hath covenanted with thy father that his seed should have for the land of their inheritance; wherefore, thou seest that the Lord God will not suffer that the Gentiles will utterly destroy the mixture of thy seed, which are among thy brethren.

Neither will he suffer that the Gentiles shall destroy the seed of thy brethren.

Neither will the Lord God suffer that the Gentiles shall forever remain in that awful state of blindness, which thou beholdest they are in, because of the plain and most precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, whose formation thou hast seen.

Wherefore saith the Lamb of God: I will be merciful unto the Gentiles, unto the visiting of the remnant of the house of Israel in great judgment.

And it came to pass that the angel of the Lord spake unto me, saying: Behold, saith the Lamb of God, after I have visited the remnant of the house of Israel—and this remnant of whom I speak is the seed of thy father—wherefore, after I have visited them in judgment, and smitten them by the hand of the Gentiles, and after the Gentiles do stumble exceedingly, because of the most plain and precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, which is the mother of harlots, saith the Lamb—I will be merciful unto the Gentiles in that day, insomuch that I will bring forth unto them, in mine own power, much of my gospel, which shall be plain and precious, saith the Lamb.

For, behold, saith the Lamb: I will manifest myself unto thy seed, that they shall write many things which I shall minister unto them, which shall be plain and precious; and after thy seed shall be destroyed, and dwindle in unbelief, and also the seed of thy brethren, behold, these things shall be hid up, to come forth unto the Gentiles, by the gift and power of the Lamb.

36 En in hulle sal my evangelie geskrywe word, sê die Lam, en my rots en my heil.

37 En salig is hulle wat sal probeer om my Sion in daardie dag voort te bring, want hulle sal die gawe en die mag van die Heilige Gees hê; en as hulle volhard tot die einde toe, sal hulle verhef word op die laaste dag, en hulle sal gered word in die ewigdurende koninkryk van die Lam; en wie ook al vrede sal verkondig, ja, tydings van groot blydschap, hoe lieflik op die berge sal hulle wees.

38 En dit het gebeur dat ek die oorblyfsel van my broers se saad gesien het, en ook die boek van die Lam van God, wat voortgekom het uit die mond van die Jood, dat dit uitgegaan het vanaf die nie-Jode na die oorblyfsel van die saad van my broers.

39 En nadat dit uitgegaan het na hulle, het ek ander boeke gesien wat uitgegaan het deur die mag van die Lam, vanaf die nie-Jode na hulle toe, tot oortuiging van die nie-Jode en die oorblyfsel van my broers se saad, en ook die Jode wat verstrooi was oor die hele aangesig van die aarde, dat die kronieke van die profete en van die twaalf apostels van die Lam waar is.

40 En die engel het met my gespreek, en gesê: Hierdie laaste kronieke, wat jy gesien het onder die nie-Jode, sal die waarheid bevestig van die eerste, wat van die twaalf apostels van die Lam is, en sal die eenvoudige en kosbare dinge wat weggeneem is van hulle bekend maak; en sal aan alle stamme, tale en volke bekend maak, dat die Lam van God die Seun van die Ewige Vader is, en die Saligmaker van die wêreld; en dat alle mense na Hom toe moet kom, of hulle kan nie gered word nie.

41 En hulle moet kom volgens die woorde wat bevestig sal word deur die mond van die Lam; en die woorde van die Lam sal in die kronieke van jou saad bekend gemaak word, sowel as in die kronieke van die twaalf apostels van die Lam; daarom sal hulle albei tot een bevestig word; want daar is een God en een Herder oor die hele aarde.

And in them shall be written my gospel, saith the Lamb, and my rock and my salvation.

And blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day, for they shall have the gift and the power of the Holy Ghost; and if they endure unto the end they shall be lifted up at the last day, and shall be saved in the everlasting kingdom of the Lamb; and whoso shall publish peace, yea, tidings of great joy, how beautiful upon the mountains shall they be.

And it came to pass that I beheld the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the book of the Lamb of God, which had proceeded forth from the mouth of the Jew, that it came forth from the Gentiles unto the remnant of the seed of my brethren.

And after it had come forth unto them I beheld other books, which came forth by the power of the Lamb, from the Gentiles unto them, unto the convincing of the Gentiles and the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the Jews who were scattered upon all the face of the earth, that the records of the prophets and of the twelve apostles of the Lamb are true.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: These last records, which thou hast seen among the Gentiles, shall establish the truth of the first, which are of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, and shall make known the plain and precious things which have been taken away from them; and shall make known to all kindreds, tongues, and people, that the Lamb of God is the Son of the Eternal Father, and the Savior of the world; and that all men must come unto him, or they cannot be saved.

And they must come according to the words which shall be established by the mouth of the Lamb; and the words of the Lamb shall be made known in the records of thy seed, as well as in the records of the twelve apostles of the Lamb; wherefore they both shall be established in one; for there is one God and one Shepherd over all the earth.

42 En die tyd kom wanneer Hy Homself sal openbaar aan alle nasies, beide aan die Jode asook aan die nie-Jode; en nadat Hy Homself openbaar het aan die Jode en ook aan die nie-Jode, dan sal Hy Homself openbaar aan die nie-Jode en ook aan die Jode en die laaste sal eerste wees, en die eerste sal laaste wees.

And the time cometh that he shall manifest himself unto all nations, both unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles; and after he has manifested himself unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles, then he shall manifest himself unto the Gentiles and also unto the Jews, and the last shall be first, and the first shall be last.

1 Nefi 14

- 1 En dit sal gebeur dat as die nie-Jode op die Lam van God sal ag slaan op daardie dag wanneer Hy Homself sal openbaar aan hulle in woord, en ook in krag, en magtige daade, om hulle struikelblokke weg te neem—
- 2 En hulle nie hulle harte verhard teen die Lam van God nie, hulle gereken sal word onder jou vader se saad; ja, hulle sal gereken word onder die huis van Israel; en hulle sal vir ewig 'n geseënde volk wees in die land van belofte; hulle sal nie meer afgebring word in slawerny nie; en die huis van Israel sal nie meer vermeng wees nie.
- 3 En daardie groot kuil wat gegrawe is vir hulle deur daardie groot en gruwelike kerk, wat gestig is deur die duiwel en sy kinders, sodat hy die siele van mense kan aflei na die hel—ja, daardie groot kuil wat gegrawe is vir die vernietiging van mense, sal gevul word deur hulle wat dit gegrawe het, tot hulle algehele vernietiging, sê die Lam van God; nie die vernietiging van die siel nie, tensy dit gewerp word in daardie hel wat geen einde het nie.
- 4 Want kyk, dit is volgens die slawerny van die duiwel, en ook volgens die geregtigheid van God, oor almal wat boosheid en gruwels bedryf voor Hom.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat die engel met my, Nefi, gespreek, en gesê het: Jy het gesien dat as die nie-Jode bekeer, dit wel sal wees met hulle; en jy weet ook van die verbonde van die Here met die Huis van Israel; en jy het ook gehoor dat hy wat nie bekeer nie moet vergaan.
- 6 Daarom, wee die nie-Jode as dit so is dat hulle hul harte verhard teen die Lam van God.
- 7 Want die tyd kom, sê die Lam van God, dat Ek 'n groot en 'n wonderbaarlike werk sal bewerkstellig onder die kinders van mense; 'n werk wat ewigdurend sal wees, óf aan die een kant óf die ander—óf om hulle te oortuig tot vrede en die ewige lewe, óf tot hulle uitlewering aan die hardheid van hulle harte en die blindheid van hulle verstand totdat hulle afgebring word in slawerny, en ook tot vernietiging, beide stofflik en geestelik, volgens die slawerny van die duiwel, waarvan ek gespreek het.

1 Nephi 14

And it shall come to pass, that if the Gentiles shall hearken unto the Lamb of God in that day that he shall manifest himself unto them in word, and also in power, in very deed, unto the taking away of their stumbling blocks—

And harden not their hearts against the Lamb of God, they shall be numbered among the seed of thy father; yea, they shall be numbered among the house of Israel; and they shall be a blessed people upon the promised land forever; they shall be no more brought down into captivity; and the house of Israel shall no more be confounded.

And that great pit, which hath been digged for them by that great and abominable church, which was founded by the devil and his children, that he might lead away the souls of men down to hell—yea, that great pit which hath been digged for the destruction of men shall be filled by those who digged it, unto their utter destruction, saith the Lamb of God; not the destruction of the soul, save it be the casting of it into that hell which hath no end.

For behold, this is according to the captivity of the devil, and also according to the justice of God, upon all those who will work wickedness and abomination before him.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, Nephi, saying: Thou hast beheld that if the Gentiles repent it shall be well with them; and thou also knowest concerning the covenants of the Lord unto the house of Israel; and thou also hast heard that whoso repenteth not must perish.

Therefore, wo be unto the Gentiles if it so be that they harden their hearts against the Lamb of God.

For the time cometh, saith the Lamb of God, that I will work a great and a marvelous work among the children of men; a work which shall be everlasting, either on the one hand or on the other—either to the convincing of them unto peace and life eternal, or unto the deliverance of them to the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds unto their being brought down into captivity, and also into destruction, both temporally and spiritually, according to the captivity of the devil, of which I have spoken.

- 8 En dit het gebeur dat toe die engel hierdie woorde gespreek het, het hy vir my gesê: Onthou jy die verbonde van die Vader met die huis van Israel? Ek het vir hom gesê, Ja.
- 9 En dit het gebeur dat hy vir my gesê het: Kyk, en aanskou daardie groot en gruwelike kerk wat die moeder is van gruwels, wie se stigter die duiwel is.
- 10 En hy het vir my gesê: Kyk, daar is net twee kerke; die een is die kerk van die Lam van God, en die ander is die kerk van die duiwel; daarom, hy wat nie aan die kerk van die Lam van God behoort nie, behoort aan daardie groot kerk, wat die moeder is van gruwels; en sy is die hoer van die hele aarde.
- 11 En dit het gebeur dat ek gekyk het en die hoer van die hele aarde gesien het, en sy het gesit op baie waters; en sy het heerskappy gehad oor die hele aarde, onder alle nasies, stamme, tale en volke.
- 12 En dit het gebeur dat ek die kerk van die Lam van God gesien het, en sy getalle was klein, vanweë die boosheid en gruwels van die hoer wat gesit het op baie waters; nietemin, ek het gesien dat die kerk van die Lam, wat die heiliges van God was, ook op die hele aangesig van die aarde was; en hulle heerskappye op die aangesig van die aarde was klein, vanweë die boosheid van die groot hoer wat ek gesien het.
- 13 En dit het gebeur dat ek gesien het dat die groot moeder van gruwels die menigtes op die aangesig van die hele aarde bymekaar gemaak het, onder al die nasies van die nie-Jode, om te stry teen die Lam van God.
- 14 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Nepi, die mag van die Lam van God gesien het, dat dit neergedaal het op die heiliges van die kerk van die Lam, en op die verbondsvolk van die Here, wat verstrooi was oor die hele aangesig van die aarde; en hulle was bewapen met regverdigheid, en met die krag van God in groot heerlikheid.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat ek gesien het dat die toorn van God uitgestort is op daardie groot en gruwelike kerk, sodat daar oorloë en gerugte van oorloë onder al die nasies en stamme van die aarde was.

And it came to pass that when the angel had spoken these words, he said unto me: Rememberest thou the covenants of the Father unto the house of Israel? I said unto him, Yea.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look, and behold that great and abominable church, which is the mother of abominations, whose founder is the devil.

And he said unto me: Behold there are save two churches only; the one is the church of the Lamb of God, and the other is the church of the devil; wherefore, whoso belongeth not to the church of the Lamb of God belongeth to that great church, which is the mother of abominations; and she is the whore of all the earth.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the whore of all the earth, and she sat upon many waters; and she had dominion over all the earth, among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people.

And it came to pass that I beheld the church of the Lamb of God, and its numbers were few, because of the wickedness and abominations of the whore who sat upon many waters; nevertheless, I beheld that the church of the Lamb, who were the saints of God, were also upon all the face of the earth; and their dominions upon the face of the earth were small, because of the wickedness of the great whore whom I saw.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the great mother of abominations did gather together multitudes upon the face of all the earth, among all the nations of the Gentiles, to fight against the Lamb of God.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the power of the Lamb of God, that it descended upon the saints of the church of the Lamb, and upon the covenant people of the Lord, who were scattered upon all the face of the earth; and they were armed with righteousness and with the power of God in great glory.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the wrath of God was poured out upon that great and abominable church, insomuch that there were wars and rumors of wars among all the nations and kindreds of the earth.

16 En omdat daar oorloë en gerugte van oorloë onder al die nasies ontstaan het wat aan die moeder van gruwels behoort het, het die engel met my gespreek, en gesê: Kyk, die toorn van God is op die moeder van hoere; en kyk, jy sien al hierdie dinge—

17 En wanneer die dag kom dat die toorn van God uitgestort word op die moeder van hoere, wat die groot en gruwelike kerk is van die hele aarde, wie se stigter die duiwel is, dan, op daardie dag, sal die werk van die Vader 'n aanvang neem om die weg te berei vir die vervulling van sy verbonde, wat Hy gesluit het met sy volk wat van die huis van Israel is.

18 En dit het gebeur dat die engel met my gespreek, en gesê het: Kyk!

19 En ek het gekyk en 'n man gesien, en hy was geklee in 'n wit kleed.

20 En die engel het vir my gesê: Aanskou, een van die twaalf apostels van die Lam.

21 Kyk, hy sal die oorblywende dinge sien en neerskrywe; ja, en ook baie dinge wat was.

22 En hy sal ook aangaande die einde van die wêreld skrywe.

23 Daarom, die dinge wat hy sal skrywe is regverdig en waar; en kyk, hulle is in die boek geskrywe wat jy sien voortkom het uit die mond van die Jood; in dié tyd toe hulle voortgekom het uit die mond van die Jood, of, in die tyd toe die boek uit die mond van die Jood voortgekom het, was die dinge wat geskrywe is, duidelik en suiwer, en baie kosbaar en maklik om te verstaan vir alle mense.

24 En kyk, die dinge wat hierdie apostel van die Lam sal skrywe, is baie dinge wat jy gesien het; en kyk, jy sal die oorblywende sien.

25 Maar die dinge wat jy hierna sal sien, moet jy nie skryf nie, want die Here God het die apostel van die Lam van God geordineer dat hy dit moet skrywe.

26 En ook aan ander wat was, aan hulle het hy alle dinge getoon, en hulle het dit neergeskrywe; en hulle is verseël om voort te kom in hulle suiwerheid, volgens die waarheid wat in die Lam is, op die Here se eie bepaalde tyd, na die huis van Israel.

And as there began to be wars and rumors of wars among all the nations which belonged to the mother of abominations, the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold, the wrath of God is upon the mother of harlots; and behold, thou seest all these things—

And when the day cometh that the wrath of God is poured out upon the mother of harlots, which is the great and abominable church of all the earth, whose founder is the devil, then, at that day, the work of the Father shall commence, in preparing the way for the fulfilling of his covenants, which he hath made to his people who are of the house of Israel.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!

And I looked and beheld a man, and he was dressed in a white robe.

And the angel said unto me: Behold one of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

Behold, he shall see and write the remainder of these things; yea, and also many things which have been.

And he shall also write concerning the end of the world.

Wherefore, the things which he shall write are just and true; and behold they are written in the book which thou beheld proceeding out of the mouth of the Jew; and at the time they proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, or, at the time the book proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, the things which were written were plain and pure, and most precious and easy to the understanding of all men.

And behold, the things which this apostle of the Lamb shall write are many things which thou hast seen; and behold, the remainder shalt thou see.

But the things which thou shalt see hereafter thou shalt not write; for the Lord God hath ordained the apostle of the Lamb of God that he should write them.

And also others who have been, to them hath he shown all things, and they have written them; and they are sealed up to come forth in their purity, according to the truth which is in the Lamb, in the own due time of the Lord, unto the house of Israel.

27 En ek, Nefi, het gehoor en ek lewer getuienis dat die naam van die apostel van die Lam Johannes was, volgens die woord van die engel.

28 En kyk, ek Nefi, word verbied om die oorblywende dinge neer te skrywe wat ek gesien en gehoor het; daarom is die dinge wat ek geskrywe het vir my genoeg; en ek het maar 'n klein gedeelte neergeskrywe van die dinge wat ek gesien het.

29 En ek lewer getuienis dat ek die dinge gesien het wat my vader gesien het, en die engel van die Here het hulle bekend gemaak aan my.

30 En nou maak ek 'n einde daaraan om te spreek aangaande die dinge wat ek gesien het terwyl ek weggevoer was in die Gees; en as al die dinge wat ek gesien het nie geskryf is nie, is die dinge wat ek wel geskrywe het waar. En so is dit. Amen.

And I, Nephi, heard and bear record, that the name of the apostle of the Lamb was John, according to the word of the angel.

And behold, I, Nephi, am forbidden that I should write the remainder of the things which I saw and heard; wherefore the things which I have written sufficeth me; and I have written but a small part of the things which I saw.

And I bear record that I saw the things which my father saw, and the angel of the Lord did make them known unto me.

And now I make an end of speaking concerning the things which I saw while I was carried away in the Spirit; and if all the things which I saw are not written, the things which I have written are true. And thus it is. Amen.

1 Nefi 15

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat nadat ek, Nefi, in die Gees weggevoer is, en al hierdie dinge gesien het, ek teruggekeer het na my vader se tent.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat ek my broers gesien het, en hulle was besig om met mekaar te twis oor die dinge waarvoor my vader met hulle gesprek het.
- 3 Want hy het waarlik baie groot dinge met hulle gespreek, wat moeilik te verstane was, behalwe as 'n mens God sou vra; en omdat hulle verhard was in hulle harte, daarom het hulle hul nie gewend tot die Here soos hulle hoort nie.
- 4 En nou was ek, Nefi, bedroef oor die hardheid van hulle harte, en ook, vanweë die dinge wat ek gesien het, en geweet het dat hulle onvermydelik moes geskied vanweë die groot boosheid van die kinders van mense.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat ek oorstelp was deur my verdrukkinge, want ek het gedink dat my verdrukkinge groter was bo alle ander, vanweë die vernietiging van my volk, want ek het hulle val gesien.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat nadat ek krag ontvang het, het ek met my broers gesprek, begerig om te weet wat die oorsaak was van hulle twiste.
- 7 En hulle het gesê: Kyk, ons kan die woorde van ons vader nie verstaan wat hy aangaande die natuurlike takke van die olyfboom gesprek het, en ook aangaande die nie-Jode nie.
- 8 En ek het vir hulle gesê: Het julle die Here gevra?
- 9 En hulle het vir my gesê: Ons het nie; want die Here maak glad nie so iets aan ons bekend nie.
- 10 Kyk, het ek vir hulle gesê: Hoekom is dit dat julle nie die gebooie van die Here onderhou nie? Hoekom wil julle vergaan, vanweë die hardheid van julle harte?
- 11 Onthou julle nie die dinge wat die Here gesê het nie?—As julle nie julle harte verhard nie, en My in geloof vra, en glo dat julle sal ontvang, en ywerig my gebooie onderhou, sal hierdie dinge sekerlik bekend gemaak word aan julle.

1 Nephi 15

And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been carried away in the Spirit, and seen all these things, I returned to the tent of my father.

And it came to pass that I beheld my brethren, and they were disputing one with another concerning the things which my father had spoken unto them.

For he truly spake many great things unto them, which were hard to be understood, save a man should inquire of the Lord; and they being hard in their hearts, therefore they did not look unto the Lord as they ought.

And now I, Nephi, was grieved because of the hardness of their hearts, and also, because of the things which I had seen, and knew they must unavoidably come to pass because of the great wickedness of the children of men.

And it came to pass that I was overcome because of my afflictions, for I considered that mine afflictions were great above all, because of the destruction of my people, for I had beheld their fall.

And it came to pass that after I had received strength I spake unto my brethren, desiring to know of them the cause of their disputations.

And they said: Behold, we cannot understand the words which our father hath spoken concerning the natural branches of the olive tree, and also concerning the Gentiles.

And I said unto them: Have ye inquired of the Lord?

And they said unto me: We have not; for the Lord maketh no such thing known unto us.

Behold, I said unto them: How is it that ye do not keep the commandments of the Lord? How is it that ye will perish, because of the hardness of your hearts?

Do ye not remember the things which the Lord hath said?—If ye will not harden your hearts, and ask me in faith, believing that ye shall receive, with diligence in keeping my commandments, surely these things shall be made known unto you.

12 Kyk, ek sê vir julle, dat die huis van Israel vergelyk is met 'n olyfboom, deur die Gees van die Here wat in ons vader was; en kyk, is ons nie afgebreek van die huis van Israel nie, en is ons nie 'n tak van die huis van Israel nie?

13 En nou, die ding wat ons vader bedoel het met die enting van die natuurlike takke deur middel van die volheid van die nie-Jode, is dat in die laaste dae, wanneer ons saad sal gekwyn het in ongeloof, ja, vir 'n tydperk van baie jare, en baie geslagte nadat die Messias liggaamlik geopenbaar sal wees aan die kinders van mense, dan sal die volheid van die evangelie van die Messias na die nie-Jode kom, en van die nie-Jode na die oorblyfsel van ons saad—

14 En in daardie dag sal die oorblyfsel van ons saad weet dat hulle van die huis van Israel is en dat hulle die verbondsvolk van die Here is; en dan sal hulle weet en die kennis bekom van hulle voorvaders, en ook die kennis van die evangelie van hulle Verlosser, wat deur Hom bedien is aan hulle vaders, daarom sal hulle die kennis verkry van hulle Verlosser en die juiste punte van sy leer, dat hulle mag weet hoe om na Hom te kom en gered te word.

15 En dan in daardie dag sal hulle hulle nie verbly en hul ewigdurende God loof, hulle rots en hulle heil nie? Ja, in daardie dag, sal hulle nie die krag en die voeding van die ware wingerdstok ontvang nie? Ja, sal hulle nie kom na die ware kudde van God nie?

16 Kyk, ek sê vir julle, Ja; hulle sal onthou word onder die huis van Israel; hulle sal geënt word omdat hulle 'n natuurlike tak is van die olyfboom, in die ware olyfboom.

17 En dit is wat ons vader bedoel; hy bedoel dat dit nie sal gebeur tot nadat hulle verstrooi is deur die nie-Jode nie, en hy bedoel dat dit sal geskied deur middel van die nie-Jode, sodat die Here sy mag kan toon aan die nie-Jode, om die juiste rede dat Hy verwerp sal word deur die Jode, of deur die huis van Israel.

Behold, I say unto you, that the house of Israel was compared unto an olive tree, by the Spirit of the Lord which was in our father; and behold are we not broken off from the house of Israel, and are we not a branch of the house of Israel?

And now, the thing which our father meaneth concerning the grafting in of the natural branches through the fulness of the Gentiles, is, that in the latter days, when our seed shall have dwindled in unbelief, yea, for the space of many years, and many generations after the Messiah shall be manifested in body unto the children of men, then shall the fulness of the gospel of the Messiah come unto the Gentiles, and from the Gentiles unto the remnant of our seed—

And at that day shall the remnant of our seed know that they are of the house of Israel, and that they are the covenant people of the Lord; and then shall they know and come to the knowledge of their forefathers, and also to the knowledge of the gospel of their Redeemer, which was ministered unto their fathers by him; wherefore, they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer and the very points of his doctrine, that they may know how to come unto him and be saved.

And then at that day will they not rejoice and give praise unto their everlasting God, their rock and their salvation? Yea, at that day, will they not receive the strength and nourishment from the true vine? Yea, will they not come unto the true fold of God?

Behold, I say unto you, Yea; they shall be remembered again among the house of Israel; they shall be grafted in, being a natural branch of the olive tree, into the true olive tree.

And this is what our father meaneth; and he meaneth that it will not come to pass until after they are scattered by the Gentiles; and he meaneth that it shall come by way of the Gentiles, that the Lord may show his power unto the Gentiles, for the very cause that he shall be rejected of the Jews, or of the house of Israel.

18 Daaronder het ons vader nie alleen gespreek van ons saad nie, maar ook van die hele huis van Israel, met verwysing na die verbond wat vervul sal word in die laaste dae; welke verbond die Here gesluit het met ons vader Abraham deur te sê: In jou saad sal al die stamme van die aarde geseën word.

19 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Nephi, baie aangaande hierdie dinge met hulle gespreek het; ja, ek het met hulle gespreek aangaande die herstelling van die Jode in die laaste dae.

20 En ek het die woorde van Jesaja aan hulle herhaal, wat gespreek het aangaande die herstelling van die Jode, of van die huis van Israel; en nadat hulle herstel is, sou hulle nie langer vermeng word nie, ook sou hulle nie weer verstrooi word nie. En dit het gebeur dat ek baie woorde met my broers gespreek het, sodat hulle gekalmeer is en hulle verootmoedig het voor die Here.

21 En dit het gebeur dat hulle weer met my gespreek en gesê het: Wat beteken hierdie ding wat ons vader gesien het in 'n droom? Wat beteken die boom wat hy gesien het?

22 En ek het vir hulle gesê: Dit was 'n voorstelling van die boom van die lewe.

23 En hulle het vir my gesê: Wat beteken die staaf van yster wat ons vader gesien het, wat na die boom gelei het?

24 En ek het vir hulle gesê dat dit die woord van God is; en wie ook al sou ag slaan op die woord van God, en daaraan vashou, hulle sou nooit vergaan nie; ook kon die versoekings en die vurige pyle van die teenstander hulle nie oorweldig tot blindheid, en hulle weglei tot vernietiging nie.

25 Daaronder het ek, Nephi, hulle vermaan om ag te slaan op die woord van die Here; ja, ek het hulle vermaan met al die energie van my siel, en met al die vermoëns wat ek besit het dat hulle ag sou slaan op die woord van God en onthou om altyd sy gebooi te onderhou in alle dinge.

26 En hulle het vir my gesê: Wat beteken die rivier van water wat ons vader gesien het?

27 En ek het vir hulle gesê dat die water wat my vader gesien het, vieslikheid was; en dat sy verstand so in beslag geneem was met ander dinge, dat hy nie die vieslikheid van die water gesien het nie.

Wherefore, our father hath not spoken of our seed alone, but also of all the house of Israel, pointing to the covenant which should be fulfilled in the latter days; which covenant the Lord made to our father Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake much unto them concerning these things; yea, I spake unto them concerning the restoration of the Jews in the latter days.

And I did rehearse unto them the words of Isaiah, who spake concerning the restoration of the Jews, or of the house of Israel; and after they were restored they should no more be confounded, neither should they be scattered again. And it came to pass that I did speak many words unto my brethren, that they were pacified and did humble themselves before the Lord.

And it came to pass that they did speak unto me again, saying: What meaneth this thing which our father saw in a dream? What meaneth the tree which he saw?

And I said unto them: It was a representation of the tree of life.

And they said unto me: What meaneth the rod of iron which our father saw, that led to the tree?

And I said unto them that it was the word of God; and whoso would hearken unto the word of God, and would hold fast unto it, they would never perish; neither could the temptations and the fiery darts of the adversary overpower them unto blindness, to lead them away to destruction.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did exhort them to give heed unto the word of the Lord; yea, I did exhort them with all the energies of my soul, and with all the faculty which I possessed, that they would give heed to the word of God and remember to keep his commandments always in all things.

And they said unto me: What meaneth the river of water which our father saw?

And I said unto them that the water which my father saw was filthiness; and so much was his mind swallowed up in other things that he beheld not the filthiness of the water.

- 28 En ek het vir hulle gesê dat dit 'n vreeslike kloof was wat die bose van die boom van die lewe geskei het, en ook van die heiliges van God.
- 29 En ek het vir hulle gesê dat dit 'n voorstelling was van daardie verskriklike hel wat die engel vir my gesê het, berei was vir die bose.
- 30 En ek het vir hulle gesê dat ons vader ook gesien het dat die geregtigheid van God ook die bose van die regverdiges geskei het; en die helderheid daarvan was soos die helderheid van 'n vlammeende vuur, wat opstyg tot God vir ewig en ewig, en geen einde het nie.
- 31 En hulle het vir my gesê: Beteken hierdie ding die pyniging van die liggaam gedurende die dae van toetsing, of beteken dit die uiteindelijke toestand van die siel na die dood van die stoflike liggaam, of spreek dit van die dinge wat stoflik is?
- 32 En dit het gebeur dat ek vir hulle gesê het dat dit 'n voorstelling was van dinge beide stoflik en geestelik; want die dag sal kom dat hulle geoordeel moet word volgens hulle werke, ja, en wel die werke wat gedoen is deur die stoflike liggaam tydens hulle dae van toetsing.
- 33 Daarom, as hulle sou sterwe in hulle boosheid, moet hulle verwerp word, ook wat die geestelike dinge betref, wat betrekking het op regverdigheid; daarom, hulle moet gebring word om voor God te staan, om geoordeel te word volgens hulle werke; en as hulle werke vieslikheid was, moet hulle noodwendig ook vieslik wees; en as hulle vieslik is kan hulle nie in die koninkryk van God woon nie; indien wel, sal die koninkryk van God ook vieslik wees.
- 34 Maar kyk, ek sê vir julle, dat die koninkryk van God nie vieslik is nie, en daar kan geen onrein ding die koninkryk van God binnegaan nie; daarom moet daar noodwendig 'n plek van vieslikheid wees wat berei is vir dit wat vieslik is.
- 35 En daar is 'n plek berei, ja, en wel daardie verskriklike hel waarvan ek gespreek het, en die duiwel is die voorbereider daarvan; daarom die uiteindelijke toestand van die siele van mense is om te woon in die koninkryk van God, of om uitgewerp te word vanweë daardie geregtigheid waarvan ek gespreek het.

And I said unto them that it was an awful gulf, which separated the wicked from the tree of life, and also from the saints of God.

And I said unto them that it was a representation of that awful hell, which the angel said unto me was prepared for the wicked.

And I said unto them that our father also saw that the justice of God did also divide the wicked from the righteous; and the brightness thereof was like unto the brightness of a flaming fire, which ascendeth up unto God forever and ever, and hath no end.

And they said unto me: Doth this thing mean the torment of the body in the days of probation, or doth it mean the final state of the soul after the death of the temporal body, or doth it speak of the things which are temporal?

And it came to pass that I said unto them that it was a representation of things both temporal and spiritual; for the day should come that they must be judged of their works, yea, even the works which were done by the temporal body in their days of probation.

Wherefore, if they should die in their wickedness they must be cast off also, as to the things which are spiritual, which are pertaining to righteousness; wherefore, they must be brought to stand before God, to be judged of their works; and if their works have been filthiness they must needs be filthy; and if they be filthy it must needs be that they cannot dwell in the kingdom of God; if so, the kingdom of God must be filthy also.

But behold, I say unto you, the kingdom of God is not filthy, and there cannot any unclean thing enter into the kingdom of God; wherefore there must needs be a place of filthiness prepared for that which is filthy.

And there is a place prepared, yea, even that awful hell of which I have spoken, and the devil is the preparator of it; wherefore the final state of the souls of men is to dwell in the kingdom of God, or to be cast out because of that justice of which I have spoken.

36 Daaron, die bouse word geskei van die regverdiges, en ook van daardie boom van die lewe, waarvan die vrugte uiters kosbaar en begeerliker is bo alle ander vrugte; ja, en dit is die grootste van al die gawes van God. En so het ek met my broers gespreek. Amen.

Wherefore, the wicked are rejected from the righteous, and also from that tree of life, whose fruit is most precious and most desirable above all other fruits; yea, and it is the greatest of all the gifts of God. And thus I spake unto my brethren. Amen.

1 Nefi 16

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat nadat ek, Nefi, 'n einde daaraan gemaak het om met my broers te spreek, sien, het hulle vir my gesê: Jy het harde dinge aan ons verkondig, meer as wat ons in staat is om te verduur.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat ek vir hulle gesê het dat ek weet dat ek harde dinge gespreek het teen die bose, volgens die waarheid; en dat ek die regverdiges geregverdig het, en getuig het dat hulle verhef sou word op die laaste dag; daarom ag die skuldiges die waarheid as hard, want dit sny hulle tot in die murg.
- 3 En nou, my broers, as julle regverdig was en ge-willig was om ag te slaan op die waarheid, en gehoor te gee daaraan, dat julle mag wandel in opregtheid voor God, dan sou julle nie murmureer vanweë die waarheid nie, en sê: Jy spreek harde dinge teenoor ons.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Nefi, my broers vermaan het met alle ywer, om die gebooie van die Here te onderhou.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat hulle hul verootmoedig het voor die Here tot so 'n mate dat ek blydskap en groot hoop gehad het vir hulle, dat hulle sou wandel in die weë van regverdigheid.
- 6 Nou, al hierdie dinge is gesê en gedoen terwyl my vader in 'n tent gewoon het in die vallei wat hy Lemuel genoem het.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Nefi, een van die dogters van Ismael tot vrou geneem het; en ook my broers het van die dogters van Ismael tot vrou geneem; en ook Soram het die oudste dogter van Ismael tot vrou geneem.
- 8 En so het my vader al die gebooie uitgevoer van die Here wat aan hom gegee was, en ook ek, Nefi, was uitermate geseën deur die Here.
- 9 En dit het gebeur dat die stem van die Here in die nag met my vader gespreek het en hom gebied het om die volgende dag sy reis in die wildernis voort te sit.

1 Nephi 16

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of speaking to my brethren, behold they said unto me: Thou hast declared unto us hard things, more than we are able to bear.

And it came to pass that I said unto them that I knew that I had spoken hard things against the wicked, according to the truth; and the righteous have I justified, and testified that they should be lifted up at the last day; wherefore, the guilty taketh the truth to be hard, for it cutteth them to the very center.

And now my brethren, if ye were righteous and were willing to hearken to the truth, and give heed unto it, that ye might walk uprightly before God, then ye would not murmur because of the truth, and say: Thou speakest hard things against us.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did exhort my brethren, with all diligence, to keep the commandments of the Lord.

And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord; insomuch that I had joy and great hopes of them, that they would walk in the paths of righteousness.

Now, all these things were said and done as my father dwelt in a tent in the valley which he called Lemuel.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, took one of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also, my brethren took of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also Zoram took the eldest daughter of Ishmael to wife.

And thus my father had fulfilled all the commandments of the Lord which had been given unto him. And also, I, Nephi, had been blessed of the Lord exceedingly.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord spake unto my father by night, and commanded him that on the morrow he should take his journey into the wilderness.

10 En dit het gebeur dat toe my vader die oggend opstaan, en uitgaan na die tentdeur, sien hy tot sy groot verbasing op die grond 'n ronde bal van sonderlinge vakmanskap; en dit was van suiwer brons. En binne in die bal was daar twee asse; en die een het in die rigting gewys waarheen ons moes gaan in die wildernis.

11 En dit het gebeur dat ons alles bymekaar gemaak het wat ons moes saamneem in die wildernis, en al die res van ons lewensmiddele wat die Here aan ons gegee het; en ons het saad geneem van alle soorte, so dat ons dit kon saamneem in die wildernis.

12 En dit het gebeur dat ons ons tente geneem en die wildernis binnegetrek het, oor die Laman-rivier.

13 En dit het gebeur dat ons vir 'n tydperk van vier dae lank gereis het, ongeveer in 'n suid-suidoostelike rigting, en ons het ons tente weer opgeslaan; en ons het die plek Sjaser genoem.

14 En dit het gebeur dat ons ons pyle en boë geneem, en die wildernis binnegegaan het om voedsel vir ons gesinne dood te maak; en nadat ons voedsel vir ons gesinne doodgemaak het, het ons weer teruggekeer na ons gesinne in die wildernis, na die plek Sjaser. En ons het weer die wildernis binnegetrek terwyl ons dieselfde rigting volg, en gebly het in die vrugbaarste dele van die wildernis, wat geleë was aan die grense naby die Rooi See.

15 En dit het gebeur dat ons vir 'n tydperk van baie dae lank gereis het, terwyl ons voedsel langs die pad doodgemaak het, met ons pyle en boë en ons klippe en ons slingers.

16 En ons het die aanwysings van die bal gevolg, wat ons gelei het in die vrugbaarder dele van die wildernis.

17 En nadat ons vir 'n tydperk van baie dae gereis het, het ons ons tente opgeslaan vir 'n tydlank sodat ons weer kon rus en voedsel kon bekom vir ons gesinne.

18 En dit het gebeur dat terwyl ek, Nephi, uitgegaan het om voedsel te bekom, kyk, ek het my boog gebreek, wat gemaak was van suiwer staal; en nadat ek my boog gebreek het, kyk, my broers was kwaad vir my oor die verlies van my boog, want ons het geen kos bekom nie.

And it came to pass that as my father arose in the morning, and went forth to the tent door, to his great astonishment he beheld upon the ground a round ball of curious workmanship; and it was of fine brass. And within the ball were two spindles; and the one pointed the way whither we should go into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that we did gather together whatsoever things we should carry into the wilderness, and all the remainder of our provisions which the Lord had given unto us; and we did take seed of every kind that we might carry into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that we did take our tents and depart into the wilderness, across the river Laman.

And it came to pass that we traveled for the space of four days, nearly a south-southeast direction, and we did pitch our tents again; and we did call the name of the place Shazer.

And it came to pass that we did take our bows and our arrows, and go forth into the wilderness to slay food for our families; and after we had slain food for our families we did return again to our families in the wilderness, to the place of Shazer. And we did go forth again in the wilderness, following the same direction, keeping in the most fertile parts of the wilderness, which were in the borders near the Red Sea.

And it came to pass that we did travel for the space of many days, slaying food by the way, with our bows and our arrows and our stones and our slings.

And we did follow the directions of the ball, which led us in the more fertile parts of the wilderness.

And after we had traveled for the space of many days, we did pitch our tents for the space of a time, that we might again rest ourselves and obtain food for our families.

And it came to pass that as I, Nephi, went forth to slay food, behold, I did break my bow, which was made of fine steel; and after I did break my bow, behold, my brethren were angry with me because of the loss of my bow, for we did obtain no food.

- 19 En dit het gebeur dat ons sonder kos teruggekeer het na ons gesinne, en omdat hulle baie moeg was, as gevolg van die reis, het hulle baie gely weens die gebrek aan kos.
- 20 En dit het gebeur dat Laman en Lemuel en die seuns van Ismael uitermate begin murmureer het, vanweë hulle lydings en verdrukkinge in die wildernis, en ook my vader het begin murmureer teen die Here sy God; ja, en hulle was almal uitermate bedroef sodat hulle gemurmureer het teen die Here.
- 21 Nou het dit gebeur dat ek, Nefi, omdat ek gely het saam met my broers vanweë die verlies van my boog, en omdat hulle boë hul veerkrag verloor het, het dit uitermate moeilik begin word; ja, in soverre dat ons geen kos kon bekom nie.
- 22 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Nefi, baie met my broers gespreek het omdat hulle weer hul harte verhard het, tot so 'n mate dat hulle gekla het teen die Here hulle God.
- 23 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Nefi, 'n boog van hout gemaak het, en uit 'n reguit stok 'n pyl; daarom, ek het myself bewapen met 'n boog en pyl, 'n slinger en met klippe. En ek het vir my vader gesê: Waarheen sal ek gaan om voedsel te bekom?
- 24 En dit het gebeur dat hy vir die Here gevra het, want hulle het hulle verootmoedig vanweë my woorde; want ek het baie dinge aan hulle gesê in die energie van my siel.
- 25 En dit het gebeur dat die stem van die Here tot my vader gekom het; en hy was waarlik gekasty as gevolg van sy murmering teen die Here, tot so 'n mate dat hy afgebring is tot die dieptes van droefheid.
- 26 En dit het gebeur dat die stem van die Here vir hom gesê het: Kyk na die bal, en sien die dinge wat geskrywe is.
- 27 En dit het gebeur dat toe my vader die dinge sien wat daar op die bal geskrywe staan, het hy gevrees en uitermate gebewe, en ook my broers en die seuns van Ismael en ons vroue.
- 28 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Nefi, die wysers gesien het wat in die bal was, dat hulle gewerk het ooreenkomstig die geloof en ywer en die gehoor wat ons aan hulle gegee het.

And it came to pass that we did return without food to our families, and being much fatigued, because of their journeying, they did suffer much for the want of food.

And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael did begin to murmur exceedingly, because of their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness; and also my father began to murmur against the Lord his God; yea, and they were all exceedingly sorrowful, even that they did murmur against the Lord.

Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, having been afflicted with my brethren because of the loss of my bow, and their bows having lost their springs, it began to be exceedingly difficult, yea, insomuch that we could obtain no food.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did speak much unto my brethren, because they had hardened their hearts again, even unto complaining against the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make out of wood a bow, and out of a straight stick, an arrow; wherefore, I did arm myself with a bow and an arrow, with a sling and with stones. And I said unto my father: Whither shall I go to obtain food?

And it came to pass that he did inquire of the Lord, for they had humbled themselves because of my words; for I did say many things unto them in the energy of my soul.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father; and he was truly chastened because of his murmuring against the Lord, insomuch that he was brought down into the depths of sorrow.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord said unto him: Look upon the ball, and behold the things which are written.

And it came to pass that when my father beheld the things which were written upon the ball, he did fear and tremble exceedingly, and also my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and our wives.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the pointers which were in the ball, that they did work according to the faith and diligence and heed which we did give unto them.

29 En daar was ook op hulle 'n nuwe skrywe, wat duidelik gelees kon word, wat ons insig gegee het in die weë van die Here; en dit is geskryf en verander van tyd tot tyd, volgens die geloof en ywer wat ons daaraan gegee het. En so sien ons dat die Here deur geringe middele groot dinge teweeg kan bring.

30 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Nepi, na die berg se top gegaan het volgens die aanwysings wat op die bal aangegee is.

31 En dit het gebeur dat ek wilde diere doodgemaak het, sodat ek voedsel vir ons gesinne bekom het.

32 En dit het gebeur dat ek na ons tente teruggekeer het, terwyl ek die diere dra wat ek doodgemaak het; en nou toe hulle sien dat ek voedsel bekom het, hoe groot was hulle blydschap! En dit het gebeur dat hulle hul verootmoedig het voor die Here, en dank betuig het aan Hom.

33 En dit het gebeur dat ons weer ons reis voortgesit het, terwyl ons in ongeveer dieselfde rigting reis as in die begin; en nadat ons vir 'n tydperk van baie dae lank gereis het, het ons weer ons tente opgeslaan, sodat ons vir 'n tydlank kon vertoef.

34 En dit het gebeur dat Ismael gesterwe het, en begrawe is op die plek wat Nahom genoem is.

35 En dit het gebeur dat die dogters van Ismael uitermate getreur het vanweë die verlies van hulle vader, en vanweë hulle verdrukkinge in die wildernis; en hulle het gemurmureer teen my vader omdat hy hulle uit die land Jerusalem gebring het, en gesê het: Ons vader is dood; ja, en ons het baie geswerwe in die wildernis, en ons het baie verdrukkinge gely, honger, dors en uitputting; en na al hierdie lyding moet ons in die wildernis van honger omkom.

36 En aldus het hulle gemurmureer teen my vader en ook teen my; en hulle was begerig om weer na Jerusalem terug te keer.

37 En Laman het vir Lemuel gesê, en ook vir die seuns van Ismael: Kyk, laat ons ons vader doodmaak, en ook ons broer Nepi, wat dit op hom geneem het om ons, wat sy ouer broers is, se heerser en leraar te wees.

And there was also written upon them a new writing, which was plain to be read, which did give us understanding concerning the ways of the Lord; and it was written and changed from time to time, according to the faith and diligence which we gave unto it. And thus we see that by small means the Lord can bring about great things.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did go forth up into the top of the mountain, according to the directions which were given upon the ball.

And it came to pass that I did slay wild beasts, inasmuch that I did obtain food for our families.

And it came to pass that I did return to our tents, bearing the beasts which I had slain; and now when they beheld that I had obtained food, how great was their joy! And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord, and did give thanks unto him.

And it came to pass that we did again take our journey, traveling nearly the same course as in the beginning; and after we had traveled for the space of many days we did pitch our tents again, that we might tarry for the space of a time.

And it came to pass that Ishmael died, and was buried in the place which was called Nahom.

And it came to pass that the daughters of Ishmael did mourn exceedingly, because of the loss of their father, and because of their afflictions in the wilderness; and they did murmur against my father, because he had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, saying: Our father is dead; yea, and we have wandered much in the wilderness, and we have suffered much affliction, hunger, thirst, and fatigue; and after all these sufferings we must perish in the wilderness with hunger.

And thus they did murmur against my father, and also against me; and they were desirous to return again to Jerusalem.

And Laman said unto Lemuel and also unto the sons of Ishmael: Behold, let us slay our father, and also our brother Nephi, who has taken it upon him to be our ruler and our teacher, who are his elder brethren.

38 Nou, hy sê dat die Here met hom gepraat het, en ook dat engele hom bedien het. Maar kyk, ons weet dat hy vir ons lieg; en hy vertel vir ons hierdie dinge, en hy doen baie dinge deur sy lis, sodat hy ons oë mag bedrieg, dinkende miskien, dat hy vir ons kan weglei na een of ander vreemde wildernis; en nadat hy ons weggelei het, het hy gedink om homself 'n koning en 'n heerser oor ons te maak, sodat hy met ons kan maak volgens sy wil en behae. En op hierdie wyse het my broer Laman hul harte tot toorn opgestook.

39 En dit het gebeur dat die Here met ons was, ja, en die stem van die Here het gekom en baie woorde met hulle gespreek, en hulle uitermate gekasty; en nadat hulle deur die stem van die Here gekasty is, het hulle hul toorn afgewend, en het bekeer van hulle sondes sodat die Here ons weer met voedsel geseën het sodat ons nie vergaan het nie.

Now, he says that the Lord has talked with him, and also that angels have ministered unto him. But behold, we know that he lies unto us; and he tells us these things, and he worketh many things by his cunning arts, that he may deceive our eyes, thinking, perhaps, that he may lead us away into some strange wilderness; and after he has led us away, he has thought to make himself a king and a ruler over us, that he may do with us according to his will and pleasure. And after this manner did my brother Laman stir up their hearts to anger.

And it came to pass that the Lord was with us, yea, even the voice of the Lord came and did speak many words unto them, and did chasten them exceedingly; and after they were chastened by the voice of the Lord they did turn away their anger, and did repent of their sins, insomuch that the Lord did bless us again with food, that we did not perish.

1 Nefi 17

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat ons weer op reis gegaan het in die wildernis; en ons het ongeveer ooswaarts gereis van daardie tyd af. En ons het gereis en deur baie verdrukking geworstel in die wildernis; en ons vroue het kinders gebaar in die wildernis.
- 2 En so groot was die seëninge van die Here oor ons, dat terwyl ons gelewe het van rou vleis in die wildernis, het ons vroue hulle kinders baie gesoog, en was sterk, ja, en wel soos die mans; en hulle het begin om hulle reise te verdra sonder murmurings.
- 3 En so sien ons dat die gebooië van die Here uitvoer moet word. En as dit so sou wees dat die kinders van mense God se gebooië onderhou, voed Hy hulle, en versterk hulle, en voorsien die middele waardeur hulle die ding kan uitvoer wat Hy hulle gebied het; daarom, Hy het middele aan ons voorsien terwyl ons in die wildernis gebly het.
- 4 En ons het vir 'n tydperk van baie jare lank in die wildernis gebly, ja, en wel agt jaar in die wildernis.
- 5 En ons het gekom by die land wat ons Oorvloed genoem het vanweë sy baie vrugte en ook wilde heuning; en al hierdie dinge is berei deur die Here sodat ons nie mag vergaan nie. En ons het die see gesien, wat ons Irreantoom genoem het, wat, wanneer dit vertaal word, baie waters beteken.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat ons ons tente opgeslaan het op die strand; en nieteenstaande ons baie verdrukkinge ondervind het en baie moeilikhede, ja, soveel dat ons hulle nie almal kan neerskryf nie, was ons uitermate verbly toe ons by die strand kom; en ons het die plek Oorvloed genoem, vanweë sy baie vrugte.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat nadat ek, Nefi, vir 'n tydperk van baie dae lank in die land Oorvloed was, het die stem van die Here na my gekom, en gesê het: Staand op, en bestyg die berg. En dit het gebeur dat ek opgestaan en die berg bestyg het, en geroep het tot die Here.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat die Here met my gespreek en gesê het: Jy moet 'n skip bou volgens die wyse wat Ek jou sal toon, sodat Ek jou mense kan wegbring oor hierdie waters.

1 Nephi 17

And it came to pass that we did again take our journey in the wilderness; and we did travel nearly eastward from that time forth. And we did travel and wade through much affliction in the wilderness; and our women did bear children in the wilderness.

And so great were the blessings of the Lord upon us, that while we did live upon raw meat in the wilderness, our women did give plenty of suck for their children, and were strong, yea, even like unto the men; and they began to bear their journeyings without murmurings.

And thus we see that the commandments of God must be fulfilled. And if it so be that the children of men keep the commandments of God he doth nourish them, and strengthen them, and provide means whereby they can accomplish the thing which he has commanded them; wherefore, he did provide means for us while we did sojourn in the wilderness.

And we did sojourn for the space of many years, yea, even eight years in the wilderness.

And we did come to the land which we called Bountiful, because of its much fruit and also wild honey; and all these things were prepared of the Lord that we might not perish. And we beheld the sea, which we called Irreantum, which, being interpreted, is many waters.

And it came to pass that we did pitch our tents by the seashore; and notwithstanding we had suffered many afflictions and much difficulty, yea, even so much that we cannot write them all, we were exceedingly rejoiced when we came to the seashore; and we called the place Bountiful, because of its much fruit.

And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been in the land of Bountiful for the space of many days, the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying: Arise, and get thee into the mountain. And it came to pass that I arose and went up into the mountain, and cried unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Thou shalt construct a ship, after the manner which I shall show thee, that I may carry thy people across these waters.

- 9 En ek het gesê: Here, waarheen sal ek gaan om erts te vind om te smelt, sodat ek gereedskap mag maak om die skip te bou volgens die wyse wat U my getoon het?
- 10 En dit het gebeur dat die Here my vertel het waarheen ek moes gaan om erts te vind, sodat ek gereedskap kon maak.
- 11 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Nepi, 'n blaasbalk van velde van diere gemaak het om die vuur mee aan te blaas; en nadat ek 'n blaasbalk gemaak het, sodat ek iets kon hê om die vuur mee aan te blaas, het ek twee klippe teen mekaar gekap sodat ek vuur kon maak.
- 12 Want die Here het tot dusver ons nie toegelaat om baie vuur te maak, terwyl ons gereis het in die wildernis nie; want Hy het gesê: Ek sal julle kos smaaklik maak sodat julle dit nie hoef te kook nie;
- 13 En Ek sal ook jul lig in die wildernis wees; en Ek sal die weg voor jul berei as dit so sou wees dat jul my gebooie sal onderhou: daarom, in soverre julle my gebooie onderhou, sal julle gelei word na die beloofde land; en julle sal weet dat dit deur My is dat julle gelei word.
- 14 Ja, en die Here het ook gesê dat: Nadat julle aangekom het in die beloofde land, sal julle weet dat Ek, die Here, God is; en dat Ek, die Here, julle gered het van vernietiging; ja, dat Ek julle uitbring het uit die land Jerusalem.
- 15 Daarom ek, Nepi, het probeer om die Here se gebooie te onderhou, en ek het my broers vermaan tot getrouheid en ywer.
- 16 En dit het gebeur dat ek gereedskap van die erts gemaak het wat ek gesmelt het uit die rots.
- 17 En toe my broers gesien het dat ek op die punt was om 'n skip te bou, het hulle begin murmureer teen my, en het gesê: Ons broer is 'n dwaas, want hy dink dat hy 'n skip kan bou; ja, en hy dink ook dat hy hierdie groot waters kan oorsteek.
- 18 En so het my broers gekla teen my, en was begerig dat hulle nie hoef te werk nie, want hulle het nie geglo dat ek 'n skip kon bou nie; ook wou hulle nie glo dat ek onderrig is deur die Here nie.

And I said: Lord, whither shall I go that I may find ore to molten, that I may make tools to construct the ship after the manner which thou hast shown unto me?

And it came to pass that the Lord told me whither I should go to find ore, that I might make tools.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make a bellows wherewith to blow the fire, of the skins of beasts; and after I had made a bellows, that I might have wherewith to blow the fire, I did smite two stones together that I might make fire.

For the Lord had not hitherto suffered that we should make much fire, as we journeyed in the wilderness; for he said: I will make thy food become sweet, that ye cook it not;

And I will also be your light in the wilderness; and I will prepare the way before you, if it so be that ye shall keep my commandments; wherefore, inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall be led towards the promised land; and ye shall know that it is by me that ye are led.

Yea, and the Lord said also that: After ye have arrived in the promised land, ye shall know that I, the Lord, am God; and that I, the Lord, did deliver you from destruction; yea, that I did bring you out of the land of Jerusalem.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did strive to keep the commandments of the Lord, and I did exhort my brethren to faithfulness and diligence.

And it came to pass that I did make tools of the ore which I did molten out of the rock.

And when my brethren saw that I was about to build a ship, they began to murmur against me, saying: Our brother is a fool, for he thinketh that he can build a ship; yea, and he also thinketh that he can cross these great waters.

And thus my brethren did complain against me, and were desirous that they might not labor, for they did not believe that I could build a ship; neither would they believe that I was instructed of the Lord.

19 En nou het dit gebeur dat ek Nepi, uitermate bedroef was vanweë die hardheid van hulle harte; en nou toe hulle sien dat ek begin het om bedroef te word, was hulle verheug in hulle harte, sodanig dat hulle hul oor my verbly, en gesê het: Ons het geweet dat jy nie 'n skip kon bou nie, want ons het geweet dat jy oordeel kortkom; daarom, jy kan nie so 'n groot taak uitvoer nie.

20 En jy is soos ons vader, weggelei deur die dwase inbeelding van sy hart; ja, hy het ons uitgelei uit die land Jerusalem en ons het rondgeswerwe al hierdie jare in die wildernis en ons vroue het gearbei terwyl hulle groot met kind was; en hulle het kinders gebaar in die wildernis en alle dinge gely, behalwe die dood; en dit sou beter gewees het as hulle gesterwe het voordat hulle uit Jerusalem uitgekom het as om hierdie verdrukkinge te ly.

21 Kyk, al hierdie jare het ons gely in die wildernis; gedurende welke tyd ons ons besittings kon geniet het en die land van ons erfenis; ja, en ons kon gelukkig gewees het.

22 En ons weet dat die volk wat in die land Jerusalem was, 'n regverdige volk was; want hulle het die insettinge en wette onderhou van die Here, en al sy gebooi volgens die wet van Moses; daarom weet ons dat hulle 'n regverdige volk is; en ons vader het hulle veroordeel, en het ons weggelei omdat ons op sy woorde ag geslaan het; ja, en ons broer is soos hy. En volgens hierdie wyse van spraak het my broers gemurmureer en gekla teen ons.

23 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Nepi, met hulle gespreek het, en gesê het: Glo julle dat ons vaders, wat die kinders van Israel was, uitgelei sou gewees het uit die hande van die Egiptenaars as hulle nie ag geslaan het op die woorde van die Here nie?

24 Ja, veronderstel julle dat hulle uit slawerny uitgelei sou gewees het, as die Here Moses nie gebied het om hulle uit slawerny te lei nie?

25 Nou weet julle dat die kinders van Israel in slawerny verkeer het; en julle weet dat hulle take opgelê was wat swaar was om te verdra; daarom, julle weet dat dit noodwendig 'n goeie ding moes gewees het vir hulle dat hulle uitgelei moes word uit slawerny.

And now it came to pass that I, Nephi, was exceedingly sorrowful because of the hardness of their hearts; and now when they saw that I began to be sorrowful they were glad in their hearts, insomuch that they did rejoice over me, saying: We knew that ye could not construct a ship, for we knew that ye were lacking in judgment; wherefore, thou canst not accomplish so great a work.

And thou art like unto our father, led away by the foolish imaginations of his heart; yea, he hath led us out of the land of Jerusalem, and we have wandered in the wilderness for these many years; and our women have toiled, being big with child; and they have borne children in the wilderness and suffered all things, save it were death; and it would have been better that they had died before they came out of Jerusalem than to have suffered these afflictions.

Behold, these many years we have suffered in the wilderness, which time we might have enjoyed our possessions and the land of our inheritance; yea, and we might have been happy.

And we know that the people who were in the land of Jerusalem were a righteous people; for they kept the statutes and judgments of the Lord, and all his commandments, according to the law of Moses; wherefore, we know that they are a righteous people; and our father hath judged them, and hath led us away because we would hearken unto his words; yea, and our brother is like unto him. And after this manner of language did my brethren murmur and complain against us.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake unto them, saying: Do ye believe that our fathers, who were the children of Israel, would have been led away out of the hands of the Egyptians if they had not hearkened unto the words of the Lord?

Yea, do ye suppose that they would have been led out of bondage, if the Lord had not commanded Moses that he should lead them out of bondage?

Now ye know that the children of Israel were in bondage; and ye know that they were laden with tasks, which were grievous to be borne; wherefore, ye know that it must needs be a good thing for them, that they should be brought out of bondage.

26 Nou weet julle dat Moses gebied is deur die Here om daardie groot werk te doen; en julle weet dat die Rooi See op sy bevel hiernatoe en daarnatoe verdeel het, en dat hulle deurgegaan het op droë grond.

27 Maar julle weet dat die Egiptenare verdrink het in die Rooi See, wat die leërs van Farao was.

28 En julle weet ook dat hulle gevoed is met manna in die wildernis.

29 Ja, en julle weet ook dat Moses, deur middel van sy bevel volgens die mag van God wat in hom was, die rots geslaan het, en daar het water uitgekom, sodat die kinders van Israel hulle dors kon les.

30 En alhoewel hulle gelei is, terwyl die Here hulle God, hulle Verlosser, hulle vooruitgegaan het, en hulle bedags gelei en snags lig gegee het, en alle dinge vir hulle gedoen het wat vir 'n mens raadsaam was om te ontvang, het hulle hul harte verhard en hul verstand verblind, en uitgevaar teen Moses en teen die ware en lewende God.

31 En dit het gebeur dat volgens sy woord het Hy hulle vernietig, en volgens sy woord het Hy hulle gelei; en volgens sy woord het Hy alle dinge gedoen vir hulle; en niks is gedoen tensy deur sy woord nie.

32 En nadat hulle die Jordaanrivier oorgesteek het, het Hy hulle sterk gemaak sodat hulle die kinders van die land kon verdrywe, ja, en hulle verstrooi het tot vernietiging.

33 En nou, glo julle dat die kinders van hierdie land, wat in die land van belofte was, wat verdrywe is deur ons vaders, veronderstel julle dat hulle regverdig was? Kyk, ek sê vir julle, Nee.

34 Veronderstel julle dat ons vaders veel beter sou gewees het as hulle, as hulle regverdig was? Ek sê vir julle, Nee.

35 Kyk, die Here ag alle vlees as een; hy wat regverdig is word begunstig deur God. Maar kyk, hierdie volk het elke woord van God verwerp, en hulle was ryp in ongeregtigheid; en die volheid van die toorn van God was op hulle; en die Here het die land vervloek teen hulle en dit geseën vir ons vaders; ja, Hy het dit vervloek teen hulle tot hulle vernietiging, en Hy het dit geseën aan ons vaders sodat hulle mag daarvoor verkry het.

Now ye know that Moses was commanded of the Lord to do that great work; and ye know that by his word the waters of the Red Sea were divided hither and thither, and they passed through on dry ground.

But ye know that the Egyptians were drowned in the Red Sea, who were the armies of Pharaoh.

And ye also know that they were fed with manna in the wilderness.

Yea, and ye also know that Moses, by his word according to the power of God which was in him, smote the rock, and there came forth water, that the children of Israel might quench their thirst.

And notwithstanding they being led, the Lord their God, their Redeemer, going before them, leading them by day and giving light unto them by night, and doing all things for them which were expedient for man to receive, they hardened their hearts and blinded their minds, and reviled against Moses and against the true and living God.

And it came to pass that according to his word he did destroy them; and according to his word he did lead them; and according to his word he did do all things for them; and there was not any thing done save it were by his word.

And after they had crossed the river Jordan he did make them mighty unto the driving out of the children of the land, yea, unto the scattering them to destruction.

And now, do ye suppose that the children of this land, who were in the land of promise, who were driven out by our fathers, do ye suppose that they were righteous? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

Do ye suppose that our fathers would have been more choice than they if they had been righteous? I say unto you, Nay.

Behold, the Lord esteemeth all flesh in one; he that is righteous is favored of God. But behold, this people had rejected every word of God, and they were ripe in iniquity; and the fulness of the wrath of God was upon them; and the Lord did curse the land against them, and bless it unto our fathers; yea, he did curse it against them unto their destruction, and he did bless it unto our fathers unto their obtaining power over it.

36 Kyk, die Here het die aarde geskape sodat dit bewoon moes word; en Hy het sy kinders geskape sodat hulle dit moes besit.

37 En Hy wek 'n regverdige nasie op, en vernietig die nasies van die bose.

38 En Hy lei die regverdige weg na begeerlike lande, en die bose vernietig Hy, en vervloek die land vanweë hulle.

39 Hy heers hoog in die hemele, want dit is sy troon, en hierdie aarde is sy voetbank.

40 En Hy het diegene lief wat Hom as hulle God wil hê. Kyk, Hy het ons vaders liefgehad, en 'n verbond met hulle gesluit, ja, naamlik Abraham, en Isak, en Jakob; en Hy het die verbonde onthou wat Hy gesluit het; daarom het Hy hulle uitbring uit Egipteland.

41 En Hy het hulle gekasty in die woestyn met sy roede; want hulle het hul harte verhard, net soos julle; en die Here het hulle gekasty vanweë hul ongeregtigheid. Hy het vurige vlieënde slange ingestuur onder hulle; en nadat hulle gebyt is, het Hy 'n weg berei dat hulle genees mag word; en die moeite wat hulle moes doen, was om te kyk; en vanweë die eenvoud van die weg, of die gemaklikheid daarvan, was daar baie wat gesterwe het.

42 En hulle het hul harte verhard van tyd tot tyd, en hulle het uitgevaar teen Moses en ook teen God; desnieteenstaande, julle weet dat hulle deur sy ongeëwenaarde mag die land van belofte binnegelei is.

43 En nou, na al hierdie dinge, het die tyd gekom dat hulle boos geword het, ja, byna tot rypheid toe; en ek weet nie of hulle op die punt staan om vandag vernietig te word nie, want ek weet dat die dag sekerlik moet kom wanneer hulle vernietig moet word, behalwe 'n paar, wat weggelei sal word in slawerny.

44 Daarom, die Here het my vader gebied om in die wildernis in te trek; en die Jode het ook gesoek om sy lewe te neem; ja, en julle het ook gesoek om sy lewe te neem; daarom, julle is moordenaars in julle harte en julle is soos hulle.

Behold, the Lord hath created the earth that it should be inhabited; and he hath created his children that they should possess it.

And he raiseth up a righteous nation, and destroyeth the nations of the wicked.

And he leadeth away the righteous into precious lands, and the wicked he destroyeth, and curseth the land unto them for their sakes.

He ruleth high in the heavens, for it is his throne, and this earth is his footstool.

And he loveth those who will have him to be their God. Behold, he loved our fathers, and he covenanted with them, yea, even Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; and he remembered the covenants which he had made; wherefore, he did bring them out of the land of Egypt.

And he did straiten them in the wilderness with his rod; for they hardened their hearts, even as ye have; and the Lord straitened them because of their iniquity. He sent fiery flying serpents among them; and after they were bitten he prepared a way that they might be healed; and the labor which they had to perform was to look; and because of the simplicity of the way, or the easiness of it, there were many who perished.

And they did harden their hearts from time to time, and they did revile against Moses, and also against God; nevertheless, ye know that they were led forth by his matchless power into the land of promise.

And now, after all these things, the time has come that they have become wicked, yea, nearly unto ripeness; and I know not but they are at this day about to be destroyed; for I know that the day must surely come that they must be destroyed, save a few only, who shall be led away into captivity.

Wherefore, the Lord commanded my father that he should depart into the wilderness; and the Jews also sought to take away his life; yea, and ye also have sought to take away his life; wherefore, ye are murderers in your hearts and ye are like unto them.

45 Julle is gou om ongeregtigheid te doen, maar traag om die Here julle God te onthou. Julle het 'n engel gesien, en hy het met julle gespreek; ja, julle het sy stem gehoor van tyd tot tyd; en hy het met julle gespreek met 'n stil klein stemmetjie, maar julle was nie tot gevoel in staat nie, sodat julle sy woorde nie kon voel nie; daarom, hy het met julle gespreek soos met 'n donderstem, wat die aarde laat skud het asof dit uitmekaar sou breek.

46 En julle weet ook dat deur die krag van sy almagtige woord kan Hy veroorsaak dat die aarde verbygaan; ja, en julle weet dat deur sy woord Hy die ruwe plekke gelyk kan maak, en die gelyke plekke sal opgebreek word. O dan, waarom is dit, dat julle so hard kan wees in julle harte?

47 Kyk, my siel word verskeur deur smart vanweë julle, en my hart is gepynig; ek vrees dat julle vir ewig verwerp sal word. Kyk, ek is vol van die Gees van God, in soverre dat my gestalte geen krag het nie.

48 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe ek hierdie woorde gespreek het, was hulle kwaad vir my, en was begeerig om my in die dieptes van die see te werp; en toe hulle na vore kom om hulle hande op my te lê, het ek met hulle gespreek, en gesê: In die naam van die Almagtige God, beveel ek julle om my nie aan te raak nie, want ek is vervul met die krag van God, en wel tot vertering van my vlees; en wie ook al sy hande op my sal lê, sal verdor net soos 'n droë riet; en hy sal soos niks wees voor die almag van God nie, want God sal hom tref.

49 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Nephi, vir hulle gesê het dat hulle nie meer teen hulle vader moes murmureer nie, nóg moes hulle hul arbeid van my weerhou, want God het my gebied om 'n skip te bou.

50 En ek het vir hulle gesê: As God my gebied het om alle dinge te doen, kan ek hulle doen. As Hy my sou gebied dat ek vir hierdie water moes sê, Wees aarde, sou dit aarde wees; en as ek dit sou sê, sal dit geskied.

51 En nou, as die Here sulke groot mag het, en soveel wonderwerke verrig onder die kinders van mense, hoekom kan Hy my nie leer dat ek 'n skip kan bou nie?

Ye are swift to do iniquity but slow to remember the Lord your God. Ye have seen an angel, and he spake unto you; yea, ye have heard his voice from time to time; and he hath spoken unto you in a still small voice, but ye were past feeling, that ye could not feel his words; wherefore, he has spoken unto you like unto the voice of thunder, which did cause the earth to shake as if it were to divide asunder.

And ye also know that by the power of his almighty word he can cause the earth that it shall pass away; yea, and ye know that by his word he can cause the rough places to be made smooth, and smooth places shall be broken up. O, then, why is it, that ye can be so hard in your hearts?

Behold, my soul is rent with anguish because of you, and my heart is pained; I fear lest ye shall be cast off forever. Behold, I am full of the Spirit of God, insomuch that my frame has no strength.

And now it came to pass that when I had spoken these words they were angry with me, and were desirous to throw me into the depths of the sea; and as they came forth to lay their hands upon me I spake unto them, saying: In the name of the Almighty God, I command you that ye touch me not, for I am filled with the power of God, even unto the consuming of my flesh; and whoso shall lay his hands upon me shall wither even as a dried reed; and he shall be as naught before the power of God, for God shall smite him.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto them that they should murmur no more against their father; neither should they withhold their labor from me, for God had commanded me that I should build a ship.

And I said unto them: If God had commanded me to do all things I could do them. If he should command me that I should say unto this water, be thou earth, it should be earth; and if I should say it, it would be done.

And now, if the Lord has such great power, and has wrought so many miracles among the children of men, how is it that he cannot instruct me, that I should build a ship?

52 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Nephi, baie dinge vir my broers gesê het sodat hulle beskaamd was, en kon nie teen my stry nie; ook het hulle nie gedurf om hulle hande op my te lê of my aan te raak met hulle vingers vir 'n tydperk van baie dae nie. Nou durf hulle dit nie doen nie uit vrees dat hulle voor my sou verdor, so kragtig was die Gees van God; en so het dit op hulle ingewerk.

53 En dit het gebeur dat die Here vir my gesê het: Streck weer jou hand uit na jou broers, en hulle sal nie verder voor jou verdor nie, maar Ek sal hulle skok, sê die Here, dit sal Ek doen, sodat hulle mag weet dat Ek die Here hulle God is.

54 En dit het gebeur dat ek my hand uitgestrek het na my broers, en hulle het nie voor my verdor nie; maar die Here het hulle geskud, en wel volgens die woord wat Hy gespreek het.

55 En nou, het hulle gesê: Ons weet met sekerheid dat die Here met jou is, want ons weet dat dit die mag van die Here is wat ons geskud het. En hulle het voor my neergeval, en was op die punt om my te aanbid, maar ek wou hulle dit nie toelaat nie, en gesê: Ek is julle broer, ja, naamlik julle jonger broer; daarom aanbid die Here julle God en eer jul vader en jul moeder, sodat julle dae verleng mag wees in die land wat die Here julle God aan julle sal gee.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said many things unto my brethren, insomuch that they were confounded and could not contend against me; neither durst they lay their hands upon me nor touch me with their fingers, even for the space of many days. Now they durst not do this lest they should wither before me, so powerful was the Spirit of God; and thus it had wrought upon them.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thine hand again unto thy brethren, and they shall not wither before thee, but I will shock them, saith the Lord, and this will I do, that they may know that I am the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that I stretched forth my hand unto my brethren, and they did not wither before me; but the Lord did shake them, even according to the word which he had spoken.

And now, they said: We know of a surety that the Lord is with thee, for we know that it is the power of the Lord that has shaken us. And they fell down before me, and were about to worship me, but I would not suffer them, saying: I am thy brother, yea, even thy younger brother; wherefore, worship the Lord thy God, and honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long in the land which the Lord thy God shall give thee.

1 Nefi 18

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat hulle die Here aanbid het, en het saam met my gegaan; en ons het die hout bewerk met sonderlinge vakmanskap. En die Here het my van tyd tot tyd gewys op watter manier ek die hout vir die skip moes bewerk.
- 2 Nou ek, Nephi, het nie die hout bewerk volgens die wyse wat deur mense geleer word nie, nóg het ek die skip gebou volgens die wyse van die mens; maar ek het dit gebou op die wyse wat die Here my getoon het; daarom was dit nie volgens die wyse van die mens nie.
- 3 En ek, Nephi, het dikwels opgegaan na die berg, en ek het dikwels gebid tot die Here; daarom het die Here aan my groot dinge getoon.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat nadat ek die skip voltooi het, volgens die woord van die Here, het my broers gesien dat dit goed was, en dat die vakmanskap daarvan uitermate goed was; daarom, hulle het hul weer verootmoedig voor die Here.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat die stem van die Here tot my vader gekom het, dat ons moes opstaan en afgaan in die skip.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat die volgende dag, nadat ons alle dinge voorberei het, baie vrugte en vleis van die wildernis, en heuning in oorfloed, en voorraad volgens dit wat die Here ons gebied het, het ons afgegaan in die skip, met al ons vrag en ons sade, en wat ook al ons met ons saamgebring het, elkeen volgens sy ouderdom; daarom, ons het almal afgegaan in die skip, met ons vroue en ons kinders.
- 7 En nou, my vader het twee seuns verwek in die wildernis; die oudste is Jakob genoem en die jongste Josef.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat nadat ons almal afgegaan het in die skip, en ons ons voorrade saam met ons geneem het en dinge wat ons gebied is, het ons uitgevaar op die see en is gedrywe voor die wind na die beloofde land.

1 Nephi 18

And it came to pass that they did worship the Lord, and did go forth with me; and we did work timbers of curious workmanship. And the Lord did show me from time to time after what manner I should work the timbers of the ship.

Now I, Nephi, did not work the timbers after the manner which was learned by men, neither did I build the ship after the manner of men; but I did build it after the manner which the Lord had shown unto me; wherefore, it was not after the manner of men.

And I, Nephi, did go into the mount oft, and I did pray oft unto the Lord; wherefore the Lord showed unto me great things.

And it came to pass that after I had finished the ship, according to the word of the Lord, my brethren beheld that it was good, and that the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine; wherefore, they did humble themselves again before the Lord.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father, that we should arise and go down into the ship.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, after we had prepared all things, much fruits and meat from the wilderness, and honey in abundance, and provisions according to that which the Lord had commanded us, we did go down into the ship, with all our loading and our seeds, and whatsoever thing we had brought with us, every one according to his age; wherefore, we did all go down into the ship, with our wives and our children.

And now, my father had begat two sons in the wilderness; the elder was called Jacob and the younger Joseph.

And it came to pass after we had all gone down into the ship, and had taken with us our provisions and things which had been commanded us, we did put forth into the sea and were driven forth before the wind towards the promised land.

9 En nadat ons voortgedrywe is voor die wind vir 'n tydperk van baie dae lank, kyk, my broers en die seuns van Ismael en ook hul vroue het begin pret maak, sodat hulle begin het om te dans, en te sing, en om met baie ruheid te praat, ja, sodanig dat hulle vergeet het deur watter krag hulle gebring is tot daardie plek; ja, hulle het hulle te buite gegaan met oormatige ruheid.

10 En ek, Nephi, het uitermate begin vrees dat die Here vir ons kwaad sou wees, en ons sou tref vanweë ons ongeregtheid, sodat ons opgesluk sou word deur die dieptes van die see; daarom, het ek, Nephi, met hulle begin spreek met baie erns; maar kyk, hulle was kwaad vir my, en het gesê: Ons wil nie dat ons jonger broer 'n heerser oor ons moet wees nie.

11 En dit het gebeur dat Laman en Lemuel my gegryp het en vasgebind het met toue, en hulle het my behandel met baie gewelddadigheid; desnieteenstaande, die Here het dit toegelaat ten einde sy krag te toon, sodat sy woord vervul sou word wat Hy spreek het aangaande die bose.

12 En dit het gebeur dat nadat hulle my tot so 'n mate vasgebind het dat ek nie kon beweeg nie, het die kompas, wat berei is deur die Here, opgehou om te werk.

13 Daarom, hulle het nie geweet in watter rigting hulle die skip moes stuur nie, met die gevolg dat daar 'n groot storm opgekom het, ja 'n groot en vreeslike stormwind, en ons is teruggedrywe op die waters vir 'n tydperk van drie dae; en hulle het uitermate begin bang word dat hulle in die see sou verdrink; nietemin het hulle my nie losgemaak nie.

14 En op die vierde dag, waarop ons teruggedryf is, het die stormwind uitermate kwaai begin woed.

15 En dit het gebeur dat ons op die punt was om opgesluk te word in die dieptes van die see. En nadat ons vir 'n tydperk van vier dae teruggedryf is op die waters, het my broers begin besef dat die oordele van God op hulle was, en dat hulle sou omkom, tensy hulle bekeer van hulle ongeregtighede; daarom, hulle het na my gekom, en die toue losgemaak wat op my gewigte was, en kyk, hulle was uitermate geswel; en ook my enkels was baie geswel, en groot was die pyn daarvan.

And after we had been driven forth before the wind for the space of many days, behold, my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and also their wives began to make themselves merry, insomuch that they began to dance, and to sing, and to speak with much rudeness, yea, even that they did forget by what power they had been brought thither; yea, they were lifted up unto exceeding rudeness.

And I, Nephi, began to fear exceedingly lest the Lord should be angry with us, and smite us because of our iniquity, that we should be swallowed up in the depths of the sea; wherefore, I, Nephi, began to speak to them with much soberness; but behold they were angry with me, saying: We will not that our younger brother shall be a ruler over us.

And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel did take me and bind me with cords, and they did treat me with much harshness; nevertheless, the Lord did suffer it that he might show forth his power, unto the fulfilling of his word which he had spoken concerning the wicked.

And it came to pass that after they had bound me insomuch that I could not move, the compass, which had been prepared of the Lord, did cease to work.

Wherefore, they knew not whither they should steer the ship, insomuch that there arose a great storm, yea, a great and terrible tempest, and we were driven back upon the waters for the space of three days; and they began to be frightened exceedingly lest they should be drowned in the sea; nevertheless they did not loose me.

And on the fourth day, which we had been driven back, the tempest began to be exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that we were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea. And after we had been driven back upon the waters for the space of four days, my brethren began to see that the judgments of God were upon them, and that they must perish save that they should repent of their iniquities; wherefore, they came unto me, and loosed the bands which were upon my wrists, and behold they had swollen exceedingly; and also mine ankles were much swollen, and great was the soreness thereof.

- 16 Desnieteenstaande, ek het op my God vertrou, en ek het Hom die hele dag lank geprys; en ek het nie gemurmureer teen die Here vanweë my verdrukkinge nie.
- 17 Nou, my vader, Lehi, het baie dinge met hulle gespreek, en ook met die seuns van Ismael; maar, kyk, hulle het baie dreigings geblaas teen enigeen wat vir my sou praat; en omdat my ouers al baie oud was, en baie smart gely het vanweë hulle kinders, is hulle neergebring, ja, tot op hulle siekbed.
- 18 Vanweë hulle smart en groot droefheid, en die ongeregtigheid van my broers, het hulle baie na daaraan gekom om weggevoer te word uit hierdie tyd om hulle God te ontmoet; ja, hulle grys hare was byna sover gebring om neergelê te word in die stof; ja, hulle was naby daaraan om met droefheid gewerp te word in 'n watergraf.
- 19 En Jakob en Josef ook, wat jonk was, en baie voeding nodig gehad het, was bedroef vanweë die verdrukkinge van hulle moeder; en ook my vrou met haar tranes en gebede, en ook my kinders, het nie die harte van my broers versag sodat hulle my sou losmaak nie.
- 20 En daar was niks behalwe die krag van God, wat hulle gedreig het met vernietiging, wat hulle harte kon versag nie; daarom, toe hulle sien dat hulle opgesluk gaan word in die dieptes van die see, het hulle bekeer van die ding wat hulle gedoen het, sodat hulle my losgemaak het.
- 21 En dit het gebeur dat nadat hulle my losgemaak het, kyk, toe neem ek die kompas, en dit het gewerk soos ek dit verlang het. En dit het gebeur dat ek gebid het tot die Here; en nadat ek gebid het, het die winde bedaar, en die storm het bedaar, en daar was 'n groot kalmte.
- 22 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Nephi, die skip gestuur het, sodat ons weer geseil het na die beloofde land.
- 23 En dit het gebeur dat nadat ons vir 'n tydperk van baie dae geseil het, het ons aangekom by die beloofde land; en ons het uitgegaan op die land en ons tente opgeslaan; en ons het dit die beloofde land genoem.

Nevertheless, I did look unto my God, and I did praise him all the day long; and I did not murmur against the Lord because of mine afflictions.

Now my father, Lehi, had said many things unto them, and also unto the sons of Ishmael; but, behold, they did breathe out much threatenings against anyone that should speak for me; and my parents being stricken in years, and having suffered much grief because of their children, they were brought down, yea, even upon their sick-beds.

Because of their grief and much sorrow, and the iniquity of my brethren, they were brought near even to be carried out of this time to meet their God; yea, their grey hairs were about to be brought down to lie low in the dust; yea, even they were near to be cast with sorrow into a watery grave.

And Jacob and Joseph also, being young, having need of much nourishment, were grieved because of the afflictions of their mother; and also my wife with her tears and prayers, and also my children, did not soften the hearts of my brethren that they would loose me.

And there was nothing save it were the power of God, which threatened them with destruction, could soften their hearts; wherefore, when they saw that they were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea they repented of the thing which they had done, insomuch that they loosed me.

And it came to pass after they had loosed me, behold, I took the compass, and it did work whither I desired it. And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord; and after I had prayed the winds did cease, and the storm did cease, and there was a great calm.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did guide the ship, that we sailed again towards the promised land.

And it came to pass that after we had sailed for the space of many days we did arrive at the promised land; and we went forth upon the land, and did pitch our tents; and we did call it the promised land.

24 En dit het gebeur dat ons die grond begin bewerk het, en ons het begin om sade te plant; ja, ons het al ons saad in die grond geplant, wat ons van die land Jerusalem gebring het. En dit het gebeur dat dit uitermate gegroei het; daarom, ons was geseën met oorvloed.

25 En dit het gebeur dat ons in die land van belofte gevind het, soos ons rondgereis het in die wildernis, dat daar diere in die woude was van alle soorte, beide die koei en die os, en die esel en die perd, en die bok en die wildsbok, en allerhande soorte wilde diere, wat vir die gebruik van die mens was. En ons het allerhande soorte erts gevind, beide van goud, en van silwer, en van brons.

And it came to pass that we did begin to till the earth, and we began to plant seeds; yea, we did put all our seeds into the earth, which we had brought from the land of Jerusalem. And it came to pass that they did grow exceedingly; wherefore, we were blessed in abundance.

And it came to pass that we did find upon the land of promise, as we journeyed in the wilderness, that there were beasts in the forests of every kind, both the cow and the ox, and the ass and the horse, and the goat and the wild goat, and all manner of wild animals, which were for the use of men. And we did find all manner of ore, both of gold, and of silver, and of copper.

1 Nefi 19

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat die Here my gebied het, daarom het ek plate gemaak van erts sodat ek op hulle die kroniek van my volk kon graveer. En op die plate wat ek gemaak het, het ek die kroniek van my vader ge-graveer, en ook ons reise in die wildernis, en die profesieë van my vader; en ook baie van my eie profesieë het ek op hulle gegraveer.
- 2 En ek het op daardie tydstip nie geweet toe ek hulle gemaak het, dat ek gebied sou word deur die Here om hierdie plate te maak nie; daarom, die kroniek van my vader, en die geslagsregister van sy vaders, en die grootste gedeelte van al ons handeling in die wildernis is gegraveer op daardie eerste plate waarvan ek gespreek het; daarom, die dinge wat gebeur het voordat ek hierdie plate gemaak het, is in der waarheid, meer in die besonder van melding gemaak op die eerste plate.
- 3 En nadat ek hierdie plate gemaak het by wyse van bevel, het ek, Nefi, 'n gebod ontvang dat die bediening en die profesieë, die eenvoudiger en kosbaarder dele daarvan op hierdie plate geskrywe moes word; en dat die dinge wat geskrywe is, behou moes word vir die lering van my volk, wat die land sou besit, en ook vir ander wyse doeleindes, welke doeleindes bekend is aan die Here.
- 4 Daarom, ek, Nefi, het 'n kroniek gemaak op die ander plate, wat 'n kroniek gee, met ander woorde 'n meer uitgebreide kroniek gee van die oorloë en twiste en vernietigings van my volk. En dit het ek gedoen, en my volk beveel wat hulle moes doen nadat ek heengegaan het; en dat hierdie plate oorgedra moes word van die een geslag na die ander, of van een profeet na die ander, tot verdere bevel van die Here.
- 5 En 'n kroniek van hoe ek dié plate gemaak het, sal hierna gegee word; en dan, kyk, ek gaan voort volgens dít wat ek gespreek het; en dit doen ek sodat die heiliger dinge behou mag word vir die kennis van my volk.

1 Nephi 19

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded me, wherefore I did make plates of ore that I might engraven upon them the record of my people. And upon the plates which I made I did engraven the record of my father, and also our journeyings in the wilderness, and the prophecies of my father; and also many of mine own prophecies have I engraven upon them.

And I knew not at the time when I made them that I should be commanded of the Lord to make these plates; wherefore, the record of my father, and the genealogy of his fathers, and the more part of all our proceedings in the wilderness are engraven upon those first plates of which I have spoken; wherefore, the things which transpired before I made these plates are, of a truth, more particularly made mention upon the first plates.

And after I had made these plates by way of commandment, I, Nephi, received a commandment that the ministry and the prophecies, the more plain and precious parts of them, should be written upon these plates; and that the things which were written should be kept for the instruction of my people, who should possess the land, and also for other wise purposes, which purposes are known unto the Lord.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did make a record upon the other plates, which gives an account, or which gives a greater account of the wars and contentions and destructions of my people. And this have I done, and commanded my people what they should do after I was gone; and that these plates should be handed down from one generation to another, or from one prophet to another, until further commandments of the Lord.

And an account of my making these plates shall be given hereafter; and then, behold, I proceed according to that which I have spoken; and this I do that the more sacred things may be kept for the knowledge of my people.

- 6 Desnieteenstaande, ek skryf niks op die plate nie behalwe as ek dink dat dit heilig is. En nou, as ek fouteer, so ook het hulle van ouds gefouteer; nie dat ek my wil verontskuldig vanweë ander mense nie, maar vanweë die swakheid wat in my is, volgens die vlees, wil ek myself verontskuldig.
- 7 Want die dinge wat sommige mense van groot waarde ag, beide vir die liggaam en siel, word as nietig beskou deur ander, en vertrap dit onder hulle voete. Ja, inderdaad die Waaragtige God van Israel vertrap mense onder hul voete; ek sê, vertrap onder hul voete, maar ek sal in ander woorde spreek—hulle ag Hom as nietig, en slaan nie ag op die stem van sy raadgewinge nie.
- 8 En kyk, Hy kom, volgens die woorde van die engel, seshonderd jaar vanaf die tyd dat my vader Jerusalem verlaat het.
- 9 En die wêreld, vanweë hul ongeregtigheid, sal Hom as nietig ag; daarom gésel hulle Hom, en Hy verdra dit; en hulle slaan Hom, en Hy verdra dit. Ja, hulle spoeg op Hom, en Hy verdra dit, vanweë sy liefdevolle teerheid en lankmoedigheid teenoor die kinders van mense.
- 10 En die God van ons vaders, wat uitgelei is uit Egipteland, uit slawerny, en ook bewaar is in die wildernis deur Hom, ja, die God van Abraham, en van Isak, en die God van Jakob, gee Homself, volgens die woorde van die engel, as 'n mens oor in die hande van goddelose manne, om verhoog te word volgens die woorde van Senok, en om gekruisig te word, volgens die woorde van Neüm, en om neergelê te word in 'n grafkelder, volgens die woorde van Zenos, wat hy gespreek het aangaande die drie dae van duisternis, wat as teken gegee sou word van sy dood aan diegene wat die eilande van die see sou bewoon, en veral gegee word aan diegene wat van die huis van Israel is.
- 11 Want so het die profeet gespreek: Die Here God sal sekerlik die hele huis van Israel op daardie dag besoek, sommige met sy stem, vanweë hulle regverdigheid, tot hulle groot blydskap en heil, en ander met die donderslae en weerligstrale van sy krag, deur stormwind, deur vuur, en deur rook, en deur mis van die duisternis, en deur die oopmaak van die aarde, en deur berge wat opgestoot sal word.

Nevertheless, I do not write anything upon plates save it be that I think it be sacred. And now, if I do err, even did they err of old; not that I would excuse myself because of other men, but because of the weakness which is in me, according to the flesh, I would excuse myself.

For the things which some men esteem to be of great worth, both to the body and soul, others set at naught and trample under their feet. Yea, even the very God of Israel do men trample under their feet; I say, trample under their feet but I would speak in other words—they set him at naught, and hearken not to the voice of his counsels.

And behold he cometh, according to the words of the angel, in six hundred years from the time my father left Jerusalem.

And the world, because of their iniquity, shall judge him to be a thing of naught; wherefore they scourge him, and he suffereth it; and they smite him, and he suffereth it. Yea, they spit upon him, and he suffereth it, because of his loving kindness and his long-suffering towards the children of men.

And the God of our fathers, who were led out of Egypt, out of bondage, and also were preserved in the wilderness by him, yea, the God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, yieldeth himself, according to the words of the angel, as a man, into the hands of wicked men, to be lifted up, according to the words of Zenock, and to be crucified, according to the words of Neum, and to be buried in a sepulchre, according to the words of Zenos, which he spake concerning the three days of darkness, which should be a sign given of his death unto those who should inhabit the isles of the sea, more especially given unto those who are of the house of Israel.

For thus spake the prophet: The Lord God surely shall visit all the house of Israel at that day, some with his voice, because of their righteousness, unto their great joy and salvation, and others with the thunderings and the lightnings of his power, by tempest, by fire, and by smoke, and vapor of darkness, and by the opening of the earth, and by mountains which shall be carried up.

- 12 En al hierdie dinge moet sekerlik kom, sê die profeet Zenos. En die rotse van die aarde moet skeur; en vanweë die gekreun van die aarde, sal baie van die konings van die eilande van die see deur die inwerking van die Gees van God uitroep: Die God van die natuur ly.
- 13 En wat diegene betref wat by Jerusalem is, sê die profeet, hulle sal gegésel word deur alle volke, omdat hulle die God van Israel kruisig, en hulle harte afwend, terwyl hulle tekens en wonders, en die krag en heerlikheid van die God van Israel verwerp.
- 14 En omdat hulle hul harte afwend, sê die profeet, en die Heilige Een van Israel verag het, sal hulle dwaal in die vlees, en vergaan, en 'n bespotting en 'n smaad word, en gehaat word deur alle nasies.
- 15 Desnieteenstaande, wanneer daardie dag kom, sê die profeet, dat hulle nie meer hulle harte afwend van die Heilige Een van Israel nie, dan sal Hy die verbonde wat Hy met hulle vaders gesluit het in herinnering roep.
- 16 Ja, dan sal Hy die eilande van die see in herinnering roep; ja, en al die volke wat van die huis van Israel is, sal Ek terugbring, sê die Here, volgens die woorde van die profeet Zenos, vanuit die vier hoeke van die aarde.
- 17 Ja, en die hele aarde sal die heil van die Here sien, sê die profeet; elke nasie, stam, taal en volk sal gesê wees.
- 18 En ek, Nephi, het hierdie dinge vir my volk geskrywe, sodat ek hulle miskien mag oorreed dat hulle die Here hulle Verlosser in gedagtenis hou.
- 19 Daarom, ek spreek met die hele huis van Israel, as dit so mag wees dat hulle hierdie dinge sou verkry.
- 20 Want kyk, ek voel die werkinge van die Gees, wat my uitput sodat al my gewigte swak is, vir diegene wat in Jerusalem is; want as die Here nie barmhartig was om dinge aangaande hulle aan my te toon nie, net soos Hy aan die profete van ouds getoon het, sou ek ook vergaan het.
- 21 En Hy het waarlik aan die profete van ouds alle dinge aangaande hulle getoon; en ook het Hy getoon aan baie aangaande ons; daarom, dit moet noodwendig wees dat ons weet aangaande hulle, want dit is geskrywe op die plate van brons.

And all these things must surely come, saith the prophet Zenos. And the rocks of the earth must rend; and because of the groanings of the earth, many of the kings of the isles of the sea shall be wrought upon by the Spirit of God, to exclaim: The God of nature suffers.

And as for those who are at Jerusalem, saith the prophet, they shall be scourged by all people, because they crucify the God of Israel, and turn their hearts aside, rejecting signs and wonders, and the power and glory of the God of Israel.

And because they turn their hearts aside, saith the prophet, and have despised the Holy One of Israel, they shall wander in the flesh, and perish, and become a hiss and a byword, and be hated among all nations.

Nevertheless, when that day cometh, saith the prophet, that they no more turn aside their hearts against the Holy One of Israel, then will he remember the covenants which he made to their fathers.

Yea, then will he remember the isles of the sea; yea, and all the people who are of the house of Israel, will I gather in, saith the Lord, according to the words of the prophet Zenos, from the four quarters of the earth.

Yea, and all the earth shall see the salvation of the Lord, saith the prophet; every nation, kindred, tongue and people shall be blessed.

And I, Nephi, have written these things unto my people, that perhaps I might persuade them that they would remember the Lord their Redeemer.

Wherefore, I speak unto all the house of Israel, if it so be that they should obtain these things.

For behold, I have workings in the spirit, which doth weary me even that all my joints are weak, for those who are at Jerusalem; for had not the Lord been merciful, to show unto me concerning them, even as he had prophets of old, I should have perished also.

And he surely did show unto the prophets of old all things concerning them; and also he did show unto many concerning us; wherefore, it must needs be that we know concerning them for they are written upon the plates of brass.

- 22 Nou het dit gebeur dat ek, Nefi, my broers hierdie dinge geleer het; en dit het gebeur dat ek baie dinge wat gegraveer was op die plate van brons aan hulle voorgelees het, sodat hulle mag weet aangaande die handeling van die Here in ander lande, onder die volke van ouds.
- 23 En ek het baie dinge wat geskrywe is in die boeke van Moses aan hulle voorgelees; maar om hulle des te meer te oortuig om te glo in die Here hulle Verlosser, het ek aan hulle voorgelees wat geskrywe is deur die profeet Jesaja; want ek het alle skrifture toegepas op ons, sodat dit tot ons voordeel en lering mag wees.
- 24 Daarom het ek met hulle gespreek, en gesê: Hoor julle die woorde van die profeet, julle wat 'n oorblyfsel is van die huis van Israel, 'n tak wat afgebreek is; luister julle na die woorde van die profeet, wat geskrywe is aan die hele huis van Israel, en pas hulle toe op julleself, sodat julle hoop mag hê net soos julle broers van wie julle afgebreek is; want volgens hierdie wyse het die profeet geskrywe.

Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, did teach my brethren these things; and it came to pass that I did read many things to them, which were engraven upon the plates of brass, that they might know concerning the doings of the Lord in other lands, among people of old.

And I did read many things unto them which were written in the books of Moses; but that I might more fully persuade them to believe in the Lord their Redeemer I did read unto them that which was written by the prophet Isaiah; for I did liken all scriptures unto us, that it might be for our profit and learning.

Wherefore I spake unto them, saying: Hear ye the words of the prophet, ye who are a remnant of the house of Israel, a branch who have been broken off; hear ye the words of the prophet, which were written unto all the house of Israel, and liken them unto yourselves, that ye may have hope as well as your brethren from whom ye have been broken off; for after this manner has the prophet written.

1 Nefi 20

- 1 Slaan ag, en hoor dit, o huis van Jakob, wat genoem word by die naam van Israel, en voortgekom het uit die waters van Juda, of uit die waters van die doop, wat sweer by die naam van die Here, en die God van Israel noem, maar hulle sweer nie in waarheid nóg in regverdigheid.
- 2 Nietemin, hulle sê dat hulle van die heilige stad is, maar hulle steun hulself nie op die God van Israel, wat die Here van die Leërskare is nie; ja, die Here van die Leërskare is sy Naam.
- 3 Kyk, Ek het die vorige dinge verkondig van die begin af; en dit het uitgegaan uit my mond, en Ek het hulle getoon. Ek het hulle skielik getoon.
- 4 En Ek het dit gedoen omdat Ek geweet het dat jy halsstarrig is, en jou nek 'n ystersening is, en jou voorhoof brons;
- 5 En Ek het selfs van die begin af dit verkondig aan jou; voordat dit gebeur het, het Ek dit getoon aan jou; en Ek het hulle getoon uit vrees dat jy sou sê—My afgod het dit gedoen, en my gesnede beeld, en my gegote beeld het hulle beveel.
- 6 Jy het dit alles gesien en gehoor; en wil jy dit nie verkondig nie? En dat Ek jou nuwe dinge getoon het vanaf hierdie tyd, en wel verborge dinge, en jy het dit nie geweet nie.
- 7 Hulle is nou geskape, en nie van die begin af nie, nog voor die dag toe jy nie daarvan gehoor het nie, is hulle verkondig aan jou, sodat jy sou sê—Kyk, ek het van hulle geweet.
- 8 Ja, en jy het nie gehoor nie; ja, en jy het nie geweet nie; ja, van daardie tyd af was jou oor nie geopen nie; want Ek het geweet dat jy baie troueloos sou handel en is 'n oortreder genoem van die moederskoot af.
- 9 Nietemin, Ek sal om my Naam ontwil my toorn uitstel, en ter wille van my lof sal Ek My bedwing, dat ek jou nie afsny nie.
- 10 Want, kyk, Ek het jou gelouter, Ek het jou gekies in die smeltkroes van beproewing.
- 11 Om my ontwil, ja, om my ontwil sal Ek dit doen, want Ek sal nie toelaat dat my Naam onheilig word nie, en Ek sal nie my eer gee aan 'n ander nie.

1 Nephi 20

Hearken and hear this, O house of Jacob, who are called by the name of Israel, and are come forth out of the waters of Judah, or out of the waters of baptism, who swear by the name of the Lord, and make mention of the God of Israel, yet they swear not in truth nor in righteousness.

Nevertheless, they call themselves of the holy city, but they do not stay themselves upon the God of Israel, who is the Lord of Hosts; yea, the Lord of Hosts is his name.

Behold, I have declared the former things from the beginning; and they went forth out of my mouth, and I showed them. I did show them suddenly.

And I did it because I knew that thou art obstinate, and thy neck is an iron sinew, and thy brow brass;

And I have even from the beginning declared to thee; before it came to pass I showed them thee; and I showed them for fear lest thou shouldst say—Mine idol hath done them, and my graven image, and my molten image hath commanded them.

Thou hast seen and heard all this; and will ye not declare them? And that I have showed thee new things from this time, even hidden things, and thou didst not know them.

They are created now, and not from the beginning, even before the day when thou heardest them not they were declared unto thee, lest thou shouldst say—Behold I knew them.

Yea, and thou heardest not; yea, thou knewest not; yea, from that time thine ear was not opened; for I knew that thou wouldst deal very treacherously, and wast called a transgressor from the womb.

Nevertheless, for my name's sake will I defer mine anger, and for my praise will I refrain from thee, that I cut thee not off.

For, behold, I have refined thee, I have chosen thee in the furnace of affliction.

For mine own sake, yea, for mine own sake will I do this, for I will not suffer my name to be polluted, and I will not give my glory unto another.

- 12 Slaan ag op My, o Jakob, en Israel wat Ek geroep het, want Ek is Hy; Ek is die Eerste, en Ek is ook die Laaste.
- 13 My hand het ook die grondslag gelê van die aarde, en my regterhand het die hemele gespan. Ek roep hulle en hulle staan saam op.
- 14 Julle almal, kom bymekaar, en luister; wie onder hulle het hierdie dinge aan hulle verkondig? Die Here het hom liefgehad; ja, en Hy sal sy woord volbring wat Hy verkondig het deur hulle; en Hy sal sy wil voltrek aan Babilon, en sy arm sal op die Chaldeërs kom.
- 15 Ook, sê die Here; Ek, die Here, ja Ek, het gespreek; ja, Ek het hom geroep om te verkondig, Ek het hom gebring, en hy sal sy weg voorspoedig maak.
- 16 Kom julle na aan My; Ek het nie gespreek in die geheim nie; vanaf die begin, vanaf die tyd dat dit verkondig is, het Ek gespreek; en die Here God, en sy Gees, het My gestuur.
- 17 En so sê die Here, jou Verlosser, die Heilige Een van Israel; Ek het Hom gestuur, die Here jou God wat jou leer om voordeel te trek, wat jou lei op die weg wat jy moet gaan, het dit gedoen.
- 18 O, as jy ag geslaan het op my gebooie—dan sou jou vrede gewees het soos ’n rivier, en jou regverdigheid soos die golwe van die see.
- 19 Jou saad sou ook gewees het soos die sand, die vrug van jou lendene soos die korreltjies daarvan; sy naam sou nie afgesny nóg vernietig word van voor My.
- 20 Gaan julle uit van Babilon, vlug julle van die Chaldeërs; met ’n stem van jubelklank verkondig julle, vertel dit, uiter tot die einde van die aarde; sê julle: Die Here het sy dienskneg Jakob verlos.
- 21 En hulle het nie dors gehad nie; Hy het hulle gelei deur die woestyne; Hy het die waters uit die rots vir hulle laat vloei; Hy het die rots ook geklowe en die water het daaruit gestroom.
- 22 En nieteenstaande Hy dit alles gedoen het, en groter dinge ook, is daar geen vrede vir die goddelose nie, sê die Here.

Hearken unto me, O Jacob, and Israel my called, for I am he; I am the first, and I am also the last.

Mine hand hath also laid the foundation of the earth, and my right hand hath spanned the heavens. I call unto them and they stand up together.

All ye, assemble yourselves, and hear; who among them hath declared these things unto them? The Lord hath loved him; yea, and he will fulfil his word which he hath declared by them; and he will do his pleasure on Babylon, and his arm shall come upon the Chaldeans.

Also, saith the Lord; I the Lord, yea, I have spoken; yea, I have called him to declare, I have brought him, and he shall make his way prosperous.

Come ye near unto me; I have not spoken in secret; from the beginning, from the time that it was declared have I spoken; and the Lord God, and his Spirit, hath sent me.

And thus saith the Lord, thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; I have sent him, the Lord thy God who teacheth thee to profit, who leadeth thee by the way thou shouldst go, hath done it.

O that thou hadst hearkened to my commandments—then had thy peace been as a river, and thy righteousness as the waves of the sea.

Thy seed also had been as the sand; the offspring of thy bowels like the gravel thereof; his name should not have been cut off nor destroyed from before me.

Go ye forth of Babylon, flee ye from the Chaldeans, with a voice of singing declare ye, tell this, utter to the end of the earth; say ye: The Lord hath redeemed his servant Jacob.

And they thirsted not; he led them through the deserts; he caused the waters to flow out of the rock for them; he clave the rock also and the waters gushed out.

And notwithstanding he hath done all this, and greater also, there is no peace, saith the Lord, unto the wicked.

1 Nefi 21

- 1 En verder: slaan ag, o julle huis van Israel, julle almal wat afgebreek en uitgedryf is vanweë die boosheid van die herders van my volk; ja, julle almal wat afgebreek is, en wat verstrooi is ver en wyd, wat van my volk is, o huis van Israel. Luister o eilande na my, en slaan ag julle volke van ver; die Here het my geroep van die moederskoot; van my moeder se lende ne het Hy melding gemaak van my naam.
- 2 En Hy het my mond gemaak soos 'n skerp swaard; in die skadu van sy hand het Hy my verberg, en my 'n blinkgevyrfde pyl gemaak; in sy pylkoker het Hy my verberg;
- 3 En vir my gesê: Jy is my dienskneg, O Israel, in wie Ek verheerlik sal word.
- 4 Toe sê ek, Ek het tevergeefs gearbei, ek het my krag verniet gebruik en tevergeefs; gewis is my oordeel by die Here, en my werk by my God.
- 5 En nou, sê die Here—wat my geformeer het van die moederskoot dat ek sy dienskneg moes wees, om Jakob weer na Hom te bring—ofskoon Israel nog nie bymekaargemaak is nie, tog sal ek verheerlik wees in die oë van die Here, en my God sal my sterkte wees.
- 6 En Hy het gesê: Dit is 'n geringe ding dat jy my dienskneg moet wees om die stamme van Jakob op te rig, en die gespaardes van Israel te herstel. Ek sal jou ook tot 'n lig maak vir die nie-Jode, dat jy my heil mag wees tot aan die eindes van die aarde.
- 7 So sê die Here, die Verlosser van Israel, sy Heilige Een, aan Hom wat die mens verag, aan Hom wat die nasies verafsku, aan dienskneg van heersers: Konings sal sien en opstaan, vorste sal ook aanbid vanweë die Here wat getrou is.
- 8 So sê die Here: In 'n aanvaarbare tyd het Ek julle gehoor, o eilande van die see, en in 'n dag van heil het Ek julle gehelp; en Ek sal julle bewaar, en julle my dienskneg gee as 'n verbond van die volk, om die aarde te vestig, om die verlate erfenisse te laat bêrewe;
- 9 Dat jy mag sê vir die gevangenes: Gaan uit; aan hulle wat in duisternis sit: Toon julself. Hulle sal wei langs die paaie, en hulle weiveld sal wees op al die hoë plekke.

1 Nephi 21

And again: Hearken, O ye house of Israel, all ye that are broken off and are driven out because of the wickedness of the pastors of my people; yea, all ye that are broken off, that are scattered abroad, who are of my people, O house of Israel. Listen, O isles, unto me, and hearken ye people from far; the Lord hath called me from the womb; from the bowels of my mother hath he made mention of my name.

And he hath made my mouth like a sharp sword; in the shadow of his hand hath he hid me, and made me a polished shaft; in his quiver hath he hid me;

And said unto me: Thou art my servant, O Israel, in whom I will be glorified.

Then I said, I have labored in vain, I have spent my strength for naught and in vain; surely my judgment is with the Lord, and my work with my God.

And now, saith the Lord—that formed me from the womb that I should be his servant, to bring Jacob again to him—though Israel be not gathered, yet shall I be glorious in the eyes of the Lord, and my God shall be my strength.

And he said: It is a light thing that thou shouldst be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel. I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the ends of the earth.

Thus saith the Lord, the Redeemer of Israel, his Holy One, to him whom man despiseth, to him whom the nations abhorreth, to servant of rulers: Kings shall see and arise, princes also shall worship, because of the Lord that is faithful.

Thus saith the Lord: In an acceptable time have I heard thee, O isles of the sea, and in a day of salvation have I helped thee; and I will preserve thee, and give thee my servant for a covenant of the people, to establish the earth, to cause to inherit the desolate heritages;

That thou mayest say to the prisoners: Go forth; to them that sit in darkness: Show yourselves. They shall feed in the ways, and their pastures shall be in all high places.

10 Hulle sal nie honger nóg dors, nóg sal die hitte nóg die son hulle steek; want Hy wat barmhartigheid het vir hulle sal hulle lei, en wel tot by die fonteine van water sal Hy hulle lei.

11 En ek sal al my berge tot 'n weg maak, en my hoofpaaie sal verhoog word.

12 En dan, o huis van Israel, kyk, hierdie sal van ver af kom; en kyk, hierdie kom van die noorde en van die weste; en hierdie kom van die land Sinim.

13 Sing, o hemele, en wees verheug, o aarde; want die voete van hulle wat in die ooste is, sal gevestig word; breek uit in jubelsang o berge; want hulle sal nie langer getref word nie; want die Here het sy volk getroos, en sal Hom ontferm oor sy verdruktes.

14 Maar kyk, Sion het gesê: Die Here het my verlaat, en my Here het my vergeet—maar Hy sal toon dat Hy dit nie gedoen het nie.

15 Want kan 'n vrou haar suigling vergeet, dat sy haar nie sal ontferm oor die seun van haar skoot nie? Ja, hulle mag vergeet, tog sal Ek jou nie vergeet nie, o huis van Israel.

16 Kyk, Ek het jou gegraveer op die palms van my hande; jou mure is gedurig voor My.

17 Jou kinders sal hulle haas teen jou vernietigers; en hulle wat jou verwoes het, sal van jou af weggaan.

18 Slaan jou oë rondom op en kyk; al hierdie versamel hulself, en hulle sal na jou toe kom. En soos Ek leef, sê die Here, sal jy jou sekerlik klee met hulle almal, soos met 'n versiersel, en hulle ombind soos 'n bruid.

19 Want jou verwoeste en jou verlate plekke, en die land van jou vernietiging sal nou te smal wees as gevolg van die inwoners; en hulle wat jou ingesluk het sal ver weg wees.

20 Die kinders wat jy sal hê, nadat jy die eerstes verloor het, sal weer in jou ore sê: Die plek is te nou vir my; maak plek vir my dat ek kan woon.

21 Dan sal jy in jou hart sê: Wie het vir my hierdie gebaar, siende dat ek my kinders verloor het, en onvrugbaar is, 'n gevangene, en heen en weer swerf? En wie het hierdie grootgemaak? Kyk, ek is alleen agtergelaat; hierdie, waar was hulle?

They shall not hunger nor thirst, neither shall the heat nor the sun smite them; for he that hath mercy on them shall lead them, even by the springs of water shall he guide them.

And I will make all my mountains a way, and my highways shall be exalted.

And then, O house of Israel, behold, these shall come from far; and lo, these from the north and from the west; and these from the land of Sinim.

Sing, O heavens; and be joyful, O earth; for the feet of those who are in the east shall be established; and break forth into singing, O mountains; for they shall be smitten no more; for the Lord hath comforted his people, and will have mercy upon his afflicted.

But, behold, Zion hath said: The Lord hath forsaken me, and my Lord hath forgotten me—but he will show that he hath not.

For can a woman forget her sucking child, that she should not have compassion on the son of her womb? Yea, they may forget, yet will I not forget thee, O house of Israel.

Behold, I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands; thy walls are continually before me.

Thy children shall make haste against thy destroyers; and they that made thee waste shall go forth of thee.

Lift up thine eyes round about and behold; all these gather themselves together, and they shall come to thee. And as I live, saith the Lord, thou shalt surely clothe thee with them all, as with an ornament, and bind them on even as a bride.

For thy waste and thy desolate places, and the land of thy destruction, shall even now be too narrow by reason of the inhabitants; and they that swallowed thee up shall be far away.

The children whom thou shalt have, after thou hast lost the first, shall again in thine ears say: The place is too strait for me; give place to me that I may dwell.

Then shalt thou say in thine heart: Who hath begotten me these, seeing I have lost my children, and am desolate, a captive, and removing to and fro? And who hath brought up these? Behold, I was left alone; these, where have they been?

22 So sê die Here God: Kyk, Ek sal my hand ophef na die nie-Jode, en my vaandel opsteek na die volk; en hulle sal jou seuns in hulle arms bring, en jou dogters sal gedra word op hulle skouers.

23 En konings sal jou pleegvaders wees, en hulle koninginne jou pleegmoeders; hulle sal neerbuig voor jou met hul aangesig na die aarde, en die stof oplek van jou voete; en jy sal weet dat Ek die Here is; want hulle sal nie beskaamd staan wat wag vir My nie.

24 Want sal die buit afgeneem word van die magtige, of die wettige gevangenes vrygelaat word?

25 Maar so sê die Here, selfs die gevangenes van die magtiges sal weggeneem word, en die buit van die verskrikker sal vrygelaat word; want Ek sal met homstry wat met jou twis, en Ek sal jou kinders red.

26 En Ek sal diegene voer wat jou verdruk met hul eie vlees; hulle sal dronk word van hul eie bloed soos van soet wyn; en alle vlees sal weet dat Ek, die Here, jou Saligmaker is en jou Verlosser, die Magtige Een van Jakob.

Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their face towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captives delivered?

But thus saith the Lord, even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for I will contend with him that contendeth with thee, and I will save thy children.

And I will feed them that oppress thee with their own flesh; they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I, the Lord, am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

1 Nefi 22

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat nadat ek, Nefi, hierdie dinge geles het wat gegraveer was op die plate van brons, het my broers na my gekom en het vir my gesê: Wat beteken hierdie dinge wat jy geles het? Kyk, moet hulle verstaan word volgens dinge wat geestelik is, wat sal gebeur volgens die Gees en nie die vlees nie?
- 2 En ek, Nefi, het vir hulle gesê: Kyk, hulle is geopenbaar aan die profeet deur die stem van die Gees; want deur die Gees word alle dinge bekend gemaak aan die profete, wat sal kom oor die kinders van mense volgens die vlees.
- 3 Daarom, die dinge waarvan ek geles het, het betrekking op dinge beide stoflik en geestelik; want dit blyk asof die huis van Israel, vroeër of later, verstrooi sal word oor die hele aangesig van die aarde, en ook onder alle nasies.
- 4 En kyk, daar is baie wat reeds verlore is van die kennis van diegene wat in Jerusalem is. Ja, die grootste gedeelte van al die stamme is weggelei; en hulle is verstrooi heen en weer op die eilande van die see; en waar hulle is, weet niemand van ons nie, behalwe dat ons weet dat hulle weggelei is.
- 5 En omdat hulle weggelei is, is hierdie dinge geprofeeteer aangaande hulle, en ook aangaande almal wat hierna verstrooi en vermeng gaan word, vanweë die Heilige Een van Israel; want teen Hom sal hulle hul harte verhard; daarom, hulle sal verstrooi word onder al die nasies en sal gehaat word deur alle mense.
- 6 Desnieteenstaande, nadat hulle versorg sal word deur die nie-Jode, en die Here sy hand opgelig het vir die nie-Jode en hulle opgerig het as 'n vaandel, en hulle kinders gedra is in hulle arms, en hulle dogters gedra is op hulle skouers, kyk, hierdie dinge waarvan gespreek is, is tydelik; want so is die verbonde van die Here met ons vaders; en dit het op ons betrekking in die dae wat kom, en ook al ons broers wat van die huis van Israel is.
- 7 En dit beteken dat die tyd kom dat nadat die hele huis van Israel verstrooi en vermeng is, dat die Here God 'n magtige nasie sal oprig onder die nie-Jode, ja, en wel op die aangesig van hierdie land; en deur hulle sal ons saad verstrooi word.

1 Nephi 22

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had read these things which were engraven upon the plates of brass, my brethren came unto me and said unto me: What meaneth these things which ye have read? Behold, are they to be understood according to things which are spiritual, which shall come to pass according to the spirit and not the flesh?

And I, Nephi, said unto them: Behold they were manifest unto the prophet by the voice of the Spirit; for by the Spirit are all things made known unto the prophets, which shall come upon the children of men according to the flesh.

Wherefore, the things of which I have read are things pertaining to things both temporal and spiritual; for it appears that the house of Israel, sooner or later, will be scattered upon all the face of the earth, and also among all nations.

And behold, there are many who are already lost from the knowledge of those who are at Jerusalem. Yea, the more part of all the tribes have been led away; and they are scattered to and fro upon the isles of the sea; and whither they are none of us knoweth, save that we know that they have been led away.

And since they have been led away, these things have been prophesied concerning them, and also concerning all those who shall hereafter be scattered and be confounded, because of the Holy One of Israel; for against him will they harden their hearts; wherefore, they shall be scattered among all nations and shall be hated of all men.

Nevertheless, after they shall be nursed by the Gentiles, and the Lord has lifted up his hand upon the Gentiles and set them up for a standard, and their children have been carried in their arms, and their daughters have been carried upon their shoulders, behold these things of which are spoken are temporal; for thus are the covenants of the Lord with our fathers; and it meaneth us in the days to come, and also all our brethren who are of the house of Israel.

And it meaneth that the time cometh that after all the house of Israel have been scattered and confounded, that the Lord God will raise up a mighty nation among the Gentiles, yea, even upon the face of this land; and by them shall our seed be scattered.

- 8 En nadat ons saad verstrooi is, sal die Here God voortgaan om 'n wonderlike werk te verrig onder die nie-Jode, wat van groot waarde sal wees vir ons saad; daarom, dit word daarmee vergelyk dat hulle versorg word deur die nie-Jode en gedra word in hulle arms en op hulle skouers.
- 9 En dit sal ook van waarde wees vir die nie-Jode; en nie net vir die nie-Jode nie maar ook vir die hele huis van Israel, tot die bekendmaking van die verbonde van die Vader van die hemel met Abraham, wat sê: In jou saad sal al die geslagte van die aarde geseën word.
- 10 En ek wil hê, my broers, dat julle moet weet dat al die geslagte van die aarde nie geseën kan word, tensy Hy sy arm ontbloot voor die oë van die nasies nie.
- 11 Daarom, die Here God sal voortgaan om sy arm te ontbloot voor die oë van al die nasies, deur sy verbonde en sy evangelie voort te bring aan diegene wat van die huis van Israel is.
- 12 Daarom, Hy sal hulle weer uit gevangenskap bring en hulle sal versamel word na die lande van hul erfenis; en hulle sal uitgebring word uit die duisternis en die donker; en hulle sal weet dat die Here hulle Saligmaker is en hulle Verlosser, die Magtige Een van Israel.
- 13 En die bloed van daardie groot en gruwelike kerk, wat die hoer van die hele aarde is, sal op hulle eie hoofde kom; want hulle sal oorlog maak onder mekaar, en die swaard van hulle eie hande sal val op hul eie hoofde, en hulle sal dronk wees van hulle eie bloed.
- 14 En elke nasie wat teen jou sal oorlog voer, o huis van Israel, sal gekeer word die een teen die ander, en hulle sal val in die kuil wat hulle gegrawe het om die volk van die Here in te verstriek. En almal wat teen Sion stry, sal vernietig word, en daardie groot hoer, wat die regte weë van die Here verdraai het, ja, daardie groot en gruwelike kerk, sal neerstort in die stof en groot sal die val daarvan wees.

And after our seed is scattered the Lord God will proceed to do a marvelous work among the Gentiles, which shall be of great worth unto our seed; wherefore, it is likened unto their being nourished by the Gentiles and being carried in their arms and upon their shoulders.

And it shall also be of worth unto the Gentiles; and not only unto the Gentiles but unto all the house of Israel, unto the making known of the covenants of the Father of heaven unto Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

And I would, my brethren, that ye should know that all the kindreds of the earth cannot be blessed unless he shall make bare his arm in the eyes of the nations.

Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to make bare his arm in the eyes of all the nations, in bringing about his covenants and his gospel unto those who are of the house of Israel.

Wherefore, he will bring them again out of captivity, and they shall be gathered together to the lands of their inheritance; and they shall be brought out of obscurity and out of darkness; and they shall know that the Lord is their Savior and their Redeemer, the Mighty One of Israel.

And the blood of that great and abominable church, which is the whore of all the earth, shall turn upon their own heads; for they shall war among themselves, and the sword of their own hands shall fall upon their own heads, and they shall be drunken with their own blood.

And every nation which shall war against thee, O house of Israel, shall be turned one against another, and they shall fall into the pit which they digged to ensnare the people of the Lord. And all that fight against Zion shall be destroyed, and that great whore, who hath perverted the right ways of the Lord, yea, that great and abominable church, shall tumble to the dust and great shall be the fall of it.

- 15 Want kyk, sê die profeet, die tyd kom gou dat Satan geen mag meer sal hê oor die harte van die kinders van mense nie; want die dag kom gou wanneer al die hoogmoediges en hulle wat boos handel, soos stoppels sal wees; en die dag kom wanneer hulle verbrand moet word.
- 16 Want die tyd kom gou dat die volheid van die toorn van God uitgestort sal word op al die kinders van mense; want Hy sal nie toelaat dat die bose die regverdiges vernietig nie.
- 17 Daarom, Hy sal die regverdiges behou deur sy krag, selfs as dit so moet wees dat die volheid van sy toorn moet kom, en die regverdiges bewaar word, selfs tot die vernietiging van hulle vyande deur vuur. Daarom, die regverdige moet nie te vrees nie; want so sê die profeet, hulle sal gered word, selfs al is dit soos deur vuur.
- 18 Kyk, my broers, ek sê vir julle, dat hierdie dinge binnekort moet kom; ja, en wel bloed, en vuur, en rookmis moet kom; en dit moet noodwendig wees op die aangesig van hierdie aarde; en dit kom na die mens volgens die vlees as dit so is dat hulle hulle harte sal verhard teen die Heilige Een van Israel.
- 19 Want kyk, die regverdige sal nie vergaan nie; want die tyd moet sekerlik kom dat hulle almal wat stry teen Sion, afgesny sal word.
- 20 En die Here sal sekerlik 'n weg vir sy volk berei, ter vervulling van die woorde van Moses, wat hy gespreek het, toe hy sê: 'n Profeet sal die Here julle God oprig vir julle, een soos Ek; Hom sal julle aanhoor in alle dinge wat Hy ook al met julle sal spreek. En dit sal gebeur dat almal wat nie daardie profeet wil aanhoor nie, afgesny sal word van die midde van die volk.
- 21 En nou ek, Nephi, verklaar aan julle, dat hierdie profeet van wie Moses gespreek het, die Heilige Een van Israel was; daarom, Hy sal oordeel vel in regverdigheid.
- 22 En die regverdige moet nie te vrees nie, want hulle is diegene wat nie beskaam sal word nie. Maar dit is die koninkryk van die duiwel, wat opgerig sal word onder die kinders van mense, welke koninkryk onder hulle gevestig is wat in die vlees is—

For behold, saith the prophet, the time cometh speedily that Satan shall have no more power over the hearts of the children of men; for the day soon cometh that all the proud and they who do wickedly shall be as stubble; and the day cometh that they must be burned.

For the time soon cometh that the fulness of the wrath of God shall be poured out upon all the children of men; for he will not suffer that the wicked shall destroy the righteous.

Wherefore, he will preserve the righteous by his power, even if it so be that the fulness of his wrath must come, and the righteous be preserved, even unto the destruction of their enemies by fire. Wherefore, the righteous need not fear; for thus saith the prophet, they shall be saved, even if it so be as by fire.

Behold, my brethren, I say unto you, that these things must shortly come; yea, even blood, and fire, and vapor of smoke must come; and it must needs be upon the face of this earth; and it cometh unto men according to the flesh if it so be that they will harden their hearts against the Holy One of Israel.

For behold, the righteous shall not perish; for the time surely must come that all they who fight against Zion shall be cut off.

And the Lord will surely prepare a way for his people, unto the fulfilling of the words of Moses, which he spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that all those who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

And now I, Nephi, declare unto you, that this prophet of whom Moses spake was the Holy One of Israel; wherefore, he shall execute judgment in righteousness.

And the righteous need not fear, for they are those who shall not be confounded. But it is the kingdom of the devil, which shall be built up among the children of men, which kingdom is established among them which are in the flesh—

- 23 Want die tyd sal spoedig kom dat alle kerke wat opgerig word vir gewin, en almal wat opgerig word om mag te verkry oor die vlees, en almal wat opgerig word om gewild te word in die oë van die wêreld, en almal wat die luste van die vlees soek en die dinge van die wêreld, en om allerlei ongeregtighede te pleeg; ja, kortom, al diegene wat behoort aan die koninkryk van die duiwel, is hulle wat moet vrees, en bewe, en sidder; hulle is diegene wat verneder moet word tot die stof toe; hulle is diegene wat verteer moet word soos stoppels; en dit is volgens die woorde van die profeet.
- 24 En die tyd kom spoedig dat die regverdiges gelei moet word soos kalwers van die stal, en die Heilige Een van Israel moet heers met gesag, en mag en krag, en groot heerlikheid.
- 25 En Hy versamel sy kinders uit die vier hoeke van die aarde; en Hy tel sy skape, en hulle ken Hom; en daar sal een kudde wees en een herder; en Hy sal sy skape voer, en in Hom sal hulle weiding vind.
- 26 En vanweë die regverdigheid van sy volk, het Satan geen mag nie; daarom, hy kan nie vir 'n tydperk van baie jare losgemaak word nie; want hy het geen mag oor die harte van die mense nie, want hulle woon in regverdigheid, en die Heilige Een van Israel heers.
- 27 En nou kyk, ek Nephi, sê vir julle dat al hierdie dinge moet kom volgens die vlees.
- 28 Maar, kyk, alle nasies, stamme, tale en volke sal veilig woon by die Heilige Een van Israel as dit so sal wees dat hulle sal bekeer.
- 29 En nou ek, Nephi, maak 'n einde; want ek durf nie verder spreek oor hierdie dinge nie.
- 30 Daarom, my broers, ek wil hê dat julle moet besef dat die dinge wat geskryf is op die plate van brons, waar is; en hulle getuig dat 'n mens gehoorsaam moet wees aan die gebooi van God.
- 31 Daarom, julle moet nie veronderstel dat ek en my vader die enigstes is wat getuig het, en hulle ook geleer het nie. Daarom, as julle gehoorsaam sal wees aan die gebooi, en volhard tot die einde toe, sal julle gered word op die laaste dag. En so is dit. Amen.

For the time speedily shall come that all churches which are built up to get gain, and all those who are built up to get power over the flesh, and those who are built up to become popular in the eyes of the world, and those who seek the lusts of the flesh and the things of the world, and to do all manner of iniquity; yea, in fine, all those who belong to the kingdom of the devil are they who need fear, and tremble, and quake; they are those who must be brought low in the dust; they are those who must be consumed as stubble; and this is according to the words of the prophet.

And the time cometh speedily that the righteous must be led up as calves of the stall, and the Holy One of Israel must reign in dominion, and might, and power, and great glory.

And he gathereth his children from the four quarters of the earth; and he numbereth his sheep, and they know him; and there shall be one fold and one shepherd; and he shall feed his sheep, and in him they shall find pasture.

And because of the righteousness of his people, Satan has no power; wherefore, he cannot be loosed for the space of many years; for he hath no power over the hearts of the people, for they dwell in righteousness, and the Holy One of Israel reigneth.

And now behold, I, Nephi, say unto you that all these things must come according to the flesh.

But, behold, all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people shall dwell safely in the Holy One of Israel if it so be that they will repent.

And now I, Nephi, make an end; for I durst not speak further as yet concerning these things.

Wherefore, my brethren, I would that ye should consider that the things which have been written upon the plates of brass are true; and they testify that a man must be obedient to the commandments of God.

Wherefore, ye need not suppose that I and my father are the only ones that have testified, and also taught them. Wherefore, if ye shall be obedient to the commandments, and endure to the end, ye shall be saved at the last day. And thus it is. Amen.

Die Tweede Boek van Nefi

'n Kroniek van die dood van Lehi. Nefi se broers rebellieer teen hom. Die Here waarsku Nefi om die wildernis binne te trek. Sy reis in die wildernis, ensovoorts.

2 Nefi 1

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat nadat ek, Nefi, 'n einde gemaak het om my broers te onderrig, het ons vader, Lehi, ook baie dinge met hulle gespreek—en aan hulle herhaal, watter groot dinge die Here vir hulle gedoen het deur hulle uit die land Jerusalem te bring.
- 2 En hy het met hulle gespreek aangaande hulle rebellies op die waters, en die barmhartighede van God deur hulle lewens te spaar, sodat hulle nie opgesluk is in die see nie.
- 3 En hy het ook met hulle gespreek aangaande die land van belofte, wat hulle verkry het—hoe barmhartig die Here was om ons te waarsku dat ons moes vlug uit die land Jerusalem.
- 4 Want, kyk, het hy gesê, ek het 'n visioen gesien, waardeur ek weet dat Jerusalem vernietig is; en as ons in Jerusalem gebly het, sou ons ook omgekom het.
- 5 Maar, het hy gesê, nieteenstaande ons verdrukkinge, het ons 'n land van belofte verkry, 'n land wat uitverkore is bo alle ander lande; 'n land wat die Here God in 'n verbond met my gesluit het, wat 'n land van erfenis vir my saad sal wees. Ja, die Here het hierdie land deur 'n verbond aan my gegee, en aan my kinders vir ewig, en ook al diegene wat uitgelei sou word uit ander lande deur die hand van die Here.
- 6 Daarom, ek, Lehi, profeteer volgens die invloed van die Gees wat in my is, dat niemand sal kom na hierdie land tensy hulle gebring sal word deur die hand van die Here nie.

The Second Book of Nephi

An account of the death of Lehi. Nephi's brethren rebel against him. The Lord warns Nephi to depart into the wilderness. His journeyings in the wilderness, and so forth.

2 Nephi 1

- And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of teaching my brethren, our father, Lehi, also spake many things unto them, and rehearsed unto them, how great things the Lord had done for them in bringing them out of the land of Jerusalem.
- And he spake unto them concerning their rebellions upon the waters, and the mercies of God in sparing their lives, that they were not swallowed up in the sea.
- And he also spake unto them concerning the land of promise, which they had obtained—how merciful the Lord had been in warning us that we should flee out of the land of Jerusalem.
- For, behold, said he, I have seen a vision, in which I know that Jerusalem is destroyed; and had we remained in Jerusalem we should also have perished.
- But, said he, notwithstanding our afflictions, we have obtained a land of promise, a land which is choice above all other lands; a land which the Lord God hath covenanted with me should be a land for the inheritance of my seed. Yea, the Lord hath covenanted this land unto me, and to my children forever, and also all those who should be led out of other countries by the hand of the Lord.
- Wherefore, I, Lehi, prophesy according to the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that there shall none come into this land save they shall be brought by the hand of the Lord.

- 7 Daaron, hierdie land word toegewy aan hom wat Hy sal bring. En as dit so is dat hulle Hom sal dien volgens die gebooie wat Hy gegee het, sal dit 'n land van vryheid vir hulle wees; daarom, hulle sal nooit afgebring word in slawerny nie; indien wel, sal dit wees as gevolg van ongeregtigheid; want as ongeregtigheid heers, vervloek sal die land wees om hulle onthalwe, maar vir die regverdiges sal dit geseënd wees vir ewig.
- 8 En kyk, dit is wysheid dat hierdie land tans weerhou word van die kennis van ander nasies; want kyk, baie nasies sou die land oorstroom, dat daar geen plek sou wees vir 'n erfenis nie.
- 9 En nou het ek, Lehi, 'n belofte verkry, dat in soverre diegene wat die Here God sal uitbring uit die land Jerusalem, sy gebooie sal onderhou, hulle voorspoedig sal wees op die aangesig van hierdie land; en hulle sal weggehou word van alle ander nasies, sodat hulle hierdie land mag besit vir hulself. En as dit so is dat hulle sy gebooie sal onderhou, sal hulle geseënd wees op die aangesig van hierdie land, en daar sal niemand wees wat hulle molesteer nie, of om die land van hulle erfenis weg te neem nie; en hulle sal veilig woon vir ewig.
- 10 Maar kyk, wanneer die tyd kom dat hulle sal kwyn in ongelooft, nadat hulle sulke groot seëninge ontvang het uit die hand van die Here—deurdat hulle kennis het van die skepping van die aarde, en alle mense, en die groot en wonderbaarlike werke van die Here ken vanaf die skepping van die wêreld; deurdat hulle mag gegee is om alle dinge te doen deur geloof; deurdat hulle al die gebooie van die begin af het, en deurdat hulle ingebring is deur sy eindelose goedheid in hierdie kosbare land van belofte—kyk, ek sê, as die dag sal kom dat hulle die Heilige Een van Israel sal verwerp, die ware Messias, hulle Verlosser en hulle God, kyk, die oordele van Hom wat regverdig is, sal op hulle rus.
- 11 Ja, Hy sal ander nasies na hulle bring, en Hy sal aan hulle mag gee, en Hy sal van hulle wegneem die lande van hulle besittings, en Hy sal veroorsaak dat hulle verstrooi en getref word.

Wherefore, this land is consecrated unto him whom he shall bring. And if it so be that they shall serve him according to the commandments which he hath given, it shall be a land of liberty unto them; wherefore, they shall never be brought down into captivity; if so, it shall be because of iniquity; for if iniquity shall abound cursed shall be the land for their sakes, but unto the righteous it shall be blessed forever.

And behold, it is wisdom that this land should be kept as yet from the knowledge of other nations; for behold, many nations would overrun the land, that there would be no place for an inheritance.

Wherefore, I, Lehi, have obtained a promise, that inasmuch as those whom the Lord God shall bring out of the land of Jerusalem shall keep his commandments, they shall prosper upon the face of this land; and they shall be kept from all other nations, that they may possess this land unto themselves. And if it so be that they shall keep his commandments they shall be blessed upon the face of this land, and there shall be none to molest them, nor to take away the land of their inheritance; and they shall dwell safely forever.

But behold, when the time cometh that they shall dwindle in unbelief, after they have received so great blessings from the hand of the Lord—having a knowledge of the creation of the earth, and all men, knowing the great and marvelous works of the Lord from the creation of the world; having power given them to do all things by faith; having all the commandments from the beginning, and having been brought by his infinite goodness into this precious land of promise—behold, I say, if the day shall come that they will reject the Holy One of Israel, the true Messiah, their Redeemer and their God, behold, the judgments of him that is just shall rest upon them.

Yea, he will bring other nations unto them, and he will give unto them power, and he will take away from them the lands of their possessions, and he will cause them to be scattered and smitten.

12 Ja, soos een geslag oorgaan na 'n ander, sal daar bloedvergiëting, en groot besoëkinge onder hulle wees; daarom, my seuns, ek wil hê dat julle sal onthou, ja; ek wil hê dat julle sal ag slaan op my woorde.

13 O, dat julle sou ontwaak; ontwaak uit 'n diepe slaap, ja, en wel van die slaap van die hel, en die aaklige kettings afskud waarmee julle vasgemaak is, wat die kettings is wat die kinders van mense vasbind, sodat hulle gevange weggevoer word af na die ewige kloof van ellende en wee.

14 Ontwaak! en staan op uit die stof, en hoor die woorde van 'n bewende ouer, wie se ledemate julle spoedig moet neerlê in die koue en stille graf, waarvandaan geen reisiger kan terugkeer nie; nog 'n paar dae en ek gaan die weg van die hele aarde.

15 Maar kyk, die Here het my siel verlos van die hel; ek het sy heerlikheid aanskou, en ek word ewiglik omvou deur die arms van sy liefde.

16 En ek begeer dat julle moet onthou om die insettinge en verordeninge van die Here te onderhou; kyk, dit was die bekommernis van my siel van die begin af.

17 My hart was terneergedruk vanweë droefheid van tyd tot tyd, want ek het gevrees, dat weens die hardheid van julle harte die Here julle God op julle sal afkom met die volheid van sy toorn dat julle vir ewig afgesny en vernietig sal word;

18 Of, dat 'n vervloëking oor julle sal kom vir 'n tydperk van baie geslagte; en dat julle besoek word deur swaard, en deur hongersnood, en gehaat word, en gelei word volgens die wil en die slawerny van die duiwel.

19 O my seuns, dat hierdie dinge nie oor julle mag kom nie, maar dat julle 'n uitverkore en begunstigde volk mag wees van die Here. Maar kyk, sy wil geskied; want sy weë is regverdigheid vir ewig.

20 En Hy het gesê dat: In soverre julle my gebooe sal onderhou, sal julle voorspoedig wees in die land; maar in soverre julle my gebooe nie wil onderhou nie, sal julle afgesny word van my teenwoordigheid.

Yea, as one generation passeth to another there shall be bloodsheds, and great visitations among them; wherefore, my sons, I would that ye would remember; yea, I would that ye would hearken unto my words.

O that ye would awake; awake from a deep sleep, yea, even from the sleep of hell, and shake off the awful chains by which ye are bound, which are the chains which bind the children of men, that they are carried away captive down to the eternal gulf of misery and woe.

Awake! and arise from the dust, and hear the words of a trembling parent, whose limbs ye must soon lay down in the cold and silent grave, from whence no traveler can return; a few more days and I go the way of all the earth.

But behold, the Lord hath redeemed my soul from hell; I have beheld his glory, and I am encircled about eternally in the arms of his love.

And I desire that ye should remember to observe the statutes and the judgments of the Lord; behold, this hath been the anxiety of my soul from the beginning.

My heart hath been weighed down with sorrow from time to time, for I have feared, lest for the hardness of your hearts the Lord your God should come out in the fulness of his wrath upon you, that ye be cut off and destroyed forever;

Or, that a cursing should come upon you for the space of many generations; and ye are visited by sword, and by famine, and are hated, and are led according to the will and captivity of the devil.

O my sons, that these things might not come upon you, but that ye might be a choice and a favored people of the Lord. But behold, his will be done; for his ways are righteousness forever.

And he hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; but inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

21 En nou dat my siel blydschap mag hê in julle, en dat my hart hierdie wêreld mag verlaat met vreugde weens julle, dat ek nie met droefheid en smart na die graf afgebring mag word nie, staan op uit die stof, my seuns, en wees manne, en wees vasberade, een van gees en een van hart, verenig in alle dinge, dat julle nie in slawerny afgebring word nie.

22 Dat julle nie vervloek mag word met 'n vreeslike vervloeking nie; en ook, dat julle nie die misnoeë van 'n regverdige God op julle bring nie, tot die vernietiging, ja, die ewige vernietiging van beide siel en liggaam.

23 Ontwaak, my seuns; trek die wapenrusting van geregtigheid aan. Skud af die kettings waarmee julle gebind is, en kom voort uit die duisternis, en staan op uit die stof.

24 Rebelleer nie langer teen julle broer nie, wie se visioene heerlik was, en wat die gebooe onderhou het van die tyd dat ons Jerusalem verlaat het; en wat 'n werktuig was in die hande van God deur ons voort te bring in die land van belofte; want as dit nie vir hom was nie, moes ons vergaan het van honger in die wildernis; desnieteenstaande, julle het gesoek om sy lewe te neem; ja, en hy het baie smart gely weens julle.

25 En ek vrees en bewe uitermate weens julle, uit vrees dat hy weer sal ly; want kyk, julle het hom beskuldig dat hy mag en gesag gesoek het oor julle; maar ek weet dat hy nie gesoek het na mag nóg gesag oor julle, maar hy het die heerlikheid van God gesoek, en julle eie ewige welsyn.

26 En julle het gemurmureer omdat hy duidelik was met julle. Julle sê dat hy skerpheid gebruik het; julle sê dat hy toornig was op julle; maar kyk, sy skerpheid was die skerpheid van die krag van die woord van God, wat in hom was; en dit wat julle toorn noem, was die waarheid, volgens dit wat in God is, wat hy nie kon bedwing nie, terwyl hy vreesloos aangaande julle ongeregthede bekendmaak.

27 En dit moet noodwendig wees dat die krag van God met hom moet wees, en wel dat hy julle gebied dat julle gehoorsaam moet wees. Maar kyk, dit was nie hy nie, maar dit was die Gees van die Here wat in hom was, wat sy mond geopen het om te spreek, so dat hy dit nie kon sluit nie.

And now that my soul might have joy in you, and that my heart might leave this world with gladness because of you, that I might not be brought down with grief and sorrow to the grave, arise from the dust, my sons, and be men, and be determined in one mind and in one heart, united in all things, that ye may not come down into captivity;

That ye may not be cursed with a sore cursing; and also, that ye may not incur the displeasure of a just God upon you, unto the destruction, yea, the eternal destruction of both soul and body.

Awake, my sons; put on the armor of righteousness. Shake off the chains with which ye are bound, and come forth out of obscurity, and arise from the dust.

Rebel no more against your brother, whose views have been glorious, and who hath kept the commandments from the time that we left Jerusalem; and who hath been an instrument in the hands of God, in bringing us forth into the land of promise; for were it not for him, we must have perished with hunger in the wilderness; nevertheless, ye sought to take away his life; yea, and he hath suffered much sorrow because of you.

And I exceedingly fear and tremble because of you, lest he shall suffer again; for behold, ye have accused him that he sought power and authority over you; but I know that he hath not sought for power nor authority over you, but he hath sought the glory of God, and your own eternal welfare.

And ye have murmured because he hath been plain unto you. Ye say that he hath used sharpness; ye say that he hath been angry with you; but behold, his sharpness was the sharpness of the power of the word of God, which was in him; and that which ye call anger was the truth, according to that which is in God, which he could not restrain, manifesting boldly concerning your iniquities.

And it must needs be that the power of God must be with him, even unto his commanding you that ye must obey. But behold, it was not he, but it was the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, which opened his mouth to utterance that he could not shut it.

- 28 En nou, my seun Laman, en ook Lemuel en Sam, en ook my seuns wat die seuns van Ismael is; kyk, as julle sal ag slaan op die stem van Nephi, sal julle nie vergaan nie. En as julle sal ag slaan op hom, laat ek julle 'n seëning, ja, en wel my eerste seëning.
- 29 Maar as julle nie op hom sal ag slaan nie, neem ek my eerste seëning weg, ja, en wel my seëning, en dit sal op hom rus.
- 30 En nou, Zoram, ek spreek met jou: Kyk, jy is die dienskneg van Laban; desnieteenstaande, jy is uitgebring uit die land Jerusalem, en ek weet dat jy 'n ware vriend van my seun Nephi is, vir ewig.
- 31 Daarom, omdat jy getrou was, sal jou saad geseënd wees saam met sy saad, sodat hulle lank in voorspoed sal woon op die aangesig van hierdie land; en niks, behalwe ongeregtheid onder hulle, sal hulle voorspoed skaad of benadeel op die aangesig van hierdie land vir altyd nie.
- 32 Daarom, as julle die gebooie van die Here onderhou, het die Here hierdie land toegewy vir die veiligheid van jou saad met die saad van my seun.

And now my son, Laman, and also Lemuel and Sam, and also my sons who are the sons of Ishmael, behold, if ye will hearken unto the voice of Nephi ye shall not perish. And if ye will hearken unto him I leave unto you a blessing, yea, even my first blessing.

But if ye will not hearken unto him I take away my first blessing, yea, even my blessing, and it shall rest upon him.

And now, Zoram, I speak unto you: Behold, thou art the servant of Laban; nevertheless, thou hast been brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and I know that thou art a true friend unto my son, Nephi, forever.

Wherefore, because thou hast been faithful thy seed shall be blessed with his seed, that they dwell in prosperity long upon the face of this land; and nothing, save it shall be iniquity among them, shall harm or disturb their prosperity upon the face of this land forever.

Wherefore, if ye shall keep the commandments of the Lord, the Lord hath consecrated this land for the security of thy seed with the seed of my son.

2 Nefi 2

- 1 En nou, Jakob, ek spreek met jou: Jy is my eersgeborene in die dae van my beproewing in die wildernis. En kyk, in jou kinderdae het jy verdrukking gely en baie droefheid, vanweë die ruheid van jou broers.
- 2 Desnieteenstaande, Jakob, my eersgeborene in die wildernis, jy ken die grootheid van God; en Hy sal jou verdrukkinge tot jou voordeel heilig.
- 3 Daarom, jou siel sal geseënd wees, en jy sal veilig woon met jou broer Nephi; en jou dae sal deurgebring word in die diens van jou God. Daarom, ek weet dat jy verlos is, vanweë die regverdigheid van jou Verlosser; want jy het gesien dat Hy in die volheid van die tyd kom om heil te bring vir mense.
- 4 En jy het sy heerlikheid in jou jeug gesien; daarom, jy is geseënd net soos hulle vir wie Hy sal dien in die vlees; want die Gees is dieselfde, gister, vandag en vir ewig. En die weg is berei vanaf die val van die mens, en heil is vry.
- 5 En mense is voldoende onderrig dat hulle goed van kwaad kan onderskei. En die wet is aan mense gegee. En deur die wet word geen vlees geregverdig nie; of, deur die wet word die mens afgesny. Ja, deur die aardse wet is hulle afgesny; en ook, deur die geestelike wet vergaan hulle van dit wat goed is, en word ellendig vir ewig.
- 6 Daarom, verlossing kom in en deur die Heilige Messias; want Hy is vol genade en waarheid.
- 7 Kyk, Hy offer Homself as 'n offerande vir die sonde, om te voldoen aan die eise van die wet, aan al diegene wat 'n gebroke hart en 'n verslae gees het; en niemand anders kan aan die eise van die wet voldoen nie.
- 8 Daarom, hoe groot is die belangrikheid om hierdie dinge bekend te maak aan die inwoners van die aarde, dat hulle mag weet dat daar geen vlees is wat kan woon in die teenwoordigheid van God nie, behalwe deur die verdienste, en die barmhartigheid, en die genade van die Heilige Messias, wat sy lewe neerlê volgens die vlees, en dit weer opneem deur die krag van die Gees, sodat Hy die opstanding van die dode teweeg kan bring, omdat Hy die eerste is wat sal opstaan.

2 Nephi 2

And now, Jacob, I speak unto you: Thou art my firstborn in the days of my tribulation in the wilderness. And behold, in thy childhood thou hast suffered afflictions and much sorrow, because of the rudeness of thy brethren.

Nevertheless, Jacob, my firstborn in the wilderness, thou knowest the greatness of God; and he shall consecrate thine afflictions for thy gain.

Wherefore, thy soul shall be blessed, and thou shalt dwell safely with thy brother, Nephi; and thy days shall be spent in the service of thy God. Wherefore, I know that thou art redeemed, because of the righteousness of thy Redeemer; for thou hast beheld that in the fulness of time he cometh to bring salvation unto men.

And thou hast beheld in thy youth his glory; wherefore, thou art blessed even as they unto whom he shall minister in the flesh; for the Spirit is the same, yesterday, today, and forever. And the way is prepared from the fall of man, and salvation is free.

And men are instructed sufficiently that they know good from evil. And the law is given unto men. And by the law no flesh is justified; or, by the law men are cut off. Yea, by the temporal law they were cut off; and also, by the spiritual law they perish from that which is good, and become miserable forever.

Wherefore, redemption cometh in and through the Holy Messiah; for he is full of grace and truth.

Behold, he offereth himself a sacrifice for sin, to answer the ends of the law, unto all those who have a broken heart and a contrite spirit; and unto none else can the ends of the law be answered.

Wherefore, how great the importance to make these things known unto the inhabitants of the earth, that they may know that there is no flesh that can dwell in the presence of God, save it be through the merits, and mercy, and grace of the Holy Messiah, who layeth down his life according to the flesh, and taketh it again by the power of the Spirit, that he may bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, being the first that should rise.

- 9 Daaron, Hy is die eerste vrugte voor God, in so-
 verre dat Hy voorspraak sal doen vir al die kinders
 van mense; en hulle wat glo in Hom, sal gered word.
- 10 En vanweë die voorspraak vir almal, kom alle
 mense tot God; daarom, hulle staan in sy teenwoor-
 digheid om geoordeel te word deur Hom volgens die
 waarheid en heiligheid wat in Hom is. Daarom, die
 eise van die wet wat die Heilige Een gegee het, tot die
 oplegging van die straf wat daaraan gekoppel is, wel-
 ke straf wat daaraan gekoppel is in teenstelling met
 die geluksaligheid wat daaraan gekoppel is, om die
 eise van die versoening te beantwoord—
- 11 Want dit moet noodwendig wees dat daar 'n teen-
 stelling in alle dinge is. Indien nie, my eersgeborene
 in die wildernis, sal regverdigheid nie kan geskied
 nie, nóg ongeregtigheid, nóg heiligheid nóg ellende,
 nóg goed nóg kwaad. Daarom, alle dinge moet nood-
 wendig 'n samestelling in een wees; daarom, as dit
 een liggaam sou wees, sal dit moet bly asof dit dood
 is, omdat dit nóg lewe nóg dood besit, nóg vergank-
 likheid nóg onverganklikheid, geluk nóg ellende,
 nóg gevoel nóg gevoelloosheid.
- 12 Daaron, dit moes noodwendig geskape gewees
 het as iets sinloos; daarom sou daar geen doel gewees
 het aan die einde van sy skepping nie. Daarom, hier-
 die ding moet noodwendig die wysheid van God en
 sy ewige doeleindes vernietig, en ook die krag, en die
 barmhartigheid, en die geregtigheid van God.
- 13 En as julle sal sê daar is geen wet nie, sal julle ook
 sê daar is geen sonde nie. As julle sal sê daar is geen
 sonde nie, sal julle ook sê daar is geen regverdigheid
 nie. En as daar geen regverdigheid is nie, is daar
 geen geluk nie. En as daar nóg regverdigheid nóg ge-
 luk is, is daar geen straf nóg ellende. En as hierdie
 dinge nie is nie, is daar geen God nie. En as daar geen
 God is nie, dan bestaan ons nie, nóg die aarde; want
 daar kon geen skepping van dinge gewees het wat
 kon handel nóg waarop handeling uitgevoer kon
 word; daarom, alle dinge moes verdwyn het.
- 14 En nou, my seuns, ek spreek met julle hierdie din-
 ge tot julle voordeel en lering; want daar is 'n God,
 en Hy het alle dinge geskape, beide die hemele en die
 aarde, en alles wat daarin is, beide dinge om te han-
 del en dinge waarop handeling uitgevoer kan word.

Wherefore, he is the firstfruits unto God, inas-
 much as he shall make intercession for all the chil-
 dren of men; and they that believe in him shall be
 saved.

And because of the intercession for all, all men
 come unto God; wherefore, they stand in the pres-
 ence of him, to be judged of him according to the
 truth and holiness which is in him. Wherefore, the
 ends of the law which the Holy One hath given, unto
 the inflicting of the punishment which is affixed,
 which punishment that is affixed is in opposition to
 that of the happiness which is affixed, to answer the
 ends of the atonement—

For it must needs be, that there is an opposition in
 all things. If not so, my firstborn in the wilderness,
 righteousness could not be brought to pass, neither
 wickedness, neither holiness nor misery, neither
 good nor bad. Wherefore, all things must needs be a
 compound in one; wherefore, if it should be one
 body it must needs remain as dead, having no life
 neither death, nor corruption nor incorruption, hap-
 piness nor misery, neither sense nor insensibility.

Wherefore, it must needs have been created for a
 thing of naught; wherefore there would have been
 no purpose in the end of its creation. Wherefore, this
 thing must needs destroy the wisdom of God and his
 eternal purposes, and also the power, and the mercy,
 and the justice of God.

And if ye shall say there is no law, ye shall also say
 there is no sin. If ye shall say there is no sin, ye shall
 also say there is no righteousness. And if there be no
 righteousness there be no happiness. And if there be
 no righteousness nor happiness there be no punish-
 ment nor misery. And if these things are not there is
 no God. And if there is no God we are not, neither
 the earth; for there could have been no creation of
 things, neither to act nor to be acted upon; where-
 fore, all things must have vanished away.

And now, my sons, I speak unto you these things
 for your profit and learning; for there is a God, and
 he hath created all things, both the heavens and the
 earth, and all things that in them are, both things to
 act and things to be acted upon.

- 15 En om sy ewige doeleindes teweeg te bring aangaande die uiteinde van die mens, nadat Hy ons eerste ouers geskape het, en die diere van die veld en die voëls van die lug, en kortom, alle dinge wat geskape is, was dit noodwendig dat daar 'n teenstelling moes wees; en wel die verbode vrug in teenstelling met die boom van die lewe; die een wat soet is en die ander bitter.
- 16 Daarom, die Here God het aan die mens gegee dat hy selfstandig moet handel. Daarom, die mens kan nie selfstandig handel nie behalwe as hy verlok is deur die een of die ander.
- 17 En ek, Lehi, volgens die dinge wat ek gelees het, moet noodwendig veronderstel, dat 'n engel van God, volgens dit wat geskrywe is, geval het uit die hemel; daarom, hy het 'n duiwel geword, omdat hy dit gesoek het wat boos was voor God.
- 18 En omdat hy geval het uit die hemel, en vir ewig ellendig geword het, het hy ook die ellende van die hele mensdom gesoek. Daarom, hy het aan Eva gesê, ja, en wel daardie ou slang, wat die duiwel is, wat die vader is van alle leuens, daarom het hy gesê: Eet van die verbode vrug, en julle sal nie sterwe nie, maar julle sal wees soos God, om goed en kwaad te ken.
- 19 En nadat Adam en Eva van die verbode vrug geëet het, is hulle uit die tuin van Eden verdryf om die aarde te bewerk.
- 20 En hulle het kinders voortgebring; ja, en wel die familie van die hele aarde.
- 21 En die dae van die kinders van mense is verleng, volgens die wil van God, sodat hulle mag bekeer terwyl hulle in die vlees is; daarom, hulle toestand het 'n toestand van toetsing geword, en hulle tyd is verleng, volgens die gebooie wat die Here God gegee het aan die kinders van mense. Want Hy het gebod gegee dat alle mense moes bekeer; want Hy het vir alle mense gewys dat hulle verlore was, vanweë die oortreding van hul ouers.
- 22 En nou kyk, as Adam nie oortree het nie, sou hy nie tot 'n val gekom het nie, maar hy sou gebly het in die tuin van Eden. En alle dinge wat geskape is, moes in dieselfde toestand gebly het waarin hulle was nadat hulle geskape is; en hulle moes so gebly het tot in ewigheid, en geen einde gehad het nie.

And to bring about his eternal purposes in the end of man, after he had created our first parents, and the beasts of the field and the fowls of the air, and in fine, all things which are created, it must needs be that there was an opposition; even the forbidden fruit in opposition to the tree of life; the one being sweet and the other bitter.

Wherefore, the Lord God gave unto man that he should act for himself. Wherefore, man could not act for himself save it should be that he was enticed by the one or the other.

And I, Lehi, according to the things which I have read, must needs suppose that an angel of God, according to that which is written, had fallen from heaven; wherefore, he became a devil, having sought that which was evil before God.

And because he had fallen from heaven, and had become miserable forever, he sought also the misery of all mankind. Wherefore, he said unto Eve, yea, even that old serpent, who is the devil, who is the father of all lies, wherefore he said: Partake of the forbidden fruit, and ye shall not die, but ye shall be as God, knowing good and evil.

And after Adam and Eve had partaken of the forbidden fruit they were driven out of the garden of Eden, to till the earth.

And they have brought forth children; yea, even the family of all the earth.

And the days of the children of men were prolonged, according to the will of God, that they might repent while in the flesh; wherefore, their state became a state of probation, and their time was lengthened, according to the commandments which the Lord God gave unto the children of men. For he gave commandment that all men must repent; for he showed unto all men that they were lost, because of the transgression of their parents.

And now, behold, if Adam had not transgressed he would not have fallen, but he would have remained in the garden of Eden. And all things which were created must have remained in the same state in which they were after they were created; and they must have remained forever, and had no end.

23 En hulle sou geen kinders gehad het nie; daarom sou hulle gebly het in 'n toestand van onskuld, sonder vreugde omdat hulle geen ellende geken het nie; sonder om goed te doen, want hulle het geen sonde geken nie.

24 Maar kyk, alle dinge het geskied deur die wysheid van Hom wat alle dinge weet.

25 Adam het tot 'n val gekom sodat die mens mag wees; en mense is sodat hulle vreugde mag hê.

26 En die Messias kom in die volheid van die tyd, sodat Hy die kinders van mense van die val kan verlos. En omdat hulle verlos is van die val, het hulle vry geword vir ewig, en hulle ken die goeie van die kwade; om selfstandig te handel en nie waarop handeling uitgevoer word nie, behalwe deur die bestraffing van die wet op die groot en laaste dag, volgens die gebooie wat God gegee het.

27 Daarom, mense is vry volgens die vlees; en alle dinge word aan hulle gegee wat noodsaaklik is vir die mens. En hulle is vry om vryheid te kies en die ewige lewe, deur die groot Middelaar van alle mense, of om slawerny en die dood te kies, volgens die slawerny en die mag van die duiwel; want hy soek daarna dat alle mense ellendig moet wees soos hyself.

28 En nou, my seuns, wil ek hê dat julle moet kyk na die groot Middelaar, en ag slaan op sy groot gebooie; en getrou wees aan sy woorde, en die ewige lewe kies, volgens die wil van sy Heilige Gees;

29 En nie die ewige dood kies, volgens die wil van die vlees en die bose wat daarin is nie, wat die gees van die duiwel die mag gee om gevange te neem, om julle af te bring na die hel, sodat hy mag heers oor julle in sy eie koninkryk.

30 Ek het hierdie paar woorde met julle almal gespreek, my seuns, in die laaste dae van my toetsing; en ek het die goeie deel gekies, volgens die woorde van die profeet. En ek het geen ander oogmerk nie as die ewigdurende welsyn van julle siele. Amen.

And they would have had no children; wherefore they would have remained in a state of innocence, having no joy, for they knew no misery; doing no good, for they knew no sin.

But behold, all things have been done in the wisdom of him who knoweth all things.

Adam fell that men might be; and men are, that they might have joy.

And the Messiah cometh in the fulness of time, that he may redeem the children of men from the fall. And because that they are redeemed from the fall they have become free forever, knowing good from evil; to act for themselves and not to be acted upon, save it be by the punishment of the law at the great and last day, according to the commandments which God hath given.

Wherefore, men are free according to the flesh; and all things are given them which are expedient unto man. And they are free to choose liberty and eternal life, through the great Mediator of all men, or to choose captivity and death, according to the captivity and power of the devil; for he seeketh that all men might be miserable like unto himself.

And now, my sons, I would that ye should look to the great Mediator, and hearken unto his great commandments; and be faithful unto his words, and choose eternal life, according to the will of his Holy Spirit;

And not choose eternal death, according to the will of the flesh and the evil which is therein, which giveth the spirit of the devil power to captivate, to bring you down to hell, that he may reign over you in his own kingdom.

I have spoken these few words unto you all, my sons, in the last days of my probation; and I have chosen the good part, according to the words of the prophet. And I have none other object save it be the everlasting welfare of your souls. Amen.

2 Nefi 3

- 1 En nou spreek ek met jou, Josef, my laasgeborene. Jy is gebore in die wildernis van my verdrukkinge; ja, in die dae van my grootste droefheid het jou moeder jou gebaar.
- 2 En mag die Here ook aan jou hierdie land toewy, wat 'n uiters kosbare land is, vir jou erfenis en die erfenis van jou saad saam met jou broers, as jou sekerheid vir ewig, as dit so is dat jy die gebooie onderhou van die Heilige Een van Israel.
- 3 En nou, Josef, my laasgeborene, wat ek uit die wildernis van my verdrukkinge uitbring het, mag die Here jou seën vir ewig, want jou saad sal nie heeltemal vernietig word nie.
- 4 Want kyk, jy is die vrug van my lendene; en ek is 'n afstammeling van Josef wat gevange weggevoer is na Egipte. En groot was die verbonde van die Here wat Hy met Josef gesluit het.
- 5 Daarom, Josef het waarlik ons dag gesien. En hy het 'n belofte ontvang van die Here, dat van die vrug van sy lendene sal die Here God 'n regverdigde tak voortbring van die huis van Israel; nie die Messias nie, maar 'n tak wat afgebreek sou word, nietemin, om onthou te word in die verbonde van die Here, dat die Messias geopenbaar sal word aan hulle in die laaste dae, deur die gees van krag, om hulle uit die duisternis tot die lig te bring—ja, uit verborge duisternis en uit gevangenskap na vryheid.
- 6 Want Josef het inderdaad getuig, en gesê: 'n Siener sal die Here my God opwek, wat 'n uitverkore siener sal wees vir die vrug van my lendene.
- 7 Ja, Josef het waarlik gesê: So sê die Here vir my: 'n Uitverkore siener sal Ek voortbring uit die vrug van jou lendene; en hy sal hoog geag word onder die vrug van jou lendene. En aan hom sal Ek bevel gee dat hy 'n werk sal doen vir die vrug van jou lendene, sy broers, wat van groot waarde sal wees vir hulle, en wel om hulle te bring tot die kennis van die verbonde wat Ek gesluit het met jou vaders.
- 8 En Ek sal aan hom 'n gebod gee dat hy geen ander werk sal doen, behalwe die werk wat Ek hom sal gebied nie. En Ek sal hom groot maak in my oë; want hy sal my werk doen.

2 Nephi 3

And now I speak unto you, Joseph, my last-born. Thou wast born in the wilderness of mine afflictions; yea, in the days of my greatest sorrow did thy mother bear thee.

And may the Lord consecrate also unto thee this land, which is a most precious land, for thine inheritance and the inheritance of thy seed with thy brethren, for thy security forever, if it so be that ye shall keep the commandments of the Holy One of Israel.

And now, Joseph, my last-born, whom I have brought out of the wilderness of mine afflictions, may the Lord bless thee forever, for thy seed shall not utterly be destroyed.

For behold, thou art the fruit of my loins; and I am a descendant of Joseph who was carried captive into Egypt. And great were the covenants of the Lord which he made unto Joseph.

Wherefore, Joseph truly saw our day. And he obtained a promise of the Lord, that out of the fruit of his loins the Lord God would raise up a righteous branch unto the house of Israel; not the Messiah, but a branch which was to be broken off, nevertheless, to be remembered in the covenants of the Lord that the Messiah should be made manifest unto them in the latter days, in the spirit of power, unto the bringing of them out of darkness unto light—yea, out of hidden darkness and out of captivity unto freedom.

For Joseph truly testified, saying: A seer shall the Lord my God raise up, who shall be a choice seer unto the fruit of my loins.

Yea, Joseph truly said: Thus saith the Lord unto me: A choice seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and he shall be esteemed highly among the fruit of thy loins. And unto him will I give commandment that he shall do a work for the fruit of thy loins, his brethren, which shall be of great worth unto them, even to the bringing of them to the knowledge of the covenants which I have made with thy fathers.

And I will give unto him a commandment that he shall do none other work, save the work which I shall command him. And I will make him great in mine eyes; for he shall do my work.

- 9 En hy sal groot wees soos Moses, wat Ek gesê het Ek vir julle sal opwek om my volk te verlos, o huis van Israel.
- 10 En Ek sal vir Moses opwek, om jou volk te verlos uit Egipteland.
- 11 Maar 'n siener sal Ek opwek uit die vrug van jou lendene; en aan hom sal Ek mag gee om my woord voort te bring aan die saad van jou lendene—en nie net om my woord voort te bring nie, sê die Here, maar om hulle te oortuig van my woord, wat alreeds onder hulle uitgegaan het.
- 12 Daarom, die vrug van jou lendene sal skrywe; en die vrug van die lendene van Juda sal skrywe; en dit wat geskrywe sal word deur die vrug van jou lendene, en ook dit wat geskrywe sal word deur die vrug van die lendene van Juda, sal saamgroeï, tot weerlegging van valse leerstellings, en die beslegtiging van twiste, en om vrede te vestig onder die vrug van jou lendene, en om hulle te bring tot die kennis van hulle vaders in die laaste dae, en ook tot die kennis van my verbonde, sê die Here.
- 13 En uit swakheid sal hy sterk gemaak word, in daardie dag wanneer my werk sal begin onder my hele volk, om jou te herstel, o huis van Israel, sê die Here.
- 14 En so het Josef geprofeteer, en gesê: Kyk, daardie siener sal die Here seën; en hulle wat soek om hom te vernietig, sal beskaam word; want hierdie belofte, wat ek verkry het van die Here, aangaande die vrug van my lendene, sal vervul word. Kyk, ek is seker omtrent die vervulling van hierdie belofte;
- 15 En sy naam sal na my genoem word; en dit sal ook die naam wees van sy vader. En hy sal soos ek wees; want die ding wat die Here sal voortbring deur sy hand, deur die mag van die Here sal my volk tot heil bring.
- 16 Ja, so het Josef geprofeteer: Ek is seker van hierdie ding, net soos ek seker is van die belofte van Moses; want die Here het aan my gesê, Ek sal jou saad bewaar vir ewig.

And he shall be great like unto Moses, whom I have said I would raise up unto you, to deliver my people, O house of Israel.

And Moses will I raise up, to deliver thy people out of the land of Egypt.

But a seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and unto him will I give power to bring forth my word unto the seed of thy loins—and not to the bringing forth my word only, saith the Lord, but to the convincing them of my word, which shall have already gone forth among them.

Wherefore, the fruit of thy loins shall write; and the fruit of the loins of Judah shall write; and that which shall be written by the fruit of thy loins, and also that which shall be written by the fruit of the loins of Judah, shall grow together, unto the confounding of false doctrines and laying down of contentions, and establishing peace among the fruit of thy loins, and bringing them to the knowledge of their fathers in the latter days, and also to the knowledge of my covenants, saith the Lord.

And out of weakness he shall be made strong, in that day when my work shall commence among all my people, unto the restoring thee, O house of Israel, saith the Lord.

And thus prophesied Joseph, saying: Behold, that seer will the Lord bless; and they that seek to destroy him shall be confounded; for this promise, which I have obtained of the Lord, of the fruit of my loins, shall be fulfilled. Behold, I am sure of the fulfilling of this promise;

And his name shall be called after me; and it shall be after the name of his father. And he shall be like unto me; for the thing, which the Lord shall bring forth by his hand, by the power of the Lord shall bring my people unto salvation.

Yea, thus prophesied Joseph: I am sure of this thing, even as I am sure of the promise of Moses; for the Lord hath said unto me, I will preserve thy seed forever.

- 17 En die Here het gesê: Ek sal 'n Moses opwek; en Ek sal hom mag gee in 'n roede; en Ek sal hom die vermoë gee om te skryf. Tog sal Ek sy tong nie losmaak, sodat hy veel kan spreek nie, want Ek sal hom nie magtig maak in spraak nie. Maar Ek sal my wet vir hom skryf, deur die vinger van my eie hand; en Ek sal vir hom 'n woordvoerder maak.
- 18 En die Here het ook aan my gesê: Ek sal opwek vir die vrug van jou lendene; en Ek sal vir hom 'n woordvoerder maak. En Ek, kyk, Ek sal vir hom gee dat hy die skrif van die vrug van jou lendene sal skrywe, aan die vrug van jou lendene; en die woordvoerder van jou lendene sal dit verkondig.
- 19 En die woorde wat hy sal skrywe, sal die woorde wees wat raadsaam is in my wysheid om uit te gaan na die vrug van jou lendene. En dit sal wees asof die vrug van jou lendene hulle toegeroep het uit die stof; want Ek ken hulle geloof.
- 20 En hulle sal roep uit die stof; ja, en wel bekering tot hulle broeders, selfs nadat baie geslagte vir hulle verbygegaan het. En dit sal gebeur dat hulle geroep sal opgaan en wel volgens die eenvoud van hulle woorde.
- 21 Vanweë hulle geloof sal hul woorde uitgaan uit my mond na hulle broers wat die vrug is van jou lendene; en die swakheid van hulle woorde sal Ek sterk maak in hulle geloof, om my verbond te onthou wat Ek met jou vaders gesluit het.
- 22 En nou, kyk, my seun Josef, op hierdie wyse het my vader van ouds geprofeteer.
- 23 Daarom, vanweë hierdie verbond is jy geseënd; want jou saad sal nie vernietig word nie, want hulle sal ag slaan op die woorde van die boek.
- 24 En daar sal een opstaan onder hulle wat magtig is, wat baie goed sal doen, beide in woord en in daad, wat 'n werktuig sal wees in die hande van God, met uitnemende geloof, om magtige wonders te verrig, en dit doen wat groot is in die oë van God, om baie herstelling aan die huis van Israel teweeg te bring, en aan die saad van jou broers.

And the Lord hath said: I will raise up a Moses; and I will give power unto him in a rod; and I will give judgment unto him in writing. Yet I will not loose his tongue, that he shall speak much, for I will not make him mighty in speaking. But I will write unto him my law, by the finger of mine own hand; and I will make a spokesman for him.

And the Lord said unto me also: I will raise up unto the fruit of thy loins; and I will make for him a spokesman. And I, behold, I will give unto him that he shall write the writing of the fruit of thy loins, unto the fruit of thy loins; and the spokesman of thy loins shall declare it.

And the words which he shall write shall be the words which are expedient in my wisdom should go forth unto the fruit of thy loins. And it shall be as if the fruit of thy loins had cried unto them from the dust; for I know their faith.

And they shall cry from the dust; yea, even repentance unto their brethren, even after many generations have gone by them. And it shall come to pass that their cry shall go, even according to the simplicity of their words.

Because of their faith their words shall proceed forth out of my mouth unto their brethren who are the fruit of thy loins; and the weakness of their words will I make strong in their faith, unto the remembering of my covenant which I made unto thy fathers.

And now, behold, my son Joseph, after this manner did my father of old prophesy.

Wherefore, because of this covenant thou art blessed; for thy seed shall not be destroyed, for they shall hearken unto the words of the book.

And there shall rise up one mighty among them, who shall do much good, both in word and in deed, being an instrument in the hands of God, with exceeding faith, to work mighty wonders, and do that thing which is great in the sight of God, unto the bringing to pass much restoration unto the house of Israel, and unto the seed of thy brethren.

25 En nou, geseënd is jy, Josef. Kyk, jy is jonk; daarom, slaan ag op die woorde van jou broer, Nepi, en dit sal aan jou gedoen word en wel volgens die woorde wat ek gespreek het. Onthou die woorde van jou sterwende vader. Amen.

And now, blessed art thou, Joseph. Behold, thou art little; wherefore hearken unto the words of thy brother, Nephi, and it shall be done unto thee even according to the words which I have spoken. Remember the words of thy dying father. Amen.

2 Nefi 4

- 1 En nou, ek, Nefi, spreek aangaande die profesieë wat my vader gespreek het aangaande Josef, wat weggevoer is na Egipte.
- 2 Want kyk, hy het waarlik geprofeteer aangaande al sy saad. En die profesieë wat hy geskrywe het, is daar nie baie groter nie. En hy het geprofeteer aangaande ons, en ons toekomstige geslagte; en hulle is geskrywe op die plate van brons.
- 3 Daarom, nadat my vader 'n einde gemaak het om te spreek aangaande die profesieë van Josef, het hy die kinders van Laman geroep, sy seuns, en sy dogters, en vir hulle gesê: Kyk, my seuns, en my dogters, wat die seuns en die dogters is van my eersgeborene, ek wil hê dat julle die oor neig na my woorde.
- 4 Want die Here God het gesê dat: In soverre julle my gebooie sal onderhou, sal julle voorspoedig wees in die land; en in soverre julle nie my gebooie sal onderhou nie, sal julle afgesny word van my teenwoordigheid.
- 5 Maar kyk, my seuns en my dogters, ek kan nie neerdaal in my graf tensy ek 'n seëning laat op julle nie; want kyk, ek weet dat as julle onderrig word in die weg wat julle moet gaan, sal julle nie daarvan afwyk nie.
- 6 Daarom, as julle vervloek is, kyk, ek laat my seëning op julle, dat die vloek van julle weggeneem mag word en verantwoord word op die hoofde van julle ouers.
- 7 Daarom, as gevolg van my seëning sal die Here God nie toelaat dat julle sal vergaan nie; daarom, Hy sal barmhartig wees teenoor julle en julle saad vir ewig.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat nadat my vader 'n einde gemaak het om met die seuns en dogters van Laman te spreek, het hy dit so bewerkstellig dat die seuns en dogters van Lemuel voor hom gebring word.

2 Nephi 4

And now, I, Nephi, speak concerning the prophecies of which my father hath spoken, concerning Joseph, who was carried into Egypt.

For behold, he truly prophesied concerning all his seed. And the prophecies which he wrote, there are not many greater. And he prophesied concerning us, and our future generations; and they are written upon the plates of brass.

Wherefore, after my father had made an end of speaking concerning the prophecies of Joseph, he called the children of Laman, his sons, and his daughters, and said unto them: Behold, my sons, and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my firstborn, I would that ye should give ear unto my words.

For the Lord God hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

But behold, my sons and my daughters, I cannot go down to my grave save I should leave a blessing upon you; for behold, I know that if ye are brought up in the way ye should go ye will not depart from it.

Wherefore, if ye are cursed, behold, I leave my blessing upon you, that the cursing may be taken from you and be answered upon the heads of your parents.

Wherefore, because of my blessing the Lord God will not suffer that ye shall perish; wherefore, he will be merciful unto you and unto your seed forever.

And it came to pass that after my father had made an end of speaking to the sons and daughters of Laman, he caused the sons and daughters of Lemuel to be brought before him.

- 9 En hy het met hulle gespreek, en gesê: Kyk, my seuns en my dogters, wat die seuns en dogters van my tweede seun is, kyk, ek laat aan julle dieselfde seëning wat ek aan die seuns en dogters van Laman ge-laai het; daarom, julle sal nie heeltemal vernietig word nie; maar aan die einde sal julle saad geseën word.
- 10 En dit het gebeur dat nadat my vader 'n einde ge-maak het om met hulle te spreek, kyk, het hy met die seuns van Ismael gespreek, ja, en wel met sy hele huisgesin.
- 11 En nadat hy 'n einde gemaak het om met hulle te spreek, het hy met Sam gespreek, en gesê: Geseënd is jy, en jou saad; want jy sal die land beërwe soos jou broer Nepi. En jou saad sal gereken word met sy saad; en jy sal soos jou broer wees, en jou saad soos sy saad; en jy sal geseënd wees in al jou dae.
- 12 En dit het gebeur nadat my vader, Lehi, met sy he-le huisgesin gespreek het, volgens die gevoelens van sy hart en die Gees van die Here wat in hom was, het hy oud geword. En dit het gebeur dat hy gesterwe het, en begrawe is.
- 13 En dit het gebeur dat nie baie dae na sy dood nie, Laman en Lemuel en die seuns van Ismael vir my kwaad was vanweë die vermaninge van die Here.
- 14 Want ek, Nepi, was gedwing om met hulle te spreek, volgens sy woord; want ek het baie dinge met hulle gespreek, asook my vader, voor sy dood; baie van hierdie woorde is geskrywe op my ander plate; want 'n meer geskiedkundige deel is geskryf op my ander plate.
- 15 En op hierdie skrywe ek die dinge van my siel, en baie van die skrifture wat gegraveer is op die plate van brons. Want my siel verlustig hom in die skriftu-re, en my hart bepeins hulle, en skryf hulle neer vir die lering en die voordeel van my kinders.
- 16 Kyk, my siel verlustig hom in die dinge van die Here; en my hart bepeins gedurig die dinge wat ek gesien en gehoor het.

And he spake unto them, saying: Behold, my sons and my daughters, who are the sons and the daugh-ters of my second son; behold I leave unto you the same blessing which I left unto the sons and daugh-ters of Laman; wherefore, thou shalt not utterly be destroyed; but in the end thy seed shall be blessed.

And it came to pass that when my father had made an end of speaking unto them, behold, he spake unto the sons of Ishmael, yea, and even all his household.

And after he had made an end of speaking unto them, he spake unto Sam, saying: Blessed art thou, and thy seed; for thou shalt inherit the land like unto thy brother Nephi. And thy seed shall be numbered with his seed; and thou shalt be even like unto thy brother, and thy seed like unto his seed; and thou shalt be blessed in all thy days.

And it came to pass after my father, Lehi, had spo-ken unto all his household, according to the feelings of his heart and the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, he waxed old. And it came to pass that he died, and was buried.

And it came to pass that not many days after his death, Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael were angry with me because of the admonitions of the Lord.

For I, Nephi, was constrained to speak unto them, according to his word; for I had spoken many things unto them, and also my father, before his death; many of which sayings are written upon mine other plates; for a more history part are written upon mine other plates.

And upon these I write the things of my soul, and many of the scriptures which are engraven upon the plates of brass. For my soul delighteth in the scrip-tures, and my heart pondereth them, and writeth them for the learning and the profit of my children.

Behold, my soul delighteth in the things of the Lord; and my heart pondereth continually upon the things which I have seen and heard.

17 Nogtans, nieteenstaande die groot goedheid van die Here, deur my sy groot en wonderbaarlike werke te toon, roep my hart uit: O, ellendige mens wat ek is! Ja, my hart is bedroef vanweë my vlees; my siel treur vanweë my ongeregtighede.

18 Ek is omring, vanweë die versoekinge en die sondes wat my so maklik oorval.

19 En wanneer ek my wil verheug, kreun my hart vanweë my sondes; nogtans, ek weet in wie ek vertrou het.

20 My God was my steun; Hy het my gelei deur my verdrukkinge in die wildernis; en Hy het my bewaar op die waters van die groot diepte.

21 Hy het my gevul met sy liefde, selfs tot die vertering van my vlees.

22 Hy het my vyande beskaam, en hulle laat sidder voor my.

23 Kyk, Hy het my geroep gehoor bedags en Hy het my snags kennis gegee deur visioene.

24 En bedags het ek vrymoedig geword in magtige gebed voor Hom; ja, my stem het ek omhoog gestuur; en engele het neergedaal en my gedien.

25 En op die vleuels van sy Gees is my liggaam weggevoer op uitermate hoë berge. En my oë het groot dinge gesien, ja, selfs te groot vir die mens; daarom is ek beveel om hulle nie te skryf nie.

26 O, dan, as ek sulke groot dinge gesien het, as die Here in sy neerdalendheid teenoor die kinders van mense, die mens besoek het met soveel barmhartigheid, hoekom sou my hart ween, en my siel talm in die dal van droefheid, en my vlees wegteer, en my krag verflou, vanweë my verdrukkinge?

27 En hoekom sou ek toegee aan die sonde, vanweë my vlees? Ja, hoekom, sou ek swig voor versoekinge, sodat die bose een plek kry in my hart om my vrede te vernietig en my siel te bedroef? Hoekom is ek kwaad vanweë my vyand?

28 Ontwaak, my siel! Wees nie langer bedruk in die sonde nie. Verbly jou, o my hart, en moenie langer plek gee vir die vyand van my siel nie.

29 Word nie weer kwaad vanweë my vyande nie. Moenie my krag verflou vanweë my verdrukkinge nie.

Nevertheless, notwithstanding the great goodness of the Lord, in showing me his great and marvelous works, my heart exclaimeth: O wretched man that I am! Yea, my heart sorroweth because of my flesh; my soul grieveth because of mine iniquities.

I am encompassed about, because of the temptations and the sins which do so easily beset me.

And when I desire to rejoice, my heart groaneth because of my sins; nevertheless, I know in whom I have trusted.

My God hath been my support; he hath led me through mine afflictions in the wilderness; and he hath preserved me upon the waters of the great deep.

He hath filled me with his love, even unto the consuming of my flesh.

He hath confounded mine enemies, unto the causing of them to quake before me.

Behold, he hath heard my cry by day, and he hath given me knowledge by visions in the night-time.

And by day have I waxed bold in mighty prayer before him; yea, my voice have I sent up on high; and angels came down and ministered unto me.

And upon the wings of his Spirit hath my body been carried away upon exceedingly high mountains. And mine eyes have beheld great things, yea, even too great for man; therefore I was bidden that I should not write them.

O then, if I have seen so great things, if the Lord in his condescension unto the children of men hath visited men in so much mercy, why should my heart weep and my soul linger in the valley of sorrow, and my flesh waste away, and my strength slacken, because of mine afflictions?

And why should I yield to sin, because of my flesh? Yea, why should I give way to temptations, that the evil one have place in my heart to destroy my peace and afflict my soul? Why am I angry because of mine enemy?

Awake, my soul! No longer droop in sin. Rejoice, O my heart, and give place no more for the enemy of my soul.

Do not anger again because of mine enemies. Do not slacken my strength because of mine afflictions.

30 Verbly jou, o my hart, en roep tot die Here, en sê:
O Here, ek sal U loof vir ewig; ja, my siel sal hom
verbly in U, my God, en die rots van my heil.

31 O Here, sal U my siel verlos? Sal U my bevry uit die
hande van my vyande? Sal U my maak dat ek mag
sidder ten aanskoue van die sonde?

32 Mag die poorte van die hel gedurig gesluit wees
voor my, omdat my hart gebroke is en my gees ver-
slae is! O Here, sal U nie die poorte van u regverdig-
heid voor my sluit nie, dat ek mag wandel in die weg
van die lae vallei, dat ek nougeset mag bly op die ge-
lyke pad!

33 O Here, sal U my omvou in die mantel van u reg-
verdigheid! O Here, sal U vir my 'n weg open om te
ontvlug voor my vyande! Sal U my pad reguit maak
voor my! Sal U nie 'n struikelblok plaas in my weg
nie—maar dat U my weg sal oopmaak voor my, en nie
my weg versper nie, maar die weë van my vyand.

34 O Here, ek het op U vertrou, en ek sal op U vertrou
vir ewig. Ek sal nie my vertrou stel in die arm van
vlees nie; want ek weet, vervloek is hy wat sy ver-
troue stel in die arm van vlees. Ja, vervloek is hy wat
sy vertrou stel in die mens of vlees sy arm maak.

35 Ja, ek weet dat die Here mildelik sal gee aan hom
wat vra. Ja, my God sal vir my gee, as ek nie verkeerd
vra nie; daarom sal ek my stem verhef tot U; ja, ek sal
roep tot U, my God, die rots van my regverdigheid.
Kyk, my stem sal vir ewig opgaan na U, my rots en
my ewigdurende God. Amen.

Rejoice, O my heart, and cry unto the Lord, and
say: O Lord, I will praise thee forever; yea, my soul
will rejoice in thee, my God, and the rock of my sal-
vation.

O Lord, wilt thou redeem my soul? Wilt thou de-
liver me out of the hands of mine enemies? Wilt thou
make me that I may shake at the appearance of sin?

May the gates of hell be shut continually before
me, because that my heart is broken and my spirit is
contrite! O Lord, wilt thou not shut the gates of thy
righteousness before me, that I may walk in the path
of the low valley, that I may be strict in the plain
road!

O Lord, wilt thou encircle me around in the robe
of thy righteousness! O Lord, wilt thou make a way
for mine escape before mine enemies! Wilt thou
make my path straight before me! Wilt thou not
place a stumbling block in my way—but that thou
wouldst clear my way before me, and hedge not up
my way, but the ways of mine enemy.

O Lord, I have trusted in thee, and I will trust in
thee forever. I will not put my trust in the arm of
flesh; for I know that cursed is he that putteth his
trust in the arm of flesh. Yea, cursed is he that put-
teth his trust in man or maketh flesh his arm.

Yea, I know that God will give liberally to him that
asketh. Yea, my God will give me, if I ask not amiss;
therefore I will lift up my voice unto thee; yea, I will
cry unto thee, my God, the rock of my righteousness.
Behold, my voice shall forever ascend up unto thee,
my rock and mine everlasting God. Amen.

2 Nefi 5

- 1 Kyk, dit het gebeur dat ek, Nefi, veel geroep het tot die Here my God, vanweë die toorn van my broers.
- 2 Maar kyk, hulle toorn het toegeneem teenoor my, in soverre dat hulle gesoek het om my lewe te neem.
- 3 Ja, hulle het gemurmureer teen my, en gesê: Ons jonger broer dink om te heers oor ons; en ons het baie beproewinge gehad as gevolg van hom; daarom, nou laat ons hom doodmaak, dat ons nie langer gekwel word vanweë sy woorde nie. Want kyk, ons wil hom nie hê as ons heerser nie; want dit behoort aan ons, wat die ouer broers is, om te heers oor hierdie volk.
- 4 Nou skryf ek nie op hierdie plate al die woorde wat hulle gemurmureer het teen my nie. Maar dit is genoeg vir my om te sê, dat hulle gesoek het om my lewe te neem.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat die Here my gewaarsku het, dat ek, Nefi, moes weggaan van hulle en die wildernis binnevlug, en al diegene wat saam met my wou gaan.
- 6 Daarom, dit het gebeur dat ek, Nefi, my gesin geneem het, en ook Zoram en sy gesin, en Sam, my ouer broer en sy gesin, en Jakob en Josef, my jonger broers, en ook my susters, en al diegene wat saam met my wou gaan. En al diegene wat saam met my wou gaan, is hulle wat geglo het in die waarskuwings en die openbarings van God; daarom, hulle het ag geslaan op my woorde.
- 7 En ons het ons tente geneem en watter dinge ook al vir ons moontlik was, en gereis in die wildernis vir 'n tydperk van baie dae. En nadat ons gereis het vir 'n tydperk van baie dae, het ons ons tente opgeslaan.
- 8 En my volk wou hê dat ons die naam van die plek Nefi moes noem; daarom, ons het dit Nefi genoem.
- 9 En al diegene wat saam met my was het dit op hulle geneem om hulself die volk van Nefi te noem.
- 10 En ons het gepoog om die verordeninge te onderhou, en die insettinge, en die gebooie van die Here in alle dinge volgens die wet van Moses.

2 Nephi 5

Behold, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cry much unto the Lord my God, because of the anger of my brethren.

But behold, their anger did increase against me, insomuch that they did seek to take away my life.

Yea, they did murmur against me, saying: Our younger brother thinks to rule over us; and we have had much trial because of him; wherefore, now let us slay him, that we may not be afflicted more because of his words. For behold, we will not have him to be our ruler; for it belongs unto us, who are the elder brethren, to rule over this people.

Now I do not write upon these plates all the words which they murmured against me. But it sufficeth me to say, that they did seek to take away my life.

And it came to pass that the Lord did warn me, that I, Nephi, should depart from them and flee into the wilderness, and all those who would go with me.

Wherefore, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did take my family, and also Zoram and his family, and Sam, mine elder brother and his family, and Jacob and Joseph, my younger brethren, and also my sisters, and all those who would go with me. And all those who would go with me were those who believed in the warnings and the revelations of God; wherefore, they did hearken unto my words.

And we did take our tents and whatsoever things were possible for us, and did journey in the wilderness for the space of many days. And after we had journeyed for the space of many days we did pitch our tents.

And my people would that we should call the name of the place Nephi; wherefore, we did call it Nephi.

And all those who were with me did take upon them to call themselves the people of Nephi.

And we did observe to keep the judgments, and the statutes, and the commandments of the Lord in all things, according to the law of Moses.

- 11 En die Here was met ons; en ons was uitermate voorspoedig; want ons het saad gesaai, en ons het weer geoes in oorvloed. En ons het begin om kleinvee te teel, en grootvee, en diere van alle soorte.
- 12 En ek, Nepi, het ook die kronieke gebring wat gegraveer was op die plate van brons; en ook die bal, of kompas, wat berei is vir my vader deur die hand van die Here, volgens dit wat geskrywe is.
- 13 En dit het gebeur dat ons uitermate voorspoedig begin word en vermenigvuldig het in die land.
- 14 En ek, Nepi, het die swaard van Laban geneem, en daarvolgens baie swaarde gemaak, uit vrees dat die volk wat nou die Lamaniete genoem is, op ons sou neerkom en ons vernietig; want ek het hulle haat geken teenoor my en my kinders en diegene wat my volk genoem is.
- 15 En ek het my volk geleer om geboue te bou, en om allerlei hout te bewerk, en van yster, en van koper, en van brons, en van staal, en van goud, en van silwer, en van kosbare ertse, wat in groot oorvloed was.
- 16 En ek, Nepi, het 'n tempel gebou; en ek het dit opgerig volgens die wyse van die tempel van Salomo, behalwe dat dit nie gebou was van so baie kosbare dinge nie; want hulle was nie te vinde in die land nie, daarom, dit kon nie gebou word soos Salomo se tempel nie. Maar die wyse van oprigting was soos die tempel van Salomo; en die afwerking daarvan was uitermate goed.
- 17 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Nepi, my volk geleer het om vlytig te wees, en om te werk met hulle hande.
- 18 En dit het gebeur dat hulle wou hê dat ek hulle koning moes wees. Maar ek, Nepi, was begerig dat hulle nie 'n koning moes hê nie; desnieteenstaande, ek het vir hulle gedoen volgens dit wat in my mag was.
- 19 En kyk, die woorde van die Here is vervul teenoor my broers, wat Hy gespreek het aangaande hulle, dat ek hulle heerser sou wees en hulle leraar. Daarom, ek was hulle heerser en hulle leraar, volgens die gebooi van die Here, totdat hulle gesoek het om my lewe te neem.

And the Lord was with us; and we did prosper exceedingly; for we did sow seed, and we did reap again in abundance. And we began to raise flocks, and herds, and animals of every kind.

And I, Nephi, had also brought the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass; and also the ball, or compass, which was prepared for my father by the hand of the Lord, according to that which is written.

And it came to pass that we began to prosper exceedingly, and to multiply in the land.

And I, Nephi, did take the sword of Laban, and after the manner of it did make many swords, lest by any means the people who were now called Lamanites should come upon us and destroy us; for I knew their hatred towards me and my children and those who were called my people.

And I did teach my people to build buildings, and to work in all manner of wood, and of iron, and of copper, and of brass, and of steel, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious ores, which were in great abundance.

And I, Nephi, did build a temple; and I did construct it after the manner of the temple of Solomon save it were not built of so many precious things; for they were not to be found upon the land, wherefore, it could not be built like unto Solomon's temple. But the manner of the construction was like unto the temple of Solomon; and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cause my people to be industrious, and to labor with their hands.

And it came to pass that they would that I should be their king. But I, Nephi, was desirous that they should have no king; nevertheless, I did for them according to that which was in my power.

And behold, the words of the Lord had been fulfilled unto my brethren, which he spake concerning them, that I should be their ruler and their teacher. Wherefore, I had been their ruler and their teacher, according to the commandments of the Lord, until the time they sought to take away my life.

20 Daarom, die woord van die Here is vervul wat Hy met my gespreek het, naamlik: In soverre hulle nie op jou woorde wil ag slaan nie, sal hulle afgesny word van die teenwoordigheid van die Here. En kyk, hulle was afgesny van sy teenwoordigheid.

21 En Hy het veroorsaak dat die vervloeking oor hulle kom, ja, 'n vreeslike vervloeking, vanweë hulle ongeregtigheid. Want kyk, hulle het hulle harte verhard teen Hom, sodat hulle geword het soos 'n vuurklip; daarom, aangesien hulle blank was, en uitermate mooi en aangenaam, dat hulle nie aantreklik mag wees vir my volk nie, het die Here God 'n vel van donkerheid op hulle laat kom.

22 En so sê die Here God: Ek sal veroorsaak dat hulle weersinwekkend sal wees vir jou volk, tensy hulle hul sal bekeer van hul ongeregtighede.

23 En vervloek sal die saad van hom wees wat meng met hulle saad, want hulle sal vervloek word en wel met dieselfde vervloeking. En die Here het dit gespreek en dit het geskied.

24 En vanweë hul vervloeking wat op hulle was, het hulle 'n lui volk geword, vol ondeug en listigheid, en het gesoek in die wildernis na diere as prooi.

25 En die Here God het aan my gesê: Hulle sal 'n gésel wees vir jou saad, om hulle aan te spoor om My te onthou; en in soverre hulle My nie wil onthou nie, en ag slaan op my woorde nie, sal hulle hul gésel tot vernietiging toe.

26 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Nefi, Jakob en Josef gewy het, dat hulle priesters en leraars sou wees oor die land van my volk.

27 En dit het gebeur dat ons geleef het volgens die wyse van geluk.

28 En dertig jaar het verbygegaan van die tyd dat ons Jerusalem verlaat het.

29 En ek, Nefi, het die kronieke bygehou op my plate van my volk tot dusver wat ek gemaak het.

30 En dit het gebeur dat die Here God aan my gesê het: Maak ander plate; en jy moet baie dinge op hulle graveer wat goed is in my oë, tot voordeel van jou volk.

31 Daarom het ek, Nefi, om gehoorsaam te wees aan die bevel van die Here, heengegaan en hierdie plate gemaak waarop ek hierdie dinge gegraveer het.

Wherefore, the word of the Lord was fulfilled which he spake unto me, saying that: Inasmuch as they will not hearken unto thy words they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And behold, they were cut off from his presence.

And he had caused the cursing to come upon them, yea, even a sore cursing, because of their iniquity. For behold, they had hardened their hearts against him, that they had become like unto a flint; wherefore, as they were white, and exceedingly fair and delightsome, that they might not be enticing unto my people the Lord God did cause a skin of blackness to come upon them.

And thus saith the Lord God: I will cause that they shall be loathsome unto thy people, save they shall repent of their iniquities.

And cursed shall be the seed of him that mixeth with their seed; for they shall be cursed even with the same cursing. And the Lord spake it, and it was done.

And because of their cursing which was upon them they did become an idle people, full of mischief and subtlety, and did seek in the wilderness for beasts of prey.

And the Lord God said unto me: They shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in remembrance of me; and inasmuch as they will not remember me, and hearken unto my words, they shall scourge them even unto destruction.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did consecrate Jacob and Joseph, that they should be priests and teachers over the land of my people.

And it came to pass that we lived after the manner of happiness.

And thirty years had passed away from the time we left Jerusalem.

And I, Nephi, had kept the records upon my plates, which I had made, of my people thus far.

And it came to pass that the Lord God said unto me: Make other plates; and thou shalt engraven many things upon them which are good in my sight, for the profit of thy people.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, to be obedient to the commandments of the Lord, went and made these plates upon which I have engraven these things.

32 En ek het dit wat aangenaam is vir God gegraveer.
En as my volk behae skeep in die dinge van God, sal
hulle behae skeep in my graveerwerk wat op hierdie
plate is.

33 En as my volk begeer om te weet aangaande die
meer besondere deel van die geskiedenis van my
volk, moet hulle my ander plate ondersoek.

34 En dit is vir my genoeg om te sê dat veertig jaar
verbygegaan het, en ons het alreeds oorloë en twiste
met ons broers gehad.

And I engraved that which is pleasing unto God.
And if my people are pleased with the things of God
they will be pleased with mine engravings which are
upon these plates.

And if my people desire to know the more particu-
lar part of the history of my people they must search
mine other plates.

And it sufficeth me to say that forty years had
passed away, and we had already had wars and con-
tentions with our brethren.

2 Nefi 6

- 1 Die woorde van Jakob, die broer van Nephi, wat hy met die volk van Nephi gespreek het:
- 2 Kyk, my geliefde broers, ek, Jakob, wat geroep is deur God, en geordineer is volgens die wyse van sy heilige orde, en wat geordineer is deur my broer Nephi, na wie julle opsien as 'n koning of beskermmer, en op wie julle staatmaak vir veiligheid, kyk, julle weet dat ek uitermate baie dinge met julle gespreek het.
- 3 Desnieteenstaande, ek spreek weer met julle; want ek is begaan oor die welsyn van julle siele. Ja, my kommer is groot vir julle; en julle weet self dat dit altyd so was. Want ek het julle vermaan met alle ywer; en ek het julle die woorde van my vader geleer; en ek het met julle gespreek aangaande alle dinge wat geskrywe is, vanaf die skepping van die wêreld.
- 4 En nou, kyk, ek wil met julle spreek aangaande die dinge wat is, en die dinge wat sal kom; daarom, ek sal vir julle die woorde van Jesaja lees. En dit is die woorde wat my broer gevra het dat ek met julle moet spreek. En ek spreek met julle om julle onthelwe, sodat julle mag leer en die naam van julle God mag verheerlik.
- 5 En nou, die woorde wat ek sal lees is dit wat Jesaja gespreek het aangaande die hele huis van Israel; daarom, dit kan toegepas word op julle, want julle is van die huis van Israel. En daar is baie dinge wat deur Jesaja gespreek is, wat toegepas mag word op julle, omdat julle van die huis van Israel is.
- 6 En nou, dit is die woorde: So sê die Here God: Kyk Ek sal my hand ophef na die nie-Jode, en my vaandel oprig na die volk; en hulle sal jou seuns bring in hulle arms en jou dogters sal gedra word op hulle skouers.
- 7 En konings sal julle pleegvaders wees en hulle koninginne julle pleegmoeders; hulle sal neerbuig voor jou met hul aangesigte na die aarde, en die stof oplek van jou voete; en jy sal weet dat Ek die Here is; want hulle sal nie beskaamd staan wat wag vir My nie.

2 Nephi 6

The words of Jacob, the brother of Nephi, which he spake unto the people of Nephi:

Behold, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, having been called of God, and ordained after the manner of his holy order, and having been consecrated by my brother Nephi, unto whom ye look as a king or a protector, and on whom ye depend for safety, behold ye know that I have spoken unto you exceedingly many things.

Nevertheless, I speak unto you again; for I am desirous for the welfare of your souls. Yea, mine anxiety is great for you; and ye yourselves know that it ever has been. For I have exhorted you with all diligence; and I have taught you the words of my father; and I have spoken unto you concerning all things which are written, from the creation of the world.

And now, behold, I would speak unto you concerning things which are, and which are to come; wherefore, I will read you the words of Isaiah. And they are the words which my brother has desired that I should speak unto you. And I speak unto you for your sakes, that ye may learn and glorify the name of your God.

And now, the words which I shall read are they which Isaiah spake concerning all the house of Israel; wherefore, they may be likened unto you, for ye are of the house of Israel. And there are many things which have been spoken by Isaiah which may be likened unto you, because ye are of the house of Israel.

And now, these are the words: Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their faces towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

- 8 En nou ek, Jakob, wil ietwat spreek aangaande hierdie woorde. Want kyk, die Here het aan my getoon dat diegene wat in Jerusalem was, waarvandaan ons gekom het, doodgemaak en gevange weggevoer is.
- 9 Nogtans, die Here het aan my getoon dat hulle weer sal terugkeer. En Hy het ook aan my getoon dat die Here God, die Heilige Een van Israel, Hom sal openbaar aan hulle in die vlees; en nadat Hy hom sal openbaar aan hulle, sal hulle Hom gésel en Hom kruisig, volgens die woorde van die engel wat dit met my gespreek het.
- 10 En nadat hulle hul harte verhard het en hardnekig geword het teen die Heilige Een van Israel, kyk, die oordele van die Heilige Een van Israel sal oor hulle kom. En die dag kom dat hulle geslaan en verdruk sal word.
- 11 Daarom, nadat hulle heen en weer verdrywe word, want so sê die engel, baie sal verdruk word in die vlees, en sal nie toegelaat word om te vergaan nie, vanweë die gebede van die gelowiges; hulle sal verstrooi, en geslaan, en gehaat word; nogtans, die Here sal barmhartig wees teenoor hulle, sodat wanneer hulle sal kom tot die kennis van hulle Verlosser, sal hulle weer versamel word na die lande van hulle erfenis.
- 12 En geseënd is die nie-Jode, hulle van wie die profeet geskrywe het; want kyk, as dit so is dat hulle sal bekeer en nie stry teen Sion nie, en hulle nie verenig met daardie groot en gruwelike kerk nie, sal hulle gered word; want die Here God sal sy verbonde nakom wat Hy gesluit het met sy kinders; en om hierdie rede het die profeet hierdie dinge geskrywe.
- 13 Daarom, hulle wat stry teen Sion en die verbonds-volk van die Here, sal die stof oplek van hulle voete; en die volk van die Here sal nie beskaam word nie. Want die volk van die Here is diegene wat vir Hom wag; want hulle wag steeds vir die koms van die Messias.

And now I, Jacob, would speak somewhat concerning these words. For behold, the Lord has shown me that those who were at Jerusalem, from whence we came, have been slain and carried away captive.

Nevertheless, the Lord has shown unto me that they should return again. And he also has shown unto me that the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, should manifest himself unto them in the flesh; and after he should manifest himself they should scourge him and crucify him, according to the words of the angel who spake it unto me.

And after they have hardened their hearts and stiffened their necks against the Holy One of Israel, behold, the judgments of the Holy One of Israel shall come upon them. And the day cometh that they shall be smitten and afflicted.

Wherefore, after they are driven to and fro, for thus saith the angel, many shall be afflicted in the flesh, and shall not be suffered to perish, because of the prayers of the faithful; they shall be scattered, and smitten, and hated; nevertheless, the Lord will be merciful unto them, that when they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer, they shall be gathered together again to the lands of their inheritance.

And blessed are the Gentiles, they of whom the prophet has written; for behold, if it so be that they shall repent and fight not against Zion, and do not unite themselves to that great and abominable church, they shall be saved; for the Lord God will fulfil his covenants which he has made unto his children; and for this cause the prophet has written these things.

Wherefore, they that fight against Zion and the covenant people of the Lord shall lick up the dust of their feet; and the people of the Lord shall not be ashamed. For the people of the Lord are they who wait for him; for they still wait for the coming of the Messiah.

- 14 En kyk, volgens die woorde van die profeet, die Messias sal homself die taak stel om hulle weer 'n tweede keer terug te win; daarom, Hy sal Homself aan hulle openbaar in krag en groot heerlikheid, tot die vernietiging van hulle vyande, wanneer daardie dag kom dat hulle in Hom sal glo; en Hy sal niemand vernietig wat in Hom glo nie.
- 15 En hulle wat nie glo in Hom nie, sal vernietig word, beide deur vuur, en deur stormwind, en deur aardbewings, en deur bloedvergieting, en deur pestilensie, en deur hongersnood. En hulle sal weet dat die Here God is, die Heilige Een van Israel.
- 16 Want sal die buit van die magtige afgeneem word, of die wettige gevangene vrygelaat word?
- 17 Maar so sê die Here: Sels die gevangenes van die magtiges sal weggeneem word, en die buit van die verskrikker sal vrygelaat word; want die Magtige God sal sy verbondsvolk verlos. Want so sê die Here: Ek sal met hulle stry wat met jou twis—
- 18 En Ek sal diegene wat jou onderdruk, met hulle eie vlees voer; en hulle sal dronk word van hulle eie bloed soos van soet wyn; en alle vlees sal weet dat Ek die Here, jou Saligmaker en jou Verlosser is, die Magtige Een van Jakob.

And behold, according to the words of the prophet, the Messiah will set himself again the second time to recover them; wherefore, he will manifest himself unto them in power and great glory, unto the destruction of their enemies, when that day cometh when they shall believe in him; and none will he destroy that believe in him.

And they that believe not in him shall be destroyed, both by fire, and by tempest, and by earthquakes, and by bloodsheds, and by pestilence, and by famine. And they shall know that the Lord is God, the Holy One of Israel.

For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captive delivered?

But thus saith the Lord: Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for the Mighty God shall deliver his covenant people. For thus saith the Lord: I will contend with them that contendeth with thee—

And I will feed them that oppress thee, with their own flesh; and they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I the Lord am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

2 Nefi 7

- 1 Ja, want so sê die Here: Het Ek jou verstoot, of het Ek jou verwerp vir ewig? Want so sê die Here: Waar is die skeibrief van julle moeder se egskeiding? Aan wie het Ek julle gegee, of aan watter van my skuldeisers het Ek julle verkoop? Ja, aan wie het Ek julle verkoop? Kyk, weens julle ongeregtighede het julle juisself verkoop, en weens julle oortredinge is julle moeder verstoot.
- 2 Daarom, toe Ek gekom het, was daar geen mens nie; toe Ek geroep het, ja, daar was niemand om te antwoord nie. O Huis van Israel, is my hand enigszins te kort om te verlos, of het Ek geen krag om te red nie? Kyk, deur my bestraffing droog Ek die see op, Ek maak hulle riviere 'n woestyn en hulle visse stink omdat die waters opgedroog is, en hulle sterf as gevolg van dors.
- 3 Ek beklee die hemel met swartheid, en Ek maak 'n roukleed hul bedekking.
- 4 Die Here God het my die tong gegee van die geleerde, dat Ek sou weet hoe om op die regte tyd 'n woord te spreek met jou, o huis van Israel. Wanneer julle moeg is, wek Hy oggend na oggend. Hy wek my oor om te hoor soos die geleerde.
- 5 Die Here God het my oor geopen, en Ek was nie rebels nie; ook het Ek nie teruggedraai nie.
- 6 Ek het my rug gegee aan die slaner, en my wange vir dié wat die hare uitgepluk het. Ek het nie my aangesig verberg vir smaad en bespuwing nie.
- 7 Want die Here God sal my help, daarom sal Ek nie beskaam wees nie. Daarom het Ek my aangesig gemaak soos 'n vuurklip en Ek weet dat Ek nie beskaamd sal staan nie.
- 8 En die Here is naby, en Hy regverdig my. Wie sal met My stry? Laat ons saam staan. Wie is my teenstander? Laat hom naderkom na My toe, en Ek sal hom slaan met die krag van my mond.
- 9 Want die Here God sal My help. En al diegene wat My sal veroordeel, kyk, hulle almal sal wegslyt soos 'n kleed, en die mot sal hulle opeet.
- 10 Wie is onder julle wat die Here vrees, wat gehoorsaam is aan die stem van sy dienskneg, wat wandel in duisternis en geen lig het nie?

2 Nephi 7

Yea, for thus saith the Lord: Have I put thee away, or have I cast thee off forever? For thus saith the Lord: Where is the bill of your mother's divorcement? To whom have I put thee away, or to which of my creditors have I sold you? Yea, to whom have I sold you? Behold, for your iniquities have ye sold yourselves, and for your transgressions is your mother put away.

Wherefore, when I came, there was no man; when I called, yea, there was none to answer. O house of Israel, is my hand shortened at all that it cannot redeem, or have I no power to deliver? Behold, at my rebuke I dry up the sea, I make their rivers a wilderness and their fish to stink because the waters are dried up, and they die because of thirst.

I clothe the heavens with blackness, and I make sackcloth their covering.

The Lord God hath given me the tongue of the learned, that I should know how to speak a word in season unto thee, O house of Israel. When ye are weary he waketh morning by morning. He waketh mine ear to hear as the learned.

The Lord God hath opened mine ear, and I was not rebellious, neither turned away back.

I gave my back to the smiter, and my cheeks to them that plucked off the hair. I hid not my face from shame and spitting.

For the Lord God will help me, therefore shall I not be confounded. Therefore have I set my face like a flint, and I know that I shall not be ashamed.

And the Lord is near, and he justifieth me. Who will contend with me? Let us stand together. Who is mine adversary? Let him come near me, and I will smite him with the strength of my mouth.

For the Lord God will help me. And all they who shall condemn me, behold, all they shall wax old as a garment, and the moth shall eat them up.

Who is among you that feareth the Lord, that obeyeth the voice of his servant, that walketh in darkness and hath no light?

11 Kyk al julle wat 'n vuur aansteek, wat julle omgord met vonke, wandel in die lig van julle vuur en in die vonke wat julle aangesteek het. Dit sal julle hê uit my hand—julle sal neerlê in smart.

Behold all ye that kindle fire, that compass yourselves about with sparks, walk in the light of your fire and in the sparks which ye have kindled. This shall ye have of mine hand—ye shall lie down in sorrow.

2 Nefi 8

- 1 Slaan ag op My, julle wat die geregtigheid najaag. Aanskou die rots waaruit julle gekap is, en die holte van die klipgroef waaruit julle gegrawe is.
- 2 Aanskou Abraham, julle vader, en Sara, wat julle gebaar het; want Ek het hom alleen geroep, en hom geseën.
- 3 Want die Here sal Sion vertroos, Hy sal al haar puinhope vertroos; en Hy sal haar wildernis maak soos Eden, en haar woestyn soos die tuin van die Here. Vreugde en blydschap sal gevind word daarin, danksegging en die stem van melodie.
- 4 Slaan ag op My, my volk, en neig die oor tot My, o my nasie; want 'n wet sal uitgaan van My, en Ek sal my oordeel vasstel as 'n lig vir die volk.
- 5 My regverdigheid is naby; my heil het uitgegaan, en my arm sal die volke oordeel. Die eilande sal op My wag, en op my arm sal hulle vertrou.
- 6 Slaan julle oë op na die hemele, en aanskou die aarde benede; want die hemele sal verdwyn soos rook en die aarde sal verslyt soos 'n kleed; en hulle wat daarin woon sal sterwe op soortgelyke wyse. Maar my heil sal vir ewig wees, en my geregtigheid sal nie vergaan nie.
- 7 Slaan ag op My, julle wat geregtigheid ken, die volk in wie se hart Ek my wet geskrywe het, vrees julle nie die smaad van mense nie, wees ook nie bang vir hulle beledigings nie.
- 8 Want die mot sal hulle opeet soos 'n kleed, en die wurm sal hulle opeet soos wol. Maar my geregtigheid sal vir ewig wees, en my heil van geslag tot geslag.
- 9 Ontwaak, ontwaak! Beklee u met sterkte, o arm van die Here; ontwaak soos in die dae van die voortyd. Is dit nie U wat Rahab gekap, en die draak gewond het nie?
- 10 Is dit nie U wat die see drooggemaak het nie, die waters van die groot diepte; wat van die dieptes van die see 'n pad gemaak het vir die deurtog van die losgekooptes nie?

2 Nephi 8

Hearken unto me, ye that follow after righteousness. Look unto the rock from whence ye are hewn, and to the hole of the pit from whence ye are digged.

Look unto Abraham, your father, and unto Sarah, she that bare you; for I called him alone, and blessed him.

For the Lord shall comfort Zion, he will comfort all her waste places; and he will make her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like the garden of the Lord. Joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving and the voice of melody.

Hearken unto me, my people; and give ear unto me, O my nation; for a law shall proceed from me, and I will make my judgment to rest for a light for the people.

My righteousness is near; my salvation is gone forth, and mine arm shall judge the people. The isles shall wait upon me, and on mine arm shall they trust.

Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath; for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment; and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner. But my salvation shall be forever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished.

Hearken unto me, ye that know righteousness, the people in whose heart I have written my law, fear ye not the reproach of men, neither be ye afraid of their revilings.

For the moth shall eat them up like a garment, and the worm shall eat them like wool. But my righteousness shall be forever, and my salvation from generation to generation.

Awake, awake! Put on strength, O arm of the Lord; awake as in the ancient days. Art thou not he that hath cut Rahab, and wounded the dragon?

Art thou not he who hath dried the sea, the waters of the great deep; that hath made the depths of the sea a way for the ransomed to pass over?

11 Daarom, die verlostes van die Here sal terugkeer, en kom met gejubel na Sion; en ewigdurende vreugde en heiligheid sal wees op hulle hoofde; en hulle sal blydschap en vreugde verkry; smart en droefheid sal wegvlug.

12 Ek is Hy; ja, Ek is Hy wat julle troos. Kyk, wie is jy dat jy bang is vir die mens, wat sal sterwe, en vir die seun van die mens, wat gemaak sal word soos gras?

13 En vergeet die Here jou maker, wat die hemel uitgespan het, en die grondslag gelê het van die aarde, en voortdurend gevrees het elke dag, vanweë die grimmigheid van die verdrukker, asof hy gereed was om te vernietig? En waar is die grimmigheid van die verdrukker?

14 Die gevange banneling haas hom, dat hy losgelaat mag word, en dat hy nie sal sterwe in die kuil nie, nóg dat sy brood sal ontbreek.

15 Maar Ek is die Here jou God, wie se golwe gedreun het; die Here van die Leërskaar is my naam.

16 En Ek het my woorde in jou mond gelê, en het jou verberg in die skaduwee van my hand, dat ek die hemele mag plant en die fundamente van die aarde lê, en sê vir Sion: Kyk, jy is my volk.

17 Ontwaak, ontwaak, staan op, o Jerusalem, wat die beker van sy grimmigheid gedrink het uit die hand van die Here—jy het die droesem gedrink van die beker van bewing wat uitgewring is—

18 En nie een om haar te lei van al die seuns wat sy gehad het nie, nóg haar aan die hand geneem het, van al die seuns wat sy grootgemaak het.

19 Hierdie twee seuns het na jou gekom, wat medelyde met jou sal hê—jou verwoesting en vernietiging, en die hongersnood en die swaard—en deur wie sal Ek jou troos?

20 Jou seuns het flou geword, behalwe hierdie twee; hulle lê by die bokant van al die strate, soos 'n wilde bul in 'n net, hulle is vol van die grimmigheid van die Here, die bestraffing van jou God.

21 Daarom, hoor nou dit, jou verdrukte, en dronk, maar nie van wyn nie:

Therefore, the redeemed of the Lord shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy and holiness shall be upon their heads; and they shall obtain gladness and joy; sorrow and mourning shall flee away.

I am he; yea, I am he that comforteth you. Behold, who art thou, that thou shouldst be afraid of man, who shall die, and of the son of man, who shall be made like unto grass?

And forgettest the Lord thy maker, that hath stretched forth the heavens, and laid the foundations of the earth, and hast feared continually every day, because of the fury of the oppressor, as if he were ready to destroy? And where is the fury of the oppressor?

The captive exile hasteneth, that he may be loosed, and that he should not die in the pit, nor that his bread should fail.

But I am the Lord thy God, whose waves roared; the Lord of Hosts is my name.

And I have put my words in thy mouth, and have covered thee in the shadow of mine hand, that I may plant the heavens and lay the foundations of the earth, and say unto Zion: Behold, thou art my people.

Awake, awake, stand up, O Jerusalem, which hast drunk at the hand of the Lord the cup of his fury—thou hast drunken the dregs of the cup of trembling wrung out—

And none to guide her among all the sons she hath brought forth; neither that taketh her by the hand, of all the sons she hath brought up.

These two sons are come unto thee, who shall be sorry for thee—thy desolation and destruction, and the famine and the sword—and by whom shall I comfort thee?

Thy sons have fainted, save these two; they lie at the head of all the streets; as a wild bull in a net, they are full of the fury of the Lord, the rebuke of thy God.

Therefore hear now this, thou afflicted, and drunken, and not with wine:

- 22 So sê jou Here, die Here en jou God bepleit die saak van sy volk; kyk, Ek het die beker van bewing uit jou hand geneem, die droesem van die beker van my grimmigheid; jy sal dit glad nie weer drink nie.
- 23 Maar Ek sal dit in die hand gee van diegene wat jou verdruk; wat gesê het vir jou siel: Buig neer, dat ons mag oorgaan—en jy het jou liggaam neergelê soos die grond, en soos die straat vir hulle wat oorgaan.
- 24 Ontwaak, ontwaak, beklee jou met sterkte, o Sion; trek jou sierlike klere aan, o Jerusalem, die heilige stad; want voortaan sal daar nie meer in jou die onbesnedenes en die onreines kom nie.
- 25 Skud jou los van die stof; staan op, gaan sit, o Jerusalem; maak jouself los van die bande van jou nek, o gevange dogter van Sion.

Thus saith thy Lord, the Lord and thy God pleadeth the cause of his people; behold, I have taken out of thine hand the cup of trembling, the dregs of the cup of my fury; thou shalt no more drink it again.

But I will put it into the hand of them that afflict thee; who have said to thy soul: Bow down, that we may go over—and thou hast laid thy body as the ground and as the street to them that went over.

Awake, awake, put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city; for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.

Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

2 Nefi 9

- 1 En nou, my geliefde broers, ek het hierdie dinge gelees dat julle moet weet aangaande die verbonde van die Here wat Hy gesluit het met die hele huis van Israel—
- 2 Wat Hy met die Jode gespreek het, by monde van sy heilige profete, en wel van die begin af, van geslag tot geslag, totdat die tyd aanbreek dat hulle herstel sal word tot die ware kerk en kudde van God; wanneer hulle versamel sal word, tuis na die lande van hulle erfenis, en sal gevestig word in al hulle lande van belofte.
- 3 Kyk, my geliefde broers, ek spreek hierdie dinge met julle dat julle jul mag verbly, en jul hoofde vir ewig oprig, vanweë die seëninge wat die Here God sal skenk aan jul kinders.
- 4 Want ek weet dat julle baie gesoek het, baie van julle, om te weet van dinge wat kom; daarom weet ek dat julle weet dat ons vlees moet uitteer en sterwe; desnieteenstaande, in ons liggame sal ons God sien.
- 5 Ja, ek weet dat julle weet dat Hy Hom in die liggaam aan diegene by Jerusalem sal toon, van waar ons gekom het; want dit is noodsaaklik dat dit onder hulle sou wees; want dit is nodig vir die groot Skepper dat Hy Homself toelaat om onderhorig te wees aan die mens in die vlees, en sterwe vir alle mense, sodat alle mense aan Hom onderworpe mag word.
- 6 Want aangesien die dood oor alle mense gekom het, om die barmhartige plan van die groot Skepper te vervul, moet daar noodwendig 'n krag van opstanding wees, en die opstanding moet noodwendig kom na die mens as gevolg van die val; en die val het gekom as gevolg van oortreding; en omdat mense gevalle geword het, is hulle afgesny van die teenwoordigheid van die Here.
- 7 Daarom, dit moet noodwendig 'n oneindige versoening wees—tensy dit 'n oneindige versoening is, kon hierdie verganklike nie bekleed word met die onverganklike nie. Daarom, die eerste oordeel wat gekom het oor die mens, moes noodwendig eindeloos voortduur. Indien wel, moes hierdie vlees hom neerlê om te vergaan en te verkrummel tot sy moeder aarde, om nooit weer op te staan nie.

2 Nephi 9

And now, my beloved brethren, I have read these things that ye might know concerning the covenants of the Lord that he has covenanted with all the house of Israel—

That he has spoken unto the Jews, by the mouth of his holy prophets, even from the beginning down, from generation to generation, until the time comes that they shall be restored to the true church and fold of God; when they shall be gathered home to the lands of their inheritance, and shall be established in all their lands of promise.

Behold, my beloved brethren, I speak unto you these things that ye may rejoice, and lift up your heads forever, because of the blessings which the Lord God shall bestow upon your children.

For I know that ye have searched much, many of you, to know of things to come; wherefore I know that ye know that our flesh must waste away and die; nevertheless, in our bodies we shall see God.

Yea, I know that ye know that in the body he shall show himself unto those at Jerusalem, from whence we came; for it is expedient that it should be among them; for it behoveth the great Creator that he suffereth himself to become subject unto man in the flesh, and die for all men, that all men might become subject unto him.

For as death hath passed upon all men, to fulfil the merciful plan of the great Creator, there must needs be a power of resurrection, and the resurrection must needs come unto man by reason of the fall; and the fall came by reason of transgression; and because man became fallen they were cut off from the presence of the Lord.

Wherefore, it must needs be an infinite atonement—save it should be an infinite atonement this corruption could not put on incorruption. Wherefore, the first judgment which came upon man must needs have remained to an endless duration. And if so, this flesh must have laid down to rot and to crumble to its mother earth, to rise no more.

8 O die wysheid van God, sy barmhartigheid en genade! Want kyk, as die vlees nie meer sou opstaan nie, moet ons geeste onderworpe word aan daardie engel wat geval het van voor die teenwoordigheid van die Ewige God, en die duiwel geword het, om nie meer op te staan nie.

9 En ons geeste moes geword het soos hy, en ons duiwels geword het, engele tot 'n duiwel, om uitgesluit te word van die teenwoordigheid van onse God, en om te bly by die vader van leuens, in ellende net soos hyself; ja, tot daardie wese wat ons eerste ouers verlei het, wat homself verander byna soos 'n engel van lig, en die kinders van mense opstook tot geheime organisasies van moord en allerlei geheime werke van die duisternis.

10 O hoe groot is die goedheid van onse God, wat 'n weg berei vir ons ontkoming van die greep van hierdie vreeslike monster; ja, daardie monster, die dood en die hel, wat ek noem die dood van die liggaam, en ook die dood van die gees.

11 En vanweë die weg van die verlossing van onse God, die Heilige Een van Israel, hierdie dood, waarvan ek gespreek het, wat die stoflike is, sal sy dooies oorgee; welke dood die graf is.

12 En hierdie dood waarvan ek gespreek het, wat die geestelike dood is, sal sy dooies oorgee; welke geestelike dood die hel is; daarom, die dood en die hel moet hulle dooies oorgee, en die hel moet sy gevange geeste oorgee, en die graf moet sy gevange liggame oorgee, en die liggame en geeste van mense sal herstel word, die een tot die ander; en dit is deur die krag van die opstanding van die Heilige Een van Israel.

13 O, hoe groot is die plan van ons God! Want aan die ander kant moet die paradys van God die geeste van die regverdige oorgee, en die graf moet die liggaam van die regverdige oorgee; en die gees en die liggaam word weer met mekaar verenig, en alle mense word onverganklik, en onsterflik, en hulle is lewende siele, met 'n volmaakte kennis soos ons in die vlees, behalwe dat ons kennis volmaak sal wees.

O the wisdom of God, his mercy and grace! For behold, if the flesh should rise no more our spirits must become subject to that angel who fell from before the presence of the Eternal God, and became the devil, to rise no more.

And our spirits must have become like unto him, and we become devils, angels to a devil, to be shut out from the presence of our God, and to remain with the father of lies, in misery, like unto himself; yea, to that being who beguiled our first parents, who transformeth himself nigh unto an angel of light, and stirreth up the children of men unto secret combinations of murder and all manner of secret works of darkness.

O how great the goodness of our God, who prepareth a way for our escape from the grasp of this awful monster; yea, that monster, death and hell, which I call the death of the body, and also the death of the spirit.

And because of the way of deliverance of our God, the Holy One of Israel, this death, of which I have spoken, which is the temporal, shall deliver up its dead; which death is the grave.

And this death of which I have spoken, which is the spiritual death, shall deliver up its dead; which spiritual death is hell; wherefore, death and hell must deliver up their dead, and hell must deliver up its captive spirits, and the grave must deliver up its captive bodies, and the bodies and the spirits of men will be restored one to the other; and it is by the power of the resurrection of the Holy One of Israel.

O how great the plan of our God! For on the other hand, the paradise of God must deliver up the spirits of the righteous, and the grave deliver up the body of the righteous; and the spirit and the body is restored to itself again, and all men become incorruptible, and immortal, and they are living souls, having a perfect knowledge like unto us in the flesh, save it be that our knowledge shall be perfect.

14 Daaron, ons sal 'n volmaakte kennis hê van al ons skuld, en ons onreinheid, en ons naaktheid; en die regverdiges sal 'n volmaakte kennis hê van hul genietinge, en hul regverdigheid, geklee met reinheid, ja, en wel met die kleed van regverdigheid.

15 En dit sal gebeur dat wanneer alle mense oorgegaan het van hierdie eerste dood tot die lewe, omdat hulle onsterflik geword het, moet hulle verskyn voor die regterstoel van die Heilige Een van Israel; en dan kom die oordeel, en dan moet hulle geoordeel word volgens die heilige oordeel van God.

16 En waarlik, sowaar as die Here leef, want die Here God het dit gespreek, en dit is sy ewige woord, wat nie kan verbygaan nie, dat hulle wat regverdig is, steeds regverdig sal wees, en hulle wat vieslik is, sal steeds vieslik wees; daarom, hulle wat vieslik is, is die duiwel en sy engele; en hulle sal weggaan in die ewigdurende vuur, wat voorberei is vir hulle; en hul pyniging is soos 'n poel van vuur en swael, waarvan die vlamme opstyg vir ewig en ewig en geen einde het nie.

17 O, die grootheid en die geregtigheid van onse God! Want Hy voer al sy woorde uit, en hulle het uitgegaan uit sy mond en sy wet moet vervul word.

18 Maar, kyk, die regverdiges, die heiliges van die Heilige Een van Israel, hulle wat geglo het aan die Heilige Een van Israel, hulle wat die kruise van die wêreld verduur het, en die skande daarvan verag het, hulle sal die koninkryk van God beërwe, wat berei is vir hulle vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld, en hulle blydschap sal vol wees vir ewig.

19 O, die grootheid van die barmhartigheid van onse God, die Heilige Een van Israel! Want hy verlos sy heiliges van daardie vreeslike monster, die duiwel, en die dood, en die hel, en daardie poel van vuur en swael, wat eindelose pyniging is.

20 O, hoe groot is die heiligheid van onse God! Want Hy ken alle dinge, en daar is niks wat Hy nie weet nie.

21 En Hy kom in die wêreld sodat Hy alle mense kan red as hulle sal ag slaan op sy stem; want kyk, Hy ly die pyne van alle mense, ja, die pyne van elke lewendes skepsel, beide manne, vroue en kinders, wat behoort aan die geslag van Adam.

Wherefore, we shall have a perfect knowledge of all our guilt, and our uncleanness, and our nakedness; and the righteous shall have a perfect knowledge of their enjoyment, and their righteousness, being clothed with purity, yea, even with the robe of righteousness.

And it shall come to pass that when all men shall have passed from this first death unto life, insomuch as they have become immortal, they must appear before the judgment-seat of the Holy One of Israel; and then cometh the judgment, and then must they be judged according to the holy judgment of God.

And assuredly, as the Lord liveth, for the Lord God hath spoken it, and it is his eternal word, which cannot pass away, that they who are righteous shall be righteous still, and they who are filthy shall be filthy still; wherefore, they who are filthy are the devil and his angels; and they shall go away into everlasting fire, prepared for them; and their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever and has no end.

O the greatness and the justice of our God! For he executeth all his words, and they have gone forth out of his mouth, and his law must be fulfilled.

But, behold, the righteous, the saints of the Holy One of Israel, they who have believed in the Holy One of Israel, they who have endured the crosses of the world, and despised the shame of it, they shall inherit the kingdom of God, which was prepared for them from the foundation of the world, and their joy shall be full forever.

O the greatness of the mercy of our God, the Holy One of Israel! For he delivereth his saints from that awful monster the devil, and death, and hell, and that lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

O how great the holiness of our God! For he knoweth all things, and there is not anything save he knows it.

And he cometh into the world that he may save all men if they will hearken unto his voice; for behold, he suffereth the pains of all men, yea, the pains of every living creature, both men, women, and children, who belong to the family of Adam.

22 En Hy ly dit sodat die opstanding mag oorgaan op alle mense, sodat almal mag staan voor Hom op die groot en oordeelsdag.

23 En Hy gebied alle mense dat hulle moet bekeer, en gedoop word in sy Naam, met volmaakte geloof in die Heilige Een van Israel, anders kan hulle nie gered word in die koninkryk van God nie.

24 En as hulle nie wil bekeer en glo in sy Naam, en gedoop word in sy Naam, en volhard tot die einde nie, moet hulle verdoem word; want die Here God, die Heilige Een van Israel, het dit gespreek.

25 Daarom, Hy het 'n wet gegee; en waar daar geen wet gegee is nie, is daar geen straf nie; en waar daar geen straf is nie, is daar geen veroordeling nie; en waar daar geen veroordeling is nie, het die barmhartighede van die Heilige Een van Israel aanspraak op hulle, vanweë die versoening; want hulle word verlos deur sy krag.

26 Want die versoening voldoen aan die eise van sy geregtigheid op al diegene aan wie die wet nie gegee is nie, sodat hulle verlos is van daardie vreeslike monster, die dood en die hel, en die duiwel, en die poel van vuur en swael, wat eindelose pyniging is; en hulle word teruggebring na daardie God wat hulle asem gegee het, wat die Heilige Een van Israel is.

27 Maar wee hom aan wie die wet gegee is, ja, wat al die gebooie van God het, soos ons, en wat hulle oortree, en wat die dae van sy toetsing verkwis, want vreeslik is sy toestand.

28 O, daardie sluwe plan van die bose een! O, die ydelheid en die swakhede en die dwaasheid van die mens! As hulle geleerd is, dink hulle hulle is wys, en hulle slaan nie ag op die raad van God nie, want hulle stel dit tersyde, veronderstellend dat hulle vanself weet, daarom, hulle wysheid is dwaasheid en dit baat hulle nie. En hulle sal vergaan.

29 Maar om geleerd te wees is goed as hulle ag slaan op die raad van God.

30 Maar wee die rykes, wat ryk is in die dinge van die wêreld. Want omdat hulle ryk is, verag hulle die armes, en hulle vervolg die sagmoediges, en hulle harte is op hul skatte; daarom, hulle skatte is hulle god. En kyk, hulle skat sal ook vergaan saam met hulle.

And he suffereth this that the resurrection might pass upon all men, that all might stand before him at the great and judgment day.

And he commandeth all men that they must repent, and be baptized in his name, having perfect faith in the Holy One of Israel, or they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God.

And if they will not repent and believe in his name, and be baptized in his name, and endure to the end, they must be damned; for the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, has spoken it.

Wherefore, he has given a law; and where there is no law given there is no punishment; and where there is no punishment there is no condemnation; and where there is no condemnation the mercies of the Holy One of Israel have claim upon them, because of the atonement; for they are delivered by the power of him.

For the atonement satisfieth the demands of his justice upon all those who have not the law given to them, that they are delivered from that awful monster, death and hell, and the devil, and the lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment; and they are restored to that God who gave them breath, which is the Holy One of Israel.

But wo unto him that has the law given, yea, that has all the commandments of God, like unto us, and that transgresseth them, and that wasteth the days of his probation, for awful is his state!

O that cunning plan of the evil one! O the vainness, and the frailties, and the foolishness of men! When they are learned they think they are wise, and they hearken not unto the counsel of God, for they set it aside, supposing they know of themselves, wherefore, their wisdom is foolishness and it profiteth them not. And they shall perish.

But to be learned is good if they hearken unto the counsels of God.

But wo unto the rich, who are rich as to the things of the world. For because they are rich they despise the poor, and they persecute the meek, and their hearts are upon their treasures; wherefore, their treasure is their god. And behold, their treasure shall perish with them also.

31 En wee die dowes wat nie wil hoor nie; want hulle sal vergaan.

32 Wee die blindes wat nie wil sien nie; want hulle sal ook vergaan.

33 Wee die onbesnedenes van hart, want 'n kennis van hulle ongeregthede sal hulle tref op die laaste dag.

34 Wee die leuenaar, want hy sal afgestoot word na die hel.

35 Wee die moordenaar wat met opset doodmaak, want hy sal sterwe.

36 Wee hulle wat hoererye pleeg, want hulle sal afgestoot word na die hel.

37 Ja, wee hulle wat afgode aanbid, want die duiwel van alle duiwels het behae in hulle.

38 En, kortom, wee al diegene wat sterwe in hulle sondes; want hulle sal terugkeer na God, en sy aangesig sien, en in hulle sonde bly.

39 O, my geliefde broers, onthou hoe vreeslik dit is om te oortree teen die Heilige God, en ook hoe vreeslik dit is om toe te gee aan die verleidinge van daardie sluwe een. Onthou, om vleeslik gesind te wees is die dood, en om geestelik gesind te wees is die ewige lewe.

40 O, my geliefde broers, neig julle oor na my woorde. Onthou die grootheid van die Heilige Een van Israel. Moenie sê dat ek harde dinge gespreek het teenoor julle nie; want as julle dit doen, sal julle teen die waarheid uitvaar; want ek het die woorde van julle Maker gespreek. Ek weet dat die woorde van waarheid hard is teen alle onreinheid; maar die regverdiges vrees hulle nie, want hulle het die waarheid lief en word nie ontstel nie.

41 O, dan, my geliefde broers, kom na die Here, die Heilige Een. Onthou dat sy paaie regverdig is. Kyk, die weg vir die mens is smal; maar dit lê in 'n reguit koers voor hom, en die bewaarder van die poort is die Heilige Een van Israel; en Hy gebruik geen dienskneg daar nie; en daar is geen ander weg behalwe as by die poort nie; want Hy kan nie bedrieg word nie, want die Here God is sy naam.

And wo unto the deaf that will not hear; for they shall perish.

Wo unto the blind that will not see; for they shall perish also.

Wo unto the uncircumcised of heart, for a knowledge of their iniquities shall smite them at the last day.

Wo unto the liar, for he shall be thrust down to hell.

Wo unto the murderer who deliberately killeth, for he shall die.

Wo unto them who commit whoredoms, for they shall be thrust down to hell.

Yea, wo unto those that worship idols, for the devil of all devils delighteth in them.

And, in fine, wo unto all those who die in their sins; for they shall return to God, and behold his face, and remain in their sins.

O, my beloved brethren, remember the awfulness in transgressing against that Holy God, and also the awfulness of yielding to the enticings of that cunning one. Remember, to be carnally-minded is death, and to be spiritually-minded is life eternal.

O, my beloved brethren, give ear to my words. Remember the greatness of the Holy One of Israel. Do not say that I have spoken hard things against you; for if ye do, ye will revile against the truth; for I have spoken the words of your Maker. I know that the words of truth are hard against all uncleanness; but the righteous fear them not, for they love the truth and are not shaken.

O then, my beloved brethren, come unto the Lord, the Holy One. Remember that his paths are righteous. Behold, the way for man is narrow, but it lieth in a straight course before him, and the keeper of the gate is the Holy One of Israel; and he employeth no servant there; and there is none other way save it be by the gate; for he cannot be deceived, for the Lord God is his name.

42 En wie ook al klop, vir hom sal Hy oopmaak; en die wyses, en die geleerdes, en hulle wat ryk is, wat opgeblase is vanweë hulle geleerdheid, en hulle wysheid, en hulle rykdom—ja, dit is hulle wat Hy verfoei; en tensy hulle hierdie dinge sal wegwerp, en hulleself dwase ag voor God, en afdaal tot in die dieptes van ootmoed, sal Hy nie vir hulle oopmaak nie.

43 Maar die dinge van die wyses en verstandiges sal verborge wees van hulle vir ewig—ja, daardie geluk wat berei is vir die heiliges.

44 O, my geliefde broers, onthou my woorde. Kyk, ek trek my kleed uit, en ek skud dit voor julle; ek bid die God van my heil dat Hy my aanskou met sy alsierende oog; daarom, julle sal weet op die laaste dag, wanneer alle mense na hulle werke geoordeel word, dat die God van Israel getuig het dat ek julle ongeregtighede afgeskud het van my siel, en dat ek met helderheid staan voor Hom, en bevry is van julle bloed.

45 O, my geliefde broers, draai weg van julle sondes; skud af die kettings van hom wat julle wil vasbind; kom na daardie God wat die rots is van julle heil.

46 Berei julle siele voor vir daardie heerlike dag wanneer geregtigheid sal geskied aan die regverdiges, naamlik die oordeelsdag, sodat julle nie mag krimp met vreeslike angs nie; dat julle nie julle vreeslike skuld in volmaaktheid mag onthou nie, en gedwing word om uit te roep: Heilig, heilig is u oordele, o Here God Almagtig—maar ek ken my skuld; ek het u wet oortree, en my oortredinge is myne; en die duivel het my in besit geneem, sodat ek 'n slagoffer is van sy vreeslike ellende.

47 Maar kyk, my broers, is dit noodsaaklik dat ek julle moet opwek tot 'n aaklige besef van hierdie dinge? Sou ek julle siele verskeur as julle gedagtes rein was? Sou ek duidelik wees met julle volgens die eenvoud van die waarheid as julle vrygemaak was van sonde?

48 Kyk, as julle heilig was, sou ek met julle spreek oor heiligheid; maar aangesien julle nie heilig is nie, en julle my beskou as 'n leraar, is dit noodsaaklik dat ek julle die gevolge leer van die sonde.

And whoso knocketh, to him will he open; and the wise, and the learned, and they that are rich, who are puffed up because of their learning, and their wisdom, and their riches—yea, they are they whom he despiseth; and save they shall cast these things away, and consider themselves fools before God, and come down in the depths of humility, he will not open unto them.

But the things of the wise and the prudent shall be hid from them forever—yea, that happiness which is prepared for the saints.

O, my beloved brethren, remember my words. Behold, I take off my garments, and I shake them before you; I pray the God of my salvation that he view me with his all-searching eye; wherefore, ye shall know at the last day, when all men shall be judged of their works, that the God of Israel did witness that I shook your iniquities from my soul, and that I stand with brightness before him, and am rid of your blood.

O, my beloved brethren, turn away from your sins; shake off the chains of him that would bind you fast; come unto that God who is the rock of your salvation.

Prepare your souls for that glorious day when justice shall be administered unto the righteous, even the day of judgment, that ye may not shrink with awful fear; that ye may not remember your awful guilt in perfectness, and be constrained to exclaim: Holy, holy are thy judgments, O Lord God Almighty—but I know my guilt; I transgressed thy law, and my transgressions are mine; and the devil hath obtained me, that I am a prey to his awful misery.

But behold, my brethren, is it expedient that I should awake you to an awful reality of these things? Would I harrow up your souls if your minds were pure? Would I be plain unto you according to the plainness of the truth if ye were freed from sin?

Behold, if ye were holy I would speak unto you of holiness; but as ye are not holy, and ye look upon me as a teacher, it must needs be expedient that I teach you the consequences of sin.

49 Kyk, my siel verafsku die sonde, en my hart verlustig hom in regverdigheid; en ek sal die heilige naam van my God loof.

50 Kom, my broers, elkeen wat dors, kom julle na die waters; en hy wat geen geld het nie kom, koop en eet; ja, kom koop wyn en melk sonder geld en sonder prys.

51 Daarom, moenie geld spandeer op dit wat geen waarde het nie, nóg julle arbeid vir dit wat nie kan bevredig nie. Slaan ywerig ag op my, en onthou die woorde wat ek gespreek het; en kom na die Heilige Een van Israel, en verlustig jou in dit wat nie vergaan nie, en ook nie kan bederf nie, en laat julle siel hom verlustig in vettigheid.

52 Kyk, my geliefde broers, onthou die woorde van julle God; bid gedurigdeur tot Hom by dag, en gee dank aan sy heilige Naam by nag. Laat julle harte hul verbly.

53 En kyk hoe groot is die verbonde van die Here, en hoe groot is sy neerdalendheid teenoor die kinders van mense; en vanweë sy grootheid, en sy genade en barmhartigheid, het Hy aan ons belowe dat ons saad nie heeltemaal vernietig sal word, volgens die vlees nie, maar dat Hy hulle sal bewaar; en in toekomstige geslagte sal hulle 'n regverdige tak word van die huis van Israel.

54 En nou, my broers, ek wil nog meer vir julle sê; maar môre sal ek aan julle die res van my woorde medeel. Amen.

Behold, my soul abhorreth sin, and my heart delighteth in righteousness; and I will praise the holy name of my God.

Come, my brethren, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters; and he that hath no money, come buy and eat; yea, come buy wine and milk without money and without price.

Wherefore, do not spend money for that which is of no worth, nor your labor for that which cannot satisfy. Harken diligently unto me, and remember the words which I have spoken; and come unto the Holy One of Israel, and feast upon that which perisheth not, neither can be corrupted, and let your soul delight in fatness.

Behold, my beloved brethren, remember the words of your God; pray unto him continually by day, and give thanks unto his holy name by night. Let your hearts rejoice.

And behold how great the covenants of the Lord, and how great his condescensions unto the children of men; and because of his greatness, and his grace and mercy, he has promised unto us that our seed shall not utterly be destroyed, according to the flesh, but that he would preserve them; and in future generations they shall become a righteous branch unto the house of Israel.

And now, my brethren, I would speak unto you more; but on the morrow I will declare unto you the remainder of my words. Amen.

2 Nefi 10

- 1 En nou, ek, Jakob, spreek weer met julle, my geliefde broers, aangaande hierdie regverdige tak waarvan ek gespreek het.
- 2 Want kyk, die beloftes wat ons verkry het, is beloftes aan ons volgens die vlees; daarom, alhoewel dit aan my getoon is dat baie van ons kinders in die vlees sal omkom vanweë ongeloof, desnieteenstaande, God sal barmhartig wees aan baie; en ons kinders sal herstel word, sodat hulle dit kan verkry wat die ware kennis van hul Verlosser hulle sal gee.
- 3 Daarom, soos ek vir julle gesê het, dit is noodsaaklik dat Christus—want in die laaste nag het die engel met my gespreek dat dit sy naam sou wees—sou kom onder die Jode, onder diene wat die meer goddelose deel is van die wêreld; en hulle sal Hom kruisig—want dit is nodig vir onse God, en daar is geen ander nasie op aarde wat hulle God sou kruisig nie.
- 4 Want as die magtige wonderwerke gedoen sou word onder ander nasies, sou hulle bekeer en weet dat Hy hulle God is.
- 5 Maar as gevolg van priesterliste en ongeregthede, sal hulle wat in Jerusalem is, hul nekke verhard teen Hom, sodat Hy gekruisig sal word.
- 6 Daarom, vanweë hul ongeregthede sal daar vernietigings, hongersnode, pestilensies, en bloedvergieting oor hulle kom; en hulle wat nie vernietig sal word nie, sal verstrooi word onder alle nasies.
- 7 Maar kyk, so sê die Here God: Wanneer die dag kom dat hulle in My sal glo, dat Ek Christus is, dan het Ek met hulle vaders 'n verbond gesluit dat hulle herstel sal word in die vlees, op die aarde, na die lande van hulle erfenis.
- 8 En dit sal gebeur dat hulle versamel sal word, uit hulle lang verstrooiing, vanaf die eilande van die see, en uit die vier hoeke van die aarde; en die nasies van die nie-Jode sal groot wees in my oë, sê God, om hulle uit te bring na die lande van hulle erfenis.

2 Nephi 10

And now I, Jacob, speak unto you again, my beloved brethren, concerning this righteous branch of which I have spoken.

For behold, the promises which we have obtained are promises unto us according to the flesh; wherefore, as it has been shown unto me that many of our children shall perish in the flesh because of unbelief, nevertheless, God will be merciful unto many; and our children shall be restored, that they may come to that which will give them the true knowledge of their Redeemer.

Wherefore, as I said unto you, it must needs be expedient that Christ—for in the last night the angel spake unto me that this should be his name—should come among the Jews, among those who are the more wicked part of the world; and they shall crucify him—for thus it behooveth our God, and there is none other nation on earth that would crucify their God.

For should the mighty miracles be wrought among other nations they would repent, and know that he be their God.

But because of priestcrafts and iniquities, they at Jerusalem will stiffen their necks against him, that he be crucified.

Wherefore, because of their iniquities, destructions, famines, pestilences, and bloodshed shall come upon them; and they who shall not be destroyed shall be scattered among all nations.

But behold, thus saith the Lord God: When the day cometh that they shall believe in me, that I am Christ, then have I covenanted with their fathers that they shall be restored in the flesh, upon the earth, unto the lands of their inheritance.

And it shall come to pass that they shall be gathered in from their long dispersion, from the isles of the sea, and from the four parts of the earth; and the nations of the Gentiles shall be great in the eyes of me, saith God, in carrying them forth to the lands of their inheritance.

9 Ja, die konings van die nie-Jode sal pleegvaders vir hulle wees, en hulle koninginne sal hulle pleegmoeders word; daarom, die beloftes van die Here is groot vir die nie-Jode, want Hy het dit gespreek, en wie kan stry?

10 Maar kyk, hierdie land, sê God, sal 'n land van julle erfenis wees, en die nie-Jode sal geseënd wees in die land.

11 En hierdie land sal 'n land van vryheid wees vir die nie-Jode, en daar sal geen konings op die land wees wat vir die nie-Jode sal ontstaan nie.

12 En Ek sal hierdie land versterk teen alle ander nasies.

13 En hy wat stry teen Sion, sal omkom, sê God.

14 Want hy wat 'n koning oprig teen My, sal omkom, want Ek, die Here, die koning van die hemel, sal hulle koning wees, en Ek sal 'n lig vir hulle wees vir ewig, wat my woorde hoor.

15 Daarom, om hierdie rede, dat my verbonde vervul mag word wat Ek gemaak het met die kinders van mense, wat Ek vir hulle sal doen terwyl hulle in die vlees is, moet Ek noodwendig die geheime werke van die duisternis vernietig, en van moorde, en van gruwels.

16 Daarom, hy wat stry teen Sion, beide Jood en nie-Jood, beide slaaf en vryman, beide man en vrou, sal omkom; want dit is hulle wat die hoer van die hele aarde is; want hulle wat nie vir My is nie, is teen My, sê onse God.

17 Want Ek sal my belofte vervul wat Ek gemaak het aan die kinders van mense, wat Ek met hulle sal maak terwyl hulle nog in die vlees is—

18 Daarom, my geliefde broers, so sê onse God: Ek sal jou saad laat ly deur die hand van die nie-Jode; desnieteenstaande, Ek sal die harte versag van die nie-Jode, sodat hulle soos 'n vader vir hulle sal wees; daarom, die nie-Jode sal geseënd wees en gereken word onder die huis van Israel.

19 Daarom, Ek sal hierdie land toewy vir jou saad, en vir hulle wat onder jou saad gereken sal word, vir ewig as die land van hulle erfenis; want dit is 'n uitverkore land, sê God vir my, bo alle ander lande, daarom wil Ek hê dat alle mense wat daarop woon My moet aanbid, sê God.

Yea, the kings of the Gentiles shall be nursing fathers unto them, and their queens shall become nursing mothers; wherefore, the promises of the Lord are great unto the Gentiles, for he hath spoken it, and who can dispute?

But behold, this land, said God, shall be a land of thine inheritance, and the Gentiles shall be blessed upon the land.

And this land shall be a land of liberty unto the Gentiles, and there shall be no kings upon the land, who shall raise up unto the Gentiles.

And I will fortify this land against all other nations.

And he that fighteth against Zion shall perish, saith God.

For he that raiseth up a king against me shall perish, for I, the Lord, the king of heaven, will be their king, and I will be a light unto them forever, that hear my words.

Wherefore, for this cause, that my covenants may be fulfilled which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh, I must needs destroy the secret works of darkness, and of murders, and of abominations.

Wherefore, he that fighteth against Zion, both Jew and Gentile, both bond and free, both male and female, shall perish; for they are they who are the whore of all the earth; for they who are not for me are against me, saith our God.

For I will fulfil my promises which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh—

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, thus saith our God: I will afflict thy seed by the hand of the Gentiles; nevertheless, I will soften the hearts of the Gentiles, that they shall be like unto a father to them; wherefore, the Gentiles shall be blessed and numbered among the house of Israel.

Wherefore, I will consecrate this land unto thy seed, and them who shall be numbered among thy seed, forever, for the land of their inheritance; for it is a choice land, saith God unto me, above all other lands, wherefore I will have all men that dwell thereon that they shall worship me, saith God.

20 En nou, my geliefde broers, aangesien ons barmhartige God ons so 'n groot kennis gegee het aangaande hierdie dinge, laat ons Hom onthou, en ons sonde aflê, en nie ons koppe laat hang nie, want ons is nie verwerp nie; desnieteenstaande, is ons verdryf uit die land van ons erfenis; maar ons is gelei na 'n beter land, want die Here het die see ons pad gemaak, en ons is op 'n eiland van die see.

21 Maar groot is die beloftes van die Here aan diegene wat op die eilande van die see is; daarom, omdat dit sê eilande, moet daar noodwendig meer wees as hierdie, en hulle word ook bewoon deur ons broers.

22 Want kyk, die Here God het van tyd tot tyd van die huis van Israel weggelei, volgens sy wil en behae. En nou, kyk, die Here onthou hulle almal wat afgebreek is, daarom onthou Hy ons ook.

23 Daarom, verbly julle harte, en onthou dat julle vry is om vir julleself te handel—om die weg te kies van ewigdurende dood, of die weg van die ewige lewe.

24 Daarom, my geliefde broers, versoen julle met die wil van God, en nie met die wil van die duiwel en die vlees nie; en onthou, nadat julle met God versoen is, dat dit slegs in en deur die genade van God is dat julle gered is.

25 Daarom, mag God julle opwek uit die dood deur die krag van die opstanding, en ook uit die ewigdurende dood deur die krag van die versoening, sodat julle ontvang mag word in die ewige koninkryk van God, sodat julle Hom mag loof deur goddelike genade. Amen.

And now, my beloved brethren, seeing that our merciful God has given us so great knowledge concerning these things, let us remember him, and lay aside our sins, and not hang down our heads, for we are not cast off; nevertheless, we have been driven out of the land of our inheritance; but we have been led to a better land, for the Lord has made the sea our path, and we are upon an isle of the sea.

But great are the promises of the Lord unto them who are upon the isles of the sea; wherefore as it says isles, there must needs be more than this, and they are inhabited also by our brethren.

For behold, the Lord God has led away from time to time from the house of Israel, according to his will and pleasure. And now behold, the Lord remembereth all them who have been broken off, wherefore he remembereth us also.

Therefore, cheer up your hearts, and remember that ye are free to act for yourselves—to choose the way of everlasting death or the way of eternal life.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, reconcile yourselves to the will of God, and not to the will of the devil and the flesh; and remember, after ye are reconciled unto God, that it is only in and through the grace of God that ye are saved.

Wherefore, may God raise you from death by the power of the resurrection, and also from everlasting death by the power of the atonement, that ye may be received into the eternal kingdom of God, that ye may praise him through grace divine. Amen.

2 Nefi 11

- 1 En nou, Jakob het baie meer dinge gespreek met my volk in daardie tyd; desnieteenstaande het ek net hierdie dinge laat skrywe, want die dinge wat ek geskrywe het is genoeg vir my.
- 2 En nou ek, Nepi, skryf meer van die woorde van Jesaja, want my siel verheug hom in sy woorde. Want ek sal sy woorde toepas op my volk, en ek sal hulle uitstuur aan al my kinders, want hy het waarlik my Verlosser gesien, net soos ek Hom gesien het.
- 3 En my broer, Jakob, het Hom ook gesien net soos ek Hom gesien het, daarom, ek sal hulle woorde uitstuur na my kinders om aan hulle te bewys dat my woorde waar is. Daarom, deur die woorde van drie, het God gesê, sal Ek my woord bevestig. Desnieteenstaande, God stuur meer getuies, en Hy bewys al sy woorde.
- 4 Kyk, my siel verheug hom daarin om aan my volk die waarheid van die koms van Christus te bewys; want om hierdie rede is die wet van Moses gegee; en alle dinge wat deur God vanaf die begin van die wêreld aan die mens gegee is, versinnebeeld Hom.
- 5 En ook my siel verheug hom in die verbonde van die Here wat Hy gesluit het met ons vaders; ja, my siel verheug hom in sy genade, en in sy geregtigheid, en krag, en barmhartigheid in die groot en ewige plan van verlossing van die dood.
- 6 En my siel verheug hom daarin om aan my volk te bewys dat tensy Christus sal kom, alle mense moet omkom.
- 7 Want as daar geen Christus is nie, is daar geen God nie; en as daar geen God is nie, dan is ons nie, want daar kon geen skepping gewees het nie. Maar daar is 'n God, en Hy is Christus, en Hy kom in die volheid van sy eie tyd.
- 8 En nou skryf ek sommige van die woorde van Jesaja, sodat wie ook al van my volk wat hierdie woorde sal sien, hulle harte mag ophef en hulle verbly vir alle mense. Nou, dit is die woorde, en julle kan hulle op juisself toepas en op alle mense.

2 Nephi 11

And now, Jacob spake many more things to my people at that time; nevertheless only these things have I caused to be written, for the things which I have written sufficeth me.

And now I, Nephi, write more of the words of Isaiah, for my soul delighteth in his words. For I will liken his words unto my people, and I will send them forth unto all my children, for he verily saw my Redeemer, even as I have seen him.

And my brother, Jacob, also has seen him as I have seen him; wherefore, I will send their words forth unto my children to prove unto them that my words are true. Wherefore, by the words of three, God hath said, I will establish my word. Nevertheless, God sendeth more witnesses, and he proveth all his words.

Behold, my soul delighteth in proving unto my people the truth of the coming of Christ; for, for this end hath the law of Moses been given; and all things which have been given of God from the beginning of the world, unto man, are the typifying of him.

And also my soul delighteth in the covenants of the Lord which he hath made to our fathers; yea, my soul delighteth in his grace, and in his justice, and power, and mercy in the great and eternal plan of deliverance from death.

And my soul delighteth in proving unto my people that save Christ should come all men must perish.

For if there be no Christ there be no God; and if there be no God we are not, for there could have been no creation. But there is a God, and he is Christ, and he cometh in the fulness of his own time.

And now I write some of the words of Isaiah, that whoso of my people shall see these words may lift up their hearts and rejoice for all men. Now these are the words, and ye may liken them unto you and unto all men.

2 Nefi 12

- 1 Die woord wat Jesaja, die seun van Amos, gesien het met betrekking tot Juda en Jerusalem:
- 2 En dit sal gebeur in die laaste dae, wanneer die berg van die Here se huis gevestig sal word op die top van die berge, en verhewe sal wees bo die heuwels, en alle nasies sal daarheen stroom.
- 3 En baie volke sal gaan, en sê: Kom julle, en laat ons opgaan na die berg van die Here, na die huis van die God van Jakob; en Hy sal ons leer van sy weë, en ons sal wandel in sy paaie; want uit Sion sal die wet uitgaan, en die woord van die Here uit Jerusalem.
- 4 En Hy sal oordeel tussen die nasies, en baie volke bestraf: en hulle sal hulle swaarde tot ploegskare slaan, en hulle spiese tot snoeimesse—nasie sal nie die swaard ophef teen nasie nie, nóg sal hulle leer om oorlog te voer.
- 5 O, huis van Jakob, kom julle en laat ons wandel in die lig van die Here; ja, kom, want julle het almal afgedwaal, elkeen na sy goddelose weë.
- 6 Daarom, o Here, U het u volk verlaat, die huis van Jakob, omdat hulle vervul word uit die ooste, en ag slaan op waarsêers soos die Filistyne, en hulle skep behae in die kinders van vreemdes.
- 7 Hulle land is ook vol silwer en goud, nóg is daar geen einde aan hulle skatte; hulle land is ook vol perde, nóg is daar geen einde aan hulle strydwaens.
- 8 Hulle land is ook vol afgode; hulle aanbid die werk van hulle eie hande, dit wat hulle eie vingers gemaak het.
- 9 En die gewone man buig nie neer nie, en die groot man verootmoedig homself nie; daarom, vergewe hom nie.
- 10 O julle bose, gaan in die rots, en steek julle weg in die stof, want die vrees van die Here en die heerlijkheid van sy majesteit sal julle slaan.
- 11 En dit sal gebeur dat die hoogmoedige kyk van die mens verootmoedig sal word, en die hoogheid van die mens neergebuig sal word; en die Here alleen sal in dié dag verheerlik word.

2 Nephi 12

The word that Isaiah, the son of Amoz, saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem:

And it shall come to pass in the last days, when the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills, and all nations shall flow unto it.

And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths; for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plow-shares, and their spears into pruning-hooks—nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

O house of Jacob, come ye and let us walk in the light of the Lord; yea, come, for ye have all gone astray, every one to his wicked ways.

Therefore, O Lord, thou hast forsaken thy people, the house of Jacob, because they be replenished from the east, and hearken unto soothsayers like the Philistines, and they please themselves in the children of strangers.

Their land also is full of silver and gold, neither is there any end of their treasures; their land is also full of horses, neither is there any end of their chariots.

Their land is also full of idols; they worship the work of their own hands, that which their own fingers have made.

And the mean man boweth not down, and the great man humbleth himself not, therefore, forgive him not.

O ye wicked ones, enter into the rock, and hide thee in the dust, for the fear of the Lord and the glory of his majesty shall smite thee.

And it shall come to pass that the lofty looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

12 Want die dag van die Here van die Leërskaer kom spoedig oor alle nasies, ja, oor elkeen; ja, oor die trotse en hoogmoedige, en oor elkeen wat verhef is, en hy sal verootmoedig word.

13 Ja, en die dag van die Here sal kom oor al die senders van Libanon, want hulle is hoog en verhewe; en oor al die eike van Basan;

14 En oor al die hoë berge, en oor al die heuwels, en oor al die nasies wat verhewe is, en oor elke volk;

15 En oor elke hoë toring, en oor elke versterkte muur;

16 En oor al die skepe van die see, en oor al die skepe van Tarsis, en oor alle mooi tonele.

17 En die hoogmoedigheid van die mens sal neergebui, en die hoogmoed van mense sal verootmoedig word; en die Here alleen sal in daardie dag verheerlik wees.

18 En die afgode sal Hy heeltemal afskaf.

19 En hulle sal gaan in die gate van die rotse, en in die spelonke van die aarde, want die vrees van die Here sal oor hulle kom en die heerlijkheid van sy majesteit sal hulle tref, wanneer Hy opstaan om die aarde verskriklik te skud.

20 In daardie dag sal die mens sy afgode van silwer en sy afgode van goud wat hy gemaak het vir homself om te aanbid, weggooi vir die molle en die vlermuise;

21 Om te gaan in die skeure van die rotse, en in die toppe van die growwe kranse, want die vrees van die Here sal oor hulle kom en die majesteit van sy heerlijkheid sal hulle tref, wanneer Hy opstaan om die aarde verskriklik te skud;

22 Laat staan tog die mens, wie se asem in sy neusgate is, want waarin sal hy geag word?

For the day of the Lord of Hosts soon cometh upon all nations, yea, upon every one; yea, upon the proud and lofty, and upon every one who is lifted up, and he shall be brought low.

Yea, and the day of the Lord shall come upon all the cedars of Lebanon, for they are high and lifted up; and upon all the oaks of Bashan;

And upon all the high mountains, and upon all the hills, and upon all the nations which are lifted up, and upon every people;

And upon every high tower, and upon every fenced wall;

And upon all the ships of the sea, and upon all the ships of Tarshish, and upon all pleasant pictures.

And the loftiness of man shall be bowed down, and the haughtiness of men shall be made low; and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

And the idols he shall utterly abolish.

And they shall go into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of the earth, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the glory of his majesty shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.

In that day a man shall cast his idols of silver, and his idols of gold, which he hath made for himself to worship, to the moles and to the bats;

To go into the clefts of the rocks, and into the tops of the ragged rocks, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the majesty of his glory shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.

Cease ye from man, whose breath is in his nostrils; for wherein is he to be accounted of?

2 Nefi 13

- 1 Want kyk, die Here, die Here van die Leërskaar neem weg van Jerusalem en van Juda die stut en die steun, die hele stut van brood en die hele steun van water.
- 2 Die magtige man, en die krygsmansman, die regter, en die profeet, en die wyse, en die oudste;
- 3 Die owerste oor vyftig, en die eerbare man, en die raadsman, en die knap ambagsman, en die bekwame spreker.
- 4 En Ek sal kinders aan hulle gee om hulle prinse te wees, en babas sal heers oor hulle.
- 5 En die mense sal verdruk word, elkeen deur 'n ander, en elkeen deur sy naaste; die kind sal hoogmoedig optree teenoor die oudste, en die veragtelike teenoor die eerbare.
- 6 Wanneer 'n man sy broer aangryp van die huis van sy vader, en sal sê: Jy het klere, wees jy ons heerser, en laat nie hierdie verwoesting onder jou hand kom nie—
- 7 In daardie dag sal hy sweer, en sê: Ek sal geen geneser wees nie, want in my huis is daar nóg brood nóg klere; maak my nie 'n heerser van die volk nie.
- 8 Want Jerusalem is verwoes, en Juda het geval, want hulle tonge en hulle dade was teen die Here, om die oë van sy heerlikheid te tart.
- 9 Die uitdrukking van hulle gesig getuig teen hulle, en verklaar dat hul sonde net soos Sodom is, en hulle kan dit nie wegsteek nie. Wee hulle siele, want hulle het hulself met onheil beloon!
- 10 Sê vir die regverdiges dat dit goed gaan met hulle; want hulle sal die vrug van hulle handelinge eet.
- 11 Wee die bose, want hulle sal omkom; want die beloning van hulle hande sal oor hulle kom!
- 12 En my volk, kinders is hulle verdrukkers, en vroue heers oor hulle. O my volk, hulle wat julle lei, laat julle sondig en vernietig die weg van jul paaie.
- 13 Die Here staan op om te pleit, en tree op om die volke te oordeel.
- 14 Die Here sal die oudstes van sy volk, en die vorste daarvan oordeel; want julle het die wingerd opgeëet en die besittings van die armes in julle huise.

2 Nephi 13

For behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, doth take away from Jerusalem, and from Judah, the stay and the staff, the whole staff of bread, and the whole stay of water—

The mighty man, and the man of war, the judge, and the prophet, and the prudent, and the ancient;

The captain of fifty, and the honorable man, and the counselor, and the cunning artificer, and the eloquent orator.

And I will give children unto them to be their princes, and babes shall rule over them.

And the people shall be oppressed, every one by another, and every one by his neighbor; the child shall behave himself proudly against the ancient, and the base against the honorable.

When a man shall take hold of his brother of the house of his father, and shall say: Thou hast clothing, be thou our ruler, and let not this ruin come under thy hand—

In that day shall he swear, saying: I will not be a healer; for in my house there is neither bread nor clothing; make me not a ruler of the people.

For Jerusalem is ruined, and Judah is fallen, because their tongues and their doings have been against the Lord, to provoke the eyes of his glory.

The show of their countenance doth witness against them, and doth declare their sin to be even as Sodom, and they cannot hide it. Wo unto their souls, for they have rewarded evil unto themselves!

Say unto the righteous that it is well with them; for they shall eat the fruit of their doings.

Wo unto the wicked, for they shall perish; for the reward of their hands shall be upon them!

And my people, children are their oppressors, and women rule over them. O my people, they who lead thee cause thee to err and destroy the way of thy paths.

The Lord standeth up to plead, and standeth to judge the people.

The Lord will enter into judgment with the ancients of his people and the princes thereof; for ye have eaten up the vineyard and the spoil of the poor in your houses.

15 Wat bedoel julle? Julle breek my volk in stukke, en
maal die gesigte van die armes, spreek die Here God
van die Leërskaare.

16 Verder, sê die Here: Omdat die dogters van Sion
hoogmoedig is, en loop met uitgestrekte nekke en
met uitlokkende oë, loop en trippel soos hulle stap,
en 'n rinkeling maak met hulle voete—

17 Daarom sal die Here die kroon van die hoofde van
die dogters van Sion slaan met 'n sweer, en die Here
sal hulle skaamte ontbloot.

18 In dié dag sal die Here wegneem die prag van hulle
rinkelende sierade, en haarnette, en ronde sierade
soos die maan;

19 Die kettings en die armbande, en die sluiers;

20 Die hoede, en die sierade van die bene, en die kop-
bande, en die reukflessies, en die ooringe;

21 Die ringe en die neusjuwele;

22 Die veranderbare klere, en die mantels, en die
kopdoeke, en die krulysters;

23 Die spieëls en die fyn linne, en hooftooisels, en die
sluiers.

24 En dit sal gebeur, in plaas van soete geur sal daar
stank wees; en in plaas van 'n gordel, 'n skeur; en in
plaas van goed gekartelde hare, kaalheid; en in plaas
van 'n borskleed, 'n omgording van roukleed; brand-
merk in plaas van skoonheid.

25 Jou manne sal val deur die swaard, en jou magti-
ges in die oorlog.

26 En haar poorte sal klaag en treur; en sy sal verlate
wees, en op die grond sit.

What mean ye? Ye beat my people to pieces, and
grind the faces of the poor, saith the Lord God of
Hosts.

Moreover, the Lord saith: Because the daughters
of Zion are haughty, and walk with stretched-forth
necks and wanton eyes, walking and mincing as they
go, and making a tinkling with their feet—

Therefore the Lord will smite with a scab the
crown of the head of the daughters of Zion, and the
Lord will discover their secret parts.

In that day the Lord will take away the bravery of
their tinkling ornaments, and caul, and round tires
like the moon;

The chains and the bracelets, and the mufflers;

The bonnets, and the ornaments of the legs, and
the headbands, and the tablets, and the ear-rings;

The rings, and nose jewels;

The changeable suits of apparel, and the mantles,
and the wimples, and the crisping-pins;

The glasses, and the fine linen, and hoods, and the
veils.

And it shall come to pass, instead of sweet smell
there shall be stink; and instead of a girdle, a rent;
and instead of well set hair, baldness; and instead of
a stomacher, a girding of sackcloth; burning instead
of beauty.

Thy men shall fall by the sword and thy mighty in
the war.

And her gates shall lament and mourn; and she
shall be desolate, and shall sit upon the ground.

2 Nefi 14

- 1 En in dié dag, sal sewe vroue een man aangryp, en sê: Ons sal ons eie brood eet, en ons eie klere dra; laat ons net by jou naam genoem word om ons smaad weg te neem.
- 2 In daardie dag sal die tak van die Here pragtig en heerlik wees; die vrug van die aarde voortreflik en mooi vir hulle wat ontvlug het van Israel.
- 3 En dit sal gebeur, dat hulle wat agtergelaat is in Sion en bly in Jerusalem, sal heilig genoem word, elkeen wat opgeskrywe is onder die lewendes in Jerusalem—
- 4 Wanneer die Here die vieslikheid van die dogters van Sion afgewas het; en die bloed van Jerusalem uit die midde daarvan sal weggespoel het, deur die gees van oordeel en deur die gees van verbranding.
- 5 En die Here sal oor elke woonplek van berg Sion, en oor haar plekke van samekoms, 'n wolk en rook bedags en die glans van 'n vlammeende vuur in die nag skep; want oor al die heerlijkheid van Sion sal 'n beskerming wees.
- 6 En daar sal 'n skuiling wees vir 'n skaduwee bedags teen die hitte, en vir 'n toevlugsoord, en 'n bedekking teen storm en reën.

2 Nephi 14

And in that day, seven women shall take hold of one man, saying: We will eat our own bread, and wear our own apparel; only let us be called by thy name to take away our reproach.

In that day shall the branch of the Lord be beautiful and glorious; the fruit of the earth excellent and comely to them that are escaped of Israel.

And it shall come to pass, they that are left in Zion and remain in Jerusalem shall be called holy, every one that is written among the living in Jerusalem—

When the Lord shall have washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion, and shall have purged the blood of Jerusalem from the midst thereof by the spirit of judgment and by the spirit of burning.

And the Lord will create upon every dwelling-place of mount Zion, and upon her assemblies, a cloud and smoke by day and the shining of a flaming fire by night; for upon all the glory of Zion shall be a defence.

And there shall be a tabernacle for a shadow in the daytime from the heat, and for a place of refuge, and a covert from storm and from rain.

2 Nefi 15

- 1 En dan sal ek vir my welbeminde sing; 'n lied oor my beminde, rakende sy wingerd. My welbeminde het 'n wingerd op 'n baie vrugbare heuwel.
- 2 En hy het dit omhein, en die klippe daarvan uitgehaal; en dit beplant met die beste wingerdstokke, en het 'n toring gebou in die middel daarvan, en het ook 'n parskuip gemaak daarin; en hy het verwag dat dit druiwe sou voortbring, en dit het wilde druiwe voortgebring.
- 3 En nou, o inwoners van Jerusalem, en manne van Juda, oordeel, smee ek jou, tussen my en my wingerd.
- 4 Wat kon daar meer gedoen word aan my wingerd wat ek nie daarin gedoen het nie? Daarom, toe ek verwag het dat dit druiwe sou voortbring, het dit wilde druiwe voortgebring.
- 5 En nou kyk; Ek sal julle vertel wat ek sal doen aan my wingerd; ek sal die heining daarvan wegneem, en dit sal opgeëet word; en ek sal die muur daarvan afbreek, en dit sal vertrap word;
- 6 En ek sal dit 'n wildernis maak; dit sal nie gesnoei of omgespit word nie, maar daar sal dorings en distels opkom; ek sal ook die wolke beveel dat hulle nie reën daarop nie.
- 7 Want die wingerd van die Here van die Leërskaars is die huis van Israel, en die manne van Juda is sy aangename plant; en Hy het gewag op regverdige oordeel, en kyk, verdrukking; vir geregtigheid, maar kyk, 'n geskreeu.
- 8 Wee hulle wat huis aan huis saamvoeg, totdat daar geen plek meer kan wees nie, dat hulle alleen geplaas mag word in die middel van die aarde!
- 9 In my ore, het die Here van die Leërskaars gespreek, waarlik baie huise sal verlate wees, en groot en mooi stede sonder inwoner.
- 10 Ja, tien akker wingerd sal een bat oplewer, en die saad van 'n homer sal 'n efa oplewer.
- 11 Wee hulle wat vroeg in die môre opstaan, om sterk drank na te jaag, wat aanhou tot saans, en die wyn hulle verhit!

2 Nephi 15

And then will I sing to my well-beloved a song of my beloved, touching his vineyard. My well-beloved hath a vineyard in a very fruitful hill.

And he fenced it, and gathered out the stones thereof, and planted it with the choicest vine, and built a tower in the midst of it, and also made a winepress therein; and he looked that it should bring forth grapes, and it brought forth wild grapes.

And now, O inhabitants of Jerusalem, and men of Judah, judge, I pray you, betwixt me and my vineyard.

What could have been done more to my vineyard that I have not done in it? Wherefore, when I looked that it should bring forth grapes it brought forth wild grapes.

And now go to; I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard—I will take away the hedge thereof, and it shall be eaten up; and I will break down the wall thereof, and it shall be trodden down;

And I will lay it waste; it shall not be pruned nor digged; but there shall come up briars and thorns; I will also command the clouds that they rain no rain upon it.

For the vineyard of the Lord of Hosts is the house of Israel, and the men of Judah his pleasant plant; and he looked for judgment, and behold, oppression; for righteousness, but behold, a cry.

Wo unto them that join house to house, till there can be no place, that they may be placed alone in the midst of the earth!

In mine ears, said the Lord of Hosts, of a truth many houses shall be desolate, and great and fair cities without inhabitant.

Yea, ten acres of vineyard shall yield one bath, and the seed of a homer shall yield an ephah.

Wo unto them that rise up early in the morning, that they may follow strong drink, that continue until night, and wine inflame them!

12 En die harp, en die luit, die tamboeryn, en fluit, en wyn is by hulle feeste; maar hulle slaan geen ag op die werk van die Here nie, en sien nie die werk van sy hande nie.

13 Daarom, my volk is in ballingskap geneem, omdat hulle geen kennis het nie; en hulle eerbare manne ly honger, en hulle menigte is opgedroog van dors.

14 Daarom, die hel het haarself vergroot, en haar mond oopgerek sonder maat; en hulle heerlijkheid, en hulle menigte, en hulle praal, en hy wat hom verbly, sal daarin neerdaal.

15 En die gewone man sal verlaag word, en die magtige man sal verootmoedig word, en die oë van die hoogmoedige sal verootmoedig word.

16 Maar die Here van die Leërskaars sal verhef word deur die oordeel, en God wat heilig is, sal geheilig word deur geregtigheid.

17 Dan sal die lamms wei volgens hulle wyse, en die verlate gebiede van die vet vee sal deur vreemdelinge geëet word.

18 Wee hulle wat die ongeregtigheid trek met koorde van ydelheid, en sonde asof met 'n wa-tou;

19 Wat sê: Laat Hom gou maak, verhaas sy werk, dat ons dit mag sien; en laat die raad van die Heilige Een van Israel naby wees, dat ons dit kan ken.

20 Wee hulle wat die bose goed noem, en goed boos, wat die duisternis lig maak, en die lig duisternis, wat bitter soet maak, en soet bitter!

21 Wee dié wat wys is in hul eie oë en verstandig in hul eie oordeel!

22 Wee die magtiges wat wyn drink, en manne van krag wat sterk drank meng;

23 Wat die goddelose regverdig vir beloning, en die regverdigheid van die regverdige van hom ontnem!

24 Daarom, soos die vuur die stoppels verteer, en die vlam die kaf verbrand, sal hulle wortel verrot wees, en hulle bloeisels sal opgaan soos stof; omdat hulle die wet van die Here van die Leërskaars verwerp het, en die woord van die Heilige Een van Israel verag het.

And the harp, and the viol, the tabret, and pipe, and wine are in their feasts; but they regard not the work of the Lord, neither consider the operation of his hands.

Therefore, my people are gone into captivity, because they have no knowledge; and their honorable men are famished, and their multitude dried up with thirst.

Therefore, hell hath enlarged herself, and opened her mouth without measure; and their glory, and their multitude, and their pomp, and he that rejoiceth, shall descend into it.

And the mean man shall be brought down, and the mighty man shall be humbled, and the eyes of the lofty shall be humbled.

But the Lord of Hosts shall be exalted in judgment, and God that is holy shall be sanctified in righteousness.

Then shall the lambs feed after their manner, and the waste places of the fat ones shall strangers eat.

Wo unto them that draw iniquity with cords of vanity, and sin as it were with a cart rope;

That say: Let him make speed, hasten his work, that we may see it; and let the counsel of the Holy One of Israel draw nigh and come, that we may know it.

Wo unto them that call evil good, and good evil, that put darkness for light, and light for darkness, that put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter!

Wo unto the wise in their own eyes and prudent in their own sight!

Wo unto the mighty to drink wine, and men of strength to mingle strong drink;

Who justify the wicked for reward, and take away the righteousness of the righteous from him!

Therefore, as the fire devoureth the stubble, and the flame consumeth the chaff, their root shall be rottenness, and their blossoms shall go up as dust; because they have cast away the law of the Lord of Hosts, and despised the word of the Holy One of Israel.

- 25 Daaron is die toorn van die Here ontvlam teen sy volk, en Hy het sy hand uitgestrek teen hulle, en hulle geslaan; en die heuwels het gebeef, en hulle lyke is verskeur in die middel van die strate. Ondanks dit alles is sy toorn nie afgewend nie, maar sy hand is nog steeds uitgestrek.
- 26 En Hy sal 'n vaandel ophef vir die nasies van ver, en sal fluit vir hulle van die einde van die aarde; en kyk, hulle sal kom met spoed, vinnig; niemand sal vermoeid wees of struikel onder hulle nie.
- 27 Niemand sal sluimer nóg slaap; nóg sal die gord van hulle lendene losgemaak word, nóg die riem van hulle skoene gebreek word;
- 28 Wie se pyle skerp sal wees, en al hulle boë gespan; en hulle perde se pote sal soos klipsteen beskou word, en hulle wiele soos 'n warrelwind; hulle gebrul soos 'n leeu.
- 29 Hulle sal brul soos jong leeus; ja, hulle sal brul, en die prooi gryp, en sal veilig wegdra, en niemand sal verlos nie.
- 30 En in daardie dag sal hulle brul teen hulle soos die dreuning van die see; en as hulle die land aanskou, kyk, duisternis en smart, en die lig is verduister in die hemele daarvan.

Therefore, is the anger of the Lord kindled against his people, and he hath stretched forth his hand against them, and hath smitten them; and the hills did tremble, and their carcasses were torn in the midst of the streets. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

And he will lift up an ensign to the nations from far, and will hiss unto them from the end of the earth; and behold, they shall come with speed swiftly; none shall be weary nor stumble among them.

None shall slumber nor sleep; neither shall the girdle of their loins be loosed, nor the latchet of their shoes be broken;

Whose arrows shall be sharp, and all their bows bent, and their horses' hoofs shall be counted like flint, and their wheels like a whirlwind, their roaring like a lion.

They shall roar like young lions; yea, they shall roar, and lay hold of the prey, and shall carry away safe, and none shall deliver.

And in that day they shall roar against them like the roaring of the sea; and if they look unto the land, behold, darkness and sorrow, and the light is darkened in the heavens thereof.

2 Nefi 16

- 1 In die jaar wat koning Ussia gesterf het, het ek ook die Here sien sit op 'n troon, hoog en verhewe, en sy soom het die tempel gevul.
- 2 Bo dit het die serafs gestaan; elkeen het ses vlerke gehad; met twee het hy sy gesig bedek, en met twee het hy sy voete bedek, en met twee het hy gevlieg.
- 3 En die een het die ander toegeroep, en gesê: Heilig, heilig, heilig, is die Here van die Leërskaare; die hele aarde is vol van sy heerlikheid.
- 4 En die drumpelposte het gebewe vanweë die stem van hom wat geroep het, en die huis is gevul met rook.
- 5 Toe het ek gesê: Wee my! want ek is vernietig; want ek is 'n man van onrein lippe; en ek woon te midde van 'n volk van onrein lippe; want my oë het die Koning gesien, die Here van die Leërskaare.
- 6 Toe het een van die serafs na my toe gevlieg, met 'n gloeiende kool in sy hand, wat hy geneem het met 'n tang vanaf die altaar;
- 7 En hy het dit op my mond gelê, en gesê: Kyk, dit het jou lippe aangeraak, en jou ongeregtheid is weggeneem, en jou sonde gereinig.
- 8 Ook het ek die stem van die Here gehoor, wat sê: Wie sal ek stuur, en wie sal vir ons gaan? Toe sê ek: Hier is ek; stuur my.
- 9 En Hy het gesê: Gaan en sê vir hierdie volk—Hoor julle inderdaad, maar hulle het nie verstaan nie; en sien julle inderdaad, maar hulle het nie bemerk nie.
- 10 Maak die hart van hierdie volk vet, en maak hulle ore swaar, en sluit hulle oë—sodat hulle nie sien met hulle oë, en hoor met hulle ore, en verstaan met hulle hart, en bekeer en genees word nie.
- 11 Toe sê ek: Here, hoe lank? En Hy het gesê: Totdat die stede verwoes is sonder inwoner, en die huise sonder mens, en die land totaal verlate is;
- 12 En die Here het die mense ver verwyder, want daar sal 'n groot verlatenheid wees in die middel van die land.

2 Nephi 16

In the year that king Uzziah died, I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple.

Above it stood the seraphim; each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly.

And one cried unto another, and said: Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of Hosts; the whole earth is full of his glory.

And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke.

Then said I: Wo is unto me! for I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips; and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips; for mine eyes have seen the King, the Lord of Hosts.

Then flew one of the seraphim unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar;

And he laid it upon my mouth, and said: Lo, this has touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged.

Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying: Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then I said: Here am I; send me.

And he said: Go and tell this people—Hear ye indeed, but they understood not; and see ye indeed, but they perceived not.

Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes—lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and be converted and be healed.

Then said I: Lord, how long? And he said: Until the cities be wasted without inhabitant, and the houses without man, and the land be utterly desolate;

And the Lord have removed men far away, for there shall be a great forsaking in the midst of the land.

13 Maar tog daar sal 'n tiende wees, en hulle sal terugkeer, en sal opgeëet word, soos 'n lindeboom, en soos 'n eikeboom waarin die lewensap nog is wanneer die blare afval; so sal die heilige saad die lewensap daarvan wees.

But yet there shall be a tenth, and they shall return, and shall be eaten, as a teil tree, and as an oak whose substance is in them when they cast their leaves; so the holy seed shall be the substance thereof.

2 Nefi 17

- 1 En dit het gebeur in die dae van Agas, die seun van Jotam, die seun van Ussia, koning van Juda, dat Resin, koning van Aram, en Peka, die seun van Remália, koning van Israel, opgetrek het na Jerusalem om daarteen oorlog te voer; maar kon dit nie oorwin nie.
- 2 En dit is aan die huis van Dawid vertel, en gesê: Aram het 'n bondgenootskap gevorm met Efraim. En sy hart het gebewe, en die hart van sy volk, soos die bome van die bos bewe voor die wind.
- 3 Toe het die Here vir Jesaja gesê: Gaan nou uit, Agas tegemoet, jy en Sjea Ja-Sjub jou seun, aan die einde van die waterleiding van die boonste poel, by die hoofweg van die bleiker se veld;
- 4 En sê vir hom: Wees versigtig, en wees gerus; vrees nie, wees ook nie flou-hartig vanweë die twee sterte van hierdie rokende stompe nie, weens die gloeiende toorn van Resin met Aram, en van die seun van Remália.
- 5 Omdat Aram, Efraim en die seun van Remália bose planne teen jou beraam het, en gesê het:
- 6 Laat ons optrek teen Juda en dit teister, en laat ons 'n bres daarin slaan vir ons, en 'n koning stel in die midde daarvan, ja die seun van Tábeal.
- 7 So sê die Here God: Dit sal nie staan nie, nóg sal dit gebeur.
- 8 Want die hoof van Aram is Damaskus, en die hoof van Damaskus, Resin; en binne vyf en sestig jaar sal Efraim verbreek word sodat dit nie meer 'n volk is nie.
- 9 En die hoof van Efraim is Samaría, en die hoof van Samaría is Remália se seun. As julle nie wil glo nie, voorwaar, julle sal nie gevestig word nie!
- 10 Voorts, die Here het weer met Agas gespreek, en gesê:
- 11 Vra vir jou 'n teken van die Here jou God; vra dit óf in die dieptes, óf in die hoogtes daarbo.
- 12 Maar Agas het gesê: Ek sal nie vra nie, nóg sal ek die Here versoek.
- 13 En hy het gesê: Luister julle nou, o huis van Dawid; is dit 'n geringe ding vir julle om mense te vermoei, maar wil julle my God ook vermoei?

2 Nephi 17

And it came to pass in the days of Ahaz the son of Jotham, the son of Uzziah, king of Judah, that Rezin, king of Syria, and Pekah the son of Remaliah, king of Israel, went up toward Jerusalem to war against it, but could not prevail against it.

And it was told the house of David, saying: Syria is confederate with Ephraim. And his heart was moved, and the heart of his people, as the trees of the wood are moved with the wind.

Then said the Lord unto Isaiah: Go forth now to meet Ahaz, thou and Shearjashub thy son, at the end of the conduit of the upper pool in the highway of the fuller's field;

And say unto him: Take heed, and be quiet; fear not, neither be faint-hearted for the two tails of these smoking firebrands, for the fierce anger of Rezin with Syria, and of the son of Remaliah.

Because Syria, Ephraim, and the son of Remaliah, have taken evil counsel against thee, saying:

Let us go up against Judah and vex it, and let us make a breach therein for us, and set a king in the midst of it, yea, the son of Tabeal.

Thus saith the Lord God: It shall not stand, neither shall it come to pass.

For the head of Syria is Damascus, and the head of Damascus, Rezin; and within threescore and five years shall Ephraim be broken that it be not a people.

And the head of Ephraim is Samaria, and the head of Samaria is Remaliah's son. If ye will not believe surely ye shall not be established.

Moreover, the Lord spake again unto Ahaz, saying:

Ask thee a sign of the Lord thy God; ask it either in the depths, or in the heights above.

But Ahaz said: I will not ask, neither will I tempt the Lord.

And he said: Hear ye now, O house of David; is it a small thing for you to weary men, but will ye weary my God also?

14 Daaron, die Here sal self vir julle 'n teken gee—
Kyk 'n maagd sal swanger word, en sal 'n seun baar,
en sal sy naam Immánuel noem.

15 Botter en heuning sal Hy eet, dat Hy mag weet om
te verwerp wat boos is en om te kies wat goed is.

16 Want voordat die kind sal weet om te verwerp wat
boos is en te kies wat goed is, sal die land wat jy ver-
afsku, verlate wees deur beide haar konings.

17 Die Here sal oor jou, en oor jou volk bring, en oor
jou vader se huis, dae wat nie gekom het nie, van die
dag dat Efraim weggegaan het van Juda, die koning
van Assur.

18 En dit sal gebeur in dié dag dat die Here sal fluit
vir die vlieg wat in die uiteindes van Egipte is, en vir
die by wat in die land Assur is.

19 En hulle sal kom, en sal rus, almal van hulle in die
verlate valleie, en in die skeure van die rotse, en op
alle dorings, en op alle bosse.

20 In dieselfde dag sal die Here skeer met 'n skeermes
wat gehuur is, deur hulle anderkant die rivier, deur
die koning van Assur, die hoof, en die hare van die
voete; en dit sal ook die baard afskeer.

21 En dit sal gebeur in dié dag, 'n man sal 'n jong
koei en twee skape voed;

22 En dit sal gebeur, weens die oorfloed van melk
wat hulle sal gee, sal hy botter eet; want botter en
heuning sal almal eet wat oorbly in die land.

23 En dit sal gebeur in dié dag, elke plek sal wees
waar daar 'n duisend wingerdstokke was teen 'n dui-
send silwerlinge, wat sal wees vir dorings en distels.

24 Met pyle en met boë sal mense daarheen kom,
want die hele land sal vol dorings en distels wees.

25 En alle heuwels wat bewerk sal word met die byl-
pik, daar sal nie die vrees vir dorings en distels kom
nie; maar dit sal wees om beeste in te jaag, en vir ver-
trapping deur kleinvee.

Therefore, the Lord himself shall give you a sign—
Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and shall bear a son,
and shall call his name Immanuel.

Butter and honey shall he eat, that he may know to
refuse the evil and to choose the good.

For before the child shall know to refuse the evil
and choose the good, the land that thou abhorrest
shall be forsaken of both her kings.

The Lord shall bring upon thee, and upon thy peo-
ple, and upon thy father's house, days that have not
come from the day that Ephraim departed from
Judah, the king of Assyria.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord
shall hiss for the fly that is in the uttermost part of
Egypt, and for the bee that is in the land of Assyria.

And they shall come, and shall rest all of them in
the desolate valleys, and in the holes of the rocks,
and upon all thorns, and upon all bushes.

In the same day shall the Lord shave with a razor
that is hired, by them beyond the river, by the king of
Assyria, the head, and the hair of the feet; and it shall
also consume the beard.

And it shall come to pass in that day, a man shall
nourish a young cow and two sheep;

And it shall come to pass, for the abundance of
milk they shall give he shall eat butter; for butter and
honey shall every one eat that is left in the land.

And it shall come to pass in that day, every place
shall be, where there were a thousand vines at a
thousand silverlings, which shall be for briers and
thorns.

With arrows and with bows shall men come
thither, because all the land shall become briers and
thorns.

And all hills that shall be digged with the mattock,
there shall not come thither the fear of briers and
thorns; but it shall be for the sending forth of oxen,
and the treading of lesser cattle.

2 Nefi 18

- 1 Voorts, die woord van die Here het vir my gesê:
Neem jy 'n groot rol, en skrywe daarop met 'n mens se pen, aangaande Maher-sjalal-hasj-bas.
- 2 En ek het vir my betroubare getuies geneem om neer te skryf: Uría, die priester, en Sagaría, die seun van Jeberégja.
- 3 En ek het ingegaan by die profetes, en sy het swanger geword en 'n seun gebaar. Toe sê die Here vir my: noem sy naam, Maher-sjalal-hasj-bas.
- 4 Want kyk, die kind sal nie kennis hê om te roep, My vader, en my moeder, voordat die rykdom van Damaskus en die buit van Samaría weggeneem sal word voor die koning van Assur nie.
- 5 Die Here het ook weer met my gespreek, en gesê:
- 6 In soverre hierdie volk die waters versmaad van Silóa wat saggies vloei, en verbly in Resin en Remália se seun;
- 7 Nou daarom, kyk, die Here bring oor hulle die waters van die rivier, sterk en baie—en wel die koning van Assur en al sy heerlikheid; en hy sal bo al sy kanale styg en oor al sy walle gaan.
- 8 En hy sal beweeg deur Juda; en hy sal oorloop en oorgaan; hy sal selfs die nek bereik; en die uitstrekking van sy vlerke sal die breedte van u land vul, o Immánuel!
- 9 Verenig julleself, o julle volke, en julle sal in stukke gebreek word; en neig die oor al julle van verre lande; omgord julle, en julle sal in stukke gebreek word; omgord julle en julle sal in stukke gebreek word.
- 10 Neem saam'n besluit, en niks sal daarvan kom nie; spreek die woord, en dit sal nie staan nie; want God is met ons.
- 11 Want die Here het so met my gespreek met 'n sterk hand, en my vermaan dat ek nie moes wandel in die weg van hierdie volk nie, en gesê:
- 12 Sê julle nie, 'n Sameswering, aan al diegene aan wie hierdie volk sal sê, 'n Sameswering: nóg vrees julle hulle vrees, nóg wees bevrees.
- 13 Heilig die Here van die Leërskaare, en laat Hom julle vrees wees, en laat Hom julle verskrikking wees.

2 Nephi 18

Moreover, the word of the Lord said unto me: Take thee a great roll, and write in it with a man's pen, concerning Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

And I took unto me faithful witnesses to record, Uriah the priest, and Zechariah the son of Jeberechiah.

And I went unto the prophetess; and she conceived and bare a son. Then said the Lord to me: Call his name, Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

For behold, the child shall not have knowledge to cry, My father, and my mother, before the riches of Damascus and the spoil of Samaria shall be taken away before the king of Assyria.

The Lord spake also unto me again, saying:

Forasmuch as this people refuseth the waters of Shiloah that go softly, and rejoice in Rezin and Remaliah's son;

Now therefore, behold, the Lord bringeth up upon them the waters of the river, strong and many, even the king of Assyria and all his glory; and he shall come up over all his channels, and go over all his banks.

And he shall pass through Judah; he shall overflow and go over, he shall reach even to the neck; and the stretching out of his wings shall fill the breadth of thy land, O Immanuel.

Associate yourselves, O ye people, and ye shall be broken in pieces; and give ear all ye of far countries; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces.

Take counsel together, and it shall come to naught; speak the word, and it shall not stand; for God is with us.

For the Lord spake thus to me with a strong hand, and instructed me that I should not walk in the way of this people, saying:

Say ye not, A confederacy, to all to whom this people shall say, A confederacy; neither fear ye their fear, nor be afraid.

Sanctify the Lord of Hosts himself, and let him be your fear, and let him be your dread.

14 En Hy sal soos 'n heiligdom wees; maar soos 'n struikelblok, en soos 'n rots van aanstoot, vir beide die huise van Israel, soos 'n vangnet en 'n strik vir die inwoners van Jerusalem.

15 En baie onder hulle sal struikel en val, en gebroke wees, en verstriek en gevang word.

16 Bind die getuienis toe, verseël die wet onder my dissipels.

17 En ek sal wag op die Here, wat sy aangesig verberg van die huis van Jakob, en ek sal Hom verwag.

18 Kyk, ek en die kinders wat die Here my gegee het, is vir tekens en vir wonderwerke in Israel van die Here van die Leërskaar, wat op Berg Sion woon.

19 En wanneer hulle vir julle sal sê: Raadpleeg hulle wat geestebesweerders is, en die waarsêers wat piep en mompel—moet 'n volk nie hul God raadpleeg oor die lewendes om te hoor van die dooies nie?

20 Tot die wet en tot die getuienis; en as hulle nie spreek volgens hierdie woord nie, is dit omdat daar geen lig in hulle is nie.

21 En hulle sal daardeur gaan, swaar verdruk en honger; en dit sal gebeur dat wanneer hulle honger is, sal hulle hulself kwel, en hulle koning en hulle God vervloek, en opwaarts kyk.

22 En hulle sal na die aarde kyk, en moeilikheid en duisternis sien, 'n dofheid van angs, en sal gedrywe word na die duisternis.

And he shall be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of stumbling, and for a rock of offense to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

And many among them shall stumble and fall, and be broken, and be snared, and be taken.

Bind up the testimony, seal the law among my disciples.

And I will wait upon the Lord, that hideth his face from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.

Behold, I and the children whom the Lord hath given me are for signs and for wonders in Israel from the Lord of Hosts, which dwelleth in Mount Zion.

And when they shall say unto you: Seek unto them that have familiar spirits, and unto wizards that peep and mutter—should not a people seek unto their God for the living to hear from the dead?

To the law and to the testimony; and if they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them.

And they shall pass through it hardly bestead and hungry; and it shall come to pass that when they shall be hungry, they shall fret themselves, and curse their king and their God, and look upward.

And they shall look unto the earth and behold trouble, and darkness, dimness of anguish, and shall be driven to darkness.

2 Nefi 19

- 1 Desnieteenstaande, die dofheid sal nie wees soos wat dit in haar kwellings was nie; toe hy aanvanklik die land Sebulon en die land Naftali ligtelik verdruk het, en daarna nog swaarder verdruk het langs die weg na die Rooi See, oorkant die Jordaan in Galiléa van die nasies.
- 2 Die volk wat in duisternis gewandel het, het 'n groot lig gesien; hulle wat woon in die land van die doodskaduwee, oor hulle het die lig geskyn.
- 3 U het die nasie vermenigvuldig, en die vreugde vergroot—hulle verbly hulle voor U soos die vreugde in die oes, en soos manne juig wanneer hulle die buit verdeel.
- 4 Want U het die juk verbreek van sy las, en die staf van sy skouer, die roede van sy verdrukker.
- 5 Want elke stryd van die krygsman is met verwarde geraas, en klere wat gerol is in bloed, maar dit sal wees met verbranding en brandstof van die vuur.
- 6 Want 'n Kind is vir ons gebore, aan ons is 'n Seun gegee, en die heerskappy sal wees op sy skouer; en sy naam sal wees: Wonderbaar, Raadsman, die Sterke God, die Ewige Vader, die Vredevors.
- 7 Aan die vermeerdering van die heerskappy en van vrede is daar geen einde nie, op die troon van Dawid, en oor sy koninkryk, om dit te orden en dit te vestig met reg en met geregtigheid, van nou af en vir ewig. Die ywer van die Here van die Leërskaars sal dit uitvoer.
- 8 Die Here het sy woord gestuur na Jakob en dit het op Israel neergedaal.
- 9 En die hele volk sal weet, naamlik Efraim en die inwoners van Samaria, wat sê in die hoogmoed en grootsheid van hart:
- 10 Die bakstene het neergeval, maar ons sal bou met gekapte klippe; die wildevyebome is afgekap, maar ons sal hulle in seders verander.
- 11 Daarom, die Here sal die teenstanders van Resin verhef teen hom, en sy vyande saamvoeg;
- 12 Die Arameërs voor en die Filistyne agter; en hulle sal Israel verslind met ope mond. Ondanks dit alles is sy toorn nie afgewend nie, maar sy hand is steeds uitgestrek.

2 Nephi 19

Nevertheless, the dimness shall not be such as was in her vexation, when at first he lightly afflicted the land of Zebulun, and the land of Naphtali, and afterwards did more grievously afflict by the way of the Red Sea beyond Jordan in Galilee of the nations.

The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light; they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.

Thou hast multiplied the nation, and increased the joy—they joy before thee according to the joy in harvest, and as men rejoice when they divide the spoil.

For thou hast broken the yoke of his burdens, and the staff of his shoulder, the rod of his oppressor.

For every battle of the warrior is with confused noise, and garments rolled in blood; but this shall be with burning and fuel of fire.

For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given; and the government shall be upon his shoulder; and his name shall be called, Wonderful, Counselor, The Mighty God, The Everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

Of the increase of government and peace there is no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth, even forever. The zeal of the Lord of Hosts will perform this.

The Lord sent his word unto Jacob and it hath lighted upon Israel.

And all the people shall know, even Ephraim and the inhabitants of Samaria, that say in the pride and stoutness of heart:

The bricks are fallen down, but we will build with hewn stones; the sycamores are cut down, but we will change them into cedars.

Therefore the Lord shall set up the adversaries of Rezin against him, and join his enemies together;

The Syrians before and the Philistines behind; and they shall devour Israel with open mouth. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

13 Want die volk keer nie tot Hom wat hulle slaan
nie, nóg soek hulle die Here van die Leërskaare.

14 Daarom sal die Here van Israel kop en stert afsny,
tak en biesie in een dag.

15 Die oudste, hy is die kop; en die profeet wat leuens
verkondig, hy is die stert.

16 Want die leiers van hierdie volk veroorsaak dat
hulle dwaal; en diegene wat gelei word deur hulle,
word vernietig.

17 Daarom, die Here sal geen vreugde hê oor hulle
jongmanne nie, nóg sal Hy geen barmhartigheid hê
vir hulle wese en weduwees; want elkeen van hulle is
'n huigelaar en 'n boosdoener, en elke mond spreek
dwaasheid. Ondanks dit alles is sy toorn nie afge-
wend nie, maar sy hand is steeds uitgestrek.

18 Want boosheid brand soos die vuur; dit sal die dis-
tels en dorings verteer, en sal die struikgewasse van
die woude aan die brand steek, en hulle sal opklim
soos die opstyging van rook.

19 Deur die toorn van die Here van die Leërskaare is
die land verduister, en die volk sal wees soos die
brandstof van die vuur; geen mens sal sy broer spaar
nie.

20 En hy sal gryp na die regterhand en honger wees;
en hy sal eet aan die linkerhand en hulle sal nie ver-
sadig wees nie; hulle sal eet, elke mens die vlees van
sy eie arm—

21 Manasse, Efraim; en Efraim, Manasse; hulle saam
sal teen Juda wees. Ondanks dit alles is sy toorn nie
afgewend nie, maar sy hand is steeds uitgestrek.

For the people turneth not unto him that smiteth
them, neither do they seek the Lord of Hosts.

Therefore will the Lord cut off from Israel head
and tail, branch and rush in one day.

The ancient, he is the head; and the prophet that
teacheth lies, he is the tail.

For the leaders of this people cause them to err;
and they that are led of them are destroyed.

Therefore the Lord shall have no joy in their
young men, neither shall have mercy on their father-
less and widows; for every one of them is a hypocrite
and an evildoer, and every mouth speaketh folly. For
all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is
stretched out still.

For wickedness burneth as the fire; it shall devour
the briers and thorns, and shall kindle in the thickets
of the forests, and they shall mount up like the lifting
up of smoke.

Through the wrath of the Lord of Hosts is the land
darkened, and the people shall be as the fuel of the
fire; no man shall spare his brother.

And he shall snatch on the right hand and be hun-
gry; and he shall eat on the left hand and they shall
not be satisfied; they shall eat every man the flesh of
his own arm—

Manasseh, Ephraim; and Ephraim, Manasseh;
they together shall be against Judah. For all this his
anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched
out still.

2 Nefi 20

- 1 Wee hulle wat onregverdige dekrete uitvaardig, en wat verdrukking skrywe wat hulle voorgeskryf het.
- 2 Om die behoeftiges van geregtigheid weg te wys, en om die reg weg te neem van die armes van my volk, sodat weduwees hulle prooi mag wees, en sodat hulle die wese kan beroof!
- 3 En wat sal julle doen op die dag van besoeking, en in die verwoesting wat sal kom van ver? na wie sal julle vlug om hulp? en waar sal julle jul heerlijkheid laat?
- 4 Sonder My sal hulle neerbuig onder die gevangesnes, en hulle sal val onder die dooies. Ondanks dit alles is sy toorn nie afgewend nie, maar sy hand is steeds uitgestrek.
- 5 O Assur, die roede van my toorn, en die staf in hulle hand is hulle verontwaardiging.
- 6 Ek sal hom stuur teen 'n skynheilige nasie, en teen die volk van my toorn sal ek hom bevel gee om die buit te neem, en om die prooi te neem, en om hulle te vertrap soos die modder van die strate.
- 7 Nietemin, hy bedoel dit nie so nie, en sy hart dink nie so nie; maar in sy hart is dit om te vernietig en om nasies af te sny, nie min nie.
- 8 Want hy sê: Is my prinse nie almal saam konings nie?
- 9 Is Kalno nie soos Kárkemis nie? Is Hamat nie soos Arpad nie? Is Samaría nie soos Damaskus nie?
- 10 Soos my hand die koninkryk van die afgode gestig het, en wie se gesnede beelde dié oortref het van Jerusalem en Samaría;
- 11 Sal ek nie, soos ek aan Samaría en sy afgode gedoen het, so doen aan Jerusalem en aan haar afgode nie?
- 12 Daarom, dit sal gebeur dat wanneer die Here al sy werke voltooi het op die Berg Sion en in Jerusalem, dan sal Ek die vrug van die grootsheid van die hart van die koning van Assur en die heerlijkheid van sy hoogmoedige blik straf.
- 13 Want hy sê: Deur die krag van my hand en deur my wysheid het ek hierdie dinge gedoen; want ek is verstandig; en ek het die grense van die volke verskuiwe, en het hulle skatte geroof; en ek het die inwoners neergewerp soos 'n dapper man.

2 Nephi 20

Wo unto them that decree unrighteous decrees, and that write grievousness which they have prescribed;

To turn away the needy from judgment, and to take away the right from the poor of my people, that widows may be their prey, and that they may rob the fatherless!

And what will ye do in the day of visitation, and in the desolation which shall come from far? to whom will ye flee for help? and where will ye leave your glory?

Without me they shall bow down under the prisoners, and they shall fall under the slain. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

O Assyrian, the rod of mine anger, and the staff in their hand is their indignation.

I will send him against a hypocritical nation, and against the people of my wrath will I give him a charge to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets.

Howbeit he meaneth not so, neither doth his heart think so; but in his heart it is to destroy and cut off nations not a few.

For he saith: Are not my princes altogether kings?

Is not Calno as Carchemish? Is not Hamath as Arpad? Is not Samaria as Damascus?

As my hand hath founded the kingdoms of the idols, and whose graven images did excel them of Jerusalem and of Samaria;

Shall I not, as I have done unto Samaria and her idols, so do to Jerusalem and to her idols?

Wherefore it shall come to pass that when the Lord hath performed his whole work upon Mount Zion and upon Jerusalem, I will punish the fruit of the stout heart of the king of Assyria, and the glory of his high looks.

For he saith: By the strength of my hand and by my wisdom I have done these things; for I am prudent; and I have moved the borders of the people, and have robbed their treasures, and I have put down the inhabitants like a valiant man;

14 En my hand het gevind soos 'n nes die rykdom van die volke; en soos een eiers bymekaarmaak wat agtergebly het, het ek die hele aarde bymekaargemaak; en daar was niemand wat 'n vlerk verroer, of 'n mond oopgemaak, of gepiep het nie.

15 Sal die byl hom beroem teen hom wat daarmee kap? Sal die saag homself vergroot teen hom wat dit skud? Asof die roede homself sal skud teen hulle wat hom oplik, of asof die staf homself sal oplik asof dit nie hout is nie!

16 Daarom sal die Here, die Here van die Leërskaer, onder sy vettes 'n maerte stuur; en onder sy heerlikheid sal Hy 'n brand aanstook soos die brand van 'n vuur.

17 En die Lig van Israel sal soos 'n vuur wees, en sy Heilige Een soos 'n vlam; en dit sal brand en sal sy distels en sy dorings verteer in een dag;

18 En sal die heerlikheid van sy woud verteer, en van sy vrugbare land, beide siel en liggaam; en hulle sal wees soos wanneer 'n vaandeldraer flou word.

19 En die res van die bome in sy woud sal min wees, sodat 'n kind hulle mag skrywe.

20 En dit sal gebeur in dié dag, dat die oorblyfsel van Israel, en diesulkes wat ontvlug het van die huis van Jakob, nie meer sal steun op hom wat hulle geslaan het nie, maar sal steun op die Here, die Heilige Een van Israel, in waarheid.

21 Die oorblyfsel sal terugkeer, ja, naamlik die oorblyfsel van Jakob, na die magtige God toe.

22 Want alhoewel U volk Israel soos die sand van die see is, tog sal 'n oorblyfsel van hulle terugkeer; die verdelging wat beveel is, sal oorvloei van geregtigheid.

23 Want die Here God van die Leërskaer sal 'n verdelging voltrek, wat beveel is, in die hele land.

24 Daarom, so sê die Here God van die Leërskaer: O my volk wat woon in Sion, wees nie bevrees vir die Assiriër nie; hy sal jou slaan met die roede, en sal sy roede lig teen jou volgens die wyse van Egipte.

25 Want nog 'n baie klein rukkie, en die verontwaardiging sal ophou, en my toorn in hul vernietiging.

And my hand hath found as a nest the riches of the people; and as one gathereth eggs that are left have I gathered all the earth; and there was none that moved the wing, or opened the mouth, or peeped.

Shall the ax boast itself against him that heweth therewith? Shall the saw magnify itself against him that shaketh it? As if the rod should shake itself against them that lift it up, or as if the staff should lift up itself as if it were no wood!

Therefore shall the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, send among his fat ones, leanness; and under his glory he shall kindle a burning like the burning of a fire.

And the light of Israel shall be for a fire, and his Holy One for a flame, and shall burn and shall devour his thorns and his briars in one day;

And shall consume the glory of his forest, and of his fruitful field, both soul and body; and they shall be as when a standard-bearer fainteth.

And the rest of the trees of his forest shall be few, that a child may write them.

And it shall come to pass in that day, that the remnant of Israel, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them, but shall stay upon the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, in truth.

The remnant shall return, yea, even the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God.

For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return; the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness.

For the Lord God of Hosts shall make a consumption, even determined in all the land.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord God of Hosts: O my people that dwellest in Zion, be not afraid of the Assyrian; he shall smite thee with a rod, and shall lift up his staff against thee, after the manner of Egypt.

For yet a very little while, and the indignation shall cease, and mine anger in their destruction.

26 En die Here van die Leërskaer sal 'n gésel maak vir hom volgens die slagting van Midian by die rots van Oreb; en soos sy staf was oor die see, so sal Hy dit op- lig volgens die wyse van Egipte.

27 En dit sal gebeur in dié dag dat sy las weggeneem sal word vanaf jou skouer, en sy juk vanaf jou nek, en die juk sal vernietig word vanweë die salwing.

28 Hy het tot by Ajat gekom; hy het getrek na Migron; in Migmas het hy sy waens agtergelaat.

29 Hulle trek oor die bergpas; hulle het hul verblyf gemaak by Geba; Rama is bevrees; Gíbea van Saul het gevlug.

30 Verhef die stem, o dogter van Gallim; laat dit ge- hoor word tot by Lais, o arme Ánatot.

31 Madmena het gevlug, die inwoners van Gebim maak hulself bymekaar om te vlug.

32 Nog sal hy in Nob agterbly dié dag; hy sal sy hand skud teen die berg van die dogter van Sion, die heu- wel van Jerusalem.

33 Kyk, die Here, die Here van die Leërskaer, sal die takke met vrees afkap; en die hoës van aansien sal af- gekap word; en die hoogmoedige sal verootmoedig word.

34 En Hy sal die struikgewasse afkap van die woude met yster, en Libanon sal val deur 'n Magtige Een.

And the Lord of Hosts shall stir up a scourge for him according to the slaughter of Midian at the rock of Oreb; and as his rod was upon the sea so shall he lift it up after the manner of Egypt.

And it shall come to pass in that day that his bur- den shall be taken away from off thy shoulder, and his yoke from off thy neck, and the yoke shall be de- stroyed because of the anointing.

He is come to Aiath, he is passed to Migron; at Michmash he hath laid up his carriages.

They are gone over the passage; they have taken up their lodging at Geba; Ramath is afraid; Gibeah of Saul is fled.

Lift up the voice, O daughter of Gallim; cause it to be heard unto Laish, O poor Anathoth.

Madmenah is removed; the inhabitants of Gebim gather themselves to flee.

As yet shall he remain at Nob that day; he shall shake his hand against the mount of the daughter of Zion, the hill of Jerusalem.

Behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts shall lop the bough with terror; and the high ones of stature shall be hewn down; and the haughty shall be humbled.

And he shall cut down the thickets of the forests with iron, and Lebanon shall fall by a mighty one.

2 Nefi 21

- 1 En daar sal 'n loot uitspruit uit die stam van Isai, en 'n tak sal groei uit sy wortels.
- 2 En die Gees van die Here sal rus op hom, die gees van wysheid en begrip, die gees van raad en mag, die gees van kennis en van die vrees van die Here;
- 3 En sal hom van vlugge begrip maak in die vrees van die Here; en Hy sal nie regsprek na wat sy oë sien nie, nóg oordeel na wat sy ore hoor.
- 4 Maar met geregtigheid sal Hy die armes oordeel, en die sagmoediges van die aarde met billikheid bestraf; en Hy sal die aarde slaan met die roede van sy mond, en met die asem van sy lippe sal Hy die bese doodmaak.
- 5 En geregtigheid sal die gordel van sy lendene wees en getrouheid die gordel van sy heupe.
- 6 Die wolf sal ook by die lam woon, en die luiperd sal by die bokkie neerlê, en die kalf en die jong leeu en die vetgemaakte vee tesame; en 'n klein kind sal hulle lei.
- 7 En die koei en die beer sal wei; hulle kleintjies sal saam neerlê; en die leeu sal strooi eet soos die os.
- 8 En die suigeling sal by die gat van die adder speel, en die gespeende kind sal sy hand plaas op die nes van die giftige slang.
- 9 Hulle sal geen kwaad doen of vernietig in my hele heilige berg nie, want die aarde sal vol wees van die kennis van die Here, soos die waters die see oordek.
- 10 En in dié dag sal daar 'n afstammeling van Isai wees wat sal staan as 'n vaandel van die volk; die niese Jode sal dit opsoek; en sy rus sal heerlik wees.
- 11 En dit sal gebeur in dié dag, dat die Here weer sy hand sal uitsteek vir die tweede keer om die oorblyfsel van sy volk te versamel wat sal oorbly, van Assur, en van Egipte, en van Patros, en van Kus, en van Elam, en van Sínear, en van Hamat, en van die eilande van die see.
- 12 En Hy sal 'n vaandel ophef vir die nasies, en sal die uitgeworpenes van Israel bymekaarbring, en die verstrooides van Juda versamel vanuit die vier hoeke van die aarde.

2 Nephi 21

- And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a branch shall grow out of his roots.
- And the Spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;
- And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord; and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears.
- But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth; and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.
- And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.
- The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf and the young lion and fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.
- And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.
- And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.
- They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain, for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.
- And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek; and his rest shall be glorious.
- And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea.
- And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.

13 Die naywer van Efraim sal ook ophou, en die teenstanders van Juda sal afgesny word; Efraim sal Juda nie beny nie, en Juda sal Efraim nie kwel nie.

14 Maar hulle sal vlieg op die skouers van die Filistyne na die weste; hulle sal diegene van die ooste saam plunder; hulle sal hulle hand lê op Edom en Moab; en die kinders van Ammon sal hulle gehoorzaam.

15 En die Here sal die tong van die Egiptiese See geheel en al vernietig; en deur sy magtige wind sal Hy sy hand skud oor die rivier, en dit slaan in die sewe strome, en mense droogvoets laat deurgaan.

16 En daar sal 'n hoofpad wees vir die oorblyfsel van sy volk wat sal agterbly, van Assur, soos dit vir Israel was in die dag toe hy opgetrek het uit Egipteland.

The envy of Ephraim also shall depart, and the adversaries of Judah shall be cut off; Ephraim shall not envy Judah, and Judah shall not vex Ephraim.

But they shall fly upon the shoulders of the Philistines towards the west; they shall spoil them of the east together; they shall lay their hand upon Edom and Moab; and the children of Ammon shall obey them.

And the Lord shall utterly destroy the tongue of the Egyptian sea; and with his mighty wind he shall shake his hand over the river, and shall smite it in the seven streams, and make men go over dry shod.

And there shall be a highway for the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, like as it was to Israel in the day that he came up out of the land of Egypt.

2 Nefi 22

- 1 En in dié dag sal jy sê: O Here, ek sal U loof; alhoewel U toornig was op my, is u toorn afgewend, en U vertroos my.
- 2 Kyk, God is my heil; ek sal vertrou, en nie bevrees wees nie; want die Here JEHOVA is my krag en my lied; Hy het ook my heil geword.
- 3 Daarom, met vreugde sal julle water skep uit die fonteine van heil.
- 4 En in daardie dag sal julle sê: Loof die Here, roep sy Naam aan, verklaar sy dade onder die volke, vermeld dat sy Naam verhewe is.
- 5 Sing tot die Here; want Hy het uitstekende dinge gedoen; dit is bekend op die hele aarde.
- 6 Juig en jubel, julle inwoners van Sion; want groot is die Heilige Een van Israel in julle midde.

2 Nephi 22

And in that day thou shalt say: O Lord, I will praise thee; though thou wast angry with me thine anger is turned away, and thou comfortedst me.

Behold, God is my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid; for the Lord JEHOVAH is my strength and my song; he also has become my salvation.

Therefore, with joy shall ye draw water out of the wells of salvation.

And in that day shall ye say: Praise the Lord, call upon his name, declare his doings among the people, make mention that his name is exalted.

Sing unto the Lord; for he hath done excellent things; this is known in all the earth.

Cry out and shout, thou inhabitant of Zion; for great is the Holy One of Israel in the midst of thee.

2 Nefi 23

- 1 Die las van Babilon wat Jesaja, die seun van Amos, gesien het.
- 2 Hef op 'n banier op die hoë berg, verhef die stem na hulle, wink met die hand, dat hulle mag ingaan deur die poorte van die edeles.
- 3 Ek het my geheiligdes gebied, Ek het ook my magtiges geroep, want my toorn is nie op hulle wat jubel in my verhewenheid nie.
- 4 Die geraas van die menigtes in die berge is soos van 'n groot volk, 'n oproerige geraas van die koninkryke van nasies wat saamgebring is, die Here van die Leërskaare versamel die skares van die stryd.
- 5 Hulle kom van 'n ver land, van die einde van die hemel af, ja, die Here, en die wapens van sy verontwaardiging om die hele land te verwoes.
- 6 Huil julle, want die dag van die Here is op hande; dit kom as 'n vernietiging van die Almagtige.
- 7 Daarom sal alle hande slap word, en elke mensehart sal smelt.
- 8 En hulle sal verskrik wees; krampe en verdriet sal hulle aangryp; hulle sal verbaas wees die een teenoor die ander; hulle gesigte sal wees soos vlamme.
- 9 Kyk, die dag van die Here kom, wreed, beide met toorn en heftige woede, om die aarde 'n woesteny te maak; en Hy sal die sondaars daarvan vernietig.
- 10 Want die sterre van die hemel en die sterrebeelde daarvan sal nie hulle lig gee nie; die son sal verduister wees by sy opgang, en die maan sal haar lig nie laat skyn nie.
- 11 En Ek sal die wêreld straf vanweë boosheid, en die goddelose vanweë hulle ongeregtheid; Ek sal die trots van die hoogmoedige laat ophou, en die hoogmoed van die verskriklikes beëindig.
- 12 Ek sal 'n mens kosbaarder maak as fyn goud; selfs 'n mens as die goue wig van Ofir.
- 13 Daarom, Ek sal die hemele skud, en die aarde sal wyk uit haar plek, in die toorn van die Here van die Leërskaare, en op die dag van sy heftige toorn.
- 14 En dit sal wees soos die gejaagde reebok, en soos 'n skaap wat niemand opneem nie, en hulle sal elkeen draai na sy eie volk, en elkeen vlug na sy eie land.

2 Nephi 23

- The burden of Babylon, which Isaiah the son of Amoz did see.
- Lift ye up a banner upon the high mountain, exalt the voice unto them, shake the hand, that they may go into the gates of the nobles.
- I have commanded my sanctified ones, I have also called my mighty ones, for mine anger is not upon them that rejoice in my highness.
- The noise of the multitude in the mountains like as of a great people, a tumultuous noise of the kingdoms of nations gathered together, the Lord of Hosts mustereth the hosts of the battle.
- They come from a far country, from the end of heaven, yea, the Lord, and the weapons of his indignation, to destroy the whole land.
- Howl ye, for the day of the Lord is at hand; it shall come as a destruction from the Almighty.
- Therefore shall all hands be faint, every man's heart shall melt;
- And they shall be afraid; pangs and sorrows shall take hold of them; they shall be amazed one at another; their faces shall be as flames.
- Behold, the day of the Lord cometh, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate; and he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it.
- For the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light; the sun shall be darkened in his going forth, and the moon shall not cause her light to shine.
- And I will punish the world for evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; I will cause the arrogancy of the proud to cease, and will lay down the haughtiness of the terrible.
- I will make a man more precious than fine gold; even a man than the golden wedge of Ophir.
- Therefore, I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall remove out of her place, in the wrath of the Lord of Hosts, and in the day of his fierce anger.
- And it shall be as the chased roe, and as a sheep that no man taketh up; and they shall every man turn to his own people, and flee every one into his own land.

15 Elkeen wat hoogmoedig is, sal deurboor word; ja, en elkeen wat verbind is met die goddelose sal val deur die swaard.

16 Hulle kinders sal ook verpletter word voor hulle oë; hul huise sal geplunder en hul vroue onteer word.

17 Kyk, Ek sal die Mede aanhits teen hulle, wat silwer en goud nie sal ag nie, nóg sal hulle behae daarin hê.

18 Hulle boë sal ook die seuns in stukke breek; en hulle sal geen deernis hê vir die vrug van die moeder-skoot nie; hulle oë sal kinders nie spaar nie.

19 En Babilon, die heerlikste van koninkryke, die skoonheid van die Chaldeërs se voortreflikheid, sal wees soos toe God Sodom en Gomorra verdelg het.

20 Dit sal nooit weer bewoon word nie, nóg sal dit bewoon word van geslag tot geslag: nóg sal die Arabier daar tent opslaan; nóg sal herders hulle vee daar laat rus.

21 Maar wilde diere van die woestyn sal daar lê; en hulle huise sal vol droewige gediertes wees; en uile sal daar woon en saters sal daar ronddans.

22 En die wilde diere van die eilande sal huil in hulle verlate huise, en drake in hul aangename paleise; en haar tyd is naby om te kom, en haar dag sal nie verleng word nie. Want Ek sal haar spoedig vernietig; ja, want Ek sal barmhartig wees teenoor my volk, maar die bose sal vergaan.

Every one that is proud shall be thrust through; yea, and every one that is joined to the wicked shall fall by the sword.

Their children also shall be dashed to pieces before their eyes; their houses shall be spoiled and their wives ravished.

Behold, I will stir up the Medes against them, which shall not regard silver and gold, nor shall they delight in it.

Their bows shall also dash the young men to pieces; and they shall have no pity on the fruit of the womb; their eyes shall not spare children.

And Babylon, the glory of kingdoms, the beauty of the Chaldees' excellency, shall be as when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah.

It shall never be inhabited, neither shall it be dwelt in from generation to generation: neither shall the Arabian pitch tent there; neither shall the shepherds make their fold there.

But wild beasts of the desert shall lie there; and their houses shall be full of doleful creatures; and owls shall dwell there, and satyrs shall dance there.

And the wild beasts of the islands shall cry in their desolate houses, and dragons in their pleasant palaces; and her time is near to come, and her day shall not be prolonged. For I will destroy her speedily; yea, for I will be merciful unto my people, but the wicked shall perish.

2 Nefi 24

- 1 Want die Here sal Hom ontferm oor Jakob, en sal Israel nog kies en hulle plaas in hul eie land; en die vreemdelinge sal by hulle aansluit, en hulle sal verenig word met die huis van Jakob.
- 2 En die mense sal hulle neem en bring na hulle plek; ja, van ver tot die eindes van die aarde; en hulle sal terugkeer na hul lande van belofte. En die huis van Israel sal hulle besit, en die land van die Here sal wees vir diensknegte en diensmaagde; en hulle sal hul gevange neem wat hulle gevangene gehou het; en hulle sal heers oor hulle verdrukkers.
- 3 En dit sal gebeur in daardie dag dat die Here jou rus sal gee, van jou smart, en van jou vrees, en van die harde slawerny waarin jy gedwing was om te dien.
- 4 En dit sal gebeur in dié dag, dat jy hierdie spreuk sal aanhef teen die koning van Babilon, en sê: Hoe het die verdrukker opgehou, die goue stad opgehou!
- 5 Die Here het die staf verbreek van die goddelose, die septers van die heersers.
- 6 Hy wat die volke geslaan het in toorn met 'n aanhoudende slag, hy wat geheers het oor die nasies in toorn, word vervolgd en niemand verhinder nie.
- 7 Die hele aarde rus, en is stil; hulle breek uit in gesang.
- 8 Ja, die dennebome is verheug oor jou, en ook die seders van Libanon, en sê: Vandat jy daar neergelê is, het geen houtkapper teen ons opgekom nie.
- 9 Die hel van benede is in beroering oor jou, om jou te ontmoet by jou koms; dit wek die dooies op vir jou, en wel al die heersers van die aarde; dit het al die konings van die nasies van hulle trone laat opstaan.
- 10 Hulle almal sal spreek en vir jou sê: Het jy ook swak geword soos ons? Het jy soos ons geword?
- 11 Jou praal is neergebring na die graf, die geruis van jou viole word nie gehoor nie; die wurm is gesprei onder jou, en die wurms bedek jou.
- 12 Hoe het jy geval van die hemel, o Lucifer, seun van die daeraad! Is jy afgesny tot die grond, wat die nasies verswak het!

2 Nephi 24

For the Lord will have mercy on Jacob, and will yet choose Israel, and set them in their own land; and the strangers shall be joined with them, and they shall cleave to the house of Jacob.

And the people shall take them and bring them to their place; yea, from far unto the ends of the earth; and they shall return to their lands of promise. And the house of Israel shall possess them, and the land of the Lord shall be for servants and handmaids; and they shall take them captives unto whom they were captives; and they shall rule over their oppressors.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall give thee rest, from thy sorrow, and from thy fear, and from the hard bondage wherein thou wast made to serve.

And it shall come to pass in that day, that thou shalt take up this proverb against the king of Babylon, and say: How hath the oppressor ceased, the golden city ceased!

The Lord hath broken the staff of the wicked, the scepters of the rulers.

He who smote the people in wrath with a continual stroke, he that ruled the nations in anger, is persecuted, and none hindereth.

The whole earth is at rest, and is quiet; they break forth into singing.

Yea, the fir trees rejoice at thee, and also the cedars of Lebanon, saying: Since thou art laid down no feller is come up against us.

Hell from beneath is moved for thee to meet thee at thy coming; it stirreth up the dead for thee, even all the chief ones of the earth; it hath raised up from their thrones all the kings of the nations.

All they shall speak and say unto thee: Art thou also become weak as we? Art thou become like unto us?

Thy pomp is brought down to the grave; the noise of thy viols is not heard; the worm is spread under thee, and the worms cover thee.

How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! Art thou cut down to the ground, which did weaken the nations!

13 Want jy het gesê in jou hart: Ek sal opgaan na die hemel, ek sal my troon verhef bo die sterre van God; ek sal ook sit op die berg van samekoms, in die kante van die noorde;

14 Ek sal opgaan bo die hoogtes van die wolke; ek sal wees soos die Allerhoogste.

15 Tog sal jy afgebring word na die hel, na die kante van die kuil.

16 Hulle wat jou sien, sal jou noulettend aanskou, en sal jou in ag neem, en sal sê: Is dit die man wat die aarde laat bewe het, wat koninkryke geskud het?

17 En die wêreld soos 'n wildernis gemaak het, en die stede daarvan verwoes het, en nie die huis van sy gevangenes oopgesluit het nie?

18 Al die konings van die nasies, ja, almal van hulle, lê in eer, elkeen van hulle in sy eie huis.

19 Maar jy is uitgewerp, uit jou graf, soos 'n gruwelike tak, en die oorblyfsel van dié wat gedood is, deurboor met 'n swaard, wat neerdaal na die klippe van die kuil; soos 'n karkas vertrap onder voete.

20 Jy sal nie verenig word met hulle in die graf nie, want jy het jou land verwoes, en jou volk gedood; die saad van boosdoeners sal nooit geëer word nie.

21 Maak 'n slagting gereed vir sy kinders, vanweë die ongeregtighede van hulle vaders, dat hulle nie opstaan, nóg die land besit, nóg die aangesig van die wêreld met stede vul.

22 Want Ek sal opstaan teen hulle, spreek die Here van die Leërskaie, en die naam van Babilon afsny, en die oorblyfsel, en seun, en neef, sê die Here.

23 Ek sal dit ook 'n besitting maak vir die roerdomp, en poele van water; en Ek sal dit wegvee met die besem van vernietiging, spreek die Here van die Leërskaie.

24 Die Here van die Leërskaie het gesweer, en gesê: Waarlik, soos Ek gedink het, so sal dit gebeur; en soos Ek beplan het, so sal dit staan—

25 Dat Ek die Assiriër in my land sal bring, en op my berge hom vertrap onder my voet; dan sal sy juk van hulle weggaan, en sy las weggaan vanaf hulle skouers.

For thou hast said in thy heart: I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north;

I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the Most High.

Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit.

They that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee, and shall consider thee, and shall say: Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms?

And made the world as a wilderness, and destroyed the cities thereof, and opened not the house of his prisoners?

All the kings of the nations, yea, all of them, lie in glory, every one of them in his own house.

But thou art cast out of thy grave like an abominable branch, and the remnant of those that are slain, thrust through with a sword, that go down to the stones of the pit; as a carcass trodden under feet.

Thou shalt not be joined with them in burial, because thou hast destroyed thy land and slain thy people; the seed of evil-doers shall never be renowned.

Prepare slaughter for his children for the iniquities of their fathers, that they do not rise, nor possess the land, nor fill the face of the world with cities.

For I will rise up against them, saith the Lord of Hosts, and cut off from Babylon the name, and remnant, and son, and nephew, saith the Lord.

I will also make it a possession for the bitter, and pools of water; and I will sweep it with the besom of destruction, saith the Lord of Hosts.

The Lord of Hosts hath sworn, saying: Surely as I have thought, so shall it come to pass; and as I have purposed, so shall it stand—

That I will bring the Assyrian in my land, and upon my mountains tread him under foot; then shall his yoke depart from off them, and his burden depart from off their shoulders.

26 Dit is die bedoeling wat bedoel is oor die hele aarde; en dit is die hand wat uitgestrek is oor alle nasies.

27 Want die Here van die Leërskaer het beplan, en wie sal verydel? En sy hand is uitgestrek, en wie sal dit terugdraai?

28 In die jaar wat koning Agas oorlede is, is hierdie uitspraak gemaak.

29 Verbly jou nie, ganse Palestina, want die roede van hom wat jou geslaan het, is gebreek; want uit die slang se wortel sal 'n giftige slang voortkom, en sy vrug sal 'n vurige vlieënde slang wees.

30 En die eersgeborenes van die armes sal wei, en die behoeftiges sal neerlê in veiligheid; en Ek sal jou wortel doodmaak deur hongersnood, en hy sal jou oorblyfsel dood.

31 Huil, o poort; skreeu, o stad; jy, ganse Palestina, is versmelt want daar sal uit die noorde 'n rook kom, en niemand sal alleen wees in sy bestemde tye nie.

32 Wat sal dan die boodskappers van die nasies antwoord? Dat die Here Sion gegrondves het, en dat die armes van sy volk vertrou daarin sal hê.

This is the purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth; and this is the hand that is stretched out upon all nations.

For the Lord of Hosts hath purposed, and who shall disannul? And his hand is stretched out, and who shall turn it back?

In the year that king Ahaz died was this burden.

Rejoice not thou, whole Palestina, because the rod of him that smote thee is broken; for out of the serpent's root shall come forth a cockatrice, and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent.

And the firstborn of the poor shall feed, and the needy shall lie down in safety; and I will kill thy root with famine, and he shall slay thy remnant.

Howl, O gate; cry, O city; thou, whole Palestina, art dissolved; for there shall come from the north a smoke, and none shall be alone in his appointed times.

What shall then answer the messengers of the nations? That the Lord hath founded Zion, and the poor of his people shall trust in it.

2 Nefi 25

- 1 Nou ek, Nefi, spreek ietwat aangaande die woorde wat ek geskryf het, wat gespreek is by monde van Jesaja. Want kyk, Jesaja het baie dinge gespreek wat moeilik was vir baie van my volk om te verstaan; want hulle weet nie aangaande die wyse van profeteer onder die Jode nie.
- 2 Want ek, Nefi, het hulle nie baie dinge geleer aangaande die wyse van die Jode nie; want hulle werke was werke van duisternis, en hulle dade was dade van gruwels.
- 3 Daarom, ek skryf aan my volk, aan al diegene wat hierna hierdie dinge sal ontvang wat ek skrywe, dat hulle die oordele van God mag ken, dat hulle neerkom op alle nasies, volgens die woord wat Hy gespreek het.
- 4 Daarom, slaan ag, o my volk, wat van die huis van Israel is, en neig jou oor tot my woorde; want hoewel die woorde van Jesaja nie duidelik is vir julle nie, desnieteenstaande is hulle duidelik vir al diegene wat gevul is met die gees van profesie. Maar ek gee vir julle 'n profesie, volgens die gees wat in my is; daarom sal ek profeteer volgens die duidelikheid wat met my was vanaf die tyd dat ek uit Jerusalem gekom het met my vader; want kyk, my siel verbly hom in duidelikheid vir my volk, sodat hulle mag leer.
- 5 Ja, en my siel verbly hom in die woorde van Jesaja, want ek het uit Jerusalem gekom, en my oë het die dinge van die Jode gesien, en ek weet dat die Jode wel die dinge van die profete verstaan, en daar is geen ander volk wat die dinge verstaan wat met die Jode gespreek is, soos hulle nie, behalwe as dit is dat hulle geleer word volgens die wyse van die dinge van die Jode.
- 6 Maar kyk, ek, Nefi, het nie my kinders geleer volgens die wyse van die Jode nie; maar kyk, ek het in Jerusalem gewoon, daarom weet ek aangaande die streke rondom; en ek het melding gemaak aan my kinders aangaande die oordele van God, wat gebeur het onder die Jode, aan my kinders, volgens alles wat Jesaja gespreek het, en ek skryf dit nie neer nie.

2 Nephi 25

Now I, Nephi, do speak somewhat concerning the words which I have written, which have been spoken by the mouth of Isaiah. For behold, Isaiah spake many things which were hard for many of my people to understand; for they know not concerning the manner of prophesying among the Jews.

For I, Nephi, have not taught them many things concerning the manner of the Jews; for their works were works of darkness, and their doings were doings of abominations.

Wherefore, I write unto my people, unto all those that shall receive hereafter these things which I write, that they may know the judgments of God, that they come upon all nations, according to the word which he hath spoken.

Wherefore, hearken, O my people, which are of the house of Israel, and give ear unto my words; for because the words of Isaiah are not plain unto you, nevertheless they are plain unto all those that are filled with the spirit of prophecy. But I give unto you a prophecy, according to the spirit which is in me; wherefore I shall prophesy according to the plainness which hath been with me from the time that I came out from Jerusalem with my father; for behold, my soul delighteth in plainness unto my people, that they may learn.

Yea, and my soul delighteth in the words of Isaiah, for I came out from Jerusalem, and mine eyes hath beheld the things of the Jews, and I know that the Jews do understand the things of the prophets, and there is none other people that understand the things which were spoken unto the Jews like unto them, save it be that they are taught after the manner of the things of the Jews.

But behold, I, Nephi, have not taught my children after the manner of the Jews; but behold, I, of myself, have dwelt at Jerusalem, wherefore I know concerning the regions round about; and I have made mention unto my children concerning the judgments of God, which hath come to pass among the Jews, unto my children, according to all that which Isaiah hath spoken, and I do not write them.

- 7 Maar kyk, ek gaan voort met my eie profesie, volgens my duidelikheid; waarin ek weet dat geen mens kan dwaal nie; desnieteenstaande, in die dae dat die profesieë van Jesaja vervul sal word, sal mense die tye wanneer hulle sal geskied vir seker weet.
- 8 Daarom, hulle is van waarde vir die kinders van mense, en hy wat veronderstel dat hulle nie is nie, met hulle wil ek in besonder spreek, en die woorde tot my eie volk beperk; want ek weet dat hulle van groot waarde sal wees vir hulle in die laaste dae; want in daardie dag sal hulle dit verstaan; daarom, vir hulle eie beswil het ek dit geskrywe.
- 9 En soos een geslag vernietig is onder die Jode vanweë ongeregtigheid, net so is hulle vernietig van geslag tot geslag volgens hulle ongeregtighede; en nooit is enigeen van hulle vernietig nie behalwe dat dit vir hulle voorspel was deur die profete van die Here.
- 10 Daarom, dit is so aan hulle meegedeel aangaande die vernietiging wat oor hulle sou kom, onmiddellik nadat my vader Jerusalem verlaat het; desnieteenstaande, hulle het hul harte verhard; en volgens my profesie is hulle vernietig, behalwe vir diegene wat gevange weggevoer is na Babilon.
- 11 En nou, dit spreek ek vanweë die gees wat in my is. En hoewel hulle weggevoer is, sal hulle weer terugkeer, en die land Jerusalem besit; daarom, hulle sal weer herstel word tot die land van hul erfenis.
- 12 Maar, kyk, hulle sal oorloë hê, en gerugte van oorloë; en wanneer die dag kom dat die Eniggeborene van die Vader, ja, en wel die Vader van hemel en aarde, Hom sal openbaar aan hulle in die vlees, kyk, hulle sal Hom verwerp, vanweë hulle ongeregtighede, en die hardheid van hulle harte, en die styfheid van hulle nekke.
- 13 Kyk, hulle sal Hom kruisig; en nadat Hy in 'n grafkelder weggeleë is vir die tydperk van drie dae, sal Hy opstaan uit die dood, met genesing in sy vleuels; en almal wat sal glo in sy Naam, sal gered wees in die koninkryk van God. Daarom, my siel verbly hom om te profeteer aangaande Hom, want ek het sy dag gesien, en my hart verhef sy heilige Naam.

But behold, I proceed with mine own prophecy, according to my plainness; in the which I know that no man can err; nevertheless, in the days that the prophecies of Isaiah shall be fulfilled men shall know of a surety, at the times when they shall come to pass.

Wherefore, they are of worth unto the children of men, and he that supposeth that they are not, unto them will I speak particularly, and confine the words unto mine own people; for I know that they shall be of great worth unto them in the last days; for in that day shall they understand them; wherefore, for their good have I written them.

And as one generation hath been destroyed among the Jews because of iniquity, even so have they been destroyed from generation to generation according to their iniquities; and never hath any of them been destroyed save it were foretold them by the prophets of the Lord.

Wherefore, it hath been told them concerning the destruction which should come upon them, immediately after my father left Jerusalem; nevertheless, they hardened their hearts; and according to my prophecy they have been destroyed, save it be those which are carried away captive into Babylon.

And now this I speak because of the spirit which is in me. And notwithstanding they have been carried away they shall return again, and possess the land of Jerusalem; wherefore, they shall be restored again to the land of their inheritance.

But, behold, they shall have wars, and rumors of wars; and when the day cometh that the Only Begotten of the Father, yea, even the Father of heaven and of earth, shall manifest himself unto them in the flesh, behold, they will reject him, because of their iniquities, and the hardness of their hearts, and the stiffness of their necks.

Behold, they will crucify him; and after he is laid in a sepulchre for the space of three days he shall rise from the dead, with healing in his wings; and all those who shall believe on his name shall be saved in the kingdom of God. Wherefore, my soul delighteth to prophesy concerning him, for I have seen his day, and my heart doth magnify his holy name.

14 En kyk, dit sal gebeur dat nadat die Messias uit die dood opgestaan het, en Homself geopenbaar het aan sy volk, aan soveel as wat sal glo in sy Naam, kyk, Jerusalem sal weer vernietig word; want wee hulle wat stry teen God en die volk van sy kerk.

15 Daarom, die Jode sal verstrooi word onder alle nasies; ja, en ook Babilon sal vernietig word; daarom, die Jode sal verstrooi word deur ander nasies.

16 En nadat hulle verstrooi is, en die Here God hulle gegesel het deur ander nasies vir 'n tydperk van baie geslagte, ja, en wel van geslag tot geslag totdat hulle oorreed sal word om te glo in Christus, die Seun van God, en die versoening, wat eindeloos is vir die hele mensdom—en wanneer daardie dag sal kom dat hulle sal glo in Christus, en die Vader aanbid in sy Naam, met rein harte en skoon hande, en nie langer vooruitsien na 'n ander Messias nie, dan, in daardie tyd, sal die dag kom wanneer dit noodsaaklik sal wees dat hulle hierdie dinge sal glo.

17 En die Here sal weer sy hand 'n tweede keer uitstrek om sy volk te red uit hulle verlore en gevalle toestand. Daarom, Hy sal voortgaan om 'n wonderlike werk en 'n wonder te doen onder die kinders van mense.

18 Daarom, Hy sal sy woorde openbaar aan hulle, welke woorde hulle sal oordeel op die laaste dag, want hulle sal dit gegee word vir die doel om hulle te oortuig van die ware Messias, wat verwerp is deur hulle; en ter oortuiging van hulle dat hulle nie langer vooruit hoef te sien na 'n Messias wat moet kom nie, want daar sal nie een kom nie, tensy dit 'n valse Messias is wat die volk sou bedrieg; want daar is slegs een Messias van wie die profete gespreek het, en daardie Messias is Hy wat verwerp sou word deur die Jode.

19 Want volgens die woorde van die profete, kom die Messias binne seshonderd jaar vanaf die tyd dat my vader Jerusalem verlaat het; en volgens die woorde van die profete, en ook die woord van die engel van God, sal sy Naam Jesus Christus wees, die Seun van God.

And behold it shall come to pass that after the Messiah hath risen from the dead, and hath manifested himself unto his people, unto as many as will believe on his name, behold, Jerusalem shall be destroyed again; for wo unto them that fight against God and the people of his church.

Wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered among all nations; yea, and also Babylon shall be destroyed; wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered by other nations.

And after they have been scattered, and the Lord God hath scourged them by other nations for the space of many generations, yea, even down from generation to generation until they shall be persuaded to believe in Christ, the Son of God, and the atonement, which is infinite for all mankind—and when that day shall come that they shall believe in Christ, and worship the Father in his name, with pure hearts and clean hands, and look not forward any more for another Messiah, then, at that time, the day will come that it must needs be expedient that they should believe these things.

And the Lord will set his hand again the second time to restore his people from their lost and fallen state. Wherefore, he will proceed to do a marvelous work and a wonder among the children of men.

Wherefore, he shall bring forth his words unto them, which words shall judge them at the last day, for they shall be given them for the purpose of convincing them of the true Messiah, who was rejected by them; and unto the convincing of them that they need not look forward any more for a Messiah to come, for there should not any come, save it should be a false Messiah which should deceive the people; for there is save one Messiah spoken of by the prophets, and that Messiah is he who should be rejected of the Jews.

For according to the words of the prophets, the Messiah cometh in six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem; and according to the words of the prophets, and also the word of the angel of God, his name shall be Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

20 En nou, my broers, ek het duidelik gespreek sodat julle nie kan dwaal nie. En soos die Here God leef wat Israel uitgebring het uit die land Egipte, en aan Moses mag gegee het dat hy die nasies sou genees nadat hulle gebyt is deur die giftige slang, as hulle hul oë sou opslaan na die slang wat hy opgerig het voor hulle, en ook aan hom die mag gegee het dat hy die rots sou slaan en die water sou uitkom; ja, kyk ek sê vir julle, dat soos hierdie dinge waar is, en soos die Here God leef, daar is geen ander Naam gegee onder die hemel behalwe hierdie Jesus Christus, van wie ek gespreek het, waardeur 'n mens gered kan word nie.

21 Daarom, om hierdie rede het die Here God my belowe dat hierdie dinge wat ek skrywe, behou en bewaar sal word, en oorgegee word aan my saad, van geslag tot geslag, sodat die belofte vervul mag word aan Josef, dat sy saad nooit sal vergaan solank as die aarde staan nie.

22 Daarom, hierdie dinge sal oorgaan van geslag tot geslag solank as die aarde sal staan; en hulle sal oorgaan volgens die wil en behae van God; en die nasies wat hulle sal besit, sal geoordeel word deur die woorde wat geskrywe is.

23 Want ons arbei ywerig om te skryf, om ons kinders te oorrede, en ook ons broers, om in Christus te glo, en om met God versoen te word; want ons weet dat dit deur genade is dat ons gered is, na alles wat ons kan doen.

24 En, hoewel ons in Christus glo, onderhou ons die wet van Moses, en sien standvastig uit na Christus, totdat die wet vervul sal word.

25 Want, om hierdie rede is die wet gegee; daarom het die wet dood geword vir ons, en ons word lewend gemaak in Christus vanweë ons geloof; tog onderhou ons die wet vanweë die gebooe.

26 En ons spreek van Christus, ons verbly ons in Christus, ons preek van Christus, ons profeteer van Christus, en ons skryf volgens ons profesieë, sodat ons kinders mag weet na watter bron hulle mag kyk vir 'n vergifnis van hulle sondes.

And now, my brethren, I have spoken plainly that ye cannot err. And as the Lord God liveth that brought Israel up out of the land of Egypt, and gave unto Moses power that he should heal the nations after they had been bitten by the poisonous serpents, if they would cast their eyes unto the serpent which he did raise up before them, and also gave him power that he should smite the rock and the water should come forth; yea, behold I say unto you, that as these things are true, and as the Lord God liveth, there is none other name given under heaven save it be this Jesus Christ, of which I have spoken, whereby man can be saved.

Wherefore, for this cause hath the Lord God promised unto me that these things which I write shall be kept and preserved, and handed down unto my seed, from generation to generation, that the promise may be fulfilled unto Joseph, that his seed should never perish as long as the earth should stand.

Wherefore, these things shall go from generation to generation as long as the earth shall stand; and they shall go according to the will and pleasure of God; and the nations who shall possess them shall be judged of them according to the words which are written.

For we labor diligently to write, to persuade our children, and also our brethren, to believe in Christ, and to be reconciled to God; for we know that it is by grace that we are saved, after all we can do.

And, notwithstanding we believe in Christ, we keep the law of Moses, and look forward with steadfastness unto Christ, until the law shall be fulfilled.

For, for this end was the law given; wherefore the law hath become dead unto us, and we are made alive in Christ because of our faith; yet we keep the law because of the commandments.

And we talk of Christ, we rejoice in Christ, we preach of Christ, we prophesy of Christ, and we write according to our prophecies, that our children may know to what source they may look for a remission of their sins.

- 27 Daarom, ons spreek aangaande die wet dat ons kinders mag weet van die doodsheid van die wet; en hulle, deur die doodsheid van die wet te ken, mag vooruitsien na daardie lewe wat in Christus is, en weet vir watter rede die wet gegee is. En nadat die wet vervul is in Christus, dat hulle nie hulle harte hoof te verhard teen Hom wanneer die wet weggedoen behoort te word nie.
- 28 En nou, kyk, my volk, julle is 'n hardnekkige volk; daarom, ek het duidelik met julle gespreek, sodat julle nie kan misverstaan nie. En die woorde wat ek gespreek het, sal staan as 'n getuienis teen julle; want hulle is voldoende om enige mens die regte weg te leer; want die regte weg is om in Christus te glo en Hom nie te verloën nie; want deur Hom te verloën, verloën julle ook die profete en die wet.
- 29 En nou, kyk, ek sê vir julle dat die regte weg is om in Christus te glo, en Hom nie te verloën nie; en Christus is die Heilige Een van Israel; daarom, julle moet neerbuig voor Hom en Hom aanbid met al julle mag, verstand en krag, en julle hele siel; en as julle dit doen, sal julle geensins uitgewerp word nie.
- 30 En, in soverre dit noodsaaklik sal wees, moet julle die handeling en ordinansies van God onderhou tot dat die wet vervul sal word wat aan Moses gegee is.

Wherefore, we speak concerning the law that our children may know the deadness of the law; and they, by knowing the deadness of the law, may look forward unto that life which is in Christ, and know for what end the law was given. And after the law is fulfilled in Christ, that they need not harden their hearts against him when the law ought to be done away.

And now behold, my people, ye are a stiffnecked people; wherefore, I have spoken plainly unto you, that ye cannot misunderstand. And the words which I have spoken shall stand as a testimony against you; for they are sufficient to teach any man the right way; for the right way is to believe in Christ and deny him not; for by denying him ye also deny the prophets and the law.

And now behold, I say unto you that the right way is to believe in Christ, and deny him not; and Christ is the Holy One of Israel; wherefore ye must bow down before him, and worship him with all your might, mind, and strength, and your whole soul; and if ye do this ye shall in nowise be cast out.

And, inasmuch as it shall be expedient, ye must keep the performances and ordinances of God until the law shall be fulfilled which was given unto Moses.

2 Nefi 26

- 1 En nadat Christus opgestaan het uit die dood, sal Hy Hom toon aan julle, my kinders en my geliefde broers; en die woorde wat Hy met julle sal spreek, sal die wet wees wat julle sal onderhou.
- 2 Want kyk, ek sê vir julle dat ek gesien het dat baie geslagte sal verbygaan, en daar sal groot oorloë en twiste wees onder my volk.
- 3 En nadat die Messias sal kom, sal daar tekens gegee word aan my volk van sy geboorte, en ook van sy dood en opstanding; en groot en vreeslik sal daardie dag wees vir die bese, want hulle sal vergaan; en hulle vergaan, omdat hulle die profete uitwerp, en die heiliges, en hulle stenig, en hulle doodmaak; daarom, die geroep van die bloed van die heiliges sal opstyg tot God uit die grond teen hulle.
- 4 Daarom, al diegene wat hoogmoedig is, en wat boos handel, die dag wat kom sal hulle verbrand, sê die Here van die Leërskaer, want hulle sal wees soos stoppels.
- 5 En hulle wat die profete doodmaak, en die heiliges, die dieptes van die aarde sal hulle insluk, sê die Here van die Leërskaer; en berge sal hulle bedek, en warrelwinde sal hulle wegvoer, en geboue sal op hulle val en hulle stukkend druk en hulle tot poeier maal.
- 6 En hulle sal besoek word met donderslae, en blitse, en aardbewings, en allerhande wyse van vernietiging, want die vuur van die toorn van die Here sal aangesteek word teen hulle, en hulle sal soos stoppels wees, en die dag wat kom sal hulle verteer, sê die Here van die Leërskaer.
- 7 O die pyn, en die smart van my siel oor die verlies van die gestorwenes van my volk! Want ek, Nephi, het dit gesien, en dit verteer my byna voor die teenwoordigheid van die Here; maar ek moet roep tot my God: U weë is regverdig.
- 8 Maar kyk, die regverdige wat ag slaan op die woorde van die profete, en hulle nie vernietig nie, maar uitsien na Christus met standvastigheid vir die tekens wat gegee is, ondanks alle vervolging—kyk, dit is hulle wat nie sal vergaan nie.

2 Nephi 26

And after Christ shall have risen from the dead he shall show himself unto you, my children, and my beloved brethren; and the words which he shall speak unto you shall be the law which ye shall do.

For behold, I say unto you that I have beheld that many generations shall pass away, and there shall be great wars and contentions among my people.

And after the Messiah shall come there shall be signs given unto my people of his birth, and also of his death and resurrection; and great and terrible shall that day be unto the wicked, for they shall perish; and they perish because they cast out the prophets, and the saints, and stone them, and slay them; wherefore the cry of the blood of the saints shall ascend up to God from the ground against them.

Wherefore, all those who are proud, and that do wickedly, the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, for they shall be as stubble.

And they that kill the prophets, and the saints, the depths of the earth shall swallow them up, saith the Lord of Hosts; and mountains shall cover them, and whirlwinds shall carry them away, and buildings shall fall upon them and crush them to pieces and grind them to powder.

And they shall be visited with thunderings, and lightnings, and earthquakes, and all manner of destructions, for the fire of the anger of the Lord shall be kindled against them, and they shall be as stubble, and the day that cometh shall consume them, saith the Lord of Hosts.

O the pain, and the anguish of my soul for the loss of the slain of my people! For I, Nephi, have seen it, and it well nigh consumeth me before the presence of the Lord; but I must cry unto my God: Thy ways are just.

But behold, the righteous that hearken unto the words of the prophets, and destroy them not, but look forward unto Christ with steadfastness for the signs which are given, notwithstanding all persecution—behold, they are they which shall not perish.

- 9 Maar die Seun van Regverdigheid sal verskyn aan hulle; en Hy sal hulle genees, en hulle sal vrede hê saam met Hom, totdat drie geslagte sal verbygegaan het, en baie van die vierde geslag sal verbygegaan het in regverdigheid.
- 10 En wanneer hierdie dinge verbygegaan het, kom 'n spoedige vernietiging oor my volk; want, ondanks die pyne van my siel, het ek dit gesien; daarom, ek weet dat dit sal geskied; en hulle verkoop hulself vir niks; want, as die beloning van hulle hoogmoed en dwaasheid sal hulle vernietiging oes; want omdat hulle toegee aan die duiwel en werke van die duisternis verkies eerder as die lig, daarom moet hulle afgaan na die hel.
- 11 Want die Gees van die Here sal nie altyd met die mens werk nie. En wanneer die Gees ophou om met die mens te werk, dan kom spoedige vernietiging, en dit bedroef my siel.
- 12 En soos ek gespreek het aangaande die oortuiging van die Jode, dat Jesus die waaragtige Christus is, moet dit noodwendig so wees dat die nie-Jode ook oortuig word dat Jesus die Christus is, die Ewige God;
- 13 En dat Hy Hom openbaar aan al diegene wat in Hom glo, deur die krag van die Heilige Gees; ja, aan elke nasie, stam, taal en volk, terwyl Hy magtige wonderwerke, tekens, en wonders verrig onder die kinders van mense volgens hulle geloof.
- 14 Maar kyk, ek profeteer aan julle aangaande die laaste dae; aangaande die dae wanneer die Here God hierdie dinge sal voortbring aan die kinders van mense.
- 15 Nadat my saad en die saad van my broers in ongelof sal kwyn, en deur die nie-Jode verslaan sal wees; ja, nadat die Here God teen hulle laer sal opslaan rondom hulle; en hulle sal beleër met 'n verskansing, en vestings teen hulle oprig; en nadat hulle tot laag in die stof verneder sal wees, totdat hulle nie bestaan nie, tog sal die woorde van die regverdiges geskrywe word, en die gebede van die gelowiges sal verhoor word, en al diegene wat in ongelof gekwyn het, sal nie vergeet word nie.

But the Son of Righteousness shall appear unto them; and he shall heal them, and they shall have peace with him, until three generations shall have passed away, and many of the fourth generation shall have passed away in righteousness.

And when these things have passed away a speedy destruction cometh unto my people; for, notwithstanding the pains of my soul, I have seen it; wherefore, I know that it shall come to pass; and they sell themselves for naught; for, for the reward of their pride and their foolishness they shall reap destruction; for because they yield unto the devil and choose works of darkness rather than light, therefore they must go down to hell.

For the Spirit of the Lord will not always strive with man. And when the Spirit ceaseth to strive with man then cometh speedy destruction, and this grieveth my soul.

And as I spake concerning the convincing of the Jews, that Jesus is the very Christ, it must needs be that the Gentiles be convinced also that Jesus is the Christ, the Eternal God;

And that he manifesteth himself unto all those who believe in him, by the power of the Holy Ghost; yea, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, working mighty miracles, signs, and wonders, among the children of men according to their faith.

But behold, I prophesy unto you concerning the last days; concerning the days when the Lord God shall bring these things forth unto the children of men.

After my seed and the seed of my brethren shall have dwindled in unbelief, and shall have been smitten by the Gentiles; yea, after the Lord God shall have camped against them round about, and shall have laid siege against them with a mount, and raised forts against them; and after they shall have been brought down low in the dust, even that they are not, yet the words of the righteous shall be written, and the prayers of the faithful shall be heard, and all those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not be forgotten.

- 16 Want hulle wat vernietig sal word, sal spreek tot hulle uit die grond, en hulle spraak sal laag wees uit die stof, en hulle stem sal wees soos dié van 'n geestesbesweerder; want die Here God sal aan hom krag gee, dat hy mag fluister aangaande hulle, asof uit die grond; en hulle spraak sal fluister uit die stof.
- 17 Want so sê die Here God: Hulle sal die dinge skryf wat onder hulle gedoen sal word, en dit sal geskryf word en verseël word in 'n boek, en diegene wat in ongelooft gekwyn het, sal hulle nie hê nie, want hulle soek om die dinge van God te vernietig.
- 18 Daarom, soos diegene wat vernietig is, spoedig vernietig is; en die skare van hulle verskriklikes sal wees soos kaf wat wegwaai—ja, so sê die Here God: dit sal in 'n oomblik wees, skielik—
- 19 En dit sal gebeur dat diegene wat in ongelooft gekwyn het, geslaan sal word deur die hand van die nie-Jode.
- 20 En die nie-Jode word verhef in die hoogmoed van hulle oë, en het gestruikel, vanweë die grootheid van hulle struikelblok, deurdat hulle baie kerke gestig het; nogtans, hulle het die krag en wonderwerke van God geminag, en preek aan hulleself hul eie wysheid en hul eie geleerdheid, sodat hulle voordeel kan trek en die aangesigte van die armes maal.
- 21 En daar is baie kerke opgerig wat naywering veroorsaak, en onenighede, en kwaadwilligheid.
- 22 En daar is ook geheime organisasies, net soos in die dae van die voortyd, volgens die organisasies van die duiwel, want hy is die stigter van al hierdie dinge; ja, die stigter van moord, en werke van duisternis; ja, en hy lei hulle aan die nek met 'n vlastou, totdat hy hulle bind met sy sterk toue vir ewig.
- 23 Want kyk, my geliefde broers, ek sê vir julle dat die Here God nie werk in duisternis nie.
- 24 Hy doen niks tensy dit tot die voordeel van die wêreld is nie; want Hy het die wêreld lief, sodat Hy selfs sy eie lewe neerlê sodat Hy alle mense na Hom kan trek. Daarom, Hy gebied niemand dat hulle nie sal deel hê aan sy heil nie.

For those who shall be destroyed shall speak unto them out of the ground, and their speech shall be low out of the dust, and their voice shall be as one that hath a familiar spirit; for the Lord God will give unto him power, that he may whisper concerning them, even as it were out of the ground; and their speech shall whisper out of the dust.

For thus saith the Lord God: They shall write the things which shall be done among them, and they shall be written and sealed up in a book, and those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not have them, for they seek to destroy the things of God.

Wherefore, as those who have been destroyed have been destroyed speedily; and the multitude of their terrible ones shall be as chaff that passeth away—yea, thus saith the Lord God: It shall be at an instant, suddenly—

And it shall come to pass, that those who have dwindled in unbelief shall be smitten by the hand of the Gentiles.

And the Gentiles are lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and have stumbled, because of the greatness of their stumbling block, that they have built up many churches; nevertheless, they put down the power and miracles of God, and preach up unto themselves their own wisdom and their own learning, that they may get gain and grind upon the face of the poor.

And there are many churches built up which cause envyings, and strifes, and malice.

And there are also secret combinations, even as in times of old, according to the combinations of the devil, for he is the founder of all these things; yea, the founder of murder, and works of darkness; yea, and he leadeth them by the neck with a flaxen cord, until he bindeth them with his strong cords forever.

For behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you that the Lord God worketh not in darkness.

He doeth not anything save it be for the benefit of the world; for he loveth the world, even that he layeth down his own life that he may draw all men unto him. Wherefore, he commandeth none that they shall not partake of his salvation.

- 25 Kyk, roep Hy tot enigiemand, en sê: Gaan weg van My? Kyk, ek sê vir julle, Nee; maar Hy sê: Kom na My al julle eindes van die aarde, koop melk en heuning, sonder geld en sonder prys.
- 26 Kyk, het Hy enigiemand gebied dat hulle moes weggaan uit die sinagoges, of uit die huise van aanbidding? Kyk, ek sê vir julle, Nee.
- 27 Het Hy enigiemand gebied dat hulle nie moet deel hê aan sy heil nie? Kyk, ek sê vir julle, Nee; maar Hy het dit verniet gegee aan alle mense; en Hy het sy volk gebied dat hulle alle mense moes oorreed tot bekering.
- 28 Kyk, het die Here enigiemand gebied dat hulle nie moes deel hê aan sy goedheid nie? Kyk, ek sê vir julle, Nee; maar alle mense is bevoorreg, die een soos die ander, en niemand word verbied nie.
- 29 Hy gebied dat daar geen priesterliste sal wees nie; want kyk, priesterliste is dat mense preek en hulle self oprig as 'n lig vir die wêreld, sodat hulle voordeel kan trek en die lof van die wêreld kry; maar hulle soek nie die welsyn van Sion nie.
- 30 Kyk, die Here het hierdie ding verbied; daarom, die Here God het 'n gebod gegee dat alle mense naasteliefde moet hê, welke naasteliefde die liefde is. En tensy hulle naasteliefde sou hê, is hulle niks nie. Daarom, as hulle naasteliefde sou hê, sou hulle nie toelaat dat die arbeider in Sion vergaan nie.
- 31 Maar die arbeider in Sion sal vir Sion arbei; want as hulle arbei vir geld, sal hulle vergaan.
- 32 En verder, die Here God het gebied dat mense nie moet moor nie; dat hulle nie moet lieg nie; dat hulle nie moet steel nie; dat hulle nie die Naam van die Here hulle God ydellik moet gebruik nie; dat hulle nie moet begeer nie; dat hulle nie kwaadwilligheid moet hê nie; dat hulle nie die een met die ander moet stry nie; dat hulle nie hoererye moet pleeg nie; en dat hulle geen van hierdie dinge sou doen nie; want wie dit doen, sal vergaan.

Behold, doth he cry unto any, saying: Depart from me? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but he saith: Come unto me all ye ends of the earth, buy milk and honey, without money and without price.

Behold, hath he commanded any that they should depart out of the synagogues, or out of the houses of worship? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

Hath he commanded any that they should not partake of his salvation? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but he hath given it free for all men; and he hath commanded his people that they should persuade all men to repentance.

Behold, hath the Lord commanded any that they should not partake of his goodness? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but all men are privileged the one like unto the other, and none are forbidden.

He commandeth that there shall be no priestcrafts; for, behold, priestcrafts are that men preach and set themselves up for a light unto the world, that they may get gain and praise of the world; but they seek not the welfare of Zion.

Behold, the Lord hath forbidden this thing; wherefore, the Lord God hath given a commandment that all men should have charity, which charity is love. And except they should have charity they were nothing. Wherefore, if they should have charity they would not suffer the laborer in Zion to perish.

But the laborer in Zion shall labor for Zion; for if they labor for money they shall perish.

And again, the Lord God hath commanded that men should not murder; that they should not lie; that they should not steal; that they should not take the name of the Lord their God in vain; that they should not envy; that they should not have malice; that they should not contend one with another; that they should not commit whoredoms; and that they should do none of these things; for whoso doeth them shall perish.

33 Want geen van hierdie ongeregtighede kom van die Here nie; want Hy doen dit wat goed is onder die kinders van mense; en Hy doen niks tensy dit duidelik is vir die kinders van mense nie; en Hy nooi hulle almal om na Hom te kom en deel te hê aan sy goedheid; en Hy wys niemand weg wat na Hom kom nie, swart en wit, slaaf en vryman, man en vrou; en Hy onthou die heiden; en almal is gelyk voor God, beide Jood en nie-Jood.

For none of these iniquities come of the Lord; for he doeth that which is good among the children of men; and he doeth nothing save it be plain unto the children of men; and he inviteth them all to come unto him and partake of his goodness; and he denieth none that come unto him, black and white, bond and free, male and female; and he remembereth the heathen; and all are alike unto God, both Jew and Gentile.

2 Nefi 27

- 1 Maar kyk, in die laaste dae, of in die dae van die nie-Jode—ja, kyk al die nasies van die nie-Jode en ook die Jode, beide hulle wat in hierdie land sal kom, en ook hulle wat in ander lande sal wees, ja, en wel op al die lande van die aarde, kyk, hulle sal dronk wees met ongeregtigheid en allerhande gruwels—
- 2 En wanneer daardie dag sal kom, sal hulle besoek word deur die Here van die Leërskaare, met donderweer, en met aardbewing, en met ’n groot geraas, en met storm, en met stormwind, en met die vlam van verterende vuur.
- 3 En al die nasies wat stry teen Sion, en wat haar beangs maak, sal soos ’n droom van ’n nagvisioen wees; ja, dit sal vir hulle wees, en wel soos vir ’n honger man wat droom, en kyk hy eet, maar hy word wakker en sy siel is leeg; of soos ’n dorstige man wat droom, en kyk hy drink, maar hy word wakker en kyk hy is uitgeput, en sy siel versmag; ja, net so sal die skares van al die nasies wees wat stry teen Berg Sion.
- 4 Want kyk, julle almal wat ongeregtigheid doen, staan stil en wonder, want julle sal uitroep en skree; ja, julle sal dronk wees, maar nie van wyn nie, julle sal waggel, maar nie van sterk drank nie.
- 5 Want kyk, die Here het die gees van diepe slaap oor julle uitgestort. Want kyk, julle het julle oë gesluit, en julle het die profete verwerp; en julle heersers, en die sieners het Hy oordek vanweë julle ongeregtigheid.
- 6 En dit sal gebeur dat die Here God aan julle die woorde van ’n boek sal voortbring, en hulle sal die woorde wees van hulle wat gesluimer het.
- 7 En kyk, die boek sal verseël wees; en in die boek sal wees ’n openbaring van God, vanaf die begin van die wêreld tot die einde daarvan.
- 8 Daarom, vanweë die dinge wat verseël is, sal die dinge wat verseël is nie oorhandig word op die dag van die boosheid en gruwels van die volk nie. Daarom, die boek sal van hulle weerhou word.

2 Nephi 27

But, behold, in the last days, or in the days of the Gentiles—yea, behold all the nations of the Gentiles and also the Jews, both those who shall come upon this land and those who shall be upon other lands, yea, even upon all the lands of the earth, behold, they will be drunken with iniquity and all manner of abominations—

And when that day shall come they shall be visited of the Lord of Hosts, with thunder and with earthquake, and with a great noise, and with storm, and with tempest, and with the flame of devouring fire.

And all the nations that fight against Zion, and that distress her, shall be as a dream of a night vision; yea, it shall be unto them, even as unto a hungry man which dreameth, and behold he eateth but he awaketh and his soul is empty; or like unto a thirsty man which dreameth, and behold he drinketh but he awaketh and behold he is faint, and his soul hath appetite; yea, even so shall the multitude of all the nations be that fight against Mount Zion.

For behold, all ye that doeth iniquity, stay yourselves and wonder, for ye shall cry out, and cry; yea, ye shall be drunken but not with wine, ye shall stagger but not with strong drink.

For behold, the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep. For behold, ye have closed your eyes, and ye have rejected the prophets; and your rulers, and the seers hath he covered because of your iniquity.

And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall bring forth unto you the words of a book, and they shall be the words of them which have slumbered.

And behold the book shall be sealed; and in the book shall be a revelation from God, from the beginning of the world to the ending thereof.

Wherefore, because of the things which are sealed up, the things which are sealed shall not be delivered in the day of the wickedness and abominations of the people. Wherefore the book shall be kept from them.

- 9 Maar die boek sal aan 'n man oorhandig word en hy sal die woorde van die boek oorhandig, wat die woorde is van hulle wat gesluimer het in die stof, en hy sal hierdie woorde aan 'n ander oorhandig;
- 10 Maar die woorde wat verseël is, sal hy nie oorhandig nie, nóg sal hy die boek oorhandig. Want die boek sal verseël wees deur die krag van God, en die openbaring wat verseël was, sal in die boek gehou word tot die eie bepaalde tyd van die Here, sodat hulle mag voortkom; want kyk, hulle openbaar alle dinge vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld tot die einde daarvan.
- 11 En die dag kom dat die woorde van die boek wat verseël was, gelees sal word op die huise se dakke; en hulle sal gelees word deur die krag van Christus; en alle dinge sal geopenbaar word aan die kinders van mense wat nog ooit onder die kinders van mense was, en wat ooit sal wees, en wel tot die einde van die aarde.
- 12 Daarom, op daardie dag wanneer die boek oorhandig sal word aan die man van wie ek gespreek het, sal die boek verborge wees van die oë van die wêreld, dat die oë van geeneen dit sal sien nie behalwe dat drie getuies dit sal sien, deur die krag van God, buiten hom aan wie die boek oorhandig sal word; en hulle sal getuig van die waarheid van die boek en die dinge daarin.
- 13 En daar is geen ander wat dit sal sien nie, behalwe 'n paar volgens die wil van God, om te getuig van sy woord aan die kinders van mense; want die Here God het gesê dat die woorde van die gelowiges moet spreek asof dit was vanuit die dood.
- 14 Daarom, die Here God sal voortgaan om die woorde van die boek te voorskyn te bring; en in die mond van soveel getuies as Hy goeddink, sal Hy sy woord vestig; en wee hom wat die woord van God verwerp!
- 15 Maar kyk, dit sal gebeur dat die Here God aan hom aan wie hy die boek sal oorhandig sal sê: Neem hierdie woorde wat nie verseël is nie en oorhandig hulle aan 'n ander, sodat hy hulle kan toon aan die geleerde, en sê: Lees dit, ek vra u. En die geleerde sal sê: Bring hier die boek, en ek sal hulle lees.

But the book shall be delivered unto a man, and he shall deliver the words of the book, which are the words of those who have slumbered in the dust, and he shall deliver these words unto another;

But the words which are sealed he shall not deliver, neither shall he deliver the book. For the book shall be sealed by the power of God, and the revelation which was sealed shall be kept in the book until the own due time of the Lord, that they may come forth; for behold, they reveal all things from the foundation of the world unto the end thereof.

And the day cometh that the words of the book which were sealed shall be read upon the house tops; and they shall be read by the power of Christ; and all things shall be revealed unto the children of men which ever have been among the children of men, and which ever will be even unto the end of the earth.

Wherefore, at that day when the book shall be delivered unto the man of whom I have spoken, the book shall be hid from the eyes of the world, that the eyes of none shall behold it save it be that three witnesses shall behold it, by the power of God, besides him to whom the book shall be delivered; and they shall testify to the truth of the book and the things therein.

And there is none other which shall view it, save it be a few according to the will of God, to bear testimony of his word unto the children of men; for the Lord God hath said that the words of the faithful should speak as if it were from the dead.

Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to bring forth the words of the book; and in the mouth of as many witnesses as seemeth him good will he establish his word; and wo be unto him that rejecteth the word of God!

But behold, it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall say unto him to whom he shall deliver the book: Take these words which are not sealed and deliver them to another, that he may show them unto the learned, saying: Read this, I pray thee. And the learned shall say: Bring hither the book, and I will read them.

16 En nou, vanweë die eer van die wêreld en om gewin te verkry, sal hulle dit sê, en nie vir die heerlijkheid van God nie.

17 En die man sal sê: Ek kan nie die boek bring nie, want dit is verseël.

18 Dan sal die geleerde sê: Ek kan dit nie lees nie.

19 Daarom, dit sal gebeur dat die Here God weer die boek sal oorhandig en die woorde daarvan aan hom wat nie geleerd is nie; en die man wat nie geleerd is nie, sal sê: Ek is nie geleerd nie.

20 Dan sal die Here God aan hom sê: Die geleerdes sal hulle nie lees nie, want hulle het hulle verwerp, en Ek is in staat om my eie werk te doen; daarom, jy sal die woorde lees wat Ek vir jou sal gee.

21 Raak nie die dinge aan wat verseël is nie, want Ek sal dit in my eie bepaalde tyd voortbring; want Ek sal aan die kinders van mense toon dat Ek in staat is om my eie werk te doen.

22 Daarom, wanneer jy die woorde gelees het wat Ek jou gebied het, en die getuies verkry het wat Ek jou belowe het, dan sal jy die boek weer verseël, en dit wegbêre vir My, dat Ek die woorde mag bewaar wat jy nie gelees het nie, totdat Ek dit goeddink in my eie wysheid om alle dinge te openbaar aan die kinders van mense.

23 Want kyk, Ek is God; en Ek is 'n God van wonderwerke; en Ek sal aan die wêreld toon dat Ek dieselfde is gister, vandag, en vir ewig; en Ek arbei nie onder die kinders van mense nie behalwe volgens hulle geloof.

24 En verder, dit sal gebeur dat die Here aan hom sal sê wat die woorde sal lees wat aan hom oorhandig sal word:

25 In soverre hierdie volk naderkom na My met hulle mond, en met hulle lippe My eer, maar hulle harte ver van My verwyder het, en hulle vrees vir My geleer word deur die leringe van mense—

26 Daarom, Ek sal voortgaan om 'n wonderlike werk te doen onder hierdie volk, ja, 'n wonderlike werk en 'n wonder, want die wysheid van hulle wyse en geleerdes sal vergaan, en die begrip van hulle verstandiges sal verskuil word.

And now, because of the glory of the world and to get gain will they say this, and not for the glory of God.

And the man shall say: I cannot bring the book, for it is sealed.

Then shall the learned say: I cannot read it.

Wherefore it shall come to pass, that the Lord God will deliver again the book and the words thereof to him that is not learned; and the man that is not learned shall say: I am not learned.

Then shall the Lord God say unto him: The learned shall not read them, for they have rejected them, and I am able to do mine own work; wherefore thou shalt read the words which I shall give unto thee.

Touch not the things which are sealed, for I will bring them forth in mine own due time; for I will show unto the children of men that I am able to do mine own work.

Wherefore, when thou hast read the words which I have commanded thee, and obtained the witnesses which I have promised unto thee, then shalt thou seal up the book again, and hide it up unto me, that I may preserve the words which thou hast not read, until I shall see fit in mine own wisdom to reveal all things unto the children of men.

For behold, I am God; and I am a God of miracles; and I will show unto the world that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and I work not among the children of men save it be according to their faith.

And again it shall come to pass that the Lord shall say unto him that shall read the words that shall be delivered him:

Forasmuch as this people draw near unto me with their mouth, and with their lips do honor me, but have removed their hearts far from me, and their fear towards me is taught by the precepts of men—

Therefore, I will proceed to do a marvelous work among this people, yea, a marvelous work and a wonder, for the wisdom of their wise and learned shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent shall be hid.

27 En wee hulle wat soek om hulle planne diep vir die Here te verberg! En hulle werke is in die duisternis, en hulle sê: Wie sien ons, en wie ken ons? En hulle sê ook: Waarlik, julle onderstebo keer van dinge sal geag word soos die pottebakker se klei. Maar kyk, Ek sal aan hulle toon, sê die Here van die Leërskaare, dat Ek al hulle werke ken. Want sal die werkstuk sê van hom wat dit gemaak het, hy het my nie gemaak nie? Of sal die gevormde ding van hom sê wat dit gevorm het, hy het geen begrip nie?

28 Maar kyk, sê die Here van die Leërskaare: Ek sal aan die kinders van mense toon dat dit nog net 'n baie kort tydjie is, en Libanon sal verander word in 'n vrugbare land; en die vrugbare land sal gereken word as 'n woud.

29 En in dié dag sal die dowes die woorde hoor van die boek, en die oë van die blindes sal sien uit die duisternis en uit donkerte.

30 En die sagmoediges sal ook toeneem, en hulle blydskap sal in die Here wees, en die armes onder die mense sal hulle verheug in die Heilige Een van Israel.

31 Want sowaar as die Here leef, sal hulle sien dat die verskriklike een gebring word na niks, en die spotter word verteer en almal wat wag op ongeregtigheid word afgesny;

32 En hulle wat 'n mens 'n oortreder maak oor 'n woord, en 'n strik span vir hom wat teregwys in die poort, en die regverdige opsy stoot soos 'n nuttelose ding.

33 Daarom, so sê die Here, wat Abraham verlos het, aangaande die huis van Jakob: Jakob sal nie nou beskaam wees nie, nóg sal sy aangesig nou bleek word.

34 Maar wanneer hy sy kinders sien, die werk van my hande, in sy midde, sal hulle my Naam heilig, en die Heilige Een van Jakob heilig, en sal die God van Israel vrees.

35 Hulle ook wat gedwaal het in gees, sal insig verkry, en hulle wat gemurmureer het sal leerstellings leer.

And wo unto them that seek deep to hide their counsel from the Lord! And their works are in the dark; and they say: Who seeth us, and who knoweth us? And they also say: Surely, your turning of things upside down shall be esteemed as the potter's clay. But behold, I will show unto them, saith the Lord of Hosts, that I know all their works. For shall the work say of him that made it, he made me not? Or shall the thing framed say of him that framed it, he had no understanding?

But behold, saith the Lord of Hosts: I will show unto the children of men that it is yet a very little while and Libanon shall be turned into a fruitful field; and the fruitful field shall be esteemed as a forest.

And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity and out of darkness.

And the meek also shall increase, and their joy shall be in the Lord, and the poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.

For assuredly as the Lord liveth they shall see that the terrible one is brought to naught, and the scorner is consumed, and all that watch for iniquity are cut off;

And they that make a man an offender for a word, and lay a snare for him that reproveth in the gate, and turn aside the just for a thing of naught.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord, who redeemed Abraham, concerning the house of Jacob: Jacob shall not now be ashamed, neither shall his face now wax pale.

But when he seeth his children, the work of my hands, in the midst of him, they shall sanctify my name, and sanctify the Holy One of Jacob, and shall fear the God of Israel.

They also that erred in spirit shall come to understanding, and they that murmured shall learn doctrine.

2 Nefi 28

- 1 En nou, kyk, my broers, ek het met julle gesprek, volgens wat die Gees my gedwing het; daarom, ek weet dat hulle sekerlik moet gebeur.
- 2 En die dinge wat geskryf sal word uit die boek sal van groot waarde wees vir die kinders van mense, en veral vir ons saad, wat 'n oorblyfsel is van die huis van Israel.
- 3 Want dit sal gebeur in daardie dag dat die kerke wat opgerig word, en nie vir die Here nie, wanneer die een vir die ander sal sê: Kyk, ek, ek behoort aan die Here; en die ander sal sê: Ek, ek behoort aan die Here; en so sal elkeen sê wat kerke opgerig het, en nie vir die Here nie—
- 4 En hulle sal met mekaar stry; en hulle priesters sal met mekaar stry, en hulle sal onderrig met hulle geleerdheid, en die Heilige Gees loën, wat inspireer om te spreek.
- 5 En hulle loën die krag van God, die Heilige Een van Israel; en hulle sê vir die volk: Slaan ag op ons, en hoor julle ons lering; want kyk, daar is geen God vandag nie, want die Here en die Verlosser het sy werk gedoen, en Hy het sy mag aan die mense gegee;
- 6 Kyk, slaan julle ag op my lering; as hulle sal sê daar is 'n wonderwerk verrig deur die hand van die Here, glo dit nie; want hierdie dag is Hy nie 'n God van wonderwerke nie; Hy het sy werk gedoen.
- 7 Ja en daar sal baie wees wat sal sê: Eet, drink, en wees vrolik, want môre sterwe ons; en dit sal wel wees met ons.
- 8 En daar sal ook baie wees wat sal sê: Eet, drink en wees vrolik; nogtans, vrees God—Hy sal die begaan van 'n klein sonde regverdig; ja, lieg 'n bietjie, neem die voordeel van een vanweë sy woorde, grawe 'n kuil vir jou naaste; daar is geen kwaad hierin nie; en doen al hierdie dinge, want môre sterwe ons; en as dit so is dat ons skuldig is, sal God ons slaan met 'n paar strepe, en uiteindelik sal ons gered word in die koninkryk van God.

2 Nephi 28

And now, behold, my brethren, I have spoken unto you, according as the Spirit hath constrained me; wherefore, I know that they must surely come to pass.

And the things which shall be written out of the book shall be of great worth unto the children of men, and especially unto our seed, which is a remnant of the house of Israel.

For it shall come to pass in that day that the churches which are built up, and not unto the Lord, when the one shall say unto the other: Behold, I, I am the Lord's; and the others shall say: I, I am the Lord's; and thus shall every one say that hath built up churches, and not unto the Lord—

And they shall contend one with another; and their priests shall contend one with another, and they shall teach with their learning, and deny the Holy Ghost, which giveth utterance.

And they deny the power of God, the Holy One of Israel; and they say unto the people: Hearken unto us, and hear ye our precept; for behold there is no God today, for the Lord and the Redeemer hath done his work, and he hath given his power unto men;

Behold, hearken ye unto my precept; if they shall say there is a miracle wrought by the hand of the Lord, believe it not; for this day he is not a God of miracles; he hath done his work.

Yea, and there shall be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry, for tomorrow we die; and it shall be well with us.

And there shall also be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry; nevertheless, fear God—he will justify in committing a little sin; yea, lie a little, take the advantage of one because of his words, dig a pit for thy neighbor; there is no harm in this; and do all these things, for tomorrow we die; and if it so be that we are guilty, God will beat us with a few stripes, and at last we shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

- 9 Ja, en daar sal baie wees wat volgens dié wyse sal leer, valse en ydele en dwase leerstellings, en sal opgeblase wees in hulle harte, en diep sal soek om hulle planne te verberg vir die Here; en hulle werke sal in die duisternis wees.
- 10 En die bloed van die heiliges sal uit die grond roep teen hulle.
- 11 Ja, hulle het almal van die weg afgedwaal; hulle het verdorwe geword.
- 12 Vanweë hoogmoed, en vanweë valse leraars, en valse leerstellings, het hulle kerke verdorwe geword, en hulle kerke het verhewe geword; vanweë hoogmoed is hulle opgeblase.
- 13 Hulle beroof die armes vanweë hulle mooi heiligdomme; hulle beroof die armes vanweë hulle pronkerige klere; en hulle vervolg die sagmoediges en die armes van hart, want in hulle hoogmoed is hulle opgeblase.
- 14 Hulle hou hul nekke styf en hulle hoofde hoog; ja, en vanweë hoogmoed, en boosheid, en gruwels, en hoererye, het hulle almal afgedwaal, behalwe 'n paar, wat die nederige volgelinge van Christus is; nogtans, hulle word gelei, sodat hulle in baie gevalle dwaal omdat hulle geleer word deur die leringe van mense.
- 15 O, die wyse, en die geleerdes, en rykes, wat opgeblase is in die hoogmoed van hulle harte, en al diegene wat valse leerstellings preek, en al diegene wat hoererye pleeg, en die regte weg van die Here verdraai, wee, wee, wee hulle, sê die Here God Almagtig, want hulle sal neergewerp word na die hel!
- 16 Wee hulle wat die regverdige opsy stoot soos 'n nuttelose ding, en uitvaar teen dit wat goed is, en sê dat dit van geen waarde is nie! Want die dag sal kom dat die Here God spoedig die inwoners van die aarde sal besoek; en in dié dag wanneer hulle ten volle ryp is in ongeregtheid, sal hulle vergaan.
- 17 Maar kyk, as die inwoners van die aarde sal bekeer van hul boosheid en gruwels, sal hulle nie vernietig word nie, sê die Here van die Leërskaar.
- 18 Maar kyk, daardie groot en gruwelike kerk, die hoer van die hele aarde, moet tuimel na die aarde, en groot moet die val daarvan wees.

Yea, and there shall be many which shall teach after this manner, false and vain and foolish doctrines, and shall be puffed up in their hearts, and shall seek deep to hide their counsels from the Lord; and their works shall be in the dark.

And the blood of the saints shall cry from the ground against them.

Yea, they have all gone out of the way; they have become corrupted.

Because of pride, and because of false teachers, and false doctrine, their churches have become corrupted, and their churches are lifted up; because of pride they are puffed up.

They rob the poor because of their fine sanctuaries; they rob the poor because of their fine clothing; and they persecute the meek and the poor in heart, because in their pride they are puffed up.

They wear stiff necks and high heads; yea, and because of pride, and wickedness, and abominations, and whoredoms, they have all gone astray save it be a few, who are the humble followers of Christ; nevertheless, they are led, that in many instances they do err because they are taught by the precepts of men.

O the wise, and the learned, and the rich, that are puffed up in the pride of their hearts, and all those who preach false doctrines, and all those who commit whoredoms, and pervert the right way of the Lord, wo, wo, wo be unto them, saith the Lord God Almighty, for they shall be thrust down to hell!

Wo unto them that turn aside the just for a thing of naught and revile against that which is good, and say that it is of no worth! For the day shall come that the Lord God will speedily visit the inhabitants of the earth; and in that day that they are fully ripe in iniquity they shall perish.

But behold, if the inhabitants of the earth shall repent of their wickedness and abominations they shall not be destroyed, saith the Lord of Hosts.

But behold, that great and abominable church, the whore of all the earth, must tumble to the earth, and great must be the fall thereof.

19 Want die koninkryk van die duiwel moet sidder, en hulle wat daaraan behoort, moet noodwendig tot bekering aangespoor word, of die duiwel sal hulle gryp met sy ewigdurende kettings, en hulle aanspoor tot toorn, en vergaan.

20 Want kyk, in daardie dag sal hy woed in die harte van die kinders van mense, en hulle aanspoor tot toorn teen dit wat goed is.

21 En ander sal hy paai en hulle wegsus in vleeslike gerustheid, dat hulle sal sê: Alles is wel in Sion; ja, Sion is voorspoedig, alles is wel—en so bedrieg die duiwel hulle siele, en lei hulle versigtig weg af hel toe.

22 En kyk, ander lok hy met vleitaal weg, en sê vir hulle daar is geen hel nie; en hy sê vir hulle: Ek is geen duiwel nie, want daar is nie een nie—en so fluister hy in hulle ore, totdat hy hulle vasgryp met sy aaklige kettings, vanwaar daar geen verlossing is nie.

23 Ja, hulle word gegryp met dood, en hel; en dood, en hel, en die duiwel, en alles wat daardeur gegryp is, moet staan voor die troon van God, en geoordeel word volgens hulle werke, vanwaar hulle moet gaan na die plek wat vir hulle berei is, en wel 'n poel van vuur en swael, wat eindelose pyniging is.

24 Daarom, wee hom wat gerus is in Sion!

25 Wee hom wat uitroep: Alles is wel!

26 Ja, wee hom wat ag slaan op die leringe van mense, en die krag van God verloën, en die gawe van die Heilige Gees!

27 Ja, wee hom wat sê: Ons het ontvang, en ons het niks meer nodig nie!

28 En, kortom, wee al diegene wat bewe, en toornig is vanweë die waarheid van God! Want kyk, hy wat gebou is op die rots, ontvang dit met blydschap; en hy wat gebou is op 'n sanderige fondament, bewe uit vrees dat hy sal val.

29 Wee hom wat sal sê: Ons het die woord van God ontvang, en ons het niks meer nodig van die woord van God nie, want ons het genoeg!

For the kingdom of the devil must shake, and they which belong to it must needs be stirred up unto repentance, or the devil will grasp them with his everlasting chains, and they be stirred up to anger, and perish;

For behold, at that day shall he rage in the hearts of the children of men, and stir them up to anger against that which is good.

And others will he pacify, and lull them away into carnal security, that they will say: All is well in Zion; yea, Zion prospereth, all is well—and thus the devil cheateth their souls, and leadeth them away carefully down to hell.

And behold, others he flattereth away, and telleth them there is no hell; and he saith unto them: I am no devil, for there is none—and thus he whispereth in their ears, until he grasps them with his awful chains, from whence there is no deliverance.

Yea, they are grasped with death, and hell; and death, and hell, and the devil, and all that have been seized therewith must stand before the throne of God, and be judged according to their works, from whence they must go into the place prepared for them, even a lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

Therefore, wo be unto him that is at ease in Zion!

Wo be unto him that crieth: All is well!

Yea, wo be unto him that hearkeneth unto the precepts of men, and denieth the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost!

Yea, wo be unto him that saith: We have received, and we need no more!

And in fine, wo unto all those who tremble, and are angry because of the truth of God! For behold, he that is built upon the rock receiveth it with gladness; and he that is built upon a sandy foundation trembleth lest he shall fall.

Wo be unto him that shall say: We have received the word of God, and we need no more of the word of God, for we have enough!

30 Want kyk, so sê die Here God: Ek sal aan die kinders van mense reël op reel gee, lering op lering, hier 'n bietjie, en daar 'n bietjie; en geseënd is hulle wat ag slaan op my leringe, en 'n oor neig na my raad, want hulle sal wysheid leer; want aan hom wat ontvang, sal Ek meer gee; en van hulle wat sal sê: Ons het genoeg, van hulle sal weggeneem word ook dit wat hulle het.

31 Vervloek is hy wat sy vertrouwe stel in die mens, of wat vlees sy arm maak, of sal ag slaan op die leringe van mense, behalwe as hulle leringe gegee sal word deur die mag van die Heilige Gees.

32 Wee die nie-Jode, sê die Here God van die Leërskaare! Want desnieteenstaande Ek my arm sal uitstrek na hulle van dag tot dag, sal hulle My loën; nogtans, Ek sal barmhartig wees teenoor hulle, sê die Here God, as hulle sal bekeer en na My kom; want my arm is uitgestrek die hele dag lank, sê die Here God van die Leërskaare.

For behold, thus saith the Lord God: I will give unto the children of men line upon line, precept upon precept, here a little and there a little; and blessed are those who hearken unto my precepts, and lend an ear unto my counsel, for they shall learn wisdom; for unto him that receiveth I will give more; and from them that shall say, We have enough, from them shall be taken away even that which they have.

Cursed is he that putteth his trust in man, or maketh flesh his arm, or shall hearken unto the precepts of men, save their precepts shall be given by the power of the Holy Ghost.

Wo be unto the Gentiles, saith the Lord God of Hosts! For notwithstanding I shall lengthen out mine arm unto them from day to day, they will deny me; nevertheless, I will be merciful unto them, saith the Lord God, if they will repent and come unto me; for mine arm is lengthened out all the day long, saith the Lord God of Hosts.

2 Nefi 29

- 1 Maar kyk, daar sal baie wees—in daardie dag wanneer Ek sal voortgaan om 'n wonderlike werk onder hulle te doen, dat Ek my verbonde mag onthou wat Ek gesluit het met die kinders van mense, dat Ek my hand mag uitstrek vir die tweede keer om my volk te versamel, wat van die huis van Israel is.
- 2 En ook, dat Ek die beloftes wat Ek met jou, Nephi, gemaak het mag onthou, en ook met jou vader, dat Ek jou saad sal onthou; en dat die woorde van jou saad uit my mond sal voortgaan tot jou saad; en my woorde sal voortsis tot aan die eindes van die aarde, as 'n vaandel vir my volk, wat van die huis van Israel is.
- 3 En omdat my woorde sal voortsis—sal baie van die nie-Jode sê: 'n Bybel! 'n Bybel! Ons het 'n Bybel, en daar kan nie nog 'n Bybel wees nie.
- 4 Maar so sê die Here God: O dwase, hulle sal 'n Bybel hê; en dit sal voortkom van die Jode, my ou verbondsvolk. En hoe dank hulle die Jode vir die Bybel wat hulle van hul ontvang? Ja, wat dink die nie-Jode? Onthou hulle die lyding, en die arbeid, en die pyne van die Jode, en hulle ywer teenoor my, om heil te bring aan die nie-Jode?
- 5 O julle nie-Jode, het julle die Jode onthou, my ou verbondsvolk? Nee; maar julle het hulle vervloek, en hulle gehaat, en het nie gesoek om hulle te herstel nie. Maar kyk, Ek sal al hierdie dinge terugbring op julle eie hoofde; want Ek die Here het nie my volk vergeet nie.
- 6 Jou dwaas, wat sal sê: 'n Bybel, ons het 'n Bybel, en ons het nie nog 'n Bybel nodig nie. Het julle 'n Bybel verkry behalwe deur die Jode?
- 7 Weet julle nie dat daar meer volke is as een nie? Weet julle nie dat Ek, die Here julle God, alle mense geskape het nie, en dat Ek diegene onthou wat op die eilande van die see is; en dat Ek heers in die hemele daarbo, en in die aarde daaronder; en Ek bring my woord voort aan die kinders van mense, ja, en wel aan al die nasies van die aarde?

2 Nephi 29

But behold, there shall be many—at that day when I shall proceed to do a marvelous work among them, that I may remember my covenants which I have made unto the children of men, that I may set my hand again the second time to recover my people, which are of the house of Israel;

And also, that I may remember the promises which I have made unto thee, Nephi, and also unto thy father, that I would remember your seed; and that the words of your seed should proceed forth out of my mouth unto your seed; and my words shall hiss forth unto the ends of the earth, for a standard unto my people, which are of the house of Israel;

And because my words shall hiss forth—many of the Gentiles shall say: A Bible! A Bible! We have got a Bible, and there cannot be any more Bible.

But thus saith the Lord God: O fools, they shall have a Bible; and it shall proceed forth from the Jews, mine ancient covenant people. And what thank they the Jews for the Bible which they receive from them? Yea, what do the Gentiles mean? Do they remember the travails, and the labors, and the pains of the Jews, and their diligence unto me, in bringing forth salvation unto the Gentiles?

O ye Gentiles, have ye remembered the Jews, mine ancient covenant people? Nay; but ye have cursed them, and have hated them, and have not sought to recover them. But behold, I will return all these things upon your own heads; for I the Lord have not forgotten my people.

Thou fool, that shall say: A Bible, we have got a Bible, and we need no more Bible. Have ye obtained a Bible save it were by the Jews?

Know ye not that there are more nations than one? Know ye not that I, the Lord your God, have created all men, and that I remember those who are upon the isles of the sea; and that I rule in the heavens above and in the earth beneath; and I bring forth my word unto the children of men, yea, even upon all the nations of the earth?

8 Waarom murmureer julle, omdat julle meer sal ontvang van my woord? Weet julle nie dat die getuie- nis van twee nasies 'n bewys is vir julle dat Ek God is nie, dat Ek aan een nasie dink soos die ander? Daarom, Ek spreek dieselfde woorde aan die een na- sie soos die ander. En wanneer die twee volke sal saamvloei, sal die getuie- nis van die twee nasies ook saamvloei.

9 En Ek doen dit sodat Ek mag bewys aan baie dat Ek dieselfde is gister, vandag en vir ewig; en dat Ek my woorde spreek volgens my eie behae. En omdat Ek een woord gespreek het, hoef julle nie te veron- derstel dat Ek nie nog een kan spreek nie; want my werk is nog nie klaar nie; nóg sal dit wees tot aan die einde van die mens, nóg van daardie tyd af aan en vir ewig.

10 Daarom, omdat julle 'n Bybel het, hoef julle nie te veronderstel dat dit al my woorde bevat nie; nóg hoef julle te veronderstel dat Ek nie meer laat skrywe het nie.

11 Want Ek gebied alle mense, beide in die ooste en in die weste, en in die noorde, en in die suide, en in die eilande van die see, dat hulle die woorde sal skryf wat Ek met hulle spreek; want uit die boeke wat ge- skrywe sal word, sal Ek die wêreld oordeel, elke mens volgens hulle werke, volgens dit wat geskrywe is.

12 Want kyk, Ek sal spreek met die Jode, en hulle sal dit skrywe; en Ek sal ook spreek met die Nefiete, en hulle sal dit skrywe; en Ek sal ook spreek met die an- der stamme van die huis van Israel, wat Ek weggelei het, en hulle sal dit skrywe; en Ek sal ook met al die volke van die aarde spreek en hulle sal dit skrywe.

13 En dit sal gebeur dat die Jode die woorde van die Nefiete sal hê, en die Nefiete sal die woorde van die Jode hê; en die Nefiete en die Jode sal die woorde hê van die verlore stamme van Israel; en die verlore stamme van Israel sal die woorde hê van die Nefiete en die Jode.

Wherefore murmur ye, because that ye shall re- ceive more of my word? Know ye not that the testi- mony of two nations is a witness unto you that I am God, that I remember one nation like unto another? Wherefore, I speak the same words unto one nation like unto another. And when the two nations shall run together the testimony of the two nations shall run together also.

And I do this that I may prove unto many that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and that I speak forth my words according to mine own plea- sure. And because that I have spoken one word ye need not suppose that I cannot speak another; for my work is not yet finished; neither shall it be until the end of man, neither from that time henceforth and forever.

Wherefore, because that ye have a Bible ye need not suppose that it contains all my words; neither need ye suppose that I have not caused more to be written.

For I command all men, both in the east and in the west, and in the north, and in the south, and in the islands of the sea, that they shall write the words which I speak unto them; for out of the books which shall be written I will judge the world, every man ac- cording to their works, according to that which is written.

For behold, I shall speak unto the Jews and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the Nephites and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the other tribes of the house of Israel, which I have led away, and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto all nations of the earth and they shall write it.

And it shall come to pass that the Jews shall have the words of the Nephites, and the Nephites shall have the words of the Jews; and the Nephites and the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel; and the lost tribes of Israel shall have the words of the Nephites and the Jews.

14 En dit sal gebeur dat my volk, wat van die huis van Israel is, huis toe versamel sal word na die lande van hulle besittings; en my woord sal ook saamgevoeg word in een. En Ek sal toon aan hulle wat teen my woord stry en teen my volk, wat van die huis van Israel is, dat Ek God is, en dat Ek met Abraham 'n verbond gesluit het, dat Ek aan sy saad sal dink vir ewig.

And it shall come to pass that my people, which are of the house of Israel, shall be gathered home unto the lands of their possessions; and my word also shall be gathered in one. And I will show unto them that fight against my word and against my people, who are of the house of Israel, that I am God, and that I covenanted with Abraham that I would remember his seed forever.

2 Nefi 30

- 1 En nou kyk, my geliefde broers, ek wil met julle spreek; want ek, Nefi, sal nie toelaat dat julle moet veronderstel dat julle meer regverdig is as wat die nie-Jode sal wees nie. Want kyk, tensy julle die gebooie van God onderhou, sal julle almal net so omkom; en vanweë die woorde wat gespreek is, hoef julle nie te veronderstel dat die nie-Jode heeltemal vernietig is nie.
- 2 Want kyk, ek sê vir julle dat soveel van die nie-Jode as wat hulle sal bekeer, is die verbondsvolk van die Here; en soveel van die Jode as wat nie sal bekeer nie, sal verwerp word; want die Here sluit met niemand 'n verbond nie, behalwe met hulle wat bekeer en glo in sy Seun, wat die Heilige Een van Israel is.
- 3 En nou, ek wil nog ietwat meer profeteer aangaande die Jode en die nie-Jode. Want nadat die boek waarvan Ek gespreek het, sal voortkom, en geskrywe sal wees aan die nie-Jode, en weer verseël word vir die Here, sal daar baie wees wat die woorde sal glo wat geskrywe is; en hulle sal hulle uitdra aan die oorblyfsel van ons saad.
- 4 En dan sal die oorblyfsel van ons saad weet aangaande ons, hoedat ons uit Jerusalem gekom het, en dat hulle afstammeling is van die Jode.
- 5 En die evangelie van Jesus Christus sal onder hulle verkondig word; daarom, hulle sal herstel word tot die kennis van hulle vadere, en ook tot die kennis van Jesus Christus, wat bestaan het onder hulle vadere.
- 6 En dan sal hulle hul verbly; want hulle sal weet dat dit 'n seëning vir hulle is van die hand van God; en hulle skille van duisternis sal van hulle oë begin val; en baie geslagte sal nie verbygaan onder hulle nie, behalwe dat hulle 'n suiwer en 'n behaaglike volk geword het.
- 7 En dit sal gebeur dat die Jode wat verstrooi is, ook sal begin om te glo in Christus; en hulle sal begin om te versamel op die aangesig van die land; en soveel as wat sal glo in Christus, sal ook 'n aangename volk word.
- 8 En dit sal gebeur dat die Here God sy werk sal begin onder al die nasies, stamme, tale en volke, om die herstel van sy volk te bewerkstellig op die aarde.

2 Nephi 30

And now behold, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you; for I, Nephi, would not suffer that ye should suppose that ye are more righteous than the Gentiles shall be. For behold, except ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall all likewise perish; and because of the words which have been spoken ye need not suppose that the Gentiles are utterly destroyed.

For behold, I say unto you that as many of the Gentiles as will repent are the covenant people of the Lord; and as many of the Jews as will not repent shall be cast off; for the Lord covenanteth with none save it be with them that repent and believe in his Son, who is the Holy One of Israel.

And now, I would prophesy somewhat more concerning the Jews and the Gentiles. For after the book of which I have spoken shall come forth, and be written unto the Gentiles, and sealed up again unto the Lord, there shall be many which shall believe the words which are written; and they shall carry them forth unto the remnant of our seed.

And then shall the remnant of our seed know concerning us, how that we came out from Jerusalem, and that they are descendants of the Jews.

And the gospel of Jesus Christ shall be declared among them; wherefore, they shall be restored unto the knowledge of their fathers, and also to the knowledge of Jesus Christ, which was had among their fathers.

And then shall they rejoice; for they shall know that it is a blessing unto them from the hand of God; and their scales of darkness shall begin to fall from their eyes; and many generations shall not pass away among them, save they shall be a pure and a delightful people.

And it shall come to pass that the Jews which are scattered also shall begin to believe in Christ; and they shall begin to gather in upon the face of the land; and as many as shall believe in Christ shall also become a delightful people.

And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall commence his work among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, to bring about the restoration of his people upon the earth.

- 9 En met regverdigheid sal die Here God die armes oordeel, en met billikheid die sagmoediges van die aarde bestraf. En Hy sal die aarde slaan met die roede van sy mond; en met die asem van sy lippe sal Hy die bose doodmaak.
- 10 Want die tyd kom spoedig dat die Here God 'n groot skeiding sal veroorsaak onder die mense, en die bose sal Hy vernietig; en Hy sal sy volk spaar, ja, selfs as dit so is dat Hy die bose moet vernietig deur vuur.
- 11 En regverdigheid sal die gordel van sy lendene wees en trouheid die gordel van sy heupe.
- 12 En dan sal die wolf by die lam woon, en die luiperd sal met die bokkie neerlê, en die kalf, en die jong leeu, en die vetgemaakte vee tesame; en 'n klein kind sal hulle lei.
- 13 En die koei en die beer sal wei; hulle kleintjies sal saam neerlê; en die leeu sal strooi eet soos die os.
- 14 En die suigling sal speel by die gat van die adder, en die gespeende kind sal sy hand plaas op die nes van die giftige slang.
- 15 Hulle sal geen kwaad doen of vernietig in my hele heilige berg nie, want die aarde sal vol wees van die kennis van die Here soos die waters die see oordek.
- 16 Daarom, die dinge van al die nasies sal bekend gemaak word; ja, alle dinge sal bekend gemaak word aan die kinders van mense.
- 17 Daar is niks wat verborge is wat nie geopenbaar sal word nie; daar is geen werk van duisternis wat nie geopenbaar sal word in die lig nie; en daar is niks wat verseël is op die aarde wat nie losgemaak sal word nie.
- 18 Daarom, alle dinge wat geopenbaar is aan die kinders van mense sal op daardie dag geopenbaar word; en Satan sal nie langer mag hê oor die harte van die kinders van mense nie, vir 'n lang tyd. En nou, my geliefde broers, maak ek 'n einde aan my woorde.

And with righteousness shall the Lord God judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth. And he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth; and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

For the time speedily cometh that the Lord God shall cause a great division among the people, and the wicked will he destroy; and he will spare his people, yea, even if it so be that he must destroy the wicked by fire.

And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

And then shall the wolf dwell with the lamb; and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf, and the young lion, and the fatling, together; and a little child shall lead them.

And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.

They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain; for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea.

Wherefore, the things of all nations shall be made known; yea, all things shall be made known unto the children of men.

There is nothing which is secret save it shall be revealed; there is no work of darkness save it shall be made manifest in the light; and there is nothing which is sealed upon the earth save it shall be loosed.

Wherefore, all things which have been revealed unto the children of men shall at that day be revealed; and Satan shall have power over the hearts of the children of men no more, for a long time. And now, my beloved brethren, I make an end of my sayings.

2 Nefi 31

- 1 En nou, ek, Nephi, maak 'n einde aan my profetering aan julle, my geliefde broers. En ek kan nie meer as net 'n paar dinge skryf nie, wat ek weet sekerlik moet plaasvind; nóg kan ek net 'n paar van die woorde van my broer Jakob skrywe.
- 2 Daarom, die dinge wat ek geskrywe het, is vir my genoeg, behalwe vir 'n paar woorde wat ek moet spreek aangaande die leer van Christus; daarom, ek sal duidelik met julle spreek, volgens die duidelikheid van my profetering.
- 3 Want my siel skep behae in duidelikheid; want op dié wyse werk die Here God onder die kinders van mense. Want die Here God gee lig vir die begrip; want Hy spreek met die mens volgens hulle taal, tot hulle begrip.
- 4 Daarom, ek wil hê dat julle moet onthou dat ek met julle gespreek het aangaande daardie profeet wat die Here aan my getoon het, wat die Lam van God sal doop, wat die sondes van die wêreld sal wegneem.
- 5 En nou, as die Lam van God, Hy wat heilig is, dit nodig het om gedoop te word deur water, om alle regverdigheid te vervul, o dan, hoeveel te meer het ons dit nodig, wat onheilig is, om gedoop te word, ja, en wel deur water!
- 6 En nou, ek wil julle vra, my geliefde broers, hoe die Lam van God alle regverdigheid vervul het om deur water gedoop te word?
- 7 Weet julle nie dat Hy heilig was nie? Maar niesteaande Hy heilig was, toon Hy aan die kinders van mense dat, volgens die vlees verootmoedig Hy hom voor die Vader, en getuig tot die Vader dat Hy gehoorsaam sal wees aan Hom in die onderhouding van sy gebooie.
- 8 Daarom, nadat Hy gedoop is met water, het die Heilige Gees op Hom neergedaal in die vorm van 'n duif.
- 9 En verder, dit toon aan die kinders van mense die engheid van die weg, en die smalheid van die poort waardeur hulle moet binnegaan, Hy wat die voorbeeld aan hulle gestel het.

2 Nephi 31

And now I, Nephi, make an end of my prophesying unto you, my beloved brethren. And I cannot write but a few things, which I know must surely come to pass; neither can I write but a few of the words of my brother Jacob.

Wherefore, the things which I have written sufficient me, save it be a few words which I must speak concerning the doctrine of Christ; wherefore, I shall speak unto you plainly, according to the plainness of my prophesying.

For my soul delighteth in plainness; for after this manner doth the Lord God work among the children of men. For the Lord God giveth light unto the understanding; for he speaketh unto men according to their language, unto their understanding.

Wherefore, I would that ye should remember that I have spoken unto you concerning that prophet which the Lord showed unto me, that should baptize the Lamb of God, which should take away the sins of the world.

And now, if the Lamb of God, he being holy, should have need to be baptized by water, to fulfil all righteousness, O then, how much more need have we, being unholy, to be baptized, yea, even by water!

And now, I would ask of you, my beloved brethren, wherein the Lamb of God did fulfil all righteousness in being baptized by water?

Know ye not that he was holy? But notwithstanding he being holy, he showeth unto the children of men that, according to the flesh he humbleth himself before the Father, and witnesseth unto the Father that he would be obedient unto him in keeping his commandments.

Wherefore, after he was baptized with water the Holy Ghost descended upon him in the form of a dove.

And again, it showeth unto the children of men the straitness of the path, and the narrowness of the gate, by which they should enter, he having set the example before them.

- 10 En Hy het aan die kinders van mense gesê: Volg julle My. Daarom, my geliefde broers, kan ons Jesus volg behalwe as ons gewillig is om die gebooi van die Vader te onderhou?
- 11 En die Vader het gesê: Bekeer julle, bekeer julle, en word gedoop in die Naam van my geliefde Seun.
- 12 En ook, die stem van die Seun het tot my gekom, en gesê: Hy wat gedoop word in my Naam, aan hom sal die Vader die Heilige Gees gee, soos aan My; daarom, volg My, en doen die dinge wat julle My sien doen het.
- 13 Daarom, my geliefde broers, ek weet dat as julle die Seun sal volg, met volle voorneme van hart, en optree sonder geveinsdheid of bedrog voor God, maar met opregte bedoeling, en julle bekeer van julle sondes, en voor die Vader getuig dat julle gewillig is om die Naam van Christus op julle te neem, deur die doop—ja, deur julle Here en julle Verlosser te volg af tot in die water, volgens sy woord; kyk, dan sal julle die Heilige Gees ontvang; ja, dan kom die doop van vuur en van die Heilige Gees; en dan kan julle spreek met die tong van engele, en lofsange uitroep tot die Heilige Een van Israel.
- 14 Maar, kyk, my geliefde broers, so het die stem van die Seun tot my gekom, en gesê: Nadat julle jul bekeer het van julle sondes, en getuig het tot die Vader dat julle gewillig is om my gebooi te onderhou, deur die doop van water, en die doop van vuur en van die Heilige Gees ontvang het, en kan spreek met 'n nuwe tong, ja, en wel met die tong van engele, en hierna My sou verloën, sou dit beter vir julle gewees het dat julle My nie geken het nie.
- 15 En ek het 'n stem van die Vader gehoor, wat sê: Ja, die woorde van my Geliefde is waar en betroubaar. Hy wat volhard tot die einde, hy sal gered word.
- 16 En nou, my geliefde broers, ek weet hierdeur dat tensy 'n mens sal volhard tot die einde, deur die voorbeeld te volg van die Seun van die lewende God, hy nie gered kan word nie.

And he said unto the children of men: Follow thou me. Wherefore, my beloved brethren, can we follow Jesus save we shall be willing to keep the commandments of the Father?

And the Father said: Repent ye, repent ye, and be baptized in the name of my Beloved Son.

And also, the voice of the Son came unto me, saying: He that is baptized in my name, to him will the Father give the Holy Ghost, like unto me; wherefore, follow me, and do the things which ye have seen me do.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I know that if ye shall follow the Son, with full purpose of heart, acting no hypocrisy and no deception before God, but with real intent, repenting of your sins, witnessing unto the Father that ye are willing to take upon you the name of Christ, by baptism—yea, by following your Lord and your Savior down into the water, according to his word, behold, then shall ye receive the Holy Ghost; yea, then cometh the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost; and then can ye speak with the tongue of angels, and shout praises unto the Holy One of Israel.

But, behold, my beloved brethren, thus came the voice of the Son unto me, saying: After ye have repented of your sins, and witnessed unto the Father that ye are willing to keep my commandments, by the baptism of water, and have received the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost, and can speak with a new tongue, yea, even with the tongue of angels, and after this should deny me, it would have been better for you that ye had not known me.

And I heard a voice from the Father, saying: Yea, the words of my Beloved are true and faithful. He that endureth to the end, the same shall be saved.

And now, my beloved brethren, I know by this that unless a man shall endure to the end, in following the example of the Son of the living God, he cannot be saved.

- 17 Daaron, doen die dinge wat ek julle gesê het wat ek gesien het dat julle Here en julle Verlosser sal doen; want om hierdie rede is hulle aan my getoon, dat julle die poort mag ken waardeur julle moet binnegaan. Want die poort waardeur julle moet binnegaan is bekering en doop deur water; en dan kom 'n vergifnis van julle sonde deur vuur en deur die Heilige Gees.
- 18 En dan is julle in die eng en smal weg wat lei tot die ewige lewe; ja, julle het binnegegaan by die poort; julle het gehandel volgens die gebooie van die Vader en die Seun; en julle het die Heilige Gees ontvang, wat getuig van die Vader en die Seun, ter vervulling van die belofte wat Hy gemaak het, dat as julle binnegegaan het langs daardie weg, sal julle ontvang.
- 19 En nou, my geliefde broers, nadat julle hierdie eng en smal weg betree het, wil ek vra of alles gedoen is? Kyk, ek sê vir julle, Nee; want julle het nie so ver gekom nie behalwe deur die woord van Christus, met onwankelbare geloof in Hom, terwyl julle heeltemal vertrou op die verdienste van Hom wat magtig is om te red.
- 20 Daaron, julle moet vorentoe beur met 'n standvastigheid in Christus, met 'n volmaakte helderheid van hoop, en 'n liefde van God en van alle mense. Daaron, as julle vorentoe sal beur, verlustig julle in die woord van Christus, en volhard tot die einde, kyk, so sê die Vader: Julle sal die ewige lewe hê.
- 21 En nou, kyk, my geliefde broers, dit is die weg, en daar is geen ander weg nóg naam onder die hemel gegee waardeur 'n mens gered kan word in die koninkryk van God. En nou, kyk, dit is die leer van Christus, en die enigste en waaragtige leer van die Vader, en van die Seun, en van die Heilige Gees, wat een God is, sonder einde. Amen.

Wherefore, do the things which I have told you I have seen that your Lord and your Redeemer should do; for, for this cause have they been shown unto me, that ye might know the gate by which ye should enter. For the gate by which ye should enter is repentance and baptism by water; and then cometh a remission of your sins by fire and by the Holy Ghost.

And then are ye in this strait and narrow path which leads to eternal life; yea, ye have entered in by the gate; ye have done according to the commandments of the Father and the Son; and ye have received the Holy Ghost, which witnesses of the Father and the Son, unto the fulfilling of the promise which he hath made, that if ye entered in by the way ye should receive.

And now, my beloved brethren, after ye have gotten into this strait and narrow path, I would ask if all is done? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for ye have not come thus far save it were by the word of Christ with unshaken faith in him, relying wholly upon the merits of him who is mighty to save.

Wherefore, ye must press forward with a steadfastness in Christ, having a perfect brightness of hope, and a love of God and of all men. Wherefore, if ye shall press forward, feasting upon the word of Christ, and endure to the end, behold, thus saith the Father: Ye shall have eternal life.

And now, behold, my beloved brethren, this is the way; and there is none other way nor name given under heaven whereby man can be saved in the kingdom of God. And now, behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and the only and true doctrine of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, which is one God, without end. Amen.

2 Nefi 32

- 1 En nou, kyk, my geliefde broers, ek veronderstel dat julle ietwat bepeins in julle harte aangaande dit wat julle behoort te doen nadat julle die weg binnegegaan het. Maar kyk, hoekom bepeins julle hierdie dinge in julle harte?
- 2 Onthou julle nie dat ek vir julle gesê het dat nadat julle die Heilige Gees ontvang het, julle met die tong van engele kon spreek nie? En nou, hoe kon julle met die tong van engele spreek behalwe deur die Heilige Gees?
- 3 Engele spreek deur die mag van die Heilige Gees; daarom, hulle spreek die woorde van Christus. Daarom, ek het vir julle gesê, verlustig julle in die woorde van Christus; want kyk, die woorde van Christus sal julle alle dinge vertel wat julle moet doen.
- 4 Daarom, nou nadat ek hierdie woorde gespreek het, as julle hulle nie kan verstaan nie, sal dit wees omdat julle nie vra nie, nóg klop julle; daarom, julle word nie tot die lig gebring nie, maar moet omkom in die duisternis.
- 5 Want kyk, ek sê weer vir julle dat as julle die weg sal binnegaan, en die Heilige Gees ontvang, sal dit aan julle alle dinge toon wat julle moet doen.
- 6 Kyk, dit is die leer van Christus, en daar sal geen verdere leerstellings gegee word nie tot nadat Hy Hom sal openbaar aan julle in die vlees. En wanneer Hy Hom aan julle sal openbaar in die vlees, die dinge wat Hy aan julle sal sê, sal julle sekerlik doen.
- 7 En nou ek, Nefi, kan niks meer sê nie; die Gees verhoed my om te spreek, en ek word gelaat om te treur vanweë die ongeloof, en die boosheid, en die onkunde, en die hardnekkigheid van mense; want hulle wil nie kennis soek nie, nóg groot kennis verstaan, wanneer dit aan hulle gegee word in duidelikeid; en wel so duidelik as 'n woord kan wees.
- 8 En nou, my geliefde broers, ek merk dat julle nog in julle harte bepeins; en dit bedroef my dat ek moet spreek aangaande hierdie ding. Want as julle sou ag slaan op die Gees wat 'n mens leer om te bid, sou julle weet dat julle moet bid; want die bose gees leer 'n mens nie om te bid nie, maar leer hom dat hy nie moet bid nie.

2 Nephi 32

And now, behold, my beloved brethren, I suppose that ye ponder somewhat in your hearts concerning that which ye should do after ye have entered in by the way. But, behold, why do ye ponder these things in your hearts?

Do ye not remember that I said unto you that after ye had received the Holy Ghost ye could speak with the tongue of angels? And now, how could ye speak with the tongue of angels save it were by the Holy Ghost?

Angels speak by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, they speak the words of Christ. Wherefore, I said unto you, feast upon the words of Christ; for behold, the words of Christ will tell you all things what ye should do.

Wherefore, now after I have spoken these words, if ye cannot understand them it will be because ye ask not, neither do ye knock; wherefore, ye are not brought into the light, but must perish in the dark.

For behold, again I say unto you that if ye will enter in by the way, and receive the Holy Ghost, it will show unto you all things what ye should do.

Behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and there will be no more doctrine given until after he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh. And when he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh, the things which he shall say unto you shall ye observe to do.

And now I, Nephi, cannot say more; the Spirit stoppeth mine utterance, and I am left to mourn because of the unbelief, and the wickedness, and the ignorance, and the stiffneckedness of men; for they will not search knowledge, nor understand great knowledge, when it is given unto them in plainness, even as plain as word can be.

And now, my beloved brethren, I perceive that ye ponder still in your hearts; and it grieveth me that I must speak concerning this thing. For if ye would hearken unto the Spirit which teacheth a man to pray, ye would know that ye must pray; for the evil spirit teacheth not a man to pray, but teacheth him that he must not pray.

9 Maar kyk, ek sê vir julle dat julle altyd moet bid, en nie moet verloor nie; dat julle niks vir die Here moet doen nie, tensy julle in die eerste plek tot die Vader sal bid in die Naam van Christus, dat Hy julle handeling sal heilig vir julle, dat julle handeling mag wees vir die welsyn van julle siel.

But behold, I say unto you that ye must pray always, and not faint; that ye must not perform any thing unto the Lord save in the first place ye shall pray unto the Father in the name of Christ, that he will consecrate thy performance unto thee, that thy performance may be for the welfare of thy soul.

2 Nefi 33

- 1 En nou, ek, Nephi, kan nie al die dinge skryf wat geleer is onder my volk nie; ook is ek nie magtig om te skryf, soos om te spreek nie; want wanneer 'n mens spreek deur die mag van die Heilige Gees, dra die Heilige Gees dit tot die harte van die kinders van mense.
- 2 Maar kyk, daar is baie wat hulle harte verhard teen die Heilige Gees, sodat dit geen plek in hulle het nie; daarom, hulle werp baie dinge weg wat geskrywe word en ag hulle as waardelose dinge.
- 3 Maar ek, Nephi, het geskryf wat ek geskryf het, en ek ag dit as van groot waarde, en veral vir my volk. Want ek bid bedags voortdurend vir hulle, en my oë benat my kussing snags, vanweë hulle; en ek roep tot my God in geloof, en ek weet dat Hy my geroep sal hoor.
- 4 En ek weet dat die Here God my gebede sal heilig vir die voordeel van my volk. En die woorde wat ek geskryf het in swakheid, sal sterk gemaak word vir hulle; want dit oorreed hulle om goed te doen; dit maak bekend aan hulle aangaande hul vaders; en dit spreek van Jesus, en oorreed hulle om in Hom te glo, en om te volhard tot die einde toe, wat die ewige lewe is.
- 5 En dit spreek skerp teen sonde, volgens die duidelikheid van die waarheid; daarom, geen mens sal kwaad wees oor die woorde wat ek geskryf het nie, tensy hy die gees van die duiwel het.
- 6 Ek roem in duidelikheid; ek roem in waarheid; ek roem in my Jesus, want Hy het my siel verlos van die hel.
- 7 Ek het naasteliefde vir my volk, en groot geloof in Christus dat ek baie siele sal ontmoet, vlekkeloos voor sy regterstoel.
- 8 Ek het naasteliefde vir die Jood—ek sê Jood, want ek bedoel hulle vanwaar ek kom.
- 9 Ek het ook naasteliefde vir die nie-Jode. Maar kyk, vir nie een van hulle kan ek hoop nie, tensy hulle versoen sal word met Christus, en die smal poort binnegaan, en wandel in die eng weg wat lei na die lewe, en volhou op die weg tot die einde van die dag van die toetsing.

2 Nephi 33

And now I, Nephi, cannot write all the things which were taught among my people; neither am I mighty in writing, like unto speaking; for when a man speaketh by the power of the Holy Ghost the power of the Holy Ghost carrieth it unto the hearts of the children of men.

But behold, there are many that harden their hearts against the Holy Spirit, that it hath no place in them; wherefore, they cast many things away which are written and esteem them as things of naught.

But I, Nephi, have written what I have written, and I esteem it as of great worth, and especially unto my people. For I pray continually for them by day, and mine eyes water my pillow by night, because of them; and I cry unto my God in faith, and I know that he will hear my cry.

And I know that the Lord God will consecrate my prayers for the gain of my people. And the words which I have written in weakness will be made strong unto them; for it persuadeth them to do good; it maketh known unto them of their fathers; and it speaketh of Jesus, and persuadeth them to believe in him, and to endure to the end, which is life eternal.

And it speaketh harshly against sin, according to the plainness of the truth; wherefore, no man will be angry at the words which I have written save he shall be of the spirit of the devil.

I glory in plainness; I glory in truth; I glory in my Jesus, for he hath redeemed my soul from hell.

I have charity for my people, and great faith in Christ that I shall meet many souls spotless at his judgment-seat.

I have charity for the Jew—I say Jew, because I mean them from whence I came.

I also have charity for the Gentiles. But behold, for none of these can I hope except they shall be reconciled unto Christ, and enter into the narrow gate, and walk in the strait path which leads to life, and continue in the path until the end of the day of probation.

10 En nou, my geliefde broers, en ook die Jood, en al julle eindes van die aarde, slaan ag op hierdie woorde en glo in Christus; en as julle nie in hierdie woorde glo nie, glo in Christus. En as julle sal glo in Christus, sal julle in hierdie woorde glo, want hulle is die woorde van Christus, en Hy het hulle aan my gegee; en hulle leer alle mense dat hulle goed moet doen.

11 En as hulle nie die woorde van Christus is nie, oordeel julle—want Christus sal aan julle toon met krag en groot heerlikheid, dat hulle sy woorde is, op die laaste dag; en julle en ek sal van aangesig tot aangesig voor sy regbank staan; en julle sal weet dat ek deur Hom gebied is om hierdie dinge te skryf, ten spyte van my swakheid.

12 En ek bid die Vader in die Naam van Christus dat baie van ons, indien nie almal nie, gered mag word in sy koninkryk op daardie groot en laaste dag.

13 En nou, my geliefde broers, al diegene wat van die huis van Israel is, en al julle eindes van die aarde, ek spreek met julle soos die stem van een wat roep uit die stof: Vaarwel tot daardie groot dag sal kom.

14 En julle wat nie wil deel hê aan die goedheid van God nie, en die woorde van die Jode respekteer, en ook my woorde, en die woorde wat sal voortkom uit die mond van die Lam van God, kyk, ek sê vir julle vir ewig vaarwel, want hierdie woorde sal julle veroordeel op die laaste dag.

15 Want wat ek verseël op aarde, sal teen julle ingebring word voor die regbank; want so het die Here my gebied, en ek moet gehoorsaam. Amen.

And now, my beloved brethren, and also Jew, and all ye ends of the earth, hearken unto these words and believe in Christ; and if ye believe not in these words believe in Christ. And if ye shall believe in Christ ye will believe in these words, for they are the words of Christ, and he hath given them unto me; and they teach all men that they should do good.

And if they are not the words of Christ, judge ye—for Christ will show unto you, with power and great glory, that they are his words, at the last day; and you and I shall stand face to face before his bar; and ye shall know that I have been commanded of him to write these things, notwithstanding my weakness.

And I pray the Father in the name of Christ that many of us, if not all, may be saved in his kingdom at that great and last day.

And now, my beloved brethren, all those who are of the house of Israel, and all ye ends of the earth, I speak unto you as the voice of one crying from the dust: Farewell until that great day shall come.

And you that will not partake of the goodness of God, and respect the words of the Jews, and also my words, and the words which shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the Lamb of God, behold, I bid you an everlasting farewell, for these words shall condemn you at the last day.

For what I seal on earth, shall be brought against you at the judgment bar; for thus hath the Lord commanded me, and I must obey. Amen.

Die Boek van Jakob

Die broer van Nefi

Die woorde van sy prediking aan sy broers. Hy beskaam 'n man wat probeer om die leer van Christus omver te gooi. 'n Paar woorde aangaande die geskiedenis van die volk van Nefi.

Jakob 1

- 1 Want kyk, dit het gebeur dat vyf en vyftig jaar verbygegaan het vanaf die tyd dat Lehi Jerusalem verlaat het; daarom, Nefi het aan my, Jakob, 'n bevel gegee aangaande die klein plate, waarop hierdie dinge gegraveer is.
- 2 En hy het aan my, Jakob, 'n bevel gegee dat ek op hierdie plate 'n paar van die dinge wat ek die waardevolste geag het, moes skryf; dat ek nie moes skryf, behalwe as dit ligweg is, aangaande die geskiedenis van hierdie volk wat genoem is die volk van Nefi nie.
- 3 Want hy het gesê dat die geskiedenis van sy volk gegraveer moes word op sy ander plate, en dat ek hierdie plate moes bewaar en hulle oorhandig aan my saad, van geslag tot geslag.
- 4 En as daar prediking was wat heilig was, of openbaring wat groot was, of profetering, dat ek die hoofpunte daarvan moes graveer op hierdie plate, en op hulle skryf soveel as wat dit moontlik is, om Christus ontwil, en ter wille van ons volk.
- 5 Want vanweë geloof en groot besorgdheid, is dit waarlik geopenbaar aan ons aangaande ons volk, watter dinge met hulle sal gebeur.
- 6 En ons het ook baie openbaringe gehad, en die gees van veel profesie; daarom, ons het geweet van Christus en sy koninkryk, wat moes kom.
- 7 Daarom het ons ywerig gearbei onder ons volk, dat ons hulle mag oorreed om tot Christus te kom, en deel te hê aan die goedheid van God, dat hulle sy rus mag binnegaan, sodat Hy nie op enige wyse sou sweer in sy toorn dat hulle nie sou binnegaan nie, soos in die verbittering in die dae van versoeking terwyl die kinders van Israel in die wildernis was.

The Book of Jacob

the Brother of Nephi

The words of his preaching unto his brethren. He confoundeth a man who seeketh to overthrow the doctrine of Christ. A few words concerning the history of the people of Nephi.

Jacob 1

For behold, it came to pass that fifty and five years had passed away from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; wherefore, Nephi gave me, Jacob, a commandment concerning the small plates, upon which these things are engraven.

And he gave me, Jacob, a commandment that I should write upon these plates a few of the things which I considered to be most precious; that I should not touch, save it were lightly, concerning the history of this people which are called the people of Nephi.

For he said that the history of his people should be engraven upon his other plates, and that I should preserve these plates and hand them down unto my seed, from generation to generation.

And if there were preaching which was sacred, or revelation which was great, or prophesying, that I should engraven the heads of them upon these plates, and touch upon them as much as it were possible, for Christ's sake, and for the sake of our people.

For because of faith and great anxiety, it truly had been made manifest unto us concerning our people, what things should happen unto them.

And we also had many revelations, and the spirit of much prophecy; wherefore, we knew of Christ and his kingdom, which should come.

Wherefore we labored diligently among our people, that we might persuade them to come unto Christ, and partake of the goodness of God, that they might enter into his rest, lest by any means he should swear in his wrath they should not enter in, as in the provocation in the days of temptation while the children of Israel were in the wilderness.

- 8 Daaron, ons wou dat God ons moes help dat ons alle mense kon oorreed om nie te rebelleer teen God, om Hom aan te hits tot woede nie, maar dat alle mense sou glo in Christus, en sy dood aanskou, en sy kruis verduur en die skande van die wêreld dra; daarom, ek, Jakob, neem dit op my om die bevel van my broer Nefi uit te voer.
- 9 Nou, Nefi het begin om oud te word, en hy het gesien dat hy spoedig moes sterf; daarom, hy het 'n man gesalf om nou 'n koning te wees en 'n heerser oor sy volk, volgens die heerskappye van die konings.
- 10 Die volk het Nefi uitermate liefgehad, omdat hy 'n groot beskermmer vir hulle was, omdat hy die swaard van Laban gebruik het tot hul verdediging, en omdat hy gearbei het in al sy dae vir hulle welsyn—
- 11 Daaron, die mense was begerig om sy naam in herinnering te hou. En wie ook al sou heers in sy plek, is genoem deur die volk, tweede Nefi, derde Nefi, ensovoorts, volgens die heerskappye van die konings; en so is hulle genoem deur die volk, ongeag wat hulle name was.
- 12 En dit het so gebeur dat Nefi gesterf het.
- 13 Nou, die volk wat nie Lamaniete was nie, was Nefiete; nogtans, hulle is genoem Nefiete, Jakobiete, Josefiete, Zoramiete, Lamaniete, Lemueliete, en Ismaeliete.
- 14 Maar ek, Jakob, sal hulle hierna nie onderskei volgens hierdie name nie, maar ek sal hulle Lamaniete noem wat soek om die mense van Nefi te vernietig, en diegene wat vriendelik is teenoor Nefi sal ek Nefiete noem, of die mense van Nefi, volgens die heerskappye van die konings.
- 15 En nou het dit gebeur dat die mense van Nefi, onder die heerskappy van die tweede koning, begin het om hard te word in hulle harte, en hulleself tot 'n mate toegegee het aan goddelose gebruike, soos met Dawid van ouds wat baie vroue en byvroue begeer het, en ook Salomo, sy seun.
- 16 Ja, en hulle het ook begin soek na baie goud en silwer, en begin om tot 'n mate verhef te word in hoogmoed.
- 17 Daaron, ek, Jakob, het aan hulle hierdie woorde gegee terwyl ek hulle in die tempel geleer het, nadat ek eers my opdrag verkry het van die Here.

Wherefore, we would to God that we could persuade all men not to rebel against God, to provoke him to anger, but that all men would believe in Christ, and view his death, and suffer his cross and bear the shame of the world; wherefore, I, Jacob, take it upon me to fulfil the commandment of my brother Nephi.

Now Nephi began to be old, and he saw that he must soon die; wherefore, he anointed a man to be a king and a ruler over his people now, according to the reigns of the kings.

The people having loved Nephi exceedingly, he having been a great protector for them, having wielded the sword of Laban in their defence, and having labored in all his days for their welfare—

Wherefore, the people were desirous to retain in remembrance his name. And whoso should reign in his stead were called by the people, second Nephi, third Nephi, and so forth, according to the reigns of the kings; and thus they were called by the people, let them be of whatever name they would.

And it came to pass that Nephi died.

Now the people which were not Lamanites were Nephites; nevertheless, they were called Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, Zoramites, Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites.

But I, Jacob, shall not hereafter distinguish them by these names, but I shall call them Lamanites that seek to destroy the people of Nephi, and those who are friendly to Nephi I shall call Nephites, or the people of Nephi, according to the reigns of the kings.

And now it came to pass that the people of Nephi, under the reign of the second king, began to grow hard in their hearts, and indulge themselves somewhat in wicked practices, such as like unto David of old desiring many wives and concubines, and also Solomon, his son.

Yea, and they also began to search much gold and silver, and began to be lifted up somewhat in pride.

Wherefore I, Jacob, gave unto them these words as I taught them in the temple, having first obtained mine errand from the Lord.

18 Want ek, Jakob, en my broer Josef, is gewy as priesters en leraars van hierdie volk, deur die hand van Nepi.

19 En ons het ons amp verheerlik vir die Here, deur op ons die verantwoordelikheid te neem om die sondes van die volk op ons eie hoofde te neem as ons hulle nie die woord van God geleer het met alle ywer nie; daarom, deur te arbeid met ons mag, dat hulle bloed nie op ons kleding mag kom nie; anders sou hulle bloed op ons kleding kom, en ons sou nie vlekkeloos gevind word op die laaste dag nie.

For I, Jacob, and my brother Joseph had been consecrated priests and teachers of this people, by the hand of Nephi.

And we did magnify our office unto the Lord, taking upon us the responsibility, answering the sins of the people upon our own heads if we did not teach them the word of God with all diligence; wherefore, by laboring with our might their blood might not come upon our garments; otherwise their blood would come upon our garments, and we would not be found spotless at the last day.

Jakob 2

- 1 Die woorde wat Jakob, die broer van Nephi, gespreek het met die volk van Nephi, na die dood van Nephi:
- 2 Nou, my geliefde broers, ek, Jakob, ooreenkomstig die verantwoordelikheid waaronder ek verkeer teenoor God, om my amp te verheerlik met erns en dat ek my kleding kan reinig van julle sondes, kom ek op in die tempel hierdie dag dat ek aan julle die woord van God mag verkondig.
- 3 En julleself weet dat ek tot nou ywerig was in die amp van my roeping; maar ek is vandag terneergedruk met baie meer begeerte en besorgdheid vir die welsyn van julle siele as wat ek tot nou was.
- 4 Want kyk, tot dusver was julle gehoorsaam aan die woord van die Here, wat ek aan julle gegee het.
- 5 Maar kyk, slaan ag op my, en weet dat deur die hulp van die almagtige Skepper van hemel en aarde ek julle kan vertel aangaande julle gedagtes, hoedat julle begin om in sonde te handel, welke sonde baie gruwelik vir my voorkom, ja, en gruwelik vir God.
- 6 Ja, dit bedroef my siel en laat my krimp van skaamte in die teenwoordigheid van my Maker, dat ek moet getuig aan julle aangaande die boosheid van julle harte.
- 7 En ook bedroef dit my dat ek soveel uitgesprokenheid van spraak moet gebruik aangaande julle, voor jul vroue en jul kinders, vele van wie se gevoelens uitermate teer en kuis en week voor God is, welke ding welgevallig is vir God;
- 8 En ek veronderstel dat hulle hierheen opgekom het om die aangename woord van God te hoor, ja, die woord wat die verwonde siel genees.
- 9 Daarom, dit beswaar my siel dat ek gedwing sal wees, vanweë die streng gebod wat ek ontvang het van God, om julle te vermaan volgens julle misdade, om die wonde te vergroot van diegene wat alreeds gewond is, in stede daarvan om te troos en hulle wonde te genees; en diegene wat nie gewond is nie, in stede daarvan om julle te verlustig in die aangename woord van God, om dolke te plaas om hulle siele te deurboor en hulle tere verstand te verwond.

Jacob 2

The words which Jacob, the brother of Nephi, spake unto the people of Nephi, after the death of Nephi:

Now, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, according to the responsibility which I am under to God, to magnify mine office with soberness, and that I might rid my garments of your sins, I come up into the temple this day that I might declare unto you the word of God.

And ye yourselves know that I have hitherto been diligent in the office of my calling; but I this day am weighed down with much more desire and anxiety for the welfare of your souls than I have hitherto been.

For behold, as yet, ye have been obedient unto the word of the Lord, which I have given unto you.

But behold, hearken ye unto me, and know that by the help of the all-powerful Creator of heaven and earth I can tell you concerning your thoughts, how that ye are beginning to labor in sin, which sin appeareth very abominable unto me, yea, and abominable unto God.

Yea, it grieveth my soul and causeth me to shrink with shame before the presence of my Maker, that I must testify unto you concerning the wickedness of your hearts.

And also it grieveth me that I must use so much boldness of speech concerning you, before your wives and your children, many of whose feelings are exceedingly tender and chaste and delicate before God, which thing is pleasing unto God;

And it supposeth me that they have come up hither to hear the pleasing word of God, yea, the word which healeth the wounded soul.

Wherefore, it burdeneth my soul that I should be constrained, because of the strict commandment which I have received from God, to admonish you according to your crimes, to enlarge the wounds of those who are already wounded, instead of consoling and healing their wounds; and those who have not been wounded, instead of feasting upon the pleasing word of God have daggers placed to pierce their souls and wound their delicate minds.

- 10 Maar, nieteenstaande die grootheid van die taak, moet ek handel volgens die streng gebooie van God, en julle vertel aangaande julle boosheid en gruwels, in die teenwoordigheid van die reines van hart, en die gebroke hart, en onder die blik van die deurdringende oog van die Almagtige God.
- 11 Daarom, ek moet julle die waarheid vertel volgens die duidelikheid van die woord van God. Want kyk, terwyl ek van die Here gevra het, so het die woord tot my gekom, en gesê: Jakob, gaan jy môre op na die tempel, en verkondig die woord wat Ek jou sal gee aan hierdie volk.
- 12 En nou kyk, my broers, dit is die woord wat ek aan julle verkondig, dat baie van julle begin soek het na goud, en na silwer, en na allerhande kosbare ertse, wat in hierdie land, wat 'n land van belofte is, vir julle en vir julle saad, veelvuldig is.
- 13 En die hand van die voorsienigheid het besonder vriendelik teenoor julle geglimlag, sodat julle baie rykdom verkry het; en omdat sommige van julle meer oorvloediglik verkry het as dié van julle broers, is julle verhewe in die hoogmoed van julle harte, en loop met stywe nekke en hooggerigte koppe vanweë julle duur kleding, en vervolg julle broers omdat julle veronderstel dat julle beter is as hulle.
- 14 En nou, my broers, veronderstel julle dat God julle regverdig in hierdie ding? Kyk, ek sê vir julle, Nee. Maar Hy veroordeel julle, en as julle volhou met hierdie dinge, moet sy oordele spoedig oor julle kom.
- 15 O, dat Hy julle kan toon dat Hy julle kan deursteek, en met een blik van sy oog kan hy julle tot in die stof neerslaan!
- 16 O, dat Hy julle sou verlos van hierdie ongeregtigheid en gruwel! En o, dat julle sou luister na die woord van sy gebooie, en nie toelaat dat hierdie hoogmoed van julle harte julle siele vernietig nie!
- 17 Dink aan julle broers soos aan julleself, en wees vriendelik teenoor almal en vrygewig met julle besittings, dat hulle ryk mag wees soos julle.
- 18 Maar voordat julle soek na rykdom, soek julle na die koninkryk van God.

But, notwithstanding the greatness of the task, I must do according to the strict commands of God, and tell you concerning your wickedness and abominations, in the presence of the pure in heart, and the broken heart, and under the glance of the piercing eye of the Almighty God.

Wherefore, I must tell you the truth according to the plainness of the word of God. For behold, as I inquired of the Lord, thus came the word unto me, saying: Jacob, get thou up into the temple on the morrow, and declare the word which I shall give thee unto this people.

And now behold, my brethren, this is the word which I declare unto you, that many of you have begun to search for gold, and for silver, and for all manner of precious ores, in the which this land, which is a land of promise unto you and to your seed, doth abound most plentifully.

And the hand of providence hath smiled upon you most pleasingly, that you have obtained many riches; and because some of you have obtained more abundantly than that of your brethren ye are lifted up in the pride of your hearts, and wear stiff necks and high heads because of the costliness of your apparel, and persecute your brethren because ye suppose that ye are better than they.

And now, my brethren, do ye suppose that God justifieth you in this thing? Behold, I say unto you, Nay. But he condemneth you, and if ye persist in these things his judgments must speedily come unto you.

O that he would show you that he can pierce you, and with one glance of his eye he can smite you to the dust!

O that he would rid you from this iniquity and abomination. And, O that ye would listen unto the word of his commands, and let not this pride of your hearts destroy your souls!

Think of your brethren like unto yourselves, and be familiar with all and free with your substance, that they may be rich like unto you.

But before ye seek for riches, seek ye for the kingdom of God.

- 19 En nadat julle 'n hoop verkry het in Christus, sal julle rykdom verkry, as julle dit soek; en julle sal dit soek met die doel om goed te doen—om die naaktes te klee, en om die hongeres te voed, en die gevanges te bevry, en verligting te bring vir die siekes en aan die geteisterdes.
- 20 En nou, my broers, ek het met julle gesprek aangaande hoogmoed; en diegene van julle wat jul naaste geteister het, en hom vervolg het omdat julle hoogmoedig was in julle harte, oor die dinge wat God aan julle gegee het, wat sê julle daarvan?
- 21 Veronderstel julle nie dat sulke dinge gruwelik is vir Hom wat alle vlees geskape het nie? En die een wese is so kosbaar in sy oë as die ander. En alle vlees is uit die stof; en met dieselfde doel het Hy hulle geskape, dat hulle sy geboorte sal onderhou en Hom verheerlik vir ewig.
- 22 En nou maak ek 'n einde daaraan om met julle te spreek aangaande hierdie hoogmoed. En as dit nie was dat ek met julle moet spreek oor 'n erger misdad nie, sou my hart hom uitermate verheug vanweë julle.
- 23 Maar die woord van God beswaar my vanweë jul erger misdade. Want kyk, so sê die Here: Hierdie volk begin om toe te neem in ongeregtheid; hulle verstaan nie die skrifte nie, want hulle soek om hulself te verskoon om hoererye te pleeg, vanweë die dinge wat geskryf is aangaande Dawid en Salomo sy seun.
- 24 Kyk, Dawid en Salomo het waarlik baie vroue en byvroue gehad, welke ding gruwelik voor My was, sê die Here.
- 25 Daarom, so sê die Here, ek het hierdie volk uitgelei uit die land Jerusalem, deur die krag van my arm, dat Ek vir my 'n regverdige tak mag oprig van die vrug van die lendene van Josef.
- 26 Daarom, Ek, die Here God, sal nie toelaat dat hierdie volk sal doen soos hulle van ouds nie.
- 27 Daarom, my broers, hoor my, en slaan ag op die woord van die Here: Want daar sal geen man onder julle meer as net een vrou hê nie; en geen byvroue sal hy hê nie.

And after ye have obtained a hope in Christ ye shall obtain riches, if ye seek them; and ye will seek them for the intent to do good—to clothe the naked, and to feed the hungry, and to liberate the captive, and administer relief to the sick and the afflicted.

And now, my brethren, I have spoken unto you concerning pride; and those of you which have afflicted your neighbor, and persecuted him because ye were proud in your hearts, of the things which God hath given you, what say ye of it?

Do ye not suppose that such things are abominable unto him who created all flesh? And the one being is as precious in his sight as the other. And all flesh is of the dust; and for the selfsame end hath he created them, that they should keep his commandments and glorify him forever.

And now I make an end of speaking unto you concerning this pride. And were it not that I must speak unto you concerning a grosser crime, my heart would rejoice exceedingly because of you.

But the word of God burdens me because of your grosser crimes. For behold, thus saith the Lord: This people begin to wax in iniquity; they understand not the scriptures, for they seek to excuse themselves in committing whoredoms, because of the things which were written concerning David, and Solomon his son.

Behold, David and Solomon truly had many wives and concubines, which thing was abominable before me, saith the Lord.

Wherefore, thus saith the Lord, I have led this people forth out of the land of Jerusalem, by the power of mine arm, that I might raise up unto me a righteous branch from the fruit of the loins of Joseph.

Wherefore, I the Lord God will not suffer that this people shall do like unto them of old.

Wherefore, my brethren, hear me, and hearken to the word of the Lord: For there shall not any man among you have save it be one wife; and concubines he shall have none;

28 Want Ek, die Here God, skeep behae in die kuisheid van vroue. En hoererye is 'n gruwel voor My; so sê die Here van die Leërskaare.

29 Daarom, hierdie volk sal my gebooie onderhou, sê die Here van die Leërskaare, anders sal die land vervloek wees vanweë hulle.

30 Want, sê die Here van die Leërskaare, as Ek saad vir My wil verwek, sal Ek my volk gebied; anders sal hulle ag slaan op hierdie dinge.

31 Want kyk, Ek, die Here, het die droefheid gesien, en het die rouklag gehoor van die dogters van my volk in die land Jerusalem, ja, en in al die lande van my volk, vanweë die boosheid en die gruwels van hulle mans.

32 En Ek sal nie toelaat, sê die Here van die Leërskaare, dat die geroep van die mooi dogters van hierdie volk, wat Ek uitgelei het uit die land Jerusalem, sal opkom tot My teen die mans van my volk nie, sê die Here van die Leërskaare.

33 Want hulle sal nie die dogters van my volk gevang wegvoer vanweë hulle teerheid nie, tensy Ek hulle sal besoek met 'n swaar vervloeking, en wel tot vernietiging; want hulle sal nie hoererye pleeg soos hulle van ouds nie, sê die Here van die Leërskaare.

34 En nou, kyk, my broers, julle weet dat hierdie gebooie gegee is aan ons vader Lehi; daarom, julle het hulle vantevore geken; en julle het onder groot veroordeling gekom; want julle het hierdie dinge gedoen wat julle nie moes doen nie.

35 Kyk, julle het groter ongeregthede gedoen as die Lamaniete, ons broers. Julle het die harte van julle teergevoelige vroue gebreek, en die vertroue van julle kinders verloor, vanweë julle slegte voorbeelde voor hulle; en die snikke van hulle harte verrys tot God teen julle. En vanweë die strengheid van die woord van God wat teen julle neerkom, het baie harte gesterwe, deurstek met diep wonde.

For I, the Lord God, delight in the chastity of women. And whoredoms are an abomination before me; thus saith the Lord of Hosts.

Wherefore, this people shall keep my commandments, saith the Lord of Hosts, or cursed be the land for their sakes.

For if I will, saith the Lord of Hosts, raise up seed unto me, I will command my people; otherwise they shall hearken unto these things.

For behold, I, the Lord, have seen the sorrow, and heard the mourning of the daughters of my people in the land of Jerusalem, yea, and in all the lands of my people, because of the wickedness and abominations of their husbands.

And I will not suffer, saith the Lord of Hosts, that the cries of the fair daughters of this people, which I have led out of the land of Jerusalem, shall come up unto me against the men of my people, saith the Lord of Hosts.

For they shall not lead away captive the daughters of my people because of their tenderness, save I shall visit them with a sore curse, even unto destruction; for they shall not commit whoredoms, like unto them of old, saith the Lord of Hosts.

And now behold, my brethren, ye know that these commandments were given to our father, Lehi; wherefore, ye have known them before; and ye have come unto great condemnation; for ye have done these things which ye ought not to have done.

Behold, ye have done greater iniquities than the Lamanites, our brethren. Ye have broken the hearts of your tender wives, and lost the confidence of your children, because of your bad examples before them; and the sobbings of their hearts ascend up to God against you. And because of the strictness of the word of God, which cometh down against you, many hearts died, pierced with deep wounds.

Jakob 3

- 1 Maar kyk, ek, Jakob, wil met julle spreek wat rein van hart is. Vertrou op God met vastigheid van denke, en bid tot Hom met uitermate geloof, en Hy sal julle vertrous in jul verdrukkinge, en Hy sal julle saak bepleit, en geregtigheid afstuur op diegene wat julle vernietiging soek.
- 2 O almal van julle wat rein van hart is, lig op julle hoofde en ontvang die aangename woord van God, en verlustig julle in sy liefde; want julle mag, indien julle denke standvastig is, vir ewig.
- 3 Maar wee, wee julle wat nie rein van hart is nie, wat dié dag vieslik is voor God; want tensy julle bekeer, is die land vervloek vanweë julle; en die Lamaniete, wat nie vieslik is soos julle nie, nietemin, hulle is vervloek met 'n swaar vervloeking, hulle sal julle gésel tot vernietiging toe.
- 4 En die tyd kom spoedig, dat tensy julle bekeer, hulle die land van jou erfenis sal besit, en die Here God sal die regverdiges weglei onder julle.
- 5 Kyk, die Lamaniete, julle broers, vir wie julle haat vanweë hulle vieslikheid en die vervloeking wat op hulle velle gekom het, is meer regverdig as julle; want hulle het nie die gebod van die Here vergeet, wat aan ons vader gegee is nie—dat hulle net een vrou moet hê, en byvroue moet hulle geen hê nie, en daar moet nie hoererye gepleeg word onder hulle nie.
- 6 En nou, hierdie gebod poog hulle om te onderhou; daarom, vanweë hierdie nakoming, deur die onderhouding van hierdie gebod, sal die Here God hulle nie vernietig nie, maar sal barmhartig wees teenoor hulle; en eendag sal hulle 'n geseënde volk word.
- 7 Kyk, hulle mans het hul vroue lief, en hul vroue het hul mans lief; en hul mans en hul vroue het hul kinders lief; en hul ongeloof en hul haat teenoor julle is vanweë die ongeregtigheid van hul vaders; daarom, hoeveel beter is julle as hulle in die oë van julle groot Skepper?
- 8 O my broers, ek vrees dat tensy julle sal bekeer van julle sondes, dat hulle velle witter sal wees as julle s'n, wanneer julle saam met hulle voor die troon van God gebring sal word.

Jacob 3

But behold, I, Jacob, would speak unto you that are pure in heart. Look unto God with firmness of mind, and pray unto him with exceeding faith, and he will console you in your afflictions, and he will plead your cause, and send down justice upon those who seek your destruction.

O all ye that are pure in heart, lift up your heads and receive the pleasing word of God, and feast upon his love; for ye may, if your minds are firm, forever.

But, wo, wo, unto you that are not pure in heart, that are filthy this day before God; for except ye repent the land is cursed for your sakes; and the Lamanites, which are not filthy like unto you, nevertheless they are cursed with a sore cursing, shall scourge you even unto destruction.

And the time speedily cometh, that except ye repent they shall possess the land of your inheritance, and the Lord God will lead away the righteous out from among you.

Behold, the Lamanites your brethren, whom ye hate because of their filthiness and the cursing which hath come upon their skins, are more righteous than you; for they have not forgotten the commandment of the Lord, which was given unto our father—that they should have save it were one wife, and concubines they should have none, and there should not be whoredoms committed among them.

And now, this commandment they observe to keep; wherefore, because of this observance, in keeping this commandment, the Lord God will not destroy them, but will be merciful unto them; and one day they shall become a blessed people.

Behold, their husbands love their wives, and their wives love their husbands; and their husbands and their wives love their children; and their unbelief and their hatred towards you is because of the iniquity of their fathers; wherefore, how much better are you than they, in the sight of your great Creator?

O my brethren, I fear that unless ye shall repent of your sins that their skins will be whiter than yours, when ye shall be brought with them before the throne of God.

9 Daaron, 'n gebod gee ek aan julle, wat die woord van God is, dat julle nie langer uitvaar teen hulle vanweë die donkerheid van hul vel nie; nóg sal julle teen hulle uitvaar vanweë hul vieslikheid; maar julle sal jul eie vieslikheid onthou, en onthou dat hulle vieslikheid gekom het vanweë hulle vaders.

10 Daaron, julle sal jul kinders onthou, hoedat julle hul harte bedroef het vanweë die voorbeeld wat julle voor hulle gestel het; en ook, onthou dat julle, vanweë julle vieslikheid, jul kinders tot vernietiging mag bring, en hulle sondes op julle hoofde sal neerkom op die laaste dag.

11 O my broers, slaan ag op my woorde; wek die vermoëns van julle siele op; skud julleself dat julle mag wakker word uit die sluimering van die dood; en maak julleself los van die pyniging van die hel dat julle nie engele van die duiwel mag word om in die poel van vuur en swael gewerp te word wat die tweede dood is nie.

12 En nou ek, Jakob, het baie meer dinge gespreek met die volk van Nepi, om hulle te waarsku teen onttug en wellus, en elke soort sonde, en om hulle te vertel van die vreeslike gevolge daarvan.

13 En 'n honderdste deel van die handeling van hierdie volk, wat nou begin het om talryk te word, kan nie geskrywe word op hierdie plate nie; maar baie van hulle handeling is geskrywe op die groter plate, en hulle oorloë, en hulle twiste, en die heerskappy van hulle konings.

14 Hierdie plate word die plate van Jakob genoem, en hulle is gemaak deur die hand van Nepi. En ek maak 'n einde aan die spreek van hierdie woorde.

Wherefore, a commandment I give unto you, which is the word of God, that ye revile no more against them because of the darkness of their skins; neither shall ye revile against them because of their filthiness; but ye shall remember your own filthiness, and remember that their filthiness came because of their fathers.

Wherefore, ye shall remember your children, how that ye have grieved their hearts because of the example that ye have set before them; and also, remember that ye may, because of your filthiness, bring your children unto destruction, and their sins be heaped upon your heads at the last day.

O my brethren, hearken unto my words; arouse the faculties of your souls; shake yourselves that ye may awake from the slumber of death; and loose yourselves from the pains of hell that ye may not become angels to the devil, to be cast into that lake of fire and brimstone which is the second death.

And now I, Jacob, spake many more things unto the people of Nephi, warning them against fornication and lasciviousness, and every kind of sin, telling them the awful consequences of them.

And a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, which now began to be numerous, cannot be written upon these plates; but many of their proceedings are written upon the larger plates, and their wars, and their contentions, and the reigns of their kings.

These plates are called the plates of Jacob, and they were made by the hand of Nephi. And I make an end of speaking these words.

Jakob 4

- 1 Nou kyk, dit het gebeur dat ek, Jakob, wat my volk met veel prediking in woord gedien het (en ek kan slegs 'n paar van my woorde skryf vanweë die moeilikheid van gravering van ons woorde op plate), en ons weet dat die dinge wat ons op plate skryf, moet bly;
- 2 Maar watter dinge ons ook al op enigiets skryf behalwe as op plate, moet vergaan en verdwyn; maar ons kan 'n paar woorde skryf op plate, wat ons kinders, en ook ons geliefde broers, 'n geringe mate van kennis sal gee aangaande ons, of aangaande hulle vaders—
- 3 Nou verbly ons ons in hierdie ding; en ons werk ywerig om hierdie woorde te graveer op plate, met die hoop dat ons geliefde broers en ons kinders hulle sal ontvang met dankbare harte, en hulle bestudeer, sodat hulle met vreugde mag leer en nie met droefheid nie, nóg met minagting, aangaande hulle eerste ouers.
- 4 Want, met hierdie bedoeling het ons hierdie dinge geskrywe, dat hulle mag weet dat ons geweet het van Christus, en ons het 'n hoop gehad van sy heerlijkheid baie honderde jare voor sy koms; en nie alleen het ons 'n hoop gehad van sy heerlijkheid nie, maar ook al die heilige profete wat voor ons was.
- 5 Kyk, hulle het in Christus geglo en die Vader in sy Naam aanbid, en ons het ook die Vader in sy Naam aanbid. En met hierdie bedoeling onderhou ons die wet van Moses, want dit rig ons siele op Hom; en om hierdie rede is dit tot ons geheilig vir regverdigheid, net soos dit tot Abraham gereken was in die wildernis om gehoorsaam te wees aan die bevel van God deur sy seun Isak te offer, wat 'n sinnebeeld is van God en sy Eniggebore Seun.
- 6 Daarom, ons ondersoek die profete, en ons het baie openbaringe en die gees van profesie; en omdat ons al hierdie getuies het, verkry ons 'n hoop, en ons geloof word onwrikbaar, in soverre dat ons waarlik kan beveel in die Naam van Jesus en selfs die bome gehoorsaam ons, of die berge, of die golwe van die see.

Jacob 4

Now behold, it came to pass that I, Jacob, having ministered much unto my people in word, (and I cannot write but a little of my words, because of the difficulty of engraving our words upon plates) and we know that the things which we write upon plates must remain;

But whatsoever things we write upon anything save it be upon plates must perish and vanish away; but we can write a few words upon plates, which will give our children, and also our beloved brethren, a small degree of knowledge concerning us, or concerning their fathers—

Now in this thing we do rejoice; and we labor diligently to engraven these words upon plates, hoping that our beloved brethren and our children will receive them with thankful hearts, and look upon them that they may learn with joy and not with sorrow, neither with contempt, concerning their first parents.

For, for this intent have we written these things, that they may know that we knew of Christ, and we had a hope of his glory many hundred years before his coming; and not only we ourselves had a hope of his glory, but also all the holy prophets which were before us.

Behold, they believed in Christ and worshiped the Father in his name, and also we worship the Father in his name. And for this intent we keep the law of Moses, it pointing our souls to him; and for this cause it is sanctified unto us for righteousness, even as it was accounted unto Abraham in the wilderness to be obedient unto the commands of God in offering up his son Isaac, which is a similitude of God and his Only Begotten Son.

Wherefore, we search the prophets, and we have many revelations and the spirit of prophecy; and having all these witnesses we obtain a hope, and our faith becometh unshaken, insomuch that we truly can command in the name of Jesus and the very trees obey us, or the mountains, or the waves of the sea.

- 7 Desnieteenstaande, die Here God toon aan ons ons swakheid, dat ons mag weet dat dit deur sy genade is, en sy groot neerdalendhede aan die kinders van mense, dat ons mag het om hierdie dinge te doen.
- 8 Kyk, groot en wonderbaarlik is die werke van die Here. Hoe ondeurgrondelik is die dieptes van die verborgenhede van hom; en dit is onmoontlik dat die mens al sy weë kan ontdek. En geen mens ken sy weë nie, behalwe as dit aan hom geopenbaar word; daarom, broers, verag nie die openbaringe van God nie.
- 9 Want kyk, deur die krag van sy woord het die mens op die aangesig van die aarde gekom, welke aarde geskape is deur die krag van sy woord. Daarom, as God in staat is om te spreek en die wêreld was daar, en om te spreek en die mens is geskape, o dan, hoekom dan nie in staat wees om die aarde te beveel, of die werke van sy hande op die aangesig daarvan, volgens sy wil en behae nie?
- 10 Daarom, broers, soek nie om die Here raad te gee nie, maar om raad van sy hand te ontvang. Want kyk, julle weet self dat Hy raad gee in wysheid, en in geregtigheid, en in groot barmhartigheid, oor al sy skeppinge.
- 11 Daarom, geliefde broers, wees versoen met Hom deur die versoening van Christus, sy Eniggebore Seun, en julle mag 'n opstanding verkry volgens die krag van die opstanding wat in Christus is, en aangebied word as eerste vrugte van Christus tot God, deur julle geloof, en 'n gewisse hoop van heerlijkheid in Hom verkry, voordat Hy Hom geopenbaar het in die vlees.
- 12 En nou, geliefdes, verwonder julle nie dat ek julle hierdie dinge vertel nie; want hoekom nie praat oor die versoening van Christus nie, en 'n volmaakte kennis van Hom verkry en ook om 'n kennis te verkry van 'n opstanding en van die toekomstige wêreld nie?

Nevertheless, the Lord God showeth us our weakness that we may know that it is by his grace, and his great condescensions unto the children of men, that we have power to do these things.

Behold, great and marvelous are the works of the Lord. How unsearchable are the depths of the mysteries of him; and it is impossible that man should find out all his ways. And no man knoweth of his ways save it be revealed unto him; wherefore, brethren, despise not the revelations of God.

For behold, by the power of his word man came upon the face of the earth, which earth was created by the power of his word. Wherefore, if God being able to speak and the world was, and to speak and man was created, O then, why not able to command the earth, or the workmanship of his hands upon the face of it, according to his will and pleasure?

Wherefore, brethren, seek not to counsel the Lord, but to take counsel from his hand. For behold, ye yourselves know that he counseleth in wisdom, and in justice, and in great mercy, over all his works.

Wherefore, beloved brethren, be reconciled unto him through the atonement of Christ, his Only Begotten Son, and ye may obtain a resurrection, according to the power of the resurrection which is in Christ, and be presented as the first-fruits of Christ unto God, having faith, and obtained a good hope of glory in him before he manifesteth himself in the flesh.

And now, beloved, marvel not that I tell you these things; for why not speak of the atonement of Christ, and attain to a perfect knowledge of him, as to attain to the knowledge of a resurrection and the world to come?

13 Kyk, my broers, hy wat profeteer, laat hom profeteer tot die begrip van mense; want die Gees spreek die waarheid en lieg nie. Daarom, dit spreek van dinge soos hulle regtig is, en van dinge soos hulle regtig sal wees; daarom, hierdie dinge word duidelik aan ons geopenbaar, vir die heil van ons siele. Maar kyk, ons is nie getuies alleen in hierdie dinge nie; want God het dit ook gespreek met die profete van ouds.

14 Maar kyk, die Jode was 'n hardnekkige volk; en hulle het die woorde van duidelikheid verag, en die profete gedood, en gesoek vir dinge wat hulle nie kon verstaan nie. Daarom, vanweë hulle blindheid, welke blindheid gekom het deur verby die doel te kyk, moet hulle noodwendig val; want God het sy duidelikheid van hulle weggeneem, en aan hulle baie dinge gegee wat hulle nie kan verstaan nie, omdat hulle dit begeer het. En omdat hulle dit begeer het, het God dit gedoen, dat hulle mag struikel.

15 En nou ek, Jakob, word voortgelei deur die Gees om te profeteer; want ek gewaar deur die werking van die Gees wat in my is, dat deur die struikeling van die Jode, hulle die steen sal verwerp waarop hulle kan bou en 'n veilige fondament hê.

16 Maar kyk, volgens die skrifture sal hierdie steen die groot, en die laaste, en die enigste sekere fondament word, waarop die Jode kan bou.

17 En nou, my geliefdes, hoe is dit moontlik dat diegene, nadat hulle die sekere fondament verwerp het, ooit daarop kan bou, dat dit die hoeksteen kan word?

18 Kyk, my geliefde broers, ek sal dié verborgenheid aan julle ontvou; as ek nie, op een of ander wyse, geskud word in my vastigheid in die Gees, en struikel vanweë my uitermate besorgdheid oor julle nie.

Behold, my brethren, he that prophesieth, let him prophesy to the understanding of men; for the Spirit speaketh the truth and lieth not. Wherefore, it speaketh of things as they really are, and of things as they really will be; wherefore, these things are manifested unto us plainly, for the salvation of our souls. But behold, we are not witnesses alone in these things; for God also spake them unto prophets of old.

But behold, the Jews were a stiffnecked people; and they despised the words of plainness, and killed the prophets, and sought for things that they could not understand. Wherefore, because of their blindness, which blindness came by looking beyond the mark, they must needs fall; for God hath taken away his plainness from them, and delivered unto them many things which they cannot understand, because they desired it. And because they desired it God hath done it, that they may stumble.

And now I, Jacob, am led on by the Spirit unto prophesying; for I perceive by the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that by the stumbling of the Jews they will reject the stone upon which they might build and have safe foundation.

But behold, according to the scriptures, this stone shall become the great, and the last, and the only sure foundation, upon which the Jews can build.

And now, my beloved, how is it possible that these, after having rejected the sure foundation, can ever build upon it, that it may become the head of their corner?

Behold, my beloved brethren, I will unfold this mystery unto you; if I do not, by any means, get shaken from my firmness in the Spirit, and stumble because of my over anxiety for you.

Jakob 5

- 1 Kyk, my broers, onthou julle nie dat julle die woorde ge lees het van die profeet Zenos, wat hy met die huis van Israel gespreek, en gesê het:
- 2 Slaan ag, o julle huis van Israel, en hoor die woorde van my, 'n profeet van die Here.
- 3 Want kyk, so sê die Here, Ek sal julle vergelyk, o huis van Israel, met 'n mak olyfboom, wat 'n man geneem en versorg het in sy wingerd; en dit het gegroei, en oud geword, en begin om te vergaan.
- 4 En dit het so gebeur dat die meester van die wingerd uitgegaan het, en hy het gesien dat sy olyfboom begin om te vergaan; en hy het gesê: Ek sal dit snoei, en daaromheen spit, en dit versorg, dat dit miskien jong en sagte takke sal uitspruit, en dit nie vergaan nie.
- 5 En dit het so gebeur dat hy dit gesnoei het, en daaromheen gespuit het, en dit versorg het volgens sy woord.
- 6 En dit het so gebeur dat na baie dae dit 'n bietjie begin uitspruit het, jong en sagte takke; maar kyk, die kroon daarvan het begin vergaan.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat die meester van die wingerd dit gesien het, en hy het aan sy dienskneg gesê: Dit bedroef my dat ek hierdie boom moet verloor; daarom, gaan en pluk die takke van 'n wilde olyfboom, en bring hulle hier na my toe; en ons sal daardie hooftakke afpluk wat begin om weg te dor, en ons sal hulle in die vuur werp sodat hulle verbrand mag word.
- 8 En kyk, sê die Heer van die wingerd, ek neem baie van hierdie jong en sagte takke weg, en ek sal hulle ent waar ek ook al wil; en dit maak nie saak dat as dit so sal wees dat die wortel van hierdie boom sal vergaan nie, ek die vrugte daarvan vir myself mag behou; daarom, ek sal hierdie jong en sagte takke neem, en ek sal hulle inent waar ek ook al wil.
- 9 Neem jy die takke van die wilde olyfboom, en ent hulle, in plaas daarvan; en dié wat ek afgepluk het, sal ek in die vuur werp en hulle verbrand, dat hulle nie die grond van my wingerd bemors nie.

Jacob 5

Behold, my brethren, do ye not remember to have read the words of the prophet Zenos, which he spake unto the house of Israel, saying:

Hearken, O ye house of Israel, and hear the words of me, a prophet of the Lord.

For behold, thus saith the Lord, I will liken thee, O house of Israel, like unto a tame olive tree, which a man took and nourished in his vineyard; and it grew, and waxed old, and began to decay.

And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard went forth, and he saw that his olive tree began to decay; and he said: I will prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it, that perhaps it may shoot forth young and tender branches, and it perish not.

And it came to pass that he pruned it, and digged about it, and nourished it according to his word.

And it came to pass that after many days it began to put forth somewhat a little, young and tender branches; but behold, the main top thereof began to perish.

And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard saw it, and he said unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, go and pluck the branches from a wild olive tree, and bring them hither unto me; and we will pluck off those main branches which are beginning to wither away, and we will cast them into the fire that they may be burned.

And behold, saith the Lord of the vineyard, I take away many of these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will; and it mattereth not that if it so be that the root of this tree will perish, I may preserve the fruit thereof unto myself; wherefore, I will take these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will.

Take thou the branches of the wild olive tree, and graft them in, in the stead thereof; and these which I have plucked off I will cast into the fire and burn them, that they may not cumber the ground of my vineyard.

- 10 En dit het gebeur dat die dienskneg van die Heer van die wingerd gehandel het volgens die woord van die Heer van die wingerd, en die takke van die wilde olyfboom geënt het.
- 11 En die Heer van die wingerd het opdrag gegee dat daaromheen gespit moet word, en gesnoei, en versorg word, en hy sê vir sy dienskneg: Dit bedroef my dat ek hierdie boom moet verloor; daarom, dat ek miskien die wortels daarvan mag behou, dat hulle nie vergaan nie, dat ek hulle vir myself mag behou, het ek hierdie ding gedoen.
- 12 Daarom, gaan voort; pas die boom op en versorg dit, volgens my woorde.
- 13 En dié sal ek plaas in die verste gedeelte van my wingerd, waar ek ook al wil, dit gaan jou nie aan nie; en ek doen dit dat ek vir myself die natuurlike takke van die boom mag behou; en ook, dat ek vrugte daarvan vir myself mag bêre vir die volgende seisoen; want dit bedroef my dat ek hierdie boom en sy vrug sal verloor.
- 14 En dit het gebeur dat die Heer van die wingerd voortgegaan het, en die natuurlike takke verberg het van die mak olyfboom in die verste dele van die wingerd, sommige in een plek en sommige in 'n ander, volgens sy wil en behae.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat 'n lang tyd verbygegaan het, en die Heer van die wingerd het aan sy dienskneg gesê: Kom, laat ons afgaan in die wingerd, dat ons mag arbei in die wingerd.
- 16 En dit het gebeur dat die Heer van die wingerd, en ook die dienskneg, afgegaan het in die wingerd om te arbei. En dit het gebeur dat die dienskneg aan sy meester gesê het: Sien, kyk hier, aanskou die boom.
- 17 En dit het gebeur dat die Heer van die wingerd gekyk het en die boom aanskou het waarin die wilde olyftakke geënt was; en dit het uitgeloop en begin vrugte dra. En hy het gesien dat dit goed was; en die vrugte daarvan was soos die natuurlike vrugte.

And it came to pass that the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did according to the word of the Lord of the vineyard, and grafted in the branches of the wild olive tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard caused that it should be digged about, and pruned, and nourished, saying unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, that perhaps I might preserve the roots thereof that they perish not, that I might preserve them unto myself, I have done this thing.

Wherefore, go thy way; watch the tree, and nourish it, according to my words.

And these will I place in the nethermost part of my vineyard, whithersoever I will, it mattereth not unto thee; and I do it that I may preserve unto myself the natural branches of the tree; and also, that I may lay up fruit thereof against the season, unto myself; for it grieveth me that I should lose this tree and the fruit thereof.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard went his way, and hid the natural branches of the tame olive tree in the nethermost parts of the vineyard, some in one and some in another, according to his will and pleasure.

And it came to pass that a long time passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor in the vineyard.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard, and also the servant, went down into the vineyard to labor. And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Behold, look here; behold the tree.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard looked and beheld the tree in the which the wild olive branches had been grafted; and it had sprung forth and begun to bear fruit. And he beheld that it was good; and the fruit thereof was like unto the natural fruit.

18 En hy het aan die dienskneg gesê: Kyk, die takke van die wilde boom het vat gekry op die sap van die wortel daarvan, sodat die wortel daarvan baie krag voortgebring het; en vanweë die groot krag van die wortel daarvan het die wilde takke mak vrugte voortgebring. Nou, as ons nie hierdie takke geënt het nie, sou die boom daarvan vergaan het. En nou, kyk, ek sal baie vrugte wegbêre, wat die boom daarvan voortgebring het; en die vrugte daarvan sal ek vir myself bêre vir die volgende seisoen.

19 En dit het gebeur dat die Heer van die wingerd aan die dienskneg gesê het: Kom, laat ons gaan na die verste deel van die wingerd, en sien of die natuurlike takke van die boom nie ook baie vrugte voortgebring het nie, sodat ek van die vrugte daarvan mag wegbêre vir die volgende seisoen, vir myself.

20 En dit het gebeur dat hulle voortgegaan het tot waar die meester die natuurlike takke van die boom verberg het, en hy het aan die dienskneg gesê: Aanskou hierdie; en hy het die eerste aanskou dat dit baie vrugte voortgebring het; en hy het ook aanskou dat dit goed was. En hy het aan die dienskneg gesê: Neem van die vrugte daarvan, en bêre dit vir die volgende seisoen, sodat ek dit kan behou vir myself; want kyk, het hy gesê, hierdie lang tyd het ek dit versorg, en dit het baie vrugte voortgebring.

21 En dit het gebeur dat die dienskneg aan sy meester gesê het: Hoe kom u hierheen om dié boom te plant, of hierdie tak van die boom? Want kyk, dit was die swakste stuk grond van die hele land van u wingerd.

22 En die Heer van die wingerd het aan hom gesê: Moenie my raad gee nie; ek het geweet dat dit 'n swak stuk grond was; daarom, ek het aan jou gesê, ek het dit hierdie lang tyd versorg, en jy sien dat dit baie vrugte voortgebring het.

23 En dit het gebeur dat die Heer van die wingerd aan sy dienskneg gesê het: Kyk hier; sien, ek het 'n ander tak van die boom ook geplant; en jy weet dat hierdie stuk grond swakker was as die eerste. Maar, aanskou die boom. Ek het dit hierdie lang tyd versorg, en dit het baie vrugte opgelewer; daarom, versamel dit, en bêre dit vir die volgende seisoen, dat ek dit kan behou vir myself.

And he said unto the servant: Behold, the branches of the wild tree have taken hold of the moisture of the root thereof, that the root thereof hath brought forth much strength; and because of the much strength of the root thereof the wild branches have brought forth tame fruit. Now, if we had not grafted in these branches, the tree thereof would have perished. And now, behold, I shall lay up much fruit, which the tree thereof hath brought forth; and the fruit thereof I shall lay up against the season, unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Come, let us go to the nethermost part of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches of the tree have not brought forth much fruit also, that I may lay up of the fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that they went forth whither the master had hid the natural branches of the tree, and he said unto the servant: Behold these; and he beheld the first that it had brought forth much fruit; and he beheld also that it was good. And he said unto the servant: Take of the fruit thereof, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self; for behold, said he, this long time have I nourished it, and it hath brought forth much fruit.

And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: How comest thou hither to plant this tree, or this branch of the tree? For behold, it was the poorest spot in all the land of thy vineyard.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto him: Counsel me not; I knew that it was a poor spot of ground; wherefore, I said unto thee, I have nourished it this long time, and thou beholdest that it hath brought forth much fruit.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Look hither; behold I have planted another branch of the tree also; and thou knowest that this spot of ground was poorer than the first. But, behold the tree. I have nourished it this long time, and it hath brought forth much fruit; therefore, gather it, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self.

24 En dit het gebeur dat die Heer van die wingerd weer aan sy dienskneg gesê het: Kyk hier, en sien 'n ander tak ook, wat ek geplant het; kyk, dat ek dit ook versorg het, en dit het vrugte voortgebring.

25 En hy het aan die dienskneg gesê: Kyk hier, en aanskou die laaste. Kyk, hierdie het ek geplant in 'n goeie stuk grond; en ek het dit hierdie lang tyd versorg, en slegs 'n deel van die boom het mak vrugte voortgebring, en die ander deel van die boom het wilde vrugte voortgebring; kyk, ek het hierdie boom versorg soos die ander.

26 En dit het gebeur dat die Heer van die wingerd aan die dienskneg gesê het: Pluk die takke af wat nie goeie vrugte voortgebring het nie, en werp hulle in die vuur.

27 Maar kyk, die dienskneg het aan hom gesê: Laat ons dit snoei, en daaromheen spit, en dit 'n rukkie langer versorg, dat dit miskien goeie vrugte mag voortbring vir u, dat u dit kan bêre vir die volgende seisoen.

28 En dit het gebeur dat die Heer van die wingerd en die dienskneg van die Heer van die wingerd al die vrugte van die wingerd versorg het.

29 En dit het gebeur dat 'n lang tyd verbygegaan het, en die Heer van die wingerd het aan sy dienskneg gesê: Kom, laat ons afgaan in die wingerd, dat ons weer mag arbei in die wingerd. Want kyk, die tyd kom nader, en die einde kom gou; daarom, ek moet vrugte vir die volgende seisoen bêre, vir myself.

30 En dit het gebeur dat die Heer van die wingerd en die dienskneg afgegaan het in die wingerd; en hulle het by die boom gekom waarvan die natuurlike takke afgebreek was, en die wilde takke geënt was; en kyk, allerhande soorte vrugte het die boom oorlaai.

31 En dit het gebeur dat die Heer van die wingerd van die vrugte geproe het, elke soort volgens sy hoeveelheid. En die Heer van die wingerd het gesê: Kyk, hierdie lang tyd het ons dié boom versorg, en ek het vir myself baie vrugte gebêre vir die volgende seisoen.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said again unto his servant: Look hither, and behold another branch also, which I have planted; behold that I have nourished it also, and it hath brought forth fruit.

And he said unto the servant: Look hither and behold the last. Behold, this have I planted in a good spot of ground; and I have nourished it this long time, and only a part of the tree hath brought forth tame fruit, and the other part of the tree hath brought forth wild fruit; behold, I have nourished this tree like unto the others.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck off the branches that have not brought forth good fruit, and cast them into the fire.

But behold, the servant said unto him: Let us prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it a little longer, that perhaps it may bring forth good fruit unto thee, that thou canst lay it up against the season.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did nourish all the fruit of the vineyard.

And it came to pass that a long time had passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor again in the vineyard. For behold, the time draweth near, and the end soon cometh; wherefore, I must lay up fruit against the season, unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant went down into the vineyard; and they came to the tree whose natural branches had been broken off, and the wild branches had been grafted in; and behold all sorts of fruit did cumber the tree.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard did taste of the fruit, every sort according to its number. And the Lord of the vineyard said: Behold, this long time have we nourished this tree, and I have laid up unto myself against the season much fruit.

32 Maar kyk, hierdie keer het dit baie vrugte voortgebring, en daar is niks daarvan wat goed is nie. En kyk, daar is allerhande soorte slegte vrugte; en dit baat my niks, desnieteenstaande al ons arbeid; en nou bedroef dit my dat ek hierdie boom moet verloor.

33 En die Heer van die wingerd het aan die dienskneg gesê: Wat sal ons doen aan die boom, dat ek weer goeie vrugte daarvan vir myself mag bêre?

34 En die dienskneg het aan sy meester gesê: Kyk, omdat u die takke geënt het van die wilde olyfboom, het hulle die wortels gevoed, sodat hulle lewendig is en hulle het nie vergaan nie; daarom, u sien dat hulle nog goed is.

35 En dit het gebeur dat die Heer van die wingerd aan sy dienskneg gesê het: Die boom baat my niks, en die wortels daarvan baat my niks solank as dit slegte vrugte voortbring nie.

36 Nogtans, ek weet dat die wortels goed is, en vir my eie doel het ek hulle behou; en vanweë hulle groot krag het hulle tot nou goeie vrugte van die wilde takke voortgebring.

37 Maar kyk, die wilde takke het gegroei en het die wortels daarvan oorgroei; en omdat die wilde takke die wortels daarvan oorgroei het, het dit baie slegte vrugte voortgebring; en omdat dit soveel slegte vrugte voortgebring het, sien jy dat dit begin vergaan; en dit sal gou ryp word, dat dit in die vuur gewerp mag word, tensy ons iets daaraan doen om dit te behou.

38 En dit het gebeur dat die Heer van die wingerd aan sy dienskneg gesê het: Laat ons afgaan na die verste gedeeltes van die wingerd, en sien of die natuurlike takke ook slegte vrugte voortgebring het.

39 En dit het gebeur dat hulle afgegaan het na die verste gedeeltes van die wingerd. En dit het gebeur dat hulle gesien het dat die vrugte van die natuurlike takke ook bedorwe geword het; ja, die eerste en die tweede en ook die laaste; en hulle het almal bedorwe geword.

40 En die wilde vrugte van die laaste het dié deel van die boom oorgroei wat goeie vrugte voortgebring het, totdat die tak verdor het en dood is.

But behold, this time it hath brought forth much fruit, and there is none of it which is good. And behold, there are all kinds of bad fruit; and it profiteth me nothing, notwithstanding all our labor; and now it grieveth me that I should lose this tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: What shall we do unto the tree, that I may preserve again good fruit thereof unto mine own self?

And the servant said unto his master: Behold, because thou didst graft in the branches of the wild olive tree they have nourished the roots, that they are alive and they have not perished; wherefore thou beholdest that they are yet good.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: The tree profiteth me nothing, and the roots thereof profit me nothing so long as it shall bring forth evil fruit.

Nevertheless, I know that the roots are good, and for mine own purpose I have preserved them; and because of their much strength they have hitherto brought forth, from the wild branches, good fruit.

But behold, the wild branches have grown and have overrun the roots thereof; and because that the wild branches have overcome the roots thereof it hath brought forth much evil fruit; and because that it hath brought forth so much evil fruit thou beholdest that it beginneth to perish; and it will soon become ripened, that it may be cast into the fire, except we should do something for it to preserve it.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Let us go down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches have also brought forth evil fruit.

And it came to pass that they went down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard. And it came to pass that they beheld that the fruit of the natural branches had become corrupt also; yea, the first and the second and also the last; and they had all become corrupt.

And the wild fruit of the last had overcome that part of the tree which brought forth good fruit, even that the branch had withered away and died.

41 En dit het gebeur dat die Heer van die wingerd ge-
ween het, en aan die dienskneg gesê het: Wat kon ek
meer gedoen het vir my wingerd?

42 Kyk, ek het geweet dat al die vrugte van die win-
gerd, behalwe hierdie, bedorwe geraak het. En nou
hierdie, wat eens goeie vrugte voortgebring het, het
ook bedorwe geraak; en nou is al die bome van my
wingerd vir niks goed nie behalwe om afgekap en in
die vuur gewerp te word.

43 En kyk hierdie laaste, wie se tak verdor het, het ek
geplant in 'n goeie stuk grond; ja, en wel dit wat uit-
verkore was vir my bo alle ander dele van die land
van my wingerd.

44 En jy het gesien dat ek ook dít afgekap het wat
hierdie stuk grond bemors het, dat ek dié boom mag
plant in die plek daarvan.

45 En jy het gesien dat 'n deel daarvan goeie vrugte
voortgebring het, en 'n deel daarvan wilde vrugte
voortgebring het; en omdat ek nie die takke daarvan
afgebreek en in die vuur gewerp het nie, kyk, hulle
het die goeie tak oorgroei sodat dit verdor het.

46 En nou, kyk, desnieteenstaande al die sorg wat
ons bestee het aan my wingerd, het die bome daar-
van bedorwe geword, sodat hulle geen goeie vrugte
voortbring nie; en het ek gehoop om hierdie te be-
hou, om die vrug daarvan vir die volgende seisoen vir
myself te bêre. Maar kyk, hulle het geword soos die
wilde olyfboom, en hulle is vir niks goed nie behal-
we om afgekap en in die vuur gewerp te word; en dit
bedroef my dat ek hulle moet verloor.

47 Maar wat kon ek meer gedoen het in my wingerd?
Het ek my hand verslap, dat ek dit nie versorg het
nie? Nee, ek het dit versorg, en ek het daaromheen
gespit, en ek het dit gesnoei, en ek het dit bemes; en
ek het my hand uitgestrek byna die hele dag lank, en
die einde kom nader. En dit bedroef my dat ek al die
bome van my wingerd moet afkap, en hulle in die
vuur werp dat hulle verbrand moet word. Wie is dit
wat my wingerd bederf het?

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard
wept, and said unto the servant: What could I have
done more for my vineyard?

Behold, I knew that all the fruit of the vineyard,
save it were these, had become corrupted. And now
these which have once brought forth good fruit have
also become corrupted; and now all the trees of my
vineyard are good for nothing save it be to be hewn
down and cast into the fire.

And behold this last, whose branch hath withered
away, I did plant in a good spot of ground; yea, even
that which was choice unto me above all other parts
of the land of my vineyard.

And thou beheldest that I also cut down that
which cumbered this spot of ground, that I might
plant this tree in the stead thereof.

And thou beheldest that a part thereof brought
forth good fruit, and a part thereof brought forth
wild fruit; and because I plucked not the branches
thereof and cast them into the fire, behold, they have
overcome the good branch that it hath withered
away.

And now, behold, notwithstanding all the care
which we have taken of my vineyard, the trees
thereof have become corrupted, that they bring forth
no good fruit; and these I had hoped to preserve, to
have laid up fruit thereof against the season, unto
mine own self. But, behold, they have become like
unto the wild olive tree, and they are of no worth but
to be hewn down and cast into the fire; and it
grieveth me that I should lose them.

But what could I have done more in my vineyard?
Have I slackened mine hand, that I have not nour-
ished it? Nay, I have nourished it, and I have digged
about it, and I have pruned it, and I have dunged it;
and I have stretched forth mine hand almost all the
day long, and the end draweth nigh. And it grieveth
me that I should hew down all the trees of my vine-
yard, and cast them into the fire that they should be
burned. Who is it that has corrupted my vineyard?

48 En dit het gebeur dat die dienskneg aan sy meester gesê het: Is dit nie die hoogheid van die wingerd nie—het die takke daarvan nie die wortels oorgroei wat goed is nie? En omdat die takke die wortels daarvan oorgroei het, kyk, hulle het vinniger gegroei as die krag van die wortels, en krag tot hulleself geneem. Kyk, ek sê, is dit nie die rede dat die bome van u wingerd bedorwe geraak het nie?

49 En dit het gebeur dat die Heer van die wingerd aan die dienskneg gesê het: Laat ons heengaan en die bome van die wingerd afkap en hulle in die vuurwerp, dat hulle nie die grond van my wingerd sal bemors nie, want ek het alles gedoen. Wat kon ek meer gedoen het vir my wingerd?

50 Maar kyk, die dienskneg het aan die Heer van die wingerd gesê: Spaar dit 'n bietjie langer.

51 En die Heer het gesê: Ja, ek sal dit 'n bietjie langer spaar, want dit bedroef my dat ek die bome van my wingerd moet verloor.

52 Daarom, laat ons van die takke neem van hierdie wat ek geplant het in die verste gedeeltes van my wingerd, en laat ons hulle ent op die boom van waar hulle gekom het; en laat ons van die boom pluk daardie takke waarvan die vrugte die bitterste is, en die natuurlike takke van die boom ent in die plek daarvan.

53 En dit sal ek doen sodat die boom nie mag vergaan nie, sodat ek miskien die wortels daarvan vir myself mag behou vir my eie doeleindes.

54 En kyk, die wortels van die natuurlike takke van die boom wat ek geplant het waar ek wou, is nog lewendig; daarom, sodat ek hulle ook mag behou vir my eie doeleindes, sal ek van die takke van hierdie boom neem, en ek sal hulle daarop ent. Ja, ek sal op hulle die takke van hulle moederboom inent, sodat ek ook die wortels vir myself mag behou, dat wanneer hulle sterk genoeg is, hulle miskien goeie vrugte vir my mag voortbring, en ek nog behae mag hê in die vrugte van my wingerd.

55 En dit het gebeur dat hulle van die natuurlike boom wat wild geword het geneem het, en geënt het in die natuurlike bome, wat ook wild geword het.

56 En hulle het ook van die natuurlike bome geneem wat wild geword het, en geënt op hulle moederboom.

And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Is it not the loftiness of thy vineyard—have not the branches thereof overcome the roots which are good? And because the branches have overcome the roots thereof, behold they grew faster than the strength of the roots, taking strength unto themselves. Behold, I say, is not this the cause that the trees of thy vineyard have become corrupted?

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Let us go to and hew down the trees of the vineyard and cast them into the fire, that they shall not cumber the ground of my vineyard, for I have done all. What could I have done more for my vineyard?

But, behold, the servant said unto the Lord of the vineyard: Spare it a little longer.

And the Lord said: Yea, I will spare it a little longer, for it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard.

Wherefore, let us take of the branches of these which I have planted in the nethermost parts of my vineyard, and let us graft them into the tree from whence they came; and let us pluck from the tree those branches whose fruit is most bitter, and graft in the natural branches of the tree in the stead thereof.

And this will I do that the tree may not perish, that, perhaps, I may preserve unto myself the roots thereof for mine own purpose.

And, behold, the roots of the natural branches of the tree which I planted whithersoever I would are yet alive; wherefore, that I may preserve them also for mine own purpose, I will take of the branches of this tree, and I will graft them in unto them. Yea, I will graft in unto them the branches of their mother tree, that I may preserve the roots also unto mine own self, that when they shall be sufficiently strong perhaps they may bring forth good fruit unto me, and I may yet have glory in the fruit of my vineyard.

And it came to pass that they took from the natural tree which had become wild, and grafted in unto the natural trees, which also had become wild.

And they also took of the natural trees which had become wild, and grafted into their mother tree.

57 En die Heer van die wingerd het aan die diensknege gesê: Pluk nie die wilde takke van die bome nie, behalwe daardie wat die bitterste is; en in hulle sal jy ent volgens dit wat ek gesê het.

58 En ons sal weer die bome van die wingerd versorg, en ons sal die takke daarvan snoei; en ons sal van die bome daardie takke pluk wat ryp geword het, wat moet vergaan, en hulle in die vuur werp.

59 En dit doen ek dat, miskien, die wortels daarvan krag mag put vanweë hulle goedheid; en vanweë die verwisseling van die takke, sodat die goeie die bese mag oorwin.

60 En omdat ek die natuurlike takke en die wortels daarvan behou het, en dat ek weer die natuurlike takke in hulle moederboom geënt het, en die wortels van die moederboom behou het, dat, miskien, die bome van my wingerd weer goeie vrugte mag voortbring; en dat ek weer vreugde mag hê in die vrugte van my wingerd, en, miskien, dat ek my uitermate mag verheug dat ek die wortels en takke van die eerste vrugte behou het—

61 Daarom, gaan heen, en roep diensknege, dat ons ywerig mag arbeid met ons mag in die wingerd, dat ons die weg mag voorberei, sodat ek weer die natuurlike vrugte mag voortbring, welke natuurlike vrugte goed is en die waardevolste bo alle ander vrugte.

62 Daarom, laat ons heengaan en arbeid met ons mag hierdie laaste keer, want kyk, die einde kom nader, en dit is vir die laaste keer dat ek my wingerd sal snoei.

63 Ent die takke; begin by die laastes dat hulle eerste mag wees, en dat die eerstes laaste mag wees, en spit om die bome, beide oud en jonk, die eerste en die laaste; en die laaste en die eerste, dat almal weer eens versorg mag word vir die laaste keer.

64 Daarom, spit rondom hulle, en snoei hulle, en bemes hulle nog 'n keer, vir die laaste keer, want die einde kom nader. En as dit so is dat hierdie laaste ente sal groei, en die natuurlike vrugte voortbring, dan sal jy die weg vir hulle voorberei, sodat hulle mag groei.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck not the wild branches from the trees, save it be those which are most bitter; and in them ye shall graft according to that which I have said.

And we will nourish again the trees of the vineyard, and we will trim up the branches thereof; and we will pluck from the trees those branches which are ripened, that must perish, and cast them into the fire.

And this I do that, perhaps, the roots thereof may take strength because of their goodness; and because of the change of the branches, that the good may overcome the evil.

And because that I have preserved the natural branches and the roots thereof, and that I have grafted in the natural branches again into their mother tree, and have preserved the roots of their mother tree, that, perhaps, the trees of my vineyard may bring forth again good fruit; and that I may have joy again in the fruit of my vineyard, and, perhaps, that I may rejoice exceedingly that I have preserved the roots and the branches of the first fruit—

Wherefore, go to, and call servants, that we may labor diligently with our might in the vineyard, that we may prepare the way, that I may bring forth again the natural fruit, which natural fruit is good and the most precious above all other fruit.

Wherefore, let us go to and labor with our might this last time, for behold the end draweth nigh, and this is for the last time that I shall prune my vineyard.

Graft in the branches; begin at the last that they may be first, and that the first may be last, and dig about the trees, both old and young, the first and the last; and the last and the first, that all may be nourished once again for the last time.

Wherefore, dig about them, and prune them, and dung them once more, for the last time, for the end draweth nigh. And if it be so that these last grafts shall grow, and bring forth the natural fruit, then shall ye prepare the way for them, that they may grow.

65 En soos hulle begin om te groei, sal jy die takke verwyder wat bitter vrugte voortbring, volgens die krag van die goeies en die grootte daarvan; en jy sal nie die slegte takke daarvan tegelyk verwyder nie, uit vrees dat die wortels daarvan te sterk sou wees vir die ent, en die ent daarvan sal vergaan, en ek die bome van my wingerd verloor.

66 Want dit bedroef my dat ek die bome van my wingerd moet verloor; daarom, jy sal die slegtes verwyder na gelang die goeies sal groei, sodat die wortel en die kroon gelyk in krag mag wees, totdat die goeies die slegtes sal oorwin, en die slegtes afgekap word en in die vuur gewerp word, sodat hulle nie die grond van my wingerd bemors nie; en sodoende sal ek die slegtes wegvee uit my wingerd.

67 En die takke van die natuurlike boom sal ek weer ent in die natuurlike boom;

68 En die takke van die natuurlike boom sal ek ent in die natuurlike takke van die boom; en so sal ek hulle weer bymekaar bring, dat hulle die natuurlike vrugte sal voortbring, en hulle sal een wees.

69 En die slegtes sal weggewerp word, ja, en wel uit die hele land van my wingerd; want kyk, net hierdie een maal sal ek my wingerd snoei.

70 En dit het gebeur dat die Heer van die wingerd sy dienskneg gestuur het; en die dienskneg het gegaan en gedoen soos die Heer hom gebied het, en ander diensknegte gebring; en hulle was min.

71 En die Heer van die wingerd het aan hulle gesê: Gaan heen, en arbei in die wingerd, met julle mag. Want kyk, dit is die laaste keer dat ek my wingerd sal versorg; want die einde is op hande, en die seisoen kom spoedig; en as julle arbei met julle mag saam met my, sal julle vreugde hê in die vrugte wat ek vir my sal bêre vir die tyd wat gou sal kom.

72 En dit het gebeur dat die diensknegte gegaan en met hulle magte gearbei het; en die Heer van die wingerd het ook gearbei saam met hulle; en hulle het die bevele gehoorsaam van die Heer van die wingerd in alle dinge.

And as they begin to grow ye shall clear away the branches which bring forth bitter fruit, according to the strength of the good and the size thereof; and ye shall not clear away the bad thereof all at once, lest the roots thereof should be too strong for the graft, and the graft thereof shall perish, and I lose the trees of my vineyard.

For it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard; wherefore ye shall clear away the bad according as the good shall grow, that the root and the top may be equal in strength, until the good shall overcome the bad, and the bad be hewn down and cast into the fire, that they cumber not the ground of my vineyard; and thus will I sweep away the bad out of my vineyard.

And the branches of the natural tree will I graft in again into the natural tree;

And the branches of the natural tree will I graft into the natural branches of the tree; and thus will I bring them together again, that they shall bring forth the natural fruit, and they shall be one.

And the bad shall be cast away, yea, even out of all the land of my vineyard; for behold, only this once will I prune my vineyard.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sent his servant; and the servant went and did as the Lord had commanded him, and brought other servants; and they were few.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto them: Go to, and labor in the vineyard, with your might. For behold, this is the last time that I shall nourish my vineyard; for the end is nigh at hand, and the season speedily cometh; and if ye labor with your might with me ye shall have joy in the fruit which I shall lay up unto myself against the time which will soon come.

And it came to pass that the servants did go and labor with their mights; and the Lord of the vineyard labored also with them; and they did obey the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard in all things.

73 En daar het weer natuurlike vrugte in die wingerd begin kom; en die natuurlike takke het begin groei en uitermate gedy; en daar is begin om die wilde takke te pluk en weg te werp; en hulle het die wortel en die kroon daarvan gelyk gehou, volgens die krag daarvan.

74 En so het hulle gearbei, met alle ywer, volgens die bevele van die Heer van die wingerd, en wel totdat die slegtes weggewerp is uit die wingerd, en die Heer het vir homself behou dat die bome weer die natuurlike vrugte voortbring; en hulle het geword soos een liggaam; en die vrugte was soortgelyk; en die Heer van die wingerd het die natuurlike vrugte vir homself behou, wat die kosbaarste was vir hom vanaf die begin.

75 En dit het gebeur dat toe die Heer van die wingerd gesien het dat sy vrugte goed is, en dat sy wingerd nie langer bedorwe was nie, het hy sy diensknegte geroep en aan hulle gesê: Kyk, vir hierdie laaste keer het ons my wingerd versorg; en julle sien dat ek volgens my wil gedoen het; en ek het die natuurlike vrugte behou, dat dit goed is, en wel soos dit was aan die begin. En salig is julle; want omdat julle ywerig was om saam met my in my wingerd te arbeid, en my bevele onderhou het, en weer vir my die natuurlike vrugte gebring het, sodat my wingerd nie langer bedorwe is nie, en die slegtes weggewerp is, kyk, julle sal vreugde met my hê vanweë die vrugte van my wingerd.

76 Want kyk, vir 'n lang tyd sal ek van die vrugte van my wingerd vir myself bêre vir die volgende seisoen, wat spoedig kom; en vir die laaste keer het ek my wingerd versorg, en dit gesnoei, en daaromheen gespít, en dit bemes; daarom sal ek vir myself die vrugte vir 'n lang tyd bêre, volgens dit wat ek gespreek het.

77 En wanneer die tyd kom dat slegte vrugte weer in my wingerd sal kom, dan sal ek opdrag gee dat die goeies en die slegtes ingesamel word; en die goeies sal ek behou vir myself, en die slegtes sal ek weggewerp in hul eie plek. En dan kom die seisoen en die einde; en my wingerd sal ek met vuur laat verbrand.

And there began to be the natural fruit again in the vineyard; and the natural branches began to grow and thrive exceedingly; and the wild branches began to be plucked off and to be cast away; and they did keep the root and the top thereof equal, according to the strength thereof.

And thus they labored, with all diligence, according to the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard, even until the bad had been cast away out of the vineyard, and the Lord had preserved unto himself that the trees had become again the natural fruit; and they became like unto one body; and the fruits were equal; and the Lord of the vineyard had preserved unto himself the natural fruit, which was most precious unto him from the beginning.

And it came to pass that when the Lord of the vineyard saw that his fruit was good, and that his vineyard was no more corrupt, he called up his servants, and said unto them: Behold, for this last time have we nourished my vineyard; and thou beholdest that I have done according to my will; and I have preserved the natural fruit, that it is good, even like as it was in the beginning. And blessed art thou; for because ye have been diligent in laboring with me in my vineyard, and have kept my commandments, and have brought unto me again the natural fruit, that my vineyard is no more corrupted, and the bad is cast away, behold ye shall have joy with me because of the fruit of my vineyard.

For behold, for a long time will I lay up of the fruit of my vineyard unto mine own self against the season, which speedily cometh; and for the last time have I nourished my vineyard, and pruned it, and dug about it, and dunged it; wherefore I will lay up unto mine own self of the fruit, for a long time, according to that which I have spoken.

And when the time cometh that evil fruit shall again come into my vineyard, then will I cause the good and the bad to be gathered; and the good will I preserve unto myself, and the bad will I cast away into its own place. And then cometh the season and the end; and my vineyard will I cause to be burned with fire.

Jakob 6

- 1 En nou, kyk, my broers, soos ek aan julle gesê het dat ek sou profeteer, kyk, dit is my profesie—dat die dinge wat hierdie profete Zenos gespreek het, aangaande die huis van Israel, waarin hy hulle vergelyk het met 'n mak olyfboom, sekerlik moet geskied.
- 2 En die dag waarop Hy sy hand weer vir die tweede keer sal uitstrek om sy volk te versamel, is die dag, ja, en wel die laaste keer, dat die diensknegte van die Here sal uitgaan in sy krag, om sy wingerd te versorg en te snoei; en daarna kom die einde spoedig.
- 3 En hoe geseënd is hulle wat ywerig gearbei het in sy wingerd; en hoe vervloek is hulle wat uitgewerp sal word in hulle eie plek! En die wêreld sal verbrand word met vuur.
- 4 En hoe barmhartig is onse God teenoor ons, want Hy onthou die huis van Israel, beide wortels en takke; en Hy strek sy hande uit na hulle die hele dag lank; en hulle is 'n hardnekkige en wederstrewige volk; maar soveel as wat nie hulle harte sal verhard nie, sal gered word in die koninkryk van God.
- 5 Daarom, my geliefde broers, versoek ek julle in woorde van erns dat julle moet bekeer, en moet kom met volle voorneme van hart, en aan God kleef soos Hy aan julle kleef. En terwyl sy arm van barmhartigheid uitgestrek is na julle in die lig van die dag, verhard nie julle harte nie.
- 6 Ja, vandag, as julle sy stem sal hoor, verhard nie julle harte nie; want waarom sal julle sterwe?
- 7 Want kyk, nadat julle gevoed is deur die goeie woord van God die hele dag lank, sal julle slegte vrugte voortbring, sodat julle afgekap moet word en in die vuur gewerp word?
- 8 Kyk, sal julle hierdie woorde verwerp? Sal julle die woorde verwerp van die profete; en sal julle al die woorde verwerp wat gespreek is aangaande Christus, nadat sovele gespreek het aangaande Hom; en die goeie woord van Christus loën, en die krag van God en die gawe van die Heilige Gees, en die Heilige Gees blus, en 'n bespotting maak van die groot plan van verlossing, wat vir julle neergelê is?

Jacob 6

And now, behold, my brethren, as I said unto you that I would prophesy, behold, this is my prophecy—that the things which this prophet Zenos spake, concerning the house of Israel, in the which he likened them unto a tame olive tree, must surely come to pass.

And the day that he shall set his hand again the second time to recover his people, is the day, yea, even the last time, that the servants of the Lord shall go forth in his power, to nourish and prune his vineyard; and after that the end soon cometh.

And how blessed are they who have labored diligently in his vineyard; and how cursed are they who shall be cast out into their own place! And the world shall be burned with fire.

And how merciful is our God unto us, for he remembereth the house of Israel, both roots and branches; and he stretches forth his hands unto them all the day long; and they are a stiffnecked and a gainsaying people; but as many as will not harden their hearts shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I beseech of you in words of soberness that ye would repent, and come with full purpose of heart, and cleave unto God as he cleaveth unto you. And while his arm of mercy is extended towards you in the light of the day, harden not your hearts.

Yea, today, if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts; for why will ye die?

For behold, after ye have been nourished by the good word of God all the day long, will ye bring forth evil fruit, that ye must be hewn down and cast into the fire?

Behold, will ye reject these words? Will ye reject the words of the prophets; and will ye reject all the words which have been spoken concerning Christ, after so many have spoken concerning him; and deny the good word of Christ, and the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and quench the Holy Spirit, and make a mock of the great plan of redemption, which hath been laid for you?

9 Weet julle nie dat as julle hierdie dinge sal doen, dat die mag van die verlossing en die opstanding, wat in Christus is, julle sal bring om te staan met skande en verskriklike skuldbesef voor die regbank van God nie?

10 En volgens die krag van geregtigheid, want geregtigheid kan nie geloën word nie, moet julle weggaan in daardie poel van vuur en swael, waarvan die vlamme onblusbaar is, en waarvan die rook opstyg vir ewig en ewig, welke poel van vuur en swael eindelose pyniging is.

11 O, dan, my geliefde broers, bekeer julle, en gaan in by die eng poort, en volhard in die weg wat smal is, totdat julle die ewige lewe sal verkry.

12 O wees wys; wat kan ek meer sê?

13 Eindelijk, ek sê vir julle vaarwel, totdat ek julle sal ontmoet voor die aangename regbank van God, welke regbank die goddelose tref met vreeslike angs en vrees. Amen.

Know ye not that if ye will do these things, that the power of the redemption and the resurrection, which is in Christ, will bring you to stand with shame and awful guilt before the bar of God?

And according to the power of justice, for justice cannot be denied, ye must go away into that lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever, which lake of fire and brimstone is endless torment.

O then, my beloved brethren, repent ye, and enter in at the strait gate, and continue in the way which is narrow, until ye shall obtain eternal life.

O be wise; what can I say more?

Finally, I bid you farewell, until I shall meet you before the pleasing bar of God, which bar striketh the wicked with awful dread and fear. Amen.

Jakob 7

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat nadat etlike jare verbygegaan het, het daar 'n man gekom onder die volk van Nefi, wie se naam Sjerem was.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat hy begin preek het onder die volk, om aan hulle te verklaar dat daar geen Christus sou wees nie. En hy het baie dinge gepreek wat vleierend vir die volk was; en dit het hy gedoen dat hy die leer van Christus omver mag werp.
- 3 En hy het ywerig gearbei dat hy die harte van die volk mag weglei; in soverre dat hy baie harte weggelei het; en hy, wetende dat ek, Jakob, geloof gehad het in Christus wat sou kom, het hy vele geleenthede gesoek dat hy na my mag kom.
- 4 En hy was geleerd, sodat hy 'n volmaakte kennis gehad het van die taal van die volk; daarom kon hy baie vleitaal gebruik, en baie oorredingsvermoë, volgens die mag van die duiwel.
- 5 En hy het hoop gehad om my te skud van die geloof, desnieteenstaande die baie openbarings en die baie dinge wat ek gesien het aangaande hierdie dinge; want ek het waarlik engele gesien, en hulle het my gedien. En ook het ek die stem van die Here gehoor wat letterlik met my gespreek het, van tyd tot tyd; daarom kon ek nie gekud word nie.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat hy na my toe gekom het, en volgens hierdie wyse het hy met my gespreek, en gesê: Broer Jakob, ek het vele geleenthede gesoek dat ek met jou mag spreek; want ek het gehoor en weet ook dat jy baie rondgaan, en dit preek wat jy die ewangelie noem, of die leer van Christus.
- 7 En jy het baie van hierdie volk weggelei dat hulle die regte weg van God verdraai, en nie die wet van Moses onderhou, wat die regte weg is nie; en verander die wet van Moses tot die aanbidding van 'n wese wat jy sê oor honderde jare sal kom. En nou kyk, ek, Sjerem, verklaar aan jou dat dit godslastering is; want geen mens weet van sulke dinge nie; want hy kan nie sê van toekomstige dinge nie. En volgens hierdie wyse het Sjerem teen my gestry.
- 8 Maar kyk, die Here God het sy Gees in my siel ingestort, in soverre dat ek hom beskaam het in al sy woorde.

Jacob 7

And now it came to pass after some years had passed away, there came a man among the people of Nephi, whose name was Sherem.

And it came to pass that he began to preach among the people, and to declare unto them that there should be no Christ. And he preached many things which were flattering unto the people; and this he did that he might overthrow the doctrine of Christ.

And he labored diligently that he might lead away the hearts of the people, insomuch that he did lead away many hearts; and he knowing that I, Jacob, had faith in Christ who should come, he sought much opportunity that he might come unto me.

And he was learned, that he had a perfect knowledge of the language of the people; wherefore, he could use much flattery, and much power of speech, according to the power of the devil.

And he had hope to shake me from the faith, notwithstanding the many revelations and the many things which I had seen concerning these things; for I truly had seen angels, and they had ministered unto me. And also, I had heard the voice of the Lord speaking unto me in very word, from time to time; wherefore, I could not be shaken.

And it came to pass that he came unto me, and on this wise did he speak unto me, saying: Brother Jacob, I have sought much opportunity that I might speak unto you; for I have heard and also know that thou goest about much, preaching that which ye call the gospel, or the doctrine of Christ.

And ye have led away much of this people that they pervert the right way of God, and keep not the law of Moses which is the right way; and convert the law of Moses into the worship of a being which ye say shall come many hundred years hence. And now behold, I, Sherem, declare unto you that this is blasphemy; for no man knoweth of such things; for he cannot tell of things to come. And after this manner did Sherem contend against me.

But behold, the Lord God poured in his Spirit into my soul, insomuch that I did confound him in all his words.

- 9 En ek het aan hom gesê: Loën jy die Christus wat sal kom? En hy het gesê: As daar 'n Christus sou wees, sou ek Hom nie loën nie; maar ek weet dat daar geen Christus is, nóg was, nóg ooit sal wees.
- 10 En ek het aan hom gesê: Glo jy die skrifte? En hy het gesê, Ja.
- 11 En ek sê vir hom: Dan begryp jy hulle nie; want hulle getuig waarlik van Christus. Kyk, ek sê vir jou dat nie een van die profete geskryf het, nóg geprofeeteer het, behalwe dat hulle gespreek het aangaande hierdie Christus.
- 12 En dit is nie al nie—dit is aan my geopenbaar, want ek het gehoor en gesien; en dit is ook aan my geopenbaar deur die krag van die Heilige Gees; daarom, ek weet dat as daar geen versoening gemaak sal word nie, moet die hele mensdom verlore gaan.
- 13 En dit het gebeur dat hy aan my gesê het: Wys vir my 'n teken deur hierdie mag van die Heilige Gees, waardeur jy soveel weet.
- 14 En ek het aan hom gesê: Wat is ek dat ek God sou versoek om aan jou 'n teken te toon van die ding wat jy weet waar is? Tog sal jy dit ontken, omdat jy van die duiwel is. Nogtans, nie my wil geskied nie; maar as God jou sal slaan, laat dit 'n teken vir jou wees dat Hy mag het, beide in die hemel en op aarde; en ook, dat Christus sal kom. En u wil, o Here, geskied, en nie myne nie.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat toe ek, Jakob, hierdie woorde gespreek het, het die mag van die Here op hom gekom, in soverre dat hy neergeval het op die aarde. En dit het gebeur dat hy gevoed is vir 'n tydperk van baie dae.
- 16 En dit het gebeur dat hy aan die volk gesê het: Kom môre bymekaar, want ek sal sterwe; daarom, ek begeer om met die volk te spreek voordat ek sal sterwe.
- 17 En dit het gebeur dat die volgende dag die skare bymekaar gekom het; en hy het duidelik met hulle gespreek en die dinge herroep wat hy hulle geleer het, en die Christus bely, en die mag van die Heilige Gees, en die bediening van engele.

And I said unto him: Deniest thou the Christ who shall come? And he said: If there should be a Christ, I would not deny him; but I know that there is no Christ, neither has been, nor ever will be.

And I said unto him: Believest thou the scriptures? And he said, Yea.

And I said unto him: Then ye do not understand them; for they truly testify of Christ. Behold, I say unto you that none of the prophets have written, nor prophesied, save they have spoken concerning this Christ.

And this is not all—it has been made manifest unto me, for I have heard and seen; and it also has been made manifest unto me by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, I know if there should be no atonement made all mankind must be lost.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Show me a sign by this power of the Holy Ghost, in the which ye know so much.

And I said unto him: What am I that I should tempt God to show unto thee a sign in the thing which thou knowest to be true? Yet thou wilt deny it, because thou art of the devil. Nevertheless, not my will be done; but if God shall smite thee, let that be a sign unto thee that he has power, both in heaven and in earth; and also, that Christ shall come. And thy will, O Lord, be done, and not mine.

And it came to pass that when I, Jacob, had spoken these words, the power of the Lord came upon him, insomuch that he fell to the earth. And it came to pass that he was nourished for the space of many days.

And it came to pass that he said unto the people: Gather together on the morrow, for I shall die; wherefore, I desire to speak unto the people before I shall die.

And it came to pass that on the morrow the multitude were gathered together; and he spake plainly unto them and denied the things which he had taught them, and confessed the Christ, and the power of the Holy Ghost, and the ministering of angels.

18 En hy het duidelik gespreek met hulle, dat hy bedrieg was deur die mag van die duiwel. En hy het gespreek van die hel, en van ewigheid en van ewige straf.

19 En hy het gesê: Ek vrees dat ek die onvergeeflike sonde gepleeg het, want ek het vir God gelieg; want ek het die Christus geloën, en gesê dat ek die skrifture glo; en hulle getuig waarlik van Hom. En omdat ek sodoende vir God gelieg het, vrees ek grootliks dat my toestand vreeslik sal wees; maar ek bely voor God.

20 En dit het gebeur dat toe hy hierdie woorde gesê het, kon hy nie meer sê nie, en hy het die gees gegee.

21 En toe die skare aanskou het dat hy hierdie dinge gespreek het terwyl hy op die punt gestaan het om die gees te gee, was hulle uitermate verbaas; in soverre dat die krag van God neergekom het op hulle, en hulle is oorweldig sodat hulle op die aarde neergeval het.

22 Nou, hierdie ding was verblydend vir my, Jakob, want ek het dit versoek van my Vader wat in die hemel is; want Hy het my geroep gehoor en my gebed verhoor.

23 En dit het gebeur dat vrede en die liefde van God weer herstel is onder die volk; en hulle het die skrifture ondersoek, en het nie meer ag geslaan op die woorde van hierdie bose man nie.

24 En dit het gebeur dat baie middele bedink is om die Lamaniete terug te bring en te herstel tot die kennis van die waarheid; maar dit alles was tevergeefs, want hulle het behae geskep in oorloë en bloedvergieting, en hulle het 'n ewige haat gehad teenoor ons, hulle broers. En hulle het gesoek om ons deur die mag van hulle wapens voortdurend te vernietig.

25 Daarom, die volk van Nephi het hulle versterk teen hulle met hul wapens, en met al hulle mag, vertrouwend op die God en rots van hulle heil; daarom was hulle steeds oorwinnaars van hul vyande.

And he spake plainly unto them, that he had been deceived by the power of the devil. And he spake of hell, and of eternity, and of eternal punishment.

And he said: I fear lest I have committed the unpardonable sin, for I have lied unto God; for I denied the Christ, and said that I believed the scriptures; and they truly testify of him. And because I have thus lied unto God I greatly fear lest my case shall be awful; but I confess unto God.

And it came to pass that when he had said these words he could say no more, and he gave up the ghost.

And when the multitude had witnessed that he spake these things as he was about to give up the ghost, they were astonished exceedingly; insomuch that the power of God came down upon them, and they were overcome that they fell to the earth.

Now, this thing was pleasing unto me, Jacob, for I had requested it of my Father who was in heaven; for he had heard my cry and answered my prayer.

And it came to pass that peace and the love of God was restored again among the people; and they searched the scriptures, and hearkened no more to the words of this wicked man.

And it came to pass that many means were devised to reclaim and restore the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; but it all was vain, for they delighted in wars and bloodshed, and they had an eternal hatred against us, their brethren. And they sought by the power of their arms to destroy us continually.

Wherefore, the people of Nephi did fortify against them with their arms, and with all their might, trusting in the God and rock of their salvation; wherefore, they became as yet, conquerors of their enemies.

26 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Jakob, begin het om oud te word; en omdat die kronieke van hierdie volk bygehou word op die ander plate van Nephi, daarom sluit ek hierdie kroniek af, en verklaar dat ek geskryf het volgens die beste van my kennis, deur te sê dat die tyd met ons verbygegaan het, en ook ons lewens het verbygegaan asof dit vir ons soos 'n droom was, ons wat 'n eensame en ernstige volk is, swerwers, uitgewerp uit Jerusalem, gebore in beproewing, in 'n wildernis, en gehaat deur ons broers, wat oorloë en twiste veroorsaak het; daarom het ons al ons dae in rou deurgebring.

27 En ek, Jakob, het gesien dat ek spoedig moes afgaan na my graf; daarom, ek het aan my seun Enos gesê: Neem hierdie plate. En ek het hom vertel van die dinge wat my broer Nephi my beveel het, en hy het gehoorsaamheid belowe aan die bevel. En ek maak 'n einde aan my skrywe op hierdie plate, welke skrywe klein was; en aan die leser sê ek vaarwel, terwyl ek hoop dat baie van my broers my woorde mag lees. Broers, vaarwel.

And it came to pass that I, Jacob, began to be old; and the record of this people being kept on the other plates of Nephi, wherefore, I conclude this record, declaring that I have written according to the best of my knowledge, by saying that the time passed away with us, and also our lives passed away like as it were unto us a dream, we being a lonesome and a solemn people, wanderers, cast out from Jerusalem, born in tribulation, in a wilderness, and hated of our brethren, which caused wars and contentions; wherefore, we did mourn out our days.

And I, Jacob, saw that I must soon go down to my grave; wherefore, I said unto my son Enos: Take these plates. And I told him the things which my brother Nephi had commanded me, and he promised obedience unto the commands. And I make an end of my writing upon these plates, which writing has been small; and to the reader I bid farewell, hoping that many of my brethren may read my words. Brethren, adieu.

Die Boek van Enos

- 1 Kyk, dit het gebeur dat ek Enos, wetende dat my vader 'n opregte man was—want hy het my geleer in sy taal, en ook in die onderwysing en vermaning van die Here—en prys die Naam van my God daarvoor—
- 2 En ek sal julle vertel van die worsteling wat ek voor God gehad het, voordat ek vergifnis van my sondes ontvang het.
- 3 Kyk, ek het gegaan om wilde diere in die woude te jag; en die woorde wat ek my vader dikwels hoor spreek het aangaande die ewige lewe, en die vreugde van die heiliges, het diep in my hart ingesink.
- 4 En my siel het gehonger; en ek het neergekniel voor my Maker, en ek het tot Hom geroep in magtige gebed en smeking vir my eie siel; en die hele dag lank het ek tot Hom geroep; ja, en toe die nag kom, het ek steeds my stem hoog verhef sodat dit die hemele bereik het.
- 5 En daar het 'n stem na my gekom, wat sê: Enos, jou sondes is jou vergewe, en jy sal geseën word.
- 6 En ek, Enos, het geweet dat God nie kon lieg nie; daarom, my skuld is weggevee.
- 7 En ek het gesê: Here, hoe word dit gedoen?
- 8 En Hy het aan my gesê: Vanweë jou geloof in Christus, wie jy nooit tevore gehoor of gesien het nie. En baie jare gaan verby voordat Hy Hom sal openbaar in die vlees; daarom, gaan heen, jou geloof het jou gereinig.
- 9 Nou, dit het gebeur dat toe ek hierdie woorde gehoor het, het ek 'n begeerte begin voel vir die welsyn van my broers, die Nefiete; daarom het ek my hele siel uitgestort tot God vir hulle.
- 10 En terwyl ek aldus geworstel het in die gees, kyk, die stem van die Here het weer in my verstand gekom, en gesê: Ek sal jou broers besoek volgens hulle ywer om my geboorte te onderhou. Ek het aan hulle hierdie land gegee, en dit is 'n heilige land; en Ek vervloek dit nie behalwe as dit oor ongeregtheid is; daarom, Ek sal jou broers besoek volgens wat Ek gesê het; en hulle oortredings sal Ek neerbring met droefheid op hulle eie hoofde.

The Book of Enos

Behold, it came to pass that I, Enos, knowing my father that he was a just man—for he taught me in his language, and also in the nurture and admonition of the Lord—and blessed be the name of my God for it—

And I will tell you of the wrestle which I had before God, before I received a remission of my sins.

Behold, I went to hunt beasts in the forests; and the words which I had often heard my father speak concerning eternal life, and the joy of the saints, sunk deep into my heart.

And my soul hungered; and I kneeled down before my Maker, and I cried unto him in mighty prayer and supplication for mine own soul; and all the day long did I cry unto him; yea, and when the night came I did still raise my voice high that it reached the heavens.

And there came a voice unto me, saying: Enos, thy sins are forgiven thee, and thou shalt be blessed.

And I, Enos, knew that God could not lie; wherefore, my guilt was swept away.

And I said: Lord, how is it done?

And he said unto me: Because of thy faith in Christ, whom thou hast never before heard nor seen. And many years pass away before he shall manifest himself in the flesh; wherefore, go to, thy faith hath made thee whole.

Now, it came to pass that when I had heard these words I began to feel a desire for the welfare of my brethren, the Nephites; wherefore, I did pour out my whole soul unto God for them.

And while I was thus struggling in the spirit, behold, the voice of the Lord came into my mind again, saying: I will visit thy brethren according to their diligence in keeping my commandments. I have given unto them this land, and it is a holy land; and I curse it not save it be for the cause of iniquity; wherefore, I will visit thy brethren according as I have said; and their transgressions will I bring down with sorrow upon their own heads.

- 11 En nadat ek, Enos, hierdie woorde gehoor het, het my geloof onwankelbaar begin word in die Here; en ek het tot Hom gebid met baie lange worstelinge vir my broers, die Lamaniete.
- 12 En dit het gebeur dat nadat ek gebid en met alle ywer gearbei het, het die Here aan my gesê: Ek sal aan jou gee volgens jou begeertes, vanweë jou geloof.
- 13 En nou kyk, dit was die begeerte wat ek van Hom begeer het—dat as dit so sou wees, dat my volk, die Nefiete, in oortreding sou verval, en op enige wyse vernietig sou word, en die Lamaniete nie vernietig sou word nie, dat die Here God ’n kroniek sou bewaar van my volk, die Nefiete; selfs as dit so is deur die krag van sy heilige arm sodat dit voortgebring mag word op een of ander toekomstige dag aan die Lamaniete, dat, miskien, hulle tot heil gebring mag word—
- 14 Want op die huidige was ons stryd tevergeefs om hulle tot die ware geloof te herstel. En hulle het in hul toorn gesweer dat, as dit moontlik was, hulle ons kronieke en ons sou vernietig, en ook al die oorlewings van ons vaders.
- 15 Daarom, ek, wetende dat die Here God in staat was om ons kronieke te bewaar, het ek voortdurend tot Hom geroep, want Hy het aan my gesê: Watter ding jy ook al in geloof sal vra, en glo dat jy sal ontvang in die naam van Christus, jy dit sal ontvang.
- 16 En ek het geloof gehad, en ek het geroep tot God dat Hy die kronieke moes bewaar; en Hy het met my ’n verbond gesluit dat Hy hulle sou voortbring na die Lamaniete in sy eie bepaalde tyd.
- 17 En ek, Enos, het geweet dat dit sou wees volgens die verbond wat Hy gesluit het; daarom het my siel gerus.
- 18 En die Here het aan my gesê: Jou vaders het ook hierdie ding van My verlang; en dit sal aan hulle gedoen word volgens hulle geloof; want hulle geloof was soos joune.
- 19 En nou het dit gebeur dat ek, Enos, rondgegaan het onder die volk van Nepi, en geprofeteer het van die dinge wat sou kom, en getuig het van die dinge wat ek gehoor en gesien het.

And after I, Enos, had heard these words, my faith began to be unshaken in the Lord; and I prayed unto him with many long strugglings for my brethren, the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that after I had prayed and labored with all diligence, the Lord said unto me: I will grant unto thee according to thy desires, because of thy faith.

And now behold, this was the desire which I desired of him—that if it should so be, that my people, the Nephites, should fall into transgression, and by any means be destroyed, and the Lamanites should not be destroyed, that the Lord God would preserve a record of my people, the Nephites; even if it so be by the power of his holy arm, that it might be brought forth at some future day unto the Lamanites, that, perhaps, they might be brought unto salvation—

For at the present our strugglings were vain in restoring them to the true faith. And they swore in their wrath that, if it were possible, they would destroy our records and us, and also all the traditions of our fathers.

Wherefore, I knowing that the Lord God was able to preserve our records, I cried unto him continually, for he had said unto me: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask in faith, believing that ye shall receive in the name of Christ, ye shall receive it.

And I had faith, and I did cry unto God that he would preserve the records; and he covenanted with me that he would bring them forth unto the Lamanites in his own due time.

And I, Enos, knew it would be according to the covenant which he had made; wherefore my soul did rest.

And the Lord said unto me: Thy fathers have also required of me this thing; and it shall be done unto them according to their faith; for their faith was like unto thine.

And now it came to pass that I, Enos, went about among the people of Nephi, prophesying of things to come, and testifying of the things which I had heard and seen.

20 En ek lewer getuienis dat die volk van Nephi ywerig gesoek het om die Lamaniete te herstel tot die ware geloof in God. Maar ons arbeid was tevergeefs; hulle haat was gevestig en hulle is gelei deur hul bose geaardheid dat hulle wild, en wreed, en 'n bloeddorstige volk geword het, vol afgodery en vieslikheid; en hul gevoed het met roofdiere; en in tente gewoon het, en rondgeswerwe het in die wildernis met 'n kort velgord om hulle lendene en hulle hoofde geskeer; en hulle vaardigheid was in die boog, en in die sabel, en die byl. En baie van hulle het niks geëet behalwe rou vleis nie; en hulle het voortdurend gesoek om ons te vernietig.

21 En dit het gebeur dat die volk van Nephi die land bewerk het, en allerhande soorte graan gekweek het, en vrugte, en kuddes vee, en kuddes van allerhande soorte beeste, en bokke, en wilde bokke, en ook baie perde.

22 En daar was uitermate baie profete onder ons. En die volk was 'n hardnekkige volk, traag van begrip.

23 En daar was niks behalwe uitermate onaangenaamheid, prediking en voorspelling van oorloë, en twiste, en vernietigings, en om hulle voortdurend te herinner aan die dood en die duur van die ewigheid, en die oordele en krag van God, en al hierdie dinge—om hulle voortdurend aan te spoor om hulle te hou in die vrees van die Here. Ek sê daar was niks behalwe hierdie dinge, en uitermate groot duidelikheid van spraak, wat hulle sou verhoed om spoedig in vernietiging af te daal nie. En volgens hierdie wyse skryf ek aangaande hulle.

24 En ek het oorloë tussen die Nefiete en Lamaniete gesien in die loop van my dae.

25 En dit het gebeur dat ek begin oud word het, en 'n honderd nege en sewentig jaar het verbygegaan vanaf die tyd dat ons vader Lehi Jerusalem verlaat het.

26 En ek het gesien dat ek weldra na my graf moes afdaal, nadat die krag van God op my ingewerk het dat ek moet preek en profeteer tot hierdie volk, en die woord verkondig volgens die waarheid wat in Christus is. En ek het dit verkondig in al my dae, en my daarin verbly bo dit van die wêreld.

And I bear record that the people of Nephi did seek diligently to restore the Lamanites unto the true faith in God. But our labors were vain; their hatred was fixed, and they were led by their evil nature that they became wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, full of idolatry and filthiness; feeding upon beasts of prey; dwelling in tents, and wandering about in the wilderness with a short skin girdle about their loins and their heads shaven; and their skill was in the bow, and in the cimeter, and the ax. And many of them did eat nothing save it was raw meat; and they were continually seeking to destroy us.

And it came to pass that the people of Nephi did till the land, and raise all manner of grain, and of fruit, and flocks of herds, and flocks of all manner of cattle of every kind, and goats, and wild goats, and also many horses.

And there were exceedingly many prophets among us. And the people were a stiffnecked people, hard to understand.

And there was nothing save it was exceeding harshness, preaching and prophesying of wars, and contentions, and destructions, and continually reminding them of death, and the duration of eternity, and the judgments and the power of God, and all these things—stirring them up continually to keep them in the fear of the Lord. I say there was nothing short of these things, and exceedingly great plainness of speech, would keep them from going down speedily to destruction. And after this manner do I write concerning them.

And I saw wars between the Nephites and Lamanites in the course of my days.

And it came to pass that I began to be old, and an hundred and seventy and nine years had passed away from the time that our father Lehi left Jerusalem.

And I saw that I must soon go down to my grave, having been wrought upon by the power of God that I must preach and prophesy unto this people, and declare the word according to the truth which is in Christ. And I have declared it in all my days, and have rejoiced in it above that of the world.

27 En ek gaan weldra na die plek van my rus, wat by my Verlosser is; want ek weet dat ek in Hom sal rus. En ek verbly my in die dag wanneer my verganklike met onverganklikheid bekleed sal word, en voor Hom sal staan; dan sal ek sy aangesig met vreugde sien, en Hy sal aan my sê: Kom na My toe, jou geseënde, daar is 'n plek berei vir jou in die wonings van my Vader. Amen.

And I soon go to the place of my rest, which is with my Redeemer; for I know that in him I shall rest. And I rejoice in the day when my mortal shall put on immortality, and shall stand before him; then shall I see his face with pleasure, and he will say unto me: Come unto me, ye blessed, there is a place prepared for you in the mansions of my Father. Amen.

Die Boek van Jarom

- 1 Nou kyk, ek, Jarom, skryf 'n paar woorde volgens die bevel van my vader, Enos, dat ons geslagsregister bygehou mag word.
- 2 En aangesien hierdie plate klein is, en aangesien hierdie dinge geskrywe word ter wille van die voordeel van ons broers die Lamaniete, daarom, dit moet noodwendig wees dat ek min skryf; maar ek sal nie die dinge skryf aangaande my profeterings, nóg van my openbaringe. Want wat kon ek meer skryf as wat my vaders geskrywe het? Want het hulle nie die heilsplan geopenbaar nie? Ek sê vir julle, Ja; en dit is genoeg vir my.
- 3 Kyk, dit is noodsaaklik dat baie gedoen moet word onder hierdie volk, vanweë die hardheid van hulle harte, en die doofheid van hulle ore, en die blindheid van hulle verstand, en die styfheid van hulle nekke; nietemin, God is uitermate barmhartig teenoor hulle, en het hulle nog nie weggevee van die aangesig van die land nie.
- 4 En daar is baie onder ons wat baie openbaringe het, want hulle is nie almal hardnekkig nie. En soveel as wat nie hardnekkig is nie en geloof het, het gemeenskap met die Heilige Gees, wat openbaring gee aan die kinders van mense, volgens hulle geloof.
- 5 En nou kyk, tweehonderd jaar het verbygegaan, en die volk van Nephi het sterk geword in die land. Hulle het daarop gelet om die wet van Moses te onderhou en om die sabbatdag te heilig tot die Here. En hulle het nie gevloek nie; nóg het hulle God gelaster. En die wette van die land was uitermate streng.
- 6 En hulle was versprei oor 'n groot deel van die aangesig van die land, en die Lamaniete ook. En hulle was uitermate meer talryk as hulle van die Nefiete; en hulle het graag gemoor en het die bloed van diere gedrink.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat hulle baie keer teen ons, die Nefiete, gekom het om te veg. Maar ons konings en ons leiers was magtige manne in die geloof van die Here; en hulle het die volk die weë van die Here geleer; daarom, ons het die Lamaniete weerstaan en hulle weggevee uit ons lande, en begin om ons stede te versterk, of watter plek ook al van ons erfenis.

The Book of Jarom

Now behold, I, Jarom, write a few words according to the commandment of my father, Enos, that our genealogy may be kept.

And as these plates are small, and as these things are written for the intent of the benefit of our brethren the Lamanites, wherefore, it must needs be that I write a little; but I shall not write the things of my prophesying, nor of my revelations. For what could I write more than my fathers have written? For have not they revealed the plan of salvation? I say unto you, Yea; and this sufficeth me.

Behold, it is expedient that much should be done among this people, because of the hardness of their hearts, and the deafness of their ears, and the blindness of their minds, and the stiffness of their necks; nevertheless, God is exceedingly merciful unto them, and has not as yet swept them off from the face of the land.

And there are many among us who have many revelations, for they are not all stiffnecked. And as many as are not stiffnecked and have faith, have communion with the Holy Spirit, which maketh manifest unto the children of men, according to their faith.

And now, behold, two hundred years had passed away, and the people of Nephi had waxed strong in the land. They observed to keep the law of Moses and the sabbath day holy unto the Lord. And they profaned not; neither did they blaspheme. And the laws of the land were exceedingly strict.

And they were scattered upon much of the face of the land, and the Lamanites also. And they were exceedingly more numerous than were they of the Nephites; and they loved murder and would drink the blood of beasts.

And it came to pass that they came many times against us, the Nephites, to battle. But our kings and our leaders were mighty men in the faith of the Lord; and they taught the people the ways of the Lord; wherefore, we withstood the Lamanites and swept them away out of our lands, and began to fortify our cities, or whatsoever place of our inheritance.

- 8 En ons het uitermate vermenigvuldig, en het versprei oor die aangesig van die land, en het uitermate ryk geword in goud, en in silwer, en in kosbare dinge, en in fyn vakmanskap van hout, in geboue, en in werktuie, en ook in yster en koper, en brons en staal, en het allerhande gereedskap gemaak van elke soort om die grond te bewerk, en wapens van oorlog—ja, die skerpgepunte pyl, en die koker, en die pyl, en die spies, en alle voorbereidsels vir oorlog.
- 9 En omdat ons aldus so voorbereid was om die Lamaniete te ontmoet, het hulle nie sukses behaal teen ons nie. Maar die woord van die Here is bewaarheid, wat Hy met ons vaders gespreek het, en gesê het dat: In soverre julle my gebooie sal onderhou, sal julle voorspoedig wees in die land.
- 10 En dit het gebeur dat die profete van die Here die volk van Nephi gewaarsku het volgens die woord van God, dat as hulle die gebooie nie onderhou nie, maar sou verval in oortreding, hulle vernietig sou word vanaf die aangesig van die land.
- 11 Daarom, die profete, en die priesters, en die leerars, het ywerig gearbei en met alle lankmoedigheid die volk aangemoedig tot ywer; en die wet van Moses onderrig en die doel waarvoor dit gegee is; en hulle oorreed om uit te sien na die Messias, en om in Hom te glo wat moet kom asof Hy alreeds was. En volgens hierdie wyse het hulle hul geleer.
- 12 En dit het gebeur dat deur dit so te doen, het hulle voorkom dat hulle vernietig word van die aangesig van die land; want hulle het hul harte geprik met die woord, en hulle voortdurend aangespoor tot bekering.
- 13 En dit het gebeur dat tweehonderd agt en dertig jaar verbygegaan het—en daar was oorloë en twiste en onenighede vir 'n groot deel van die tyd.
- 14 En ek, Jarom, skryf nie meer nie, want die plate is klein. Maar kyk, my broers, julle kan na die ander plate van Nephi gaan; want kyk, op hulle is die kronieke van ons oorloë gegraveer, volgens die geskrifte van die konings, of dié wat hulle laat skryf het.
- 15 En ek oorhandig hierdie plate in die hande van my seun Omni, sodat hulle bygehou mag word volgens die bevele van my vaders.

And we multiplied exceedingly, and spread upon the face of the land, and became exceedingly rich in gold, and in silver, and in precious things, and in fine workmanship of wood, in buildings, and in machinery, and also in iron and copper, and brass and steel, making all manner of tools of every kind to till the ground, and weapons of war—yea, the sharp pointed arrow, and the quiver, and the dart, and the javelin, and all preparations for war.

And thus being prepared to meet the Lamanites, they did not prosper against us. But the word of the Lord was verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that the prophets of the Lord did threaten the people of Nephi, according to the word of God, that if they did not keep the commandments, but should fall into transgression, they should be destroyed from off the face of the land.

Wherefore, the prophets, and the priests, and the teachers, did labor diligently, exhorting with all long-suffering the people to diligence; teaching the law of Moses, and the intent for which it was given; persuading them to look forward unto the Messiah, and believe in him to come as though he already was. And after this manner did they teach them.

And it came to pass that by so doing they kept them from being destroyed upon the face of the land; for they did prick their hearts with the word, continually stirring them up unto repentance.

And it came to pass that two hundred and thirty and eight years had passed away—after the manner of wars, and contentions, and dissensions, for the space of much of the time.

And I, Jarom, do not write more, for the plates are small. But behold, my brethren, ye can go to the other plates of Nephi; for behold, upon them the records of our wars are engraven, according to the writings of the kings, or those which they caused to be written.

And I deliver these plates into the hands of my son Omni, that they may be kept according to the commandments of my fathers.

Die Boek van Omni

- 1 Kyk, dit het gebeur dat ek, Omni, deur my vader Jarom beveel is, dat ek ietwat moet skryf op hierdie plate, om ons geslagsregister in stand te hou—
- 2 Daarom, in my dae, wil ek hê dat julle moet weet dat ek baie met die swaard geveg het om te voorkom dat my volk, die Nefiete, in die hande val van hulle vyande, die Lamaniete. Maar kyk, ek is 'n sondige man, en ek het nie die insettinge en die gebooie van die Here onderhou soos ek moes gedoen het nie.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat tweehonderd ses en sewentig jaar verbygegaan het, en ons het baie tydperke van vrede gehad; en ons het baie tydperke van ernstige oorlog en bloedvergieting gehad. Ja, en kortom, tweehonderd twee en tagtig jaar het verbygegaan, en ek het hierdie plate bewaar volgens die bevele van my vaders; en ek het hulle oorgedra aan my seun Amaron. En ek maak 'n einde.
- 4 En nou ek, Amaron, skryf die dinge wat ek ook al skryf, wat min is, in die boek van my vader.
- 5 Kyk, dit het gebeur dat driehonderd en twintig jaar verbygegaan het, en die meer goddelose deel van die Nefiete is vernietig.
- 6 Want die Here wou nie toelaat, nadat Hy hulle uit die land Jerusalem uitgelei het en hulle behoed en bewaar het dat hulle nie in die hande van hulle vyande val nie, ja, Hy wou nie toelaat dat die woorde nie bewaarheid sou word nie, wat Hy met ons vaders gespreek, en gesê het dat: In soverre julle nie my gebooie sal onderhou nie, sal julle nie voorspoedig wees in die land nie.
- 7 Daarom, die Here het hulle besoek met groot oordeel; nogtans, Hy het die regverdiges gespaar sodat hulle nie sou sterwe nie, maar het hulle verlos uit die hande van hulle vyande.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat ek die plate oorgelewer het aan my broer Gémis.

The Book of Omni

Behold, it came to pass that I, Omni, being commanded by my father, Jarom, that I should write somewhat upon these plates, to preserve our genealogy—

Wherefore, in my days, I would that ye should know that I fought much with the sword to preserve my people, the Nephites, from falling into the hands of their enemies, the Lamanites. But behold, I of myself am a wicked man, and I have not kept the statutes and the commandments of the Lord as I ought to have done.

And it came to pass that two hundred and seventy and six years had passed away, and we had many seasons of peace; and we had many seasons of serious war and bloodshed. Yea, and in fine, two hundred and eighty and two years had passed away, and I had kept these plates according to the commandments of my fathers; and I conferred them upon my son Amaron. And I make an end.

And now I, Amaron, write the things whatsoever I write, which are few, in the book of my father.

Behold, it came to pass that three hundred and twenty years had passed away, and the more wicked part of the Nephites were destroyed.

For the Lord would not suffer, after he had led them out of the land of Jerusalem and kept and preserved them from falling into the hands of their enemies, yea, he would not suffer that the words should not be verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall not prosper in the land.

Wherefore, the Lord did visit them in great judgment; nevertheless, he did spare the righteous that they should not perish, but did deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

And it came to pass that I did deliver the plates unto my brother Chemish.

- 9 Nou ek, Gémis, skryf die paar dinge wat ek skrywe, in dieselfde boek as my broer; want kyk, ek het die laaste gesien wat hy geskrywe het, dat hy dit geskrywe het met sy eie hand; en hy het dit geskrywe op die dag waarop hy hulle aan my oorgelewer het. En volgens hierdie wyse hou ons die kronieke by, want dit is volgens die bevele van ons vaders. En ek maak 'n einde.
- 10 Kyk, ek, Abinadom, is die seun van Gémis. Kyk, dit het gebeur dat ek baie oorloë en twiste gesien het tussen my volk, die Nefiete, en die Lamaniete; en ek, met my eie swaard, het die lewens geneem van baie van die Lamaniete ter verdediging van my broers.
- 11 En kyk, die kroniek van hierdie volk is gegraveer op plate wat gehou is deur die konings, volgens die geslagte; en ek weet van geen openbaring behalwe dit wat geskrywe is, nóg profesie; daarom, dit wat voldoende is, is geskrywe. En ek maak 'n einde.
- 12 Kyk, ek is Amaleki, die seun van Abinadom. Kyk, ek sal ietwat spreek met julle aangaande Mosia, wat koning gemaak is oor die land Zarahemla; want kyk, hy is gewaarsku deur die Here dat hy moes vlug uit die land Nefi, en soveel as wat wou ag slaan op die stem van die Here moes ook vertrek uit die land saam met hom, die wildernis in—
- 13 En dit het gebeur dat hy gehandel het volgens wat die Here hom gebied het. En hulle het vertrek uit die land die wildernis in, soveel as wat wou ag slaan op die stem van die Here; en hulle is gelei deur baie predikings en profesieë. En hulle is voortdurend vermaan deur die woord van God; en hulle is gelei deur die krag van sy arm, deur die wildernis, totdat hulle afgekom het in die land wat genoem word die land Zarahemla.
- 14 En hulle het 'n volk ontdek, wat genoem is die volk van Zarahemla. Nou, daar was groot jubeling onder die volk van Zarahemla; en ook Zarahemla het uitermate gejubel, omdat die Here die volk van Mosia gestuur het met die plate van brons wat die kronieke van die Jode bevat het.

Now I, Chemish, write what few things I write, in the same book with my brother; for behold, I saw the last which he wrote, that he wrote it with his own hand; and he wrote it in the day that he delivered them unto me. And after this manner we keep the records, for it is according to the commandments of our fathers. And I make an end.

Behold, I, Abinadom, am the son of Chemish. Behold, it came to pass that I saw much war and contention between my people, the Nephites, and the Lamanites; and I, with my own sword, have taken the lives of many of the Lamanites in the defence of my brethren.

And behold, the record of this people is engraven upon plates which is had by the kings, according to the generations; and I know of no revelation save that which has been written, neither prophecy; wherefore, that which is sufficient is written. And I make an end.

Behold, I am Amaleki, the son of Abinadom. Behold, I will speak unto you somewhat concerning Mosiah, who was made king over the land of Zarahemla; for behold, he being warned of the Lord that he should flee out of the land of Nephi, and as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord should also depart out of the land with him, into the wilderness—

And it came to pass that he did according as the Lord had commanded him. And they departed out of the land into the wilderness, as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord; and they were led by many preachings and prophesyings. And they were admonished continually by the word of God; and they were led by the power of his arm, through the wilderness until they came down into the land which is called the land of Zarahemla.

And they discovered a people, who were called the people of Zarahemla. Now, there was great rejoicing among the people of Zarahemla; and also Zarahemla did rejoice exceedingly, because the Lord had sent the people of Mosiah with the plates of brass which contained the record of the Jews.

- 15 Kyk, dit het gebeur dat Mosia ontdek het dat die volk van Zarahemla uit Jerusalem gekom het in die tyd dat Sedekía, koning van Juda, gevange weggevoer is na Babilon.
- 16 En hulle het in die wildernis gereis, en is deur die hand van die Here gebring oor die groot waters, na die land waar Mosia hulle ontdek het; en hulle het daar gewoon van daardie tyd af.
- 17 En teen die tyd dat Mosia hulle ontdek het, het hulle uitermate talryk geword. Nogtans, hulle het baie oorloë gehad en ernstige twiste, en het deur die swaard geval van tyd tot tyd; en hul taal het verbaster geraak; en hulle het geen kronieke met hulle saamgebring nie; en hulle het die bestaan van hulle Skepper geloën; en Mosia, nóg die volk van Mosia, kon hulle verstaan.
- 18 Maar dit het gebeur dat Mosia opdrag gegee het dat hulle sy taal geleer moes word. En dit het gebeur dat nadat hulle die taal van Mosia geleer is, het Zarahemla 'n geslagsregister van sy vaders gegee, volgens sy geheue; en dit is geskrywe, maar nie op hierdie plate nie.
- 19 En dit het gebeur dat die volk van Zarahemla en van Mosia saam verenig het; en Mosia is aangestel om hulle koning te wees.
- 20 En dit het gebeur in die dae van Mosia is daar 'n groot klip na hom gebring met graverings daarop; en hy het die graverings vertolk deur die gawe en krag van God.
- 21 En hulle het 'n kroniek gegee van ene Coriantumr, en die gesneuweldes van sy volk. En Coriantumr is ontdek deur die volk van Zarahemla; en hy het by hulle gebly vir 'n tydperk van nege mane.
- 22 Dit het ook 'n paar woorde gespreek aangaande sy vaders. En sy eerste ouers het uitgekóm vanaf die tooring, in die tyd toe die Here die taal van die volk verwar het; en die felheid van die Here op hulle geval het volgens sy oordele, wat regverdig is; en hulle beendere lê versprei in die land noordwaarts.
- 23 Kyk, ek, Amaleki, is gebore in die dae van Mosia; en ek het gelewe om sy dood te sien; en Benjamin, sy seun, heers in sy plek.

Behold, it came to pass that Mosiah discovered that the people of Zarahemla came out from Jerusalem at the time that Zedekiah, king of Judah, was carried away captive into Babylon.

And they journeyed in the wilderness, and were brought by the hand of the Lord across the great waters, into the land where Mosiah discovered them; and they had dwelt there from that time forth.

And at the time that Mosiah discovered them, they had become exceedingly numerous. Nevertheless, they had had many wars and serious contentions, and had fallen by the sword from time to time; and their language had become corrupted; and they had brought no records with them; and they denied the being of their Creator; and Mosiah, nor the people of Mosiah, could understand them.

But it came to pass that Mosiah caused that they should be taught in his language. And it came to pass that after they were taught in the language of Mosiah, Zarahemla gave a genealogy of his fathers, according to his memory; and they are written, but not in these plates.

And it came to pass that the people of Zarahemla, and of Mosiah, did unite together; and Mosiah was appointed to be their king.

And it came to pass in the days of Mosiah, there was a large stone brought unto him with engravings on it; and he did interpret the engravings by the gift and power of God.

And they gave an account of one Coriantumr, and the slain of his people. And Coriantumr was discovered by the people of Zarahemla; and he dwelt with them for the space of nine moons.

It also spake a few words concerning his fathers. And his first parents came out from the tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people; and the severity of the Lord fell upon them according to his judgments, which are just; and their bones lay scattered in the land northward.

Behold, I, Amaleki, was born in the days of Mosiah; and I have lived to see his death; and Benjamin, his son, reigneth in his stead.

- 24 En kyk, ek het in die dae van koning Benjamin, 'n ernstige oorlog en baie bloedvergieting tussen die Nefiete en Lamaniete gesien. Maar kyk, die Nefiete het veel voorsprong oor hulle behaal; ja, in soverre dat koning Benjamin hulle uitgedryf het uit die land Zarahemla.
- 25 En dit het gebeur dat ek oud begin word het; en, omdat ek geen saad het nie, en omdat ek weet dat koning Benjamin 'n regverdige man is voor die Here, daarom, ek sal hierdie plate oorhandig aan hom, en alle mense vermaan om na God te kom, die Heilige Een van Israel, en te glo in profetering en in openbarings, en in die bediening van engele, en in die gawe om in tonge te spreek, en in die gawe om tale uit te lê, en in alle dinge wat goed is; want daar is niks wat goed is nie, behalwe as dit kom van die Here: en dit wat boos is kom van die duiwel.
- 26 En nou, my geliefde broers, ek wil hê dat julle tot Christus sal kom, wat die Heilige Een van Israel is, en deelagtig word aan sy heil, en die krag van sy verlossing. Ja, kom na Hom, en offer julle ganse siele as 'n offerande aan Hom, en hou aan met vas en gebed, en volhard tot die einde toe; en sowaar as die Here leef, julle sal gered word.
- 27 En nou wil ek ietwat spreek aangaande 'n sekere aantal wat opgegaan het in die wildernis om terug te keer na die land Nefi; want daar was 'n groot aantal wat begerig was om die land van hulle erfenis te besit.
- 28 Daarom, hulle het opgegaan in die wildernis. En hul leier was 'n sterk en magtige man, en 'n hardnekige man, daarom het hy 'n twis onder hulle veroorsaak; en hulle is almal in die wildernis gedood, behalwe vyftig, en hulle het weer teruggekeer na die land Zarahemla.
- 29 En dit het gebeur dat hulle ook ander geneem het wat 'n aansienlike aantal was, en weer hulle reis onderneem het in die wildernis.
- 30 En ek, Amaleki, het 'n broer gehad, wat ook saam met hulle gegaan het; en ek het sedertdien niks gehoor aangaande hulle nie. En ek is op die punt om my neer te lê in my graf; en hierdie plate is vol. En ek maak 'n einde aan my woorde.

And behold, I have seen, in the days of king Benjamin, a serious war and much bloodshed between the Nephites and the Lamanites. But behold, the Nephites did obtain much advantage over them; yea, insomuch that king Benjamin did drive them out of the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that I began to be old; and, having no seed, and knowing king Benjamin to be a just man before the Lord, wherefore, I shall deliver up these plates unto him, exhorting all men to come unto God, the Holy One of Israel, and believe in prophesying, and in revelations, and in the ministering of angels, and in the gift of speaking with tongues, and in the gift of interpreting languages, and in all things which are good; for there is nothing which is good save it comes from the Lord: and that which is evil cometh from the devil.

And now, my beloved brethren, I would that ye should come unto Christ, who is the Holy One of Israel, and partake of his salvation, and the power of his redemption. Yea, come unto him, and offer your whole souls as an offering unto him, and continue in fasting and praying, and endure to the end; and as the Lord liveth ye will be saved.

And now I would speak somewhat concerning a certain number who went up into the wilderness to return to the land of Nephi; for there was a large number who were desirous to possess the land of their inheritance.

Wherefore, they went up into the wilderness. And their leader being a strong and mighty man, and a stiffnecked man, wherefore he caused a contention among them; and they were all slain, save fifty, in the wilderness, and they returned again to the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that they also took others to a considerable number, and took their journey again into the wilderness.

And I, Amaleki, had a brother, who also went with them; and I have not since known concerning them. And I am about to lie down in my grave; and these plates are full. And I make an end of my speaking.

Die Woorde van Mormon

- 1 En nou ek, Mormon, is op die punt om die kroniek wat ek gemaak het, te oorhandig in die hande van my seun, Moroni, kyk, ek het bykans al die vernietiging van my volk, die Nefiete, gesien.
- 2 En dit is baie honderde jare na die koms van Christus dat ek hierdie kronieke oorhandig in die hande van my seun; en ek veronderstel dat hy getuie sal wees van die algehele vernietiging van my volk. Maar mag God gee dat hy hulle sal oorleef, sodat hy ietwat oor hulle mag skrywe, en ietwat aangaande Christus, dat dit miskien eendag tot hulle voordeel mag wees.
- 3 En nou, ek spreek ietwat aangaande dit wat ek geskrywe het; want nadat ek 'n verkorting gemaak het van die plate van Nefi, tot by die heerskappy van hierdie koning Benjamin, van wie Amaleki gespreek het, het ek gesoek onder die kronieke wat in my hande oorhandig is, en ek het hierdie plate gevind, wat hierdie kort kroniek bevat het van die profete, vanaf Jakob tot by die heerskappy van hierdie koning Benjamin, en ook baie van die woorde van Nefi.
- 4 En die dinge wat op hierdie plate is behaag my, vanweë die profesieë van die koms van Christus; en my vaders wat weet dat baie van hulle vervul is; ja, en ek weet ook dat soveel dinge as wat geprofeteer is aangaande ons tot op hierdie dag, vervul is, en soveel as wat verder gaan as hierdie dag, moet sekerlik gebeur—
- 5 Daarom, ek het hierdie dinge gekies om my kroniek met hulle te voltooi, welke oorblywende deel van my kroniek ek van die plate van Nefi sal neem; en ek kan nie die honderdste deel skryf van die dinge oor my volk nie.
- 6 Maar kyk, ek sal hierdie plate neem, wat hierdie profesieë en die openbaringe bevat, en hulle plaas by die oorblywende deel van my kroniek; want hulle is vir my kosbaar; en ek weet dat hulle vir my broers kosbaar sal wees.

The Words of Mormon

And now I, Mormon, being about to deliver up the record which I have been making into the hands of my son Moroni, behold I have witnessed almost all the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

And it is many hundred years after the coming of Christ that I deliver these records into the hands of my son; and it supposeth me that he will witness the entire destruction of my people. But may God grant that he may survive them, that he may write somewhat concerning them, and somewhat concerning Christ, that perhaps some day it may profit them.

And now, I speak somewhat concerning that which I have written; for after I had made an abridgment from the plates of Nephi, down to the reign of this king Benjamin, of whom Amaleki spake, I searched among the records which had been delivered into my hands, and I found these plates, which contained this small account of the prophets, from Jacob down to the reign of this king Benjamin, and also many of the words of Nephi.

And the things which are upon these plates pleasing me, because of the prophecies of the coming of Christ; and my fathers knowing that many of them have been fulfilled; yea, and I also know that as many things as have been prophesied concerning us down to this day have been fulfilled, and as many as go beyond this day must surely come to pass—

Wherefore, I chose these things, to finish my record upon them, which remainder of my record I shall take from the plates of Nephi; and I cannot write the hundredth part of the things of my people.

But behold, I shall take these plates, which contain these prophesyings and revelations, and put them with the remainder of my record, for they are choice unto me; and I know they will be choice unto my brethren.

- 7 En ek doen dit om 'n wyse rede; want so word dit vir my ingefluister, volgens die werkinge van die Gees van die Here wat in my is. En nou, ek weet nie alle dinge nie; maar die Here weet alle dinge wat sal kom; daarom, Hy werk in my om te handel volgens sy wil.
- 8 En my gebed tot God is aangaande my broers, dat hulle weer eens mag kom tot die kennis van God, ja, die verlossing van Christus; dat hulle weer eens 'n behaaglike volk mag wees.
- 9 En nou ek, Mormon, gaan voort om my kroniek te voltooi, wat ek neem van die plate van Nephi; en ek maak dit volgens die kennis en die begrip wat God my gegee het.
- 10 Daarom, dit het gebeur dat nadat Amaleki hierdie plate oorhandig het in die hande van koning Benjamin, het hy hulle geneem en hulle geplaas by die ander plate, wat kronieke bevat het wat deur die konings van geslag tot geslag oorhandig is, tot die dae van koning Benjamin.
- 11 En hulle is oorhandig deur koning Benjamin, van geslag tot geslag, totdat hulle in my hande gekom het. En ek, Mormon, bid tot God dat hulle bewaar mag word vanaf hierdie tyd. En ek weet dat hulle bewaar sal word; want daar is belangrike dinge op hulle geskrywe waaruit my volk en hulle broers geoordeel sal word op die groot en laaste dag, volgens die woord van God wat geskrywe is.
- 12 En nou, aangaande hierdie koning Benjamin—hy het ietwat onenighede gehad onder sy eie volk.
- 13 En dit het ook gebeur dat die leërs van die Lamaniete afgekom het uit die land Nephi, om teen sy volk te veg. Maar kyk, koning Benjamin het sy leërs versamel, en hy het teen hulle gestaan; en hy het met die krag van sy eie arm geveg, met die swaard van Laban.
- 14 En in die krag van die Here het hulle teen hulle vyande geveg, totdat hulle baie duisende van die Lamaniete gedood het. En dit het gebeur dat hulle teen die Lamaniete geveg het totdat hulle hul verdryf het uit al die lande van hul erfenis.

And I do this for a wise purpose; for thus it whispereth me, according to the workings of the Spirit of the Lord which is in me. And now, I do not know all things; but the Lord knoweth all things which are to come; wherefore, he worketh in me to do according to his will.

And my prayer to God is concerning my brethren, that they may once again come to the knowledge of God, yea, the redemption of Christ; that they may once again be a delightsome people.

And now I, Mormon, proceed to finish out my record, which I take from the plates of Nephi; and I make it according to the knowledge and the understanding which God has given me.

Wherefore, it came to pass that after Amaleki had delivered up these plates into the hands of king Benjamin, he took them and put them with the other plates, which contained records which had been handed down by the kings, from generation to generation until the days of king Benjamin.

And they were handed down from king Benjamin, from generation to generation until they have fallen into my hands. And I, Mormon, pray to God that they may be preserved from this time henceforth. And I know that they will be preserved; for there are great things written upon them, out of which my people and their brethren shall be judged at the great and last day, according to the word of God which is written.

And now, concerning this king Benjamin—he had somewhat of contentions among his own people.

And it came to pass also that the armies of the Lamanites came down out of the land of Nephi, to battle against his people. But behold, king Benjamin gathered together his armies, and he did stand against them; and he did fight with the strength of his own arm, with the sword of Laban.

And in the strength of the Lord they did contend against their enemies, until they had slain many thousands of the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did contend against the Lamanites until they had driven them out of all the lands of their inheritance.

15 En dit het gebeur dat nadat daar valse Christusse was, en hulle monde gesluit was en hulle gestraf is volgens hulle misdade;

16 En nadat daar valse profete was, en valse predikers en leraars onder die volk, en hulle almal gestraf is volgens hulle misdade; en nadat daar baie twis en baie afvalligheid na die Lamaniete toe was; kyk, dit het gebeur dat koning Benjamin, met die hulp van die heilige profete wat onder sy mense was—

17 Want kyk, koning Benjamin was 'n heilige man, en hy het geheers oor sy volk in regverdigheid; en daar was baie heilige manne in die land, en hulle het die woord van God gespreek met krag en gesag; en hulle het baie skerpheid gebruik vanweë die hardnekkigheid van die volk—

18 Daarom, met die hulp van hulle, het koning Benjamin, deur te arbeid met al die mag van sy liggaam en die vermoë van sy hele siel, en ook die profete, weer eens vrede gevestig in die land.

And it came to pass that after there had been false Christs, and their mouths had been shut, and they punished according to their crimes;

And after there had been false prophets, and false preachers and teachers among the people, and all these having been punished according to their crimes; and after there having been much contention and many dissensions away unto the Lamanites, behold, it came to pass that king Benjamin, with the assistance of the holy prophets who were among his people—

For behold, king Benjamin was a holy man, and he did reign over his people in righteousness; and there were many holy men in the land, and they did speak the word of God with power and with authority; and they did use much sharpness because of the stiffneckedness of the people—

Wherefore, with the help of these, king Benjamin, by laboring with all the might of his body and the faculty of his whole soul, and also the prophets, did once more establish peace in the land.

Die Boek van Mosia

Mosia 1

- 1 En nou was daar nie meer twiste in die hele land Zarahemla nie, onder al die volk wat aan koning Benjamin behoort het, sodat koning Benjamin voortdurende vrede gehad het gedurende al sy oorblywende dae.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat hy drie seuns gehad het; en hy het hulle name Mosia, en Helorum, en Helaman genoem. En hy het gesorg dat hulle geleer sou word in die volledige taal van sy vaders, sodat hulle daardeur manne van insig sou word; en sodat hulle mag weet aangaande die profesieë wat gespreek was by monde van hulle vaders, wat aan hulle gelewer is deur die hand van die Here.
- 3 En hy het hulle ook geleer aangaande die kronieke wat gegraveer is op die plate van brons, en gesê: My seuns, ek wil hê dat julle moet onthou dat as dit nie vir hierdie plate was nie, wat hierdie kronieke en hierdie gebooie bevat het, ons moes gely het in onkunde, en wel op hierdie huidige tyd, sonder om die verborgenhede van God te ken.
- 4 Want dit was nie moontlik dat ons vader, Lehi, al hierdie dinge kon onthou, om hulle te leer aan sy kinders, behalwe dat dit was deur die hulp van hierdie plate nie; omdat hy geleer is in die taal van die Egiptenare, daarom kon hy hierdie graverings lees, en hulle aan sy kinders leer, sodat hulle daardeur dit aan hulle kinders kon leer, en so die gebooie van God vervul, en wel tot op die huidige tyd.
- 5 Ek sê vir julle, my seuns, was dit nie vir hierdie dinge, wat behoue en bewaar is deur die hand van God, sodat ons mag lees en verstaan van sy verborgenhede nie, en sy gebooie gedurigdeur voor ons oë mag hê nie, sodat selfs ons vaders in ongeloof sou gekwyn het, en ons sou gewees het soos ons broers, die Lamaniete, wat niks weet aangaande hierdie dinge nie, of hulle selfs nie glo wanneer hulle dit geleer word nie, vanweë die oorlewerings van hulle vaders, wat nie juis is nie.

The Book of Mosiah

Mosiah 1

And now there was no more contention in all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who belonged to king Benjamin, so that king Benjamin had continual peace all the remainder of his days.

And it came to pass that he had three sons; and he called their names Mosiah, and Helorum, and Helaman. And he caused that they should be taught in all the language of his fathers, that thereby they might become men of understanding; and that they might know concerning the prophecies which had been spoken by the mouths of their fathers, which were delivered them by the hand of the Lord.

And he also taught them concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, saying: My sons, I would that ye should remember that were it not for these plates, which contain these records and these commandments, we must have suffered in ignorance, even at this present time, not knowing the mysteries of God.

For it were not possible that our father, Lehi, could have remembered all these things, to have taught them to his children, except it were for the help of these plates; for he having been taught in the language of the Egyptians therefore he could read these engravings, and teach them to his children, that thereby they could teach them to their children, and so fulfilling the commandments of God, even down to this present time.

I say unto you, my sons, were it not for these things, which have been kept and preserved by the hand of God, that we might read and understand of his mysteries, and have his commandments always before our eyes, that even our fathers would have dwindled in unbelief, and we should have been like unto our brethren, the Lamanites, who know nothing concerning these things, or even do not believe them when they are taught them, because of the traditions of their fathers, which are not correct.

- 6 O my seuns, ek wil hê dat julle moet onthou dat hierdie geskifte waar is, en ook dat hierdie kronieke waar is. En kyk, ook die plate van Nefi, wat die kronieke bevat en die geskifte van ons vaders vanaf die tyd dat hulle Jerusalem verlaat het, tot nou, en hulle is waar; en ons kan weet van hulle sekerheid omdat ons hulle voor ons oë het.
- 7 En nou, my seuns, ek wil hê dat julle moet onthou om hulle ywerig te ondersoek, dat julle daardeur mag baat; en ek wil hê dat julle die gebooie van God moet onderhou, sodat julle voorspoedig mag wees in die land volgens die beloftes wat die Here aan ons vaders gemaak het.
- 8 En baie meer dinge het koning Benjamin sy seuns geleer, wat nie geskrywe is in hierdie boek nie.
- 9 En dit het gebeur dat nadat koning Benjamin 'n einde gemaak het om sy seuns te onderrig, dat hy oud geword het, en hy het gesien dat hy baie gou die weg moes gaan van die hele aarde; daarom, hy het dit raadsaam geag dat hy die koninkryk moes oordra aan een van sy seuns.
- 10 Daarom, hy het Mosia voor hom laat bring; en hierdie is die woorde wat hy met hom gespreek, en gesê het: My seun, ek wil hê dat jy 'n aankondiging sal maak deur die hele land onder hierdie ganse volk, of die volk van Zarahemla, en die volk van Mosia wat in die land woon, sodat hulle daardeur bymekaargebring mag word; want môre sal ek aan hierdie my volk uit my eie mond aankondig dat jy 'n koning en heerser oor hierdie volk is, wat die Here onse God aan ons gegee het.
- 11 En bowendien, ek sal hierdie volk 'n naam gee, sodat hulle daardeur onderskei mag word bo al die volke wat die Here God uit die land Jerusalem gebring het; en dit doen ek omdat hulle 'n ywerige volk was om die gebooie van die Here te onderhou.
- 12 En ek gee aan hulle 'n naam wat nooit uitgewis sal word nie, behalwe as dit sal wees deur oortreding.

O my sons, I would that ye should remember that these sayings are true, and also that these records are true. And behold, also the plates of Nephi, which contain the records and the sayings of our fathers from the time they left Jerusalem until now, and they are true; and we can know of their surety because we have them before our eyes.

And now, my sons, I would that ye should remember to search them diligently, that ye may profit thereby; and I would that ye should keep the commandments of God, that ye may prosper in the land according to the promises which the Lord made unto our fathers.

And many more things did king Benjamin teach his sons, which are not written in this book.

And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of teaching his sons, that he waxed old, and he saw that he must very soon go the way of all the earth; therefore, he thought it expedient that he should confer the kingdom upon one of his sons.

Therefore, he had Mosiah brought before him; and these are the words which he spake unto him, saying: My son, I would that ye should make a proclamation throughout all this land among all this people, or the people of Zarahemla, and the people of Mosiah who dwell in the land, that thereby they may be gathered together; for on the morrow I shall proclaim unto this my people out of mine own mouth that thou art a king and a ruler over this people, whom the Lord our God hath given us.

And moreover, I shall give this people a name, that thereby they may be distinguished above all the people which the Lord God hath brought out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I do because they have been a diligent people in keeping the commandments of the Lord.

And I give unto them a name that never shall be blotted out, except it be through transgression.

- 13 Ja, en bowendien sê ek aan jou, dat as hierdie hoogbegunstigde volk van die Here sou verval in oortreding, en 'n goddelose en owerspelige volk word, dat die Here hulle sal oorlewer, sodat hulle daardeur swak sal word soos hulle broers; en Hy sal hulle nie meer bewaar deur sy ongeëwenaarde en wonderbaarlike krag, soos Hy tot dusver ons vaders bewaar het nie.
- 14 Want ek sê vir jou, dat as Hy nie sy arm uitgestrek het vir die bewaring van ons vaders nie, hulle in die hande van die Lamaniete moes geval het, en slagoffers geword het van hulle haat.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat nadat koning Benjamin 'n einde gemaak het aan hierdie mededelings aan sy seun, dat hy hom opdrag gegee het aangaande al die sake van die koninkryk.
- 16 En bowendien, hy het hom ook opdrag gegee aangaande die kronieke wat gegraveer is op die plate van brons; en ook die plate van Nefi; en ook die swaard van Laban, en die bal of rigtingwyser, wat ons vaders gelei het deur die wildernis, wat berei is deur die hand van die Here sodat hulle daardeur gelei mag word, elkeen volgens die gehoor en die ywer wat hulle aan Hom gegee het.
- 17 Daarom, toe hulle ontrou was, was hulle nie voorespoedig nie, nóg het hulle op hul reis gevorder, maar is teruggedryf, en het die onmin van God oor hulle gebring; en daarom is hulle getref deur hongersnood en sware verdrukkinge, om hulle aan te spoor tot herinnering aan hulle plig.
- 18 En nou, dit het gebeur dat Mosia heengegaan en gedoen het soos sy vader hom beveel het, en aan al die volk bekend gemaak het wat in die land Zarahemla was, sodat hulle hul daardeur mag versamel, om op te gaan na die tempel om die woorde te hoor wat sy vader met hulle sou spreek.

Yea, and moreover I say unto you, that if this highly favored people of the Lord should fall into transgression, and become a wicked and an adulterous people, that the Lord will deliver them up, that thereby they become weak like unto their brethren; and he will no more preserve them by his matchless and marvelous power, as he has hitherto preserved our fathers.

For I say unto you, that if he had not extended his arm in the preservation of our fathers they must have fallen into the hands of the Lamanites, and become victims to their hatred.

And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of these sayings to his son, that he gave him charge concerning all the affairs of the kingdom.

And moreover, he also gave him charge concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass; and also the plates of Nephi; and also, the sword of Laban, and the ball or director, which led our fathers through the wilderness, which was prepared by the hand of the Lord that thereby they might be led, every one according to the heed and diligence which they gave unto him.

Therefore, as they were unfaithful they did not prosper nor progress in their journey, but were driven back, and incurred the displeasure of God upon them; and therefore they were smitten with famine and sore afflictions, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty.

And now, it came to pass that Mosiah went and did as his father had commanded him, and proclaimed unto all the people who were in the land of Zarahemla that thereby they might gather themselves together, to go up to the temple to hear the words which his father should speak unto them.

Mosia 2

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat nadat Mosia gedoen het soos sy vader hom beveel het, en 'n aankondiging in die hele land gemaak het, dat die volk hulleself versamel het deur die hele land, sodat hulle mag opgaan na die tempel om die woorde te hoor wat koning Benjamin met hulle sou spreek.
- 2 En daar was 'n groot aantal, en wel so baie dat hulle hul nie getel het nie; want hulle het uitermate vermenigvuldig en talryk geword in die land.
- 3 En hulle het ook van die eerstelinge van hulle kuddes geneem, sodat hulle offerandes kon bring en brandoffers volgens die wet van Moses;
- 4 En ook dat hulle dank mag betuig aan die Here hulle God, wat hulle uit die land Jerusalem gebring het, en wat hulle uitgelewer het uit die hande van hulle vyande, en regverdige manne aangestel het om hulle leraars te wees, en ook 'n regverdige man om hulle koning te wees, wat vrede gevestig het in die land Zarahemla, en wat hulle geleer het om die gebooi van God te onderhou, dat hulle hul mag verheug en gevul word met liefde teenoor God en alle mense.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat toe hulle opkom na die tempel, het hulle hul tente rondom opgeslaan, elke man volgens sy gesin, bestaande uit sy vrou, en sy seuns, en sy dogters, en hulle seuns, en hulle dogters, vanaf die oudste af tot die jongste toe, elke gesin was geskei van mekaar.
- 6 En hulle het hulle tente opgeslaan rondom die tempel, elke man met sy tent se ingang na die tempel toe, sodat hulle gevolglik in hulle tente mag bly en die woorde hoor wat koning Benjamin met hulle sou spreek;
- 7 Want die skare was so groot dat koning Benjamin hulle nie almal kon onderrig binne die mure van die tempel nie, daarom het hy opdrag gegee dat 'n toring opgerig word sodat sy volk daardeur die woorde kon hoor wat hy met hulle sou spreek.

Mosiah 2

And it came to pass that after Mosiah had done as his father had commanded him, and had made a proclamation throughout all the land, that the people gathered themselves together throughout all the land, that they might go up to the temple to hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them.

And there were a great number, even so many that they did not number them; for they had multiplied exceedingly and waxed great in the land.

And they also took of the firstlings of their flocks, that they might offer sacrifice and burnt offerings according to the law of Moses;

And also that they might give thanks to the Lord their God, who had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, and who had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and had appointed just men to be their teachers, and also a just man to be their king, who had established peace in the land of Zarahemla, and who had taught them to keep the commandments of God, that they might rejoice and be filled with love towards God and all men.

And it came to pass that when they came up to the temple, they pitched their tents round about, every man according to his family, consisting of his wife, and his sons, and his daughters, and their sons, and their daughters, from the eldest down to the youngest, every family being separate one from another.

And they pitched their tents round about the temple, every man having his tent with the door thereof towards the temple, that thereby they might remain in their tents and hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them;

For the multitude being so great that king Benjamin could not teach them all within the walls of the temple, therefore he caused a tower to be erected, that thereby his people might hear the words which he should speak unto them.

8 En dit het gebeur dat hy met sy volk begin spreek het vanaf die toring; en hulle kon nie almal sy woorde hoor nie vanweë die grootte van die skare; daarom het hy die woorde wat hy gespreek het laat neerskryf en uitgestuur onder diegene wat nie onder die klank van sy stem was nie, sodat hulle ook sy woorde mag ontvang.

9 En dit is die woorde wat hy gespreek en laat neerskrywe het, en gesê het: My broers, julle almal wat julle versamel het, julle wat my woorde kan hoor wat ek met julle sal spreek hierdie dag; want ek het nie vir julle beveel om hierheen op te kom om die woorde ligtelik op te neem wat ek sal spreek nie, maar dat julle op my sal ag slaan, en julle ore oopmaak dat julle mag hoor, en julle harte dat julle mag verstaan, en julle verstand dat die verborgenhede van God oopgevou mag word tot julle aanskouing.

10 Ek het julle nie beveel om hierheen op te kom dat julle my sal vrees nie, of dat julle sal dink dat ek meer as 'n sterflike mens is nie.

11 Maar ek is soos julle, onderhewig aan allerhande swakhede van liggaam en verstand; tog is ek gekies deur hierdie volk, en geordineer deur my vader, en is toegelaat deur die hand van die Here dat ek 'n heerser en 'n koning oor hierdie volk sal wees; en behou en bewaar is deur sy ongeëwenaarde krag, om julle te dien met al die mag, verstand en krag wat die Here aan my geskenk het.

12 Ek sê vir julle dat omdat ek toegelaat is om my dae deur te bring in julle diens, en wel tot op die huidige tyd, en nie goud nóg silwer nóg enige soort rykdom van julle gesoek het;

13 Ook het ek nie toegelaat dat julle in kerkers opgesluit sou word nie, nóg dat julle slawe die een van die ander sou maak, nóg dat julle sou moor, of roof of steel, of egbreuk pleeg; nóg het ek toegelaat dat julle enige vorm van boosheid sou pleeg, en het julle geleer dat julle die gebooie van die Here moet onderhou, in al die dinge wat Hy julle gebied het—

And it came to pass that he began to speak to his people from the tower; and they could not all hear his words because of the greatness of the multitude; therefore he caused that the words which he spake should be written and sent forth among those that were not under the sound of his voice, that they might also receive his words.

And these are the words which he spake and caused to be written, saying: My brethren, all ye that have assembled yourselves together, you that can hear my words which I shall speak unto you this day; for I have not commanded you to come up hither to trifle with the words which I shall speak, but that you should hearken unto me, and open your ears that ye may hear, and your hearts that ye may understand, and your minds that the mysteries of God may be unfolded to your view.

I have not commanded you to come up hither that ye should fear me, or that ye should think that I of myself am more than a mortal man.

But I am like as yourselves, subject to all manner of infirmities in body and mind; yet I have been chosen by this people, and consecrated by my father, and was suffered by the hand of the Lord that I should be a ruler and a king over this people; and have been kept and preserved by his matchless power, to serve you with all the might, mind and strength which the Lord hath granted unto me.

I say unto you that as I have been suffered to spend my days in your service, even up to this time, and have not sought gold nor silver nor any manner of riches of you;

Neither have I suffered that ye should be confined in dungeons, nor that ye should make slaves one of another, nor that ye should murder, or plunder, or steal, or commit adultery; nor even have I suffered that ye should commit any manner of wickedness, and have taught you that ye should keep the commandments of the Lord, in all things which he hath commanded you—

- 14 En selfs ek het gearbei met my eie hande dat ek julle mag dien, en dat julle nie belaaï moet word deur belastings nie, en dat daar niks oor julle moet kom wat swaar was om te verdra nie—en van al hierdie dinge waarvan ek gespreek het, is julle self getuies hierdie dag.
- 15 Tog, my broers, ek het nie hierdie dinge gedoen dat ek mag roem nie, nóg vertel ek hierdie dinge dat ek julle daardeur mag beskuldig; maar ek vertel julle hierdie dinge dat julle mag weet dat ek met 'n rein gewete voor God hierdie dag kan antwoord.
- 16 Kyk, ek sê vir julle dat omdat ek aan julle gesê het dat ek my dae in julle diens deurgebring het, begeer ek nie om te roem nie, want ek was waarlik in die diens van God.
- 17 En kyk, ek vertel julle hierdie dinge dat julle wysheid mag leer; dat julle mag leer dat wanneer julle in die diens van jul medemens is, julle waarlik in die diens van julle God is.
- 18 Kyk, julle het my jul koning genoem; en as ek, wat julle jul koning noem, arbei om julle te dien, dan, behoort julle nie te arbei om mekaar te dien nie?
- 19 En kyk ook, as ek, wat julle jul koning noem, wat sy dae in julle diens deurgebring het, en tog in die diens van God was, enige dank van julle verdien, o, hoe behoort julle nie jul hemelse Koning te dank nie!
- 20 Ek sê vir julle, my broers, dat as julle al die dank en lof sou gee wat julle hele siel die mag het om te besit, aan daardie God wat julle geskape het, en julle behoed en bewaar het, en veroorsaak het dat julle jul sou verbly, en gegee het dat julle in vrede met mekaar moes lewe—
- 21 Ek sê vir julle dat as julle Hom sou dien wat julle geskape het van die begin af, en julle bewaar van dag tot dag, deur julle asem te verleen, sodat julle mag lewe en beweeg en handel volgens julle eie wil, en julle selfs ondersteun van een oomblik tot die ander—ek sê, as julle Hom sou dien met julle ganse siele, tog sou julle onverdienstelike diensknegte wees.

And even I, myself, have labored with mine own hands that I might serve you, and that ye should not be laden with taxes, and that there should nothing come upon you which was grievous to be borne—and of all these things which I have spoken, ye yourselves are witnesses this day.

Yet, my brethren, I have not done these things that I might boast, neither do I tell these things that thereby I might accuse you; but I tell you these things that ye may know that I can answer a clear conscience before God this day.

Behold, I say unto you that because I said unto you that I had spent my days in your service, I do not desire to boast, for I have only been in the service of God.

And behold, I tell you these things that ye may learn wisdom; that ye may learn that when ye are in the service of your fellow beings ye are only in the service of your God.

Behold, ye have called me your king; and if I, whom ye call your king, do labor to serve you, then ought not ye to labor to serve one another?

And behold also, if I, whom ye call your king, who has spent his days in your service, and yet has been in the service of God, do merit any thanks from you, O how you ought to thank your heavenly King!

I say unto you, my brethren, that if you should render all the thanks and praise which your whole soul has power to possess, to that God who has created you, and has kept and preserved you, and has caused that ye should rejoice, and has granted that ye should live in peace one with another—

I say unto you that if ye should serve him who has created you from the beginning, and is preserving you from day to day, by lending you breath, that ye may live and move and do according to your own will, and even supporting you from one moment to another—I say, if ye should serve him with all your whole souls yet ye would be unprofitable servants.

22 En kyk, al wat Hy van julle vereis, is om sy gebooie te onderhou; en Hy het julle belowe dat as julle sy gebooie sal onderhou, julle voorspoedig sal wees in die land; en Hy wyk nooit af van dit wat Hy gesê het nie; daarom, as julle wel sy gebooie onderhou, seën Hy julle en maak julle voorspoedig.

23 En nou, in die eerste plek, Hy het julle geskape, en het aan julle jul lewe geskenk, waarvoor julle in die skuld is by Hom.

24 En tweedens, Hy vereis dat julle moet doen soos Hy julle gebied het; waarvoor, as julle dit doen, Hy julle onmiddellik seën; en daarom het Hy julle betaal: En julle is steeds in die skuld by Hom, en is, en sal wees, vir ewig en ewig; daarom, wat het julle om oor te roem?

25 En nou vra ek, kan julle iets sê van julleself? Ek antwoord julle, Nee. Julle kan nie sê dat julle selfs soveel is as die stof van die aarde nie; tog is julle geskape uit die stof van die aarde; maar kyk, dit behoort aan Hom wat julle geskape het.

26 En ek, selfs ek, wie julle jul koning noem, is niks beter as wat juiself is nie; want ek is ook van die stof. En julle sien dat ek oud is, en op die punt is om hierdie sterflike gestalte oor te gee aan sy moederaarde.

27 Daarom, soos ek aan julle gesê het dat ek julle gedien het, wandelend met 'n rein gewete voor God, en wel so het ek in hierdie tyd beveel dat julle bymekaar sou kom, sodat ek skuldeloos bevind mag word, en sodat julle bloed nie oor my moet kom wanneer ek sal staan om geoordeel te word deur God van die ding wat Hy my beveel het aangaande julle nie.

28 Ek sê vir julle dat ek bevel gegee het dat julle juiself moet bymekaarmaak sodat ek my kleding mag reinig van julle bloed, op hierdie tydstip wanneer ek op die punt staan om neer te daal na my graf, dat ek mag neerdaal in vrede, en my onsterflike gees mag aansluit by die kore daarbo om die lof van 'n regverdige God te sing.

29 En bowendien, ek sê vir julle dat ek beveel het dat julle juiself moet bymekaarmaak, sodat ek aan julle mag verklaar dat ek nie langer julle leraar nóg julle koning kan wees;

And behold, all that he requires of you is to keep his commandments; and he has promised you that if ye would keep his commandments ye should prosper in the land; and he never doth vary from that which he hath said; therefore, if ye do keep his commandments he doth bless you and prosper you.

And now, in the first place, he hath created you, and granted unto you your lives, for which ye are indebted unto him.

And secondly, he doth require that ye should do as he hath commanded you; for which if ye do, he doth immediately bless you; and therefore he hath paid you. And ye are still indebted unto him, and are, and will be, forever and ever; therefore, of what have ye to boast?

And now I ask, can ye say aught of yourselves? I answer you, Nay. Ye cannot say that ye are even as much as the dust of the earth; yet ye were created of the dust of the earth; but behold, it belongeth to him who created you.

And I, even I, whom ye call your king, am no better than ye yourselves are; for I am also of the dust. And ye behold that I am old, and am about to yield up this mortal frame to its mother earth.

Therefore, as I said unto you that I had served you, walking with a clear conscience before God, even so I at this time have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might be found blameless, and that your blood should not come upon me, when I shall stand to be judged of God of the things whereof he hath commanded me concerning you.

I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together that I might rid my garments of your blood, at this period of time when I am about to go down to my grave, that I might go down in peace, and my immortal spirit may join the choirs above in singing the praises of a just God.

And moreover, I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might declare unto you that I can no longer be your teacher, nor your king;

30 Want selfs op hierdie tydstip beef my hele gestalte uitermate terwyl ek probeer om met julle te spreek; maar die Here God onderskraag my, en het toegelaat dat ek met julle mag spreek, en het my gebied dat ek vir julle moet verklaar op hierdie dag, dat my seun Mosia 'n koning en heerser oor julle is.

31 En nou, my broers, ek wil hê dat julle moet doen soos julle tot dusver gedoen het. Soos julle my bevele onderhou het, en ook die bevele van my vader, en voorspoedig was, en verhoed is om in die hande van julle vyande te val, net so, as julle die bevele van my seun sal onderhou, of die gebooie van God wat oor-gelewer sal word aan julle deur hom, sal julle voorspoedig wees in die land, en julle vyande sal geen mag oor julle hê nie.

32 Maar, o my volk, waak dat daar geen twiste onder julle ontstaan nie, en julle kies om die bose gees te gehoorsaam, waarvan my vader Mosia gespreek het.

33 Want kyk, daar word wee uitgespreek oor hom wat kies om daardie gees te gehoorsaam; want as hy verkies om hom te gehoorsaam, en bly en sterwe in sy sonde, hy drink verdoemenis oor sy eie siel; want hy ontvang vir sy loon 'n ewigdurende straf, omdat hy die wet van God oortree het strydig met sy eie kennis.

34 Ek sê vir julle, dat daar geeneen onder julle is, behalwe dat dit julle klein kindertjies is wat nie geleer is aangaande hierdie dinge nie, of wat nie weet dat julle vir ewig in die skuld is by julle hemelse Vader, om aan Hom alles te gee wat julle het en is nie; en ook geleer is aangaande die kronieke wat die profesieë bevat wat gespreek is deur die heilige profete, en wel tot die tyd toe ons vader Lehi Jerusalem verlaat het;

35 En ook, alles wat gespreek is deur ons vaders tot nou toe. En kyk, ook, hulle het dit gespreek wat hulle bevele is deur die Here; daarom, hulle is juis en waar.

36 En nou, ek sê vir julle, my broers, dat nadat julle geweet het en al hierdie dinge geleer is, indien julle sou oortree en strydig optree met dit wat gespreek is, dat julle juisself onttrek van die Gees van die Here, so dat dit geen plek mag hê in julle om julle te lei in die weë van wysheid, dat julle geseënd, voorspoedig en behoed mag wees nie—

For even at this time, my whole frame doth tremble exceedingly while attempting to speak unto you; but the Lord God doth support me, and hath suffered me that I should speak unto you, and hath commanded me that I should declare unto you this day, that my son Mosiah is a king and a ruler over you.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should do as ye have hitherto done. As ye have kept my commandments, and also the commandments of my father, and have prospered, and have been kept from falling into the hands of your enemies, even so if ye shall keep the commandments of my son, or the commandments of God which shall be delivered unto you by him, ye shall prosper in the land, and your enemies shall have no power over you.

But, O my people, beware lest there shall arise contentions among you, and ye list to obey the evil spirit, which was spoken of by my father Mosiah.

For behold, there is a wo pronounced upon him who listeth to obey that spirit; for if he listeth to obey him, and remaineth and dieth in his sins, the same drinketh damnation to his own soul; for he receiveth for his wages an everlasting punishment, having transgressed the law of God contrary to his own knowledge.

I say unto you, that there are not any among you, except it be your little children that have not been taught concerning these things, but what knoweth that ye are eternally indebted to your heavenly Father, to render to him all that you have and are; and also have been taught concerning the records which contain the prophecies which have been spoken by the holy prophets, even down to the time our father, Lehi, left Jerusalem;

And also, all that has been spoken by our fathers until now. And behold, also, they spake that which was commanded them of the Lord; therefore, they are just and true.

And now, I say unto you, my brethren, that after ye have known and have been taught all these things, if ye should transgress and go contrary to that which has been spoken, that ye do withdraw yourselves from the Spirit of the Lord, that it may have no place in you to guide you in wisdom's paths that ye may be blessed, prospered, and preserved—

37 Ek sê vir julle, dat die man wat dit doen, hy kom uit in openlike rebellie teen God; daarom verkies hy om die bose gees te gehoorsaam, en word 'n vyand van alle regverdigeid; daarom, die Here het geen plek in hom nie, want Hy woon nie in onheilige tempels nie.

38 Daarom, as daardie man nie bekeer nie, en bly en sterwe as 'n vyand van God, wek die eise van goddelike geregtigheid sy onsterflike siel tot 'n lewendige besef van sy eie skuld op, wat hom laat terugdeins van die teenwoordigheid van die Here, en sy bors vul met skuld, en pyn, en sielesmart, wat soos 'n onblusbare vuur is, waarvan die vlam opstyg vir ewig en ewig.

39 En nou sê ek aan julle, dat barmhartigheid geen aanspraak het op daardie man nie; daarom is sy uiteindelijke lot om nimmereindigende pyniging te verdur.

40 O, al julle ou manne, en ook julle jong manne, en julle klein kindertjies wat my woorde kan verstaan, want ek het duidelik met julle gespreek sodat julle mag verstaan, ek bid dat julle sal ontwaak tot 'n herinnering aan die vreeslike toestand van diegene wat in oortreding verval het.

41 En bowendien, ek sou begeer dat julle moet nadenk oor die geseënde en gelukkige toestand van diegene wat die geboorte van God onderhou. Want kyk, hulle is geseënd in alle dinge, beide stoflik en geestelik; en as hulle getrou bly tot die einde, word hulle in die hemel ontvang, sodat hulle daardeur met God mag woon in 'n toestand van nimmereindigende geluk. O onthou, onthou dat hierdie dinge waar is; want die Here God het dit gespreek.

I say unto you, that the man that doeth this, the same cometh out in open rebellion against God; therefore he listeth to obey the evil spirit, and becometh an enemy to all righteousness; therefore, the Lord has no place in him, for he dwelleth not in unholy temples.

Therefore if that man repenteth not, and remaineth and dieth an enemy to God, the demands of divine justice do awaken his immortal soul to a lively sense of his own guilt, which doth cause him to shrink from the presence of the Lord, and doth fill his breast with guilt, and pain, and anguish, which is like an unquenchable fire, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever.

And now I say unto you, that mercy hath no claim on that man; therefore his final doom is to endure a never-ending torment.

O, all ye old men, and also ye young men, and you little children who can understand my words, for I have spoken plainly unto you that ye might understand, I pray that ye should awake to a remembrance of the awful situation of those that have fallen into transgression.

And moreover, I would desire that ye should consider on the blessed and happy state of those that keep the commandments of God. For behold, they are blessed in all things, both temporal and spiritual; and if they hold out faithful to the end they are received into heaven, that thereby they may dwell with God in a state of never-ending happiness. O remember, remember that these things are true; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

Mosia 3

- 1 En verder, my broers, wil ek julle aandag vra, want ek het nog ietwat meer om met julle te spreek; want kyk, ek het dinge om vir julle te vertel aangaande dit wat sal kom.
- 2 En die dinge wat ek aan julle sal vertel, word aan my bekend gemaak deur 'n engel van God. En hy het aan my gesê: Ontwaak; en ek het ontwaak, en kyk, hy het voor my gestaan.
- 3 En hy het aan my gesê: Ontwaak, en hoor die woorde wat ek aan jou sal sê, want kyk, ek het gekom om aan jou die blye tydings van groot blydskap te verklaar.
- 4 Want die Here het jou gebede gehoor, en het geoordeel oor jou regverdigheid, en het my gestuur om aan jou mee te deel dat jy jou mag verbly; en dat jy aan jou volk mag verklaar, sodat hulle ook vervul mag wees met blydskap.
- 5 Want kyk, die tyd kom, en is nie meer lank nie, dat die Here Alvermoënd wat heers, wat was, en is, vanaf alle ewigheid tot alle ewigheid met krag sal neerkom van die hemel onder die kinders van mense, en sal woon in 'n tabernakel van klei, en sal uitgaan onder mense, en groot wonderwerke doen, soos die genesing van die krankes, die opwekking van die dooies, die verlamdes te laat loop, die blindes hul sig te laat ontvang en die dowes te laat hoor; en die genesing van allerhande soorte kwale.
- 6 En Hy sal duiwels uitwerp, of die bose geeste wat woon in die harte van die kinders van mense.
- 7 En kyk, Hy sal versoeking ondergaan, en pyn van die liggaam, honger, dors, en moegheid, selfs meer as wat 'n mens kan ly, tensy dit tot die dood toe is; want kyk, bloed kom uit elke porie, so groot sal sy sielesmart wees oor die boosheid en die gruwels van sy volk.
- 8 En hy sal Jesus Christus genoem word, die Seun van God, die Vader van hemel en aarde, die Skepper van alle dinge vanaf die begin; en sy moeder sal Maria genoem word.

Mosiah 3

And again my brethren, I would call your attention, for I have somewhat more to speak unto you; for behold, I have things to tell you concerning that which is to come.

And the things which I shall tell you are made known unto me by an angel from God. And he said unto me: Awake; and I awoke, and behold he stood before me.

And he said unto me: Awake, and hear the words which I shall tell thee; for behold, I am come to declare unto you the glad tidings of great joy.

For the Lord hath heard thy prayers, and hath judged of thy righteousness, and hath sent me to declare unto thee that thou mayest rejoice; and that thou mayest declare unto thy people, that they may also be filled with joy.

For behold, the time cometh, and is not far distant, that with power, the Lord Omnipotent who reigneth, who was, and is from all eternity to all eternity, shall come down from heaven among the children of men, and shall dwell in a tabernacle of clay, and shall go forth amongst men, working mighty miracles, such as healing the sick, raising the dead, causing the lame to walk, the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear, and curing all manner of diseases.

And he shall cast out devils, or the evil spirits which dwell in the hearts of the children of men.

And lo, he shall suffer temptations, and pain of body, hunger, thirst, and fatigue, even more than man can suffer, except it be unto death; for behold, blood cometh from every pore, so great shall be his anguish for the wickedness and the abominations of his people.

And he shall be called Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and his mother shall be called Mary.

- 9 En kyk, Hy kom na sy eie, sodat heil tot die kinders van mense mag kom en wel deur geloof in sy Naam; en selfs na al hierdie dinge sal hulle Hom beskou as 'n man, en sê dat Hy 'n duiwel het, en sal Hom gésel, en sal Hom kruisig.
- 10 En Hy sal opstaan op die derde dag uit die dode; en kyk, Hy staan om die wêreld te oordeel; en kyk, al hierdie dinge word gedoen sodat 'n regverdige oordeel mag kom oor die kinders van mense.
- 11 Want kyk, en ook sy bloed doen versoening vir die sondes van diegene wat geval het deur Adam se oortreding, wat gesterwe het sonder om die wil van God te ken aangaande hulle, of wat gesondig het in onkunde.
- 12 Maar wee, wee hom wat weet dat hy rebelleer teen God! Want heil kom nie na so een behalwe as dit is deur bekering en geloof in die Here Jesus Christus nie.
- 13 En die Here God het sy heilige profete gestuur onder al die kinders van mense, om hierdie dinge te verkondig aan elke stam, nasie, en taal, sodat wie ook al daardeur sal glo dat Christus moet kom, vergifnis mag ontvang van hulle sonde en jubel met uitermate blydschap, asof Hy alreeds onder hulle gekom het.
- 14 Nogtans het die Here God gesien dat sy volk 'n hardnekkige volk was, en Hy het aan hulle 'n wet gestel, en wel die wet van Moses.
- 15 En baie tekens, en wonders en versinnebeelde, en voorafskaduwings het Hy aan hulle getoon aangaande sy koms; en ook het heilige profete met hulle gespreek aangaande sy koms; en tog het hulle hul harte verhard, en nie verstaan dat die wet van Moses niks baat behalwe as dit was deur die versoening van sy bloed nie.
- 16 En selfs as dit moontlik was dat klein kindertjies kon sondig, sou hulle nie gered kon word nie; maar ek sê vir julle dat hulle salig is; want kyk, soos in Adam, of van nature, val hulle, net so doen die bloed van Christus versoening vir hul sondes.
- 17 En bowendien, ek sê vir julle dat daar geen ander naam gegee sal word nóg enige ander weg nóg wyse waardeur heil kan kom tot die kinders van mense, slegs in en deur die Naam van Christus, die Here Alvermoënd.

And lo, he cometh unto his own, that salvation might come unto the children of men even through faith on his name; and even after all this they shall consider him a man, and say that he hath a devil, and shall scourge him, and shall crucify him.

And he shall rise the third day from the dead; and behold, he standeth to judge the world; and behold, all these things are done that a righteous judgment might come upon the children of men.

For behold, and also his blood atoneth for the sins of those who have fallen by the transgression of Adam, who have died not knowing the will of God concerning them, or who have ignorantly sinned.

But wo, wo unto him who knoweth that he rebelleth against God! For salvation cometh to none such except it be through repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

And the Lord God hath sent his holy prophets among all the children of men, to declare these things to every kindred, nation, and tongue, that thereby whosoever should believe that Christ should come, the same might receive remission of their sins, and rejoice with exceedingly great joy, even as though he had already come among them.

Yet the Lord God saw that his people were a stiff-necked people, and he appointed unto them a law, even the law of Moses.

And many signs, and wonders, and types, and shadows showed he unto them, concerning his coming; and also holy prophets spake unto them concerning his coming; and yet they hardened their hearts, and understood not that the law of Moses availeth nothing except it were through the atonement of his blood.

And even if it were possible that little children could sin they could not be saved; but I say unto you they are blessed; for behold, as in Adam, or by nature, they fall, even so the blood of Christ atoneth for their sins.

And moreover, I say unto you, that there shall be no other name given nor any other way nor means whereby salvation can come unto the children of men, only in and through the name of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

- 18 Want kyk, Hy oordeel, en sy oordeel is regverdig; en die suigling is nie verlore wat sterwe in sy kinderjare nie; maar mense drink verdoemenis tot hulle eie siele tensy hulle hul verootmoedig en word soos klein kindertjies, en glo dat heil was, en is, en sal wees, in en deur die versoenende bloed van Christus, die Here Alvermoënd.
- 19 Want die natuurlike mens is 'n vyand van God, en was dit vanaf die val van Adam, en sal dit wees vir ewig en ewig, tensy hy toegee aan die verlokkinge van die Heilige Gees, en die natuurlike mens aflê en 'n heilige word deur die versoening van Christus die Here, en soos 'n kind word, onderdanig, sagmoedig, nederig, geduldig, vol liefde, gewillig om hom te onderwerp aan alle dinge wat die Here behaag om op hom te lê, net soos 'n kind hom onderwerp aan sy vader.
- 20 En bowendien, ek sê vir julle, dat die tyd sal kom wanneer die kennis van 'n Saligmaker dwarsdeur elke nasie, stam, taal, en volk sal versprei.
- 21 En kyk, wanneer daardie tyd kom, sal niemand skuldeloos bevind word voor God nie, behalwe as dit kindertjies is, slegs deur bekering en geloof in die naam van die Here God Almagtig.
- 22 En wel in hierdie tyd, wanneer jy jou volk die dinge sou geleer het wat die Here jou God jou gebied het, selfs dan word hulle nie meer onskuldig bevind in die oë van God nie, behalwe volgens die woorde wat ek met jou gespreek het.
- 23 En nou het ek die woorde gespreek wat die Here God my gebied het.
- 24 En so sê die Here: Hulle sal staan as 'n duidelike getuienis teen hierdie volk op die oordeelsdag; waarvolgens hulle geoordeel sal word, elke mens volgens sy werke, of hulle goed, en of hulle boos is.
- 25 En as hulle boos is, word hulle oorgelewer tot 'n vreeslike gesig van hulle eie skuld en gruweldade, wat hulle laat terugdeins van die teenwoordigheid van die Here na 'n toestand van smart en eindelose pyniging, waaruit hulle nie meer kan terugkeer nie; daarom het hulle verdoemenis gedrink tot hulle eie siele.

For behold he judgeth, and his judgment is just; and the infant perisheth not that dieth in his infancy; but men drink damnation to their own souls except they humble themselves and become as little children, and believe that salvation was, and is, and is to come, in and through the atoning blood of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

For the natural man is an enemy to God, and has been from the fall of Adam, and will be, forever and ever, unless he yields to the enticings of the Holy Spirit, and putteth off the natural man and becometh a saint through the atonement of Christ the Lord, and becometh as a child, submissive, meek, humble, patient, full of love, willing to submit to all things which the Lord seeth fit to inflict upon him, even as a child doth submit to his father.

And moreover, I say unto you, that the time shall come when the knowledge of a Savior shall spread throughout every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

And behold, when that time cometh, none shall be found blameless before God, except it be little children, only through repentance and faith on the name of the Lord God Omnipotent.

And even at this time, when thou shalt have taught thy people the things which the Lord thy God hath commanded thee, even then are they found no more blameless in the sight of God, only according to the words which I have spoken unto thee.

And now I have spoken the words which the Lord God hath commanded me.

And thus saith the Lord: They shall stand as a bright testimony against this people, at the judgment day; whereof they shall be judged, every man according to his works, whether they be good, or whether they be evil.

And if they be evil they are consigned to an awful view of their own guilt and abominations, which doth cause them to shrink from the presence of the Lord into a state of misery and endless torment, from whence they can no more return; therefore they have drunk damnation to their own souls.

26 Daaron, hulle het gedrink uit die beker van die toorn van God, welke geregtigheid net so min van hulle weerhou word as wat dit kan weerhou word dat Adam sou val, vanweë sy neem van die verbode vrug; daarom, barmhartigheid kan vir ewig geen aanspraak op hulle meer hê nie.

27 En hulle pyniging is soos 'n poel van vuur en swa-
el, waarvan die vlamme onblusbaar is, en waarvan die rook opstyg vir ewig en ewig. So het die Here my gebied. Amen.

Therefore, they have drunk out of the cup of the wrath of God, which justice could no more deny unto them than it could deny that Adam should fall because of his partaking of the forbidden fruit; therefore, mercy could have claim on them no more forever.

And their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever. Thus hath the Lord commanded me. Amen.

Mosia 4

- 1 En nou, dit het gebeur dat toe koning Benjamin 'n einde gemaak het om die woorde te spreek wat aan hom oorgedra is deur die engel van die Here, dat hy sy oë laat gaan het oor die skare, en kyk, hulle het neergeval op die grond, want die vrees van die Here het oor hulle gekom.
- 2 En hulle het hulleself aanskou in hul eie vleeslike toestand, en wel geringer as die stof van die aarde. En hulle het almal hardop uitgeroep met een stem, en gesê: O, wees barmhartig, en laat die versoenende bloed van Christus geld sodat ons vergifnis van ons sondes mag ontvang, en ons harte gereinig mag word; want ons glo in Jesus Christus, die Seun van God, wat hemel en aarde geskape het, en alle dinge; wat sal neerkom onder die kinders van mense.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat nadat hulle hierdie woorde gespreek het, het die Gees van die Here oor hulle gekom, en hulle is vervul met vreugde, omdat hulle vergifnis ontvang het van hul sonde, en omdat hulle vrede van gewete gehad het, vanweë die uitnemende geloof wat hulle gehad het in Jesus Christus wat sou kom, volgens die woorde wat koning Benjamin met hulle gespreek het.
- 4 En koning Benjamin het weer sy mond geopen en met hulle begin spreek, en gesê: My vriende en my broers, my verwante en my volk, ek wil weer julle aandag vra, dat julle die oorblywende woorde wat ek met julle sal spreek mag hoor en verstaan.
- 5 Want kyk, as die kennis van die goedheid van God op hierdie tydstip julle laat ontwaak het tot 'n begrip van julle nietigheid, en julle waardelose en gevalle toestand—
- 6 Ek sê vir julle, as julle gekom het tot 'n besef van die goedheid van God, en sy ongeëwenaarde mag, en sy wysheid, en sy geduld, en sy lankmoedigheid teenoor die kinders van mense; en ook, die versoening wat berei is vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld, sodat heil daardeur mag kom na hom wat sy vertrou in die Here sou plaas, en ywerig sou wees om sy gebooie te onderhou, en volhard in die geloof en wel tot aan die einde van sy lewe, ek bedoel die lewe van die sterflike liggaam—

Mosiah 4

And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of speaking the words which had been delivered unto him by the angel of the Lord, that he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and behold they had fallen to the earth, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them.

And they had viewed themselves in their own carnal state, even less than the dust of the earth. And they all cried aloud with one voice, saying: O have mercy, and apply the atoning blood of Christ that we may receive forgiveness of our sins, and our hearts may be purified; for we believe in Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who created heaven and earth, and all things; who shall come down among the children of men.

And it came to pass that after they had spoken these words the Spirit of the Lord came upon them, and they were filled with joy, having received a remission of their sins, and having peace of conscience, because of the exceeding faith which they had in Jesus Christ who should come, according to the words which king Benjamin had spoken unto them.

And king Benjamin again opened his mouth and began to speak unto them, saying: My friends and my brethren, my kindred and my people, I would again call your attention, that ye may hear and understand the remainder of my words which I shall speak unto you.

For behold, if the knowledge of the goodness of God at this time has awakened you to a sense of your nothingness, and your worthless and fallen state—

I say unto you, if ye have come to a knowledge of the goodness of God, and his matchless power, and his wisdom, and his patience, and his long-suffering towards the children of men; and also, the atonement which has been prepared from the foundation of the world, that thereby salvation might come to him that should put his trust in the Lord, and should be diligent in keeping his commandments, and continue in the faith even unto the end of his life, I mean the life of the mortal body—

- 7 Ek sê, dat dit die man is wat heil ontvang deur die versoening wat berei is vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld vir alle mense, wat ewig was vanaf die val van Adam, of wat is, of wat ooit sal wees, en wel tot aan die einde van die wêreld.
- 8 En dit is die wyse waardeur heil kom: En daar is geen ander heil behalwe hierdie waarvan gespreek is, nóg is daar enige voorwaardes waardeur die mens gered kan word behalwe die voorwaardes wat ek aan julle vertel het.
- 9 Glo in God; glo dat Hy is, en dat Hy alle dinge geskape het, beide in die hemel en op aarde; glo dat Hy alle wysheid het, en alle mag, beide in die hemel en op aarde; glo dat die mens nie al die dinge kan begryp wat die Here kan begryp nie.
- 10 En verder, glo dat julle moet bekeer van julle sondes en hulle versaak, en verootmoedig julleself voor God; en vra in opregtheid van hart dat Hy julle moet vergewe; en nou, as julle al hierdie dinge glo, sien toe dat julle hulle doen.
- 11 En verder sê ek aan julle soos ek vantevore gesê het, dat as julle gekom het tot die kennis van die heerlijkheid van God, of as julle geweet het van sy goedheid en gesmaak het van sy liefde, en 'n vergifnis ontvang het van jul sondes, wat sulke uitermate groot vreugde in julle siele veroorsaak het, net so wil ek hê dat julle moet onthou, en altyd in herinnering hou, die grootheid van God, en julle eie nietigheid, en sy goedheid en lankmoedigheid teenoor julle, onwaardige skepsels, en verootmoedig julle en wel tot in die dieptes van nederigheid, en daaglik die naam van die Here aanroep, en standvastig staan in die geloof van dit wat moet kom, wat gespreek is deur die mond van die engel.
- 12 En kyk, ek sê vir julle dat as julle dit doen, sal julle jul altyd verheug, en vervul wees met die liefde van God, en altyd vergifnis van jul sonde behou; en julle sal groei in die kennis van die heerlijkheid van Hom wat julle geskape het, of in die kennis van dit wat regverdig en waar is.
- 13 En julle sal nie begeertes hê om mekaar kwaad aan te doen nie, maar om vreedsaam te lewe, en om aan elke man te gee wat hom toekom.

I say, that this is the man who receiveth salvation, through the atonement which was prepared from the foundation of the world for all mankind, which ever were since the fall of Adam, or who are, or who ever shall be, even unto the end of the world.

And this is the means whereby salvation cometh. And there is none other salvation save this which hath been spoken of; neither are there any conditions whereby man can be saved except the conditions which I have told you.

Believe in God; believe that he is, and that he created all things, both in heaven and in earth; believe that he has all wisdom, and all power, both in heaven and in earth; believe that man doth not comprehend all the things which the Lord can comprehend.

And again, believe that ye must repent of your sins and forsake them, and humble yourselves before God; and ask in sincerity of heart that he would forgive you; and now, if you believe all these things see that ye do them.

And again I say unto you as I have said before, that as ye have come to the knowledge of the glory of God, or if ye have known of his goodness and have tasted of his love, and have received a remission of your sins, which causeth such exceedingly great joy in your souls, even so I would that ye should remember, and always retain in remembrance, the greatness of God, and your own nothingness, and his goodness and long-suffering towards you, unworthy creatures, and humble yourselves even in the depths of humility, calling on the name of the Lord daily, and standing steadfastly in the faith of that which is to come, which was spoken by the mouth of the angel.

And behold, I say unto you that if ye do this ye shall always rejoice, and be filled with the love of God, and always retain a remission of your sins; and ye shall grow in the knowledge of the glory of him that created you, or in the knowledge of that which is just and true.

And ye will not have a mind to injure one another, but to live peaceably, and to render to every man according to that which is his due.

- 14 En julle sal nie toelaat dat julle kinders honger ly, of naak is nie; nóg sal julle toelaat dat hulle die wette van God oortree, en met mekaar baklei, en twis die een met die ander, en die duiwel dien, wat die meester van sonde is, of wat die bose gees is van wie gesprek is deur ons vaders, hy wat 'n vyand is van alle regverdigheid.
- 15 Maar julle sal hulle leer om te wandel in die weë van die waarheid en erns; julle sal hulle leer om mekaar lief te hê, en om mekaar te dien.
- 16 En ook, julle sal diegene bystaan wat behoefte het aan jul bystand; julle sal van julle besittings aan hom gee wat behoefte het; en julle sal nie toelaat dat die bedelaar tevergeefs sy smeekbede tot julle rig, en hom wegstuur om om te kom nie.
- 17 Miskien sal jy sê: Die man het sy ellende op homself gebring; daarom sal ek my hand terughou, en sal hom nie van my kos gee nie, nóg aan hom van my besittings gee dat hy nie mag ly nie, want sy strawwe is regverdig—
- 18 Maar ek sê vir jou, o mens, wie dit ook al doen, het groot rede om te bekeer; en tensy hy bekeer van dit wat hy gedoen het, sal hy vir ewig omkom, en het geen deel in die koninkryk van God nie.
- 19 Want kyk, is ons nie almal bedelaars nie? Is ons nie almal afhanklik van dieselfde Wese, naamlik God, vir al die besittings wat ons het nie, vir beide voedsel en kleding, en vir goud, en vir silwer, en vir al die rykdom wat ons het van allerlei soorte nie?
- 20 En kyk, juis op hierdie tyd, het julle sy naam aangeroep, en gesmeek om 'n vergifnis van julle sondes. En het Hy toegelaat dat julle vergeefs gepleit het? Nee; Hy het sy Gees uitgestort oor julle en het veroorsaak dat julle harte vervul sou word met vreugde, en het veroorsaak dat julle monde gesluit sou word sodat julle niks kon uiter nie, so uitermate groot was julle vreugde.
- 21 En nou, as God, wat julle geskape het, van wie julle afhanklik is vir julle lewens en vir alles wat julle het en is, aan julle gee wat julle ook al vra wat reg is, in geloof, en glo dat julle sal ontvang, o, dan, hoe behoort julle nie die besittings wat julle het te deel die een met die ander nie.

And ye will not suffer your children that they go hungry, or naked; neither will ye suffer that they transgress the laws of God, and fight and quarrel one with another, and serve the devil, who is the master of sin, or who is the evil spirit which hath been spoken of by our fathers, he being an enemy to all righteousness.

But ye will teach them to walk in the ways of truth and soberness; ye will teach them to love one another, and to serve one another.

And also, ye yourselves will succor those that stand in need of your succor; ye will administer of your substance unto him that standeth in need; and ye will not suffer that the beggar putteth up his petition to you in vain, and turn him out to perish.

Perhaps thou shalt say: The man has brought upon himself his misery; therefore I will stay my hand, and will not give unto him of my food, nor impart unto him of my substance that he may not suffer, for his punishments are just—

But I say unto you, O man, whosoever doeth this the same hath great cause to repent; and except he repenteth of that which he hath done he perisheth forever, and hath no interest in the kingdom of God.

For behold, are we not all beggars? Do we not all depend upon the same Being, even God, for all the substance which we have, for both food and raiment, and for gold, and for silver, and for all the riches which we have of every kind?

And behold, even at this time, ye have been calling on his name, and begging for a remission of your sins. And has he suffered that ye have begged in vain? Nay; he has poured out his Spirit upon you, and has caused that your hearts should be filled with joy, and has caused that your mouths should be stopped that ye could not find utterance, so exceedingly great was your joy.

And now, if God, who has created you, on whom you are dependent for your lives and for all that ye have and are, doth grant unto you whatsoever ye ask that is right, in faith, believing that ye shall receive, O then, how ye ought to impart of the substance that ye have one to another.

- 22 En as julle die man oordeel wat sy smeekbede tot julle rig vir julle besittings sodat hy nie vergaan nie, en hom veroordeel, hoeveel regverdiger sal julle veroordeling wees omdat julle jul besittings weerhou, wat nie aan julle behoort nie, maar aan God, aan wie ook julle lewe behoort; en tog doen jul geen smeekbede nie, of bekeer nie van die ding wat julle gedoen het nie.
- 23 Ek sê vir julle, wee daardie man, want sy besittings sal saam met hom vergaan; en nou, ek sê hierdie dinge aan diegene wat ryk is betreffende die dinge van hierdie wêreld.
- 24 En verder, ek sê vir die armes, julle wat nie het nie, en tog voldoende het, dat julle oorleef van dag tot dag; ek bedoel julle almal wat die bedelaar weier, omdat julle nie het nie; ek wil hê dat julle in jul harte moet sê dat: ek gee nie omdat ek nie het nie, maar as ek gehad het, sou ek gee.
- 25 En nou, as julle dit in julle harte sê, bly julle onskuldig, anders is julle veroordeel; en julle veroordeling is regverdig, want julle begeer dit wat julle nie ontvang het nie.
- 26 En nou, ter wille van hierdie dinge wat ek met julle gespreek het—dit is, ter wille van die behoud van ’n vergifnis van julle sondes van dag tot dag, dat julle onskuldig mag wandel voor God—wil ek hê dat julle van jul besittings moet deel met die armes, elke mens volgens dit wat hy het, soos om die hongeriges te voed, die naaktes te klee, die siekes te besoek en by te dra tot hulle verligting beide geestelik en stofflik, volgens hulle behoeftes.
- 27 En kyk dat al hierdie dinge in wysheid en orde gedoen word, want dit is nie nodig dat ’n man vinniger moet hardloop as wat hy krag het nie. En verder, dit is noodsaaklik dat hy ywerig moet wees, dat hy daardeur die prys mag wen; daarom, alle dinge moet ordelik gedoen word.
- 28 En ek wil hê dat julle sal onthou, dat wie ook al onder julle van sy naaste leen, hy die ding moet teruggee wat hy leen, volgens wat hy ooreengekom het, anders sal jy sonde begaan; en miskien sal jy veroorsaak dat jou naaste ook sonde begaan.

And if ye judge the man who putteth up his petition to you for your substance that he perish not, and condemn him, how much more just will be your condemnation for withholding your substance, which doth not belong to you but to God, to whom also your life belongeth; and yet ye put up no petition, nor repent of the thing which thou hast done.

I say unto you, wo be unto that man, for his substance shall perish with him; and now, I say these things unto those who are rich as pertaining to the things of this world.

And again, I say unto the poor, ye who have not and yet have sufficient, that ye remain from day to day; I mean all you who deny the beggar, because ye have not; I would that ye say in your hearts that: I give not because I have not, but if I had I would give.

And now, if ye say this in your hearts ye remain guiltless, otherwise ye are condemned; and your condemnation is just for ye covet that which ye have not received.

And now, for the sake of these things which I have spoken unto you—that is, for the sake of retaining a remission of your sins from day to day, that ye may walk guiltless before God—I would that ye should impart of your substance to the poor, every man according to that which he hath, such as feeding the hungry, clothing the naked, visiting the sick and administering to their relief, both spiritually and temporally, according to their wants.

And see that all these things are done in wisdom and order; for it is not requisite that a man should run faster than he has strength. And again, it is expedient that he should be diligent, that thereby he might win the prize; therefore, all things must be done in order.

And I would that ye should remember, that whosoever among you borroweth of his neighbor should return the thing that he borroweth, according as he doth agree, or else thou shalt commit sin; and perhaps thou shalt cause thy neighbor to commit sin also.

29 En eindelijk, ek kan julle nie al die dinge vertel waardeur julle sonde mag begaan nie; want daar is verskillende maniere en wyses, en wel soveel dat ek hulle nie kan tel nie.

30 Maar dit kan ek julle sê, dat as julle nie op juisself let nie, en julle gedagtes, en julle woorde, en julle daade, en die gebooi van God onderhou nie, en volhard in die geloof in dit wat julle gehoor het aangaande die koms van ons Here, en wel tot aan die einde van julle lewens nie, moet julle vergaan. En nou, o mens, onthou, en vergaan nie.

And finally, I cannot tell you all the things whereby ye may commit sin; for there are divers ways and means, even so many that I cannot number them.

But this much I can tell you, that if ye do not watch yourselves, and your thoughts, and your words, and your deeds, and observe the commandments of God, and continue in the faith of what ye have heard concerning the coming of our Lord, even unto the end of your lives, ye must perish. And now, O man, remember, and perish not.

Mosia 5

- 1 En nou, dit het gebeur dat toe koning Benjamin so met sy volk gespreek het, het hy onder hulle gestuur, begerende om van sy volk te weet of hulle die woorde geglo het wat hy met hulle gespreek het.
- 2 En hulle het almal met een stem uitgeroep, en gesê: Ja, ons glo al die woorde wat u met ons gespreek het; en ook, ons weet van hulle sekerheid en waarheid, vanweë die Gees van die Here Alvermoënd, wat 'n geweldige verandering in ons bewerkstellig het, of in ons harte, sodat ons nie meer die neiging het om kwaad te doen nie, maar om voortdurend goed te doen.
- 3 En ons, onself ook, deur die eindelose goedheid van God, en die openbaringe van sy Gees, het groot insae in dit wat moet kom; en as dit raadsaam was, kon ons van alle dinge profeteer.
- 4 En dit is die geloof wat ons gehad het in die dinge wat ons koning met ons gespreek het, wat ons gebring het tot hierdie groot kennis, waardeur ons ons verbly met sulke uitermate groot blydschap.
- 5 En ons is gewillig om 'n verbond met ons God te sluit om sy wil te doen, en om gehoorsaam te wees aan sy gebooe in alle dinge wat Hy ons sal gebied, al ons oorblywende dae, sodat ons nie op onself 'n nimmereindigende pyniging bring nie, soos gespreek is deur die engel, sodat ons nie mag drink uit die beker van die toorn van God nie.
- 6 En nou, dit is die woorde wat koning Benjamin van hulle verlang het; en daarom het hy aan hulle gesê: Julle het die woorde gespreek wat ek verlang het; en die verbond wat julle gesluit het, is 'n regverdige verbond.
- 7 En nou, vanweë die verbond wat julle gesluit het, sal julle die kinders van Christus genoem word, sy seuns en sy dogters; want kyk, hierdie dag het Hy julle geestelik verwek; want julle sê dat julle harte verander is deur geloof in sy naam; daarom, julle is gebore uit Hom en het sy seuns en sy dogters geword.

Mosiah 5

And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had thus spoken to his people, he sent among them, desiring to know of his people if they believed the words which he had spoken unto them.

And they all cried with one voice, saying: Yea, we believe all the words which thou hast spoken unto us; and also, we know of their surety and truth, because of the Spirit of the Lord Omnipotent, which has wrought a mighty change in us, or in our hearts, that we have no more disposition to do evil, but to do good continually.

And we, ourselves, also, through the infinite goodness of God, and the manifestations of his Spirit, have great views of that which is to come; and were it expedient, we could prophesy of all things.

And it is the faith which we have had on the things which our king has spoken unto us that has brought us to this great knowledge, whereby we do rejoice with such exceedingly great joy.

And we are willing to enter into a covenant with our God to do his will, and to be obedient to his commandments in all things that he shall command us, all the remainder of our days, that we may not bring upon ourselves a never-ending torment, as has been spoken by the angel, that we may not drink out of the cup of the wrath of God.

And now, these are the words which king Benjamin desired of them; and therefore he said unto them: Ye have spoken the words that I desired; and the covenant which ye have made is a righteous covenant.

And now, because of the covenant which ye have made ye shall be called the children of Christ, his sons, and his daughters; for behold, this day he hath spiritually begotten you; for ye say that your hearts are changed through faith on his name; therefore, ye are born of him and have become his sons and his daughters.

- 8 En onder hierdie hoof word julle vrygemaak, en daar is geen ander hoof waardeur julle vrygemaak kan word nie. Daar is geen ander naam gegee waardeur heil kom nie; daarom, ek wil hê dat julle op julle die naam van Christus moet neem, almal van julle wat die verbond met God gesluit het dat julle gehoorsaam sal wees tot aan die einde van julle lewens.
- 9 En dit sal gebeur dat wie ook al dit doen, gevind sal word aan die regterhand van God, want hy sal die naam ken waarby hy genoem word; want hy sal by die naam van Christus genoem word.
- 10 En nou sal dit gebeur, dat wie ook al nie die naam van Christus vir hom sal aanneem nie, by 'n ander naam genoem moet word; daarom, hy bevind homself aan die linkerhand van God.
- 11 En ek wil hê dat julle ook sal onthou dat dit die naam is wat ek gesê het ek aan julle sal gee wat nooit uitgewis sal word nie, behalwe as dit deur oortreding is; daarom, pas op dat julle nie oortree nie, dat die naam nie uitgewis word uit julle harte nie.
- 12 Ek sê vir julle, ek wil hê dat julle sal onthou om die naam te bewaar, altyd geskrewe in julle harte, dat julle nie bevind word aan die linkerhand van God nie, maar dat julle hoor en die stem ken waardeur julle geroep sal word, en ook, die naam wat Hy julle sal noem.
- 13 Want hoe ken 'n man die meester vir wie hy nie gedien het nie, en wat 'n vreemdeling vir hom is, en ver is van die gedagtes en bedoelings van sy hart?
- 14 En verder, neem 'n man 'n esel wat aan sy naaste behoort en hou dit? Ek sê vir julle, Nee; hy sal nie eers toelaat dat hy wei onder sy kuddes nie, maar sal hom wegjaag en hom uitwerp. Ek sê vir julle, dat net so sal dit wees onder julle as julle nie die naam ken waarby julle genoem word nie.

And under this head ye are made free, and there is no other head whereby ye can be made free. There is no other name given whereby salvation cometh; therefore, I would that ye should take upon you the name of Christ, all you that have entered into the covenant with God that ye should be obedient unto the end of your lives.

And it shall come to pass that whosoever doeth this shall be found at the right hand of God, for he shall know the name by which he is called; for he shall be called by the name of Christ.

And now it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall not take upon him the name of Christ must be called by some other name; therefore, he findeth himself on the left hand of God.

And I would that ye should remember also, that this is the name that I said I should give unto you that never should be blotted out, except it be through transgression; therefore, take heed that ye do not transgress, that the name be not blotted out of your hearts.

I say unto you, I would that ye should remember to retain the name written always in your hearts, that ye are not found on the left hand of God, but that ye hear and know the voice by which ye shall be called, and also, the name by which he shall call you.

For how knoweth a man the master whom he has not served, and who is a stranger unto him, and is far from the thoughts and intents of his heart?

And again, doth a man take an ass which belongeth to his neighbor, and keep him? I say unto you, Nay; he will not even suffer that he shall feed among his flocks, but will drive him away, and cast him out. I say unto you, that even so shall it be among you if ye know not the name by which ye are called.

15 Daarom, ek wil hê dat julle standvastig en onbe-
weeglik sal wees, altyd oorvloedig in goeie werke, so-
dat Christus, die Here God Almagtig, julle as syne
mag verseël, dat julle gebring mag word na die he-
mel, sodat julle ewigdurende heil en die ewige lewe
mag hê, deur die wysheid, en krag, en geregtigheid,
en barmhartigheid van Hom wat alle dinge geskape
het, in die hemel en op aarde, wat God is bo alles.
Amen.

Therefore, I would that ye should be steadfast and
immovable, always abounding in good works, that
Christ, the Lord God Omnipotent, may seal you his,
that you may be brought to heaven, that ye may have
everlasting salvation and eternal life, through the
wisdom, and power, and justice, and mercy of him
who created all things, in heaven and in earth, who
is God above all. Amen.

Mosia 6

- 1 En nou, koning Benjamin het gedink dat dit raad-
saam is, nadat hy klaar met die volk gespreek het, dat
hy die name sou neem van al diegene wat 'n verbond
gesluit het met God om sy gebooi te onderhou.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat daar nie een siel was nie, ten-
sy dit kindertjies was, wat nie die verbond gesluit
het, en die naam van Christus vir hulle aangeneem
het nie.
- 3 En verder, dit het gebeur dat toe koning Benjamin
'n einde gemaak het aan al hierdie dinge, en sy seun
Mosia aangestel het om 'n heerser en 'n koning oor
sy volk te wees, en hom al die opdragte gegee het
aangaande die koninkryk, en ook priesters aangestel
het om die volk te onderrig, sodat hulle daardeur die
gebooi van God mag hoor en ken, en om hulle aan
te spoor tot gedagtenis aan die eed wat hulle afgelê
het, het hy die skare weggestuur, en hulle het terug-
gekeer, elkeen, volgens hulle gesinne, na hulle eie
huise.
- 4 En Mosia het begin om te heers in sy vader se plek.
En hy het begin om te heers in die dertigste jaar van
sy ouderdom, wat dit in totaal omtrent vierhonderd
ses en sewentig jaar maak vanaf die tyd dat Lehi
Jerusalem verlaat het.
- 5 En koning Benjamin het drie jaar gelewe, en hy
het gesterf.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat koning Mosia in die weë van
die Here gewandel het, en sy oordele en sy insettinge
nagekom en sy gebooi onderhou het in alle dinge
wat Hy hom ook al gebied het.
- 7 En koning Mosia het sy volk die grond laat be-
werk. En hy ook, het self die grond bewerk, sodat hy
daardeur nie 'n las vir sy volk sou word nie, sodat hy
mag handel volgens dit wat sy vader in alle dinge ge-
handel het. En daar was geen twiste onder sy hele
volk vir 'n tydperk van drie jaar nie.

Mosiah 6

And now, king Benjamin thought it was expedient,
after having finished speaking to the people, that he
should take the names of all those who had entered
into a covenant with God to keep his command-
ments.

And it came to pass that there was not one soul,
except it were little children, but who had entered
into the covenant and had taken upon them the
name of Christ.

And again, it came to pass that when king
Benjamin had made an end of all these things, and
had consecrated his son Mosiah to be a ruler and a
king over his people, and had given him all the
charges concerning the kingdom, and also had ap-
pointed priests to teach the people, that thereby they
might hear and know the commandments of God,
and to stir them up in remembrance of the oath
which they had made, he dismissed the multitude,
and they returned, every one, according to their fam-
ilies, to their own houses.

And Mosiah began to reign in his father's stead.
And he began to reign in the thirtieth year of his age,
making in the whole, about four hundred and
seventy-six years from the time that Lehi left
Jerusalem.

And king Benjamin lived three years and he died.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah did walk in
the ways of the Lord, and did observe his judgments
and his statutes, and did keep his commandments in
all things whatsoever he commanded him.

And king Mosiah did cause his people that they
should till the earth. And he also, himself, did till the
earth, that thereby he might not become burden-
some to his people, that he might do according to
that which his father had done in all things. And
there was no contention among all his people for the
space of three years.

Mosia 7

- 1 En nou, dit het gebeur dat nadat koning Mosia voortdurende vrede gehad het vir 'n tydperk van drie jaar, was hy begerig om te weet aangaande die mense wat opgegaan het om in die land Lehi-Nefi te woon, of in die stad Lehi-Nefi; want sy volk het niks gehoor van hulle vanaf die tyd dat hulle die land Zarahemla verlaat het nie; daarom, hulle het hom vermoei met hul neulery.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat koning Mosia toegestem het dat sestien van hulle sterk manne mag opgaan na die land Lehi-Nefi, om navraag te doen aangaande hulle broers.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat hulle die volgende dag begin het om op te gaan, en by hulle was ene Ammon, en hy was 'n sterk en magtige man, en 'n afstammeling van Zarahemla; en hy was ook hulle leier.
- 4 En nou, hulle het nie die koers geken wat hulle moes reis in die wildernis om op te gaan na die land Lehi-Nefi nie; daarom het hulle baie dae rondgedwaal in die wildernis en wel veertig dae het hulle rondgedwaal.
- 5 En nadat hulle veertig dae rondgedwaal het, het hulle by 'n heuwel gekom, wat noord is van die land Silom, en daar het hulle hul tente opgeslaan.
- 6 En Ammon het drie van sy broers geneem, en hulle name was Amaleki, Helem, en Hem, en hulle het afgegaan in die land Nefi.
- 7 En kyk, hulle het die koning van die volk teëgekome wat in die land Nefi was, en in die land Silom; en hulle is omsingel deur die koning se lyfwag, en is geneem, en is gebind en is in die gevangenis geplaas.
- 8 En dit het gebeur toe hulle twee dae in die gevangenis was, is hulle weer voor die koning gebring, en hulle boeie is losgemaak; en hulle het voor die koning gestaan en is toegelaat, of eerder beveel, dat hulle die vrae moes beantwoord wat hy hulle sou vra.
- 9 En hy het aan hulle gesê: Kyk, ek is Limhi, die seun van Noag, wat die seun van Zenif was, wat opgekome het uit die land Zarahemla om hierdie land te beërwe, wat die land van hul vaders was, wat 'n koning gemaak is deur die stem van die volk.

Mosiah 7

And now, it came to pass that after king Mosiah had had continual peace for the space of three years, he was desirous to know concerning the people who went up to dwell in the land of Lehi-Nephi, or in the city of Lehi-Nephi; for his people had heard nothing from them from the time they left the land of Zarahemla; therefore, they wearied him with their teasings.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted that sixteen of their strong men might go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi, to inquire concerning their brethren.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they started to go up, having with them one Ammon, he being a strong and mighty man, and a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was also their leader.

And now, they knew not the course they should travel in the wilderness to go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi; therefore they wandered many days in the wilderness, even forty days did they wander.

And when they had wandered forty days they came to a hill, which is north of the land of Shilom, and there they pitched their tents.

And Ammon took three of his brethren, and their names were Amaleki, Helem, and Hem, and they went down into the land of Nephi.

And behold, they met the king of the people who were in the land of Nephi, and in the land of Shilom; and they were surrounded by the king's guard, and were taken, and were bound, and were committed to prison.

And it came to pass when they had been in prison two days they were again brought before the king, and their bands were loosed; and they stood before the king, and were permitted, or rather commanded, that they should answer the questions which he should ask them.

And he said unto them: Behold, I am Limhi, the son of Noah, who was the son of Zeniff, who came up out of the land of Zarahemla to inherit this land, which was the land of their fathers, who was made a king by the voice of the people.

- 10 En nou, ek begeer om die oorsaak te weet waarom julle so gewaagd was as om naby die mure van die stad te kom, toe ek met my wagte buite die poort was?
- 11 En nou, om hierdie rede het ek toegelaat dat julle beskerm word, dat ek by julle navraag mag doen, of anders sou ek beveel het dat my wagte julle om die lewe moes bring. Julle mag praat.
- 12 En nou, toe Ammon sien dat hy toegelaat was om te praat, het hy na vore gestap en homself neergebuig voor die koning; en toe hy weer opstaan, sê hy: O, koning, ek is voor God vandag baie dankbaar dat ek nog lewe, en toegelaat word om te spreek; en ek sal poog om met vrymoedigheid te spreek;
- 13 Want ek is seker dat as u my geken het, u nie sou toegelaat het dat ek hierdie boeie moes dra nie. Want ek is Ammon, en is 'n afstammeling van Zarahemla, en het opgekom uit die land Zarahemla om navraag te doen aangaande ons broers, wat Zeniff uitgebring het uit daardie land.
- 14 En nou, dit het gebeur dat nadat Limhi die woorde gehoor het van Ammon, was hy uitermate verheug, en het gesê: Nou, ek weet vir seker dat my broers wat in die land Zarahemla was, nog lewe. En nou, ek sal my verbly; en môre sal ek sorg dat my volk hulle ook verbly.
- 15 Want kyk, ons is in slawerny onder die Lamaniete, en word belas met 'n belasting wat swaar is om te dra. En nou, kyk, ons broers sal ons verlos uit ons slawerny, of uit die hande van die Lamaniete, en ons sal hulle slawe wees; want dit is beter dat ons slawe van die Nefiete is, as om belasting te betaal aan die koning van die Lamaniete.
- 16 En nou, koning Limhi het sy wagte beveel dat hulle nie langer vir Ammon of sy broers moes bind nie, maar het beveel dat hulle na die heuwel gaan wat noord van Silom was, en hulle broers die stad inbring, dat hulle sodoende mag eet en drink, en hulleself uitrus na die vermoeienis van hulle reis; want hulle het baie dinge gely; hulle het honger, dors en uitputting gely.

And now, I desire to know the cause whereby ye were so bold as to come near the walls of the city, when I, myself, was with my guards without the gate?

And now, for this cause have I suffered that ye should be preserved, that I might inquire of you, or else I should have caused that my guards should have put you to death. Ye are permitted to speak.

And now, when Ammon saw that he was permitted to speak, he went forth and bowed himself before the king; and rising again he said: O king, I am very thankful before God this day that I am yet alive, and am permitted to speak; and I will endeavor to speak with boldness;

For I am assured that if ye had known me ye would not have suffered that I should have worn these bands. For I am Ammon, and am a descendant of Zarahemla, and have come up out of the land of Zarahemla to inquire concerning our brethren, whom Zeniff brought up out of that land.

And now, it came to pass that after Limhi had heard the words of Ammon, he was exceedingly glad, and said: Now, I know of a surety that my brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla are yet alive. And now, I will rejoice; and on the morrow I will cause that my people shall rejoice also.

For behold, we are in bondage to the Lamanites, and are taxed with a tax which is grievous to be borne. And now, behold, our brethren will deliver us out of our bondage, or out of the hands of the Lamanites, and we will be their slaves; for it is better that we be slaves to the Nephites than to pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites.

And now, king Limhi commanded his guards that they should no more bind Ammon nor his brethren, but caused that they should go to the hill which was north of Shilom, and bring their brethren into the city, that thereby they might eat, and drink, and rest themselves from the labors of their journey; for they had suffered many things; they had suffered hunger, thirst, and fatigue.

17 En nou, dit het gebeur op die volgende dag dat koning Limhi 'n aankondiging laat uitroep het onder sy hele volk, dat hulle hulself daarvolgens mag byme-kaar maak by die tempel, om die woorde te hoor wat hy met hulle sou spreek.

18 En dit het gebeur dat nadat hulle hulself versamel het, dat hy met hulle gespreek het op hierdie wyse, en gesê het: O julle, my volk, rig julle hoofde op en wees getroos; want kyk, die tyd is op hande, of is nie ver nie, wanneer ons nie langer onderdanig sal wees aan ons vyande nie, niteenstaande ons baie worstelinge, wat vergeefs was; tog vertrou ek dat daar 'n doeltreffende stryd oorbly om gestry te word.

19 Daarom, rig julle hoofde op, en verheug julle, en stel julle vertrou in God, in daardie God wat die God was van Abraham, en Isak, en Jakob; en ook, daardie God wat die kinders van Israel uitgebring het uit Egipteland, en hulle deur die Rooi See laat loop op droë grond, en hulle gevoed het met manna sodat hulle nie mag vergaan in die wildernis nie; en baie meer dinge het Hy vir hulle gedoen.

20 En verder, daardie selfde God het ons vaders uitgebring uit die land Jerusalem, en het sy volk behoed en bewaar en wel tot op hede; en kyk, dit is vanweë ons ongeregthede en gruwels dat Hy ons in slawerny gebring het.

21 En julle is vandag almal getuies, dat Zenif, wat koning gemaak is oor hierdie volk, omdat hy oorywerig was om die land van sy vaders te beërwe, daarom is hy bedrieg deur die sluide en listigheid van koning Laman, wat 'n verdrag met koning Zenif aangegaan het, en in sy hande die besit oorgelewer het van 'n deel van die land, oftewel die stad Lehi-Nefi, en die stad Silom; en die omliggende land—

22 En dit alles het hy gedoen, met die uitsluitlike doel om hierdie volk tot onderdanigheid te bring of in slawerny. En kyk, op hierdie tydstip betaal ons belasting aan die koning van die Lamaniete, ten bedrae van een helfte van ons mielies, en ons gars, en wel al ons graan van elke soort, en een helfte van die aanwas van ons kuddes en ons troppe; en wel een helfte van alles wat ons het of besit, eis die koning van die Lamaniete van ons, of ons lewens.

And now, it came to pass on the morrow that king Limhi sent a proclamation among all his people, that thereby they might gather themselves together to the temple, to hear the words which he should speak unto them.

And it came to pass that when they had gathered themselves together that he spake unto them in this wise, saying: O ye, my people, lift up your heads and be comforted; for behold, the time is at hand, or is not far distant, when we shall no longer be in subjection to our enemies, notwithstanding our many strugglings, which have been in vain; yet I trust there remaineth an effectual struggle to be made.

Therefore, lift up your heads, and rejoice, and put your trust in God, in that God who was the God of Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob; and also, that God who brought the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt, and caused that they should walk through the Red Sea on dry ground, and fed them with manna that they might not perish in the wilderness; and many more things did he do for them.

And again, that same God has brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, and has kept and preserved his people even until now; and behold, it is because of our iniquities and abominations that he has brought us into bondage.

And ye all are witnesses this day, that Zeniff, who was made king over this people, he being overzealous to inherit the land of his fathers, therefore being deceived by the cunning and craftiness of king Laman, who having entered into a treaty with king Zeniff, and having yielded up into his hands the possessions of a part of the land, or even the city of Lehi-Nepi, and the city of Shilom; and the land round about—

And all this he did, for the sole purpose of bringing this people into subjection or into bondage. And behold, we at this time do pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites, to the amount of one half of our corn, and our barley, and even all our grain of every kind, and one half of the increase of our flocks and our herds; and even one half of all we have or possess the king of the Lamanites doth exact of us, or our lives.

23 En nou, is dit nie swaar om te verdra nie? En is dit, ons verdrukking, nie groot nie? Nou kyk, hoeveel rede het ons om te treur.

24 Ja, ek sê vir julle, groot is die redes wat ons het om te treur; want kyk hoeveel van ons broers is gedood, en hulle bloed is tevergeefs gestort, en alles vanweë ongeregtigheid.

25 Want as hierdie volk nie verval het in oortreding nie, sou die Here nie toegelaat het dat hierdie groot kwaad oor hulle gekom het nie. Maar kyk, hulle wou nie op sy woorde ag slaan nie; maar daar het twistes ontstaan onder hulle, en wel tot so 'n mate dat hulle bloed onder mekaar vergiet het.

26 En hulle het 'n profeet van die Here doodgemaak; ja, 'n uitverkore man van God, wat hulle vertel het van hulle boosheid en gruwels, en geprofeteer het van baie dinge wat moet kom, ja, en selfs die koms van Christus.

27 En omdat hy aan hulle gesê het dat Christus die God was, die Vader van alle dinge, en gesê het dat Hy vir Hom die gestalte van 'n mens sou aanneem, en dit sou die gestalte wees waarna die mens geskape is in die begin; of met ander woorde, hy het gesê dat die mens geskape is volgens die gestalte van God, en dat God sou neerdaal onder die kinders van mense, en vir Hom vlees en bloed sou aanneem, en sou uitgaan op die aangesig van die aarde—

28 En nou, omdat hy dit gesê het, het hulle hom doodgemaak; en baie meer dinge het hulle gedoen wat die toorn van God op hulle neergebring het. Daarom, wie wonder dat hulle in slawerny is, en dat hulle getref word met sware verdrukkinge?

29 Want kyk, die Here het gesê: Ek sal my volk nie bystaan op die dag van hulle oortreding nie; maar Ek sal hulle weë versper sodat hulle nie voorspoedig is nie; en hulle dade sal soos 'n struikelblok voor hulle wees.

30 En verder, Hy het gesê: As my volk vieslikheid sal saai, sal hulle die kaf daarvan maai in die warrelwind; en die uitwerking daarvan is gif.

31 En verder, Hy het gesê: As my volk vieslikheid sal saai, sal hulle die oostewind maai, wat onmiddellike vernietiging meebring.

32 En nou, kyk, die belofte van die Here is vervul, en julle word geslaan en verdruk.

And now, is not this grievous to be borne? And is not this, our affliction, great? Now behold, how great reason we have to mourn.

Yea, I say unto you, great are the reasons which we have to mourn; for behold how many of our brethren have been slain, and their blood has been spilt in vain, and all because of iniquity.

For if this people had not fallen into transgression the Lord would not have suffered that this great evil should come upon them. But behold, they would not hearken unto his words; but there arose contentions among them, even so much that they did shed blood among themselves.

And a prophet of the Lord have they slain; yea, a chosen man of God, who told them of their wickedness and abominations, and prophesied of many things which are to come, yea, even the coming of Christ.

And because he said unto them that Christ was the God, the Father of all things, and said that he should take upon him the image of man, and it should be the image after which man was created in the beginning; or in other words, he said that man was created after the image of God, and that God should come down among the children of men, and take upon him flesh and blood, and go forth upon the face of the earth—

And now, because he said this, they did put him to death; and many more things did they do which brought down the wrath of God upon them. Therefore, who wondereth that they are in bondage, and that they are smitten with sore afflictions?

For behold, the Lord hath said: I will not succor my people in the day of their transgression; but I will hedge up their ways that they prosper not; and their doings shall be as a stumbling block before them.

And again, he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the chaff thereof in the whirlwind; and the effect thereof is poison.

And again he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the east wind, which bringeth immediate destruction.

And now, behold, the promise of the Lord is fulfilled, and ye are smitten and afflicted.

33 Maar as julle sal keer na die Here met volle voor-
neme van hart, en julle vertrouwe in Hom stel, en
Hom dien met alle ywer van verstand, as julle dit
doen, sal Hy, volgens sy eie wil en behae, julle verlos
uit slawerny.

But if ye will turn to the Lord with full purpose of
heart, and put your trust in him, and serve him with
all diligence of mind, if ye do this, he will, according
to his own will and pleasure, deliver you out of
bondage.

Mosia 8

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat nadat koning Limhi 'n einde gemaak het om te spreek met sy volk, want hy het baie dinge gespreek met hulle en slegs 'n paar daarvan het ek geskrywe in hierdie boek, het hy sy volk al die dinge vertel aangaande hulle broers wat in die land Zarahemla was.
- 2 En hy het Ammon gevra om op te staan voor die skare, en hulle alles te vertel wat met hulle broers gebeur het, vanaf die tyd dat Zenif opgegaan het uit die land, en wel tot die tyd dat hyself opgekom het uit die land.
- 3 En hy het ook aan hulle die laaste woorde oorvertel wat koning Benjamin hulle geleer het, en hulle verduidelik aan die volk van koning Limhi, sodat hulle al die woorde kon verstaan wat hy gespreek het.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat nadat hy dit alles gedoen het, het koning Limhi die skare weggestuur en beveel dat hulle elkeen na sy eie huis moes terugkeer.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat hy opdrag gegee het dat die plate wat die kroniek bevat het van sy volk vanaf die tyd dat hulle die land Zarahemla verlaat het, voor Ammon gebring moes word, sodat hy hulle mag lees.
- 6 Nou, nadat Ammon die kroniek gelees het, het die koning hom gevra of hy tale kon vertolk, en Ammon het aan hom gesê dat hy nie kon nie.
- 7 En die koning het aan hom gesê: Omdat ek bedroef was oor die verdrukkinge van my volk, het ek drie en veertig manne van my volk 'n reis laat onderneem, die wildernis in, sodat hulle daardeur die land Zarahemla mag vind, sodat ons 'n beroep op ons broers kon doen om ons te verlos uit slawerny.
- 8 En hulle was verdwaal in die wildernis vir 'n tydperk van baie dae, tog was hulle ywerig, en het nie die land Zarahemla gevind nie, maar het teruggekeer na hierdie land, nadat hulle gereis het in 'n land tussen baie waters, en 'n land ontdek het wat besaai was met die beendere van mense, en van diere, en ook bedek was met rûines van geboue van allerlei soorte, en het 'n land ontdek wat bewoon was deur 'n volk wat so talryk was soos die leërske van Israel.

Mosiah 8

And it came to pass that after king Limhi had made an end of speaking to his people, for he spake many things unto them and only a few of them have I written in this book, he told his people all the things concerning their brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla.

And he caused that Ammon should stand up before the multitude, and rehearse unto them all that had happened unto their brethren from the time that Zeniff went up out of the land even until the time that he himself came up out of the land.

And he also rehearsed unto them the last words which king Benjamin had taught them, and explained them to the people of king Limhi, so that they might understand all the words which he spake.

And it came to pass that after he had done all this, that king Limhi dismissed the multitude, and caused that they should return every one unto his own house.

And it came to pass that he caused that the plates which contained the record of his people from the time that they left the land of Zarahemla, should be brought before Ammon, that he might read them.

Now, as soon as Ammon had read the record, the king inquired of him to know if he could interpret languages, and Ammon told him that he could not.

And the king said unto him: Being grieved for the afflictions of my people, I caused that forty and three of my people should take a journey into the wilderness, that thereby they might find the land of Zarahemla, that we might appeal unto our brethren to deliver us out of bondage.

And they were lost in the wilderness for the space of many days, yet they were diligent, and found not the land of Zarahemla but returned to this land, having traveled in a land among many waters, having discovered a land which was covered with bones of men, and of beasts, and was also covered with ruins of buildings of every kind, having discovered a land which had been peopled with a people who were as numerous as the hosts of Israel.

- 9 En as 'n getuienis dat die dinge wat hulle gesê het waar is, het hulle vier en twintig plate gebring wat gevul is met graveerwerk, en hulle is van suiwer goud.
- 10 En kyk, ook, hulle het borsplate gebring, wat groot is, en hulle is van brons en van koper, en is volkome sterk.
- 11 En verder, hulle het swaarde gebring, die hewwe daarvan het verweer, en die lemme daarvan was deursoes gevreet; en daar is niemand in die land wat in staat is om die taal te vertolk of die graverings wat op die plate is nie. Daarom het ek aan jou gesê: Kan jy vertaal?
- 12 En ek sê weer aan jou: Weet jy van enigeen wat kan vertaal? Want ek is begerig dat hierdie kronieke in ons taal vertaal moet word; want miskien sal hulle ons 'n kennis gee van 'n oorblyfsel van die volk wat vernietig is, van waar hierdie kronieke gekom het; of miskien sal hulle vir ons 'n kennis gee van hierdie selfde volk wat vernietig is; en ek is begerig om die oorsaak te weet van hulle vernietiging.
- 13 Nou het Ammon aan hom gesê: Ek kan u vir seker vertel, o koning, van 'n man wat die kronieke kan vertaal; want hy besit iets waarmee hy kan kyk, en alle ou kronieke vertaal; en dit is 'n gawe van God. En die dinge word vertolkers genoem, en geen mens kan in hulle kyk nie tensy hy beveel word, uit vrees dat hy daarin soek vir dit wat hom nie toekom nie en sou vergaan. En wie ook al beveel word om daarin te kyk, dié word 'n siener genoem.
- 14 En kyk, die koning van die volk wat in die land Zarahemla is, is die man wat beveel is om hierdie dinge te doen, en wat hierdie verhewe gawe van God het.
- 15 En die koning het gesê dat 'n siener groter is as 'n profeet.
- 16 En Ammon het gesê dat 'n siener 'n openbaarder is en ook 'n profeet; en 'n gawe wat groter is, kan geen mens hê nie, tensy hy die krag van God sou besit, wat geen mens kan nie; tog mag 'n mens groot krag hê, wat aan hom gegee is deur God.

And for a testimony that the things that they had said are true they have brought twenty-four plates which are filled with engravings, and they are of pure gold.

And behold, also, they have brought breastplates, which are large, and they are of brass and of copper, and are perfectly sound.

And again, they have brought swords, the hilts thereof have perished, and the blades thereof were cankered with rust; and there is no one in the land that is able to interpret the language or the engravings that are on the plates. Therefore I said unto thee: Canst thou translate?

And I say unto thee again: Knowest thou of any one that can translate? For I am desirous that these records should be translated into our language; for, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of a remnant of the people who have been destroyed, from whence these records came; or, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of this very people who have been destroyed; and I am desirous to know the cause of their destruction.

Now Ammon said unto him: I can assuredly tell thee, O king, of a man that can translate the records; for he has wherewith that he can look, and translate all records that are of ancient date; and it is a gift from God. And the things are called interpreters, and no man can look in them except he be commanded, lest he should look for that he ought not and he should perish. And whosoever is commanded to look in them, the same is called seer.

And behold, the king of the people who are in the land of Zarahemla is the man that is commanded to do these things, and who has this high gift from God.

And the king said that a seer is greater than a prophet.

And Ammon said that a seer is a revelator and a prophet also; and a gift which is greater can no man have, except he should possess the power of God, which no man can; yet a man may have great power given him from God.

17 Maar 'n siener kan weet van dinge wat verby is, en ook van dinge wat moet kom, en deur hulle sal alle dinge geopenbaar word, of eerder, sal geheime dinge bekendgemaak word, en verborge dinge sal aan die lig kom, en dinge wat nie bekend is nie, sal bekendgemaak word deur hulle, en ook sal dinge bekendgemaak word deur hulle wat andersins nie bekend kan wees nie.

18 Dus het God 'n wyse voorsien dat die mens, deur geloof, magtige wonderwerke mag verrig; daarom word hy 'n groot voordeel vir sy medemens.

19 En nou, toe Ammon 'n einde gemaak het om hierdie woorde te spreek, het die koning hom uitermate verbly, en God gedank en gesê: Ongetwyfeld is daar 'n groot verborgenheid in hierdie plate opgesluit, en hierdie vertolkers is ongetwyfeld berei vir die doel om al sulke verborgenhede te ontvou aan die kinders van mense.

20 O, hoe wonderbaarlik is die werke van die Here, en hoe lankmoedig is Hy met sy volk; ja, en hoe blind en ondeurdringbaar is die begrippe van die kinders van mense; want hulle wil nie na wysheid soek nie, nóg begeer hulle dat sy oor hulle moet regeer!

21 Ja, hulle is soos 'n wilde trop wat wegvlug van die skaapherder, en verstrooi raak, en verjaag word, en opgevrete word deur die wilde diere van die woud.

But a seer can know of things which are past, and also of things which are to come, and by them shall all things be revealed, or, rather, shall secret things be made manifest, and hidden things shall come to light, and things which are not known shall be made known by them, and also things shall be made known by them which otherwise could not be known.

Thus God has provided a means that man, through faith, might work mighty miracles; therefore he becometh a great benefit to his fellow beings.

And now, when Ammon had made an end of speaking these words the king rejoiced exceedingly, and gave thanks to God, saying: Doubtless a great mystery is contained within these plates, and these interpreters were doubtless prepared for the purpose of unfolding all such mysteries to the children of men.

O how marvelous are the works of the Lord, and how long doth he suffer with his people; yea, and how blind and impenetrable are the understandings of the children of men; for they will not seek wisdom, neither do they desire that she should rule over them!

Yea, they are as a wild flock which fleeth from the shepherd, and scattereth, and are driven, and are devoured by the beasts of the forest.

DIE KRONIEK VAN ZENIF—'n Kroniek van sy volk, vanaf die tyd dat hulle die land Zarabemla verlaat het tot die tyd toe hulle verlos is uit die bande van die Lamaniete.

Mosia 9

- 1 Ek, Zenif, wat onderrig is in die volledige taal van die Nefiete, en wat 'n kennis besit het van die land Nepi, of van die land van ons vaders se eerste erfenis, en wat gestuur is as 'n verkenner onder die Lamaniete sodat ek hulle magte mag verken, sodat ons leër op hulle mag kom en hulle vernietig—maar toe ek dit gesien het wat goed was onder hulle, was ek begerig dat hulle nie vernietig moes word nie.
- 2 Daarom, ek het gestry met my broers in die wildernis, want ek wou hê dat ons leier 'n verdrag met hulle moes aangaan; maar omdat hy 'n streng en 'n bloeddorstige man was, het hy beveel dat ek doodgemaak moes word; maar ek is gered deur baie bloedvergieting; want vader het teen vader geveg, en broer teen broer, totdat die grootste gedeelte van ons leër vernietig is in die wildernis; en ons het teruggekeer, diegene van ons wat gespaar is, na die land Zarahemla, om daardie verhaal te vertel aan hulle vroue en hul kinders.
- 3 En tog, omdat ek oorywerig was om die land van ons vaders te beërwe, het ek soveel bymekaargemaak as wat begerig was om op te gaan om die land in besit te neem, en het weer begin op ons reis die wildernis in, om op te gaan na die land; maar ons is getref deur hongersnood en sware verdrukkinge; want ons was traag om die Here ons God te onthou.
- 4 Nogtans, na baie dae se ronddwaal in die wildernis, het ons ons tente opgeslaan op die plek waar ons broers doodgemaak is, wat naby die land van ons vaders was.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat ek weer met vier van my manne die stad binnegegaan het, in na die koning toe, sodat ek mag weet van die gesindheid van die koning, en sodat ek mag weet of ek mag ingaan met my volk en die land in vrede in besit mag neem.
- 6 En ek het na die koning ingegaan, en hy het met my 'n verbond gesluit dat ek die land Lehi-Nefi mag besit, en die land Silom.

THE RECORD OF ZENIFF—An account of his people, from the time they left the land of Zarabemla until the time that they were delivered out of the bands of the Lamanites.

Mosiah 9

I, Zeniff, having been taught in all the language of the Nephites, and having had a knowledge of the land of Nephi, or of the land of our fathers' first inheritance, and having been sent as a spy among the Lamanites that I might spy out their forces, that our army might come upon them and destroy them—but when I saw that which was good among them I was desirous that they should not be destroyed.

Therefore, I contended with my brethren in the wilderness, for I would that our ruler should make a treaty with them; but he being an austere and a blood-thirsty man commanded that I should be slain; but I was rescued by the shedding of much blood; for father fought against father, and brother against brother, until the greater number of our army was destroyed in the wilderness; and we returned, those of us that were spared, to the land of Zarahemla, to relate that tale to their wives and their children.

And yet, I being over-zealous to inherit the land of our fathers, collected as many as were desirous to go up to possess the land, and started again on our journey into the wilderness to go up to the land; but we were smitten with famine and sore afflictions; for we were slow to remember the Lord our God.

Nevertheless, after many days' wandering in the wilderness we pitched our tents in the place where our brethren were slain, which was near to the land of our fathers.

And it came to pass that I went again with four of my men into the city, in unto the king, that I might know of the disposition of the king, and that I might know if I might go in with my people and possess the land in peace.

And I went in unto the king, and he covenanted with me that I might possess the land of Lehi-Nephi, and the land of Shilom.

- 7 En hy het ook beveel dat sy volk moes vertrek uit die land, en ek en my volk het die land binnegegaan dat ons dit mag besit.
- 8 En ons het begin om geboue te bou, en om die mure van die stad te herstel, ja, naamlik die mure van die stad Lehi-Nefi, en die stad Silom.
- 9 En ons het begin om die grond te bewerk, ja, waarlik met allerhande soorte sade, met sade van mielies, en van koring, en van gars, en met neas, en met sjeum, en met sade van allerhande soorte vrugte; en ons het begin om te vermenigvuldig en voorspoedig te wees in die land.
- 10 Nou, dit was die sluide en listigheid van koning Laman, om my volk in slawerny te bring, dat hy die land oorgegee het, dat ons dit mag besit.
- 11 Daarom het dit gebeur dat nadat ons in die land gewoon het vir 'n tydperk van twaalf jaar, dat koning Laman onrustig begin word het, uit vrees dat my volk op een of ander wyse sterk sou word in die land, en dat hulle hul nie kon oorweldig en hulle in slawerny bring nie.
- 12 Nou, hulle was 'n lui en 'n afgodsvolk; daarom was hulle begerig om ons in slawerny te bring, sodat hulle hulself mag te buite gaan met die arbeid van ons hande; ja, sodat hulle mag feesvier op die kuddes van ons weivelde.
- 13 Daarom het dit gebeur dat koning Laman sy volk begin opstook het, sodat hulle met my volk moes veg; daarom het daar oorloë en twiste begin plaasvind in die land.
- 14 Want, in die dertiende jaar van my heerskappy in die land Nefi, weg na die suide van die land Silom, toe my volk besig was om hulle kuddes water te gee en te laat wei, en hulle lande te bewerk, het 'n talryke leërskare van Lamaniete op hulle afgekom en begin om hulle dood te maak, en om hulle kuddes af te neem, en die mielies van hulle lande.
- 15 Ja, en dit het gebeur dat hulle gevlug het, almal wat nie ingehaal is nie, en wel tot in die stad Nefi, en het tot my geroep om beskerming.
- 16 En dit het gebeur dat ek hulle bewapen het met boë, en met pyle, met swaarde, en met sabels, en met knuppels, en met slingers, en met allerhande soorte wapens wat ons kon bedink, en ek en my volk het uitgegaan teen die Lamaniete om te veg.

And he also commanded that his people should depart out of the land, and I and my people went into the land that we might possess it.

And we began to build buildings, and to repair the walls of the city, yea, even the walls of the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom.

And we began to till the ground, yea, even with all manner of seeds, with seeds of corn, and of wheat, and of barley, and with neas, and with sheum, and with seeds of all manner of fruits; and we did begin to multiply and prosper in the land.

Now it was the cunning and the craftiness of king Laman, to bring my people into bondage, that he yielded up the land that we might possess it.

Therefore it came to pass, that after we had dwelt in the land for the space of twelve years that king Laman began to grow uneasy, lest by any means my people should wax strong in the land, and that they could not overpower them and bring them into bondage.

Now they were a lazy and an idolatrous people; therefore they were desirous to bring us into bondage, that they might glut themselves with the labors of our hands; yea, that they might feast themselves upon the flocks of our fields.

Therefore it came to pass that king Laman began to stir up his people that they should contend with my people; therefore there began to be wars and contentions in the land.

For, in the thirteenth year of my reign in the land of Nephi, away on the south of the land of Shilom, when my people were watering and feeding their flocks, and tilling their lands, a numerous host of Lamanites came upon them and began to slay them, and to take off their flocks, and the corn of their fields.

Yea, and it came to pass that they fled, all that were not overtaken, even into the city of Nephi, and did call upon me for protection.

And it came to pass that I did arm them with bows, and with arrows, with swords, and with cimeters, and with clubs, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons which we could invent, and I and my people did go forth against the Lamanites to battle.

17 Ja, in die krag van die Here het ons uitgetrek om te veg teen die Lamaniete; want ek en my volk het kragtig tot die Here geroep dat Hy ons sou verlos uit die hande van ons vyande, want ons is verwek tot 'n herinnering aan verlossing van ons vaders.

18 En God het ons geroep gehoor en het ons gebede beantwoord; en ons het uitgegaan in sy krag; ja, ons het uitgegaan teen die Lamaniete, en in een dag en 'n nag het ons drieduisend drie en veertig doodgemaak; ons het hulle doodgemaak en wel totdat ons hulle uit ons land verdryf het.

19 En ek het met my eie hande gehelp om hulle dooies te begrawe. En kyk, tot ons groot verdriet en berou, is tweehonderd nege en sewentig van ons broers gedood.

Yea, in the strength of the Lord did we go forth to battle against the Lamanites; for I and my people did cry mightily to the Lord that he would deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, for we were awakened to a remembrance of the deliverance of our fathers.

And God did hear our cries and did answer our prayers; and we did go forth in his might; yea, we did go forth against the Lamanites, and in one day and a night we did slay three thousand and forty-three; we did slay them even until we had driven them out of our land.

And I, myself, with mine own hands, did help to bury their dead. And behold, to our great sorrow and lamentation, two hundred and seventy-nine of our brethren were slain.

Mosia 10

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat ons weer die koninkryk begin vestig het, en ons het weer begin om die land in vrede in besit te neem. En ek het beveel dat daar wapens van oorlog van allerlei soorte gemaak moes word, sodat ek daardeur wapens mag hê vir my volk vir die tyd dat die Lamaniete weer teen ons sou optrek om oorlog te maak teen my volk.
- 2 En ek het wagte rondom die land opgestel, sodat die Lamaniete nie weer onverhoeds teen ons mag opkom en ons vernietig nie; en so het ek my volk en my kuddes bewaak, en verhoed dat hulle in die hande van ons vyande val.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat ons die land van ons vaders beerwe het vir baie jare lank, ja, vir 'n tydperk van twee en twintig jaar.
- 4 En ek het die manne die grond laat bewerk en allerhande soorte graan verbou en allerhande vrugte van elke soort.
- 5 En ek het die vroue laat spin, en arbei, en werk, en allerhande fyn linne laat maak, ja, en linne van elke soort, sodat ons ons naaktheid kon bedek; en so was ons voorspoedig in die land—so het ons voortdurende vrede in die land gehad vir 'n tydperk van twee en twintig jaar.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat koning Laman gesterf het, en sy seun het begin om in sy plek te heers. En hy het begin om sy volk op te stook om te rebelleer teen my volk; daarom het hulle begin om voor te berei vir oorlog, en om teen my volk op te trek in die stryd.
- 7 Maar ek het my spioene rondgestuur in die land Semlon, sodat ek hulle voorbereidsels kon ontdek, sodat ek teen hulle mag waak, sodat hulle nie my volk mag aanval en hulle vernietig nie.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat hulle opgekom het in die noorde van die land Silom, met hulle talryke leërskaare, manne gewapend met boë, en met pyle, en met swaarde, en met sabels, en met klippe, en met slingers; en hulle het hul hoofde geskeer dat hulle nakend was; en hulle was omgord met 'n leergordel om hulle lendene.

Mosiah 10

And it came to pass that we again began to establish the kingdom and we again began to possess the land in peace. And I caused that there should be weapons of war made of every kind, that thereby I might have weapons for my people against the time the Lamanites should come up again to war against my people.

And I set guards round about the land, that the Lamanites might not come upon us again unawares and destroy us; and thus I did guard my people and my flocks, and keep them from falling into the hands of our enemies.

And it came to pass that we did inherit the land of our fathers for many years, yea, for the space of twenty and two years.

And I did cause that the men should till the ground, and raise all manner of grain and all manner of fruit of every kind.

And I did cause that the women should spin, and toil, and work, and work all manner of fine linen, yea, and cloth of every kind, that we might clothe our nakedness; and thus we did prosper in the land—thus we did have continual peace in the land for the space of twenty and two years.

And it came to pass that king Laman died, and his son began to reign in his stead. And he began to stir his people up in rebellion against my people; therefore they began to prepare for war, and to come up to battle against my people.

But I had sent my spies out round about the land of Shemlon, that I might discover their preparations, that I might guard against them, that they might not come upon my people and destroy them.

And it came to pass that they came up upon the north of the land of Shilom, with their numerous hosts, men armed with bows, and with arrows, and with swords, and with cimeters, and with stones, and with slings; and they had their heads shaved that they were naked; and they were girded with a leathern girdle about their loins.

9 En dit het gebeur dat ek beveel het dat die vroue en kinders van my volk versteek moes word in die wildernis; en ek het ook beveel dat al my ou manne wat wapens kon dra, en ook al my jong manne wat in staat was om wapens te dra, hulleself moes byme-kaarmaak om in die stryd te gaan teen die Lamaniete; en ek het hulle in hul slagorde opgestel, elke man volgens sy ouderdom.

10 En dit het gebeur dat ons in die stryd opgegaan het teen die Lamaniete; en ek, selfs ek, in my ouderdom, het opgegaan in die stryd teen die Lamaniete. En dit het gebeur dat ons opgegaan het in die krag van die Here in die stryd.

11 Nou, die Lamaniete het niks geweet aangaande die Here nie, nóg die krag van die Here, daarom het hulle staatgemaak op hulle eie krag. Tog was hulle 'n sterk volk, volgens die krag van mense.

12 Hulle was 'n wilde, en wrede, en 'n bloeddorstige volk, wat geglo het aan die oorleweringe van hulle vaders, en dit is—Hulle het geglo dat hulle verdrywe is uit die land Jerusalem vanweë die ongeregtighede van hulle vaders, en dat hulle deur hulle broers veronreg is in die wildernis, en hulle is ook veronreg terwyl hulle die see oorgesteek het;

13 En verder, dat hulle veronreg was terwyl hulle in die land van hulle eerste erfenis was, nadat hulle die see oorgesteek het, en dit alles omdat Nephi meer getrou was om die gebooi van die Here te onderhou—daarom is hy begunstig deur die Here, want die Here het sy gebede gehoor en hulle beantwoord, en hy het die leiding geneem van hulle reis in die wildernis.

14 En sy broers was toornig op hom omdat hulle nie die handelinge van die Here verstaan het nie; hulle was ook toornig op hom op die waters, omdat hulle hul harte verhard het teen die Here.

15 En verder, hulle was toornig op hom toe hulle in die beloofde land aangekom het, omdat hulle gesê het dat hy die heerskappy oor die volk uit hulle hande geneem het; en hulle het gesoek om hom dood te maak.

And it came to pass that I caused that the women and children of my people should be hid in the wilderness; and I also caused that all my old men that could bear arms, and also all my young men that were able to bear arms, should gather themselves together to go to battle against the Lamanites; and I did place them in their ranks, every man according to his age.

And it came to pass that we did go up to battle against the Lamanites; and I, even I, in my old age, did go up to battle against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did go up in the strength of the Lord to battle.

Now, the Lamanites knew nothing concerning the Lord, nor the strength of the Lord, therefore they depended upon their own strength. Yet they were a strong people, as to the strength of men.

They were a wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, believing in the tradition of their fathers, which is this—Believing that they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem because of the iniquities of their fathers, and that they were wronged in the wilderness by their brethren, and they were also wronged while crossing the sea;

And again, that they were wronged while in the land of their first inheritance, after they had crossed the sea, and all this because that Nephi was more faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord—therefore he was favored of the Lord, for the Lord heard his prayers and answered them, and he took the lead of their journey in the wilderness.

And his brethren were wroth with him because they understood not the dealings of the Lord; they were also wroth with him upon the waters because they hardened their hearts against the Lord.

And again, they were wroth with him when they had arrived in the promised land, because they said that he had taken the ruling of the people out of their hands; and they sought to kill him.

16 En verder, hulle was toornig op hom omdat hy die wildernis ingetrek het soos die Here hom beveel het, en die kronieke geneem het wat gegraveer was op die plate van brons, want hulle het gesê dat hy hulle beroof het.

17 En so het hulle hul kinders geleer dat hulle hul moes haat, en dat hulle hul moes vermoor, en dat hulle hul moes beroof en plunder, en alles doen wat hulle kon om hulle te vernietig; daarom het hulle 'n ewige haat teenoor die kinders van Nefi.

18 Om hierdie rede het koning Laman, deur sy slughed en listige leuentaalkoningspraak, en sy mooi beloftes, my bedrieg, sodat ek hierdie, my volk, in hierdie land gebring het, sodat hulle hul mag vernietig; ja, en ons het hierdie baie jare gely in die land.

19 En nou ek, Zeniff, nadat ek al hierdie dinge aan my volk vertel het aangaande die Lamaniete, het ek hulle aangespoor om te gaan veg met hulle mag, en hul vertrou in die Here te plaas; daarom, ons het geveg teen hulle, van aangesig tot aangesig.

20 En dit het gebeur dat ons hulle weer uitgedrywe het uit ons land; en ons het hulle geslag met 'n groot slagting, en wel so baie, dat ons hulle nie getel het nie.

21 En dit het gebeur dat ons weer teruggekeer het na ons eie land, en my volk het weer begin om hulle kuddes te versorg en hulle grond te bewerk.

22 En nou ek, omdat ek oud is, het die koninkryk oorgedra aan een van my seuns; daarom, ek sê niks meer nie. En mag die Here my volk seën. Amen.

And again, they were wroth with him because he departed into the wilderness as the Lord had commanded him, and took the records which were engraved on the plates of brass, for they said that he robbed them.

And thus they have taught their children that they should hate them, and that they should murder them, and that they should rob and plunder them, and do all they could to destroy them; therefore they have an eternal hatred towards the children of Nephi.

For this very cause has king Laman, by his cunning, and lying craftiness, and his fair promises, deceived me, that I have brought this my people up into this land, that they may destroy them; yea, and we have suffered these many years in the land.

And now I, Zeniff, after having told all these things unto my people concerning the Lamanites, I did stimulate them to go to battle with their might, putting their trust in the Lord; therefore, we did contend with them, face to face.

And it came to pass that we did drive them again out of our land; and we slew them with a great slaughter, even so many that we did not number them.

And it came to pass that we returned again to our own land, and my people again began to tend their flocks, and to till their ground.

And now I, being old, did confer the kingdom upon one of my sons; therefore, I say no more. And may the Lord bless my people. Amen.

Mosia 11

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat Zenif die koninkryk oorge- dra het aan Noag, een van sy seuns; daarom het Noag in sy plek begin heers; en hy het nie gewandel in die weë van sy vader nie.
- 2 Want kyk, hy het nie die gebooie van God onder- hou nie, maar hy het gewandel volgens die begeertes van sy eie hart. En hy het baie vroue en byvroue ge- had. En hy het veroorsaak dat sy volk sondig, en dit doen wat gruwelik was in die oë van die Here. Ja, en hulle het hoererye gepleeg en allerlei booshede.
- 3 En hy het 'n belasting opgelê van een vyfde deel van alles wat hulle besit het, 'n vyfde deel van hulle goud en van hulle silwer, en 'n vyfde deel van hulle zif, en van hulle koper, en van hulle brons en hulle yster; en 'n vyfde deel van hulle vetgemaakte vee; en ook 'n vyfde deel van al hulle graan.
- 4 En dit alles het hy geneem om homself te onder- hou, en sy vroue en sy byvroue; en ook sy priesters, en hulle vroue en hulle byvroue; so het hy die sake van die koninkryk verander.
- 5 Want hy het al die priesters wat deur sy vader aan- gestel is, afgesit, en nuwes aangestel in hulle plekke, sodaniges as wat in die hoogmoed van hulle harte verhef geword het.
- 6 Ja, en so is hulle onderhou in hulle luiheid, en in hulle afgodery, en in hulle hoererye, deur die belas- tings wat koning Noag geplaas het op sy volk; so het die volk uitermate gearbei om ongeregtheid te onderhou.
- 7 Ja, en hulle het ook afgodedienaars geword, omdat hulle bedrieg was deur die ydele en vleierende woorde van die koning en priesters; want hulle het vleierende dinge met hulle gespreek.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat koning Noag baie sierlike en ruim geboue gebou het; en hy het hulle versier met keurige werk van hout, en met allerhande kosbare dinge, van goud, en van silwer, en van yster, en van brons, en van zif, en van koper;
- 9 En hy het ook vir hom 'n ruim paleis gebou, en 'n troon in die middel daarvan, wat alles van fyn hout was, en versier was met goud en silwer en met kosba- re dinge.

Mosiah 11

And now it came to pass that Zeniff conferred the kingdom upon Noah, one of his sons; therefore Noah began to reign in his stead; and he did not walk in the ways of his father.

For behold, he did not keep the commandments of God, but he did walk after the desires of his own heart. And he had many wives and concubines. And he did cause his people to commit sin, and do that which was abominable in the sight of the Lord. Yea, and they did commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness.

And he laid a tax of one fifth part of all they pos- sessed, a fifth part of their gold and of their silver, and a fifth part of their ziff, and of their copper, and of their brass and their iron; and a fifth part of their fatlings; and also a fifth part of all their grain.

And all this did he take to support himself, and his wives and his concubines; and also his priests, and their wives and their concubines; thus he had changed the affairs of the kingdom.

For he put down all the priests that had been con- secrated by his father, and consecrated new ones in their stead, such as were lifted up in the pride of their hearts.

Yea, and thus they were supported in their lazy- ness, and in their idolatry, and in their whoredoms, by the taxes which king Noah had put upon his peo- ple; thus did the people labor exceedingly to support iniquity.

Yea, and they also became idolatrous, because they were deceived by the vain and flattering words of the king and priests; for they did speak flattering things unto them.

And it came to pass that king Noah built many ele- gant and spacious buildings; and he ornamented them with fine work of wood, and of all manner of precious things, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of brass, and of ziff, and of copper;

And he also built him a spacious palace, and a throne in the midst thereof, all of which was of fine wood and was ornamented with gold and silver and with precious things.

- 10 En hy het ook beveel dat sy ambagsmanne allerhande keurige werk moes doen aan die binnekant van die mure van die tempel, van fyn hout, en van koper, en van brons.
- 11 En die sitplekke wat afgesonder is vir die hoëpriesters, wat bo al die ander sitplekke was, het hy versier met suiwer goud; en hy het 'n borswering laat bou voor hulle, sodat hulle hul liggame en hul arms daarop kon rus terwyl hulle leuenagtige en ydele woorde spreek met sy volk.
- 12 En dit het gebeur dat hy 'n toring naby die tempel gebou het; ja, 'n baie hoë toring, en wel so hoog dat hy op die top daarvan kon staan en kyk oor die land Silom en ook die land Semlon kon bekyk, wat deur die Lamaniete beset was; en hy kon oor die hele land rondomheen kyk.
- 13 En dit het gebeur dat hy baie geboue in die land Silom laat bou het; en hy het 'n groot toring laat bou op die heuwel noord van die land Silom, wat 'n vergaderplek was vir die kinders van Nephi in die tyd toe hulle uit die land gevlug het; en so het hy gedoen met die rykdomme wat hy verkry het deur sy volk te belas.
- 14 En dit het gebeur dat hy sy hart gestel het op sy rykdomme, en hy het sy tyd deurgebring deur losbandig te lewe met sy vroue en sy byvroue; en so het sy priesters ook hulle tyd deurgebring met hoere.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat hy wingerde dwarsdeur die land geplant het; en hy het wynparse gebou, en het wyn in oorvloed gemaak; en daarom het hy 'n wynsuiper geword, en ook sy volk.
- 16 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete op sy volk begin afkom het, op klein groepies, en om hulle te dood in hul lande, en terwyl hulle hul kuddes opgepas het.
- 17 En koning Noag het wagte dwarsdeur die land uitgestuur om hulle weg te hou; maar hy het nie 'n voldoende aantal gestuur nie, en die Lamaniete het op hulle afgekam en het hulle doodgemaak, en baie van hulle kuddes uit die land uitgejaag; so het die Lamaniete begin om hulle te vernietig, en om hul haat op hulle uit te oefen.

And he also caused that his workmen should work all manner of fine work within the walls of the temple, of fine wood, and of copper, and of brass.

And the seats which were set apart for the high priests, which were above all the other seats, he did ornament with pure gold; and he caused a breastwork to be built before them, that they might rest their bodies and their arms upon while they should speak lying and vain words to his people.

And it came to pass that he built a tower near the temple; yea, a very high tower, even so high that he could stand upon the top thereof and overlook the land of Shilom, and also the land of Shemlon, which was possessed by the Lamanites; and he could even look over all the land round about.

And it came to pass that he caused many buildings to be built in the land Shilom; and he caused a great tower to be built on the hill north of the land Shilom, which had been a resort for the children of Nephi at the time they fled out of the land; and thus he did do with the riches which he obtained by the taxation of his people.

And it came to pass that he placed his heart upon his riches, and he spent his time in riotous living with his wives and his concubines; and so did also his priests spend their time with harlots.

And it came to pass that he planted vineyards round about in the land; and he built wine-presses, and made wine in abundance; and therefore he became a wine-bibber, and also his people.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites began to come in upon his people, upon small numbers, and to slay them in their fields, and while they were tending their flocks.

And king Noah sent guards round about the land to keep them off; but he did not send a sufficient number, and the Lamanites came upon them and killed them, and drove many of their flocks out of the land; thus the Lamanites began to destroy them, and to exercise their hatred upon them.

18 En dit het gebeur dat koning Noag sy leërs teen hulle gestuur het, en hulle is teruggedrywe, of hulle het hul vir 'n tydlank teruggedrywe; daarom, hulle het teruggekeer met juiging oor hulle buit.

19 En nou, vanweë hierdie groot oorwinning het hulle verhef geword in die hoogmoed van hulle harte; hulle het geroem in hulle eie krag, en gesê dat hulle vyftig kon staan teen duisende van die Lamaniete; en so het hulle geroem, en het behae geskep in bloed, en die vergieting van die bloed van hulle broers, en dit vanweë die boosheid van hulle koning en priesters.

20 En dit het gebeur dat daar 'n man onder hulle was, wie se naam Abinadi was; en hy het onder hulle uitgegaan, en begin om te profeteer, en gesê: Kyk, so sê die Here, en so het Hy my gebied, en gesê, Gaan uit, en sê vir hierdie volk, so sê die Here—Wee hierdie volk, want Ek het hulle gruwels gesien, en hulle boosheid, en hulle hoererye; en tensy hulle bekeer, sal Ek hulle besoek in my toorn.

21 En tensy hulle bekeer en tot die Here hulle God keer, kyk, Ek sal hulle oorgee in die hande van hulle vyande; ja, en hulle sal in slawerny gebring word; en hulle sal gekwel word deur die hand van hulle vyande.

22 En dit sal gebeur dat hulle sal weet dat Ek die Here hulle God is, en 'n jaloerse God is, wat die ongeregthede van my volk besoek.

23 En dit sal gebeur dat tensy hierdie volk bekeer en hulle keer tot die Here hulle God, sal hulle in slawerny gebring word; en niemand sal hulle verlos nie, behalwe dat dit die Here die Almagtige God is.

24 Ja, en dit sal gebeur dat wanneer hulle tot My sal roep, sal ek traag wees om hulle geroep te hoor; ja, en Ek sal toelaat dat hulle aangeval word deur hulle vyande.

25 En tensy hulle bekeer in sak en as, en kragtig uitroep tot die Here hulle God, sal Ek nie hulle gebede verhoor nie, nóg sal Ek hulle red uit hulle verdrukkinge; en so sê die Here, en so het Hy my gebied.

26 Nou het dit gebeur dat toe Abinadi hierdie woorde gespreek het met hulle, was hulle toornig op hom, en het gesoek om sy lewe te neem; maar die Here het hom verlos uit hulle hande.

And it came to pass that king Noah sent his armies against them, and they were driven back, or they drove them back for a time; therefore, they returned rejoicing in their spoil.

And now, because of this great victory they were lifted up in the pride of their hearts; they did boast in their own strength, saying that their fifty could stand against thousands of the Lamanites; and thus they did boast, and did delight in blood, and the shedding of the blood of their brethren, and this because of the wickedness of their king and priests.

And it came to pass that there was a man among them whose name was Abinadi; and he went forth among them, and began to prophesy, saying: Behold, thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me, saying, Go forth, and say unto this people, thus saith the Lord—Wo be unto this people, for I have seen their abominations, and their wickedness, and their whoredoms; and except they repent I will visit them in mine anger.

And except they repent and turn to the Lord their God, behold, I will deliver them into the hands of their enemies; yea, and they shall be brought into bondage; and they shall be afflicted by the hand of their enemies.

And it shall come to pass that they shall know that I am the Lord their God, and am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of my people.

And it shall come to pass that except this people repent and turn unto the Lord their God, they shall be brought into bondage; and none shall deliver them, except it be the Lord the Almighty God.

Yea, and it shall come to pass that when they shall cry unto me I will be slow to hear their cries; yea, and I will suffer them that they be smitten by their enemies.

And except they repent in sackcloth and ashes, and cry mightily to the Lord their God, I will not hear their prayers, neither will I deliver them out of their afflictions; and thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me.

Now it came to pass that when Abinadi had spoken these words unto them they were wroth with him, and sought to take away his life; but the Lord delivered him out of their hands.

27 Nou, toe koning Noag van die woorde gehoor het wat Abinadi met die volk gespreek het, was hy ook toornig; en hy het gesê: Wie is Abinadi, dat ek en my volk deur hom geoordeel moet word, of wie is die Here, wat oor my volk so 'n groot verdrukking sal bring?

28 Ek beveel julle om Abinadi hierheen te bring, dat ek hom mag doodmaak, want hy het hierdie dinge gespreek sodat hy my volk mag aanhits tot toorn teen mekaar, en om twiste te verwek onder my volk; daarom sal ek hom doodmaak.

29 Nou, die oë van die volk was verblind; daarom het hulle hul harte verhard teen die woorde van Abinadi, en hulle het van daardie tyd af gesoek om hom te neem. En koning Noag het sy hart verhard teen die woorde van die Here, en hy het nie bekeer van sy bose dae nie.

Now when king Noah had heard of the words which Abinadi had spoken unto the people, he was also wroth; and he said: Who is Abinadi, that I and my people should be judged of him, or who is the Lord, that shall bring upon my people such great affliction?

I command you to bring Abinadi hither, that I may slay him, for he has said these things that he might stir up my people to anger one with another, and to raise contentions among my people; therefore I will slay him.

Now the eyes of the people were blinded; therefore they hardened their hearts against the words of Abinadi, and they sought from that time forward to take him. And king Noah hardened his heart against the word of the Lord, and he did not repent of his evil doings.

Mosia 12

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat na 'n tydperk van twee jaar het Abinadi vermom onder hulle ingekom, sodat hulle hom nie geken het nie, en het begin om te profeteer onder hulle, en gesê: So het die Here my gebied, en gesê—Abinadi, gaan en profeteer tot hierdie volk van My, want hulle het hulle harte verhard teen my woorde; hulle het nie bekeer van hul bose daede nie; daarom, Ek sal hulle besoek in my toorn, ja, in my brandende toorn sal Ek hulle besoek in hulle ongeregtighede en gruwels.
- 2 Ja, wee hierdie geslag! En die Here het aan my gesê: Strek jou hand uit en profeteer, en sê: So sê die Here, dit sal gebeur dat hierdie geslag vanweë hulle ongeregtighede in slawerny gebring sal word, en op die wang geslaan sal word; ja, en gedrywe sal word deur mense en doodgemaak sal word; en die aasvoëls van die lug, en die honde, ja, en die wilde diere, sal hulle vlees verslind.
- 3 En dit sal gebeur dat die lewe van koning Noag soveel waarde sal hê soos 'n kledingstuk in 'n gloeiende oond; want hy sal weet dat Ek die Here is.
- 4 En dit sal gebeur dat Ek hierdie volk van my sal tref met sware verdrukkinge, ja, met hongersnood en pestilensie; en Ek sal veroorsaak dat hulle die hele dag lank sal kerm.
- 5 Ja, en Ek sal gebied dat hulle laste sal hê wat op hul rûe vasgebind is, en hulle sal vooruitgedrywe word soos 'n stomme esel.
- 6 En dit sal gebeur dat Ek hael onder hulle sal stuur, en dit sal hulle tref; en hulle sal ook getref word deur die oostewind; en insekte sal ook hulle lande verpes, en hulle graan opvreet.
- 7 En hulle sal getref word deur 'n groot pestilensie—en dit alles sal Ek doen vanweë hulle ongeregtighede en gruwels.
- 8 En dit sal gebeur dat tensy hulle bekeer, sal Ek hulle heeltemal vernietig vanaf die aangesig van die aarde; tog sal hulle 'n kroniek nalaat, en Ek sal dit bewaar vir ander nasies wat die land sal besit; ja, en selfs sal Ek dit doen sodat Ek die gruwels van hierdie volk mag openbaar aan ander nasies. En baie dinge het Abinadi geprofeteer teen hierdie volk.

Mosiah 12

And it came to pass that after the space of two years that Abinadi came among them in disguise, that they knew him not, and began to prophesy among them, saying: Thus has the Lord commanded me, saying—Abinadi, go and prophesy unto this my people, for they have hardened their hearts against my words; they have repented not of their evil doings; therefore, I will visit them in my anger, yea, in my fierce anger will I visit them in their iniquities and abominations.

Yea, wo be unto this generation! And the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thy hand and prophesy, saying: Thus saith the Lord, it shall come to pass that this generation, because of their iniquities, shall be brought into bondage, and shall be smitten on the cheek; yea, and shall be driven by men, and shall be slain; and the vultures of the air, and the dogs, yea, and the wild beasts, shall devour their flesh.

And it shall come to pass that the life of king Noah shall be valued even as a garment in a hot furnace; for he shall know that I am the Lord.

And it shall come to pass that I will smite this my people with sore afflictions, yea, with famine and with pestilence; and I will cause that they shall howl all the day long.

Yea, and I will cause that they shall have burdens lashed upon their backs; and they shall be driven before like a dumb ass.

And it shall come to pass that I will send forth hail among them, and it shall smite them; and they shall also be smitten with the east wind; and insects shall pester their land also, and devour their grain.

And they shall be smitten with a great pestilence—and all this will I do because of their iniquities and abominations.

And it shall come to pass that except they repent I will utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth; yet they shall leave a record behind them, and I will preserve them for other nations which shall possess the land; yea, even this will I do that I may discover the abominations of this people to other nations. And many things did Abinadi prophesy against this people.

9 En dit het gebeur dat hulle toornig was op hom; en hulle het hom geneem en hom gebind voor die koning gebring, en aan die koning gesê: Kyk, ons het 'n man voor u gebring wat kwaad geprofeteer het aangaande u volk, en gesê het dat God hulle sal vernietig.

10 En hy het ook kwaad geprofeteer aangaande u lewe, en het gesê dat u lewe soos 'n kledingstuk sal wees in 'n oond van vuur.

11 En verder, hy sê dat u sal wees soos 'n stoppel, naamlik soos 'n droë stoppel van die veld, waaroor die diere loop en vertrap met hulle pote.

12 En verder, hy sê dat u sal wees soos die bloeisels van 'n dissel, wat, wanneer dit heeltemal ryp is, as die wind waai, word dit voortgedrywe oor die aangesig van die land. En hy gee voor dat die Here dit gespreek het. En hy sê dit alles sal oor u kom tensy u bekeer, en dit vanweë u ongeregtigheid.

13 En nou, o koning, watter groot kwaad het u gedoen, of watter groot sondes het u volk gepleeg, dat ons deur God veroordeel moet word, of geoordeel moet word deur hierdie man?

14 En nou, o koning, kyk, ons is onskuldig, en u, o koning, het nie gesondig nie; daarom, hierdie man het gelieg aangaande u, en hy het tevergeefs geprofeteer.

15 En kyk, ons is sterk, ons sal nie in slawerny kom nie, of gevange geneem word deur ons vyande nie; ja, en u was voorspoedig gewees in die land, en u sal ook voorspoedig wees.

16 Kyk, hier is die man, ons lewer hom oor in u hande; u kan met hom doen soos u goeddink.

17 En dit het gebeur dat koning Noag beveel het dat Abinadi in die gevangenis gewerp moes word; en hy het beveel dat die priesters hulle moes bymekaar maak, sodat hy met hulle mag raad hou wat hy met hom sou doen.

18 En dit het gebeur dat hulle aan die koning gesê het: Bring hom hierheen sodat ons hom kan uitvra; en die koning het beveel dat hy voor hulle gebring moes word.

And it came to pass that they were angry with him; and they took him and carried him bound before the king, and said unto the king: Behold, we have brought a man before thee who has prophesied evil concerning thy people, and saith that God will destroy them.

And he also prophesieth evil concerning thy life, and saith that thy life shall be as a garment in a furnace of fire.

And again, he saith that thou shalt be as a stalk, even as a dry stalk of the field, which is run over by the beasts and trodden under foot.

And again, he saith thou shalt be as the blossoms of a thistle, which, when it is fully ripe, if the wind bloweth, it is driven forth upon the face of the land. And he pretendeth the Lord hath spoken it. And he saith all this shall come upon thee except thou repent, and this because of thine iniquities.

And now, O king, what great evil hast thou done, or what great sins have thy people committed, that we should be condemned of God or judged of this man?

And now, O king, behold, we are guiltless, and thou, O king, hast not sinned; therefore, this man has lied concerning you, and he has prophesied in vain.

And behold, we are strong, we shall not come into bondage, or be taken captive by our enemies; yea, and thou hast prospered in the land, and thou shalt also prosper.

Behold, here is the man, we deliver him into thy hands; thou mayest do with him as seemeth thee good.

And it came to pass that king Noah caused that Abinadi should be cast into prison; and he commanded that the priests should gather themselves together that he might hold a council with them what he should do with him.

And it came to pass that they said unto the king: Bring him hither that we may question him; and the king commanded that he should be brought before them.

19 En hulle het begin om hom uit te vra, sodat hulle hom kon verstrick, sodat hulle daardeur iets mag hê waarmee hulle hom kon aankla; maar hy het hulle moedig geantwoord en al hulle vrae weerstaan, ja, tot hulle verbasing; want hy het hulle weerstaan in al hulle vrae, en het hulle beskaam in al hulle woorde.

20 En dit het gebeur dat een van hulle aan hom gesê het: Wat beteken die woorde wat geskrywe is, en wat geleer is deur ons vaders, wat sê:

21 Hoe lieflik op die berge is die voete van hom wat blye tydings bring; wat vrede verkondig, wat blye tydings van die goeie bring; wat heil verkondig; wat aan Sion sê, Jou God heers;

22 Julle wagte sal die stem verhef; met die stemme tesame sal hulle sing; want hulle sal van oog tot oog sien wanneer die Here Sion weer sal bring;

23 Breek uit in gejubel, sing saam julle verwoeste plekke van Jerusalem; want die Here het sy volk vertroos, Hy het Jerusalem verlos;

24 Die Here het sy heilige arm ontbloot voor die oë van al die nasies, en al die eindes van die aarde sal die heil van onse God sien?

25 En nou het Abinadi aan hulle gesê: Is julle priesters, en gee voor om hierdie volk te leer, en om die gees van profesie te verstaan, en tog begeer om van my te weet wat hierdie dinge beteken?

26 Ek sê vir julle, wee julle omdat julle die weë van die Here verdraai! Want as julle hierdie dinge verstaan, het julle hulle nie onderrig nie; daarom, julle het die weë van die Here verdraai.

27 Julle het nie julle harte daarop gestel om te verstaan nie; daarom, julle was nie wys nie. Daarom, wat leer julle hierdie volk?

28 En hulle het gesê: Ons leer die wet van Moses.

29 En verder het hy aan hulle gesê: As julle die wet van Moses leer, hoekom onderhou julle dit nie? Hoekom rig julle jul harte op rykdom? Hoekom pleeg julle hoererye en spandeer julle krag met hoere; ja, en veroorsaak dat hierdie volk sondig, sodat die Here rede het om my te stuur om te profeteer teen hierdie volk, ja, naamlik 'n groot kwaad teen hierdie volk?

And they began to question him, that they might cross him, that thereby they might have wherewith to accuse him; but he answered them boldly, and withstood all their questions, yea, to their astonishment; for he did withstand them in all their questions, and did confound them in all their words.

And it came to pass that one of them said unto him: What meaneth the words which are written, and which have been taught by our fathers, saying:

How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings; that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good; that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth;

Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion;

Break forth into joy; sing together ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem;

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations, and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God?

And now Abinadi said unto them: Are you priests, and pretend to teach this people, and to understand the spirit of prophesying, and yet desire to know of me what these things mean?

I say unto you, wo be unto you for perverting the ways of the Lord! For if ye understand these things ye have not taught them; therefore, ye have perverted the ways of the Lord.

Ye have not applied your hearts to understanding; therefore, ye have not been wise. Therefore, what teach ye this people?

And they said: We teach the law of Moses.

And again he said unto them: If ye teach the law of Moses why do ye not keep it? Why do ye set your hearts upon riches? Why do ye commit whoredoms and spend your strength with harlots, yea, and cause this people to commit sin, that the Lord has cause to send me to prophesy against this people, yea, even a great evil against this people?

30 Weet julle nie dat ek die waarheid spreek nie? Ja, julle weet dat ek die waarheid spreek; en julle behoort te bewe voor God.

31 En dit sal gebeur dat julle geslaan sal word oor julle ongeregtighede, want julle het gesê dat julle die wet van Moses leer. En wat weet julle aangaande die wet van Moses? Kom heil deur die wet van Moses? Wat sê julle?

32 En hulle het geantwoord en gesê dat heil wel deur die wet van Moses kom.

33 Maar nou het Abinadi aan hulle gesê: Ek weet dat as julle die gebooie van God onderhou, julle gered sal word; ja, as julle die gebooie onderhou wat die Here aan Moses oorhandig het op die berg Sinai, wat sê:

34 Ek is die Here jou God, wat jou uitbring het uit die land Egipte, uit die huis van slawerny.

35 Jy sal geen ander God voor my hê nie.

36 Jy sal vir jou geen gesnede beeld maak, of enige gelykenis van enigiets in die hemel daarbo, of dinge wat onder op die aarde is nie.

37 Nou het Abinadi aan hulle gesê, Het julle dit alles gedoen? Ek sê vir julle, Nee, julle het nie. En het julle hierdie volk geleer dat hulle al hierdie dinge moes doen? Ek sê vir julle, Nee, julle het nie.

Know ye not that I speak the truth? Yea, ye know that I speak the truth; and you ought to tremble before God.

And it shall come to pass that ye shall be smitten for your iniquities, for ye have said that ye teach the law of Moses. And what know ye concerning the law of Moses? Doth salvation come by the law of Moses? What say ye?

And they answered and said that salvation did come by the law of Moses.

But now Abinadi said unto them: I know if ye keep the commandments of God ye shall be saved; yea, if ye keep the commandments which the Lord delivered unto Moses in the mount of Sinai, saying:

I am the Lord thy God, who hath brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

Thou shalt have no other God before me.

Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing in heaven above, or things which are in the earth beneath.

Now Abinadi said unto them, Have ye done all this? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not. And have ye taught this people that they should do all these things? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not.

Mosia 13

- 1 En nou toe die koning hierdie woorde gehoor het, het hy aan sy priesters gesê: Weg met hierdie man, en maak hom dood; want wat het ons met hom te doen, want hy is mal.
- 2 En hulle het na vore getree en probeer om hulle hande op hom te lê; maar hy het hulle weerstaan, en aan hulle gesê:
- 3 Raak my nie aan nie, want God sal julle slaan as julle jul hande op my lê, want ek het nie die boodskap oorgedra wat die Here my gestuur het om oor te dra nie; nóg het ek julle dit vertel wat julle gevra het dat ek moet vertel; daarom, God sal nie toelaat dat ek vernietig sal word op hierdie tydstip nie.
- 4 Maar ek moet die bevele uitvoer wat God my gebied het; en omdat ek julle die waarheid vertel het, is julle toornig op my. En verder, omdat ek die woord van God gespreek het, het julle my geoordeel dat ek mal is.
- 5 Nou het dit gebeur, nadat Abinadi hierdie woorde gespreek het, dat die volk van koning Noag nie gedurf het om hulle hande op hom te lê nie, want die Gees van die Here was op hom; en sy gelaat het met 'n uitnemende glans gestraal, en wel soos Moses' s'n terwyl hy op die berg Sinai was, terwyl hy met die Here gespreek het.
- 6 En hy het met krag en gesag van God gespreek; en hy het sy woorde voortgesit, en gesê:
- 7 Julle sien dat julle nie mag het om my dood te maak nie, daarom voltooi ek my boodskap. Ja, en ek merk dat dit julle sny tot in julle harte omdat ek julle die waarheid vertel aangaande julle ongeregthede.
- 8 Ja, en my woorde vul julle met verwondering en verbasing, en met toorn.
- 9 Maar ek voltooi my boodskap; en dan maak dit nie saak waarheen ek gaan nie, as dit so is dat ek gered is.
- 10 Maar dit vertel ek aan julle, wat julle met my doen na dese, sal wees soos 'n versinnebeeld en 'n voorafskaduwing van dinge wat moet kom.

Mosiah 13

And now when the king had heard these words, he said unto his priests: Away with this fellow, and slay him; for what have we to do with him, for he is mad.

And they stood forth and attempted to lay their hands on him; but he withstood them, and said unto them:

Touch me not, for God shall smite you if ye lay your hands upon me, for I have not delivered the message which the Lord sent me to deliver; neither have I told you that which ye requested that I should tell; therefore, God will not suffer that I shall be destroyed at this time.

But I must fulfil the commandments wherewith God has commanded me; and because I have told you the truth ye are angry with me. And again, because I have spoken the word of God ye have judged me that I am mad.

Now it came to pass after Abinadi had spoken these words that the people of king Noah durst not lay their hands on him, for the Spirit of the Lord was upon him; and his face shone with exceeding luster, even as Moses' did while in the mount of Sinai, while speaking with the Lord.

And he spake with power and authority from God; and he continued his words, saying:

Ye see that ye have not power to slay me, therefore I finish my message. Yea, and I perceive that it cuts you to your hearts because I tell you the truth concerning your iniquities.

Yea, and my words fill you with wonder and amazement, and with anger.

But I finish my message; and then it matters not whither I go, if it so be that I am saved.

But this much I tell you, what you do with me, after this, shall be as a type and a shadow of things which are to come.

11 En nou, ek lees aan julle die oorblywende gebooie van God, want ek merk dat hulle nie geskrywe is in julle harte nie; ek merk dat julle die ongeregtigheid bestudeer en onderrig het vir die grootste gedeelte van julle lewe.

12 En nou, julle onthou dat ek aan julle gesê het: Jy mag vir jou geen gesnede beeld maak, of enige gelykenis van dinge wat bo in die hemel is, of wat onder op die aarde is, of wat in die water onder die aarde is nie.

13 En verder: Jy mag jou nie voor hulle neerbuig nie, nóg hulle dien; want Ek, die Here jou God, is 'n jalouse God wat die ongeregtighede van die vaders besoek op die kinders, aan die derde en aan die vierde geslagte van hulle wat My haat;

14 En bewys barmhartigheid aan duisende van hulle wat My liefhet en my gebooie onderhou.

15 Jy sal nie die Naam van die Here jou God ydellik gebruik nie; want die Here sal die een wat sy Naam ydellik gebruik, nie skuldeloos hou nie.

16 Onthou die sabbatdag, dat jy dit heilig.

17 Ses dae sal jy arbei, en al jou werk doen;

18 Maar die sewende dag, die sabbat van die Here jou God, sal jy geen werk doen nie, jy, nóg jou seun, nóg jou dogter, jou dienskneg, nóg jou diensmaagd, nóg jou vee, nóg jou vreemdeling wat in jou poorte is;

19 Want in ses dae het die Here die hemel en die aarde gemaak, en die see, en alles wat in hulle is; daarom het die Here die sabbatdag geseën, en dit geheilig.

20 Eer jou vader en jou moeder, dat jou dae lank mag wees in die land wat die Here jou God jou gee.

21 Jy mag nie doodslaan nie.

22 Jy mag nie egbreek nie. Jy mag nie steel nie.

23 Jy mag nie valse getuienis spreek teen jou naaste nie.

24 Jy mag nie jou naaste se huis begeer nie, jy mag nie jou naaste se vrou begeer nie, nóg sy dienskneg, nóg sy diensmaagd, nóg sy os, nóg sy esel, nóg enigiets wat van jou naaste is.

And now I read unto you the remainder of the commandments of God, for I perceive that they are not written in your hearts; I perceive that ye have studied and taught iniquity the most part of your lives.

And now, ye remember that I said unto you: Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of things which are in heaven above, or which are in the earth beneath, or which are in the water under the earth.

And again: Thou shalt not bow down thyself unto them, nor serve them; for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of the fathers upon the children, unto the third and fourth generations of them that hate me;

And showing mercy unto thousands of them that love me and keep my commandments.

Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.

Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.

Six days shalt thou labor, and do all thy work;

But the seventh day, the sabbath of the Lord thy God, thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy man-servant, nor thy maid-servant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates;

For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and the sea, and all that in them is; wherefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it.

Honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.

Thou shalt not kill.

Thou shalt not commit adultery. Thou shalt not steal.

Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.

Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife, nor his man-servant, nor his maid-servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor anything that is thy neighbor's.

25 En dit het gebeur dat, nadat Abinadi 'n einde ge-
maak het aan hierdie woorde, dat hy aan hulle gesê
het: Het julle hierdie volk geleer dat hulle moet seker
maak dat hulle al hierdie dinge doen om hierdie ge-
booi te onderhou?

26 Ek sê vir julle, Nee; want as julle dit gedoen het,
sou die Here my nie laat uitkom het om kwaad te
profeteer aangaande hierdie volk nie.

27 En nou het julle gesê dat heil deur die wet van
Moses kom. Ek sê vir julle dat dit noodsaaklik is dat
julle die wet van Moses nou nog moet onderhou;
maar ek sê vir julle, dat die tyd sal kom dat dit nie
meer noodsaaklik sal wees om die wet van Moses te
onderhou nie.

28 En bowendien, ek sê vir julle, dat heil nie kom
deur die wet alleen nie; en as dit nie vir die versoe-
ning was nie, wat God self sal doen vir die sondes en
die ongeregthede van sy volk, dat hulle onvermy-
delik moet omkom, niesteenstaande die wet van
Moses.

29 En nou sê ek aan julle dat dit noodsaaklik was dat
daar 'n wet gegee moes word aan die kinders van
Israel, ja, naamlik 'n baie streng wet; want hulle was
'n hardnekkige volk, gou om ongeregthede te doen,
en traag om die Here hulle God te onthou;

30 Daarom is daar 'n wet aan hulle gegee, ja 'n wet
van verrigtinge en van ordinansies, 'n wet wat hulle
streng moes onderhou van dag tot dag, om hulle in
gedagtenis aan God te hou en hulle plig teenoor
Hom.

31 Maar kyk, ek sê vir julle, dat al hierdie dinge ver-
sinnebeelde was van dinge wat moet kom.

32 En nou, het hulle die wet verstaan? Ek sê vir julle,
Nee, hulle het nie almal die wet verstaan nie; en dit
vanweë die hardheid van hulle harte; want hulle het
nie verstaan dat daar geen mens gered kon word ten-
sy dit deur die verlossing van God was nie.

33 Want kyk, het Moses nie tot hulle geprofeteer aan-
gaande die koms van die Messias, en dat God sy volk
sou verlos nie? Ja, en wel al die profete wat geprofe-
teer het, sedert die wêreld begin het—het hulle nie
min of meer aangaande hierdie dinge gespreek nie?

And it came to pass that after Abinadi had made an
end of these sayings that he said unto them: Have ye
taught this people that they should observe to do all
these things for to keep these commandments?

I say unto you, Nay; for if ye had, the Lord would
not have caused me to come forth and to prophesy
evil concerning this people.

And now ye have said that salvation cometh by the
law of Moses. I say unto you that it is expedient that
ye should keep the law of Moses as yet; but I say unto
you, that the time shall come when it shall no more
be expedient to keep the law of Moses.

And moreover, I say unto you, that salvation doth
not come by the law alone; and were it not for the
atonement, which God himself shall make for the
sins and iniquities of his people, that they must un-
avoidably perish, notwithstanding the law of Moses.

And now I say unto you that it was expedient that
there should be a law given to the children of Israel,
yea, even a very strict law; for they were a stiffnecked
people, quick to do iniquity, and slow to remember
the Lord their God;

Therefore there was a law given them, yea, a law
of performances and of ordinances, a law which they
were to observe strictly from day to day, to keep them
in remembrance of God and their duty towards him.

But behold, I say unto you, that all these things
were types of things to come.

And now, did they understand the law? I say unto
you, Nay, they did not all understand the law; and
this because of the hardness of their hearts; for they
understood not that there could not any man be
saved except it were through the redemption of God.

For behold, did not Moses prophesy unto them
concerning the coming of the Messiah, and that God
should redeem his people? Yea, and even all the
prophets who have prophesied ever since the world
began—have they not spoken more or less concern-
ing these things?

34 Het hulle nie gesê dat God self sou neerdaal onder die kinders van mense, en vir Hom die vorm van 'n mens aanneem en uitgaan in geweldige krag op die aangesig van die aarde nie?

35 Ja, en het hulle nie ook gesê dat Hy die opstanding van die dode sou teweegbring, en dat Hy self, verdruk sou wees en gekwel sou word nie?

Have they not said that God himself should come down among the children of men, and take upon him the form of man, and go forth in mighty power upon the face of the earth?

Yea, and have they not said also that he should bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, and that he, himself, should be oppressed and afflicted?

Mosia 14

- 1 Ja, en wel, sê Jesaja nie: Wie het ons kroniek geglo, en aan wie is die arm van die Here geopenbaar?
- 2 Want hy sal voor hom opgroei soos 'n tere plant, en soos 'n wortel uit droë grond; Hy het geen gestalte nóg aantreklikheid; en wanneer ons Hom sal sien, is daar geen skoonheid dat ons Hom sou begeer nie.
- 3 Hy word verag en verwerp deur mense, 'n man van smarte, en bekend met verdriet; en ons het ons gesigte as't ware van Hom verberg; Hy was verag, en ons het Hom nie geag nie.
- 4 Waarlik, Hy het ons verdriet op Hom geneem en ons smarte gedra; tog het ons Hom as getref beskou; geslaan deur God, en geteister.
- 5 Maar Hy is gewond vir ons oortredinge, Hy is gekneus vir ons ongeregthede; die strafgerig vir ons vrede was op Hom, en deur sy wonde is ons genees.
- 6 Ons almal, soos skape, het gedwaal; ons het elkeen gedwaal na sy eie pad; en die Here het die ongeregthede van ons almal laat neerkom op Hom.
- 7 Hy was verdruk, en Hy was geteister, tog het Hy sy mond nie oopgemaak nie; Hy is gebring soos 'n lam na die slagplek, en soos 'n skaap wat stom is voor haar skeerders, so het Hy nie sy mond oopgemaak nie.
- 8 Hy is geneem uit die gevangenis en uit die oordeel; en wie sal sy geslag verklaar? Want Hy is afgesny uit die land van die lewendes; vir die oortredinge van my volk was Hy gestraf.
- 9 En Hy het sy graf by die bose gemaak, en by die ryke in sy dood; omdat Hy geen onreg gedoen het nie, nóg was daar geen bedrog in sy mond.
- 10 Tog het dit die Here behaag om Hom te kneus; Hy het Hom smart aangedoen; wanneer U sy siel as skuldoffer vir die sonde maak, sal Hy sy saad sien; Hy sal sy dae verleng, en die welbehae van die Here sal deur sy hand voorspoedig wees.
- 11 Hy sal die lyding ervaar van sy siel, en sal tevrede wees; deur sy kennis sal my regverdige dienskneg baie regverdig maak; want Hy sal hulle ongeregthede dra.

Mosiah 14

Yea, even doth not Isaiah say: Who hath believed our report, and to whom is the arm of the Lord revealed?

For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of dry ground; he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him there is no beauty that we should desire him.

He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief; and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not.

Surely he has borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows; yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.

But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities; the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

All we, like sheep, have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquities of us all.

He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth; he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb so he opened not his mouth.

He was taken from prison and from judgment; and who shall declare his generation? For he was cut off out of the land of the living; for the transgressions of my people was he stricken.

And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no evil, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief; when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

He shall see the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied; by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

12 Daaron sal Ek Hom 'n deel gee onder die grotes, en Hy sal die buit deel met die sterkes; omdat Hy sy siel uitgestort het tot die dood toe; en Hy is gereken onder die oortreders en Hy het die sonde van baie gedra, en het voorspraak gemaak vir die oortreders.

Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death; and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bore the sins of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

Mosia 15

- 1 En nou het Abinadi aan hulle gesê: Ek wil hê dat julle moet verstaan dat God self sal neerdaal onder die kinders van mense, en sy volk sal verlos.
- 2 En omdat Hy woon in die vlees, sal Hy die Seun van God genoem word, en omdat Hy die vlees onderwerp het aan die wil van die Vader, is Hy die Vader en die Seun—
- 3 Die Vader, omdat Hy verwek is deur die krag van God; en die Seun, vanweë die vlees; dus word Hy die Vader en Seun—
- 4 En hulle is een God, ja, die ware Ewige Vader van hemel en aarde.
- 5 En so word die vlees onderwerp aan die Gees, of die Seun aan die Vader, omdat hulle een God is, ondergaan versoeking, en gee nie toe aan die versoeking nie, maar laat Homself bespot, en gésel, en uitgewerp word, en verloën word deur sy volk.
- 6 En na dit alles, nadat Hy vele magtige wonderwerke onder die kinders van mense gedoen het, sal Hy gelei word, ja, en wel soos Jesaja gesê het, soos 'n skaap wat stom is voor die skeerder, so het Hy sy mond nie oopgemaak nie.
- 7 Ja, net so sal Hy gelei word, gekruisig, en doodgemaak word, omdat die vlees onderwerp sal word aan die dood, die wil van die Seun sal opgeneem word in die wil van die Vader.
- 8 En so verbreek God die bande van die dood, omdat Hy die oorwinning behaal het oor die dood; en Hy gee die Seun mag om voorspraak te maakvir die kinders van mense—
- 9 En Hy het opgevaar in die hemel, en Hy het innerlike ontferming; en is gevul met barmhartigheid teenoor die kinders van mense; staande tussen hulle en geregtigheid; en Hy het die bande van die dood verbreek, hulle ongeregtigheid en hulle oortredinge op Homself geneem, en het hulle verlos, en het vol doen aan die eise van geregtigheid.
- 10 En nou sê ek aan julle, wie sal sy geslag verklaar? Kyk, ek sê vir julle, dat wanneer sy siel tot 'n offerande vir die sonde gemaak is, sal Hy sy saad sien. En nou, wat sê julle? En wie sal sy nageslag wees?

Mosiah 15

And now Abinadi said unto them: I would that ye should understand that God himself shall come down among the children of men, and shall redeem his people.

And because he dwelleth in flesh he shall be called the Son of God, and having subjected the flesh to the will of the Father, being the Father and the Son—

The Father, because he was conceived by the power of God; and the Son, because of the flesh; thus becoming the Father and Son—

And they are one God, yea, the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth.

And thus the flesh becoming subject to the Spirit, or the Son to the Father, being one God, suffereth temptation, and yieldeth not to the temptation, but suffereth himself to be mocked, and scourged, and cast out, and disowned by his people.

And after all this, after working many mighty miracles among the children of men, he shall be led, yea, even as Isaiah said, as a sheep before the shearer is dumb, so he opened not his mouth.

Yea, even so he shall be led, crucified, and slain, the flesh becoming subject even unto death, the will of the Son being swallowed up in the will of the Father.

And thus God breaketh the bands of death, having gained the victory over death; giving the Son power to make intercession for the children of men—

Having ascended into heaven, having the bowels of mercy; being filled with compassion towards the children of men; standing betwixt them and justice; having broken the bands of death, taken upon himself their iniquity and their transgressions, having redeemed them, and satisfied the demands of justice.

And now I say unto you, who shall declare his generation? Behold, I say unto you, that when his soul has been made an offering for sin he shall see his seed. And now what say ye? And who shall be his seed?

- 11 Kyk, ek sê vir julle, dat wie ook al die woorde van die profete gehoor het, ja, al die heilige profete wat geprofeteer het aangaande die koms van die Here—ek sê vir julle, dat al diegene wat ag geslaan het op hulle woorde, en geglo het dat die Here sy volk sou verlos, en vooruitgesien het na daardie dag vir 'n vergifnis van hulle sondes, ek sê vir julle, dat diesulkes sy saad is, of hulle is die erfgename van die koninkryk van God.
- 12 Want dit is hulle wie se sondes Hy gedra het; dit is hulle vir wie Hy gesterwe het, om hulle te verlos van hul oortredinge. En nou, is hulle nie sy saad nie?
- 13 Ja, en is nie die profete, elkeen wat sy mond geopen het om te profeteer, wat nie verval het in oortreding nie, ek bedoel al die heilige profete sedert die wêreld begin het? Ek sê vir julle dat hulle sy saad is.
- 14 En dit is hulle wat vrede verkondig het, wat goeie tydings gebring het van die goeie, wat heil verkondig het; en aan Sion gesê het: U God heers!
- 15 En o, hoe lieflik op die berge was hulle voete!
- 16 En verder, hoe lieflik op die berge is die voete van diegene wat steeds vrede verkondig!
- 17 En verder, hoe lieflik op die berge is die voete van diegene wat hierna vrede sal verkondig, ja, vanaf hierdie tyd en vir ewig!
- 18 En kyk, ek sê vir julle, dit is nie al nie. Want, o hoe lieflik op die berge is die voete van Hom wat goeie tydings bring, wat die stigter van vrede is, ja, naamlik die Here, wat sy volk verlos het; ja, Hom wat heil geskenk het aan sy volk;
- 19 Want as dit nie was vir die verlossing wat Hy gemaak het vir sy volk, wat berei is vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld nie, ek sê vir julle, as dit nie hiervoor was nie, moes die hele mensdom vergaan het.
- 20 Maar kyk, die bande van die dood sal verbreek word, en die Seun heers, en het mag oor die dood; daarom, Hy bring die opstanding van die dode te weeg.

Behold I say unto you, that whosoever has heard the words of the prophets, yea, all the holy prophets who have prophesied concerning the coming of the Lord—I say unto you, that all those who have hearkened unto their words, and believed that the Lord would redeem his people, and have looked forward to that day for a remission of their sins, I say unto you, that these are his seed, or they are the heirs of the kingdom of God.

For these are they whose sins he has borne; these are they for whom he has died, to redeem them from their transgressions. And now, are they not his seed?

Yea, and are not the prophets, every one that has opened his mouth to prophesy, that has not fallen into transgression, I mean all the holy prophets ever since the world began? I say unto you that they are his seed.

And these are they who have published peace, who have brought good tidings of good, who have published salvation; and said unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!

And O how beautiful upon the mountains were their feet!

And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those that are still publishing peace!

And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those who shall hereafter publish peace, yea, from this time henceforth and forever!

And behold, I say unto you, this is not all. For O how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that is the founder of peace, yea, even the Lord, who has redeemed his people; yea, him who has granted salvation unto his people;

For were it not for the redemption which he hath made for his people, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, I say unto you, were it not for this, all mankind must have perished.

But behold, the bands of death shall be broken, and the Son reigneth, and hath power over the dead; therefore, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead.

21 En daar kom 'n opstanding, naamlik 'n eerste opstanding; ja, naamlik 'n opstanding van hulle wat was, en wat is, en wat sal wees, en wel tot die opstanding van Christus—want so sal Hy genoem word.

22 En nou, die opstanding van al die profete, en al diegene wat geglo het in hulle woorde, of al diegene wat die gebooi van God onderhou het, sal te voorskyn kom in die eerste opstanding; daarom, hulle is die eerste opstanding.

23 Hulle word opgewek om by God te woon wat hulle verlos het; dus het hulle die ewige lewe deur Christus, wat die bande van die dood verbreek het.

24 En dit is hulle wat deel het aan die eerste opstanding; en dit is hulle wat gesterf het voordat Christus gekom het, in hulle onkunde, sonder dat heil aan hulle verkondig is. En so bring die Here die herstelling van diesulkes teweeg; en hulle het deel aan die eerste opstanding, of het die ewige lewe, omdat hulle verlos is deur die Here.

25 En klein kindertjies het ook die ewige lewe.

26 Maar kyk, en vrees, en bewe voor God, want julle behoort te bewe; want die Here verlos nie diesulkes wat teen Hom rebelleer en sterwe in hulle sondes nie; ja, en wel al diegene wat vergaan het in hulle sondes sedert die wêreld begin het, wat moedswillig gerebelleer het teen God, wat die gebooi van God geken het, en hulle nie wou onderhou nie; dit is hulle wat geen deel het aan die eerste opstanding nie.

27 Daarom, behoort julle nie te bewe nie? Want heil kom nie na diesulkes nie; want die Here het diesulkes nie verlos nie; ja, nóg kan die Here diesulkes verlos; want Hy kan Homself nie weerspreek nie; want Hy kan nie die geregtigheid weier wanneer dit sy eis stel nie.

28 En nou sê ek aan julle dat die tyd sal kom dat die heil van die Here verkondig sal word aan elke nasie, stam, taal en volk.

29 Ja, Here, u wagte sal hulle stem verhef, met die stem tesame sal hulle sing; want hulle sal van oog tot oog sien wanneer die Here Sion weer sal bring.

30 Breek uit in gejubel, sing saam, julle verwoeste plekke van Jerusalem; want die Here het sy volk verlost, Hy het Jerusalem verlos.

And there cometh a resurrection, even a first resurrection; yea, even a resurrection of those that have been, and who are, and who shall be, even until the resurrection of Christ—for so shall he be called.

And now, the resurrection of all the prophets, and all those that have believed in their words, or all those that have kept the commandments of God, shall come forth in the first resurrection; therefore, they are the first resurrection.

They are raised to dwell with God who has redeemed them; thus they have eternal life through Christ, who has broken the bands of death.

And these are those who have part in the first resurrection; and these are they that have died before Christ came, in their ignorance, not having salvation declared unto them. And thus the Lord bringeth about the restoration of these; and they have a part in the first resurrection, or have eternal life, being redeemed by the Lord.

And little children also have eternal life.

But behold, and fear, and tremble before God, for ye ought to tremble; for the Lord redeemeth none such that rebel against him and die in their sins; yea, even all those that have perished in their sins ever since the world began, that have wilfully rebelled against God, that have known the commandments of God, and would not keep them; these are they that have no part in the first resurrection.

Therefore ought ye not to tremble? For salvation cometh to none such; for the Lord hath redeemed none such; yea, neither can the Lord redeem such; for he cannot deny himself; for he cannot deny justice when it has its claim.

And now I say unto you that the time shall come that the salvation of the Lord shall be declared to every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

Yea, Lord, thy watchmen shall lift up their voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye, when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

31 Die Here het sy heilige arm ontbloot voor die oë
van al die nasies; en al die eindes van die aarde sal
die heil van ons God sien.

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes
of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall
see the salvation of our God.

Mosia 16

- 1 En nou, dit het gebeur dat nadat Abinadi hierdie woorde gespreek het, het hy sy hand uitgestrek, en gesê: Die tyd sal kom wanneer almal die heil van die Here sal sien; wanneer elke nasie, stam, taal en volk oog tot oog sal sien en sal bely voor God dat sy oordele regverdig is.
- 2 En dan sal die bese uitgewerp word, en hulle sal rede hê om te huil, en te ween, en te skree, en hulle tande te kners; en dit omdat hulle nie wou ag slaan op die stem van die Here nie; daarom verlos die Here hulle nie.
- 3 Want hulle is vleeslik en duiwels, en die duiwel het mag oor hulle; ja, en wel daardie ou slang wat ons eerste ouers verlei het, wat die oorsaak was van hulle val; wat die oorsaak was dat alle mense vleeslik, wellustig, duiwels word, wat die kwade van die goeie ken, en hulleself onderwerp aan die duiwel.
- 4 Daarom was alle mense verlore; en kyk, hulle sou eindeloos verlore gewees het as dit nie was dat God sy volk verlos het van hulle verlore en gevalle toestand nie.
- 5 Maar onthou dat hy wat volhou in sy eie vleeslike natuur, en voortgaan op die weë van sonde en rebellie teen God, bly in sy vervalde toestand, en die duiwel het alle mag oor hom. Daarom is hy asof daar geen verlossing teweeggebring is nie, omdat hy 'n vyand is van God, en ook is die duiwel 'n vyand van God.
- 6 En nou, as Christus nie in die wêreld gekom het nie, en sprekende van dinge wat moet kom asof hulle alreeds gekom het, kon daar geen verlossing gewees het nie.
- 7 En as Christus nie opgestaan het uit die dood, of die bande van die dood verbreek het, sodat die graf geen oorwinning sou hê nie, en sodat die dood geen angel sou hê nie, kon daar geen opstanding gewees het nie.
- 8 Maar daar is 'n opstanding, daarom het die graf geen oorwinning nie, en die angel van die dood is opgeneem in Christus.

Mosiah 16

And now, it came to pass that after Abinadi had spoken these words he stretched forth his hand and said: The time shall come when all shall see the salvation of the Lord; when every nation, kindred, tongue, and people shall see eye to eye and shall confess before God that his judgments are just.

And then shall the wicked be cast out, and they shall have cause to howl, and weep, and wail, and gnash their teeth; and this because they would not hearken unto the voice of the Lord; therefore the Lord redeemeth them not.

For they are carnal and devilish, and the devil has power over them; yea, even that old serpent that did beguile our first parents, which was the cause of their fall; which was the cause of all mankind becoming carnal, sensual, devilish, knowing evil from good, subjecting themselves to the devil.

Thus all mankind were lost; and behold, they would have been endlessly lost were it not that God redeemed his people from their lost and fallen state.

But remember that he that persists in his own carnal nature, and goes on in the ways of sin and rebellion against God, remaineth in his fallen state and the devil hath all power over him. Therefore he is as though there was no redemption made, being an enemy to God; and also is the devil an enemy to God.

And now if Christ had not come into the world, speaking of things to come as though they had already come, there could have been no redemption.

And if Christ had not risen from the dead, or have broken the bands of death that the grave should have no victory, and that death should have no sting, there could have been no resurrection.

But there is a resurrection, therefore the grave hath no victory, and the sting of death is swallowed up in Christ.

- 9 Hy is die lig en die lewe van die wêreld; ja, 'n lig wat eindeloos is, wat nooit verdonker kan word nie; ja, en ook 'n lewe wat eindeloos is, sodat daar geen dood meer kan wees nie.
- 10 Selfs hierdie sterflike sal beklee word met onsterflikheid, en hierdie verganklike sal beklee word met onverganklikheid, en sal gebring word om te staan voor die regbank van God, om deur Hom geoordeel te word volgens hulle werke, of hulle goed en of hulle boos is—
- 11 As hulle goed is, tot die opstanding van die eindelose lewe en geluk; en as hulle boos is, tot die opstanding van eindelose verdoemenis, omdat hulle oorgelewer word aan die duiwel, wat hulle onderwerp het, wat verdoemenis is—
- 12 En wat gegaan het volgens hulle eie vleeslike wil en begeertes; en nooit tot die Here geroep het terwyl die arms van barmhartigheid na hulle uitgestrek was nie; want die arms van barmhartigheid was uitgestrek na hulle, en hulle wou nie; hulle was gewaarsku oor hul ongeregtighede en tog wou hulle nie van hul afwyk nie; en hulle is gebied om te bekeer en tog wou hulle nie bekeer nie.
- 13 En nou, behoort julle nie te bewe en te bekeer van julle sondes nie, en onthou dat julle net in en deur Christus gered kan word?
- 14 Daarom, as julle die wet van Moses onderrig, leer ook dat dit 'n voorafskaduwing is van daardie dinge wat moet kom—
- 15 Leer hulle dat verlossing deur Christus die Here kom, wat die ware Ewige Vader is. Amen.

He is the light and the life of the world; yea, a light that is endless, that can never be darkened; yea, and also a life which is endless, that there can be no more death.

Even this mortal shall put on immortality, and this corruption shall put on incorruption, and shall be brought to stand before the bar of God, to be judged of him according to their works whether they be good or whether they be evil—

If they be good, to the resurrection of endless life and happiness; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of endless damnation, being delivered up to the devil, who hath subjected them, which is damnation—

Having gone according to their own carnal wills and desires; having never called upon the Lord while the arms of mercy were extended towards them; for the arms of mercy were extended towards them, and they would not; they being warned of their iniquities and yet they would not depart from them; and they were commanded to repent and yet they would not repent.

And now, ought ye not to tremble and repent of your sins, and remember that only in and through Christ ye can be saved?

Therefore, if ye teach the law of Moses, also teach that it is a shadow of those things which are to come—

Teach them that redemption cometh through Christ the Lord, who is the very Eternal Father. Amen.

Mosia 17

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe Abinadi hierdie woorde klaar gespreek het, het die koning beveel dat die priesters hom moes neem en hom laat doodmaak.
- 2 Maar daar was een onder hulle wie se naam Alma was, wat ook 'n afstammeling van Nepi was. En hy was 'n jong man, en hy het die woorde geglo wat Abinadi gespreek het, want hy het geweet van die ongeregtigheid waarvan Abinadi teen hulle getuig het; daarom het hy begin pleit by die koning dat hy nie kwaad moes wees vir Abinadi nie, maar toelaat dat hy in vrede mag vertrek.
- 3 Maar die koning was meer toornig, en het Alma laat uitwerp onder hulle, en het sy diensknegte agter hom aangestuur dat hulle hom mag doodmaak.
- 4 Maar hy het voor hulle uitgevlug en homself verberg sodat hulle hom nie gevind het nie. En terwyl hy baie dae lank verskuil was, het hy al die woorde neergeskryf wat Abinadi gespreek het.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat die koning beveel het dat sy lyfwagte vir Abinadi moes omsingel en hom neem; en hulle het hom gebind en hom in die gevangenis gewerp.
- 6 En na drie dae, nadat hy raad gehou het met sy priesters, het hy hom weer voor hom laat bring.
- 7 En hy het aan hom gesê: Abinadi, ons het 'n aanklag teen jou gevind, en jy is die dood waardig.
- 8 Want jy het gesê dat God self sou neerdaal onder die kinders van mense; en nou, om hierdie rede sal jy doodgemaak word, tensy jy al die bose woorde sal herroep wat jy gespreek het aangaande my en my volk.
- 9 Nou het Abinadi aan hom gesê: Ek sê vir u, ek sal nie die woorde herroep wat ek gespreek het aangaande hierdie volk nie, want hulle is waar; en dat julle mag weet van hulle sekerheid het ek myself toegelaat dat ek in julle hande val.

Mosiah 17

And now it came to pass that when Abinadi had finished these sayings, that the king commanded that the priests should take him and cause that he should be put to death.

But there was one among them whose name was Alma, he also being a descendant of Nephi. And he was a young man, and he believed the words which Abinadi had spoken, for he knew concerning the iniquity which Abinadi had testified against them; therefore he began to plead with the king that he would not be angry with Abinadi, but suffer that he might depart in peace.

But the king was more wroth, and caused that Alma should be cast out from among them, and sent his servants after him that they might slay him.

But he fled from before them and hid himself that they found him not. And he being concealed for many days did write all the words which Abinadi had spoken.

And it came to pass that the king caused that his guards should surround Abinadi and take him; and they bound him and cast him into prison.

And after three days, having counseled with his priests, he caused that he should again be brought before him.

And he said unto him: Abinadi, we have found an accusation against thee, and thou art worthy of death.

For thou hast said that God himself should come down among the children of men; and now, for this cause thou shalt be put to death unless thou wilt recall all the words which thou hast spoken evil concerning me and my people.

Now Abinadi said unto him: I say unto you, I will not recall the words which I have spoken unto you concerning this people, for they are true; and that ye may know of their surety I have suffered myself that I have fallen into your hands.

10 Ja, en ek sal ly tot die dood toe, en ek sal my woorde nie herroep nie, en hulle sal staan as 'n getuienis teen julle. En as julle my doodmaak, sal julle onskuldige bloed verspil, en dit sal ook staan as 'n getuienis teen julle op die laaste dag.

11 En nou was koning Noag op die punt om hom los te laat, want hy het sy woord gevrees; want hy het gevrees dat die oordele van God oor hom sou kom.

12 Maar die priesters het hulle stemme verhef teen hom, en begin om hom te beskuldig, en gesê: Hy het die koning beledig. Daarom was die koning tot toorn ontstoke teen hom, en hy het hom oorgelewer sodat hy doodgemaak mag word.

13 En dit het gebeur dat hulle hom geneem en hom vasgebind het, en sy vel gegêsel het met brandende stokke, ja, tot die dood toe.

14 En nou, toe die vlamme begin om hom te verkroei, het hy tot hulle geroep, en gesê:

15 Kyk, net soos julle aan my gedoen het, so sal dit gebeur dat julle saad sal veroorsaak dat baie die pyn sal ly wat ek verduur, en wel die pyn van die dood deur vuur; en dit omdat hulle glo in die heil van die Here hulle God.

16 En dit sal gebeur dat julle gekwel sal word met allerlei siektes vanweë julle ongeregthede.

17 Ja, en julle sal van alle kante af geslaan word, en sal heen en weer gedrywe en verstrooi word, net soos 'n wilde kudde gedryf word deur wilde en wrede diere.

18 En op daardie dag sal julle gejag word, en julle sal geneem word deur die hand van julle vyande, en dan sal julle ly soos ek ly, die pyne van die dood deur vuur.

19 So oefen God wraak uit oor diegene wat sy volk vernietig. O God, ontvang my siel.

20 En nou, toe Abinadi hierdie woorde gesê het, het hy geval, nadat hy die dood gely het deur vuur; ja, hy is doodgemaak omdat hy nie die gebooi van God wou loën nie, en hy het die waarheid van sy woorde verseël met sy dood.

Yea, and I will suffer even until death, and I will not recall my words, and they shall stand as a testimony against you. And if ye slay me ye will shed innocent blood, and this shall also stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

And now king Noah was about to release him, for he feared his word; for he feared that the judgments of God would come upon him.

But the priests lifted up their voices against him, and began to accuse him, saying: He has reviled the king. Therefore the king was stirred up in anger against him, and he delivered him up that he might be slain.

And it came to pass that they took him and bound him, and scourged his skin with faggots, yea, even unto death.

And now when the flames began to scorch him, he cried unto them, saying:

Behold, even as ye have done unto me, so shall it come to pass that thy seed shall cause that many shall suffer the pains that I do suffer, even the pains of death by fire; and this because they believe in the salvation of the Lord their God.

And it will come to pass that ye shall be afflicted with all manner of diseases because of your iniquities.

Yea, and ye shall be smitten on every hand, and shall be driven and scattered to and fro, even as a wild flock is driven by wild and ferocious beasts.

And in that day ye shall be hunted, and ye shall be taken by the hand of your enemies, and then ye shall suffer, as I suffer, the pains of death by fire.

Thus God executeth vengeance upon those that destroy his people. O God, receive my soul.

And now, when Abinadi had said these words, he fell, having suffered death by fire; yea, having been put to death because he would not deny the commandments of God, having sealed the truth of his words by his death.

Mosia 18

- 1 En nou, dit het gebeur dat Alma, wat weggevlug het van die diensknegte van koning Noag af, bekeer het van sy sondes en ongeregthede, en in die geheim onder die volk rondgegaan het, en begin het om die woorde van Abinadi te onderrig—
- 2 Ja, aangaande dit wat moes kom, en ook aangaande die opstanding van die dode, en die verlossing van die volk, wat teweeggebring sou word deur die krag, en die lydings, en die dood van Christus, en sy opstanding en opvaart na die hemel.
- 3 En soveel as wat sy woorde wou aanhoor, het hy geleer. En hy het hulle in die geheim geleer, sodat dit nie mag kom tot die kennis van die koning nie. En baie het sy woorde geglo.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat soveel as wat hom geglo het, uitgegaan het na 'n plek wat Mormon genoem is, wat sy naam ontvang het van die koning, wat op die grense van die land was wat vervuil was by tye of met geleenthede, met wilde diere.
- 5 Nou, daar was in Mormon 'n fontein van suiwer water, en Alma het daarheen gegaan, omdat daar naby die water 'n bos was van klein boompies, waar hy hom bedags versteek het teen die soektogte van die koning.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat soveel as wat hom geglo het daarheen gegaan het om sy woorde te hoor.
- 7 En dit het gebeur na baie dae dat daar 'n aansienlike aantal bymekaar was by die plek van Mormon, om die woorde van Alma te hoor. Ja, almal het bymekaar gekom wat in sy woord geglo het, om hom te hoor. En hy het hulle geleer, en het aan hulle bekering gepreek, en verlossing, en geloof in die Here.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat hy aan hulle gesê het: Kyk, hier is die waters van Mormon (want so is hulle genoem) en nou, aangesien julle begerig is om in die kudde van God te kom, en om sy volk genoem te word, en gewillig is om mekaar se laste te dra, sodat hulle lig mag wees;

Mosiah 18

And now, it came to pass that Alma, who had fled from the servants of king Noah, repented of his sins and iniquities, and went about privately among the people, and began to teach the words of Abinadi—

Yea, concerning that which was to come, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and the redemption of the people, which was to be brought to pass through the power, and sufferings, and death of Christ, and his resurrection and ascension into heaven.

And as many as would hear his word he did teach. And he taught them privately, that it might not come to the knowledge of the king. And many did believe his words.

And it came to pass that as many as did believe him did go forth to a place which was called Mormon, having received its name from the king, being in the borders of the land having been infested, by times or at seasons, by wild beasts.

Now, there was in Mormon a fountain of pure water, and Alma resorted thither, there being near the water a thicket of small trees, where he did hide himself in the daytime from the searches of the king.

And it came to pass that as many as believed him went thither to hear his words.

And it came to pass after many days there were a goodly number gathered together at the place of Mormon, to hear the words of Alma. Yea, all were gathered together that believed on his word, to hear him. And he did teach them, and did preach unto them repentance, and redemption, and faith on the Lord.

And it came to pass that he said unto them: Behold, here are the waters of Mormon (for thus were they called) and now, as ye are desirous to come into the fold of God, and to be called his people, and are willing to bear one another's burdens, that they may be light;

- 9 Ja, en gewillig is om te treur met diegene wat treur; ja, en diegene te troos wat vertroosting nodig het, en om te staan as getuies van God te alle tye en in alle dinge, en op alle plekke waar julle mag wees, selfs tot die dood toe, sodat julle verlos mag word deur God, en gereken word onder diegene van die eerste opstanding, dat julle die ewige lewe mag hê—
- 10 Nou sê ek aan julle, as dit die begeerte van julle harte is, wat het julle daarteen om gedoop te word in die naam van die Here, as 'n getuie voor Hom dat julle 'n verbond gesluit het met Hom, dat julle Hom sal dien en sy gebooie sal onderhou, dat Hy sy Gees meer oorvloedig op julle mag uitstort?
- 11 En nou toe die volk hierdie woorde gehoor het, het hulle hul hande geklap van vreugde, en uitgeroep: Dit is die begeerte van ons harte.
- 12 En nou het dit gebeur dat Alma vir Helam geneem het, wat een van die eerstes was, en gegaan en in die water gaan staan het, en uitgeroep, en gesê het: O Here, stort u Gees uit op u dienskneg, sodat hy hierdie werk mag doen met heiligheid van hart.
- 13 En toe hy hierdie woorde gesê het, was die Gees van die Here op hom, en hy het gesê: Helam, ek doop jou, omdat ek gesag het van die Almagtige God, as 'n getuienis dat jy 'n verbond gesluit het om Hom te dien totdat jy dood is wat die sterflike liggaam betref; en mag die Gees van die Here uitgestort word oor jou; en mag Hy jou die ewige lewe skenk, deur die verlossing van Christus, vir wie Hy voorberei het vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld.
- 14 En nadat Alma hierdie woorde gesê het, is beide Alma en Helam begrawe in die water; en hulle het opgestaan en uitgekome uit die water jubelend, en hulle was met die Gees vervul.
- 15 En verder, Alma het 'n ander geneem, en 'n tweede keer in die water ingegaan, en hom gedoop ooreenkomstig die eerste, net hy het homself nie weer in die water begrawe nie.
- 16 En volgens hierdie wyse het hy elkeen gedoop wat uitgegaan het na die plek van Mormon; en hulle was in getal ongeveer tweehonderd en vier siele; ja, en hulle is gedoop in die waters van Mormon, en is vervul met die genade van God.

Yea, and are willing to mourn with those that mourn; yea, and comfort those that stand in need of comfort, and to stand as witnesses of God at all times and in all things, and in all places that ye may be in, even until death, that ye may be redeemed of God, and be numbered with those of the first resurrection, that ye may have eternal life—

Now I say unto you, if this be the desire of your hearts, what have you against being baptized in the name of the Lord, as a witness before him that ye have entered into a covenant with him, that ye will serve him and keep his commandments, that he may pour out his Spirit more abundantly upon you?

And now when the people had heard these words, they clapped their hands for joy, and exclaimed: This is the desire of our hearts.

And now it came to pass that Alma took Helam, he being one of the first, and went and stood forth in the water, and cried, saying: O Lord, pour out thy Spirit upon thy servant, that he may do this work with holiness of heart.

And when he had said these words, the Spirit of the Lord was upon him, and he said: Helam, I baptize thee, having authority from the Almighty God, as a testimony that ye have entered into a covenant to serve him until you are dead as to the mortal body; and may the Spirit of the Lord be poured out upon you; and may he grant unto you eternal life, through the redemption of Christ, whom he has prepared from the foundation of the world.

And after Alma had said these words, both Alma and Helam were buried in the water; and they arose and came forth out of the water rejoicing, being filled with the Spirit.

And again, Alma took another, and went forth a second time into the water, and baptized him according to the first, only he did not bury himself again in the water.

And after this manner he did baptize every one that went forth to the place of Mormon; and they were in number about two hundred and four souls; yea, and they were baptized in the waters of Mormon, and were filled with the grace of God.

- 17 En hulle is die kerk van God genoem, of die kerk van Christus, van daardie tyd af aan. En dit het gebeur dat wie ook al gedoop is deur die krag en gesag van God, gevoeg is by die kerk.
- 18 En dit het gebeur dat Alma, omdat hy die gesag van God gehad het, priesters geordineer het; en wel een priester vir elke vyftig van hulle getal het hy geordineer om vir hulle te preek, en om hulle te onderlig aangaande die dinge betreffende die koninkryk van God.
- 19 En hy het hulle beveel dat hulle niks sou onderrig tensy dit die dinge was wat hy hulle geleer het nie, en wat gespreek is deur die mond van die heilige profete.
- 20 Ja, en wel het hy hulle beveel dat hulle niks moes preek nie tensy dit bekering en geloof in die Here is, wat sy volk verlos het.
- 21 En hy het hulle beveel dat daar geen twis onder mekaar moet wees nie, maar dat hulle vooruit moes kyk met een oog, omdat hulle een geloof en een doop gehad het, omdat hulle hul harte verenig het in eenheid en in liefde, die een teenoor die ander.
- 22 En so het hy hulle beveel om te preek. En so het hulle die kinders van God geword.
- 23 En hy het hulle beveel dat hulle die sabbatdag moes onderhou, en dit heilig hou, en dat hulle ook elke dag dank moes betuig aan die Here hulle God.
- 24 En hy het hulle ook beveel dat die priesters wat hy geordineer het, moes arbei met hulle eie hande vir hulle onderhoud.
- 25 En daar was een dag in elke week wat opsy gesit is dat hulle self bymekaar moes kom om die volk te leer, en om die Here hulle God te aanbid, en ook, om so dikwels as wat dit in hulle mag was, bymekaar te kom.
- 26 En die priesters moes nie staatmaak op die volk vir hulle onderhoud nie; maar vir hulle arbeid sou hulle die genade van God ontvang, sodat hulle sterk mag word in die Gees, omdat hulle die kennis van God het, dat hulle met mag en gesag van God mag leer.

And they were called the church of God, or the church of Christ, from that time forward. And it came to pass that whosoever was baptized by the power and authority of God was added to his church.

And it came to pass that Alma, having authority from God, ordained priests; even one priest to every fifty of their number did he ordain to preach unto them, and to teach them concerning the things pertaining to the kingdom of God.

And he commanded them that they should teach nothing save it were the things which he had taught, and which had been spoken by the mouth of the holy prophets.

Yea, even he commanded them that they should preach nothing save it were repentance and faith on the Lord, who had redeemed his people.

And he commanded them that there should be no contention one with another, but that they should look forward with one eye, having one faith and one baptism, having their hearts knit together in unity and in love one towards another.

And thus he commanded them to preach. And thus they became the children of God.

And he commanded them that they should observe the sabbath day, and keep it holy, and also every day they should give thanks to the Lord their God.

And he also commanded them that the priests whom he had ordained should labor with their own hands for their support.

And there was one day in every week that was set apart that they should gather themselves together to teach the people, and to worship the Lord their God, and also, as often as it was in their power, to assemble themselves together.

And the priests were not to depend upon the people for their support; but for their labor they were to receive the grace of God, that they might wax strong in the Spirit, having the knowledge of God, that they might teach with power and authority from God.

27 En verder het Alma beveel dat die volk van die kerk van hulle besittings moes afstaan, elkeen volgens dit wat hy gehad het; as hy meer oorfloedig het, moes hy meer oorfloedig deel; en van hom wat maar min gehad het, sal maar min verlang word; en aan hom wat nie het nie, moes gegee word.

28 En so moes hulle van hulle besittings deel uit hulle eie vrye wil en goeie begeertes teenoor God, en aan daardie priesters wat behoefdig was, ja, en aan elke behoefdigte, naakte siel.

29 En dit het hy aan hulle gesê, omdat hy deur God gebied is; en hulle het opreg gewandel voor God, en met mekaar gedeel beide stoflik en geestelik, volgens hulle behoeftes en hulle node.

30 En nou het dit gebeur dat dit alles in Mormon gedoen is, ja, by die waters van Mormon, in die woud wat naby die waters van Mormon was; ja, die plek van Mormon, die waters van Mormon, die woud van Mormon, hoe lieflik is hulle in die oë van diegene wat daar tot die kennis van hulle Verlosser gekom het; ja, en hoe geseënd is hulle, want hulle sal tot sy lof vir ewig sing.

31 En hierdie dinge is gedoen op die grense van die land, sodat hulle nie mag kom tot die kennis van die koning nie.

32 Maar kyk, dit het gebeur dat, nadat die koning 'n beweging onder die mense ontdek het, hy sy diensknegte gestuur het om hulle dop te hou. Daarom, op die dag wat hulle bymekaar gekom het om die woord van die Here te hoor, is hulle ontdek deur die koning.

33 En nou het die koning gesê dat Alma die volk tot 'n rebellie aangehits het teen hom; daarom het hy sy leër gestuur om hulle te vernietig.

34 En dit het gebeur dat Alma en die volk van die Here in kennis gestel is van die koms van die koning se leër; daarom het hulle hul tente en hul gesinne geneem en in die wildernis ingetrek.

35 En hul was in getal omtrent vierhonderd en vyftig siele.

And again Alma commanded that the people of the church should impart of their substance, every one according to that which he had; if he have more abundantly he should impart more abundantly; and of him that had but little, but little should be required; and to him that had not should be given.

And thus they should impart of their substance of their own free will and good desires towards God, and to those priests that stood in need, yea, and to every needy, naked soul.

And this he said unto them, having been commanded of God; and they did walk uprightly before God, imparting to one another both temporally and spiritually according to their needs and their wants.

And now it came to pass that all this was done in Mormon, yea, by the waters of Mormon, in the forest that was near the waters of Mormon; yea, the place of Mormon, the waters of Mormon, the forest of Mormon, how beautiful are they to the eyes of them who there came to the knowledge of their Redeemer; yea, and how blessed are they, for they shall sing to his praise forever.

And these things were done in the borders of the land, that they might not come to the knowledge of the king.

But behold, it came to pass that the king, having discovered a movement among the people, sent his servants to watch them. Therefore on the day that they were assembling themselves together to hear the word of the Lord they were discovered unto the king.

And now the king said that Alma was stirring up the people to rebellion against him; therefore he sent his army to destroy them.

And it came to pass that Alma and the people of the Lord were apprised of the coming of the king's army; therefore they took their tents and their families and departed into the wilderness.

And they were in number about four hundred and fifty souls.

Mosia 19

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat die leër van die koning teruggekeer het, nadat hulle tevergeefs gesoek het na die volk van die Here.
- 2 En nou kyk, die magte van die koning was klein, omdat hulle verminder is, en daar het begin om 'n verdeling te kom onder die oorblywende volk.
- 3 En die kleiner gedeelte het dreigemente begin uitblaas teen die koning, en daar het 'n groot twis onder hulle begin ontstaan.
- 4 En nou was daar 'n man onder hulle wie se naam Gideon was, en omdat hy 'n sterk man was en 'n vyand van die koning, daarom het hy sy swaard uitgetrek, en het gesweer in sy toorn dat hy die koning sou doodmaak.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat hy geveg het met die koning; en toe die koning sien dat hy op die punt was om hom te oorweldig, het hy gevlug en gehardloop en die toring bestyg wat naby die tempel was.
- 6 En Gideon het hom agternagesit en was op die punt om die toring te bestyg om die koning te dood, en die koning het sy oë rondomheen laat gaan na die land Semlon, en kyk, die leër van die Lamaniete was binne die grense van die land.
- 7 En nou het die koning uitgeroep in die ang van sy siel, en gesê: Gideon, spaar my, want die Lamaniete is op ons, en hulle sal ons vernietig; ja, hulle sal my volk vernietig.
- 8 En nou was die koning nie sodanig bekommerd oor sy volk as wat hy was oor sy eie lewe nie; nogtans, Gideon het sy lewe gespaar.
- 9 En die koning het die volk beveel dat hulle voor die Lamaniete moes uitvlug, en hy het voor hulle uitgegaan, en hulle het die wildernis ingevlug, met hulle vroue en hulle kinders.
- 10 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete hulle agternagesit het, en hulle ingehaal, en hulle begin doodmaak het.
- 11 Nou het dit gebeur dat die koning hulle beveel het dat al die mans hulle vroue en kinders moes agterlaat, en uitvlug voor die Lamaniete.

Mosiah 19

And it came to pass that the army of the king returned, having searched in vain for the people of the Lord.

And now behold, the forces of the king were small, having been reduced, and there began to be a division among the remainder of the people.

And the lesser part began to breathe out threatenings against the king, and there began to be a great contention among them.

And now there was a man among them whose name was Gideon, and he being a strong man and an enemy to the king, therefore he drew his sword, and swore in his wrath that he would slay the king.

And it came to pass that he fought with the king; and when the king saw that he was about to overpower him, he fled and ran and got upon the tower which was near the temple.

And Gideon pursued after him and was about to get upon the tower to slay the king, and the king cast his eyes round about towards the land of Shemlon, and behold, the army of the Lamanites were within the borders of the land.

And now the king cried out in the anguish of his soul, saying: Gideon, spare me, for the Lamanites are upon us, and they will destroy us; yea, they will destroy my people.

And now the king was not so much concerned about his people as he was about his own life; nevertheless, Gideon did spare his life.

And the king commanded the people that they should flee before the Lamanites, and he himself did go before them, and they did flee into the wilderness, with their women and their children.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue them, and did overtake them, and began to slay them.

Now it came to pass that the king commanded them that all the men should leave their wives and their children, and flee before the Lamanites.

12 Nou, daar was baie wat hul nie wou agterlaat nie, maar eerder wou bly en omkom saam met hulle. En die res het hulle vroue en hul kinders agtergelaat en gevlug.

13 En dit het gebeur dat diegene wat by hulle vroue en hulle kinders gebly het, hulle mooi dogters na vore laat kom het en by die Lamaniete pleit dat hulle hul nie moes doodmaak nie.

14 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete ontferming gehad het met hulle, want hulle is betower deur die skoonheid van hulle vroue.

15 Daarom het die Lamaniete hulle lewens gespaar, en hulle gevange geneem en hulle teruggevoer na die land Nefi, en hulle toegelaat dat hulle die land mag besit, op voorwaarde dat hulle koning Noag sou oorlewer in die hande van die Lamaniete, en hulle eendom oorlewer, en wel een helfte van alles wat hulle besit het, een helfte van hul goud, en hul silwer, en al hul kosbare dinge, en so moes hulle belasting betaal aan die koning van die Lamaniete van jaar tot jaar.

16 En nou was daar een van die seuns van die koning onder diegene wat gevange geneem is, wie se naam Limhi was.

17 En nou was Limhi begerig dat sy vader nie moes vernietig word nie; nogtans, Limhi was nie onkundig omtrent die ongeregtighede van sy vader nie, omdat hyself 'n regverdige man was.

18 En dit het gebeur dat Gideon manne die wildernis ingestuur het in die geheim, om te soek na die koning en na diegene wat by hom was. En dit het gebeur dat hulle die mense in die wildernis teëgekom het, almal behalwe die koning en sy priesters.

19 Nou, hulle het in hulle harte gesweer dat hulle sou terugkeer na die land Nefi, en as hulle vroue en hulle kinders doodgemaak is, en ook diegene wat by hulle agtergebly het, dat hulle wraak sou soek, en ook omkom met hulle.

20 En die koning het hulle beveel dat hulle nie moes terugkeer nie; en hulle was toornig op die koning, en het hom laat ly en wel tot die dood toe deur vuur.

21 En hulle was op die punt om die priesters ook te neem en hulle dood te maak, en hulle het voor hulle uitgevlug.

Now there were many that would not leave them, but had rather stay and perish with them. And the rest left their wives and their children and fled.

And it came to pass that those who tarried with their wives and their children caused that their fair daughters should stand forth and plead with the Lamanites that they would not slay them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites had compassion on them, for they were charmed with the beauty of their women.

Therefore the Lamanites did spare their lives, and took them captives and carried them back to the land of Nephi, and granted unto them that they might possess the land, under the conditions that they would deliver up king Noah into the hands of the Lamanites, and deliver up their property, even one half of all they possessed, one half of their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and thus they should pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites from year to year.

And now there was one of the sons of the king among those that were taken captive, whose name was Limhi.

And now Limhi was desirous that his father should not be destroyed; nevertheless, Limhi was not ignorant of the iniquities of his father, he himself being a just man.

And it came to pass that Gideon sent men into the wilderness secretly, to search for the king and those that were with him. And it came to pass that they met the people in the wilderness, all save the king and his priests.

Now they had sworn in their hearts that they would return to the land of Nephi, and if their wives and their children were slain, and also those that had tarried with them, that they would seek revenge, and also perish with them.

And the king commanded them that they should not return; and they were angry with the king, and caused that he should suffer, even unto death by fire.

And they were about to take the priests also and put them to death, and they fled before them.

- 22 En dit het gebeur dat hulle op die punt was om terug te keer na die land Nepi, en hulle het die manne van Gideon teëgekom. En die manne van Gideon het hulle vertel van alles wat gebeur het met hulle vroue en hul kinders; en dat die Lamaniete hulle gegun het dat hulle die land mag besit deur belasting te betaal aan die Lamaniete van een helfte van alles wat hulle besit het.
- 23 En die volk het vir die manne van Gideon vertel dat hulle die koning doodgemaak het, en dat sy priesters van hulle af weggevlug het, verder die wildernis in.
- 24 En dit het gebeur dat nadat hulle die plegtigheid beëindig het, het hulle teruggekeer na die land Nepi, jubelend, omdat hulle vroue en hul kinders nie doodgemaak is nie; en hulle het vir Gideon vertel wat hulle gedoen het aan die koning.
- 25 En dit het gebeur dat die koning van die Lamaniete 'n eed teenoor hulle geneem het dat sy volk hulle nie sou doodmaak nie.
- 26 En ook Limhi, omdat hy die seun van die koning was, omdat die koninkryk aan hom oorgedra is deur die volk, het 'n eed geneem teenoor die koning van die Lamaniete dat sy volk belasting sou betaal aan hom, en wel een helfte van alles wat hulle besit het.
- 27 En dit het gebeur dat Limhi begin het om die koninkryk te stig, en om vrede te vestig onder sy volk.
- 28 En die koning van die Lamaniete het wagte opgestel rondom die land, sodat hy die volk van Limhi in die land kon hou, dat hulle nie mag wegtrek in die wildernis nie; en hy het sy wagte onderhou uit die belasting wat hy ontvang het van die Nefiete.
- 29 En nou het koning Limhi voortdurende vrede gehad in sy koninkryk vir 'n tydperk van twee jaar, omdat die Lamaniete hulle nie aangerand of probeer het om hulle te vernietig nie.

And it came to pass that they were about to return to the land of Nephi, and they met the men of Gideon. And the men of Gideon told them of all that had happened to their wives and their children; and that the Lamanites had granted unto them that they might possess the land by paying a tribute to the Lamanites of one half of all they possessed.

And the people told the men of Gideon that they had slain the king, and his priests had fled from them farther into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that after they had ended the ceremony, that they returned to the land of Nephi, rejoicing, because their wives and their children were not slain; and they told Gideon what they had done to the king.

And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites made an oath unto them, that his people should not slay them.

And also Limhi, being the son of the king, having the kingdom conferred upon him by the people, made oath unto the king of the Lamanites that his people should pay tribute unto him, even one half of all they possessed.

And it came to pass that Limhi began to establish the kingdom and to establish peace among his people.

And the king of the Lamanites set guards round about the land, that he might keep the people of Limhi in the land, that they might not depart into the wilderness; and he did support his guards out of the tribute which he did receive from the Nephites.

And now king Limhi did have continual peace in his kingdom for the space of two years, that the Lamanites did not molest them nor seek to destroy them.

Mosia 20

- 1 Nou, daar was 'n plek in Semlon waar die dogters van die Lamaniete bymekaar gekom het om te sing, en te dans, en om hulleself te vermaak.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat daar eendag 'n klein groepie van hulle bymekaar was om te sing en te dans.
- 3 En nou, die priesters van koning Noag, omdat hulle skaam was om terug te keer na die stad Nephi, ja, en ook gevrees het dat die volk hulle sou doodmaak, daarom het hulle nie gedurf om terug te keer na hulle vroue en kinders nie.
- 4 En omdat hulle in die wildernis vertoef het, en die dogters van die Lamaniete ontdek het, het hulle gelê en hul dopgehou;
- 5 En toe daar net 'n paar van hulle bymekaar was om te dans, het hulle uitgekom uit hul skuilplekke en hulle geneem en hulle weggevoer die wildernis in; ja, vier en twintig van die dogters van die Lamaniete het hulle weggevoer die wildernis in.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat toe die Lamaniete ontdek het dat hulle dogters vermis was, was hulle kwaad vir die volk van Limhi, want hulle het gedink dat dit die volk van Limhi was.
- 7 Daarom het hulle hul leërs uitgestuur; ja, naamlik die koning self het uitgegaan voor sy volk; en hulle het opgegaan na die land Nephi om die volk van Limhi te vernietig.
- 8 En nou het Limhi hulle ontdek van die toring af, naamlik al hulle voorbereidsels vir oorlog het hy ontdek; daarom het hy sy volk bymekaargemaak en hulle gelê en inwag in die landerye en in die woude.
- 9 En dit het gebeur dat toe die Lamaniete aangekom het, dat die volk van Limhi hulle begin aanval het van hul skuilplekke af, en hulle begin doodmaak het.
- 10 En dit het gebeur dat die stryd baie hewig begin word het, want hulle het geveg soos leeus om hul prooi.

Mosiah 20

Now there was a place in Shemlon where the daughters of the Lamanites did gather themselves together to sing, and to dance, and to make themselves merry.

And it came to pass that there was one day a small number of them gathered together to sing and to dance.

And now the priests of king Noah, being ashamed to return to the city of Nephi, yea, and also fearing that the people would slay them, therefore they durst not return to their wives and their children.

And having tarried in the wilderness, and having discovered the daughters of the Lamanites, they laid and watched them;

And when there were but few of them gathered together to dance, they came forth out of their secret places and took them and carried them into the wilderness; yea, twenty and four of the daughters of the Lamanites they carried into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that their daughters had been missing, they were angry with the people of Limhi, for they thought it was the people of Limhi.

Therefore they sent their armies forth; yea, even the king himself went before his people; and they went up to the land of Nephi to destroy the people of Limhi.

And now Limhi had discovered them from the tower, even all their preparations for war did he discover; therefore he gathered his people together, and laid wait for them in the fields and in the forests.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had come up, that the people of Limhi began to fall upon them from their waiting places, and began to slay them.

And it came to pass that the battle became exceedingly sore, for they fought like lions for their prey.

- 11 En dit het gebeur dat die volk van Limhi die Lamaniete voor hulle begin uitdryf het; tog was hulle nie die helfte so talryk soos die Lamaniete nie. Maar hulle het geveg om hul lewens, en vir hulle vroue, en vir hulle kinders; daarom het hulle hul ingespan en soos drake het hulle geveg.
- 12 En dit het gebeur dat hulle die koning van die Lamaniete gevind het onder die aantal dooies; tog was hy nie dood nie; hy was gewond en is op die grond agtergelaat, so vinnig het sy volk gevlug.
- 13 En hulle het hom geneem en sy wonde verbind, en hom gebring voor Limhi, en het gesê: Kyk, hier is die koning van die Lamaniete; hy, omdat hy 'n wond opgedoen het, het geval onder hulle dooies, en hulle het hom agtergelaat; en kyk, ons het hom gebring voor u; en nou laat ons hom doodmaak.
- 14 Maar Limhi het aan hulle gesê: Julle sal hom nie doodmaak nie, maar bring hom hierheen dat ek hom mag sien. En hulle het hom gebring. En Limhi het aan hom gesê: Watter rede het julle om op te trek om oorlog te maak teen my volk? Kyk, my volk het nie die eed verbreek wat ek met jou gemaak het nie; daarom, hoekom sal jy die eed verbreek wat jy gemaak het met my volk?
- 15 En nou het die koning gesê: Ek het die eed verbreek omdat jou volk die dogters van my volk ontvoer het; daarom, in my toorn het ek my volk in die stryd laat optrek teen jou volk.
- 16 En nou, Limhi het niks geweet aangaande hierdie saak nie; daarom het hy gesê: Ek sal onder my volk soek, en wie ook al hierdie ding gedoen het, sal omkom. Daarom het hy 'n soektog laat doen onder sy volk.
- 17 Nou, toe Gideon hierdie dinge gehoor het, het hy wat die koning se kaptein was, opgegaan en aan die koning gesê: Ek vra u, hou op en moenie hierdie volk deursoek nie, en moet hulle nie verwyf vir hierdie ding nie.
- 18 Want onthou u nie die priesters van u vader, vir wie hierdie volk gesoek het om te vernietig nie? En is hulle nie in die wildernis nie? En is hulle nie diegene wat die dogters gesteel het van die Lamaniete nie?

And it came to pass that the people of Limhi began to drive the Lamanites before them; yet they were not half so numerous as the Lamanites. But they fought for their lives, and for their wives, and for their children; therefore they exerted themselves and like dragons did they fight.

And it came to pass that they found the king of the Lamanites among the number of their dead; yet he was not dead, having been wounded and left upon the ground, so speedy was the flight of his people.

And they took him and bound up his wounds, and brought him before Limhi, and said: Behold, here is the king of the Lamanites; he having received a wound has fallen among their dead, and they have left him; and behold, we have brought him before you; and now let us slay him.

But Limhi said unto them: Ye shall not slay him, but bring him hither that I may see him. And they brought him. And Limhi said unto him: What cause have ye to come up to war against my people? Behold, my people have not broken the oath that I made unto you; therefore, why should ye break the oath which ye made unto my people?

And now the king said: I have broken the oath because thy people did carry away the daughters of my people; therefore, in my anger I did cause my people to come up to war against thy people.

And now Limhi had heard nothing concerning this matter; therefore he said: I will search among my people and whosoever has done this thing shall perish. Therefore he caused a search to be made among his people.

Now when Gideon had heard these things, he being the king's captain, he went forth and said unto the king: I pray thee forbear, and do not search this people, and lay not this thing to their charge.

For do ye not remember the priests of thy father, whom this people sought to destroy? And are they not in the wilderness? And are not they the ones who have stolen the daughters of the Lamanites?

19 En nou, kyk, en vertel die koning van hierdie dinge, sodat hy vir sy volk mag vertel sodat hulle gekalmeer kan word teenoor ons; want kyk, hulle berei hulle alreeds voor om teen ons op te kom; en sien ook, daar is maar weinig van ons.

20 En kyk, hulle kom met hulle talryke leërskaare; en tensy die koning hulle kalmeer teenoor ons, moet ons omkom.

21 Want is die woorde van Abinadi nie vervul, wat hy geprofeteer het teen ons nie—en dit alles omdat ons nie wou ag slaan op die woorde van die Here en wegdraai van ons ongeregthede nie?

22 En nou laat ons die koning kalmeer, en ons die eed nakom wat ons teenoor hom gemaak het; want dit is beter dat ons in slawerny is, as dat ons ons lewens verloor; daarom, laat ons 'n einde maak aan soveel bloedvergieting.

23 En nou het Limhi die koning al die dinge vertel aangaande sy vader, en die priesters wat die wildernis ingevlug het en die ontvoering van hulle dogters aan hulle gewyt.

24 En dit het gebeur dat die koning gekalmeer was teenoor sy volk; en hy het vir hulle gesê: Laat ons uitgaan om my volk te ontmoet, sonder wapens; en ek sweer vir julle met 'n eed dat my volk nie u volk sal doodmaak nie.

25 En dit het gebeur dat hulle die koning gevolg het, en uitgegaan het sonder wapens om die Lamaniete te ontmoet. En dit het gebeur dat hulle die Lamaniete ontmoet het; en die koning van die Lamaniete het homself voor hulle neergebuig en het gepleit ten behoeve van die volk van Limhi.

26 En toe die Lamaniete die volk van Limhi sien, dat hulle sonder wapens was, het hulle ontferming vir hulle gehad en is gekalmeer teenoor hulle, en het saam met hulle koning in vrede na hulle eie land teruggekeer.

And now, behold, and tell the king of these things, that he may tell his people that they may be pacified towards us; for behold they are already preparing to come against us; and behold also there are but few of us.

And behold, they come with their numerous hosts; and except the king doth pacify them towards us we must perish.

For are not the words of Abinadi fulfilled, which he prophesied against us—and all this because we would not hearken unto the words of the Lord, and turn from our iniquities?

And now let us pacify the king, and we fulfil the oath which we have made unto him; for it is better that we should be in bondage than that we should lose our lives; therefore, let us put a stop to the shedding of so much blood.

And now Limhi told the king all the things concerning his father, and the priests that had fled into the wilderness, and attributed the carrying away of their daughters to them.

And it came to pass that the king was pacified towards his people; and he said unto them: Let us go forth to meet my people, without arms; and I swear unto you with an oath that my people shall not slay thy people.

And it came to pass that they followed the king, and went forth without arms to meet the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did meet the Lamanites; and the king of the Lamanites did bow himself down before them, and did plead in behalf of the people of Limhi.

And when the Lamanites saw the people of Limhi, that they were without arms, they had compassion on them and were pacified towards them, and returned with their king in peace to their own land.

Mosia 21

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat Limhi en sy volk terugkeer het na die stad Nephi, en weer begin het om in vrede in die land te woon.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat na baie dae het die Lamaniete weer begin om opgestook te word tot toorn teen die Nefiete, en hulle het weer binne die grense van die land rondom begin kom.
- 3 Nou, hulle durf hulle nie dood nie, vanweë die eed wat hulle koning met Limhi gemaak het; maar hulle het hulle op hul wange geslaan, en gesag oor hulle uitgeoefen; en het begin om swaar laste te plaas op hulle rûe, en hulle aan te jaag soos hulle'n stomme e-sel sou—
- 4 Ja, dit alles is gedoen sodat die woord van die Here vervul mag word.
- 5 En nou die verdrukkinge van die Nefiete was groot, en daar was geen wyse waarop hulle hulself kon verlos uit hulle hande nie, want die Lamaniete het hulle omsingel aan elke kant.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat die volk begin murmureer het teenoor die koning vanweë hulle verdrukkinge; en hulle het begerig begin word om op te trek teen hulle in die stryd. En hulle het die koning baie gekwel met hulle klagtes; daarom het hy hulle laat handel volgens hulle begeertes.
- 7 En hulle het hulleself weer bymekaargemaak, en hulle wapenrusting aangetrek, en uitgegaan teen die Lamaniete om hulle uit hulle land te dryf.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete hulle oorwin het, en hulle teruggedryf het, en baie van hulle doodgemaak het.
- 9 En nou, daar was 'n groot rouklag en geweene onder die volk van Limhi, die weduwee het oor haar man gerou, die seun en die dogter het gerou oor hulle vader, en die broers oor hulle broeders.
- 10 Nou was daar 'n groot aantal weduwees in die land, en hulle het geweldig gekerm van dag tot dag, want 'n groot vrees vir die Lamaniete het oor hulle gekom.

Mosiah 21

And it came to pass that Limhi and his people returned to the city of Nephi, and began to dwell in the land again in peace.

And it came to pass that after many days the Lamanites began again to be stirred up in anger against the Nephites, and they began to come into the borders of the land round about.

Now they durst not slay them, because of the oath which their king had made unto Limhi; but they would smite them on their cheeks, and exercise authority over them; and began to put heavy burdens upon their backs, and drive them as they would a dumb ass—

Yea, all this was done that the word of the Lord might be fulfilled.

And now the afflictions of the Nephites were great, and there was no way that they could deliver themselves out of their hands, for the Lamanites had surrounded them on every side.

And it came to pass that the people began to murmur with the king because of their afflictions; and they began to be desirous to go against them to battle. And they did afflict the king sorely with their complaints; therefore he granted unto them that they should do according to their desires.

And they gathered themselves together again, and put on their armor, and went forth against the Lamanites to drive them out of their land.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did beat them, and drove them back, and slew many of them.

And now there was a great mourning and lamentation among the people of Limhi, the widow mourning for her husband, the son and the daughter mourning for their father, and the brothers for their brethren.

Now there were a great many widows in the land, and they did cry mightily from day to day, for a great fear of the Lamanites had come upon them.

- 11 En dit het gebeur dat hul voortdurende gekerm die res van die volk van Limhi opgestook het in toorn teen die Lamaniete; en hulle het weer opgetrek in die stryd, maar hulle is weer teruggedrywe, en het baie verliese gely.
- 12 Ja, hulle het weer opgetrek en wel 'n derde keer, en op dieselfde wyse gely; en diegene wat nie doodgemaak is nie, het weer teruggekeer na die stad Nephi.
- 13 En hulle het hulself verootmoedig tot in die stof, en hulle onderwerp aan die juk van slawerny, en hulleself toegelaat om geslaan te word, en om heen en weer gedryf te word, en belas te word, volgens die begeertes van hul vyande.
- 14 En hulle het hulself verootmoedig, en wel tot die dieptes van ootmoed; en hulle het kragtig geroep tot God; ja, en wel die hele dag lank het hulle geroep tot hulle God dat Hy hulle sou verlos uit hulle verdrukkinge.
- 15 En nou, die Here was traag om hulle geroep te hoor vanweë hulle ongeregtighede; nogtans het die Here hulle geroep gehoor, en het begin om die harte van die Lamaniete te versag, sodat hulle hul laste begin verlig het; tog het die Here dit nie goed geag om hulle te verlos uit slawerny nie.
- 16 En dit het gebeur dat hulle geleidelik voorspoediger geword het in die land, en begin het om graan meer oorvloedig te kweek, en kleinvee en grootvee, sodat hulle nie honger gely het nie.
- 17 Nou was daar 'n groot aantal vroue, meer as wat daar mans was; daarom het koning Limhi beveel dat elke man moes bydra tot die onderhoud van die weduwees en hul kinders, sodat hulle nie mag omkom van honger nie; en dit het hulle gedoen vanweë die grootte van hul aantal wat gedood is.
- 18 Nou, die volk van Limhi het bymekaargebly in 'n groep soveel as wat moontlik was, en hul graan en hul kuddes beveilig;
- 19 En die koning het homself nie buite die mure van die stad gewaag nie, tensy hy sy wagte saam met hom geneem het, omdat hy gevrees het dat hy op een of ander wyse in die hande mag val van die Lamaniete.

And it came to pass that their continual cries did stir up the remainder of the people of Limhi to anger against the Lamanites; and they went again to battle, but they were driven back again, suffering much loss.

Yea, they went again even the third time, and suffered in the like manner; and those that were not slain returned again to the city of Nephi.

And they did humble themselves even to the dust, subjecting themselves to the yoke of bondage, submitting themselves to be smitten, and to be driven to and fro, and burdened, according to the desires of their enemies.

And they did humble themselves even in the depths of humility; and they did cry mightily to God; yea, even all the day long did they cry unto their God that he would deliver them out of their afflictions.

And now the Lord was slow to hear their cry because of their iniquities; nevertheless the Lord did hear their cries, and began to soften the hearts of the Lamanites that they began to ease their burdens; yet the Lord did not see fit to deliver them out of bondage.

And it came to pass that they began to prosper by degrees in the land, and began to raise grain more abundantly, and flocks, and herds, that they did not suffer with hunger.

Now there was a great number of women, more than there was of men; therefore king Limhi commanded that every man should impart to the support of the widows and their children, that they might not perish with hunger; and this they did because of the greatness of their number that had been slain.

Now the people of Limhi kept together in a body as much as it was possible, and secured their grain and their flocks;

And the king himself did not trust his person without the walls of the city, unless he took his guards with him, fearing that he might by some means fall into the hands of the Lamanites.

20 En hy het sy volk die land rondom laat bewaak, sodat hulle op een of ander wyse daardie priesters mag vang wat die wildernis ingevlug het, wat die dogters gesteel het van die Lamaniete, en wat veroorsaak het dat so 'n groot verwoesting oor hulle gekom het.

21 Want hulle was begerig om hulle te vang sodat hulle hul mag straf; want hulle het in die land Nephi ingekom in die nag, en hulle graan weggevoer en baie van hulle kosbare dinge; daarom het hulle vir hul gelê en inwag.

22 En dit het gebeur dat daar nie meer oproerigheid tussen die Lamaniete en die volk van Limhi was nie, en wel tot die tyd dat Ammon en sy broers in die land ingekom het.

23 En toe die koning buite die poorte van die stad met sy wagte was, het hy Ammon en sy broers ontdek; en omdat hy gedink het dat hulle priesters van Noag was, daarom het hy hulle laat vang, en vasbind, en in die gevangenis werp. En as hulle die priesters van Noag was, sou hy hulle laat doodmaak het.

24 Maar toe hy vind dat hulle nie was nie, maar dat hulle sy broers was, en van die land Zarahemla gekom het, was hy vervul met uitermate groot vreugde.

25 Nou, koning Limhi het voor die koms van Ammon 'n klein aantal manne gestuur om te soek na die land Zarahemla; maar hulle kon dit nie vind nie, en hulle was verdwaal in die wildernis.

26 Nogtans, hulle het 'n land gevind wat bevolk was; ja, 'n land wat bedek was met droë beendere; ja, 'n land wat bevolk was en wat vernietig was; en hulle, omdat hulle veronderstel het dat dit die land Zarahemla was, het teruggekeer na die land Nephi, en het aangekom by die grense van die land, nie baie dae voor die koms van Ammon nie.

27 En hulle het 'n kroniek saamgebring met hulle, naamlik 'n kroniek van die volk wie se beendere hulle gevind het; en dit was gegraveer op plate van erts.

28 En nou, Limhi was weer vervul met blydschap toe hy uit die mond van Ammon leer dat koning Mosia 'n gawe van God gehad het, waardeur hy sulke grave-rings kon vertolk; ja, en Ammon het ook gejubel.

And he caused that his people should watch the land round about, that by some means they might take those priests that fled into the wilderness, who had stolen the daughters of the Lamanites, and that had caused such a great destruction to come upon them.

For they were desirous to take them that they might punish them; for they had come into the land of Nephi by night, and carried off their grain and many of their precious things; therefore they laid wait for them.

And it came to pass that there was no more disturbance between the Lamanites and the people of Limhi, even until the time that Ammon and his brethren came into the land.

And the king having been without the gates of the city with his guard, discovered Ammon and his brethren; and supposing them to be priests of Noah therefore he caused that they should be taken, and bound, and cast into prison. And had they been the priests of Noah he would have caused that they should be put to death.

But when he found that they were not, but that they were his brethren, and had come from the land of Zarahemla, he was filled with exceedingly great joy.

Now king Limhi had sent, previous to the coming of Ammon, a small number of men to search for the land of Zarahemla; but they could not find it, and they were lost in the wilderness.

Nevertheless, they did find a land which had been peopled; yea, a land which was covered with dry bones; yea, a land which had been peopled and which had been destroyed; and they, having supposed it to be the land of Zarahemla, returned to the land of Nephi, having arrived in the borders of the land not many days before the coming of Ammon.

And they brought a record with them, even a record of the people whose bones they had found; and it was engraven on plates of ore.

And now Limhi was again filled with joy on learning from the mouth of Ammon that king Mosiah had a gift from God, whereby he could interpret such engravings; yea, and Ammon also did rejoice.

29 Tog was Ammon en sy broers vervul met droefheid, omdat so baie van hulle broers doodgemaak was;

30 En ook dat koning Noag en sy priesters die mense soveel sondes en ongeregthede laat pleeg het teen God; en hulle het ook gerou oor die dood van Abinadi; en ook oor die vertrek van Alma en die mense wat saam met hom gegaan het, wat 'n kerk van God gevorm het deur die krag en mag van God, en geloof in die woorde wat deur Abinadi gespreek was.

31 Ja, hulle het gerou oor hulle vertrek, want hulle het nie geweet waarheen hulle gevlug het nie. Nou, hulle sou baie graag by hulle aangesluit het, want hulle het self met God 'n verbond gesluit om Hom te dien en sy gebooie te onderhou.

32 En nou sedert die koms van Ammon het koning Limhi ook 'n verbond met God gesluit, en ook baie van sy volk, om Hom te dien en sy gebooie te onderhou.

33 En dit het gebeur dat koning Limhi en baie van sy volk begerig was om gedoop te word; maar daar was niemand in die land wat die gesag van God gehad het nie. En Ammon het geweier om hierdie ding te doen, omdat hy homself 'n onwaardige dienskneg geag het.

34 Daarom het hulle nie op daardie tydstip hulself tot 'n kerk gevorm nie, maar gewag op die Gees van die Here. Nou, hulle was begerig om net soos Alma en sy broers te word, wat die wildernis ingevlug het.

35 Hulle was begerig om gedoop te word as 'n teken en 'n getuienis dat hulle gewillig was om God te dien met hulle hele harte; nogtans het hulle die tyd verleng; en 'n kroniek van hulle doop sal hierna gegee word.

36 En nou was die hele plan van Ammon en sy volk, en van koning Limhi en sy volk, om hulleself uit die hande van die Lamaniete en van slawerny te verlos.

Yet Ammon and his brethren were filled with sorrow because so many of their brethren had been slain;

And also that king Noah and his priests had caused the people to commit so many sins and iniquities against God; and they also did mourn for the death of Abinadi; and also for the departure of Alma and the people that went with him, who had formed a church of God through the strength and power of God, and faith on the words which had been spoken by Abinadi.

Yea, they did mourn for their departure, for they knew not whither they had fled. Now they would have gladly joined with them, for they themselves had entered into a covenant with God to serve him and keep his commandments.

And now since the coming of Ammon, king Limhi had also entered into a covenant with God, and also many of his people, to serve him and keep his commandments.

And it came to pass that king Limhi and many of his people were desirous to be baptized; but there was none in the land that had authority from God. And Ammon declined doing this thing, considering himself an unworthy servant.

Therefore they did not at that time form themselves into a church, waiting upon the Spirit of the Lord. Now they were desirous to become even as Alma and his brethren, who had fled into the wilderness.

They were desirous to be baptized as a witness and a testimony that they were willing to serve God with all their hearts; nevertheless they did prolong the time; and an account of their baptism shall be given hereafter.

And now all the study of Ammon and his people, and king Limhi and his people, was to deliver themselves out of the hands of the Lamanites and from bondage.

Mosia 22

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat Ammon en koning Limhi begin het om te beraadslaag met die volk hoe hulle hulself moes verlos uit slawerny; en wel het hulle die hele volk laat bymekaarkom; en dit het hulle gedoen sodat hulle die stem van die volk sou hê aangaande die saak.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat hulle geen wyse kon vind om hulself te verlos uit slawerny nie, behalwe om hul vroue en kinders te neem, en hul kleinvee, en hul grootvee, en hul tente, en die wildernis in te trek; want die Lamaniete was so talryk dat dit onmoontlik was vir die volk van Limhi om teen hulle te veg, toe hulle daaraan dink om hulself uit slawerny te verlos deur die swaard.
- 3 Nou het dit gebeur dat Gideon na vore getree en voor die koning gaan staan en aan hom gesê het: Nou o koning, u het tot dusver baie keer ag geslaan op my woorde, toe ons teen ons broers, die Lamaniete geveg het.
- 4 En nou, o koning, as u my nie gevind het om 'n onverdienslike dienskneg te wees nie, of as u tot dusver geluister het na my woorde tot enige mate, en hulle vir u van waarde was, net so wil ek hê dat u hierdie keer na my woorde moet luister, en ek sal u dienskneg wees en hierdie volk verlos uit slawerny.
- 5 En die koning het hom vergun dat hy mag spreek. En Gideon het aan hom gesê:
- 6 Kyk, die agterste deurgang, deur die agterste muur, aan die agterkant van die stad. Die Lamaniete, of die wagte van die Lamaniete, is snags dronk; daarom, laat ons 'n aankondiging uitstuur onder hierdie hele volk dat hulle hul kleinvee en grootvee bymekaar maak, sodat hulle hul die wildernis kan injaag in die nag.
- 7 En ek sal volgens u bevel gaan en die laaste belasting van wyn aan die Lamaniete betaal, en hulle sal dronk wees; en ons sal deur die geheime deurgang aan die linkerkant van hulle kamp deurgaen wanneer hulle dronk is en slaap.
- 8 So sal ons vertrek met ons vroue en ons kinders, ons kleinvee, en ons grootvee, die wildernis in; en ons sal om die land Silom reis.

Mosiah 22

And now it came to pass that Ammon and king Limhi began to consult with the people how they should deliver themselves out of bondage; and even they did cause that all the people should gather themselves together; and this they did that they might have the voice of the people concerning the matter.

And it came to pass that they could find no way to deliver themselves out of bondage, except it were to take their women and children, and their flocks, and their herds, and their tents, and depart into the wilderness; for the Lamanites being so numerous, it was impossible for the people of Limhi to contend with them, thinking to deliver themselves out of bondage by the sword.

Now it came to pass that Gideon went forth and stood before the king, and said unto him: Now O king, thou hast hitherto hearkened unto my words many times when we have been contending with our brethren, the Lamanites.

And now O king, if thou hast not found me to be an unprofitable servant, or if thou hast hitherto listened to my words in any degree, and they have been of service to thee, even so I desire that thou wouldst listen to my words at this time, and I will be thy servant and deliver this people out of bondage.

And the king granted unto him that he might speak. And Gideon said unto him:

Behold the back pass, through the back wall, on the back side of the city. The Lamanites, or the guards of the Lamanites, by night are drunken; therefore let us send a proclamation among all this people that they gather together their flocks and herds, that they may drive them into the wilderness by night.

And I will go according to thy command and pay the last tribute of wine to the Lamanites, and they will be drunken; and we will pass through the secret pass on the left of their camp when they are drunken and asleep.

Thus we will depart with our women and our children, our flocks, and our herds into the wilderness; and we will travel around the land of Shilom.

- 9 En dit het gebeur dat die koning ag geslaan het op die woorde van Gídeon.
- 10 En koning Limhi het sy volk hulle kuddes laat bymekaarmaak; en hy het die belasting van wyn gestuur aan die Lamaniete en hy het ook meer wyn gestuur, as 'n geskenk aan hulle; en hulle het vryelik gedrink van die wyn wat koning Limhi aan hulle gestuur het.
- 11 En dit het gebeur dat die volk van koning Limhi in die nag die wildernis ingetrek het met hul kleinvee en hul grootvee, en hulle het om die land Silom die wildernis ingetrek, en hulle koers gedraai na die land Zarahemla, en hulle is deur Ammon en sy broers gelei.
- 12 En hulle het al hul goud en silwer, en hul kosbare dinge, wat hulle kon dra, en ook hul voorraad met hulle saamgeneem, die wildernis in; en hulle het hul reis voortgesit.
- 13 En nadat hulle baie dae in die wildernis was, het hulle aangekom in die land Zarahemla, en by Mosia se volk aangesluit, en sy onderdane geword.
- 14 En dit het gebeur dat Mosia hulle ontvang het met vreugde; en hy het ook hulle kronieke ontvang, en ook die kronieke wat gevind was deur die volk van Limhi.
- 15 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe die Lamaniete agterkom dat die volk van Limhi vertrek het uit die land gedurende die nag, dat hulle 'n leër die wildernis ingestuur het om hulle te agtervolg;
- 16 En nadat hulle hul twee dae agtervolg het, kon hulle nie langer hulle spore volg nie; daarom was hulle verdwaal in die wildernis.

And it came to pass that the king hearkened unto the words of Gideon.

And king Limhi caused that his people should gather their flocks together; and he sent the tribute of wine to the Lamanites; and he also sent more wine, as a present unto them; and they did drink freely of the wine which king Limhi did send unto them.

And it came to pass that the people of king Limhi did depart by night into the wilderness with their flocks and their herds, and they went round about the land of Shilom in the wilderness, and bent their course towards the land of Zarahemla, being led by Ammon and his brethren.

And they had taken all their gold, and silver, and their precious things, which they could carry, and also their provisions with them, into the wilderness; and they pursued their journey.

And after being many days in the wilderness they arrived in the land of Zarahemla, and joined Mosiah's people, and became his subjects.

And it came to pass that Mosiah received them with joy; and he also received their records, and also the records which had been found by the people of Limhi.

And now it came to pass when the Lamanites had found that the people of Limhi had departed out of the land by night, that they sent an army into the wilderness to pursue them;

And after they had pursued them two days, they could no longer follow their tracks; therefore they were lost in the wilderness.

'n Kroniek van Alma en die volk van die Here, wat die wildernis ingedryf is deur die volk van Koning Noag.

Mosia 23

- 1 Nou Alma, omdat hy gewaarsku is deur die Here dat die leërs van koning Noag op hulle sou afkom, en omdat hy dit bekend gemaak het aan sy volk, daarom het hulle hul kuddes bymekaargemaak, en van hulle graan geneem, en die wildernis in getrek voor die leërs van koning Noag uit.
- 2 En die Here het hulle versterk, sodat die volk van koning Noag hulle nie kon inhaal om hulle te vernietig nie.
- 3 En hulle het agt dae se reis die wildernis ingevlug.
- 4 En hulle het by 'n land gekom, en wel 'n baie mooi en aangename land, 'n land van suiwer water.
- 5 En hulle het hul tente opgeslaan, en begin om die grond te bewerk, en begin om geboue te bou; ja, hulle was vlytig, en het uitermate gearbei.
- 6 En die volk was begerig dat Alma hulle koning moes wees, want hy was bemin deur sy volk.
- 7 Maar hy het aan hulle gesê: Kyk, dit is nie raadsaam dat ons 'n koning moet hê nie; want so sê die Here: Julle sal nie een vlees hoër ag as 'n ander nie, of een man sal homself nie hoër ag as 'n ander nie; daarom sê ek aan julle dit is nie raadsaam dat julle 'n koning moet hê nie.
- 8 Nogtans, as dit moontlik was dat julle altyd regverdige manne kon hê as julle konings, sou dit goed vir julle wees om 'n koning te hê.
- 9 Maar onthou die ongeregtigheid van koning Noag en sy priesters; en ekself is in 'n lokval gevang, en het baie dinge gedoen wat gruwelik was in die oë van die Here, wat my ernstige bekering veroorsaak het;
- 10 Nogtans, na baie verdrukking het die Here my geroep gehoor, en het my gebede beantwoord, en het my 'n werktuig gemaak in sy hande om so baie van julle te bring tot 'n kennis van sy waarheid.
- 11 Nogtans, hierin roem ek nie, want ek is onwaardig om te roem oor myself.

An account of Alma and the people of the Lord, who were driven into the wilderness by the people of King Noah.

Mosiah 23

Now Alma, having been warned of the Lord that the armies of king Noah would come upon them, and having made it known to his people, therefore they gathered together their flocks, and took of their grain, and departed into the wilderness before the armies of king Noah.

And the Lord did strengthen them, that the people of king Noah could not overtake them to destroy them.

And they fled eight days' journey into the wilderness.

And they came to a land, yea, even a very beautiful and pleasant land, a land of pure water.

And they pitched their tents, and began to till the ground, and began to build buildings; yea, they were industrious, and did labor exceedingly.

And the people were desirous that Alma should be their king, for he was beloved by his people.

But he said unto them: Behold, it is not expedient that we should have a king; for thus saith the Lord: Ye shall not esteem one flesh above another, or one man shall not think himself above another; therefore I say unto you it is not expedient that ye should have a king.

Nevertheless, if it were possible that ye could always have just men to be your kings it would be well for you to have a king.

But remember the iniquity of king Noah and his priests; and I myself was caught in a snare, and did many things which were abominable in the sight of the Lord, which caused me sore repentance;

Nevertheless, after much tribulation, the Lord did hear my cries, and did answer my prayers, and has made me an instrument in his hands in bringing so many of you to a knowledge of his truth.

Nevertheless, in this I do not glory, for I am unworthy to glory of myself.

12 En nou sê ek aan julle, julle was verdruk deur koning Noag, en was in slawerny tot hom en sy priesters, en is gebring tot ongeregtigheid deur hulle; daarom was julle gebind deur die bande van ongeregtigheid.

13 En nou omdat julle verlos is deur die krag van God uit hierdie bande; ja, naamlik uit die hande van koning Noag en sy volk, en ook van die bande van ongeregtigheid, net so begeer ek dat julle sal vasstaan in hierdie vryheid waarmee julle vrygemaak is, en dat julle geen man vertrou om 'n koning oor julle te wees nie.

14 En ook, vertrou geeneen om julle leraar nóg julle dienaar te wees, tensy hy 'n man van God is, wat in sy weë wandel en sy gebooie onderhou.

15 So het Alma sy volk geleer, dat elke man sy naaste moes liefhê soos homself, sodat daar geen onenigheid moes wees onder hulle nie.

16 En nou, Alma was hulle hoëpriester, omdat hy die stigter van hulle kerk was.

17 En dit het gebeur dat niemand gesag ontvang het om te preek of te leer nie, behalwe deur hom van God. Daarom het hy al hulle priesters geordineer en al hulle leraars; en niemand is geordineer nie, tensy hulle regverdige manne was.

18 Daarom het hulle gewaak oor hul volk, en hulle gevoed met dinge wat betrekking het op regverdigheid.

19 En dit het gebeur dat hulle begin het om uitermate voorspoedig in die land te word; en hulle het die land Helam genoem.

20 En dit het gebeur dat hulle vermenigvuldig het en uitermate voorspoedig was in die land Helam; en hulle het 'n stad gebou, wat hulle die stad Helam genoem het.

21 Nogtans, die Here ag dit goed om sy volk te kasty; ja, Hy beproef hulle geduld en hulle geloof.

22 Nogtans—wie ook al sy vertrou in Hom stel, sal verhef word op die laaste dag. Ja, en so was dit met hierdie volk.

23 Want kyk, ek sal aan julle toon dat hulle gebring is tot slawerny, en niemand kon hulle verlos nie behalwe die Here hulle God, ja, naamlik die God van Abraham en Isak en van Jakob.

And now I say unto you, ye have been oppressed by king Noah, and have been in bondage to him and his priests, and have been brought into iniquity by them; therefore ye were bound with the bands of iniquity.

And now as ye have been delivered by the power of God out of these bonds; yea, even out of the hands of king Noah and his people, and also from the bonds of iniquity, even so I desire that ye should stand fast in this liberty wherewith ye have been made free, and that ye trust no man to be a king over you.

And also trust no one to be your teacher nor your minister, except he be a man of God, walking in his ways and keeping his commandments.

Thus did Alma teach his people, that every man should love his neighbor as himself, that there should be no contention among them.

And now, Alma was their high priest, he being the founder of their church.

And it came to pass that none received authority to preach or to teach except it were by him from God. Therefore he consecrated all their priests and all their teachers; and none were consecrated except they were just men.

Therefore they did watch over their people, and did nourish them with things pertaining to righteousness.

And it came to pass that they began to prosper exceedingly in the land; and they called the land Helam.

And it came to pass that they did multiply and prosper exceedingly in the land of Helam; and they built a city, which they called the city of Helam.

Nevertheless the Lord seeth fit to chasten his people; yea, he trieth their patience and their faith.

Nevertheless—whosoever putteth his trust in him the same shall be lifted up at the last day. Yea, and thus it was with this people.

For behold, I will show unto you that they were brought into bondage, and none could deliver them but the Lord their God, yea, even the God of Abraham and Isaac and of Jacob.

24 En dit het gebeur dat Hy hulle verlos het, en Hy het sy magtige krag getoon aan hulle, en groot was hulle jubelings.

25 Want kyk, dit het gebeur dat terwyl hulle in die land Helam was, ja, in die stad Helam, terwyl hulle die landerye rondom bewerk het, kyk, 'n leër van die Lamaniete was binne die grense van die land.

26 Nou, dit het gebeur dat die broers van Alma gevlug het van hulle landerye, en hulleself bymekaar-gemaak het in die stad Helam; en hulle was baie bang vanweë die verskyning van die Lamaniete.

27 Maar Alma het uitgegaan en onder hulle gaan staan, en hulle vermaan dat hulle nie bang moes wees nie, maar dat hulle die Here hulle God moes onthou en Hy sou hulle verlos.

28 Daarom het hulle hul vrese gestil, en begin om te roep tot die Here dat Hy die harte van die Lamaniete sou versag, sodat hulle hul sou spaar, en hulle vroue, en hul kinders.

29 En dit het gebeur dat die Here die harte versag het van die Lamaniete. En Alma en sy broers het uitgegaan en hulself oorgegee in hul hande; en die Lamaniete het besit geneem van die land Helam.

30 Nou, die leërs van die Lamaniete, wat die volk van koning Limhi agternagesit het, was verdwaal in die wildernis vir baie dae lank.

31 En kyk, hulle het daardie priesters van koning Noag gevind in 'n plek wat hulle Amulon genoem het; en hulle het begin om die land Amulon te besit en het begin om die grond te bewerk.

32 Nou, die naam van die leier van daardie priesters was Amulon.

33 En dit het gebeur dat Amulon by die Lamaniete gepleit het; en hy het ook hulle vroue uitgestuur, wat die dogters van die Lamaniete was, om te pleit by hulle broers, dat hulle nie hul mans moes vernietig nie.

34 En die Lamaniete het medelye gehad met Amulon en sy broers, en het hulle nie vernietig nie, vanweë hulle vroue.

And it came to pass that he did deliver them, and he did show forth his mighty power unto them, and great were their rejoicings.

For behold, it came to pass that while they were in the land of Helam, yea, in the city of Helam, while tilling the land round about, behold an army of the Lamanites was in the borders of the land.

Now it came to pass that the brethren of Alma fled from their fields, and gathered themselves together in the city of Helam; and they were much frightened because of the appearance of the Lamanites.

But Alma went forth and stood among them, and exhorted them that they should not be frightened, but that they should remember the Lord their God and he would deliver them.

Therefore they hushed their fears, and began to cry unto the Lord that he would soften the hearts of the Lamanites, that they would spare them, and their wives, and their children.

And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the hearts of the Lamanites. And Alma and his brethren went forth and delivered themselves up into their hands; and the Lamanites took possession of the land of Helam.

Now the armies of the Lamanites, which had followed after the people of king Limhi, had been lost in the wilderness for many days.

And behold, they had found those priests of king Noah, in a place which they called Amulon; and they had begun to possess the land of Amulon and had begun to till the ground.

Now the name of the leader of those priests was Amulon.

And it came to pass that Amulon did plead with the Lamanites; and he also sent forth their wives, who were the daughters of the Lamanites, to plead with their brethren, that they should not destroy their husbands.

And the Lamanites had compassion on Amulon and his brethren, and did not destroy them, because of their wives.

35 En Amulon en sy broers het by die Lamaniete aangesluit, en hulle het gereis in die wildernis op soek na die land Nepi toe hulle die land Helam ontdek het, wat besit is deur Alma en sy broers.

36 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete aan Alma en sy broers belowe het, dat as hulle hul die weg sou wys wat lei na die land Nepi, hulle aan hulle hul lewens en hul vryheid sou gun.

37 Maar nadat Alma hulle die weg gewys het wat gelei het na die land Nepi, wou die Lamaniete nie hul belofte nakom nie; maar hulle het wagte opgestel rondom die land Helam, oor Alma en sy broers.

38 En die res van hulle het gegaan na die land Nepi; en 'n gedeelte van hulle het teruggekeer na die land Helam, en het ook saam met hulle die vroue en die kinders van die wagte gebring wat in die land agtergelaat is.

39 En die koning van die Lamaniete het aan Amulon gegun om 'n koning en 'n heerser te wees oor sy volk, wat in die land Helam was; nogtans sou hy geen mag hê om enigiets strydig te doen met die wil van die koning van die Lamaniete nie.

And Amulon and his brethren did join the Lamanites, and they were traveling in the wilderness in search of the land of Nephi when they discovered the land of Helam, which was possessed by Alma and his brethren.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites promised unto Alma and his brethren, that if they would show them the way which led to the land of Nephi that they would grant unto them their lives and their liberty.

But after Alma had shown them the way that led to the land of Nephi the Lamanites would not keep their promise; but they set guards round about the land of Helam, over Alma and his brethren.

And the remainder of them went to the land of Nephi; and a part of them returned to the land of Helam, and also brought with them the wives and the children of the guards who had been left in the land.

And the king of the Lamanites had granted unto Amulon that he should be a king and a ruler over his people, who were in the land of Helam; nevertheless he should have no power to do anything contrary to the will of the king of the Lamanites.

Mosia 24

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat Amulon guns gevind het in die oë van die koning van die Lamaniete; daarom, die koning van die Lamaniete het aan hom en sy broers gegun dat hulle aangestel mag word as leraars oor sy volk, ja, en wel oor die volk wat in die land Semlon was, en in die land Silom, en in die land Amulon.
- 2 Want die Lamaniete het besit geneem van al hierdie lande; daarom, die koning van die Lamaniete het konings aangestel oor al hierdie lande.
- 3 En nou, die naam van die koning van die Lamaniete was Laman, en hy is na sy vader genoem; en daarom is hy koning Laman genoem. En hy was koning oor 'n talryke volk.
- 4 En hy het onderwysers aangestel uit die broers van Amulon in elke land wat besit is deur sy volk; en so is begin om die taal van Nephi te onderrig onder al die volke van die Lamaniete.
- 5 En hulle was 'n volk wat vriendelik was teenoor mekaar; nogtans het hulle God nie geken nie; nóg het die broers van Amulon hulle niks aangaande die Here hulle God geleer, nóg die wet van Moses; nóg het hulle hul die woorde van Abinadi geleer;
- 6 Maar hulle het hulle geleer dat hulle hul kronieke moes byhou, en dat hulle aan mekaar mag skryf.
- 7 En so het die Lamaniete begin om toe te neem in rykdom, en begin om handel te dryf met mekaar en magtig te word, en begin om 'n geslepe en wyse volk te word, wat die wysheid van die wêreld aanbetref, ja, 'n baie geslepe volk, wat behae geskep het in allerlei booshede en plunder, behalwe onder hulle eie mense.
- 8 En nou het dit gebeur dat Amulon begin gesag uitoefen het oor Alma en sy broers, en begin het om hom te vervolg, en sy kinders hulle kinders laat vervolg het.
- 9 Want Amulon het vir Alma geken, dat hy een van die koning se priesters was, en dat dit hy was wat die woorde van Abinadi geglo het en uitgedryf is voor die koning, en daarom was hy toornig op hom; want hy was onderdanig aan koning Laman, tog het hy gesag uitgeoefen oor hulle, en het take aan hulle opgedra en het opsigtters oor hulle geplaas.

Mosiah 24

And it came to pass that Amulon did gain favor in the eyes of the king of the Lamanites; therefore, the king of the Lamanites granted unto him and his brethren that they should be appointed teachers over his people, yea, even over the people who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the land of Shilom, and in the land of Amulon.

For the Lamanites had taken possession of all these lands; therefore, the king of the Lamanites had appointed kings over all these lands.

And now the name of the king of the Lamanites was Laman, being called after the name of his father; and therefore he was called king Laman. And he was king over a numerous people.

And he appointed teachers of the brethren of Amulon in every land which was possessed by his people; and thus the language of Nephi began to be taught among all the people of the Lamanites.

And they were a people friendly one with another; nevertheless they knew not God; neither did the brethren of Amulon teach them anything concerning the Lord their God, neither the law of Moses; nor did they teach them the words of Abinadi;

But they taught them that they should keep their record, and that they might write one to another.

And thus the Lamanites began to increase in riches, and began to trade one with another and wax great, and began to be a cunning and a wise people, as to the wisdom of the world, yea, a very cunning people, delighting in all manner of wickedness and plunder, except it were among their own brethren.

And now it came to pass that Amulon began to exercise authority over Alma and his brethren, and began to persecute him, and cause that his children should persecute their children.

For Amulon knew Alma, that he had been one of the king's priests, and that it was he that believed the words of Abinadi and was driven out before the king, and therefore he was wroth with him; for he was subject to king Laman, yet he exercised authority over them, and put tasks upon them, and put taskmasters over them.

10 En dit het gebeur dat hulle verdrukkinge so groot was dat hulle kragtig begin roep het tot God.

11 En Amulon het hulle beveel dat hulle hul geroep moes staak; en hy het wagte oor hulle gestel om hulle dop te hou, sodat wie ook al gevind sou word wat God aanroep, gedood moes word.

12 En Alma en sy volk het hulle stemme nie verhef tot die Here hulle God nie, maar het hulle harte voor Hom uitgestort; en Hy het die gedagtes van hulle harte geken.

13 En dit het gebeur dat die stem van die Here tot hulle gekom het in hulle verdrukkinge, en gesê het: Rig julle hoofde op en hou moed, want Ek weet van die verbond wat julle met My gesluit het; en Ek sal 'n verbond sluit met my volk en hulle verlos uit slawerny.

14 En Ek sal ook die laste verlig wat op julle skouers geplaas word, en wel dat julle hulle nie op julle rûe kan voel nie, selfs terwyl julle in slawerny is; en dit sal Ek doen sodat julle hierna mag staan as getuies vir My, en sodat julle vir seker mag weet dat Ek, die Here God, tog my volk besoek in hulle verdrukkinge.

15 En nou het dit gebeur dat die laste wat op Alma en sy broers gelê was, lig gemaak is; ja, die Here het hulle versterk dat hulle hul laste met gemak kon dra, en hulle het blymoedig en met geduld hulle onderwerp aan die ganse wil van die Here.

16 En dit het gebeur dat hulle geloof en hul geduld so groot was dat die stem van die Here weer tot hulle gekom het, en gesê het: Hou moed, want môre sal Ek julle verlos uit slawerny.

17 En Hy het aan Alma gesê: Jy sal uitgaan voor hierdie volk, en Ek sal met jou gaan en hierdie volk verlos uit slawerny.

18 Nou het dit gebeur dat Alma en sy volk hulle kuddes in die nag bymekaargemaak het, en ook van hulle graan; ja, en selfs heelnag deur het hulle hul kuddes bymekaargemaak.

19 En in die môre het die Here 'n diepe slaap oor die Lamaniete laat kom, ja, en al hulle opsigters was in 'n diepe slaap.

And it came to pass that so great were their afflictions that they began to cry mightily to God.

And Amulon commanded them that they should stop their cries; and he put guards over them to watch them, that whosoever should be found calling upon God should be put to death.

And Alma and his people did not raise their voices to the Lord their God, but did pour out their hearts to him; and he did know the thoughts of their hearts.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came to them in their afflictions, saying: Lift up your heads and be of good comfort, for I know of the covenant which ye have made unto me; and I will covenant with my people and deliver them out of bondage.

And I will also ease the burdens which are put upon your shoulders, that even you cannot feel them upon your backs, even while you are in bondage; and this will I do that ye may stand as witnesses for me hereafter, and that ye may know of a surety that I, the Lord God, do visit my people in their afflictions.

And now it came to pass that the burdens which were laid upon Alma and his brethren were made light; yea, the Lord did strengthen them that they could bear up their burdens with ease, and they did submit cheerfully and with patience to all the will of the Lord.

And it came to pass that so great was their faith and their patience that the voice of the Lord came unto them again, saying: Be of good comfort, for on the morrow I will deliver you out of bondage.

And he said unto Alma: Thou shalt go before this people, and I will go with thee and deliver this people out of bondage.

Now it came to pass that Alma and his people in the night-time gathered their flocks together, and also of their grain; yea, even all the night-time were they gathering their flocks together.

And in the morning the Lord caused a deep sleep to come upon the Lamanites, yea, and all their taskmasters were in a profound sleep.

20 En Alma en sy volk het die wildernis in vertrek; en nadat hulle heeldag gereis het, het hulle hul tente opgeslaan in 'n vallei, en hulle het die vallei Alma genoem, omdat hy hulle gelei het op hul weg in die wildernis.

21 Ja, en in die vallei van Alma het hulle hul dank uitgestort teenoor God omdat Hy barmhartig was teenoor hulle, en hul laste verlig het, en hulle verlos het uit slawerny; want hulle was in slawerny, en niemand kon hulle verlos nie tensy dit die Here hulle God was.

22 En hulle het God gedank, ja, al hulle mans en al hulle vroue en al hulle kinders wat kon praat, het hul stemme verhef tot lof van hulle God.

23 En nou het die Here aan Alma gesê: Maak gou en gaan jy en die volk uit hierdie land uit, want die Lamaniete het ontwaak en agtervolg julle; gaan daarom uit die land uit, en Ek sal die Lamaniete in hierdie vallei stop sodat hulle nie verder kom in die agtervolging van hierdie volk nie.

24 En dit het gebeur dat hulle vertrek het uit die vallei, en hulle reis geneem het die wildernis in.

25 En nadat hulle vir twaalf dae in die wildernis was, het hulle aangekom in die land Zarahemla; en koning Mosia het hulle ook ontvang met blydschap.

And Alma and his people departed into the wilderness; and when they had traveled all day they pitched their tents in a valley, and they called the valley Alma, because he led their way in the wilderness.

Yea, and in the valley of Alma they poured out their thanks to God because he had been merciful unto them, and eased their burdens, and had delivered them out of bondage; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it were the Lord their God.

And they gave thanks to God, yea, all their men and all their women and all their children that could speak lifted their voices in the praises of their God.

And now the Lord said unto Alma: Haste thee and get thou and this people out of this land, for the Lamanites have awakened and do pursue thee; therefore get thee out of this land, and I will stop the Lamanites in this valley that they come no further in pursuit of this people.

And it came to pass that they departed out of the valley, and took their journey into the wilderness.

And after they had been in the wilderness twelve days they arrived in the land of Zarahemla; and king Mosiah did also receive them with joy.

Mosia 25

- 1 En nou het koning Mosia die hele volk bymekaar laat kom.
- 2 Nou, daar was nie soveel van die kinders van Nephi, of soveel van diegene wat afstammeling van Nephi was nie, as wat daar was van die volk Zarahemla, wat 'n afstammeling was van Mulek, en diegene wat saam met hom die wildernis ingekom het.
- 3 En daar was nie soveel van die volk van Nephi en van die volk van Zarahemla as wat daar was van die Lamaniete nie; ja, hulle was nie die helfte so talryk nie.
- 4 En nou was die hele volk van Nephi byeen versamel, en ook die hele volk van Zarahemla, en hulle was versamel in twee groepe bymekaar.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat Mosia gelees het, en laat lees het; die kronieke van Zenif aan sy volk; ja, hy het die kronieke gelees van die volk van Zenif, vanaf die tyd toe hulle die land Zarahemla verlaat het, totdat hulle weer teruggekeer het.
- 6 En hy het ook die kroniek van Alma en sy broers gelees, en al hulle verdrukkinge, vanaf die tyd dat hulle die land Zarahemla verlaat het tot die tyd dat hulle weer teruggekeer het.
- 7 En nou, toe Mosia 'n einde daaraan gemaak het om die kronieke te lees, was sy volk wat in die land agtergebly het, oorstelp van verwondering en verbasing.
- 8 Want hulle het nie geweet wat om te dink nie; want toe hulle diegene sien wat verlos is uit slawerny, is hulle vervul met uitnemende groot blydskap.
- 9 En verder, toe hulle gedink het aan hulle broers wat doodgemaak was deur die Lamaniete, was hulle vervul met droefheid, en het ook baie tranes van droefheid gestort.
- 10 En verder, toe hulle gedink het aan die onmiddellike goedheid van God, en sy krag om Alma en sy broers te verlos uit die hande van die Lamaniete en uit slawerny, het hulle hul stemme verhef en God gedank.
- 11 En verder, toe hulle aan die Lamaniete gedink het, wat hulle broers was, aan hulle sondige en besoedelde toestand, is hulle vervul met pyn en angs oor die welsyn van hulle siele.

Mosiah 25

And now king Mosiah caused that all the people should be gathered together.

Now there were not so many of the children of Nephi, or so many of those who were descendants of Nephi, as there were of the people of Zarahemla, who was a descendant of Mulek, and those who came with him into the wilderness.

And there were not so many of the people of Nephi and of the people of Zarahemla as there were of the Lamanites; yea, they were not half so numerous.

And now all the people of Nephi were assembled together, and also all the people of Zarahemla, and they were gathered together in two bodies.

And it came to pass that Mosiah did read, and caused to be read, the records of Zeniff to his people; yea, he read the records of the people of Zeniff, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until they returned again.

And he also read the account of Alma and his brethren, and all their afflictions, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until the time they returned again.

And now, when Mosiah had made an end of reading the records, his people who tarried in the land were struck with wonder and amazement.

For they knew not what to think; for when they beheld those that had been delivered out of bondage they were filled with exceedingly great joy.

And again, when they thought of their brethren who had been slain by the Lamanites they were filled with sorrow, and even shed many tears of sorrow.

And again, when they thought of the immediate goodness of God, and his power in delivering Alma and his brethren out of the hands of the Lamanites and of bondage, they did raise their voices and give thanks to God.

And again, when they thought upon the Lamanites, who were their brethren, of their sinful and polluted state, they were filled with pain and anguish for the welfare of their souls.

- 12 En dit het gebeur dat diegene wat die kinders van Amulon en sy broers was, wat vroue geneem het van die dogters van die Lamaniete, ontevrede was oor die gedrag van hulle vaders, en hulle wou nie langer genoem word by die name van hul vaders nie, daarom het hulle op hulself die naam van Nefi geneem dat hulle die kinders van Nefi genoem mag word en gereken word onder diegene wat Nefiete genoem is.
- 13 En nou, die hele volk van Zarahemla is gereken onder die Nefiete, en dit omdat die koninkryk aan niemand oorgedra was nie, behalwe aan diegene wat afstammeling van Nefi was.
- 14 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe Mosia 'n einde gemaak het om te spreek met en te lees vir die volk, het hy begeer dat Alma ook met die volk moes spreek.
- 15 En Alma het met hulle gespreek, toe hulle in groot groepe vergader was, en hy het van een groep na 'n ander gegaan, en aan die volk bekering en geloof in die Here verkondig.
- 16 En hy het die volk van Limhi en sy broers vermaan, al diegene wat verlos was uit slawerny, dat hulle moes onthou dat dit die Here was wat hulle verlos het.
- 17 En dit het gebeur dat nadat Alma die volk baie dinge geleer het, en 'n einde gemaak het om met hulle te spreek, dat koning Limhi begerig was dat hy gedoop mag word; en sy hele volk was begerig dat hulle ook gedoop mag word.
- 18 Daarom, Alma het in die water ingegaan en hulle gedoop; ja, hy het hulle gedoop volgens die wyse waarop hy sy broers in die waters van Mormon gedoop het; ja, en soveel as wat hy gedoop het, het behoort aan die kerk van God; en dit vanweë hul geloof in die woorde van Alma.
- 19 En dit het gebeur dat koning Mosia aan Alma gegun het dat hy kerke mag oprig dwarsdeur die land Zarahemla; en hy het hom mag gegee om priesters en leraars te ordineer oor elke kerk.
- 20 Nou, dit is gedoen omdat daar soveel mense was dat hulle nie almal deur een leraar beheer kon word nie; nóg kon hulle almal die woord van God hoor op een byeenkoms;

And it came to pass that those who were the children of Amulon and his brethren, who had taken to wife the daughters of the Lamanites, were displeased with the conduct of their fathers, and they would no longer be called by the names of their fathers, therefore they took upon themselves the name of Nephi, that they might be called the children of Nephi and be numbered among those who were called Nephites.

And now all the people of Zarahemla were numbered with the Nephites, and this because the kingdom had been conferred upon none but those who were descendants of Nephi.

And now it came to pass that when Mosiah had made an end of speaking and reading to the people, he desired that Alma should also speak to the people.

And Alma did speak unto them, when they were assembled together in large bodies, and he went from one body to another, preaching unto the people repentance and faith on the Lord.

And he did exhort the people of Limhi and his brethren, all those that had been delivered out of bondage, that they should remember that it was the Lord that did deliver them.

And it came to pass that after Alma had taught the people many things, and had made an end of speaking to them, that king Limhi was desirous that he might be baptized; and all his people were desirous that they might be baptized also.

Therefore, Alma did go forth into the water and did baptize them; yea, he did baptize them after the manner he did his brethren in the waters of Mormon; yea, and as many as he did baptize did belong to the church of God; and this because of their belief on the words of Alma.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted unto Alma that he might establish churches throughout all the land of Zarahemla; and gave him power to ordain priests and teachers over every church.

Now this was done because there were so many people that they could not all be governed by one teacher; neither could they all hear the word of God in one assembly;

21 Daaron het hulle hulself in verskillende groepe vergader, wat kerke genoem is; elke kerk het sy priesters en sy leraars gehad, en elke priester verkondig die woord soos dit aan hom oorgelewer is by monde van Alma.

22 En so, nieteenstaande daar baie kerke was, was hulle almal een kerk, ja, en wel die kerk van God; want daar is niks in al die kerke verkondig, tensy dit bekering en geloof in God was nie.

23 En nou, daar was sewe kerke in die land Zarahemla. En dit het gebeur dat wie ook al begerig was om die naam van Christus op hulle te neem, of van God, het by die kerke van God aangesluit.

24 En hulle is genoem die volk van God. En die Here het sy Gees uitgestort oor hulle en hulle was geseënd, en hulle was voorspoedig in die land.

Therefore they did assemble themselves together in different bodies, being called churches; every church having their priests and their teachers, and every priest preaching the word according as it was delivered to him by the mouth of Alma.

And thus, notwithstanding there being many churches they were all one church, yea, even the church of God; for there was nothing preached in all the churches except it were repentance and faith in God.

And now there were seven churches in the land of Zarahemla. And it came to pass that whosoever were desirous to take upon them the name of Christ, or of God, they did join the churches of God;

And they were called the people of God. And the Lord did pour out his Spirit upon them, and they were blessed, and prospered in the land.

Mosia 26

- 1 Nou, dit het gebeur dat daar baie van die opkomende geslag was wat nie die woorde van koning Benjamin kon verstaan nie, omdat hulle klein kindertjies was toe hy destyds met sy volk gespreek het; en hulle het nie die oorleweringe van hul vaders geglo nie.
- 2 Hulle het nie geglo wat gesê was aangaande die opstanding van die dode nie, nóg het hulle geglo aangaande die koms van Christus.
- 3 En nou vanweë hulle ongeloof, kon hulle nie die woord van God verstaan nie; en hulle harte was verhard.
- 4 En hulle wou nie gedoop word nie; nóg wou hulle by die kerk aansluit. En hulle was 'n aparte volk betreffende hul geloof, en het so gebly vir ewig daarna, naamlik in hul vleeslike en sondige toestand; want hulle wou nie die Here hulle God aanroep nie.
- 5 En nou gedurende die heerskappy van Mosia was hulle nie die helfte so talryk as die volk van God nie; maar vanweë die twiste onder die broers het hulle talryker geword.
- 6 Want dit het gebeur dat hulle baie bedrieg het met hul vleiende woorde, wat in die kerk was, en veroorsaak het dat hulle baie sondes begaan het; daarom het dit noodsaaklik geword dat diegene wat sonde begaan het, wat in die kerk was, vermaan moes word deur die kerk.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat hulle voor die priesters gebring is, en aan die priesters deur die leraars oorgelewer is; en die priesters het hulle voor Alma gebring, wat die hoëpriester was.
- 8 Nou, Koning Mosia het aan Alma die gesag gegee oor die kerk.
- 9 En dit het gebeur dat Alma nie geweet het aangaande hulle nie; maar daar was baie getuies teen hulle; ja, die volk het gestaan en oorvloediglik getuig van hulle ongeregtheid.
- 10 Nou, daar het nie so iets voorheen plaasgevind in die kerk nie; daarom was Alma ontsteld in sy gees en hy het hulle voor die koning laat bring.

Mosiah 26

Now it came to pass that there were many of the rising generation that could not understand the words of king Benjamin, being little children at the time he spake unto his people; and they did not believe the tradition of their fathers.

They did not believe what had been said concerning the resurrection of the dead, neither did they believe concerning the coming of Christ.

And now because of their unbelief they could not understand the word of God; and their hearts were hardened.

And they would not be baptized; neither would they join the church. And they were a separate people as to their faith, and remained so ever after, even in their carnal and sinful state; for they would not call upon the Lord their God.

And now in the reign of Mosiah they were not half so numerous as the people of God; but because of the dissensions among the brethren they became more numerous.

For it came to pass that they did deceive many with their flattering words, who were in the church, and did cause them to commit many sins; therefore it became expedient that those who committed sin, that were in the church, should be admonished by the church.

And it came to pass that they were brought before the priests, and delivered up unto the priests by the teachers; and the priests brought them before Alma, who was the high priest.

Now king Mosiah had given Alma the authority over the church.

And it came to pass that Alma did not know concerning them; but there were many witnesses against them; yea, the people stood and testified of their iniquity in abundance.

Now there had not any such thing happened before in the church; therefore Alma was troubled in his spirit, and he caused that they should be brought before the king.

- 11 En hy het aan die koning gesê: Kyk, hier is baie wat ons voor u gebring het, wat deur hul broers beskuldig word; ja, en hulle is betrap in verskillende ongeregtighede. En hulle bekeer nie van hul ongeregtighede nie; daarom het ons hulle voor u gebring, dat u hulle mag oordeel volgens hulle misdade.
- 12 Maar koning Mosia het aan Alma gesê: Kyk, ek oordeel hulle nie; daarom lewer ek hulle oor in jou hande om geoordeel te word.
- 13 En nou was die gees van Alma weer ontsteld; en hy het gegaan en vir die Here gevra wat hy moes doen aangaande hierdie saak, want hy het gevrees dat hy verkeerd sou doen in die oë van God.
- 14 En dit het gebeur dat nadat hy sy hele siel uitgestort het voor God, het die stem van die Here tot hom gekom, en gesê:
- 15 Geseënd is jy, Alma, en geseënd is hulle wat gedoop is in die waters van Mormon. Jy is geseënd vanweë jou uitnemende geloof slegs in die woorde van my dienskneg Abinadi.
- 16 En geseënd is hulle vanweë hulle uitnemende geloof in die woorde bloot wat jy met hulle gespreek het.
- 17 En geseënd is jy omdat jy 'n kerk gestig het onder hierdie volk; en hulle sal gevestig word en hulle sal my volk wees.
- 18 Ja, geseënd is hierdie volk wat gewillig is om my Naam te dra; want volgens my Naam sal hulle genoem word; en hulle is Myne.
- 19 En omdat jy van My gevra het aangaande die oortreder, is jy geseënd.
- 20 Jy is my dienskneg; en Ek sluit 'n verbond met jou dat jy die ewige lewe sal hê; en jy sal My dien en uitgaan in my Naam en sal my skape bymekaarmaak.
- 21 En hy wat my stem sal hoor, sal my skaap wees; en hom sal jy ontvang in die kerk, en hom sal Ek ook ontvang.
- 22 Want kyk, dit is my kerk; wie ook al gedoop word, sal gedoop word tot bekering. En wie ook al julle ontvang, sal glo in my Naam; en hom sal Ek vryelik vergewe.

And he said unto the king: Behold, here are many whom we have brought before thee, who are accused of their brethren; yea, and they have been taken in divers iniquities. And they do not repent of their iniquities; therefore we have brought them before thee, that thou mayest judge them according to their crimes.

But king Mosiah said unto Alma: Behold, I judge them not; therefore I deliver them into thy hands to be judged.

And now the spirit of Alma was again troubled; and he went and inquired of the Lord what he should do concerning this matter, for he feared that he should do wrong in the sight of God.

And it came to pass that after he had poured out his whole soul to God, the voice of the Lord came to him, saying:

Blessed art thou, Alma, and blessed are they who were baptized in the waters of Mormon. Thou art blessed because of thy exceeding faith in the words alone of my servant Abinadi.

And blessed are they because of their exceeding faith in the words alone which thou hast spoken unto them.

And blessed art thou because thou hast established a church among this people; and they shall be established, and they shall be my people.

Yea, blessed is this people who are willing to bear my name; for in my name shall they be called; and they are mine.

And because thou hast inquired of me concerning the transgressor, thou art blessed.

Thou art my servant; and I covenant with thee that thou shalt have eternal life; and thou shalt serve me and go forth in my name, and shalt gather together my sheep.

And he that will hear my voice shall be my sheep; and him shall ye receive into the church, and him will I also receive.

For behold, this is my church; whosoever is baptized shall be baptized unto repentance. And whomsoever ye receive shall believe in my name; and him will I freely forgive.

23 Want dit is Ek wat die sondes van die wêreld op My neem; want dit is Ek wat hulle geskape het; en dit is Ek wat aan hom wat glo tot die einde toe, 'n plek aan my regterhand gee.

24 Want kyk, in my Naam is hulle geroep; en as hulle My ken, sal hulle uitkom, en sal 'n plek vir ewig hê aan my regterhand.

25 En dit sal gebeur dat wanneer die tweede trompet sal blaas, dan sal hulle wat My nooit geken het nie, uitkom en sal voor My staan.

26 En dan sal hulle weet dat Ek die Here hulle God is, dat Ek hulle Verlosser is; maar hulle wou nie verlos word nie.

27 En dan sal Ek aan hulle verklaar dat Ek hulle nooit geken het nie; en hulle sal weggaan in die ewigdurende vuur wat berei is vir die duiwel en sy engele.

28 Daarom sê Ek aan jou, dat hy wat nie my stem wil hoor nie, vir hom moet julle nie ontvang in my kerk nie, want vir hom sal Ek nie ontvang op die laaste dag nie.

29 Daarom sê Ek aan jou, Gaan; en wie ook al oortree teen My, hom sal julle oordeel volgens die sondes wat hy gepleeg het; en as hy sy sondes bely voor jou en voor My, en hom bekeer in die opregtheid van sy hart, hom sal julle vergewe, en Ek sal hom ook vergewe.

30 Ja, en so dikwels as wat my volk bekeer, sal Ek hulle hul oortredings teen My vergewe.

31 En julle sal ook mekaar julle oortredings vergewe; want voorwaar Ek sê vir jou, hy wat nie sy naaste se oortredings vergewe wanneer hy sê dat hy bekeer nie, hy het homself onder veroordeling gebring.

32 Nou sê Ek aan jou: Gaan; en wie ook al nie van sy oortredings sal bekeer nie, sal nie onder my volk gereken word nie; en dit sal voortaan onderhou word vanaf hierdie tyd.

33 En dit het gebeur toe Alma hierdie woorde gehoor het, het hy hulle neergeskryf sodat hy hulle mag hê, en sodat hy die volk mag oordeel van daardie kerk volgens die gebooie van God.

34 En dit het gebeur dat Alma gegaan en diegene geoordeel het wat in ongeregtheid betrap is, volgens die woord van die Here.

For it is I that taketh upon me the sins of the world; for it is I that hath created them; and it is I that granteth unto him that believeth unto the end a place at my right hand.

For behold, in my name are they called; and if they know me they shall come forth, and shall have a place eternally at my right hand.

And it shall come to pass that when the second trump shall sound then shall they that never knew me come forth and shall stand before me.

And then shall they know that I am the Lord their God, that I am their Redeemer; but they would not be redeemed.

And then I will confess unto them that I never knew them; and they shall depart into everlasting fire prepared for the devil and his angels.

Therefore I say unto you, that he that will not hear my voice, the same shall ye not receive into my church, for him I will not receive at the last day.

Therefore I say unto you, Go; and whosoever transgresseth against me, him shall ye judge according to the sins which he has committed; and if he confess his sins before thee and me, and repenteth in the sincerity of his heart, him shall ye forgive, and I will forgive him also.

Yea, and as often as my people repent will I forgive them their trespasses against me.

And ye shall also forgive one another your trespasses; for verily I say unto you, he that forgiveth not his neighbor's trespasses when he says that he repents, the same hath brought himself under condemnation.

Now I say unto you, Go; and whosoever will not repent of his sins the same shall not be numbered among my people; and this shall be observed from this time forward.

And it came to pass when Alma had heard these words he wrote them down that he might have them, and that he might judge the people of that church according to the commandments of God.

And it came to pass that Alma went and judged those that had been taken in iniquity, according to the word of the Lord.

35 En wie ook al bekeer het van hulle sondes en hulle bely het, hulle het hy gereken onder die volk van die kerk;

36 En diegene wat nie hulle sonde wou bely, en bekeer van hulle ongeregtigheid nie, is nie gereken onder die volk van die kerk nie, en hulle name is uitgewis.

37 En dit het gebeur dat Alma al die sake van die kerk bestuur het; en hulle het weer begin om vrede te hê en om uitermate voorspoedig te wees in die sake van die kerk, en hulle het versigtig gewandel voor God, en het baie ontvang en baie gedoop.

38 En nou het Alma en sy mede-arbeiders al hierdie dinge gedoen wat oor die kerk was, en hulle het ywerig gewandel, en het die woord van God in alle dinge onderrig, en het allerlei verdrukkinge gely, en is vervolgd deur al diegene wat nie behoort het aan die kerk van God nie.

39 En hulle het hul broers vermaan; en hulle is ook vermaan, elkeen deur die woord van God, volgens sy sondes, of vir die sondes wat hy gepleeg het, en hulle is gebied deur God om te bid sonder ophou, en om dank te betuig in alle dinge.

And whosoever repented of their sins and did confess them, them he did number among the people of the church;

And those that would not confess their sins and repent of their iniquity, the same were not numbered among the people of the church, and their names were blotted out.

And it came to pass that Alma did regulate all the affairs of the church; and they began again to have peace and to prosper exceedingly in the affairs of the church, walking circumspectly before God, receiving many, and baptizing many.

And now all these things did Alma and his fellow laborers do who were over the church, walking in all diligence, teaching the word of God in all things, suffering all manner of afflictions, being persecuted by all those who did not belong to the church of God.

And they did admonish their brethren; and they were also admonished, every one by the word of God, according to his sins, or to the sins which he had committed, being commanded of God to pray without ceasing, and to give thanks in all things.

Mosia 27

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat die vervolginge wat die kerk opgelê is deur die ongelowiges, so groot geword het dat die kerk begin het om te murmureer, en kla by hulle leiers aangaande die saak; en hulle het by Alma gekla. En Alma het die saak gelê voor hulle koning, Mosia. En Mosia het oorleg gepleeg met sy priesters.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat koning Mosia 'n aankondiging uitgestuur het deur die omliggende land, dat geen ongelowige enige van diegene moes vervolg wat behoort het aan die kerk van God nie.
- 3 En daar was 'n streng bevel dwarsdeur al die kerke dat daar geen vervolginge moes wees onder hulle nie, dat daar 'n gelykheid moes wees onder alle mense.
- 4 Dat hulle geen hoogmoed of trots hul vrede moes laat versteur nie; dat elke mens sy naaste moes ag soos homself, en arbei met hul eie hande vir hul onderhoud.
- 5 Ja, en al hulle priesters en leraars moes arbei met hul eie hande vir hul onderhoud, in alle gevalle behalwe as daar siekte was, of in veel gebrek; en deur hierdie dinge te doen, was hulle oorvloedig in die genade van God.
- 6 En daar het weer veel vrede in die land begin kom; en die volk het baie talryk begin word, en het begin om ver en wyd op die aangesig van die aarde te versprei, ja, na die noorde en na die suide, na die ooste en na die weste, en hulle het groot stede en dorpie gebou in alle gebiede van die land.
- 7 En die Here het hulle besoek en hulle voorspoedig gemaak, en hulle het 'n groot en ryk volk geword.
- 8 Nou, die seuns van Mosia is gereken onder die ongelowiges; en ook een van die seuns van Alma is gereken onder hulle, hy is Alma genoem na sy vader; nogtans, hy het 'n baie goddelose man en 'n afgodedienaar geword. En hy was 'n man van baie woorde, en het baie vleitaal met die volk gespreek; daarom het hy baie van die mense gelei om te doen volgens die wyse van sy ongeregthede.

Mosiah 27

And now it came to pass that the persecutions which were inflicted on the church by the unbelievers became so great that the church began to murmur, and complain to their leaders concerning the matter; and they did complain to Alma. And Alma laid the case before their king, Mosiah. And Mosiah consulted with his priests.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah sent a proclamation throughout the land round about that there should not any unbeliever persecute any of those who belonged to the church of God.

And there was a strict command throughout all the churches that there should be no persecutions among them, that there should be an equality among all men;

That they should let no pride nor haughtiness disturb their peace; that every man should esteem his neighbor as himself, laboring with their own hands for their support.

Yea, and all their priests and teachers should labor with their own hands for their support, in all cases save it were in sickness, or in much want; and doing these things, they did abound in the grace of God.

And there began to be much peace again in the land; and the people began to be very numerous, and began to scatter abroad upon the face of the earth, yea, on the north and on the south, on the east and on the west, building large cities and villages in all quarters of the land.

And the Lord did visit them and prosper them, and they became a large and wealthy people.

Now the sons of Mosiah were numbered among the unbelievers; and also one of the sons of Alma was numbered among them, he being called Alma, after his father; nevertheless, he became a very wicked and an idolatrous man. And he was a man of many words, and did speak much flattery to the people; therefore he led many of the people to do after the manner of his iniquities.

9 En hy het 'n groot hindernis geword in die weg van die voorspoed van die kerk van God; en hy het die harte van die volk weggesteel; en hy het baie one-nigheid veroorsaak onder die volk; en so 'n kans gegee aan die vyand van God om sy mag oor hulle uit te oefen.

10 En nou het dit gebeur dat terwyl hy rondgegaan het om die kerk van God te vernietig, want hy het rondgegaan in die geheim met die seuns van Mosia om te soek om die kerk te vernietig, en om die volk van die Here op 'n dwaalweg te bring, teenstrydig met die gebooie van God, of selfs die koning—

11 En soos ek aan julle gesê het, terwyl hulle rondgegaan het en rebelleer teen God, kyk, die engel van die Here het aan hulle verskyn; en hy het neergedaal soos in 'n wolk; en hy het gespreek asof met 'n stem van die donder, wat die aarde laat skud het waarop hulle gestaan het;

12 En so groot was hulle verbasing, dat hulle neergeval het op die aarde, en nie die woorde verstaan het wat hy met hulle gespreek het nie.

13 Nogtans het hy weer geroep, en gesê: Alma, staan op en kom na vore, want waarom vervolg jy die kerk van God? Want die Here het gesê: Dit is my kerk, en Ek sal dit vestig; en niks sal dit omvergooi nie, behalwe die oortreding van my volk.

14 En verder, die engel het gesê: Kyk, die Here het die gebede van sy volk gehoor, en ook die gebede van sy dienskneg, Alma, wat jou vader is; want hy het gebid met baie geloof aangaande jou dat jy tot die kennis van die waarheid gebring mag word; daarom, vir hierdie doel het ek gekom om jou te oortuig van die krag en gesag van God, dat die gebede van sy diensknegte verhoor mag word volgens hulle geloof.

15 En nou kyk, kan jy die krag van God betwis? Want kyk, skud my stem nie die aarde nie? En kan jy my nie ook voor jou sien nie? En ek is gestuur van God.

And he became a great hinderment to the prosperity of the church of God; stealing away the hearts of the people; causing much dissension among the people; giving a chance for the enemy of God to exercise his power over them.

And now it came to pass that while he was going about to destroy the church of God, for he did go about secretly with the sons of Mosiah seeking to destroy the church, and to lead astray the people of the Lord, contrary to the commandments of God, or even the king—

And as I said unto you, as they were going about rebelling against God, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto them; and he descended as it were in a cloud; and he spake as it were with a voice of thunder, which caused the earth to shake upon which they stood;

And so great was their astonishment, that they fell to the earth, and understood not the words which he spake unto them.

Nevertheless he cried again, saying: Alma, arise and stand forth, for why persecutest thou the church of God? For the Lord hath said: This is my church, and I will establish it; and nothing shall overthrow it, save it is the transgression of my people.

And again, the angel said: Behold, the Lord hath heard the prayers of his people, and also the prayers of his servant, Alma, who is thy father; for he has prayed with much faith concerning thee that thou mightest be brought to the knowledge of the truth; therefore, for this purpose have I come to convince thee of the power and authority of God, that the prayers of his servants might be answered according to their faith.

And now behold, can ye dispute the power of God? For behold, doth not my voice shake the earth? And can ye not also behold me before you? And I am sent from God.

- 16 Nou sê ek aan jou: Gaan, en onthou die slawerny van jou vaders in die land Helam, en in die land Nephi; en onthou watter groot dinge Hy gedoen het vir hulle; want hulle was in slawerny, en Hy het hulle verlos. En nou sê ek aan jou, Alma, gaan heen, en soek nie meer om die kerk te vernietig nie, sodat hulle gebede verhoor mag word, en dit alhoewel jy jouself wil laat uitwerp.
- 17 En nou het dit gebeur dat hierdie die laaste woorde was wat die engel met Alma gespreek het, en hy het weggegaan.
- 18 En nou het Alma en diegene wat by hom was, weer neergeval op die aarde, want groot was hul verbasing; want met hul eie oë het hulle 'n engel van die Here gesien, en sy stem was soos die donder, wat die aarde geskud het; en hulle het geweet dat daar niks behalwe die krag van God was wat die aarde kon skud en dit laat bewe asof dit uitmekaar sou skeur nie.
- 19 En nou was die verbasing van Alma so groot dat hy stom geword het, sodat hy nie sy mond kon oopmaak nie; ja, en hy het swak geword, sodat hy nie eens sy hande kon beweeg nie; daarom is hy deur diegene wat by hom was geneem, en hulpeloos gedra, en wel totdat hy neergelê is voor sy vader.
- 20 En hulle het aan sy vader alles oorvertel wat met hulle gebeur het; en sy vader was verheug, want hy het geweet dat dit die krag van God was.
- 21 En hy het 'n skare bymekaar laat kom sodat hulle mag getuig wat die Here vir sy seun gedoen het, en ook vir diegene wat by hom was.
- 22 En hy het die priesters byeen laat kom; en hulle het begin om te vas, en om te bid tot die Here hulle God, dat Hy die mond van Alma moes oopmaak, dat hy mag spreek, en ook dat sy ledemate hul krag mag ontvang—dat die oë van die volk geopen mag word om te sien en weet van die goedheid en heerlikheid van God.
- 23 En dit het gebeur nadat hulle gevas en gebid het vir 'n tydperk van twee dae en twee nagte, het die ledemate van Alma hulle krag ontvang, en hy het opgestaan en met hulle begin spreek, en hulle versoek om goeie moed te hou.

Now I say unto thee: Go, and remember the captivity of thy fathers in the land of Helam, and in the land of Nephi; and remember how great things he has done for them; for they were in bondage, and he has delivered them. And now I say unto thee, Alma, go thy way, and seek to destroy the church no more, that their prayers may be answered, and this even if thou wilt of thyself be cast off.

And now it came to pass that these were the last words which the angel spake unto Alma, and he departed.

And now Alma and those that were with him fell again to the earth, for great was their astonishment; for with their own eyes they had beheld an angel of the Lord; and his voice was as thunder, which shook the earth; and they knew that there was nothing save the power of God that could shake the earth and cause it to tremble as though it would part asunder.

And now the astonishment of Alma was so great that he became dumb, that he could not open his mouth; yea, and he became weak, even that he could not move his hands; therefore he was taken by those that were with him, and carried helpless, even until he was laid before his father.

And they rehearsed unto his father all that had happened unto them; and his father rejoiced, for he knew that it was the power of God.

And he caused that a multitude should be gathered together that they might witness what the Lord had done for his son, and also for those that were with him.

And he caused that the priests should assemble themselves together; and they began to fast, and to pray to the Lord their God that he would open the mouth of Alma, that he might speak, and also that his limbs might receive their strength—that the eyes of the people might be opened to see and know of the goodness and glory of God.

And it came to pass after they had fasted and prayed for the space of two days and two nights, the limbs of Alma received their strength, and he stood up and began to speak unto them, bidding them to be of good comfort:

24 Want, het hy gesê, ek het bekeer van my sondes, en is verlos deur die Here; kyk ek is gebore uit die Gees.

25 En die Here het aan my gesê: Verwonder jou nie dat die hele mensdom, ja, mans en vroue, alle nasies, stamme, tale en volke, weer gebore moet word nie; ja, gebore uit God, verander van hul vleeslike en vervalle toestand, tot 'n toestand van regverdigheid, omdat hulle verlos is deur God, en sy seuns en dogters geword het;

26 En so word hulle nuwe skepsele; en tensy hulle dit doen, kan hulle geensins die koninkryk van God beërwe nie.

27 Ek sê vir julle, tensy dit die geval is, moet hulle verwerp word; en dit weet ek, want ek is byna verwerp.

28 Nogtans, nadat ek baie beproewinge deurworstel het, en tot die dood toe bekeer het, het die Here in barmhartigheid dit goed geag om my te ruk uit 'n ewigdurende verbranding, en is ek gebore uit God.

29 My siel is verlos uit die gal van bitterheid en bande van ongeregtigheid. Ek was in die donkerste afgrond; maar nou aanskou ek die wonderlike lig van God. My siel is gemartel deur ewige foltering; maar ek is uitgeruk, en my siel word nie meer gepynig nie.

30 Ek het my Verlosser verwerp, en dít ontken waarvan deur ons vaders gespreek is; maar noudat hulle mag vooruitsien dat Hy sal kom, en dat Hy elke skepsel van sy skepping in herinnering hou, sal Hy Homself openbaar aan almal.

31 Ja, elke knie sal buig, en elke tong bely voor Hom. Ja, en wel op die laaste dag, wanneer alle mense sal staan om geoordeel te word deur Hom, dan sal hulle bely dat Hy God is; dan sal hulle bely, wat sonder God in die wêreld lewe, dat die oordeel van 'n ewigdurende straf regverdig is oor hulle; en hulle sal sidder, en bewe, en krimp onder die blik van sy alsierende oog.

For, said he, I have repented of my sins, and have been redeemed of the Lord; behold I am born of the Spirit.

And the Lord said unto me: Marvel not that all mankind, yea, men and women, all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, must be born again; yea, born of God, changed from their carnal and fallen state, to a state of righteousness, being redeemed of God, becoming his sons and daughters;

And thus they become new creatures; and unless they do this, they can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

I say unto you, unless this be the case, they must be cast off; and this I know, because I was like to be cast off.

Nevertheless, after wading through much tribulation, repenting nigh unto death, the Lord in mercy hath seen fit to snatch me out of an everlasting burning, and I am born of God.

My soul hath been redeemed from the gall of bitterness and bonds of iniquity. I was in the darkest abyss; but now I behold the marvelous light of God. My soul was racked with eternal torment; but I am snatched, and my soul is pained no more.

I rejected my Redeemer, and denied that which had been spoken of by our fathers; but now that they may foresee that he will come, and that he remembereth every creature of his creating, he will make himself manifest unto all.

Yea, every knee shall bow, and every tongue confess before him. Yea, even at the last day, when all men shall stand to be judged of him, then shall they confess that he is God; then shall they confess, who live without God in the world, that the judgment of an everlasting punishment is just upon them; and they shall quake, and tremble, and shrink beneath the glance of his all-searching eye.

32 En nou het dit gebeur dat Alma begin het om van af hierdie tyd die volk te leer, en diegene wat by Alma was gedurende die tyd toe die engel aan hulle verskyn het, het rondgereis dwarsdeur die hele land, en aan al die mense die dinge verkondig wat hulle gehoor en gesien het, en die woord van God gepredik onder veel beproewinge, en hulle is grootliks vervolgd deur diegene wat ongelowiges was, en is deur baie van hulle geslaan.

33 Maar nieteenstaande dit alles, het hulle baie vertroosting aan die kerk meegedeel, en hulle geloof versterk, en hulle vermaan met lankmoedigheid en baie arbeid om die gebooi van God te onderhou.

34 En vier van hulle was die seuns van Mosia; en hulle name was Ammon, en Aäron, en Omner, en Himni; dit was die name van die seuns van Mosia.

35 En hulle het deur die hele land Zarahemla gereis, en onder al die volke wat onder die heerskappy van koning Mosia was, terwyl hulle ywerig probeer het om al die skade te herstel wat hulle die kerk aangedoen het, en al hulle sondes bely, en al die dinge verkondig wat hulle gesien het, en die profesieë en die skrifte verduidelik aan almal wat begerig was om hulle te hoor.

36 En sodoende was hulle werktuie in die hande van God om baie tot die kennis van die waarheid te bring, ja, tot die kennis van hulle Verlosser.

37 En hoe geseënd is hulle! Want hulle het vrede verkondig; hulle het blye tydings van die goeie verkondig; en hulle het aan die volk verklaar dat die Here heers.

And now it came to pass that Alma began from this time forward to teach the people, and those who were with Alma at the time the angel appeared unto them, traveling round about through all the land, publishing to all the people the things which they had heard and seen, and preaching the word of God in much tribulation, being greatly persecuted by those who were unbelievers, being smitten by many of them.

But notwithstanding all this, they did impart much consolation to the church, confirming their faith, and exhorting them with long-suffering and much travail to keep the commandments of God.

And four of them were the sons of Mosiah; and their names were Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni; these were the names of the sons of Mosiah.

And they traveled throughout all the land of Zarahemla, and among all the people who were under the reign of king Mosiah, zealously striving to repair all the injuries which they had done to the church, confessing all their sins, and publishing all the things which they had seen, and explaining the prophecies and the scriptures to all who desired to hear them.

And thus they were instruments in the hands of God in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth, yea, to the knowledge of their Redeemer.

And how blessed are they! For they did publish peace; they did publish good tidings of good; and they did declare unto the people that the Lord reigneth.

Mosia 28

- 1 Nou het dit gebeur dat nadat die seuns van Mosia al hierdie dinge gedoen het, het hulle 'n klein aantal saam met hulle geneem en het teruggekeer na hulle vader, die koning, en hom versoek dat hy hulle sal gun om op te gaan met diegene wat hulle uitgesoek het, na die land Nefi sodat hulle die dinge wat hulle gehoor het mag preek, en dat hulle die woord van God mag meedeel aan hulle broers die Lamaniete—
- 2 Sodat hulle hul miskien mag bring tot die kennis van die Here hulle God, en hulle oortuig van die ongeregtigheid van hul vaders; en dat hulle hul miskien mag genees van hul haat teenoor die Nefiete, dat hulle ook daartoe gebring mag word om hul te verheug in die Here hulle God, dat hulle vriendelik mag word met mekaar, en dat daar geen twiste meer sou wees in die hele land wat die Here hulle God hul gegee het nie.
- 3 Nou was hulle begerig dat heil bekend gemaak moet word aan elke skepsel, want hulle kon nie verdra dat enige menslike siel moet vergaan nie; ja, selfs die intense gedagtes dat enige siel eindelose pyniging moes verduur, het hulle laat sidder en beef.
- 4 En so het die Gees van die Here ingewerk op hulle, want hulle was die mees goddelose sondaars. En die Here het dit goed geag in sy eindelose barmhartigheid om hulle te spaar; nogtans het hulle baie ang van siel gely vanweë hulle ongeregtighede, en hulle het baie gely en gevrees dat hulle vir ewig uitgewerp sou word.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat hulle baie dae lank by hulle vader gepleit het dat hulle na die land Nefi mag opgaan.
- 6 En koning Mosia het gegaan en vir die Here gevra of hy sy seuns moes laat opgaan onder die Lamaniete om die woord te preek.
- 7 En die Here het aan Mosia gesê: Laat hulle opgaan, want baie sal glo in hulle woorde, en hulle sal die ewige lewe hê; en Ek sal jou seuns verlos uit die hande van die Lamaniete.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat Mosia toegelaat het dat hulle mag gaan en doen volgens hulle versoek.

Mosiah 28

Now it came to pass that after the sons of Mosiah had done all these things, they took a small number with them and returned to their father, the king, and desired of him that he would grant unto them that they might, with these whom they had selected, go up to the land of Nephi that they might preach the things which they had heard, and that they might impart the word of God to their brethren, the Lamanites—

That perhaps they might bring them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and convince them of the iniquity of their fathers; and that perhaps they might cure them of their hatred towards the Nephites, that they might also be brought to rejoice in the Lord their God, that they might become friendly to one another, and that there should be no more contentions in all the land which the Lord their God had given them.

Now they were desirous that salvation should be declared to every creature, for they could not bear that any human soul should perish; yea, even the very thoughts that any soul should endure endless torment did cause them to quake and tremble.

And thus did the Spirit of the Lord work upon them, for they were the very vilest of sinners. And the Lord saw fit in his infinite mercy to spare them; nevertheless they suffered much anguish of soul because of their iniquities, suffering much and fearing that they should be cast off forever.

And it came to pass that they did plead with their father many days that they might go up to the land of Nephi.

And king Mosiah went and inquired of the Lord if he should let his sons go up among the Lamanites to preach the word.

And the Lord said unto Mosiah: Let them go up, for many shall believe on their words, and they shall have eternal life; and I will deliver thy sons out of the hands of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Mosiah granted that they might go and do according to their request.

- 9 En hulle het hul reis die wildernis in geneem om op te gaan om die woord te preek onder die Lamaniete; en ek sal 'n kroniek van hulle handeling hierna gee.
- 10 Nou, koning Mosia het niemand gehad aan wie hy die koninkryk kon oordra nie, want daar was nie een van sy seuns wat die koninkryk wou aanvaar nie.
- 11 Daarom het hy die kronieke wat gegraveer was op die plate van brons geneem, en ook die plate van Nefi, en al die dinge wat hy behou en bewaar het volgens die gebooe van God, nadat hy die kronieke vertaal het en die kronieke laat skryf het wat op plate van goud was, wat gevind was deur die volk van Limhi, wat aan hom oorhandig is deur die hand van Limhi;
- 12 En dit het hy gedoen vanweë die groot bekommernis van sy volk; want hulle was bomate begerig om te weet aangaande daardie volk wat vernietig was.
- 13 En nou het hy hulle vertaal deur middel van daardie twee stene wat geheg is in die twee kante van 'n boog.
- 14 Nou hierdie dinge is voorberei van die begin af, en is oorhandig van geslag tot geslag, met die doel om tale te vertolk;
- 15 En hulle is behou en bewaar deur die hand van die Here, sodat Hy aan elke skepsel wat die land sou besit, die ongeregthede en gruwels van sy volk mag bekend maak;
- 16 En wie ook al hierdie dinge het, word siener genoem, volgens die gebruik van die ou tyd.
- 17 Nou, nadat Mosia die kronieke klaar vertaal het, kyk, dit het 'n kroniek gegee van die volk wat vernietig was, van die tyd dat hulle vernietig was, terug tot die bou van die groot toring, in die tyd toe die Here die taal van die volke verwar het, en hulle ver en wyd verstrooi is oor die aangesig van die hele aarde, ja, en wel van daardie tyd af terug tot by die skepping van Adam.
- 18 Nou, hierdie kroniek het veroorsaak dat die volk van Mosia uitermate getreur het, ja, hulle is vervul met droefheid; nogtans het dit hulle baie kennis gegee, waarin hulle hul verheug het.

And they took their journey into the wilderness to go up to preach the word among the Lamanites; and I shall give an account of their proceedings hereafter.

Now king Mosiah had no one to confer the kingdom upon, for there was not any of his sons who would accept of the kingdom.

Therefore he took the records which were engraved on the plates of brass, and also the plates of Nephi, and all the things which he had kept and preserved according to the commandments of God, after having translated and caused to be written the records which were on the plates of gold which had been found by the people of Limhi, which were delivered to him by the hand of Limhi;

And this he did because of the great anxiety of his people; for they were desirous beyond measure to know concerning those people who had been destroyed.

And now he translated them by the means of those two stones which were fastened into the two rims of a bow.

Now these things were prepared from the beginning, and were handed down from generation to generation, for the purpose of interpreting languages;

And they have been kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he should discover to every creature who should possess the land the iniquities and abominations of his people;

And whosoever has these things is called seer, after the manner of old times.

Now after Mosiah had finished translating these records, behold, it gave an account of the people who were destroyed, from the time that they were destroyed back to the building of the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people and they were scattered abroad upon the face of all the earth, yea, and even from that time back until the creation of Adam.

Now this account did cause the people of Mosiah to mourn exceedingly, yea, they were filled with sorrow; nevertheless it gave them much knowledge, in the which they did rejoice.

19 En hierdie kroniek sal hierna geskrywe word; want kyk, dit is belangrik dat alle volke die dinge moet weet wat in hierdie kroniek geskrywe is.

20 En nou, soos ek aan julle gesê het, dat nadat koning Mosia hierdie dinge gedoen het, het hy die plate van brons geneem, en al die dinge wat hy bewaar het, en hulle oorgedra aan Alma, wat die seun was van Alma; ja, al die kronieke, en ook die vertolkers, en hulle oorgedra aan hom, en hom beveel dat hy hulle moes behou en bewaar, en ook 'n kroniek hou van die volk, en oorhandig van een geslag na die ander, net soos hulle oorhandig was vanaf die tyd dat Lehi Jerusalem verlaat het.

And this account shall be written hereafter; for behold, it is expedient that all people should know the things which are written in this account.

And now, as I said unto you, that after king Mosiah had done these things, he took the plates of brass, and all the things which he had kept, and conferred them upon Alma, who was the son of Alma; yea, all the records, and also the interpreters, and conferred them upon him, and commanded him that he should keep and preserve them, and also keep a record of the people, handing them down from one generation to another, even as they had been handed down from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

Mosia 29

- 1 Nou toe Mosia dit gedoen het, het hy dwarsdeur die land uitgestuur onder die hele volk, begerig om te weet wat hulle wil is aangaande wie hulle koning moes wees.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat die stem van die volk gekom het, en gesê het: Ons is begerig dat Aäron u seun ons koning en heerser moet wees.
- 3 Nou, Aäron het opgegaan na die land Nepi, daarom kon die koning nie die koninkryk aan hom oordra nie; nóg wou Aäron die koninkryk op hom neem; nóg was nie een van die seuns van Mosia gewillig om die koninkryk op hulle te neem.
- 4 Daarom het koning Mosia weer onder die volk gestuur; ja, en wel 'n geskrewe woord het hy onder die volk gestuur. En hierdie was die woorde wat geskrywe was, wat sê:
 - 5 Kyk, o julle my volk, of my broers, want ek ag julle as sodanig, ek begeer dat julle die saak moet oorweeg wat julle saamgeroep is om te oorweeg—want julle is begerig om 'n koning te hê.
 - 6 Nou verklaar ek aan julle dat hy aan wie die koninkryk regmatig behoort, dit afgewys het, en wil nie die koninkryk op hom neem nie.
 - 7 En nou as daar 'n ander aangestel sou word in sy plek, kyk ek vrees dat daar twiste onder julle sal ontstaan. En wie weet of my seun, aan wie die koninkryk behoort, nie dalk sal verander en toornig wees, en 'n gedeelte van hierdie volk wegtrek agter hom aan nie, wat oorloë en twiste sal veroorsaak onder julle, wat die oorsaak sal wees van baie bloedvergiëting en verdraaiing van die weë van die Here, ja, en die siele van baie mense vernietig.
 - 8 Nou sê ek aan julle, laat ons verstandig wees en hierdie dinge oorweeg, want ons het geen reg om my seun te vernietig nie, nóg sal ons die reg hê om 'n ander te vernietig as hy in sy plek aangestel word.
 - 9 En as my seun weer terugkeer tot sy hoogmoed en ydele dinge, sou hy die dinge terugtrek wat hy gesê het, en sy reg op die koninkryk eis, wat hom, en ook hierdie volk, sal veroorsaak om baie sonde te pleeg.

Mosiah 29

Now when Mosiah had done this he sent out throughout all the land, among all the people, desiring to know their will concerning who should be their king.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: We are desirous that Aaron thy son should be our king and our ruler.

Now Aaron had gone up to the land of Nephi, therefore the king could not confer the kingdom upon him; neither would Aaron take upon him the kingdom; neither were any of the sons of Mosiah willing to take upon them the kingdom.

Therefore king Mosiah sent again among the people; yea, even a written word sent he among the people. And these were the words that were written, saying:

Behold, O ye my people, or my brethren, for I esteem you as such, I desire that ye should consider the cause which ye are called to consider—for ye are desirous to have a king.

Now I declare unto you that he to whom the kingdom doth rightly belong has declined, and will not take upon him the kingdom.

And now if there should be another appointed in his stead, behold I fear there would rise contentions among you. And who knoweth but what my son, to whom the kingdom doth belong, should turn to be angry and draw away a part of this people after him, which would cause wars and contentions among you, which would be the cause of shedding much blood and perverting the way of the Lord, yea, and destroy the souls of many people.

Now I say unto you let us be wise and consider these things, for we have no right to destroy my son, neither should we have any right to destroy another if he should be appointed in his stead.

And if my son should turn again to his pride and vain things he would recall the things which he had said, and claim his right to the kingdom, which would cause him and also this people to commit much sin.

10 En nou laat ons verstandig wees en vooruitsien na hierdie dinge, en dit doen wat die vrede vir hierdie volk sal verseker.

11 Daarom sal ek julle koning wees die res van my dae; nogtans, laat ons regters aanstel, om hierdie volk te oordeel volgens ons wet; en ons sal opnuut die sake van hierdie volk reël, want ons sal wyse manne aanstel om regters te wees, wat hierdie volk sal oordeel volgens die gebooie van God.

12 Nou, dit is beter dat 'n mens geoordeel sal word deur God as deur 'n mens, want die oordele van God is altyd regverdig, maar die oordele van 'n mens is nie altyd regverdig nie.

13 Daarom, as dit moontlik sou wees dat julle regverdige manne kan hê om julle konings te wees, wat die wette van God sou daarstel, en hierdie volk oordeel volgens sy gebooie, ja, as julle manne vir julle konings kon hê wat sou doen net soos my vader Benjamin gedoen het vir hierdie volk—ek sê vir julle, as dit altyd die geval kon wees, dan sou dit raadsaam wees dat julle altyd konings sou hê om oor julle te heers.

14 En waarlik, ekself het gearbei met al die krag en die vermoëns waaroor ek beskik het, om julle die gebooie van God te leer, en om vrede te vestig dwarsdeur die land, dat daar geen oorloë nóg twiste, geen diefstal, nóg geplunder, nóg moord, nóg enige soort ongeregtigheid sal wees;

15 En wie ook al ongeregtigheid gepleeg het, hom het ek gestraf volgens die oortreding wat hy gepleeg het; volgens die wet wat aan ons gegee is deur ons vaders.

16 Nou sê ek aan julle, omdat alle mense nie regverdig is nie, is dit nie raadsaam dat julle 'n koning of konings moet hê om te heers oor julle nie.

17 Want kyk, hoeveel ongeregtigheid laat een goddelose koning toe om gepleeg te word, ja, en watter groot vernietiging!

18 Ja, onthou koning Noag, sy boosheid en sy gruwels, en ook die boosheid en gruwels van sy volk. Kyk watter groot vernietiging oor hulle gekom het; en ook vanweë hulle ongeregtighede is hulle gebring tot slawerny.

And now let us be wise and look forward to these things, and do that which will make for the peace of this people.

Therefore I will be your king the remainder of my days; nevertheless, let us appoint judges, to judge this people according to our law; and we will newly arrange the affairs of this people, for we will appoint wise men to be judges, that will judge this people according to the commandments of God.

Now it is better that a man should be judged of God than of man, for the judgments of God are always just, but the judgments of man are not always just.

Therefore, if it were possible that you could have just men to be your kings, who would establish the laws of God, and judge this people according to his commandments, yea, if ye could have men for your kings who would do even as my father Benjamin did for this people—I say unto you, if this could always be the case then it would be expedient that ye should always have kings to rule over you.

And even I myself have labored with all the power and faculties which I have possessed, to teach you the commandments of God, and to establish peace throughout the land, that there should be no wars nor contentions, no stealing, nor plundering, nor murdering, nor any manner of iniquity;

And whosoever has committed iniquity, him have I punished according to the crime which he has committed, according to the law which has been given to us by our fathers.

Now I say unto you, that because all men are not just it is not expedient that ye should have a king or kings to rule over you.

For behold, how much iniquity doth one wicked king cause to be committed, yea, and what great destruction!

Yea, remember king Noah, his wickedness and his abominations, and also the wickedness and abominations of his people. Behold what great destruction did come upon them; and also because of their iniquities they were brought into bondage.

- 19 En as dit nie was vir die tussenkoms van hulle alwyse Skepper nie, en dit vanweë hul opregte bekering, moes hulle onvermydelik gebly het in slawerny tot nou toe.
- 20 Maar kyk, Hy het hulle verlos omdat hulle hul voor Hom verootmoedig het; en omdat hulle kragtig tot Hom geroep het, het Hy hulle verlos uit slawerny; en so werk die Here met sy krag in alle gevalle onder die kinders van mense; en strek die arm van barmhartigheid uit na hulle wat hulle vertrou stel in Hom.
- 21 En kyk, nou sê ek aan julle, julle kan nie 'n goddelose koning onttroon behalwe deur baie twis, en baie bloedvergieting nie.
- 22 Want kyk, hy het sy vriende in ongeregtheid, en hy hou sy wagte rondom hom; en hy skeur die wette op van diegene wat in regverdigheid voor hom geheers het; en hy vertrap onder sy voete die gebooe van God;
- 23 En hy maak wette, en stuur hulle uit onder sy volk, ja, wette volgens die wyse van sy eie boosheid; en wie ook al nie sy wette gehoorsaam nie, laat hy doodmaak; en wie ook al rebelleer teen hom, sal hy sy leërs teen hulle uitstuur in die stryd, en as hy kan, sal hy hulle vernietig; en so verdraai 'n onregverdige koning die weë van alle geregtigheid.
- 24 En nou kyk, ek sê vir julle, dit is nie raadsaam dat sulke gruwels oor julle sal kom nie.
- 25 Daarom, kies julle deur die stem van die volk regters, sodat julle geoordeel mag word volgens die wette wat aan julle gegee is deur ons vaders, wat juis is, en wat aan hulle gegee is deur die hand van die Here.
- 26 Nou, dit is nie algemeen dat die stem van die volk enigiets begeer strydig met dit wat reg is nie; maar dit is algemeen vir die mindere deel van die volk om te begeer dit wat nie reg is nie; daarom, dit sal julle onderhou en dit julle wet maak—om julle sake te doen deur die stem van die volk.
- 27 En as die tyd kom dat die stem van die volk ongeregtheid verkies, dan is dit die tyd dat die oordele van God oor julle sal kom; ja, dan is dit die tyd dat Hy julle sal besoek met groot vernietiging, en wel soos Hy tot nog toe hierdie land besoek het.

And were it not for the interposition of their all-wise Creator, and this because of their sincere repentance, they must unavoidably remain in bondage until now.

But behold, he did deliver them because they did humble themselves before him; and because they cried mightily unto him he did deliver them out of bondage; and thus doth the Lord work with his power in all cases among the children of men, extending the arm of mercy towards them that put their trust in him.

And behold, now I say unto you, ye cannot dethrone an iniquitous king save it be through much contention, and the shedding of much blood.

For behold, he has his friends in iniquity, and he keepeth his guards about him; and he teareth up the laws of those who have reigned in righteousness before him; and he trampleth under his feet the commandments of God;

And he enacteth laws, and sendeth them forth among his people, yea, laws after the manner of his own wickedness; and whosoever doth not obey his laws he causeth to be destroyed; and whosoever doth rebel against him he will send his armies against them to war, and if he can he will destroy them; and thus an unrighteous king doth pervert the ways of all righteousness.

And now behold I say unto you, it is not expedient that such abominations should come upon you.

Therefore, choose you by the voice of this people, judges, that ye may be judged according to the laws which have been given you by our fathers, which are correct, and which were given them by the hand of the Lord.

Now it is not common that the voice of the people desireth anything contrary to that which is right; but it is common for the lesser part of the people to desire that which is not right; therefore this shall ye observe and make it your law—to do your business by the voice of the people.

And if the time comes that the voice of the people doth choose iniquity, then is the time that the judgments of God will come upon you; yea, then is the time he will visit you with great destruction even as he has hitherto visited this land.

28 En nou as julle regters het, en hulle julle nie oordeel volgens die wet wat gegee is nie, kan julle hulle deur 'n hoër regter laat oordeel.

29 As julle hoër regters nie regverdige oordele oordeel nie, sal julle 'n klein aantal van julle laer regters laat bymekaarkom, en hulle sal julle hoër regters oordeel, volgens die stem van die volk.

30 En ek beveel julle om hierdie dinge te doen in die vrees van die Here, en ek gebied julle om hierdie dinge te doen, en dat julle geen koning sal hê nie; sodat as hierdie volk sondes en ongeregthede pleeg, dit verantwoord sal word op hul eie hoofde.

31 Want kyk ek sê vir julle, die sondes van baie volke is veroorsaak deur die ongeregthede van hulle konings; daarom word hulle ongeregthede verantwoord op die hoofde van hulle konings.

32 En nou begeer ek dat hierdie ongelykheid nie meer in hierdie land moet wees nie, veral onder hierdie my volk; maar ek begeer dat hierdie land 'n land van vryheid moet wees, en elke man sy regte en voorregte mag geniet in gelyke mate, solank as die Here dit goeddink dat ons mag lewe en die land beërwe, ja, en wel so lank as enige van ons nageslag oorbly op die aangesig van die land.

33 En baie meer dinge het koning Mosia aan hulle geskryf, en aan hulle al die beproewings en sorges van 'n regverdige koning ontvou, ja, al die moeitevolle arbeid van siel vir hulle volk, en ook al die murmure rings van die volk teenoor hul koning; en hy het dit alles aan hulle verduidelik.

34 En hy het hulle vertel dat hierdie dinge nie behoort te wees nie; maar dat die las op die hele volk moet rus, sodat elke man sy deel mag dra.

35 En hy het ook aan hulle al die nadele ontvou wat hulle sou ly deur 'n onregverdige koning te hê om oor hulle te heers;

36 Ja, al sy ongeregthede en gruwels, en al die oorloë en twiste en bloedvergieting, en die diefstal en die geplunder, en die pleeg van hoererye, en allerlei ongeregthede wat nie opgenoem kan word nie—en hy het hulle vertel dat hierdie dinge nie behoort te wees nie, dat hulle uitdruklik teenstrydig was met die gebooie van God.

And now if ye have judges, and they do not judge you according to the law which has been given, ye can cause that they may be judged of a higher judge.

If your higher judges do not judge righteous judgments, ye shall cause that a small number of your lower judges should be gathered together, and they shall judge your higher judges, according to the voice of the people.

And I command you to do these things in the fear of the Lord; and I command you to do these things, and that ye have no king; that if these people commit sins and iniquities they shall be answered upon their own heads.

For behold I say unto you, the sins of many people have been caused by the iniquities of their kings; therefore their iniquities are answered upon the heads of their kings.

And now I desire that this inequality should be no more in this land, especially among this my people; but I desire that this land be a land of liberty, and every man may enjoy his rights and privileges alike, so long as the Lord sees fit that we may live and inherit the land, yea, even as long as any of our posterity remains upon the face of the land.

And many more things did king Mosiah write unto them, unfolding unto them all the trials and troubles of a righteous king, yea, all the travails of soul for their people, and also all the murmurings of the people to their king; and he explained it all unto them.

And he told them that these things ought not to be; but that the burden should come upon all the people, that every man might bear his part.

And he also unfolded unto them all the disadvantages they labored under, by having an unrighteous king to rule over them;

Yea, all his iniquities and abominations, and all the wars, and contentions, and bloodshed, and the stealing, and the plundering, and the committing of whoredoms, and all manner of iniquities which cannot be enumerated—telling them that these things ought not to be, that they were expressly repugnant to the commandments of God.

37 En nou het dit gebeur, nadat koning Mosia hierdie dinge uitgestuur het onder die volk, was hulle oortuig van die waarheid van sy woorde.

38 Daarom het hulle hul begeertes vir 'n koning laat vaar, en het besonder gretig geword dat elke mens 'n gelyke kans moet hê dwarsdeur die hele land; ja, en elke mens het 'n gewilligheid uitgespreek om te antwoord vir sy eie sondes.

39 Daarom, dit het gebeur dat hulle dwarsdeur die land in groepe bymekaargekom het, om te stem oor wie hulle regters moet wees, om hulle te oordeel volgens die wet wat aan hulle gegee was; en hulle was uitermate verbly vanweë die vryheid wat aan hulle geskenk is.

40 En hulle liefde vir Mosia het sterk toegeneem; ja, hulle het hom meer geag as enige ander man; want hulle het hom nie beskou as 'n tiran wat wins najaag nie, ja, vir daardie vuil gewin wat die siel verderf; want hy het nie rykdomme van hulle geëis nie, nóg het hy behae geskep in bloedvergieting; maar hy het vrede in die land gestig, en hy het aan sy volk gegun dat hulle verlos moet word van alle soorte slawerny; daarom het hulle hom, ja, uitnemend, bomate geag.

41 En dit het gebeur dat hulle regters aangestel het om oor hulle te heers, of om hulle te oordeel volgens die wet; en dit het hulle dwarsdeur die hele land gedoen.

42 En dit het gebeur dat Alma aangestel is as die eerste hoofregter, en hy was ook die hoëpriester, omdat sy vader die amp aan hom oorgedra het, en hom die verantwoordelikheid gegee het oor al die sake van die kerk.

43 En nou het dit gebeur dat Alma gewandel het in die weë van die Here, en hy het sy gebooie onderhou, en hy het regverdige oordele geoordeel; en daar was voortdurende vrede deur die land.

44 En so het die heerskappy van die regters begin dwarsdeur die land Zarahemla, onder die hele volk wat die Nefiete genoem is; en Alma was die eerste en hoofregter.

45 En nou het dit gebeur dat sy vader gesterwe het, toe hy twee en tagtig jaar oud was, en hy het gelewe om die gebooie van God te volbring.

And now it came to pass, after king Mosiah had sent these things forth among the people they were convinced of the truth of his words.

Therefore they relinquished their desires for a king, and became exceedingly anxious that every man should have an equal chance throughout all the land; yea, and every man expressed a willingness to answer for his own sins.

Therefore, it came to pass that they assembled themselves together in bodies throughout the land, to cast in their voices concerning who should be their judges, to judge them according to the law which had been given them; and they were exceedingly rejoiced because of the liberty which had been granted unto them.

And they did wax strong in love towards Mosiah; yea, they did esteem him more than any other man; for they did not look upon him as a tyrant who was seeking for gain, yea, for that lucre which doth corrupt the soul; for he had not exacted riches of them, neither had he delighted in the shedding of blood; but he had established peace in the land, and he had granted unto his people that they should be delivered from all manner of bondage; therefore they did esteem him, yea, exceedingly, beyond measure.

And it came to pass that they did appoint judges to rule over them, or to judge them according to the law; and this they did throughout all the land.

And it came to pass that Alma was appointed to be the first chief judge, he being also the high priest, his father having conferred the office upon him, and having given him the charge concerning all the affairs of the church.

And now it came to pass that Alma did walk in the ways of the Lord, and he did keep his commandments, and he did judge righteous judgments; and there was continual peace through the land.

And thus commenced the reign of the judges throughout all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who were called the Nephites; and Alma was the first and chief judge.

And now it came to pass that his father died, being eighty and two years old, having lived to fulfil the commandments of God.

46 En dit het gebeur dat Mosia ook gesterwe het, in die drie en dertigste jaar van sy heerskappy; toe hy drie en sestig jaar oud was; en daar het altesame vyf honderd en nege jaar verloop vanaf die tyd dat Lehi Jerusalem verlaat het.

47 En so het die heerskappy van die konings geëindig oor die volk van Nephi; en so het die dae van Alma geëindig, wat die stigter van hulle kerk was.

And it came to pass that Mosiah died also, in the thirty and third year of his reign, being sixty and three years old; making in the whole, five hundred and nine years from the time Lehi left Jerusalem.

And thus ended the reign of the kings over the people of Nephi; and thus ended the days of Alma, who was the founder of their church.

Die Boek van Alma

Die Seun van Alma

Die kroniek van Alma, wat die seun was van Alma, die eerste en hoofregter oor die volk van Nepi, en ook die hoëpriester oor die Kerk. 'n Kroniek van die heerskappy van die regters, en die oorloë en twiste onder die volk. En ook 'n kroniek van 'n oorlog tussen die Nefiete en die Lamaniete, volgens die kroniek van Alma, die eerste en hoofregter.

Alma 1

- 1 Nou het dit gebeur dat in die eerste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nepi, vanaf hierdie tyd, het koning Mosia wat die weg gegaan het van die ganse aarde, en 'n goeie stryd gestry het, en opreg gewandel het voor God, en niemand gelaat om te heers in sy plek nie; nogtans het hy wette uitgevaardig, en hulle is erken deur die volk; daarom was hulle verplig om die wette te gehoorsaam wat hy gemaak het.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat in die eerste jaar van die heerskappy van Alma in die regterstoel, was daar 'n man wat voor hom gebring is om geoordeel te word, 'n man wat groot was, en bekend was vir sy groot krag.
- 3 En hy het rondgegaan onder die volk, en aan hulle gepreek dit wat hy as die woord van God bestempel het, en die kerk teengestaan, en aan die volk verklaar dat elke priester en leraar gewild behoort te word; en dat hulle nie met hulle hande behoort te arbeid nie, maar dat hulle deur die volk onderhou behoort te word.
- 4 En hy het ook aan die volk getuig dat die hele mensdom gered sal word op die laaste dag, en dat hulle nie hoef te vrees of te bewe nie, maar dat hulle hul hoofde mag oprig en juig; want die Here het alle mense geskape, en het ook alle mense verlos; en, aan die einde, sal alle mense die ewige lewe hê.

The Book of Alma

the Son of Alma

The account of Alma, who was the son of Alma, the first and chief judge over the people of Nephi, and also the high priest over the Church. An account of the reign of the judges, and the wars and contentions among the people. And also an account of a war between the Nephites and the Lamanites, according to the record of Alma, the first and chief judge.

Alma 1

Now it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, from this time forward, king Mosiah having gone the way of all the earth, having warred a good warfare, walking uprightly before God, leaving none to reign in his stead; nevertheless he had established laws, and they were acknowledged by the people; therefore they were obliged to abide by the laws which he had made.

And it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of Alma in the judgment-seat, there was a man brought before him to be judged, a man who was large, and was noted for his much strength.

And he had gone about among the people, preaching to them that which he termed to be the word of God, bearing down against the church; declaring unto the people that every priest and teacher ought to become popular; and they ought not to labor with their hands, but that they ought to be supported by the people.

And he also testified unto the people that all mankind should be saved at the last day, and that they need not fear nor tremble, but that they might lift up their heads and rejoice; for the Lord had created all men, and had also redeemed all men; and, in the end, all men should have eternal life.

- 5 En dit het gebeur dat hy hierdie dinge geleer het tot so 'n mate dat baie in sy woorde geglo het, en selfs soveel dat hulle hom begin ondersteun en hom geld gegee het.
- 6 En hy het begin om verhewe te word in die hoogmoed van sy hart, en om baie kosbare kleding te dra, ja, en selfs begin het om 'n kerk te stig volgens die wyse van sy prediking.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat terwyl hy gaan om te preek vir diegene wat geglo het in sy woord, het hy 'n man ontmoet wat aan die kerk van God behoort het; ja, en wel een van hulle leraars, en hy het begin om hewig te stry met hom, sodat hy die volk van die kerk mag weglei; maar die man het hom weerstaan, en hom vermaan met die woorde van God.
- 8 Nou was die naam van die man Gideon; en dit was hy wat 'n werktuig was in die hande van God om die volk van Limhi te verlos uit slawerny.
- 9 Nou, omdat Gideon hom weerstaan het met die woorde van God, was hy vertoornd op Gideon, en het sy swaard uitgetrek en begin om hom te slaan. Nou Gideon, omdat hy al baie oud was, was daarom nie in staat om sy houe te weerstaan nie, daarom is hy deur die swaard gedood.
- 10 En die man wat hom doodgeslaan het, is deur die mense van die kerk geneem en is voor Alma gebring, om geoordeel te word volgens die misdade wat hy gepleeg het.
- 11 En dit het gebeur dat hy voor Alma gestaan het en vir homself gepleit het met groot moedigheid.
- 12 Maar Alma het aan hom gesê: Kyk, dit is die eerste keer dat priesterlis ingevoer is onder hierdie volk. En kyk, jy is nie net skuldig aan priesterlis nie, maar het gepoog om dit af te dwing deur die swaard; en as priesterlis op hierdie volk afgedwing word, sal dit lei tot hul algehele vernietiging.
- 13 En jy het die bloed gestort van 'n regverdige man, ja, 'n man wat baie goed gedoen het onder hierdie volk; en as ons jou lewe sou spaar, sou sy bloed oor ons kom om wraak te neem.
- 14 Daarom word jy veroordeel om te sterwe, volgens die wet wat ons gegee is deur Mosia, ons laaste koning; en dit is erken deur hierdie volk; daarom moet hierdie volk die wet gehoorsaam.

And it came to pass that he did teach these things so much that many did believe on his words, even so many that they began to support him and give him money.

And he began to be lifted up in the pride of his heart, and to wear very costly apparel, yea, and even began to establish a church after the manner of his preaching.

And it came to pass as he was going, to preach to those who believed on his word, he met a man who belonged to the church of God, yea, even one of their teachers; and he began to contend with him sharply, that he might lead away the people of the church; but the man withstood him, admonishing him with the words of God.

Now the name of the man was Gideon; and it was he who was an instrument in the hands of God in delivering the people of Limhi out of bondage.

Now, because Gideon withstood him with the words of God he was wroth with Gideon, and drew his sword and began to smite him. Now Gideon being stricken with many years, therefore he was not able to withstand his blows, therefore he was slain by the sword.

And the man who slew him was taken by the people of the church, and was brought before Alma, to be judged according to the crimes which he had committed.

And it came to pass that he stood before Alma and pled for himself with much boldness.

But Alma said unto him: Behold, this is the first time that priestcraft has been introduced among this people. And behold, thou art not only guilty of priestcraft, but hast endeavored to enforce it by the sword; and were priestcraft to be enforced among this people it would prove their entire destruction.

And thou hast shed the blood of a righteous man, yea, a man who has done much good among this people; and were we to spare thee his blood would come upon us for vengeance.

Therefore thou art condemned to die, according to the law which has been given us by Mosiah, our last king; and it has been acknowledged by this people; therefore this people must abide by the law.

- 15 En dit het gebeur dat hulle hom geneem het; en sy naam was Nehor; en hulle het hom gedra tot bo-op die heuwel Manti, en hy was daartoe gebring, of eerder het erken, tussen die hemele en die aarde, dat wat hy aan die volk geleer het, teenstrydig was met die woord van God; en daar het hy 'n skanddood gesterwe.
- 16 Nogtans, dit het nie 'n einde gemaak aan die verspreiding van priesterlis deur die land nie; want daar was baie wat die ydele dinge van die wêreld liefgehad het, en hulle het uitgegaan en valse leerstellings gepredik; en dit het hulle gedoen ter wille van rykdom en eer.
- 17 Nogtans, hulle het nie gedurf om te lieg nie, indien dit bekend word, uit vrees vir die wet, want leuenars is gestraf; daarom het hulle voorgegee om te preek volgens hulle geloof; en nou kon die wet geen mag hê oor enige man oor sy geloof nie.
- 18 En hulle het nie gedurf om te steel nie, uit vrees vir die wet, want sulkes is gestraf; nóg het hulle gewaag om te roof, of te moor, want hy wat moord gepleeg het is gestraf met die dood.
- 19 Maar dit het gebeur dat wie ook al nie behoort het aan die kerk van God nie, begin het om diegene te vervolg wat wel aan die kerk van God behoort het, en die Naam van Christus op hulle geneem het.
- 20 Ja, hulle het hulle vervolg, en hulle gekwel met alerhande woorde, en dit vanweë hulle ootmoed; omdat hulle nie hoogmoedig was in hul eie oë nie, en omdat hulle die woord van God meegedeel het, die een aan die ander, sonder geld en sonder prys.
- 21 Nou was daar 'n streng wet onder die mense van die kerk, dat daar geen mens, wat aan die kerk behoort, sal opstaan en diegene vervolg wat nie aan die kerk behoort nie, en dat daar geen vervolging onder hulleself moes wees nie.
- 22 Nogtans, daar was baie onder hulle wat begin het om hoogmoedig te word, en begin het om kwaai met hulle teenstanders te stry, selfs tot slae; ja, hulle het mekaar met hulle vuiste geslaan.
- 23 Nou dit was in die tweede jaar van die heerskappy van Alma, en dit was 'n oorsaak van baie verdrukking vir die kerk; ja, dit was die oorsaak van baie beproewing vir die kerk.

And it came to pass that they took him; and his name was Nehor; and they carried him upon the top of the hill Manti, and there he was caused, or rather did acknowledge, between the heavens and the earth, that what he had taught to the people was contrary to the word of God; and there he suffered an ignominious death.

Nevertheless, this did not put an end to the spreading of priestcraft through the land; for there were many who loved the vain things of the world, and they went forth preaching false doctrines; and this they did for the sake of riches and honor.

Nevertheless, they durst not lie, if it were known, for fear of the law, for liars were punished; therefore they pretended to preach according to their belief; and now the law could have no power on any man for his belief.

And they durst not steal, for fear of the law, for such were punished; neither durst they rob, nor murder, for he that murdered was punished unto death.

But it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church of God began to persecute those that did belong to the church of God, and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

Yea, they did persecute them, and afflict them with all manner of words, and this because of their humility; because they were not proud in their own eyes, and because they did impart the word of God, one with another, without money and without price.

Now there was a strict law among the people of the church, that there should not any man, belonging to the church, arise and persecute those that did not belong to the church, and that there should be no persecution among themselves.

Nevertheless, there were many among them who began to be proud, and began to contend warmly with their adversaries, even unto blows; yea, they would smite one another with their fists.

Now this was in the second year of the reign of Alma, and it was a cause of much affliction to the church; yea, it was the cause of much trial with the church.

- 24 Want die harte van baie was verhard, en hulle name is uitgewis, sodat hulle nie langer in gedagte gebring is onder die volk van God nie. En ook het baie hulle onttrek uit hulle midde.
- 25 Nou was dit 'n groot beproewing vir diegene wat wel vasgestaan het in die geloof; nogtans, hulle was standvastig en onbeweeglik in die onderhouding van die gebooie van God, en hulle het met geduld die vervolging verdra wat op hulle gehoop is.
- 26 En toe die priesters hul arbeid verlaat het om die woord van God aan die volk mee te deel, het die volk ook hulle arbeid verlaat om die woord van God te hoor. En toe die priester aan hulle die woord van God meegedeel het, het hulle almal weer ywerig teruggekeer na hul arbeid; en die priester het homself nie hoër geag as sy hoorders nie, want die prediker was niks beter as die hoorder nie, nóg was die leraar enigszins beter as die leerling; en dus was almal gelyk, en hulle het almal gearbei, elke man volgens sy krag.
- 27 En hulle het van hul besittings gedeel, elke man volgens dit wat hy gehad het, aan die armes, en die behoeftiges, en die siekes, en die verdruktes; en hulle het nie kosbare kleding gedra nie, tog was hulle netjies en aantreklik.
- 28 En so het hulle die sake van die kerk gevestig; en so het hulle begin om weer voortdurende vrede te hê, niesteenstaande al hul vervolginge.
- 29 En nou, vanweë die standvastigheid van die kerk het hulle begin om uitermate ryk te word, en het 'n oorvloed gehad van alle dinge waaraan hulle ook al 'n behoefte gehad het—'n oorvloed van kleinvee en grootvee, en vetgemaakte vee van alle soorte, en ook 'n oorvloed van graan, en van goud, en van silwer, en van kosbare dinge, en 'n oorvloed van sy en fyngeweefde linne, en allerlei soorte goeie eenvoudige materiaal.
- 30 En so, onder hul voorspoedige omstandighede, het hulle niemand weggestuur wat naak was, of wat honger was, of wat dors was, of wat siek was, of wat nie gevoed was nie; en hulle het nie hulle harte gerig op rykdomme nie; daarom was hulle vrygewig teenoor almal, beide oud en jonk, beide slaaf en vry, beide manlik en vroulik, hetsy buite die kerk of in die kerk, en sonder aansien van persoon wat betref dié wat behoeftig was.

For the hearts of many were hardened, and their names were blotted out, that they were remembered no more among the people of God. And also many withdrew themselves from among them.

Now this was a great trial to those that did stand fast in the faith; nevertheless, they were steadfast and immovable in keeping the commandments of God, and they bore with patience the persecution which was heaped upon them.

And when the priests left their labor to impart the word of God unto the people, the people also left their labors to hear the word of God. And when the priest had imparted unto them the word of God they all returned again diligently unto their labors; and the priest, not esteeming himself above his hearers, for the preacher was no better than the hearer, neither was the teacher any better than the learner; and thus they were all equal, and they did all labor, every man according to his strength.

And they did impart of their substance, every man according to that which he had, to the poor, and the needy, and the sick, and the afflicted; and they did not wear costly apparel, yet they were neat and comely.

And thus they did establish the affairs of the church; and thus they began to have continual peace again, notwithstanding all their persecutions.

And now, because of the steadiness of the church they began to be exceedingly rich, having abundance of all things whatsoever they stood in need—an abundance of flocks and herds, and fatlings of every kind, and also abundance of grain, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things, and abundance of silk and fine-twined linen, and all manner of good homely cloth.

And thus, in their prosperous circumstances, they did not send away any who were naked, or that were hungry, or that were athirst, or that were sick, or that had not been nourished; and they did not set their hearts upon riches; therefore they were liberal to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, whether out of the church or in the church, having no respect to persons as to those who stood in need.

31 En so het hulle voorspoedig geword en baie ryker geword as dié wat nie behoort het aan hulle kerk nie.

32 Want diegene wat nie behoort het aan hulle kerk nie het deelgeneem aan towery, en aan afgodery of luiheid, en aan onsinnige praatjies, en aan nydigheid en onenigheid; en het kosbare kleding gedra; en was verhef in die hoogmoed van hulle eie oë; hulle het vervolg, gelieg, gesteel, geroof, hoererye gepleeg, en gemoor, en allerlei booshede; nogtans, die wet is afgedwing op al diegene wat dit oortree het, in soverre dit moontlik was.

33 En dit het gebeur dat deur die wet sodoende op hulle toe te pas, en elke mens gely het volgens wat hy gedoen het, het hulle stiller geword, en het nie gedurf om enige boosheid te pleeg nie, uit vrees dat dit bekend sou word; daarom, daar was baie vrede onder die volk van Nephi tot die vyfde jaar van die heerskappy van die regters.

And thus they did prosper and become far more wealthy than those who did not belong to their church.

For those who did not belong to their church did indulge themselves in sorceries, and in idolatry or idleness, and in babblings, and in envyings and strife; wearing costly apparel; being lifted up in the pride of their own eyes; persecuting, lying, thieving, robbing, committing whoredoms, and murdering, and all manner of wickedness; nevertheless, the law was put in force upon all those who did transgress it, inasmuch as it was possible.

And it came to pass that by thus exercising the law upon them, every man suffering according to that which he had done, they became more still, and durst not commit any wickedness if it were known; therefore, there was much peace among the people of Nephi until the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

Alma 2

- 1 En dit het gebeur aan die begin van die vyfde jaar van hulle heerskappy dat daar 'n twis begin ontstaan het onder die volk; want 'n sekere man, wat Amliki genoem is, en hy was 'n baie geslepe man, ja, 'n wyse man volgens die wysheid van die wêreld, en hy was 'n man volgens die orde van die man wat Gideon doodgeslaan het met die swaard, wat tereggestel is volgens die wet—
- 2 Nou het hierdie Amliki, deur sy geslepenheid, veel van die volk weggelok agter hom aan; en wel soveel dat hulle begin het om baie sterk te word; en hulle het begin om te poog om Amliki as koning aan te stel oor die volk.
- 3 Nou, dit was ontstellend vir die volk van die kerk, en ook vir al diegene wat nie weggelok is agter die oorrëdinge van Amliki nie; want hulle het geweet dat volgens hulle wet dat sulke dinge bevestig moes word deur die stem van die volk.
- 4 Daarom, as dit moontlik was dat Amliki die stem van die volk kon wen, omdat hy 'n goddelose man was, sou hy hulle ontnem van hul regte en voorregte van die kerk; want dit was sy voorneme om die kerk van God te vernietig.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat die volk bymekaar gekom het dwarsdeur die hele land, elke man volgens sy denke; of dit vir of teen Amliki was, in afsonderlike groepe, terwyl hulle baie gestry en verbasingwekkende onenighede gehad het die een met die ander.
- 6 En so het hulle bymekaar gekom om te stem aangaande die saak; en dit is voor die regters gelê.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat die stem van die volk teen Amliki gekom het, sodat hy nie koning gemaak is oor die volk nie.
- 8 Nou, dit het baie vreugde veroorsaak in die harte van diegene wat teen hom was; maar Amliki het diegene wat hom ondersteun het opgestook tot toorn teen dié wat hom nie ondersteun het nie.
- 9 En dit het gebeur dat hulle bymekaar gekom het, en Amliki aangestel het om hul koning te wees.

Alma 2

And it came to pass in the commencement of the fifth year of their reign there began to be a contention among the people; for a certain man, being called Amlici, he being a very cunning man, yea, a wise man as to the wisdom of the world, he being after the order of the man that slew Gideon by the sword, who was executed according to the law—

Now this Amlici had, by his cunning, drawn away much people after him; even so much that they began to be very powerful; and they began to endeavor to establish Amlici to be a king over the people.

Now this was alarming to the people of the church, and also to all those who had not been drawn away after the persuasions of Amlici; for they knew that according to their law that such things must be established by the voice of the people.

Therefore, if it were possible that Amlici should gain the voice of the people, he, being a wicked man, would deprive them of their rights and privileges of the church; for it was his intent to destroy the church of God.

And it came to pass that the people assembled themselves together throughout all the land, every man according to his mind, whether it were for or against Amlici, in separate bodies, having much dispute and wonderful contentions one with another.

And thus they did assemble themselves together to cast in their voices concerning the matter; and they were laid before the judges.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came against Amlici, that he was not made king over the people.

Now this did cause much joy in the hearts of those who were against him; but Amlici did stir up those who were in his favor to anger against those who were not in his favor.

And it came to pass that they gathered themselves together, and did consecrate Amlici to be their king.

10 Nou, toe Amliki koning gemaak is oor hulle, het hy hulle beveel dat hulle wapens moes opneem teen hul broers; en dit het hy gedoen sodat hy hulle aan hom kon onderwerp.

11 Nou was die volk van Amliki onderskei deur die naam van Amliki; en hulle is die Amlikiete genoem, en die oorblywendes is die Nefiete, of die volk van God genoem.

12 Daarom was die volk van die Nefiete bewus van die voorneme van die Amlikiete, en daarom het hulle voorberei om hulle te ontmoet; ja, hulle het hulself bewapen met swaarde, en met sabels, en met boë, en met pyle, en met klippe, en met slingers, en met alderhande wapens van oorlog, van elke soort.

13 En dus was hulle voorbereid om die Amlikiete te ontmoet ten tye van hulle koms. En daar is kapteins aangestel, en hoër kapteins, en hoofkapteins, volgens hulle getalle.

14 En dit het gebeur dat Amliki sy manne bewapen het met alderhande wapens van oorlog van elke soort; en hy het ook heersers en leiers aangestel oor sy volk, om hulle te lei in die oorlog teen hulle broers.

15 En dit het gebeur dat die Amlikiete aangekom het op die heuwel Amnihu, wat oos was van die Sidonrivier, wat vloei langs die land Zarahemla, en daar het hulle begin om oorlog te maak teen die Nefiete.

16 Nou het Alma, omdat hy die hoofregter en goewerneur was van die volk van Nefi, daarom het hy opgegaan saam met sy volk, ja, met sy kapteins en hoofkapteins, ja, aan die hoof van sy leërs, teen die Amlikiete om te veg.

17 En hulle het begin om die Amlikiete te dood op die heuwel oos van Sidon. En die Amlikiete het geveg teen die Nefiete met groot krag, in soverre dat baie van die Nefiete geval het voor die Amlikiete.

18 Nogtans het die Here die hand van die Nefiete versterk, dat hulle die Amlikiete geslag het met 'n groot slagting, dat hulle begin vlug het voor hulle.

19 En dit het gebeur dat die Nefiete die Amlikiete agternagesit het daardie hele dag, en hulle geslag het met 'n groot slagting, in soverre dat daar van die Amlikiete twaalfduisend vyfhonderd twee en dertig siele gedood is; en daar is van die Nefiete sesduisend vyfhonderd twee en sestig siele gedood.

Now when Amlici was made king over them he commanded them that they should take up arms against their brethren; and this he did that he might subject them to him.

Now the people of Amlici were distinguished by the name of Amlici, being called Amlicites; and the remainder were called Nephites, or the people of God.

Therefore the people of the Nephites were aware of the intent of the Amlicites, and therefore they did prepare to meet them; yea, they did arm themselves with swords, and with cimeters, and with bows, and with arrows, and with stones, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons of war, of every kind.

And thus they were prepared to meet the Amlicites at the time of their coming. And there were appointed captains, and higher captains, and chief captains, according to their numbers.

And it came to pass that Amlici did arm his men with all manner of weapons of war of every kind; and he also appointed rulers and leaders over his people, to lead them to war against their brethren.

And it came to pass that the Amlicites came upon the hill Amnihu, which was east of the river Sidon, which ran by the land of Zarahemla, and there they began to make war with the Nephites.

Now Alma, being the chief judge and the governor of the people of Nephi, therefore he went up with his people, yea, with his captains, and chief captains, yea, at the head of his armies, against the Amlicites to battle.

And they began to slay the Amlicites upon the hill east of Sidon. And the Amlicites did contend with the Nephites with great strength, insomuch that many of the Nephites did fall before the Amlicites.

Nevertheless the Lord did strengthen the hand of the Nephites, that they slew the Amlicites with great slaughter, that they began to flee before them.

And it came to pass that the Nephites did pursue the Amlicites all that day, and did slay them with much slaughter, insomuch that there were slain of the Amlicites twelve thousand five hundred thirty and two souls; and there were slain of the Nephites six thousand five hundred sixty and two souls.

20 En dit het gebeur dat toe Alma die Amlikiete nie langer kon agternasit nie, het hy sy volk hul tente laat opslaan in die vallei van Gideon, en die vallei is genoem na daardie Gideon wat met die swaard gedood is deur die hand van Nehor; en in dié vallei het die Nefiete hulle tente opgeslaan vir die nag.

21 En Alma het spioene gestuur om die oorblyfsel van die Amlikiete te volg, sodat hy mag weet van hulle planne en hulle sameswerings, waardeur hy kon waak teen hulle, sodat hy sy volk mag bewaar teen vernietiging.

22 Nou, diegene wat hy uitgestuur het om die kamp van die Amlikiete dop te hou is genoem Zeram, en Amnor, en Manti, en Limher; dit is hulle wat uitgegaan het met hulle manne om die kamp van die Amlikiete dop te hou.

23 En dit het gebeur dat hulle die volgende dag teruggekeer het na die kamp van die Nefiete met groot haas, en hulle was baie verbaas, en bevange met groot vrees, en het gesê:

24 Kyk, ons het die kamp van die Amlikiete gevolg, en tot ons groot verbasing, het ons in die land Minon, bokant die land Zarahemla, op pad na die land Nefi, 'n talryke leërskaare van die Lamaniete gesien; en kyk, die Amlikiete het by hulle aangesluit;

25 En hulle val ons broers aan in daardie land; en hulle vlug voor hulle uit met hulle kuddes, en hulle vroue, en hulle kinders, na ons stad toe; en tensy ons gou maak, sal hulle besit neem van ons stad, en ons vaders, en ons vroue, en ons kinders sal gedood word.

26 En dit het gebeur dat die volk van Nefi hulle tente geneem het, en vertrek het uit die vallei van Gideon na hulle stad toe, wat die stad Zarahemla was.

27 En kyk, terwyl hulle die Sidon-rivier oorsteek, het die Lamaniete en die Amlikiete, wat byna so talryk was, as't ware soos die sand van die see, hulle aangeval om hulle te vernietig.

28 Nogtans, die Nefiete was versterk deur die hand van die Here, en hulle het kragtig gebid tot Hom dat Hy hulle sou verlos uit die hande van hulle vyande, daarom het die Here hulle geroep gehoor, en hulle versterk, en die Lamaniete en die Amlikiete het geval voor hulle.

And it came to pass that when Alma could pursue the Amlicites no longer he caused that his people should pitch their tents in the valley of Gideon, the valley being called after that Gideon who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword; and in this valley the Nephites did pitch their tents for the night.

And Alma sent spies to follow the remnant of the Amlicites, that he might know of their plans and their plots, whereby he might guard himself against them, that he might preserve his people from being destroyed.

Now those whom he had sent out to watch the camp of the Amlicites were called Zeram, and Amnor, and Manti, and Limher; these were they who went out with their men to watch the camp of the Amlicites.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they returned into the camp of the Nephites in great haste, being greatly astonished, and struck with much fear, saying:

Behold, we followed the camp of the Amlicites, and to our great astonishment, in the land of Minon, above the land of Zarahemla, in the course of the land of Nephi, we saw a numerous host of the Lamanites; and behold, the Amlicites have joined them;

And they are upon our brethren in that land; and they are fleeing before them with their flocks, and their wives, and their children, towards our city; and except we make haste they obtain possession of our city, and our fathers, and our wives, and our children be slain.

And it came to pass that the people of Nephi took their tents, and departed out of the valley of Gideon towards their city, which was the city of Zarahemla.

And behold, as they were crossing the river Sidon, the Lamanites and the Amlicites, being as numerous almost, as it were, as the sands of the sea, came upon them to destroy them.

Nevertheless, the Nephites being strengthened by the hand of the Lord, having prayed mightily to him that he would deliver them out of the hands of their enemies, therefore the Lord did hear their cries, and did strengthen them, and the Lamanites and the Amlicites did fall before them.

29 En dit het gebeur dat Alma met Amliki geveg het met die swaard, van aangesig tot aangesig; en hulle het geweldig geveg, die een met die ander.

30 En dit het gebeur dat Alma, omdat hy 'n man van God was, en omdat hy deur veel geloof gedryf is, uitgeroep, en gesê het: O Here, wees barmhartig en spaar my lewe, sodat ek 'n werktuig mag wees in u hande om hierdie volk te red en te bewaar.

31 Nou toe Alma hierdie woorde gesê het, het hy weer teen Amliki geveg; en hy is versterk, in so 'n mate dat hy Amliki gedood het met die swaard.

32 En hy het ook geveg met die koning van die Lamaniete; maar die koning van die Lamaniete het teruggevlug voor Alma uit en het sy wagte gestuur om teen Alma te veg.

33 Maar Alma, met sy wagte, het teen die wagte van die koning van die Lamaniete geveg totdat hy hulle verslaan en teruggedryf het.

34 En so het hy die grond opgeruim, of eerder die wal, wat aan die westekant van die Sidon-rivier was, en die liggame van die Lamaniete wat gedood is, in die waters van Sidon gewerp, sodat sy volk daardeur plek mag hê om oor te steek en te veg met die Lamaniete en die Amlikiete aan die westekant van die Sidon-rivier.

35 En dit het gebeur dat toe hulle almal die Sidon-rivier oorgesteek het, het die Lamaniete en die Amlikiete voor hulle begin vlug, niteenstaande hulle so talryk was dat hulle nie getel kon word nie.

36 En hulle het gevlug voor die Nefiete na die wildernis wat wes en noord was, weg, oorkant die grense van die land; en die Nefiete het hulle agtervolg met hulle mag, en hulle gedood.

37 Ja, hulle is teengegaan aan elke kant, en gedood en verdrywe, totdat hulle verstrooi was aan die westekant, en aan die noordekant, totdat hulle die wildernis bereik het, wat Hermounts genoem was; en dit was daardie deel van die wildernis wat vervuil was van wilde en vraatsugtige diere.

38 En dit het gebeur dat baie dood is in die wildernis aan hulle wonde, en is opgevrete deur daardie diere, en ook die aasvoëls van die lug; en hulle beendere is gevind, en is opgehoop op die aarde.

And it came to pass that Alma fought with Amlici with the sword, face to face; and they did contend mightily, one with another.

And it came to pass that Alma, being a man of God, being exercised with much faith, cried, saying: O Lord, have mercy and spare my life, that I may be an instrument in thy hands to save and preserve this people.

Now when Alma had said these words he contended again with Amlici; and he was strengthened, insomuch that he slew Amlici with the sword.

And he also contended with the king of the Lamanites; but the king of the Lamanites fled back from before Alma and sent his guards to contend with Alma.

But Alma, with his guards, contended with the guards of the king of the Lamanites until he slew and drove them back.

And thus he cleared the ground, or rather the bank, which was on the west of the river Sidon, throwing the bodies of the Lamanites who had been slain into the waters of Sidon, that thereby his people might have room to cross and contend with the Lamanites and the Amlicites on the west side of the river Sidon.

And it came to pass that when they had all crossed the river Sidon that the Lamanites and the Amlicites began to flee before them, notwithstanding they were so numerous that they could not be numbered.

And they fled before the Nephites towards the wilderness which was west and north, away beyond the borders of the land; and the Nephites did pursue them with their might, and did slay them.

Yea, they were met on every hand, and slain and driven, until they were scattered on the west, and on the north, until they had reached the wilderness, which was called Hermounts; and it was that part of the wilderness which was infested by wild and ravenous beasts.

And it came to pass that many died in the wilderness of their wounds, and were devoured by those beasts and also the vultures of the air; and their bones have been found, and have been heaped up on the earth.

Alma 3

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat die Nefiete wat nie gedood is deur die wapens van oorlog nie, nadat hulle diegene begrawe het wat gedood is—nou is die getal van die gesneuweldes nie getel nie, vanweë die grootheid van hulle getal—nadat hulle klaar hul dooies begrawe het, het hulle almal teruggekeer na hul landerye, en na hul huise, en hul vroue, en hul kinders.
- 2 Nou, baie vroue en kinders is gedood deur die swaard, en ook baie van hul kleinvee en grootvee; en ook baie van hul velde van graan is vernietig, want hulle is vertrap deur die leërskaare van manskappe.
- 3 En nou is soveel van die Lamaniete en Amlikiete wat gedood is op die wal van die Sidon-rivier, in die waters van Sidon gewerp; en kyk, hulle beendere is in die dieptes van die see, en hulle is baie.
- 4 En die Amlikiete is onderskei van die Nefiete, want hulle het hulself gemerk met rooi op hulle voorhoofde, volgens die wyse van die Lamaniete; nietemin het hulle nie hul hoofde geskeer soos die Lamaniete nie.
- 5 Nou, die hoofde van die Lamaniete was geskeer; en hulle was naak, behalwe vir vel wat om hulle lendene gegord was, en ook hulle wapenrusting, wat om hulle gebind was, en hulle boë, en hulle pyle, en hulle klippe, en hulle slingers, ensovoorts.
- 6 En die velle van die Lamaniete was donker, volgens die merk wat geplaas is op hulle vaders, wat 'n vloek was op hulle vanweë hul oortreding en hul rebellie teen hul broers, wat bestaan het uit Nefi, Jakob, en Josef, en Sam, wat regverdige en heilige manne was.
- 7 En hul broers het gesoek om hulle te vernietig, daarom is hulle vervloek; en die Here God het 'n merk op hulle geplaas, ja, op Laman en Lemuel, en ook die seuns van Ismael, en Ismaelitiese vroue.
- 8 En dit is gedoen dat hulle saad onderskei mag word van die saad van hulle broers, dat die Here God daardeur sy volk mag bewaar, dat hulle nie vermeng en in onjuiste oorleweringe glo nie, wat hul vernietiging sou beteken.

Alma 3

And it came to pass that the Nephites who were not slain by the weapons of war, after having buried those who had been slain—now the number of the slain were not numbered, because of the greatness of their number—after they had finished burying their dead they all returned to their lands, and to their houses, and their wives, and their children.

Now many women and children had been slain with the sword, and also many of their flocks and their herds; and also many of their fields of grain were destroyed, for they were trodden down by the hosts of men.

And now as many of the Lamanites and the Amlicites who had been slain upon the bank of the river Sidon were cast into the waters of Sidon; and behold their bones are in the depths of the sea, and they are many.

And the Amlicites were distinguished from the Nephites, for they had marked themselves with red in their foreheads after the manner of the Lamanites; nevertheless they had not shorn their heads like unto the Lamanites.

Now the heads of the Lamanites were shorn; and they were naked, save it were skin which was girded about their loins, and also their armor, which was girded about them, and their bows, and their arrows, and their stones, and their slings, and so forth.

And the skins of the Lamanites were dark, according to the mark which was set upon their fathers, which was a curse upon them because of their transgression and their rebellion against their brethren, who consisted of Nephi, Jacob, and Joseph, and Sam, who were just and holy men.

And their brethren sought to destroy them, therefore they were cursed; and the Lord God set a mark upon them, yea, upon Laman and Lemuel, and also the sons of Ishmael, and Ishmaelitish women.

And this was done that their seed might be distinguished from the seed of their brethren, that thereby the Lord God might preserve his people, that they might not mix and believe in incorrect traditions which would prove their destruction.

- 9 En dit het gebeur dat wie ook al sy saad vermeng het met dié van die Lamaniete, het dieselfde vloek op sy saad gebring.
- 10 Daarom, wie ook al hom laat weglei het deur die Lamaniete, is by daardie hoof genoem, en daar is 'n merk op hom geplaas.
- 11 En dit het gebeur dat wie ook al nie in die oorlewing van die Lamaniete wou glo nie, maar daardie kronieke geglo het wat gebring is uit die land Jerusalem, en ook die oorlewering van hul vaders, wat juis was, wat geglo het in die geboorte van God en hulle onderhou het, is genoem die Nefiete, of die volk van Nefi, van daardie tyd af aan—
- 12 En dit is hulle wat die kronieke wat waar is van hulle volk bygehou het, en ook van die volk van die Lamaniete.
- 13 Nou sal ons weer terugkeer na die Amliciete, want daar is ook 'n merk geplaas op hulle; ja, hulle het die merk op hulleself geplaas, ja, en wel 'n rooi merk op hul voorhoofde.
- 14 So is die woord van God vervul, want hierdie is die woorde wat Hy gesê het aan Nefi: Kyk, die Lamaniete het Ek vervloek, en Ek sal 'n merk op hulle plaas sodat hulle en hulle saad geskei mag word van jou en jou saad, van nou af en vir ewig, tensy hulle bekeer van hul boosheid en tot My keer sodat Ek barmhartigheid kan hê jeens hulle.
- 15 En verder: Ek sal 'n merk op hom plaas wat sy saad vermeng met jou broers, sodat hulle ook vervloek mag wees.
- 16 En verder: Ek sal 'n merk plaas op hom wat veg teen jou en teen jou saad.
- 17 En verder, Ek sê dat hy wat van jou af weggaan, sal nie meer jou saad genoem word nie; en Ek sal jou seën, en wie ook al jou saad genoem sal word, van nou af en vir ewig; en dit was die beloftes van die Here teenoor Nefi en aan sy saad.
- 18 Nou, die Amliciete het nie geweet dat hulle die woorde van God vervul het toe hulle hulself op hul voorhoofde begin merk het nie; nogtans het hulle openlik gerebelleer teen God, daarom was dit noodsaaklik dat die vloek op hulle sou val.

And it came to pass that whosoever did mingle his seed with that of the Lamanites did bring the same curse upon his seed.

Therefore, whosoever suffered himself to be led away by the Lamanites was called under that head, and there was a mark set upon him.

And it came to pass that whosoever would not believe in the tradition of the Lamanites, but believed those records which were brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and also in the tradition of their fathers, which were correct, who believed in the commandments of God and kept them, were called the Nephites, or the people of Nephi, from that time forth—

And it is they who have kept the records which are true of their people, and also of the people of the Lamanites.

Now we will return again to the Amlicites, for they also had a mark set upon them; yea, they set the mark upon themselves, yea, even a mark of red upon their foreheads.

Thus the word of God is fulfilled, for these are the words which he said to Nephi: Behold, the Lamanites have I cursed, and I will set a mark on them that they and their seed may be separated from thee and thy seed, from this time henceforth and forever, except they repent of their wickedness and turn to me that I may have mercy upon them.

And again: I will set a mark upon him that mingleth his seed with thy brethren, that they may be cursed also.

And again: I will set a mark upon him that fighteth against thee and thy seed.

And again, I say he that departeth from thee shall no more be called thy seed; and I will bless thee, and whomsoever shall be called thy seed, henceforth and forever; and these were the promises of the Lord unto Nephi and to his seed.

Now the Amlicites knew not that they were fulfilling the words of God when they began to mark themselves in their foreheads; nevertheless they had come out in open rebellion against God; therefore it was expedient that the curse should fall upon them.

- 19 Nou wil ek hê dat julle moet sien dat hulle die vloek oor hulself gebring het; en net so bring elke man wat vervloek is sy eie veroordeling oor homself.
- 20 Nou, dit het gebeur dat nie baie dae na die slag wat in die land Zarahemla geveg is deur die Lamaniete en die Amlikiete nie, het daar nog 'n leër van die Lamaniete ingekom op die volk van Nepi op dieselfde plek waar die eerste leër die Amlikiete ontmoet het.
- 21 En dit het gebeur dat daar 'n leër gestuur is om hulle te verdrywe uit hul land.
- 22 Nou het Alma self, omdat hy 'n wond opgedoen het, nie hierdie keer in die stryd opgegaan om teen die Lamaniete te veg nie;
- 23 Maar hy het 'n talryke leër teen hulle opgestuur; en hulle het opgegaan en baie van die Lamaniete gedood, en die oorblywendes van hulle verjaag uit die grense van hulle land.
- 24 En toe het hulle weer teruggekeer en begin om vrede te vestig in die land, en hulle was vir 'n tydperk nie meer gepla deur hulle vyande nie.
- 25 Nou, al hierdie dinge is gedoen, ja, al hierdie oorloë en twistes is begin en beëindig in die vyfde jaar van die heerskappy van die regters.
- 26 En in een jaar is duisende en tienduisende siele gestuur na die ewige wêreld, sodat hulle hul loon mag maai volgens hul werke, of hulle goed of hulle sleg was, om ewige geluk te maai of ewige ellende, volgens die gees wat hulle gekies het om te gehoorsaam, of dit 'n goeie gees was of 'n bose een.
- 27 Want elke mens ontvang lone van hom wat hy kies om te gehoorsaam, en dit volgens die woorde van die gees van profesie; daarom, laat dit wees volgens die waarheid. En so eindig die vyfde jaar van die heerskappy van die regters.

Now I would that ye should see that they brought upon themselves the curse; and even so doth every man that is cursed bring upon himself his own condemnation.

Now it came to pass that not many days after the battle which was fought in the land of Zarahemla, by the Lamanites and the Amlicites, that there was another army of the Lamanites came in upon the people of Nephi, in the same place where the first army met the Amlicites.

And it came to pass that there was an army sent to drive them out of their land.

Now Alma himself being afflicted with a wound did not go up to battle at this time against the Lamanites;

But he sent up a numerous army against them; and they went up and slew many of the Lamanites, and drove the remainder of them out of the borders of their land.

And then they returned again and began to establish peace in the land, being troubled no more for a time with their enemies.

Now all these things were done, yea, all these wars and contentions were commenced and ended in the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

And in one year were thousands and tens of thousands of souls sent to the eternal world, that they might reap their rewards according to their works, whether they were good or whether they were bad, to reap eternal happiness or eternal misery, according to the spirit which they listed to obey, whether it be a good spirit or a bad one.

For every man receiveth wages of him whom he listeth to obey, and this according to the words of the spirit of prophecy; therefore let it be according to the truth. And thus endeth the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

Alma 4

- 1 Nou, dit het gebeur in die sesde jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi, was daar geen twiste nóg oorloë in die land Zarahemla.
- 2 Maar die volk was gekwel, ja, grootliks gekwel vanweë die verlies van hulle broers, en ook oor die verlies van hulle kleinvee en grootvee, en ook oor die verlies van hulle landerye van graan, wat vertrap is onder die voete van die Lamaniete en vernietig is.
- 3 En so groot was hulle verdrukkinge dat elke siel rede gehad het om te treur; en hulle het geglo dat dit die oordele van God was wat gestuur is oor hulle vanweë hulle boosheid en hulle gruwels; daarom is hulle opgewek tot 'n herinnering van hulle plig.
- 4 En hulle het begin om die kerk meer volledig te vestig; ja, en baie is gedoop in die waters van Sidon en is toegevoeg tot die kerk van God; ja, hulle is gedoop deur die hand van Alma, wat geordineer was as die hoëpriester oor die volk van die kerk, deur die hand van sy vader Alma.
- 5 En dit het gebeur in die sewende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters dat daar omtrent drieduisend vyfhonderd siele was wat hulleself verenig het met die kerk van God en gedoop is. En so het die sewende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi geëindig; en daar was voortdurende vrede in al daardie tyd.
- 6 En dit het gebeur in die agtste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters, dat die volk van die kerk hoogmoedig begin word het, vanweë hulle uitermate rykdom, en hulle fyn sy, en hulle fyngeweefde linne, en vanweë hulle baie kleinvee en grootvee, en hulle goud en hulle silwer, en allerlei kosbare dinge, wat hulle verkry het deur hul vlyt; en in al hierdie dinge is hulle verhef in die hoogmoed van hulle oë, want hulle het begin om baie kosbare kleding te dra.
- 7 Nou was dit die oorsaak van baie kwellinge vir Alma, ja, en vir baie van die mense vir wie Alma geordineer het om leraars, en priesters, en ouderlinge oor die kerk te wees; ja, baie van hulle was diep bedroef oor die boosheid wat hulle gesien begin ontstaan het onder hulle volk.

Alma 4

Now it came to pass in the sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were no contentions nor wars in the land of Zarahemla;

But the people were afflicted, yea, greatly afflicted for the loss of their brethren, and also for the loss of their flocks and herds, and also for the loss of their fields of grain, which were trodden under foot and destroyed by the Lamanites.

And so great were their afflictions that every soul had cause to mourn; and they believed that it was the judgments of God sent upon them because of their wickedness and their abominations; therefore they were awakened to a remembrance of their duty.

And they began to establish the church more fully; yea, and many were baptized in the waters of Sidon and were joined to the church of God; yea, they were baptized by the hand of Alma, who had been consecrated the high priest over the people of the church, by the hand of his father Alma.

And it came to pass in the seventh year of the reign of the judges there were about three thousand five hundred souls that united themselves to the church of God and were baptized. And thus ended the seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and there was continual peace in all that time.

And it came to pass in the eighth year of the reign of the judges, that the people of the church began to wax proud, because of their exceeding riches, and their fine silks, and their fine-twined linen, and because of their many flocks and herds, and their gold and their silver, and all manner of precious things, which they had obtained by their industry; and in all these things were they lifted up in the pride of their eyes, for they began to wear very costly apparel.

Now this was the cause of much affliction to Alma, yea, and to many of the people whom Alma had consecrated to be teachers, and priests, and elders over the church; yea, many of them were sorely grieved for the wickedness which they saw had begun to be among their people.

- 8 Want hulle het gesien en met groot smart aanskou dat die volk van die kerk begin het om verhef te word in die hoogmoed van hulle oë, en om hulle harte te rig op rykdom, en op die ydele dinge van die wêreld, sodat hulle minagend geword het, die een teenoor die ander, en hulle het begin om diegene te vervolg wat nie geglo het volgens hulle eie wil en behae nie.
- 9 En so, in hierdie agtste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters, het daar groot twiste begin ontstaan onder die volk van die kerk; ja, daar was naywer, en onenigheid, en kwaadwilligheid, en vervolginge, en hoogmoed, en selfs om die hoogmoed te oortref van diegene wat nie aan die kerk van God behoort het nie.
- 10 En so het die agtste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters geëindig; en die boosheid van die kerk was 'n groot struikelblok vir diegene wat nie behoort het aan die kerk nie; en so het die kerk begin faal in sy vordering.
- 11 En dit het gebeur aan die begin van die negende jaar het Alma die boosheid van die kerk gesien, en hy het ook gesien dat die voorbeeld van die kerk begin het om diegene wat ongelowiges was, van een ongeregtigheid te lei na 'n ander, en sodoende die vernietiging van die volk meegebring het.
- 12 Ja, hy het groot ongelykheid gesien onder die volk; sommige wat hulleself verhef het in hul hoogmoed, en ander verag, en hul rûe keer op die behoefdiges en die naaktes en diegene wat honger was, en diegene wat dors was, en diegene wat siek en gekwel was.
- 13 Nou was dit 'n groot oorsaak van geklaag onder die volk, terwyl ander hulle verootmoedig het, en diegene bygestaan het wat hul bystand nodig gehad het, soos om hulle besittings te deel met die armes en behoefdiges, die hongeres te voed, en allerlei verdrukkinge te ly, om Christus ontwil, wat sou kom volgens die gees van profesie;
- 14 Hulle het vooruitgesien na daardie dag, en sodoende vergifnis van hulle sondes behou; en hulle was vervul met groot vreugde vanweë die opstanding van die dode, volgens die wil en krag en verlossing van Jesus Christus van die bande van die dood.

For they saw and beheld with great sorrow that the people of the church began to be lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and to set their hearts upon riches and upon the vain things of the world, that they began to be scornful, one towards another, and they began to persecute those that did not believe according to their own will and pleasure.

And thus, in this eighth year of the reign of the judges, there began to be great contentions among the people of the church; yea, there were envyings, and strife, and malice, and persecutions, and pride, even to exceed the pride of those who did not belong to the church of God.

And thus ended the eighth year of the reign of the judges; and the wickedness of the church was a great stumbling-block to those who did not belong to the church; and thus the church began to fail in its progress.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the ninth year, Alma saw the wickedness of the church, and he saw also that the example of the church began to lead those who were unbelievers on from one piece of iniquity to another, thus bringing on the destruction of the people.

Yea, he saw great inequality among the people, some lifting themselves up with their pride, despising others, turning their backs upon the needy and the naked and those who were hungry, and those who were athirst, and those who were sick and afflicted.

Now this was a great cause for lamentations among the people, while others were abasing themselves, succoring those who stood in need of their succor, such as imparting their substance to the poor and the needy, feeding the hungry, and suffering all manner of afflictions, for Christ's sake, who should come according to the spirit of prophecy;

Looking forward to that day, thus retaining a remission of their sins; being filled with great joy because of the resurrection of the dead, according to the will and power and deliverance of Jesus Christ from the bands of death.

- 15 En nou, dit het gebeur dat Alma, omdat hy die verdrukkinge gesien het van die nederige volgelinge van God, en die vervolginge wat op hulle gelê is deur die oorblywendes van sy volk, en omdat hy al hulle ongelykheid gesien het, begin het om baie bedroef te word; nietemin het die Gees van die Here hom nie gefaal nie.
- 16 En hy het 'n wyse man gekies wat onder die ouderlinge van die kerk was, en hom mag gegee volgens die stem van die volk, dat hy mag kon hê om wette te maak, volgens die wette wat gegee was, en hulle uit te voer volgens die boosheid en die misdade van die volk.
- 17 Nou, hierdie man se naam was Nefiha, en hy is aangestel as hoofregter, en hy het in die regterstoel gesit om te oordeel en die volk te regeer.
- 18 Nou het Alma nie aan hom die amp van hoëpriester oor die kerk gegee nie, maar hy het die amp van hoëpriester behou vir homself; maar hy het die regterstoel aan Nefiha gegee.
- 19 En dit het hy gedoen dat hy onder sy volk mag uitgaan, of onder die volk van Nepi, dat hy die woord van God aan hulle mag preek, om hulle aan te spoor tot herinnering van hulle plig, en dat hy deur die woord van God, al die hoogmoed en listigheid en al die twiste wat onder sy volk was, kon beeindig, aangesien hy geen manier gesien het om hulle te herwin anders as om met suiwere getuienis teen hulle neer te kom nie.
- 20 En so aan die begin van die negende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nepi, het Alma die regterstoel oorgegee aan Nefiha, en homself heeltemal gewy aan die hoëpriesterskap van die heilige orde van God, tot die getuienis van die woord, volgens die gees van openbaring en profesie.

And now it came to pass that Alma, having seen the afflictions of the humble followers of God, and the persecutions which were heaped upon them by the remainder of his people, and seeing all their inequality, began to be very sorrowful; nevertheless the Spirit of the Lord did not fail him.

And he selected a wise man who was among the elders of the church, and gave him power according to the voice of the people, that he might have power to enact laws according to the laws which had been given, and to put them in force according to the wickedness and the crimes of the people.

Now this man's name was Nephiah, and he was appointed chief judge; and he sat in the judgment-seat to judge and to govern the people.

Now Alma did not grant unto him the office of being high priest over the church, but he retained the office of high priest unto himself; but he delivered the judgment-seat unto Nephiah.

And this he did that he himself might go forth among his people, or among the people of Nephi, that he might preach the word of God unto them, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty, and that he might pull down, by the word of God, all the pride and craftiness and all the contentions which were among his people, seeing no way that he might reclaim them save it were in bearing down in pure testimony against them.

And thus in the commencement of the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Alma delivered up the judgment-seat to Nephiah, and confined himself wholly to the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to the testimony of the word, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy.

Die woorde wat Alma, die Hoëpriester volgens die heilige orde van God, aan die volk verkondig het in hulle stede en gebugte dwarsdeur die land.

Alma 5

- 1 Nou dit het gebeur dat Alma begin het om die woord van God te verkondig aan die volk, eers in die land Zarahemla, en daarvandaan dwarsdeur die hele land.
- 2 En dit is die woorde wat hy gespreek het met die volk in die kerk wat gevestig was in die stad Zarahemla, volgens sy eie kroniek, wat sê:
 - 3 Ek, Alma, wat geordineer is deur my vader Alma, om 'n hoëpriester te wees oor die kerk van God, omdat hy mag en gesag gehad het van God om hierdie dinge te doen, kyk, ek sê vir julle dat hy begin het om 'n kerk te vestig in die land wat binne die grense was van Nefi; ja, die land wat die land Mormon genoem is; ja, en hy het sy broers gedoop in die waters van Mormon.
 - 4 En kyk, ek sê vir julle, hulle is verlos uit die hande van die volk van koning Noag, deur die barmhartigheid en krag van God.
 - 5 En kyk, daarna is hulle in slawerny gebring deur die hande van die Lamaniëte in die wildernis; ja, ek sê vir julle, hulle was in slawerny, en weer het die Here hulle uit slawerny verlos deur die krag van sy woord; en ons is in hierdie land ingebring, en hier het ons begin om die kerk van God te vestig, dwarsdeur hierdie land.
 - 6 En nou kyk, ek sê vir julle, my broers, julle wat aan hierdie kerk behoort, het julle die gevangenskap van julle vaders voldoende in herinnering gehou? Ja, en het julle voldoende in herinnering gehou sy barmhartigheid en lankmoedigheid teenoor hulle? En weer eens, het julle voldoende in herinnering gehou dat Hy hulle siele verlos het van die hel?

The words which Alma, the High Priest according to the holy order of God, delivered to the people in their cities and villages throughout the land.

Alma 5

Now it came to pass that Alma began to deliver the word of God unto the people, first in the land of Zarahemla, and from thence throughout all the land.

And these are the words which he spake to the people in the church which was established in the city of Zarahemla, according to his own record, saying:

I, Alma, having been consecrated by my father, Alma, to be a high priest over the church of God, he having power and authority from God to do these things, behold, I say unto you that he began to establish a church in the land which was in the borders of Nephi; yea, the land which was called the land of Mormon; yea, and he did baptize his brethren in the waters of Mormon.

And behold, I say unto you, they were delivered out of the hands of the people of king Noah, by the mercy and power of God.

And behold, after that, they were brought into bondage by the hands of the Lamanites in the wilderness; yea, I say unto you, they were in captivity, and again the Lord did deliver them out of bondage by the power of his word; and we were brought into this land, and here we began to establish the church of God throughout this land also.

And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, you that belong to this church, have you sufficiently retained in remembrance the captivity of your fathers? Yea, and have you sufficiently retained in remembrance his mercy and long-suffering towards them? And moreover, have ye sufficiently retained in remembrance that he has delivered their souls from hell?

- 7 Kyk, Hy het hulle harte verander; ja, Hy het hulle gewek uit 'n diepe slaap, en hulle het ontwaak tot God. Kyk, hulle was in die midde van die duisternis; nogtans, hulle siele was verlig deur die lig van die ewigdurende woord; ja, hulle is omknel deur die bande van die dood, en die kettings van die hel, en 'n ewigdurende verderf het gewag op hulle.
- 8 En nou vra ek vir julle, my broers, is hulle vernietig? Kyk, ek sê vir julle, Nee, hulle is nie.
- 9 En weer vra ek, is die bande van die dood verbreek, en die kettings van die hel wat hulle omring het, is hulle losgemaak? Ek sê vir julle, Ja, hulle is losgemaak, en hulle siele het geswel, en hulle het verlossende liefde gesing. En ek sê vir julle dat hulle gered is.
- 10 En nou vra ek vir julle op watter voorwaardes is hulle verlos? Ja, watter gronde het hulle gehad om te hoop op heil? Wat is die rede dat hulle losgemaak is van die bande van die dood, ja, en ook die kettings van die hel?
- 11 Kyk, ek kan julle sê—het my vader Alma nie geglo in die woorde wat deur die mond van Abinadi gespreek is nie? En was hy nie 'n heilige profeet nie? Het hy nie die woorde van God gespreek nie, en my vader Alma hulle nie geglo nie?
- 12 En volgens sy geloof is daar 'n diepgaande verandering in sy hart teweeggebring. Kyk, ek sê vir julle dat dit alles waar is.
- 13 En kyk, hy het die woord aan julle vaders gepreek, en 'n diepgaande verandering is ook in hulle harte teweeggebring, en hulle het hulself verootmoedig en hulle vertrouwe gestel in die ware en lewende God. En kyk, hulle was getrou tot die einde; daarom is hulle gered.
- 14 En nou kyk, ek vra vir julle, my broers van die kerk, is julle geestelik uit God gebore? Het julle sy beeld ontvang op julle aangesigte? Het julle hierdie geweldige verandering ondervind in julle harte?
- 15 Beoefen julle geloof in die verlossing van Hom wat julle geskape het? Kyk julle vorentoe met 'n oog van geloof, en beskou hierdie sterflike liggaam wat in onsterflikheid opgewek word, en hierdie verganklikheid wat in onverganklikheid opgewek word, om te staan voor God om geoordeel te word volgens die dae wat gepleeg is in die sterflike liggaam?

Behold, he changed their hearts; yea, he awakened them out of a deep sleep, and they awoke unto God. Behold, they were in the midst of darkness; nevertheless, their souls were illuminated by the light of the everlasting word; yea, they were encircled about by the bands of death, and the chains of hell, and an everlasting destruction did await them.

And now I ask of you, my brethren, were they destroyed? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, they were not.

And again I ask, were the bands of death broken, and the chains of hell which encircled them about, were they loosed? I say unto you, Yea, they were loosed, and their souls did expand, and they did sing redeeming love. And I say unto you that they are saved.

And now I ask of you on what conditions are they saved? Yea, what grounds had they to hope for salvation? What is the cause of their being loosed from the bands of death, yea, and also the chains of hell?

Behold, I can tell you—did not my father Alma believe in the words which were delivered by the mouth of Abinadi? And was he not a holy prophet? Did he not speak the words of God, and my father Alma believe them?

And according to his faith there was a mighty change wrought in his heart. Behold I say unto you that this is all true.

And behold, he preached the word unto your fathers, and a mighty change was also wrought in their hearts, and they humbled themselves and put their trust in the true and living God. And behold, they were faithful until the end; therefore they were saved.

And now behold, I ask of you, my brethren of the church, have ye spiritually been born of God? Have ye received his image in your countenances? Have ye experienced this mighty change in your hearts?

Do ye exercise faith in the redemption of him who created you? Do you look forward with an eye of faith, and view this mortal body raised in immortality, and this corruption raised in incorruption, to stand before God to be judged according to the deeds which have been done in the mortal body?

- 16 Ek sê vir julle, kan julle jul verbeel dat julle die stem van die Here hoor, wat vir julle op daardie dag sê: Kom na My toe julle geseëndes, want kyk, julle werke was die werke van regverdigheid op die aangesig van die aarde?
- 17 Of verbeel julle vir julleself dat julle vir die Here kan lieg op daardie dag, en sê—Here, ons werke was regverdige werke op die aangesig van die aarde—en dat Hy julle sal red?
- 18 Of anders, kan julle juisself verbeel hoe julle voor die regterstoel van God gebring word met julle siele gevul met skuld en berou, terwyl julle al julle skuld in herinnering hou, ja, 'n volkome herinnering het van al julle boosheid, ja, 'n herinnering dat julle die gebooie van God verontagsaam het?
- 19 Ek sê vir julle, kan julle op daardie dag opkyk na God met 'n suiwer hart en rein hande? Ek sê vir julle, kan julle opkyk, met die beeld van God gegraveer op julle aangesigte?
- 20 Ek sê vir julle, kan julle dink om gered te word as julle juisself oorgegee het om onderdane te word van die duiwel?
- 21 Ek sê vir julle, julle sal op daardie dag weet dat julle nie gered kan word nie; want daar kan geen mens gered word behalwe as sy kleding wit gewas is nie; ja, sy kleding moet gereinig word totdat dit gesuiwer is van alle vlekke, deur die bloed van Hom van wie dit gespreek is deur ons vaders, wat sal kom om sy volk van hulle sondes te verlos.
- 22 En nou vra ek vir julle, my broers, hoe sal enigeen van julle voel, as julle voor die regbank van God sal staan, met julle kleding bevlek met bloed en alle soorte vieslikheid? Kyk, wat sal hierdie dinge getuig teen julle?
- 23 Kyk, sal hulle nie getuig dat julle moordenaars is, ja, en ook dat julle skuldig is aan allerlei booshede nie?
- 24 Kyk, my broers, veronderstel julle dat so een 'n plek kan hê om te gaan sit in die koninkryk van God, met Abraham, met Isak, en met Jakob, en ook al die heilige profete, wie se kleding gereinig is, en vlekkeloos, suiwer en wit is?

I say unto you, can you imagine to yourselves that ye hear the voice of the Lord, saying unto you, in that day: Come unto me ye blessed, for behold, your works have been the works of righteousness upon the face of the earth?

Or do ye imagine to yourselves that ye can lie unto the Lord in that day, and say—Lord, our works have been righteous works upon the face of the earth—and that he will save you?

Or otherwise, can ye imagine yourselves brought before the tribunal of God with your souls filled with guilt and remorse, having a remembrance of all your guilt, yea, a perfect remembrance of all your wickedness, yea, a remembrance that ye have set at defiance the commandments of God?

I say unto you, can ye look up to God at that day with a pure heart and clean hands? I say unto you, can you look up, having the image of God engraven upon your countenances?

I say unto you, can ye think of being saved when you have yielded yourselves to become subjects to the devil?

I say unto you, ye will know at that day that ye cannot be saved; for there can no man be saved except his garments are washed white; yea, his garments must be purified until they are cleansed from all stain, through the blood of him of whom it has been spoken by our fathers, who should come to redeem his people from their sins.

And now I ask of you, my brethren, how will any of you feel, if ye shall stand before the bar of God, having your garments stained with blood and all manner of filthiness? Behold, what will these things testify against you?

Behold will they not testify that ye are murderers, yea, and also that ye are guilty of all manner of wickedness?

Behold, my brethren, do ye suppose that such an one can have a place to sit down in the kingdom of God, with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob, and also all the holy prophets, whose garments are cleansed and are spotless, pure and white?

25 Ek sê vir julle, Nee; tensy julle ons Skepper 'n leuenaar van die begin af maak, of veronderstel dat Hy 'n leuenaar is van die begin af, julle kan nie veronderstel dat sulkes plek kan hê in die koninkryk van die hemel nie; maar hulle sal uitgewerp word, want hulle is die kinders van die koninkryk van die duiwel.

26 En nou kyk, ek sê vir julle, my broers, as julle 'n verandering van hart ondergaan het, en as julle gevoel het om die lied te sing van verlossende liefde, sal ek vra, kan julle nou so voel?

27 Het julle gewandel, en juisself onberispelik voor God gehou? Kon julle sê, as julle geroep sou word om te sterwe in hierdie tyd, in juisself, dat julle voldoende nederig was? Dat julle kleding gereinig is en wit gemaak is deur die bloed van Christus, wat sal kom om sy volk te verlos van hulle sondes?

28 Kyk, is julle gestroop van hoogmoed? Ek sê vir julle, as julle nie is nie, is julle nie voorberei om God te ontmoet nie. Kyk, julle moet gou voorberei; want die koninkryk van die hemel is spoedig op hande, en so een het nie die ewige lewe nie.

29 Kyk, ek sê, is daar een onder julle wat nie gestroop is van afguns nie? Ek sê vir julle dat so een nie voorbereid is nie; en ek wil hê dat hy gou moet voorberei, want die uur is dig op hande, en hy weet nie wanneer die tyd sal kom nie; want so een word nie skuldeloos bevind nie.

30 En verder sê ek aan julle, is daar een onder julle wat sy broer bespot, of wat vervolginge ophoop op hom?

31 Wee so een, want hy is nie voorbereid nie, en die tyd is op hande dat hy moet bekeer, of hy kan nie gered word nie!

32 Ja, en wel, wee al julle werkers van ongeregtigheid; bekeer, bekeer, want die Here God het dit gespreek!

33 Kyk, Hy stuur 'n uitnodiging aan alle mense, want die arms van barmhartigheid word na hulle uitgestrek, en Hy sê: Bekeer, en Ek sal julle ontvang.

34 Ja, Hy sê: Kom na my, en julle sal eet van die vrugte van die boom van die lewe; ja, julle sal vryelik eet en drink van die brood en die waters van die lewe.

I say unto you, Nay; except ye make our Creator a liar from the beginning, or suppose that he is a liar from the beginning, ye cannot suppose that such can have place in the kingdom of heaven; but they shall be cast out for they are the children of the kingdom of the devil.

And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, if ye have experienced a change of heart, and if ye have felt to sing the song of redeeming love, I would ask, can ye feel so now?

Have ye walked, keeping yourselves blameless before God? Could ye say, if ye were called to die at this time, within yourselves, that ye have been sufficiently humble? That your garments have been cleansed and made white through the blood of Christ, who will come to redeem his people from their sins?

Behold, are ye stripped of pride? I say unto you, if ye are not ye are not prepared to meet God. Behold ye must prepare quickly; for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand, and such an one hath not eternal life.

Behold, I say, is there one among you who is not stripped of envy? I say unto you that such an one is not prepared; and I would that he should prepare quickly, for the hour is close at hand, and he knoweth not when the time shall come; for such an one is not found guiltless.

And again I say unto you, is there one among you that doth make a mock of his brother, or that heapeth upon him persecutions?

Wo unto such an one, for he is not prepared, and the time is at hand that he must repent or he cannot be saved!

Yea, even wo unto all ye workers of iniquity; repent, repent, for the Lord God hath spoken it!

Behold, he sendeth an invitation unto all men, for the arms of mercy are extended towards them, and he saith: Repent, and I will receive you.

Yea, he saith: Come unto me and ye shall partake of the fruit of the tree of life; yea, ye shall eat and drink of the bread and the waters of life freely;

35 Ja, kom na my en bring voort werke van regverdigheid, en julle sal nie afgekap en in die vuur gewerp word nie—

36 Want kyk, die tyd is op hande dat wie ook al nie goeie vrugte voortbring nie, of wie ook al nie die werke van regverdigheid doen nie, het rede om te ween en te treur.

37 O julle werkers van ongeregtheid; julle wat opgeblase is met die ydele dinge van die wêreld, julle wat voorgegee het om die weë van regverdigheid te ken, nogtans afgedwaal het, soos skape wat nie 'n herder het nie, alhoewel 'n herder agter julle aange-roep het, en steeds agter julle aanroep, maar julle wil nie ag slaan op sy stem nie!

38 Kyk, ek sê vir julle, dat die goeie herder julle tog roep; ja, en in sy eie Naam roep Hy julle, wat die Naam van Christus is; en as julle nie sal ag slaan op die stem van die goeie herder nie, na die naam waar-by julle geroep word nie, kyk, julle is nie die skape van die goeie herder nie.

39 En nou as julle nie die skape van die goeie herder is nie, van watter kudde is julle? Kyk, ek sê vir julle, dat die duiwel julle herder is, en julle is van sy kudde; en nou, wie kan dit ontken? Kyk, ek sê vir julle, wie ook al dit ontken, is 'n leuenaar en 'n kind van die duiwel.

40 Want ek sê vir julle dat wat ook al goed is, kom van God, en wat ook al boos is, kom van die duiwel.

41 Daarom, as 'n man goeie werke voortbring, slaan hy ag op die stem van die goeie herder, en hy volg Hom; maar wie ook al bose werke voortbring, word 'n kind van die duiwel, want hy slaan ag op sy stem, en volg hom.

42 En wie ook al dit doen, moet sy loon van hom ontvang; daarom, as sy loon ontvang hy die dood, wat betref die dinge van regverdigheid, aangesien hy dood is vir alle goeie werke.

43 En nou, my broers, ek wil hê dat julle my moet hoor, want ek spreek uit die krag van my siel; want kyk, ek het duidelik met julle gespreek sodat julle nie kan misverstaan nie, of gespreek volgens die gebooi van God.

Yea, come unto me and bring forth works of righteousness, and ye shall not be hewn down and cast into the fire—

For behold, the time is at hand that whosoever bringeth forth not good fruit, or whosoever doeth not the works of righteousness, the same have cause to wail and mourn.

O ye workers of iniquity; ye that are puffed up in the vain things of the world, ye that have professed to have known the ways of righteousness nevertheless have gone astray, as sheep having no shepherd, notwithstanding a shepherd hath called after you and is still calling after you, but ye will not hearken unto his voice!

Behold, I say unto you, that the good shepherd doth call you; yea, and in his own name he doth call you, which is the name of Christ; and if ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd, to the name by which ye are called, behold, ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd.

And now if ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd, of what fold are ye? Behold, I say unto you, that the devil is your shepherd, and ye are of his fold; and now, who can deny this? Behold, I say unto you, whosoever denieth this is a liar and a child of the devil.

For I say unto you that whatsoever is good cometh from God, and whatsoever is evil cometh from the devil.

Therefore, if a man bringeth forth good works he hearkeneth unto the voice of the good shepherd, and he doth follow him; but whosoever bringeth forth evil works, the same becometh a child of the devil, for he hearkeneth unto his voice, and doth follow him.

And whosoever doeth this must receive his wages of him; therefore, for his wages he receiveth death, as to things pertaining unto righteousness, being dead unto all good works.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should hear me, for I speak in the energy of my soul; for behold, I have spoken unto you plainly that ye cannot err, or have spoken according to the commandments of God.

- 44 Want ek is geroepe om op hierdie wyse te spreek, volgens die heilige orde van God, wat in Christus Jesus is; ja, ek word beveel om te staan en te getuig aan hierdie volk die dinge wat gespreek is deur ons vaders, aangaande die dinge wat moet kom.
- 45 En dit is nie al nie. Veronderstel julle nie dat ek ook self hierdie dinge weet nie? Kyk, ek getuig aan julle dat ek wel weet dat hierdie dinge waarvan ek gespreek het, waar is. En hoe veronderstel julle dat ek weet van hulle sekerheid?
- 46 Kyk, ek sê vir julle dat hulle bekend gemaak word aan my deur die Heilige Gees van God. Kyk, ek het baie dae gevas en gebid dat ek hierdie dinge vir myself mag weet. En nou weet ek vir myself dat hulle waar is; want die Here God het hulle bekend gemaak aan my deur sy Heilige Gees; en dit is die gees van openbaring wat in my is.
- 47 En daarby sê ek aan julle, dat dit aldus aan my openbaar is, dat die woorde wat deur ons vaders gespreek is, waar is, net so volgens die gees van profesie wat in my is, wat ook deur die openbaring van die Gees van God is.
- 48 Ek sê vir julle dat ek vir myself weet, dat wat ek ook al aan julle sal sê, aangaande dit wat moet kom, waar is; en ek sê vir julle, dat ek weet dat Jesus Christus sal kom, ja, die Seun, die Eniggeborene van die Vader, vol genade, en barmhartigheid, en waarheid. En kyk, dit is Hy wat kom om die sondes van die wêreld weg te neem, ja, die sondes van elke mens wat standvastig glo in sy Naam.
- 49 En nou sê ek aan julle dat dit die orde is waarvolgens ek geroep is, ja, om te preek vir my geliefde broers, ja, en elkeen wat woon in die land; ja, om vir almal te preek, beide oud en jonk, beide gebonde en vry; ja, ek sê vir julle die oues, en ook die middeljariges, en die opkomende geslag; ja, om tot hulle te roep dat hulle hul moet bekeer en wedergebore word.

For I am called to speak after this manner, according to the holy order of God, which is in Christ Jesus; yea, I am commanded to stand and testify unto this people the things which have been spoken by our fathers concerning the things which are to come.

And this is not all. Do ye not suppose that I know of these things myself? Behold, I testify unto you that I do know that these things whereof I have spoken are true. And how do ye suppose that I know of their surety?

Behold, I say unto you they are made known unto me by the Holy Spirit of God. Behold, I have fasted and prayed many days that I might know these things of myself. And now I do know of myself that they are true; for the Lord God hath made them manifest unto me by his Holy Spirit; and this is the spirit of revelation which is in me.

And moreover, I say unto you that it has thus been revealed unto me, that the words which have been spoken by our fathers are true, even so according to the spirit of prophecy which is in me, which is also by the manifestation of the Spirit of God.

I say unto you, that I know of myself that whatsoever I shall say unto you, concerning that which is to come, is true; and I say unto you, that I know that Jesus Christ shall come, yea, the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, and mercy, and truth. And behold, it is he that cometh to take away the sins of the world, yea, the sins of every man who steadfastly believeth on his name.

And now I say unto you that this is the order after which I am called, yea, to preach unto my beloved brethren, yea, and every one that dwelleth in the land; yea, to preach unto all, both old and young, both bond and free; yea, I say unto you the aged, and also the middle aged, and the rising generation; yea, to cry unto them that they must repent and be born again.

50 Ja, so sê die Gees: Bekeer, al julle eindes van die aarde, want die koninkryk van die hemel is spoedig op hande; ja, die Seun van God kom in sy heerlikheid, in sy mag, majesteit, krag en heerskappy. Ja, my geliefde broers, ek sê vir julle, dat die Gees sê: Aanskou die heerlikheid van die Koning van die hele aarde; en ook die Koning van die hemel sal binnekort sy lig laat skyn onder al die kinders van mense.

51 En ook sê die Gees aan my, ja, roep tot my met 'n magtige stem, en sê: Gaan uit en sê vir hierdie volk—Bekeer, want tensy julle bekeer, kan julle geensins die koninkryk van die hemel beërwe nie.

52 En verder sê ek aan julle, die Gees sê: Kyk, die byl word aan die wortel van die boom gelê; daarom sal elke boom wat nie goeie vrugte voortbring nie, afgekap en in die vuur gewerp word, ja, 'n vuur wat nie verteer kan word nie, en wel 'n onblusbare vuur. Kyk, en onthou, die Heilige Een het dit gespreek.

53 En nou, my geliefde broers, ek sê vir julle, kan julle hierdie woorde weerstaan; ja, kan julle hierdie dinge tersyde lê, en die Heilige Een vertrap onder julle voete; ja, kan julle opgeblase wees in die hoogmoed van julle harte; ja, sal julle nog aanhou met die dra van kosbare kleding, en julle harte rig op die ydele dinge van die wêreld, op julle rykdom?

54 Ja, sal julle aanhou om te veronderstel dat julle beter is, die een as die ander; ja, sal julle aanhou met die vervolging van julle broers, wat hulself verootmoedig en wandel volgens die heilige orde van God, waardeur hulle ingebring is in hierdie kerk, en hulle is geheilig deur die Heilige Gees, en hulle bring vrugte voort wat pas by bekering—

55 Ja, en sal julle aanhou om julle rûe te keer op die armes, en die behoeftiges, en om julle besittings terug te hou van hulle?

56 En eindelik, julle almal wat sal aanhou met julle boosheid, ek sê vir julle dat dit hulle is wat afgekap en in die vuur gewerp sal word tensy hulle spoedig bekeer.

Yea, thus saith the Spirit: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand; yea, the Son of God cometh in his glory, in his might, majesty, power, and dominion. Yea, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, that the Spirit saith: Behold the glory of the King of all the earth; and also the King of heaven shall very soon shine forth among all the children of men.

And also the Spirit saith unto me, yea, crieth unto me with a mighty voice, saying: Go forth and say unto this people—Repent, for except ye repent ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of heaven.

And again I say unto you, the Spirit saith: Behold, the ax is laid at the root of the tree; therefore every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit shall be hewn down and cast into the fire, yea, a fire which cannot be consumed, even an unquenchable fire. Behold, and remember, the Holy One hath spoken it.

And now my beloved brethren, I say unto you, can ye withstand these sayings; yea, can ye lay aside these things, and trample the Holy One under your feet; yea, can ye be puffed up in the pride of your hearts; yea, will ye still persist in the wearing of costly apparel and setting your hearts upon the vain things of the world, upon your riches?

Yea, will ye persist in supposing that ye are better one than another; yea, will ye persist in the persecution of your brethren, who humble themselves and do walk after the holy order of God, wherewith they have been brought into this church, having been sanctified by the Holy Spirit, and they do bring forth works which are meet for repentance—

Yea, and will you persist in turning your backs upon the poor, and the needy, and in withholding your substance from them?

And finally, all ye that will persist in your wickedness, I say unto you that these are they who shall be hewn down and cast into the fire except they speedily repent.

57 En nou sê ek aan julle, julle almal wat begerig is om die stem van die goeie herder te volg, kom julle uit onder die bose, en sonder julle af, en raak nie hulle onreine dinge aan nie; en kyk, hulle name sal uitgewis word, dat die name van die bose nie gereken sal word onder die name van die regverdiges nie, sodat die woord van God vervul mag word, wat sê: Die name van die bose sal nie gereken word met die name van my volk nie;

58 Want die name van die regverdiges sal geskrywe word in die boek van die lewe, en aan hulle sal Ek 'n erfenis gee aan my regterhand. En nou, my broers, wat het julle hierteen te sê? Ek sê vir julle, as julle daarteen spreek, maak dit nie saak nie, want die woord van God moet vervul word.

59 Want watter herder is daar onder julle wat baie skape het, en hy waak nie oor hulle, sodat die wolwe nie binnekom en sy kudde verslind nie? En kyk, as 'n wolf onder sy kudde binnekom, jaag hy hom nie uit nie? Ja, en eindelijk as hy kan, sal hy hom vernietig.

60 En nou sê ek aan julle, dat die goeie herder julle aanroep; en as julle sal ag slaan op sy stem, sal Hy julle inbring in sy kudde, en julle is sy skape; en Hy gebied julle dat julle geen bloeddorstige wolf toelaat om onder julle in te kom nie, sodat julle nie vernietig mag word nie.

61 En nou ek, Alma, beveel julle in die taal van Hom wat my gebied het, dat julle sorg om die woorde te onderhou wat ek met julle gespreek het.

62 Ek spreek by wyse van bevel met julle wat aan die kerk behoort; en met diegene wat nie behoort aan die kerk nie, spreek ek by wyse van uitnodiging, en sê: Kom en word gedoop tot bekering, sodat julle ook deelgenote mag wees van die vrug van die boom van die lewe.

And now I say unto you, all you that are desirous to follow the voice of the good shepherd, come ye out from the wicked, and be ye separate, and touch not their unclean things; and behold, their names shall be blotted out, that the names of the wicked shall not be numbered among the names of the righteous, that the word of God may be fulfilled, which saith: The names of the wicked shall not be mingled with the names of my people;

For the names of the righteous shall be written in the book of life, and unto them will I grant an inheritance at my right hand. And now, my brethren, what have ye to say against this? I say unto you, if ye speak against it, it matters not, for the word of God must be fulfilled.

For what shepherd is there among you having many sheep doth not watch over them, that the wolves enter not and devour his flock? And behold, if a wolf enter his flock doth he not drive him out? Yea, and at the last, if he can, he will destroy him.

And now I say unto you that the good shepherd doth call after you; and if you will hearken unto his voice he will bring you into his fold, and ye are his sheep; and he commandeth you that ye suffer no ravenous wolf to enter among you, that ye may not be destroyed.

And now I, Alma, do command you in the language of him who hath commanded me, that ye observe to do the words which I have spoken unto you.

I speak by way of command unto you that belong to the church; and unto those who do not belong to the church I speak by way of invitation, saying: Come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye also may be partakers of the fruit of the tree of life.

Alma 6

- 1 En nou, dit het gebeur dat nadat Alma 'n einde gemaak het om met die volk van die kerk te spreek, wat gevestig was in die stad Zarahemla, het hy priesters en ouderlinge geordineer, deur sy hande op te lê volgens die orde van God, om te presideer en te waak oor die kerk.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat wie ook al nie aan die kerk behoort het nie wat bekeer het van hulle sondes, gedoop is tot bekering en opgeneem is in die kerk.
- 3 En dit het ook gebeur dat wie ook al behoort het aan die kerk wat nie bekeer het van hul boosheid en hulle voor God verootmoedig het nie—ek bedoel diegene wat verhef was in die hoogmoed van hulle harte—hulle is verwerp, en hulle name is uitgewis, sodat hulle name nie gereken was onder dié van die regverdige nie.
- 4 En so het hulle begin om die orde te vestig van die kerk in die stad Zarahemla.
- 5 Nou wil ek hê dat julle moet verstaan dat die woord van God vry was aan almal, sodat niemand ontnem is van die voorreg om bymekaar te kom om die woord van God aan te hoor nie.
- 6 Nieteenstaande is die kinders van God beveel dat hulle dikwels bymekaar moes kom, en verenig in vas en kragtige gebed ten behoeve van die welsyn van die siele van diegene wat nie vir God geken het nie.
- 7 En nou, dit het gebeur dat toe Alma hierdie verordeninge gemaak het, het hy vertrek van hulle, ja, van die kerk wat in die stad Zarahemla was, en het oorgegaan na die oostekant van die Sidon-rivier, in die vallei van Gideon, en daar was 'n stad gebou, wat die stad Gideon genoem is, wat in die vallei was wat Gideon genoem is, wat genoem is na die man wat gedood is deur die hand van Nehor met die swaard.

Alma 6

And now it came to pass that after Alma had made an end of speaking unto the people of the church, which was established in the city of Zarahemla, he ordained priests and elders, by laying on his hands according to the order of God, to preside and watch over the church.

And it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church who repented of their sins were baptized unto repentance, and were received into the church.

And it also came to pass that whosoever did belong to the church that did not repent of their wickedness and humble themselves before God—I mean those who were lifted up in the pride of their hearts—the same were rejected, and their names were blotted out, that their names were not numbered among those of the righteous.

And thus they began to establish the order of the church in the city of Zarahemla.

Now I would that ye should understand that the word of God was liberal unto all, that none were deprived of the privilege of assembling themselves together to hear the word of God.

Nevertheless the children of God were commanded that they should gather themselves together oft, and join in fasting and mighty prayer in behalf of the welfare of the souls of those who knew not God.

And now it came to pass that when Alma had made these regulations he departed from them, yea, from the church which was in the city of Zarahemla, and went over upon the east of the river Sidon, into the valley of Gideon, there having been a city built, which was called the city of Gideon, which was in the valley that was called Gideon, being called after the man who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword.

8 En Alma het gegaan en begin om die woord van God te verkondig aan die kerk wat gevestig was in die vallei van Gideon, volgens die openbaring van die waarheid van die woord wat gespreek is deur sy vaders, en volgens die gees van profesie wat in hom was, volgens die getuienis van Jesus Christus, die Seun van God, wat sou kom om sy volk te verlos van hulle sonde, en die heilige orde waarvolgens hy geroep is. En so is dit geskryf. Amen.

And Alma went and began to declare the word of God unto the church which was established in the valley of Gideon, according to the revelation of the truth of the word which had been spoken by his fathers, and according to the spirit of prophecy which was in him, according to the testimony of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who should come to redeem his people from their sins, and the holy order by which he was called. And thus it is written. Amen.

Die woorde van Alma wat hy verkondig het aan die volk in Gideon, volgens sy eie verslag.

Alma 7

- 1 Kyk, my geliefde broers, aangesien ek toegelaat is om na julle te kom, daarom probeer ek om julle toe te spreek in my taal; ja, deur my eie mond, aangesien dit die eerste keer is dat ek met julle gespreek het deur die woorde van my mond, omdat ek heeltemal beperk was tot die regterstoel, omdat ek baie pligte gehad het dat ek nie na julle kon kom nie.
- 2 En selfs ek kon nie nou op hierdie tyd gekom het nie, as dit nie was dat die regterstoel aan 'n ander gegee is, om in my plek te heers nie; en die Here het met baie barmhartigheid gegun dat ek na julle moes kom.
- 3 En kyk, ek het gekom met groot verwagtinge en 'n groot begeerte dat ek sou vind dat julle juisself verootmoedig het voor God, en dat julle volgehou het in die afsmeking van sy genade, dat ek sou vind dat julle onskuldig is voor Hom, dat ek sou vind dat julle nie in die vreeslike verknorsing was waarin ons broers was in Zarahemla nie.
- 4 Maar geprys is die Naam van God, dat Hy my gegee het om te weet, ja, het aan my die uitnemende groot vreugde gegee om te weet dat hulle weer gevestig is in die weg van sy regverdigheid.
- 5 En ek vertrou, volgens die Gees van God wat in my is, dat ek ook vreugde sal hê oor julle; nogtans begeer ek nie dat my vreugde oor julle sal kom vanweë die baie verdrukkinge en droefheid wat ek gehad het vir die broers te Zarahemla nie, want kyk, my vreugde oor hulle kom nadat ek deur baie verdrukking en droefheid geworstel het.
- 6 Maar kyk, ek vertrou dat julle nie in 'n toestand van soveel ongeloof is as wat julle broers was nie; ek vertrou dat julle nie verhef is in die hoogmoed van julle harte nie; ja, ek vertrou dat julle nie julle harte gerig het op rykdomme en die ydele dinge van die wêreld nie; ja, ek vertrou dat julle nie afgode aanbid nie, maar dat julle die ware en lewende God aanbid, en dat julle uitsien na die vergifnis van julle sondes, met 'n ewigdurende geloof, wat moet kom.

The words of Alma which he delivered to the people in Gideon, according to his own record.

Alma 7

Behold my beloved brethren, seeing that I have been permitted to come unto you, therefore I attempt to address you in my language; yea, by my own mouth, seeing that it is the first time that I have spoken unto you by the words of my mouth, I having been wholly confined to the judgment-seat, having had much business that I could not come unto you.

And even I could not have come now at this time were it not that the judgment-seat hath been given to another, to reign in my stead; and the Lord in much mercy hath granted that I should come unto you.

And behold, I have come having great hopes and much desire that I should find that ye had humbled yourselves before God, and that ye had continued in the supplicating of his grace, that I should find that ye were blameless before him, that I should find that ye were not in the awful dilemma that our brethren were in at Zarahemla.

But blessed be the name of God, that he hath given me to know, yea, hath given unto me the exceedingly great joy of knowing that they are established again in the way of his righteousness.

And I trust, according to the Spirit of God which is in me, that I shall also have joy over you; nevertheless I do not desire that my joy over you should come by the cause of so much afflictions and sorrow which I have had for the brethren at Zarahemla, for behold, my joy cometh over them after wading through much affliction and sorrow.

But behold, I trust that ye are not in a state of so much unbelief as were your brethren; I trust that ye are not lifted up in the pride of your hearts; yea, I trust that ye have not set your hearts upon riches and the vain things of the world; yea, I trust that you do not worship idols, but that ye do worship the true and the living God, and that ye look forward for the remission of your sins, with an everlasting faith, which is to come.

7 Want kyk, ek sê vir julle daar is baie dinge wat moet kom; en kyk, daar is een ding wat van meer belang is as hulle almal—want kyk, die tyd is nie ver weg dat die Verlosser leef en onder sy volk kom nie.

8 Kyk, ek sê nie dat Hy onder ons sal kom in die tyd van sy inwoning in sy sterflike tabernakel nie; want kyk, die Gees het nie aan my gesê dat dit die geval sal wees nie. Nou, betreffende hierdie ding, weet ek nie; maar dit weet ek, dat die Here God krag het om alle dinge te doen wat volgens sy woord is.

9 Maar kyk, die Gees het dit aan my gesê, naamlik: Roep tot hierdie volk en sê—Bekeer julle, en berei die weg vir die Here, en wandel in sy weë, wat reguit is; want kyk, die koninkryk van die hemel is op hande, en die Seun van God kom op die aangesig van die aarde.

10 En kyk, Hy sal gebore word uit Maria, by Jerusalem, wat die land van ons voorvaders is, en sy sal 'n maagd wees, 'n kosbare en uitverkore vat, wat oorskadu sal word en sal swanger word deur die mag van die Heilige Gees, en 'n seun voortbring, ja, en wel die Seun van God.

11 En Hy sal uitgaan, en pyne verduur en verdrukkinge en versoekinge van elke soort; en dit sodat die woord vervul mag word wat sê dat Hy die pyne en siektes van sy volk op Hom sal neem.

12 En Hy sal die dood op Hom neem, sodat Hy die bande van die dood kan losmaak wat sy volk bind; en Hy sal hulle krankhede op Hom neem, sodat sy bindeste vervul mag wees met barmhartigheid volgens die vlees, sodat Hy mag weet volgens die vlees hoe om sy volk by te staan volgens hulle krankhede.

13 Nou, die Gees weet alle dinge; nogtans, die Seun van God ly volgens die vlees, sodat Hy die sondes van sy volk op Hom mag neem sodat Hy hulle oortredinge mag uitwis volgens die krag van sy verlossing; en nou, kyk, dit is die getuienis wat in my is.

For behold, I say unto you there be many things to come; and behold, there is one thing which is of more importance than they all—for behold, the time is not far distant that the Redeemer liveth and cometh among his people.

Behold, I do not say that he will come among us at the time of his dwelling in his mortal tabernacle; for behold, the Spirit hath not said unto me that this should be the case. Now as to this thing I do not know; but this much I do know, that the Lord God hath power to do all things which are according to his word.

But behold, the Spirit hath said this much unto me, saying: Cry unto this people, saying—Repent ye, and prepare the way of the Lord, and walk in his paths, which are straight; for behold, the kingdom of heaven is at hand, and the Son of God cometh upon the face of the earth.

And behold, he shall be born of Mary, at Jerusalem which is the land of our forefathers, she being a virgin, a precious and chosen vessel, who shall be overshadowed and conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost, and bring forth a son, yea, even the Son of God.

And he shall go forth, suffering pains and afflictions and temptations of every kind; and this that the word might be fulfilled which saith he will take upon him the pains and the sicknesses of his people.

And he will take upon him death, that he may loose the bands of death which bind his people; and he will take upon him their infirmities, that his bowels may be filled with mercy, according to the flesh, that he may know according to the flesh how to succor his people according to their infirmities.

Now the Spirit knoweth all things; nevertheless the Son of God suffereth according to the flesh that he might take upon him the sins of his people, that he might blot out their transgressions according to the power of his deliverance; and now behold, this is the testimony which is in me.

- 14 Nou sê ek aan julle dat julle moet bekeer, en weer gebore word; want die Gees sê dat as julle nie weer gebore word nie, kan julle nie die koninkryk van die hemel beërwe nie; daarom, kom en word gedoop tot bekering, sodat julle gewas mag word van julle sondes, sodat julle geloof mag hê in die Lam van God, wat die sondes van die wêreld wegneem, wat magtig is om te red en te reinig van alle ongeregtigheid.
- 15 Ja, ek sê vir julle, kom en moenie vrees nie, en lê elke sonde opsy, wat julle maklik oorval, wat julle vasbind tot vernietiging, ja, kom en gaan uit, en wys aan julle God dat julle gewillig is om te bekeer van jul sondes en 'n verbond met Hom te sluit om sy gebooi te onderhou, en getuig daarvan voor Hom hierdie dag deur die waters van die doop binne te gaan.
- 16 En wie ook al dit doen, en die gebooi van God van daardie dag af onderhou, sal onthou dat ek vir hom sê, ja, hy sal onthou dat ek aan hom gesê het, dat hy die ewige lewe sal hê, volgens die getuienis van die Heilige Gees, wat getuig in my.
- 17 En nou my geliefde broers, glo julle hierdie dinge? Kyk, ek sê vir julle, ja, ek weet dat julle hulle glo; en die wyse waarop ek weet dat julle hulle glo is deur die openbaring van die Gees wat in my is. En nou omdat julle geloof sterk is aangaande dit, ja, aangaande die dinge wat ek gespreek het, groot is my blydschap.
- 18 Want soos ek aan julle gesê het van die begin af, dat ek 'n groot begeerte het dat julle nie in dieselfde toestand van verknorsing as julle broers is nie, net so het ek gevind dat my begeertes vervul is.
- 19 Want ek merk dat julle op die weë van regverdigheid is; ek merk dat julle op die weë is wat lei na die koninkryk van God; ja, ek merk dat julle sy paaie reguit maak.
- 20 Ek merk dat dit aan julle bekend gemaak is, deur die getuienis van sy woord, dat Hy nie kan wandel op krom paaie nie; nóg wyk Hy f van dit wat Hy gesê het; nóg wyk Hy'n skadubreedte af na regs of na links, of van dit wat reg is na dit wat verkeerd is; daarom, sy weg is een ewige kringloop.

Now I say unto you that ye must repent, and be born again; for the Spirit saith if ye are not born again ye cannot inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye may be washed from your sins, that ye may have faith on the Lamb of God, who taketh away the sins of the world, who is mighty to save and to cleanse from all unrighteousness.

Yea, I say unto you come and fear not, and lay aside every sin, which easily doth beset you, which doth bind you down to destruction, yea, come and go forth, and show unto your God that ye are willing to repent of your sins and enter into a covenant with him to keep his commandments, and witness it unto him this day by going into the waters of baptism.

And whosoever doeth this, and keepeth the commandments of God from thenceforth, the same will remember that I say unto him, yea, he will remember that I have said unto him, he shall have eternal life, according to the testimony of the Holy Spirit, which testifieth in me.

And now my beloved brethren, do you believe these things? Behold, I say unto you, yea, I know that ye believe them; and the way that I know that ye believe them is by the manifestation of the Spirit which is in me. And now because your faith is strong concerning that, yea, concerning the things which I have spoken, great is my joy.

For as I said unto you from the beginning, that I had much desire that ye were not in the state of dilemma like your brethren, even so I have found that my desires have been gratified.

For I perceive that ye are in the paths of righteousness; I perceive that ye are in the path which leads to the kingdom of God; yea, I perceive that ye are making his paths straight.

I perceive that it has been made known unto you, by the testimony of his word, that he cannot walk in crooked paths; neither doth he vary from that which he hath said; neither hath he a shadow of turning from the right to the left, or from that which is right to that which is wrong; therefore, his course is one eternal round.

21 En Hy woon nie in onheilige tempels nie; nóg kan vieslikheid, of enigiets wat onrein is in die koninkryk van God ontvang word; daarom sê ek aan julle dat die tyd sal kom, ja, en dit sal op die laaste dag wees, dat hy wat vieslik is, sal in sy vieslikheid bly.

22 En nou my geliefde broers, ek het hierdie dinge aan julle gesê dat ek julle mag opwek tot 'n besef van julle plig teenoor God, dat julle onberispelik mag wandel voor Hom, dat julle mag wandel volgens die heilige orde van God, waarvolgens julle ontvang is.

23 En nou wil ek hê dat julle nederig sal wees, en onderdanig en sagmoedig sal wees; maklik om geleer te word; vol geduld en lankmoedigheid; matig in alle dinge; ywerig om die gebooie van God te alle tye te onderhou; vra vir watter dinge julle ook al nodig het, beide geestelik en stoflik; en altyd God dank vir watter dinge julle ook al ontvang.

24 En sorg dat julle geloof, hoop en naasteliefde het, en dan sal julle altyd oorfloedig wees in goeie werke.

25 En mag die Here julle seën, en julle kleding vlekkeloos hou, sodat julle eindelijk gebring mag word om te sit met Abraham, Isak, en Jakob, en die heilige profete wat was sedert die wêreld begin het, met julle kleding vlekkeloos, net soos hulle kleding vlekkeloos is, in die koninkryk van die hemel om nie meer uit te gaan nie.

26 En nou my geliefde broers, ek het hierdie woorde met julle gespreek volgens die Gees wat in my getuig; en my siel is uitermate verheug vanweë die uitermate ywer en aandag wat julle aan my woord gegee het.

27 En nou, mag die vrede van God op julle rus, en op julle huise en landerye, en op julle kleinvee en grootvee, en alles wat julle besit, julle vroue en julle kinders, volgens julle geloof en goeie werke, vanaf hierdie tyd en vir ewig. En aldus het ek gespreek. Amen.

And he doth not dwell in unholy temples; neither can filthiness or anything which is unclean be received into the kingdom of God; therefore I say unto you the time shall come, yea, and it shall be at the last day, that he who is filthy shall remain in his filthiness.

And now my beloved brethren, I have said these things unto you that I might awaken you to a sense of your duty to God, that ye may walk blameless before him, that ye may walk after the holy order of God, after which ye have been received.

And now I would that ye should be humble, and be submissive and gentle; easy to be entreated; full of patience and long-suffering; being temperate in all things; being diligent in keeping the commandments of God at all times; asking for whatsoever things ye stand in need, both spiritual and temporal; always returning thanks unto God for whatsoever things ye do receive.

And see that ye have faith, hope, and charity, and then ye will always abound in good works.

And may the Lord bless you, and keep your garments spotless, that ye may at last be brought to sit down with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and the holy prophets who have been ever since the world began, having your garments spotless even as their garments are spotless, in the kingdom of heaven to go no more out.

And now my beloved brethren, I have spoken these words unto you according to the Spirit which testifieth in me; and my soul doth exceedingly rejoice, because of the exceeding diligence and heed which ye have given unto my word.

And now, may the peace of God rest upon you, and upon your houses and lands, and upon your flocks and herds, and all that you possess, your women and your children, according to your faith and good works, from this time forth and forever. And thus I have spoken. Amen.

Alma 8

- 1 En nou dit het gebeur dat Alma terugkeer het van die land Gídeon, nadat hy die volk van Gídeon baie dinge geleer het wat nie geskryf kan word nie, nadat hy die orde van die kerk gestig het, soos hy dit voorheen gedoen het in die land Zarahemla, ja, hy het terugkeer na sy eie huis in Zarahemla om te rus van die arbeid wat hy verrig het.
- 2 En so het die negende jaar geëindig van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nepi.
- 3 En dit het gebeur aan die begin van die tiende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nepi, dat Alma daarvandaan vertrek het, en gereis het na die land Melek, aan die weste van die Sidon-rivier, aan die weste teen die grense van die wildernis.
- 4 En hy het begin om die mense te leer in die land Melek volgens die heilige orde van God, waarvolgens hy geroep is; en hy het begin om die mense te leer dwarsdeur die hele land Melek.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat die mense na hom gekom het uit al die grense van die land wat aan die wildernis se kant was. En hulle is gedoop dwarsdeur die hele land;
- 6 Sodat toe hy sy werk in Melek voltooi het, het hy vertrek daarvandaan, en drie dagreise ver getrek het na die noordekant van die land Melek; en hy het by 'n stad gekom wat Ammoniha genoem is.
- 7 Nou was dit die gewoonte van die volk van Nepi om hulle lande, en hulle stede, en hulle dorpe, en selfs hulle gehugte, na die naam te noem van hom wat hulle eerste besit het; en so was dit met die land Ammoniha.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat toe Alma in die stad Ammoniha gekom het, het hy begin om die woord van God aan hulle te preek.
- 9 Nou het Satan 'n groot houvas gekry op die harte van die mense van die stad Ammoniha; daarom wou hulle nie ag slaan op die woorde van Alma nie;
- 10 Nogtans het Alma baie gearbei in die gees, terwyl hy met God geworstel het in kragtige gebed, sodat Hy sy Gees sou uitstort op die mense wat in die stad was; sodat Hy ook mag gun dat hy hulle mag doop tot bekering.

Alma 8

And now it came to pass that Alma returned from the land of Gideon, after having taught the people of Gideon many things which cannot be written, having established the order of the church, according as he had before done in the land of Zarahemla, yea, he returned to his own house at Zarahemla to rest himself from the labors which he had performed.

And thus ended the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma departed from thence and took his journey over into the land of Melek, on the west of the river Sidon, on the west by the borders of the wilderness.

And he began to teach the people in the land of Melek according to the holy order of God, by which he had been called; and he began to teach the people throughout all the land of Melek.

And it came to pass that the people came to him throughout all the borders of the land which was by the wilderness side. And they were baptized throughout all the land;

So that when he had finished his work at Melek he departed thence, and traveled three days' journey on the north of the land of Melek; and he came to a city which was called Ammonihah.

Now it was the custom of the people of Nephi to call their lands, and their cities, and their villages, yea, even all their small villages, after the name of him who first possessed them; and thus it was with the land of Ammonihah.

And it came to pass that when Alma had come to the city of Ammonihah he began to preach the word of God unto them.

Now Satan had gotten great hold upon the hearts of the people of the city of Ammonihah; therefore they would not hearken unto the words of Alma.

Nevertheless Alma labored much in the spirit, wrestling with God in mighty prayer, that he would pour out his Spirit upon the people who were in the city; that he would also grant that he might baptize them unto repentance.

- 11 Nieteenstaande het hulle hul harte verhard, en aan hom gesê: Kyk, ons weet dat jy Alma is; en ons weet dat jy hoëpriester is oor die kerk wat jy gestig het in baie dele van die land, volgens julle oorlewering; en ons is nie van jou kerk nie, en ons glo nie aan sulke dwase oorleweringe nie.
- 12 En nou weet ons dat omdat ons nie van jou kerk is nie, weet ons dat jy geen mag het oor ons nie; en jy het die regterstoel gegee aan Nefiha; daarom is jy nie die hoofregter oor ons nie.
- 13 Nou toe die volk dit gesê het, en al sy woorde weerstaan het, en hom beledig het, en op hom gespoeg het, en hom laat uitwerp het uit hulle stad, het hy daarvandaan vertrek en gereis na die stad wat Aäron genoem is.
- 14 En dit het gebeur dat terwyl hy daarheen gereis het, en hy terneergedruk was met groot droefheid, en baie verdrukking en angs van siel deurworstel het, vanweë die boosheid van die mense wat in die stad Ammoniha was, dit het gebeur, terwyl Alma so terneergedruk was met droefheid, kyk 'n engel van die Here het verskyn aan hom, en gesê:
- 15 Geseënd is jy, Alma; daarom, rig jou hoof op en verbly jou, want jy het groot rede om jou te verbly; want jy was getrou in die onderhouding van die gebooi van God vanaf die tyd dat jy jou eerste boodskap van Hom ontvang het. Kyk, ek is hy wat dit aan jou gegee het.
- 16 En kyk, ek is gestuur om jou te beveel dat jy terugkeer na die stad Ammoniha, en weer preek vir die mense van die stad; ja, preek vir hulle. Ja, sê vir hulle, tensy hulle bekeer, sal die Here God hulle vernietig.
- 17 Want kyk, hulle bedink tans om die vryheid van jou volk te vernietig, (want so sê die Here) wat strydig is met die insettinge, en wette, en gebooi wat Hy aan sy mense gegee het.
- 18 Nou dit het gebeur dat nadat Alma sy boodskap van die engel van die Here ontvang het, het hy vinnig teruggekeer na die land Ammoniha. En hy het die stad langs 'n ander weg binnegegaan, ja, langs die weg wat aan die suide van die stad Ammoniha is.

Nevertheless, they hardened their hearts, saying unto him: Behold, we know that thou art Alma; and we know that thou art high priest over the church which thou hast established in many parts of the land, according to your tradition; and we are not of thy church, and we do not believe in such foolish traditions.

And now we know that because we are not of thy church we know that thou hast no power over us; and thou hast delivered up the judgment-seat unto Nephihah; therefore thou art not the chief judge over us.

Now when the people had said this, and withstood all his words, and reviled him, and spit upon him, and caused that he should be cast out of their city, he departed thence and took his journey towards the city which was called Aaron.

And it came to pass that while he was journeying thither, being weighed down with sorrow, wading through much tribulation and anguish of soul, because of the wickedness of the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass while Alma was thus weighed down with sorrow, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto him, saying:

Blessed art thou, Alma; therefore, lift up thy head and rejoice, for thou hast great cause to rejoice; for thou hast been faithful in keeping the commandments of God from the time which thou receivedst thy first message from him. Behold, I am he that delivered it unto you.

And behold, I am sent to command thee that thou return to the city of Ammonihah, and preach again unto the people of the city; yea, preach unto them. Yea, say unto them, except they repent the Lord God will destroy them.

For behold, they do study at this time that they may destroy the liberty of thy people, (for thus saith the Lord) which is contrary to the statutes, and judgments, and commandments which he has given unto his people.

Now it came to pass that after Alma had received his message from the angel of the Lord he returned speedily to the land of Ammonihah. And he entered the city by another way, yea, by the way which is on the south of the city of Ammonihah.

19 En toe hy die stad binnegegaan het, was hy honger, en hy het aan 'n man gesê: Sal jy aan 'n nederige dienskneg van God iets gee om te eet?

20 En die man het aan hom gesê: Ek is 'n Nefiet, en ek weet dat u 'n heilige profeet van God is, want u is die man van wie 'n engel in 'n visioen gesê het: U sal ontvang. Daarom, gaan saam met my na my huis en ek sal van my kos met u deel; en ek weet dat u 'n seëning vir my en my huis sal wees.

21 En dit het gebeur dat die man hom in sy huis ontvang het; en die man was Amulek genoem; en hy het brood en vleis uitgehaal en voor Alma gesit.

22 En dit het gebeur dat Alma brood geëet het en versadig was; en hy het Amulek geseën en sy huis, en hy het dank aan God gegee.

23 En nadat hy geëet het en versadig was, het hy aan Amulek gesê: Ek is Alma, en is die hoëpriester oor die kerk van God dwarsdeur die land.

24 En kyk, ek is geroep om die woord van God te preek onder hierdie hele volk, volgens die gees van openbaring en profesie; en ek was in hierdie land en hulle wou my nie ontvang nie, maar hulle het my uitgewerp, en ek was op die punt om my rug te keer op hierdie land vir ewig.

25 Maar kyk, ek is beveel dat ek weer moes omdraai en vir hierdie volk profeteer, ja, en te getuig teen hulle aangaande hulle ongeregthede.

26 En nou, Amulek, omdat jy my gevoed het en my ingeneem het, is jy geseënd; want ek was honger, want ek het baie dae gevas.

27 En Alma het baie dae by Amulek vertoef voordat hy vir die volk begin preek het.

28 En dit het gebeur dat die volk nog erger geword het in hulle ongeregthede.

29 En die woord het tot Alma gekom, en gesê: Gaan; en sê ook aan my dienskneg Amulek, gaan uit en profeteer vir hierdie volk, en sê—Bekeer julle, want so sê die Here, tensy julle bekeer, sal Ek hierdie volk besoek in my toorn; ja, en Ek sal my vurige toorn nie afwend nie.

30 En Alma het uitgegaan, en ook Amulek, onder die volk, om die woorde van God te verkondig aan hulle; en hulle is vervul met die Heilige Gees.

And as he entered the city he was an hungered, and he said to a man: Will ye give to an humble servant of God something to eat?

And the man said unto him: I am a Nephite, and I know that thou art a holy prophet of God, for thou art the man whom an angel said in a vision: Thou shalt receive. Therefore, go with me into my house and I will impart unto thee of my food; and I know that thou wilt be a blessing unto me and my house.

And it came to pass that the man received him into his house; and the man was called Amulek; and he brought forth bread and meat and set before Alma.

And it came to pass that Alma ate bread and was filled; and he blessed Amulek and his house, and he gave thanks unto God.

And after he had eaten and was filled he said unto Amulek: I am Alma, and am the high priest over the church of God throughout the land.

And behold, I have been called to preach the word of God among all this people, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy; and I was in this land and they would not receive me, but they cast me out and I was about to set my back towards this land forever.

But behold, I have been commanded that I should turn again and prophesy unto this people, yea, and to testify against them concerning their iniquities.

And now, Amulek, because thou hast fed me and taken me in, thou art blessed; for I was an hungered, for I had fasted many days.

And Alma tarried many days with Amulek before he began to preach unto the people.

And it came to pass that the people did wax more gross in their iniquities.

And the word came to Alma, saying: Go; and also say unto my servant Amulek, go forth and prophesy unto this people, saying—Repent ye, for thus saith the Lord, except ye repent I will visit this people in mine anger; yea, and I will not turn my fierce anger away.

And Alma went forth, and also Amulek, among the people, to declare the words of God unto them; and they were filled with the Holy Ghost.

31 En aan hulle is krag gegee, in so 'n mate dat hulle nie opgesluit kon word in kerkers nie; nóg was dit moontlik dat enige man hulle kon doodmaak; nogtans het hulle nie hul krag gebruik totdat hulle gebind is met bande en in die gevangenis gewerp is nie. Nou, dit is gedoen dat die Here sy krag deur hulle kon toon.

32 En dit het gebeur dat hulle uitgegaan en begin het om te preek en te profeteer vir die volk, volgens die gees en krag wat die Here hulle gegee het.

And they had power given unto them, insomuch that they could not be confined in dungeons; neither was it possible that any man could slay them; nevertheless they did not exercise their power until they were bound in bands and cast into prison. Now, this was done that the Lord might show forth his power in them.

And it came to pass that they went forth and began to preach and to prophesy unto the people, according to the spirit and power which the Lord had given them.

Die woorde van Alma, en ook die woorde van Amulek, wat verkondig is aan die volk wat in die land Ammoniba was. En hulle is ook in die gevangenis gewerp, en verlos deur die wonderbaarlike krag van God wat in hulle was, volgens die verslag van Alma.

Alma 9

- 1 En verder, ek, Alma, omdat ek beveel is deur God dat ek Amulek moes neem en uitgaan en weer vir die mense preek, of, die mense wat in die stad Ammoniba was, dit het gebeur dat toe ek begin om vir hulle te preek, het hulle begin om met my te stry, en gesê:
- 2 Wie is jy? Veronderstel jy dat ons die getuigenis van een man sal glo, al sou hy vir ons preek dat die aarde sal verbygaan?
- 3 Nou het hulle nie die woorde verstaan wat hulle gespreek het nie; want hulle het nie geweet dat die aarde sou verbygaan nie.
- 4 En hulle het ook gesê: Ons sal nie jou woorde glo as jy sou profeteer dat hierdie groot stad vernietig sou word in een dag nie.
- 5 Nou het hulle nie geweet dat God sulke wonderlike werke kon doen nie, want hulle was 'n hardvogtige en 'n hardnekkige volk.
- 6 En hulle het gesê: Wie is God, wat nie meer gesag stuur as een man onder die volk, om aan hulle die waarheid te verkondig van sulke groot en wonderbaarlike dinge nie?
- 7 En hulle het na vore gekom om die hande op my te lê; maar kyk, hulle het nie. En ek het moedig gestaan om aan hulle te verkondig, ja, ek het moedig getuig aan hulle, en gesê:
- 8 Kyk, o julle goddelose en wederstrewige geslag, hoe het julle die oorlewering van julle vaders vergeet; ja, hoe gou het julle die gebooie van God vergeet!
- 9 Onthou julle nie dat ons vader, Lehi, uit Jerusalem gebring is deur die hand van God nie? Onthou julle nie dat hulle almal deur Hom gelei is deur die wildernis nie?

The words of Alma, and also the words of Amulek, which were declared unto the people who were in the land of Ammonibab. And also they are cast into prison, and delivered by the miraculous power of God which was in them, according to the record of Alma.

Alma 9

And again, I, Alma, having been commanded of God that I should take Amulek and go forth and preach again unto this people, or the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass as I began to preach unto them, they began to contend with me, saying:

Who art thou? Suppose ye that we shall believe the testimony of one man, although he should preach unto us that the earth should pass away?

Now they understood not the words which they spake; for they knew not that the earth should pass away.

And they said also: We will not believe thy words if thou shouldst prophesy that this great city should be destroyed in one day.

Now they knew not that God could do such marvelous works, for they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.

And they said: Who is God, that sendeth no more authority than one man among this people, to declare unto them the truth of such great and marvelous things?

And they stood forth to lay their hands on me; but behold, they did not. And I stood with boldness to declare unto them, yea, I did boldly testify unto them, saying:

Behold, O ye wicked and perverse generation, how have ye forgotten the tradition of your fathers; yea, how soon ye have forgotten the commandments of God.

Do ye not remember that our father, Lehi, was brought out of Jerusalem by the hand of God? Do ye not remember that they were all led by him through the wilderness?

- 10 En het julle so gou vergeet hoeveel keer Hy ons vaders verlos het uit die hande van hulle vyande, en hulle bewaar het van vernietiging, en wel deur die hande van hulle eie broers?
- 11 Ja, en as dit nie was vir sy ongeëwenaarde krag, en sy barmhartigheid, en sy lankmoedigheid teenoor ons nie, sou ons onvermydelik afgesny gewees het van die aangesig van die aarde lank voor hierdie tydperk, en miskien toegewys word tot 'n toestand van eindelose ellende en wee.
- 12 Kyk, nou sê ek aan julle dat Hy julle gebied om te bekeer; en tensy julle bekeer, kan julle geensins die koninkryk van God beërwe nie. Maar kyk, dit is nie al nie—Hy het julle gebied om te bekeer, of Hy sal julle heeltemal vernietig vanaf die aangesig van die aarde; ja, Hy sal julle besoek in sy toorn, en in sy vurige toorn sal Hy nie wegdraai nie.
- 13 Kyk, onthou julle nie die woorde wat Hy met Lehi gespreek het nie, en gesê het dat: In soverre julle my gebooi sal onderhou, sal julle in die land voorspoedig wees? En verder word gesê dat: In soverre julle nie my gebooi wil onderhou nie, sal julle afgesny word van die teenwoordigheid van die Here.
- 14 Nou wil ek hê julle moet onthou, dat in soverre die Lamaniete nie die gebooi van God onderhou het nie, is hulle afgesny van die teenwoordigheid van die Here. Nou sien ons dat die woord van die Here bewaarheid is aangaande hierdie ding, en dat die Lamaniete van sy teenwoordigheid afgesny is, vanaf die begin van hulle oortredinge in die land.
- 15 Nogtans sê ek aan julle, dat dit vir hulle draagliker sal wees in die oordeelsdag as vir julle, as julle in julle sondes bly, ja, en selfs draagliker vir hulle in hierdie lewe as vir julle, tensy julle bekeer.
- 16 Want daar is baie beloftes wat aan die Lamaniete aangebied word; want dit is vanweë die oorleweringe van hulle vaders wat veroorsaak het dat hulle in hul toestand van onkunde gebly het; daarom sal die Here barmhartig wees teenoor hulle en hulle voortbestaan in die land verleng.

And have ye forgotten so soon how many times he delivered our fathers out of the hands of their enemies, and preserved them from being destroyed, even by the hands of their own brethren?

Yea, and if it had not been for his matchless power, and his mercy, and his long-suffering towards us, we should unavoidably have been cut off from the face of the earth long before this period of time, and perhaps been consigned to a state of endless misery and woe.

Behold, now I say unto you that he commandeth you to repent; and except ye repent, ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. But behold, this is not all—he has commanded you to repent, or he will utterly destroy you from off the face of the earth; yea, he will visit you in his anger, and in his fierce anger he will not turn away.

Behold, do ye not remember the words which he spake unto Lehi, saying that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper in the land? And again it is said that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

Now I would that ye should remember, that inasmuch as the Lamanites have not kept the commandments of God, they have been cut off from the presence of the Lord. Now we see that the word of the Lord has been verified in this thing, and the Lamanites have been cut off from his presence, from the beginning of their transgressions in the land.

Nevertheless I say unto you, that it shall be more tolerable for them in the day of judgment than for you, if ye remain in your sins, yea, and even more tolerable for them in this life than for you, except ye repent.

For there are many promises which are extended to the Lamanites; for it is because of the traditions of their fathers that caused them to remain in their state of ignorance; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them and prolong their existence in the land.

17 En op een of ander tydstep sal hulle daartoe gebring word om te glo in sy woord, en om te weet van die onjuistheid van die oorleweringe van hulle vaders; en baie van hulle sal gered word, want die Here sal barmhartig wees teenoor almal wat sy Naam aanroep.

18 Maar kyk, ek sê vir julle dat as julle volhard in julle boosheid, dat julle dae nie verleng sal word in die land nie, want die Lamaniete sal afgestuur word op julle; en as julle nie bekeer nie sal hulle kom in 'n tyd wanneer julle nie daarvan weet nie, en julle sal besoek word met algehele vernietiging; en dit sal wees volgens die vurige toorn van die Here.

19 Want Hy sal julle nie toelaat dat julle in jul onge-regtighede lewe om sy volk te vernietig nie. Ek sê vir julle, Nee; hy sal eerder toelaat dat die Lamaniete sy hele volk mag vernietig wat genoem word die volk van Nefi, as dit moontlik was dat hulle kon verval in sondes en oortredinge, nadat soveel lig en soveel kennis aan hulle gegee is deur die Here hulle God;

20 Ja, en nadat hulle so 'n hoogsbegunstigde volk van die Here was, ja, nadat hulle begunstig is bo elke ander nasie, stam, taal of volk; nadat alle dinge aan hulle bekend gemaak is, volgens hulle begeertes, en hulle geloof, en gebede, betreffende dit wat was en wat is, en wat moet kom;

21 Nadat hulle besoek is deur die Gees van God; nadat hulle met engele gespreek het, nadat die stem van die Here met hulle gespreek het; nadat hulle die gees van profesie gehad het, en die gees van openbaring, en ook baie gawes, die gawe om in tonge te spreek, en die gawe van prediking, en die gawe van die Heilige Gees, en die gawe van vertaling;

22 Ja, en nadat hulle bevry is deur God uit die land Jerusalem, deur die hand van die Here; nadat hulle gered is van hongersnood, en van siekte, en van allerhande krankhede van alle soorte; en nadat hulle sterk geword het in oorlogvoering, sodat hulle nie vernietig mag word nie; nadat hulle keer op keer gebring is uit slawerny, en nadat hulle behou en bewaar is tot nou toe; en hulle was voorspoedig gemaak totdat hulle ryk is aan allerhande dinge—

And at some period of time they will be brought to believe in his word, and to know of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers; and many of them will be saved, for the Lord will be merciful unto all who call on his name.

But behold, I say unto you that if ye persist in your wickedness that your days shall not be prolonged in the land, for the Lamanites shall be sent upon you; and if ye repent not they shall come in a time when you know not, and ye shall be visited with utter destruction; and it shall be according to the fierce anger of the Lord.

For he will not suffer you that ye shall live in your iniquities, to destroy his people. I say unto you, Nay; he would rather suffer that the Lamanites might destroy all his people who are called the people of Nephi, if it were possible that they could fall into sins and transgressions, after having had so much light and so much knowledge given unto them of the Lord their God;

Yea, after having been such a highly favored people of the Lord; yea, after having been favored above every other nation, kindred, tongue, or people; after having had all things made known unto them, according to their desires, and their faith, and prayers, of that which has been, and which is, and which is to come;

Having been visited by the Spirit of God; having conversed with angels, and having been spoken unto by the voice of the Lord; and having the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and also many gifts, the gift of speaking with tongues, and the gift of preaching, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and the gift of translation;

Yea, and after having been delivered of God out of the land of Jerusalem, by the hand of the Lord; having been saved from famine, and from sickness, and all manner of diseases of every kind; and they having waxed strong in battle, that they might not be destroyed; having been brought out of bondage time after time, and having been kept and preserved until now; and they have been prospered until they are rich in all manner of things—

23 En nou kyk, ek sê vir julle, dat as hierdie volk, wat soveel seëninge ontvang het uit die hand van die Here, sou oortree teen die lig en die kennis wat hulle het, ek sê vir julle dat as dit die geval is, dat as hulle in oortreding verval, sou dit baie draagliker vir die Lamaniete wees as vir hulle.

24 Want kyk, die beloftes van die Here word aan die Lamaniete aangebied, maar hulle is nie aan julle as julle oortree nie; want het die Here nie duidelik belo-
we en onwrikbaar beveel dat as julle teen Hom rebel-
leer dat julle heeltemal uitgeroei sal word vanaf die
aangesig van die aarde nie?

25 En nou om hierdie rede, dat julle nie vernietig
mag word nie, het die Here sy engel gestuur om baie
van sy volk te besoek, en aan hulle verklaar dat hulle
moet uitgaan en kragtig moet uitroep tot hierdie
volk, en gesê: Bekeer julle, want die koninkryk van
die hemel is byna op hande;

26 En nie baie dae vanaf hierdie tyd nie sal die Seun
van God in sy heerlikheid kom, en sy heerlikheid sal
wees die heerlikheid van die Eniggebore van die
Vader, vol van genade, billikheid en waarheid, vol
van geduld, barmhartigheid en lankmoedigheid, gou
om te luister na die geroep van sy volk en om hulle
gebede te verhoor.

27 En kyk, Hy kom om diegene te verlos wat gedoop
sal word tot bekering, deur geloof in sy Naam.

28 Daarom, berei julle die weg van die Here, want die
tyd is op hande dat alle mense 'n beloning sal maai
vir hulle werke, volgens dit wat hulle was—as hulle
regverdige was, sal hulle die heil van hulle siele maai,
volgens die krag en die bevryding van Jesus Christus;
en as hulle boos was, sal hulle die verdoemenis maai
van hulle siele, volgens die krag en die slawerny van
die duiwel.

29 Nou, kyk, dit is die stem van die engel, wat tot die
volk uitroep.

30 En nou, my geliefde broers, want julle is my
broers, en julle behoort geliefd te wees, en julle be-
hoort die werke voort te bring wat by bekering pas,
aangesien julle harte tot 'n hoë mate verhard is teen
die woord van God, en aangesien julle 'n verlore en
'n gevalle volk is.

And now behold I say unto you, that if this people,
who have received so many blessings from the hand
of the Lord, should transgress contrary to the light
and knowledge which they do have, I say unto you
that if this be the case, that if they should fall into
transgression, it would be far more tolerable for the
Lamanites than for them.

For behold, the promises of the Lord are extended
to the Lamanites, but they are not unto you if ye
transgress; for has not the Lord expressly promised
and firmly decreed, that if ye will rebel against him
that ye shall utterly be destroyed from off the face of
the earth?

And now for this cause, that ye may not be de-
stroyed, the Lord has sent his angel to visit many of
his people, declaring unto them that they must go
forth and cry mightily unto this people, saying:
Repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is nigh at
hand;

And not many days hence the Son of God shall
come in his glory; and his glory shall be the glory of
the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, equity,
and truth, full of patience, mercy, and long-
suffering, quick to hear the cries of his people and to
answer their prayers.

And behold, he cometh to redeem those who will
be baptized unto repentance, through faith on his
name.

Therefore, prepare ye the way of the Lord, for the
time is at hand that all men shall reap a reward of
their works, according to that which they have
been—if they have been righteous they shall reap the
salvation of their souls, according to the power and
deliverance of Jesus Christ; and if they have been
evil they shall reap the damnation of their souls, ac-
cording to the power and captivity of the devil.

Now behold, this is the voice of the angel, crying
unto the people.

And now, my beloved brethren, for ye are my
brethren, and ye ought to be beloved, and ye ought to
bring forth works which are meet for repentance,
seeing that your hearts have been grossly hardened
against the word of God, and seeing that ye are a lost
and a fallen people.

31 Nou het dit gebeur dat toe ek, Alma, hierdie woorde gespreek het, kyk, die volk was vertoornd met my omdat ek aan hulle gesê het dat hulle hard van hart en 'n hardnekkige volk was.

32 En ook omdat ek aan hulle gesê het dat hulle 'n verlore en gevalle volk was, was hulle vir my kwaad, en het gesoek om hul hande op my te lê, sodat hulle my in die gevangenis kon werp.

33 Maar dit het gebeur dat die Here hulle nie toegelaat het dat hulle my moes neem op daardie tydstip en my in die gevangenis werp nie.

34 En dit het gebeur dat Amulek uitgegaan en gaan staan het, en ook vir hulle begin preek het. En nou is die woorde van Amulek nie almal geskrywe nie, nogtans is 'n gedeelte van sy woorde geskrywe in hierdie boek.

Now it came to pass that when I, Alma, had spoken these words, behold, the people were wroth with me because I said unto them that they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.

And also because I said unto them that they were a lost and a fallen people they were angry with me, and sought to lay their hands upon me, that they might cast me into prison.

But it came to pass that the Lord did not suffer them that they should take me at that time and cast me into prison.

And it came to pass that Amulek went and stood forth, and began to preach unto them also. And now the words of Amulek are not all written, nevertheless a part of his words are written in this book.

Alma 10

- 1 Nou, hierdie is die woorde wat Amulek vir die volk gepreek het wat in die land Ammonihah was, en gesê:
- 2 Ek is Amulek; ek is die seun van Giddona, wat die seun was van Ismael, wat 'n afstammeling was van Aminadi; en dit was daardie selfde Aminadi wat die skrif vertolk het wat op die muur van die tempel was, wat geskryf is deur die vinger van God.
- 3 En Aminadi was 'n afstammeling van Nephi, wat die seun was van Lehi, wat uit die land Jerusalem gekom het, wat 'n afstammeling was van Manasse, wat die seun was van Josef wat in Egipte verkoop is deur die hande van sy broers.
- 4 En kyk, ek is ook 'n man van geen geringe aansien onder almal wat my ken nie; ja, en kyk, ek het baie verwante en vriende, en ek het ook baie rykdom verwerf deur die hand van my werkywer.
- 5 Nogtans, ondanks dit alles, het ek nooit veel geweet van die weë van die Here nie, en van sy verborgenhede en wonderlike krag nie. Ek het gesê ek het nooit baie van hierdie dinge geweet nie; maar kyk, ek vergis my, want ek het baie van sy verborgenhede en sy wonderlike krag gesien; ja, en wel in die behoud van die lewens van hierdie volk.
- 6 Nogtans, ek het my hart verhard, want ek is baie kere geroep en wou nie hoor nie; daarom het ek geweet aangaande hierdie dinge, tog wou ek nie weet nie; daarom het ek aangehou om te rebelleer teen God, in die boosheid van my hart, tot die vierde dag van hierdie sewende maand, wat in die tiende jaar is van die heerskappy van die regters.
- 7 Terwyl ek op reis was om 'n baie nabye verwant te besoek, kyk, 'n engel van die Here het aan my verskyn, en gesê: Amulek, keer terug na jou eie huis, want jy sal 'n profeet van die Here voed; ja, 'n heilige man, wat 'n uitverkore man van God is; want hy het baie dae gevas vanweë die sondes van hierdie volk, en hy het honger, en jy sal hom ontvang in jou huis en hom voed, en hy sal jou en jou huis seën; en die seëning van die Here sal op jou en jou huis rus.

Alma 10

Now these are the words which Amulek preached unto the people who were in the land of Ammonihah, saying:

I am Amulek; I am the son of Giddonah, who was the son of Ishmael, who was a descendant of Aminadi; and it was that same Aminadi who interpreted the writing which was upon the wall of the temple, which was written by the finger of God.

And Aminadi was a descendant of Nephi, who was the son of Lehi, who came out of the land of Jerusalem, who was a descendant of Manasseh, who was the son of Joseph who was sold into Egypt by the hands of his brethren.

And behold, I am also a man of no small reputation among all those who know me; yea, and behold, I have many kindreds and friends, and I have also acquired much riches by the hand of my industry.

Nevertheless, after all this, I never have known much of the ways of the Lord, and his mysteries and marvelous power. I said I never had known much of these things; but behold, I mistake, for I have seen much of his mysteries and his marvelous power; yea, even in the preservation of the lives of this people.

Nevertheless, I did harden my heart, for I was called many times and I would not hear; therefore I knew concerning these things, yet I would not know; therefore I went on rebelling against God, in the wickedness of my heart, even until the fourth day of this seventh month, which is in the tenth year of the reign of the judges.

As I was journeying to see a very near kindred, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto me and said: Amulek, return to thine own house, for thou shalt feed a prophet of the Lord; yea, a holy man, who is a chosen man of God; for he has fasted many days because of the sins of this people, and he is an hungered, and thou shalt receive him into thy house and feed him, and he shall bless thee and thy house; and the blessing of the Lord shall rest upon thee and thy house.

- 8 En dit het gebeur dat ek die stem van die engel gehoorsaam het, en teruggekeer het na my huis. En terwyl ek daarheen gegaan het, het ek die man gevind van wie die engel aan my gesê het: Jy sal hom ontvang in jou huis—en kyk dit was hierdie selfde man wat met julle gespreek het aangaande die dinge van God.
- 9 En die engel het aan my gesê hy is 'n heilige man; daarom weet ek dat hy 'n heilige man is omdat dit gesê is deur 'n engel van God.
- 10 En verder, ek weet dat die dinge waarvan hy getuig het waar is; want kyk, ek sê vir julle, dat sowaar as die Here leef, net so het Hy sy engel gestuur om hierdie dinge aan my openbaar te maak; en dit het Hy gedoen terwyl hierdie Alma in my huis gewoon het.
- 11 Want kyk, hy het my huis geseën, hy het my geseën, en my vroue, en my kinders, en my vader en my familielede; ja, en wel al my verwante het hy geseën, en die seëning van die Here het op ons gerus volgens die woorde wat hy gespreek het.
- 12 En nou, toe Amulek hierdie woorde gespreek het, het die volk verbaas begin word, aangesien daar meer as een getuie was wat getuig het van die dinge waarvan hulle beskuldig is, en ook van die dinge wat moes kom, volgens die gees van profesie wat in hulle was.
- 13 Nogtans, daar was sommige onder hulle wat gedink het om hulle uit te vra, sodat deur hul geslepe planne hulle in hul woorde gevang kon word, sodat hulle getuienis teen hulle mag vind, sodat hulle hul mag uitlewer aan hul regters sodat hulle geoordeel mag word volgens die wet en sodat hulle gedood, of in die gevangenis gewerp mag word volgens die misdaad wat hulle teen hul kon versin of teen hul kon getuig.
- 14 Nou was dit daardie manne wat gesoek het om hulle te vernietig, wat regsgeleerdes was, wat gehuur of aangestel is deur die volk om die wet toe te pas ten tye van hul verhore, of by die verhore van die misdade van die volk voor die regters.
- 15 Nou was hierdie regsgeleerdes geleerd in al die liste en geslepenhede van die volk; en dit was om hulle in staat te stel sodat hulle bedrewe mag wees in hulle beroep.

And it came to pass that I obeyed the voice of the angel, and returned towards my house. And as I was going thither I found the man whom the angel said unto me: Thou shalt receive into thy house—and behold it was this same man who has been speaking unto you concerning the things of God.

And the angel said unto me he is a holy man; wherefore I know he is a holy man because it was said by an angel of God.

And again, I know that the things whereof he hath testified are true; for behold I say unto you, that as the Lord liveth, even so has he sent his angel to make these things manifest unto me; and this he has done while this Alma hath dwelt at my house.

For behold, he hath blessed mine house, he hath blessed me, and my women, and my children, and my father and my kinsfolk; yea, even all my kindred hath he blessed, and the blessing of the Lord hath rested upon us according to the words which he spake.

And now, when Amulek had spoken these words the people began to be astonished, seeing there was more than one witness who testified of the things whereof they were accused, and also of the things which were to come, according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

Nevertheless, there were some among them who thought to question them, that by their cunning devices they might catch them in their words, that they might find witness against them, that they might deliver them to their judges that they might be judged according to the law, and that they might be slain or cast into prison, according to the crime which they could make appear or witness against them.

Now it was those men who sought to destroy them, who were lawyers, who were hired or appointed by the people to administer the law at their times of trials, or at the trials of the crimes of the people before the judges.

Now these lawyers were learned in all the arts and cunning of the people; and this was to enable them that they might be skilful in their profession.

- 16 En dit het gebeur dat hulle begin het om Amulek uit te vra, sodat hulle hom daardeur sy woorde kon laat ontken, of die woorde laat weerspreek wat hy sou spreek.
- 17 Nou het hulle nie geweet dat Amulek kon weet van hulle voornemens nie. Maar dit het gebeur terwyl hulle hom begin ondervra, het hy hulle gedagtes bemerk, en hy het aan hulle gesê: O julle goddelose en wederstrewige geslag, julle regsgeleerdes en huigelaars, want julle lê die fundamente van die duiwel; want julle lê strikke en vangnette om die heiliges van God te vang.
- 18 Julle beraam planne om die weë van die regverdiges te verdraai, en om die toorn van God op julle hoofde af te bring, en wel tot die algehele vernietiging van hierdie volk.
- 19 Ja, tereg het Mosia gesê, wat ons laaste koning was, toe hy op die punt staan om die koningskap op te sê, omdat hy niemand gehad het aan wie hy dit kon oordra nie, en het toegelaat dat hierdie volk regeer word deur hulle eie stemme—ja, tereg het hy gesê dat as die tyd sou kom dat die stem van hierdie volk ongeregtheid sou verkies, dit is, as die tyd sou kom dat hierdie volk sou verval in oortreding, sou hulle ryp wees vir vernietiging.
- 20 En nou sê ek aan julle dat die Here tereg julle ongeregthede oordeel; tereg roep hy tot hierdie volk, deur die stem van sy engele: Bekeer julle, bekeer, want die koninkryk van die hemel is op hande.
- 21 Ja, tereg roep Hy deur die stem van sy engele dat: Ek sal neerdaal onder my volk, met billikheid en geregtigheid in my hande.
- 22 Ja, en ek sê vir julle, dat as dit nie was vir die gebede van die regverdiges, wat nou in die land is nie, dat julle selfs nou besoek sou word met algehele vernietiging; tog sou dit nie wees deur die vloed, soos die volk was in die dae van Noag nie, maar dit sou wees deur hongersnood, en deur pestilensie, en die swaard.

And it came to pass that they began to question Amulek, that thereby they might make him cross his words, or contradict the words which he should speak.

Now they knew not that Amulek could know of their designs. But it came to pass as they began to question him, he perceived their thoughts, and he said unto them: O ye wicked and perverse generation, ye lawyers and hypocrites, for ye are laying the foundations of the devil; for ye are laying traps and snares to catch the holy ones of God.

Ye are laying plans to pervert the ways of the righteous, and to bring down the wrath of God upon your heads, even to the utter destruction of this people.

Yea, well did Mosiah say, who was our last king, when he was about to deliver up the kingdom, having no one to confer it upon, causing that this people should be governed by their own voices—yea, well did he say that if the time should come that the voice of this people should choose iniquity, that is, if the time should come that this people should fall into transgression, they would be ripe for destruction.

And now I say unto you that well doth the Lord judge of your iniquities; well doth he cry unto this people, by the voice of his angels: Repent ye, repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

Yea, well doth he cry, by the voice of his angels that: I will come down among my people, with equity and justice in my hands.

Yea, and I say unto you that if it were not for the prayers of the righteous, who are now in the land, that ye would even now be visited with utter destruction; yet it would not be by flood, as were the people in the days of Noah, but it would be by famine, and by pestilence, and the sword.

23 Maar dit is deur die gebede van die regverdiges dat julle gespaar is; nou daarom, as julle die regverdiges uitwerp onder julle, dan sal die Here nie sy hand terughou nie; maar in sy vurige toorn sal Hy uitkom teen julle; dan sal julle getref word deur hongersnood, en deur pestilensie, en deur die swaard; en die tyd is spoedig op hande tensy julle bekeer.

24 En nou dit het gebeur dat die volk meer toornig was op Amulek, en hulle het uitgeroep, en gesê: Hierdie man beledig ons wette, wat regverdig is, en ons wyse regsgeleerdes wat ons gekies het.

25 Maar Amulek het sy hand uitgestrek, en sterker teen hulle uitgeroep, en gesê: O julle goddelose en wederstrewige geslag, hoekom het Satan so 'n groot houvas gekry op julle harte? Hoekom sal julle juisself oorgee aan hom, dat hy krag mag hê oor julle, om julle oë te verblind, dat julle nie die woorde sal verstaan wat gespreek is, volgens hulle waarheid nie?

26 Want kyk, het ek teen julle wet getuig? Julle verstaan nie; julle sê dat ek teen julle wet gespreek het; maar ek het nie, maar ek het gespreek ten gunste van julle wet, tot julle veroordeling.

27 En nou kyk, ek sê vir julle, dat die fondament van die vernietiging van hierdie volk begin om gelê te word deur die ongeregtigheid van julle regsgeleerdes en julle regters.

28 En nou dit het gebeur dat toe Amulek hierdie woorde gespreek het, het die volk teen hom uitgeroep, en gesê: Nou weet ons dat hierdie man 'n kind van die duiwel is, want hy het vir ons gelieg; want hy het teen ons wet gespreek. En nou sê hy dat hy nie daarteen gespreek het nie.

29 En verder, hy het ons regsgeleerdes beledig, en ons regters.

30 En dit het gebeur dat die regsgeleerdes dit in hulle harte gelê het dat hulle hierdie dinge teen hom sou onthou.

31 En daar was een onder hulle wie se naam Zeesrom was. Nou hy was die vernaamste om vir Amulek en vir Alma te beskuldig, en hy was een van die bedrewendstes onder hulle, wat baie sake onder die volk gedoen het.

32 Nou was dit die doel van hierdie regsgeleerdes om gewin te verkry; en hulle het gewin verkry volgens hulle diens.

But it is by the prayers of the righteous that ye are spared; now therefore, if ye will cast out the righteous from among you then will not the Lord stay his hand; but in his fierce anger he will come out against you; then ye shall be smitten by famine, and by pestilence, and by the sword; and the time is soon at hand except ye repent.

And now it came to pass that the people were more angry with Amulek, and they cried out, saying: This man doth revile against our laws which are just, and our wise lawyers whom we have selected.

But Amulek stretched forth his hand, and cried the mightier unto them, saying: O ye wicked and perverse generation, why hath Satan got such great hold upon your hearts? Why will ye yield yourselves unto him that he may have power over you, to blind your eyes, that ye will not understand the words which are spoken, according to their truth?

For behold, have I testified against your law? Ye do not understand; ye say that I have spoken against your law; but I have not, but I have spoken in favor of your law, to your condemnation.

And now behold, I say unto you, that the foundation of the destruction of this people is beginning to be laid by the unrighteousness of your lawyers and your judges.

And now it came to pass that when Amulek had spoken these words the people cried out against him, saying: Now we know that this man is a child of the devil, for he hath lied unto us; for he hath spoken against our law. And now he says that he has not spoken against it.

And again, he has reviled against our lawyers, and our judges.

And it came to pass that the lawyers put it into their hearts that they should remember these things against him.

And there was one among them whose name was Zeezrom. Now he was the foremost to accuse Amulek and Alma, he being one of the most expert among them, having much business to do among the people.

Now the object of these lawyers was to get gain; and they got gain according to their employ.

Alma 11

- 1 Nou was dit in die wet van Mosia dat elke man wat 'n regter van die wet was, of diegene wat as regters aangestel is, lone sou ontvang volgens die tyd wat hulle gearbei het om diegene te oordeel wat voor hulle gebring is om geoordeel te word.
- 2 Nou as 'n man 'n ander geskuld het, en hy wou nie dit betaal wat hy geskuld het nie, is hy aangekla by 'n regter; en die regter het gesag uitgeoefen, en het amptenare uitgestuur sodat die man voor hom gebring moes word; en hy het die man geoordeel volgens die wet en die bewyse wat teen hom gebring is, en sodoende was die man verplig om te betaal dit wat hy geskuld het, of anders moes hy gestroop of uitgewerp word onder die volk as 'n dief en 'n rower.
- 3 En die regter het sy loon ontvang volgens sy tyd—'n senien van goud vir 'n dag, of 'n senum van silwer wat gelyk is aan 'n senien van goud; en is volgens die wet wat gegee is.
- 4 Nou is dit die name van die verskillende stukke van hulle goud, en van hulle silwer, volgens hulle waarde. En die name is gegee deur die Nefiete, want hulle het nie gereken volgens die wyse van die Jode wat by Jerusalem was nie; ook het hulle nie gemeet volgens die wyse van die Jode nie; maar hulle het hul waardebevestiging en hul mate gewysig volgens die oordeel en die omstandighede van die volk, in elke geslag, tot die heerskappy van die regters, en hulle is daargestel deur koning Mosia.
- 5 Nou die berekening is as volg—'n senien van goud, 'n seon van goud, 'n sjum van goud, en 'n limna van goud.
- 6 'n Senum van silwer, 'n amnor van silwer, 'n ezrom van silwer, en 'n onti van silwer.
- 7 'n Senum van silwer was gelyk aan 'n senien van goud, en enigee vir 'n maat gars, en ook vir 'n maat van elke soort van graan.
- 8 Nou, die hoeveelheid van 'n seon van goud was tweekeer die waarde van 'n senien.
- 9 En 'n sjum van goud was tweekeer die waarde van 'n seon.
- 10 En 'n limna van goud was die waarde van hulle almal.

Alma 11

Now it was in the law of Mosiah that every man who was a judge of the law, or those who were appointed to be judges, should receive wages according to the time which they labored to judge those who were brought before them to be judged.

Now if a man owed another, and he would not pay that which he did owe, he was complained of to the judge; and the judge executed authority, and sent forth officers that the man should be brought before him; and he judged the man according to the law and the evidences which were brought against him, and thus the man was compelled to pay that which he owed, or be stripped, or be cast out from among the people as a thief and a robber.

And the judge received for his wages according to his time—a senine of gold for a day, or a senum of silver, which is equal to a senine of gold; and this is according to the law which was given.

Now these are the names of the different pieces of their gold, and of their silver, according to their value. And the names are given by the Nephites, for they did not reckon after the manner of the Jews who were at Jerusalem; neither did they measure after the manner of the Jews; but they altered their reckoning and their measure, according to the minds and the circumstances of the people, in every generation, until the reign of the judges, they having been established by king Mosiah.

Now the reckoning is thus—a senine of gold, a seon of gold, a shum of gold, and a limnah of gold.

A senum of silver, an amnor of silver, an ezrom of silver, and an onti of silver.

A senum of silver was equal to a senine of gold, and either for a measure of barley, and also for a measure of every kind of grain.

Now the amount of a seon of gold was twice the value of a senine.

And a shum of gold was twice the value of a seon.

And a limnah of gold was the value of them all.

11 En 'n amnor van silwer was gelyk aan twee se-
numms.

12 En 'n esrom van silwer was gelyk aan vier senums.

13 En 'n onti was gelyk aan hulle almal.

14 Nou, dit is die waarde van die kleiner munte van
hulle geldstelsel—

15 'n Sjiblon is die helfte van 'n senum; daarom, 'n
sjiblon vir 'n halwe maat van gars.

16 En 'n sjiblum is die helfte van 'n sjiblon.

17 En 'n lea is die helfte van 'n sjiblum.

18 Nou, dit is hulle waarde, volgens hulle geldstelsel.

19 Nou is 'n antion van goud gelyk aan drie sjiblons.

20 Nou, dit was vir die uitsluitlike doel om gewin te
verkry, want hulle het hul lone ontvang volgens hul
werk, daarom, hulle het die volk opgestook tot op-
roere, en alle soorte steurnisse en boosheid, sodat
hulle meer werk mag kry, sodat hulle geld mag kry
volgens die sake wat voor hulle gebring is; daarom
het hulle die volk opgestook teen Alma en Amulek.

21 En hierdie Zeesrom het Amulek begin uitvra, en
gesê: Sal jy my 'n paar vrae beantwoord wat ek jou
sal vra? Nou was Zeesrom 'n man wat kundig was in
die planne van die duiwel, sodat hy dit wat goed was
mag vernietig; daarom het hy aan Amulek gesê: Sal
jy die vrae beantwoord wat ek aan jou sal stel?

22 En Amulek het aan hom gesê: Ja, as dit is volgens
die Gees van die Here, wat in my is; want ek sal niks
sê wat teenstrydig is met die Gees van die Here nie.
En Zeesrom het aan hom gesê: Kyk, hier is ses onties
van silwer, en al hierdie sal ek jou gee as jy die be-
staan sal ontken van 'n Opperwese.

23 Nou het Amulek gesê: O jou kind van die hel, hoe-
kom versoek jy my? Weet jy dat die regverdiges nie
toegee aan enige sulke versoekings nie?

24 Glo jy dat daar geen God is nie? Ek sê vir jou, Nee,
jy weet daar is 'n God, maar jy is liever vir daardie
gewin as vir Hom.

And an amnor of silver was as great as two
senums.

And an ezrom of silver was as great as four
senums.

And an onti was as great as them all.

Now this is the value of the lesser numbers of their
reckoning—

A shiblon is half of a senum; therefore, a shiblon
for half a measure of barley.

And a shiblum is a half of a shiblon.

And a leah is the half of a shiblum.

Now this is their number, according to their reck-
oning.

Now an antion of gold is equal to three shiblons.

Now, it was for the sole purpose to get gain, be-
cause they received their wages according to their
employ, therefore, they did stir up the people to riot-
ings, and all manner of disturbances and wicked-
ness, that they might have more employ, that they
might get money according to the suits which were
brought before them; therefore they did stir up the
people against Alma and Amulek.

And this Zeezrom began to question Amulek, say-
ing: Will ye answer me a few questions which I shall
ask you? Now Zeezrom was a man who was expert in
the devices of the devil, that he might destroy that
which was good; therefore, he said unto Amulek:
Will ye answer the questions which I shall put unto
you?

And Amulek said unto him: Yea, if it be according
to the Spirit of the Lord, which is in me; for I shall
say nothing which is contrary to the Spirit of the
Lord. And Zeezrom said unto him: Behold, here are
six onties of silver, and all these will I give thee if
thou wilt deny the existence of a Supreme Being.

Now Amulek said: O thou child of hell, why tempt
ye me? Knowest thou that the righteous yieldeth to
no such temptations?

Believest thou that there is no God? I say unto you,
Nay, thou knowest that there is a God, but thou
lovest that lucre more than him.

25 En nou het jy vir my gelieg voor God. Jy het aan my gesê—Kyk hierdie ses onties, wat van groot waarde is, sal ek vir jou gee—toe jy dit in jou hart gehad het om hulle van my terug te hou; en dit was slegs jou begeerte dat ek die ware en lewende God moes loën, sodat jy rede mag hê om my te vernietig. En nou kyk, vir hierdie groot sonde sal jy jou loon kry.

26 En Zeesrom het aan hom gesê: Jy sê daar is 'n ware en lewende God?

27 En Amulek het gesê: Ja, daar is 'n ware en lewende God.

28 Nou het Zeesrom gesê: Is daar meer as een God?

29 En hy het geantwoord, Nee.

30 Nou het Zeesrom weer aan hom gesê: Hoe weet jy hierdie dinge?

31 En hy het gesê: 'n Engel het hulle aan my bekend gemaak.

32 En Zeesrom het weer gesê: Wie is Hy wat sal kom? Is dit die Seun van God?

33 En hy het aan hom gesê, Ja.

34 En Zeesrom het weer gesê: Sal Hy sy volk red in hulle sondes? En Amulek het geantwoord en aan hom gesê: Ek sê vir jou Hy sal nie, want dit is onmoontlik vir Hom om sy woord te loën.

35 Nou het Zeesrom aan die volk gesê: Sien dat julle hierdie dinge onthou; want hy het gesê dat daar slegs een God is, tog sê hy dat die Seun van God sal kom, maar Hy sal nie sy volk red nie—asof hy gesag het om God te beveel.

36 Nou het Amulek weer aan hom gesê: Kyk, jy het gelieg, want jy sê ek het gesprek asof ek gesag gehad het om God te beveel, omdat ek gesê het dat Hy sy volk nie in hulle sondes sal red nie.

37 En ek sê vir julle weer dat Hy hulle nie in hulle sondes kan red nie; want ek kan sy woord nie loën nie, en Hy het gesê dat geen onrein ding die koninkryk van die hemel kan beërwe nie; daarom, hoe kan julle gered word, tensy julle die koninkryk van die hemel beërwe? Daarom, julle kan nie in julle sondes gered word nie.

38 Nou sê Zeesrom weer aan hom: Is die Seun van God die ware Ewige Vader?

And now thou hast lied before God unto me. Thou saidst unto me—Behold these six onties, which are of great worth, I will give unto thee—when thou hadst it in thy heart to retain them from me; and it was only thy desire that I should deny the true and living God, that thou mightest have cause to destroy me. And now behold, for this great evil thou shalt have thy reward.

And Zeezrom said unto him: Thou sayest there is a true and living God?

And Amulek said: Yea, there is a true and living God.

Now Zeezrom said: Is there more than one God?

And he answered, No.

Now Zeezrom said unto him again: How knowest thou these things?

And he said: An angel hath made them known unto me.

And Zeezrom said again: Who is he that shall come? Is it the Son of God?

And he said unto him, Yea.

And Zeezrom said again: Shall he save his people in their sins? And Amulek answered and said unto him: I say unto you he shall not, for it is impossible for him to deny his word.

Now Zeezrom said unto the people: See that ye remember these things; for he said there is but one God; yet he saith that the Son of God shall come, but he shall not save his people—as though he had authority to command God.

Now Amulek saith again unto him: Behold thou hast lied, for thou sayest that I spake as though I had authority to command God because I said he shall not save his people in their sins.

And I say unto you again that he cannot save them in their sins; for I cannot deny his word, and he hath said that no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore, how can ye be saved, except ye inherit the kingdom of heaven? Therefore, ye cannot be saved in your sins.

Now Zeezrom saith again unto him: Is the Son of God the very Eternal Father?

39 En Amulek het aan hom gesê: Ja, Hy is die ware Ewige Vader van die hemel en die aarde, en alle dinge wat in hulle is; Hy is die begin en die einde, die eerste en die laaste;

40 En Hy sal in die wêreld kom om sy volk te verlos; en Hy sal die oortredings van diegene wat glo in sy Naam op Hom neem; en hierdie is hulle wat die ewige lewe sal hê, en heil kom na niemand anders nie.

41 Daarom bly die bose asof daar geen verlossing bewerkstellig is nie, behalwe vir losmaking van die bande van die dood; want kyk, die dag kom dat almal sal opstaan uit die dood en voor God staan, en geoordeel word volgens hulle werke.

42 Nou, daar is 'n dood wat 'n tydelike dood genoem word; en die dood van Christus sal die bande van hierdie tydelike dood losmaak, sodat almal opgewek sal word uit hierdie tydelike dood.

43 Die gees en die liggaam sal weer herenig word in sy volmaakte vorm; beide ledemate en gewrig sal tot hulle natuurlike gestalte herstel word, net soos ons nou is op hierdie tydstip; en ons sal gebring word om te staan voor God, en weet net soos ons nou weet, en 'n heldere herinnering hê van al ons skuld.

44 Nou, hierdie herstelling sal tot almal kom, beide oud en jonk, beide gevangene en vrymanne, beide man en vrou, beide die bose en die regverdiges; en selfs sal daar nie soveel as 'n haar van hulle hoofde verlore gaan nie; maar elke ding sal herstel word tot sy volmaakte gestalte, soos dit nou is, of in die liggaam, en sal gebring en gestel word voor die regbank van Christus die Seun, en God die Vader, en die Heilige Gees, wat een Ewige God is, om geoordeel te word volgens hulle werke, of hulle goed en of hulle boos is.

45 Nou, kyk, ek het met julle gespreek aangaande die dood van die sterflike liggaam, en ook aangaande die opstanding van die sterflike liggaam. Ek sê vir julle dat hierdie sterflike liggaam opgewek word tot 'n onsterflike liggaam, dit is, uit die dood, en wel van die eerste dood tot die lewe, sodat hulle nie meer kan sterwe nie; hulle geeste verenig met hulle liggame, om nooit geskei te word nie; sodoende word die geheel geestelik en onsterflik, sodat hulle nie meer verderwing kan sien nie.

And Amulek said unto him: Yea, he is the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth, and all things which in them are; he is the beginning and the end, the first and the last;

And he shall come into the world to redeem his people; and he shall take upon him the transgressions of those who believe on his name; and these are they that shall have eternal life, and salvation cometh to none else.

Therefore the wicked remain as though there had been no redemption made, except it be the loosing of the bands of death; for behold, the day cometh that all shall rise from the dead and stand before God, and be judged according to their works.

Now, there is a death which is called a temporal death; and the death of Christ shall loose the bands of this temporal death, that all shall be raised from this temporal death.

The spirit and the body shall be reunited again in its perfect form; both limb and joint shall be restored to its proper frame, even as we now are at this time; and we shall be brought to stand before God, knowing even as we know now, and have a bright recollection of all our guilt.

Now, this restoration shall come to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, both the wicked and the righteous; and even there shall not so much as a hair of their heads be lost; but every thing shall be restored to its perfect frame, as it is now, or in the body, and shall be brought and be arraigned before the bar of Christ the Son, and God the Father, and the Holy Spirit, which is one Eternal God, to be judged according to their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil.

Now, behold, I have spoken unto you concerning the death of the mortal body, and also concerning the resurrection of the mortal body. I say unto you that this mortal body is raised to an immortal body, that is from death, even from the first death unto life, that they can die no more; their spirits uniting with their bodies, never to be divided; thus the whole becoming spiritual and immortal, that they can no more see corruption.

46 Nou, toe Amulek hierdie woorde voltooi het, het die volk weer begin om verbaas te wees, en ook Zeesrom het begin om te bewe. En so het die woorde van Amulek geëindig, of dit is al wat ek geskrywe het.

Now, when Amulek had finished these words the people began again to be astonished, and also Zeesrom began to tremble. And thus ended the words of Amulek, or this is all that I have written.

Alma 12

- 1 Nou het Alma, toe hy sien dat die woorde van Amulek vir Zeesrom stilgemaak het, want hy het gesien dat Amulek hom betrap het in sy leuens en bedrog om hom te vernietig, en toe hy sien dat hy begin bewe, onder 'n besef van sy skuld, het hy sy mond oopgemaak en met hom begin spreek, en om die woorde van Amulek te bevestig, en om dinge verder te verduidelik, of om die skrifture verder te ontvou as wat Amulek dit gedoen het.
- 2 Nou die woorde wat Alma met Zeesrom gespreek het is deur die volk rondomheen gehoor; want die skare was groot, en hy het op hierdie wyse gespreek:
- 3 Nou Zeesrom, jy sien dat jy betrap is in jou leuens en listigheid, want jy het nie vir mense alleen geliegnie, maar jy het ook vir God geliegnie; want kyk, Hy ken al jou gedagtes, en jy sien dat jou gedagtes aan ons bekend gemaak word deur sy Gees;
- 4 En jy sien dat ons weet dat jou plan 'n baie listige plan was, soos die listigheid van die duiwel, om te lieg en hierdie volk te bedrieg sodat jy hulle teen ons mag opsweep, om ons te beledig en ons uit te werp—
- 5 Nou dit was 'n plan van jou teenstander, en hy het sy krag getoon in jou. Nou wil ek hê dat jy moet ont hou dat wat ek aan jou sê, sê ek aan almal.
- 6 En kyk, ek sê vir julle almal dat dit 'n strik was van die teenstander, wat hy gestel het om hierdie volk te vang, sodat hy julle onderdanig mag maak aan hom, sodat hy julle mag omknel met sy kettings, sodat hy julle mag vasketting vir die ewigdurende vernietiging, volgens die mag van sy slawerny.
- 7 Nou toe Alma hierdie woorde gespreek het, het Zeesrom meer uitermate begin bewe, want hy was al hoe meer oortuig van die krag van God; en hy was ook oortuig dat Alma en Amulek 'n kennis gehad het omtrent hom, want hy was oortuig dat hulle die gedagtes en bedoelings van sy hart geken het; want mag is aan hulle gegee dat hulle mag weet van hierdie dinge volgens die gees van profesie.

Alma 12

Now Alma, seeing that the words of Amulek had silenced Zeezrom, for he beheld that Amulek had caught him in his lying and deceiving to destroy him, and seeing that he began to tremble under a consciousness of his guilt, he opened his mouth and began to speak unto him, and to establish the words of Amulek, and to explain things beyond, or to unfold the scriptures beyond that which Amulek had done.

Now the words that Alma spake unto Zeezrom were heard by the people round about; for the multitude was great, and he spake on this wise:

Now Zeezrom, seeing that thou hast been taken in thy lying and craftiness, for thou hast not lied unto men only but thou hast lied unto God; for behold, he knows all thy thoughts, and thou seest that thy thoughts are made known unto us by his Spirit;

And thou seest that we know that thy plan was a very subtle plan, as to the subtlety of the devil, for to lie and to deceive this people that thou mightest set them against us, to revile us and to cast us out—

Now this was a plan of thine adversary, and he hath exercised his power in thee. Now I would that ye should remember that what I say unto thee I say unto all.

And behold I say unto you all that this was a snare of the adversary, which he has laid to catch this people, that he might bring you into subjection unto him, that he might encircle you about with his chains, that he might chain you down to everlasting destruction, according to the power of his captivity.

Now when Alma had spoken these words, Zeezrom began to tremble more exceedingly, for he was convinced more and more of the power of God; and he was also convinced that Alma and Amulek had a knowledge of him, for he was convinced that they knew the thoughts and intents of his heart; for power was given unto them that they might know of these things according to the spirit of prophecy.

- 8 En Zeesrom het ywerig begin om hulle uit te vra, sodat hy meer mag weet aangaande die koninkryk van God. En hy het aan Alma gesê: Wat beteken dit wat Amulek gespreek het aangaande die opstanding van die dode, dat almal sal opstaan uit die dood, beide die regverdiges en die onregverdiges, en gebring word om te staan voor God, om geoordeel te word volgens hulle werke?
- 9 En nou het Alma begin om hierdie dinge aan hom uit te lê, en gesê: Dit word aan baie gegee om die verborgenhede van God te ken, nieteenstaande word hulle onder 'n streng gebod geplaas dat hulle nie sal meedeel nie, slegs volgens die gedeelte van sy woord wat Hy aan die kinders van mense skenk, volgens die gehoorsaamheid en die ywer wat hulle aan Hom gee.
- 10 En daarom, hy wat sy hart sal verhard, ontvang die mindere gedeelte van die woord; en hy wat nie sy hart sal verhard nie, aan hom word 'n groter gedeelte gegee van die woord, totdat dit aan hom gegee word om die verborgenhede van God te ken, totdat hy hulle ten volle ken.
- 11 En hulle wat hulle harte sal verhard, aan hulle word die mindere gedeelte van die woord gegee, totdat hulle niks weet aangaande sy verborgenhede nie; en dan word hulle gevange geneem deur die duiwel, en gelei deur sy wil tot vernietiging toe. Nou, dit is wat bedoel word met die kettings van die hel.
- 12 En Amulek het duidelik gespreek aangaande die dood, en van die opstanding uit hierdie sterflikheid tot 'n toestand van onsterflikheid, en om gebring te word voor die regbank van God, om geoordeel te word volgens ons werke.
- 13 Dan as ons harte verhard is, ja, as ons ons harte verhard het teen die woord, in soverre dat dit nie in ons bevind is nie, dan sal ons toestand vreeslik wees, want dan sal ons veroordeel word.
- 14 Want ons woorde sal ons veroordeel, ja, al ons werke sal ons veroordeel; ons sal nie vlekkeloos bevind word nie; en ons gedagtes sal ons ook veroordeel; en in hierdie vreeslike toestand sal ons nie durf opkyk na ons God nie; en ons sal nogal bly wees as ons die rotse en die berge kon beveel om op ons te val om ons van sy teenwoordigheid te verberg.

And Zeezrom began to inquire of them diligently, that he might know more concerning the kingdom of God. And he said unto Alma: What does this mean which Amulek hath spoken concerning the resurrection of the dead, that all shall rise from the dead, both the just and the unjust, and are brought to stand before God to be judged according to their works?

And now Alma began to expound these things unto him, saying: It is given unto many to know the mysteries of God; nevertheless they are laid under a strict command that they shall not impart only according to the portion of his word which he doth grant unto the children of men, according to the heed and diligence which they give unto him.

And therefore, he that will harden his heart, the same receiveth the lesser portion of the word; and he that will not harden his heart, to him is given the greater portion of the word, until it is given unto him to know the mysteries of God until he know them in full.

And they that will harden their hearts, to them is given the lesser portion of the word until they know nothing concerning his mysteries; and then they are taken captive by the devil, and led by his will down to destruction. Now this is what is meant by the chains of hell.

And Amulek hath spoken plainly concerning death, and being raised from this mortality to a state of immortality, and being brought before the bar of God, to be judged according to our works.

Then if our hearts have been hardened, yea, if we have hardened our hearts against the word, in so much that it has not been found in us, then will our state be awful, for then we shall be condemned.

For our words will condemn us, yea, all our works will condemn us; we shall not be found spotless; and our thoughts will also condemn us; and in this awful state we shall not dare to look up to our God; and we would fain be glad if we could command the rocks and the mountains to fall upon us to hide us from his presence.

- 15 Maar dit kan nie wees nie; ons moet uitkom en voor Hom staan in sy heerlijkheid, en in sy krag, en in sy mag, majesteit, en heerskappy, en beken tot ons ewigdurende skande dat al sy oordele regverdig is; dat Hy regverdig is in al sy werke, en dat Hy barmhartig is teenoor die kinders van mense, en dat Hy alle mag het om elke mens te red wat glo in sy Naam en vrugte voortbring wat by bekering pas.
- 16 En nou, kyk, ek sê vir julle dan kom 'n dood, naamlik 'n tweede dood, wat 'n geestelike dood is; dan kom 'n tyd dat wie ook al sterf in sy sonde, wat die tydelike dood betref, ook 'n geestelike dood sal sterf; ja, hy sal sterf wat die dinge van regverdigheid betref.
- 17 Dan is dit die tyd dat hulle pynigings sal wees soos 'n poel van vuur en swael, waarvan die vlam opstyg vir ewig en ewig; en dan is die tyd dat hulle vasgeketting sal wees aan 'n ewigdurende vernietiging, volgens die mag en slawerny van Satan, omdat hy hulle onderwerp het aan sy wil.
- 18 Dan, ek sê vir julle, sal hulle wees asof daar geen verlossing teweeggebring is nie; want hulle kan nie verlos word volgens God se geregtigheid nie; en hulle kan nie sterwe nie, aangesien daar geen verganklikheid meer is nie.
- 19 Nou, dit het gebeur dat toe Alma 'n einde gemaak het om hierdie woorde te spreek, het die volk meer verbaas begin word;
- 20 Maar daar was ene Antiona, wat 'n hoofleier onder hulle was; hy het na vore gekom en aan hom gesê: Wat is dit wat jy gesê het, dat 'n mens sal opstaan uit die dood en verander word van hierdie sterflike in 'n onsterflike toestand, sodat die siel nooit kan sterf nie?
- 21 Wat beteken die skriftuur wat sê dat God gérubs en 'n vlammende swaard aan die oostekant van die tuin van Eden geplaas het, sodat ons eerste ouers nie sou binnegaan en van die vrug van die boom van die lewe neem, en vir ewig lewe nie? En so sien ons dat daar geen moontlike kans was dat hulle vir ewig sou lewe nie.

But this cannot be; we must come forth and stand before him in his glory, and in his power, and in his might, majesty, and dominion, and acknowledge to our everlasting shame that all his judgments are just; that he is just in all his works, and that he is merciful unto the children of men, and that he has all power to save every man that believeth on his name and bringeth forth fruit meet for repentance.

And now behold, I say unto you then cometh a death, even a second death, which is a spiritual death; then is a time that whosoever dieth in his sins, as to a temporal death, shall also die a spiritual death; yea, he shall die as to things pertaining unto righteousness.

Then is the time when their torments shall be as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever; and then is the time that they shall be chained down to an everlasting destruction, according to the power and captivity of Satan, he having subjected them according to his will.

Then, I say unto you, they shall be as though there had been no redemption made; for they cannot be redeemed according to God's justice; and they cannot die, seeing there is no more corruption.

Now it came to pass that when Alma had made an end of speaking these words, the people began to be more astonished;

But there was one Antionah, who was a chief ruler among them, came forth and said unto him: What is this that thou hast said, that man should rise from the dead and be changed from this mortal to an immortal state, that the soul can never die?

What does the scripture mean, which saith that God placed cherubim and a flaming sword on the east of the garden of Eden, lest our first parents should enter and partake of the fruit of the tree of life, and live forever? And thus we see that there was no possible chance that they should live forever.

- 22 Nou het Alma aan hom gesê: Dit is die ding wat ek op die punt was om te verduidelik. Nou sien ons dat Adam geval het deur van die verbode vrug te neem, volgens die woord van God; en so sien ons, dat deur sy val, alle mense 'n verlore en gevalle volk geword het.
- 23 En nou, kyk, ek sê vir julle, dat as dit moontlik was vir Adam om op daardie tyd van die vrug van die boom van die lewe te neem, daar geen dood sou wees nie, en die woord sou vergeefs wees, wat God tot leuenaar sou gemaak het, want Hy het gesê: As jy eet, sal jy sekerlik sterwe.
- 24 En ons sien dat die dood oor die mens kom, ja, die dood waarvan gesprek is deur Amulek, wat die tydelike dood is; nogtans is aan die mens 'n tydperk gegun waarin hy mag bekeer; daarom het hierdie lewe 'n toetsing geword; 'n tyd om voor te berei om God te ontmoet; 'n tyd om voor te berei vir daardie eindelose toestand waarvan deur ons gesprek is, wat na die opstanding van die dode is.
- 25 Nou, as dit nie was vir die plan van verlossing nie, wat gesmee is vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld, kon daar geen opstanding van die dode gewees het nie; maar daar was 'n plan van verlossing gesmee, wat die opstanding van die dode sal teweegbring, waarvan gesprek is.
- 26 En nou kyk, as dit moontlik was dat ons eerste ouers kon uitgaan en van die boom van die lewe kon geneem het, sou hulle vir ewig ellendig gewees het, omdat hulle geen voorbereidende toestand gehad het nie; en so sou die plan van verlossing verydel gewees het, en die woord van God sou tevergeefs gewees het, en geen uitwerking hê nie.
- 27 Maar kyk, dit was nie so nie; maar dit is vir mense vasgestel dat hulle moet sterwe; en na die dood moet hulle geoordeel word, en wel daardie selfde oordeel waarvan ons gesprek het, wat die einde is.
- 28 En nadat God bepaal het dat hierdie dinge na die mens moet kom, kyk, toe het Hy gesien dat dit raadzaam was dat die mens omtrent die dinge sou weet wat Hy vir hulle bepaal het.
- 29 Daarom het Hy engele gestuur om met hulle te spreek, wat die mens die heerlijkheid van God laat sien het.

Now Alma said unto him: This is the thing which I was about to explain. Now we see that Adam did fall by the partaking of the forbidden fruit, according to the word of God; and thus we see, that by his fall, all mankind became a lost and fallen people.

And now behold, I say unto you that if it had been possible for Adam to have partaken of the fruit of the tree of life at that time, there would have been no death, and the word would have been void, making God a liar, for he said: If thou eat thou shalt surely die.

And we see that death comes upon mankind, yea, the death which has been spoken of by Amulek, which is the temporal death; nevertheless there was a space granted unto man in which he might repent; therefore this life became a probationary state; a time to prepare to meet God; a time to prepare for that endless state which has been spoken of by us, which is after the resurrection of the dead.

Now, if it had not been for the plan of redemption, which was laid from the foundation of the world, there could have been no resurrection of the dead; but there was a plan of redemption laid, which shall bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, of which has been spoken.

And now behold, if it were possible that our first parents could have gone forth and partaken of the tree of life they would have been forever miserable, having no preparatory state; and thus the plan of redemption would have been frustrated, and the word of God would have been void, taking none effect.

But behold, it was not so; but it was appointed unto men that they must die; and after death, they must come to judgment, even that same judgment of which we have spoken, which is the end.

And after God had appointed that these things should come unto man, behold, then he saw that it was expedient that man should know concerning the things whereof he had appointed unto them;

Therefore he sent angels to converse with them, who caused men to behold of his glory.

30 En hulle het van daardie tyd af begin om sy Naam aan te roep; daarom het God met die mens gespreek, en aan hulle sy plan van verlossing bekend gemaak, wat berei is vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld; en dit het Hy aan hulle bekend gemaak volgens hulle geloof en bekering, en hulle heilige werke.

31 Daarom, Hy het gebooie aan die mens gegee, omdat hulle eerste die eerste gebooie oortree het aangaande die dinge wat stoflik was, en soos gode geword het, wat goed van kwaad geken het, en hulle self in 'n posisie geplaas het om te handel, of geplaas was in 'n toestand om te handel volgens hulle wil en welbehae, om kwaad of goed te doen—

32 Daarom het God aan hulle gebooie gegee, nadat Hy aan hulle die plan van verlossing bekend gemaak het, dat hulle nie kwaad mag doen nie, waarvoor die straf 'n tweede dood is, wat 'n ewigdurende dood is wat betref die dinge van regverdigheid; want oor sulkes kon die plan van verlossing geen krag gehad het nie, want die werke van geregtigheid kan nie vernietig word, volgens die allesoortreffende goedheid van God nie.

33 Maar God het op die mens 'n beroep gedoen, in die Naam van sy Seun, (dit was die plan van verlossing wat vasgestel was), en gesê: As julle sal bekeer, en nie julle harte verhard nie, dan sal Ek barmhartig wees teenoor julle, deur my Eniggebore Seun;

34 Daarom, wie ook al bekeer, en nie sy hart verhard nie, hy sal geregtig wees om barmhartigheid te ontvang deur my Eniggebore Seun, tot vergifnis van sy sonde; en diesulkes sal my rus binnegaan.

35 En wie ook al sy hart sal verhard en ongeregtigheid sal doen, kyk, Ek sweer in my toorn dat hy my rus nie sal binnegaan nie.

36 En nou, my broers, kyk, ek sê vir julle, dat as julle jul harte sal verhard, julle nie die rus van die Here sal binnegaan nie; daarom vertoon julle ongeregtigheid Hom, sodat Hy sy toorn op julle afstuur soos tydens die eerste uittarting, ja, volgens sy woord, in die laaste uittarting sowel as die eerste, tot die ewigdurende vernietiging van julle siele; daarom, volgens sy woord, tot die laaste dood, sowel as die eerste.

And they began from that time forth to call on his name; therefore God conversed with men, and made known unto them the plan of redemption, which had been prepared from the foundation of the world; and this he made known unto them according to their faith and repentance and their holy works.

Wherefore, he gave commandments unto men, they having first transgressed the first commandments as to things which were temporal, and becoming as gods, knowing good from evil, placing themselves in a state to act, or being placed in a state to act according to their wills and pleasures, whether to do evil or to do good—

Therefore God gave unto them commandments, after having made known unto them the plan of redemption, that they should not do evil, the penalty thereof being a second death, which was an everlasting death as to things pertaining unto righteousness; for on such the plan of redemption could have no power, for the works of justice could not be destroyed, according to the supreme goodness of God.

But God did call on men, in the name of his Son, (this being the plan of redemption which was laid) saying: If ye will repent, and harden not your hearts, then will I have mercy upon you, through mine Only Begotten Son;

Therefore, whosoever repenteth, and hardeneth not his heart, he shall have claim on mercy through mine Only Begotten Son, unto a remission of his sins; and these shall enter into my rest.

And whosoever will harden his heart and will do iniquity, behold, I swear in my wrath that he shall not enter into my rest.

And now, my brethren, behold I say unto you, that if ye will harden your hearts ye shall not enter into the rest of the Lord; therefore your iniquity provoketh him that he sendeth down his wrath upon you as in the first provocation, yea, according to his word in the last provocation as well as the first, to the everlasting destruction of your souls; therefore, according to his word, unto the last death, as well as the first.

37 En nou, my broers, aangesien ons hierdie dinge weet, en hulle is waar, laat ons bekeer, en nie ons harte verhard nie, sodat ons nie die Here ons God uittart dat ons sy toorn op ons neertrek in hierdie, sy tweede gebooie wat Hy aan ons gegee het nie; maar laat ons die rus van God binnegaan, wat berei is volgens sy woord.

And now, my brethren, seeing we know these things, and they are true, let us repent, and harden not our hearts, that we provoke not the Lord our God to pull down his wrath upon us in these his second commandments which he has given unto us; but let us enter into the rest of God, which is prepared according to his word.

Alma 13

- 1 En verder, my broers, ek wil julle gedagtes vorentoe neem na die tyd toe die Here God hierdie gebooie aan sy kinders gegee het; en ek wil hê dat julle moet onthou dat die Here God priesters geordineer het, volgens sy heilige orde, wat volgens die orde van sy Seun was, om hierdie dinge aan sy volk te leer.
- 2 En daardie priesters is geordineer volgens die orde van sy Seun, op 'n wyse dat die volk daardeur mag weet op watter wyse hulle mag uitsien na sy Seun om verlossing.
- 3 En dit is die wyse waarvolgens hulle geordineer is—hulle is geroep en voorberei vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld volgens die voorkennis van God, vanweë hulle uitnemende geloof en goeie werke; in die eerste plek is hulle gelaat om goed of kwaad te kies; daarom, omdat hulle die goeie gekies het, en omdat hulle uitermate groot geloof beoefen het, word hulle geroep met 'n heilige roeping, ja, met daardie heilige roeping wat berei was met, en volgens, 'n voorbereidende verlossing vir sodaniges.
- 4 En aldus is hulle geroep tot hierdie heilige roeping vanweë hulle geloof, terwyl ander die Gees van God sou verwerp vanweë die hardheid van hulle harte en blindheid van hulle verstand, terwyl, as dit nie hiervoor was nie, mag hulle 'n ewe groot voorreg geniet het as hulle broers.
- 5 Of kortom, in die eerste plek was hulle gelyk aan hul broers; dus was hierdie heilige roeping berei vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld vir diesulkes wat nie hulle harte sou verhard nie, en dit is in, en deur, die versoening van die Eniggebore Seun, wat berei was—
- 6 En aldus is hulle geroep deur hierdie heilige roeping, en geordineer tot die hoëpriesterskap van die heilige orde van God, om sy gebooie te onderrig aan die kinders van mense, sodat hulle ook sy rus mag binnegaan—
- 7 Hierdie hoëpriesterskap is volgens die orde van sy Seun, welke orde vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld was; of, met ander woorde, dit is sonder begin van dae, of einde van jare, en is berei van ewigheid tot alle ewigheid, volgens sy voorkennis van alle dinge—

Alma 13

And again, my brethren, I would cite your minds forward to the time when the Lord God gave these commandments unto his children; and I would that ye should remember that the Lord God ordained priests, after his holy order, which was after the order of his Son, to teach these things unto the people.

And those priests were ordained after the order of his Son, in a manner that thereby the people might know in what manner to look forward to his Son for redemption.

And this is the manner after which they were ordained—being called and prepared from the foundation of the world according to the foreknowledge of God, on account of their exceeding faith and good works; in the first place being left to choose good or evil; therefore they having chosen good, and exercising exceedingly great faith, are called with a holy calling, yea, with that holy calling which was prepared with, and according to, a preparatory redemption for such.

And thus they have been called to this holy calling on account of their faith, while others would reject the Spirit of God on account of the hardness of their hearts and blindness of their minds, while, if it had not been for this they might have had as great privilege as their brethren.

Or in fine, in the first place they were on the same standing with their brethren; thus this holy calling being prepared from the foundation of the world for such as would not harden their hearts, being in and through the atonement of the Only Begotten Son, who was prepared—

And thus being called by this holy calling, and ordained unto the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to teach his commandments unto the children of men, that they also might enter into his rest—

This high priesthood being after the order of his Son, which order was from the foundation of the world; or in other words, being without beginning of days or end of years, being prepared from eternity to all eternity, according to his foreknowledge of all things—

8 Nou is hulle geordineer op hierdie wyse—hulle is geroep met 'n heilige roeping, en geordineer met 'n heilige ordinansie, en het die hoëpriesterskap van die heilige orde op hulle geneem, welke roeping, en ordinansie, en hoëpriesterskap, sonder begin of einde is—

9 So word hulle hoëpriesters vir ewig, volgens die orde van die Seun, die Eniggeborene van die Vader, wat sonder begin van dae of einde van jare is, wat vol genade, billikheid en waarheid is. En so is dit. Amen.

10 Nou, soos ek gesê het aangaande die heilige orde, of hierdie hoëpriesterskap, is daar baie wat geordineer is en hoëpriesters van God geword het; en dit was vanweë hulle uitnemende geloof en bekering, en hulle regverdigheid voor God, omdat hulle verkies het om te bekeer en regverdigheid te doen eerder as om te vergaan;

11 Daarom is hulle geroep volgens hierdie heilige orde, en is geheilig, en hulle kleding is wit gewas deur die bloed van die Lam.

12 Nou, nadat hulle geheilig is deur die Heilige Gees, omdat hulle kleding wit gemaak is, omdat hulle rein en vlekkeloos voor God was, kon nie sonde aanskou nie tensy dit met afkeer was; en daar was baie, uitermate baie, wat rein gemaak is en die rus van die Here hulle God binnegegaan het.

13 En nou, my broers, ek wil hê dat julle jul voor God moet verootmoedig, en vrugte voortbring wat pas by bekering, dat julle ook daardie rus mag binnegaan.

14 Ja, verootmoedig julleself net soos die volk in die dae van Melgisédek, wat ook 'n hoëpriester was volgens hierdie selfde orde waarvan ek gespreek het, wat ook die hoëpriesterskap op homself geneem het vir ewig.

15 En dit was hierdie selfde Melgisédek aan wie Abraham tiendes betaal het; ja, selfs ons vader Abraham het tiendes betaal van een tiende deel van alles wat hy besit het.

Now they were ordained after this manner—being called with a holy calling, and ordained with a holy ordinance, and taking upon them the high priesthood of the holy order, which calling, and ordinance, and high priesthood, is without beginning or end—

Thus they become high priests forever, after the order of the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, who is without beginning of days or end of years, who is full of grace, equity, and truth. And thus it is. Amen.

Now, as I said concerning the holy order, or this high priesthood, there were many who were ordained and became high priests of God; and it was on account of their exceeding faith and repentance, and their righteousness before God, they choosing to repent and work righteousness rather than to perish;

Therefore they were called after this holy order, and were sanctified, and their garments were washed white through the blood of the Lamb.

Now they, after being sanctified by the Holy Ghost, having their garments made white, being pure and spotless before God, could not look upon sin save it were with abhorrence; and there were many, exceedingly great many, who were made pure and entered into the rest of the Lord their God.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should humble yourselves before God, and bring forth fruit meet for repentance, that ye may also enter into that rest.

Yea, humble yourselves even as the people in the days of Melchizedek, who was also a high priest after this same order which I have spoken, who also took upon him the high priesthood forever.

And it was this same Melchizedek to whom Abraham paid tithes; yea, even our father Abraham paid tithes of one-tenth part of all he possessed.

- 16 Nou is hierdie ordinansies op hierdie wyse gegee, dat die volk daardeur mag uitsien na die Seun van God, dit was 'n versinnebeeld van sy orde, of dit was sy orde, en dit dat hulle mag uitsien na Hom vir 'n vergifnis van hulle sondes, sodat hulle die rus van die Here mag binnegaan.
- 17 Nou hierdie Melchisedek was 'n koning oor die land Salem; en sy volk het toegeneem in ongeregtheid en gruwel; ja, hulle het almal afgedwaal; hulle was vol allerlei booshede.
- 18 Maar Melchisedek, omdat hy magtige geloof beoefen het, en die amp van die hoëpriesterskap ontvang het volgens die heilige orde van God, het bekering gepreek aan sy volk. En kyk, hulle het bekeer; en Melchisedek het vrede gevestig in die land in sy dae; daarom is hy die vredevoers genoem, want hy was die koning van Salem; en hy het onder sy vader geheers.
- 19 Nou, daar was baie voor hom, en daar was ook baie daarna, maar niemand was groter nie; daarom, van hom het hulle meer in besonder melding gemaak.
- 20 Nou hoef ek nie die saak te verhaal nie; wat ek gesê het, behoort voldoende te wees. Kyk, die skrifture is voor julle; as julle hulle sal verdraai, sal dit tot julle eie vernietiging wees.
- 21 En nou, dit het gebeur dat toe Alma hierdie woorde aan hulle gesê het, het hy sy hand uitgestrek na hulle en met 'n magtige stem uitgeroep, en gesê: Nou is die tyd om te bekeer, want die dag van heil kom nader;
- 22 Ja, en die stem van die Here, deur die mond van engele, verkondig dit aan alle nasies; ja, verkondig dit, sodat hulle blye tydings van groot blydskap mag hê; ja, en Hy laat hierdie blye tydings weerklink onder sy hele volk, ja, aan hulle wat ver en wyd verstrooi is op die aangesig van die aarde; daarom het dit na ons gekom.
- 23 En dit is aan ons bekendgemaak in duidelike terme, sodat ons mag verstaan, dat ons nie kan dwaal nie; en dit omdat ons swerwers in 'n vreemde land is; daarom, ons word dus hoog begunstig, want hierdie blye tydings is aan ons verkondig in alle dele van ons wingerd.

Now these ordinances were given after this manner, that thereby the people might look forward on the Son of God, it being a type of his order, or it being his order, and this that they might look forward to him for a remission of their sins, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord.

Now this Melchizedek was a king over the land of Salem; and his people had waxed strong in iniquity and abomination; yea, they had all gone astray; they were full of all manner of wickedness;

But Melchizedek having exercised mighty faith, and received the office of the high priesthood according to the holy order of God, did preach repentance unto his people. And behold, they did repent; and Melchizedek did establish peace in the land in his days; therefore he was called the prince of peace, for he was the king of Salem; and he did reign under his father.

Now, there were many before him, and also there were many afterwards, but none were greater; therefore, of him they have more particularly made mention.

Now I need not rehearse the matter; what I have said may suffice. Behold, the scriptures are before you; if ye will wrest them it shall be to your own destruction.

And now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words unto them, he stretched forth his hand unto them and cried with a mighty voice, saying: Now is the time to repent, for the day of salvation draweth nigh;

Yea, and the voice of the Lord, by the mouth of angels, doth declare it unto all nations; yea, doth declare it, that they may have glad tidings of great joy; yea, and he doth sound these glad tidings among all his people, yea, even to them that are scattered abroad upon the face of the earth; wherefore they have come unto us.

And they are made known unto us in plain terms, that we may understand, that we cannot err; and this because of our being wanderers in a strange land; therefore, we are thus highly favored, for we have these glad tidings declared unto us in all parts of our vineyard.

- 24 Want kyk, engele verkondig dit in hierdie tyd aan baie in ons land; en dit is met die doel om die harte van die kinders van mense voor te berei om sy woord te ontvang ten tyde van sy koms in sy heerlijkheid.
- 25 En nou wag ons net om die blye nuus te hoor wat aan ons verkondig word by monde van engele, van sy koms; want die tyd kom, ons weet nie hoe gou nie. Mag God gee dat dit in my tyd mag wees; maar laat dit gouer of later wees, daarin sal ek my verbly.
- 26 En dit sal bekendgemaak word aan regverdige en heilige manne, by monde van engele, ten tyde van sy koms, sodat die woorde van ons vaders vervul mag word, volgens dit wat hulle gespreek het aangaande Hom, wat volgens die gees van profesie was wat in hulle was.
- 27 En nou, my broers, ek wens uit die diepste deel van my hart, ja, met groot benoudheid en wel tot pyn toe, dat julle op my woorde sal ag slaan, en julle sondes afwerp, en nie die dag van julle bekering uitstel nie;
- 28 Maar dat julle jul sal verootmoedig voor die Here, en sy heilige Naam aanroep, en gedurig waak en bid, dat julle nie versoek mag word bo dit wat julle kan verduur nie, en sodoende gelei word deur die Heilige Gees, en nederig, sagmoedig, onderdanig, geduldig, vol liefde en alle lankmoedigheid word;
- 29 En geloof het in die Here; en 'n hoop het dat julle die ewige lewe sal ontvang; en die liefde van God altyd in julle harte hê, dat julle verhef mag word op die laaste dag en sy rus binnegaan.
- 30 En mag die Here aan julle bekering skenk, dat julle nie sy toorn op julle mag afbring nie, dat julle nie vasgebind mag word deur die kettings van die hel nie, dat julle nie die tweede dood mag ly nie.
- 31 En Alma het baie meer woorde met die volk gespreek, wat nie in hierdie boek geskrywe is nie.

For behold, angels are declaring it unto many at this time in our land; and this is for the purpose of preparing the hearts of the children of men to receive his word at the time of his coming in his glory.

And now we only wait to hear the joyful news declared unto us by the mouth of angels, of his coming; for the time cometh, we know not how soon. Would to God that it might be in my day; but let it be sooner or later, in it I will rejoice.

And it shall be made known unto just and holy men, by the mouth of angels, at the time of his coming, that the words of our fathers may be fulfilled, according to that which they have spoken concerning him, which was according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

And now, my brethren, I wish from the inmost part of my heart, yea, with great anxiety even unto pain, that ye would hearken unto my words, and cast off your sins, and not procrastinate the day of your repentance;

But that ye would humble yourselves before the Lord, and call on his holy name, and watch and pray continually, that ye may not be tempted above that which ye can bear, and thus be led by the Holy Spirit, becoming humble, meek, submissive, patient, full of love and all long-suffering;

Having faith on the Lord; having a hope that ye shall receive eternal life; having the love of God always in your hearts, that ye may be lifted up at the last day and enter into his rest.

And may the Lord grant unto you repentance, that ye may not bring down his wrath upon you, that ye may not be bound down by the chains of hell, that ye may not suffer the second death.

And Alma spake many more words unto the people, which are not written in this book.

Alma 14

- 1 En dit het gebeur nadat hy 'n einde gemaak het om met die volk te spreek, het baie van hulle in sy woorde geglo, en begin om te bekeer, en om die skrifture te ondersoek.
- 2 Maar die grootste deel van hulle was begerig dat hulle Alma en Amulek mag vernietig; want hulle was kwaad vir Alma, vanweë die duidelikheid van sy woorde aan Zeesrom; en hulle het ook gesê dat Amulek vir hulle gelieg het, en uitgevaar het teen hulle wet, en ook teen hul regsgeleerdes en hul regters.
- 3 En hulle was ook kwaad vir Alma en Amulek; en omdat hulle so duidelik getuig het teen hul boosheid, het hulle gesoek om hulle in die geheim dood te maak.
- 4 Maar dit het gebeur dat hulle dit nie gedoen het nie, maar hulle het hul geneem en vasgebind met sterk toue, en hulle voor die hoofregter van die land geneem.
- 5 En die volk het na vore gekom en teen hulle getuig—en getuig dat hulle uitgevaar het teen die wet, en hulle regsgeleerdes en regters van die land, en ook van al die mense wat in die land was; en ook getuig dat daar net een God was, en dat Hy sy Seun sou stuur onder die volk maar dat Hy hulle nie sou red nie; en baie sulke dinge het die volk teen Alma en Amulek getuig. Nou dit is gedoen voor die hoofregter van die land.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat Zeesrom verbaas was oor die woorde wat gespreek is; en hy het ook geweet aangaande die blindheid van die verstande, wat hy veroorsaak het onder die volk deur sy leuenagtige woorde; en sy siel het begin om verskeur te word onder 'n besef van sy eie skuld; ja, hy het begin om omring te word deur die pyne van die hel.

Alma 14

And it came to pass after he had made an end of speaking unto the people many of them did believe on his words, and began to repent, and to search the scriptures.

But the more part of them were desirous that they might destroy Alma and Amulek; for they were angry with Alma, because of the plainness of his words unto Zeezrom; and they also said that Amulek had lied unto them, and had reviled against their law and also against their lawyers and judges.

And they were also angry with Alma and Amulek; and because they had testified so plainly against their wickedness, they sought to put them away privily.

But it came to pass that they did not; but they took them and bound them with strong cords, and took them before the chief judge of the land.

And the people went forth and witnessed against them—testifying that they had reviled against the law, and their lawyers and judges of the land, and also of all the people that were in the land; and also testified that there was but one God, and that he should send his Son among the people, but he should not save them; and many such things did the people testify against Alma and Amulek. Now this was done before the chief judge of the land.

And it came to pass that Zeezrom was astonished at the words which had been spoken; and he also knew concerning the blindness of the minds, which he had caused among the people by his lying words; and his soul began to be harrowed up under a consciousness of his own guilt; yea, he began to be encircled about by the pains of hell.

- 7 En dit het gebeur dat hy tot die volk begin roep het, en gesê het: Kyk, ek is skuldig, en hierdie manne is vlekkeloos voor God. En hy het vir hulle begin pleit van daardie tyd af aan; maar hulle het teen hom uitgevaar, en gesê: Is jy ook van die duiwel besete? En hulle het op hom gespoeg, en hom uitgewerp uit hulle midde, en ook al diegene wat in die woorde geglo het wat deur Alma en Amulek gespreek is; en hulle het hulle uitgewerp, en manne gestuur om klippe na hulle te gooi.
- 8 En hulle het hul vroue en kinders bymekaar gebring, en wie ook al geglo het of geleer is om te glo in die woord van God, dié het hulle in die vuur laat werp, en hulle het ook hulle kronieke na vore gebring wat die heilige skrifte bevat het, en hulle ook in die vuur gewerp, dat hulle verbrand en deur vuur vernietig mag word.
- 9 En dit het gebeur dat hulle Alma en Amulek geneem het, en hulle gebring het na die plek van marteling, sodat hulle die vernietiging kon aanskou van diegene wat deur die vuur verteer is.
- 10 En toe Amulek die pyne sien van die vroue en kinders wat in die vuur verteer word, was hy ook gepynig; en hy het aan Alma gesê: Hoe kan ons hierdie verskriklike toneel aanskou? Daarom, laat ons ons hande uitstrek, en die krag van God wat in ons is uitoefen, en hulle uit die vlamme red.
- 11 Maar Alma het aan hom gesê: Die Gees dwing my dat ek nie my hand moet uitstrek nie; want kyk, die Here ontvang hulle tot Homself, in heerlijkheid; en Hy laat toe dat hulle hierdie ding mag doen, of dat die mense hierdie ding mag doen aan hulle, volgens die hardheid van hulle harte, sodat die oordele wat Hy op hulle in sy toorn sal uitoefen, regverdig mag wees; en die bloed van die onskuldiges sal staan as 'n getuie teen hulle, ja, en kragtig teen hulle op die laaste dag uitroep.
- 12 Nou het Amulek aan Alma gesê: Kyk, miskien sal hulle ons ook verbrand.
- 13 En Alma het gesê: Laat dit wees volgens die wil van die Here. Maar, kyk, ons werk is nie klaar nie; daarom verbrand hulle ons nie.

And it came to pass that he began to cry unto the people, saying: Behold, I am guilty, and these men are spotless before God. And he began to plead for them from that time forth; but they reviled him, saying: Art thou also possessed with the devil? And they spit upon him, and cast him out from among them, and also all those who believed in the words which had been spoken by Alma and Amulek; and they cast them out, and sent men to cast stones at them.

And they brought their wives and children together, and whosoever believed or had been taught to believe in the word of God they caused that they should be cast into the fire; and they also brought forth their records which contained the holy scriptures, and cast them into the fire also, that they might be burned and destroyed by fire.

And it came to pass that they took Alma and Amulek, and carried them forth to the place of martyrdom, that they might witness the destruction of those who were consumed by fire.

And when Amulek saw the pains of the women and children who were consuming in the fire, he also was pained; and he said unto Alma: How can we witness this awful scene? Therefore let us stretch forth our hands, and exercise the power of God which is in us, and save them from the flames.

But Alma said unto him: The Spirit constraineth me that I must not stretch forth mine hand; for behold the Lord receiveth them up unto himself, in glory; and he doth suffer that they may do this thing, or that the people may do this thing unto them, according to the hardness of their hearts, that the judgments which he shall exercise upon them in his wrath may be just; and the blood of the innocent shall stand as a witness against them, yea, and cry mightily against them at the last day.

Now Amulek said unto Alma: Behold, perhaps they will burn us also.

And Alma said: Be it according to the will of the Lord. But, behold, our work is not finished; therefore they burn us not.

14 Nou het dit gebeur dat toe die liggame van diegene wat in die vuur gewerp, verteer is, en ook die kronieke wat saam met hulle ingewerp is, het die hoofregter van die land gekom en voor Alma en Amulek gaan staan, terwyl hulle vasgebind was; en hy het hulle met sy hand op hulle wange geslaan, en aan hulle gesê: Na wat julle gesien het, sal julle weer vir hierdie volk preek, dat hulle in 'n poel van vuur en swael gewerp sal word?

15 Kyk, julle sien dat julle geen mag gehad het om diegene te red wat in die vuur gewerp was nie; nóg het God hulle gered alhoewel hulle van julle geloof was. En die regter het hulle weer geslaan op hulle wange, en gevra: Wat sê julle vir julleself?

16 Nou was hierdie regter volgens die orde en geloof van Nehor, wat Gídeon gedood het.

17 En dit het gebeur dat Alma en Amulek hom niks geantwoord het nie; en hy het hulle weer geslaan, en hulle aan die amptenare oorgelewer om in die gevangenis gewerp te word.

18 En toe hulle drie dae in die gevangenis gewerp was, het daar baie regsgeleerdes, en regters, en pries- ters, en leraars gekom, wat van die geloof van Nehor was; en hulle het in die gevangenis gekom om hulle te sien, en hulle het hulle uitgevra oor baie woorde; maar hulle het hulle niks geantwoord nie.

19 En dit het gebeur dat die regter voor hulle gestaan en gesê het: Hoekom beantwoord julle nie die woorde van hierdie mense nie? Weet julle nie dat ek mag het om julle oor te lewer aan die vlamme nie? En hy het hulle beveel om te spreek; maar hulle het niks geantwoord nie.

20 En dit het gebeur dat hulle vertrek het en hulle weë gegaan het, maar hulle het weer die volgende dag gekom; en die regter het hulle weer op hulle wange geslaan. En baie het ook na vore gekom, en hulle geslaan, en gesê: Sal julle weer staan en hierdie volk oordeel, en ons wet veroordeel? As julle sulke groot mag het, waarom bevry julle nie juisself nie?

21 En baie sulke dinge het hulle aan hulle gesê, terwyl hulle op hul tande gekners het teen hulle, en op hulle gespoeg, en gesê het: Hoe sal ons lyk wanneer ons verdoem is?

Now it came to pass that when the bodies of those who had been cast into the fire were consumed, and also the records which were cast in with them, the chief judge of the land came and stood before Alma and Amulek, as they were bound; and he smote them with his hand upon their cheeks, and said unto them: After what ye have seen, will ye preach again unto this people, that they shall be cast into a lake of fire and brimstone?

Behold, ye see that ye had not power to save those who had been cast into the fire; neither has God saved them because they were of thy faith. And the judge smote them again upon their cheeks, and asked: What say ye for yourselves?

Now this judge was after the order and faith of Nehor, who slew Gideon.

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek answered him nothing; and he smote them again, and delivered them to the officers to be cast into prison.

And when they had been cast into prison three days, there came many lawyers, and judges, and priests, and teachers, who were of the profession of Nehor; and they came in unto the prison to see them, and they questioned them about many words; but they answered them nothing.

And it came to pass that the judge stood before them, and said: Why do ye not answer the words of this people? Know ye not that I have power to deliver you up unto the flames? And he commanded them to speak; but they answered nothing.

And it came to pass that they departed and went their ways, but came again on the morrow; and the judge also smote them again on their cheeks. And many came forth also, and smote them, saying: Will ye stand again and judge this people, and condemn our law? If ye have such great power why do ye not deliver yourselves?

And many such things did they say unto them, gnashing their teeth upon them, and spitting upon them, and saying: How shall we look when we are damned?

22 En baie sulke dinge, ja, allerhande sulke dinge het hulle aan hulle gesê; en so het hulle hul bespot vir baie dae. En hulle het voedsel van hulle weerhou, sodat hulle honger mag ly, en water, sodat hulle dors mag ly; en hulle het ook van hulle hul klere wegge- neem dat hulle naak was; en so is hulle vasgebind met sterk toue, en in die gevangenis gehou.

23 En dit het gebeur nadat hulle so gely het vir baie dae lank, (en dit was op die twaalfde dag, in die tien- de maand, in die tiende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nephi) dat die hoofregter oor die land Ammonihah en baie van hulle leraars en hulle regsgeleerdes in die gevangenis ingegaan het waar Alma en Amulek vasgebind was met toue.

24 En die hoofregter het voor hulle gestaan, en hulle weer geslaan, en aan hulle gesê: As julle die mag van God het, bevry julleself van hierdie bande, en dan sal ons glo dat die Here hierdie volk sal vernietig volgens julle woorde.

25 En dit het gebeur dat hulle almal na vore gekom en hulle geslaan het, en dieselfde woorde gesê het, en wel tot die laaste toe; en toe die laaste met hulle ge- spreek het, was die krag van God oor Alma en Amulek, en hulle het opgestaan en op hulle voete ge- staan.

26 En Alma het geroep, en gesê: Hoe lank sal ons hierdie groot verdrukking verduur, o Here? O Here, gee ons krag volgens ons geloof wat in Christus is, en wel tot bevryding. En hulle het die toue gebreek waarmee hulle gebind was; en toe die mense dit sien, het hulle begin om te vlug, want die vrees vir vernie- tiging het oor hulle gekom.

27 En dit het gebeur dat hulle vrees so groot was, dat hulle neergeval het op die aarde, en nie die buitenste deur van die gevangenis bereik het nie; en die aarde het geweldig geskud, en die mure van die gevangenis is in twee geskeur sodat hulle op die aarde geval het; en die hoofregter en die regsgeleerdes, en die pries- ters, en die leraars, wat vir Alma en Amulek geslaan het, is gedood deur die val daarvan.

And many such things, yea, all manner of such things did they say unto them; and thus they did mock them for many days. And they did withhold food from them that they might hunger, and water that they might thirst; and they also did take from them their clothes that they were naked; and thus they were bound with strong cords, and confined in prison.

And it came to pass after they had thus suffered for many days, (and it was on the twelfth day, in the tenth month, in the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) that the chief judge over the land of Ammonihah and many of their teachers and their lawyers went in unto the prison where Alma and Amulek were bound with cords.

And the chief judge stood before them, and smote them again, and said unto them: If ye have the power of God deliver yourselves from these bands, and then we will believe that the Lord will destroy this people according to your words.

And it came to pass that they all went forth and smote them, saying the same words, even until the last; and when the last had spoken unto them the power of God was upon Alma and Amulek, and they rose and stood upon their feet.

And Alma cried, saying: How long shall we suffer these great afflictions, O Lord? O Lord, give us strength according to our faith which is in Christ, even unto deliverance. And they broke the cords with which they were bound; and when the people saw this, they began to flee, for the fear of destruction had come upon them.

And it came to pass that so great was their fear that they fell to the earth, and did not obtain the outer door of the prison; and the earth shook mightily, and the walls of the prison were rent in twain, so that they fell to the earth; and the chief judge, and the lawyers, and priests, and teachers, who smote upon Alma and Amulek, were slain by the fall thereof.

28 En Alma en Amulek het uit die gevangenis uitgekome en hulle was nie beseer nie; want die Here het mag aan hulle gegee, volgens hulle geloof wat in Christus was. En hulle het dadelik uit die gevangenis uitgekome; en hulle was bevry van hulle bande; en die gevangenis het op die grond neergestort en elke siel binne die mure daarvan, behalwe Alma en Amulek, is gedood; en hulle het dadelik die stad binnegekome.

29 Nou, omdat die mense 'n groot geraas gehoor het, het hulle aangehardloop gekome in skares om die oorsaak daarvan te weet; en toe hulle Alma en Amulek uit die gevangenis sien uitkome, en dat die mure daarvan op die grond neergestort het, is hulle met groot vrees getref, en het gevlug van die teenwoordigheid van Alma en Amulek af, net soos 'n bok met haar kleintjies van twee leeus af vlug; en so het hulle van die teenwoordigheid van Alma en Amulek af gevlug.

And Alma and Amulek came forth out of the prison, and they were not hurt; for the Lord had granted unto them power, according to their faith which was in Christ. And they straightway came forth out of the prison; and they were loosed from their bands; and the prison had fallen to the earth, and every soul within the walls thereof, save it were Alma and Amulek, was slain; and they straightway came forth into the city.

Now the people having heard a great noise came running together by multitudes to know the cause of it; and when they saw Alma and Amulek coming forth out of the prison, and the walls thereof had fallen to the earth, they were struck with great fear, and fled from the presence of Alma and Amulek even as a goat fleeth with her young from two lions; and thus they did flee from the presence of Alma and Amulek.

Alma 15

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat Alma en Amulek beveel is om uit daardie stad te vertrek, en hulle het vertrek, en uitgekom en wel sover as die land Sidom; en kyk, daar het hulle al die mense gevind wat vertrek het uit die land Ammonihah, wat uitgewerp en gestenig was, omdat hulle geglo het in die woorde van Alma.
- 2 En hulle het aan hulle alles vertel wat gebeur het met hulle vroue en kinders en ook aangaande hulle self, en van hulle mag van bevryding.
- 3 En ook Zeesrom het siek gelê in Sidom, met 'n brandende koors, wat veroorsaak is deur die groot beproewings van sy gemoed vanweë sy boosheid, want hy het veronderstel dat Alma en Amulek nie meer leef nie; en hy het veronderstel dat hulle dood is vanweë sy ongeregtheid. En hierdie groot sonde, en sy baie ander sondes, het sy verstand verskeur totdat dit uitermate smartvol geword het, en hy het geen verlossing gehad nie; daarom het hy begin brand met 'n brandende hitte.
- 4 Nou, toe hy hoor dat Alma en Amulek in die land Sidom was, het sy hart begin om moed te skep; en hy het dadelik 'n boodskap na hulle gestuur, en begeer dat hulle na hom toe kom.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat hulle dadelik gegaan het, en die boodskap gehoorsaam het wat hy aan hulle gestuur het; en hulle het ingegaan in die huis na Zeesrom; en hulle het hom op sy bed gevind, siek, en hy was baie swak met 'n brandende koors; en sy gemoed ook was uitermate beangs vanweë sy ongeregthede; en toe hy hulle sien, het hy sy hand uitgestrek, en hulle gesmeek dat hulle hom moes genees.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat Alma aan hom gesê het, terwyl hy hom by die hand neem: Glo jy in die krag van Christus tot heil?
- 7 En hy het geantwoord en gesê: Ja, ek glo al die woorde wat jy geleer het.
- 8 En Alma het gesê: As jy in die verlossing van Christus glo, kan jy genees word.
- 9 En hy het gesê: Ja, ek glo volgens jou woorde.
- 10 En toe het Alma tot die Here geroep, en gesê: O Here ons God, wees hierdie man barmhartig, en genees hom volgens sy geloof, wat in Christus is.

Alma 15

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek were commanded to depart out of that city; and they departed, and came out even into the land of Sidom; and behold, there they found all the people who had departed out of the land of Ammonihah, who had been cast out and stoned, because they believed in the words of Alma.

And they related unto them all that had happened unto their wives and children, and also concerning themselves, and of their power of deliverance.

And also Zeezrom lay sick at Sidom, with a burning fever, which was caused by the great tribulations of his mind on account of his wickedness, for he supposed that Alma and Amulek were no more; and he supposed that they had been slain because of his iniquity. And this great sin, and his many other sins, did harrow up his mind until it did become exceedingly sore, having no deliverance; therefore he began to be scorched with a burning heat.

Now, when he heard that Alma and Amulek were in the land of Sidom, his heart began to take courage; and he sent a message immediately unto them, desiring them to come unto him.

And it came to pass that they went immediately, obeying the message which he had sent unto them; and they went in unto the house unto Zeezrom; and they found him upon his bed, sick, being very low with a burning fever; and his mind also was exceedingly sore because of his iniquities; and when he saw them he stretched forth his hand, and besought them that they would heal him.

And it came to pass that Alma said unto him, taking him by the hand: Believest thou in the power of Christ unto salvation?

And he answered and said: Yea, I believe all the words that thou hast taught.

And Alma said: If thou believest in the redemption of Christ thou canst be healed.

And he said: Yea, I believe according to thy words.

And then Alma cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord our God, have mercy on this man, and heal him according to his faith which is in Christ.

11 En toe Alma hierdie woorde gesê het, het Zeesrom op sy voete gespring, en begin om te loop; en dit is gedoen tot groot verbasing van al die mense; en die kennis hieromtrent het uitgegaan dwarsdeur die hele land Sidom.

12 En Alma het Zeesrom gedoop tot die Here; en hy het begin om van daardie tyd af te preek vir die volk.

13 En Alma het 'n kerk gestig in die land Sidom, en priesters en leraars geordineer in die land, om tot die Here te doop wie ook al begerig was om gedoop te word.

14 En dit het gebeur dat hulle baie was; want hulle het ingestroom vanuit die hele streek rondom Sidom, en is gedoop.

15 Maar wat die volk betref wat in die land Ammonihah was, hulle het nog 'n hardvotige en hardnekkige volk gebly; en hulle het nie bekeer van hul sondes nie, en hulle het die mag van Alma en Amulek toegeskryf aan die duiwel; want hulle was van die geloof van Nehor, en het nie geglo aan die bekering van hulle sondes nie.

16 En dit het gebeur dat Alma en Amulek, want Amulek het al sy goud, en silwer, en sy kosbare dinge agtergelaat, wat in die land Ammonihah was, vir die woord van God, omdat hy verstoot is deur diegene wat eertyds sy vriende was, en ook deur sy vader en sy verwante;

17 Daarom, nadat Alma die kerk in Sidom gestig het, toe hy 'n groot beteueling gesien het, ja, toe hy gesien het dat die volk beteuel was wat betref die hoogmoed van hulle harte, en begin het om hulself te verootmoedig voor God, en begin het om bymekaar te kom by hulle heiligdomme om God te aanbid voor die altaar, en gedurigdeur te waak en te bid, sodat hulle verlos mag word van Satan, en van die dood, en van vernietiging—

18 Nou, soos ek gesê het, nadat Alma al hierdie dinge gesien het, daarom het hy Amulek geneem en oorgekom na die land Zarahemla, en hom na sy eie huis geneem, en hom versorg in sy beproewinge, en hom versterk in die Here.

19 En so het die tiende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi geëindig.

And when Alma had said these words, Zeezrom leaped upon his feet, and began to walk; and this was done to the great astonishment of all the people; and the knowledge of this went forth throughout all the land of Sidom.

And Alma baptized Zeezrom unto the Lord; and he began from that time forth to preach unto the people.

And Alma established a church in the land of Sidom, and consecrated priests and teachers in the land, to baptize unto the Lord whosoever were desirous to be baptized.

And it came to pass that they were many; for they did flock in from all the region round about Sidom, and were baptized.

But as to the people that were in the land of Ammonihah, they yet remained a hard-hearted and a stiff-necked people; and they repented not of their sins, ascribing all the power of Alma and Amulek to the devil; for they were of the profession of Nehor, and did not believe in the repentance of their sins.

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek, Amulek having forsaken all his gold, and silver, and his precious things, which were in the land of Ammonihah, for the word of God, he being rejected by those who were once his friends and also by his father and his kindred;

Therefore, after Alma having established the church at Sidom, seeing a great check, yea, seeing that the people were checked as to the pride of their hearts, and began to humble themselves before God, and began to assemble themselves together at their sanctuaries to worship God before the altar, watching and praying continually, that they might be delivered from Satan, and from death, and from destruction—

Now as I said, Alma having seen all these things, therefore he took Amulek and came over to the land of Zarahemla, and took him to his own house, and did administer unto him in his tribulations, and strengthened him in the Lord.

And thus ended the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alma 16

- 1 En dit het gebeur in die elfde jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nepi, op die vyfde dag van die tweede maand, nadat daar baie vrede in die land Zarahemla was, nadat daar geen oorloë nóg twiste vir 'n sekere aantal jare was, en wel tot die vyfde dag van die tweede maand in die elfde jaar, is daar 'n geroep gehoor van oorlog dwarsdeur die land.
- 2 Want kyk, die leërs van die Lamaniete het ingekom van die kant van die wildernis af, tot in die grense van die land, en wel tot in die stad Ammonihah, en het begin om die volk te dood en die stad te verwoes.
- 3 En nou het dit gebeur, voordat die Nefiete 'n voldoende mag op die been kon kry om hulle te verdryf uit die land, het hulle die mense vernietig wat in die stad Ammonihah was, en ook sommige rondom die grense van Noag, en ander gevange geneem die wildernis in.
- 4 Nou, dit het gebeur dat die Nefiete begerig was om diegene terug te kry wat gevange weggevoer is die wildernis in.
- 5 Daarom, hy wat aangestel was as hoofkaptein oor die leërs van die Nefiete, (en sy naam was Zoram, en hy het twee seuns gehad, Lehi en Agab)—nou Zoram en sy twee seuns, wetende dat Alma hoëpriester was oor die kerk, en omdat hulle gehoor het dat hy die gees van profesie gehad het, daarom het hulle na hom gegaan en van hom begeer om te weet of die Here wou hê dat hulle die wildernis moes ingaan op soek na hulle broers wat gevange geneem is deur die Lamaniete.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat Alma vir die Here gevra het aangaande die saak. En Alma het teruggekeer en aan hulle gesê: Kyk, die Lamaniete sal die Sidon-rivier oorsteek in die suidelike wildernis, ver hoër anderkant die grense van die land Manti. En kyk, daar sal jy hulle ontmoet, aan die oostekant van die Sidon-rivier, en daar sal die Here jou broers aan jou oorgee wat gevange geneem is deur die Lamaniete.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat Zoram en sy seuns die Sidon-rivier oorgesteek het, met hulle leërs, en wegmarsjeer het anderkant die grense van Manti in die suidelike wildernis, wat aan die oostekant van die Sidon-rivier was.

Alma 16

And it came to pass in the eleventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, on the fifth day of the second month, there having been much peace in the land of Zarahemla, there having been no wars nor contentions for a certain number of years, even until the fifth day of the second month in the eleventh year, there was a cry of war heard throughout the land.

For behold, the armies of the Lamanites had come in upon the wilderness side, into the borders of the land, even into the city of Ammonihah, and began to slay the people and destroy the city.

And now it came to pass, before the Nephites could raise a sufficient army to drive them out of the land, they had destroyed the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, and also some around the borders of Noah, and taken others captive into the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that the Nephites were desirous to obtain those who had been carried away captive into the wilderness.

Therefore, he that had been appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites, (and his name was Zoram, and he had two sons, Lehi and Aha)—now Zoram and his two sons, knowing that Alma was high priest over the church, and having heard that he had the spirit of prophecy, therefore they went unto him and desired of him to know whither the Lord would that they should go into the wilderness in search of their brethren, who had been taken captive by the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Alma inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And Alma returned and said unto them: Behold, the Lamanites will cross the river Sidon in the south wilderness, away up beyond the borders of the land of Manti. And behold there shall ye meet them, on the east of the river Sidon, and there the Lord will deliver unto thee thy brethren who have been taken captive by the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Zoram and his sons crossed over the river Sidon, with their armies, and marched away beyond the borders of Manti into the south wilderness, which was on the east side of the river Sidon.

- 8 En hulle het afgekom op die leërs van die Lamaniete, en die Lamaniete is verstrooi en die wildernis ingejaag; en hulle het hulle broers geneem wat gevange geneem is deur die Lamaniete, en daar was nie een siel van hulle wat verlore gegaan het wat gevange geneem is nie. En hulle is gebring deur hulle broers om hulle eie landerye te besit.
- 9 En so het die elfde jaar van die regters geëindig; nadat die Lamaniete uit die land verdryf is, en die volk van Ammonihah vernietig is; ja, elke lewende siel van die Ammonihahiete is vernietig, en ook hulle groot stad, wat hulle gesê het God dit nie kon vernietig nie, vanweë sy grootheid.
- 10 Maar kyk, in een dag is dit verlate gelaat; en die lyke is vermink deur die honde en wilde diere van die wildernis.
- 11 Nogtans, na baie dae is hulle dooie liggame opgehoop op die aangesig van die aarde, en is hulle bedek met 'n dun bedekking. En nou, so groot was die stank daarvan dat die volk vir baie jare nie ingegaan het om die land Ammonihah te besit nie. En dit is genoem Verlatenheid van Nehors; want hulle was van die geloof van Nehor, wat gedood is; en hulle landerye het verlate gebly.
- 12 En die Lamaniete het nie weer kom oorlog maak teen die Nefiete tot die veertiende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nephi nie. En dus vir drie jaar lank het die volk van Nephi voortdurende vrede in die hele land gehad.
- 13 En Alma en Amulek het uitgegaan om bekering te preek tot die volk in hulle tempels, en in hul heiligdomme, en ook in hulle sinagoges, wat gebou is volgens die wyse van die Jode.
- 14 En soveel as wat hulle woorde wou aanhoor, aan hulle het hul die woord van God meegedeel, sonder inagneming van persoon, voortdurend.
- 15 En so het Alma en Amulek uitgegaan, en ook veel meer wat gekies was vir die werk om die woord te preek dwarsdeur die hele land. En die vestiging van die kerk het algemeen geword dwarsdeur die land, in die hele streek rondom, onder die hele volk van die Nefiete.

And they came upon the armies of the Lamanites, and the Lamanites were scattered and driven into the wilderness; and they took their brethren who had been taken captive by the Lamanites, and there was not one soul of them had been lost that were taken captive. And they were brought by their brethren to possess their own lands.

And thus ended the eleventh year of the judges, the Lamanites having been driven out of the land, and the people of Ammonihah were destroyed; yea, every living soul of the Ammonihahites was destroyed, and also their great city, which they said God could not destroy, because of its greatness.

But behold, in one day it was left desolate; and the carcasses were mangled by dogs and wild beasts of the wilderness.

Nevertheless, after many days their dead bodies were heaped up upon the face of the earth, and they were covered with a shallow covering. And now so great was the scent thereof that the people did not go in to possess the land of Ammonihah for many years. And it was called Desolation of Nehors; for they were of the profession of Nehor, who were slain; and their lands remained desolate.

And the Lamanites did not come again to war against the Nephites until the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus for three years did the people of Nephi have continual peace in all the land.

And Alma and Amulek went forth preaching repentance to the people in their temples, and in their sanctuaries, and also in their synagogues, which were built after the manner of the Jews.

And as many as would hear their words, unto them they did impart the word of God, without any respect of persons, continually.

And thus did Alma and Amulek go forth, and also many more who had been chosen for the work, to preach the word throughout all the land. And the establishment of the church became general throughout the land, in all the region round about, among all the people of the Nephites.

16 En daar was geen ongelykheid onder hulle nie; die Here het sy Gees uitgestort op die hele aangesig van die land om die gemoed van die kinders van mense voor te berei, of om hulle harte voor te berei om die woord te ontvang wat onder hulle geleer sou word ten tyde van sy koms—

17 Sodat hulle nie verhard mag wees teen die woord nie, sodat hulle nie ongelowig mag wees nie, en aangaan tot vernietiging toe nie, maar sodat hulle die woord met vreugde mag ontvang, en soos 'n tak geënt word op die ware wingerdstok, sodat hulle die rus mag binnegaan van die Here hulle God.

18 Nou, daardie priesters wat uitgegaan het onder die volk, het gepredik teen alle leuens, en bedrog en afguns en onenigheid, en kwaadwilligheid en beledigings, en diefstal, roof, plunder, moord, egbreuk pleeg, en alle soorte wellustigheid, en uitgeroep dat hierdie dinge nie so behoort te wees nie—

19 En hulle het die dinge verkondig wat binnekort moes kom; ja, en hulle het die koms van die Seun van God verkondig, sy lyding en dood, en ook die opstanding van die dode.

20 En baie van die mense het navraag gedoen aangaande die plek waar die Seun van God sou kom; en hulle is geleer dat Hy aan hulle sou verskyn na sy opstanding; en dit het die volk aangehoor met groot vreugde en blydschap.

21 En nou, nadat die kerk gevestig is dwarsdeur die hele land—nadat die oorwinning oor die duiwel behaal is, en die woord van God in sy suiwerheid dwarsdeur die hele land gepredik is, en die Here sy seëninge op die volk uitgestort het—so het die veertiende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nepi geëindig.

And there was no inequality among them; the Lord did pour out his Spirit on all the face of the land to prepare the minds of the children of men, or to prepare their hearts to receive the word which should be taught among them at the time of his coming—

That they might not be hardened against the word, that they might not be unbelieving, and go on to destruction, but that they might receive the word with joy, and as a branch be grafted into the true vine, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

Now those priests who did go forth among the people did preach against all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and malice, and revilings, and stealing, robbing, plundering, murdering, committing adultery, and all manner of lasciviousness, crying that these things ought not so to be—

Holding forth things which must shortly come; yea, holding forth the coming of the Son of God, his sufferings and death, and also the resurrection of the dead.

And many of the people did inquire concerning the place where the Son of God should come; and they were taught that he would appear unto them after his resurrection; and this the people did hear with great joy and gladness.

And now after the church had been established throughout all the land—having got the victory over the devil, and the word of God being preached in its purity in all the land, and the Lord pouring out his blessings upon the people—thus ended the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

'n Verslag van die seuns van Mosia, wat hulle regte tot die koninkryk geweier het vir die woord van God, en opgegaan het na die land Nepi om vir die Lamaniete te preek; hulle lydings en verlossing—volgens die verslag van Alma.

Alma 17

- 1 En nou dit het gebeur dat terwyl Alma op reis was van die land Gídeon af, suidwaarts, weg na die land Manti, kyk, tot sy verbasing, het hy die seuns van Mosia ontmoet wat op reis was na die land Zarahemla.
- 2 Nou, hierdie seuns van Mosia was by Alma in die tyd toe die engel die eerste keer aan hom verskyn het; daarom het Alma hom uitermate verbly om sy broers te sien; en wat meer tot sy blydskap bygedra het, hulle was steeds sy broers in die Here; ja, en hulle het sterk geword in die kennis van die waarheid; want hulle was manne van 'n gesonde begrip en hulle het die skrifte ywerig ondersoek, sodat hulle die woord van God mag ken.
- 3 Maar dit is nie al nie; hulle het hulself oorgegee aan baie gebed, en vas; daarom het hulle die gees van profesie gehad, en die gees van openbaring, en wanneer hulle onderrig het, het hulle onderrig met mag en gesag van God.
- 4 En hulle het die woord van God onderrig vir 'n tydperk van veertien jaar onder die Lamaniete, en hulle het baie welslae gehad om baie tot die kennis van die waarheid te bring; ja, deur die krag van hulle woorde is baie voor die altaar van God gebring, om sy Naam aan te roep en hulle sondes voor Hom te bely.
- 5 Nou hierdie is die omstandighede wat hulle vergesel het op hul reise, want hulle het baie verdrukkinge gehad; hulle het baie gely, beide na liggaam en na gees, soos honger, dors en uitputting, en ook baie arbeid in die gees.
- 6 Nou hierdie was hulle reise: Nadat hulle afskeid geneem het van hulle vader Mosia, in die eerste jaar van die regters; nadat hulle die koningskap geweier het wat hulle vader begeer het om aan hulle oor te dra, en ook dit was die mening van die volk;

An account of the sons of Mosiah, who rejected their rights to the kingdom for the word of God, and went up to the land of Nephi to preach to the Lamanites; their sufferings and deliverance—according to the record of Alma.

Alma 17

And now it came to pass that as Alma was journeying from the land of Gideon southward, away to the land of Manti, behold, to his astonishment, he met with the sons of Mosiah journeying towards the land of Zarahemla.

Now these sons of Mosiah were with Alma at the time the angel first appeared unto him; therefore Alma did rejoice exceedingly to see his brethren; and what added more to his joy, they were still his brethren in the Lord; yea, and they had waxed strong in the knowledge of the truth; for they were men of a sound understanding and they had searched the scriptures diligently, that they might know the word of God.

But this is not all; they had given themselves to much prayer, and fasting; therefore they had the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and when they taught, they taught with power and authority of God.

And they had been teaching the word of God for the space of fourteen years among the Lamanites, having had much success in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, by the power of their words many were brought before the altar of God, to call on his name and confess their sins before him.

Now these are the circumstances which attended them in their journeyings, for they had many afflictions; they did suffer much, both in body and in mind, such as hunger, thirst and fatigue, and also much labor in the spirit.

Now these were their journeyings: Having taken leave of their father, Mosiah, in the first year of the judges; having refused the kingdom which their father was desirous to confer upon them, and also this was the minds of the people;

- 7 Nogtans het hulle vertrek uit die land Zarahemla, en hul swaarde geneem, en hul spiese, en hul boë, en hul pyle, en hul slingers; en dit het hulle gedoen sodat hulle vir hulself kos mag voorsien terwyl hulle in die wildernis was.
- 8 En so het hulle die wildernis ingetrek met hulle getalle wat hulle uitgesoek het, om op te gaan na die land Nepi, om die woord van God te preek aan die Lamaniete.
- 9 En dit het gebeur dat hulle baie dae gereis het in die wildernis, en hulle het baie gevas en baie gebid dat die Here aan hulle 'n deel van sy Gees sou gee om saam met hulle te gaan, en by hulle te bly, sodat hulle 'n werktuig mag wees in die hande van God, om as dit moontlik was, hulle broers, die Lamaniete, tot die kennis van die waarheid te bring, tot die kennis van die verdorwenheid van die oorleweringe van hulle vaders, wat nie juis was nie.
- 10 En dit het gebeur dat die Here hulle besoek het met sy Gees, en aan hulle gesê het: Wees getroos. En hulle is getroos.
- 11 En die Here het ook aan hulle gesê: Gaan uit onder die Lamaniete, julle broers, en vestig my woord; dog julle moet geduldig wees in lankmoedigheid en verdrukkinge, sodat julle aan hulle goeie voorbeelde kan stel in My, en Ek sal 'n werktuig van julle maak in my hande tot die heil van baie siele.
- 12 En dit het gebeur dat die harte van die seuns van Mosia, en ook van diegene wat met hulle was, moed geskep het om uit te gaan onder die Lamaniete om aan hulle die woord van God te verkondig.
- 13 En dit het gebeur toe hulle aangekom het op die grense van die land van die Lamaniete, dat hulle van mekaar geskei het, en die een van die ander weggegaan het, vertrouend op die Here dat hulle weer sou ontmoet aan die einde van hulle oes, want hulle het geglo dat die taak wat hulle onderneem het, groot was.

Nevertheless they departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and took their swords, and their spears, and their bows, and their arrows, and their slings; and this they did that they might provide food for themselves while in the wilderness.

And thus they departed into the wilderness with their numbers which they had selected, to go up to the land of Nephi, to preach the word of God unto the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they journeyed many days in the wilderness, and they fasted much and prayed much that the Lord would grant unto them a portion of his Spirit to go with them, and abide with them, that they might be an instrument in the hands of God to bring, if it were possible, their brethren, the Lamanites, to the knowledge of the truth, to the knowledge of the baseness of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.

And it came to pass that the Lord did visit them with his Spirit, and said unto them: Be comforted. And they were comforted.

And the Lord said unto them also: Go forth among the Lamanites, thy brethren, and establish my word; yet ye shall be patient in long-suffering and afflictions, that ye may show forth good examples unto them in me, and I will make an instrument of thee in my hands unto the salvation of many souls.

And it came to pass that the hearts of the sons of Mosiah, and also those who were with them, took courage to go forth unto the Lamanites to declare unto them the word of God.

And it came to pass when they had arrived in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, that they separated themselves and departed one from another, trusting in the Lord that they should meet again at the close of their harvest; for they supposed that great was the work which they had undertaken.

14 En weliswaar was dit groot, want hulle het onderneem om die woord van God te preek aan 'n wilde, en 'n verharde, en 'n wrede volk; 'n volk wat daarin behae geskep het om die Nefiete te vermoor, en hulle te beroof en te plunder; en hulle harte was gerig op rykdom, of op goud en silwer, en kosbare stene; nogtans hulle het gepoog om hierdie dinge te verkry deur te moor en te plunder, sodat hulle nie daarvoor hoef te arbei met hulle eie hande nie.

15 Daarom was hulle 'n baie lui volk, baie van wie afgode aanbid het, en die vloek van God het op hulle geval vanweë die oorleweringe van hulle vaders; nie-teenstaande die beloftes van die Here wat hulle gebied is op die voorwaarde van bekering.

16 Daarom, dit was die rede waarom die seuns van Mosia die werk onderneem het, dat hulle hul miskien tot bekering mag bring; dat hulle hul miskien daartoe mag bring om te weet van die plan van verlossing.

17 Daarom het hulle hulself geskei die een van die ander, en onder hulle ingegaan, elke man alleen, volgens die woord en krag van God wat aan hom gegee is.

18 Nou, Ammon was die hoof onder hulle, of eerder hy het hulle gedien, en hy het weggegaan van hulle af, nadat hy hulle geseën het volgens hulle onderskeie roepings, nadat hy die woord van God aan hulle meegedeel het, of hulle gedien het voor sy vertrek; en so het hulle hul onderskeie reise onderneem dwarsdeur die land.

19 En Ammon het gegaan na die land Ismael, die land wat genoem is na die seuns van Ismael, wat ook Lamaniete geword het.

20 En toe Ammon die land Ismael binnegaan het, het die Lamaniete hom geneem en hom vasgebind, soos dit hulle gebruik was om al die Nefiete vas te bind wat in hulle hande geval het, en hulle voor die koning gedra; en so is dit oorgelaat aan die koning se behae om hulle te dood, of om hulle in slawerny te hou, of om hulle in die gevangenis te werp, of om hulle uit sy land te werp, volgens sy wil en behae.

21 En so is Ammon gedra voor die koning wat oor die land Ismael was; en sy naam was Lamoni; en hy was 'n afstammeling van Ismael.

And assuredly it was great, for they had undertaken to preach the word of God to a wild and a hardened and a ferocious people; a people who delighted in murdering the Nephites, and robbing and plundering them; and their hearts were set upon riches, or upon gold and silver, and precious stones; yet they sought to obtain these things by murdering and plundering, that they might not labor for them with their own hands.

Thus they were a very indolent people, many of whom did worship idols, and the curse of God had fallen upon them because of the traditions of their fathers; notwithstanding the promises of the Lord were extended unto them on the conditions of repentance.

Therefore, this was the cause for which the sons of Mosiah had undertaken the work, that perhaps they might bring them unto repentance; that perhaps they might bring them to know of the plan of redemption.

Therefore they separated themselves one from another, and went forth among them, every man alone, according to the word and power of God which was given unto him.

Now Ammon being the chief among them, or rather he did administer unto them, and he departed from them, after having blessed them according to their several stations, having imparted the word of God unto them, or administered unto them before his departure; and thus they took their several journeys throughout the land.

And Ammon went to the land of Ishmael, the land being called after the sons of Ishmael, who also became Lamanites.

And as Ammon entered the land of Ishmael, the Lamanites took him and bound him, as was their custom to bind all the Nephites who fell into their hands, and carry them before the king; and thus it was left to the pleasure of the king to slay them, or to retain them in captivity, or to cast them into prison, or to cast them out of his land, according to his will and pleasure.

And thus Ammon was carried before the king who was over the land of Ishmael; and his name was Lamoni; and he was a descendant of Ishmael.

- 22 En die koning het van Ammon verneem of dit sy begeerte was om in die land te woon onder die Lamaniete, of onder sy volk.
- 23 En Ammon het aan hom gesê: Ja, ek begeer om vir 'n tyd te woon onder hierdie volk, ja, en miskien tot die dag dat ek sterf.
- 24 En dit het gebeur dat koning Lamoni baie ingenome was met Ammon, en het sy boeie laat losmaak; en hy wou hê dat Ammon een van sy dogters tot vrou moes neem.
- 25 Maar Ammon het aan hom gesê: Nee, maar ek sal u dienskneg wees. Daarom het Ammon 'n dienskneg van koning Lamoni geword. En dit het gebeur dat hy saam met ander diensknegte opgedra is om die kuddes van Lamoni te bewaak, volgens die gebruik van die Lamaniete.
- 26 En nadat hy drie dae in die diens van die koning was, terwyl hy by die Lamanitiese diensknegte was en uitgegaan het met hulle kuddes na die plek van water, wat die water van Sebus genoem is, en al die Lamaniete jaag hulle vee daarheen aan, sodat hulle water mag hê—
- 27 Daarom, terwyl Ammon en die diensknegte van die koning hulle kuddes na hierdie plek van water aanjaag, kyk, 'n sekere aantal van die Lamaniete, wat met hulle kuddes by die water was, het gestaan en die kuddes van Ammon en die diensknegte van die koning uiteengejaag, en hulle het hulle dermate verjaag dat hulle in baie rigtings gevlug het.
- 28 Nou het die diensknegte van die koning begin murmureer, en gesê: Nou sal die koning ons doodmaak soos ons broers, omdat hulle kuddes verjaag is deur die boosheid van hierdie manne. En hulle het uitermate begin ween, en gesê: Kyk, ons kuddes is alreeds verjaag.
- 29 Nou het hulle geweens vanweë die vrees om gedood te word. Nou toe Ammon dit sien, het sy hart in hom geswel van blydschap; want, het hy gesê, ek sal my krag aan hierdie, my medediensknegte toon, of die krag wat in my is, om hierdie kuddes terug te bring aan die koning, sodat ek die harte van hierdie my medediensknegte mag wen, sodat ek hulle mag lei om in my woorde te glo.

And the king inquired of Ammon if it were his desire to dwell in the land among the Lamanites, or among his people.

And Ammon said unto him: Yea, I desire to dwell among this people for a time; yea, and perhaps until the day I die.

And it came to pass that king Lamoni was much pleased with Ammon, and caused that his bands should be loosed; and he would that Ammon should take one of his daughters to wife.

But Ammon said unto him: Nay, but I will be thy servant. Therefore Ammon became a servant to king Lamoni. And it came to pass that he was set among other servants to watch the flocks of Lamoni, according to the custom of the Lamanites.

And after he had been in the service of the king three days, as he was with the Lamanitish servants going forth with their flocks to the place of water, which was called the water of Sebus, and all the Lamanites drive their flocks hither, that they may have water—

Therefore, as Ammon and the servants of the king were driving forth their flocks to this place of water, behold, a certain number of the Lamanites, who had been with their flocks to water, stood and scattered the flocks of Ammon and the servants of the king, and they scattered them insomuch that they fled many ways.

Now the servants of the king began to murmur, saying: Now the king will slay us, as he has our brethren because their flocks were scattered by the wickedness of these men. And they began to weep exceedingly, saying: Behold, our flocks are scattered already.

Now they wept because of the fear of being slain. Now when Ammon saw this his heart was swollen within him with joy; for, said he, I will show forth my power unto these my fellow-servants, or the power which is in me, in restoring these flocks unto the king, that I may win the hearts of these my fellow-servants, that I may lead them to believe in my words.

30 En nou, dit was die gedagtes van Ammon, toe hy die verdrukkinge sien van diegene wat hy sy broers genoem het.

31 En dit het gebeur dat hy hulle met sy woorde gelei het, en gesê het: My broers, wees vrolik en laat ons gaan soek na die kuddes, en ons sal hulle byme-kaarmaak en hulle terugbring na die plek van water; en so sal ons die kuddes vir die koning bewaar en hy sal ons nie doodmaak nie.

32 En dit het gebeur dat hulle die kuddes gaan soek het, en hulle het Ammon gevolg, en hulle het voortbeweeg met groot spoed en het die kuddes van die koning afgesny, en hulle weer bymekaar gebring na die plek van water.

33 En daardie manne het weer gestaan om hulle kuddes te verjaag; maar Ammon het aan sy broers gesê: Omsingel die kuddes rondom sodat hulle nie vlug nie, en ek gaan en veg met die manne wat ons kuddes verjaag.

34 Daarom, hulle het gedoen soos Ammon hulle beveel het, en hy het uitgegaan en gestaan om te veg met diegene wat by die waters van Sebus gestaan het, en hulle was in getal nie min nie.

35 Daarom het hulle Ammon nie gevrees nie, want hulle het veronderstel dat een van hulle manne hom kon doodmaak volgens hulle behae, want hulle het nie geweet dat die Here vir Mosia belowe het dat Hy sy seuns uit hulle hande sou red nie; nóg het hulle iets aangaande die Here geweet; daarom het hulle behae geskep in die vernietiging van hulle broers; en om hierdie rede het hulle gestaan om die kuddes van die koning te verjaag.

36 Maar Ammon het na vore getree en begin om klippe na hulle te gooi met sy slinger; ja, met geweldige krag het hy klippe tussen hulle ingeslinger; en so het hy 'n sekere aantal van hulle doodgemaak, in soverre dat hulle verbaas begin word het oor sy krag; nogtans was hulle kwaad vanweë hulle broers wat gedood is, en hulle was vasberade dat hy sou val; daarom, omdat hulle gesien het dat hulle hom nie kon tref met hulle klippe nie, het hulle met knuppels na vore gekom om hom te dood.

And now, these were the thoughts of Ammon, when he saw the afflictions of those whom he termed to be his brethren.

And it came to pass that he flattered them by his words, saying: My brethren, be of good cheer and let us go in search of the flocks, and we will gather them together and bring them back unto the place of water; and thus we will preserve the flocks unto the king and he will not slay us.

And it came to pass that they went in search of the flocks, and they did follow Ammon, and they rushed forth with much swiftness and did head the flocks of the king, and did gather them together again to the place of water.

And those men again stood to scatter their flocks; but Ammon said unto his brethren: Encircle the flocks round about that they flee not; and I go and contend with these men who do scatter our flocks.

Therefore, they did as Ammon commanded them, and he went forth and stood to contend with those who stood by the waters of Sebus; and they were in number not a few.

Therefore they did not fear Ammon, for they supposed that one of their men could slay him according to their pleasure, for they knew not that the Lord had promised Mosiah that he would deliver his sons out of their hands; neither did they know anything concerning the Lord; therefore they delighted in the destruction of their brethren; and for this cause they stood to scatter the flocks of the king.

But Ammon stood forth and began to cast stones at them with his sling; yea, with mighty power he did sling stones amongst them; and thus he slew a certain number of them insomuch that they began to be astonished at his power; nevertheless they were angry because of the slain of their brethren, and they were determined that he should fall; therefore, seeing that they could not hit him with their stones, they came forth with clubs to slay him.

37 Maar kyk, elke man wat sy knuppel opgehef het om vir Ammon te slaan, hy het hulle arms afgekap met sy swaard; want hy het hulle houe weerstaan deur hulle arms te tref met die skerpte van sy swaard, in soverre dat hulle verbaas begin word het, en begin het om te vlug voor hom; ja, en hulle was nie min in getal nie; en hy het hulle laat vlug deur die sterkte van sy arm.

38 Nou ses van hulle het geval deur die slinger, maar hy het niemand gedood met sy swaard nie, behalwe hulle leier; en hy het soveel van hulle arms afgekap as wat teen hom opgelig was, en hulle was nie min nie.

39 En toe hy hulle ver weggedryf het, het hy teruggekeer en hulle het hulle kuddes water gegee en hulle teruggebring na die weiveld van die koning, en toe ingegaan na die koning, en die arms gedra wat afgekap is deur die swaard van Ammon, van diegene wat gesoek het om hom te dood; en hulle is na die koning gebring as 'n getuienis van die dinge wat hulle gedoen het.

But behold, every man that lifted his club to smite Ammon, he smote off their arms with his sword; for he did withstand their blows by smiting their arms with the edge of his sword, insomuch that they began to be astonished, and began to flee before him; yea, and they were not few in number; and he caused them to flee by the strength of his arm.

Now six of them had fallen by the sling, but he slew none save it were their leader with his sword; and he smote off as many of their arms as were lifted against him, and they were not a few.

And when he had driven them afar off, he returned and they watered their flocks and returned them to the pasture of the king, and then went in unto the king, bearing the arms which had been smitten off by the sword of Ammon, of those who sought to slay him; and they were carried in unto the king for a testimony of the things which they had done.

Alma 18

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat koning Lamoni sy diensknegte na vore laat kom het en getuig van al die dinge wat hulle gesien het betreffende die saak.
- 2 En toe hulle almal getuig het van die dinge wat hulle gesien het, en hy geleer het van die getrouheid van Ammon in die bewaring van sy kuddes, en ook van sy groot krag in die stryd teen diegene wat gesoek het om hom dood te maak, was hy uitermate verbaas, en het gesê: Waarlik, hierdie is meer as 'n mens. Kyk, is dit nie die Groot Gees wat sulke groot bestraffinge stuur op hierdie volk, vanweë hulle moorde nie?
- 3 En hulle het die koning geantwoord, en gesê: Of hy die Groot Gees of 'n mens is, weet ons nie; maar dit weet ons wel, dat hy nie doodgemaak kan word deur die vyande van die koning nie; nóg kan hulle die koning se kuddes verjaag terwyl hy by ons is, vanweë sy bekwaamheid en groot krag; daarom, ons weet dat hy die koning se vriend is. En nou, o koning, ons glo nie dat 'n mens sulke groot krag het nie, want ons weet hy kan nie gedood word nie.
- 4 En nou, toe die koning hierdie woorde gehoor het, het hy aan hulle gesê: Nou weet ek dat dit die Groot Gees is; en hy het neergedaal in hierdie tyd om julle lewens te bewaar, sodat ek julle nie mag doodmaak soos vir julle broers nie. Nou dit is die Groot Gees van wie ons vaders gespreek het.
- 5 Nou, dit was die oorlewering van Lamoni, wat hy ontvang het van sy vader, dat daar 'n Groot Gees was. Nieteenstaande hulle aan 'n Groot Gees geglo het, het hulle veronderstel dat wat hulle ook al gedoen het, reg was; nogtans het Lamoni uitermate begin vrees, uit vrees dat hy verkeerd gedoen het om sy diensknegte dood te maak;
- 6 Want hy het baie van hulle doodgemaak, omdat hulle broers hulle kuddes verjaag het by die plek van water; en daarom, omdat hulle vee verjaag is, is hulle gedood.
- 7 Nou was dit die gebruik van hierdie Lamaniete om by die waters van Sebus te staan om die kuddes van die mense te verjaag, sodat hulle daardeur baie van die vee wat verjaag is, na hulle eie land kon aanjaag, want dit was 'n gebruik van plunder onder hulle.

Alma 18

And it came to pass that king Lamoni caused that his servants should stand forth and testify to all the things which they had seen concerning the matter.

And when they had all testified to the things which they had seen, and he had learned of the faithfulness of Ammon in preserving his flocks, and also of his great power in contending against those who sought to slay him, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Surely, this is more than a man. Behold, is not this the Great Spirit who doth send such great punishments upon this people, because of their murders?

And they answered the king, and said: Whether he be the Great Spirit or a man, we know not; but this much we do know, that he cannot be slain by the enemies of the king; neither can they scatter the king's flocks when he is with us, because of his expertness and great strength; therefore, we know that he is a friend to the king. And now, O king, we do not believe that a man has such great power, for we know he cannot be slain.

And now, when the king heard these words, he said unto them: Now I know that it is the Great Spirit; and he has come down at this time to preserve your lives, that I might not slay you as I did your brethren. Now this is the Great Spirit of whom our fathers have spoken.

Now this was the tradition of Lamoni, which he had received from his father, that there was a Great Spirit. Notwithstanding they believed in a Great Spirit, they supposed that whatsoever they did was right; nevertheless, Lamoni began to fear exceedingly, with fear lest he had done wrong in slaying his servants;

For he had slain many of them because their brethren had scattered their flocks at the place of water; and thus, because they had had their flocks scattered they were slain.

Now it was the practice of these Lamanites to stand by the waters of Sebus to scatter the flocks of the people, that thereby they might drive away many that were scattered unto their own land, it being a practice of plunder among them.

8 En dit het gebeur dat koning Lamoni navraag gedoen het by sy diensknegte, en gesê het: Waar is hierdie man wat sulke groot krag het?

9 En hulle het aan hom gesê: Kyk, hy voer u perde. Nou het die koning sy diensknegte beveel, voor die tyd dat hulle die kuddes water gegee het, dat hulle sy perde en waens moes voorberei, en hom moes begelei na die land Nephi; want daar was 'n groot fees gereël in die land Nephi, deur die vader van Lamoni, wat koning was oor die hele land.

10 Nou toe koning Lamoni hoor dat Ammon besig was om sy perde en sy waens gereed te maak, was hy des te meer verbaas vanweë die getrouheid van Ammon, en het gesê: Waarlik, daar was nog nooit enige dienskneg onder al my diensknegte wat so getrou was soos hierdie man nie; want hy onthou selfs al my bevels om hulle uit te voer.

11 Nou weet ek waarlik dat dit die Groot Gees is, en ek wil hom vra dat hy na my toe inkom, maar ek durf nie.

12 En dit het gebeur dat toe Ammon die perde en die waens gereed gemaak het vir die koning en sy diensknegte, het hy ingegaan na die koning, en hy het gesien dat die gesigsuitdrukking van die koning verander was; daarom was hy op die punt om terug te keer uit sy teenwoordigheid.

13 En een van die koning se diensknegte het aan hom gesê: Rabbana, wat, as dit vertaal word beteken, magtige of grote koning, omdat hulle konings as magtig beskou word; en daarom het hy aan hom gesê: Rabbana, die koning begeer dat u moet bly.

14 Daarom het Ammon homself gedraai na die koning, en aan hom gesê: Wat wil u hê dat ek vir u moet doen, o koning? En die koning het hom nie geantwoord vir 'n tydperk van 'n uur nie, volgens hulle tyd, want hy het nie geweet wat hy aan hom moes sê nie.

15 En dit het gebeur dat Ammon weer aan hom gesê het: Wat begeer u van my? Maar die koning het hom nie geantwoord nie.

And it came to pass that king Lamoni inquired of his servants, saying: Where is this man that has such great power?

And they said unto him: Behold, he is feeding thy horses. Now the king had commanded his servants, previous to the time of the watering of their flocks, that they should prepare his horses and chariots, and conduct him forth to the land of Nephi; for there had been a great feast appointed at the land of Nephi, by the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

Now when king Lamoni heard that Ammon was preparing his horses and his chariots he was more astonished, because of the faithfulness of Ammon, saying: Surely there has not been any servant among all my servants that has been so faithful as this man; for even he doth remember all my commandments to execute them.

Now I surely know that this is the Great Spirit, and I would desire him that he come in unto me, but I durst not.

And it came to pass that when Ammon had made ready the horses and the chariots for the king and his servants, he went in unto the king, and he saw that the countenance of the king was changed; therefore he was about to return out of his presence.

And one of the king's servants said unto him, Rabbanah, which is, being interpreted, powerful or great king, considering their kings to be powerful; and thus he said unto him: Rabbanah, the king desireth thee to stay.

Therefore Ammon turned himself unto the king, and said unto him: What wilt thou that I should do for thee, O king? And the king answered him not for the space of an hour, according to their time, for he knew not what he should say unto him.

And it came to pass that Ammon said unto him again: What desirest thou of me? But the king answered him not.

- 16 En dit het gebeur dat Ammon, omdat hy vervul was met die Gees van God, daarom het hy die gedagtes van die koning waargeneem. En hy het aan hom gesê: Is dit omdat u gehoor het dat ek u diensknegte en u kuddes verdedig het, en sewe van hulle broers gedood het met die slinger en met die swaard, en die arms van ander afgekap het, ten einde u kuddes en u diensknegte te verdedig; kyk, is dit wat u verwonderinge veroorsaak?
- 17 Ek sê vir u, wat is dit, dat u verwonderinge so groot is? Kyk, ek is 'n mens, en u dienskneg; daarom, wat u ook al vra wat reg is, dit sal ek doen.
- 18 Nou, toe die koning hierdie woorde gehoor het, het hy hom weer verwonder, want hy het gesien dat Ammon sy gedagtes kon onderskei; maar desnieteenstaande dit, het koning Lamoni sy mond geopen en aan hom gesê: Wie is u? Is u daardie Groot Gees, wat alle dinge weet?
- 19 Ammon het geantwoord en aan hom gesê: Ek is nie.
- 20 En die koning het gesê: Hoe ken u die gedagtes van my hart? U kan met vertrouwe spreek, en my vertel aangaande hierdie dinge; en vertel my ook deur watter mag u my broers wat my kuddes verjaag het, gedood en die arms van afgekap het—
- 21 En nou, as u my aangaande hierdie dinge sal vertel, wat u ook al begeer, sal ek aan u gee; en as dit nodig was, sou ek u beskerm met my leërs; maar ek weet dat u magtiger is as hulle almal; nogtans, wat u ook al van my begeer, dit sal ek aan u gee.
- 22 Nou Ammon, omdat hy wys was, dog onskuldig, het aan Lamoni gesê: Sal u ag slaan op my woorde, as ek u vertel deur watter krag ek hierdie dinge doen? En dit is die ding wat ek van u begeer.
- 23 En die koning het hom geantwoord, en gesê: Ja, ek sal al u woorde glo. En so is hy deur vernuf gevang.
- 24 En Ammon het begin om met vrymoedigheid met hom te spreek, en aan hom gesê: Glo u dat daar 'n God is?
- 25 En hy het geantwoord, en aan hom gesê: Ek weet nie wat dit beteken nie.

And it came to pass that Ammon, being filled with the Spirit of God, therefore he perceived the thoughts of the king. And he said unto him: Is it because thou hast heard that I defended thy servants and thy flocks, and slew seven of their brethren with the sling and with the sword, and smote off the arms of others, in order to defend thy flocks and thy servants; behold, is it this that causeth thy marvelings?

I say unto you, what is it, that thy marvelings are so great? Behold, I am a man, and am thy servant; therefore, whatsoever thou desirest which is right, that will I do.

Now when the king had heard these words, he marveled again, for he beheld that Ammon could discern his thoughts; but notwithstanding this, king Lamoni did open his mouth, and said unto him: Who art thou? Art thou that Great Spirit, who knows all things?

Ammon answered and said unto him: I am not.

And the king said: How knowest thou the thoughts of my heart? Thou mayest speak boldly, and tell me concerning these things; and also tell me by what power ye slew and smote off the arms of my brethren that scattered my flocks—

And now, if thou wilt tell me concerning these things, whatsoever thou desirest I will give unto thee; and if it were needed, I would guard thee with my armies; but I know that thou art more powerful than all they; nevertheless, whatsoever thou desirest of me I will grant it unto thee.

Now Ammon being wise, yet harmless, he said unto Lamoni: Wilt thou hearken unto my words, if I tell thee by what power I do these things? And this is the thing that I desire of thee.

And the king answered him, and said: Yea, I will believe all thy words. And thus he was caught with guile.

And Ammon began to speak unto him with boldness, and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

And he answered, and said unto him: I do not know what that meaneth.

26 En toe het Ammon gesê: Glo u dat daar 'n Groot Gees is?

27 En hy het gesê, Ja.

28 En Ammon het gesê: Dit is God. En Ammon het weer aan hom gesê: Glo u dat hierdie Groot Gees, wat God is, alle dinge geskape het wat in die hemel en op die aarde is?

29 En hy het gesê: Ja, ek glo dat Hy alle dinge geskape het wat op die aarde is; maar ek ken nie die hemele nie.

30 En Ammon het aan hom gesê: Die hemele is 'n plek waar God woon en al sy heilige engele.

31 En koning Lamoni het gesê: Is dit bo die aarde?

32 En Ammon het gesê: Ja, en Hy kyk af op al die kinders van mense; en Hy ken al die gedagtes en vooremens van die hart; want deur sy hand is hulle almal geskape van die begin af.

33 En koning Lamoni het gesê: Ek glo al hierdie dinge wat u gespreek het. Is u deur God gestuur?

34 Ammon het aan hom gesê: Ek is 'n mens; en die mens is in die begin geskape na die beeld van God, en ek is geroep deur sy Heilige Gees om hierdie dinge aan hierdie volk te leer, sodat hulle gebring kan word tot 'n kennis van dit wat regverdig en waar is;

35 En 'n gedeelte van daardie Gees woon in my, wat my kennis gee, en ook krag volgens my geloof en begeertes wat in God is.

36 Nou toe Ammon hierdie woorde gesê het, het hy begin by die skepping van die wêreld, en ook die skepping van Adam, en hom al die dinge vertel aangaande die val van die mens, en hom vertel en vir hom die kronieke en die heilige skrifture van die volk uitgelê, wat gespreek is deur die profete, en wel tot in die tyd dat hulle vader, Lehi, Jerusalem verlaat het.

37 En hy het ook aan hulle vertel (want dit was aan die koning en aan sy diensknegte) al die reise van hulle vaders in die wildernis, en al hulle lydings deur honger en dors, en hulle arbeid, ensovoorts.

And then Ammon said: Believest thou that there is a Great Spirit?

And he said, Yea.

And Ammon said: This is God. And Ammon said unto him again: Believest thou that this Great Spirit, who is God, created all things which are in heaven and in the earth?

And he said: Yea, I believe that he created all things which are in the earth; but I do not know the heavens.

And Ammon said unto him: The heavens is a place where God dwells and all his holy angels.

And king Lamoni said: Is it above the earth?

And Ammon said: Yea, and he looketh down upon all the children of men; and he knows all the thoughts and intents of the heart; for by his hand were they all created from the beginning.

And king Lamoni said: I believe all these things which thou hast spoken. Art thou sent from God?

Ammon said unto him: I am a man; and man in the beginning was created after the image of God, and I am called by his Holy Spirit to teach these things unto this people, that they may be brought to a knowledge of that which is just and true;

And a portion of that Spirit dwelleth in me, which giveth me knowledge, and also power according to my faith and desires which are in God.

Now when Ammon had said these words, he began at the creation of the world, and also the creation of Adam, and told him all the things concerning the fall of man, and rehearsed and laid before him the records and the holy scriptures of the people, which had been spoken by the prophets, even down to the time that their father, Lehi, left Jerusalem.

And he also rehearsed unto them (for it was unto the king and to his servants) all the journeyings of their fathers in the wilderness, and all their sufferings with hunger and thirst, and their travail, and so forth.

38 En hy het ook aan hulle vertel aangaande die rebellies van Laman en Lemuel, en die seuns van Ismael, ja, al hulle rebellies het hy aan hulle vertel; en hy het al die kronieke en skrifture aan hulle uitgelê vanaf die tyd dat Lehi Jerusalem verlaat het tot die huidige tyd.

39 Maar dit is nie al nie; want hy het aan hulle die plan van verlossing uitgelê, wat berei is vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld; en hy het ook aan hulle aangaande die koms van Christus bekend gemaak, en al die werke van die Here het hy aan hulle bekend gemaak.

40 En dit het gebeur dat nadat hy al hierdie dinge gesê het, en dit uitgelê het aan die koning, dat die koning al sy woorde geglo het.

41 En hy het begin om tot die Here te roep, en het gesê: O Here, wees barmhartig; volgens u oorvloedige barmhartigheid wat U oor die volk van Nephi gehad het, wees dit oor my, en my volk.

42 En nou, toe hy dit gesê het, het hy neergeval op die aarde, asof hy dood was.

43 En dit het gebeur dat sy diensknegte hom geneem het en hom ingedra het na sy vrou, en hom neergelê het op 'n bed; en hy het gelê asof hy dood was vir 'n tydperk van twee dae en twee nagte; en sy vrou, en sy seuns, en sy dogters het oor hom getreur, volgens die wyse van die Lamaniëte, en sy heengaan grootliks betreur.

And he also rehearsed unto them concerning the rebellions of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, yea, all their rebellions did he relate unto them; and he expounded unto them all the records and scriptures from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem down to the present time.

But this is not all; for he expounded unto them the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world; and he also made known unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and all the works of the Lord did he make known unto them.

And it came to pass that after he had said all these things, and expounded them to the king, that the king believed all his words.

And he began to cry unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, have mercy; according to thy abundant mercy which thou hast had upon the people of Nephi, have upon me, and my people.

And now, when he had said this, he fell unto the earth, as if he were dead.

And it came to pass that his servants took him and carried him in unto his wife, and laid him upon a bed; and he lay as if he were dead for the space of two days and two nights; and his wife, and his sons, and his daughters mourned over him, after the manner of the Lamanites, greatly lamenting his loss.

Alma 19

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat na twee dae en twee nagte het hulle op die punt gestaan om sy liggaam te neem en dit in 'n grafkelder te gaan lê, wat hulle gemaak het vir die doel om hulle dooies te begrawe.
- 2 Nou, die koningin, omdat sy van Ammon se roem gehoor het, daarom het sy gestuur en begeer dat hy na haar moes inkom.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat Ammon gedoen het soos hy beveel was, en hy het ingegaan na die koningin, en het begeer om te weet wat sy wou hê dat hy moes doen.
- 4 En sy het aan hom gesê: Die diensknegte van my man het dit aan my bekend gemaak dat jy 'n profeet is van 'n heilige God, en dat jy mag het om baie magtige werke te doen in sy Naam.
- 5 Daarom, as dit die geval is, wil ek hê dat jy moet ingaan en my man sien, want hy is neergelê op sy bed vir 'n tydperk van twee dae en twee nagte; en sommiges sê dat hy nie dood is nie, maar ander sê dat hy dood is en dat hy stink, en dat hy in die grafkelder behoort geplaas te word; maar vir my, vir my stink hy nie.
- 6 Nou, dit is wat Ammon begeer het, want hy het geweet dat koning Lamoni onder die mag van God was; hy het geweet dat die donker sluier van ongeloof besig was om weggewerp te word van sy gemoed, en dat die lig wat sy gemoed gevul het, wat die lig was van die heerlikheid van God, wat 'n wonderbaarlike lig was van sy goedheid—ja, hierdie lig het soveel vreugde in sy siel gebring, nadat die wolk van duisternis verdryf was, en dat die lig van die ewigdurende lewe in sy siel verlig is, ja, hy het geweet dat dit sy natuurlike gestalte oorweldig het, en dat hy weggevoer was in God.
- 7 Daarom, wat die koningin van hom gevra het was sy enigste begeerte. Daarom, hy het ingegaan om die koning te sien soos die koningin hom versoek het; en hy het die koning gesien, en hy het geweet dat hy nie dood was nie.
- 8 En hy het aan die koningin gesê: Hy is nie dood nie, maar hy slaap in God, en die volgende dag sal hy weer opstaan; daarom, begrawe hom nie.

Alma 19

And it came to pass that after two days and two nights they were about to take his body and lay it in a sepulchre, which they had made for the purpose of burying their dead.

Now the queen having heard of the fame of Ammon, therefore she sent and desired that he should come in unto her.

And it came to pass that Ammon did as he was commanded, and went in unto the queen, and desired to know what she would that he should do.

And she said unto him: The servants of my husband have made it known unto me that thou art a prophet of a holy God, and that thou hast power to do many mighty works in his name;

Therefore, if this is the case, I would that ye should go in and see my husband, for he has been laid upon his bed for the space of two days and two nights; and some say that he is not dead, but others say that he is dead and that he stinketh, and that he ought to be placed in the sepulchre; but as for myself, to me he doth not stink.

Now, this was what Ammon desired, for he knew that king Lamoni was under the power of God; he knew that the dark veil of unbelief was being cast away from his mind, and the light which did light up his mind, which was the light of the glory of God, which was a marvelous light of his goodness—yea, this light had infused such joy into his soul, the cloud of darkness having been dispelled, and that the light of everlasting life was lit up in his soul, yea, he knew that this had overcome his natural frame, and he was carried away in God—

Therefore, what the queen desired of him was his only desire. Therefore, he went in to see the king according as the queen had desired him; and he saw the king, and he knew that he was not dead.

And he said unto the queen: He is not dead, but he sleepeth in God, and on the morrow he shall rise again; therefore bury him not.

- 9 En Ammon het aan haar gesê: Glo u dit? En sy het aan hom gesê: Ek het geen getuienis gehad nie behalwe jou woord, en die woord van ons diensknegte; nogtans glo ek dat dit sal wees soos jy gesê het.
- 10 En Ammon het aan haar gesê: Geseënd is u vanweë u uitnemende geloof; ek sê vir u, vrou, daar was nog nie so 'n groot geloof onder al die volk van die Nefiete nie.
- 11 En dit het gebeur dat sy gewaak het oor die bed van haar man, van daardie tyd af tot daardie tyd op die volgende dag wat Ammon bepaal het dat hy sou opstaan.
- 12 En dit het gebeur dat hy opgestaan het, volgens die woorde van Ammon; en terwyl hy opgestaan het, het hy sy hand uitgestrek na die vrou, en gesê: Prys die Naam van God, en geseënd is jy.
- 13 Want so seker as wat jy leef, kyk, ek het my Verlosser gesien; en Hy sal verskyn, en uit 'n vrou gebore word, en Hy sal die hele mensdom verlos wat in sy Naam glo. Nou, toe hy hierdie woorde gesê het, het sy hart in hom geswel, en hy het weer neergesak van vreugde; en die koningin het ook neergesak, omdat sy oorweldig is deur die Gees.
- 14 Nou, toe Ammon sien dat die Gees van die Here uitgestort word volgens sy gebede op die Lamaniete, sy broers, wat die oorsaak was van soveel rou onder die Nefiete, of onder die hele volk van God vanweë hulle ongeregtighede en hulle oorleweringe, het hy op sy knieë geval, en begin om sy siel uit te stort in gebed en danksegging aan God vir wat Hy vir sy broers gedoen het; en hy is ook oorweldig deur vreugde; en so het hulle al drie op die grond neergesak.
- 15 Nou, toe die diensknegte van die koning gesien het dat hulle neergeval het, het hulle ook begin roep tot God, want die vrees van die Here het ook oor hulle gekom, want dit was hulle wat voor die koning gestaan het en aan hom getuig het aangaande die groot krag van Ammon.
- 16 En dit het gebeur dat hulle die Naam van die Here aangeroep het, met hulle mag, totdat hulle almal op die aarde neergeval het, behalwe een van die Lamanitiese vroue wie se naam Abis was, en sy was tot die Here bekeer vir baie jare, vanweë 'n merkwaardige visioen van haar vader—

And Ammon said unto her: Believest thou this? And she said unto him: I have had no witness save thy word, and the word of our servants; nevertheless I believe that it shall be according as thou hast said.

And Ammon said unto her: Blessed art thou because of thy exceeding faith; I say unto thee, woman, there has not been such great faith among all the people of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that she watched over the bed of her husband, from that time even until that time on the morrow which Ammon had appointed that he should rise.

And it came to pass that he arose, according to the words of Ammon; and as he arose, he stretched forth his hand unto the woman, and said: Blessed be the name of God, and blessed art thou.

For as sure as thou livest, behold, I have seen my Redeemer; and he shall come forth, and be born of a woman, and he shall redeem all mankind who believe on his name. Now, when he had said these words, his heart was swollen within him, and he sunk again with joy; and the queen also sunk down, being overpowered by the Spirit.

Now Ammon seeing the Spirit of the Lord poured out according to his prayers upon the Lamanites, his brethren, who had been the cause of so much mourning among the Nephites, or among all the people of God because of their iniquities and their traditions, he fell upon his knees, and began to pour out his soul in prayer and thanksgiving to God for what he had done for his brethren; and he was also overpowered with joy; and thus they all three had sunk to the earth.

Now, when the servants of the king had seen that they had fallen, they also began to cry unto God, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them also, for it was they who had stood before the king and testified unto him concerning the great power of Ammon.

And it came to pass that they did call on the name of the Lord, in their might, even until they had all fallen to the earth, save it were one of the Lamanitish women, whose name was Abish, she having been converted unto the Lord for many years, on account of a remarkable vision of her father—

17 Daarom, omdat sy tot die Here bekeer is, en dit nooit bekend gemaak het nie, daarom, toe sy sien dat al die diensknegte van Lamoni neergeval het op die grond, en ook haar meesteres, die koningin, en die koning, en Ammon, wat uitgestrek lê op die grond, het sy geweet dat dit die krag van God was; en omdat sy veronderstel het dat hierdie die geleentheid was om aan die volk bekend te maak wat onder hulle gebeur het, dat deur hierdie toneel te aanskou, dit hulle sou laat glo in die krag van God, daarom het sy van huis tot huis gehardloop, en dit aan die mense bekendgemaak.

18 En hulle het begin om bymekaar te kom by die huis van die koning. En daar het 'n skare gekom, en tot hulle verbasing, het hulle die koning gesien, en die koningin, en hulle diensknegte uitgestrek op die aarde, en hulle almal het daar gelê asof hulle dood was; en hulle het ook vir Ammon gesien, en kyk, hy was 'n Nefiet.

19 En nou het die volk onder hulself begin om te murmureer; sommige het gesê dat dit 'n groot boosheid was wat oor hulle gekom het, of oor die koning en sy huis, omdat hy toegelaat het dat die Nefiet in die land moes bly.

20 Maar ander het hulle bestraf, en gesê: Die koning het hierdie boosheid oor sy huis gebring, omdat hy sy diensknegte doodgemaak het wie se kuddes verjaag is by die waters van Sebus.

21 En hulle is ook bestraf deur daardie manne wat by die waters van Sebus gestaan en die kuddes verjaag het, wat aan die koning behoort het, want hulle was kwaad vir Ammon vanweë die aantal van hulle broers wat hy gedood het by die waters van Sebus, terwyl hy die kuddes van die koning beskerm het.

22 Nou, een van hulle, wie se broer gedood is deur die swaard van Ammon, omdat hy uitermate kwaad was vir Ammon, het sy swaard uitgetrek en uitgegaan sodat hy dit mag laat neerkom op Ammon, om hom te dood; en toe hy die swaard oplik om hom te dood, kyk, het hy dood neergeval.

23 Nou sien ons dat Ammon nie gedood kon word nie, want die Here het vir Mosia, sy vader gesê: Ek sal hom spaar, en dit sal vir hom wees volgens jou geloof—daarom, Mosia het hom aan die Here toevertrou.

Thus, having been converted to the Lord, and never having made it known, therefore, when she saw that all the servants of Lamoni had fallen to the earth, and also her mistress, the queen, and the king, and Ammon lay prostrate upon the earth, she knew that it was the power of God; and supposing that this opportunity, by making known unto the people what had happened among them, that by beholding this scene it would cause them to believe in the power of God, therefore she ran forth from house to house, making it known unto the people.

And they began to assemble themselves together unto the house of the king. And there came a multitude, and to their astonishment, they beheld the king, and the queen, and their servants prostrate upon the earth, and they all lay there as though they were dead; and they also saw Ammon, and behold, he was a Nephite.

And now the people began to murmur among themselves; some saying that it was a great evil that had come upon them, or upon the king and his house, because he had suffered that the Nephite should remain in the land.

But others rebuked them, saying: The king hath brought this evil upon his house, because he slew his servants who had had their flocks scattered at the waters of Sebus.

And they were also rebuked by those men who had stood at the waters of Sebus and scattered the flocks which belonged to the king, for they were angry with Ammon because of the number which he had slain of their brethren at the waters of Sebus, while defending the flocks of the king.

Now, one of them, whose brother had been slain with the sword of Ammon, being exceedingly angry with Ammon, drew his sword and went forth that he might let it fall upon Ammon, to slay him; and as he lifted the sword to smite him, behold, he fell dead.

Now we see that Ammon could not be slain, for the Lord had said unto Mosiah, his father: I will spare him, and it shall be unto him according to thy faith—therefore, Mosiah trusted him unto the Lord.

24 En dit het gebeur dat toe die skare sien dat die man dood neergeval het, wat sy swaard opgelig het om vir Ammon te dood, het vrees oor hulle almal gekom, en hulle het nie gedurf om hulle hande uit te strek om hom aan te raak, of enigeen van dié wat geval het nie; en hulle het weer begin om onder hulleself te wonder wat die oorsaak van hierdie groot krag kon wees, of wat al hierdie dinge kon beteken.

25 En dit het gebeur dat daar baie onder hulle was wat gesê het dat Ammon die Groot Gees was, en andere het gesê dat hy gestuur is deur die Groot Gees;

26 Maar andere het hulle almal bestraf, en gesê dat hy 'n monster was, wat deur die Nefiete gestuur is om hulle te pynig.

27 En daar was sommiges wat gesê het dat Ammon deur die Groot Gees gestuur is om hulle te verdruk vanweë hulle ongeregthede; en dat dit die Groot Gees was wat altyd oor die Nefiete gewaak het, wat hulle altyd verlos het uit hulle hande; en hulle het gesê dat dit die Groot Gees was wat so baie van hulle broers, die Lamaniete, vernietig het.

28 En so het die twis uitermate skerp onder hulle begin word. En terwyl hulle so twis, het die diensmaagd wat die skare laat bymekaar kom het, gekom, en toe sy die twis sien wat onder die skare was, was sy uitermate bedroef, en wel tot tranes toe.

29 En dit het gebeur dat sy gegaan het en die koningin aan die hand geneem het, sodat sy haar miskien van die grond af kon oplig; en toe sy aan haar hand geraak het, het sy opgekom en op haar voete gestaan, en met 'n luide stem uitgeroep, en gesê: O geseënde Jesus, wat my gered het van 'n vreeslike hel! O geseënde God, wees hierdie mense barmhartig!

30 En toe sy dit gesê het, het sy haar hande gevou, omdat sy gevul was met vreugde, en sy het baie woorde gespreek wat nie verstaan is nie; en toe sy dit gedoen het, het sy die koning, Lamoni, aan die hand geneem en kyk, hy het opgekom en op sy voete gestaan.

And it came to pass that when the multitude beheld that the man had fallen dead, who lifted the sword to slay Ammon, fear came upon them all, and they durst not put forth their hands to touch him or any of those who had fallen; and they began to marvel again among themselves what could be the cause of this great power, or what all these things could mean.

And it came to pass that there were many among them who said that Ammon was the Great Spirit, and others said he was sent by the Great Spirit;

But others rebuked them all, saying that he was a monster, who had been sent from the Nephites to torment them.

And there were some who said that Ammon was sent by the Great Spirit to afflict them because of their iniquities; and that it was the Great Spirit that had always attended the Nephites, who had ever delivered them out of their hands; and they said that it was this Great Spirit who had destroyed so many of their brethren, the Lamanites.

And thus the contention began to be exceedingly sharp among them. And while they were thus contending, the woman servant who had caused the multitude to be gathered together came, and when she saw the contention which was among the multitude she was exceedingly sorrowful, even unto tears.

And it came to pass that she went and took the queen by the hand, that perhaps she might raise her from the ground; and as soon as she touched her hand she arose and stood upon her feet, and cried with a loud voice, saying: O blessed Jesus, who has saved me from an awful hell! O blessed God, have mercy on this people!

And when she had said this, she clasped her hands, being filled with joy, speaking many words which were not understood; and when she had done this, she took the king, Lamoni, by the hand, and behold he arose and stood upon his feet.

- 31 En hy, onmiddellik, toe hy die twiste gewaar onder sy mense, het uitgegaan en begin om hulle te bestraf en om hulle die woorde wat hy gehoor het uit die mond van Ammon te leer; en soveel wat sy woorde gehoor het, het geglo, en is bekeer tot die Here.
- 32 Maar daar was baie onder hulle wat nie sy woorde wou hoor nie; daarom het hulle hul weg gegaan.
- 33 En dit het gebeur dat toe Ammon opgekom het, het hy ook vir hulle gedien en so het ook al die diensknegte van Lamoni gedoen; en hulle het almal aan die volk dieselfde ding verklaar—dat hulle harte verander is; dat hulle geen begeerte meer gehad het om boosheid te doen nie.
- 34 En kyk, baie het aan die volk verklaar dat hulle engele gesien het en met hulle gespreek het; en so het hulle vertel van dinge van God, en van sy regverdigheid.
- 35 En dit het gebeur dat daar baie was wat geglo het in hulle woorde; en soveel as wat geglo het, is gedoop; en hulle het 'n regverdige volk geword, en hulle het 'n kerk onder hulle gestig.
- 36 En so het die werk van die Here begin onder die Lamaniete; so het die Here begin om sy Gees uit te stort op hulle; en ons sien dat sy arm uitgestrek is na alle mense wat sal bekeer en in sy Naam sal glo.

And he, immediately, seeing the contention among his people, went forth and began to rebuke them, and to teach them the words which he had heard from the mouth of Ammon; and as many as heard his words believed, and were converted unto the Lord.

But there were many among them who would not hear his words; therefore they went their way.

And it came to pass that when Ammon arose he also administered unto them, and also did all the servants of Lamoni; and they did all declare unto the people the selfsame thing—that their hearts had been changed; that they had no more desire to do evil.

And behold, many did declare unto the people that they had seen angels and had conversed with them; and thus they had told them things of God, and of his righteousness.

And it came to pass that there were many that did believe in their words; and as many as did believe were baptized; and they became a righteous people, and they did establish a church among them.

And thus the work of the Lord did commence among the Lamanites; thus the Lord did begin to pour out his Spirit upon them; and we see that his arm is extended to all people who will repent and believe on his name.

Alma 20

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat toe hulle 'n kerk in daardie land gevestig het, dat koning Lamoni begeer het dat Ammon met hom moes gaan na die land Nepi, sodat hy hom aan sy vader kon toon.
- 2 En die stem van die Here het na Ammon gekom, en gesê: Jy sal nie opgaan na die land Nepi nie, want kyk, die koning sal jou lewe soek; maar jy sal na die land Middoni gaan; want kyk, jou broer, Aäron, en ook Muloki en Amma is in die gevangenis.
- 3 Nou, dit het gebeur dat toe Ammon dit gehoor het, het hy aan Lamoni gesê: Kyk, my broer en broers is in die gevangenis in Middoni, en ek gaan sodat ek hulle mag bevry.
- 4 Nou het Lamoni aan Ammon gesê: Ek weet, in die krag van die Here kan jy alle dinge doen. Maar kyk, ek sal met jou gaan na die land Middoni; want die koning van die land Middoni, wie se naam Antiomno is, is 'n vriend van my; daarom gaan ek na die land Middoni, sodat ek die koning van die land kan vlei, en hy sal jou broers uit die gevangenis werp. Nou het Lamoni aan hom gesê: Wie het jou gesê dat jou broers in die gevangenis is?
- 5 En Ammon het aan hom gesê: Niemand het aan my gesê nie, behalwe God; en Hy het aan my gesê—Gaan en bevry jou broers, want hulle is in die gevangenis in die land Middoni.
- 6 Nou toe Lamoni dit gehoor het, het hy sy diensknegte, sy perde en sy waens laat gereedmaak.
- 7 En hy het aan Ammon gesê: Kom, ek sal met jou afgaan na die land Middoni, en daar sal ek by die koning pleit dat hy jou broers uit die gevangenis werp.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat terwyl Ammon en Lamoni daarheen gereis het, het hulle die vader van Lamoni ontmoet, wat koning was oor die hele land.
- 9 En kyk, die vader van Lamoni het aan hom gesê: Hoekom het jy nie na die fees gekom op daardie groot dag toe ek vir my seuns en vir my volk 'n fees gehou het nie?
- 10 En hy het ook gesê: Waarheen gaan jy met hierdie Nefiet, wat een van die kinders van 'n leuenaar is?

Alma 20

And it came to pass that when they had established a church in that land, that king Lamoni desired that Ammon should go with him to the land of Nephi, that he might show him unto his father.

And the voice of the Lord came to Ammon, saying: Thou shalt not go up to the land of Nephi, for behold, the king will seek thy life; but thou shalt go to the land of Middoni; for behold, thy brother Aaron, and also Muloki and Ammah are in prison.

Now it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he said unto Lamoni: Behold, my brother and brethren are in prison at Middoni, and I go that I may deliver them.

Now Lamoni said unto Ammon: I know, in the strength of the Lord thou canst do all things. But behold, I will go with thee to the land of Middoni; for the king of the land of Middoni, whose name is Antiomno, is a friend unto me; therefore I go to the land of Middoni, that I may flatter the king of the land, and he will cast thy brethren out of prison. Now Lamoni said unto him: Who told thee that thy brethren were in prison?

And Ammon said unto him: No one hath told me, save it be God; and he said unto me—Go and deliver thy brethren, for they are in prison in the land of Middoni.

Now when Lamoni had heard this he caused that his servants should make ready his horses and his chariots.

And he said unto Ammon: Come, I will go with thee down to the land of Middoni, and there I will plead with the king that he will cast thy brethren out of prison.

And it came to pass that as Ammon and Lamoni were journeying thither, they met the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

And behold, the father of Lamoni said unto him: Why did ye not come to the feast on that great day when I made a feast unto my sons, and unto my people?

And he also said: Whither art thou going with this Nephite, who is one of the children of a liar?

- 11 En dit het gebeur dat Lamoni aan hom vertel het waarheen hy op pad was, want hy was bang om hom te mishaa.
- 12 En hy het hom ook al die oorsake vertel van sy getalm in sy eie koninkryk, dat hy nie opgegaan het na sy vader, na die fees wat hy voorberei het nie.
- 13 En nou toe Lamoni aan hom al hierdie dinge vertel het, kyk, tot sy verbasing, was sy vader kwaad vir hom, en het gesê: Lamoni, jy gaan hierdie Nefiete bevry, wat seuns is van 'n leuenaar! Kyk, hy het ons vaders beroof; nou het sy kinders ook onder ons gekom sodat hulle ons, deur hulle sluheid en hulle leuenta, mag bedrieg, sodat hulle ons weer kan berowe van ons besittings.
- 14 Nou het die vader van Lamoni hom beveel dat hy Ammon met die swaard moes doodmaak. En hy het hom ook beveel dat hy nie na die land Middoni moes gaan nie, maar dat hy met hom moes terugkeer na die land Ismael.
- 15 Maar Lamoni het aan hom gesê: Ek sal Ammon nie doodmaak nie, nóg sal ek terugkeer na die land Ismael, maar ek gaan na die land Middoni sodat ek die broers van Ammon mag loslaat, want ek weet dat hulle regverdige manne is en heilige profete van die ware God.
- 16 Nou toe sy vader hierdie woorde gehoor het, was hy kwaad vir hom, en hy het sy swaard uitgetrek sodat hy hom teen die grond mag slaan.
- 17 Maar Ammon het na vore getree en het aan hom gesê: Kyk, u sal nie u seun doodmaak nie; nogtans, dit sou beter wees dat hy sou val as u, want kyk, hy het bekeer van sy sondes; maar as u sou val op hierdie tyd, in u toorn, kon u siel nie gered word nie.
- 18 En verder, dit is raadsaam dat u moet terughou; want as u u seun sou doodmaak, omdat hy 'n onskuldige man is, sal sy bloed roep van die grond na die Here sy God, om wraak oor u te laat kom; en miskien sal u u siel verloor.
- 19 Nou, toe Ammon hierdie woorde aan hom gesê het, het hy hom geantwoord, en gesê: Ek weet dat as ek my seun sou doodmaak, dat ek onskuldige bloed sou vergiet; want dit is jy wat gesoek het om hom te vernietig.

And it came to pass that Lamoni rehearsed unto him whither he was going, for he feared to offend him.

And he also told him all the cause of his tarrying in his own kingdom, that he did not go unto his father to the feast which he had prepared.

And now when Lamoni had rehearsed unto him all these things, behold, to his astonishment, his father was angry with him, and said: Lamoni, thou art going to deliver these Nephites, who are sons of a liar. Behold, he robbed our fathers; and now his children are also come amongst us that they may, by their cunning and their lyings, deceive us, that they again may rob us of our property.

Now the father of Lamoni commanded him that he should slay Ammon with the sword. And he also commanded him that he should not go to the land of Middoni, but that he should return with him to the land of Ishmael.

But Lamoni said unto him: I will not slay Ammon, neither will I return to the land of Ishmael, but I go to the land of Middoni that I may release the brethren of Ammon, for I know that they are just men and holy prophets of the true God.

Now when his father had heard these words, he was angry with him, and he drew his sword that he might smite him to the earth.

But Ammon stood forth and said unto him: Behold, thou shalt not slay thy son; nevertheless, it were better that he should fall than thee, for behold, he has repented of his sins; but if thou shouldst fall at this time, in thine anger, thy soul could not be saved.

And again, it is expedient that thou shouldst forbear; for if thou shouldst slay thy son, he being an innocent man, his blood would cry from the ground to the Lord his God, for vengeance to come upon thee; and perhaps thou wouldst lose thy soul.

Now when Ammon had said these words unto him, he answered him, saying: I know that if I should slay my son, that I should shed innocent blood; for it is thou that hast sought to destroy him.

20 En hy het sy hand uitgestrek om Ammon dood te maak. Maar Ammon het sy hou weerstaan, en ook sy arm geslaan dat hy dit nie kon gebruik nie.

21 Nou, toe die koning sien dat Ammon hom kon doodmaak, het hy begin om met Ammon te pleit dat hy sy lewe moes spaar.

22 Maar Ammon het sy swaard opgehef, en aan hom gesê: Kyk, ek sal u doodslaan tensy u aan my sal gun dat my broers uit die gevangenis gewerp word.

23 Nou het die koning, omdat hy bang was dat hy sy lewe sou verloor, gesê: As jy my spaar, sal ek aan jou gee wat jy ook al sal vra, selfs tot die helfte van die koninkryk.

24 Nou, toe Ammon sien dat hy met die ou koning bereik het volgens sy begeerte, het hy aan hom gesê: As u sal toelaat dat my broers uit die gevangenis gewerp mag word, en ook dat Lamoni sy koninkryk mag behou, en dat u nie ontevrede met hom sal wees nie, maar gun dat hy mag doen volgens sy eie begeertes, in watter ding hy ook al dink, dan sal ek u spaar, anders sal ek u teen die grond slaan.

25 Nou, toe Ammon hierdie woorde gesê het, het die koning begin juig vanweë sy lewe.

26 En toe hy sien dat Ammon geen begeerte gehad het om hom te vernietig nie, en toe hy ook die groot liefde sien wat hy vir sy seun Lamoni gehad het, was hy uitermate verbaas, en het gesê: Omdat dit al is wat jy begeer het, dat ek jou broers moet loslaat, en toelaat dat my seun Lamoni sy koninkryk moet behou, kyk, sal ek aan jou gun dat my seun sy koninkryk mag behou van hierdie tyd en vir ewig; en ek sal nie meer oor hom heers nie—

27 En ek sal ook aan jou gun dat jou broers uit die gevangenis gewerp word, en jy en jou broers mag na my kom in my koninkryk; want ek sal julle baie graag wil sien. Want die koning was grootliks verbaas oor die woorde wat hy gespreek het, en ook oor die woorde wat gespreek was deur sy seun Lamoni, daarom was hy begerig om hulle te leer.

28 En dit het gebeur dat Ammon en Lamoni op hulle reis voortgegaan het na die land Middoni. En Lamoni het guns gevind in die oë van die koning van die land; daarom is die broers van Ammon uitbring uit die gevangenis.

And he stretched forth his hand to slay Ammon. But Ammon withstood his blows, and also smote his arm that he could not use it.

Now when the king saw that Ammon could slay him, he began to plead with Ammon that he would spare his life.

But Ammon raised his sword, and said unto him: Behold, I will smite thee except thou wilt grant unto me that my brethren may be cast out of prison.

Now the king, fearing he should lose his life, said: If thou wilt spare me I will grant unto thee whatsoever thou wilt ask, even to half of the kingdom.

Now when Ammon saw that he had wrought upon the old king according to his desire, he said unto him: If thou wilt grant that my brethren may be cast out of prison, and also that Lamoni may retain his kingdom, and that ye be not displeased with him, but grant that he may do according to his own desires in whatsoever thing he thinketh, then will I spare thee; otherwise I will smite thee to the earth.

Now when Ammon had said these words, the king began to rejoice because of his life.

And when he saw that Ammon had no desire to destroy him, and when he also saw the great love he had for his son Lamoni, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Because this is all that thou hast desired, that I would release thy brethren, and suffer that my son Lamoni should retain his kingdom, behold, I will grant unto you that my son may retain his kingdom from this time and forever; and I will govern him no more—

And I will also grant unto thee that thy brethren may be cast out of prison, and thou and thy brethren may come unto me, in my kingdom; for I shall greatly desire to see thee. For the king was greatly astonished at the words which he had spoken, and also at the words which had been spoken by his son Lamoni, therefore he was desirous to learn them.

And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni proceeded on their journey towards the land of Middoni. And Lamoni found favor in the eyes of the king of the land; therefore the brethren of Ammon were brought forth out of prison.

29 En toe Ammon hulle ontmoet, was hy uitermate bedroef, want kyk hulle was naak, en hulle velle was uitermate geskaaf, omdat hulle met sterk toue gebind was. En hulle het ook honger, dors, en allerlei soorte verdrukkinge gely; nogtans was hulle geduldig in al hulle lyding.

30 En, soos dit gebeur het, was dit hulle lot om in die hande te val van 'n meer geharde en 'n meer hardnekkige volk; daarom wou hulle nie ag slaan op hulle woorde nie, en hulle het hulle uitgewerp, en het hulle geslaan, en het hulle gedryf van huis tot huis, en van plek tot plek, en wel totdat hulle aangekom het in die land Middoni; en daar is hulle geneem en in die gevangenis gewerp, en gebind met sterk toue, en vir baie dae in die gevangenis gehou, en is bevry deur Lamoni en Ammon.

And when Ammon did meet them he was exceedingly sorrowful, for behold they were naked, and their skins were worn exceedingly because of being bound with strong cords. And they also had suffered hunger, thirst, and all kinds of afflictions; nevertheless they were patient in all their sufferings.

And, as it happened, it was their lot to have fallen into the hands of a more hardened and a more stiff-necked people; therefore they would not hearken unto their words, and they had cast them out, and had smitten them, and had driven them from house to house, and from place to place, even until they had arrived in the land of Middoni; and there they were taken and cast into prison, and bound with strong cords, and kept in prison for many days, and were delivered by Lamoni and Ammon.

'n Kroniek van die prediking van Aäron, en Muloki, en hulle broers, aan die Lamaniete.

Alma 21

- 1 Nou, toe Ammon en sy broers van mekaar geskei het op die grense van die land van die Lamaniete, kyk het Aäron sy reis onderneem na die land wat deur die Lamaniete Jerusalem genoem is, genoem na die land van hulle vaders se geboorte; en dit was ver weg, aangrensend aan Mormon.
- 2 Nou het die Lamaniete en die Amalekiete en die volk van Amulon 'n groot stad gebou, wat Jerusalem genoem is.
- 3 Nou was die Lamaniete vanself reeds genoegsaam verhard, maar die Amalekiete en die Amuloniete was nog meer verhard; daarom het hulle die Lamaniete hulle hul harte laat verhard, dat hulle sterk sou word in boosheid en hulle gruwels.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat Aäron in die stad Jerusalem gekom het, en eerste vir die Amalekiete begin preek het. En hy het begin om vir hulle in hulle sinagoges te preek, want hulle het sinagoges gebou volgens die orde van die Nehors; want baie van die Amalekiete en die Amuloniete was van die orde van die Nehors.
- 5 Daarom, toe Aäron in een van hulle sinagoges ingegaan het om vir die volk te preek, en terwyl hy met hulle gespreek het, kyk, het daar 'n Amalekiet opgestaan en begin om met hom te stry, en het gesê: Wat is dit wat jy getuig het? Het jy 'n engel gesien? Hoekom verskyn engele nie aan ons nie? Kyk, is hierdie volk nie net so goed soos jou volk nie?
- 6 Jy sê ook, tensy ons bekeer, sal ons vergaan. Hoe ken jy die gedagtes en voornemens van ons harte? Hoe weet jy dat ons rede het om te bekeer? Hoe weet jy dat ons nie 'n regverdige volk is nie? Kyk, ons het heiligdomme gebou, en ons kom byeen om God te aanbid. Ons glo wel dat God alle mense sal red.
- 7 Nou het Aäron aan hom gesê: Glo jy dat die Seun van God sal kom om die mensdom van hulle sondes te verlos?

An account of the preaching of Aaron, and Muloki, and their brethren, to the Lamanites.

Alma 21

Now when Ammon and his brethren separated themselves in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, behold Aaron took his journey towards the land which was called by the Lamanites, Jerusalem, calling it after the land of their fathers' nativity; and it was away joining the borders of Mormon.

Now the Lamanites and the Amalekites and the people of Amulon had built a great city, which was called Jerusalem.

Now the Lamanites of themselves were sufficiently hardened, but the Amalekites and the Amulonites were still harder; therefore they did cause the Lamanites that they should harden their hearts, that they should wax strong in wickedness and their abominations.

And it came to pass that Aaron came to the city of Jerusalem, and first began to preach to the Amalekites. And he began to preach to them in their synagogues, for they had built synagogues after the order of the Nehors; for many of the Amalekites and the Amulonites were after the order of the Nehors.

Therefore, as Aaron entered into one of their synagogues to preach unto the people, and as he was speaking unto them, behold there arose an Amalekite and began to contend with him, saying: What is that thou hast testified? Hast thou seen an angel? Why do not angels appear unto us? Behold are not this people as good as thy people?

Thou also sayest, except we repent we shall perish. How knowest thou the thought and intent of our hearts? How knowest thou that we have cause to repent? How knowest thou that we are not a righteous people? Behold, we have built sanctuaries, and we do assemble ourselves together to worship God. We do believe that God will save all men.

Now Aaron said unto him: Believest thou that the Son of God shall come to redeem mankind from their sins?

- 8 En die man het aan hom gesê: Ons glo nie dat jy enige so 'n ding weet nie. Ons glo nie aan hierdie dwase oorleweringe nie. Ons glo nie dat jy weet van dinge wat moet kom nie, nóg glo ons dat jou vaders en ook ons vaders geweet het aangaande die dinge wat hulle gespreek het, van dit wat moet kom.
- 9 Nou het Aäron begin om die skrifure vir hulle te open aangaande die koms van Christus, en ook aangaande die opstanding van die dode, en dat daar geen verlossing kon wees vir die mensdom nie behalwe deur die dood en lyding van Christus, en die versoening van sy bloed.
- 10 En dit het gebeur terwyl hy besig was om hierdie dinge aan hulle uit te lê, was hulle vir hom kwaad, en het begin om hom te bespot; en hulle wou nie die woorde hoor wat hy gespreek het nie.
- 11 Daarom, toe hy sien dat hulle nie sy woorde wou hoor nie, het hy vertrek uit hulle sinagoge, en oorgekom na 'n gehuggie wat genoem is Ani-Anti, en daar het hy Muloki gevind wat die woord aan hulle gespreek het; en ook Amma en sy broers. En hulle het met baie gestry oor die woord.
- 12 En dit het gebeur dat hulle gesien het dat die volk hulle harte sou verhard, daarom het hulle vertrek en oorgekom in die land Middoni. En hulle het die woord aan baie gespreek, en min het geglo in die woorde wat hulle geleer het.
- 13 Nogtans, Aäron en 'n sekere aantal van sy broers is geneem en in die gevangenis gewerp, en die res van hulle het uit die land Middoni na die streke rondomheen gevlug.
- 14 En diegene wat in die gevangenis gewerp is, het baie dinge gely, en hulle is bevry deur die hand van Lamoni en Ammon, en hulle is gevoed en geklee.
- 15 En hulle het weer uitgegaan om die woord te verkondig, en so is hulle vir die eerste keer uit die gevangenis bevry; en so het hulle gely.
- 16 En hulle het uitgegaan waarheen hulle ook al gelei is deur die Gees van die Here, en die woord van God in elke sinagoge van die Amalekiete gespreek, of in elke vergadering van die Lamaniete waar hulle toegelaat kon word.

And the man said unto him: We do not believe that thou knowest any such thing. We do not believe in these foolish traditions. We do not believe that thou knowest of things to come, neither do we believe that thy fathers and also that our fathers did know concerning the things which they spake, of that which is to come.

Now Aaron began to open the scriptures unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and that there could be no redemption for mankind save it were through the death and sufferings of Christ, and the atonement of his blood.

And it came to pass as he began to expound these things unto them they were angry with him, and began to mock him; and they would not hear the words which he spake.

Therefore, when he saw that they would not hear his words, he departed out of their synagoge, and came over to a village which was called Ani-Anti, and there he found Muloki preaching the word unto them; and also Ammah and his brethren. And they contended with many about the word.

And it came to pass that they saw that the people would harden their hearts, therefore they departed and came over into the land of Middoni. And they did preach the word unto many, and few believed on the words which they taught.

Nevertheless, Aaron and a certain number of his brethren were taken and cast into prison, and the remainder of them fled out of the land of Middoni unto the regions round about.

And those who were cast into prison suffered many things, and they were delivered by the hand of Lamoni and Ammon, and they were fed and clothed.

And they went forth again to declare the word, and thus they were delivered for the first time out of prison; and thus they had suffered.

And they went forth whithersoever they were led by the Spirit of the Lord, preaching the word of God in every synagoge of the Amalekites, or in every assembly of the Lamanites where they could be admitted.

- 17 En dit het gebeur dat die Here begin het om hulle te seën, in so 'n mate dat hulle baie gebring het tot die kennis van die waarheid; ja, hulle het baie oor- tuig van hulle sondes, en van die oorleweringe van hulle vaders, wat nie juis was nie.
- 18 En dit het gebeur dat Ammon en Lamoni terugge- keer het uit die land Middoni na die land Ismael, wat die land van hulle erfenis was.
- 19 En koning Lamoni wou nie toelaat dat Ammon hom moes dien, of sy dienskneg wees nie.
- 20 Maar hy het sinagoges laat bou in die land Ismael; en hy het sy volk, of die volk wat onder sy heerskap- py was, bymekaar laat kom.
- 21 En hy het hom verheug oor hulle, en hy het hulle baie dinge geleer. En hy het ook aan hulle verkondig dat hulle 'n volk was wat onder hom was, en dat hul- le 'n vrye volk was, dat hulle vry was van die onder- drukkinge van die koning, sy vader; omdat sy vader dit aan hom gegun het dat hy mag heers oor die volk wat in die land Ismael was, en in die hele land rond- omheen.
- 22 En hy het ook aan hulle verkondig dat hulle die vryheid mag hê om die Here hulle God te aanbid vol- gens hulle begeertes, in welke plek hulle ook al was, as dit in die land was wat onder die heerskappy van koning Lamoni was.
- 23 En Ammon het vir die volk van koning Lamoni ge- preek; en dit het gebeur dat hy hulle alle dinge geleer het aangaande regverdigheid. En hy het hulle daag- liks vermaan met alle ywer; en hulle het gehoor ge- gee aan sy woord, en hulle was ywerig in die onder- houding van die gebooi van God.

And it came to pass that the Lord began to bless them, insomuch that they brought many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, they did convince many of their sins, and of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.

And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni re- turned from the land of Middoni to the land of Ishmael, which was the land of their inheritance.

And king Lamoni would not suffer that Ammon should serve him, or be his servant.

But he caused that there should be synagogues built in the land of Ishmael; and he caused that his people, or the people who were under his reign, should assemble themselves together.

And he did rejoice over them, and he did teach them many things. And he did also declare unto them that they were a people who were under him, and that they were a free people, that they were free from the oppressions of the king, his father; for that his father had granted unto him that he might reign over the people who were in the land of Ishmael, and in all the land round about.

And he also declared unto them that they might have the liberty of worshiping the Lord their God ac- cording to their desires, in whatsoever place they were in, if it were in the land which was under the reign of king Lamoni.

And Ammon did preach unto the people of king Lamoni; and it came to pass that he did teach them all things concerning things pertaining to righteous- ness. And he did exhort them daily, with all dili- gence; and they gave heed unto his word, and they were zealous for keeping the commandments of God.

Alma 22

- 1 Nou, terwyl Ammon op hierdie wyse die volk van Lamoni voortdurend geleer het, sal ons terugkeer na die kroniek van Aäron en sy broers; want nadat hy vertrek het uit die land Middoni, is hy deur die Gees na die land Nephi gelei, en wel na die huis van die koning wat oor die hele land was, behalwe oor die land Ismael; en hy was die vader van Lamoni.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat hy ingegaan het na hom in die koning se paleis, met sy broers, en hom neergebuig het voor die koning, en aan hom gesê het: Kyk, o koning, ons is die broers van Ammon, wat u bevry het uit die gevangenis.
- 3 En nou, o koning, as u ons lewens sal spaar, sal ons u diensknegte wees. En die koning het aan hulle gesê: Staan op, want ek sal aan julle jul lewens skenk, en ek sal nie toelaat dat julle my diensknegte sal wees nie; maar ek sal aandring dat julle vir my sal preek; want ek was ietwat verontrus in my gemoed vanweë die onselfsugtigheid en die grootheid van die woorde van julle broer Ammon; en ek begeer om die rede te weet hoekom hy nie opgekom het uit Middoni met julle nie.
- 4 En Aäron het aan die koning gesê: Kyk, die Gees van die Here het hom na 'n ander plek geroep; hy het gegaan na die land Ismael, om die volk van Lamoni te leer.
- 5 Nou het die koning aan hulle gesê: Wat is dit wat julle gesê het aangaande die Gees van die Here? Kyk, dit is die ding wat my verontrus.
- 6 En ook, wat is dit wat Ammon gesê het—As u sal bekeer sal u gered word, en as u nie bekeer nie, sal u op die laaste dag verwerp word?
- 7 En Aäron het hom geantwoord en aan hom gesê: Glo u dat daar 'n God is? En die koning het gesê: Ek weet dat die Amalekiete sê dat daar 'n God is, en ek het aan hulle gegun dat hulle heiligdomme mag bou, sodat hulle hul kan versamel om Hom te aanbid. En as jy nou sê dat daar 'n God is, kyk, ek sal glo.
- 8 En nou toe Aäron dit gehoor het, het sy hart begin om te jubel, en hy het gesê: Kyk, so waar as wat u leef, o koning, daar is 'n God.

Alma 22

Now, as Ammon was thus teaching the people of Lamoni continually, we will return to the account of Aaron and his brethren; for after he departed from the land of Middoni he was led by the Spirit to the land of Nephi, even to the house of the king which was over all the land save it were the land of Ishmael; and he was the father of Lamoni.

And it came to pass that he went in unto him into the king's palace, with his brethren, and bowed himself before the king, and said unto him: Behold, O king, we are the brethren of Ammon, whom thou hast delivered out of prison.

And now, O king, if thou wilt spare our lives, we will be thy servants. And the king said unto them: Arise, for I will grant unto you your lives, and I will not suffer that ye shall be my servants; but I will insist that ye shall administer unto me; for I have been somewhat troubled in mind because of the generosity and the greatness of the words of thy brother Ammon; and I desire to know the cause why he has not come up out of Middoni with thee.

And Aaron said unto the king: Behold, the Spirit of the Lord has called him another way; he has gone to the land of Ishmael, to teach the people of Lamoni.

Now the king said unto them: What is this that ye have said concerning the Spirit of the Lord? Behold, this is the thing which doth trouble me.

And also, what is this that Ammon said—If ye will repent ye shall be saved, and if ye will not repent, ye shall be cast off at the last day?

And Aaron answered him and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God? And the king said: I know that the Amalekites say that there is a God, and I have granted unto them that they should build sanctuaries, that they may assemble themselves together to worship him. And if now thou sayest there is a God, behold I will believe.

And now when Aaron heard this, his heart began to rejoice, and he said: Behold, assuredly as thou livest, O king, there is a God.

- 9 En die koning het gesê: Is God daardie Groot Gees wat ons vaders uit die land Jerusalem gebring het?
- 10 En Aäron het aan hom gesê: Ja, Hy is daardie Groot Gees, en Hy het alle dinge geskape beide in die hemel en op die aarde. Glo u dit?
- 11 En hy het gesê: Ja, ek glo dat die Groot Gees alle dinge geskape het, en ek begeer dat jy my moet vertel aangaande al hierdie dinge, en ek sal jou woorde glo.
- 12 En dit het gebeur dat toe Aäron sien dat die koning sy woorde sou glo, het hy begin by die skepping van Adam, en die skrifture gelees aan die koning—hoe God die mens geskape het na sy eie beeld, en dat God hom gebooie gegee het, en dat vanweë oortreding, die mens geval het.
- 13 En Aäron het aan hom die skrifture uitgelê vanaf die skepping van Adam, en die val van die mens aan hom verduidelik, en hulle vleeslike toestand en ook die plan van verlossing, wat berei is vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld, deur Christus, vir almal wat ook al sal glo in sy Naam.
- 14 En aangesien die mens geval het, kon hy niks uit homself verdien nie, maar die lydings en dood van Christus versoen vir hulle sondes, deur geloof en bekering, ensovoorts; en dat Hy die bande van die dood verbreek het, dat die graf geen oorwinning sal hê nie, en dat die angel van die dood opgesluk word in die hoop van heerlijkheid; en Aäron het al hierdie dinge uitgelê aan die koning.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat nadat Aäron hierdie dinge aan hom uitgelê het, het die koning gesê: Wat moet ek doen dat ek hierdie ewige lewe mag hê waarvan jy gespreek het? Ja, wat moet ek doen dat ek gebore mag word uit God, en dat hierdie goddelose gees uit my bors ontwortel word, en sy Gees ontvang, sodat ek vervul mag word met blydschap, sodat ek nie mag verwerp word op die laaste dag nie? Kyk, het hy gesê, ek sal alles prysgee wat ek besit, ja, ek sal my koninkryk opgee sodat ek hierdie groot vreugde mag ontvang.

And the king said: Is God that Great Spirit that brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem?

And Aaron said unto him: Yea, he is that Great Spirit, and he created all things both in heaven and in earth. Believest thou this?

And he said: Yea, I believe that the Great Spirit created all things, and I desire that ye should tell me concerning all these things, and I will believe thy words.

And it came to pass that when Aaron saw that the king would believe his words, he began from the creation of Adam, reading the scriptures unto the king—how God created man after his own image, and that God gave him commandments, and that because of transgression, man had fallen.

And Aaron did expound unto him the scriptures from the creation of Adam, laying the fall of man before him, and their carnal state and also the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, through Christ, for all whosoever would believe on his name.

And since man had fallen he could not merit anything of himself; but the sufferings and death of Christ atone for their sins, through faith and repentance, and so forth; and that he breaketh the bands of death, that the grave shall have no victory, and that the sting of death should be swallowed up in the hopes of glory; and Aaron did expound all these things unto the king.

And it came to pass that after Aaron had expounded these things unto him, the king said: What shall I do that I may have this eternal life of which thou hast spoken? Yea, what shall I do that I may be born of God, having this wicked spirit rooted out of my breast, and receive his Spirit, that I may be filled with joy, that I may not be cast off at the last day? Behold, said he, I will give up all that I possess, yea, I will forsake my kingdom, that I may receive this great joy.

16 Maar Aäron het aan hom gesê: As u hierdie ding begeer, as u sal neerbuig voor God, ja, as u sal bekeer van al u sondes, en sal neerbuig voor God, en sy Naam aanroep in geloof, en glo dat u sal ontvang, dan sal u die hoop ontvang wat u begeer.

17 En dit het gebeur dat toe Aäron hierdie woorde gesê het, het die koning op sy knieë neergebuig voor die Here; ja, en het hy selfs plat gelê op die aarde en kragtig uitgeroep, en gesê:

18 O God, Aäron het my vertel dat daar 'n God is; en as daar 'n God is, en as U God is, sal U Uself aan my bekend maak, en ek sal al my sondes weggee om U te ken, en sodat ek opgewek mag word uit die dood, en gered mag word op die laaste dag. En nou toe die koning hierdie woorde gesê het, is hy getref asof hy dood was.

19 En dit het gebeur dat sy diensknegte gehardloop en die koningin alles vertel wat met die koning gebeur het. En sy het ingekom na die koning; en toe sy hom sien lê asof hy dood was, en ook Aäron en sy broers staan asof hulle die oorsaak was van sy val, was sy kwaad vir hulle, en beveel dat haar diensknegte, of die diensknegte van die koning, hulle moes neem en hulle doodmaak.

20 Nou het die diensknegte die oorsaak gesien van die koning se val, daarom het hulle nie gedurf om hulle hande op Aäron en sy broers te lê nie; en hulle het gepleit by die koningin, en gesê: Hoekom beveel u dat ons hierdie manne moet doodmaak, terwyl kyk, een van hulle magtiger is as ons almal? Daarom sal ons voor hulle val.

21 Nou toe die koningin die vrees van die diensknegte sien, het sy ook begin om uitermate te vrees, dat daar een of ander boosheid oor haar sou kom. En sy het haar diensknegte beveel dat hulle moes gaan en al die volk roep, sodat hulle Aäron en sy broers mag doodmaak.

But Aaron said unto him: If thou desirest this thing, if thou wilt bow down before God, yea, if thou wilt repent of all thy sins, and will bow down before God, and call on his name in faith, believing that ye shall receive, then shalt thou receive the hope which thou desirest.

And it came to pass that when Aaron had said these words, the king did bow down before the Lord, upon his knees; yea, even he did prostrate himself upon the earth, and cried mightily, saying:

O God, Aaron hath told me that there is a God; and if there is a God, and if thou art God, wilt thou make thyself known unto me, and I will give away all my sins to know thee, and that I may be raised from the dead, and be saved at the last day. And now when the king had said these words, he was struck as if he were dead.

And it came to pass that his servants ran and told the queen all that had happened unto the king. And she came in unto the king; and when she saw him lay as if he were dead, and also Aaron and his brethren standing as though they had been the cause of his fall, she was angry with them, and commanded that her servants, or the servants of the king, should take them and slay them.

Now the servants had seen the cause of the king's fall, therefore they durst not lay their hands on Aaron and his brethren; and they pled with the queen saying: Why commandest thou that we should slay these men, when behold one of them is mightier than us all? Therefore we shall fall before them.

Now when the queen saw the fear of the servants she also began to fear exceedingly, lest there should some evil come upon her. And she commanded her servants that they should go and call the people, that they might slay Aaron and his brethren.

22 Nou toe Aäron die vasberadenheid van die koningin sien, het hy, omdat hy die hardheid van die harte van die volk geken het, gevrees dat 'n skare bymekaar sou kom, en dat daar 'n groot twis en 'n oproer onder hulle sou wees; daarom het hy sy hand uitgesteek en die koning opgelig van die grond, en aan hom gesê: Staan. En hy het gestaan op sy voete, en sy krag ontvang.

23 Nou, dit is gedoen in die teenwoordigheid van die koningin en baie van die diensknegte. En toe hulle dit sien, was hulle grootliks verbaas, en het begin om te vrees. En die koning het vorentoe gekom, en vir hulle begin onderrig. En hy het hulle onderrig in so verre dat sy hele huishouding bekeer is tot die Here.

24 Nou was daar 'n skare bymekaar vergader as gevolg van die bevel van die koningin, en daar het begin om groot murmurerings onder hulle te wees vanweë Aäron en sy broers.

25 Maar die koning het opgestaan onder hulle en hulle onderrig. En hulle is gekalmeer teenoor Aäron en diegene wat saam met hom was.

26 En dit het gebeur dat toe die koning sien dat die volk gekalmeer is, het hy Aäron en sy broers laat opstaan in die midde van die skare, en dat hulle die woord moes preek aan hulle.

27 En dit het gebeur dat die koning 'n aankondiging gestuur het dwarsdeur die land, onder al sy mense wat in sy hele land was, wat in al die streke rondom was, wat selfs aangrensend aan die see was, aan die oostekant en aan die westekant, en wat geskei was van die land Zarahemla deur 'n smal strook van wildernis, wat gestrek het van die see oos tot by die see wes, en rondomheen op die grense van die seekus, en die grense van die wildernis wat aan die noordekant was by die land Zarahemla, deur die grense van Manti, by die oorsprong van die Sidon-rivier, wat strek van die ooste na die weste—en so is die Lamaniete en die Nefiete geskei.

Now when Aaron saw the determination of the queen, he, also knowing the hardness of the hearts of the people, feared lest that a multitude should assemble themselves together, and there should be a great contention and a disturbance among them; therefore he put forth his hand and raised the king from the earth, and said unto him: Stand. And he stood upon his feet, receiving his strength.

Now this was done in the presence of the queen and many of the servants. And when they saw it they greatly marveled, and began to fear. And the king stood forth, and began to minister unto them. And he did minister unto them, insomuch that his whole household were converted unto the Lord.

Now there was a multitude gathered together because of the commandment of the queen, and there began to be great murmurings among them because of Aaron and his brethren.

But the king stood forth among them and administered unto them. And they were pacified towards Aaron and those who were with him.

And it came to pass that when the king saw that the people were pacified, he caused that Aaron and his brethren should stand forth in the midst of the multitude, and that they should preach the word unto them.

And it came to pass that the king sent a proclamation throughout all the land, amongst all his people who were in all his land, who were in all the regions round about, which was bordering even to the sea, on the east and on the west, and which was divided from the land of Zarahemla by a narrow strip of wilderness, which ran from the sea east even to the sea west, and round about on the borders of the seashore, and the borders of the wilderness which was on the north by the land of Zarahemla, through the borders of Manti, by the head of the river Sidon, running from the east towards the west—and thus were the Lamanites and the Nephites divided.

28 Nou, die luiste gedeelte van die Lamaniete het in die wildernis gewoon, en het in tente gewoon; en hulle was versprei deur die wildernis aan die weste, in die land Nephi; ja, en ook aan die westekant van die land Zarahemla, by die grense van die seekus, en aan die westekant in die land Nephi, in die plek van hulle vaders se eerste erfenis, en dus aangrensend aan die seekus.

29 En ook was daar baie Lamaniete aan die oostekant by die seekus, waarheen die Nefiete hulle verdrywe het. En dus is die Nefiete byna omsingel deur die Lamaniete; nogtans het die Nefiete besit geneem van al die noordelike dele van die land aangrensend aan die wildernis, by die oorsprong van die Sidon-rivier, van die ooste na die weste, rondomheen aan die wildernis se kant; aan die noordekant, totdat hulle by die land gekom het wat hulle Oorvloed genoem het.

30 En dit het gegrens aan die land wat hulle Verlatenheid genoem het, omdat dit so ver noordwaarts was dat dit in die land gekom het wat bevolk en verwoes was, van wie se beendere ons gespreek het, wat ontdek is deur die volk van Zarahemla, want dit was die plek waar hulle eerste geland het.

31 En hulle het vandaar opgekom in die suidelike wildernis. Daarom is die land aan die noordekant genoem Verlatenheid, en die land aan die suidekant is genoem Oorvloed, en dit was die wildernis wat gevul is met allerlei wilde diere van elke soort, 'n gedeelte waarvan gekom het van die land noordwaarts vir voedsel.

32 En nou, dit was net die afstand van 'n dag en 'n half se reis vir 'n Nefiet, op die grenslyn tussen Oorvloed en die land Verlatenheid, van die oostelike tot die westelike see; en dus is die land Nephi en die land Zarahemla byna omring deur water, en daar was 'n smal landengte tussen die land noordwaarts en die land suidwaarts.

33 En dit het gebeur dat die Nefiete die land Oorvloed bewoon het, en wel van die oostelike tot by die westelike see, en so het die Nefiete in hul wysheid, met hulle wagte en hul leërs, die Lamaniete ingeperk in die suide, sodat hulle daardeur nie meer besittings in die noorde kon hê nie, sodat hulle nie die land noordwaarts kon oorstrom nie.

Now, the more idle part of the Lamanites lived in the wilderness, and dwelt in tents; and they were spread through the wilderness on the west, in the land of Nephi; yea, and also on the west of the land of Zarahemla, in the borders by the seashore, and on the west in the land of Nephi, in the place of their fathers' first inheritance, and thus bordering along by the seashore.

And also there were many Lamanites on the east by the seashore, whither the Nephites had driven them. And thus the Nephites were nearly surrounded by the Lamanites; nevertheless the Nephites had taken possession of all the northern parts of the land bordering on the wilderness, at the head of the river Sidon, from the east to the west, round about on the wilderness side; on the north, even until they came to the land which they called Bountiful.

And it bordered upon the land which they called Desolation, it being so far northward that it came into the land which had been peopled and been destroyed, of whose bones we have spoken, which was discovered by the people of Zarahemla, it being the place of their first landing.

And they came from there up into the south wilderness. Thus the land on the northward was called Desolation, and the land on the southward was called Bountiful, it being the wilderness which is filled with all manner of wild animals of every kind, a part of which had come from the land northward for food.

And now, it was only the distance of a day and a half's journey for a Nephite, on the line Bountiful and the land Desolation, from the east to the west sea; and thus the land of Nephi and the land of Zarahemla were nearly surrounded by water, there being a small neck of land between the land northward and the land southward.

And it came to pass that the Nephites had inhabited the land Bountiful, even from the east unto the west sea, and thus the Nephites in their wisdom, with their guards and their armies, had hemmed in the Lamanites on the south, that thereby they should have no more possession on the north, that they might not overrun the land northward.

34 Daaron kon die Lamaniete nie meer besittings hê nie behalwe in die land Nepi, en die wildernis rondomheen. Nou dit was wysheid in die Nefiete—omdat die Lamaniete 'n vyand was van hulle, wou hulle nie hul onderdrukking toelaat aan elke kant nie, en ook sodat hulle 'n land mag hê waarheen hulle mag vlug, volgens hul begeertes.

35 En nou ek, nadat ek dit gesê het, keer weer terug na die kroniek van Ammon en Aäron, Omner en Himni, en hulle broers.

Therefore the Lamanites could have no more possessions only in the land of Nephi, and the wilderness round about. Now this was wisdom in the Nephites—as the Lamanites were an enemy to them, they would not suffer their afflictions on every hand, and also that they might have a country whither they might flee, according to their desires.

And now I, after having said this, return again to the account of Ammon and Aaron, Omner and Himni, and their brethren.

Alma 23

- 1 Kyk, nou het dit gebeur dat die koning van die Lamaniete 'n aankondiging uitgestuur het onder al sy mense, dat hulle nie hulle hande mag lê op Ammon, of Aäron, of Omner, of Himni, nóg enige van hulle broers wat sou uitgaan om die woord van God te preek nie, in watter plek hulle ook al mag wees, in enige deel van hulle land.
- 2 Ja, hy het 'n dekreet uitgestuur onder hulle, dat hulle nie hul hande op hulle mag lê om hulle te bind, of om hulle in die gevangenis te werp nie; nóg mag hulle op hulle spoeg, nóg hulle slaan, nóg hulle uitwerp uit hul sinagoges, nóg hulle gésel; nóg mag hulle klippe na hulle gooi, maar dat hulle vrye toegang moet hê tot hulle huise, en ook tot hulle tempels, en hulle heiligdomme.
- 3 En so mag hulle uitgaan en die woord preek volgens hul begeertes, want die koning was bekeer tot die Here, en sy hele huishouding; daarom het hy sy aankondiging dwarsdeur die land aan sy volk uitgestuur, sodat die woord van God geen teenkanting mag hê nie, maar sodat dit mag uitgaan deur die hele land, sodat sy volk oortuig mag word aangaande die goddelose oorleweringe van hulle vaders, en sodat hulle oortuig mag word dat hulle almal broers was, en dat hulle nie behoort te moor, nóg plunder, nóg steel, nóg egbreuk te pleeg, nóg enige wyse van boosheid te pleeg.
- 4 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe die koning hierdie aankondiging uitgestuur het, dat Aäron en sy broers van stad tot stad gegaan het, en van een huis van aanbidding na 'n ander, en kerke gestig, en priesters en leraars geordineer dwarsdeur die land onder die Lamaniete, om te preek en die woord van God te onderrig onder hulle; en so het hulle begin om groot sukses te behaal.
- 5 En duisende is gebring tot die kennis van die Here, ja, duisende is gebring om te glo in die oorleweringe van die Nefiete; en hulle is die kronieke en profesieë geleer wat oorgedra is tot op die huidige tyd.

Alma 23

Behold, now it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation among all his people, that they should not lay their hands on Ammon, or Aaron, or Omner, or Himni, nor either of their brethren who should go forth preaching the word of God, in whatsoever place they should be, in any part of their land.

Yea, he sent a decree among them, that they should not lay their hands on them to bind them, or to cast them into prison; neither should they spit upon them, nor smite them, nor cast them out of their synagogues, nor scourge them; neither should they cast stones at them, but that they should have free access to their houses, and also their temples, and their sanctuaries.

And thus they might go forth and preach the word according to their desires, for the king had been converted unto the Lord, and all his household; therefore he sent his proclamation throughout the land unto his people, that the word of God might have no obstruction, but that it might go forth throughout all the land, that his people might be convinced concerning the wicked traditions of their fathers, and that they might be convinced that they were all brethren, and that they ought not to murder, nor to plunder, nor to steal, nor to commit adultery, nor to commit any manner of wickedness.

And now it came to pass that when the king had sent forth this proclamation, that Aaron and his brethren went forth from city to city, and from one house of worship to another, establishing churches, and consecrating priests and teachers throughout the land among the Lamanites, to preach and to teach the word of God among them; and thus they began to have great success.

And thousands were brought to the knowledge of the Lord, yea, thousands were brought to believe in the traditions of the Nephites; and they were taught the records and prophecies which were handed down even to the present time.

6 En sowaar as die Here leef, so is dit waar dat soveel as wat geglo het, of soveel as wat gebring is tot die kennis van die waarheid, deur die prediking van Ammon en sy broers, volgens die gees van openbaring en van profesie, en die krag van God wat wonderwerke in hulle bewerk het—ja, ek sê vir julle, sowaar as die Here leef, het soveel van die Lamaniete as wat aan hulle prediking geglo het, en bekeer is tot die Here, nooit afvallig geword nie.

7 Want hulle het 'n regverdige volk geword; hulle het die wapens van hulle rebellie neergelê, sodat hulle nie langer teen God geveg het nie, nóg teen enige van hulle broers.

8 Nou, dit is hulle wat tot die Here bekeer is:

9 Die volk van die Lamaniete wat in die land Ismael was;

10 En ook die volk van die Lamaniete wat in die land Middoni was;

11 En ook van die volk van die Lamaniete wat in die stad Nephi was;

12 En ook van die volk van die Lamaniete wat in die land Silom was, en wat in die land Semlon was, en in die stad Lemuel, en in die stad Simnilom.

13 En dit is die name van die stede van die Lamaniete wat bekeer is tot die Here; en dit is hulle wat die wapens van hulle rebellie neergelê het, ja, al hulle wapens van oorlog; en hulle was almal Lamaniete.

14 En die Amalekiete is nie bekeer nie, behalwe net een; nóg was enige van die Amuloniete, maar hulle het hul harte verhard, en ook die harte van die Lamaniete in daardie deel van die land waar hulle ook al gewoon het, ja, en in al hulle dorpies en al hulle stede.

15 Daarom, ons het al die stede van die Lamaniete waarin hulle bekeer het en gekom het tot die kennis van die waarheid, en bekeer is, genome.

And as sure as the Lord liveth, so sure as many as believed, or as many as were brought to the knowledge of the truth, through the preaching of Ammon and his brethren, according to the spirit of revelation and of prophecy, and the power of God working miracles in them—yea, I say unto you, as the Lord liveth, as many of the Lamanites as believed in their preaching, and were converted unto the Lord, never did fall away.

For they became a righteous people; they did lay down the weapons of their rebellion, that they did not fight against God any more, neither against any of their brethren.

Now, these are they who were converted unto the Lord:

The people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Ishmael;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Middoni;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the city of Nephi;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Shilom, and who were in the land of Semlon, and in the city of Lemuel, and in the city of Shimnilom.

And these are the names of the cities of the Lamanites which were converted unto the Lord; and these are they that laid down the weapons of their rebellion, yea, all their weapons of war; and they were all Lamanites.

And the Amalekites were not converted, save only one; neither were any of the Amulonites; but they did harden their hearts, and also the hearts of the Lamanites in that part of the land wheresoever they dwelt, yea, and all their villages and all their cities.

Therefore, we have named all the cities of the Lamanites in which they did repent and come to the knowledge of the truth, and were converted.

16 En nou, dit het gebeur dat die koning en diegene wat bekeer was, begerig was dat hulle 'n naam mag hê, sodat hulle daardeur onderskei mag word van hulle broers; daarom het die koning met Aäron geraadpleeg, en baie van hulle priesters, aangaande die naam wat hulle op hulle moes neem, sodat hulle onderskei mag word.

17 En dit het gebeur dat hulle hul name Anti-Nephi-Lehi's genoem het; en hulle is by hierdie naam genoem en is nie meer Lamaniete genoem nie.

18 En hulle het begin om 'n baie hardwerkende volk te word, ja, en hulle was vriendelik met die Nefiete; daarom, hulle het vriendelike verhoudinge met hulle begin, en die vloek van God het hulle nie meer gevolg nie.

And now it came to pass that the king and those who were converted were desirous that they might have a name, that thereby they might be distinguished from their brethren; therefore the king consulted with Aaron and many of their priests, concerning the name that they should take upon them, that they might be distinguished.

And it came to pass that they called their names Anti-Nephi-Lehies; and they were called by this name and were no more called Lamanites.

And they began to be a very industrious people; yea, and they were friendly with the Nephites; therefore, they did open a correspondence with them, and the curse of God did no more follow them.

Alma 24

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat die Amalekiete en die Amuloniete en die Lamaniete wat in die land Amulon was, en ook in die land Helam, en wat in die land Jerusalem was, en kortom, in die hele land rondomheen, wat nie bekeer was nie en nie op hulle die naam van Anti-Nefi-Lehi geneem het nie, is deur die Amalekiete en deur die Amuloniete tot toorn ontstook teen hulle broers.
- 2 En hulle haat het uitermate hewig geword teenoor hulle, tot so 'n mate dat hulle begin het om te rebel-leer teen hulle koning, tot so 'n mate dat hulle nie wou hê dat hy hulle koning moes wees nie; daarom, hulle het die wapens opgeneem teen die volk van Anti-Nefi-Lehi.
- 3 Nou het die koning die koninkryk oorgedra aan sy seun, en hy het sy naam Anti-Nefi-Lehi genoem.
- 4 En die koning het gesterwe in daardie selfde jaar wat die Lamaniete begin het om voorbereidsels te maak vir oorlog teen die volk van God.
- 5 Nou, toe Ammon en sy broers en al diegene wat saam met hom opgekom het die voorbereidsels van die Lamaniete sien om hulle broers te vernietig, het hulle uitgekóm na die land Midian, en daar het Ammon al sy broers ontmoet; en daarvandaan het hulle gekóm na die land Ismael; sodat hulle mag beradslaag met Lamoni en ook met sy broer Anti-Nefi-Lehi, oor wat hulle moes doen om hulself te verdedig teen die Lamaniete.
- 6 Nou, daar was nie een siel onder al die mense wat tot die Here bekeer is wat wapens teen hul broers wou opneem nie; nee, hulle wou nie eers enige voorbereidsels maak vir oorlog nie; ja, en ook hulle koning het beveel dat hulle nie moes nie.
- 7 Nou, dit is die woorde wat hy gesê het aan die volk aangaande die saak: Ek dank my God, my geliefde volk, dat ons grote God in goedheid hierdie ons broers, die Nefiete, na ons gestuur het om vir ons te preek, en om ons te oortuig van die oorlewering van ons goddelose vaders.
- 8 En kyk, ek dank my grote God dat Hy ons 'n deel van sy Gees gegee het om ons harte te versag, dat ons met hierdie broers, die Nefiete, vriendelike verhoudinge begin het.

Alma 24

And it came to pass that the Amalekites and the Amulonites and the Lamanites who were in the land of Amulon, and also in the land of Helam, and who were in the land of Jerusalem, and in fine, in all the land round about, who had not been converted and had not taken upon them the name of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, were stirred up by the Amalekites and by the Amulonites to anger against their brethren.

And their hatred became exceedingly sore against them, even insomuch that they began to rebel against their king, insomuch that they would not that he should be their king; therefore, they took up arms against the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

Now the king conferred the kingdom upon his son, and he called his name Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And the king died in that selfsame year that the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of God.

Now when Ammon and his brethren and all those who had come up with him saw the preparations of the Lamanites to destroy their brethren, they came forth to the land of Midian, and there Ammon met all his brethren; and from thence they came to the land of Ishmael that they might hold a council with Lamoni and also with his brother Anti-Nephi-Lehi, what they should do to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

Now there was not one soul among all the people who had been converted unto the Lord that would take up arms against their brethren; nay, they would not even make any preparations for war; yea, and also their king commanded them that they should not.

Now, these are the words which he said unto the people concerning the matter: I thank my God, my beloved people, that our great God has in goodness sent these our brethren, the Nephites, unto us to preach unto us, and to convince us of the traditions of our wicked fathers.

And behold, I thank my great God that he has given us a portion of his Spirit to soften our hearts, that we have opened a correspondence with these brethren, the Nephites.

- 9 En kyk, ek dank ook my God dat deur hierdie vriendelike verhouding te begin, is ons oortuig van ons sondes, en van die baie moorde wat ons gepleeg het.
- 10 En ek dank ook my God, ja, my grote God, dat Hy aan ons gegun het dat ons mag bekeer van hierdie dinge, en ook dat Hy ons vergewe het van ons baie sondes en moorde wat ons gepleeg het, en die skuld van ons harte weggeneem het, deur die verdienstes van sy Seun.
- 11 En nou kyk, my broers, aangesien dit al was wat ons kon doen (omdat ons die mees verlore van die hele mensdom was) om te bekeer van al ons sondes en die baie moorde wat ons gepleeg het, en om God te kry om hulle weg te neem van ons harte, want dit was al wat ons kon doen om voldoende te bekeer voor God dat Hy ons vlek kon wegneem—
- 12 Nou, my mees geliefde broers, aangesien God ons vlekke weggeneem het, en ons swaarde blink geword het, dan laat ons nie meer ons swaarde bevlek met die bloed van ons broers nie.
- 13 Kyk, ek sê vir julle, Nee, laat ons ons swaarde behou, sodat hulle nie bevlek word met die bloed van ons broers nie; want miskien, as ons ons swaarde weer bevlek kan hulle nie meer helder gewas word deur die bloed van die Seun van ons grote God, wat gestort sal word vir die versoening van ons sondes nie.
- 14 En die grote God het barmhartigheid gehad oor ons, en het hierdie dinge aan ons bekend gemaak sodat ons nie mag vergaan nie; ja, en Hy het hierdie dinge vooraf aan ons bekend gemaak, omdat Hy ons siele liefhet net soos Hy ons kinders liefhet; daarom, in sy barmhartigheid besoek Hy ons deur sy engele, sodat die heilsplan aan ons bekend gemaak mag word sowel as aan toekomstige geslagte.

And behold, I also thank my God, that by opening this correspondence we have been convinced of our sins, and of the many murders which we have committed.

And I also thank my God, yea, my great God, that he hath granted unto us that we might repent of these things, and also that he hath forgiven us of those our many sins and murders which we have committed, and taken away the guilt from our hearts, through the merits of his Son.

And now behold, my brethren, since it has been all that we could do (as we were the most lost of all mankind) to repent of all our sins and the many murders which we have committed, and to get God to take them away from our hearts, for it was all we could do to repent sufficiently before God that he would take away our stain—

Now, my best beloved brethren, since God hath taken away our stains, and our swords have become bright, then let us stain our swords no more with the blood of our brethren.

Behold, I say unto you, Nay, let us retain our swords that they be not stained with the blood of our brethren; for perhaps, if we should stain our swords again they can no more be washed bright through the blood of the Son of our great God, which shall be shed for the atonement of our sins.

And the great God has had mercy on us, and made these things known unto us that we might not perish; yea, and he has made these things known unto us beforehand, because he loveth our souls as well as he loveth our children; therefore, in his mercy he doth visit us by his angels, that the plan of salvation might be made known unto us as well as unto future generations.

- 15 O hoe barmhartig is ons God! En nou kyk, aangesien dit soveel was as wat ons kon doen om ons vlekke van ons weggenem te kry, en ons swaarde blinkgemaak is, laat ons hulle wegsteek sodat hulle blink gehou mag word as 'n getuienis vir ons God op die laaste dag, of op die dag dat ons gebring sal word om voor Hom te staan om geoordeel te word, dat ons nie ons swaarde bevlek het met die bloed van ons broers vandat Hy sy woord aan ons meegedeel het en ons gereinig het daardeur nie.
- 16 En nou, my broers, alhoewel ons broers soek om ons te vernietig, kyk, ons sal ons swaarde wegsteek, ja, naamlik sal ons hulle begrawe diep in die aarde, sodat hulle blink gehou mag word, as 'n getuienis dat ons hulle nooit gebruik het nie, op die laaste dag; en as ons broers ons vernietig, kyk, dan sal ons na ons God gaan en sal gered word.
- 17 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe die koning 'n einde gemaak het aan hierdie woorde, en al die mense bymekaar gebring was, het hulle hul swaarde geneem, en al die wapens wat gebruik was om 'n mens se bloed te vergiet, en hulle het hulle diep in die aarde begrawe.
- 18 En dit het hulle gedoen, omdat dit volgens hulle siening 'n getuienis tot God was, en ook vir mense, dat hulle nooit weer wapens sou gebruik om mense se bloed te vergiet nie; en dit het hulle gedoen, terwyl hulle bevestig en 'n verbond gesluit het met God dat hulle, eerder as om die bloed van hulle broers te vergiet, hulle hul eie lewens sou opgee; en eerder as om weg te neem van 'n broer, sou hulle aan hom gee; en eerder as om hulle dae in ledigheid deur te bring, sou hulle oorvloedig arbei met hulle hande.
- 19 En so sien ons dat, toe hierdie Lamaniete daartoe gebring is om te glo en die waarheid te ken, was hulle standvastig, en sou ly tot die dood toe eerder as om sonde te pleeg; en dus sien ons dat hulle hul wapens van vrede begrawe het, of hulle het die wapens van oorlog begrawe vir vrede.
- 20 En dit het gebeur dat hulle broers, die Lamaniete, voorbereidsels getref het vir oorlog, en opgetrek het na die land Nephi met die doel om die koning te vernietig, en om 'n ander te plaas in sy plek, en ook om die mense van Anti-Nepi-Lehi te vernietig uit die land.

Oh, how merciful is our God! And now behold, since it has been as much as we could do to get our stains taken away from us, and our swords are made bright, let us hide them away that they may be kept bright, as a testimony to our God at the last day, or at the day that we shall be brought to stand before him to be judged, that we have not stained our swords in the blood of our brethren since he imparted his word unto us and has made us clean thereby.

And now, my brethren, if our brethren seek to destroy us, behold, we will hide away our swords, yea, even we will bury them deep in the earth, that they may be kept bright, as a testimony that we have never used them, at the last day; and if our brethren destroy us, behold, we shall go to our God and shall be saved.

And now it came to pass that when the king had made an end of these sayings, and all the people were assembled together, they took their swords, and all the weapons which were used for the shedding of man's blood, and they did bury them up deep in the earth.

And this they did, it being in their view a testimony to God, and also to men, that they never would use weapons again for the shedding of man's blood; and this they did, vouching and covenanting with God, that rather than shed the blood of their brethren they would give up their own lives; and rather than take away from a brother they would give unto him; and rather than spend their days in idleness they would labor abundantly with their hands.

And thus we see that, when these Lamanites were brought to believe and to know the truth, they were firm, and would suffer even unto death rather than commit sin; and thus we see that they buried their weapons of peace, or they buried the weapons of war, for peace.

And it came to pass that their brethren, the Lamanites, made preparations for war, and came up to the land of Nephi for the purpose of destroying the king, and to place another in his stead, and also of destroying the people of Anti-Nepi-Lehi out of the land.

- 21 Nou toe die volk sien dat hulle teen hulle opkom, het hulle uitgegaan om hulle te ontmoet, en hulleself voor hulle op die aarde neergebuig, en begin om die naam van die Here aan te roep; en aldus was hulle in hierdie houding toe die Lamaniete begin het om hulle aan te val, en begin het om hulle dood te maak met die swaard.
- 22 En so sonder om enige teenstand te ondervind, het hulle 'n duisend en vyf van hulle doodgemaak; en ons weet dat hulle geseënd is, want hulle het gegaan om by hulle God te woon.
- 23 Nou, toe die Lamaniete sien dat hulle broers nie wou wegvlug van die swaard nie, nóg wou hulle wegdraai na die regter- of die linkerkant, maar dat hulle sou neerlê en vergaan, en God prys selfs terwyl hulle in die daadwerklike posisie was om onder die swaard te vergaan—
- 24 Nou toe die Lamaniete dit sien, het hulle opgehou om hulle dood te maak; en daar was baie wie se harte in hulle geswel het vir diegene van hulle broers wat geval het onder die swaard, want hulle het bekeer van die dinge wat hulle gedoen het.
- 25 En dit het gebeur dat hulle hul wapens van oorlog neergegooi het, en hulle wou hulle nie weer neem nie, want hulle het intense berou gehad oor die moorde wat hulle gepleeg het; en hulle het neergeval net soos hulle broers, en staatgemaak op die barmhartighede van diegene wie se arms opgelig was om hulle dood te maak.
- 26 En dit het gebeur dat by die volk van God daardie dag meer gevoeg is as die aantal wat doodgemaak is; en diegene wat doodgemaak is, was regverdige mense, daarom het ons geen rede om te twyfel dat hulle gered was nie.
- 27 En daar was nie 'n goddelose man gedood onder hulle nie; maar daar is meer as 'n duisend gebring tot die kennis van die waarheid; dus sien ons dat die Here op baie maniere werk vir die heil van sy volk.
- 28 Nou, die grootste aantal van diegene van die Lamaniete wat so baie van hulle broers gedood het, was Amalekiete en Amuloniete, van wie die grootste aantal van die orde van die Nehors was.

Now when the people saw that they were coming against them they went out to meet them, and prostrated themselves before them to the earth, and began to call on the name of the Lord; and thus they were in this attitude when the Lamanites began to fall upon them, and began to slay them with the sword.

And thus without meeting any resistance, they did slay a thousand and five of them; and we know that they are blessed, for they have gone to dwell with their God.

Now when the Lamanites saw that their brethren would not flee from the sword, neither would they turn aside to the right hand or to the left, but that they would lie down and perish, and praised God even in the very act of perishing under the sword—

Now when the Lamanites saw this they did forbear from slaying them; and there were many whose hearts had swollen in them for those of their brethren who had fallen under the sword, for they repented of the things which they had done.

And it came to pass that they threw down their weapons of war, and they would not take them again, for they were stung for the murders which they had committed; and they came down even as their brethren, relying upon the mercies of those whose arms were lifted to slay them.

And it came to pass that the people of God were joined that day by more than the number who had been slain; and those who had been slain were righteous people, therefore we have no reason to doubt but what they were saved.

And there was not a wicked man slain among them; but there were more than a thousand brought to the knowledge of the truth; thus we see that the Lord worketh in many ways to the salvation of his people.

Now the greatest number of those of the Lamanites who slew so many of their brethren were Amalekites and Amulonites, the greatest number of whom were after the order of the Nehors.

29 Nou, onder diegene wat by die volk van die Here
gevoeg is, was daar niemand wat Amalekiete of
Amuloniete was nie, of wat van die orde van Nehor
was nie, maar hulle was werklike afstammeling van
Laman en Lemuel.

30 En dus kan ons duidelik onderskei, dat nadat 'n
volk eenmaal verlig is deur die Gees van God en groot
kennis gehad het van dinge betreffende regverdig-
heid, en dan weggeval het in sonde en oortreding,
hulle nog meer verhard word, en dus word hulle toe-
stand erger as wanneer hulle nooit van hierdie dinge
gewet het nie.

Now, among those who joined the people of the
Lord, there were none who were Amalekites or
Amulonites, or who were of the order of Nehor, but
they were actual descendants of Laman and Lemuel.

And thus we can plainly discern, that after a peo-
ple have been once enlightened by the Spirit of God,
and have had great knowledge of things pertaining
to righteousness, and then have fallen away into sin
and transgression, they become more hardened, and
thus their state becomes worse than though they had
never known these things.

Alma 25

- 1 En kyk, nou het dit gebeur dat daardie Lamaniete meer vertoornd was omdat hulle hul broers gedood het; daarom het hulle wraak gesweer teen die Nefiete; en hulle het nie meer probeer om die volk van Anti-Nefi-Lehi in daardie tyd te dood nie.
- 2 Maar hulle het hulle leërs geneem en oorgegaan binne die grense van die land Zarahemla, en die mense aangeval wat in die land Ammonihah was en hulle vernietig.
- 3 En na dit, het hulle baie veldslae gehad teen die Nefiete, waarin hulle verdryf en gedood is.
- 4 En onder die Lamaniete wat gedood is, was byna al die saad van Amulon en sy broers, wat die priesters van Noag was, en hulle is gedood deur die hande van die Nefiete;
- 5 En die oorblywendes, nadat hulle die oostelike wildernis ingevlug het, en nadat hulle die mag en gesag oor die Lamaniete oorgeneem het, het baie van die Lamaniete laat omkom deur vuur vanweë hulle geloof—
- 6 Want baie van hulle, nadat hulle veel verlies en so baie verdrukkinge gely het, het begin om opgewek te word tot 'n gedagtenis van die woorde wat Aäron en sy broers tot hulle in hulle land gepreek het; daarom het hulle begin om die oorleweringe van hulle vaders te betwyfel, en om te glo in die Here, en dat Hy groot krag gegee het aan die Nefiete; en dus was daar baie van hulle bekeer in die wildernis.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat daardie heersers wat die oorblyfsel was van die kinders van Amulon hulle laat doodmaak het, ja, al diegene wat in hierdie dinge geglo het.
- 8 Nou, hierdie martelaarskap het veroorsaak dat baie van hulle broers tot toorn ontstoke was; en daar het twis begin in die wildernis; en die Lamaniete het begin om die saad van Amulon en sy broers te jag en om hulle dood te maak; en hulle het gevlug in die oostelike wildernis in.
- 9 En kyk, hulle word op hierdie dag gejag deur die Lamaniete. So is die woorde van Abinadi bewaarheid wat hy gesê het aangaande die saad van die priesters wat hom die dood deur vuur laat sterf het.

Alma 25

And behold, now it came to pass that those Lamanites were more angry because they had slain their brethren; therefore they swore vengeance upon the Nephites; and they did no more attempt to slay the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi at that time.

But they took their armies and went over into the borders of the land of Zarahemla, and fell upon the people who were in the land of Ammonihah and destroyed them.

And after that, they had many battles with the Nephites, in the which they were driven and slain.

And among the Lamanites who were slain were almost all the seed of Amulon and his brethren, who were the priests of Noah, and they were slain by the hands of the Nephites;

And the remainder, having fled into the east wilderness, and having usurped the power and authority over the Lamanites, caused that many of the Lamanites should perish by fire because of their belief—

For many of them, after having suffered much loss and so many afflictions, began to be stirred up in remembrance of the words which Aaron and his brethren had preached to them in their land; therefore they began to disbelieve the traditions of their fathers, and to believe in the Lord, and that he gave great power unto the Nephites; and thus there were many of them converted in the wilderness.

And it came to pass that those rulers who were the remnant of the children of Amulon caused that they should be put to death, yea, all those that believed in these things.

Now this martyrdom caused that many of their brethren should be stirred up to anger; and there began to be contention in the wilderness; and the Lamanites began to hunt the seed of Amulon and his brethren and began to slay them; and they fled into the east wilderness.

And behold they are hunted at this day by the Lamanites. Thus the words of Abinadi were brought to pass, which he said concerning the seed of the priests who caused that he should suffer death by fire.

- 10 Want hy het aan hulle gesê: Wat julle aan my sal doen, sal 'n voorafskaduwing wees van dinge wat sal kom.
- 11 En nou, Abinadi was die eerste wat die dood deur vuur gely het vanweë sy geloof in God; nou dit is wat hy bedoel het, dat baie die dood deur vuur sou ly soos wat hy gely het.
- 12 En hy het aan die priesters van Noag gesê dat hulle saad sou veroorsaak dat baie doodgemaak sou word, op dieselfde wyse as hy was, en dat hulle ver en wyd verstrooi en gedood sou word, net soos 'n skaap wat geen herder het nie verdryf en deur wilde diere gedood word; en nou kyk, hierdie woorde is bewaarheid, want hulle is verdryf deur die Lamaniete, en hulle is gejag, en hulle is geslaan.
- 13 En dit het gebeur dat toe die Lamaniete sien dat hulle nie die Nefiete kon oorweldig nie, het hulle weer teruggekeer na hulle eie land; en baie van hulle het oorgekom om in die land Ismael te woon en die land Nefi, en het hulle by die volk van God gevoeg, wat die volk van Anti-Nefi-Lehi was.
- 14 En hulle het ook hulle wapens van oorlog begrawe, soos hulle broers gedoen het, en hulle het begin om 'n regverdige volk te wees; en hulle het gewandel in die weë van die Here, en het gepoog om sy gebooe in en sy insettinge te onderhou.
- 15 Ja, en hulle het die wet van Moses onderhou; want dit was noodsaaklik dat hulle die wet van Moses sou onderhou vir die huidige, want dit was nog nie alles vervul nie. Maar nieteenstaande die wet van Moses, het hulle uitgesien na die koms van Christus, omdat hulle die wet van Moses beskou het as 'n voorafskaduwing van sy koms, omdat hulle geglo het dat hulle daardie uiterlike handeling moes onderhou tot die tyd dat Hy aan hulle geopenbaar sou word.
- 16 Nou het hulle nie veronderstel dat heil deur die wet van Moses kom nie; maar die wet van Moses het gedien om hulle geloof in Christus te versterk; en dus het hulle 'n hoop behou deur geloof, tot ewige heil, en staatgemaak op die gees van profesie, wat gespreek het van die dinge wat moes kom.

For he said unto them: What ye shall do unto me shall be a type of things to come.

And now Abinadi was the first that suffered death by fire because of his belief in God; now this is what he meant, that many should suffer death by fire, according as he had suffered.

And he said unto the priests of Noah that their seed should cause many to be put to death, in the like manner as he was, and that they should be scattered abroad and slain, even as a sheep having no shepherd is driven and slain by wild beasts; and now behold, these words were verified, for they were driven by the Lamanites, and they were hunted, and they were smitten.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that they could not overpower the Nephites they returned again to their own land; and many of them came over to dwell in the land of Ishmael and the land of Nephi, and did join themselves to the people of God, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And they did also bury their weapons of war, according as their brethren had, and they began to be a righteous people; and they did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe to keep his commandments and his statutes.

Yea, and they did keep the law of Moses; for it was expedient that they should keep the law of Moses as yet, for it was not all fulfilled. But notwithstanding the law of Moses, they did look forward to the coming of Christ, considering that the law of Moses was a type of his coming, and believing that they must keep those outward performances until the time that he should be revealed unto them.

Now they did not suppose that salvation came by the law of Moses; but the law of Moses did serve to strengthen their faith in Christ; and thus they did retain a hope through faith, unto eternal salvation, relying upon the spirit of prophecy, which spake of those things to come.

17 En nou, kyk, Ammon, en Aäron, en Omner en
Himni, en hulle broers, het hulle uitermate verheug
oor die welslae wat hulle gehad het onder die
Lamaniete, aangesien die Here dit aan hulle gegun
het volgens hulle gebede, en dat Hy ook sy woord aan
hulle bewaarheid het in elke besonderheid.

And now behold, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner,
and Himni, and their brethren did rejoice exceed-
ingly, for the success which they had had among the
Lamanites, seeing that the Lord had granted unto
them according to their prayers, and that he had also
verified his word unto them in every particular.

Alma 26

- 1 En nou, hierdie is die woorde van Ammon aan sy broers, wat die volgende sê: My broers en my broeders, kyk, ek sê vir julle, watter groot rede het ons om ons te verheug; want kon ons veronderstel het, toe ons uit die land Zarahemla vertrek het, dat God aan ons sulke groot seëninge sou gegun het?
- 2 En nou, ek vra, watter groot seëninge het Hy aan ons geskenk? Kan julle sê?
- 3 Kyk, ek antwoord vir julle; want ons broers, die Lamaniete, was in die duisternis, ja, en wel in die donkerste afgrond, maar kyk, hoe baie van hulle is gebring om die wonderlike lig van God te aanskou! En dit is die seëning wat aan ons geskenk is, dat ons werktuie gemaak is in die hande van God om hierdie groot werk teweeg te bring.
- 4 Kyk, duisende van hulle verheug hulle, en is ingebring in die kudde van God.
- 5 Kyk, die veld was ryp, en geseënd is julle, want julle het die sekel ingesteek, en het geoes met julle mag, ja, die hele dag lank het julle gearbei; en sien die aantal van julle gerwe! En hulle sal ingebring word in die skure, sodat hulle nie vermors word nie.
- 6 Ja, hulle sal nie platgeslaan word deur die storm op die laaste dag nie, ja, nóg sal hulle deur die warrelwinde verstrooi word; maar wanneer die storm kom, sal hulle bymekaar gemaak word in hulle plek, sodat die storm nie kan deurdring tot hulle nie, ja, nóg sal hulle deur hewige winde gedryf word waarheen die vyand ook al begeer om hulle te dra.
- 7 Maar kyk, hulle is in die hande van die Here van die oes, en hulle is syne; en Hy sal hulle opwek op die laaste dag.
- 8 Prys die Naam van ons God; laat ons sing tot sy lof, ja, laat ons dank gee aan sy heilige Naam, want Hy werk regverdigheid vir ewig.
- 9 Want as ons nie opgekom het uit die land Zarahemla nie, sou hierdie, ons innig geliefde broers, wat ons so innig liefgehad het, nog steeds ontstig gewees het met haat teenoor ons, ja, en hulle sou ook vreemdelinge gewees het voor God.

Alma 26

And now, these are the words of Ammon to his brethren, which say thus: My brothers and my brethren, behold I say unto you, how great reason have we to rejoice; for could we have supposed when we started from the land of Zarahemla that God would have granted unto us such great blessings?

And now, I ask, what great blessings has he bestowed upon us? Can ye tell?

Behold, I answer for you; for our brethren, the Lamanites, were in darkness, yea, even in the darkest abyss, but behold, how many of them are brought to behold the marvelous light of God! And this is the blessing which hath been bestowed upon us, that we have been made instruments in the hands of God to bring about this great work.

Behold, thousands of them do rejoice, and have been brought into the fold of God.

Behold, the field was ripe, and blessed are ye, for ye did thrust in the sickle, and did reap with your might, yea, all the day long did ye labor; and behold the number of your sheaves! And they shall be gathered into the garners, that they are not wasted.

Yea, they shall not be beaten down by the storm at the last day; yea, neither shall they be harrowed up by the whirlwinds; but when the storm cometh they shall be gathered together in their place, that the storm cannot penetrate to them; yea, neither shall they be driven with fierce winds whithersoever the enemy listeth to carry them.

But behold, they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest, and they are his; and he will raise them up at the last day.

Blessed be the name of our God; let us sing to his praise, yea, let us give thanks to his holy name, for he doth work righteousness forever.

For if we had not come up out of the land of Zarahemla, these our dearly beloved brethren, who have so dearly beloved us, would still have been racked with hatred against us, yea, and they would also have been strangers to God.

- 10 En dit het gebeur dat toe Ammon hierdie woorde gesê het, het sy broer Aäron hom bestraf, en gesê: Ammon, ek vrees dat jou vreugde jou weglei tot roem.
- 11 Maar Ammon het aan hom gesê: Ek roem nie in my eie krag of in my eie wysheid nie; maar kyk, my vreugde is vol, ja, my hart loop oor van vreugde; en ek sal my verbly in my God.
- 12 Ja, ek weet dat ek niks is nie, wat my krag betref, is ek swak; daarom sal ek nie roem in myself nie, maar ek sal roem in my God, want in sy krag kan ek alle dinge doen; ja, kyk, baie magtige wonderwerke het ons verrig in hierdie land, waarvoor ons sy Naam vir ewig sal loof.
- 13 Kyk, hoeveel duisende van ons broers het Hy losgemaak van die pyne van die hel; en hulle word gebring om verlossende liefde te sing, en dit vanweë die krag van sy woord wat in ons is; daarom, het ons nie groot rede om ons te verheug nie?
- 14 Ja, ons het rede om Hom te loof vir ewig, want Hy is die Allerhoogste God, en Hy het ons broers losgemaak van die kettings van die hel.
- 15 Ja, hulle was omring deur ewigdurende duisternis en vernietiging; maar kyk, Hy het hulle ingebring in sy ewigdurende lig, ja, tot ewigdurende heil; en hulle word omring deur die ongeëwenaarde volheid van sy liefde; ja, en ons was werktuie in sy hande om hierdie groot en wonderbaarlike werk te doen.
- 16 Daarom, laat ons roem, ja, ons sal roem in die Here; ja, ons sal ons verheug, want ons vreugde is vol; ja, ons sal ons God prys vir ewig. Kyk, wie kan te veel roem in die Here? Ja, wie kan te veel sê van sy groot krag, en van sy barmhartigheid, en van sy lankmoedigheid teenoor die kinders van mense? Kyk, ek sê vir julle, ek kan nie die kleinste deel beskryf van wat ek voel nie.
- 17 Wie kon veronderstel dat ons God so barmhartig kon gewees het om ons weg te ruk uit ons aaklige, sondige en besoedelde toestand?
- 18 Kyk, ons het in toorn uitgegaan, met magtige dreigemente om sy kerk te vernietig.

And it came to pass that when Ammon had said these words, his brother Aaron rebuked him, saying: Ammon, I fear that thy joy doth carry thee away unto boasting.

But Ammon said unto him: I do not boast in my own strength, nor in my own wisdom; but behold, my joy is full, yea, my heart is brim with joy, and I will rejoice in my God.

Yea, I know that I am nothing; as to my strength I am weak; therefore I will not boast of myself, but I will boast of my God, for in his strength I can do all things; yea, behold, many mighty miracles we have wrought in this land, for which we will praise his name forever.

Behold, how many thousands of our brethren has he loosed from the pains of hell; and they are brought to sing redeeming love, and this because of the power of his word which is in us, therefore have we not great reason to rejoice?

Yea, we have reason to praise him forever, for he is the Most High God, and has loosed our brethren from the chains of hell.

Yea, they were encircled about with everlasting darkness and destruction; but behold, he has brought them into his everlasting light, yea, into everlasting salvation; and they are encircled about with the matchless bounty of his love; yea, and we have been instruments in his hands of doing this great and marvelous work.

Therefore, let us glory, yea, we will glory in the Lord; yea, we will rejoice, for our joy is full; yea, we will praise our God forever. Behold, who can glory too much in the Lord? Yea, who can say too much of his great power, and of his mercy, and of his long-suffering towards the children of men? Behold, I say unto you, I cannot say the smallest part which I feel.

Who could have supposed that our God would have been so merciful as to have snatched us from our awful, sinful, and polluted state?

Behold, we went forth even in wrath, with mighty threatenings to destroy his church.

- 19 O dan, hoekom het Hy ons nie oorgelewer tot 'n vreeslike vernietiging nie, ja, hoekom het Hy nie die swaard van sy geregtigheid op ons laat val, en ons verdoem tot ewige wanhoop nie?
- 20 O, my siel, vlug as't ware by die gedagte. Kyk, Hy het nie sy geregtigheid uitgeoefen op ons nie, maar in sy groot barmhartigheid het Hy ons oor daardie ewigdurende kloof van dood en ellende gebring, en wel tot die heil van ons siele.
- 21 En nou, kyk, my broers, watter natuurlike mens is daar wat hierdie dinge weet? Ek sê vir julle, daar is niemand wat hierdie dinge weet nie, behalwe die bekeerdes.
- 22 Ja, hy wat bekeer en geloof beoefen, en goeie werke voortbring, en aanhoudend bid sonder ophou—aan sulkes is dit gegee om die verborgenhede van God te ken; ja aan sulkes sal dit gegee word om dinge te openbaar wat nog nooit geopenbaar is nie; ja, en dit sal gegee word aan sulkes om duisende siele tot bekering te bring, net soos dit aan ons gegee is om hierdie, ons broers, tot bekering te bring.
- 23 Nou onthou julle, my broers, dat ons aan ons broers in die land Zarahemla gesê het, ons gaan op na die land Nephi, om te preek vir ons broers, die Lamaniete, en hulle het spottend vir ons gelag?
- 24 Want hulle het aan ons gesê: Veronderstel julle dat julle die Lamaniete kan bring tot die kennis van die waarheid? Veronderstel julle dat julle die Lamaniete kan oortuig van die onjuistheid van die oorleweringe van hulle vaders, aangesien hulle so 'n hardnekkige volk is; wie se harte behae geskep het in bloedvergiëting; wie se dae deurgebring is in die ergste ongeregtigheid; wie se weë die weë was van 'n oortreder van die begin af? Nou my broers, julle onthou dat dit hulle woorde was.
- 25 En bowendien het hulle gesê: Laat ons wapens opneem teen hulle, sodat ons hulle en hulle ongeregtigheid vernietig uit die land, voordat hulle ons oorweldig en ons vernietig.
- 26 Maar kyk, my geliefde broers, ons het die wildernis binnegekom, nie met die voorneme om ons broers te vernietig nie, maar met die voorneme dat ons miskien 'n paar van hulle siele mag red.

Oh then, why did he not consign us to an awful destruction, yea, why did he not let the sword of his justice fall upon us, and doom us to eternal despair?

Oh, my soul, almost as it were, fleeth at the thought. Behold, he did not exercise his justice upon us, but in his great mercy hath brought us over that everlasting gulf of death and misery, even to the salvation of our souls.

And now behold, my brethren, what natural man is there that knoweth these things? I say unto you, there is none that knoweth these things, save it be the penitent.

Yea, he that repenteth and exerciseth faith, and bringeth forth good works, and prayeth continually without ceasing—unto such it is given to know the mysteries of God; yea, unto such it shall be given to reveal things which never have been revealed; yea, and it shall be given unto such to bring thousands of souls to repentance, even as it has been given unto us to bring these our brethren to repentance.

Now do ye remember, my brethren, that we said unto our brethren in the land of Zarahemla, we go up to the land of Nephi, to preach unto our brethren, the Lamanites, and they laughed us to scorn?

For they said unto us: Do ye suppose that ye can bring the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth? Do ye suppose that ye can convince the Lamanites of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers, as stiffnecked a people as they are; whose hearts delight in the shedding of blood; whose days have been spent in the grossest iniquity; whose ways have been the ways of a transgressor from the beginning? Now my brethren, ye remember that this was their language.

And moreover they did say: Let us take up arms against them, that we destroy them and their iniquity out of the land, lest they overrun us and destroy us.

But behold, my beloved brethren, we came into the wilderness not with the intent to destroy our brethren, but with the intent that perhaps we might save some few of their souls.

27 Nou toe ons harte bedruk was, en ons wou terugkeer, kyk, die Here het ons vertroos, en gesê: Gaan onder julle broers, die Lamaniete, en verduur met geduld julle verdrukkinge, en Ek sal aan julle wel-slae gee.

28 En nou, kyk, ons het gekom, en was onder hulle gewees; en ons was geduldig in ons lyding, en ons het elke ontbering gely; ja, ons het gereis van huis tot huis, en staatgemaak op die barmhartigheid van die wêreld—nie alleen op die barmhartigheid van die wêreld nie, maar op die barmhartigheid van God.

29 En ons het hulle huise binnegegaan en hulle geleer, en ons het hulle geleer op hulle strate; ja, en ons het hulle geleer op hulle heuwels; en ons het ook hulle tempels binnegegaan en hulle sinagoges en hulle geleer; en ons is uitgewerp, en bespot, en bespoeg, en geslaan op ons wange; en ons is gestenig, en gevang en vasgebind met sterk toue, en in die gevangenis gewerp; en deur die krag en die wysheid van God is ons weer bevry.

30 En ons het allerlei verdrukkinge gely, en dit alles, sodat ons miskien die middel mag wees om die een of ander siel te red; en ons het veronderstel dat ons vreugde vol sou wees as ons miskien die middel kon wees om sommiges te red.

31 Nou kyk, ons kan kyk en die vrugte sien van ons arbeid; en is hulle min? Ek sê vir julle, Nee, hulle is baie; ja, en ons kan getuig van hulle opregtheid, vanweë hulle liefde teenoor hulle broers en ook teenoor ons.

32 Want kyk, hulle sou eerder hulle lewens opoffer as om selfs die lewe van hulle vyand te neem; en hulle het hulle wapens van oorlog diep begrawe in die aarde, vanweë hulle liefde teenoor hulle broers.

33 En nou kyk, ek sê vir julle, was daar ooit so 'n groot liefde in die hele land? Kyk, ek sê vir julle, Nee, daar was nie, selfs nie onder die Nefiete nie.

34 Want kyk, hulle sou nie wapens opneem teen hulle broers; hulle sou nie toelaat dat hulle self gedood word nie. Maar kyk hoe baie van hulle het hul lewens neergelê; en ons weet dat hulle na hul God gegaan het, vanweë hulle liefde en vanweë hulle haat vir sonde.

Now when our hearts were depressed, and we were about to turn back, behold, the Lord comforted us, and said: Go amongst thy brethren, the Lamanites, and bear with patience thine afflictions, and I will give unto you success.

And now behold, we have come, and been forth amongst them; and we have been patient in our sufferings, and we have suffered every privation; yea, we have traveled from house to house, relying upon the mercies of the world—not upon the mercies of the world alone but upon the mercies of God.

And we have entered into their houses and taught them, and we have taught them in their streets; yea, and we have taught them upon their hills; and we have also entered into their temples and their synagogues and taught them; and we have been cast out, and mocked, and spit upon, and smote upon our cheeks; and we have been stoned, and taken and bound with strong cords, and cast into prison; and through the power and wisdom of God we have been delivered again.

And we have suffered all manner of afflictions, and all this, that perhaps we might be the means of saving some soul; and we supposed that our joy would be full if perhaps we could be the means of saving some.

Now behold, we can look forth and see the fruits of our labors; and are they few? I say unto you, Nay, they are many; yea, and we can witness of their sincerity, because of their love towards their brethren and also towards us.

For behold, they had rather sacrifice their lives than even to take the life of their enemy; and they have buried their weapons of war deep in the earth, because of their love towards their brethren.

And now behold I say unto you, has there been so great love in all the land? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, there has not, even among the Nephites.

For behold, they would take up arms against their brethren; they would not suffer themselves to be slain. But behold how many of these have laid down their lives; and we know that they have gone to their God, because of their love and of their hatred to sin.

35 Nou het ons nie rede om ons te verbly nie? Ja, ek sê vir julle, daar was nooit mense wat so 'n groot rede gehad het om hulle te verbly as ons nie, sedert die wêreld begin het; ja, en my vreugde lei my weg en wel tot roem in my God; want Hy het alle krag, alle wysheid, en alle begrip; Hy begryp alle dinge, en Hy is 'n barmhartige Wese, en wel tot heil, tot diegene wat sal bekeer en glo in sy Naam.

36 Nou as dit roem is, net so sal ek roem; want dit is my lewe en my lig, my vreugde en my heil, en my verlossing van ewigdurende wee. Ja, prys die Naam van my God, wat gedagtig was aan hierdie volk, wat 'n tak is van die boom van Israel, en verlore was van sy stam in 'n vreemde land; ja, sê ek, prys die Naam van my God, wat gedagtig was aan ons, swerwers in 'n vreemde land.

37 Nou, my broers, ons sien dat God gedagtig is aan elke volk, in watter land hulle ook al mag wees; ja, Hy tel sy volk, en sy innerlike ontferming is oor die hele aarde. Nou dit is my vreugde, en my groot danksegging; ja, en ek sal dank gee aan my God vir ewig. Amen.

Now have we not reason to rejoice? Yea, I say unto you, there never were men that had so great reason to rejoice as we, since the world began; yea, and my joy is carried away, even unto boasting in my God; for he has all power, all wisdom, and all understanding; he comprehendeth all things, and he is a merciful Being, even unto salvation, to those who will repent and believe on his name.

Now if this is boasting, even so will I boast; for this is my life and my light, my joy and my salvation, and my redemption from everlasting wo. Yea, blessed is the name of my God, who has been mindful of this people, who are a branch of the tree of Israel, and has been lost from its body in a strange land; yea, I say, blessed be the name of my God, who has been mindful of us, wanderers in a strange land.

Now my brethren, we see that God is mindful of every people, whatsoever land they may be in; yea, he numbereth his people, and his bowels of mercy are over all the earth. Now this is my joy, and my great thanksgiving; yea, and I will give thanks unto my God forever. Amen.

Alma 27

- 1 Nou het dit gebeur dat toe daardie Lamaniete wat in die stryd opgetrek het teen die Nefiete gevind het, na hulle baie getwis het om hulle te vernietig, dat dit tevergeefs was om hulle vernietiging te soek, het hulle weer teruggekeer na die land Nephi.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat die Amalekiete, vanweë hulle verliese, uitermate vertoornd was. En toe hulle sien dat hulle hul nie kon wreek op die Nefiete nie, het hulle begin om die volk in toorn op te stook teen hulle broers, die volk van Anti-Nefi-Lehi; daarom het hulle weer begin om hulle te vernietig.
- 3 Nou het hierdie volk weer geweier om hulle wapens op te neem, en hulle het hulself toegelaat om doodgemaak te word volgens die begeertes van hulle vyande.
- 4 Nou toe Ammon en sy broers hierdie werk van vernietiging sien onder diegene wat hulle so innig liefgehad het, en onder diegene wat vir hulle so innig lief was—want hulle is behandel asof hulle engele was wat deur God gestuur is om hulle te red van ewigdurende vernietiging—daarom, toe Ammon en sy broers hierdie groot werk van vernietiging sien, het hulle innig jammer vir hulle gevoel, en hulle het aan die koning gesê:
- 5 Laat ons hierdie volk van die Here bymekaar maak, en laat ons afgaan na die land Zarahemla na ons broers, die Nefiete, en vlug uit die hande van ons vyande, sodat ons nie vernietig word nie.
- 6 Maar die koning het aan hulle gesê: Kyk, die Nefiete sal ons vernietig, vanweë die baie moorde en sondes wat ons teen hulle gepleeg het.
- 7 En Ammon het gesê: Ek sal gaan en vir die Here vra, en as Hy aan ons sê, gaan af na ons broers, sal julle gaan?
- 8 En die koning het aan hom gesê: Ja, as die Here aan ons sê gaan, sal ons afgaan na ons broers, en ons sal hulle slawe wees totdat ons aan hulle vergoed het vir die baie moorde en sondes wat ons teen hulle gepleeg het.

Alma 27

Now it came to pass that when those Lamanites who had gone to war against the Nephites had found, after their many struggles to destroy them, that it was in vain to seek their destruction, they returned again to the land of Nephi.

And it came to pass that the Amalekites, because of their loss, were exceedingly angry. And when they saw that they could not seek revenge from the Nephites, they began to stir up the people in anger against their brethren, the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi; therefore they began again to destroy them.

Now this people again refused to take their arms, and they suffered themselves to be slain according to the desires of their enemies.

Now when Ammon and his brethren saw this work of destruction among those whom they so dearly beloved, and among those who had so dearly beloved them—for they were treated as though they were angels sent from God to save them from everlasting destruction—therefore, when Ammon and his brethren saw this great work of destruction, they were moved with compassion, and they said unto the king:

Let us gather together this people of the Lord, and let us go down to the land of Zarahemla to our brethren the Nephites, and flee out of the hands of our enemies, that we be not destroyed.

But the king said unto them: Behold, the Nephites will destroy us, because of the many murders and sins we have committed against them.

And Ammon said: I will go and inquire of the Lord, and if he say unto us, go down unto our brethren, will ye go?

And the king said unto him: Yea, if the Lord saith unto us go, we will go down unto our brethren, and we will be their slaves until we repair unto them the many murders and sins which we have committed against them.

9 Maar Ammon het aan hom gesê: Dit is teen die wet van ons broers, wat daargestel is deur my vader, dat daar enige slawe onder hulle sal wees; daarom laat ons afgaan en staatmaak op die barmhartighede van ons broers.

10 Maar die koning het aan hom gesê: Vra vir die Here, en as Hy aan ons sê, gaan, sal ons gaan; anders sal ons omkom in die land.

11 En dit het gebeur dat Ammon gegaan en vir die Here gevra het, en die Here het aan hom gesê:

12 Neem hierdie volk uit die land uit, sodat hulle nie omkom nie; want Satan het 'n groot houvas op die harte van die Amalekiete, wat die Lamaniete opstook tot toorn teen hulle broers om hulle te dood; daarom, gaan uit hierdie land uit; en geseënd is hierdie volk in hierdie geslag, want Ek sal hulle bewaar.

13 En nou het dit gebeur dat Ammon gegaan het en die koning al die woorde vertel het wat die Here aan hom gesê het.

14 En hulle het al hulle mense bymekaargemaak, ja, die hele volk van die Here, en het al hulle kleinvee en grootvee bymekaargemaak, en vertrek uit die land, en gekom in die wildernis wat die land Nefi geskei het van die land Zarahemla, en oorgekom naby die grense van die land.

15 En dit het gebeur dat Ammon aan hulle gesê het: Kyk, ek en my broers sal uitgaan in die land Zarahemla, en julle sal hier bly totdat ons terugkeer; en ons sal die harte van ons broers ondersoek, of hulle wil hê dat julle in hulle land moet inkom.

16 En dit het gebeur dat terwyl Ammon uitgaan in die land in, dat hy en sy broers vir Alma ontmoet het, oorkant in die plek waarvan gespreek is; en kyk, dit was 'n vreugdevolle ontmoeting.

17 Nou was die vreugde van Ammon so groot en wel dat hy vervul was; ja, hy was oorstelp deur vreugde in sy God, en wel tot die uitputting van sy krag; en hy het weer op die aarde neergeval.

18 Nou was dit nie uitnemende vreugde nie? Kyk, dit is vreugde wat geeneen ontvang behalwe die ware bekeerde en nederige soeker van geluk nie.

19 Nou, was die vreugde van Alma by die ontmoeting van sy broers waarlik groot, en ook die vreugde van Aäron, van Omner, en Himni; maar kyk, hulle vreugde was nie sodanig dat dit hulle krag oorskry het nie.

But Ammon said unto him: It is against the law of our brethren, which was established by my father, that there should be any slaves among them; therefore let us go down and rely upon the mercies of our brethren.

But the king said unto him: Inquire of the Lord, and if he saith unto us go, we will go; otherwise we will perish in the land.

And it came to pass that Ammon went and inquired of the Lord, and the Lord said unto him:

Get this people out of this land, that they perish not; for Satan has great hold on the hearts of the Amalekites, who do stir up the Lamanites to anger against their brethren to slay them; therefore get thee out of this land; and blessed are this people in this generation, for I will preserve them.

And now it came to pass that Ammon went and told the king all the words which the Lord had said unto him.

And they gathered together all their people, yea, all the people of the Lord, and did gather together all their flocks and herds, and departed out of the land, and came into the wilderness which divided the land of Nephi from the land of Zarahemla, and came over near the borders of the land.

And it came to pass that Ammon said unto them: Behold, I and my brethren will go forth into the land of Zarahemla, and ye shall remain here until we return; and we will try the hearts of our brethren, whether they will that ye shall come into their land.

And it came to pass that as Ammon was going forth into the land, that he and his brethren met Alma, over in the place of which has been spoken; and behold, this was a joyful meeting.

Now the joy of Ammon was so great even that he was full; yea, he was swallowed up in the joy of his God, even to the exhausting of his strength; and he fell again to the earth.

Now was not this exceeding joy? Behold, this is joy which none receiveth save it be the truly penitent and humble seeker of happiness.

Now the joy of Alma in meeting his brethren was truly great, and also the joy of Aaron, of Omner, and Himni; but behold their joy was not that to exceed their strength.

20 En nou het dit gebeur dat Alma sy broers teruggelei het na die land Zarahemla; naamlik na sy eie huis. En hulle het gegaan en die hoofregter al die dinge vertel wat met hulle gebeur het in die land Nephi, onder hulle broers, die Lamaniete.

21 En dit het gebeur dat die hoofregter 'n aankondiging uitgestuur het dwarsdeur die land, en verlang het om die stem van die volk te verneem aangaande die toelating van hulle broers, wat die mense van Anti-Nefi-Lehi was.

22 En dit het gebeur dat die stem van die volk gekom, en gesê het: Kyk, ons sal die land Jershon opgee, wat aan die oostekant is by die see, wat aan die land Oorvloed grens, wat aan die suide is van die land Oorvloed; en hierdie land Jershon is die land wat ons aan ons broers vir 'n erfenis sal gee.

23 En kyk, ons sal ons leërs opstel tussen die land Jershon en die land Nephi, sodat ons ons broers in die land Jershon mag beskerm; en dit doen ons vir ons broers, vanweë hulle vrees om wapens op te neem teen hulle broers uit vrees dat hulle sonde sou pleeg; en hierdie, hulle groot vrees, het gekom vanweë hulle ernstige bekering wat hulle gehad het, vanweë hulle baie moorde en hulle vreeslike boosheid.

24 En nou, kyk, dit sal ons doen vir ons broers, sodat hulle die land Jershon mag beërwe; en ons sal hulle bewaak teen hulle vyande met ons leërs, op voorwaarde dat hulle ons 'n deel van hulle besittings sal gee om ons by te staan, sodat ons ons leërs in stand kan hou.

25 Nou, dit het gebeur dat toe Ammon dit gehoor het, het hy teruggekeer na die volk van Anti-Nefi-Lehi, en ook Alma saam met hom, die wildernis in, waar hulle hul tente opgeslaan het, en aan hulle al hierdie dinge bekend gemaak het. En Alma het ook aan hulle sy bekering vertel, saam met Ammon en Aäron, en sy broers.

26 En dit het gebeur dat dit groot vreugde onder hulle veroorsaak het. En hulle het afgegaan in die land Jershon, en het besit geneem van die land Jershon; en hulle is deur die Nefiete die volk van Ammon genoem; daarom is hulle onderskei met daardie naam vir altyd daarna.

And now it came to pass that Alma conducted his brethren back to the land of Zarahemla; even to his own house. And they went and told the chief judge all the things that had happened unto them in the land of Nephi, among their brethren, the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the chief judge sent a proclamation throughout all the land, desiring the voice of the people concerning the admitting their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: Behold, we will give up the land of Jershon, which is on the east by the sea, which joins the land Bountiful, which is on the south of the land Bountiful; and this land Jershon is the land which we will give unto our brethren for an inheritance.

And behold, we will set our armies between the land Jershon and the land Nephi, that we may protect our brethren in the land Jershon; and this we do for our brethren, on account of their fear to take up arms against their brethren lest they should commit sin; and this their great fear came because of their sore repentance which they had, on account of their many murders and their awful wickedness.

And now behold, this will we do unto our brethren, that they may inherit the land Jershon; and we will guard them from their enemies with our armies, on condition that they will give us a portion of their substance to assist us that we may maintain our armies.

Now, it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he returned to the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, and also Alma with him, into the wilderness, where they had pitched their tents, and made known unto them all these things. And Alma also related unto them his conversion, with Ammon and Aaron, and his brethren.

And it came to pass that it did cause great joy among them. And they went down into the land of Jershon, and took possession of the land of Jershon; and they were called by the Nephites the people of Ammon; therefore they were distinguished by that name ever after.

- 27 En hulle was onder die volk van Nephi en is ook gereken onder die volk wat aan die kerk van God behoort het. En hulle is ook onderskei deur hulle ywer teenoor God, en ook teenoor mense; want hulle was volkome eerlik en opreg in alle dinge; en hulle was standvastig in die geloof in Christus, en wel tot die einde toe.
- 28 En hulle het die verspilling van die bloed van hulle broers met die grootste afkeer bejeën; en hulle kon nooit oorreed word om wapens op te neem teen hulle broers nie; en hulle het nooit die dood bejeën met enige mate van vrees nie, vanweë hulle hoop en begrip van Christus en die opstanding; daarom, die dood is vir hulle opgeneem deur die oorwinning van Christus daaroor.
- 29 Daarom, hulle sou die dood ly in die pynlikste en smartlikste wyse, wat deur hulle broers toegepas kon word, voordat hulle die swaard of die sabel sou opneem om hulle te dood.
- 30 En so was hulle 'n ywerige en geliefde volk, 'n hoogbegunstigde volk van die Here.

And they were among the people of Nephi, and also numbered among the people who were of the church of God. And they were also distinguished for their zeal towards God, and also towards men; for they were perfectly honest and upright in all things; and they were firm in the faith of Christ, even unto the end.

And they did look upon shedding the blood of their brethren with the greatest abhorrence; and they never could be prevailed upon to take up arms against their brethren; and they never did look upon death with any degree of terror, for their hope and views of Christ and the resurrection; therefore, death was swallowed up to them by the victory of Christ over it.

Therefore, they would suffer death in the most aggravating and distressing manner which could be inflicted by their brethren, before they would take the sword or cimeter to smite them.

And thus they were a zealous and beloved people, a highly favored people of the Lord.

Alma 28

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat nadat die volk van Ammon gevestig is in die land Jerson, en 'n kerk ook gevestig is in die land Jerson, en die leërs van die Nefiete opgestel is rondom die land Jerson, ja, op al die grense rondom die land Zarahemla; kyk, die leërs van die Lamaniete het hulle broers die wildernis in gevolg.
- 2 En dus was daar 'n geweldige stryd; ja, en wel so een soos nooit tevore bekend was onder al die mense in die land vanaf die tyd toe Lehi Jerusalem verlaat het nie; ja, en tienduise van die Lamaniete is gedood en ver en wyd verstrooi.
- 3 Ja, en daar was ook 'n geweldige slagting onder die volk van Nepi; nogtans, die Lamaniete is verdryf en verstrooi, en die volk van Nepi het weer teruggekeer na hulle land.
- 4 En nou, dit was 'n tyd dat daar groot rouklag en geweene gehoor is dwarsdeur die hele land, onder al die volk van Nepi:
- 5 Ja, die geweene van die weduwees wat rou oor hulle mans, en ook van vaders wat rou oor hulle seuns, en die dogter oor die broer, ja, die broer oor die vader; en dus is die rouklag gehoor onder hulle almal, vir hulle verwante wat gedood is.
- 6 En nou waarlik, dit was 'n droewige dag; ja, 'n tyd van erns, en 'n tyd van veel vas en bid.
- 7 En so eindig die vyftiende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nepi.
- 8 En dit is die kroniek van Ammon en sy broers, hulle reise in die land Nepi, hulle lydings in die land, hulle smarte, en hulle verdrukkinge, en hulle onbegryplike vreugde, en die ontvangs en veiligheid van die broers in die land Jerson. En nou mag die Here, die Verlosser van alle mense, hulle siele seën vir ewig.
- 9 En dit is die kroniek van die oorloë en twiste onder die Nefiete, en ook die oorloë tussen die Nefiete en die Lamaniete; en die vyftiende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters is beëindig.

Alma 28

And now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, and a church also established in the land of Jershon, and the armies of the Nephites were set round about the land of Jershon, yea, in all the borders round about the land of Zarahemla; behold the armies of the Lamanites had followed their brethren into the wilderness.

And thus there was a tremendous battle; yea, even such an one as never had been known among all the people in the land from the time Lehi left Jerusalem; yea, and tens of thousands of the Lamanites were slain and scattered abroad.

Yea, and also there was a tremendous slaughter among the people of Nephi; nevertheless, the Lamanites were driven and scattered, and the people of Nephi returned again to their land.

And now this was a time that there was a great mourning and lamentation heard throughout all the land, among all the people of Nephi—

Yea, the cry of widows mourning for their husbands, and also of fathers mourning for their sons, and the daughter for the brother, yea, the brother for the father; and thus the cry of mourning was heard among all of them, mourning for their kindred who had been slain.

And now surely this was a sorrowful day; yea, a time of solemnity, and a time of much fasting and prayer.

And thus endeth the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi;

And this is the account of Ammon and his brethren, their journeyings in the land of Nephi, their sufferings in the land, their sorrows, and their afflictions, and their incomprehensible joy, and the reception and safety of the brethren in the land of Jershon. And now may the Lord, the Redeemer of all men, bless their souls forever.

And this is the account of the wars and contentions among the Nephites, and also the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites; and the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges is ended.

- 10 En vanaf die eerste jaar tot die vyftiende het die vernietiging teweeggebring van baie duisende lewens; ja, dit het 'n verskriklike toneel van bloedvergieting teweeggebring.
- 11 En die liggame van baie duisende is weggeleë in die aarde, terwyl die liggame van baie duisende ontbind in hope op die aangesig van die aarde; ja, en baie duisende rou oor die verlies van hulle verwante, want hulle het rede om te vrees, volgens die beloftes van die Here, dat hulle toegewys is tot 'n toestand van eindelose wee.
- 12 Terwyl baie duisende ander waarlik rouklaag oor die verlies van hulle verwante, tog verheug hulle hul, en juig in die hoop, en weet wel, volgens die beloftes van die Here, dat hulle opgewek word om aan die regterhand van God te woon, in 'n toestand van nimmer-eindigende geluk.
- 13 En so sien ons hoe groot die ongelykheid van die mens is vanweë sonde en oortreding, en die mag van die duiwel, wat kom deur die sluwe planne wat hy bedink het om die harte van mense te verstrik.
- 14 En so sien ons die groot oproep om ywer by mense om te arbeid in die wingerde van die Here; en so sien ons die groot rede van droefheid, en ook van vreugde—droefheid vanweë dood en verwoesting onder mense, en vreugde vanweë die lig van Christus tot die lewe.

And from the first year to the fifteenth has brought to pass the destruction of many thousand lives; yea, it has brought to pass an awful scene of bloodshed.

And the bodies of many thousands are laid low in the earth, while the bodies of many thousands are mouldering in heaps upon the face of the earth; yea, and many thousands are mourning for the loss of their kindred, because they have reason to fear, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are consigned to a state of endless wo.

While many thousands of others truly mourn for the loss of their kindred, yet they rejoice and exult in the hope, and even know, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are raised to dwell at the right hand of God, in a state of never-ending happiness.

And thus we see how great the inequality of man is because of sin and transgression, and the power of the devil, which comes by the cunning plans which he hath devised to ensnare the hearts of men.

And thus we see the great call of diligence of men to labor in the vineyards of the Lord; and thus we see the great reason of sorrow, and also of rejoicing—sorrow because of death and destruction among men, and joy because of the light of Christ unto life.

Alma 29

- 1 O, dat ek 'n engel was, en die wens van my hart kon hê, dat ek mag uitgaan en spreek met die trompet van God, met 'n stem om die aarde te skud, en bekering te roep tot elke volk!
- 2 Ja, ek sou aan elke siel verkondig, soos met die stem van die donder, bekering en die plan van verlossing, dat hulle moet bekeer en na ons God kom, sodat daar nie meer droefheid op die hele aangesig van die aarde mag wees nie.
- 3 Maar kyk, ek is 'n mens, en sondig in my wens; want ek behoort tevrede te wees met die dinge wat die Here aan my toegeken het.
- 4 Ek behoort nie in my begeertes die onwrikbare bevel van 'n regverdige God te verander nie, want ek weet dat Hy aan die mense volgens hulle begeerte gun, of dit tot die dood of tot die lewe is; ja, ek weet dat Hy aan die mense toeken, ja, aan hulle bevel bevel wat onveranderlik is, volgens hul wil of hulle tot heil of tot vernietiging is.
- 5 Ja, en ek weet dat goed en kwaad voor alle mense gekom het; hy wat die goeie nie van die kwaad ken nie, is sonder skuld; maar hy wat goed en kwaad ken, aan hom word dit gegee volgens sy begeertes, of hy goed of kwaad begeer, lewe of dood, vreugde of berou van die gewete.
- 6 Nou, siende dat ek hierdie dinge weet, waarom sou ek meer begeer as om die werk uit te voer waartoe ek geroep is?
- 7 Waarom sou ek begeer dat ek 'n engel is, dat ek kon spreek met al die eindes van die aarde?
- 8 Want kyk, die Here gun aan alle nasies, van hulle eie nasie en tong, om sy woord te onderrig, ja, in wysheid, alles wat Hy goeddink dat hulle moet hê; daarom sien ons dat die Here raad gee in wysheid, volgens dit wat regverdig en waar is.
- 9 Ek ken dit wat die Here my gebied het, en ek roem daarin. Ek roem nie in myself nie, maar ek roem in dit wat die Here my gebied het; ja, en dit is my roem, dat ek miskien 'n werktuig mag wees in die hande van God om een of ander siel tot bekering te bring; en dit is my vreugde.

Alma 29

O that I were an angel, and could have the wish of mine heart, that I might go forth and speak with the trump of God, with a voice to shake the earth, and cry repentance unto every people!

Yea, I would declare unto every soul, as with the voice of thunder, repentance and the plan of redemption, that they should repent and come unto our God, that there might not be more sorrow upon all the face of the earth.

But behold, I am a man, and do sin in my wish; for I ought to be content with the things which the Lord hath allotted unto me.

I ought not to harrow up in my desires the firm decree of a just God, for I know that he granteth unto men according to their desire, whether it be unto death or unto life; yea, I know that he allotteth unto men, yea, decreeth unto them decrees which are unalterable, according to their wills, whether they be unto salvation or unto destruction.

Yea, and I know that good and evil have come before all men; he that knoweth not good from evil is blameless; but he that knoweth good and evil, to him it is given according to his desires, whether he desireth good or evil, life or death, joy or remorse of conscience.

Now, seeing that I know these things, why should I desire more than to perform the work to which I have been called?

Why should I desire that I were an angel, that I could speak unto all the ends of the earth?

For behold, the Lord doth grant unto all nations, of their own nation and tongue, to teach his word, yea, in wisdom, all that he seeth fit that they should have; therefore we see that the Lord doth counsel in wisdom, according to that which is just and true.

I know that which the Lord hath commanded me, and I glory in it. I do not glory of myself, but I glory in that which the Lord hath commanded me; yea, and this is my glory, that perhaps I may be an instrument in the hands of God to bring some soul to repentance; and this is my joy.

- 10 En kyk, wanneer ek baie van my broers waarlik berouvol sien, en dat hulle na die Here hulle God kom, dan word my siel vervul met vreugde; dan onthou ek wat die Here vir my gedoen het, ja, en wel dat Hy my gebed verhoor het; ja, dan onthou ek sy barmhartige arm wat Hy na my uitgestrek het.
- 11 Ja, en ek onthou ook die slawerny van my vaders; want ek weet vir seker dat die Here hulle verlos het uit slawerny, en hierdeur sy kerk gestig het; ja, die Here God, die God van Abraham, die God van Isak, en die God van Jakob, het hulle verlos uit slawerny.
- 12 Ja, ek het altyd die slawerny van my vaders onthou; en daardie selfde God wat hulle verlos het uit die hande van die Egiptenare, het hulle verlos uit slawerny.
- 13 Ja, en daardie selfde God het sy kerk onder hulle gestig; ja, en daardie selfde God het my geroep met 'n heilige roeping, om die woord aan hierdie volk te preek, en het my veel welslae gegee, waardeur my vreugde vol is.
- 14 Maar ek verheug my nie net in my eie welslae nie, maar my vreugde is meer vol vanweë die welslae van my broers, wat na die land Nefi opgegaan het.
- 15 Kyk, hulle het uitermate gearbei, en het baie vrug voortgebring; en hoe groot sal hulle beloning nie wees nie!
- 16 Nou, as ek dink aan die welslae van hierdie broers van my, word my siel weggevoer, en wel tot die skeiding daarvan van die liggaam, as't ware, so groot is my vreugde.
- 17 En nou, mag God aan hierdie, my broers, gun dat hulle mag sit in die koninkryk van God; ja, en ook al diegene wat die vrugte is van hulle arbeid dat hulle nie meer mag uitgaan nie, maar dat hulle Hom mag loof vir ewig. En mag God gun dat dit gedoen mag word volgens my woorde, net soos ek gespreek het. Amen.

And behold, when I see many of my brethren truly penitent, and coming to the Lord their God, then is my soul filled with joy; then do I remember what the Lord has done for me, yea, even that he hath heard my prayer; yea, then do I remember his merciful arm which he extended towards me.

Yea, and I also remember the captivity of my fathers; for I surely do know that the Lord did deliver them out of bondage, and by this did establish his church; yea, the Lord God, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, did deliver them out of bondage.

Yea, I have always remembered the captivity of my fathers; and that same God who delivered them out of the hands of the Egyptians did deliver them out of bondage.

Yea, and that same God did establish his church among them; yea, and that same God hath called me by a holy calling, to preach the word unto this people, and hath given me much success, in the which my joy is full.

But I do not joy in my own success alone, but my joy is more full because of the success of my brethren, who have been up to the land of Nephi.

Behold, they have labored exceedingly, and have brought forth much fruit; and how great shall be their reward!

Now, when I think of the success of these my brethren my soul is carried away, even to the separation of it from the body, as it were, so great is my joy.

And now may God grant unto these, my brethren, that they may sit down in the kingdom of God; yea, and also all those who are the fruit of their labors that they may go no more out, but that they may praise him forever. And may God grant that it may be done according to my words, even as I have spoken. Amen.

Alma 30

- 1 Kyk, nou het dit gebeur dat nadat die volk van Ammon gevestig was in die land Jerson, ja, en ook nadat die Lamaniete verdryf is uit die land, en hulle dooies begrawe is deur die volk van die land—
- 2 Nou, hulle dooies is nie getel nie vanweë die grootheid van hulle getalle; nóg is die dooies van die Nefiete getel—maar dit het gebeur nadat hulle hul dooies begrawe het, en ook na die dae van vas, en rouklag, en gebed, (en dit was in die sestiende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi) het daar voortdurende vrede begin heers dwarsdeur die hele land.
- 3 Ja, en die volk het gepoog om die gebooe van die Here te onderhou; en hulle was noulettend in die nakoming van die ordinansies van God, volgens die wet van Moses; want hulle is geleer om die wet van Moses te onderhou totdat dit vervul sou word.
- 4 En dus het die volk geen steurnis gehad in die hele sestiende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi nie.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat met die aanvang van die sewentiende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters, was daar voortdurende vrede.
- 6 Maar dit het gebeur teen die einde van die sewentiende jaar, het daar 'n man in die land Zarahemla gekom, en hy was 'n Antichris, want hy het begin om te preek vir die volk teen die profesieë wat gespreek is deur die profete, aangaande die koms van Christus.
- 7 Nou was daar geen wet teen 'n mens se geloof nie, want dit was streng teen die gebooe van God dat daar 'n wet sou wees wat mense op ongelyke grond sou bring.
- 8 Want so sê die skrif: Kies julle vandag, wie julle sal dien.
- 9 Nou as 'n man begeer het om God te dien, was dit sy voorreg; of eerder, as hy geglo het in God, was dit sy voorreg om Hom te dien; maar as hy nie in Hom geglo het nie, was daar geen wet om hom te straf nie.

Alma 30

Behold, now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, yea, and also after the Lamanites were driven out of the land, and their dead were buried by the people of the land—

Now their dead were not numbered because of the greatness of their numbers; neither were the dead of the Nephites numbered—but it came to pass after they had buried their dead, and also after the days of fasting, and mourning, and prayer, (and it was in the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) there began to be continual peace throughout all the land.

Yea, and the people did observe to keep the commandments of the Lord; and they were strict in observing the ordinances of God, according to the law of Moses; for they were taught to keep the law of Moses until it should be fulfilled.

And thus the people did have no disturbance in all the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace.

But it came to pass in the latter end of the seventeenth year, there came a man into the land of Zarahemla, and he was Anti-Christ, for he began to preach unto the people against the prophecies which had been spoken by the prophets, concerning the coming of Christ.

Now there was no law against a man's belief; for it was strictly contrary to the commands of God that there should be a law which should bring men on to unequal grounds.

For thus saith the scripture: Choose ye this day, whom ye will serve.

Now if a man desired to serve God, it was his privilege; or rather, if he believed in God it was his privilege to serve him; but if he did not believe in him there was no law to punish him.

10 Maar as hy moord gepleeg het, is hy met die dood gestraf; en as hy geroof het, is hy ook gestraf; en as hy gesteel het, is hy ook gestraf; en as hy egbreuk gepleeg het, is hy ook gestraf; Ja, vir al hierdie boosheid is hulle gestraf.

11 Want daar was 'n wet dat mense geoordeel moes word volgens hulle misdade. Nogtans, daar was geen wet teen 'n man se geloof nie; daarom, 'n man is gestraf slegs vir die misdade wat hy gepleeg het; daarom was alle mense op gelyke grond.

12 En hierdie Antichris, wie se naam Korihor was, (en die wet kon geen houvas op hom hê nie) het vir die mense begin preek dat daar geen Christus sou wees nie. En op hierdie wyse het hy gepreek, en gesê:

13 O julle wat gebonde is deur 'n dwase en 'n ydele hoop, waarom lê julle jul 'n juk op met sulke dwase dinge? Hoekom soek julle na 'n Christus? Want geen mens kan van enigiets weet wat moet kom nie.

14 Kyk, hierdie dinge wat julle profesieë noem, wat julle sê oorgedra is deur heilige profete, kyk, hulle is dwase oorleweringe van julle vaders.

15 Hoe weet julle van hulle sekerheid? Kyk, julle kan nie weet van dinge wat julle nie sien nie; daarom, julle kan nie weet dat daar 'n Christus sal wees nie.

16 Julle kyk vooruit en sê dat julle vergifnis van julle sondes sien. Maar kyk, dit is die uitwerking van 'n verdwaasde gemoed; en hierdie waansin van julle gemoed kom vanweë die oorleweringe van julle vaders, wat julle weglei na 'n geloof in dinge wat nie so is nie.

17 En baie meer dinge het hy aan hulle gesê, en hy het hulle vertel dat daar geen versoening gemaak kan word vir die sondes van mense nie, maar dat dit met elkeen in hierdie lewe gaan volgens die beheersing van die skepsel; daarom het elke mens gevorder volgens sy aanleg, en dat elke mens oorwin volgens sy krag; en wat 'n mens ook al gedoen het, geen misdaad was nie.

18 En so het hy vir hulle gepreek, en die harte van baie weggelei, en hulle hul hoofde in hul boosheid laat oplig, ja, baie vroue weggelei, en ook mans, om hoerery te pleg—deur vir hulle te vertel dat as 'n mens dood is, was dit die einde daarvan.

But if he murdered he was punished unto death; and if he robbed he was also punished; and if he stole he was also punished; and if he committed adultery he was also punished; yea, for all this wickedness they were punished.

For there was a law that men should be judged according to their crimes. Nevertheless, there was no law against a man's belief; therefore, a man was punished only for the crimes which he had done; therefore all men were on equal grounds.

And this Anti-Christ, whose name was Korihor, (and the law could have no hold upon him) began to preach unto the people that there should be no Christ. And after this manner did he preach, saying:

O ye that are bound down under a foolish and a vain hope, why do ye yoke yourselves with such foolish things? Why do ye look for a Christ? For no man can know of anything which is to come.

Behold, these things which ye call prophecies, which ye say are handed down by holy prophets, behold, they are foolish traditions of your fathers.

How do ye know of their surety? Behold, ye cannot know of things which ye do not see; therefore ye cannot know that there shall be a Christ.

Ye look forward and say that ye see a remission of your sins. But behold, it is the effect of a frenzied mind; and this derangement of your minds comes because of the traditions of your fathers, which lead you away into a belief of things which are not so.

And many more such things did he say unto them, telling them that there could be no atonement made for the sins of men, but every man fared in this life according to the management of the creature; therefore every man prospered according to his genius, and that every man conquered according to his strength; and whatsoever a man did was no crime.

And thus he did preach unto them, leading away the hearts of many, causing them to lift up their heads in their wickedness, yea, leading away many women, and also men, to commit whoredoms—telling them that when a man was dead, that was the end thereof.

- 19 Nou hierdie man het ook oorgegaan na die land Jerson, om hierdie dinge te preek onder die volk van Ammon, wat eens die volk van die Lamaniete was.
- 20 Maar kyk, hulle was verstandiger as baie van die Nefiete; want hulle het hom geneem, en hom gebind, en hom voor Ammon gedra, wat 'n hoëpriester oor daardie volk was.
- 21 En dit het gebeur dat hy hom uit die land laat sit het. En hy het oorgekom in die land Gideon, en het begin om ook daar vir hulle te preek; en hier het hy nie baie welslae gehad nie, want hy is geneem en gebind en voor die hoëpriester en ook die hoofregter oor die land gedra.
- 22 En dit het gebeur dat die hoëpriester aan hom gesê het: Hoekom gaan jy rond en verdraai die weë van die Here? Hoekom leer jy hierdie volk dat daar geen Christus sal wees, om hulle gejuig te onderbreek nie? Hoekom spreek jy teen al die profesieë van die heilige profete?
- 23 Nou, die hoëpriester se naam was Giddona. En Korihor het aan hom gesê: Omdat ek nie die dwase oorleweringe van julle vaders leer nie, en omdat ek nie hierdie volk leer om hulle vas te bind onder die dwase ordinansies en handelinge wat neergelê word deur priesters van ouds nie, om mag en gesag oor hulle toe te eien, om hulle in onkunde te hou, sodat hulle nie hul hoofde mag oplig nie, maar neergebring word volgens jou woorde.
- 24 Julle sê dat hierdie volk 'n vrye volk is. Kyk, ek sê dat hulle in slawerny is. Julle sê dat daardie antieke profesieë waar is. Kyk, ek sê dat julle nie weet dat hulle waar is nie.
- 25 Julle sê dat hierdie volk 'n skuldige en 'n gevalle volk is, vanweë die oortreding van 'n voorouer. Kyk, ek sê dat 'n kind nie skuldig is vanweë sy voorouers nie.
- 26 En julle sê ook dat Christus sal kom. Maar kyk, ek sê dat julle nie weet dat daar 'n Christus sal wees nie. En julle sê ook dat Hy gedood sal word vir die sondes van die wêreld—

Now this man went over to the land of Jershon also, to preach these things among the people of Ammon, who were once the people of the Lamanites.

But behold they were more wise than many of the Nephites; for they took him, and bound him, and carried him before Ammon, who was a high priest over that people.

And it came to pass that he caused that he should be carried out of the land. And he came over into the land of Gideon, and began to preach unto them also; and here he did not have much success, for he was taken and bound and carried before the high priest, and also the chief judge over the land.

And it came to pass that the high priest said unto him: Why do ye go about perverting the ways of the Lord? Why do ye teach this people that there shall be no Christ, to interrupt their rejoicings? Why do ye speak against all the prophecies of the holy prophets?

Now the high priest's name was Giddonah. And Korihor said unto him: Because I do not teach the foolish traditions of your fathers, and because I do not teach this people to bind themselves down under the foolish ordinances and performances which are laid down by ancient priests, to usurp power and authority over them, to keep them in ignorance, that they may not lift up their heads, but be brought down according to thy words.

Ye say that this people is a free people. Behold, I say they are in bondage. Ye say that those ancient prophecies are true. Behold, I say that ye do not know that they are true.

Ye say that this people is a guilty and a fallen people, because of the transgression of a parent. Behold, I say that a child is not guilty because of its parents.

And ye also say that Christ shall come. But behold, I say that ye do not know that there shall be a Christ. And ye say also that he shall be slain for the sins of the world—

27 En so lei julle hierdie volk weg agter die dwase oorleweringe van julle vaders aan, en volgens julle eie begeertes; en julle hou hulle onder, en wel asof in slawerny, sodat julle juisself kan vergulsig uit die arbeid van hulle hande, sodat hulle nie durf opkyk met moed, en dat hulle nie hul regte en voorregte durf geniet nie.

28 Ja, hulle durf nie gebruik maak van dit wat hulle eie is nie, uit vrees dat hulle hul priesters te na sou kom, wat hulle vasjuk volgens hulle begeertes, en hulle gebring het om te glo deur hulle oorleweringe en hulle drome en hulle giere, en hulle visioene, en hulle beweerde verborgenhede, dat hulle, as hulle nie gedoen het volgens hulle woorde nie, een of ander onbekende wese te na sou kom, wat hulle sê God is—'n wese wat nooit gesien of geken is nie, wat nooit was nóg ooit sal wees.

29 Nou toe die hoëpriester en die hoofregter die hardheid van sy hart sien, ja, toe hulle sien dat hy selfs teen God sou uitvaar, wou hulle nie antwoord gee op sy woorde nie; maar hulle het hom laat vasbind; en hulle het hom oorgegee in die hande van die amptenare, en hom gestuur na die land Zarahemla, sodat hy voor Alma gebring mag word, en die hoofregter wat goewerneur was oor die hele land.

30 En dit het gebeur dat toe hy voor Alma en die hoofregter gebring is, het hy op dieselfde wyse aangegaan soos hy gedoen het in die land Gideon; ja, hy het voortgegaan om te laster.

31 En hy het opgestaan met groot opgeblase woorde voor Alma, en het uitgevaar teen die priesters en leerars, en hulle beskuldig dat hulle die volk weglei agter die dwase oorleweringe van hulle vaders aan, vir die doel om hulle te versadig uit die arbeid van die volk.

32 Nou het Alma aan hom gesê: Jy weet dat ons ons nie versadig uit die arbeid van hierdie volk nie; want kyk, ek het gearbei en wel van die begin van die heerskappy van die regters tot nou toe, met my eie hande vir my onderhoud, niesteenstaande my baie reise oral in die land om die woord van God aan my volk te verkondig.

And thus ye lead away this people after the foolish traditions of your fathers, and according to your own desires; and ye keep them down, even as it were in bondage, that ye may glut yourselves with the labors of their hands, that they durst not look up with boldness, and that they durst not enjoy their rights and privileges.

Yea, they durst not make use of that which is their own lest they should offend their priests, who do yoke them according to their desires, and have brought them to believe, by their traditions and their dreams and their whims and their visions and their pretended mysteries, that they should, if they did not do according to their words, offend some unknown being, who they say is God—a being who never has been seen or known, who never was nor ever will be.

Now when the high priest and the chief judge saw the hardness of his heart, yea, when they saw that he would revile even against God, they would not make any reply to his words; but they caused that he should be bound; and they delivered him up into the hands of the officers, and sent him to the land of Zarahemla, that he might be brought before Alma, and the chief judge who was governor over all the land.

And it came to pass that when he was brought before Alma and the chief judge, he did go on in the same manner as he did in the land of Gideon; yea, he went on to blaspheme.

And he did rise up in great swelling words before Alma, and did revile against the priests and teachers, accusing them of leading away the people after the silly traditions of their fathers, for the sake of glutting on the labors of the people.

Now Alma said unto him: Thou knowest that we do not glut ourselves upon the labors of this people; for behold I have labored even from the commencement of the reign of the judges until now, with mine own hands for my support, notwithstanding my many travels round about the land to declare the word of God unto my people.

33 En niteenstaande die baie take wat ek uitgevoer het in die kerk, het ek nooit soveel ontvang as een senien vir my arbeid nie; nóg het enige van my broers, behalwe as dit was op die regterstoel; en dan het ons slegs ontvang volgens wet vir ons tyd.

34 En nou, as ons niks ontvang vir ons arbeid in die kerk nie, wat baat dit ons om in die kerk te arbeid behalwe as dit was om die waarheid te verkondig, sodat ons ons mag verheug in die vreugde van ons broers?

35 Dan, hoekom sê jy dat ons vir hierdie volk preek om gewin te verkry, as jy self weet dat ons geen gewin verkry nie? En nou, glo jy dat ons hierdie volk bedrieg, wat soveel vreugde veroorsaak in hulle harte?

36 En Korihor het hom geantwoord, Ja.

37 En toe het Alma aan hom gesê: Glo jy dat daar 'n God is?

38 En hy het geantwoord, Nee.

39 Nou het Alma aan hom gesê: Sal jy weer ontken dat daar 'n God is, en ook die Christus loën? Want kyk, ek sê vir jou, ek weet daar is 'n God, en ook dat Christus sal kom.

40 En nou watter bewys het jy dat daar geen God is nie, of dat Christus nie kom nie? Ek sê vir jou dat jy niks het nie, behalwe net jou woord.

41 Maar kyk, ek het alle dinge as 'n getuienis dat hierdie dinge waar is; en jy het ook alle dinge as 'n getuienis vir jou dat hulle waar is; en sal jy hulle loën? Glo jy dat hierdie dinge waar is?

42 Kyk, ek weet dat jy glo, maar jy is van 'n leuengees besete, en jy het die Gees van God geloën dat dit geen plek in jou mag hê nie; maar die duiwel het mag oor jou, en hy voer jou rond, terwyl hy planne bewerk sodat hy die kinders van God mag vernietig.

43 En nou het Korihor aan Alma gesê: As jy my 'n teken sal toon, sodat ek oortuig mag wees dat daar 'n God is, ja, toon aan my dat Hy krag het, en dan sal ek oortuig wees van die waarheid van jou woorde.

And notwithstanding the many labors which I have performed in the church, I have never received so much as even one senine for my labor; neither has any of my brethren, save it were in the judgment-seat; and then we have received only according to law for our time.

And now, if we do not receive anything for our labors in the church, what doth it profit us to labor in the church save it were to declare the truth, that we may have rejoicings in the joy of our brethren?

Then why sayest thou that we preach unto this people to get gain, when thou, of thyself, knowest that we receive no gain? And now, believest thou that we deceive this people, that causes such joy in their hearts?

And Korihor answered him, Yea.

And then Alma said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

And he answered, Nay.

Now Alma said unto him: Will ye deny again that there is a God, and also deny the Christ? For behold, I say unto you, I know there is a God, and also that Christ shall come.

And now what evidence have ye that there is no God, or that Christ cometh not? I say unto you that ye have none, save it be your word only.

But, behold, I have all things as a testimony that these things are true; and ye also have all things as a testimony unto you that they are true; and will ye deny them? Believest thou that these things are true?

Behold, I know that thou believest, but thou art possessed with a lying spirit, and ye have put off the Spirit of God that it may have no place in you; but the devil has power over you, and he doth carry you about, working devices that he may destroy the children of God.

And now Korihor said unto Alma: If thou wilt show me a sign, that I may be convinced that there is a God, yea, show unto me that he hath power, and then will I be convinced of the truth of thy words.

44 Maar Alma het aan hom gesê: Jy het genoeg tekens gehad; sal jy jou God versoek? Sal jy sê, Toon aan my 'n teken, terwyl jy die getuienis het van al hierdie jou broers, en ook al die heilige profete? Die skrifure is voor jou gelê, ja, en alle dinge dui daarop dat daar 'n God is; ja, naamlik die aarde, en alle dinge wat op die aangesig daarvan is, ja, en sy beweging, ja, en ook al die planete wat beweeg in hulle reëlmatige gang, getuig dat daar 'n Opperste Skepper is.

45 En tog gaan jy rond, en lei die harte van hierdie volk weg, en getuig aan hulle dat daar geen God is nie? En tog wil jy dit loën teen al hierdie getuienisse? En hy het gesê: Ja, ek sal dit loën, tensy jy my 'n teken sal toon.

46 En nou het dit gebeur dat Alma aan hom gesê het: Kyk, ek is bedroef vanweë die hardheid van jou hart, ja, dat jy steeds die gees van die waarheid sal weerstaan, sodat jou siel vernietig mag word.

47 Maar kyk, dit is beter dat jou siel verlore sou gaan as dat jy die middel sou wees om baie siele af te bring tot vernietiging, deur jou leuens en deur jou vleiende woorde; daarom, as jy dit weer sal loën, kyk, God sal jou slaan sodat jy stom sal word, sodat jy nooit meer jou mond sal oopmaak nie, sodat jy nie hierdie volk weer sal bedrieg nie.

48 Nou het Korihor aan hom gesê: Ek loën nie die bestaan van 'n God nie, maar ek glo nie dat daar 'n God is nie; en ek sê ook, dat jy nie weet dat daar 'n God is nie; en tensy jy my 'n teken toon, sal ek nie glo nie.

49 Nou het Alma aan hom gesê: Dit sal ek vir jou gee as teken, dat jy stomgeslaan sal word, volgens my woorde; en ek sê, in die Naam van God, dat jy stomgeslaan sal word, sodat jy nie meer sal kan praat nie.

50 Nou toe Alma hierdie woorde gesê het, is Korihor stomgeslaan, sodat hy nie meer kon praat nie, volgens die woorde van Alma.

But Alma said unto him: Thou hast had signs enough; will ye tempt your God? Will ye say, Show unto me a sign, when ye have the testimony of all these thy brethren, and also all the holy prophets? The scriptures are laid before thee, yea, and all things denote there is a God; yea, even the earth, and all things that are upon the face of it, yea, and its motion, yea, and also all the planets which move in their regular form do witness that there is a Supreme Creator.

And yet do ye go about, leading away the hearts of this people, testifying unto them there is no God? And yet will ye deny against all these witnesses? And he said: Yea, I will deny, except ye shall show me a sign.

And now it came to pass that Alma said unto him: Behold, I am grieved because of the hardness of your heart, yea, that ye will still resist the spirit of the truth, that thy soul may be destroyed.

But behold, it is better that thy soul should be lost than that thou shouldst be the means of bringing many souls down to destruction, by thy lying and by thy flattering words; therefore if thou shalt deny again, behold God shall smite thee, that thou shalt become dumb, that thou shalt never open thy mouth any more, that thou shalt not deceive this people any more.

Now Korihor said unto him: I do not deny the existence of a God, but I do not believe that there is a God; and I say also, that ye do not know that there is a God; and except ye show me a sign, I will not believe.

Now Alma said unto him: This will I give unto thee for a sign, that thou shalt be struck dumb, according to my words; and I say, that in the name of God, ye shall be struck dumb, that ye shall no more have utterance.

Now when Alma had said these words, Korihor was struck dumb, that he could not have utterance, according to the words of Alma.

51 En nou toe die hoofregter dit sien, het hy sy hand uitgesteek en vir Korihor geskryf, en gesê: Is jy nou oortuig van die krag van God? In wie wou jy hê dat Alma sy teken moes toon? Wou jy hê dat hy ander moes kwel om vir jou 'n teken te toon? Kyk, hy het aan jou 'n teken getoon; en nou wil jy nog stry?

52 En Korihor het sy hand uitgesteek en geskryf, en gesê: Ek weet dat ek stom is, want ek kan nie praat nie; en ek weet dat niks behalwe die krag van God dit oor my kon bring nie, ja, en ek het altyd geweet dat daar 'n God is.

53 Maar kyk, die duivel het my bedrieg; want hy het aan my verskyn in die gedaante van 'n engel, en aan my gesê: Gaan, en hervorm hierdie volk, want hulle het almal weggedwaal agter 'n onbekende God aan. En hy het aan my gesê: Daar is geen God nie; ja, en hy het my geleer dít wat ek moes sê. En ek het sy woorde geleer; en ek het hulle geleer omdat hulle aangenaam was vir die vleeslike gemoed; ek het hulle geleer, en wel totdat ek veel welslae gehad het, in soverre dat ek waarlik geglo het dat hulle waar is; en om hierdie rede het ek die waarheid weerstaan, en wel totdat ek hierdie groot vloek oor my gebring het.

54 Nou toe hy dit gesê het, het hy gesmeek dat Alma tot God sou bid sodat die vloek van hom weggeneem mag word.

55 Maar Alma het aan hom gesê: As hierdie vloek van jou weggeneem sou word, sal jy weer die harte van hierdie volk weglei; daarom dit sal vir jou wees net soos die Here wil.

56 En dit het gebeur dat die vloek nie van Korihor af weggeneem is nie; maar hy is uitgewerp en het van huis tot huis gegaan vir sy voedsel.

57 Nou die kennis van wat met Korihor gebeur het, is onmiddellik dwarsdeur die hele land bekend gemaak; ja, die aankondiging is uitgestuur deur die hoofregter aan al die mense in die land, en verklaar aan diegene wat geglo het in die woorde van Korihor, dat hulle spoedig moes bekeer, sodat dieselfde oordele nie oor hulle sou kom nie.

And now when the chief judge saw this, he put forth his hand and wrote unto Korihor, saying: Art thou convinced of the power of God? In whom did ye desire that Alma should show forth his sign? Would ye that he should afflict others, to show unto thee a sign? Behold, he has showed unto you a sign; and now will ye dispute more?

And Korihor put forth his hand and wrote, saying: I know that I am dumb, for I cannot speak; and I know that nothing save it were the power of God could bring this upon me; yea, and I always knew that there was a God.

But behold, the devil hath deceived me; for he appeared unto me in the form of an angel, and said unto me: Go and reclaim this people, for they have all gone astray after an unknown God. And he said unto me: There is no God; yea, and he taught me that which I should say. And I have taught his words; and I taught them because they were pleasing unto the carnal mind; and I taught them, even until I had much success, insomuch that I verily believed that they were true; and for this cause I withstood the truth, even until I have brought this great curse upon me.

Now when he had said this, he besought that Alma should pray unto God, that the curse might be taken from him.

But Alma said unto him: If this curse should be taken from thee thou wouldst again lead away the hearts of this people; therefore, it shall be unto thee even as the Lord will.

And it came to pass that the curse was not taken off of Korihor; but he was cast out, and went about from house to house begging for his food.

Now the knowledge of what had happened unto Korihor was immediately published throughout all the land; yea, the proclamation was sent forth by the chief judge to all the people in the land, declaring unto those who had believed in the words of Korihor that they must speedily repent, lest the same judgments would come unto them.

58 En dit het gebeur dat hulle almal oortuig was van die boosheid van Korihor; daarom is hulle almal weer bekeer tot die Here; en dit het 'n einde gemaak aan die ongeregtigheid volgens die wyse van Korihor. En Korihor het gegaan van huis tot huis om voedsel te bedel vir sy onderhoud.

59 En dit het gebeur dat terwyl hy onder die volk rondgegaan het, ja, onder 'n volk wat hulle afgeskei het van die Nefiete en hulself Zoramiete genoem het, wat gelei is deur 'n man wie se naam Zoram was—en terwyl hy onder hulle rondgegaan het, kyk, is hy omgeloop en vertrap, en wel totdat hy dood was.

60 En so sien ons die einde van hóm wat die weë van die Here verdraai; en so sien ons dat die duiwel nie sy kinders sal steun op die laaste dag nie, maar hulle spoedig aftrek na die hel.

And it came to pass that they were all convinced of the wickedness of Korihor; therefore they were all converted again unto the Lord; and this put an end to the iniquity after the manner of Korihor. And Korihor did go about from house to house, begging food for his support.

And it came to pass that as he went forth among the people, yea, among a people who had separated themselves from the Nephites and called themselves Zoramites, being led by a man whose name was Zoram—and as he went forth amongst them, behold, he was run upon and trodden down, even until he was dead.

And thus we see the end of him who perverteth the ways of the Lord; and thus we see that the devil will not support his children at the last day, but doth speedily drag them down to hell.

Alma 31

- 1 Nou het dit gebeur dat na die einde van Korihor, omdat Alma berig ontvang het dat die Zoramiete die weë van die Here verdraai het, en dat Zoram, wat hulle leier was, die harte van die volk gelei het om neer te buig voor stomme afgode, het sy hart weer begin om siek te word vanweë die ongeregtigheid van die volk.
- 2 Want dit was die oorsaak van groot droefheid vir Alma om te weet van ongeregtigheid onder sy volk; daarom was sy hart uitermate bedroef vanweë die afskending van die Zoramiete van die Nefiete.
- 3 Nou het die Zoramiete hulleself bymeakaargemaak in 'n land wat hulle Antionum genoem het, wat oos was van die land Zarahemla, wat byna aangrensend was aan die seekus, wat suid was van die land Jerson, wat ook gegrens het aan die wildernis aan die suidekant, welke wildernis vol Lamaniete was.
- 4 Nou het die Nefiete grootliks gevrees dat die Zoramiete vriendskaplike betrekkinge sou hê met die Lamaniete, en dat dit die oorsaak sou wees van groot verlies aan die kant van die Nefiete.
- 5 En nou, omdat die verkondiging van die woord 'n groot neiging gehad het om die volk te lei om dit te doen wat regverdig was—ja, dit het 'n kragtiger uitwerking gehad op die gemoed van die volk as die swaard, of enigiets anders, wat met hulle gebeur het—daarom het Alma gedink dat dit raadsaam was dat hulle die doeltreffendheid van die woord van God moes toets.
- 6 Daarom het hy Ammon geneem, en Aäron, en Omner; en Himni het hy gelaat in die kerk in Zarahemla; maar die voornoemde drie het hy met hom geneem, en ook Amulek en Zeesrom, wat by Melek was; en hy het ook twee van sy seuns geneem.
- 7 Nou, die oudste van sy seuns het hy nie met hom geneem nie, en sy naam was Helaman; maar die name van diegene wat hy saam met hom geneem het, was Sjiblon, en Corianton; en dit is die name van diegene wat saam met hom gegaan het onder die Zoramiete, om aan hulle die woord te preek.
- 8 Nou was die Zoramiete afvalliges van die Nefiete; daarom het hulle die woord van God aan hulle gepredik gehad.

Alma 31

Now it came to pass that after the end of Korihor, Alma having received tidings that the Zoramites were perverting the ways of the Lord, and that Zoram, who was their leader, was leading the hearts of the people to bow down to dumb idols, his heart again began to sicken because of the iniquity of the people.

For it was the cause of great sorrow to Alma to know of iniquity among his people; therefore his heart was exceedingly sorrowful because of the separation of the Zoramites from the Nephites.

Now the Zoramites had gathered themselves together in a land which they called Antionum, which was east of the land of Zarahemla, which lay nearly bordering upon the seashore, which was south of the land of Jershon, which also bordered upon the wilderness south, which wilderness was full of the Lamanites.

Now the Nephites greatly feared that the Zoramites would enter into a correspondence with the Lamanites, and that it would be the means of great loss on the part of the Nephites.

And now, as the preaching of the word had a great tendency to lead the people to do that which was just—yea, it had had more powerful effect upon the minds of the people than the sword, or anything else, which had happened unto them—therefore Alma thought it was expedient that they should try the virtue of the word of God.

Therefore he took Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner; and Himni he did leave in the church in Zarahemla; but the former three he took with him, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, who were at Melek; and he also took two of his sons.

Now the eldest of his sons he took not with him, and his name was Helaman; but the names of those whom he took with him were Shiblón and Corianton; and these are the names of those who went with him among the Zoramites, to preach unto them the word.

Now the Zoramites were dissenters from the Nephites; therefore they had had the word of God preached unto them.

- 9 Maar hulle het verval in groot dwalinge, want hulle wou nie die gebooië van God onderhou, en sy insettinge, volgens die wet van Moses nie.
- 10 Nóg wou hulle die handelinge van die kerk onderhou, om daagliks voort te gaan in gebed en smeking tot God, dat hulle nie in versoeking mag kom nie.
- 11 Ja, kortom, hulle het die weë van die Here verdraai in baie gevalle; daarom, om hierdie rede het Alma en sy broers die land ingegaan om die woord vir hulle te preek.
- 12 Nou, toe hulle in die land ingekom het, kyk, tot hulle verbasing het hulle gevind dat die Zoramiete sinagoges gebou het, en dat hulle hulleself bymekaargemaak het op een dag in die week, welke dag hulle die dag van die Here genoem het; en hulle het aanbid op 'n wyse wat Alma en sy broers nooit gesien het nie.
- 13 Want hulle het 'n plek opgebou gehad in die middel van hulle sinagoge, 'n plek om te staan, wat hoog bo die kop was; en die bopunt daarvan sou net een persoon toelaat.
- 14 Daarom, wie ook al begeer het om te aanbid, moes opgaan en op die bopunt daarvan staan, en sy hande uitstrek na die hemel, en uitroep met 'n luide stem, en sê:
- 15 Heilige, heilige God; ons glo dat U God is, en ons glo dat U heilig is, en dat U 'n Gees was, en dat U 'n Gees is, en dat U 'n Gees sal wees vir ewig.
- 16 Heilige God, ons glo dat U ons van ons broers geskei het; en ons glo nie in die oorlewering van ons broers nie, wat aan hulle oorgelewer is deur die kinderagtigheid van hulle vaders; maar ons glo dat U ons uitverkies het om u heilige kinders te wees; en ook het U dit aan ons bekend gemaak dat daar geen Christus sal wees nie.
- 17 Maar U is dieselfde gister, vandag en vir ewig; en U het ons uitverkies dat ons gered mag word, terwyl almal rondom ons uitverkies is om deur u toorn in die hel gewerp te word; vir welke heiligheid, o God, ons U dank; en ons dank U ook dat U ons uitverkies het, sodat ons nie weggelei word agter die dwase oorlewering van ons broers nie, wat hulle vasbind tot 'n geloof in Christus, wat hulle harte lei om ver van U af te dwaal, ons God.

But they had fallen into great errors, for they would not observe to keep the commandments of God, and his statutes, according to the law of Moses.

Neither would they observe the performances of the church, to continue in prayer and supplication to God daily, that they might not enter into temptation.

Yea, in fine, they did pervert the ways of the Lord in very many instances; therefore, for this cause, Alma and his brethren went into the land to preach the word unto them.

Now, when they had come into the land, behold, to their astonishment they found that the Zoramites had built synagogues, and that they did gather themselves together on one day of the week, which day they did call the day of the Lord; and they did worship after a manner which Alma and his brethren had never beheld;

For they had a place built up in the center of their synagogue, a place for standing, which was high above the head; and the top thereof would only admit one person.

Therefore, whosoever desired to worship must go forth and stand upon the top thereof, and stretch forth his hands towards heaven, and cry with a loud voice, saying:

Holy, holy God; we believe that thou art God, and we believe that thou art holy, and that thou wast a spirit, and that thou art a spirit, and that thou wilt be a spirit forever.

Holy God, we believe that thou hast separated us from our brethren; and we do not believe in the tradition of our brethren, which was handed down to them by the childishness of their fathers; but we believe that thou hast elected us to be thy holy children; and also thou hast made it known unto us that there shall be no Christ.

But thou art the same yesterday, today, and forever; and thou hast elected us that we shall be saved, whilst all around us are elected to be cast by thy wrath down to hell; for the which holiness, O God, we thank thee; and we also thank thee that thou hast elected us, that we may not be led away after the foolish traditions of our brethren, which doth bind them down to a belief of Christ, which doth lead their hearts to wander far from thee, our God.

18 En verder dank ons U, o God, dat ons 'n uitverkore en 'n heilige volk is. Amen.

19 Nou het dit gebeur dat nadat Alma en sy broers en sy seuns hierdie gebede gehoor het, was hulle boma-te verbaas.

20 Want kyk, elke mens het opgegaan en dieselfde ge-bede gedoen.

21 Nou, die plek is deur hulle Rameüptom genoem, wat, as dit vertaal word, die heilige platform is.

22 Nou, van hierdie platform af het hulle gedoen, el-ke mens, dieselfde gebed aan God, en hul God ge-dank dat hulle deur Hom uitverkies is, en dat Hy hul-le nie weggelei het agter die oorleweringe van hulle broers aan nie, en dat hulle harte nie weggesteel was om te glo in dinge wat moes kom, waarvan hulle niks geweet het nie.

23 Nou, nadat die mense almal op hierdie wyse hulle dank betuig het, het hulle teruggekeer na hul huise, en nooit weer van hulle God gespreek totdat hulle weer by die heilige platform versamel het nie, om dank te betuig volgens hulle wyse.

24 Nou toe Alma dit sien, was sy hart bedroef; want hy het gesien dat hulle 'n goddelose en wederstrewi-ge volk was; ja, hy het gesien dat hulle harte gerig was op goud, en op silwer, en op alle soorte mooi dinge.

25 Ja, en hy het ook gesien dat hulle harte verhewe was tot groot roem, in hulle hoogmoed.

26 En hy het sy stem verhef tot die hemel, en uitge-roep, en gesê: O, hoe lank, o Here, sal U toelaat dat u diensknegte hier benede sal woon in die vlees, om sulke groot boosheid te aanskou onder die kinders van mense?

27 Kyk, o God, hulle roep tot U, en tog is hulle harte opgeneem deur hulle hoogmoed. Kyk, o God, hulle roep tot U met hulle monde, terwyl hulle opgeblase is, en wel tot verwaandheid toe, met die ydele dinge van die wêreld.

28 Kyk, o my God, hulle kosbare kleding, en hulle ringetjies, en hulle armbande, en hulle ornamente van goud, en al hulle kosbare dinge waarmee hulle versier is; en kyk, hulle harte is op hulle gesteld, en tog roep hulle tot U en sê—Ons dank U, o God, want ons is 'n uitverkore volk vir U, terwyl andere sal ver-gaan.

And again we thank thee, O God, that we are a chosen and a holy people. Amen.

Now it came to pass that after Alma and his brethren and his sons had heard these prayers, they were astonished beyond all measure.

For behold, every man did go forth and offer up these same prayers.

Now the place was called by them Rameumptom, which, being interpreted, is the holy stand.

Now, from this stand they did offer up, every man, the selfsame prayer unto God, thanking their God that they were chosen of him, and that he did not lead them away after the tradition of their brethren, and that their hearts were not stolen away to believe in things to come, which they knew nothing about.

Now, after the people had all offered up thanks after this manner, they returned to their homes, never speaking of their God again until they had as-ssembled themselves together again to the holy stand, to offer up thanks after their manner.

Now when Alma saw this his heart was grieved; for he saw that they were a wicked and a perverse people; yea, he saw that their hearts were set upon gold, and upon silver, and upon all manner of fine goods.

Yea, and he also saw that their hearts were lifted up unto great boasting, in their pride.

And he lifted up his voice to heaven, and cried, saying: O, how long, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that thy servants shall dwell here below in the flesh, to be-hold such gross wickedness among the children of men?

Behold, O God, they cry unto thee, and yet their hearts are swallowed up in their pride. Behold, O God, they cry unto thee with their mouths, while they are puffed up, even to greatness, with the vain things of the world.

Behold, O my God, their costly apparel, and their ringlets, and their bracelets, and their ornaments of gold, and all their precious things which they are or-namented with; and behold, their hearts are set upon them, and yet they cry unto thee and say—We thank thee, O God, for we are a chosen people unto thee, while others shall perish.

29 Ja, en hulle sê dat U dit aan hulle bekend gemaak het dat daar geen Christus sal wees nie.

30 O Here God, hoe lank sal U toelaat dat sulke boosheid en ontrouheid onder hierdie volk sal wees? O Here, sal U my krag gee, sodat ek my swakhede mag verduur. Want ek is swak, en sulke boosheid onder hierdie volk pynig my siel.

31 O Here, my hart is uitermate bedroef; sal U my siel vertroos in Christus. O Here, sal U aan my gun dat ek krag mag hê, dat ek hierdie verdrukkinge met geduld sal verduur wat oor my sal kom, vanweë die ongeregtigheid van hierdie volk.

32 O Here, sal U my siel vertroos, en aan my welslae gee, en ook my medearbeiders, wat by my is—ja, Ammon, en Aäron, en Omner, en ook Amulek en Zeesrom, en ook my twee seuns—ja, en wel al hierdie sal U vertroos, o Here. Ja, sal U hulle siele vertroos in Christus.

33 Sal U aan hulle gun, dat hulle krag mag hê, dat hulle hul verdrukkinge mag verduur wat oor hulle sal kom vanweë die ongeregtighede van hierdie volk.

34 O Here, sal U aan ons gee dat ons welslae mag hê om hulle weer na U te bring in Christus.

35 Kyk, o Here, hulle siele is kosbaar, en baie van hulle is ons broers; daarom, gee aan ons, o Here, krag en wysheid dat ons hierdie, ons broers, weer na U mag bring.

36 Nou het dit gebeur dat toe Alma hierdie woorde gesê het, dat hy sy hande geplaas het op al diegene wat by hom was. En kyk, toe hy sy hande op hulle geplaas het, is hulle vervul met die Heilige Gees.

37 En daarna het hulle hulself van mekaar geskei, die een van die ander, en hulle was nie besorg oor wat hulle sou eet, of wat hulle sou drink, of wat hulle sou aantrek nie.

38 En die Here het vir hulle voorsien sodat hulle nie sou honger ly, nóg dors word; ja, en Hy het ook krag vir hulle gegee, sodat hulle geen soort verdrukking sou ly nie, behalwe as dit verswelg is in die vreugde van Christus. Nou dit was volgens die gebed van Alma; en dit omdat hy in geloof gebid het.

Yea, and they say that thou hast made it known unto them that there shall be no Christ.

O Lord God, how long wilt thou suffer that such wickedness and infidelity shall be among this people? O Lord, wilt thou give me strength, that I may bear with mine infirmities. For I am infirm, and such wickedness among this people doth pain my soul.

O Lord, my heart is exceedingly sorrowful; wilt thou comfort my soul in Christ. O Lord, wilt thou grant unto me that I may have strength, that I may suffer with patience these afflictions which shall come upon me, because of the iniquity of this people.

O Lord, wilt thou comfort my soul, and give unto me success, and also my fellow laborers who are with me—yea, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, and also my two sons—yea, even all these wilt thou comfort, O Lord. Yea, wilt thou comfort their souls in Christ.

Wilt thou grant unto them that they may have strength, that they may bear their afflictions which shall come upon them because of the iniquities of this people.

O Lord, wilt thou grant unto us that we may have success in bringing them again unto thee in Christ.

Behold, O Lord, their souls are precious, and many of them are our brethren; therefore, give unto us, O Lord, power and wisdom that we may bring these, our brethren, again unto thee.

Now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words, that he clapped his hands upon all them who were with him. And behold, as he clapped his hands upon them, they were filled with the Holy Spirit.

And after that they did separate themselves one from another, taking no thought for themselves what they should eat, or what they should drink, or what they should put on.

And the Lord provided for them that they should hunger not, neither should they thirst; yea, and he also gave them strength, that they should suffer no manner of afflictions, save it were swallowed up in the joy of Christ. Now this was according to the prayer of Alma; and this because he prayed in faith.

Alma 32

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat hulle uitgegaan het, en begin het om die woord van God te preek aan die volk, en hulle het in hulle sinagoges ingegaan, en in hulle huise; ja, en hulle het selfs die woord gepreek in hulle strate.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat na baie bearbeiding onder hulle, het hulle begin om welslae te behaal onder die arm klas van mense; want kyk, hulle is uitgewerp uit die sinagoges vanweë die ruheid van hulle klere—
- 3 Daarom is hulle nie toegelaat om hulle sinagoges binne te gaan om God te aanbid nie, omdat hulle as vieslik beskou is; daarom was hulle arm; ja, hulle is beskou as droes deur hulle broers; daarom was hulle arm wat die dinge van die wêreld betref; en hulle was ook nederig van hart.
- 4 Nou, terwyl Alma die volk geleer en met hulle gespreek het op die heuwel Onida, het daar 'n groot skare na hom gekom, wat diesulkes was waarvan ons gespreek het, wat nederig van hart was, vanweë hulle armoede betreffende die dinge van die wêreld.
- 5 En hulle het na Alma gekom; en die een wat die vernaamste onder hulle was het aan hom gesê: Kyk, wat moet hierdie, my broers doen, want hulle word verag deur alle mense vanweë hulle armoede, ja, en meer in besonder deur ons priesters; want hulle het ons uit ons sinagoges uitgewerp waaraan ons so hard gewerk het om te bou met ons eie hande; en hulle het ons uitgewerp vanweë ons uitermate armoede; en ons het geen plek om ons God te aanbid nie; en kyk, wat sal ons doen?
- 6 En nou, toe Alma dit hoor, het hy omgedraai, met sy aangesig direk na hom gewend, en hy het met groot blydschap aanskou; want hy het gesien dat hulle verdrukkinge hulle waarlik verootmoedig het, en dat hulle voorbereid was om die woord aan te hoor.
- 7 Daarom het hy niks meer aan die ander skare gesê nie, maar hy het sy hand uitgestrek en diegene toegeroep wat hy gesien het, wat waarlik bekeer was, en aan hulle gesê:
- 8 Ek sien dat julle nederig van hart is; en as dit so is, geseënd is julle.

Alma 32

And it came to pass that they did go forth, and began to preach the word of God unto the people, entering into their synagogues, and into their houses; yea, and even they did preach the word in their streets.

And it came to pass that after much labor among them, they began to have success among the poor class of people; for behold, they were cast out of the synagogues because of the coarseness of their apparel—

Therefore they were not permitted to enter into their synagogues to worship God, being esteemed as filthiness; therefore they were poor; yea, they were esteemed by their brethren as dross; therefore they were poor as to things of the world; and also they were poor in heart.

Now, as Alma was teaching and speaking unto the people upon the hill Onidah, there came a great multitude unto him, who were those of whom we have been speaking, of whom were poor in heart, because of their poverty as to the things of the world.

And they came unto Alma; and the one who was the foremost among them said unto him: Behold, what shall these my brethren do, for they are despised of all men because of their poverty, yea, and more especially by our priests; for they have cast us out of our synagogues which we have labored abundantly to build with our own hands; and they have cast us out because of our exceeding poverty; and we have no place to worship our God; and behold, what shall we do?

And now when Alma heard this, he turned him about, his face immediately towards them, and he beheld with great joy; for he beheld that their afflictions had truly humbled them, and that they were in a preparation to hear the word.

Therefore he did say no more to the other multitude; but he stretched forth his hand, and cried unto those whom he beheld, who were truly penitent, and said unto them:

I behold that ye are lowly in heart; and if so, blessed are ye.

- 9 Kyk, julle broer het gesê, Wat sal ons doen?—want ons is uitgewerp uit ons sinagoges, sodat ons nie ons God kan aanbid nie.
- 10 Kyk, ek sê vir julle, veronderstel julle dat julle God nie kan aanbid nie, behalwe in julle sinagoges?
- 11 En bowendien wil ek vra, veronderstel julle dat julle vir God nie mag aanbid nie, behalwe eenkeer ’n week?
- 12 Ek sê vir julle, dit is goed dat julle uitgewerp is uit jul sinagoges, sodat julle nederig mag wees, en sodat julle wysheid mag leer; want dit is nodig dat julle wysheid moet leer; want dit is omdat julle uitgewerp is, dat julle verag word deur julle broers vanweë julle uitermate armoede, dat julle gebring word na ’n nederigheid van hart; want julle word noodwendig gebring om nederig te wees.
- 13 En nou, omdat julle gedwing is om nederig te wees, geseënd is julle; want ’n mens soms, as hy gedwing word om nederig te wees, soek bekering; en nou waarlik, wie ook al bekeer, sal barmhartigheid vind; en hy wat barmhartigheid vind en volhard tot die einde toe, sal gered word.
- 14 En nou, soos ek aan julle gesê het, dat omdat julle gedwing is om nederig te wees, is julle geseënd, veronderstel julle nie dat hulle meer geseënd is wat hulleself waarlik verootmoedig vanweë die woord nie?
- 15 Ja, hy wat homself waarlik verootmoedig, en bekeer van sy sondes, en volhard tot die einde toe, sal geseën word—ja, baie meer geseënd as hulle wat gedwing word om nederig te wees vanweë hulle uitermatige armoede.
- 16 Daarom, geseënd is hulle wat hulleself verootmoedig sonder om gedwing te word om nederig te wees; of eerder, met ander woorde, geseënd is hy wat glo in die woord van God, en gedoop word sonder hardnekkigheid van hart, ja, sonder om gebring te word om die woord te ken, of selfs gedwing te word om dit te ken, voordat hulle sal glo.
- 17 Ja, daar is baie wat sê: As u aan ons ’n teken toon uit die hemel, dan sal ons vir seker weet; dan sal ons glo.
- 18 Nou vra ek, is dit geloof? Kyk, ek sê vir julle, Nee; want as ’n mens iets weet, het hy nie rede om te glo nie, want hy weet dit.

Behold thy brother hath said, What shall we do?—for we are cast out of our synagogues, that we cannot worship our God.

Behold I say unto you, do ye suppose that ye cannot worship God save it be in your synagogues only?

And moreover, I would ask, do ye suppose that ye must not worship God only once in a week?

I say unto you, it is well that ye are cast out of your synagogues, that ye may be humble, and that ye may learn wisdom; for it is necessary that ye should learn wisdom; for it is because that ye are cast out, that ye are despised of your brethren because of your exceeding poverty, that ye are brought to a lowliness of heart; for ye are necessarily brought to be humble.

And now, because ye are compelled to be humble blessed are ye; for a man sometimes, if he is compelled to be humble, seeketh repentance; and now surely, whosoever repenteth shall find mercy; and he that findeth mercy and endureth to the end the same shall be saved.

And now, as I said unto you, that because ye were compelled to be humble ye were blessed, do ye not suppose that they are more blessed who truly humble themselves because of the word?

Yea, he that truly humbleth himself, and repenteth of his sins, and endureth to the end, the same shall be blessed—yea, much more blessed than they who are compelled to be humble because of their exceeding poverty.

Therefore, blessed are they who humble themselves without being compelled to be humble; or rather, in other words, blessed is he that believeth in the word of God, and is baptized without stubbornness of heart, yea, without being brought to know the word, or even compelled to know, before they will believe.

Yea, there are many who do say: If thou wilt show unto us a sign from heaven, then we shall know of a surety; then we shall believe.

Now I ask, is this faith? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for if a man knoweth a thing he hath no cause to believe, for he knoweth it.

19 En nou, hoeveel te meer is hy vervloek wat die wil van God ken en dit nie doen nie, as hy wat net glo, of net rede het om te glo, en in oortreding verval?

20 Nou oor hierdie ding moet julle oordeel. Kyk, ek sê vir julle, dat dit aan die een kant is net soos aan die ander; en dit sal wees aan elke mens volgens sy werke.

21 En nou soos ek gesê het aangaande geloof—geloof is nie om 'n volmaakte kennis van dinge te hê nie; daarom, as julle geloof het, hoop julle op dinge wat nie gesien word nie, wat waar is.

22 En nou, kyk, ek sê vir julle, en ek wil hê dat julle moet onthou, dat God barmhartig is teenoor almal wat in sy Naam glo; daarom, Hy begeer in die eerste plek dat julle moet glo, ja, en naamlik in sy woord.

23 En nou, Hy deel sy woord mee deur engele aan die mens, ja, nie alleen mans nie, maar ook vroue. Nou, dit is nie al nie; aan klein kindertjies word die woord baie kere gegee, wat die wyses en die geleerdes beskaam.

24 En nou, my geliefde broers, omdat julle begeer het om vir my te vra wat julle moet doen, omdat julle gekwel en uitgewerp word—nou begeer ek nie dat julle moet veronderstel dat ek bedoel om julle te oordeel alleen volgens dit wat waar is nie—

25 Want ek bedoel nie dat almal van julle gedwing is om julleself te verootmoedig nie; want ek glo waarlik dat daar sommiges onder julle is wat hulleself sal verootmoedig, laat hulle wees in welke omstandighede hulle ook al mag wees.

26 Nou, soos ek gesê het aangaande geloof—dat dit nie 'n volmaakte kennis was nie—net so is dit met my woorde. Julle kan nie aanvanklik van hulle sekerheid weet nie, tot volmaaktheid, net so min as wat geloof 'n volmaakte kennis is.

27 Maar kyk, as julle sal wakker word en julle vermoëns opwek, en wel tot 'n proefneming met my woorde, en 'n greintjie geloof beoefen, ja, as julle selfs niks meer kan as net begeer om te glo nie, laat hierdie begeerte in julle werk, totdat julle glo op só 'n wyse dat julle plek kan gee vir 'n gedeelte van my woorde.

And now, how much more cursed is he that knoweth the will of God and doeth it not, than he that only believeth, or only hath cause to believe, and falleth into transgression?

Now of this thing ye must judge. Behold, I say unto you, that it is on the one hand even as it is on the other; and it shall be unto every man according to his work.

And now as I said concerning faith—faith is not to have a perfect knowledge of things; therefore if ye have faith ye hope for things which are not seen, which are true.

And now, behold, I say unto you, and I would that ye should remember, that God is merciful unto all who believe on his name; therefore he desireth, in the first place, that ye should believe, yea, even on his word.

And now, he imparteth his word by angels unto men, yea, not only men but women also. Now this is not all; little children do have words given unto them many times, which confound the wise and the learned.

And now, my beloved brethren, as ye have desired to know of me what ye shall do because ye are afflicted and cast out—now I do not desire that ye should suppose that I mean to judge you only according to that which is true—

For I do not mean that ye all of you have been compelled to humble yourselves; for I verily believe that there are some among you who would humble themselves, let them be in whatsoever circumstances they might.

Now, as I said concerning faith—that it was not a perfect knowledge—even so it is with my words. Ye cannot know of their surety at first, unto perfection, any more than faith is a perfect knowledge.

But behold, if ye will awake and arouse your faculties, even to an experiment upon my words, and exercise a particle of faith, yea, even if ye can no more than desire to believe, let this desire work in you, even until ye believe in a manner that ye can give place for a portion of my words.

28 Nou, ons sal die woord vergelyk met 'n saad. Nou, as julle plek gee dat 'n saad geplant mag word in julle harte, kyk, as dit 'n ware saad is, of 'n goeie saad, as julle dit nie uitwerp deur julle ongeloof nie, sodat julle die Gees van die Here sal weerstaan, kyk, dit sal begin swel in julle boesems; en wanneer julle hierdie bewegings van swelling voel, sal julle begin om vir julleself te sê—Dit moet noodwendig 'n goeie saad wees, of dat die woord goed is, want dit begin om my siel te vergroot; ja, dit begin my verstand te verlig, ja, dit begin om heerlik te wees vir my.

29 Nou kyk, sal dit nie julle geloof vermeerder nie? Ek sê vir julle, Ja; nogtans het dit nie opgegroeï tot 'n volmaakte kennis nie.

30 Maar kyk, soos die saad swel, en uitloop, en begin te groei, dan moet julle noodwendig sê dat die saad goed is; want kyk dit swel, en loop uit, en begin te groei. En nou, kyk, sal dit nie julle geloof versterk nie? Ja, dit sal julle geloof versterk: want julle sal sê ek weet dat dit 'n goeie saad is; want kyk, dit loop uit en begin om te groei.

31 En nou kyk, is julle seker dat dit 'n goeie saad is? Ek sê vir julle, Ja; want elke saad bring volgens sy eie gelykenis voort.

32 Daarom, as 'n saad groei is dit goed, maar as dit nie groei nie, kyk, dan is dit nie goed nie, daarom word dit weggewerp.

33 En nou, kyk, omdat julle die proefneming probeer het, en die saad geplant het, en dit swel en loop uit, en begin om te groei, moet julle noodwendig weet dat die saad goed is.

34 En nou kyk, is julle kennis volmaak? Ja, julle kennis is volmaak in daardie ding, en julle geloof is rustend; en dit is omdat julle weet, want julle weet dat die woord julle siele laat uitswel het, en julle weet ook dat dit uitgeloop het, dat julle verstand begin om verlig te wees, en julle verstand begin om te groei.

35 O dan, is dit nie werklik nie? Ek sê vir julle, Ja, want dit is lig; en wat ook al lig is, is goed, want dit is waarneembaar, daarom moet julle weet dat dit goed is; en nou kyk, nadat julle hierdie lig gesmaak het, is julle kennis volmaak?

Now, we will compare the word unto a seed. Now, if ye give place, that a seed may be planted in your heart, behold, if it be a true seed, or a good seed, if ye do not cast it out by your unbelief, that ye will resist the Spirit of the Lord, behold, it will begin to swell within your breasts; and when you feel these swelling motions, ye will begin to say within yourselves—It must needs be that this is a good seed, or that the word is good, for it beginneth to enlarge my soul; yea, it beginneth to enlighten my understanding, yea, it beginneth to be delicious to me.

Now behold, would not this increase your faith? I say unto you, Yea; nevertheless it hath not grown up to a perfect knowledge.

But behold, as the seed swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, then you must needs say that the seed is good; for behold it swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow. And now, behold, will not this strengthen your faith? Yea, it will strengthen your faith: for ye will say I know that this is a good seed; for behold it sprouteth and beginneth to grow.

And now, behold, are ye sure that this is a good seed? I say unto you, Yea; for every seed bringeth forth unto its own likeness.

Therefore, if a seed groweth it is good, but if it groweth not, behold it is not good, therefore it is cast away.

And now, behold, because ye have tried the experiment, and planted the seed, and it swelleth and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, ye must needs know that the seed is good.

And now, behold, is your knowledge perfect? Yea, your knowledge is perfect in that thing, and your faith is dormant; and this because you know, for ye know that the word hath swelled your souls, and ye also know that it hath sprouted up, that your understanding doth begin to be enlightened, and your mind doth begin to expand.

O then, is not this real? I say unto you, Yea, because it is light; and whatsoever is light, is good, because it is discernible, therefore ye must know that it is good; and now behold, after ye have tasted this light is your knowledge perfect?

36 Kyk ek sê vir julle, Nee; nóg moet julle jul geloof opsy lê, want julle het net julle geloof beoefen om die saad te plant sodat julle die proefneming mag probeer om te weet of die saad goed was.

37 En kyk, soos die boom begin om te groei, sal julle sê: Laat ons dit versorg met groot sorgvuldigheid sodat dit mag wortelskiet, dat dit kan opgroei, en vrugte voortbring vir ons. En nou kyk, as julle dit versorg met groot sorgvuldigheid, sal dit wortelskiet, en opgroei en vrugte voortbring.

38 Maar as julle die boom verwaarloos, en geen aandag gee aan sy versorging nie, kyk, dan sal dit nie wortelskiet nie; en wanneer die hitte van die son kom en dit verskroei, omdat dit geen wortel het nie, verdroog dit, en julle trek dit uit en gooi dit weg.

39 Nou, dit is nie omdat die saad nie goed was nie, nóg is dit omdat die vrugte daarvan nie begeerlik sou wees nie; maar dit is omdat julle grond onvrugbaar is, en julle wil nie die boom versorg nie, daarom kan julle nie die vrugte daarvan hê nie.

40 En dus, as julle nie die woord wil versorg nie, en uitsien met 'n oog van geloof na die vrugte daarvan, kan julle nooit van die vrugte pluk van die boom van die lewe nie.

41 Maar as julle die woord sal versorg, ja versorg die boom wanneer dit begin groei, deur julle geloof met groot ywer, en met geduld, en uitsien na die vrugte daarvan, sal dit wortelskiet; en kyk dit sal 'n boom wees wat opskiet tot die ewigdurende lewe.

42 En as gevolg van julle ywer, en julle geloof en julle geduld met die woord in die versorging daarvan, sodat dit kan wortelskiet in julle, kyk, weldra sal julle die vrugte daarvan pluk, wat uiters kosbaar is, wat soet is bo alles wat soet is, en wat wit is bo alles wat wit is, ja, en suiwer bo alles wat suiwer is; en julle sal feesvier op hierdie vrug totdat julle versadig is, sodat julle nie meer honger nie, nóg sal julle dors.

43 Dan, my broers, sal julle die beloning van julle geloof maai, en julle ywer, en geduld, en lankmoedigheid, terwyl julle wag vir die boom om vir julle vrugte voort te bring.

Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither must ye lay aside your faith, for ye have only exercised your faith to plant the seed that ye might try the experiment to know if the seed was good.

And behold, as the tree beginneth to grow, ye will say: Let us nourish it with great care, that it may get root, that it may grow up, and bring forth fruit unto us. And now behold, if ye nourish it with much care it will get root, and grow up, and bring forth fruit.

But if ye neglect the tree, and take no thought for its nourishment, behold it will not get any root; and when the heat of the sun cometh and scorcheth it, because it hath no root it withers away, and ye pluck it up and cast it out.

Now, this is not because the seed was not good, neither is it because the fruit thereof would not be desirable; but it is because your ground is barren, and ye will not nourish the tree, therefore ye cannot have the fruit thereof.

And thus, if ye will not nourish the word, looking forward with an eye of faith to the fruit thereof, ye can never pluck of the fruit of the tree of life.

But if ye will nourish the word, yea, nourish the tree as it beginneth to grow, by your faith with great diligence, and with patience, looking forward to the fruit thereof, it shall take root; and behold it shall be a tree springing up unto everlasting life.

And because of your diligence and your faith and your patience with the word in nourishing it, that it may take root in you, behold, by and by ye shall pluck the fruit thereof, which is most precious, which is sweet above all that is sweet, and which is white above all that is white, yea, and pure above all that is pure; and ye shall feast upon this fruit even until ye are filled, that ye hunger not, neither shall ye thirst.

Then, my brethren, ye shall reap the rewards of your faith, and your diligence, and patience, and long-suffering, waiting for the tree to bring forth fruit unto you.

Alma 33

- 1 Nou, nadat Alma hierdie woorde gespreek het, het hulle uitgestuur na hom en was begerig om te weet of hulle moes glo in een God, sodat hulle hierdie vrug kon verkry waarvan hy gespreek het, of hoe hulle die saad moes plant, of die woord waarvan hy gespreek het, wat hy gesê het geplant moes word in hulle harte; of op watter wyse hulle moes begin om hul geloof te beoefen.
- 2 En Alma het aan hulle gesê: Kyk, julle het gesê dat julle nie julle God kon aanbid nie omdat julle uitgewerp is uit julle sinagoges. Maar kyk, ek sê vir julle, as julle veronderstel dat julle God nie kan aanbid nie, dwaal julle grootliks, en julle behoort die skrif-ture te ondersoek; as julle veronderstel dat hulle vir julle dit geleer het, verstaan julle hulle nie.
- 3 Onthou julle dat julle geles het wat Zenos, die profeet van ouds, gesê het aangaande gebed of aanbidding?
- 4 Want hy het gesê: U is barmhartig, o God, want U het my gebed gehoor, en selfs toe ek in die wildernis was; ja, U was barmhartig toe ek gebid het vir diegene wat my vyande was, en U het hulle na my toe gekeer.
- 5 Ja, o God, en U was barmhartig jeens my toe ek tot U geroep het in my landery; toe ek tot U geroep het in my gebed, en U het my gehoor.
- 6 En verder, o God, toe ek teruggekeer het na my huis, het U my gehoor in my gebed.
- 7 En toe ek na my binnekamer gegaan het, o Here, en tot U gebid het, het U my gehoor.
- 8 Ja, U is barmhartig jeens u kinders wanneer hulle roep tot U, om deur U gehoor te word en nie deur mense nie, en U sal hulle hoor.
- 9 Ja, o God, U was barmhartig jeens my, en het my geroep gehoor te midde van u gemeentes.
- 10 Ja, en U het my ook gehoor toe ek uitgewerp was en verag is deur my vyande; ja, U het my geroep gehoor, en was kwaad vir my vyande, en U het hulle besoek in u toorn met spoedige vernietiging.

Alma 33

Now after Alma had spoken these words, they sent forth unto him desiring to know whether they should believe in one God, that they might obtain this fruit of which he had spoken, or how they should plant the seed, or the word of which he had spoken, which he said must be planted in their hearts; or in what manner they should begin to exercise their faith.

And Alma said unto them: Behold, ye have said that ye could not worship your God because ye are cast out of your synagogues. But behold, I say unto you, if ye suppose that ye cannot worship God, ye do greatly err, and ye ought to search the scriptures; if ye suppose that they have taught you this, ye do not understand them.

Do ye remember to have read what Zenos, the prophet of old, has said concerning prayer or worship?

For he said: Thou art merciful, O God, for thou hast heard my prayer, even when I was in the wilder-ness; yea, thou wast merciful when I prayed concerning those who were mine enemies, and thou didst turn them to me.

Yea, O God, and thou wast merciful unto me when I did cry unto thee in my field; when I did cry unto thee in my prayer, and thou didst hear me.

And again, O God, when I did turn to my house thou didst hear me in my prayer.

And when I did turn unto my closet, O Lord, and prayed unto thee, thou didst hear me.

Yea, thou art merciful unto thy children when they cry unto thee, to be heard of thee and not of men, and thou wilt hear them.

Yea, O God, thou hast been merciful unto me, and heard my cries in the midst of thy congregations.

Yea, and thou hast also heard me when I have been cast out and have been despised by mine ene-mies; yea, thou didst hear my cries, and wast angry with mine enemies, and thou didst visit them in thine anger with speedy destruction.

11 En U het my gehoor vanweë my verdrukkinge en my opregtheid; en dit is vanweë u Seun dat U so barmhartig was jeens my, daarom sal ek tot U roep in al my verdrukkinge, want in U is my vreugde; want U het u oordele afgewend van my af, vanweë u Seun.

12 En nou het Alma aan hulle gesê: Glo julle daardie skrifture wat geskryf is deur hulle van ouds?

13 Kyk, as julle glo, moet julle glo wat Zenos gesê het; want kyk, hy het gesê: U het u oordele afgewend vanweë u Seun.

14 Nou kyk, my broers, ek wil vra of julle die skrifture gelees het? As julle het, hoe kan julle nie in die Seun van God glo nie?

15 Want dit is nie geskryf dat Zenos alleen gespreek het van hierdie dinge nie, maar Zenok het ook gespreek van hierdie dinge—

16 Want kyk, hy het gesê: U is vertoornd, o Here, met hierdie volk, omdat hulle nie u barmhartighede wil begryp wat U toebedeel het aan hulle vanweë u Seun nie.

17 En nou, my broers, julle sien dat 'n tweede profeet van ouds getuig het van die Seun van God, en omdat die volk nie sy woorde wou verstaan nie, het hulle hom gestenig tot die dood toe.

18 Maar kyk, dit is nie al nie; hierdie is nie die enigstes wat gespreek het aangaande die Seun van God nie.

19 Kyk, van Hom is gespreek deur Moses; ja, en kyk 'n voorafskaduwing is in die wildernis opgehef, sodat wie ook al wat daarna kyk, mag lewe. En baie het gekyk en gelewe.

20 Maar min het die betekenis van daardie dinge verstaan, en dit vanweë die hardheid van hulle harte. Maar daar was baie wat só verhard was dat hulle nie wou kyk nie, daarom het hulle omgekom. Nou, die rede waarom hulle nie wou kyk nie, is omdat hulle nie geglo het dat dit hulle sou genees nie.

21 O my broers, as julle genees kon word deur bloot met julle oë rond te kyk sodat julle genees mag word, sou julle nie gou kyk nie, of sou julle eerder julle harte verhard in ongeloof, en traag wees dat julle nie met julle oë sal rondkyk nie, sodat julle mag omkom?

And thou didst hear me because of mine afflictions and my sincerity; and it is because of thy Son that thou hast been thus merciful unto me, therefore I will cry unto thee in all mine afflictions, for in thee is my joy; for thou hast turned thy judgments away from me, because of thy Son.

And now Alma said unto them: Do ye believe those scriptures which have been written by them of old?

Behold, if ye do, ye must believe what Zenos said; for, behold he said: Thou hast turned away thy judgments because of thy Son.

Now behold, my brethren, I would ask if ye have read the scriptures? If ye have, how can ye disbelieve on the Son of God?

For it is not written that Zenos alone spake of these things, but Zenock also spake of these things—

For behold, he said: Thou art angry, O Lord, with this people, because they will not understand thy mercies which thou hast bestowed upon them because of thy Son.

And now, my brethren, ye see that a second prophet of old has testified of the Son of God, and because the people would not understand his words they stoned him to death.

But behold, this is not all; these are not the only ones who have spoken concerning the Son of God.

Behold, he was spoken of by Moses; yea, and behold a type was raised up in the wilderness, that whosoever would look upon it might live. And many did look and live.

But few understood the meaning of those things, and this because of the hardness of their hearts. But there were many who were so hardened that they would not look, therefore they perished. Now the reason they would not look is because they did not believe that it would heal them.

O my brethren, if ye could be healed by merely casting about your eyes that ye might be healed, would ye not behold quickly, or would ye rather harden your hearts in unbelief, and be slothful, that ye would not cast about your eyes, that ye might perish?

22 As dit so is, sal ellende oor julle kom; maar as dit nie so is nie, kyk dan rond met julle oë en begin om te glo in die Seun van God, dat Hy sal kom om sy volk te verlos, en dat Hy sal ly en sterwe, om versoening te doen vir hulle sondes; en dat Hy weer sal opstaan uit die dood, wat die opstanding sal teweegbring dat alle mense voor Hom sal staan om geoordeel te word op die laaste en oordeelsdag, volgens hulle werke.

23 En nou, my broers, ek wil hê dat julle hierdie woord in julle harte sal plant, en wanneer dit begin om te swel, versorg dit net so deur julle geloof. En kyk, dit sal 'n boom word, wat opskiet in julle tot die ewigdurende lewe. En dan mag God aan julle gun dat julle laste lig mag wees, deur die vreugde van sy Seun. En inderdaad kan julle dit alles doen as julle wil. Amen.

If so, wo shall come upon you; but if not so, then cast about your eyes and begin to believe in the Son of God, that he will come to redeem his people, and that he shall suffer and die to atone for their sins; and that he shall rise again from the dead, which shall bring to pass the resurrection, that all men shall stand before him, to be judged at the last and judgment day, according to their works.

And now, my brethren, I desire that ye shall plant this word in your hearts, and as it beginneth to swell even so nourish it by your faith. And behold, it will become a tree, springing up in you unto everlasting life. And then may God grant unto you that your burdens may be light, through the joy of his Son. And even all this can ye do if ye will. Amen.

Alma 34

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat nadat Alma hierdie woorde met hulle gespreek het, het hy op die grond gaan sit, en Amulek het opgestaan en hulle begin leer, en gesê:
- 2 My broers, ek dink dat dit onmoontlik is dat julle onkundig sal wees van die dinge wat gespreek is aangaande die koms van Christus, wat deur ons geleer word dat Hy die Seun van God is; ja, ek weet dat hierdie dinge oorvloedig aan julle geleer is voor julle afval van ons.
- 3 En omdat julle wou hê dat my geliefde broer aan julle moet bekend maak wat julle moet doen, vanweë julle verdrukkinge; en hy het ietwat met julle gespreek om julle gedagtes voor te berei; ja, en hy het julle vermaan tot geloof en geduld—
- 4 Ja, en wel dat julle soveel geloof moet hê om die woord te plant in julle harte, sodat julle die goedheid daarvan kan beproef.
- 5 En ons het gesien dat die groot vraag wat in julle gedagtes is, is of die woord in die Seun van God is, en of daar geen Christus sal wees nie.
- 6 En julle het ook gesien dat my broer aan julle bewys het, in baie gevalle, dat die woord in Christus tot heil is.
- 7 My broer het ook die woorde van Zenos aangehaal, dat verlossing kom deur die Seun van God, en ook die woorde van Zenok; en ook het hy verwys na Moses, om te bewys dat hierdie dinge waar is.
- 8 En nou, kyk, ek sal aan julle getuig uit my eie dat hierdie dinge waar is. Kyk, ek sê vir julle, dat ek weet dat Christus onder die kinders van mense sal kom, om die oortredings van sy volk op Hom te neem, en dat Hy versoening vir die sondes van die wêreld sal doen; want die Here God het dit gespreek.
- 9 Want dit is noodsaaklik dat 'n versoening gedoen moet word; want volgens die groot plan van die Ewige God moet daar 'n versoening gedoen word, of anders moet die hele mensdom onvermydelik omkom; ja, almal is verhard ja, almal is gevalle en is verlore, en moet omkom tensy dit is deur die versoening wat noodsaaklik is om gedoen te word.

Alma 34

And now it came to pass that after Alma had spoken these words unto them he sat down upon the ground, and Amulek arose and began to teach them, saying:

My brethren, I think that it is impossible that ye should be ignorant of the things which have been spoken concerning the coming of Christ, who is taught by us to be the Son of God; yea, I know that these things were taught unto you bountifully before your dissension from among us.

And as ye have desired of my beloved brother that he should make known unto you what ye should do, because of your afflictions; and he hath spoken somewhat unto you to prepare your minds; yea, and he hath exhorted you unto faith and to patience—

Yea, even that ye would have so much faith as even to plant the word in your hearts, that ye may try the experiment of its goodness.

And we have beheld that the great question which is in your minds is whether the word be in the Son of God, or whether there shall be no Christ.

And ye also beheld that my brother has proved unto you, in many instances, that the word is in Christ unto salvation.

My brother has called upon the words of Zenos, that redemption cometh through the Son of God, and also upon the words of Zenock; and also he has appealed unto Moses, to prove that these things are true.

And now, behold, I will testify unto you of myself that these things are true. Behold, I say unto you, that I do know that Christ shall come among the children of men, to take upon him the transgressions of his people, and that he shall atone for the sins of the world; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

For it is expedient that an atonement should be made; for according to the great plan of the Eternal God there must be an atonement made, or else all mankind must unavoidably perish; yea, all are hardened; yea, all are fallen and are lost, and must perish except it be through the atonement which it is expedient should be made.

10 Want dit is noodsaaklik dat daar 'n groot en laaste offerande sal wees; ja, nie 'n offerande van 'n mens nie, nóg van 'n dier, nóg van enige soort voël; want dit sal nie 'n menslike offerande wees nie; maar dit moet 'n oneindige en ewige offerande wees.

11 Nou is daar geen mens wat sy eie bloed kan offer wat sal versoen vir die sondes van 'n ander nie. Nou, as 'n man moord pleeg, kyk, sal ons wet, wat regverdig is, die lewe neem van sy broer? Ek sê vir julle, Nee.

12 Maar die wet vereis die lewe van hom wat moord gepleeg het; daarom kan daar niks minder wees as 'n oneindige versoening wat voldoende sal wees vir die sondes van die wêreld nie.

13 Daarom, dit is noodsaaklik dat daar 'n groot en laaste offerande moet wees; en dan sal daar wees, of dit is raadsaam dat daar 'n einde moet wees aan die vergieting van bloed; dan sal die wet van Moses vervul word, ja, dit sal alles vervul word, elke jota en tittel, en niks sal verbygegaan het nie.

14 En kyk, dit is die hele betekenis van die wet, elke gedeelte wat sal dui op daardie groot en laaste offerande; en dat daardie groot en laaste offerande die Seun van God sal wees, ja, oneindig en ewig.

15 En so sal Hy heil bring aan al diegene wat in sy Naam sal glo; en dit is die doel van hierdie laaste offerande, om innerlike ontferming teweeg te bring wat geregtigheid oorweldig, en die middel aan mense bring waardeur hulle geloof mag hê tot bekering.

16 En sodoende kan barmhartigheid die eise van geregtigheid bevredig, en hulle omhels in die arms van veiligheid, terwyl hy wat geen geloof beoefen tot bekering nie, blootgestel word aan die hele wet van die eise van geregtigheid; daarom word slegs vir hom wat geloof het tot bekering die groot en ewige plan van verlossing teweeggebring.

17 Daarom mag God aan julle gun, my broers, dat julle mag begin om jul geloof te beoefen tot bekering, dat julle begin om sy heilige Naam aan te roep, sodat Hy julle barmhartig mag wees;

18 Ja, roep tot Hom om barmhartigheid; want Hy is magtig om te red.

19 Ja, verootmoedig juiself, en volhard in gebed tot Hom.

For it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice; yea, not a sacrifice of man, neither of beast, neither of any manner of fowl; for it shall not be a human sacrifice; but it must be an infinite and eternal sacrifice.

Now there is not any man that can sacrifice his own blood which will atone for the sins of another. Now, if a man murdereth, behold will our law, which is just, take the life of his brother? I say unto you, Nay.

But the law requireth the life of him who hath murdered; therefore there can be nothing which is short of an infinite atonement which will suffice for the sins of the world.

Therefore, it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice, and then shall there be, or it is expedient there should be, a stop to the shedding of blood; then shall the law of Moses be fulfilled; yea, it shall be all fulfilled, every jot and tittle, and none shall have passed away.

And behold, this is the whole meaning of the law, every whit pointing to that great and last sacrifice; and that great and last sacrifice will be the Son of God, yea, infinite and eternal.

And thus he shall bring salvation to all those who shall believe on his name; this being the intent of this last sacrifice, to bring about the bowels of mercy, which overpowereth justice, and bringeth about means unto men that they may have faith unto repentance.

And thus mercy can satisfy the demands of justice, and encircles them in the arms of safety, while he that exercises no faith unto repentance is exposed to the whole law of the demands of justice; therefore only unto him that has faith unto repentance is brought about the great and eternal plan of redemption.

Therefore may God grant unto you, my brethren, that ye may begin to exercise your faith unto repentance, that ye begin to call upon his holy name, that he would have mercy upon you;

Yea, cry unto him for mercy; for he is mighty to save.

Yea, humble yourselves, and continue in prayer unto him.

20 Roep tot Hom wanneer julle in julle landerye is, ja, oor al julle kuddes.

21 Roep tot Hom in julle huise, ja, oor julle hele huishouding, beide soggens, smiddags en saans.

22 Ja, roep tot Hom teen die mag van julle vyande.

23 Ja, roep tot Hom teen die duiwel, wat 'n vyand is van alle regverdigheid.

24 Roep tot Hom oor die oeste van julle landerye, sodat julle voorspoedig mag wees in hulle.

25 Roep oor die kuddes in julle lande dat hulle mag vermeerder.

26 Maar dit is nie al nie; julle moet julle siele uitstort in jul binnekamers, en julle geheime plekke, en in julle wildernis.

27 Ja, en as julle nie roep tot die Here nie, laat julle harte vol wees, uitgestrek in gebed tot Hom gedurigheid vir julle welsyn, en ook vir die welsyn van diegene wat om julle is.

28 En nou kyk, my geliefde broers, ek sê vir julle, moenie veronderstel dat dit al is nie; want nadat julle al hierdie dinge gedoen het, as julle die behoeftiges wegstuur, en die naaktes, en die krankes en die verdruktes nie besoek nie, en nie van julle besittings deel nie, as julle het, aan diegene wat dit nodig het nie—ek sê vir julle, as julle geen van hierdie dinge doen nie, kyk, dan is julle gebed tevergeefs, en baat julle niks nie, en julle is soos huigelaars wat die geloof verloën.

29 Daarom, as julle nie onthou om naasteliefde te bewys nie, is julle soos droes, wat die smelters uitwerp, (aangesien dit van geen waarde is nie), en word vertrap onder die voete van mense.

30 En nou, my broers, ek wil hê dat, nadat julle soveel getuïenisse ontvang het, aangesien die heilige skrifture getuig van hierdie dinge, dat julle na vore moet kom en vrugte tot bekering voortbring.

31 Ja, ek wil hê dat julle na vore moet kom en julle harte nie langer verhard nie; want kyk, nou is die tyd en dag van julle heil; en daarom, as julle sal bekeer en nie julle harte verhard nie, sal die groot plan van verlossing onmiddellik op julle toegepas word.

Cry unto him when ye are in your fields, yea, over all your flocks.

Cry unto him in your houses, yea, over all your household, both morning, mid-day, and evening.

Yea, cry unto him against the power of your enemies.

Yea, cry unto him against the devil, who is an enemy to all righteousness.

Cry unto him over the crops of your fields, that ye may prosper in them.

Cry over the flocks of your fields, that they may increase.

But this is not all; ye must pour out your souls in your closets, and your secret places, and in your wilderness.

Yea, and when you do not cry unto the Lord, let your hearts be full, drawn out in prayer unto him continually for your welfare, and also for the welfare of those who are around you.

And now behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, do not suppose that this is all; for after ye have done all these things, if ye turn away the needy, and the naked, and visit not the sick and afflicted, and impart of your substance, if ye have, to those who stand in need—I say unto you, if ye do not any of these things, behold, your prayer is vain, and availeth you nothing, and ye are as hypocrites who do deny the faith.

Therefore, if ye do not remember to be charitable, ye are as dross, which the refiners do cast out, (it being of no worth) and is trodden under foot of men.

And now, my brethren, I would that, after ye have received so many witnesses, seeing that the holy scriptures testify of these things, ye come forth and bring fruit unto repentance.

Yea, I would that ye would come forth and harden not your hearts any longer; for behold, now is the time and the day of your salvation; and therefore, if ye will repent and harden not your hearts, immediately shall the great plan of redemption be brought about unto you.

- 32 Want kyk, hierdie lewe is die tyd vir mense om voor te berei om God te ontmoet; ja kyk, die dag van hierdie lewe is die dag vir mense om hulle arbeid te verrig.
- 33 En nou, soos ek tevore aan julle gesê het, aangesien julle soveel getuïenisse gehad het, daarom smee ek julle dat julle nie die dag van julle bekering uitstel tot die einde nie; want na hierdie dag van lewe, wat aan ons gegee word om voor te berei vir die ewigheid, kyk, as ons nie ons tyd beter benut terwyl in hierdie lewe nie, dan kom die nag van duisternis waarin daar geen arbeid verrig kan word nie.
- 34 Julle kan nie sê, wanneer julle tot daardie verskriklike krisis gebring word, dat ek sal bekeer, dat ek sal terugkeer na my God nie. Nee, julle kan dit nie sê nie; want daardie selfde gees wat julle liggame beheer op die tyd wanneer julle hierdie lewe uitgaan, daardie selfde gees sal mag hê om julle liggame te beheer in daardie ewige wêreld.
- 35 Want kyk, as julle die dag van julle bekering uitgestel het tot die dood toe, kyk, het julle onderhewig geword aan die gees van die duiwel, en hy seël julle as syne; daarom, die Gees van die Here het van julle onttrek, en het geen plek in julle nie, en die duiwel het alle mag oor julle; en dit is die uiteindelijke toestand van die bese.
- 36 En dit weet ek, omdat die Here gesê het dat Hy nie in onheilige tempels woon nie, maar Hy woon in die harte van die regverdiges; ja, en Hy het ook gesê dat die regverdiges in sy koninkryk sal sit, om nie meer uit te gaan nie; maar hulle kleding sal wit gemaak word deur die bloed van die Lam.
- 37 En nou, my geliefde broers, ek wil hê dat julle hierdie dinge moet onthou, en dat julle jul heil moet uitwerk met vrees voor God, en dat julle nie meer die koms van Christus moet loën nie;
- 38 Dat julle nie langer stry teen die Heilige Gees nie, maar dat julle dit ontvang, en vir julle die Naam van Christus aanneem; dat julle jul verootmoedig tot in die stof, en God aanbid, in watter plek julle ook al mag wees, in gees en in waarheid; en dat julle daaglik in danksegging lewe, vir die baie barmhartigheide en seëninge wat Hy aan julle skenk.

For behold, this life is the time for men to prepare to meet God; yea, behold the day of this life is the day for men to perform their labors.

And now, as I said unto you before, as ye have had so many witnesses, therefore, I beseech of you that ye do not procrastinate the day of your repentance until the end; for after this day of life, which is given us to prepare for eternity, behold, if we do not improve our time while in this life, then cometh the night of darkness wherein there can be no labor performed.

Ye cannot say, when ye are brought to that awful crisis, that I will repent, that I will return to my God. Nay, ye cannot say this; for that same spirit which doth possess your bodies at the time that ye go out of this life, that same spirit will have power to possess your body in that eternal world.

For behold, if ye have procrastinated the day of your repentance even until death, behold, ye have become subjected to the spirit of the devil, and he doth seal you his; therefore, the Spirit of the Lord hath withdrawn from you, and hath no place in you, and the devil hath all power over you; and this is the final state of the wicked.

And this I know, because the Lord hath said he dwelleth not in unholy temples, but in the hearts of the righteous doth he dwell; yea, and he has also said that the righteous shall sit down in his kingdom, to go no more out; but their garments should be made white through the blood of the Lamb.

And now, my beloved brethren, I desire that ye should remember these things, and that ye should work out your salvation with fear before God, and that ye should no more deny the coming of Christ;

That ye contend no more against the Holy Ghost, but that ye receive it, and take upon you the name of Christ; that ye humble yourselves even to the dust, and worship God, in whatsoever place ye may be in, in spirit and in truth; and that ye live in thanksgiving daily, for the many mercies and blessings which he doth bestow upon you.

- 39 Ja, en ek vermaan julle ook, my broers, dat julle gedurigdeur waaksaam in die gebed is, sodat julle nie weggelei mag word deur die versoekinge van die duiwel nie, dat hy julle nie mag oorweldig nie, sodat julle nie sy onderdane mag word op die laaste dag nie; want kyk, hy beloon julle geen goeie ding nie.
- 40 En nou, my geliefde broers, ek wil julle vermaan om geduld te hê, en dat julle allerlei verdrukkinge verdra; dat julle nie diegene beledig wat julle uitwerp vanweë julle uitermatige armoede nie, sodat julle nie sondaars word soos hulle nie;
- 41 Maar dat julle geduld moet hê, en daardie verdrukkinge verdra, met 'n vaste vertrouwe dat julle eendag van al jul verdrukkinge sal rus.

Yea, and I also exhort you, my brethren, that ye be watchful unto prayer continually, that ye may not be led away by the temptations of the devil, that he may not overpower you, that ye may not become his subjects at the last day; for behold, he rewardeth you no good thing.

And now my beloved brethren, I would exhort you to have patience, and that ye bear with all manner of afflictions; that ye do not revile against those who do cast you out because of your exceeding poverty, lest ye become sinners like unto them;

But that ye have patience, and bear with those afflictions, with a firm hope that ye shall one day rest from all your afflictions.

Alma 35

- 1 Nou het dit gebeur dat nadat Amulek hierdie woorde klaar gespreek het, het hulle hulself onttrek aan die skare en oorgekom na die land Jerson.
- 2 Ja, en die res van die broers, nadat hulle die woorde gepreek het aan die Zoramiete, het ook oorgekom na die land Jerson.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat nadat die meer invloedryke gedeelte van die Zoramiete met mekaar beraadslaag het aangaande die woorde wat aan hulle gepreek is, was hulle kwaad vanweë die woord, want dit het hulle bedrog vernietig; daarom wou hulle nie ag slaan op die woorde nie.
- 4 En hulle het gestuur en die hele volk bymekaar gemaak dwarsdeur die hele land, en met hulle beraadslaag aangaande die woorde wat gespreek was.
- 5 Nou het hulle heersers en hulle priesters en hulle leraars nie die mense laat weet aangaande hulle begeertes nie; daarom het hulle in die geheim uitgevind wat die gedagtes van die hele volk was.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat nadat hulle die gedagtes van die hele volk vasgestel het, is diegene wat ten gunste was van die woorde wat gespreek is deur Alma en sy broers, uitgewerp uit die land; en hulle was baie; en hulle het ook na die land Jerson oorgekom.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat Alma en sy broers hulle gedien het.
- 8 Nou was die volk van die Zoramiete vertoornd op die volk van Ammon wat in Jerson was, en die opperheerser van die Zoramiete, omdat hy 'n baie goddelose man was, het na die volk van Ammon oorgestuurd en van hulle verlang dat hulle uit hulle land al diegene uitwerp wat van hulle oorgekom het na hulle land toe.
- 9 En hy het baie dreigemente teen hulle geuiteer. En nou het die volk van Ammon nie hulle woorde gevrees nie; daarom het hulle hul nie uitgewerp nie, maar hulle het al die armes van die Zoramiete wat na hulle oorgekom het ontvang; en hulle het hulle versorg, en hulle geklee, en aan hulle grond gegee as hulle erfenis; en hulle het hul gedien volgens hul behoeftes.

Alma 35

Now it came to pass that after Amulek had made an end of these words, they withdrew themselves from the multitude and came over into the land of Jershon.

Yea, and the rest of the brethren, after they had preached the word unto the Zoramites, also came over into the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that after the more popular part of the Zoramites had consulted together concerning the words which had been preached unto them, they were angry because of the word, for it did destroy their craft; therefore they would not hearken unto the words.

And they sent and gathered together throughout all the land all the people, and consulted with them concerning the words which had been spoken.

Now their rulers and their priests and their teachers did not let the people know concerning their desires; therefore they found out privily the minds of all the people.

And it came to pass that after they had found out the minds of all the people, those who were in favor of the words which had been spoken by Alma and his brethren were cast out of the land; and they were many; and they came over also into the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that Alma and his brethren did minister unto them.

Now the people of the Zoramites were angry with the people of Ammon who were in Jershon, and the chief ruler of the Zoramites, being a very wicked man, sent over unto the people of Ammon desiring them that they should cast out of their land all those who came over from them into their land.

And he breathed out many threatenings against them. And now the people of Ammon did not fear their words; therefore they did not cast them out, but they did receive all the poor of the Zoramites that came over unto them; and they did nourish them, and did clothe them, and did give unto them lands for their inheritance; and they did administer unto them according to their wants.

10 Nou, dit het die Zoramiete opgestook tot toorn teen die volk van Ammon, en hulle het begin vermeng met die Lamaniete en om hulle ook op te stook tot toorn teen hulle.

11 En so het die Zoramiete en die Lamaniete begin om voorbereidsels te tref vir oorlog teen die volk van Ammon, en ook teen die Nefiete.

12 En so het die sewentiende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi geëindig.

13 En die volk van Ammon het vertrek uit die land Jershon, en oorgekom na die land Melek, en het plek gemaak in die land Jershon vir die leërs van die Nefiete, sodat hulle teen die leërs van die Lamaniete en die leërs van die Zoramiete mag veg; en so het 'n oorlog begin tussen die Lamaniete en die Nefiete, in die agtiende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters; en 'n kroniek sal hierna gegee word van hulle oorloë.

14 En Alma, en Ammon, en hulle broers, en ook die twee seuns van Alma het teruggekeer na die land Zarahemla, nadat hulle werktuie was in die hande van God om baie van die Zoramiete te bring tot bekering; en soveel as wat tot bekering gebring is, is uit hulle land uitgedryf; maar hulle het landerye vir hul erfenis in die land Jershon, en hulle het wapens opgeneem om hulself te verdedig, en hulle vroue, en kinders, en hul landerye.

15 Nou Alma, omdat hy bedroef was oor die ongeregtigheid van sy volk, ja, oor die oorloë, en die bloedvergietings, en die twiste wat onder hulle was; en omdat hy die woord verkondig het, of gestuur het om die woord te verkondig onder die hele volk in elke stad; en omdat hy gesien het dat die harte van die volk begin het om hard te word, en dat hulle begin het om aanstoot te neem vanweë die strengheid van die woord, was sy hart uitermate bedroef.

16 Daarom het hy sy seuns bymekaar laat kom, sodat hy aan hulle elkeen sy opdrag mag gee, afsonderlik, aangaande die dinge met betrekking tot regverdigheid. En ons het 'n kroniek van sy bevele, wat hy aan hulle gegee het volgens sy eie kroniek.

Now this did stir up the Zoramites to anger against the people of Ammon, and they began to mix with the Lamanites and to stir them up also to anger against them.

And thus the Zoramites and the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of Ammon, and also against the Nephites.

And thus ended the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And the people of Ammon departed out of the land of Jershon, and came over into the land of Melek, and gave place in the land of Jershon for the armies of the Nephites, that they might contend with the armies of the Lamanites and the armies of the Zoramites; and thus commenced a war betwixt the Lamanites and the Nephites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges; and an account shall be given of their wars hereafter.

And Alma, and Ammon, and their brethren, and also the two sons of Alma returned to the land of Zarahemla, after having been instruments in the hands of God of bringing many of the Zoramites to repentance; and as many as were brought to repentance were driven out of their land; but they have lands for their inheritance in the land of Jershon, and they have taken up arms to defend themselves, and their wives, and children, and their lands.

Now Alma, being grieved for the iniquity of his people, yea for the wars, and the bloodsheds, and the contentions which were among them; and having been to declare the word, or sent to declare the word, among all the people in every city; and seeing that the hearts of the people began to wax hard, and that they began to be offended because of the strictness of the word, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

Therefore, he caused that his sons should be gathered together, that he might give unto them every one his charge, separately, concerning the things pertaining unto righteousness. And we have an account of his commandments, which he gave unto them according to his own record.

Alma 36

- 1 My seun, neig jou oor na my woorde; want ek sweer vir jou, dat in soverre jy die gebooie van God sal onderhou, sal jy voorspoedig wees in die land.
- 2 Ek wil hê dat jy moet doen soos ek gedoen het, deur te onthou van die slawerny van ons vaders; want hulle was in slawerny, en niemand kon hulle verlos behalwe die God van Abraham, en die God van Isak, en die God van Jakob nie; en Hy het hulle waarlik uit hulle verdrukkinge verlos.
- 3 En nou, o my seun Helaman, kyk, jy is in jou jeug, en daarom, ek smeeek jou dat jy my woorde sal aanhoor en van my leer; want ek weet dat wie ook al hulle vertrou in God sal plaas, sal gesteun word in hulle beproewings, en hul sorges en hul verdrukkinge, en sal op die laaste dag verhef word.
- 4 En ek wil nie hê dat jy moet dink dat ek dit uit my eie weet nie—nie van die stoflike nie maar van die geestelike, nie van die vleeslike verstand nie maar van God.
- 5 Nou, kyk, ek sê vir jou, as ek nie uit God gebore was nie, sou ek nie hierdie dinge geweet het nie; maar God het, by monde van sy heilige engel, hierdie dinge bekend gemaak aan my, nie vanweë enige waardigheid van my eie nie.
- 6 Want ek het rondgegaan saam met die seuns van Mosia, en gesoek om die kerk van God te vernietig; maar kyk, God het sy heilige engel gestuur om ons onderweg te stop.
- 7 En kyk, Hy het met ons gepraat, asof dit die stem van donder was, en die hele aarde het gebewe onder ons voete; en ons het almal op die aarde neergeval, want die vrees van die Here het oor ons gekom.
- 8 Maar kyk, die stem het aan my gesê: Staan op. En ek het opgestaan en orentgekom, en die engel gesien.
- 9 En hy het aan my gesê: As jy uit jouself vernietig wil wees, soek nie meer om die kerk van God te vernietig nie.
- 10 En dit het gebeur dat ek op die aarde neergeval het; en dit was vir 'n tydperk van drie dae en drie nagte dat ek nie my mond kon open nie, nóg het ek die gebruik van my ledemate gehad.

Alma 36

- My son, give ear to my words; for I swear unto you, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land.
- I would that ye should do as I have done, in remembering the captivity of our fathers; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it was the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and he surely did deliver them in their afflictions.
- And now, O my son Helaman, behold, thou art in thy youth, and therefore, I beseech of thee that thou wilt hear my words and learn of me; for I do know that whosoever shall put their trust in God shall be supported in their trials, and their troubles, and their afflictions, and shall be lifted up at the last day.
- And I would not that ye think that I know of myself—not of the temporal but of the spiritual, not of the carnal mind but of God.
- Now, behold, I say unto you, if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things; but God has, by the mouth of his holy angel, made these things known unto me, not of any worthiness of myself;
- For I went about with the sons of Mosiah, seeking to destroy the church of God; but behold, God sent his holy angel to stop us by the way.
- And behold, he spake unto us, as it were the voice of thunder, and the whole earth did tremble beneath our feet; and we all fell to the earth, for the fear of the Lord came upon us.
- But behold, the voice said unto me: Arise. And I arose and stood up, and beheld the angel.
- And he said unto me: If thou wilt of thyself be destroyed, seek no more to destroy the church of God.
- And it came to pass that I fell to the earth; and it was for the space of three days and three nights that I could not open my mouth, neither had I the use of my limbs.

11 En die engel het meer dinge met my gespreek, wat gehoor is deur my broers, maar ek het hulle nie gehoor nie; want toe ek die woorde hoor—As jy uit jouself vernietig wil wees, soek nie meer om die kerk van God te vernietig nie—is ek getref met so 'n groot vrees en verbasing dat ek miskien vernietig sou word, dat ek op die aarde neergeval het en niks meer gehoor het nie.

12 Maar ek is gemartel deur ewige pyniging, want my siel was verskeur tot die ergste mate, en gemartel deur al my sondes.

13 Ja, ek het al my sondes en ongeregtighede onthou, waarvoor ek gepynig is deur die pyne van die hel; ja, ek het gesien dat ek teen my God gerebelleer het, en dat ek nie sy heilige gebooie onderhou het nie.

14 Ja, en ek het baie van sy kinders vermoor, of eerder, weggelei tot vernietiging ja, en kortom, so groot was my ongeregtighede gewees, dat die blote gedagte om in die teenwoordigheid van God te kom, my siel met onuitspreeklike verskrikking gemartel het.

15 O, het ek gedink, dat ek verban kon word en kon ophou bestaan in beide siel en liggaam, dat ek nie gebring mag word om in die teenwoordigheid van my God te staan om geoordeel te word volgens my dade nie.

16 En nou, vir drie dae en vir drie nagte is ek gemartel, en wel met die pyne van 'n verdoemde siel.

17 En dit het gebeur dat terwyl ek so gemartel is met pyniging, terwyl ek beangs was deur die herinnering aan my baie sondes, kyk, het ek ook onthou dat ek gehoor het dat my vader geprofeteer het vir die volk aangaande die koms van ene Jesus Christus, 'n Seun van God, om versoening te doen vir die sondes van die wêreld.

18 Nou, toe my verstand hierdie gedagte vasgegryp het, het ek uitgeroep in my hart: O Jesus, U Seun van God, wees my barmhartig, wat in die gal van bitterheid verkeer, en omring word deur die ewigdurende kettings van die dood.

19 En nou, kyk, toe ek dit dink, kon ek my pyne nie meer onthou nie; ja, ek is nie langer verskeur deur die herinnering aan my sondes nie.

20 En o, watter vreugde, en watter wonderlike lig het ek aanskou; ja, my siel is vervul met vreugde so uitermate soos wat my pyn was!

And the angel spake more things unto me, which were heard by my brethren, but I did not hear them; for when I heard the words—If thou wilt be destroyed of thyself, seek no more to destroy the church of God—I was struck with such great fear and amazement lest perhaps I should be destroyed, that I fell to the earth and I did hear no more.

But I was racked with eternal torment, for my soul was harrowed up to the greatest degree and racked with all my sins.

Yea, I did remember all my sins and iniquities, for which I was tormented with the pains of hell; yea, I saw that I had rebelled against my God, and that I had not kept his holy commandments.

Yea, and I had murdered many of his children, or rather led them away unto destruction; yea, and in fine so great had been my iniquities, that the very thought of coming into the presence of my God did rack my soul with inexpressible horror.

Oh, thought I, that I could be banished and become extinct both soul and body, that I might not be brought to stand in the presence of my God, to be judged of my deeds.

And now, for three days and for three nights was I racked, even with the pains of a damned soul.

And it came to pass that as I was thus racked with torment, while I was harrowed up by the memory of my many sins, behold, I remembered also to have heard my father prophesy unto the people concerning the coming of one Jesus Christ, a Son of God, to atone for the sins of the world.

Now, as my mind caught hold upon this thought, I cried within my heart: O Jesus, thou Son of God, have mercy on me, who am in the gall of bitterness, and am encircled about by the everlasting chains of death.

And now, behold, when I thought this, I could remember my pains no more; yea, I was harrowed up by the memory of my sins no more.

And oh, what joy, and what marvelous light I did behold; yea, my soul was filled with joy as exceeding as was my pain!

21 Ja, ek sê vir jou, my seun, dat daar niks so intens en so bitter kon wees as wat my pyn was nie. Ja, en weer sê ek aan jou, my seun, dat daar aan die anderkant niks so intens en soet kan wees as wat my vreugde was nie.

22 Ja, ek het gedink ek sien, net soos ons vader Lehi gesien het, God op sy troon sit, omring deur tallose skares engele, in die houding van sang en lofbetuinging tot hulle God, ja, en my siel het gesmag om daar te wees.

23 Maar kyk, my ledemate het weer hulle krag herwin, en ek het op my voete gestaan, en ek het aan die volk openbaar dat ek uit God gebore is.

24 Ja, en van daardie tyd af tot nou toe het ek gearbei sonder ophou, sodat ek siele mag bring tot bekering, sodat ek hulle mag bring om die uitermate vreugde te smaak waarvan ek gesmaak het; sodat hulle ook gebore mag word uit God, en vervul word met die Heilige Gees.

25 Ja, en nou kyk, o my seun, die Here gee aan my uitermate groot vreugde in die vrug van my arbeid;

26 Want vanweë die woord wat Hy aan my bekend gemaak het, kyk, baie is gebore uit God, en het gesmaak wat ek gesmaak het, en het oog tot oog gesien soos ek gesien het; daarom weet hulle van hierdie dinge waarvan ek gespreek het, soos ek weet; en die kennis wat ek het is van God.

27 En ek is gesteun in beproewings en sorg van elke soort, ja, en in allerlei wyses van verdrukkinge; ja, God het my verlos van die gevangenis, en van bande, en van die dood; ja, en ek plaas my vertrou in Hom en Hy sal my steeds verlos.

28 En ek weet dat Hy my sal opwek op die laaste dag, om by Hom te woon in heerlijkheid; ja, en ek sal Hom vir ewig loof, want Hy het ons vaders uit Egipte gebring, en Hy het die Egiptenare verswelg in die Rooi See; en Hy het hulle deur sy krag in die beloofde land ingelei; ja, en Hy het hulle van tyd tot tyd uit slawerny en gevangenskap verlos.

Yea, I say unto you, my son, that there could be nothing so exquisite and so bitter as were my pains. Yea, and again I say unto you, my son, that on the other hand, there can be nothing so exquisite and sweet as was my joy.

Yea, methought I saw, even as our father Lehi saw, God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels, in the attitude of singing and praising their God; yea, and my soul did long to be there.

But behold, my limbs did receive their strength again, and I stood upon my feet, and did manifest unto the people that I had been born of God.

Yea, and from that time even until now, I have labored without ceasing, that I might bring souls unto repentance; that I might bring them to taste of the exceeding joy of which I did taste; that they might also be born of God, and be filled with the Holy Ghost.

Yea, and now behold, O my son, the Lord doth give me exceedingly great joy in the fruit of my labors;

For because of the word which he has imparted unto me, behold, many have been born of God, and have tasted as I have tasted, and have seen eye to eye as I have seen; therefore they do know of these things of which I have spoken, as I do know; and the knowledge which I have is of God.

And I have been supported under trials and troubles of every kind, yea, and in all manner of afflictions; yea, God has delivered me from prison, and from bonds, and from death; yea, and I do put my trust in him, and he will still deliver me.

And I know that he will raise me up at the last day, to dwell with him in glory; yea, and I will praise him forever, for he has brought our fathers out of Egypt, and he has swallowed up the Egyptians in the Red Sea; and he led them by his power into the promised land; yea, and he has delivered them out of bondage and captivity from time to time.

29 Ja, en Hy het ook ons vaders uit die land Jerusalem gebring; en Hy het ook, deur sy ewigdurende krag, hulle uit slawerny en gevangenskap verlos, van tyd tot tyd tot die huidige dag; en ek het altyd hulle slawerny in herinnering gehou; ja, en julle behoort ook hulle slawerny in herinnering te hou, soos ek gedoen het.

30 Maar kyk, my seun, dit is nie al nie; want julle behoort te weet soos ek weet, dat in soverre julle die gebooie van God sal onderhou, julle voorspoedig sal wees in die land; en julle behoort ook te weet, dat in soverre julle nie die gebooie van God sal onderhou nie, julle afgesny sal word van sy teenwoordigheid. Nou dit is volgens sy woord.

Yea, and he has also brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem; and he has also, by his everlasting power, delivered them out of bondage and captivity, from time to time even down to the present day; and I have always retained in remembrance their captivity; yea, and ye also ought to retain in remembrance, as I have done, their captivity.

But behold, my son, this is not all; for ye ought to know as I do know, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and ye ought to know also, that inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence. Now this is according to his word.

Alma 37

- 1 En, nou, my seun Helaman, ek beveel jou dat jy die kronieke neem wat aan my toevertrou is;
- 2 En ek beveel jou ook dat jy 'n kroniek byhou van hierdie volk, soos wat ek gedoen het, op die plate van Nefi, en hou al hierdie dinge heilig wat ek bewaar het, net soos ek hulle bewaar het; want dit is vir 'n wyse doel wat hulle bewaar word.
- 3 En hierdie plate van brons wat hierdie graverings bevat, wat die kronieke van die heilige skrifte op hulle het, wat die geslagsregister van ons voorvaders het, en wel vanaf die begin—
- 4 Kyk, dit is geprofeteer deur ons vaders dat hulle bewaar moet word en van een geslag na 'n ander oorgedra word, en gehou en bewaar word deur die hand van die Here totdat hulle na elke nasie, stam, taal en volk sal uitgaan, dat hulle sal weet van die verborgenhede wat daarop is.
- 5 En nou kyk, as hulle bewaar word, moet hulle hul glans behou; ja, en hulle sal hulle glans behou; ja, en so ook sal al die plate wat dit bevat wat die heilige skrif is.
- 6 Nou, jy mag veronderstel dat dit dwaasheid in my is; maar kyk, ek sê vir jou, dat deur klein en eenvoudige dingetjies word groot dinge teweeggebring; en geringe middele, in baie gevalle, beskaam die wyses.
- 7 En die Here God werk deur middele om sy groot en ewige voornemens tot stand te bring; en deur baie geringe middele beskaam die Here die wyses en bring die heil van baie siele tot stand.
- 8 En nou, dit was tot dusver wysheid in God dat hierdie dinge bewaar sou wees; want kyk, hulle het die geheue van hierdie mense vergroot, ja, en baie oortuig van die dwaling van hulle weë, en hulle gebring tot die kennis van hulle God tot die heil van hulle siele.

Alma 37

And now, my son Helaman, I command you that ye take the records which have been entrusted with me;

And I also command you that ye keep a record of this people, according as I have done, upon the plates of Nephi, and keep all these things sacred which I have kept, even as I have kept them; for it is for a wise purpose that they are kept.

And these plates of brass, which contain these engravings, which have the records of the holy scriptures upon them, which have the genealogy of our forefathers, even from the beginning—

Behold, it has been prophesied by our fathers, that they should be kept and handed down from one generation to another, and be kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord until they should go forth unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, that they shall know of the mysteries contained thereon.

And now behold, if they are kept they must retain their brightness; yea, and they will retain their brightness; yea, and also shall all the plates which do contain that which is holy writ.

Now ye may suppose that this is foolishness in me; but behold I say unto you, that by small and simple things are great things brought to pass; and small means in many instances doth confound the wise.

And the Lord God doth work by means to bring about his great and eternal purposes; and by very small means the Lord doth confound the wise and bringeth about the salvation of many souls.

And now, it has hitherto been wisdom in God that these things should be preserved; for behold, they have enlarged the memory of this people, yea, and convinced many of the error of their ways, and brought them to the knowledge of their God unto the salvation of their souls.

- 9 Ja, ek sê vir jou, was dit nie vir hierdie dinge wat hierdie kronieke bevat wat op hierdie plate is nie, kon Ammon en sy broers nie soveel duisende van die Lamaniete oortuig het van die onjuiste oorlewering van hulle vaders nie; ja, hierdie kronieke en hulle woorde het hulle gebring tot bekering; dit is, hulle het hul gebring tot die kennis van die Here hulle God, en om te jubel in Jesus Christus, hulle Verlosser.
- 10 En wie weet of hulle nie miskien die middel sal wees om baie duisende van hulle, ja, en ook baie duisende van ons hardnekkige broers, die Nefiete, wat nou hulle harte verhard in sonde en ongeregthede, te bring tot die kennis van hul Verlosser nie?
- 11 Nou hierdie verborgenhede is nog nie ten volle bekend gemaak aan my nie; daarom sal ek swyg.
- 12 En dit mag genoeg wees as ek slegs sê dat hulle bewaar word vir 'n wyse doel, welke doel aan God bekend is; want Hy gee in wysheid raad oor al sy werke, en sy weë is reguit, en sy weg een ewige kringloop.
- 13 O onthou, onthou, my seun Helaman, hoe streng is die gebooie van God. En Hy het gesê: As julle my gebooie sal onderhou, sal julle voorspoedig wees in die land—maar as julle nie sy gebooie onderhou nie, sal julle afgesny word van sy teenwoordigheid.
- 14 En nou onthou, my seun, dat God aan jou hierdie dinge toevertrou het, wat heilig is, wat Hy heilig gehou het, en wat Hy ook sal behou en bewaar vir 'n wyse doel in Hom, sodat Hy sy krag aan toekomstige geslagte mag toon.
- 15 En nou kyk, ek sê vir jou deur die gees van profesie, dat as jy die gebooie van God oortree, kyk, hierdie dinge wat heilig is, sal van jou weggeneem word deur die krag van God, en jy sal uitgelewer word aan Satan, sodat Hy jou kan sif soos kaf voor die wind.
- 16 Maar as jy die gebooie van God onderhou, en met hierdie dinge wat heilig is doen volgens dit wat die Here jou beveel, (want jy moet 'n beroep doen op die Here vir alle dinge wat jy ook al met hulle moet doen) kyk, geen mag van die aarde of die hel kan hulle van jou wegneem nie, want God is magtig in die vervulling van al sy woorde.

Yea, I say unto you, were it not for these things that these records do contain, which are on these plates, Ammon and his brethren could not have convinced so many thousands of the Lamanites of the incorrect tradition of their fathers; yea, these records and their words brought them unto repentance; that is, they brought them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and to rejoice in Jesus Christ their Redeemer.

And who knoweth but what they will be the means of bringing many thousands of them, yea, and also many thousands of our stiffnecked brethren, the Nephites, who are now hardening their hearts in sin and iniquities, to the knowledge of their Redeemer?

Now these mysteries are not yet fully made known unto me; therefore I shall forbear.

And it may suffice if I only say they are preserved for a wise purpose, which purpose is known unto God; for he doth counsel in wisdom over all his works, and his paths are straight, and his course is one eternal round.

O remember, remember, my son Helaman, how strict are the commandments of God. And he said: If ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land—but if ye keep not his commandments ye shall be cut off from his presence.

And now remember, my son, that God has entrusted you with these things, which are sacred, which he has kept sacred, and also which he will keep and preserve for a wise purpose in him, that he may show forth his power unto future generations.

And now behold, I tell you by the spirit of prophecy, that if ye transgress the commandments of God, behold, these things which are sacred shall be taken away from you by the power of God, and ye shall be delivered up unto Satan, that he may sift you as chaff before the wind.

But if ye keep the commandments of God, and do with these things which are sacred according to that which the Lord doth command you, (for you must appeal unto the Lord for all things whatsoever ye must do with them) behold, no power of earth or hell can take them from you, for God is powerful to the fulfilling of all his words.

- 17 Want Hy sal al sy beloftes vervul wat Hy aan jou sal maak, want Hy het sy beloftes vervul wat Hy aan ons vaders gemaak het.
- 18 Want Hy het aan hulle belowe dat Hy hierdie dinge sou bewaar vir 'n wyse doel in Hom, sodat Hy sy krag mag toon aan toekomstige geslagte.
- 19 En nou, kyk, een doel het Hy vervul, en wel tot die herstel van baie duisende van die Lamaniete tot die kennis van die waarheid; en Hy het sy krag deur hulle getoon en Hy sal ook steeds sy krag deur hulle toon aan toekomstige geslagte; daarom sal hulle bewaar word.
- 20 Daarom beveel ek jou, my seun Helaman, dat jy ywerig bly in die vervulling van al my woorde, en dat jy ywerig bly in die onderhouding van die gebooië van God, soos hulle geskrywe is.
- 21 En nou sal ek met jou spreek aangaande daardie vier en twintig plate, dat jy hulle bewaar, sodat die verborgenhede, en die werke van duisternis, en hulle geheime werke, of die geheime werke van daardie volk wat vernietig is, openbaar gemaak mag word aan hierdie volk; ja, al hulle moorde, en rowerye, en hulle geplunder, en al hulle boosheid en gruwels, bekend gemaak mag word aan hierdie volk; ja, en sodat jy hierdie vertolkers bewaar.
- 22 Want kyk, die Here het gesien dat sy volk begin het om in die duisternis te werk, ja, geheime moorde en gruwels bewerk het; daarom het die Here gesê, as hulle nie bekeer nie, sal hulle vernietig word vanaf die aangesig van die aarde.
- 23 En die Here het gesê: Ek sal vir my dienskneg Gazelem 'n klip berei, wat in die donker sal skyn soos lig, sodat ek aan my volk wat My dien mag openbaar, dat Ek aan hulle die werke van hulle broers mag openbaar, ja, hulle geheime werke, hulle werke van die duisternis, en hulle boosheid en gruwels.
- 24 En nou, my seun, hierdie vertolkers is berei sodat die woord van God vervul mag word wat Hy gespreek, en gesê het:

For he will fulfil all his promises which he shall make unto you, for he has fulfilled his promises which he has made unto our fathers.

For he promised unto them that he would preserve these things for a wise purpose in him, that he might show forth his power unto future generations.

And now behold, one purpose hath he fulfilled, even to the restoration of many thousands of the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; and he hath shown forth his power in them, and he will also still show forth his power in them unto future generations; therefore they shall be preserved.

Therefore I command you, my son Helaman, that ye be diligent in fulfilling all my words, and that ye be diligent in keeping the commandments of God as they are written.

And now, I will speak unto you concerning those twenty-four plates, that ye keep them, that the mysteries and the works of darkness, and their secret works, or the secret works of those people who have been destroyed, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, all their murders, and robbings, and their plunderings, and all their wickedness and abominations, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, and that ye preserve these interpreters.

For behold, the Lord saw that his people began to work in darkness, yea, work secret murders and abominations; therefore the Lord said, if they did not repent they should be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

And the Lord said: I will prepare unto my servant Gazelem, a stone, which shall shine forth in darkness unto light, that I may discover unto my people who serve me, that I may discover unto them the works of their brethren, yea, their secret works, their works of darkness, and their wickedness and abominations.

And now, my son, these interpreters were prepared that the word of God might be fulfilled, which he spake, saying:

25 Ek sal uit die duisternis al hulle geheime werke en hulle gruwels aan die lig bring; en tensy hulle bekeer, sal Ek hulle vernietig vanaf die aangesig van die aarde; en Ek sal al hulle geheimenisse en gruwels aan die lig bring, aan elke nasie wat hierna die land sal besit.

26 En nou, my seun, ons sien dat hulle nie bekeer het nie; daarom is hulle vernietig, en tot dusver is die woord van God vervul; ja, hulle geheime gruwels is gebring uit die duisternis en aan ons bekend gemaak.

27 En nou, my seun, ek beveel jou dat jy al hulle ede weerhou, en hulle verbonde, en hulle ooreenkomste in hulle geheime gruwels; ja, en al hulle tekens en hulle wonders sal jy weghou van hierdie volk af, sodat hulle hul nie ken nie, sodat hulle miskien in die duisternis verval en ook vernietig word nie.

28 Want kyk, daar is 'n vloek op hierdie land, dat vernietiging oor al daardie werkers van duisternis sal kom, volgens die krag van God, wanneer hulle ten volle ryp is; daarom wil ek nie hê dat hierdie volk vernietig mag word nie.

29 Daarom moet jy hierdie geheime planne van hulle ede en hulle verbonde van hierdie volk af weghou, en net hulle boosheid en hulle moorde en hulle gruwels moet jy aan hulle bekendmaak; en jy moet hulle leer om sulke boosheid en gruwels en moorde te verafsku; en jy moet hulle ook leer dat hierdie volk vernietig is vanweë hulle boosheid en gruwels en hulle moorde.

30 Want kyk, hulle het al die profete van die Here vermoor wat onder hulle gekom het om aan hulle aangaande hulle ongeregthede te verklaar; en die bloed van diegene wat hulle vermoor het, het tot die Here hulle God geroep om wraak op hulle wat hul moordenaars was; en so het die oordele van God gekom op hierdie werkers van duisternis en geheime organisasies.

31 Ja, en vervloek is die land vir ewig en ewig vir daardie werkers van duisternis en geheime organisasies en wel tot vernietiging, tensy hulle bekeer voordat hulle ten volle ryp is.

I will bring forth out of darkness unto light all their secret works and their abominations; and except they repent I will destroy them from off the face of the earth; and I will bring to light all their secrets and abominations, unto every nation that shall hereafter possess the land.

And now, my son, we see that they did not repent; therefore they have been destroyed, and thus far the word of God has been fulfilled; yea, their secret abominations have been brought out of darkness and made known unto us.

And now, my son, I command you that ye retain all their oaths, and their covenants, and their agreements in their secret abominations; yea, and all their signs and their wonders ye shall keep from this people, that they know them not, lest peradventure they should fall into darkness also and be destroyed.

For behold, there is a curse upon all this land, that destruction shall come upon all those workers of darkness, according to the power of God, when they are fully ripe; therefore I desire that this people might not be destroyed.

Therefore ye shall keep these secret plans of their oaths and their covenants from this people, and only their wickedness and their murders and their abominations shall ye make known unto them; and ye shall teach them to abhor such wickedness and abominations and murders; and ye shall also teach them that these people were destroyed on account of their wickedness and abominations and their murders.

For behold, they murdered all the prophets of the Lord who came among them to declare unto them concerning their iniquities; and the blood of those whom they murdered did cry unto the Lord their God for vengeance upon those who were their murderers; and thus the judgments of God did come upon these workers of darkness and secret combinations.

Yea, and cursed be the land forever and ever unto those workers of darkness and secret combinations, even unto destruction, except they repent before they are fully ripe.

32 En nou, my seun, onthou die woorde wat ek met jou gespreek het; moenie daardie geheime planne toevertrou aan hierdie volk nie, maar leer hulle 'n ewigdurende haat teen sonde en ongeregtigheid.

33 Preek aan hulle bekering, en geloof in die Here Jesus Christus; leer hulle om hulleself te verootmoedig en om sagmoedig en nederig van hart te wees; leer hulle om elke versoeking van die duiwel te weerstaan, met hulle geloof in die Here Jesus Christus.

34 Leer hulle om nooit moeg te word vir goeie werke nie, maar om sagmoedig en nederig van hart te wees; want diesulkes sal rus vind vir hulle siele.

35 O onthou, my seun, en leer wysheid in jou jeug; ja, leer in jou jeug om die gebooie van God te onderhou.

36 Ja, en roep tot God vir al jou ondersteuning; ja, laat al jou dade tot die Here wees, en waar jy ook al heengaan, laat dit in die Here wees; ja, laat al jou gedagtes gerig word op die Here, ja, laat die liefde van jou hart op die Here geplaas wees, vir ewig.

37 Raadpleeg met die Here in al jou dade, en Hy sal jou ten goede rig; ja, wanneer jy jou snags neerlê, lê jou neer in die Here, sodat Hy oor jou mag waak in jou slaap; en wanneer jy in die môre opstaan, laat jou hart vol dankbaarheid wees jeens God; en as jy hierdie dinge doen, sal jy verhef word op die laaste dag.

38 En nou, my seun, ek het ietwat te sê aangaande die ding wat ons vaders 'n bal of rigtingwyser noem—of ons vaders het dit Liahona genoem, dit is, as dit vertaal word 'n kompas; en die Here het dit berei.

39 En kyk, geen mens kan werk volgens die wyse van sulke sonderlinge vakmanskap nie. En kyk, dit is berei om aan ons vaders die rigting te wys wat hulle moes reis in die wildernis.

40 En dit het vir hulle gewerk volgens hulle geloof in God; daarom, as hulle geloof gehad het om te glo dat God daardie asse in die rigting sou laat wys wat hulle moes gaan, kyk, dit is gedoen; daarom het hulle hierdie wonderwerk gehad, en ook baie ander wonderwerke wat bewerkstellig is deur die krag van God, dag na dag.

And now, my son, remember the words which I have spoken unto you; trust not those secret plans unto this people, but teach them an everlasting hatred against sin and iniquity.

Preach unto them repentance, and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ; teach them to humble themselves and to be meek and lowly in heart; teach them to withstand every temptation of the devil, with their faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

Teach them to never be weary of good works, but to be meek and lowly in heart; for such shall find rest to their souls.

O, remember, my son, and learn wisdom in thy youth; yea, learn in thy youth to keep the commandments of God.

Yea, and cry unto God for all thy support; yea, let all thy doings be unto the Lord, and whithersoever thou goest let it be in the Lord; yea, let all thy thoughts be directed unto the Lord; yea, let the affections of thy heart be placed upon the Lord forever.

Counsel with the Lord in all thy doings, and he will direct thee for good; yea, when thou liest down at night lie down unto the Lord, that he may watch over you in your sleep; and when thou risest in the morning let thy heart be full of thanks unto God; and if ye do these things, ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the thing which our fathers call a ball, or director—or our fathers called it Liahona, which is, being interpreted, a compass; and the Lord prepared it.

And behold, there cannot any man work after the manner of so curious a workmanship. And behold, it was prepared to show unto our fathers the course which they should travel in the wilderness.

And it did work for them according to their faith in God; therefore, if they had faith to believe that God could cause that those spindles should point the way they should go, behold, it was done; therefore they had this miracle, and also many other miracles wrought by the power of God, day by day.

41 Nogtans, omdat daardie wonderwerke deur geringe middele bewerkstellig is, het dit aan hulle wonderbaarlike werke getoon. Hulle was traag, en het vergeet om hulle geloof en ywer uit te oefen, en dan het daardie wonderwerke opgehou, en hulle het nie gevorder op hulle reis nie;

42 Daarom het hulle in die wildernis vertoef, of het nie 'n direkte koers gereis nie, en is gekwel deur honger en dors, vanweë hulle oortredings.

43 En nou, my seun, ek wil hê dat jy moet verstaan dat hierdie dinge nie sonder 'n voorafskaduwing is nie; want soos ons vaders traag was om ag te slaan op hierdie kompas (nou hierdie dinge was stoflik) het hulle nie gevorder nie; en net so is dit met dinge wat geestelik is.

44 Want kyk, dit is net so maklik om gehoor te gee aan die woord van Christus, wat jou 'n reguit koers sal aanwys na ewige geluksaligheid, soos wat dit vir ons vaders was om ag te slaan op hierdie kompas, wat hulle 'n reguit koers sou aanwys na die beloofde land.

45 En nou sê ek, is daar nie 'n voorafskaduwing in hierdie ding nie? Want net so seker as wat hierdie rigtingwyser ons vaders na die land van belofte gebring het deur sy koers te volg, sal die woorde van Christus, as ons hulle koers volg, vir ons uitlei anderkant hierdie dal van tranes na 'n ver beter land van belofte.

46 O my seun, moenie dat ons traag wees vanweë die maklikheid van die weg nie; want so was dit met ons vaders; want so is dit berei vir hulle, dat as hulle sou kyk, mag hulle lewe; net so is dit met ons. Die weg is berei, en as ons sal kyk, mag ons vir ewig lewe.

47 En nou my seun, sien dat jy hierdie heilige dinge oppas, ja, sien dat jy opsien na God en lewe. Gaan na hierdie volk en verkondig die woord, en wees ernstig. My seun, vaarwel.

Nevertheless, because those miracles were worked by small means it did show unto them marvelous works. They were slothful, and forgot to exercise their faith and diligence and then those marvelous works ceased, and they did not progress in their journey;

Therefore, they tarried in the wilderness, or did not travel a direct course, and were afflicted with hunger and thirst, because of their transgressions.

And now, my son, I would that ye should understand that these things are not without a shadow; for as our fathers were slothful to give heed to this compass (now these things were temporal) they did not prosper; even so it is with things which are spiritual.

For behold, it is as easy to give heed to the word of Christ, which will point to you a straight course to eternal bliss, as it was for our fathers to give heed to this compass, which would point unto them a straight course to the promised land.

And now I say, is there not a type in this thing? For just as surely as this director did bring our fathers, by following its course, to the promised land, shall the words of Christ, if we follow their course, carry us beyond this vale of sorrow into a far better land of promise.

O my son, do not let us be slothful because of the easiness of the way; for so was it with our fathers; for so was it prepared for them, that if they would look they might live; even so it is with us. The way is prepared, and if we will look we may live forever.

And now, my son, see that ye take care of these sacred things, yea, see that ye look to God and live. Go unto this people and declare the word, and be sober. My son, farewell.

Alma 38

- 1 My seun, neig jou oor na my woorde, want ek sê vir jou, net soos ek aan Helaman gesê het, dat in soverre julle die gebooië van God sal onderhou, sal julle voorspoedig wees in die land; en in soverre julle nie die gebooië van God sal onderhou nie, sal julle afgesny word van sy teenwoordigheid.
- 2 En nou my seun, ek vertrou dat ek groot vreugde in jou sal hê vanweë jou standvastigheid en jou getrouheid aan God; want soos jy in jou jeug begin het om op te sien na die Here jou God, net so hoop ek dat jy sal aanhou om sy gebooië te onderhou, want gesê is hy wat volhard tot die einde toe.
- 3 Ek sê vir jou, my seun, dat ek alreeds groot vreugde in jou gehad het vanweë jou getrouheid en jou ywer, en jou geduld en jou lankmoedigheid onder die volk van die Zoramiete.
- 4 Want ek weet dat jy in boeië was; ja, en ek weet ook dat jy gestenig is ter wille van die woord; en jy het al hierdie dinge verduur met geduld omdat die Here met jou was; en nou weet jy dat die Here jou verlos het.
- 5 En nou, my seun Sjiblon, ek wil hê dat jy moet onthou, dat tot die mate wat jy jou vertrou in God stel, net soveel sal jy verlos word uit al jou beproewing, en jou sorg en jou verdrukkinge, en jy sal verhef word op die laaste dag.
- 6 Nou, my seun, ek wil nie hê dat jy moet dink dat ek uit my eie hierdie dinge weet nie, maar dit is die Gees van God wat in my is wat hierdie dinge aan my bekend maak; want as ek nie uit God gebore is nie, sou ek nie hierdie dinge geweet het nie.
- 7 Maar kyk, die Here het in sy groot barmhartigheid sy engel gestuur om aan my te verkondig dat ek moet ophou met die werk van vernietiging onder sy volk; ja, en ek het 'n engel van aangesig tot aangesig gesien, en hy het met my gespreek, en sy stem was soos die donder, en dit het die hele aarde geskud.

Alma 38

My son, give ear to my words, for I say unto you, even as I said unto Helaman, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence.

And now, my son, I trust that I shall have great joy in you, because of your steadiness and your faithfulness unto God; for as you have commenced in your youth to look to the Lord your God, even so I hope that you will continue in keeping his commandments; for blessed is he that endureth to the end.

I say unto you, my son, that I have had great joy in thee already, because of thy faithfulness and thy diligence, and thy patience and thy long-suffering among the people of the Zoramites.

For I know that thou wast in bonds; yea, and I also know that thou wast stoned for the word's sake; and thou didst bear all these things with patience because the Lord was with thee; and now thou knowest that the Lord did deliver thee.

And now my son, Shiblon, I would that ye should remember, that as much as ye shall put your trust in God even so much ye shall be delivered out of your trials, and your troubles, and your afflictions, and ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

Now, my son, I would not that ye should think that I know these things of myself, but it is the Spirit of God which is in me which maketh these things known unto me; for if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things.

But behold, the Lord in his great mercy sent his angel to declare unto me that I must stop the work of destruction among his people; yea, and I have seen an angel face to face, and he spake with me, and his voice was as thunder, and it shook the whole earth.

- 8 En dit het gebeur dat ek drie dae en drie nagte in die bitterste pyn en smart van siel was; en nooit, tot dat ek uitgeroep het tot die Here Jesus Christus om barmhartigheid, het ek 'n vergifnis ontvang van my sondes nie. Maar kyk, ek het tot Hom geroep en ek het vrede gevind vir my siel.
- 9 En nou, my seun, ek het jou dit vertel sodat jy wysheid mag leer, sodat jy van my mag leer dat daar geen ander weg of wyse is waardeur 'n mens gered kan word nie, net in en deur Christus. Kyk, Hy is die lewe en die lig van die wêreld. Kyk, Hy is die woord van waarheid en regverdigheid.
- 10 En nou, soos jy begin het om die woord te leer, net so wil ek hê dat jy moet aanhou om te onderrig; en ek wil hê dat jy ywerig en matig moet wees in alle dinge.
- 11 Sorg dat jy nie verhef word tot hoogmoed nie; ja, sorg dat jy nie roem in jou eie wysheid, nóg oor jou groot krag.
- 12 Gebruik vrymoedigheid, maar nie heerssugtigheid nie; en sorg dat jy al jou hartstogte beteuel, sodat jy vervul mag word met liefde; sorg dat jy luiheid vermy.
- 13 Moenie bid soos die Zoramiete nie, want jy het gesien dat hulle bid om van mense gehoor te word, en om geprys te word vir hulle wysheid.
- 14 Moenie sê: O God, ek dank U dat ons beter is as ons broers nie; maar sê eerder: O Here, vergewe my onwaardigheid, en onthou my broers in barmhartigheid—ja, erken jou onwaardigheid voor God te alle tye.
- 15 En mag die Here jou siel seën, en jou ontvang op die laaste dag in sy koninkryk, om in vrede te sit. Nou gaan, my seun, en leer die woord aan hierdie volk. Wees ernstig. My seun, vaarwel.

And it came to pass that I was three days and three nights in the most bitter pain and anguish of soul; and never, until I did cry out unto the Lord Jesus Christ for mercy, did I receive a remission of my sins. But behold, I did cry unto him and I did find peace to my soul.

And now, my son, I have told you this that ye may learn wisdom, that ye may learn of me that there is no other way or means whereby man can be saved, only in and through Christ. Behold, he is the life and the light of the world. Behold, he is the word of truth and righteousness.

And now, as ye have begun to teach the word even so I would that ye should continue to teach; and I would that ye would be diligent and temperate in all things.

See that ye are not lifted up unto pride; yea, see that ye do not boast in your own wisdom, nor of your much strength.

Use boldness, but not overbearance; and also see that ye bridle all your passions, that ye may be filled with love; see that ye refrain from idleness.

Do not pray as the Zoramites do, for ye have seen that they pray to be heard of men, and to be praised for their wisdom.

Do not say: O God, I thank thee that we are better than our brethren; but rather say: O Lord, forgive my unworthiness, and remember my brethren in mercy—yea, acknowledge your unworthiness before God at all times.

And may the Lord bless your soul, and receive you at the last day into his kingdom, to sit down in peace. Now go, my son, and teach the word unto this people. Be sober. My son, farewell.

Alma 39

- 1 En nou, my seun, ek het ietwat meer om te sê vir jou as wat ek aan jou broer gesê het; want kyk, het jy nie die standvastigheid van jou broer waargeneem nie, sy getrouheid, en ywer om die gebooe van God te onderhou nie? Kyk, het hy nie 'n goeie voorbeeld aan jou gestel nie?
- 2 Want jy het nie soveel aandag gegee aan my woorde as jou broer, onder die volk van die Zoramiete nie. Nou, dit is wat ek teen jou het; jy het aangehou om te roem in jou krag en jou wysheid.
- 3 En dit is nie al nie, my seun. Jy het dit gedoen wat my bedroef het; want jy het die bediening verlaat, en het oorgegaan na die land Siron, by die grense van die Lamaniete, agter die hoer Isabel aan.
- 4 Ja, sy het die harte van baie weggesteel; maar dit was geen verskoning vir jou nie, my seun. Jy moes jou toegewy het aan die bediening waarmee jy toevertrou was.
- 5 Weet jy nie, my seun, dat hierdie dinge 'n gruwel in die oë van die Here is nie; ja, meer gruwelik bo alle sondes behalwe om onskuldige bloed te stort of die Heilige Gees te verloën?
- 6 Want kyk, as jy die Heilige Gees verloën as dit eenmaal plek in jou gehad het, en jy weet dat jy dit verloën, kyk, dit is 'n sonde wat onvergeeflik is; ja, en wie ook al moord pleeg teen die lig en kennis van God, dit is nie maklik vir hom om vergifnis te verkry nie; ja, ek sê vir jou, my seun, dat dit nie maklik vir hom is om 'n vergifnis te verkry nie.
- 7 En nou, my seun, ek wou tot God dat jy nie skuldig was aan so 'n groot oortreding nie! Ek sou nie aanhou praat oor jou oortredings nie, om jou siel te verskeur, as dit nie vir jou beswil was nie.
- 8 Maar kyk, jy kan nie jou oortredings van God wegsteek nie, en tensy jy bekeer, sal hulle as 'n getuenis teen jou staan op die laaste dag.

Alma 39

And now, my son, I have somewhat more to say unto thee than what I said unto thy brother; for behold, have ye not observed the steadiness of thy brother, his faithfulness, and his diligence in keeping the commandments of God? Behold, has he not set a good example for thee?

For thou didst not give so much heed unto my words as did thy brother, among the people of the Zoramites. Now this is what I have against thee; thou didst go on unto boasting in thy strength and thy wisdom.

And this is not all, my son. Thou didst do that which was grievous unto me; for thou didst forsake the ministry, and did go over into the land of Siron among the borders of the Lamanites, after the harlot Isabel.

Yea, she did steal away the hearts of many; but this was no excuse for thee, my son. Thou shouldst have tended to the ministry wherewith thou wast entrusted.

Know ye not, my son, that these things are an abomination in the sight of the Lord; yea, most abominable above all sins save it be the shedding of innocent blood or denying the Holy Ghost?

For behold, if ye deny the Holy Ghost when it once has had place in you, and ye know that ye deny it, behold, this is a sin which is unpardonable; yea, and whosoever murdereth against the light and knowledge of God, it is not easy for him to obtain forgiveness; yea, I say unto you, my son, that it is not easy for him to obtain a forgiveness.

And now, my son, I would to God that ye had not been guilty of so great a crime. I would not dwell upon your crimes, to harrow up your soul, if it were not for your good.

But behold, ye cannot hide your crimes from God; and except ye repent they will stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

- 9 Nou my seun, ek wil hê dat jy moet bekeer en jou sondes versaak, en nie meer agter die begeerte van jou oë najaag nie, maar weerhou jou van al hierdie dinge; want tensy jy dit doen, kan jy geensins die koninkryk van God beërwe nie. O, onthou, en neem dit op jou, en weerhou jou van hierdie dinge.
- 10 En ek beveel jou om dit op jou te neem om met jou ouer broers te raadpleeg in jou ondernemings; want kyk, jy is in jou jeug, en jy het behoefte daaraan om versorg te word deur jou broers. En slaan ag op hulle raad.
- 11 Laat jouself nie toe om weggelei te word deur enige ydele of dwase ding nie, laat die duiwel nie weer jou hart weglei agter daardie goddelose hoere aan nie. Kyk, o my seun, watter groot ongeregtigheid jy gebring het oor die Zoramiete; want toe hulle jou gesien, wou hulle nie in my woorde glo nie.
- 12 En nou sê die Gees van die Here aan my: Beveel jou kinders om goed te doen, sodat hulle nie die harte van baie mense weglei tot vernietiging nie; daarom, ek beveel jou, my seun, in die vrees van God, dat jy jou weerhou van jou ongeregtighede;
- 13 Dat jy na die Here keer met jou hele verstand, mag en sterkte; dat jy die harte van niemand meer weglei om kwaad te doen nie; maar eerder, keer terug na hulle, en erken jou foute en daardie onreg wat jy gedoen het.
- 14 Soek nie na rykdom of die ydele dinge van hierdie wêreld nie; want kyk, jy kan hulle nie saam met jou neem nie.
- 15 En nou, my seun, wil ek ietwat aan jou sê aangaande die koms van Christus: Kyk, ek sê vir jou, dat dit Hy is wat waarlik sal kom om die sondes van die wêreld weg te neem; ja, Hy kom om die blye tyding van heil aan sy volk te verkondig.
- 16 En nou, my seun, dit was die bediening waartoe jy geroep is, om hierdie blye tyding te verkondig aan hierdie volk, om hulle gemoed voor te berei; of eerder, dat heil vir hulle mag kom, dat hulle die gedagtes van hulle kinders kan voorberei om die woord te hoor ten tye van sy koms.

Now my son, I would that ye should repent and forsake your sins, and go no more after the lusts of your eyes, but cross yourself in all these things; for except ye do this ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. Oh, remember, and take it upon you, and cross yourself in these things.

And I command you to take it upon you to counsel with your elder brothers in your undertakings; for behold, thou art in thy youth, and ye stand in need to be nourished by your brothers. And give heed to their counsel.

Suffer not yourself to be led away by any vain or foolish thing; suffer not the devil to lead away your heart again after those wicked harlots. Behold, O my son, how great iniquity ye brought upon the Zoramites; for when they saw your conduct they would not believe in my words.

And now the Spirit of the Lord doth say unto me: Command thy children to do good, lest they lead away the hearts of many people to destruction; therefore I command you, my son, in the fear of God, that ye refrain from your iniquities;

That ye turn to the Lord with all your mind, might, and strength; that ye lead away the hearts of no more to do wickedly; but rather return unto them, and acknowledge your faults and that wrong which ye have done.

Seek not after riches nor the vain things of this world; for behold, you cannot carry them with you.

And now, my son, I would say somewhat unto you concerning the coming of Christ. Behold, I say unto you, that it is he that surely shall come to take away the sins of the world; yea, he cometh to declare glad tidings of salvation unto his people.

And now, my son, this was the ministry unto which ye were called, to declare these glad tidings unto this people, to prepare their minds; or rather that salvation might come unto them, that they may prepare the minds of their children to hear the word at the time of his coming.

- 17 En nou wil ek jou gedagtes ietwat gerusstel oor hierdie saak. Kyk, jy wonder hoekom hierdie dinge so lank voor die tyd bekend sal wees. Kyk, ek sê vir jou, is 'n siel in hierdie tyd nie net so kosbaar vir God as wat 'n siel sal wees ten tye van sy koms nie?
- 18 Is dit nie net so nodig dat die plan van verlossing bekend gemaak moet word aan hierdie volk sowel as aan hulle kinders nie?
- 19 Is dit nie net so maklik op hierdie tyd vir die Here om sy engel te stuur om hierdie blye tydings te verkondig aan ons soos aan ons kinders, of soos na die tyd van sy koms nie?

And now I will ease your mind somewhat on this subject. Behold, you marvel why these things should be known so long beforehand. Behold, I say unto you, is not a soul at this time as precious unto God as a soul will be at the time of his coming?

Is it not as necessary that the plan of redemption should be made known unto this people as well as unto their children?

Is it not as easy at this time for the Lord to send his angel to declare these glad tidings unto us as unto our children, or as after the time of his coming?

Alma 40

- 1 Nou my seun, hier is ietwat meer wat ek aan jou wil sê; want ek gewaar dat jou gemoed bekommerd is aangaande die opstanding van die dode.
- 2 Kyk, ek sê vir jou, dat daar geen opstanding is nie—of, ek wil sê, met ander woorde, dat hierdie sterflike nie met die onsterflike beklee word nie, hierdie verderflike word nie met die onverganklike beklee nie—tot na die koms van Christus.
- 3 Kyk, Hy bring die opstanding van die dode te weeg. Maar kyk, my seun, die opstanding is nog nie nou nie. Nou, ek ontvou aan jou ’n verborgenheid; nogtans, daar is baie verborgenhede wat bewaar word, sodat niemand hulle ken nie behalwe net God homself. Maar ek toon aan jou een ding wat ek ywerig gevra het van God dat ek mag weet—dit is aangaande die opstanding.
- 4 Kyk, daar is ’n tyd bepaal wanneer almal sal opstaan uit die dood. Nou wanneer hierdie tyd kom, weet niemand nie; maar God ken die tyd wat bepaal is.
- 5 Nou, of daar een tyd sal wees, of ’n tweede tyd, of ’n derde tyd, wanneer mense sal opstaan uit die dood, dit maak nie saak nie; want God weet al hierdie dinge; en dit is genoeg vir my om te weet dat dit die geval is—dat daar ’n tyd bepaal is wanneer almal sal opstaan uit die dood.
- 6 Nou moet daar noodwendig ’n tydperk wees tussen die tyd van die dood en die tyd van die opstanding.
- 7 En nou wil ek vra wat word van die siele van mense van hierdie tyd van die dood af tot die tyd wat bepaal is vir die opstanding?
- 8 Nou of daar meer as een tyd bepaal is vir mense om op te staan, dit maak nie saak nie; want almal sterf nie tegelyk nie, en dit maak nie saak nie; alles is soos een dag vir God, en tyd alleen word vir die mens afgemeet.

Alma 40

Now my son, here is somewhat more I would say unto thee; for I perceive that thy mind is worried concerning the resurrection of the dead.

Behold, I say unto you, that there is no resurrection—or, I would say, in other words, that this mortal does not put on immortality, this corruption does not put on incorruption—until after the coming of Christ.

Behold, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead. But behold, my son, the resurrection is not yet. Now, I unfold unto you a mystery; nevertheless, there are many mysteries which are kept, that no one knoweth them save God himself. But I show unto you one thing which I have inquired diligently of God that I might know—that is concerning the resurrection.

Behold, there is a time appointed that all shall come forth from the dead. Now when this time cometh no one knows; but God knoweth the time which is appointed.

Now, whether there shall be one time, or a second time, or a third time, that men shall come forth from the dead, it mattereth not; for God knoweth all these things; and it sufficeth me to know that this is the case—that there is a time appointed that all shall rise from the dead.

Now there must needs be a space betwixt the time of death and the time of the resurrection.

And now I would inquire what becometh of the souls of men from this time of death to the time appointed for the resurrection?

Now whether there is more than one time appointed for men to rise it mattereth not; for all do not die at once, and this mattereth not; all is as one day with God, and time only is measured unto men.

- 9 Daaron, daar is 'n tyd bepaal vir die mens wanneer hulle sal opstaan uit die dood; en daar is 'n tydperk tussen die tyd van die dood en die opstanding. En nou, aangaande hierdie tydperk, wat van die siele van mense word is die saak wat ek ywerig van die Here gevra het om te weet; en dit is die ding waarvan ek weet.
- 10 En wanneer die tyd kom wanneer almal sal opstaan, dan sal hulle weet dat God al die tye ken wat vir die mens bepaal is.
- 11 Nou, aangaande die toestand van die siel tussen die dood en die opstanding—Kyk, dit is aan my bekend gemaak deur 'n engel, dat die geeste van alle mense, sodra hulle uit hierdie sterflike liggaam vertrek het, ja, die geeste van alle mense, of hulle goed of boos is, word huis toe geneem na daardie God wat hulle lewe gegee het.
- 12 En dan sal dit gebeur dat die geeste van diegene wat regverdig is, ontvang word in 'n toestand van geluk, wat die paradys genoem word, 'n toestand van rus, 'n toestand van vrede, waar hulle sal rus van al hulle moeite en van alle sorg en droefheid.
- 13 En dan sal dit gebeur, dat die geeste van die bose, ja, wat boos is—want kyk, hulle het geen deel of porsie van die Gees van die Here nie; want kyk, hulle het bose werke verkies eerder as die goeie; daarom het die gees van die duivel in hulle ingegaan, en besit geneem van hulle huis—en diesulkes sal uitgewerp word in die buitenste duisternis; daar sal geweene wees, en gehuil, en gekners van tande, en dit vanweë hulle eie ongeregtigheid, omdat hulle gevange weggevoer word deur die wil van die duivel.
- 14 Nou, dit is die toestand van die siele van die bose, ja, in duisternis, en 'n toestand van verskriklike, vreesaanjaende verwagting van die vurige verontwaardiging van die toorn van God oor hulle; dus bly hulle in hierdie toestand, sowel as die regverdige in die paradys, tot die tyd van hulle opstanding.
- 15 Nou, daar is sommiges wat verstaan het dat hierdie toestand van geluk en hierdie toestand van ellende van die siel, voor die opstanding, 'n eerste opstanding was. Ja, ek gee toe, dit mag 'n opstanding genoem word, die opwekking van die gees of die siel, en hulle toewysing tot geluk of ellende, volgens die woorde wat gespreek is.

Therefore, there is a time appointed unto men that they shall rise from the dead; and there is a space between the time of death and the resurrection. And now, concerning this space of time, what becometh of the souls of men is the thing which I have inquired diligently of the Lord to know; and this is the thing of which I do know.

And when the time cometh when all shall rise, then shall they know that God knoweth all the times which are appointed unto man.

Now, concerning the state of the soul between death and the resurrection—Behold, it has been made known unto me by an angel, that the spirits of all men, as soon as they are departed from this mortal body, yea, the spirits of all men, whether they be good or evil, are taken home to that God who gave them life.

And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of those who are righteous are received into a state of happiness, which is called paradise, a state of rest, a state of peace, where they shall rest from all their troubles and from all care, and sorrow.

And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of the wicked, yea, who are evil—for behold, they have no part nor portion of the Spirit of the Lord; for behold, they chose evil works rather than good; therefore the spirit of the devil did enter into them, and take possession of their house—and these shall be cast out into outer darkness; there shall be weeping, and wailing, and gnashing of teeth, and this because of their own iniquity, being led captive by the will of the devil.

Now this is the state of the souls of the wicked, yea, in darkness, and a state of awful, fearful looking for the fiery indignation of the wrath of God upon them; thus they remain in this state, as well as the righteous in paradise, until the time of their resurrection.

Now, there are some that have understood that this state of happiness and this state of misery of the soul, before the resurrection, was a first resurrection. Yea, I admit it may be termed a resurrection, the raising of the spirit or the soul and their consignment to happiness or misery, according to the words which have been spoken.

- 16 En kyk, weer is dit gesprek, dat daar 'n eerste opstanding is, 'n opstanding van al diegene wat was, of wat is, of wat sal wees, tot by die opstanding van Christus uit die dood.
- 17 Nou, ons veronderstel nie dat hierdie eerste opstanding, waarvan op hierdie wyse gesprek is, die opstanding van die siele kan wees en hulle toewysing tot geluk of ellende nie. Jy kan nie veronderstel dat dit is wat dit beteken nie.
- 18 Kyk, ek sê vir jou, Nee; maar dit beteken die here-niging van die siel met die liggaam, van diegene van af die dae van Adam, tot by die opstanding van Christus.
- 19 Nou, of die siele en die liggame van diegene van wie gesprek is almal gelyktydig verenig sal word, die bose sowel as die regverdiges, sê ek nie; laat dit genoeg wees, as ek sê dat hulle almal sal opstaan; of met ander woorde, hulle opstanding geskied voor die opstanding van diegene wat sterf na die opstanding van Christus.
- 20 Nou, my seun, ek sê nie dat hulle opstanding kom tydens die opstanding van Christus nie; maar kyk, ek gee dit as my mening, dat die siele en die liggame van die regverdiges herenig word, tydens die opstanding van Christus en sy opvaart na die hemel.
- 21 Maar of dit is by sy opstanding of daarna, sê ek nie; maar dit sê ek wel, dat daar 'n tydperk is tussen die dood en die opstanding van die liggaam, en 'n toestand van die siel in geluk of in ellende tot die tyd wat bepaal is deur God wanneer die dode sal opstaan, en herenig sal word, beide siel en liggaam, en gebring sal word om voor God te staan, en geoordeel te word volgens hulle werke.
- 22 Ja, dit bring die herstelling van daardie dinge waarvan gesprek is by monde van die profete te-weeg.
- 23 Die siel sal herstel word tot die liggaam, en die liggaam tot die siel; ja, en elke ledemaat en gewrig sal herstel word tot sy liggaam; ja, selfs nie 'n haar van die hoof sal verlore gaan nie; maar alle dinge sal herstel word tot hulle behoorlike en volmaakte gestalte.
- 24 En nou, my seun, dit is die herstelling waarvan gesprek is by monde van die profete—
- 25 En dan sal die regverdiges skitter in die koninkryk van God.

And behold, again it hath been spoken, that there is a first resurrection, a resurrection of all those who have been, or who are, or who shall be, down to the resurrection of Christ from the dead.

Now, we do not suppose that this first resurrection, which is spoken of in this manner, can be the resurrection of the souls and their consignment to happiness or misery. Ye cannot suppose that this is what it meaneth.

Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but it meaneth the reuniting of the soul with the body, of those from the days of Adam down to the resurrection of Christ.

Now, whether the souls and the bodies of those of whom has been spoken shall all be reunited at once, the wicked as well as the righteous, I do not say; let it suffice, that I say that they all come forth; or in other words, their resurrection cometh to pass before the resurrection of those who die after the resurrection of Christ.

Now, my son, I do not say that their resurrection cometh at the resurrection of Christ; but behold, I give it as my opinion, that the souls and the bodies are reunited, of the righteous, at the resurrection of Christ, and his ascension into heaven.

But whether it be at his resurrection or after, I do not say; but this much I say, that there is a space between death and the resurrection of the body, and a state of the soul in happiness or in misery until the time which is appointed of God that the dead shall come forth, and be reunited, both soul and body, and be brought to stand before God, and be judged according to their works.

Yea, this bringeth about the restoration of those things of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets.

The soul shall be restored to the body, and the body to the soul; yea, and every limb and joint shall be restored to its body; yea, even a hair of the head shall not be lost; but all things shall be restored to their proper and perfect frame.

And now, my son, this is the restoration of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets—

And then shall the righteous shine forth in the kingdom of God.

26 Maar kyk, 'n vreeslike dood kom oor die bose;
want hulle sterwe ten opsigte van dinge wat betrek-
king het op die dinge van regverdigheid; want hulle
is onrein, en geen onrein ding kan die koninkryk van
God beërwe nie; maar hulle word uitgewerp, en toe-
gewys om deel te hê aan die vrugte van hulle arbeid
of hulle werke, wat boos was; en hulle drink die
droesem van 'n bitter kelk.

But behold, an awful death cometh upon the
wicked; for they die as to things pertaining to things
of righteousness; for they are unclean, and no un-
clean thing can inherit the kingdom of God; but they
are cast out, and consigned to partake of the fruits of
their labors or their works, which have been evil;
and they drink the dregs of a bitter cup.

Alma 41

- 1 En nou, my seun, ek het ietwat te sê oor die herstelling waarvan gespreek is; want kyk, sommige het die skrifture verdraai, en het ver afgedwaal vanweë hierdie ding. En ek merk dat jou gemoed ook bekommerd was aangaande hierdie ding. Maar kyk, ek sal dit aan jou verduidelik.
- 2 Ek sê vir jou, my seun, dat die plan van herstelling noodsaaklik is volgens die geregtigheid van God; want dit is noodsaaklik dat alle dinge herstel moet word tot hulle juiste orde. Kyk, dit is noodsaaklik en regverdig, volgens die krag en die opstanding van Christus, dat die siel van die mens herstel moet word tot sy liggaam, en dat elke deel van die liggaam herstel moet word tot sy eie.
- 3 En dit is noodsaaklik volgens die geregtigheid van God dat mense geoordeel moet word volgens hulle werke; en as hulle werke goed was in hierdie lewe, en die begeertes van hulle harte was goed, dat hulle ook, op die laaste dag, herstel word tot dit wat goed is.
- 4 En as hulle werke boos is, sal dit tot hulle herstel word ten kwade. Daarom, alle dinge sal herstel word tot hulle behoorlike orde, elke ding tot sy natuurlike gestalte—die sterflikheid opgewek tot die onsterflikheid, verganklikheid tot onverganklikheid—opgewek tot eindelose geluk om die koninkryk van God te beërwe, of tot eindelose ellende om die koninkryk van die duiwel te beërwe, die een aan die een kant, die ander aan die ander—
- 5 Die een opgewek tot geluk volgens sy begeertes vir geluk, of die goeie volgens sy begeertes tot die goeie; en die ander tot die boosheid volgens sy begeertes vir boosheid; want soos hy begeer het om die hele dag lank boosheid te doen, net so sal hy sy beloning hê van boosheid wanneer die nag kom.
- 6 En so is dit aan die ander kant. As hy bekeer het van sy sondes, en regverdigheid begeer het tot die einde van sy dae, net so sal hy beloon word vir regverdigheid.
- 7 Hierdie is hulle wat verlos word deur die Here; ja, hierdie is hulle wat losgemaak word, wat bevry word van die eindelose nag van duisternis; en so staan of val hulle; want kyk, hulle is hul eie regters, hetsy om goed of kwaad te doen.

Alma 41

And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the restoration of which has been spoken; for behold, some have wrested the scriptures, and have gone far astray because of this thing. And I perceive that thy mind has been worried also concerning this thing. But behold, I will explain it unto thee.

I say unto thee, my son, that the plan of restoration is requisite with the justice of God; for it is requisite that all things should be restored to their proper order. Behold, it is requisite and just, according to the power and resurrection of Christ, that the soul of man should be restored to its body, and that every part of the body should be restored to itself.

And it is requisite with the justice of God that men should be judged according to their works; and if their works were good in this life, and the desires of their hearts were good, that they should also, at the last day, be restored unto that which is good.

And if their works are evil they shall be restored unto them for evil. Therefore, all things shall be restored to their proper order, every thing to its natural frame—mortality raised to immortality, corruption to incorruption—raised to endless happiness to inherit the kingdom of God, or to endless misery to inherit the kingdom of the devil, the one on one hand, the other on the other—

The one raised to happiness according to his desires of happiness, or good according to his desires of good; and the other to evil according to his desires of evil; for as he has desired to do evil all the day long even so shall he have his reward of evil when the night cometh.

And so it is on the other hand. If he hath repented of his sins, and desired righteousness until the end of his days, even so he shall be rewarded unto righteousness.

These are they that are redeemed of the Lord; yea, these are they that are taken out, that are delivered from that endless night of darkness; and thus they stand or fall; for behold, they are their own judges, whether to do good or do evil.

- 8 Nou, die bevele van God is onveranderlik; daarom, die weg is berei dat wie ook al wil, daarin mag wandel en gered word.
- 9 En nou, kyk, my seun, moenie nog 'n oortreding waag teen jou God ten opsigte van daardie punte van leerstellings, wat jy tot dusver gewaag het om te sondig nie.
- 10 Moenie veronderstel, omdat daar gespreek is aangaande herstelling, dat jy herstel sal word van die sonde tot geluk nie. Kyk, ek sê vir jou, boosheid was nooit geluk nie.
- 11 En nou, my seun, alle mense wat in 'n natuurlike toestand is, of ek sou sê, in 'n vleeslike toestand, is in die gal van bitterheid en in die bande van ongeregtigheid; hulle is sonder God in die wêreld, en hulle het teen die natuur van God gegaan; daarom, hulle is in 'n toestand teenstrydig met die aard van geluk.
- 12 En nou, kyk, is die betekenis van die woord herstelling om 'n ding in sy natuurlike toestand te neem en dit te plaas in 'n onnatuurlike toestand, of om dit te plaas in 'n toestand teenoorgesteld van sy natuur?
- 13 O, my seun, dit is nie die geval nie; maar die betekenis van die woord herstelling is om weer boos tot boos, vleeslik tot vleeslik, of die duiwelse tot die duiwelse terug te bring, goed tot dit wat goed is; regverdig tot dit wat regverdig is; die geregtigheid tot dit wat geregtig is; barmhartigheid tot dit wat barmhartig is.
- 14 Daarom, my seun, sorg dat jy barmhartig is teenoor jou broers; handel met geregtigheid, oordeel regverdiglik, en doen altyddeur goed; en as jy al hierdie dinge doen, dan sal jy jou beloning ontvang; ja, jy sal weer barmhartigheid aan jou herstel hê; jy sal weer geregtigheid aan jou herstel hê; jy sal weer 'n regverdige oordeel aan jou herstel hê; en jy sal weer die goeie aan jou vergoed hê.
- 15 Want dit wat jy uitstuur, sal weer terugkeer tot jou, en herstel word; daarom, die woord herstelling veroordeel die sondaar nog meer, en regverdig hom glad nie.

Now, the decrees of God are unalterable; therefore, the way is prepared that whosoever will may walk therein and be saved.

And now behold, my son, do not risk one more offense against your God upon those points of doctrine, which ye have hitherto risked to commit sin.

Do not suppose, because it has been spoken concerning restoration, that ye shall be restored from sin to happiness. Behold, I say unto you, wickedness never was happiness.

And now, my son, all men that are in a state of nature, or I would say, in a carnal state, are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; they are without God in the world, and they have gone contrary to the nature of God; therefore, they are in a state contrary to the nature of happiness.

And now behold, is the meaning of the word restoration to take a thing of a natural state and place it in an unnatural state, or to place it in a state opposite to its nature?

O, my son, this is not the case; but the meaning of the word restoration is to bring back again evil for evil, or carnal for carnal, or devilish for devilish—good for that which is good; righteous for that which is righteous; just for that which is just; merciful for that which is merciful.

Therefore, my son, see that you are merciful unto your brethren; deal justly, judge righteously, and do good continually; and if ye do all these things then shall ye receive your reward; yea, ye shall have mercy restored unto you again; ye shall have justice restored unto you again; ye shall have a righteous judgment restored unto you again; and ye shall have good rewarded unto you again.

For that which ye do send out shall return unto you again, and be restored; therefore, the word restoration more fully condemneth the sinner, and justifieth him not at all.

Alma 42

- 1 En nou, my seun, ek merk dat daar ietwat meer is wat jou gemoed verontrus, wat jy nie kan verstaan nie—wat aangaande die geregtigheid van God ten opsigte van die bestraffing van die sondaar is; want jy probeer om te veronderstel dat dit onregverdig is dat die sondaar toegewys moet word tot 'n toestand van ellende.
- 2 Nou kyk, my seun, ek sal hierdie ding aan jou verduidelik. Want kyk, nadat die Here God ons eerste ouers uitgestuur het uit die tuin van Eden, om die grond te bewerk waarvandaan hulle geneem is—ja, Hy het die mens uitgeneem, en Hy het aan die oostekant van die tuin van Eden gérubs geplaas, en 'n vlammende swaard wat in elke rigting gedraai het, om die boom van die lewe te bewaak—
- 3 Nou, ons sien dat die mens soos God geword het, omdat hy goed en kwaad ken; en sodat hy nie sy hand sou uitsteek, en ook van die boom van die lewe neem, en eet en vir ewig lewe nie, het die Here God gérubs en die vlammende swaard geplaas, sodat hy nie van die vrugte sou eet nie—
- 4 En so sien ons, dat daar aan die mens 'n tyd gegun is om te bekeer, ja, 'n proeftydperk, 'n tyd om te bekeer en God te dien.
- 5 Want kyk, as Adam dadelik sy hand uitgesteek het en van die boom van die lewe geëet het, sou hy vir ewig gelewe het, volgens die woord van God, omdat hy geen tyd gehad het vir bekering nie; ja, en ook die woord van God sou vergeefs gewees het, en die groot heilsplan sou verydel gewees het.
- 6 Maar kyk, dit was vir die mens bepaal om te sterwe—daarom, soos hulle afgesny was van die boom van die lewe sou hulle afgesny word van die aangesig van die aarde—en die mens het vir ewig verlore geword, ja, hulle het gevalle mense geword.
- 7 En nou, jy sien hieruit dat ons eerste ouers afgesny was beide stoflik en geestelik van die teenwoordigheid van die Here; en so sien ons dat hulle onderworpe geword het aan hulle eie wil;
- 8 Nou kyk, dit was nie raadsaam dat die mens herwin sou word van hierdie stoflike dood nie, want dit sou die groot plan van geluk vernietig het.

Alma 42

And now, my son, I perceive there is somewhat more which doth worry your mind, which ye cannot understand—which is concerning the justice of God in the punishment of the sinner; for ye do try to suppose that it is injustice that the sinner should be consigned to a state of misery.

Now behold, my son, I will explain this thing unto thee. For behold, after the Lord God sent our first parents forth from the garden of Eden, to till the ground, from whence they were taken—yea, he drew out the man, and he placed at the east end of the garden of Eden, cherubim, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the tree of life—

Now, we see that the man had become as God, knowing good and evil; and lest he should put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of life, and eat and live forever, the Lord God placed cherubim and the flaming sword, that he should not partake of the fruit—

And thus we see, that there was a time granted unto man to repent, yea, a probationary time, a time to repent and serve God.

For behold, if Adam had put forth his hand immediately, and partaken of the tree of life, he would have lived forever, according to the word of God, having no space for repentance; yea, and also the word of God would have been void, and the great plan of salvation would have been frustrated.

But behold, it was appointed unto man to die—therefore, as they were cut off from the tree of life they should be cut off from the face of the earth—and man became lost forever, yea, they became fallen man.

And now, ye see by this that our first parents were cut off both temporally and spiritually from the presence of the Lord; and thus we see they became subjects to follow after their own will.

Now behold, it was not expedient that man should be reclaimed from this temporal death, for that would destroy the great plan of happiness.

- 9 Daaron, omdat die siel nooit kon sterwe nie, en die val oor die hele mensdom 'n geestelike dood sowel as 'n stoflike gebring het, dit is, hulle is afgesny van die teenwoordigheid van die Here, daarom was dit raadsaam dat die mensdom herwin moes word van hierdie geestelike dood.
- 10 Daaron, omdat hulle vleeslik, wellustig en duivels van aard geword het, het hierdie proeftoestand 'n toestand geword vir hulle om voor te berei; dit het 'n voorbereidende toestand geword.
- 11 En nou, onthou my seun, as dit nie vir die plan van verlossing was nie (deur dit tersyde te lê) sodra hulle dood was, sou hulle siele ellendig wees, omdat hulle afgesny sou gewees het van die teenwoordigheid van die Here.
- 12 En nou, daar was geen wyse om mense te herwin uit hierdie gevalle toestand nie, wat die mens oor homself gebring het vanweë sy eie ongehoorsaamheid;
- 13 Daaron, volgens geregtigheid, kon die plan van verlossing nie verwesenlik word nie, behalwe op voorwaardes van bekering van die mens in hierdie toetsing; ja, hierdie voorbereidende toestand; want tensy dit vir hierdie voorwaardes was, kon barmhartigheid nie van krag wees nie, tensy dit die werk van geregtigheid sou vernietig. Nou kon die werk van geregtigheid nie vernietig word nie; indien wel, sou God ophou om God te wees.
- 14 En so sien ons dat die hele mensdom gevalle was, en hulle was in die greep van geregtigheid, ja, die geregtigheid van God, wat hulle toegewys het om vir ewig afgesny te word van sy teenwoordigheid.
- 15 En nou, die plan van barmhartigheid kon nie teweeg gebring word nie, behalwe as 'n versoening gedoen sou word; daarom versoen God self vir die sondes van die wêreld, om die plan van barmhartigheid teweeg te bring, om die eise van geregtigheid te bevredig, sodat God 'n volmaakte, regverdige God, en 'n barmhartige God, ook mag wees.
- 16 Nou, bekering kon nie tot mense kom tensy daar 'n straf was nie, wat ook ewig was soos die lewe van die siel moet wees, gekoppel in teenstelling met die plan van geluk, wat ook so ewig was soos die lewe van die siel.

Therefore, as the soul could never die, and the fall had brought upon all mankind a spiritual death as well as a temporal, that is, they were cut off from the presence of the Lord, it was expedient that mankind should be reclaimed from this spiritual death.

Therefore, as they had become carnal, sensual, and devilish, by nature, this probationary state became a state for them to prepare; it became a preparatory state.

And now remember, my son, if it were not for the plan of redemption, (laying it aside) as soon as they were dead their souls were miserable, being cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And now, there was no means to reclaim men from this fallen state, which man had brought upon himself because of his own disobedience;

Therefore, according to justice, the plan of redemption could not be brought about, only on conditions of repentance of men in this probationary state, yea, this preparatory state; for except it were for these conditions, mercy could not take effect except it should destroy the work of justice. Now the work of justice could not be destroyed; if so, God would cease to be God.

And thus we see that all mankind were fallen, and they were in the grasp of justice; yea, the justice of God, which consigned them forever to be cut off from his presence.

And now, the plan of mercy could not be brought about except an atonement should be made; therefore God himself atoneth for the sins of the world, to bring about the plan of mercy, to appease the demands of justice, that God might be a perfect, just God, and a merciful God also.

Now, repentance could not come unto men except there were a punishment, which also was eternal as the life of the soul should be, affixed opposite to the plan of happiness, which was as eternal also as the life of the soul.

17 Nou, hoe kon 'n mens bekeer tensy hy sou sondig? Hoe kon hy sondig as daar geen wet was nie? Hoe kon daar 'n wet wees tensy daar 'n straf was?

18 Nou, daar was 'n straf gekoppel, en 'n regverdige wet gegee, wat berou van gewete vir die mens gebring het.

19 Nou, as daar geen wet gegee was nie—as 'n mens gemoor het, moes hy sterwe—sou hy vrees dat hy sou sterwe as hy sou moord pleeg?

20 En ook, as daar geen wet gegee was teen sonde nie, sou mense nie bang gewees het om te sondig nie.

21 En as daar geen wet gegee was as mense gesondig het nie, wat kon geregtigheid doen, of barmhartigheid, want hulle sou geen aanspraak hê op die skepsel nie?

22 Maar daar is 'n wet gegee, en 'n straf gekoppel, en 'n bekering gegun; welke bekering aanspraak maak op barmhartigheid; anders maak geregtigheid aanspraak op die skepsel en voer die wet uit en die wet pas die straf toe; indien nie, sou die werke van geregtigheid vernietig word, en God sou ophou om God te wees.

23 Maar God hou nie op om God te wees nie, en barmhartigheid maak aanspraak op die bekeerdes, en barmhartigheid kom vanweë die versoening; en die versoening bring die opstanding van die dode te weeg; en die opstanding van die dode bring mense terug in die teenwoordigheid van God; en so word hulle herstel tot sy teenwoordigheid, om geoordeel te word volgens hulle werke, volgens die wet en geregtigheid.

24 Want kyk, die geregtigheid laat geld al sy eise, en genade maak ook aanspraak op alles wat haar eie is; en dus word niemand behalwe die ware bekeerdes gered nie.

25 Wat, veronderstel jy dat barmhartigheid geregtigheid kan berowe? Ek sê vir jou, Nee, nie die geringste nie. Indien wel, sou God ophou om God te wees.

26 En so bring God sy groot en ewige doelstellings te weeg, wat berei is vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld. En so kom die heil en die verlossing van die mense tot stand, en ook hulle vernietiging en ellende.

Now, how could a man repent except he should sin? How could he sin if there was no law? How could there be a law save there was a punishment?

Now, there was a punishment affixed, and a just law given, which brought remorse of conscience unto man.

Now, if there was no law given—if a man murdered he should die—would he be afraid he would die if he should murder?

And also, if there was no law given against sin men would not be afraid to sin.

And if there was no law given, if men sinned what could justice do, or mercy either, for they would have no claim upon the creature?

But there is a law given, and a punishment affixed, and a repentance granted; which repentance, mercy claimeth; otherwise, justice claimeth the creature and executeth the law, and the law inflicteth the punishment; if not so, the works of justice would be destroyed, and God would cease to be God.

But God ceaseth not to be God, and mercy claimeth the penitent, and mercy cometh because of the atonement; and the atonement bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead; and the resurrection of the dead bringeth back men into the presence of God; and thus they are restored into his presence, to be judged according to their works, according to the law and justice.

For behold, justice exerciseth all his demands, and also mercy claimeth all which is her own; and thus, none but the truly penitent are saved.

What, do ye suppose that mercy can rob justice? I say unto you, Nay; not one whit. If so, God would cease to be God.

And thus God bringeth about his great and eternal purposes, which were prepared from the foundation of the world. And thus cometh about the salvation and the redemption of men, and also their destruction and misery.

- 27 Daaron, o my seun, wie ook al wil kom, mag kom en vryelik drink van die waters van die lewe; en wie ook al nie wil kom nie, hy word nie gedwing om te kom nie; maar op die laaste dag sal dit aan hom herstel word volgens sy dade.
- 28 As hy begeer het om boosheid te doen, en nie bekeer het in sy dae nie, kyk, boosheid sal aan hom gedoen word, volgens die herstelling van God.
- 29 En nou, my seun, ek wil hê dat hierdie dinge jou nie meer moet verontrus nie, en laat net jou sondes jou verontrus, met daardie verontrusting wat jou tot bekering sal bring.
- 30 O my seun, ek wil hê dat jy nie langer die geregtigheid van God moet loën nie. Moenie probeer om jouself te verontskuldig op die geringste punt vanweë jou sondes, deur die geregtigheid van God te loën nie; maar laat die geregtigheid van God en sy barmhartigheid, en sy lankmoedigheid jou hart ten volle beheers; en laat dit jou afbring tot die stof in verootmoediging.
- 31 En nou, o my seun, jy word geroep deur God om die woord aan hierdie volk te preek. En nou, my seun, gaan voort, verkondig die woord met waarheid en erns, sodat jy siele tot bekering mag bring, sodat die groot plan van barmhartigheid sy aanspraak op hulle mag hê. En mag God aan jou gun, en wel volgens my woorde. Amen.

Therefore, O my son, whosoever will come may come and partake of the waters of life freely; and whosoever will not come the same is not compelled to come; but in the last day it shall be restored unto him according to his deeds.

If he has desired to do evil, and has not repented in his days, behold, evil shall be done unto him, according to the restoration of God.

And now, my son, I desire that ye should let these things trouble you no more, and only let your sins trouble you, with that trouble which shall bring you down unto repentance.

O my son, I desire that ye should deny the justice of God no more. Do not endeavor to excuse yourself in the least point because of your sins, by denying the justice of God; but do you let the justice of God, and his mercy, and his long-suffering have full sway in your heart; and let it bring you down to the dust in humility.

And now, O my son, ye are called of God to preach the word unto this people. And now, my son, go thy way, declare the word with truth and soberness, that thou mayest bring souls unto repentance, that the great plan of mercy may have claim upon them. And may God grant unto you even according to my words. Amen.

Alma 43

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat die seuns van Alma uitgegaan het onder die mense om die woord te verkondig aan hulle. En Alma, ook, kon self nie rus nie, en hy het ook uitgegaan.
- 2 Nou sal ons niks meer sê aangaande hulle prediking nie, behalwe dat hulle die woord gepreek het, en die waarheid, volgens die gees van profesie en openbaring; en hulle het gepreek volgens die heilige orde van God, waardeur hulle geroep is.
- 3 En nou keer ek terug na 'n kroniek van die oorloë tussen die Nefiete en die Lamaniete, in die agtiende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters.
- 4 Want kyk, dit het gebeur dat die Zoramiete Lamaniete geword het; daarom, aan die begin van die agtiende jaar het die volk van die Nefiete gesien dat die Lamaniete op hulle afkom; daarom het hulle voorbereidings gemaak vir oorlog; ja, hulle het hul leërs bymekaargemaak in die land Jerson.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete gekom het met hulle duisende, en hulle het gekom in die land Antionum, wat die land is van die Zoramiete; en 'n man met die naam van Zerahemna was hulle leier.
- 6 En nou, omdat die Amalekiete 'n goddeloser en moorddadiger geaardheid gehad het as die Lamaniete, in en van hulself, daarom het Zerahemna hoofkapteins aangestel oor die Lamaniete, en hulle was almal Amalekiete en Zoramiete.
- 7 Nou, dit het hy gedoen sodat hy hulle haat in stand mag hou teen die Nefiete, sodat hy hulle kon bring tot onderdanigheid ter bereiking van sy voornemens.
- 8 Want kyk, sy voornemens was om die Lamaniete op te stook tot toorn jeens die Nefiete; dit het hy gedoen sodat hy groot mag oor hulle mag toe-eien, en ook sodat hy mag oor die Nefiete mag verkry deur hulle na slawerny te bring.
- 9 En nou was die voornemens van die Nefiete om hulle landerye te versterk, en hulle huise, en hulle vroue, en hulle kinders, sodat hulle hul uit die hande van hulle vyande mag hou; en ook sodat hulle hul regte en voorregte mag bewaar, ja, en ook hulle vryheid, sodat hulle God mag aanbid volgens hulle begeertes.

Alma 43

And now it came to pass that the sons of Alma did go forth among the people, to declare the word unto them. And Alma, also, himself, could not rest, and he also went forth.

Now we shall say no more concerning their preaching, except that they preached the word, and the truth, according to the spirit of prophecy and revelation; and they preached after the holy order of God by which they were called.

And now I return to an account of the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges.

For behold, it came to pass that the Zoramites became Lamanites; therefore, in the commencement of the eighteenth year the people of the Nephites saw that the Lamanites were coming upon them; therefore they made preparations for war; yea, they gathered together their armies in the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites came with their thousands; and they came into the land of Antionum, which is the land of the Zoramites; and a man by the name of Zerahemnah was their leader.

And now, as the Amalekites were of a more wicked and murderous disposition than the Lamanites were, in and of themselves, therefore, Zerahemnah appointed chief captains over the Lamanites, and they were all Amalekites and Zoramites.

Now this he did that he might preserve their hatred towards the Nephites, that he might bring them into subjection to the accomplishment of his designs.

For behold, his designs were to stir up the Lamanites to anger against the Nephites; this he did that he might usurp great power over them, and also that he might gain power over the Nephites by bringing them into bondage.

And now the design of the Nephites was to support their lands, and their houses, and their wives, and their children, that they might preserve them from the hands of their enemies; and also that they might preserve their rights and their privileges, yea, and also their liberty, that they might worship God according to their desires.

- 10 Want hulle het geweet dat as hulle in die hande van die Lamaniete sou val, dat wie ook al God sou aanbid in gees en in waarheid, die ware en die lewende God, die Lamaniete sou vernietig.
- 11 Ja, en hulle het ook die uitermate haat van die Lamaniete jeens hulle broers geken, wat die volk van Anti-Nefi-Lehi was, wat die volk van Ammon genoem is—en hulle wou nie wapens opneem nie, ja, hulle het 'n verbond gesluit en hulle wou dit nie verbreek nie—daarom, as hulle in die hande van die Lamaniete sou val, sou hulle vernietig word.
- 12 En die Nefiete wou nie toelaat dat hulle vernietig sou word nie; daarom het hulle aan hulle grond gegee vir hul erfenis.
- 13 En die volk van Ammon het aan die Nefiete 'n groot deel van hulle besittings gegee om hulle leërs in stand te hou; en dus was die Nefiete verplig, alleen, om die Lamaniete te weerstaan, wat 'n vermeniging was van Laman en Lemuel, en die seuns van Ismael, en al diegene wat afvallig geword het van die Nefiete, wat Amalekiete en Zoramiete was, en die afstammeling van die priesters van Noag.
- 14 Nou was daardie afstammeling talryk, byna soos wat die Nefiete was; en daarom was die Nefiete verplig om teen hulle broers te veg, en wel tot bloedvergieting toe.
- 15 En dit het gebeur omdat die leërs van die Lamaniete bymekaar gekom het in die land Antionum, kyk, die leërs van die Nefiete was gereed om hulle te ontmoet in die land Jerson.
- 16 Nou, die leier van die Nefiete, of die man wat aangestel was om die hoofkaptein oor die Nefiete te wees—nou het die hoofkaptein die bevel geneem van al die leërs van die Nefiete—en sy naam was Moroni;
- 17 En Moroni het algehele bevel geneem, en die bestuur van hulle oorloë. En hy was net vyf en twintig jaar oud toe hy aangestel is as hoofkaptein oor die leërs van die Nefiete.
- 18 En dit het gebeur dat hy die Lamaniete op die grense van Jerson ontmoet het en sy volk was bewapen met swaarde, en met sabels, en allerhande wapens van oorlog.

For they knew that if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites, that whosoever should worship God in spirit and in truth, the true and the living God, the Lamanites would destroy.

Yea, and they also knew the extreme hatred of the Lamanites towards their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, who were called the people of Ammon—and they would not take up arms, yea, they had entered into a covenant and they would not break it—therefore, if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites they would be destroyed.

And the Nephites would not suffer that they should be destroyed; therefore they gave them lands for their inheritance.

And the people of Ammon did give unto the Nephites a large portion of their substance to support their armies; and thus the Nephites were compelled, alone, to withstand against the Lamanites, who were a compound of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, and all those who had dissented from the Nephites, who were Amalekites and Zoramites, and the descendants of the priests of Noah.

Now those descendants were as numerous, nearly, as were the Nephites; and thus the Nephites were obliged to contend with their brethren, even unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass as the armies of the Lamanites had gathered together in the land of Antionum, behold, the armies of the Nephites were prepared to meet them in the land of Jershon.

Now, the leader of the Nephites, or the man who had been appointed to be the chief captain over the Nephites—now the chief captain took the command of all the armies of the Nephites—and his name was Moroni;

And Moroni took all the command, and the government of their wars. And he was only twenty and five years old when he was appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that he met the Lamanites in the borders of Jershon, and his people were armed with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war.

19 En toe die leërs van die Lamaniete sien dat die volk van Nephi, of eerder dat Moroni, sy volk voorberei het met borsplate en met armbeskuittings, ja, en ook beskuittings om hulle hoofde te beskerm, en ook was hulle geklee in dik klere—

20 Nou was die leer van Zerahemna nie voorbereid met enigiets van die aard nie; hulle het net hul swaarde en hul sabels gehad, hul boë en hul pyle, hul klippe en hul slingers; en hulle was naak, behalwe vir 'n vel wat om hulle lendene omgord was; ja, almal was naak, behalwe die Zoramiete en die Amalekiete;

21 Maar hulle was nie bewapen met borsplate nie, nóg skilde—daarom, hulle was uitermate bevrees vir die leërs van die Nefiete vanweë hulle wapenrusting, niesteenstaande hulle getalle soveel groter was as dié van die Nefiete.

22 Kyk, nou het dit gebeur dat hulle nie gewaag het om teen die Nefiete op te trek in die grense van Jerson nie; daarom het hulle vertrek uit die land Antionum na die wildernis, en rondom in die wildernis gereis, tot by die oorsprong van die Sidon-rivier, sodat hulle in die land Manti mag kom en besit neem van die land; want hulle het nie veronderstel dat die leërs van Moroni sou weet waarheen hulle gegaan het nie.

23 Maar dit het gebeur, nadat hulle die wildernis binnegetrek het, het Moroni spioene in die wildernis ingestuur om hulle kamp dop te hou; en Moroni, ook, omdat hy geweet het van die profesieë van Alma, het sekere manne na hom gestuur, om hom te vra dat hy van die Here moes verneem waarheen die leërs van die Nefiete moes gaan om hulleself te verdedig teen die Lamaniete.

24 En dit het gebeur dat die woord van die Here tot Alma gekom het, en Alma het die boodskappers van Moroni meegedeel dat die leërs van die Lamaniete in die wildernis rondom marsjeer sodat hulle mag oorkom na die land Manti, sodat hulle 'n aanval mag begin op die swakker deel van die volk. En daardie boodskappers het gegaan en die boodskap aan Moroni gelewer.

And when the armies of the Lamanites saw that the people of Nephi, or that Moroni, had prepared his people with breastplates and with arm-shields, yea, and also shields to defend their heads, and also they were dressed with thick clothing—

Now the army of Zerahemnah was not prepared with any such thing; they had only their swords and their cimeters, their bows and their arrows, their stones and their slings; and they were naked, save it were a skin which was girded about their loins; yea, all were naked, save it were the Zoramites and the Amalekites;

But they were not armed with breastplates, nor shields—therefore, they were exceedingly afraid of the armies of the Nephites because of their armor, notwithstanding their number being so much greater than the Nephites.

Behold, now it came to pass that they durst not come against the Nephites in the borders of Jershon; therefore they departed out of the land of Antionum into the wilderness, and took their journey round about in the wilderness, away by the head of the river Sidon, that they might come into the land of Manti and take possession of the land; for they did not suppose that the armies of Moroni would know whither they had gone.

But it came to pass, as soon as they had departed into the wilderness Moroni sent spies into the wilderness to watch their camp; and Moroni, also, knowing of the prophecies of Alma, sent certain men unto him, desiring him that he should inquire of the Lord whither the armies of the Nephites should go to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the word of the Lord came unto Alma, and Alma informed the messengers of Moroni, that the armies of the Lamanites were marching round about in the wilderness, that they might come over into the land of Manti, that they might commence an attack upon the weaker part of the people. And those messengers went and delivered the message unto Moroni.

25 Nou Moroni, nadat hy 'n deel van sy leër agterge-
laat het in die land Jerson, uit vrees dat 'n deel van
die Lamaniete op enige wyse daardie land sou binne-
kom en die stad inneem, het die orige deel van sy leër
geneem en na die land Manti gemarsjeer.

26 En hy het al die mense in daardie gedeelte van die
land laat bymeekaarkom om oorlog te voer teen die
Lamaniete, om hulle grond, en hulle land, hulle reg-
te en vryhede te verdedig; daarom was hulle voorbe-
reid vir die koms van die Lamaniete.

27 En dit het gebeur dat Moroni sy leër laat verskuil
het in die vallei wat naby die wal van die rivier Sidon
was, wat aan die westekant van die Sidon-rivier was
in die wildernis.

28 En Moroni het spioene rondom geplaas, sodat hy
mag weet wanneer die kamp van die Lamaniete sou
kom.

29 En nou, omdat Moroni die voornemens van die
Lamaniete geken het, dat dit hulle voorneme was om
hulle broers te vernietig, of om hulle te onderwerp
en hulle in slawerny te bring, sodat hulle 'n konink-
ryk vir hulself oor die hele land mag vestig;

30 En omdat hy ook geweet het dat dit die enigste be-
geerte van die Nefiete was om hulle landerye te be-
hou, en hulle vryheid, en hulle kerk, daarom het hy
dit geen sonde geag dat hy hulle sou verdedig deur
strategie nie; daarom, hy het deur middel van sy spi-
oene verneem watter koers die Lamaniete sou in-
slaan.

31 Daarom, hy het sy leër verdeel en 'n deel oorge-
bring na die vallei, en hulle aan die oostekant ver-
skuil, en aan die suidekant van die heuwel Riplah;

32 En die origes het hy verskuil in die westelike val-
lei, aan die westekant van die Sidon-rivier, en so ver-
der af na die grense van die land Manti.

33 En dus nadat hy sy leërs geplaas het volgens sy be-
geerte, was hy voorbereid om hulle te ontmoet.

34 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete opgekom het
aan die noordekant van die heuwel, waar 'n gedeelte
van die leër van Moroni verskuil was.

Now Moroni, leaving a part of his army in the land
of Jershon, lest by any means a part of the Lamanites
should come into that land and take possession of
the city, took the remaining part of his army and
marched over into the land of Manti.

And he caused that all the people in that quarter of
the land should gather themselves together to battle
against the Lamanites, to defend their lands and
their country, their rights and their liberties; there-
fore they were prepared against the time of the com-
ing of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his
army should be secreted in the valley which was near
the bank of the river Sidon, which was on the west of
the river Sidon in the wilderness.

And Moroni placed spies round about, that he
might know when the camp of the Lamanites should
come.

And now, as Moroni knew the intention of the
Lamanites, that it was their intention to destroy their
brethren, or to subject them and bring them into
bondage that they might establish a kingdom unto
themselves over all the land;

And he also knowing that it was the only desire of
the Nephites to preserve their lands, and their lib-
erty, and their church, therefore he thought it no sin
that he should defend them by stratagem; therefore,
he found by his spies which course the Lamanites
were to take.

Therefore, he divided his army and brought a part
over into the valley, and concealed them on the east,
and on the south of the hill Riplah;

And the remainder he concealed in the west valley,
on the west of the river Sidon, and so down into the
borders of the land Manti.

And thus having placed his army according to his
desire, he was prepared to meet them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites came up on
the north of the hill, where a part of the army of
Moroni was concealed.

35 En nadat die Lamaniete die heuwel Ripla verbygegaan het, en die vallei binnegekom het, en begin het om die Sidon-rivier oor te steek, het die leër wat aan die suidekant van die heuwel verskuil was, wat gelei is deur 'n man wie se naam Lehi was, en hy het sy leër uitgelei en die Lamaniete omsingel aan die oostekant op hulle agterhoede.

36 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete, toe hulle die Nefiete op hulle agterhoede sien aankom, het hulle omgedraai en het begin om te veg teen die leër van Lehi.

37 En die werk van die dood het begin aan beide kante, maar dit was verskrikliker aan die kant van die Lamaniete, want hulle naaktheid was blootgestel aan die swaar houe van die Nefiete met hulle swaarde en hulle sabels, wat die dood gebring het met byna elke hou.

38 Terwyl aan die ander kant, slegs af en toe 'n man geval het onder die Nefiete, deur hulle swaarde en die verlies van bloed, omdat hulle beskerm was in die belangrikste dele van die liggaam, of omdat die belangrikste dele van die liggaam beskerm was teen die houe van die Lamaniete, deur hulle borsplate, en hulle armbeskuittings, en hulle helms; en so het die Nefiete die werk van die dood voortgesit onder die Lamaniete.

39 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete bevrees begin word het, vanweë die groot vernietiging onder hulle, en wel tot so 'n mate dat hulle begin vlug het na die Sidon-rivier.

40 En hulle is agternagesit deur Lehi en sy manne; en hulle is verdryf deur Lehi in die waters van Sidon, en hulle het die waters van Sidon oorgesteek. En Lehi het sy leërs teruggehou op die wal van die Sidon-rivier sodat hulle nie moes oorsteek nie.

41 En dit het gebeur dat Moroni en sy leër die Lamaniete ontmoet het in die vallei, aan die anderkant van die Sidon-rivier, en begin het om hulle aan te val en om hulle te dood.

42 En die Lamaniete het weer voor hulle uitgevlug, in die rigting van die land Manti; en hulle is weer ontmoet deur die leërs van Moroni.

And as the Lamanites had passed the hill Riplah, and came into the valley, and began to cross the river Sidon, the army which was concealed on the south of the hill, which was led by a man whose name was Lehi, and he led his army forth and encircled the Lamanites about on the east in their rear.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites, when they saw the Nephites coming upon them in their rear, turned them about and began to contend with the army of Lehi.

And the work of death commenced on both sides, but it was more dreadful on the part of the Lamanites, for their nakedness was exposed to the heavy blows of the Nephites with their swords and their cimeters, which brought death almost at every stroke.

While on the other hand, there was now and then a man fell among the Nephites, by their swords and the loss of blood, they being shielded from the more vital parts of the body, or the more vital parts of the body being shielded from the strokes of the Lamanites, by their breastplates, and their armshields, and their head-plates; and thus the Nephites did carry on the work of death among the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites became frightened, because of the great destruction among them, even until they began to flee towards the river Sidon.

And they were pursued by Lehi and his men; and they were driven by Lehi into the waters of Sidon, and they crossed the waters of Sidon. And Lehi retained his armies upon the bank of the river Sidon that they should not cross.

And it came to pass that Moroni and his army met the Lamanites in the valley, on the other side of the river Sidon, and began to fall upon them and to slay them.

And the Lamanites did flee again before them, towards the land of Manti; and they were met again by the armies of Moroni.

43 Nou in hierdie geval het die Lamaniete uitermate geveg; ja, nog nooit was die Lamaniete bekend om te veg met sulke uitermate krag en moed nie, nee, nie eens van die begin af nie.

44 En hulle is begeester deur die Zoramiete en die Amalekiete, wat hulle hoofkapteins en leiers was, en deur Zerahemna, wat hulle hoofkaptein was, of hulle hoofleier en bevelvoerder; ja, hulle het soos drake geveg, en baie van die Nefiete is deur hulle hande gedood, ja, want hulle het baie van hulle helms in twee gekap, en hulle het baie van hulle borsplate deursteek, en hulle het baie van hulle arms afgekapt; en so het die Lamaniete geslaan in hulle heftige toorn.

45 Nogtans, die Nefiete was begeester deur 'n beter saak, want hulle het nie geveg vir 'n monargie of vir mag nie, maar hulle het geveg vir hul huise en hul vryhede, hul vroue en hul kinders, en alles, ja, vir hulle plegtighede van aanbidding en hulle kerk.

46 En hulle het dit gedoen wat hulle gevoel het die plig was wat hulle aan hul God verskuldig was; want die Here het aan hulle gesê, en ook aan hulle vaders, dat: In soverre julle nie skuldig is aan die eerste oortreding nie, nóg die tweede, moet julle nie toelaat dat julle gedood word deur die hande van julle vyande nie.

47 En verder, die Here het gesê dat: Julle moet julle gesinne verdedig en wel tot bloedvergieting. Daarom, om hierdie rede, het die Nefiete teen die Lamaniete geveg, om hulleself te verdedig, en hulle gesinne, en hulle landerye, hulle land, en hulle regte, en hulle godsdiens.

48 En dit het gebeur dat toe die manne van Moroni die heftigheid en die toorn van die Lamaniete sien, was hulle op die punt om terug te deins en van hulle te vlug. En Moroni, omdat hy hulle voorneme gewaar het, het uitgestuur en hulle harte bemoedig met hierdie gedagtes—ja, die gedagtes aan hulle lande, hulle vryheid, ja, hulle vryheid van slawerny.

49 En dit het gebeur dat hulle teruggedraai het na die Lamaniete, en hulle het met een stem tot die Here hulle God geroep om hulle vryheid en vrywees van slawerny.

Now in this case the Lamanites did fight exceedingly; yea, never had the Lamanites been known to fight with such exceedingly great strength and courage, no, not even from the beginning.

And they were inspired by the Zoramites and the Amalekites, who were their chief captains and leaders, and by Zerahemnah, who was their chief captain, or their chief leader and commander; yea, they did fight like dragons, and many of the Nephites were slain by their hands, yea, for they did smite in two many of their head-plates, and they did pierce many of their breastplates, and they did smite off many of their arms; and thus the Lamanites did smite in their fierce anger.

Nevertheless, the Nephites were inspired by a better cause, for they were not fighting for monarchy nor power but they were fighting for their homes and their liberties, their wives and their children, and their all, yea, for their rites of worship and their church.

And they were doing that which they felt was the duty which they owed to their God; for the Lord had said unto them, and also unto their fathers, that: Inasmuch as ye are not guilty of the first offense, neither the second, ye shall not suffer yourselves to be slain by the hands of your enemies.

And again, the Lord has said that: Ye shall defend your families even unto bloodshed. Therefore for this cause were the Nephites contending with the Lamanites, to defend themselves, and their families, and their lands, their country, and their rights, and their religion.

And it came to pass that when the men of Moroni saw the fierceness and the anger of the Lamanites, they were about to shrink and flee from them. And Moroni, perceiving their intent, sent forth and inspired their hearts with these thoughts—yea, the thoughts of their lands, their liberty, yea, their freedom from bondage.

And it came to pass that they turned upon the Lamanites, and they cried with one voice unto the Lord their God, for their liberty and their freedom from bondage.

50 En hulle het begin om teen die Lamaniete te staan met krag; en in daardie selfde uur wat hulle tot die Here geroep het om hulle vryheid, het die Lamaniete begin uitvlug voor hulle; en hulle het gevlug tot by die waters van Sidon.

51 Nou, die Lamaniete was talryker, ja, meer as dubbel die aantal van die Nefiete; nogtans is hulle gejaag in soverre dat hulle in een groep bymekaar gekom het in die vallei, op die oewer van die Sidon-rivier.

52 Daarom het die leërs van Moroni hulle omsingel, ja, en wel aan beide kante van die rivier, want kyk, aan die oostekant was die manne van Lehi.

53 Daarom, toe Zerahemna die manne van Lehi aan die oostekant van die Sidon-rivier sien, en die leërs van Moroni aan die westekant van die Sidon-rivier, dat hulle omsingel was deur die Nefiete, is hulle deur angs getref.

54 Nou Moroni, toe hy hulle angs sien, het sy manne beveel dat hulle moes ophou om hulle bloed te vergiet.

And they began to stand against the Lamanites with power; and in that selfsame hour that they cried unto the Lord for their freedom, the Lamanites began to flee before them; and they fled even to the waters of Sidon.

Now, the Lamanites were more numerous, yea, by more than double the number of the Nephites; nevertheless, they were driven insomuch that they were gathered together in one body in the valley, upon the bank by the river Sidon.

Therefore the armies of Moroni encircled them about, yea, even on both sides of the river, for behold, on the east were the men of Lehi.

Therefore when Zerahemnah saw the men of Lehi on the east of the river Sidon, and the armies of Moroni on the west of the river Sidon, that they were encircled about by the Nephites, they were struck with terror.

Now Moroni, when he saw their terror, commanded his men that they should stop shedding their blood.

Alma 44

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat hulle opgehou het en 'n entjie teruggetrek het van hulle af. En Moroni het aan Zerahemna gesê: Kyk, Zerahemna, dat ons nie begeer om manne van bloed te wees nie. Julle weet dat julle in ons hande is, tog begeer ons nie om julle dood te maak nie.
- 2 Kyk, ons het nie uitgekóm om teen julle te veg sodat ons julle bloed mag vergiet vir mag nie; nóg begeer ons om enigeen onder die juk van slawerny te bring. Maar dit is die ware rede waarom julle teen ons gekóm het; ja, en julle is vertoornd op ons vanweë ons godsdien.
- 3 Maar nou, julle sien dat die Here met ons is; en julle sien dat Hy julle in ons hande uitgelewer het. En nou wil ek hê dat julle moet verstaan dat dit aan ons gedoen is vanweë ons godsdien en ons geloof in Christus. En nou sien julle dat julle nie dít, ons geloof, kan vernietig nie.
- 4 Nou sien julle dat dit die ware geloof van God is; ja, julle sien dat God ons sal onderskraag, en behoed, en bewaar, solank as ons getrou is aan Hom, en aan ons geloof, en ons godsdien; en nooit sal die Here toelaat dat ons vernietig sal word nie behalwe as ons in oortreding sal verval en ons geloof loën.
- 5 En nou, Zerahemna, ek beveel julle in die naam van daardie almagtige God, wat ons arms versterk het sodat ons mag verkry het oor julle, deur ons geloof, deur ons godsdien, en deur ons plegtighede van aanbidding, en deur ons kerk, en deur die heilige steun wat ons verskuldig is aan ons vroue en ons kinders, deur daardie vryheid wat ons verbind aan ons grond en ons land; ja, en ook deur die behoud van die heilige woord van God, waaraan ons al ons geluk verskuldig is; en deur alles wat vir ons die dierbaarste is—
- 6 Ja, en dit is nie al nie; ek beveel julle deur al die begeertes wat julle het vir die lewe, dat julle jul wapens van oorlog aan ons oorlewer, en ons sal nie julle bloed soek nie, maar ons sal julle lewens spaar, as julle jul koers sal gaan en nie weer kom om teen ons te veg nie.

Alma 44

And it came to pass that they did stop and withdrew a pace from them. And Moroni said unto Zerahemnah: Behold, Zerahemnah, that we do not desire to be men of blood. Ye know that ye are in our hands, yet we do not desire to slay you.

Behold, we have not come out to battle against you that we might shed your blood for power; neither do we desire to bring any one to the yoke of bondage. But this is the very cause for which ye have come against us; yea, and ye are angry with us because of our religion.

But now, ye behold that the Lord is with us; and ye behold that he has delivered you into our hands. And now I would that ye should understand that this is done unto us because of our religion and our faith in Christ. And now ye see that ye cannot destroy this our faith.

Now ye see that this is the true faith of God; yea, ye see that God will support, and keep, and preserve us, so long as we are faithful unto him, and unto our faith, and our religion; and never will the Lord suffer that we shall be destroyed except we should fall into transgression and deny our faith.

And now, Zerahemnah, I command you, in the name of that all-powerful God, who has strengthened our arms that we have gained power over you, by our faith, by our religion, and by our rites of worship, and by our church, and by the sacred support which we owe to our wives and our children, by that liberty which binds us to our lands and our country; yea, and also by the maintenance of the sacred word of God, to which we owe all our happiness; and by all that is most dear unto us—

Yea, and this is not all; I command you by all the desires which ye have for life, that ye deliver up your weapons of war unto us, and we will seek not your blood, but we will spare your lives, if ye will go your way and come not again to war against us.

7 En nou, as julle dit nie doen nie, kyk, julle is in ons hande, en ek sal my manne beveel dat hulle julle sal aanval, en die wonde van die dood in julle liggame sal toedien, sodat julle uitgewis mag word; en dan sal ons sien wie mag sal hê oor hierdie volk; ja, ons sal sien wie tot slawerny gebring sal word.

8 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe Zerahemna hierdie woorde gehoor het, het hy na vore gekom en sy swaard en sy sabel oorgelewer, en sy boog in die hande van Moroni, en het aan hom gesê: Kyk, hier is ons wapens van oorlog; ons sal hulle uitlewer aan jou, maar ons sal onself nie toelaat om 'n eed teenoor julle te neem wat ons weet dat ons sal verbreek nie, en ook ons kinders; maar neem ons wapens van oorlog, en laat ons toe dat ons na die wildernis mag vertrek; anders sal ons ons swaarde behou, en ons sal vergaan of oorwin.

9 Kyk, ons is nie van julle geloof nie; ons glo nie dat dit God is wat ons in julle hande uitgelewer het nie; maar ons glo dat dit julle sluheid is wat julle bewaar het van ons swaarde. Kyk, dit is julle borsplate en julle skilde wat julle bewaar het.

10 En nou toe Zerahemna hierdie woorde klaar gespreek het, het Moroni die swaard en die wapens van oorlog wat hy ontvang het, aan Zerahemna teruggegee, en gesê: Kyk, ons sal die stryd na 'n einde voer.

11 Nou kan ek nie die woorde herroep wat ek gespreek het nie, daarom, sowaar as die Here leef, julle sal nie vertrek nie tensy julle vertrek met 'n eed dat julle nie weer sal terugkeer om teen ons te veg nie. Nou, omdat julle in ons hande is, sal ons julle bloed op die grond stort, of julle sal jul onderwerp aan die voorwaardes wat ek gestel het.

12 En nou toe Moroni hierdie woorde gespreek het, het Zerahemna sy swaard behou, en hy was kwaad vir Moroni, en hy het vorentoe gestorm sodat hy vir Moroni mag doodmaak; maar toe hy sy swaard ophef, kyk, een van Moroni se soldate het dit afgeslaan en wel na die grond toe, en dit het afgebreek by die hef; en hy het ook vir Zerahemna geslaan dat hy sy kopvel afgesny het en dit het op die grond geval; en Zerahemna het teruggetrek van voor hulle na die midde van sy soldate.

And now, if ye do not this, behold, ye are in our hands, and I will command my men that they shall fall upon you, and inflict the wounds of death in your bodies, that ye may become extinct; and then we will see who shall have power over this people; yea, we will see who shall be brought into bondage.

And now it came to pass that when Zerahemnah had heard these sayings he came forth and delivered up his sword and his cimeter, and his bow into the hands of Moroni, and said unto him: Behold, here are our weapons of war; we will deliver them up unto you, but we will not suffer ourselves to take an oath unto you, which we know that we shall break, and also our children; but take our weapons of war, and suffer that we may depart into the wilderness; otherwise we will retain our swords, and we will perish or conquer.

Behold, we are not of your faith; we do not believe that it is God that has delivered us into your hands; but we believe that it is your cunning that has preserved you from our swords. Behold, it is your breastplates and your shields that have preserved you.

And now when Zerahemnah had made an end of speaking these words, Moroni returned the sword and the weapons of war, which he had received, unto Zerahemnah, saying: Behold, we will end the conflict.

Now I cannot recall the words which I have spoken, therefore as the Lord liveth, ye shall not depart except ye depart with an oath that ye will not return again against us to war. Now as ye are in our hands we will spill your blood upon the ground, or ye shall submit to the conditions which I have proposed.

And now when Moroni had said these words, Zerahemnah retained his sword, and he was angry with Moroni, and he rushed forward that he might slay Moroni; but as he raised his sword, behold, one of Moroni's soldiers smote it even to the earth, and it broke by the hilt; and he also smote Zerahemnah that he took off his scalp and it fell to the earth. And Zerahemnah withdrew from before them into the midst of his soldiers.

- 13 En dit het gebeur dat die soldaat wat naby gestaan het, wat Zerahemna se kopvel afgesny het, die kopvel van die grond af opgetel het aan die hare, en dit op die punt van sy swaard geplaas, en dit na hulle uitgesteek het, terwyl hy met 'n harde stem aan hulle sê:
- 14 Net soos hierdie kopvel op die grond geval het, wat die kopvel is van julle leier, so sal julle op die grond val, tensy julle jul wapens van oorlog sal uitlewer en vertrek met 'n verbond van vrede.
- 15 Nou was daar baie, toe hulle hierdie woorde gehoor het, en die kopvel gesien het wat op die swaard was, wat bevange was met vrees; en baie het na vore gekom en hulle wapens van oorlog neergegooi aan die voete van Moroni, en 'n verbond van vrede gesluit. En soveel as wat 'n verbond gesluit het, het hulle toegelaat om die wildernis in te vertrek.
- 16 Nou het dit gebeur dat Zerahemna uitermate vertoornd was, en hy het die res van sy soldate opgestook tot toorn, om nog kragtiger teen die Nefiete te veg.
- 17 En nou was Moroni kwaad, as gevolg van die hardnekkigheid van die Lamaniete; daarom het hy sy volk beveel dat hulle hul moes aanval en hulle doodmaak. En dit het gebeur dat hulle hul begin doodmaak het; ja, en die Lamaniete het met hulle swaarde en hulle mag geveg.
- 18 Maar kyk, hulle naakte velle en hulle kaal koppe was blootgestel aan die skerp swaarde van die Nefiete; ja, kyk hulle is deursteek en geslaan, en het uitermate vinnig geval voor die swaarde van die Nefiete; en hulle het begin om afgemaai te word, net soos die soldaat van Moroni voorspel het.
- 19 Nou Zerahemna, toe hy sien dat hulle op die punt staan om almal uitgewis te word, het kragtig uitgeroep tot Moroni, en belowe dat hy 'n verbond sou sluit en ook sy volk met hulle, as hulle die oorblywendes se lewens sou spaar, dat hulle nooit weer teen hulle in die stryd sou kom nie.
- 20 En dit het gebeur dat Moroni die werk van die dood weer laat ophou het onder die volk. En hy het die wapens van oorlog van die Lamaniete geneem; en nadat hulle 'n verbond van vrede met hulle gesluit het, is hulle toegelaat om die wildernis in te vertrek.

And it came to pass that the soldier who stood by, who smote off the scalp of Zerahemnah, took up the scalp from off the ground by the hair, and laid it upon the point of his sword, and stretched it forth unto them, saying unto them with a loud voice:

Even as this scalp has fallen to the earth, which is the scalp of your chief, so shall ye fall to the earth except ye will deliver up your weapons of war and depart with a covenant of peace.

Now there were many, when they heard these words and saw the scalp which was upon the sword, that were struck with fear; and many came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and entered into a covenant of peace. And as many as entered into a covenant they suffered to depart into the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that Zerahemnah was exceedingly wroth, and he did stir up the remainder of his soldiers to anger, to contend more powerfully against the Nephites.

And now Moroni was angry, because of the stubbornness of the Lamanites; therefore he commanded his people that they should fall upon them and slay them. And it came to pass that they began to slay them; yea, and the Lamanites did contend with their swords and their might.

But behold, their naked skins and their bare heads were exposed to the sharp swords of the Nephites; yea, behold they were pierced and smitten, yea, and did fall exceedingly fast before the swords of the Nephites; and they began to be swept down, even as the soldier of Moroni had prophesied.

Now Zerahemnah, when he saw that they were all about to be destroyed, cried mightily unto Moroni, promising that he would covenant and also his people with them, if they would spare the remainder of their lives, that they never would come to war again against them.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that the work of death should cease again among the people. And he took the weapons of war from the Lamanites; and after they had entered into a covenant with him of peace they were suffered to depart into the wilderness.

21 Nou is die getal van hulle dooies nie getel nie, vanweë die grootte van die getal; ja, die getal van hulle dooies was uitermate groot, beide aan die Nefiete en aan die Lamaniete.

22 En dit het gebeur dat hulle hul dooies in die waters van Sidon gewerp het, en hulle het uitgegaan en is in die dieptes van die see begrawe.

23 En die leërs van die Nefiete, of van Moroni, het teruggekeer en gekom by hulle huise en hulle landerye.

24 En so het die agtiende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi geëindig. En so het die verslag van Alma geëindig, wat geskrywe was op die plate van Nefi.

Now the number of their dead was not numbered because of the greatness of the number; yea, the number of their dead was exceedingly great, both on the Nephites and on the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did cast their dead into the waters of Sidon, and they have gone forth and are buried in the depths of the sea.

And the armies of the Nephites, or of Moroni, returned and came to their houses and their lands.

And thus ended the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus ended the record of Alma, which was written upon the plates of Nephi.

Die verslag van die volk van Nepi, en hulle oorloë en onenigheid, in die dae van Helaman, volgens die kroniek van Helaman, wat by bygebou het in sy dae.

Alma 45

- 1 Kyk, nou het dit gebeur dat die volk van Nepi uitermate verheug was omdat die Here hulle weer verlos het uit die hande van hulle vyande; daarom het hulle dank betuig teenoor die Here hulle God; ja, en hulle het baie gevas en baie gebid, en hulle het God aanbid met uitnemende vreugde.
- 2 En dit het gebeur in die negentiende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nepi, dat Alma na sy seun Helaman gekom het en aan hom gesê het: Glo jy die woorde wat ek tot jou gespreek het aangaande daardie kronieke wat bygehou is?
- 3 En Helaman het aan hom gesê: Ja, ek glo.
- 4 En Alma het weer gesê: Glo jy in Jesus Christus, wat sal kom?
- 5 En hy het gesê: Ja, ek glo al die woorde wat u gespreek het.
- 6 En Alma het weer aan hom gesê: Sal jy my bevele onderhou?
- 7 En hy het gesê: Ja, ek sal u bevele onderhou met my hele hart.
- 8 Toe het Alma aan hom gesê: Geseënd is jy; en die Here sal jou voorspoedig maak in hierdie land.
- 9 Maar kyk, ek het ietwat om te profeteer aan jou; maar wat ek aan jou profeteer sal julle nie bekend maak nie; ja, wat ek aan jou profeteer sal nie bekend gemaak word, totdat die profesie vervul is nie; daarom, skryf die woorde wat ek sal sê.
- 10 En hierdie is die woorde: Kyk, ek gewaar dat hierdie selfde volk, die Nefiete, volgens die gees van openbaring wat in my is, binne vierhonderd jaar vanaf die tyd dat Jesus Christus Homself aan hulle sal openbaar, sal kwyn in ongelooft.
- 11 Ja, en dan sal hulle oorloë en pestilensies sien, ja, hongersnood en bloedvergieting, totdat die volk van Nepi uitgewis sal wees—

The account of the people of Nephi, and their wars and dissensions, in the days of Helaman, according to the record of Helaman, which he kept in his days.

Alma 45

Behold, now it came to pass that the people of Nephi were exceedingly rejoiced, because the Lord had again delivered them out of the hands of their enemies; therefore they gave thanks unto the Lord their God; yea, and they did fast much and pray much, and they did worship God with exceedingly great joy.

And it came to pass in the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma came unto his son Helaman and said unto him: Believest thou the words which I spake unto thee concerning those records which have been kept?

And Helaman said unto him: Yea, I believe.

And Alma said again: Believest thou in Jesus Christ, who shall come?

And he said: Yea, I believe all the words which thou hast spoken.

And Alma said unto him again: Will ye keep my commandments?

And he said: Yea, I will keep thy commandments with all my heart.

Then Alma said unto him: Blessed art thou; and the Lord shall prosper thee in this land.

But behold, I have somewhat to prophesy unto thee; but what I prophesy unto thee ye shall not make known; yea, what I prophesy unto thee shall not be made known, even until the prophecy is fulfilled; therefore write the words which I shall say.

And these are the words: Behold, I perceive that this very people, the Nephites, according to the spirit of revelation which is in me, in four hundred years from the time that Jesus Christ shall manifest himself unto them, shall dwindle in unbelief.

Yea, and then shall they see wars and pestilences, yea, famines and bloodshed, even until the people of Nephi shall become extinct—

- 12 Ja, en dit omdat hulle sal kwyn in ongeloof, en ver-
val tot die werke van duisternis, en wellustigheid, en
allerlei ongeregtighede; ja, en ek sê vir jou, dat om-
dat hulle sal sondig teen so 'n groot lig en kennis, ja,
ek sê vir jou, dat vanaf daardie dag, sal selfs die vier-
de geslag nie almal heengaan voordat hierdie groot
ongeregtigheid sal kom nie.
- 13 En wanneer daardie groot dag kom, kyk, die tyd
kom baie gou, wanneer hulle wat nou is, of die saad
van hulle wat nou getel word onder die volk van Nephi,
nie meer gereken sal word onder die volk van Nephi
nie.
- 14 Maar wie ook al oorbly, en nie vernietig word op
daardie groot en vreeslike dag nie, sal gereken word
onder die Lamaniete, en sal soos hulle word, almal,
behalwe 'n paar wat die dissipels van die Here ge-
noem sal word; en vir hulle sal die Lamaniete ver-
volg totdat hulle uitgewis sal wees. En nou, vanweë
ongeregtigheid, sal hierdie profesie vervul word.
- 15 En nou het dit gebeur dat nadat Alma hierdie din-
ge met Helaman gespreek het, het hy hom geseën, en
ook sy ander seuns; en hy het ook die aarde geseën
ter wille van die regverdiges.
- 16 En hy het gesê: So sê die Here God—Vervloek sal
die land wees, ja hierdie land, vir elke nasie, stam,
taal en volk, tot vernietiging toe, wat booslik handel,
wanneer hulle ten volle ryp is; en soos ek gesê het, só
sal dit wees; want dit is die vloek en die seën van God
oor die land, want die Here kan nie sonde aanskou
met die geringste mate van aanvaarding nie.
- 17 En nou, toe Alma hierdie woorde gesê het, het hy
die kerk geseën, ja, al diegene wat vas sou staan in
die geloof van daardie dag af verder.
- 18 En toe Alma dit gedoen het, het hy vertrek uit die
land Zarahemla, asof om na die land Melek te gaan.
En dit het gebeur dat hy nooit meer van gehoor is
nie; aangaande sy dood of begrafnis weet ons nie van
nie.

Yea, and this because they shall dwindle in unbe-
lief and fall into the works of darkness, and lascivi-
ousness, and all manner of iniquities; yea, I say unto
you, that because they shall sin against so great light
and knowledge, yea, I say unto you, that from that
day, even the fourth generation shall not all pass
away before this great iniquity shall come.

And when that great day cometh, behold, the time
very soon cometh that those who are now, or the
seed of those who are now numbered among the
people of Nephi, shall no more be numbered among
the people of Nephi.

But whosoever remaineth, and is not destroyed in
that great and dreadful day, shall be numbered
among the Lamanites, and shall become like unto
them, all, save it be a few who shall be called the dis-
ciples of the Lord; and them shall the Lamanites
pursue even until they shall become extinct. And
now, because of iniquity, this prophecy shall be ful-
filled.

And now it came to pass that after Alma had said
these things to Helaman, he blessed him, and also
his other sons; and he also blessed the earth for the
righteous' sake.

And he said: Thus saith the Lord God—Cursed
shall be the land, yea, this land, unto every nation,
kindred, tongue, and people, unto destruction,
which do wickedly, when they are fully ripe; and as I
have said so shall it be; for this is the cursing and the
blessing of God upon the land, for the Lord cannot
look upon sin with the least degree of allowance.

And now, when Alma had said these words he
blessed the church, yea, all those who should stand
fast in the faith from that time henceforth.

And when Alma had done this he departed out of
the land of Zarahemla, as if to go into the land of
Melek. And it came to pass that he was never heard
of more; as to his death or burial we know not of.

19 Kyk, dít weet ons, dat hy 'n regverdige man was; en die gerug het in die kerk rondgegaan dat hy deur die Gees opgeneem is, of begrawe is deur die hand van die Here, net soos Moses. Maar kyk, die skrifure sê dat die Here vir Moses tot Homself geneem het; en ons veronderstel dat Hy ook vir Alma in die gees ontvang het, tot Homself, daarom, om hierdie rede weet ons niks aangaande sy dood en begrafnis nie.

20 En nou het dit gebeur aan die begin van die negentiende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nepi, dat Helaman uitgegaan het onder die volk om die woord te verkondig aan hulle.

21 Want kyk, vanweë hulle oorloë met die Lamaniëte en die baie klein onenighede en steurnisse wat onder die volk was, het dit noodsaaklik geword dat die woord van God onder hulle verkondig moes word, ja, en dat 'n verordening gemaak moes word dwarsdeur die kerk.

22 Daarom, Helaman en sy broers het uitgegaan om die kerk weer te vestig in die hele land, ja, in elke stad dwarsdeur die hele land wat deur die volk van Nepi besit is. En dit het gebeur dat hulle priesters en leraars aangestel het dwarsdeur die hele land, oor al die kerke.

23 En nou het dit gebeur dat nadat Helaman en sy broers priesters en leraars aangestel het oor die kerke, dat daar 'n onenigheid ontstaan het onder hulle, en hulle wou nie ag slaan op die woorde van Helaman en sy broers nie;

24 Maar hulle het hoogmoedig geword, omdat hulle verhewe was in hul harte, vanweë hulle uitermate groot rykdom; daarom het hulle ryk geword in hul eie oë, en wou nie ag slaan op hulle woorde, om opreg te wandel voor God nie.

Behold, this we know, that he was a righteous man; and the saying went abroad in the church that he was taken up by the Spirit, or buried by the hand of the Lord, even as Moses. But behold, the scriptures saith the Lord took Moses unto himself; and we suppose that he has also received Alma in the spirit, unto himself; therefore, for this cause we know nothing concerning his death and burial.

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Helaman went forth among the people to declare the word unto them.

For behold, because of their wars with the Lamanites and the many little dissensions and disturbances which had been among the people, it became expedient that the word of God should be declared among them, yea, and that a regulation should be made throughout the church.

Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth to establish the church again in all the land, yea, in every city throughout all the land which was possessed by the people of Nephi. And it came to pass that they did appoint priests and teachers throughout all the land, over all the churches.

And now it came to pass that after Helaman and his brethren had appointed priests and teachers over the churches that there arose a dissension among them, and they would not give heed to the words of Helaman and his brethren;

But they grew proud, being lifted up in their hearts, because of their exceedingly great riches; therefore they grew rich in their own eyes, and would not give heed to their words, to walk uprightly before God.

Alma 46

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat soveel as wat nie wou ag slaan op die woorde van Helaman en sy broers nie, saamgekom het teen hulle broers.
- 2 En nou kyk, hulle was uitermate vertoornd, tot so 'n mate dat hulle vasberade was om hulle te dood.
- 3 Nou, die leier van diegene wat vertoornd was op hulle broers, was 'n groot en 'n sterk man; en sy naam was Amalikia.
- 4 En Amalikia was begerig om koning te wees; en daardie mense wat vertoornd was, was ook begerig dat hy hulle koning moes wees; en die grootste gedeelte van hulle was die ondergeskikte regters van die land, en hulle het mag gesoek.
- 5 En hulle is gelei deur die vleitaal van Amalikia, dat as hulle hom sou ondersteun en hom bevestig as hulle koning, dat hy hulle heersers sou maak oor die volk.
- 6 So is hulle weggelei deur Amalikia tot onenighede, niesteenstaande die prediking van Helaman en sy broers, ja, niesteenstaande hulle uitermate groot sorg oor die kerk, want hulle was hoëpriesters oor die kerk.
- 7 En daar was baie in die kerk wat geglo het in die vleierende woorde van Amalikia, daarom het hulle ook van die kerk afgeval; en so was die sake van die volk van Nephi uitermate haglik en gevaarlik, niesteenstaande hulle groot oorwinning wat hulle gehad het oor die Lamaniete, en hulle groot feesvierings wat hulle gehad het vanweë hulle verlossing deur die hand van die Here.
- 8 So sien ons hoe gou die kinders van mense die Here hulle God vergeet, ja, hoe gou om ongeregtheid te doen, en om weggelei te word deur die bose een.
- 9 Ja, en ons sien ook die groot boosheid wat een baie goddelose man kan veroorsaak om plaas te vind onder die kinders van mense.

Alma 46

And it came to pass that as many as would not hear-ken to the words of Helaman and his brethren were gathered together against their brethren.

And now behold, they were exceedingly wroth, in-somuch that they were determined to slay them.

Now the leader of those who were wroth against their brethren was a large and a strong man; and his name was Amalickiah.

And Amalickiah was desirous to be a king; and those people who were wroth were also desirous that he should be their king; and they were the greater part of them the lower judges of the land, and they were seeking for power.

And they had been led by the flatteries of Amalickiah, that if they would support him and es-tablish him to be their king that he would make them rulers over the people.

Thus they were led away by Amalickiah to dissen-sions, notwithstanding the preaching of Helaman and his brethren, yea, notwithstanding their exceed-ingly great care over the church, for they were high priests over the church.

And there were many in the church who believed in the flattering words of Amalickiah, therefore they dissented even from the church; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi exceedingly precarious and dangerous, notwithstanding their great victory which they had had over the Lamanites, and their great rejoicings which they had had because of their deliverance by the hand of the Lord.

Thus we see how quick the children of men do for-get the Lord their God, yea, how quick to do iniquity, and to be led away by the evil one.

Yea, and we also see the great wickedness one very wicked man can cause to take place among the chil-dren of men.

- 10 Ja, ons sien dat Amalikia, omdat hy 'n man van sluwe planne was, en 'n man van baie vleiende woorde, dat hy die harte weggelei het van baie mense om boos te handel; ja, en om te soek om die kerk van God te vernietig, en om die fondament van vryheid te vernietig wat God aan hulle gegun het, of watter seëning God op die aangesig van die land gestuur het ter wille van die regverdiges.
- 11 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe Moroni, wat die hoofbevelvoerder van die leërs van die Nefiete was, gehoor het van hierdie onenighede, was hy vertoornd op Amalikia.
- 12 En dit het gebeur dat hy sy mantel geskeur het; en hy het 'n stuk daarvan geneem en daarop geskrywe—Ter herinnering aan ons God, ons godsdiens, en vryheid, en ons vrede, ons vroue, en ons kinders—en hy het dit vasgeheg aan die punt van 'n paal.
- 13 En hy het sy helm vasgemaak, en sy borsplaat, en sy skilde, en het sy wapenrusting om sy lendene gegord; en hy het die paal geneem, wat op die punt daarvan sy geskeurde mantel gehad het, (en hy het dit die vaandel van vryheid genoem) en hy het homself neergebuig tot die aarde, en hy het kragtig gebid tot sy God vir die seëninge van vryheid om op sy broers te rus, solank as wat daar 'n groep Christene oorbly om die land te besit—
- 14 Want so is al die ware gelowiges van Christus, wat aan die kerk van God behoort het, genoem deur diegene wat nie aan die kerk behoort het nie.
- 15 En diegene wat aan die kerk behoort het, was getrou; ja, al diegene wat ware gelowiges in Christus was, het die naam van Christus blymoedig op hulle geneem, of Christene, soos hulle genoem is, vanweë hul geloof in Christus wat sou kom.
- 16 En daarom, in hierdie tyd, het Moroni gebid dat die saak van die Christene en die vryheid van die land begunstig mag word.
- 17 En dit het gebeur dat toe hy sy siel uitgestort het tot God, het hy die hele land wat suid van die land Verlatenheid was, ja, kortom, die hele land, beide in die noorde en in die suide—'n Uitverkore land, en die land van vryheid genoem.

Yea, we see that Amalickiah, because he was a man of cunning device and a man of many flattering words, that he led away the hearts of many people to do wickedly; yea, and to seek to destroy the church of God, and to destroy the foundation of liberty which God had granted unto them, or which blessing God had sent upon the face of the land for the righteous' sake.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni, who was the chief commander of the armies of the Nephites, had heard of these dissensions, he was angry with Amalickiah.

And it came to pass that he rent his coat; and he took a piece thereof, and wrote upon it—In memory of our God, our religion, and freedom, and our peace, our wives, and our children—and he fastened it upon the end of a pole.

And he fastened on his head-plate, and his breast-plate, and his shields, and girded on his armor about his loins; and he took the pole, which had on the end thereof his rent coat, (and he called it the title of liberty) and he bowed himself to the earth, and he prayed mightily unto his God for the blessings of liberty to rest upon his brethren, so long as there should a band of Christians remain to possess the land—

For thus were all the true believers of Christ, who belonged to the church of God, called by those who did not belong to the church.

And those who did belong to the church were faithful; yea, all those who were true believers in Christ took upon them, gladly, the name of Christ, or Christians as they were called, because of their belief in Christ who should come.

And therefore, at this time, Moroni prayed that the cause of the Christians, and the freedom of the land might be favored.

And it came to pass that when he had poured out his soul to God, he named all the land which was south of the land Desolation, yea, and in fine, all the land, both on the north and on the south—A chosen land, and the land of liberty.

- 18 En hy het gesê: Sekerlik sal God nie toelaat dat ons, wat verag word omdat ons die naam van Christus op ons geneem het, vertrap sal word en vernietig word, totdat ons dit op onself bring deur ons eie oortredinge nie.
- 19 En toe Moroni hierdie woorde gesê het, het hy uitgegaan onder die volk, terwyl hy die afgeskeurde deel van sy mantel in die lug waai, sodat almal die skrif mag sien wat hy geskrywe het op die afgeskeurde deel, terwyl hy met 'n harde stem uitgeroep, en gesê het:
- 20 Kyk, wie ook al hierdie vaandel oor die land wil behou, laat hulle uitkom in die krag van die Here, en 'n verbond sluit dat hulle hul regte sal handhaaf, en hulle godsdienst, sodat die Here God hulle mag seën.
- 21 En dit het gebeur dat toe Moroni hierdie woorde uitgeroep het, kyk, die volk het aangehardloop gekom met hulle wapenrusting gegord om hulle lende, terwyl hulle hul klere skeur as 'n teken, of as 'n verbond, dat hulle nie die Here hulle God sou verlaat nie; of, met ander woorde, as hulle die gebooi van God sou oortree, of in oortreding verval, en skaam sal wees om die naam van Christus op hulle te neem, sou die Here hulle verskeur net soos hulle hul klere geskeur het.
- 22 Nou, dit was die verbond wat hulle gesluit het, en hulle het hulle klere aan die voete van Moroni neergewerp, en gesê: Ons sluit 'n verbond met ons God, dat ons vernietig sal word, net soos ons broers in die land noordwaarts, as ons in oortreding sal verval; ja, Hy mag ons aan die voete van ons vyande neerwerp, net soos ons ons klere aan jou voete neergewerp het om vertrap te word onder die voete, as ons in oortreding sal verval.
- 23 Moroni het aan hulle gesê: Kyk, ons is 'n oorblyfsel van die saad van Jakob; ja, ons is 'n oorblyfsel van die saad van Josef, wie se kleed deur sy broers geskeur is in baie stukke; ja, en nou kyk, laat ons ont hou om die gebooi van God te onderhou, of ons kler sal deur ons broers geskeur word, en ons sal in die gevangenis gewerp, of verkoop, of gedood word.

And he said: Surely God shall not suffer that we, who are despised because we take upon us the name of Christ, shall be trodden down and destroyed, until we bring it upon us by our own transgressions.

And when Moroni had said these words, he went forth among the people, waving the rent part of his garment in the air, that all might see the writing which he had written upon the rent part, and crying with a loud voice, saying:

Behold, whosoever will maintain this title upon the land, let them come forth in the strength of the Lord, and enter into a covenant that they will maintain their rights, and their religion, that the Lord God may bless them.

And it came to pass that when Moroni had proclaimed these words, behold, the people came running together with their armor girded about their loins, rending their garments in token, or as a covenant, that they would not forsake the Lord their God; or, in other words, if they should transgress the commandments of God, or fall into transgression, and be ashamed to take upon them the name of Christ, the Lord should rend them even as they had rent their garments.

Now this was the covenant which they made, and they cast their garments at the feet of Moroni, saying: We covenant with our God, that we shall be destroyed, even as our brethren in the land northward, if we shall fall into transgression; yea, he may cast us at the feet of our enemies, even as we have cast our garments at thy feet to be trodden under foot, if we shall fall into transgression.

Moroni said unto them: Behold, we are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; yea, we are a remnant of the seed of Joseph, whose coat was rent by his brethren into many pieces; yea, and now behold, let us remember to keep the commandments of God, or our garments shall be rent by our brethren, and we be cast into prison, or be sold, or be slain.

24 Ja, laat ons ons vryheid bewaar as 'n oorblyfsel van Josef; ja, laat ons die woorde van Jakob onthou, voor sy dood, want kyk, hy het gesien dat 'n deel van die oorblyfsel van Josef se kleed bewaar is en nie vergaan het nie. En hy het gesê—Net soos hierdie oorblyfsel van my seun se kleed bewaar gebly het, so sal 'n oorblyfsel van die saad van my seun bewaar word deur die hand van God, en tot Homself geneem word, terwyl die oorblyfsel van die saad van Josef sal vergaan, net soos die oorblyfsel van sy kleed.

25 Nou, kyk, dit gee my siel droefheid; nogtans, my siel het vreugde in my seun, vanweë daardie deel van sy saad wat tot God geneem sal word.

26 Nou kyk, dit was die taal van Jakob.

27 En nou wie weet of die oorblyfsel van Josef se saad, wat soos sy kleed sal vergaan, miskien diegene is wat afvallig van ons geword het? Ja, en selfs dit sal onself wees as ons nie vasstaan in die geloof van Christus nie.

28 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe Moroni hierdie woorde gesê het, het hy uitgegaan, en ook uitgestuur na al die dele van die land waar daar onenighede was, en al die mense bymekaar gemaak wat begerig was om hulle vryheid te behou, om teen Amalikia te staan en diegene wat afvallig geword het, wat Amalikiahiete genoem is.

29 En dit het gebeur dat toe Amalikia sien dat die volk van Moroni talryker was as die Amalikiahiete—en hy het ook gesien dat sy mense twyfelagtig was aangaande die geregtigheid van die saak wat hulle onderneem het—daarom, omdat hy gevrees het dat hy nie sy doelwit sou bereik nie, het hy diegene onder sy mense geneem wat wou, en na die land Nefi vertrek.

30 Nou, Moroni het gedink dat dit nie raadsaam was dat die Lamaniëte nog meer krag moet hê nie; daarom het hy gedink om die volk van Amalikia af te sny, of om hulle gevange te neem en hulle gevange terug te bring, en Amalikia te dood; ja, want hy het geweet dat hy die Lamaniëte sou opstook tot toorn teen hulle, en hulle laat optrek in stryd teen hulle; en dit het hy geweet dat Amalikia sou doen sodat hy sy doelwitte mag bereik.

Yea, let us preserve our liberty as a remnant of Joseph; yea, let us remember the words of Jacob, before his death, for behold, he saw that a part of the remnant of the coat of Joseph was preserved and had not decayed. And he said—Even as this remnant of garment of my son hath been preserved, so shall a remnant of the seed of my son be preserved by the hand of God, and be taken unto himself, while the remainder of the seed of Joseph shall perish, even as the remnant of his garment.

Now behold, this giveth my soul sorrow; nevertheless, my soul hath joy in my son, because of that part of his seed which shall be taken unto God.

Now behold, this was the language of Jacob.

And now who knoweth but what the remnant of the seed of Joseph, which shall perish as his garment, are those who have dissented from us? Yea, and even it shall be ourselves if we do not stand fast in the faith of Christ.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words he went forth, and also sent forth in all the parts of the land where there were dissensions, and gathered together all the people who were desirous to maintain their liberty, to stand against Amalickiah and those who had dissented, who were called Amalickiahites.

And it came to pass that when Amalickiah saw that the people of Moroni were more numerous than the Amalickiahites—and he also saw that his people were doubtful concerning the justice of the cause in which they had undertaken—therefore, fearing that he should not gain the point, he took those of his people who would and departed into the land of Nephi.

Now Moroni thought it was not expedient that the Lamanites should have any more strength; therefore he thought to cut off the people of Amalickiah, or to take them and bring them back, and put Amalickiah to death; yea, for he knew that he would stir up the Lamanites to anger against them, and cause them to come to battle against them; and this he knew that Amalickiah would do that he might obtain his purposes.

31 Daarom het Moroni gedink dat dit raadsaam was dat hy sy leërs neem, wat hulleself bymeakaargemaak het, en hulself bewapen het, en 'n verbond gesluit om die vrede te bewaar—en dit het gebeur dat hy sy leër geneem het en uitgemaarsjeer het met sy tente die wildernis in, om die koers van Amalikia in die wildernis af te sny.

32 En dit het gebeur dat hy gedoen het soos hy begeer het, en het die wildernis binnegemaarsjeer en die leërs van Amalikia vooruitgegaan.

33 En dit het gebeur dat Amalikia met 'n klein aantal van sy manne gevlug het, en die oorblywendes is oorlewer in die hande van Moroni en is teruggeneem na die land Zarahemla.

34 Nou, Moroni, omdat hy 'n man was wat aangestel is deur die hoofregters en die stem van die volk, daarom het hy mag gehad volgens sy wil met die leërs van die Nefiete, om gesag te vestig en uit te oefen oor hulle.

35 En dit het gebeur dat wie ook al van die Amalikiahiete wat nie 'n verbond wou sluit om die saak van vryheid te ondersteun nie, sodat hulle 'n vrye regering kon handhaaf nie, het hy laat doodmaak; en daar was maar min wat die verbond van vryheid verwerp het.

36 En dit het ook gebeur, dat hy die vaandel van vryheid laat hys het op elke toring wat in die hele land was, wat besit was deur die Nefiete, en so het Moroni die banier van vryheid onder die Nefiete gevestig.

37 En hulle het begin om weer vrede te hê in die land; en so het hulle vrede gehandhaaf in die land tot byna aan die einde van die negentiende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters.

38 En Helaman en die hoëpriesters het ook orde gehandhaaf in die kerk; ja, en wel vir 'n tydperk van vier jaar het hulle baie vrede en vreugde in die kerk gehad.

39 En dit het gebeur dat daar baie was wat gesterwe het met vaste geloof dat hulle siele verlos is deur die Here Jesus Christus; so het hulle uit hierdie lewe met vreugde gegaan.

Therefore Moroni thought it was expedient that he should take his armies, who had gathered themselves together, and armed themselves, and entered into a covenant to keep the peace—and it came to pass that he took his army and marched out with his tents into the wilderness, to cut off the course of Amalickiah in the wilderness.

And it came to pass that he did according to his desires, and marched forth into the wilderness, and headed the armies of Amalickiah.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah fled with a small number of his men, and the remainder were delivered up into the hands of Moroni and were taken back into the land of Zarahemla.

Now, Moroni being a man who was appointed by the chief judges and the voice of the people, therefore he had power according to his will with the armies of the Nephites, to establish and to exercise authority over them.

And it came to pass that whomsoever of the Amalickiahites that would not enter into a covenant to support the cause of freedom, that they might maintain a free government, he caused to be put to death; and there were but few who denied the covenant of freedom.

And it came to pass also, that he caused the title of liberty to be hoisted upon every tower which was in all the land, which was possessed by the Nephites; and thus Moroni planted the standard of liberty among the Nephites.

And they began to have peace again in the land; and thus they did maintain peace in the land until nearly the end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges.

And Helaman and the high priests did also maintain order in the church; yea, even for the space of four years did they have much peace and rejoicing in the church.

And it came to pass that there were many who died, firmly believing that their souls were redeemed by the Lord Jesus Christ; thus they went out of the world rejoicing.

40 En daar was sommige wat van koors gesterwe het, wat in sommige tye van die jaar baie voorgekom het in die land—maar nie soveel aan koors nie, vanweë die uitstekende hoedanighede van die baie plante en wortels wat God berei het om die oorsaak van siektes weg te neem, waaraan die mense onderhewig was vanweë die aard van die klimaat.

41 Maar daar was baie wat van ouderdom dood is; en diegene wat dood is in die geloof van Christus, is gelukkig in Hom, soos ons noodwendig moet veronderstel.

And there were some who died with fevers, which at some seasons of the year were very frequent in the land—but not so much so with fevers, because of the excellent qualities of the many plants and roots which God had prepared to remove the cause of diseases, to which men were subject by the nature of the climate—

But there were many who died with old age; and those who died in the faith of Christ are happy in him, as we must needs suppose.

Alma 47

- 1 Nou sal ons terugkeer in ons verslag tot Amalikia en diegene wat met hom die wildernis in gevlug het, want, kyk, hy het diegene geneem wat met hom gegaan het, en opgegaan in die land Nepi onder die Lamaniete, en het die Lamaniete opgestook tot toorn teen die volk van Nepi, in soverre dat die koning van die Lamaniete 'n aankondiging uitgestuur het dwarsdeur sy hele land, onder al sy mense, dat hulle weer bymekaar moes kom om op te trek in die stryd teen die Nefiete.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat toe die aankondiging uitgegaan het onder hulle, was hulle uitermate bevrees; ja, hulle het gevrees om die koning te mishag, en hulle het ook gevrees om in die stryd te gaan teen die Nefiete uit vrees dat hulle hul lewens sou verloor. En dit het gebeur dat hulle nie wou nie, of die grootste gedeelte van hulle wou nie die bevel van die koning gehoorsaam nie.
- 3 En nou het dit gebeur dat die koning toornig was vanweë hulle ongehoorsaamheid; daarom het hy Amalikia die bevel gegee oor daardie gedeelte van sy leër wat gehoorsaam was aan sy bevel, en het hom beveel dat hy moes uitgaan en hulle dwing om die wapens op te neem.
- 4 Nou kyk, dit was die begeerte van Amalikia; want omdat hy 'n baie geslepe man was om boosheid te doen, daarom het hy die plan in sy hart gelê om die koning van die Lamaniete te onttron.
- 5 En nou het hy bevel gekry oor daardie gedeeltes van die Lamaniete wat ten gunste was van die koning; en hy het gesoek om guns te verkry van diegene wat nie gehoorsaam was nie; daarom het hy voortgegaan na die plek wat Onida genoem is, want al die Lamaniete het daarheen gevlug; want hulle het die leër in aantog gewaar, en, veronderstellend dat hulle kom om hulle te vernietig, daarom het hulle na Onida gevlug, na die plek van wapens.
- 6 En hulle het 'n man aangestel om 'n koning en 'n leier oor hulle te wees, omdat hulle seker was in hulle gedagtes met 'n vasberade besluit dat hulle nie gedwing sou word om teen die Nefiete op te trek nie.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat hulle hulself bymekaar maak het bo-op die berg wat Antipas genoem is, ter voorbereiding vir die stryd.

Alma 47

Now we will return in our record to Amalickiah and those who had fled with him into the wilderness; for, behold, he had taken those who went with him, and went up in the land of Nephi among the Lamanites, and did stir up the Lamanites to anger against the people of Nephi, insomuch that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation throughout all his land, among all his people, that they should gather themselves together again to go to battle against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that when the proclamation had gone forth among them they were exceedingly afraid; yea, they feared to displease the king, and they also feared to go to battle against the Nephites lest they should lose their lives. And it came to pass that they would not, or the more part of them would not, obey the commandments of the king.

And now it came to pass that the king was wroth because of their disobedience; therefore he gave Amalickiah the command of that part of his army which was obedient unto his commands, and commanded him that he should go forth and compel them to arms.

Now behold, this was the desire of Amalickiah; for he being a very subtle man to do evil therefore he laid the plan in his heart to dethrone the king of the Lamanites.

And now he had got the command of those parts of the Lamanites who were in favor of the king; and he sought to gain favor of those who were not obedient; therefore he went forward to the place which was called Onidah, for thither had all the Lamanites fled; for they discovered the army coming, and, supposing that they were coming to destroy them, therefore they fled to Onidah, to the place of arms.

And they had appointed a man to be a king and a leader over them, being fixed in their minds with a determined resolution that they would not be subjected to go against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that they had gathered themselves together upon the top of the mount which was called Antipas, in preparation to battle.

- 8 Nou was dit nie Amalikia se voorneme om hulle die stryd aan te sê volgens die bevele van die koning nie; maar kyk, dit was sy voorneme om die guns te wen van die leërs van die Lamaniete, sodat hy homself aan hulle hoof kon plaas en die koning onttron en besit neem van die koninkryk.
- 9 En kyk, dit het gebeur dat hy sy leërs hulle tente laat opslaan het in die vallei wat naby die berg Antipas was.
- 10 En dit het gebeur dat toe dit nag was, het hy 'n geheime boodskapper na die berg Antipas gestuur om te verneem of die leier van diegene wat op die berg was, wie se naam Lehonti was, of hy sou afkom na die voet van die berg, omdat hy begeer het om met hom te spreek.
- 11 En dit het gebeur dat toe Lehonti die boodskap ontvang het, het hy nie gedurf om af te gaan na die voet van die berg nie. En dit het gebeur dat Amalikia weer die tweede keer gestuur het om hom te vra om af te kom. En dit het gebeur dat Lehonti nie wou nie; en hy het weer die derde keer gestuur.
- 12 En dit het gebeur dat toe Amalikia vind dat hy nie vir Lehonti kon kry om van die berg af te kom nie, het hy teen die berg opgegaan, amper tot by Lehonti se kamp; en hy het weer die vierde keer sy boodskap na Lehonti gestuur om te vra dat hy moes afkom, en dat hy sy wagte saam met hom moes bring.
- 13 En dit het gebeur dat toe Lehonti afgekom het met sy wagte na Amalikia, dat Amalikia wou hê hy moes afkom met sy leër in die nag, en daardie manne omsingel in hulle kampe oor wie die koning hom bevel gegee het, en dat hy hulle in Lehonti se hande sou oorgee, as hy vir hom (Amalikia) 'n tweede leier sou maak oor die hele leër.
- 14 En dit het gebeur dat Lehonti afgekom het met sy manne en die manne van Amalikia omsingel het, sodat voor hulle wakker geword het met die aanbreek van die dag, was hulle omsingel deur die leërs van Lehonti.

Now it was not Amalickiah's intention to give them battle according to the commandments of the king; but behold, it was his intention to gain favor with the armies of the Lamanites, that he might place himself at their head and dethrone the king and take possession of the kingdom.

And behold, it came to pass that he caused his army to pitch their tents in the valley which was near the mount Antipas.

And it came to pass that when it was night he sent a secret embassy into the mount Antipas, desiring that the leader of those who were upon the mount, whose name was Lehonti, that he should come down to the foot of the mount, for he desired to speak with him.

And it came to pass that when Lehonti received the message he durst not go down to the foot of the mount. And it came to pass that Amalickiah sent again the second time, desiring him to come down. And it came to pass that Lehonti would not; and he sent again the third time.

And it came to pass that when Amalickiah found that he could not get Lehonti to come down off from the mount, he went up into the mount, nearly to Lehonti's camp; and he sent again the fourth time his message unto Lehonti, desiring that he would come down, and that he would bring his guards with him.

And it came to pass that when Lehonti had come down with his guards to Amalickiah, that Amalickiah desired him to come down with his army in the night-time, and surround those men in their camps over whom the king had given him command, and that he would deliver them up into Lehonti's hands, if he would make him (Amalickiah) a second leader over the whole army.

And it came to pass that Lehonti came down with his men and surrounded the men of Amalickiah, so that before they awoke at the dawn of day they were surrounded by the armies of Lehonti.

15 En dit het gebeur dat toe hulle sien dat hulle om-
singel is, het hulle gepleit by Amalikia dat hy hulle
moes toelaat om by hulle broers aan te sluit sodat
hulle nie vernietig mag word nie. Nou, dit was die
juiste ding wat Amalikia begeer het.

16 En dit het gebeur dat hy sy manne oorgegee het,
teenstrydig met die bevele van die koning. Nou, dit
was die ding wat Amalikia wou hê, dat hy sy doelein-
des mag bereik om die koning te onttoon.

17 Nou was dit die gebruik onder die Lamaniete, as
hulle hoofleier gedood word, om die tweede leier aan
te stel om hulle hoofleier te wees.

18 En dit het gebeur dat Amalikia een van sy diens-
knegte vir Lehonti met verdrag gif laat ingee het so-
dat hy gesterf het.

19 Nou, toe Lehonti dood is, het die Lamaniete
Amalikia aangestel om hulle leier en hulle hoofbe-
velvoerder te wees.

20 En dit het gebeur dat Amalikia met sy leërs gemar-
sjeer het (want hy het sy begeertes vervul) na die
land Nepi, na die stad Nepi, wat die hoofstad was.

21 En die koning het uitgekom om hom te ontmoet
met sy wagte, want hy het veronderstel dat Amalikia
sy bevele uitgevoer het, en dat Amalikia so 'n groot
leër bymekaar gemaak het om op te trek teen die
Nefiete in die stryd.

22 Maar kyk, toe die koning uitkom om hom te ont-
moet, het Amalikia sy diensknegte laat vooruitgaan
om die koning te ontmoet. En hulle het gegaan en
hulle voor die koning neergebuig, asof om hom te
eerbiedig vanweë sy grootsheid.

23 En dit het gebeur dat die koning sy hand uitge-
steek het om hulle op te rig, soos dit die gebruik by
die Lamaniete was, as 'n teken van vrede, welke ge-
bruik hulle van die Nefiete geneem het.

24 En dit het gebeur dat toe hy die eerste van die
grond af opgerig het, kyk, hy het die koning in die
hart gesteek; en hy het op die grond neergeval.

25 Nou het die diensknegte van die koning gevlug; en
die diensknegte van Amalikia het 'n geroep laat op-
gaan, en gesê:

26 Kyk, die diensknegte van die koning het hom in
die hart gesteek, en hy het geval, en hulle het gevlug;
sien, kom en kyk.

And it came to pass that when they saw that they
were surrounded, they pled with Amalickiah that he
would suffer them to fall in with their brethren, that
they might not be destroyed. Now this was the very
thing which Amalickiah desired.

And it came to pass that he delivered his men, con-
trary to the commands of the king. Now this was the
thing that Amalickiah desired, that he might accom-
plish his designs in dethroning the king.

Now it was the custom among the Lamanites, if
their chief leader was killed, to appoint the second
leader to be their chief leader.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah caused that
one of his servants should administer poison by de-
grees to Lehonti, that he died.

Now, when Lehonti was dead, the Lamanites ap-
pointed Amalickiah to be their leader and their chief
commander.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah marched with
his armies (for he had gained his desires) to the land
of Nephi, to the city of Nephi, which was the chief
city.

And the king came out to meet him with his
guards, for he supposed that Amalickiah had ful-
filled his commands, and that Amalickiah had gath-
ered together so great an army to go against the
Nephites to battle.

But behold, as the king came out to meet him
Amalickiah caused that his servants should go forth
to meet the king. And they went and bowed them-
selves before the king, as if to reverence him because
of his greatness.

And it came to pass that the king put forth his
hand to raise them, as was the custom with the
Lamanites, as a token of peace, which custom they
had taken from the Nephites.

And it came to pass that when he had raised the
first from the ground, behold he stabbed the king to
the heart; and he fell to the earth.

Now the servants of the king fled; and the servants
of Amalickiah raised a cry, saying:

Behold, the servants of the king have stabbed him
to the heart, and he has fallen and they have fled; be-
hold, come and see.

- 27 En dit het gebeur dat Amalikia beveel het dat sy leërs moes opmarsjeer en sien wat gebeur het met die koning; en toe hulle by die plek kom, en die koning gevind het wat in sy bloed lê, het Amalikia voorgegee om toornig te wees, en het gesê: Wie ook al die koning liefgehad het, laat hom uitgaan, en sy diensknegte agternasit sodat hulle gedood kan word.
- 28 En dit het gebeur dat hulle almal wat die koning liefgehad het, toe hulle hierdie woorde hoor, uitgekome het en die koning se diensknegte agternagesit het.
- 29 Nou, toe die diensknegte van die koning sien dat 'n leër hulle agternasit, was hulle weer bang, en het die wildernis ingevlug, en het oorgekom in die land Zarahemla en aangesluit by die volk van Ammon.
- 30 En die leër wat hulle agternagesit het, het teruggekeer, nadat hulle hul tevergeefs agtervolg het; en so het Amalikia, deur sy bedrog, die harte van die volk gewen.
- 31 En dit het gebeur op die volgende dag dat hy die stad Nephi binnegegaan het met sy leërs, en besit geneem het van die stad.
- 32 En nou het dit gebeur dat die koningin, toe sy gehoor het dat die koning gedood is—want Amalikia het 'n boodskapper gestuur na die koningin om haar mee te deel dat die koning gedood is deur sy diensknegte, dat hy hulle agternagesit het met sy leër, maar dat dit tevergeefs was, en dat hulle ontvlug het—
- 33 Daarom, toe die koningin hierdie boodskap ontvang het, het sy na Amalikia gestuur, om te vra dat hy die mense van die stad moes spaar; en sy het hom ook gevra dat hy na haar toe moes kom; en sy het hom ook gevra dat hy getuies moes bring saam met hom om te getuig aangaande die dood van die koning.
- 34 En dit het gebeur dat Amalikia dieselfde diensknegte geneem het wat die koning gedood het, en hulle almal wat saam met hom was, en het ingegaan na die koningin, na die plek waar sy gesit het; en hulle het almal aan haar getuig dat die koning gedood is deur sy eie diensknegte; en hulle het ook gesê: Hulle het gevlug; getuig dit nie teen hulle nie? En so het hulle die koningin tevrede gestel aangaande die dood van die koning.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah commanded that his armies should march forth and see what had happened to the king; and when they had come to the spot, and found the king lying in his gore, Amalickiah pretended to be wroth, and said: Whosoever loved the king, let him go forth, and pursue his servants that they may be slain.

And it came to pass that all they who loved the king, when they heard these words, came forth and pursued after the servants of the king.

Now when the servants of the king saw an army pursuing after them, they were frightened again, and fled into the wilderness, and came over into the land of Zarahemla and joined the people of Ammon.

And the army which pursued after them returned, having pursued after them in vain; and thus Amalickiah, by his fraud, gained the hearts of the people.

And it came to pass on the morrow he entered the city Nephi with his armies, and took possession of the city.

And now it came to pass that the queen, when she had heard that the king was slain—for Amalickiah had sent an embassy to the queen informing her that the king had been slain by his servants, that he had pursued them with his army, but it was in vain, and they had made their escape—

Therefore, when the queen had received this message she sent unto Amalickiah, desiring him that he would spare the people of the city; and she also desired him that he should come in unto her; and she also desired him that he should bring witnesses with him to testify concerning the death of the king.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah took the same servant that slew the king, and all them who were with him, and went in unto the queen, unto the place where she sat; and they all testified unto her that the king was slain by his own servants; and they said also: They have fled; does not this testify against them? And thus they satisfied the queen concerning the death of the king.

35 En dit het gebeur dat Amalikia die koningin se guns gesoek het, en het haar vir hom tot vrou geneem; en so deur sy bedrog, en met die hulp van sy listige diensknegte, het hy die koninkryk bekom; ja, hy is as koning erken dwarsdeur die land, onder al die volke van die Lamaniete, wat bestaan het uit die Lamaniete en die Lemueliete en die Ismaeliete, en al die afvalliges van die Nefiete, vanaf die heerskappy van Nefi tot die huidige tyd.

36 Nou hierdie afvalliges het dieselfde onderrig en dieselfde inligting van die Nefiete gehad, ja, hulle is onderrig in dieselfde kennis van die Here, nogtans, dit is vreemd dat, nie lank na hulle afvalligheid nie het hulle meer verhard en onboetvaardig geword, en wilder, boser en wreder as die Lamaniete—want hulle het die oorleweringe van die Lamaniete ingedrink; en hulle oorgegee aan luiheid, en alle wyses van wellustigheid; ja, hulle het die Here hulle God heeltemal vergeet.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah sought the favor of the queen, and took her unto him to wife; and thus by his fraud, and by the assistance of his cunning servants, he obtained the kingdom; yea, he was acknowledged king throughout all the land, among all the people of the Lamanites, who were composed of the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites, and all the dissenters of the Nephites, from the reign of Nephi down to the present time.

Now these dissenters, having the same instruction and the same information of the Nephites, yea, having been instructed in the same knowledge of the Lord, nevertheless, it is strange to relate, not long after their dissensions they became more hardened and impenitent, and more wild, wicked and ferocious than the Lamanites—drinking in with the traditions of the Lamanites; giving way to indolence, and all manner of lasciviousness; yea, entirely forgetting the Lord their God.

Alma 48

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat, sodra Amalikia die koninkryk bekom het, het hy begin om die harte van die Lamaniete aan te vuur teen die volk van Nepi; ja, hy het manne aangestel om met die Lamaniete te spreek van hulle torings af, teen die Nefiete.
- 2 En so het hy hulle harte aangevuur teen die Nefiete, in soverre dat teen die einde van die negentiende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters, omdat hy sy planne tot dusver verwesenlik het, ja, en koning gemaak is oor die Lamaniete, het hy ook gesoek om te heers oor die hele land, ja, en al die mense wat in die land was, die Nefiete sowel as die Lamaniete.
- 3 Daarom het hy sy planne verwesenlik, want hy het die harte van die Lamaniete verhard en hulle verstand verblind, en hulle opgestook tot toorn, in soverre dat hy 'n talryke leërskare byeengebring het om in die stryd op te trek teen die Nefiete.
- 4 Want hy was vasberade, vanweë die grootte van die getal van sy volk, om die Nefiete te oorweldig en om hulle in slawerny te bring.
- 5 En dus het hy hoofkapteins aangestel van die Zoramiete, omdat hulle die beste vertrouwd was met die sterkte van die Nefiete, en hulle plekke van skuiling, en die swakste dele van hulle stede; daarom het hy hulle aangestel om hoofkapteins te wees oor sy leërs.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat hulle hul kamp opgeneem, en voortbeweeg het na die land Zarahemla die wildernis in.
- 7 Nou het dit gebeur dat terwyl Amalikia aldus besig was om mag te verkry deur bedrog en lis, was Moroni aan die anderkant, besig om die gedagtes van die volk voor te berei om getrou te wees aan die Here hulle God.
- 8 Ja, hy was besig om die leërs van die Nefiete te versterk, en om klein vestings op te rig, of plekke van skuiling; deur walle van grond rondom op te werp om sy leërs te omring, en ook deur mure van klip te bou om hulle te omsluit, rondom hulle stede en die grense van hulle landerye; ja, oral rondom die land.

Alma 48

And now it came to pass that, as soon as Amalickiah had obtained the kingdom he began to inspire the hearts of the Lamanites against the people of Nephi; yea, he did appoint men to speak unto the Lamanites from their towers, against the Nephites.

And thus he did inspire their hearts against the Nephites, insomuch that in the latter end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges, he having accomplished his designs thus far, yea, having been made king over the Lamanites, he sought also to reign over all the land, yea, and all the people who were in the land, the Nephites as well as the Lamanites.

Therefore he had accomplished his design, for he had hardened the hearts of the Lamanites and blinded their minds, and stirred them up to anger, insomuch that he had gathered together a numerous host to go to battle against the Nephites.

For he was determined, because of the greatness of the number of his people, to overpower the Nephites and to bring them into bondage.

And thus he did appoint chief captains of the Zoramites, they being the most acquainted with the strength of the Nephites, and their places of resort, and the weakest parts of their cities; therefore he appointed them to be chief captains over his armies.

And it came to pass that they took their camp, and moved forth toward the land of Zarahemla in the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that while Amalickiah had thus been obtaining power by fraud and deceit, Moroni, on the other hand, had been preparing the minds of the people to be faithful unto the Lord their God.

Yea, he had been strengthening the armies of the Nephites, and erecting small forts, or places of resort; throwing up banks of earth round about to enclose his armies, and also building walls of stone to encircle them about, round about their cities and the borders of their lands; yea, all round about the land.

9 En in hulle swakste versterkings het hy die groter getal manskappe geplaas; en so het hy die land gefortifiseer en versterk wat deur die Nefiete besit is.

10 En so was hy besig om voor te berei om hulle vryheid te verdedig, hulle landerye, hulle vroue, en hulle kinders, en hulle vrede, en dat hulle vir die Here hulle God mag lewe, en dat hulle dit mag handhaaf wat deur hulle vyande die saak van die Christene genoem is.

11 En Moroni was 'n sterk en 'n magtige man; hy was 'n man van 'n volmaakte begrip; ja, 'n man wat nie behae geskep het in bloedvergieting nie; 'n man wie se siel hom verbly het in die vryheid en onafhanklikheid van sy land, en sy broers van knegskap en slawerny;

12 Ja, 'n man wie se hart geswel het met danksegging aan sy God, vir die vele voorregte en seëninge wat Hy aan sy mense geskenk het; 'n man wat uitermate gearbei het vir die welsyn en veiligheid van sy volk.

13 Ja, en hy was 'n man wat standvastig was in die geloof van Christus, en hy het met 'n eed gesweer om sy volk, sy regte, en sy land, en sy godsdiens te verdedig, en wel tot die verlies van sy bloed.

14 Nou is die Nefiete geleer om hulself te verdedig teen hulle vyande, en wel tot die vergieting van bloed as dit nodig was; ja, en hulle is ook geleer om nooit aanstoot te gee nie, ja, en om nooit die swaard op te hef nie behalwe as dit was teen 'n vyand, behalwe as dit was om hulle lewens te bewaar.

15 En dit was hulle geloof, dat deur so te doen sou God hulle voorspoedig maak in die land, of met ander woorde, as hulle getrou was in die onderhouding van die gebooie van God, dat Hy hulle voorspoedig sou maak in die land; ja, hulle waarsku om te vlug, of om voor te berei vir oorlog, ooreenkomstig hulle gevaar.

And in their weakest fortifications he did place the greater number of men; and thus he did fortify and strengthen the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And thus he was preparing to support their liberty, their lands, their wives, and their children, and their peace, and that they might live unto the Lord their God, and that they might maintain that which was called by their enemies the cause of Christians.

And Moroni was a strong and a mighty man; he was a man of a perfect understanding; yea, a man that did not delight in bloodshed; a man whose soul did joy in the liberty and the freedom of his country, and his brethren from bondage and slavery;

Yea, a man whose heart did swell with thanksgiving to his God, for the many privileges and blessings which he bestowed upon his people; a man who did labor exceedingly for the welfare and safety of his people.

Yea, and he was a man who was firm in the faith of Christ, and he had sworn with an oath to defend his people, his rights, and his country, and his religion, even to the loss of his blood.

Now the Nephites were taught to defend themselves against their enemies, even to the shedding of blood if it were necessary; yea, and they were also taught never to give an offense, yea, and never to raise the sword except it were against an enemy, except it were to preserve their lives.

And this was their faith, that by so doing God would prosper them in the land, or in other words, if they were faithful in keeping the commandments of God that he would prosper them in the land; yea, warn them to flee, or to prepare for war, according to their danger;

- 16 En ook, dat God dit aan hulle bekend sou maak waarheen hulle moes gaan om hulleself te verdedig teen hulle vyande, en deur dit so te doen, sou die Here hulle verlos; en dit was die geloof van Moroni, en sy hart het hom daarin verbly; nie in die vergieting van bloed nie maar om goed te doen, deur sy mense te bewaar; ja, deur die gebooië van God te onderhou, ja, en ongeregtigheid te weerstaan.
- 17 Ja, voorwaar, voorwaar, ek sê vir julle, as alle mense gewees het, en was en altyd sou wees soos Moroni, kyk, al die magte van die hel sou geskud gewees het vir ewig; ja, die duiwel sou nooit mag hê oor die harte van die kinders van mense nie.
- 18 Kyk, hy was 'n man soos Ammon, die seun van Mosia, ja, en ook soos die ander seuns van Mosia, ja, en ook Alma en sy seuns, want hulle was almal manne van God.
- 19 Nou kyk, Helaman en sy broers was nie minder diensbaar aan die volk as Moroni nie; want hulle het die woord van God gepreek, en hulle het alle mense wat ook al wou ag slaan op hulle woorde gedoop tot bekering.
- 20 En so het hulle uitgegaan, en die volk het hulle verootmoedig vanweë hulle woorde, in soverre dat hulle hoog begunstig was deur die Here, en dus was hulle vry van oorloë en twiste onder hulleself, ja, en wel vir 'n tydperk van vier jaar.
- 21 Maar, soos ek gesê het, teen die einde van die negentiende jaar, ja, niesteenstaande hulle vrede onder mekaar, was hulle teësinig verplig om teen hulle broers, die Lamaniete, te veg.
- 22 Ja, en kortom, hulle oorloë het nooit opgehou vir 'n tydperk van baie jare met die Lamaniete, niesteenstaande hulle groot teësinigheid nie.
- 23 Nou, hulle was jammer om wapens op te neem teen die Lamaniete, omdat hulle nie behae geskep het in die vergieting van bloed nie; ja, en dit was nie al nie—hulle was jammer om die oorsaak te wees om sovele van hulle broers uit hierdie wêreld te stuur, in 'n ewige wêreld in, onvoorbereid om hulle God te ontmoet.

And also, that God would make it known unto them whither they should go to defend themselves against their enemies, and by so doing, the Lord would deliver them; and this was the faith of Moroni, and his heart did glory in it; not in the shedding of blood but in doing good, in preserving his people, yea, in keeping the commandments of God, yea, and resisting iniquity.

Yea, verily, verily I say unto you, if all men had been, and were, and ever would be, like unto Moroni, behold, the very powers of hell would have been shaken forever; yea, the devil would never have power over the hearts of the children of men.

Behold, he was a man like unto Ammon, the son of Mosiah, yea, and even the other sons of Mosiah, yea, and also Alma and his sons, for they were all men of God.

Now behold, Helaman and his brethren were no less serviceable unto the people than was Moroni; for they did preach the word of God, and they did baptize unto repentance all men whosoever would hearken unto their words.

And thus they went forth, and the people did humble themselves because of their words, in so much that they were highly favored of the Lord, and thus they were free from wars and contentions among themselves, yea, even for the space of four years.

But, as I have said, in the latter end of the nineteenth year, yea, notwithstanding their peace amongst themselves, they were compelled reluctantly to contend with their brethren, the Lamanites.

Yea, and in fine, their wars never did cease for the space of many years with the Lamanites, notwithstanding their much reluctance.

Now, they were sorry to take up arms against the Lamanites, because they did not delight in the shedding of blood; yea, and this was not all—they were sorry to be the means of sending so many of their brethren out of this world into an eternal world, unprepared to meet their God.

24 Nogtans, hulle kon nie toelaat om hulle lewens neer te lê nie, sodat hulle vroue en kinders uitgemoor word deur die barbaarse wreedheid van diegene wat eens hulle broers was, ja, en wat afgeval het van hul kerk, en hulle verlaat het, en gegaan het om hulle te vernietig deur aan te sluit by die Lamaniete nie.

25 Ja, hulle kon nie verdra dat hulle broers hulle moes verheug oor die bloed van die Nefiete nie, so lank daar nog eniges was wat die gebooie van God sou onderhou, want die belofte van die Here was, as hulle sy gebooie sou onderhou, sou hulle voorspoedig wees in die land.

Nevertheless, they could not suffer to lay down their lives, that their wives and their children should be massacred by the barbarous cruelty of those who were once their brethren, yea, and had dissented from their church, and had left them and had gone to destroy them by joining the Lamanites.

Yea, they could not bear that their brethren should rejoice over the blood of the Nephites, so long as there were any who should keep the commandments of God, for the promise of the Lord was, if they should keep his commandments they should prosper in the land.

Alma 49

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur in die elfde maand van die negentiende jaar, op die tiende dag van die maand, is die leërs van die Lamaniete gewaar wat nader kom aan die land Ammonihah.
- 2 En kyk, die stad was herbou, en Moroni het 'n leër opgestel by die grense van die stad, en hulle het grond rondom opgewerp om hulle te beskerm teen die pyle en die klippe van die Lamaniete; want kyk, hulle het geveg met klippe en met pyle.
- 3 Kyk, ek het gesê dat die stad Ammonihah herbou was. Ek sê vir julle, ja, dat dit gedeeltelik herbou was; en omdat die Lamaniete dit eenkeer vernietig het vanweë die ongeregtigheid van die volk, het hulle veronderstel dat dit weer vir hulle 'n maklike prooi sou word.
- 4 Maar kyk, hoe groot was hulle teleurstelling; want kyk, die Nefiete het 'n wal van grond rondom hulle opgewerp, wat so hoog was dat die Lamaniete nie hulle klippe en hulle pyle op hulle kon werp dat dit 'n uitwerking kon hê nie, nóg kon hulle hul oorval, behalwe by hulle plek van ingang.
- 5 Nou op hierdie tydstip was die hoofkapteins van die Lamaniete uitermate verbaas, vanweë die wysheid van die Nefiete om hulle plekke van veiligheid voor te berei.
- 6 Nou het die leiers van die Lamaniete veronderstel, as gevolg van die grootheid van hulle getalle, ja, hulle het veronderstel dat hulle die voorreg sou hê om op hulle af te kom soos hulle tot dusver gedoen het; ja, en hulle het hulself ook voorberei met skilde, en met borsplate; en hulle het hulself ook voorberei met klere van vel, ja, baie dik klere om hulle naaktheid te bedek.
- 7 En omdat hulle aldus voorberei was, het hulle veronderstel dat hulle maklik hulle broers sou oorweldig en onderwerp aan die juk van slawerny, of hulle dood en uitmoor volgens hulle welbehae.
- 8 Maar kyk, tot hulle uiterste verbasing, was hulle voorberei vir hulle, op 'n wyse wat nog nooit bekend was onder die kinders van Lehi nie. Nou, hulle was gereed vir die Lamaniete, om te veg volgens die opdragte van Moroni.

Alma 49

And now it came to pass in the eleventh month of the nineteenth year, on the tenth day of the month, the armies of the Lamanites were seen approaching towards the land of Ammonihah.

And behold, the city had been rebuilt, and Moroni had stationed an army by the borders of the city, and they had cast up dirt round about to shield them from the arrows and the stones of the Lamanites; for behold, they fought with stones and with arrows.

Behold, I said that the city of Ammonihah had been rebuilt. I say unto you, yea, that it was in part rebuilt; and because the Lamanites had destroyed it once because of the iniquity of the people, they supposed that it would again become an easy prey for them.

But behold, how great was their disappointment; for behold, the Nephites had dug up a ridge of earth round about them, which was so high that the Lamanites could not cast their stones and their arrows at them that they might take effect, neither could they come upon them save it was by their place of entrance.

Now at this time the chief captains of the Lamanites were astonished exceedingly, because of the wisdom of the Nephites in preparing their places of security.

Now the leaders of the Lamanites had supposed, because of the greatness of their numbers, yea, they supposed that they should be privileged to come upon them as they had hitherto done; yea, and they had also prepared themselves with shields, and with breastplates; and they had also prepared themselves with garments of skins, yea, very thick garments to cover their nakedness.

And being thus prepared they supposed that they should easily overpower and subject their brethren to the yoke of bondage, or slay and massacre them according to their pleasure.

But behold, to their uttermost astonishment, they were prepared for them, in a manner which never had been known among the children of Lehi. Now they were prepared for the Lamanites, to battle after the manner of the instructions of Moroni.

- 9 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete, of die Amalikiahiete, uitermate verbaas was oor hulle manier van voorbereiding vir oorlog.
- 10 Nou, as koning Amalikia afgekom het uit die land Nepi, aan die hoof van sy leër, sou hy miskien die Lamaniete die Nefiete laat aanval het by die stad Ammoniha; want kyk, hy het nie omgee vir die bloed van sy volk nie.
- 11 Maar kyk, Amalikia het nie self afgekom om te veg nie. En kyk, sy hoofkapteins het nie gedurf om die Nefiete aan te val by die stad Ammoniha nie, want Moroni het die bestuur van sake gewysig onder die Nefiete, in soverre dat die Lamaniete teleurgesteld was oor hulle plekke van skuiling en hulle kon nie op hulle afkom nie.
- 12 Daarom het hulle teruggetrek in die wildernis, en hulle kamp opgeneem en gemarsjeer in die rigting van die land Noag, veronderstellend dat dit die tweede beste plek was vir hulle om teen die Nefiete op te trek.
- 13 Want hulle het nie geweet dat Moroni sy forte van veiligheid gebou of versterk het vir elke stad in die hele land rondomheen nie; daarom het hulle voortgemarsjeer na die land Noag met 'n vaste voorneme; ja, hulle hoofkapteins het na vore gekom en het 'n eed geneem dat hulle die volk van daardie stad sou vernietig.
- 14 Maar kyk, tot hulle verbasing, het die stad Noag, wat tot dusver 'n swak plek was, nou, deur Moroni se toedoen, sterk geword, ja, en wel om die sterkte van die stad Ammoniha te oortref.
- 15 En nou, kyk, dit was wysheid in Moroni; want hy het veronderstel dat hulle bevrees sou wees vir die stad Ammoniha; en aangesien die stad Noag tot dusver die swakste deel van die land was, daarom sou hulle daarheen marsjeer om te veg; en so was dit volgens sy begeertes.
- 16 En kyk, Moroni het Lehi aangestel om hoofkaptein te wees oor die manne van daardie stad; en dit was daardie selfde Lehi wat geveg het met die Lamaniete in die vallei aan die ooste van die Sidonrivier.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites, or the Amalickiahites, were exceedingly astonished at their manner of preparation for war.

Now, if king Amalickiah had come down out of the land of Nephi, at the head of his army, perhaps he would have caused the Lamanites to have attacked the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah; for behold, he did care not for the blood of his people.

But behold, Amalickiah did not come down himself to battle. And behold, his chief captains durst not attack the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah, for Moroni had altered the management of affairs among the Nephites, insomuch that the Lamanites were disappointed in their places of retreat and they could not come upon them.

Therefore they retreated into the wilderness, and took their camp and marched towards the land of Noah, supposing that to be the next best place for them to come against the Nephites.

For they knew not that Moroni had fortified, or had built forts of security, for every city in all the land round about; therefore, they marched forward to the land of Noah with a firm determination; yea, their chief captains came forward and took an oath that they would destroy the people of that city.

But behold, to their astonishment, the city of Noah, which had hitherto been a weak place, had now, by the means of Moroni, become strong, yea, even to exceed the strength of the city Ammonihah.

And now, behold, this was wisdom in Moroni; for he had supposed that they would be frightened at the city Ammonihah; and as the city of Noah had hitherto been the weakest part of the land, therefore they would march thither to battle; and thus it was according to his desires.

And behold, Moroni had appointed Lehi to be chief captain over the men of that city; and it was that same Lehi who fought with the Lamanites in the valley on the east of the river Sidon.

17 En nou, kyk, dit het gebeur, dat toe die Lamaniete ontdek dat Lehi bevel gevoer het oor die stad, was hulle weer teleurgestel, want hulle het Lehi uitermate gevrees; nietemin het hulle hoofkapteins met 'n eed gesweer om die stad aan te val; daarom, hulle het hul leërs laat opruk.

18 Nou kyk, die Lamaniete kon op geen ander wyse by hulle forte van skuiling inkom nie behalwe by die ingang, vanweë die hoogte van die wal wat opgewerp was, en die diepte van die sloot wat rondom gegrawe was, behalwe by die ingang.

19 En so was die Nefiete voorberei om diegene te vernietig wat sou probeer om op te klim om die fort binne te gaan by enige ander plek, deur klippe en pyle oor te werp na hulle.

20 Dus was hulle gereed, ja, 'n groep van hulle sterkste manne, met hulle swaarde en hulle slingers, om almal neer te vel wat sou probeer om in hulle plek van veiligheid te kom deur die plek van ingang; en dus was hulle voorbereid om hulleself te verdedig teen die Lamaniete.

21 En dit het gebeur dat die kapteins van die Lamaniete hulle leërs laat opruk het voor die plek van ingang, en het begin om met die Nefiete te veg om in te kom by hulle plek van veiligheid; maar kyk, hulle is teruggedryf van tyd tot tyd, in soverre dat hulle geslag is met 'n geweldige slagting.

22 Nou toe hulle agterkom dat hulle nie mag oor die Nefiete kon verkry deur die ingang nie, het hulle begin om die walle van grond af te grawe dat hulle 'n deurgang mag kry na hulle leërs, sodat hulle 'n gelyke kans mag kry om te veg; maar kyk, in hierdie pogings is hulle weggevee deur die klippe en pyle wat op hulle gewerp is; en in stede om hulle slote op te vul deur die walle van grond af te breek, is hulle in 'n mate opgevul met hulle dooie en gewonde liggame.

23 So het die Nefiete alle mag gehad oor hulle vyande; en so het die Lamaniete probeer om die Nefiete te vernietig, totdat hulle hoofkapteins almal gedood is; ja, en meer as 'n duisend van die Lamaniete is gedood; terwyl, aan die anderkant, daar nie 'n enkele siel onder die Nefiete was wat gedood was nie.

And now behold it came to pass, that when the Lamanites had found that Lehi commanded the city they were again disappointed, for they feared Lehi exceedingly; nevertheless their chief captains had sworn with an oath to attack the city; therefore, they brought up their armies.

Now behold, the Lamanites could not get into their forts of security by any other way save by the entrance, because of the highness of the bank which had been thrown up, and the depth of the ditch which had been dug round about, save it were by the entrance.

And thus were the Nephites prepared to destroy all such as should attempt to climb up to enter the fort by any other way, by casting over stones and arrows at them.

Thus they were prepared, yea, a body of their strongest men, with their swords and their slings, to smite down all who should attempt to come into their place of security by the place of entrance; and thus were they prepared to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the captains of the Lamanites brought up their armies before the place of entrance, and began to contend with the Nephites, to get into their place of security; but behold, they were driven back from time to time, insomuch that they were slain with an immense slaughter.

Now when they found that they could not obtain power over the Nephites by the pass, they began to dig down their banks of earth that they might obtain a pass to their armies, that they might have an equal chance to fight; but behold, in these attempts they were swept off by the stones and arrows which were thrown at them; and instead of filling up their ditches by pulling down the banks of earth, they were filled up in a measure with their dead and wounded bodies.

Thus the Nephites had all power over their enemies; and thus the Lamanites did attempt to destroy the Nephites until their chief captains were all slain; yea, and more than a thousand of the Lamanites were slain; while, on the other hand, there was not a single soul of the Nephites which was slain.

- 24 Daar was omtrent vyftig wat gewond was, wat blootgestel was aan die pyle van die Lamaniete deur die ingang, maar hulle is deur hulle skilde beskerm, en hulle borsplate, en hulle helms, in soverre dat hulle wonde aan hulle bene was, sommige waarvan baie ernstig was.
- 25 En dit het gebeur, dat toe die Lamaniete gesien het dat hulle hoofkapteins almal gedood is, het hulle die wildernis ingevlug. En dit het gebeur dat hulle teruggekeer het na die land Nepi, om hulle koning, Amalikia in te lig, wat 'n Nefiet van geboorte was, aangaande hulle groot verlies.
- 26 En dit het gebeur dat hy uitermate vertoornd was op sy volk, omdat hy nie sy wens oor die Nefiete kon kry nie; hy het hulle nie onderwerp aan die juk van slawerny nie.
- 27 Ja, hy was uitermate vertoornd, en hy het God gevloek, en ook Moroni, en met 'n eed gesweer dat hy sy bloed sou drink; en dit omdat Moroni die geboorte van God onderhou het ter voorbereiding vir die veiligheid van sy volk.
- 28 En dit het gebeur, dat aan die anderkant, het die volk van Nepi die Here hulle God gedank, vanweë sy ongeëwenaarde krag om hulle te bevry uit die hande van hulle vyande.
- 29 En so het die negentiende jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nepi geëindig.
- 30 Ja, en daar was voortdurende vrede onder hulle, en uitermate groot voorspoed in die kerk vanweë hulle aandag en ywer wat hulle aan die woord van God gegee het, wat aan hulle verkondig is deur Helaman, en Shiblón, en Coriantón, en Ammon en sy broers, ja, en deur al diegene wat geordineer is deur die heilige orde van God, en gedoop is tot bekering, en uitgestuur is om te preek onder die volk.

There were about fifty who were wounded, who had been exposed to the arrows of the Lamanites through the pass, but they were shielded by their shields, and their breastplates, and their head-plates, insomuch that their wounds were upon their legs, many of which were very severe.

And it came to pass, that when the Lamanites saw that their chief captains were all slain they fled into the wilderness. And it came to pass that they returned to the land of Nephi, to inform their king, Amalickiah, who was a Nephite by birth, concerning their great loss.

And it came to pass that he was exceedingly angry with his people, because he had not obtained his desire over the Nephites; he had not subjected them to the yoke of bondage.

Yea, he was exceedingly wroth, and he did curse God, and also Moroni, swearing with an oath that he would drink his blood; and this because Moroni had kept the commandments of God in preparing for the safety of his people.

And it came to pass, that on the other hand, the people of Nephi did thank the Lord their God, because of his matchless power in delivering them from the hands of their enemies.

And thus ended the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Yea, and there was continual peace among them, and exceedingly great prosperity in the church because of their heed and diligence which they gave unto the word of God, which was declared unto them by Helaman, and Shiblón, and Coriantón, and Ammon and his brethren, yea, and by all those who had been ordained by the holy order of God, being baptized unto repentance, and sent forth to preach among the people.

Alma 50

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat Moroni nie opgehou het om voorbereidings te tref vir oorlog, of om sy volk te verdedig teen die Lamaniete nie; want hy het sy leërs laat begin met die aanvang van die twintigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters, dat hulle sou begin om walle van grond op te werp rondom al die stede, dwarsdeur die hele land wat besit is deur die Nefiete.
- 2 En bo-op hierdie walle van grond het hy hout laat oprig, ja, bouwerke van hout opgebou tot die hoogte van 'n man, rondom die stede.
- 3 En hy het op daardie bouwerke van hout 'n raam van skerp pale laat oprig, gebou op die hout rondom; en dit was sterk en hoog.
- 4 En hy het torings laat oprig wat uitgekyk het op daardie bouwerke van skerp pale, en hy het plekke van veiligheid laat bou op daardie torings, dat die klippe en die pyle van die Lamaniete hulle nie kon skaad nie.
- 5 En hulle was voorberei dat hulle klippe kon afwerp vanaf die bokant daarvan, volgens hulle welbehae en hulle krag, en hom dood wat sou poog om naby die mure van die stad te kom.
- 6 So het Moroni vestings berei teen die koms van hulle vyande, rondom elke stad in die hele land.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat Moroni sy leërs laat uitgaan het in die oostelike wildernis; ja, en hulle het uitgegaan en het al die Lamaniete uitgedryf wat in die oostelike wildernis was in hulle eie lande, wat suid was van die land Zarahemla.
- 8 En die land Nephi het in 'n reguit rigting gestrek van die oostelike see na die weste.
- 9 En dit het gebeur dat toe Moroni al die Lamaniete uit die oostelike wildernis verdrywe het, wat noord was van die lande van hulle eie besittings, het hy die inwoners wat in die land Zarahemla en in die land rondom was laat uitgaan in die oostelike wildernis, tot by die grense van die seekus, en die land in besit geneem.

Alma 50

And now it came to pass that Moroni did not stop making preparations for war, or to defend his people against the Lamanites; for he caused that his armies should commence in the commencement of the twentieth year of the reign of the judges, that they should commence in digging up heaps of earth round about all the cities, throughout all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And upon the top of these ridges of earth he caused that there should be timbers, yea, works of timbers built up to the height of a man, round about the cities.

And he caused that upon those works of timbers there should be a frame of pickets built upon the timbers round about; and they were strong and high.

And he caused towers to be erected that overlooked those works of pickets, and he caused places of security to be built upon those towers, that the stones and the arrows of the Lamanites could not hurt them.

And they were prepared that they could cast stones from the top thereof, according to their pleasure and their strength, and slay him who should attempt to approach near the walls of the city.

Thus Moroni did prepare strongholds against the coming of their enemies, round about every city in all the land.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his armies should go forth into the east wilderness; yea, and they went forth and drove all the Lamanites who were in the east wilderness into their own lands, which were south of the land of Zarahemla.

And the land of Nephi did run in a straight course from the east sea to the west.

And it came to pass that when Moroni had driven all the Lamanites out of the east wilderness, which was north of the lands of their own possessions, he caused that the inhabitants who were in the land of Zarahemla and in the land round about should go forth into the east wilderness, even to the borders by the seashore, and possess the land.

- 10 En hy het ook leërs geplaas in die suide, op die grense van hulle besittings, en hulle vestings laat oprig sodat hulle hul leërs en hulle mense kon beveilig teen die hande van hulle vyande.
- 11 En so het hy al die vestings van die Lamaniete in die oostelike wildernis afgesny, ja, en ook in die weste, en hy het die lyn versterk tussen die Nefiete en die Lamaniete, tussen die land Zarahemla en die land Nepi, vanaf die westelike see, wat strek langs die oorsprong van die Sidon-rivier—sodat die Nefiete in besit was van die hele land noordwaarts, ja, en wel die hele land wat noordwaarts was van die land Oorvloed, volgens hulle welbehae.
- 12 So het Moroni, met sy leërs, wat daagliks toeneem het vanweë die versekering van beskerming wat sy werke voortgebring het vir hulle, gesoek om die sterkte en die mag van die Lamaniete af te sny van die lande van hulle besittings, sodat hulle geen mag sou hê oor die land van hulle besitting nie.
- 13 En dit het gebeur dat die Nefiete die fundamente van 'n stad begin het, en hulle het die naam van die stad Moroni genoem; en dit was by die oostelike see; en dit was aan die suide by die grens van die besittings van die Lamaniete.
- 14 En hulle het ook 'n fondament begin vir 'n stad tussen die stad Moroni en die stad Aäron, wat die grense van Aäron en Moroni verbind het, en hulle het die naam van die stad, of die land, Nefiha genoem.
- 15 En hulle het ook in dieselfde jaar begin om baie stede te bou in die noorde, een op 'n besondere wyse wat hulle Lehi genoem het, wat in die noorde was by die grense van die seekus.
- 16 En so het die twintigste jaar geëindig.
- 17 En in hierdie voorspoedige omstandighede was die volk van Nepi aan die begin van die een en twintigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nepi.
- 18 En hulle was uitermate voorspoedig, en hulle het uitermate ryk geword; ja, en hulle het vermenigvuldig en sterk geword in die land.

And he also placed armies on the south, in the borders of their possessions, and caused them to erect fortifications that they might secure their armies and their people from the hands of their enemies.

And thus he cut off all the strongholds of the Lamanites in the east wilderness, yea, and also on the west, fortifying the line between the Nephites and the Lamanites, between the land of Zarahemla and the land of Nephi, from the west sea, running by the head of the river Sidon—the Nephites possessing all the land northward, yea, even all the land which was northward of the land Bountiful, according to their pleasure.

Thus Moroni, with his armies, which did increase daily because of the assurance of protection which his works did bring forth unto them, did seek to cut off the strength and the power of the Lamanites from off the lands of their possessions, that they should have no power upon the lands of their possession.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began the foundation of a city, and they called the name of the city Moroni; and it was by the east sea; and it was on the south by the line of the possessions of the Lamanites.

And they also began a foundation for a city between the city of Moroni and the city of Aaron, joining the borders of Aaron and Moroni; and they called the name of the city, or the land, Nefihah.

And they also began in that same year to build many cities on the north, one in a particular manner which they called Lehi, which was in the north by the borders of the seashore.

And thus ended the twentieth year.

And in these prosperous circumstances were the people of Nephi in the commencement of the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And they did prosper exceedingly, and they became exceedingly rich; yea, and they did multiply and wax strong in the land.

- 19 En so sien ons hoe barmhartig en regverdig is al die handelinge van die Here, ter vervulling van al sy woorde aan die kinders van mense; ja, ons kan sien dat sy woorde bewaarheid word, ook in hierdie tyd, wat Hy met Lehi gespreek, en gesê het:
- 20 Geseënd is jy en jou kinders; en hulle sal geseënd wees, in soverre hulle my gebooie sal onderhou, sal hulle voorspoedig wees in die land. Maar onthou, in soverre hulle nie my gebooie sal onderhou nie, sal hulle afgesny word van die teenwoordigheid van die Here.
- 21 En ons sien dat hierdie beloftes bewaarheid is aan die volk van Nefi; want dit was hulle rusies en hulle twiste, ja, hulle moorde, en hulle geplunder, hulle afgodery, hulle hoererye, en hulle gruwels, wat onder hulleself was, wat oor hulle hul oorloë en hulle vernietiging gebring het.
- 22 En diegene wat getrou was in die onderhouding van die gebooie van die Here is te alle tye verlos, terwyl duisende van hulle goddelose broers tot slawerny toegewys is, óf om te vergaan deur die swaard, óf om te kwyn in ongeloof en te vermeng met die Lamaniete.
- 23 Maar kyk, daar was nooit 'n gelukkiger tyd onder die volk van Nefi nie, vanaf die dae van Nefi, as in die dae van Moroni, ja, en wel in hierdie tyd, in die een en twintigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters.
- 24 En dit het gebeur dat die twee en twintigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters ook in vrede geëindig het; ja, en ook die drie en twintigste jaar.
- 25 En dit het gebeur dat aan die begin van die vier en twintigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters, sou daar ook vrede onder die volk van Nefi gewees het, as dit nie was vir 'n twis wat plaasgevind het onder hulle aangaande die land Lehi, en die land Morianton, wat gestrek het tot by die grense van Lehi nie; beide waarvan aan die grense van die seekus was.
- 26 Want kyk, die mense wat die land Morianton besit het, het 'n deel geëis van die land Lehi; daarom het daar 'n hete twis begin ontstaan onder hulle, in soverre dat die volk van Morianton wapens opgeneem het teen hulle broers, en hulle was vasberade om hulle te dood deur die swaard.

And thus we see how merciful and just are all the dealings of the Lord, to the fulfilling of all his words unto the children of men; yea, we can behold that his words are verified, even at this time, which he spake unto Lehi, saying:

Blessed art thou and thy children; and they shall be blessed, inasmuch as they shall keep my commandments they shall prosper in the land. But remember, inasmuch as they will not keep my commandments they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And we see that these promises have been verified to the people of Nephi; for it has been their quarrellings and their contentions, yea, their murderings, and their plunderings, their idolatry, their whoredoms, and their abominations, which were among themselves, which brought upon them their wars and their destructions.

And those who were faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord were delivered at all times, whilst thousands of their wicked brethren have been consigned to bondage, or to perish by the sword, or to dwindle in unbelief, and mingle with the Lamanites.

But behold there never was a happier time among the people of Nephi, since the days of Nephi, than in the days of Moroni, yea, even at this time, in the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that the twenty and second year of the reign of the judges also ended in peace; yea, and also the twenty and third year.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges, there would also have been peace among the people of Nephi had it not been for a contention which took place among them concerning the land of Lehi, and the land of Morianton, which joined upon the borders of Lehi; both of which were on the borders by the seashore.

For behold, the people who possessed the land of Morianton did claim a part of the land of Lehi; therefore there began to be a warm contention between them, insomuch that the people of Morianton took up arms against their brethren, and they were determined by the sword to slay them.

27 Maar kyk, die mense wat die land Lehi besit het, het na die kamp van Moroni gevlug, en by hom om hulp gepleit; want kyk, hulle was nie verkeerd nie.

28 En dit het gebeur dat toe die volk van Morianton, wat aangevoer is deur 'n man wie se naam Morianton was, vind dat die volk van Lehi na Moroni se kamp gevlug het, was hulle uitermate bevrees dat die leër van Moroni op hulle sou afkom en hulle vernietig.

29 Daarom, Morianton het dit in hulle harte gelê dat hulle moes vlug na die land wat noordwaarts was, wat oordek was met groot massas water, en besit neem van die land wat noordwaarts was.

30 En kyk, hulle sou hierdie plan uitgevoer het, (wat 'n rede sou gewees het om te betreur) maar kyk, Morianton, omdat hy 'n man was van veel hartstog, daarom was hy vertoornd op een van sy diensmaagde, en hy het haar aangeval en haar baie geslaan.

31 En dit het gebeur dat sy gevlug het, en oorgekom het na die kamp van Moroni, en aan Moroni alle dinge vertel het omtrent die saak, en ook omtrent hulle voornemens om na die land noordwaarts te vlug.

32 Nou kyk, die mense wat in die land Oorvloed was, of eerder Moroni, het gevrees dat hulle sou ag slaan op die woorde van Morianton en verenig met sy volk, en so sou hy besit verkry van daardie dele van die land, wat 'n fondament sou lê vir ernstige gevolge onder die volk van Nefi, ja, welke gevolge sou lei tot die omverwerping van hulle vryheid.

33 Daarom het Moroni 'n leër gestuur, met hulle kamp, om die volk van Morianton voor te keer, om hulle vlug na die land noordwaarts te stop.

34 En dit het gebeur dat hulle hul nie gekeer het tot dat hulle by die grense van die land Verlatenheid gekom het nie; en daar het hulle hul voorgekeer, by die smal pas wat gelei het langs die see na die land noordwaarts, ja, langs die see, aan die westekant en aan die oostekant.

But behold, the people who possessed the land of Lehi fled to the camp of Moroni, and appealed unto him for assistance; for behold they were not in the wrong.

And it came to pass that when the people of Morianton, who were led by a man whose name was Morianton, found that the people of Lehi had fled to the camp of Moroni, they were exceedingly fearful lest the army of Moroni should come upon them and destroy them.

Therefore, Morianton put it into their hearts that they should flee to the land which was northward, which was covered with large bodies of water, and take possession of the land which was northward.

And behold, they would have carried this plan into effect, (which would have been a cause to have been lamented) but behold, Morianton being a man of much passion, therefore he was angry with one of his maid servants, and he fell upon her and beat her much.

And it came to pass that she fled, and came over to the camp of Moroni, and told Moroni all things concerning the matter, and also concerning their intentions to flee into the land northward.

Now behold, the people who were in the land Bountiful, or rather Moroni, feared that they would hearken to the words of Morianton and unite with his people, and thus he would obtain possession of those parts of the land, which would lay a foundation for serious consequences among the people of Nephi, yea, which consequences would lead to the overthrow of their liberty.

Therefore Moroni sent an army, with their camp, to head the people of Morianton, to stop their flight into the land northward.

And it came to pass that they did not head them until they had come to the borders of the land Desolation; and there they did head them, by the narrow pass which led by the sea into the land northward, yea, by the sea, on the west and on the east.

35 En dit het gebeur dat die leër wat deur Moroni gestuur is, wat aangevoer is deur 'n man wie se naam Teankum was, die mense van Morianton teëgekóm het; en so hardkoppig was die mense van Morianton, (omdat hulle aangevuur is deur sy boosheid en sy vleiende woorde) dat 'n veldslag begin het tussen hulle, waarin Teankum vir Morianton gedood en sy leër verslaan het, en hulle gevange geneem het, en teruggekeer het na die kamp van Moroni. En so het die vier en twintigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters geëindig oor die volk van Nefi.

36 En so is die volk van Morianton teruggebring. En nadat hulle 'n verbond gesluit het om die vrede te bewaar, is hulle herstel tot die land Morianton, en 'n vereniging het plaasgevind tussen hulle en die volk van Lehi; en hulle is ook herstel tot hul grond.

37 En dit het gebeur dat in dieselfde jaar dat vrede herstel is aan die volk van Nefi, dat Nefiha, die tweede hoofregter gesterwe het, en hy het die regterstoel met volkome opregtheid voor God gevul.

38 Nogtans het hy geweier dat Alma besit neem van daardie kronieke en daardie dinge wat deur Alma en sy vaders geag is om hoogheilig te wees; daarom het Alma hulle oorgedra aan sy seun, Helaman.

39 Kyk, dit het gebeur dat die seun van Nefiha aangestel is om die regterstoel te vul, in die plek van sy vader; ja, hy is aangestel as hoofregter en goewerneur oor die volk, met 'n eed en heilige ordinansie om regverdig te oordeel, en om die vrede te bewaar en die vryheid van die volk, en om aan hulle hul heilige voorregte te gun om die Here hulle God te aanbid, ja, om die saak van God te ondersteun en te handhaaf al sy dae, en om die bose te bring tot die geregtigheid ooreenkomstig hulle misdaad.

40 Nou kyk, sy naam was Pahoran. En Pahoran het die stoel van sy vader gevul, en het sy heerskappy begin aan die einde van die vier en twintigste jaar, oor die volk van Nefi.

And it came to pass that the army which was sent by Moroni, which was led by a man whose name was Teancum, did meet the people of Morianton; and so stubborn were the people of Morianton, (being inspired by his wickedness and his flattering words) that a battle commenced between them, in the which Teancum did slay Morianton and defeat his army, and took them prisoners, and returned to the camp of Moroni. And thus ended the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus were the people of Morianton brought back. And upon their covenanting to keep the peace they were restored to the land of Morianton, and a union took place between them and the people of Lehi; and they were also restored to their lands.

And it came to pass that in the same year that the people of Nephi had peace restored unto them, that Nephiah, the second chief judge, died, having filled the judgment-seat with perfect uprightness before God.

Nevertheless, he had refused Alma to take possession of those records and those things which were esteemed by Alma and his fathers to be most sacred; therefore Alma had conferred them upon his son, Helaman.

Behold, it came to pass that the son of Nephiah was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, in the stead of his father; yea, he was appointed chief judge and governor over the people, with an oath and sacred ordinance to judge righteously, and to keep the peace and the freedom of the people, and to grant unto them their sacred privileges to worship the Lord their God, yea, to support and maintain the cause of God all his days, and to bring the wicked to justice according to their crime.

Now behold, his name was Pahoran. And Pahoran did fill the seat of his father, and did commence his reign in the end of the twenty and fourth year, over the people of Nephi.

Alma 51

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur aan die begin van die vyf en twintigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi, nadat hulle vrede gevestig het tussen die volk van Lehi en die volk van Morianton, aangaande hulle grondgebiede, en nadat hulle die vyf en twintigste jaar in vrede begin het;
- 2 Nógans het hulle nie lank 'n volkome vrede in die land bewaar nie, want daar het 'n twis begin ontstaan onder die mense aangaande die hoofregter Pahoran; want kyk, daar was 'n gedeelte van die volk wat wou gehad het dat 'n paar besondere punte van die wet verander moes word.
- 3 Maar kyk, Pahoran wou dit nie verander nie, nóg toelaat dat die wet verander word; daarom het hy nie ag geslaan op diegene wat hulle stemme verhef het saam met hulle versoeke aangaande die verandering van die wet nie.
- 4 Daarom, diegene wat begerig was dat die wet verander moes word, was vertoornd op hom, en wou hê dat hy nie langer hoofregter moes wees oor die land nie; daarom het daar 'n hete stryd ontstaan aangaande die saak, maar nie tot bloedvergieting toe nie.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat diegene wat begerig was dat Pahoran onttroon moes word van die regterstoel, is koningsmanne genoem, want hulle was begerig dat die wet gewysig moes word op 'n wyse om die vrye regering omver te werp, en om 'n koning oor die land te vestig.
- 6 En diegene wat begerig was dat Pahoran hoofregter moes bly oor die land, het op hulle die naam van vrymanne geneem; en so was die verdeeldheid onder hulle, want die vrymanne het gesweer of 'n verbond gesluit om hulle regte en die voorregte van hulle godsdiens deur 'n vrye regering te handhaaf.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat hierdie saak van hulle twis deur die stem van die volk beslis is. En dit het gebeur dat die stem van die volk uitgekóm het ten gunste van die vrymanne, en Pahoran het die regterstoel behou, wat groot blydskap veroorsaak het onder die broers van Pahoran en ook baie van die mense van vryheid, wat ook die koningsmanne die swye opgelê het, dat hulle nie gedurf het om teenstand te bied nie, maar verplig was om die saak van vrede te handhaaf.

Alma 51

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, they having established peace between the people of Lehi and the people of Morianton concerning their lands, and having commenced the twenty and fifth year in peace;

Nevertheless, they did not long maintain an entire peace in the land, for there began to be a contention among the people concerning the chief judge Pahoran; for behold, there were a part of the people who desired that a few particular points of the law should be altered.

But behold, Pahoran would not alter nor suffer the law to be altered; therefore, he did not hearken to those who had sent in their voices with their petitions concerning the altering of the law.

Therefore, those who were desirous that the law should be altered were angry with him, and desired that he should no longer be chief judge over the land; therefore there arose a warm dispute concerning the matter, but not unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass that those who were desirous that Pahoran should be dethroned from the judgment-seat were called king-men, for they were desirous that the law should be altered in a manner to overthrow the free government and to establish a king over the land.

And those who were desirous that Pahoran should remain chief judge over the land took upon them the name of freemen; and thus was the division among them, for the freemen had sworn or covenanted to maintain their rights and the privileges of their religion by a free government.

And it came to pass that this matter of their contention was settled by the voice of the people. And it came to pass that the voice of the people came in favor of the freemen, and Pahoran retained the judgment-seat, which caused much rejoicing among the brethren of Pahoran and also many of the people of liberty, who also put the king-men to silence, that they durst not oppose but were obliged to maintain the cause of freedom.

- 8 Nou diegene wat ten gunste was van konings, was diegene van adellike afkoms, en hulle het gesoek om konings te word; en hulle is gesteun deur diegene wat mag en gesag gesoek het oor die volk.
- 9 Maar kyk, dit was 'n kritieke tyd vir sulke twiste om onder die volk van Nefi te wees; want kyk, Amalikia het weer die harte van die volk van die Lamaniete opgestook teen die volk van die Nefiete, en hy was besig om soldate bymekaar te maak uit alle dele van sy land, en hulle te bewapen, en voor te berei vir oorlog met alle ywer; want hy het gesweer om die bloed van Moroni te drink.
- 10 Maar kyk, ons sal sien dat sy belofte wat hy gemaak het, onbedag was; nogtans, hy het homself en sy leërs voorberei om in die stryd te kom teen die Nefiete.
- 11 Nou, sy leërs was nie so groot soos hulle voorheen was nie, vanweë die baie duisende wat gedood is deur die hand van die Nefiete; maar niesteenstaande hulle groot verlies, het Amalikia 'n wonderlike groot leër bymekaargemaak, in soverre dat hy nie gevrees het om af te kom na die land Zarahemla nie.
- 12 Ja, selfs Amalikia het self afgekom, aan die hoof van die Lamaniete. En dit was in die vyf en twintigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters; en dit was op dieselfde tyd toe hulle begin het om die saak te beslis van hulle twis aangaande die hoofregter, Pahoran.
- 13 En dit het gebeur dat toe die manne wat koningsmanne genoem is, gehoor het dat die Lamaniete aan die kom was om teen hulle te veg, was hulle bly in hulle harte; en hulle het geweier om wapens op te neem, want hulle was so vertoornd op die hoofregter, en ook op die mense van vryheid, dat hulle nie wapens wou opneem om hulle land te verdedig nie.
- 14 En dit het gebeur dat toe Moroni dit gesien het, en ook gesien het dat die Lamaniete die grense van die land binnekom, was hy uitermate vertoornd vanweë die hardnekkigheid van daardie volk met wie hy met soveel ywer gearbei het om te behou; ja, hy was uitermate vertoornd; sy siel was vervul met toorn teen hulle.

Now those who were in favor of kings were those of high birth, and they sought to be kings; and they were supported by those who sought power and authority over the people.

But behold, this was a critical time for such contentions to be among the people of Nephi; for behold, Amalickiah had again stirred up the hearts of the people of the Lamanites against the people of the Nephites, and he was gathering together soldiers from all parts of his land, and arming them, and preparing for war with all diligence; for he had sworn to drink the blood of Moroni.

But behold, we shall see that his promise which he made was rash; nevertheless, he did prepare himself and his armies to come to battle against the Nephites.

Now his armies were not so great as they had hitherto been, because of the many thousands who had been slain by the hand of the Nephites; but notwithstanding their great loss, Amalickiah had gathered together a wonderfully great army, insomuch that he feared not to come down to the land of Zarahemla.

Yea, even Amalickiah did himself come down, at the head of the Lamanites. And it was in the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges; and it was at the same time that they had begun to settle the affairs of their contentions concerning the chief judge, Pahoran.

And it came to pass that when the men who were called king-men had heard that the Lamanites were coming down to battle against them, they were glad in their hearts; and they refused to take up arms, for they were so wroth with the chief judge, and also with the people of liberty, that they would not take up arms to defend their country.

And it came to pass that when Moroni saw this, and also saw that the Lamanites were coming into the borders of the land, he was exceedingly wroth because of the stubbornness of those people whom he had labored with so much diligence to preserve; yea, he was exceedingly wroth; his soul was filled with anger against them.

- 15 En dit het gebeur dat hy 'n versoekskrif gestuur het, met die stem van die volk, aan die goewerneur van die land, en gevra dat hy dit moes lees, en om hom (Moroni) mag te gee om daardie afvalliges te dwing om hulle land te verdedig of om hulle dood te maak.
- 16 Want dit was sy eerste besorgdheid om 'n einde te maak aan sulke twiste en onenighede onder die volk; want kyk, dit was voorheen 'n oorsaak van al hul vernietiging. En dit het gebeur dat dit gegun is volgens die stem van die volk.
- 17 En dit het gebeur dat Moroni beveel het dat sy leërs teen daardie koningsmanne moes gaan om hulle hoogmoed en hulle adellikheid te beëindig en hulle gelyk te maak met die aarde, of anders moes hulle wapens opneem en die saak van vryheid ondersteun.
- 18 En dit het gebeur dat die leërs uitgemaarsjeer het teen hulle; en hulle het hul hoogmoed en hulle adellikheid beëindig, in soverre dat toe hulle hul wapens van oorlog opgeneem het om te veg teen die manne van Moroni, is hulle neergevel en gelykgemaak met die grond.
- 19 En dit het gebeur dat daar vierduisend van daardie afvalliges was wat afgemaai is met die swaard; en diegene van hul leiers wat nie gedood is in die stryd nie, is geneem en in die gevangenis gewerp, want daar was geen tyd vir hulle verhore op hierdie tydstip nie.
- 20 En die oorblywendes van daardie afvalliges, eerder as om na die aarde neergevel te word met die swaard, het hul onderwerp aan die vaandel van vryheid, en was verplig om die vaandel van vryheid op hulle torings te hys, en in hulle stede, en om wapens op te neem ter verdediging van hulle land.
- 21 En so het Moroni 'n einde gemaak aan daardie koningsmanne, dat daar niemand meer bekend was as koningsmanne nie; en so het hy 'n einde gemaak aan die hardnekkigheid en hoogmoed van daardie mense wat voorgegee het om die bloed van adellikes te hê; maar hulle is neergebring om hulself te verootmoedig soos hulle broers, en om dapper te veg vir hulle vryheid van slawerny.

And it came to pass that he sent a petition, with the voice of the people, unto the governor of the land, desiring that he should read it, and give him (Moroni) power to compel those dissenters to defend their country or to put them to death.

For it was his first care to put an end to such contentions and dissensions among the people; for behold, this had been hitherto a cause of all their destruction. And it came to pass that it was granted according to the voice of the people.

And it came to pass that Moroni commanded that his army should go against those king-men, to pull down their pride and their nobility and level them with the earth, or they should take up arms and support the cause of liberty.

And it came to pass that the armies did march forth against them; and they did pull down their pride and their nobility, insomuch that as they did lift their weapons of war to fight against the men of Moroni they were hewn down and leveled to the earth.

And it came to pass that there were four thousand of those dissenters who were hewn down by the sword; and those of their leaders who were not slain in battle were taken and cast into prison, for there was no time for their trials at this period.

And the remainder of those dissenters, rather than be smitten down to the earth by the sword, yielded to the standard of liberty, and were compelled to hoist the title of liberty upon their towers, and in their cities, and to take up arms in defence of their country.

And thus Moroni put an end to those king-men, that there were not any known by the appellation of king-men; and thus he put an end to the stubbornness and the pride of those people who professed the blood of nobility; but they were brought down to humble themselves like unto their brethren, and to fight valiantly for their freedom from bondage.

- 22 Kyk, dit het gebeur dat terwyl Moroni op hierdie wyse besig was om die oorloë en twiste onder sy eie volk te beëindig, en hulle te onderwerp aan vrede en beskawing, en verordinge te maak om voor te berei vir oorlog teen die Lamaniete, kyk, die Lamaniete het die land Moroni binnegekom, wat aan die grense by die seekus was.
- 23 En dit het gebeur dat die Nefiete nie sterk genoeg was in die stad Moroni nie, daarom het Amalikia hulle verdryf, en baie gedood. En dit het gebeur dat Amalikia die stad in besit geneem het, ja, besit geneem het van al hulle versterkings.
- 24 En diegene wat uit die stad Moroni gevlug het, het by die stad Nefiha gekom; en ook die mense van die stad Lehi het hulleself bymekaargemaak, en voorbereidings getref en was gereed om die Lamaniete die stryd aan te sê.
- 25 Maar dit het gebeur dat Amalikia nie wou toelaat dat die Lamaniete teen die stad Nefiha in die stryd tree nie, maar het hulle onder by die seekus gehou, terwyl hy manne in elke stad gelaat het om dit te behou en te verdedig.
- 26 En so het hy voortgegaan, en besit geneem van baie stede, die stad Nefiha, en die stad Lehi, en die stad Morianton, en die stad Omner, en die stad Gid, en die stad Mulek, almal wat by die oostelike grense was aan die seekus.
- 27 En so het die Lamaniete, deur die sluheid van Amalikia, so baie stede verkry, deur hulle tallose leërskares, almal wat baie versterk was, volgens die manier van die versterkings van Moroni; almal wat vestings verskaf het vir die Lamaniete.
- 28 En dit het gebeur dat hulle na die grense van die land Oorvloed gemarsjeer het, terwyl hulle die Nefiete voor hulle uitgedrywe en baie gedood het.
- 29 Maar dit het gebeur dat hulle deur Teankum ontmoet is, wat Morianton gedood het en sy volk voor-gekeer het in sy vlug.
- 30 En dit het gebeur dat hy Amalikia ook voorgekeer het, terwyl hy voortgemarsjeer het met sy talryke leër, sodat hy besit mag neem van die land Oorvloed, en ook die land noordwaarts.

Behold, it came to pass that while Moroni was thus breaking down the wars and contentions among his own people, and subjecting them to peace and civilization, and making regulations to prepare for war against the Lamanites, behold, the Lamanites had come into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

And it came to pass that the Nephites were not sufficiently strong in the city of Moroni; therefore Amalickiah did drive them, slaying many. And it came to pass that Amalickiah took possession of the city, yea, possession of all their fortifications.

And those who fled out of the city of Moroni came to the city of Nephihah; and also the people of the city of Lehi gathered themselves together, and made preparations and were ready to receive the Lamanites to battle.

But it came to pass that Amalickiah would not suffer the Lamanites to go against the city of Nephihah to battle, but kept them down by the seashore, leaving men in every city to maintain and defend it.

And thus he went on, taking possession of many cities, the city of Nephihah, and the city of Lehi, and the city of Morianton, and the city of Omner, and the city of Gid, and the city of Mulek, all of which were on the east borders by the seashore.

And thus had the Lamanites obtained, by the cunning of Amalickiah, so many cities, by their numberless hosts, all of which were strongly fortified after the manner of the fortifications of Moroni; all of which afforded strongholds for the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they marched to the borders of the land Bountiful, driving the Nephites before them and slaying many.

But it came to pass that they were met by Teancum, who had slain Morianton and had headed his people in his flight.

And it came to pass that he headed Amalickiah also, as he was marching forth with his numerous army that he might take possession of the land Bountiful, and also the land northward.

31 Maar kyk, hy het 'n teleurstelling ervaar deurdat hy teruggedryf is deur Teankum en sy manne, want hulle was groot krygers; want elke man van Teankum het die Lamaniete oortref in hulle krag en hulle oorlogsvernuf, in soverre dat hulle voordeel behaal het oor die Lamaniete.

32 En dit het gebeur dat hulle hul getreiter het, in soverre dat hulle hul gedood het totdat dit donker was. En dit het gebeur dat Teankum en sy manne hulle tente opgeslaan het op die grense van die land Oorvloed; en Amalikia het sy tente opgeslaan op die grense van die strand aan die seekus, en volgens hierdie wyse is hulle voortgedrywe.

33 En dit het gebeur dat toe dit nag geword het, het Teankum en sy dienskneg uitgesluit en gedurende die nag uitgegaan, en ingegaan in die kamp van Amalikia; en kyk, die slaap het hulle oorweldig vanweë hulle groot uitputting, wat veroorsaak is deur die arbeid en hitte van die dag.

34 En dit het gebeur dat Teankum versigtig ingesluit het in die tent van die koning, en het 'n spies in sy hart gesteek; en hy het onmiddellik die dood van die koning veroorsaak sodat hy nie sy diensknegte wakker gemaak het nie.

35 En hy het weer in die geheim na sy eie kamp teruggekeer, en kyk, sy manne was aan die slaap, en hy het hulle wakker gemaak en hulle al die dinge vertel wat hy gedoen het.

36 En hy het sy leërs in gereedheid laat staan, uit vrees dat die Lamaniete wakker geword het en op hulle sou afkom.

37 En so eindig die vyf en twintigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nephi; en so eindig die dae van Amalikia.

But behold he met with a disappointment by being repulsed by Teancum and his men, for they were great warriors; for every man of Teancum did exceed the Lamanites in their strength and in their skill of war, insomuch that they did gain advantage over the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did harass them, insomuch that they did slay them even until it was dark. And it came to pass that Teancum and his men did pitch their tents in the borders of the land Bountiful; and Amalickiah did pitch his tents in the borders on the beach by the seashore, and after this manner were they driven.

And it came to pass that when the night had come, Teancum and his servant stole forth and went out by night, and went into the camp of Amalickiah; and behold, sleep had overpowered them because of their much fatigue, which was caused by the labors and heat of the day.

And it came to pass that Teancum stole privily into the tent of the king, and put a javelin to his heart; and he did cause the death of the king immediately that he did not awake his servants.

And he returned again privily to his own camp, and behold, his men were asleep, and he awoke them and told them all the things that he had done.

And he caused that his armies should stand in readiness, lest the Lamanites had awakened and should come upon them.

And thus endeth the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and thus endeth the days of Amalickiah.

Alma 52

- 1 En nou, dit het gebeur in die ses en twintigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi, kyk, toe die Lamaniete wakker word op die eerste oggend van die eerste maand, kyk, het hulle gevind dat Amalikia dood was in sy eie tent; en hulle het ook gesien dat Teankum gereed was om hulle die stryd aan te sê op daardie dag.
- 2 En nou, toe die Lamaniete dit sien, was hulle verskrik; en hulle het hul plan laat vaar om die land noordwaarts binne te marsjeer, en teruggetrek met hulle hele leër na die stad Mulek, en beskerming gesoek in hul versterkings.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat die broer van Amalikia aangestel is as koning oor die volk; en sy naam was Ammoron; so is koning Ammoron, die broer van koning Amalikia, aangestel om in sy plek te heers.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat hy beveel het dat sy mense daardie stede moes behou, wat hulle ingeneem het deur die vergieting van bloed; want hulle het geen stede ingeneem nie tensy hulle baie bloed verloor het.
- 5 En nou het Teankum gesien dat die Lamaniete vasberade was om daardie stede te behou wat hulle ingeneem het, en daardie dele van die land waarvan hulle besit verkry het, en toe hulle die grootheid van hulle getalle sien, het Teankum gedink dat dit nie raadsaam was dat hy sou probeer om hulle aan te val in hulle vestings nie.
- 6 Maar hy het sy manne rondom gehou, asof hy besig was om voorbereidings vir oorlog te tref; ja, en waarlik hy was besig om hom voor te berei om hom te verdedig teen hulle, deur walle rondom op te werp en plekke van skuiling te berei.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat hy so aangehou het om voor te berei vir oorlog, totdat Moroni 'n groot aantal manne gestuur het om sy leër te versterk.
- 8 En Moroni het ook bevele aan hom gestuur dat hy al die gevangenes moes behou wat in sy hande geval het; want in soverre die Lamaniete baie gevangenes geneem het, dat hy al die gevangenes moes behou van die Lamaniete as 'n losprys vir diegene wat die Lamaniete geneem het.

Alma 52

And now, it came to pass in the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, behold, when the Lamanites awoke on the first morning of the first month, behold, they found Amalickiah was dead in his own tent; and they also saw that Teancum was ready to give them battle on that day.

And now, when the Lamanites saw this they were affrighted; and they abandoned their design in marching into the land northward, and retreated with all their army into the city of Mulek, and sought protection in their fortifications.

And it came to pass that the brother of Amalickiah was appointed king over the people; and his name was Ammoron; thus king Ammoron, the brother of king Amalickiah, was appointed to reign in his stead.

And it came to pass that he did command that his people should maintain those cities, which they had taken by the shedding of blood; for they had not taken any cities save they had lost much blood.

And now, Teancum saw that the Lamanites were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken, and those parts of the land which they had obtained possession of; and also seeing the enormity of their number, Teancum thought it was not expedient that he should attempt to attack them in their forts.

But he kept his men round about, as if making preparations for war; yea, and truly he was preparing to defend himself against them, by casting up walls round about and preparing places of resort.

And it came to pass that he kept thus preparing for war until Moroni had sent a large number of men to strengthen his army.

And Moroni also sent orders unto him that he should retain all the prisoners who fell into his hands; for as the Lamanites had taken many prisoners, that he should retain all the prisoners of the Lamanites as a ransom for those whom the Lamanites had taken.

- 9 En hy het ook bevele aan hom gestuur dat hy die land Oorvloed moes versterk, en die smal pas beveilig wat gelei het na die land noordwaarts, uit vrees dat die Lamaniete daardie punt sou bereik en mag sou hê om hulle van alle kante te treiter.
- 10 En Moroni het ook na hom gestuur, en hom gevra dat hy getrou moes wees in die behoud van daardie gedeelte van die land, en dat hy elke geleentheid moes soek om die Lamaniete te teister in daardie gedeelte, soveel as wat dit in sy vermoë was, sodat hy miskien weer deur strategie of op 'n ander wyse, daardie stede kon inneem wat uit hulle hande geneem is; en dat hy ook die stede rondom moes fortifiseer en versterk, wat nie in die hande van die Lamaniete geval het nie.
- 11 En hy het ook aan hom gesê: Ek wil na jou kom, maar kyk, die Lamaniete is op ons op die grense van die land by die westelike see; en kyk, ek trek op teen hulle, daarom kan ek nie na jou toe kom nie.
- 12 Nou, die koning (Ammoron) het vertrek uit die land Zarahemla, en het aan die koningin bekend gemaak aangaande die dood van sy broer, en het 'n groot aantal manne bymekaargemaak, en het uitgemarsjeer teen die Nefiete op die grense by die westelike see.
- 13 En so het hy gepoog om die Nefiete te treiter, en om 'n deel van hul magte weg te lok na daardie gedeelte van die land, terwyl hy diegene wat hy agtergelaat het beveel het om die stede te beset wat hy ingeneem het, dat hulle ook die Nefiete moes treiter op die grense by die oostelike see, en moes besit neem van hulle grondgebied soveel as wat dit in hulle mag was, volgens die mag van hulle leërs.
- 14 En aldus was die Nefiete in daardie gevaarlike omstandighede aan die einde van die ses en twintigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi.
- 15 Maar kyk, dit het gebeur in die sewe en twintigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters, dat Teankum, op bevel van Moroni—wat leërs opgestel het om die suidelike en westelike grense van die land te beskerm, en het sy opmars begin na die land Oorvloed, sodat hy Teankum mag bystaan met sy manne in die herowering van die stede wat hulle verloor het—

And he also sent orders unto him that he should fortify the land Bountiful, and secure the narrow pass which led into the land northward, lest the Lamanites should obtain that point and should have power to harass them on every side.

And Moroni also sent unto him, desiring him that he would be faithful in maintaining that quarter of the land, and that he would seek every opportunity to scourge the Lamanites in that quarter, as much as was in his power, that perhaps he might take again by stratagem or some other way those cities which had been taken out of their hands; and that he also would fortify and strengthen the cities round about, which had not fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

And he also said unto him, I would come unto you, but behold, the Lamanites are upon us in the borders of the land by the west sea; and behold, I go against them, therefore I cannot come unto you.

Now, the king (Ammoron) had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and had made known unto the queen concerning the death of his brother, and had gathered together a large number of men, and had marched forth against the Nephites on the borders by the west sea.

And thus he was endeavoring to harass the Nephites, and to draw away a part of their forces to that part of the land, while he had commanded those whom he had left to possess the cities which he had taken, that they should also harass the Nephites on the borders by the east sea, and should take possession of their lands as much as it was in their power, according to the power of their armies.

And thus were the Nephites in those dangerous circumstances in the ending of the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

But behold, it came to pass in the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, that Teancum, by the command of Moroni—who had established armies to protect the south and the west borders of the land, and had begun his march towards the land Bountiful, that he might assist Teancum with his men in retaking the cities which they had lost—

16 En dit het gebeur dat Teankum bevele ontvang het om 'n aanval te loods op die stad Mulek, en om dit te herower indien dit moontlik was.

17 En dit het gebeur dat Teankum voorbereidings getref het om 'n aanval te loods op die stad Mulek, en met sy leër teen die Lamaniete uit te marsjeer; maar hy het gesien dat dit onmoontlik was dat hy hulle kon oorweldig terwyl hulle in hul versterkings was; daarom het hy sy planne laat vaar en het weer teruggekeer na die stad Oorvloed, om te wag op die koms van Moroni, sodat hy krag mag ontvang vir sy leër.

18 En dit het gebeur dat Moroni met sy leër in die land Oorvloed aangekom het, in die laaste deel van die sewe en twintigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi.

19 En aan die begin van die agt en twintigste jaar het Moroni en Teankum en baie van die hoofkapteins 'n beraad van oorlog gehou—oor wat hulle moes doen om die Lamaniete te laat uitkom om teen hulle te veg; of sodat hulle op een of ander wyse hulle kon lok om uit hul vestings te kom, sodat hulle die voordeel mag kry oor hulle, en weer die stad Mulek inneem.

20 En dit het gebeur dat hulle boodskappers na die leërs van die Lamaniete gestuur het, wat die stad Mulek beskerm het, aan hulle leier, wie se naam Jakob was, om hom te versoek om uit te kom met sy leërs om hulle te ontmoet op die vlaktes tussen die twee stede. Maar kyk, Jakob, wat 'n Zoramiet was, wou nie uitkom met sy leër om hulle te ontmoet op die vlaktes nie.

21 En dit het gebeur dat Moroni, omdat hy geen hoop gehad het om hulle op gelyke grond te ontmoet nie, daarom het hy op 'n plan besluit sodat hy die Lamaniete uit hulle vestings kon lok.

22 Daarom het hy Teankum 'n klein getal manne laat neem en afmarsjeer naby die seekus; en Moroni en sy leër, gedurende die nag, het die wildernis ingemarsjeer, aan die westekant van die stad Mulek; en dus die volgende dag, toe die wagte van die Lamaniete vir Teankum gewaar, het hulle gehardloop en dit aan Jakob, hul leier vertel.

And it came to pass that Teancum had received orders to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and retake it if it were possible.

And it came to pass that Teancum made preparations to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and march forth with his army against the Lamanites; but he saw that it was impossible that he could overpower them while they were in their fortifications; therefore he abandoned his designs and returned again to the city Bountiful, to wait for the coming of Moroni, that he might receive strength to his army.

And it came to pass that Moroni did arrive with his army at the land of Bountiful, in the latter end of the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And in the commencement of the twenty and eighth year, Moroni and Teancum and many of the chief captains held a council of war—what they should do to cause the Lamanites to come out against them to battle; or that they might by some means flatter them out of their strongholds, that they might gain advantage over them and take again the city of Mulek.

And it came to pass they sent embassies to the army of the Lamanites, which protected the city of Mulek, to their leader, whose name was Jacob, desiring him that he would come out with his armies to meet them upon the plains between the two cities. But behold, Jacob, who was a Zoramite, would not come out with his army to meet them upon the plains.

And it came to pass that Moroni, having no hopes of meeting them upon fair grounds, therefore, he resolved upon a plan that he might decoy the Lamanites out of their strongholds.

Therefore he caused that Teancum should take a small number of men and march down near the seashore; and Moroni and his army, by night, marched in the wilderness, on the west of the city Mulek; and thus, on the morrow, when the guards of the Lamanites had discovered Teancum, they ran and told it unto Jacob, their leader.

23 En dit het gebeur dat die leërs van die Lamaniete uitgemarsjeer het teen Teankum, veronderstellend om deur hulle getalle Teankum te oorweldig vanweë die geringheid van sy getalle. En toe Teankum die leërs van die Lamaniete sien uitkom teen hom, het hy begin om terug te trek na die seekus, noordwaarts.

24 En dit het gebeur dat toe die Lamaniete sien dat hy begin het om te vlug, het hulle moed geskep en hulle agternagesit met ywer. En terwyl Teankum so besig was om die Lamaniete weg te lei, wat hulle tevergeefs agternagesit het, kyk, het Moroni beveel dat 'n gedeelte van sy leër wat by hom was, moes uitmarsjeer in die stad, en dit inneem.

25 En so het hulle gedoen, en al diegene gedood wat agtergelaat is om die stad te beskerm, ja, al diegene wat nie hulle wapens van oorlog wou oorhandig nie.

26 En so het Moroni besit verkry van die stad Mulek met 'n gedeelte van sy leër, terwyl hy gemarsjeer het met die oorblywendes om die Lamaniete tegemoet te gaan wanneer hulle sou terugkeer van die agtervolging van Teankum.

27 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete Teankum agternagesit het totdat hulle naby die stad Oorvloed gekom het, en toe is hulle tegemoetgegaan deur Lehi en 'n klein leër, wat agtergelaat is om die stad Oorvloed te beskerm.

28 En nou kyk, toe die hoofkapteins van die Lamaniete vir Lehi en sy leër sien opkom teen hulle, het hulle gevlug in veel verwarring, ingeval hulle nie die stad Mulek sou bereik voordat Lehi hulle sou inhaal nie; want hulle was moeg as gevolg van hul opmars, en die manne van Lehi was vars.

29 Nou het die Lamaniete nie geweet dat Moroni op hulle agterhoede was met sy leër nie, en al wat hulle gevrees het, was Lehi en sy manne.

30 Nou was Lehi nie gretig om hulle in te haal nie, totdat hulle Moroni en sy leër sou ontmoet.

31 En dit het gebeur dat voordat die Lamaniete verteruggetrek het, is hulle omsingel deur die Nefiete, deur die manne van Moroni aan die een kant, en die manne van Lehi aan die ander kant, almal wat vars was en vol krag; maar die Lamaniete was uitgeput as gevolg van hulle lang opmars.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did march forth against Teancum, supposing by their numbers to overpower Teancum because of the smallness of his numbers. And as Teancum saw the armies of the Lamanites coming out against him he began to retreat down by the seashore, northward.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that he began to flee, they took courage and pursued them with vigor. And while Teancum was thus leading away the Lamanites who were pursuing them in vain, behold, Moroni commanded that a part of his army who were with him should march forth into the city, and take possession of it.

And thus they did, and slew all those who had been left to protect the city, yea, all those who would not yield up their weapons of war.

And thus Moroni had obtained possession of the city Mulek with a part of his army, while he marched with the remainder to meet the Lamanites when they should return from the pursuit of Teancum.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue Teancum until they came near the city Bountiful, and then they were met by Lehi and a small army, which had been left to protect the city Bountiful.

And now behold, when the chief captains of the Lamanites had beheld Lehi with his army coming against them, they fled in much confusion, lest perhaps they should not obtain the city Mulek before Lehi should overtake them; for they were wearied because of their march, and the men of Lehi were fresh.

Now the Lamanites did not know that Moroni had been in their rear with his army; and all they feared was Lehi and his men.

Now Lehi was not desirous to overtake them till they should meet Moroni and his army.

And it came to pass that before the Lamanites had retreated far they were surrounded by the Nephites, by the men of Moroni on one hand, and the men of Lehi on the other, all of whom were fresh and full of strength; but the Lamanites were wearied because of their long march.

32 En Moroni het sy manne beveel dat hulle hul moes aanval totdat hulle hul wapens van oorlog oorhandig het.

33 En dit het gebeur dat Jakob, omdat hy hulle leier was, en omdat hy ook 'n Zoramiet was, en omdat hy 'n onoorwinlike gees gehad het, het hy die Lamaniete uitgelei om met uitermate drif teen Moroni te veg.

34 Omdat Moroni in die rigting van hulle opmars was, daarom was Jakob vasberade om hulle te dood en sy pad oop te sny na die stad Mulek. Maar kyk, Moroni en sy manne was kragtiger; daarom het hulle nie gewyk voor die Lamaniete nie.

35 En dit het gebeur dat hulle aan beide kante geveg het met geweldige drif; en daar is baie gedood aan beide kante, ja, en Moroni is gewond en Jakob is gedood.

36 En Lehi het op hulle agterhoede aangeval met soveel drif met sy sterk manne, dat die Lamaniete op die agterhoede hulle wapens van oorlog oorhandig het; en die oorblywendes, omdat hulle baie verward was, het nie geweet waarheen om te gaan of om te veg nie.

37 Nou toe Moroni hulle verwarring sien, het hy aan hulle gesê: As julle jul wapens van oorlog sal bring en hulle oorhandig, kyk, sal ons ophou om julle bloed te vergiet.

38 En dit het gebeur dat toe die Lamaniete hierdie woorde gehoor het, het hulle hoofkapteins, al diegene wat nie gedood is nie, na vore gekom en hulle wapens van oorlog aan die voete van Moroni neergewooi, en ook hulle manne beveel dat hulle dieselfde moes doen.

39 Maar kyk, daar was baie wat nie wou nie; en diegene wat nie hulle swaarde wou oorhandig nie, is geneem en vasgebind, en hulle wapens van oorlog is van hulle afgeneem en hulle is gedwing om met hulle broers na die land Oorvloed te marsjeer.

40 En nou die getal gevangenes wat geneem is, het die getal van dié wat gedood is, oortref, ja, meer as diegene wat gedood is aan beide kante.

And Moroni commanded his men that they should fall upon them until they had given up their weapons of war.

And it came to pass that Jacob, being their leader, being also a Zoramite, and having an unconquerable spirit, he led the Lamanites forth to battle with exceeding fury against Moroni.

Moroni being in their course of march, therefore Jacob was determined to slay them and cut his way through to the city of Mulek. But behold, Moroni and his men were more powerful; therefore they did not give way before the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they fought on both hands with exceeding fury; and there were many slain on both sides; yea, and Moroni was wounded and Jacob was killed.

And Lehi pressed upon their rear with such fury with his strong men, that the Lamanites in the rear delivered up their weapons of war; and the remainder of them, being much confused, knew not whither to go or to strike.

Now Moroni seeing their confusion, he said unto them: If ye will bring forth your weapons of war and deliver them up, behold we will forbear shedding your blood.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had heard these words, their chief captains, all those who were not slain, came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and also commanded their men that they should do the same.

But behold, there were many that would not; and those who would not deliver up their swords were taken and bound, and their weapons of war were taken from them, and they were compelled to march with their brethren forth into the land Bountiful.

And now the number of prisoners who were taken exceeded more than the number of those who had been slain, yea, more than those who had been slain on both sides.

Alma 53

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat hulle wagte aangestel het oor die gevangenes van die Lamaniete en het hulle gedwing om uit te gaan en hulle dooies te begrawe, ja, en ook die dooies van die Nefiete wat gedood is; en Moroni het manne aangestel oor hulle om hulle te bewaak terwyl hulle hul take moes uitvoer.
- 2 En Moroni het saam met Lehi gegaan na die stad Mulek, en het bevel oor die stad geneem en dit aan Lehi oorgedra. Nou kyk, hierdie Lehi was 'n man wat saam met Moroni was in die grootste gedeelte van al sy veldslae; en hy was 'n man soos Moroni, en hulle het hul verbly in mekaar se veiligheid; ja, hulle het mekaar liefgehad, en is ook deur die hele volk van Nefi liefgehad.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat nadat die Lamaniete klaar hulle dooies begrawe het en ook die dooies van die Nefiete, is hulle teruggemarsjeer na die land Oorvloed; en Teankum, op bevel van Moroni, het hulle laat begin werk om 'n sloot te grawe rondom die land, of die stad, Oorvloed.
- 4 En hy het hulle ook 'n borswering van hout laat bou op die binneste wal van die sloot; en hulle het grond uit die sloot opgewerp teen die borswering van hout; en so het hulle die Lamaniete laat werk tot dat hulle die stad Oorvloed omring het met 'n sterk muur van hout en grond, tot 'n buitengewone hoogte.
- 5 En hierdie stad het 'n buitengewone vesting geword vir altyd daarna; en in hierdie stad het hulle die gevangenes van die Lamaniete bewaak; ja, en wel binne 'n muur wat hulle laat bou het met hul eie hande. Nou, Moroni was verplig om die Lamaniete te laat werk, omdat dit maklik was om hulle te bewaak terwyl hulle werk; en hy het al sy magte benodig wanneer hy 'n aanval op die Lamaniete moes loods.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat Moroni sodoende 'n oorwinning behaal het oor een van die grootste van die leërs van die Lamaniete, en het besit gekry van die stad Mulek, wat een van die sterkste vestings van die Lamaniete in die land Nefi was; en so het hy ook 'n vesting gebou om sy gevangenes te behou.

Alma 53

And it came to pass that they did set guards over the prisoners of the Lamanites, and did compel them to go forth and bury their dead, yea, and also the dead of the Nephites who were slain; and Moroni placed men over them to guard them while they should perform their labors.

And Moroni went to the city of Mulek with Lehi, and took command of the city and gave it unto Lehi. Now behold, this Lehi was a man who had been with Moroni in the more part of all his battles; and he was a man like unto Moroni, and they rejoiced in each other's safety; yea, they were beloved by each other, and also beloved by all the people of Nefhi.

And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had finished burying their dead and also the dead of the Nephites, they were marched back into the land Bountiful; and Teancum, by the orders of Moroni, caused that they should commence laboring in digging a ditch round about the land, or the city, Bountiful.

And he caused that they should build a breastwork of timbers upon the inner bank of the ditch; and they cast up dirt out of the ditch against the breastwork of timbers; and thus they did cause the Lamanites to labor until they had encircled the city of Bountiful round about with a strong wall of timbers and earth, to an exceeding height.

And this city became an exceeding stronghold ever after; and in this city they did guard the prisoners of the Lamanites; yea, even within a wall which they had caused them to build with their own hands. Now Moroni was compelled to cause the Lamanites to labor, because it was easy to guard them while at their labor; and he desired all his forces when he should make an attack upon the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni had thus gained a victory over one of the greatest of the armies of the Lamanites, and had obtained possession of the city of Mulek, which was one of the strongest holds of the Lamanites in the land of Nefhi; and thus he had also built a stronghold to retain his prisoners.

7 En dit het gebeur dat hy nie meer probeer het om teen die Lamaniete te veg in daardie jaar nie, maar hy het sy manne gebruik om voor te berei vir oorlog, ja, en met die maak van versterkings om te waak teen die Lamaniete, ja, en ook om hulle vroue en hulle kinders te verlos van hongersnood en verdrukking, en voedsel te voorsien vir hulle leërs.

8 En nou het dit gebeur dat die leërs van die Lamaniete, by die westelike see, suid, tydens die afwesigheid van Moroni as gevolg van 'n sameswering onder die Nefiete, wat onenigheid veroorsaak het onder hulle, 'n bietjie grond gewen het van die Nefiete, ja, in soverre dat hulle besit verkry het van 'n aantal van hulle stede in daardie deel van die land.

9 En dus, as gevolg van ongeregtigheid onder hulleself, ja, as gevolg van twiste en sameswerings onder hulleself, is hulle in die allergevaarlikste omstandighede geplaas.

10 En nou, kyk, ek het ietwat om te sê aangaande die volk van Ammon, wat, aan die begin, Lamaniete was; maar deur Ammon en sy broers, of eerder, deur die krag en woord van God, hulle bekeer is tot die Here; en hulle was afgebring na die land Zarahemla en was sedertdien beskerm deur die Nefiete.

11 En vanweë hulle eed is hulle daarvan weerhou om wapens op te neem teen hulle broers; want hulle het 'n eed geneem dat hulle nooit meer bloed sou vergiet nie; en volgens hulle eed sou hulle omgekom het; ja, hulle sou hulself toegelaat het om in die hande van hulle broers te val, as dit nie was vir die jammerhartigheid en die uitermate liefde wat Ammon en sy broers vir hulle gehad het nie.

12 En om hierdie rede is hulle afgebring na die land Zarahemla; en hulle was altyd beskerm deur die Nefiete.

13 Maar dit het gebeur dat toe hulle die gevaar sien, en die baie verdrukkinge en beproewings wat die Nefiete ter wille van hulle verdra het, het hulle innig jammer vir hulle gevoel, en was begerig om wapens op te neem ter verdediging van hulle land.

And it came to pass that he did no more attempt a battle with the Lamanites in that year, but he did employ his men in preparing for war, yea, and in making fortifications to guard against the Lamanites, yea, and also delivering their women and their children from famine and affliction, and providing food for their armies.

And now it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites, on the west sea, south, while in the absence of Moroni on account of some intrigue amongst the Nephites, which caused dissensions amongst them, had gained some ground over the Nephites, yea, insomuch that they had obtained possession of a number of their cities in that part of the land.

And thus because of iniquity amongst themselves, yea, because of dissensions and intrigue amongst themselves they were placed in the most dangerous circumstances.

And now behold, I have somewhat to say concerning the people of Ammon, who, in the beginning, were Lamanites; but by Ammon and his brethren, or rather by the power and word of God, they had been converted unto the Lord; and they had been brought down into the land of Zarahemla, and had ever since been protected by the Nephites.

And because of their oath they had been kept from taking up arms against their brethren; for they had taken an oath that they never would shed blood more; and according to their oath they would have perished; yea, they would have suffered themselves to have fallen into the hands of their brethren, had it not been for the pity and the exceeding love which Ammon and his brethren had had for them.

And for this cause they were brought down into the land of Zarahemla; and they ever had been protected by the Nephites.

But it came to pass that when they saw the danger, and the many afflictions and tribulations which the Nephites bore for them, they were moved with compassion and were desirous to take up arms in the defence of their country.

14 Maar kyk, toe hulle op die punt staan om hul wapens van oorlog op te neem, is hulle oorweldig deur die oorredings van Helaman en sy broers, want hulle het op die punt gestaan om die eed te verbreek wat hulle geneem het.

15 En Helaman het gevrees dat deur dít te doen sou hulle hul siele verloor; daarom is almal wat hierdie verbond gesluit het, gedwing om te aanskou hoe hulle broers deur hul verdrukkinge worstel, in hulle gevaarlike omstandighede in hierdie tyd.

16 Maar kyk, dit het gebeur dat hulle baie seuns gehad het wat nie ’n verbond gesluit het dat hulle nie hul wapens van oorlog sou opneem om hulself te verdedig teen hulle vyande nie; daarom het hulle hulself bymekaargebring in hierdie tyd, soveel as wat in staat was om wapens op te neem, en hulle het hulself Nefiete genoem.

17 En hulle het ’n verbond gesluit om te veg vir die vryheid van die Nefiete, ja, om die land te beskerm tot die neerlegging van hulle lewens; ja, hulle het selfs ’n verbond gesluit dat hulle nooit hul vryheid sou prysgee nie, maar dat hulle sou veg in alle omstandighede om die Nefiete en hulleself te beskerm teen slawerny.

18 Nou kyk, daar was tweeduisend van daardie jong manne wat hierdie verbond gesluit en hul wapens van oorlog opgeneem het om hul land te verdedig.

19 En nou kyk, waar hulle nooit voorheen ’n nadeel vir die Nefiete was nie, het hulle nou op die tydstep ook ’n groot steun geword; want hulle het hul wapens van oorlog opgeneem, en hulle wou hê dat Helaman hulle leier moes wees.

20 En hulle was almal jong manne, en hulle was uitermate dapper in moed, en ook in krag en ywer; maar kyk, dit was nie al nie—hulle was manne wat getrou was te alle tye in watter ding ook al aan hulle toevertrou was.

21 Ja, hulle was manne van waarheid en erns, want hulle was geleer om die gebooie van God te onderhou en om opreg te wandel voor Hom.

22 En nou het dit gebeur dat Helaman aan die hoof van sy tweeduisend jong soldate gemarsjeer het, ter ondersteuning van die volk op die grense van die land in die suide by die westelike see.

But behold, as they were about to take their weapons of war, they were overpowered by the persuasions of Helaman and his brethren, for they were about to break the oath which they had made.

And Helaman feared lest by so doing they should lose their souls; therefore all those who had entered into this covenant were compelled to behold their brethren wade through their afflictions, in their dangerous circumstances at this time.

But behold, it came to pass they had many sons, who had not entered into a covenant that they would not take their weapons of war to defend themselves against their enemies; therefore they did assemble themselves together at this time, as many as were able to take up arms, and they called themselves Nephites.

And they entered into a covenant to fight for the liberty of the Nephites, yea, to protect the land unto the laying down of their lives; yea, even they covenanted that they never would give up their liberty, but they would fight in all cases to protect the Nephites and themselves from bondage.

Now behold, there were two thousand of those young men, who entered into this covenant and took their weapons of war to defend their country.

And now behold, as they never had hitherto been a disadvantage to the Nephites, they became now at this period of time also a great support; for they took their weapons of war, and they would that Helaman should be their leader.

And they were all young men, and they were exceedingly valiant for courage, and also for strength and activity; but behold, this was not all—they were men who were true at all times in whatsoever thing they were entrusted.

Yea, they were men of truth and soberness, for they had been taught to keep the commandments of God and to walk uprightly before him.

And now it came to pass that Helaman did march at the head of his two thousand stripling soldiers, to the support of the people in the borders of the land on the south by the west sea.

23 En so het die agt en twintigste jaar geëindig van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nepi.

And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alma 54

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur aan die begin van die nege en twintigste jaar van die regters, dat Ammoron na Moroni gestuur het om te vra dat hy gevangenes moes uitruil.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat Moroni gevoel het om uitermate te jubel oor hierdie versoek, want hy het die voorrade begeer wat uitgedeel is vir die onderhoud van die Lamanitiese gevangenes vir die onderhoud van sy eie mense; en hy het ook sy eie mense begeer vir die versterking van sy leër.
- 3 Nou het die Lamaniete baie vroue en kinders geneem, en daar was nie 'n vrou nóg 'n kind onder al die gevangenes van Moroni, of die gevangenes wat Moroni geneem het; daarom het Moroni besluit op strategie om soveel van die gevangenes van die Nefiete van die Lamaniete af te verkry as wat moontlik was.
- 4 Daarom het hy 'n brief geskryf, en dit gestuur deur die dienskneg van Ammoron wat 'n brief vir Moroni gebring het. Nou hierdie is die woorde wat hy aan Ammoron geskryf het, en gesê het:
- 5 Kyk, Ammoron, ek het ietwat aan jou geskryf aangaande hierdie oorlog wat julle gevoer het teen my volk, of eerder, wat jou broer gevoer het teen hulle, en wat julle nog vasbeslote is om voort te sit na sy dood.
- 6 Kyk, ek wil jou ietwat vertel aangaande die geregtigheid van God, en die swaard van sy almagtige toorn, wat oor julle hang tensy julle bekeer en julle leërs terugtrek na julle eie grondgebied, of na die land van jul besitting, wat die land Nefi is.
- 7 Ja, ek sou jou hierdie dinge vertel het as jy in staat was om ag te slaan op hulle; ja, ek sou jou vertel aangaande daardie vreeslike hel wat wag om sulke moordenaars te ontvang soos jy en jou broer was, tensy julle bekeer en julle moorddadige voornemens terugtrek, en terugkeer met jul leërs na jul eie grondgebied.
- 8 Maar omdat julle eenmaal hierdie dinge verwerp het, en geveg het teen die volk van die Here, net so mag ek verwag dat julle dit weer sal doen.

Alma 54

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year of the judges, that Ammoron sent unto Moroni desiring that he would exchange prisoners.

And it came to pass that Moroni felt to rejoice exceedingly at this request, for he desired the provisions which were imparted for the support of the Lamanite prisoners for the support of his own people; and he also desired his own people for the strengthening of his army.

Now the Lamanites had taken many women and children, and there was not a woman nor a child among all the prisoners of Moroni, or the prisoners whom Moroni had taken; therefore Moroni resolved upon a stratagem to obtain as many prisoners of the Nephites from the Lamanites as it were possible.

Therefore he wrote an epistle, and sent it by the servant of Ammoron, the same who had brought an epistle to Moroni. Now these are the words which he wrote unto Ammoron, saying:

Behold, Ammoron, I have written unto you somewhat concerning this war which ye have waged against my people, or rather which thy brother hath waged against them, and which ye are still determined to carry on after his death.

Behold, I would tell you somewhat concerning the justice of God, and the sword of his almighty wrath, which doth hang over you except ye repent and withdraw your armies into your own lands, or the land of your possessions, which is the land of Nephi.

Yea, I would tell you these things if ye were capable of hearkening unto them; yea, I would tell you concerning that awful hell that awaits to receive such murderers as thou and thy brother have been, except ye repent and withdraw your murderous purposes, and return with your armies to your own lands.

But as ye have once rejected these things, and have fought against the people of the Lord, even so I may expect you will do it again.

- 9 En nou kyk, ons is bereid om julle te ontvang; ja, en tensy julle jul voornemens terugtrek, kyk, julle sal die toorn van daardie God wat julle verwerp het op julle neertrek, en wel tot julle algehele vernietiging.
- 10 Maar, sowaar as die Here leef, ons leërs sal op julle afkom tensy julle terugtrek, en julle sal spoedig deur die dood besoek word, want ons sal ons stede en ons lande behou; ja, en ons sal ons godsdiens handhaaf en die saak van ons God.
- 11 Maar kyk, dit lyk vir my dat ek tevergeefs met jou spreek aangaande hierdie dinge; of dit lyk vir my dat jy 'n kind van die hel is; daarom sal ek my brief afsluit deur aan jou te vertel dat ek nie gevangenes sal uitruil nie, tensy dit op voorwaarde is dat jy 'n man en sy vrou en sy kinders sal uitlewer, vir een gevangene; as dit die geval is dat jy dit sal doen, sal ek uitruil.
- 12 En kyk, as julle dit nie doen nie, sal ek teen julle opkom met my leërs; ja, ek sal selfs my vroue en my kinders bewapen, en ek sal teen julle opkom, en ek sal julle volg tot in julle eie land, wat die land van ons eerste erfenis is; ja, en dit sal bloed vir bloed wees, ja, lewe vir lewe; en ek sal julle beveg totdat julle uitgeroei is vanaf die aangesig van die aarde.
- 13 Kyk, ek verkeer in my toorn, en ook my volk; julle het gesoek om ons te vermoor, en ons het net gesoek om onself te verdedig. Maar kyk, as julle soek om ons verder te vernietig, sal ons soek om julle te vernietig; ja, en ons sal ons land soek, die land van ons eerste erfenis.
- 14 Nou sluit ek my brief af. Ek is Moroni; ek is 'n leier van die volk van die Nefiete.
- 15 Nou het dit gebeur dat Ammoron, toe hy hierdie brief ontvang het, vertoornd was; en hy het nog 'n brief geskryf aan Moroni, en hierdie is die woorde wat hy geskryf, en gesê het:
- 16 Ek is Ammoron, die koning van die Lamaniete; ek is die broer van Amalikia vir wie julle vermoor het. Kyk, ek sal sy bloed wreek op julle, ja, en ek sal op julle afkom met my leërs, want ek vrees nie julle dreigemente nie.

And now behold, we are prepared to receive you; yea, and except you withdraw your purposes, behold, ye will pull down the wrath of that God whom you have rejected upon you, even to your utter destruction.

But, as the Lord liveth, our armies shall come upon you except ye withdraw, and ye shall soon be visited with death, for we will retain our cities and our lands; yea, and we will maintain our religion and the cause of our God.

But behold, it supposeth me that I talk to you concerning these things in vain; or it supposeth me that thou art a child of hell; therefore I will close my epistle by telling you that I will not exchange prisoners, save it be on conditions that ye will deliver up a man and his wife and his children, for one prisoner; if this be the case that ye will do it, I will exchange.

And behold, if ye do not this, I will come against you with my armies; yea, even I will arm my women and my children, and I will come against you, and I will follow you even into your own land, which is the land of our first inheritance; yea, and it shall be blood for blood, yea, life for life; and I will give you battle even until you are destroyed from off the face of the earth.

Behold, I am in my anger, and also my people; ye have sought to murder us, and we have only sought to defend ourselves. But behold, if ye seek to destroy us more we will seek to destroy you; yea, and we will seek our land, the land of our first inheritance.

Now I close my epistle. I am Moroni; I am a leader of the people of the Nephites.

Now it came to pass that Ammoron, when he had received this epistle, was angry; and he wrote another epistle unto Moroni, and these are the words which he wrote, saying:

I am Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites; I am the brother of Amalickiah whom ye have murdered. Behold, I will avenge his blood upon you, yea, and I will come upon you with my armies for I fear not your threatenings.

- 17 Want kyk, julle vaders het hulle broers verontreg, in soverre dat hulle hul beroof het van hulle reg op die regering, toe dit na regte aan hulle behoort het.
- 18 En nou, kyk, as julle jul wapens sal neerlê, en julle onderwerp om regeer te word deur diegene aan wie die regering na regte behoort, dan sal ek my volk hulle wapens laat neerlê en sal nie langer in oorlog verkeer nie.
- 19 Kyk, jy het baie dreigemente teen my en my volk geuiter; maar kyk, ons vrees nie jou dreigemente nie.
- 20 Nogtans, ek sal toelaat om gevangenes uit te ruil volgens jou versoek, graag, sodat ek my voedsel kan behou vir my manne van oorlog; en ons sal 'n oorlog voer wat ewig sal wees, óf om die Nefiete aan ons gesag te onderwerp, óf tot hulle ewige uitwissing.
- 21 En betreffende daardie God wat jy sê ons verwerp het, kyk, ons ken nie so 'n wese nie; nóg julle; maar as dit so is dat daar so 'n wese is, dink ons dat dit moontlik is dat Hy ons gemaak het sowel as julle.
- 22 En as dit so is dat daar 'n duivel is en 'n hel, kyk, sal Hy jou nie daarheen stuur om te woon saam met my broer vir wie julle vermoor het nie, van wie julle geskimp het dat hy na so 'n plek gegaan het? Maar kyk, hierdie dinge maak nie saak nie.
- 23 Ek is Ammoron, en 'n afstammeling van Zoram, vir wie julle vaders gedwing en uitgebring het uit Jerusalem.
- 24 En kyk, nou, ek is 'n moedige Lamaniet; kyk, hierdie oorlog is gevoer om hulle onregte te wreek, en om hul regte te handhaaf en te verkry oor die regering; en ek sluit my brief aan Moroni af.

For behold, your fathers did wrong their brethren, insomuch that they did rob them of their right to the government when it rightly belonged unto them.

And now behold, if ye will lay down your arms, and subject yourselves to be governed by those to whom the government doth rightly belong, then will I cause that my people shall lay down their weapons and shall be at war no more.

Behold, ye have breathed out many threatenings against me and my people; but behold, we fear not your threatenings.

Nevertheless, I will grant to exchange prisoners according to your request, gladly, that I may preserve my food for my men of war; and we will wage a war which shall be eternal, either to the subjecting the Nephites to our authority or to their eternal extinction.

And as concerning that God whom ye say we have rejected, behold, we know not such a being; neither do ye; but if it so be that there is such a being, we know not but that he hath made us as well as you.

And if it so be that there is a devil and a hell, behold will he not send you there to dwell with my brother whom ye have murdered, whom ye have hinted that he hath gone to such a place? But behold these things matter not.

I am Ammoron, and a descendant of Zoram, whom your fathers pressed and brought out of Jerusalem.

And behold now, I am a bold Lamanite; behold, this war hath been waged to avenge their wrongs, and to maintain and to obtain their rights to the government; and I close my epistle to Moroni.

Alma 55

- 1 Nou het dit gebeur dat toe Moroni hierdie brief ontvang het, het hy meer vertoornd geword, omdat hy geweet het dat Ammoron 'n volmaakte kennis gehad het van sy bedrog; ja, hy het geweet dat Ammoron geweet het dat dit nie 'n regverdige saak was wat hom oorlog laat voer het teen die volk van Nefi nie.
- 2 En hy het gesê: Kyk, ek sal nie gevangenes uitruil met Ammoron nie, tensy hy sy voornemens terugtrek, soos ek in my brief verklaar het; want ek sal nie aan hom gun dat hy enigsins meer mag sal hê as wat hy het nie.
- 3 Kyk, ek ken die plek waar die Lamaniete my mense bewaak wat hulle gevange geneem het; en omdat Ammoron nie vir my my brief gegun het nie, kyk, ek sal aan hom gee volgens my woorde; ja, ek sal die dood soek onder hulle totdat hulle sal pleit om vrede.
- 4 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe Moroni hierdie woorde gespreek het, het hy laat soek onder sy manne, sodat hy miskien 'n man onder hulle mag vind wat 'n afstammeling van Laman was.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat hulle een gevind het, wie se naam Laman was; en hy was een van die diensknegte van die koning wat deur Amalikia vermoor is.
- 6 Nou het Moroni Laman en 'n klein aantal van sy manne laat gaan na die wagte wat oor die Nefiete was.
- 7 Nou, die Nefiete was bewaak in die stad Gid; daarom het Moroni vir Laman aangestel en 'n klein getal manne met hom laat saamgaan.
- 8 En toe dit aand was het Laman na die wagte gegaan wat oor die Nefiete was, en kyk, hulle het hom sien kom, en hom toegeroep; maar hy sê vir hulle: Vrees nie; kyk, ek is 'n Lamaniet. Kyk, ons het ontvlug van die Nefiete, en hulle slaap; en kyk, ons het van hulle wyn geneem en dit saamgebring met ons.
- 9 Nou toe die Lamaniete hierdie woorde gehoor het, het hulle hom ontvang met blydskap; en hulle het aan hom gesê: Gee vir ons van julle wyn, sodat ons mag drink; ons is bly dat julle die wyn met julle saamgeneem het, want ons is moeg.

Alma 55

Now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle he was more angry, because he knew that Ammoron had a perfect knowledge of his fraud; yea, he knew that Ammoron knew that it was not a just cause that had caused him to wage a war against the people of Nephi.

And he said: Behold, I will not exchange prisoners with Ammoron save he will withdraw his purpose, as I have stated in my epistle; for I will not grant unto him that he shall have any more power than what he hath got.

Behold, I know the place where the Lamanites do guard my people whom they have taken prisoners; and as Ammoron would not grant unto me mine epistle, behold, I will give unto him according to my words; yea, I will seek death among them until they shall sue for peace.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words, he caused that a search should be made among his men, that perhaps he might find a man who was a descendant of Laman among them.

And it came to pass that they found one, whose name was Laman; and he was one of the servants of the king who was murdered by Amalickiah.

Now Moroni caused that Laman and a small number of his men should go forth unto the guards who were over the Nephites.

Now the Nephites were guarded in the city of Gid; therefore Moroni appointed Laman and caused that a small number of men should go with him.

And when it was evening Laman went to the guards who were over the Nephites, and behold, they saw him coming and they hailed him; but he saith unto them: Fear not; behold, I am a Lamanite. Behold, we have escaped from the Nephites, and they sleep; and behold we have taken of their wine and brought with us.

Now when the Lamanites heard these words they received him with joy; and they said unto him: Give us of your wine, that we may drink; we are glad that ye have thus taken wine with you for we are weary.

10 Maar Laman het vir hulle gesê: Laat ons van ons wyn hou totdat ons teen die Nefiete optrek in die stryd. Maar hierdie woorde het hulle net meer begeerig gemaak om van die wyn te drink;

11 Want, het hulle gesê: Ons is moeg, daarom laat ons van die wyn neem, en weldra sal ons wyn ontvang vir ons rantsoene, wat ons sal versterk om op te gaan teen die Nefiete.

12 En Laman het aan hulle gesê: Julle mag doen volgens julle begeertes.

13 En dit het gebeur dat hulle vryelik van die wyn geneem het; en dit het aangenaam gesmaak, daarom het hulle meer vryelik daarvan geneem; en dit was sterk, omdat dit voorberei was in sterkte.

14 En dit het gebeur dat hulle gedrink het en vrolik was, en weldra was hulle almal dronk.

15 En nou toe Laman en sy manne sien dat hulle almal dronk was, en in 'n diep slaap was, het hulle teruggekeer na Moroni en hom al die dinge vertel wat gebeur het.

16 En nou, dit was volgens die plan van Moroni. En Moroni het sy manne voorberei met wapens van oorlog; en hy het na die stad Gid gegaan, terwyl die Lamaniete in 'n diepe slaap was en dronk was, en het wapens van oorlog onder die gevangenes ingegooi, in soverre dat hulle almal bewapen was;

17 Ja, selfs aan hulle vroue en al diegene van hulle kinders, soveel as wat in staat was om 'n wapen van oorlog te gebruik, toe Moroni al daardie gevangenes bewapen het; en al daardie dinge is in volslae stilte gedoen.

18 Maar al sou hulle die Lamaniete wakker gemaak het, kyk, hulle was dronk en die Nefiete kon hulle gedood het.

19 Maar kyk, dit was nie die wens van Moroni nie; hy het nie behae geskep in moord of bloedvergieting nie, maar hy het behae geskep om sy volk te red van vernietiging; en om hierdie rede wou hy nie oor hom ongeregtigheid bring nie, hy wou die Lamaniete nie aanval en hulle vernietig in hulle dronkenskap nie.

20 Maar hy het sy begeertes verkry; want hy het daardie gevangenes van die Nefiete bewapen wat binne die mure van die stad was, en het aan hulle mag gegee om besit te verkry van daardie dele wat binne die mure was.

But Laman said unto them: Let us keep of our wine till we go against the Nephites to battle. But this saying only made them more desirous to drink of the wine;

For, said they: We are weary, therefore let us take of the wine, and by and by we shall receive wine for our rations, which will strengthen us to go against the Nephites.

And Laman said unto them: You may do according to your desires.

And it came to pass that they did take of the wine freely; and it was pleasant to their taste, therefore they took of it more freely; and it was strong, having been prepared in its strength.

And it came to pass they did drink and were merry, and by and by they were all drunken.

And now when Laman and his men saw that they were all drunken, and were in a deep sleep, they returned to Moroni and told him all the things that had happened.

And now this was according to the design of Moroni. And Moroni had prepared his men with weapons of war; and he went to the city Gid, while the Lamanites were in a deep sleep and drunken, and cast in weapons of war unto the prisoners, inso-much that they were all armed;

Yea, even to their women, and all those of their children, as many as were able to use a weapon of war, when Moroni had armed all those prisoners; and all those things were done in a profound silence.

But had they awakened the Lamanites, behold they were drunken and the Nephites could have slain them.

But behold, this was not the desire of Moroni; he did not delight in murder or bloodshed, but he delighted in the saving of his people from destruction; and for this cause he might not bring upon him injustice, he would not fall upon the Lamanites and destroy them in their drunkenness.

But he had obtained his desires; for he had armed those prisoners of the Nephites who were within the wall of the city, and had given them power to gain possession of those parts which were within the walls.

21 En toe laat hy die manne wat by hom was 'n ent van hulle af terugtrek, en die leërs van die Lamaniete omsingel.

22 Nou kyk, dit is in die nag gedoen, sodat toe die Lamaniete die oggend wakker word, het hulle gewaar dat hulle omsingel is deur die Nefiete van buite, en dat hulle gevangenes van binne bewapen was.

23 En so het hulle gesien dat die Nefiete mag gehad het oor hulle; en onder hierdie omstandighede het hulle gevind dat dit nie raadsaam was dat hulle teen die Nefiete sou veg nie; daarom het hulle hoofkapteins hulle wapens van oorlog geëis, en hulle het hulle na vore gebring en hulle aan die voete van die Nefiete gewerp, en om barmhartigheid gepleit.

24 Nou kyk, dit was die begeerte van Moroni. Hy het hulle krygsgevangene geneem, besit geneem van die stad, en al die gevangenes laat vrylaat wat Nefiete was; en hulle het aangesluit by die leer van Moroni en was 'n groot krag tot sy leer.

25 En dit het gebeur dat hy die Lamaniete, wat hy gevange geneem het, 'n werk laat begin het om die fortifikasies rondom die stad Gid te versterk.

26 En dit het gebeur dat nadat hy die stad Gid laat versterk het na sy sin, het hy sy gevangenes laat neem na die stad Oorvloed; en hy het ook daardie stad bewaak met 'n uitermate sterk mag.

27 En dit het gebeur dat hulle, niesteenstaande al die sameswerings van die Lamaniete, al die gevangenes behou en beskerm het wat hulle geneem het, en ook al die grond behou het en die voordeel wat hulle teruggeneem het.

28 En dit het gebeur dat die Nefiete weer begin het om te seëvier, en om hulle regte en voorregte terug te eis.

29 Baie keer het die Lamaniete gepoog om hulle snags te omsingel, maar in hierdie pogings het hulle baie gevangenes verloor.

30 En baie keer het hulle gepoog om van hulle wyn vir die Nefiete te bedien, sodat hulle hul mag vernietig met gif of met dronkenskap.

And then he caused the men who were with him to withdraw a pace from them, and surround the armies of the Lamanites.

Now behold this was done in the night-time, so that when the Lamanites awoke in the morning they beheld that they were surrounded by the Nephites without, and that their prisoners were armed within.

And thus they saw that the Nephites had power over them; and in these circumstances they found that it was not expedient that they should fight with the Nephites; therefore their chief captains demanded their weapons of war, and they brought them forth and cast them at the feet of the Nephites, pleading for mercy.

Now behold, this was the desire of Moroni. He took them prisoners of war, and took possession of the city, and caused that all the prisoners should be liberated, who were Nephites; and they did join the army of Moroni, and were a great strength to his army.

And it came to pass that he did cause the Lamanites, whom he had taken prisoners, that they should commence a labor in strengthening the fortifications round about the city Gid.

And it came to pass that when he had fortified the city Gid, according to his desires, he caused that his prisoners should be taken to the city Bountiful; and he also guarded that city with an exceedingly strong force.

And it came to pass that they did, notwithstanding all the intrigues of the Lamanites, keep and protect all the prisoners whom they had taken, and also maintain all the ground and the advantage which they had retaken.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began again to be victorious, and to reclaim their rights and their privileges.

Many times did the Lamanites attempt to encircle them about by night, but in these attempts they did lose many prisoners.

And many times did they attempt to administer of their wine to the Nephites, that they might destroy them with poison or with drunkenness.

- 31 Maar kyk, die Nefiete was nie traag om die Here hulle God te onthou in hierdie hulle tyd van verdrukking nie. Hulle kon nie in hulle strikke gevang word nie; ja, hulle wou nie van hulle wyn neem, tensy hulle dit eers aan sommige van die Lamanitiese gevangenes gegee het nie.
- 32 En hulle was dus versigtig dat geen gif onder hulle toegedien word nie; want as hulle wyn 'n Lamaniet sou vergiftig, sou dit ook 'n Nefiet vergiftig; en so het hulle al hul drankes getoets.
- 33 En nou het dit gebeur dat dit raadsaam was vir Moroni om voorbereidings te maak om die stad Morianton aan te val; want kyk, die Lamaniete het, deur hulle arbeid, die stad Morianton versterk totdat dit 'n uitnemende sterk vesting geword het.
- 34 En hulle het gedurig nuwe magte in daardie stad ingebring, en ook nuwe voorrade van lewensmiddele.
- 35 En so het die nege en twintigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters geëindig oor die volk van Nephi.

But behold, the Nephites were not slow to remember the Lord their God in this their time of affliction. They could not be taken in their snares; yea, they would not partake of their wine, save they had first given to some of the Lamanite prisoners.

And they were thus cautious that no poison should be administered among them; for if their wine would poison a Lamanite it would also poison a Nephite; and thus they did try all their liquors.

And now it came to pass that it was expedient for Moroni to make preparations to attack the city Morianton; for behold, the Lamanites had, by their labors, fortified the city Morianton until it had become an exceeding stronghold.

And they were continually bringing new forces into that city, and also new supplies of provisions.

And thus ended the twenty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alma 56

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur aan die begin van die dertigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters, op die tweede dag van die eerste maand het Moroni 'n brief ontvang van Helaman waarin hy die sake van die volk meld in daardie deel van die land.
- 2 En hierdie is die woorde wat hy geskryf, en gesê het: My teer geliefde broer, Moroni, net soos in die Here as in die beproewing van ons oorlogvoering; kyk, my geliefde broer, ek het ietwat om aan jou te vertel aangaande ons oorlogvoering in hierdie deel van die land.
- 3 Kyk, tweeduisend van die seuns van daardie manne wat Ammon afgebring het uit die land Nepi—nou jy het geweet dat hierdie manne afstammeling was van Laman, wat die oudste seun was van ons vader Lehi;
- 4 Nou hoef ek nie aan jou te vertel aangaande hulle oorlewering of hulle ongeloof nie, want jy weet aangaande al hierdie dinge—
- 5 Daarom is dit vir my genoeg dat ek jou vertel dat tweeduisend van hierdie jong manne hulle wapens van oorlog geneem het, en wou hê dat ek hulle leier moes wees; en ons het uitgekóm om ons land te verdedig.
- 6 En nou weet jy ook aangaande die verbond wat hulle vaders gesluit het, dat hulle nie hul wapens van oorlog sou opneem teen hulle broers om bloed te vergiet nie.
- 7 Maar in die ses en twintigste jaar, toe hulle ons verdrukkinge gesien het, en ons beproewing vir hulle, was hulle op die punt om die verbond te verbreek wat hulle gesluit het, en hul wapens van oorlog op te neem tot ons verdediging.
- 8 Maar ek wou hulle nie toelaat dat hulle hierdie verbond sou verbreek wat hulle gesluit het nie, veronderstellend dat God ons sou versterk, in soverre ons nie langer sou ly nie, vanweë die nakoming van die eed wat hulle geneem het.

Alma 56

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges, on the second day in the first month, Moroni received an epistle from Helaman, stating the affairs of the people in that quarter of the land.

And these are the words which he wrote, saying: My dearly beloved brother, Moroni, as well in the Lord as in the tribulations of our warfare; behold, my beloved brother, I have somewhat to tell you concerning our warfare in this part of the land.

Behold, two thousand of the sons of those men whom Ammon brought down out of the land of Nephi—now ye have known that these were descendants of Laman, who was the eldest son of our father Lehi;

Now I need not rehearse unto you concerning their traditions or their unbelief, for thou knowest concerning all these things—

Therefore it sufficeth me that I tell you that two thousand of these young men have taken their weapons of war, and would that I should be their leader; and we have come forth to defend our country.

And now ye also know concerning the covenant which their fathers made, that they would not take up their weapons of war against their brethren to shed blood.

But in the twenty and sixth year, when they saw our afflictions and our tribulations for them, they were about to break the covenant which they had made and take up their weapons of war in our defence.

But I would not suffer them that they should break this covenant which they had made, supposing that God would strengthen us, insomuch that we should not suffer more because of the fulfilling the oath which they had taken.

- 9 Maar kyk, hier is een ding waarin ons groot vreugde mag hê. Want kyk, in die ses en twintigste jaar, het ek, Helaman, aan die hoof van hierdie tweeduisend jongmanne gemarsjeer na die stad Judéa, om Antipus by te staan, vir wie jy as leier aangestel het oor die volk van daardie deel van die land.
- 10 En ek het my tweeduisend seuns gevoeg, (want hulle is waardig om seuns genoem te word) by die leër van Antipus, in welke versterking Antipus hom uitermate verheug het; want kyk, sy leër was vermindder deur die Lamaniete omdat hulle magte 'n groot aantal van ons manne gedood het, waaroor ons rede het om te treur.
- 11 Nogtans, ons mag onself troos oor hierdie feit, dat hulle gesterf het vir die saak van hulle land en vir hulle God, ja, en hulle is gelukkig.
- 12 En die Lamaniete het ook baie gevangenes teruggehou, almal wat hoofkapteins was, want niemand anders het hulle lewendig gespaar nie. En ons veronderstel dat hulle nou teen dié tyd in die land Nephi is; dit is so as hulle nie gedood is nie.
- 13 En nou hierdie is die stede waarvan die Lamaniete besit verkry het deur die vergieting van die bloed van so baie van ons dapper manne:
- 14 Die land Manti, of die stad Manti, en die stad Zeesrom, en die stad Kumeni, en die stad Antipara.
- 15 En hierdie is die stede wat hulle besit het toe ek in die stad Judéa aangekom het; en ek het Antipus en sy manne gevind, werksaam met hul krag om die stad te versterk.
- 16 Ja, en hulle was terneergedruk in liggaam sowel as in die gees, want hulle het dapper geveg bedags en snags gearbei om hul stede te behou; en so het hulle allerlei groot verdrukkinge gely.
- 17 En nou was hulle vasberade om in hierdie plek te oorwin of te sterwe; daarom mag jy met goeie rede veronderstel dat hierdie klein mag wat ek saamgebring het met my, ja, daardie seuns van my, aan hulle groot hoop en veel vreugde gegee het.
- 18 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe die Lamaniete sien dat Antipus 'n groter versterking tot sy leër bygekry het, was hulle verplig deur die bevel van Ammoron om nie op te trek teen die stad Judéa, of teen ons in die stryd nie.

But behold, here is one thing in which we may have great joy. For behold, in the twenty and sixth year, I, Helaman, did march at the head of these two thousand young men to the city of Judea, to assist Antipus, whom ye had appointed a leader over the people of that part of the land.

And I did join my two thousand sons, (for they are worthy to be called sons) to the army of Antipus, in which strength Antipus did rejoice exceedingly; for behold, his army had been reduced by the Lamanites because their forces had slain a vast number of our men, for which cause we have to mourn.

Nevertheless, we may console ourselves in this point, that they have died in the cause of their country and of their God, yea, and they are happy.

And the Lamanites had also retained many prisoners, all of whom are chief captains, for none other have they spared alive. And we suppose that they are now at this time in the land of Nephi; it is so if they are not slain.

And now these are the cities of which the Lamanites have obtained possession by the shedding of the blood of so many of our valiant men:

The land of Manti, or the city of Manti, and the city of Zeezrom, and the city of Cumeni, and the city of Antiparah.

And these are the cities which they possessed when I arrived at the city of Judea; and I found Antipus and his men toiling with their might to fortify the city.

Yea, and they were depressed in body as well as in spirit, for they had fought valiantly by day and toiled by night to maintain their cities; and thus they had suffered great afflictions of every kind.

And now they were determined to conquer in this place or die; therefore you may well suppose that this little force which I brought with me, yea, those sons of mine, gave them great hopes and much joy.

And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Antipus had received a greater strength to his army, they were compelled by the orders of Ammoron to not come against the city of Judea, or against us, to battle.

19 En so is ons begunstig deur die Here; want as hulle opgekom het teen ons op hierdie, ons swakheid, mag hulle miskien ons klein leër vernietig het; maar so is ons bewaar.

20 Hulle is deur Ammoron beveel om daardie stede te behou wat hulle ingeneem het; en so het die ses en twintigste jaar geëindig. En aan die begin van die sewe en twintigste jaar het ons ons stad en onself voorberei vir verdediging.

21 Nou was ons begerig dat die Lamaniete teen ons moes opkom; want ons was nie begerig om 'n aanval op hulle vestings te loods nie.

22 En dit het gebeur dat ons spioene rondom gehou het om die bewegings van die Lamaniete dop te hou, sodat hulle ons nie snags nóg bedags verby mag gaan om 'n aanval te loods teen ons ander stede wat aan die noordekant was nie.

23 Want ons het geweet dat in daardie stede was hulle nie sterk genoeg om hulle te ontmoet nie; daarom was ons begerig dat, as hulle by ons verbykom, om hulle aan te val van agter, en sodoende hulle agterhoede aandurf op dieselfde tyd wat hulle van voor aangeval word. Ons het veronderstel dat ons hulle kon oorweldig; maar kyk, ons is teleurgestel in hierdie, ons begeerte.

24 Hulle het ons nie durf verbygaan met hul hele leër nie, nóg het hulle nie gedurf met 'n gedeelte nie, uit vrees dat hulle nie sterk genoeg sou wees en hulle sou val nie.

25 Ook het hulle nie gedurf om af te marsjeer teen die stad Zarahemla nie; nóg het hulle gedurf om die oorsprong van die Sidon oor te steek, oor na die stad Nefiha.

26 En so, met hulle magte, was hulle vasberade om daardie stede te behou wat hulle ingeneem het.

27 En nou het dit gebeur in die tweede maand van hierdie jaar, is daar baie voorrade aan ons gebring van die vaders van my tweeduisend seuns.

28 En ook is daar tweeduisend manne aan ons gestuur vanaf die land Zarahemla. En so was ons voorberei met tienduisend manne, en voorrade vir hulle, en ook vir hulle vroue en hulle kinders.

And thus were we favored of the Lord; for had they come upon us in this our weakness they might have perhaps destroyed our little army; but thus were we preserved.

They were commanded by Ammoron to maintain those cities which they had taken. And thus ended the twenty and sixth year. And in the commencement of the twenty and seventh year we had prepared our city and ourselves for defence.

Now we were desirous that the Lamanites should come upon us; for we were not desirous to make an attack upon them in their strongholds.

And it came to pass that we kept spies out round about, to watch the movements of the Lamanites, that they might not pass us by night nor by day to make an attack upon our other cities which were on the northward.

For we knew in those cities they were not sufficiently strong to meet them; therefore we were desirous, if they should pass by us, to fall upon them in their rear, and thus bring them up in the rear at the same time they were met in the front. We supposed that we could overpower them; but behold, we were disappointed in this our desire.

They durst not pass by us with their whole army, neither durst they with a part, lest they should not be sufficiently strong and they should fall.

Neither durst they march down against the city of Zarahemla; neither durst they cross the head of Sidon, over to the city of Nephihah.

And thus, with their forces, they were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken.

And now it came to pass in the second month of this year, there was brought unto us many provisions from the fathers of those my two thousand sons.

And also there were sent two thousand men unto us from the land of Zarahemla. And thus we were prepared with ten thousand men, and provisions for them, and also for their wives and their children.

29 En die Lamaniete, omdat hulle gewaar het dat ons magte daaglik toeneem, en dat voorrade aankom vir ons behoud, het hulle begin om bevrees te word, en begin om aan te val, om, as dit moontlik was, 'n einde daaraan te maak dat ons voorrade en versterking ontvang.

30 Nou toe ons sien dat die Lamaniete begin om onrustig te word op hierdie wyse, was ons begerig om 'n plan in werking te stel teen hulle; daarom het Antipus beveel dat ek met my jong seuns moes uitmarsjeer na 'n naburige stad, asof ons voorrade bring na 'n naburige stad.

31 En ons moes marsjeer tot naby die stad Antipara, asof ons na die stad aan die anderkant wou gaan, by die grense van die seekus.

32 En dit het gebeur dat ons uitgemarsjeer het, asof met ons voorrade, om na daardie stad te gaan.

33 En dit het gebeur dat Antipus uitgemarsjeer het met 'n deel van sy leër, terwyl hy die res agtergelaat het om die stad te behou. Maar hy het nie uitgemarsjeer totdat ek uitgegaan het met my klein leër, en naby die stad Antipara gekom het nie.

34 En nou, in die stad Antipara, was die sterkste leër van die Lamaniete gevestig; ja, die talrykste.

35 En dit het gebeur dat toe hulle deur hulle spioene ingelig is, het hulle uitgekom met hul leër en opgemarsjeer teen ons.

36 En dit het gebeur dat ons voor hulle uitgevlug het, noordwaarts. En so het ons die magtigste leër van die Lamaniete weggelei.

37 Ja, en wel tot 'n aansienlike afstand, in soverre dat toe hulle sien dat die leër van Antipus hulle agtervolg, met hulle mag, het hulle nie na links of na regs gedraai nie, maar het hul opmars volgehou in 'n reguit koers agter ons aan; en, soos ons veronderstel het, was dit hulle voorneme om ons te dood voordat Antipus hulle sou inhaal, en dít sodat hulle nie omringel sou word deur ons mense nie.

38 En nou het Antipus, toe hy ons gevaar sien, het sy leër se opmars versnel. Maar kyk, dit was nag; daarom het hulle ons nie ingehaal nie, nóg het Antipus hulle ingehaal; daarom het ons gekamp vir die nag.

And the Lamanites, thus seeing our forces increase daily, and provisions arrive for our support, they began to be fearful, and began to sally forth, if it were possible to put an end to our receiving provisions and strength.

Now when we saw that the Lamanites began to grow uneasy on this wise, we were desirous to bring a stratagem into effect upon them; therefore Antipus ordered that I should march forth with my little sons to a neighboring city, as if we were carrying provisions to a neighboring city.

And we were to march near the city of Antiparah, as if we were going to the city beyond, in the borders by the seashore.

And it came to pass that we did march forth, as if with our provisions, to go to that city.

And it came to pass that Antipus did march forth with a part of his army, leaving the remainder to maintain the city. But he did not march forth until I had gone forth with my little army, and came near the city Antiparah.

And now, in the city Antiparah were stationed the strongest army of the Lamanites; yea, the most numerous.

And it came to pass that when they had been informed by their spies, they came forth with their army and marched against us.

And it came to pass that we did flee before them, northward. And thus we did lead away the most powerful army of the Lamanites;

Yea, even to a considerable distance, insomuch that when they saw the army of Antipus pursuing them, with their might, they did not turn to the right nor to the left, but pursued their march in a straight course after us; and, as we suppose, it was their intent to slay us before Antipus should overtake them, and this that they might not be surrounded by our people.

And now Antipus, beholding our danger, did speed the march of his army. But behold, it was night; therefore they did not overtake us, neither did Antipus overtake them; therefore we did camp for the night.

39 En dit het gebeur dat voor die aanbreek van die oggend, kyk, het die Lamaniete ons agterna gesit. Nou was ons nie sterk genoeg om teen hulle te veg nie; ja, ek wou nie toelaat dat my klein seuns in hulle hande val nie; daarom het ons ons opmars voortgesit, en ons het die wildernis in gemarsjeer.

40 Nou het hulle nie gedurf om na regs of na links te draai nie, uit vrees dat hulle omsingel sou word; nóg wou ek nie na regs of na links draai, uit vrees dat hulle my sou inhaal, en ons kon nie bly staan teen hulle nie, maar gedood word, en hulle sou ontvlug; en so het ons daardie hele dag die wildernis ingevlug, en wel totdat dit donker was.

41 En dit het gebeur dat weer eens, toe die lig van die oggend kom, het ons die Lamaniete op ons gesien, en ons het gevlug voor hulle.

42 Maar dit het gebeur dat hulle ons nie ver agtervolg het voordat hulle gehalt het nie; en dit was die oggend van die derde dag van die sewende maand.

43 En nou, of hulle ingehaal is deur Antipus het ons nie geweet nie, maar ek het aan my manne gesê: Kyk, ons dink dit is moontlik dat hulle gehalt het met die doel dat ons teen hulle moet opkom, sodat hulle ons in hulle strik mag vang;

44 Daarom, wat sê julle, my seuns, sal julle teen hulle optrek om te veg?

45 En nou sê ek aan jou, my geliefde broer Moroni, dat ek nooit sulke groot moed gesien het nie, nee, nie onder al die Nefiete nie.

46 Want soos ek hulle altyd my seuns genoem het (want hulle was almal van hulle baie jonk) net so het hulle aan my gesê: Vader, sien, ons God is met ons, en Hy sal nie toelaat dat ons moet val nie; laat ons dan uitgaan; ons sal nie ons broers doodmaak as hulle ons alleen laat nie; daarom laat ons gaan, sodat hulle nie die leër van Antipus sou oorweldig nie.

47 Nou het hulle nog nooit geveg nie, tog het hulle die dood nie gevrees nie; en hulle het meer gedink aan die vryheid van hulle vaders as wat hulle aan hulle lewens gedink het; ja, hulle is deur hulle moeders geleer, dat as hulle nie twyfel nie, God hulle sou verlos.

And it came to pass that before the dawn of the morning, behold, the Lamanites were pursuing us. Now we were not sufficiently strong to contend with them; yea, I would not suffer that my little sons should fall into their hands; therefore we did continue our march, and we took our march into the wilderness.

Now they durst not turn to the right nor to the left lest they should be surrounded; neither would I turn to the right nor to the left lest they should overtake me, and we could not stand against them, but be slain, and they would make their escape; and thus we did flee all that day into the wilderness, even until it was dark.

And it came to pass that again, when the light of the morning came we saw the Lamanites upon us, and we did flee before them.

But it came to pass that they did not pursue us far before they halted; and it was in the morning of the third day of the seventh month.

And now, whether they were overtaken by Antipus we knew not, but I said unto my men: Behold, we know not but they have halted for the purpose that we should come against them, that they might catch us in their snare;

Therefore what say ye, my sons, will ye go against them to battle?

And now I say unto you, my beloved brother Moroni, that never had I seen so great courage, nay, not amongst all the Nephites.

For as I had ever called them my sons (for they were all of them very young) even so they said unto me: Father, behold our God is with us, and he will not suffer that we should fall; then let us go forth; we would not slay our brethren if they would let us alone; therefore let us go, lest they should overpower the army of Antipus.

Now they never had fought, yet they did not fear death; and they did think more upon the liberty of their fathers than they did upon their lives; yea, they had been taught by their mothers, that if they did not doubt, God would deliver them.

48 En hulle het aan my die woorde van hulle moeders oorvertel, en gesê: Ons twyfel nie dat ons moeders dit geweet het nie.

49 En dit het gebeur dat ek teruggekeer het met my tweeduisend teen daardie Lamaniete wat ons agternagesit het. En nou kyk, die leërs van Antipus het hulle ingehaal, en 'n vreeslike veldslag het begin.

50 Die leër van Antipus wat vermoeid was vanweë hulle lang opmars in so 'n kort tydperk, was op die punt om in die hande van die Lamaniete te val; en as ek nie teruggekeer het met my tweeduisend nie, sou hulle hul doel bereik het.

51 Want Antipus het geval deur die swaard, en baie van sy leiers, vanweë hulle vermoeidheid, wat veroorsaak is deur die spoed van hulle opmars—daarom het die manne van Antipus, omdat hulle verward was vanweë die val van hulle leiers, begin om pad te gee voor die Lamaniete.

52 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete moed geskep het, en begin het om hulle agterna te sit; en so het die Lamaniete hulle met groot ywer agtervolg, toe Helaman op hul agterhoede gekom het met sy tweeduisend, en begin het om hulle uitermate dood te maak, in soverre dat die hele leër van die Lamaniete gehalt het en omgedraai het teen Helaman.

53 Nou toe die mense van Antipus sien dat die Lamaniete hulle omgedraai het, het hulle hul manne bymekaargemaak en het weer van agter af op die Lamaniete gekom.

54 En nou het dit gebeur dat ons, die mense van Nephi, die mense van Antipus, en ek met my tweeduisend, die Lamaniete omsingel het en hulle gedood het; ja, in soverre dat hulle verplig was om hulle wapens van oorlog te oorhandig en ook hulleself as krygsgevangenes.

55 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe hulle hul aan ons oorgegee het, kyk, het ek daardie jongmanne getel wat saam met my geveg het, omdat ek gevrees het dat baie van hulle gedood is.

And they rehearsed unto me the words of their mothers, saying: We do not doubt our mothers knew it.

And it came to pass that I did return with my two thousand against these Lamanites who had pursued us. And now behold, the armies of Antipus had overtaken them, and a terrible battle had commenced.

The army of Antipus being weary, because of their long march in so short a space of time, were about to fall into the hands of the Lamanites; and had I not returned with my two thousand they would have obtained their purpose.

For Antipus had fallen by the sword, and many of his leaders, because of their weariness, which was occasioned by the speed of their march—therefore the men of Antipus, being confused because of the fall of their leaders, began to give way before the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites took courage, and began to pursue them; and thus were the Lamanites pursuing them with great vigor when Helaman came upon their rear with his two thousand, and began to slay them exceedingly, insomuch that the whole army of the Lamanites halted and turned upon Helaman.

Now when the people of Antipus saw that the Lamanites had turned them about, they gathered together their men and came again upon the rear of the Lamanites.

And now it came to pass that we, the people of Nephi, the people of Antipus, and I with my two thousand, did surround the Lamanites, and did slay them; yea, insomuch that they were compelled to deliver up their weapons of war and also themselves as prisoners of war.

And now it came to pass that when they had surrendered themselves up unto us, behold, I numbered those young men who had fought with me, fearing lest there were many of them slain.

56 Maar kyk, tot my groot vreugde, het daar nie een siel onder hulle op die aarde neergeval nie; ja, en hulle het geveg asof met die krag van God; ja, nooit is manne geken wat geveg het met sulke wonderbaarlike krag nie; en met sulke magtige krag het hulle die Lamaniete aangeval, dat hulle hul bang gemaak het; en om hierdie rede het die Lamaniete hulle oorgegee as krygsgevangenes.

57 En omdat ons geen plek gehad het vir ons gevangenes, sodat ons hulle kon bewaak om hulle weg te hou van die leërs van die Lamaniete nie, daarom het ons hulle na die land Zarahemla gestuur, en 'n gedeelte van daardie manne van Antipus wat nie gedood is nie, saam met hulle; en die oorblywendes het ek geneem en hulle gevoeg by my jong Ammoniete, en ons opmars begin, terug na die stad Judéa.

But behold, to my great joy, there had not one soul of them fallen to the earth; yea, and they had fought as if with the strength of God; yea, never were men known to have fought with such miraculous strength; and with such mighty power did they fall upon the Lamanites, that they did frighten them; and for this cause did the Lamanites deliver themselves up as prisoners of war.

And as we had no place for our prisoners, that we could guard them to keep them from the armies of the Lamanites, therefore we sent them to the land of Zarahemla, and a part of those men who were not slain of Antipus, with them; and the remainder I took and joined them to my stripling Ammonites, and took our march back to the city of Judea.

Alma 57

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat ek 'n brief van Ammoron ontvang het, die koning, wat verklaar dat as ek daardie krygsgevangenes sou oorhandig wat ons geneem het, dat hy die stad Antipara aan ons sou oorhandig.
- 2 Maar ek het 'n brief gestuur aan die koning dat ons seker was dat ons magte genoeg was om die stad Antipara in te neem deur ons mag; en deur die uitlewering van die gevangenes vir daardie stad sou ons onself onwys ag, en dat ons slegs ons gevangenes sou uitlewer deur uitruiling.
- 3 En Ammoron het my brief geweier, want hy wou nie gevangenes uitruil nie; daarom het ons begin om voorbereidings te maak om teen die stad Antipara te gaan.
- 4 Maar die inwoners van Antipara het die stad verlaat, en gevlug na hulle ander stede, waarvan hulle besit gehad het, om hulle te versterk; en so het die stad Antipara in ons hande geval.
- 5 En so het die agt en twintigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters geëindig.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat aan die begin van die nege en twintigste jaar, het ons 'n voorraad van lewensmiddele ontvang, en ook 'n toevoeging tot ons leër, vanaf die land Zarahemla, en ook van die omliggende land, tot die getal van sesduisend manne, benewens sestig van die seuns van die Ammoniete wat gekom het om aan te sluit by hulle broers, my klein groep van tweeduusend. En nou kyk, ons was sterk, ja, en ons het ook baie voorrade gehad wat na ons gebring is.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat dit ons begeerte was om 'n veldslag te voer teen die leër wat geplaas is om die stad Kumeni te beskerm.
- 8 En nou, kyk, ek sal aan jou toon dat ons weldra ons voorneme uitgevoer het; ja, met ons sterk leër, of met 'n gedeelte van ons sterk leër, het ons gedurende die nag, die stad Kumeni omsingel, 'n rukkie voordat hulle 'n voorraad lewensmiddele sou ontvang.

Alma 57

And now it came to pass that I received an epistle from Ammoron, the king, stating that if I would deliver up those prisoners of war whom we had taken that he would deliver up the city of Antiparah unto us.

But I sent an epistle unto the king, that we were sure our forces were sufficient to take the city of Antiparah by our force; and by delivering up the prisoners for that city we should suppose ourselves unwise, and that we would only deliver up our prisoners on exchange.

And Ammoron refused mine epistle, for he would not exchange prisoners; therefore we began to make preparations to go against the city of Antiparah.

But the people of Antiparah did leave the city, and fled to their other cities, which they had possession of, to fortify them; and thus the city of Antiparah fell into our hands.

And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year, we received a supply of provisions, and also an addition to our army, from the land of Zarahemla, and from the land round about, to the number of six thousand men, besides sixty of the sons of the Ammonites who had come to join their brethren, my little band of two thousand. And now behold, we were strong, yea, and we had also plenty of provisions brought unto us.

And it came to pass that it was our desire to wage a battle with the army which was placed to protect the city Cumeni.

And now behold, I will show unto you that we soon accomplished our desire; yea, with our strong force, or with a part of our strong force, we did surround, by night, the city Cumeni, a little before they were to receive a supply of provisions.

- 9 En dit het gebeur dat ons rondom die stad gekamp het vir baie nagte; maar ons het op ons swaarde geslaap, en wagte opgestel, sodat die Lamaniete nie snags op ons afkom en ons dood nie, wat hulle baie kere probeer het; maar soveel keer as wat hulle dit probeer het, is hulle bloed vergiet.
- 10 Eindelijk het hulle voorrade opgedaag, en hulle was op die punt om die stad binne te gaan gedurende die nag. En ons, pleks daarvan om Lamaniete te wees, was Nefiete; daarom het ons hulle en hulle voorrade geneem.
- 11 En nieteenstaande dat die Lamaniete afgesny is van hulle steun op hierdie wyse, was hulle steeds vasbeslote om die stad te behou; daarom het dit noodsaaklik geword dat ons daardie voorrade moes neem en hulle na Judéa stuur en ons gevangenes na die land Zarahemla.
- 12 En dit het gebeur dat nie baie dae verbygegaan het nie voordat die Lamaniete alle hoop begin verloor het op bystand; daarom het hulle die stad oorgegee in ons hande; en so het ons in ons planne geslaag aangaande die verkryging van die stad Kumeni.
- 13 Maar dit het gebeur dat ons gevangenes só talryk was dat, nieteenstaande die grootheid van ons getalle, ons verplig was om ons hele leër te gebruik om hulle te behou, of om hulle te dood.
- 14 Want kyk, hulle het uitgebreek in groot getalle, en het geveg met klippe, en met knuppels, of wat hulle ook al in hul hande kon kry, in soverre dat ons meer as tweeduisend van hulle gedood het nadat hulle hul oorgegee het as krygsgevangenes.
- 15 Daarom het dit noodsaaklik geword vir ons dat ons 'n einde moes maak aan hulle lewens, of hulle bewaak met die swaard in die hand tot in die land Zarahemla; en ook ons voorrade was niks meer as voldoende vir ons eie mense nie, nieteenstaande dit wat ons geneem het van die Lamaniete.
- 16 En nou, in daardie kritieke omstandighede, het dit 'n baie ernstige saak geword om te besluit aangaande hierdie krygsgevangenes; nogtans het ons besluit om hulle af te stuur na die land Zarahemla; daarom het ons 'n gedeelte van ons manne uitgesoek, en hulle aangestel oor ons gevangenes om af te gaan na die land Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that we did camp round about the city for many nights; but we did sleep upon our swords, and keep guards, that the Lamanites could not come upon us by night and slay us, which they attempted many times; but as many times as they attempted this their blood was spilt.

At length their provisions did arrive, and they were about to enter the city by night. And we, instead of being Lamanites, were Nephites; therefore, we did take them and their provisions.

And notwithstanding the Lamanites being cut off from their support after this manner, they were still determined to maintain the city; therefore it became expedient that we should take those provisions and send them to Judea, and our prisoners to the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that not many days had passed away before the Lamanites began to lose all hopes of succor; therefore they yielded up the city unto our hands; and thus we had accomplished our designs in obtaining the city Cumeni.

But it came to pass that our prisoners were so numerous that, notwithstanding the enormity of our numbers, we were obliged to employ all our force to keep them, or to put them to death.

For behold, they would break out in great numbers, and would fight with stones, and with clubs, or whatsoever thing they could get into their hands, inasmuch that we did slay upwards of two thousand of them after they had surrendered themselves prisoners of war.

Therefore it became expedient for us, that we should put an end to their lives, or guard them, sword in hand, down to the land of Zarahemla; and also our provisions were not any more than sufficient for our own people, notwithstanding that which we had taken from the Lamanites.

And now, in those critical circumstances, it became a very serious matter to determine concerning these prisoners of war; nevertheless, we did resolve to send them down to the land of Zarahemla; therefore we selected a part of our men, and gave them charge over our prisoners to go down to the land of Zarahemla.

17 Maar dit het gebeur dat op die volgende dag het hulle teruggekeer. En nou kyk, ons het nie by hulle navraag gedoen aangaande die gevangenes nie, want kyk, die Lamaniete was op ons, en hulle het betyds teruggekeer om ons te red dat ons nie in hulle hande val nie. Want kyk, Ammoron het vir hulle steun 'n nuwe voorraad lewensmiddele gestuur en ook 'n talryke leër van manskappe.

18 En dit het gebeur dat daardie manne wat ons gestuur het saam met die gevangenes, betyds aangekom het om hulle te stuit, toe hulle op die punt was om ons te oorweldig.

19 Maar kyk, my klein groepie van tweeduisend en sestig het baie desperaat geveg; ja, hulle was onwrikbaar voor die Lamaniete, en het die dood toegedien aan almal wat hulle teengestaan het.

20 En toe die res van ons leër op die punt gestaan het om terug te trek voor die Lamaniete uit, kyk, daardie tweeduisend en sestig was onwrikbaar en onverskrokke.

21 Ja, en hulle was gehoorsaam en het gepoog om elke woord van bevel uit te voer met nougesetheid; ja, en wel volgens hulle geloof is dit aan hulle gedoen; en ek het die woorde onthou wat hulle aan my gesê het, dat hulle moeders hulle geleer het.

22 En nou kyk, dit was hierdie my seuns, en daardie manne wat gekies was om die gevangenes weg te voer, aan wie ons hierdie groot oorwinning te danke het; want dit was hulle wat die Lamaniete verslaan het; daarom is hulle teruggedryf na die stad Manti.

23 En ons het ons stad Kumeni behou, en is nie almal deur die swaard vernietig nie; nogtans het ons groot verlies gely.

24 En dit het gebeur dat nadat die Lamaniete gevlug het, het ek onmiddellik bevel gegee dat my manne wat gewond was tussen die dooies geneem moes word, en hulle wonde laat verbind.

But it came to pass that on the morrow they did return. And now behold, we did not inquire of them concerning the prisoners; for behold, the Lamanites were upon us, and they returned in season to save us from falling into their hands. For behold, Ammoron had sent to their support a new supply of provisions and also a numerous army of men.

And it came to pass that those men whom we sent with the prisoners did arrive in season to check them, as they were about to overpower us.

But behold, my little band of two thousand and sixty fought most desperately; yea, they were firm before the Lamanites, and did administer death unto all those who opposed them.

And as the remainder of our army were about to give way before the Lamanites, behold, those two thousand and sixty were firm and undaunted.

Yea, and they did obey and observe to perform every word of command with exactness; yea, and even according to their faith it was done unto them; and I did remember the words which they said unto me that their mothers had taught them.

And now behold, it was these my sons, and those men who had been selected to convey the prisoners, to whom we owe this great victory; for it was they who did beat the Lamanites; therefore they were driven back to the city of Manti.

And we retained our city Cumeni, and were not all destroyed by the sword; nevertheless, we had suffered great loss.

And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had fled, I immediately gave orders that my men who had been wounded should be taken from among the dead, and caused that their wounds should be dressed.

25 En dit het gebeur dat daar tweehonderd van my tweeduisend en sestig was wat flou geword het vanweë die verlies van bloed; nogtans, volgens die goedheid van God en tot ons groot verbasing, en ook tot die vreugde van ons hele leër, was daar nie een siel van hulle wat gesneuwel het nie; ja, nóg was daar nie een siel onder hulle wat baie wonde ontvang het.

26 En nou, hulle behoud was verbasend vir ons hele leër, ja, dat hulle gespaar moes word terwyl daar 'n duisend van ons broers was wat gedood is. En ons skryf dit tereg toe aan die wonderbaarlike krag van God, vanweë hulle uitermate geloof in dít wat hulle geleer is om te glo—dat daar 'n regverdige God was, en wie ook al nie getwyfel het nie, dat hulle behoue sou bly deur sy wonderlike krag.

27 Nou was dit die geloof van diegene van wie ek gespreek het; hulle is jonk, en hulle denke is onwrikbaar, en hulle plaas hul vertrouwe in God.

28 En nou het dit gebeur dat nadat ons aldus gesorg het vir ons gewonde manne, en ons dooies begrawe het en ook die dooies van die Lamaniete, wat baie was, kyk, ons het by Gid verneem aangaande die gevangenes met wie hulle begin het om af te gaan na die land Zarahemla.

29 Nou was Gid die hoofkaptein van die groep wat aangestel was om hulle te bewaak na die land toe.

30 En nou, hierdie is die woorde wat Gid met my gespreek het: Kyk, ons het begin om af te gaan na die land Zarahemla met ons gevangenes. En dit het gebeur dat ons die spioene van ons leërs teëgekomp het wat uitgestuur is om die kamp van die Lamaniete dop te hou.

31 En hulle het tot ons geroep en gesê—Kyk, die leërs van die Lamaniete marsjeer na die stad Kumeni; en kyk, hulle sal hulle aanval, ja, en sal ons mense vernietig.

32 En dit het gebeur dat ons gevangenes hulle uitroep gehoor het, wat hulle moed laat skep het; en hulle het opgestaan in rebellie teen ons.

And it came to pass that there were two hundred, out of my two thousand and sixty, who had fainted because of the loss of blood; nevertheless, according to the goodness of God, and to our great astonishment, and also the joy of our whole army, there was not one soul of them who did perish; yea, and neither was there one soul among them who had not received many wounds.

And now, their preservation was astonishing to our whole army, yea, that they should be spared while there was a thousand of our brethren who were slain. And we do justly ascribe it to the miraculous power of God, because of their exceeding faith in that which they had been taught to believe—that there was a just God, and whosoever did not doubt, that they should be preserved by his marvelous power.

Now this was the faith of these of whom I have spoken; they are young, and their minds are firm, and they do put their trust in God continually.

And now it came to pass that after we had thus taken care of our wounded men, and had buried our dead and also the dead of the Lamanites, who were many, behold, we did inquire of Gid concerning the prisoners whom they had started to go down to the land of Zarahemla with.

Now Gid was the chief captain over the band who was appointed to guard them down to the land.

And now, these are the words which Gid said unto me: Behold, we did start to go down to the land of Zarahemla with our prisoners. And it came to pass that we did meet the spies of our armies, who had been sent out to watch the camp of the Lamanites.

And they cried unto us, saying—Behold, the armies of the Lamanites are marching towards the city of Cumeni; and behold, they will fall upon them, yea, and will destroy our people.

And it came to pass that our prisoners did hear their cries, which caused them to take courage; and they did rise up in rebellion against us.

33 En dit het gebeur vanweë hulle rebellie, het ons ons swaarde op hulle laat neerkom. En dit het gebeur dat hulle as 'n groep in ons swaarde vasgehardloop het, waartydens die grootste deel van hulle gedood is; en die oorblywendes van hulle het deurgebreek en van ons weggevlug.

34 En kyk, toe hulle gevlug het, en ons hulle nie kon inhaal nie, het ons ons opmars met spoed geneem na die stad Kumeni; en kyk, ons het betyds aangekom sodat ons ons broers mag bystaan om die stad te behou.

35 En kyk, ons is weer verlos uit die hande van ons vyande. En prys die Naam van ons God; want kyk, dit is Hy wat ons verlos het; ja, wat hierdie groot ding vir ons gedoen het.

36 Nou het dit gebeur dat toe ek, Helaman, hierdie woorde van Gid gehoor het, was ek vervul met uitermate vreugde vanweë die goedheid van God om ons te bewaar, sodat ons nie almal mag vergaan nie; ja, en ek vertrou dat die siele van diegene wat gedood is die rus van hulle God binnegegaan het.

And it came to pass because of their rebellion we did cause that our swords should come upon them. And it came to pass that they did in a body run upon our swords, in the which, the greater number of them were slain; and the remainder of them broke through and fled from us.

And behold, when they had fled and we could not overtake them, we took our march with speed towards the city Cumeni; and behold, we did arrive in time that we might assist our brethren in preserving the city.

And behold, we are again delivered out of the hands of our enemies. And blessed is the name of our God; for behold, it is he that has delivered us; yea, that has done this great thing for us.

Now it came to pass that when I, Helaman, had heard these words of Gid, I was filled with exceeding joy because of the goodness of God in preserving us, that we might not all perish; yea, and I trust that the souls of them who have been slain have entered into the rest of their God.

Alma 58

- 1 En kyk, nou het dit gebeur dat ons volgende oogmerk was om die stad Manti te verkry; maar kyk, daar was geen wyse waarop ons hulle uit die stad kon lei met ons klein groepe nie. Want kyk, hulle het dit onthou wat ons voorheen gedoen het; daarom kon ons hulle nie weglok van hulle vestings nie.
- 2 En hulle was soveel talryker as ons leër dat ons nie gedurf het om uit te gaan en hulle aan te val in hulle vestings nie.
- 3 Ja, en dit het noodsaaklik geword dat ons ons manne moes gebruik om daardie dele van die land te behou wat ons van ons besittings herwin het; daarom het dit noodsaaklik geword dat ons moes wag, sodat ons meer versterkings mag verkry van die land Zarahemla en ook 'n nuwe voorraad lewensmiddele.
- 4 En dit het ook gebeur dat ek aldus 'n boodskapper gestuur het na die goewerneur van ons land, om hom in kennis te stel van die toestand van ons mense. En dit het gebeur dat ons gewag het om voorrade en versterkings te ontvang van die land Zarahemla.
- 5 Maar kyk, dit het ons maar min gehelp; want die Lamaniete het ook groot versterkings ontvang van dag tot dag, en ook baie voorrade; en aldus was ons omstandighede in hierdie tydperk.
- 6 En die Lamaniete het uitgekom van tyd tot tyd om ons aan te val, vasbeslote deur strategie om ons te vernietig; nogtans, ons kon nie met hulle slaagsraak nie, vanweë hulle skuilplekke en hulle vestings.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat ons gewag het in hierdie moeilike omstandighede vir 'n tydperk van baie maande, totdat ons op die punt gestaan het om te vergaan by gebrek aan voedsel.
- 8 Maar dit het gebeur dat ons voedsel ontvang het, wat na ons toe bewaak en gebring is deur 'n leër van tweeduisend man, vir ons bystand; en dit was al die bystand wat ons ontvang het, om onself te verdedig en ons land, om nie in die hande te val van ons vyand nie, ja, om te veg teen 'n vyand wat ontelbaar was.

Alma 58

And behold, now it came to pass that our next object was to obtain the city of Manti; but behold, there was no way that we could lead them out of the city by our small bands. For behold, they remembered that which we had hitherto done; therefore we could not decoy them away from their strongholds.

And they were so much more numerous than was our army that we durst not go forth and attack them in their strongholds.

Yea, and it became expedient that we should employ our men to the maintaining those parts of the land which we had regained of our possessions; therefore it became expedient that we should wait, that we might receive more strength from the land of Zarahemla and also a new supply of provisions.

And it came to pass that I thus did send an embassy to the governor of our land, to acquaint him concerning the affairs of our people. And it came to pass that we did wait to receive provisions and strength from the land of Zarahemla.

But behold, this did profit us but little; for the Lamanites were also receiving great strength from day to day, and also many provisions; and thus were our circumstances at this period of time.

And the Lamanites were sallying forth against us from time to time, resolving by stratagem to destroy us; nevertheless we could not come to battle with them, because of their retreats and their strongholds.

And it came to pass that we did wait in these difficult circumstances for the space of many months, even until we were about to perish for the want of food.

But it came to pass that we did receive food, which was guarded to us by an army of two thousand men to our assistance; and this is all the assistance which we did receive, to defend ourselves and our country from falling into the hands of our enemies, yea, to contend with an enemy which was innumerable.

- 9 En nou, die oorsaak van hierdie ons probleme, of die rede waarom hulle ons nie meer versterkings gestuur het nie, het ons nie geweet nie; daarom was ons bedroef en ook gevul met vrees, dat deur enige wyse die oordele van God oor ons land sou kom, tot ons omverwerping en algehele vernietiging.
- 10 Daarom het ons ons siele uitgestort in gebed tot God, dat Hy ons sou versterk en ons sou verlos uit die hande van ons vyande, ja, en ook om ons krag te gee dat ons ons stede mag behou, en ons lande, en ons besittings, vir die onderhoud van ons volk.
- 11 Ja, en dit het gebeur dat die Here onse God ons met versekeringe besoek het dat Hy ons sou verlos; ja, in soverre dat Hy vrede tot ons siele gespreek het, en aan ons groot geloof gegun het, en ons laat hoop het op verlossing in Hom.
- 12 En ons het moed geskep met ons klein mag wat ons ontvang het, en was vasbeslote met 'n vasberadenheid om ons vyande te oorwin, en om ons lande, en ons besittings, en ons vroue, en ons kinders, te behou en die saak van ons vryheid.
- 13 En so het ons uitgegaan met ons hele mag teen die Lamaniete, wat in die stad Manti was; en ons het ons tente opgeslaan aan die wildernis se kant, wat na aan die stad was.
- 14 En dit het gebeur dat op die volgende dag, toe die Lamaniete sien dat ons op die grense was van die wildernis wat naby die stad was, dat hulle hul spioene uitgestuur het rondom ons sodat hulle mag vasstel wat die getal en sterkte van ons leër was.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat toe hulle sien dat ons nie sterk was, volgens ons getalle nie, en omdat hulle gevrees het dat ons hulle sou afsny van hulle steun tensy hulle sou uitkom om teen ons te veg en ons dood te maak, en ook omdat hulle veronderstel het dat hulle ons maklik kon vernietig met hulle talryke leërskare, daarom het hulle begin om voorbereidings te maak om teen ons uit te kom om te veg.
- 16 En toe ons sien dat hulle voorbereidings maak om teen ons uit te kom, kyk, het ek dat Gid, met 'n klein getal manne, homself in die wildernis laat versteek, en ook dat Teomner en 'n klein getal manne hulleself ook in die wildernis moes versteek.

And now the cause of these our embarrassments, or the cause why they did not send more strength unto us, we knew not; therefore we were grieved and also filled with fear, lest by any means the judgments of God should come upon our land, to our overthrow and utter destruction.

Therefore we did pour out our souls in prayer to God, that he would strengthen us and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, yea, and also give us strength that we might retain our cities, and our lands, and our possessions, for the support of our people.

Yea, and it came to pass that the Lord our God did visit us with assurances that he would deliver us; yea, insomuch that he did speak peace to our souls, and did grant unto us great faith, and did cause us that we should hope for our deliverance in him.

And we did take courage with our small force which we had received, and were fixed with a determination to conquer our enemies, and to maintain our lands, and our possessions, and our wives, and our children, and the cause of our liberty.

And thus we did go forth with all our might against the Lamanites, who were in the city of Manti; and we did pitch our tents by the wilderness side, which was near to the city.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, that when the Lamanites saw that we were in the borders by the wilderness which was near the city, that they sent out their spies round about us that they might discover the number and the strength of our army.

And it came to pass that when they saw that we were not strong, according to our numbers, and fearing that we should cut them off from their support except they should come out to battle against us and kill us, and also supposing that they could easily destroy us with their numerous hosts, therefore they began to make preparations to come out against us to battle.

And when we saw that they were making preparations to come out against us, behold, I caused that Gid, with a small number of men, should secrete himself in the wilderness, and also that Teomner and a small number of men should secrete themselves also in the wilderness.

- 17 Nou, Gid en sy manne was aan die regterkant en die ander aan die linkerkant; en nadat hulle hul so versteek het, kyk, het ek agtergebly, met die res van my leër, op daardie selfde plek waar ons eers ons tente opgeslaan het ter voorbereiding vir die tyd dat die Lamaniete sou uitkom om te veg.
- 18 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete uitgekom het met hulle talryke leër teen ons. En toe hulle gekom het en op die punt was om ons aan te val met die swaard, het ek my manne, dié wat by my was, laat terugtrek in die wildernis.
- 19 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete ons agtervolg het met groot spoed, want hulle was uitermate begeerig om ons in te haal sodat hulle ons mag doodmaak; daarom het hulle ons die wildernis in gevolg; en ons het tussen Gid en Teomner verbygegaan, in soverre dat hulle nie gewaar is deur die Lamaniete nie.
- 20 En dit het gebeur dat toe die Lamaniete verbygegaan het, of toe die leër verbygegaan het, het Gid en Teomner opgestaan uit hulle geheime plekke, en die spioene van die Lamaniete afgesny sodat hulle nie kon terugkeer na die stad nie.
- 21 En dit het gebeur dat toe hulle hul afgesny het, het hulle na die stad gehardloop, en het die wagte aangeval wat agtergelaat is om die stad te bewaak, in soverre dat hulle hul vernietig het en besit geneem het van die stad.
- 22 Nou, dit is gedoen omdat die Lamaniete hulle hele leër, behalwe slegs 'n paar wagte, toegelaat het om weggelei te word in die wildernis.
- 23 En dit het gebeur dat Gid en Teomner op hierdie wyse besit gekry het van hulle vestings. En dit het gebeur dat ons ons rigting ingeslaan het, nadat ons baie in die wildernis gereis het, na die land Zarahemla.
- 24 En toe die Lamaniete sien dat hulle na die land Zarahemla marsjeer, was hulle baie bevrees, uit vrees dat daar 'n plan gesmee was om hulle te lei tot vernietiging; daarom het hulle weer begin om terug te trek na die wildernis, ja, en wel terug met dieselfde weg as wat hulle gekom het.

Now Gid and his men were on the right and the others on the left; and when they had thus secreted themselves, behold, I remained, with the remainder of my army, in that same place where we had first pitched our tents against the time that the Lamanites should come out to battle.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come out with their numerous army against us. And when they had come and were about to fall upon us with the sword, I caused that my men, those who were with me, should retreat into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did follow after us with great speed, for they were exceedingly desirous to overtake us that they might slay us; therefore they did follow us into the wilderness; and we did pass by in the midst of Gid and Teomner, in so much that they were not discovered by the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had passed by, or when the army had passed by, Gid and Teomner did rise up from their secret places, and did cut off the spies of the Lamanites that they should not return to the city.

And it came to pass that when they had cut them off, they ran to the city and fell upon the guards who were left to guard the city, insomuch that they did destroy them and did take possession of the city.

Now this was done because the Lamanites did suffer their whole army, save a few guards only, to be led away into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that Gid and Teomner by this means had obtained possession of their strongholds. And it came to pass that we took our course, after having traveled much in the wilderness towards the land of Zarahemla.

And when the Lamanites saw that they were marching towards the land of Zarahemla, they were exceedingly afraid, lest there was a plan laid to lead them on to destruction; therefore they began to retreat into the wilderness again, yea, even back by the same way which they had come.

25 En kyk, dit was nag, en hulle het hul tente opgeslaan, want die hoofkapteins van die Lamaniete het veronderstel dat die Nefiete moeg was vanweë hulle opmars; en omdat hulle veronderstel het dat hulle hul hele leër verdryf het, daarom het hulle nie gedink aan die stad Manti nie.

26 Nou het dit gebeur dat toe dit nag was, het ek my manne nie laat slaap nie, maar dat hul moes voortmarsjeer langs 'n ander weg na die land Manti.

27 En vanweë hierdie opmars van ons in die nag, kyk, was ons die volgende dag anderkant die Lamaniete, in soverre dat ons voor hulle aangekom het by die stad Manti.

28 En dit het gebeur, dat deur hierdie strategie het ons besit geneem van die stad Manti sonder die vergieting van bloed.

29 En dit het gebeur dat toe die leërs van die Lamaniete aangekom het naby die stad, en sien dat ons voorbereid was om hulle te ontmoet, was hulle uitermate verbaas, en getref met groot vrees, in soverre dat hulle die wildernis ingevlug het.

30 Ja, en dit het gebeur dat die leërs van die Lamaniete gevlug het uit hierdie hele gedeelte van die land. Maar kyk, hulle het baie vroue en kinders saam met hulle uit die land geneem.

31 En daardie stede wat deur die Lamaniete geneem is, almal van hulle, is op hierdie tydstep in ons besit; en ons vaders en ons vroue en ons kinders is besig om terug te keer na hul huise, almal behalwe diegene wat gevange geneem is en weggevoer is deur die Lamaniete.

32 Maar kyk, ons leërs is klein om so 'n groot aantal stede te behou en sulke groot besittings.

33 Maar kyk, ons vertrou op ons God, wat ons oorwinning gegee het oor daardie lande, in soverre dat ons daardie stede en daardie lande teruggekry het wat ons eie was.

34 Nou weet ons nie die rede dat die regering ons nie meer versterkings gun nie; ook weet daardie manne wat na ons toe opgekom het nie hoekom ons nie groter versterkings gekry het nie.

And behold, it was night and they did pitch their tents, for the chief captains of the Lamanites had supposed that the Nephites were weary because of their march; and supposing that they had driven their whole army therefore they took no thought concerning the city of Manti.

Now it came to pass that when it was night, I caused that my men should not sleep, but that they should march forward by another way towards the land of Manti.

And because of this our march in the night-time, behold, on the morrow we were beyond the Lamanites, insomuch that we did arrive before them at the city of Manti.

And thus it came to pass, that by this stratagem we did take possession of the city of Manti without the shedding of blood.

And it came to pass that when the armies of the Lamanites did arrive near the city, and saw that we were prepared to meet them, they were astonished exceedingly and struck with great fear, insomuch that they did flee into the wilderness.

Yea, and it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did flee out of all this quarter of the land. But behold, they have carried with them many women and children out of the land.

And those cities which had been taken by the Lamanites, all of them are at this period of time in our possession; and our fathers and our women and our children are returning to their homes, all save it be those who have been taken prisoners and carried off by the Lamanites.

But behold, our armies are small to maintain so great a number of cities and so great possessions.

But behold, we trust in our God who has given us victory over those lands, insomuch that we have obtained those cities and those lands, which were our own.

Now we do not know the cause that the government does not grant us more strength; neither do those men who came up unto us know why we have not received greater strength.

- 35 Kyk, ons weet nie maar veronderstel dat julle onsuksesvol is, en dat julle die magte onttrek het na daardie gedeelte van die land; as dit so is, begeer ons nie om te murmureer nie.
- 36 En as dit nie so is nie, kyk, dan vrees ons dat daar 'n partystryd in die regering is, dat hulle nie meer manne tot ons hulp stuur nie, want ons weet dat hulle talryker is as diegene wat hulle gestuur het.
- 37 Maar kyk, dit maak nie saak nie—ons vertrou God sal ons red, niteenstaande die swakheid van ons leërs, ja, en ons verlos uit die hande van ons vyande.
- 38 Kyk, dit is die nege en twintigste jaar, teen die einde, en ons is in besit van ons lande, en die Lamaniete het gevlug na die land Nefi.
- 39 En daardie seuns van die volk van Ammon, van wie ek gepraat het met soveel goedkeuring, is by my in die stad Manti; en die Here het hulle ondersteun, ja, en hulle bewaar om nie deur die swaard te val nie, in soverre dat nie een siel gedood is nie.
- 40 Maar kyk, hulle het baie wonde ontvang; nogtans staan hulle vas in daardie vryheid waarmee God hulle vrygemaak het; en hulle is nougeset om die Here hulle God te onthou van dag tot dag; ja, hulle poog om sy insettinge, en sy verordeninge, en sy gebooie, gedurigdeur te onderhou; en hulle geloof is sterk in die profesieë aangaande dit wat moet kom.
- 41 En nou, my geliefde broer, Moroni, mag die Here ons God, wat ons verlos het en ons vrygemaak het, jou gedurigdeur in sy teenwoordigheid hou; ja, en mag Hy hierdie volk begunstig, en wel dat julle welslae mag hê om besit te verkry van dit alles wat die Lamaniete van ons afgeneem het, wat vir ons onderhoud was. En nou, kyk, ek sluit my brief af. Ek is Helaman, die seun van Alma.

Behold, we do not know but what ye are unsuccessful, and ye have drawn away the forces into that quarter of the land; if so, we do not desire to murmur.

And if it is not so, behold, we fear that there is some faction in the government, that they do not send more men to our assistance; for we know that they are more numerous than that which they have sent.

But, behold, it mattereth not—we trust God will deliver us, notwithstanding the weakness of our armies, yea, and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies.

Behold, this is the twenty and ninth year, in the latter end, and we are in the possession of our lands; and the Lamanites have fled to the land of Nephi.

And those sons of the people of Ammon, of whom I have so highly spoken, are with me in the city of Manti; and the Lord has supported them, yea, and kept them from falling by the sword, insomuch that even one soul has not been slain.

But behold, they have received many wounds; nevertheless they stand fast in that liberty wherewith God has made them free; and they are strict to remember the Lord their God from day to day; yea, they do observe to keep his statutes, and his judgments, and his commandments continually; and their faith is strong in the prophecies concerning that which is to come.

And now, my beloved brother, Moroni, may the Lord our God, who has redeemed us and made us free, keep you continually in his presence; yea, and may he favor this people, even that ye may have success in obtaining the possession of all that which the Lamanites have taken from us, which was for our support. And now, behold, I close mine epistle. I am Helaman, the son of Alma.

Alma 59

- 1 Nou het dit gebeur in die dertigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi, nadat Moroni Helaman se brief ontvang en dit gelees het, was hy uitermate verheug vanweë die welsyn, ja, die uitermate welslae wat Helaman gehad het, in die verkryging van daardie lande wat verlore was.
- 2 Ja, en hy het dit bekend gemaak aan al sy mense, in die hele land rondom daardie gedeelte waar hy was, sodat hulle ook mag jubel.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat hy onmiddellik 'n brief gestuur het aan Pahoran, om hom te vra dat hy manne laat bymekaarmaak om vir Helaman te versterk, of die leërs van Helaman, in soverre dat hy met gemak daardie deel van die land mag behou waarin hy so wonderbaarlik suksesvol was om terug te wen.
- 4 En dit het gebeur toe Moroni hierdie brief na die land Zarahemla gestuur het, het hy weer 'n plan begin bedink sodat hy die orige gedeelte van daardie besittings en stede mag verkry wat die Lamaniete van hulle afgeneem het.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat terwyl Moroni aldus besig was om voorbereidings te tref om teen die Lamaniete te gaan in die stryd, kyk, die volk van Nefiha, wat bymekaargekom het uit die stad Moroni en die stad Lehi, en die stad Morianton, is aangeval deur die Lamaniete.
- 6 Ja, selfs diegene wat verplig was om te vlug uit die land Manti, en uit die land rondomheen, het oorgekom en by die Lamaniete aangesluit in hierdie deel van die land.
- 7 En omdat hulle gevolglik baie talryk was, ja, en van dag tot dag versterkings ontvang het, op bevel van Ammoron, het hulle uitgekom teen die volk van Nefiha, en hulle het hulle begin slag met 'n uitermate groot slagting.
- 8 En hulle leërs was só talryk dat die res van die volk van Nefiha verplig was om voor hulle uit te vlug; en hulle het selfs gekom en aangesluit by die leer van Moroni.

Alma 59

Now it came to pass in the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, after Moroni had received and had read Helaman's epistle, he was exceedingly rejoiced because of the welfare, yea, the exceeding success which Helaman had had, in obtaining those lands which were lost.

Yea, and he did make it known unto all his people, in all the land round about in that part where he was, that they might rejoice also.

And it came to pass that he immediately sent an epistle to Pahoran, desiring that he should cause men to be gathered together to strengthen Helaman, or the armies of Helaman, insomuch that he might with ease maintain that part of the land which he had been so miraculously prospered in regaining.

And it came to pass when Moroni had sent this epistle to the land of Zarahemla, he began again to lay a plan that he might obtain the remainder of those possessions and cities which the Lamanites had taken from them.

And it came to pass that while Moroni was thus making preparations to go against the Lamanites to battle, behold, the people of Nephiah, who were gathered together from the city of Moroni and the city of Lehi and the city of Morianton, were attacked by the Lamanites.

Yea, even those who had been compelled to flee from the land of Manti, and from the land round about, had come over and joined the Lamanites in this part of the land.

And thus being exceedingly numerous, yea, and receiving strength from day to day, by the command of Ammoron they came forth against the people of Nephiah, and they did begin to slay them with an exceedingly great slaughter.

And their armies were so numerous that the remainder of the people of Nephiah were obliged to flee before them; and they came even and joined the army of Moroni.

9 En nou, omdat Moroni veronderstel het dat manne na die stad Nefiha gestuur moes word, tot die bystand van die volk, om daardie stad te behou, en omdat hy geweet het dat dit makliker was om te keer dat die stad nie in die hande van die Lamaniete val nie as om dit van hulle terug te neem, het hy veronderstel dat hulle maklik daardie stad kon behou.

10 Daarom het hy sy hele mag teruggehou om daardie plekke te behou wat hy herower het.

11 En nou, toe Moroni sien dat die stad Nefiha verlore was, was hy uitermate bedroef, en het begin om te twyfel, vanweë die boosheid van die volk, of hulle nie in die hande van hulle broers sou val nie.

12 Nou, dit was die geval met al sy hoofkapteins. Hulle het getwyfel en hulle ook verwonder vanweë die boosheid van die volk, en dit vanweë die wetslae van die Lamaniete oor hulle.

13 En dit het gebeur dat Moroni kwaad was vir die regering, vanweë hul onverskilligheid aangaande die vryheid van hulle land.

And now as Moroni had supposed that there should be men sent to the city of Nephihah, to the assistance of the people to maintain that city, and knowing that it was easier to keep the city from falling into the hands of the Lamanites than to retake it from them, he supposed that they would easily maintain that city.

Therefore he retained all his force to maintain those places which he had recovered.

And now, when Moroni saw that the city of Nephihah was lost he was exceedingly sorrowful, and began to doubt, because of the wickedness of the people, whether they should not fall into the hands of their brethren.

Now this was the case with all his chief captains. They doubted and marveled also because of the wickedness of the people, and this because of the success of the Lamanites over them.

And it came to pass that Moroni was angry with the government, because of their indifference concerning the freedom of their country.

Alma 60

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat hy weer aan die goewerneur van die land geskryf het, wat Pahoran was, en dit is die woorde wat hy geskryf, en gesê het: Kyk, ek rig my brief aan Pahoran, in die stad Zarahemla, wat die hoofregter en die goewerneur is oor die land, en ook aan al diegene wat gekies is deur hierdie volk om te regeer en die sake van hierdie oorlog te beheer en te bestuur.
- 2 Want kyk, ek het ietwat te sê vir hulle by wyse van veroordeling; want kyk, julle weet self dat julle aangestel is om manne bymekaar te maak, en om hulle te bewapen met swaarde, en met sabels, en met allerlei wapens van oorlog van elke soort, en uit te stuur teen die Lamaniete, in welke dele hulle ook al in ons land mag binnekom.
- 3 En nou, kyk, ek sê vir julle dat ek, en ook my manne, en ook Helaman en sy manne, uitermate groot lyding verduur het; ja, en wel honger, dors, en uitputting, en allerlei verdrukkinge van elke soort.
- 4 Maar kyk, as dit al was wat ons gely het sou ons nie murmureer nie nóg kla.
- 5 Maar kyk, groot was die slagting onder ons volk, ja, duisende het geval deur die swaard, terwyl dit anders mag gewees het as julle voldoende versterkings en bystand en krag verleen het aan ons leërs. Ja, groot was julle versuim teenoor ons.
- 6 En nou, kyk, ons begeer om te weet wat die rede is vir hierdie uitermate groot versuim; ja, ons begeer om te weet wat die rede is van julle onbedagsame toestand.
- 7 Kan julle dink om op julle trone te sit in 'n toestand van onbedagsame versuftheid, terwyl julle vyande die werk van die dood versprei rondom julle? Ja, terwyl hulle duisende van julle broers vermoor—
- 8 Ja, naamlik hulle wat opgesien het na julle om beskerming, ja, het julle in 'n posisie geplaas dat julle hulle mag bygestaan het, ja, julle mag leërs na hulle gestuur het om hulle te versterk, en het duisende van hulle gered om deur die swaard te val.

Alma 60

And it came to pass that he wrote again to the governor of the land, who was Pahoran, and these are the words which he wrote, saying: Behold, I direct mine epistle to Pahoran, in the city of Zarahemla, who is the chief judge and the governor over the land, and also to all those who have been chosen by this people to govern and manage the affairs of this war.

For behold, I have somewhat to say unto them by the way of condemnation; for behold, ye yourselves know that ye have been appointed to gather together men, and arm them with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war of every kind, and send forth against the Lamanites, in whatsoever parts they should come into our land.

And now behold, I say unto you that myself, and also my men, and also Helaman and his men, have suffered exceedingly great sufferings; yea, even hunger, thirst, and fatigue, and all manner of afflictions of every kind.

But behold, were this all we had suffered we would not murmur nor complain.

But behold, great has been the slaughter among our people; yea, thousands have fallen by the sword, while it might have otherwise been if ye had rendered unto our armies sufficient strength and succor for them. Yea, great has been your neglect towards us.

And now behold, we desire to know the cause of this exceedingly great neglect; yea, we desire to know the cause of your thoughtless state.

Can you think to sit upon your thrones in a state of thoughtless stupor, while your enemies are spreading the work of death around you? Yea, while they are murdering thousands of your brethren—

Yea, even they who have looked up to you for protection, yea, have placed you in a situation that ye might have succored them, yea, ye might have sent armies unto them, to have strengthened them, and have saved thousands of them from falling by the sword.

- 9 Maar kyk, dit is nie al nie—julle het jul voorrade weerhou van hulle, in soverre dat baie geveg en hulle lewens weggebloeï het vanweë hul groot begeertes wat hulle gehad het vir die welsyn van hierdie volk; ja, en dit het hulle gedoen toe hulle op die punt was om te vergaan van honger, vanweë julle uitermate groot verwaarlosing van hulle.
- 10 En nou, my geliefde broers—want julle behoort geliefd te wees; ja, julle behoort julleself meer getrou te beywer het vir die welsyn en die vryheid van hierdie volk; maar kyk, julle het hulle verwaarloos in soverre dat die bloed van duisende op julle hoofde sal kom om wraak; ja, want aan God was al hulle krete bekend, en al hulle lyding—
- 11 Kyk, kon julle veronderstel dat julle op jul trone kon sit, en vanweë die buitengewone goedheid van God hoef julle niks te doen nie, en Hy sou julle verlos? Kyk, as julle dit gedink het, het julle dit tevergeefs gedink.
- 12 Veronderstel julle dat, omdat soveel van julle broers gedood is dat dit as gevolg van hulle boosheid is? Ek sê vir julle, dat as julle dit gedink het, het julle tevergeefs gedink; want ek sê vir julle, daar is baie wat geval het deur die swaard; en kyk, dit is tot julle veroordeling;
- 13 Want die Here laat die regverdiges toe om gedood te word sodat sy geregtigheid en oordeel oor die bose mag kom; daarom moet julle nie dink dat die regverdige verlore is omdat hulle gedood word nie; maar kyk, hulle gaan die rus van die Here hulle God binne.
- 14 En nou kyk, ek sê vir julle, ek vrees uitermate dat die oordele van God oor hierdie volk sal kom, vanweë hulle uitermate traagheid, ja, en wel die traagheid van ons regering, en hulle uitermate groot verwaarlosing van hulle broers, ja, teenoor diegene wat gedood is.
- 15 Want as dit nie was vir die boosheid wat eers by ons hoofde begin het nie, kon ons ons vyande weerstaan het dat hulle geen mag oor ons kon verkry het nie.

But behold, this is not all—ye have withheld your provisions from them, insomuch that many have fought and bled out their lives because of their great desires which they had for the welfare of this people; yea, and this they have done when they were about to perish with hunger, because of your exceedingly great neglect towards them.

And now, my beloved brethren—for ye ought to be beloved; yea, and ye ought to have stirred yourselves more diligently for the welfare and the freedom of this people; but behold, ye have neglected them insomuch that the blood of thousands shall come upon your heads for vengeance; yea, for known unto God were all their cries, and all their sufferings—

Behold, could ye suppose that ye could sit upon your thrones, and because of the exceeding goodness of God ye could do nothing and he would deliver you? Behold, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain.

Do ye suppose that, because so many of your brethren have been killed it is because of their wickedness? I say unto you, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain; for I say unto you, there are many who have fallen by the sword; and behold it is to your condemnation;

For the Lord suffereth the righteous to be slain that his justice and judgment may come upon the wicked; therefore ye need not suppose that the righteous are lost because they are slain; but behold, they do enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

And now behold, I say unto you, I fear exceedingly that the judgments of God will come upon this people, because of their exceeding slothfulness, yea, even the slothfulness of our government, and their exceedingly great neglect towards their brethren, yea, towards those who have been slain.

For were it not for the wickedness which first commenced at our head, we could have withstood our enemies that they could have gained no power over us.

16 Ja, as dit nie was vir die oorlog wat uitgebreek het onder onself nie; ja, was dit nie vir hierdie koningsmanne, wat soveel bloedvergiëting veroorsaak het onder ons nie; ja, in die tyd toe ons geveg het onder mekaar, as ons ons krag verenig het soos ons voorheen gedoen het; ja, as dit nie was vir die begeerte vir mag en gesag wat daardie koningsmanne oor ons gehad het nie; as hulle trou was aan die saak van ons vryheid, en met ons verenig het, en uitgegaan het teen ons vyande, in plaas van hul swaarde op te neem het teen ons, wat die oorsaak was van soveel bloedvergiëting onder onself; ja, as ons uitgegaan het teen hulle in die sterkte van die Here, sou ons ons vyande verdryf het, want dit sou gedoen gewees het, volgens die vervulling van sy woord.

17 Maar kyk, nou kom die Lamaniete op ons af, en neem besit van ons lande, en hulle vermoor ons volk met die swaard, ja, ons vroue en ons kinders, en voer hulle ook weg as gevangenes, en laat hulle allerlei verdrukkinge ly, en dit vanweë die groot boosheid van diegene wat soek na mag en gesag, ja, en wel daardie koningsmanne.

18 Maar waarom moet ek veel sê aangaande hierdie saak? Want ons weet nie of julle self soek na gesag nie. Ons weet nie of julle nie dalk ook verraaiers van julle land is nie.

19 Of is dit dat julle ons verwaarloos het omdat julle in die hart van ons land is en julle omring is deur beskerming, dat julle nie kos na ons laat stuur nie, en ook manne om ons leërs te versterk nie?

20 Het julle die gebooie van die Here julle God vergeet? Ja, het julle die slawerny van ons vaders vergeet? Het julle die baie kere wat ons verlos is uit die hande van ons vyande vergeet?

21 Of veronderstel julle dat die Here ons nog steeds sal verlos, terwyl ons sit op ons trone, en nie gebruik maak van die middele wat die Here vir ons voorsien het nie?

22 Ja, sal julle in ledigheid sit terwyl julle omring word deur duisende van diegene, ja, en tienduuisende, wat ook in ledigheid sit, terwyl daar duisende rondom op die grense van die land is wat val deur die swaard, ja, gewond en bloeiend.

Yea, had it not been for the war which broke out among ourselves; yea, were it not for these king-men, who caused so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, at the time we were contending among ourselves, if we had united our strength as we hitherto have done; yea, had it not been for the desire of power and authority which those king-men had over us; had they been true to the cause of our freedom, and united with us, and gone forth against our enemies, instead of taking up their swords against us, which was the cause of so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, if we had gone forth against them in the strength of the Lord, we should have dispersed our enemies, for it would have been done, according to the fulfilling of his word.

But behold, now the Lamanites are coming upon us, taking possession of our lands, and they are murdering our people with the sword, yea, our women and our children, and also carrying them away captive, causing them that they should suffer all manner of afflictions, and this because of the great wickedness of those who are seeking for power and authority, yea, even those king-men.

But why should I say much concerning this matter? For we know not but what ye yourselves are seeking for authority. We know not but what ye are also traitors to your country.

Or is it that ye have neglected us because ye are in the heart of our country and ye are surrounded by security, that ye do not cause food to be sent unto us, and also men to strengthen our armies?

Have ye forgotten the commandments of the Lord your God? Yea, have ye forgotten the captivity of our fathers? Have ye forgotten the many times we have been delivered out of the hands of our enemies?

Or do ye suppose that the Lord will still deliver us, while we sit upon our thrones and do not make use of the means which the Lord has provided for us?

Yea, will ye sit in idleness while ye are surrounded with thousands of those, yea, and tens of thousands, who do also sit in idleness, while there are thousands round about in the borders of the land who are falling by the sword, yea, wounded and bleeding?

- 23 Veronderstel julle dat God julle sal beskou as onskuldig terwyl julle stilsit en hierdie dinge aanskou? Kyk, ek sê vir julle, Nee. Nou wil ek hê dat julle moet onthou dat God gesê het dat die binnekant van die vat eers gereinig sal word, en dan sal die buitekant ook gereinig word.
- 24 En nou, tensy julle bekeer van dit wat julle gedoen het, en begin om op te staan en te werk, en voedsel en manne aan ons te stuur, en ook aan Helaman, sodat hy daardie dele van ons land mag ondersteun wat hy herower het, en sodat ons ook die res van ons besittings kan terugwen in hierdie dele, kyk, dit sal raadsaam wees dat ons nie langer teen die Lamaniete veg totdat ons eers die binnekant van ons vat gereinig het nie, ja, en wel die groot hoof van ons regering.
- 25 En tensy julle my brief gun, en uitkom en aan my 'n ware gees van vryheid toon, en streef om ons leërs te versterk en te fortifiseer, en aan hulle voedsel vir hulle steun gun, kyk, ek sal 'n gedeelte van my vrymanne laat om hierdie deel van ons land te behou, en ek sal die sterkte en die seëninge van God op hulle laat, sodat geen ander mag teen hulle kan werk nie—
- 26 En dit vanweë hul uitnemende geloof, en hulle geduld in hul beproewinge—
- 27 En ek sal na julle kom, en as daar enigeen onder julle is wat 'n begeerte het vir vryheid, ja, as daar selfs 'n vonk van vryheid oorbly, kyk, ek sal rebellies onder julle opstook, totdat selfs diegene wat begeertes het om mag en gesag toe te eien, uitgewis sal wees.
- 28 Ja, kyk, ek vrees nie julle mag nóg julle gesag, maar dit is my God wat ek vrees; en dit is ooreenkomstig sy geboorte wat ek my swaard opneem om die saak van my land te verdedig, en dit is vanweë julle ongeregtigheid dat ons soveel verlies gely het.
- 29 Kyk dit is tyd, ja, die tyd is nou op hande, dat tensy julle juisself haas ter verdediging van julle land, en julle kindertjies, hang die swaard van geregtigheid oor julle; ja, en dit sal op julle val, en julle besoek en wel tot julle volkome vernietiging.

Do ye suppose that God will look upon you as guiltless while ye sit still and behold these things? Behold I say unto you, Nay. Now I would that ye should remember that God has said that the inward vessel shall be cleansed first, and then shall the outer vessel be cleansed also.

And now, except ye do repent of that which ye have done, and begin to be up and doing, and send forth food and men unto us, and also unto Helaman, that he may support those parts of our country which he has regained, and that we may also recover the remainder of our possessions in these parts, behold it will be expedient that we contend no more with the Lamanites until we have first cleansed our inward vessel, yea, even the great head of our government.

And except ye grant mine epistle, and come out and show unto me a true spirit of freedom, and strive to strengthen and fortify our armies, and grant unto them food for their support, behold I will leave a part of my freemen to maintain this part of our land, and I will leave the strength and the blessings of God upon them, that none other power can operate against them—

And this because of their exceeding faith, and their patience in their tribulations—

And I will come unto you, and if there be any among you that has a desire for freedom, yea, if there be even a spark of freedom remaining, behold I will stir up insurrections among you, even until those who have desires to usurp power and authority shall become extinct.

Yea, behold I do not fear your power nor your authority, but it is my God whom I fear; and it is according to his commandments that I do take my sword to defend the cause of my country, and it is because of your iniquity that we have suffered so much loss.

Behold it is time, yea, the time is now at hand, that except ye do bestir yourselves in the defence of your country and your little ones, the sword of justice doth hang over you; yea, and it shall fall upon you and visit you even to your utter destruction.

- 30 Kyk, ek wag op hulp van julle; en, tensy julle aan ons behoeftes voorsien, kyk, ek kom na julle, selfs in die land Zarahemla, en tref julle met die swaard, in soverre dat julle geen mag meer kan hê om die vooruitgang van hierdie volk te belemmer in die saak van ons vryheid nie.
- 31 Want kyk, die Here sal nie toelaat dat julle sal lewe en erger word in julle ongeregthede ter vernietiging van sy regverdige volk nie.
- 32 Kyk, kan julle veronderstel dat die Here julle sal spaar en uitkom in oordeel teen die Lamaniete, terwyl dit die oorlewing van hul vaders is wat hul haat veroorsaak het, ja, en dit is vererger deur diegene wat van ons afvallig geword het, terwyl julle ongeregtheid is as gevolg van julle liefde vir roem en die ydele dinge van die wêreld?
- 33 Julle weet dat julle die wette van God oortree, en julle weet dat julle hulle onder jul voete vertrap. Kyk, die Here sê vir my: As diegene wat julle aangestel het as julle goewerneys nie bekeer van hulle sondes en ongeregthede nie, sal julle opgaan in die stryd teen hulle.
- 34 En nou kyk, ek, Moroni, word gedwing, volgens die verbond wat ek gesluit het om die geboorte van my God te onderhou; daarom wil ek hê dat julle moet gehoorsaam wees aan die woord van God, en spoedig vir my van julle voorrade en van julle manne stuur, en ook aan Helaman.
- 35 En kyk, as julle dit nie sal doen nie, kom ek spoedig na julle; want kyk, God sal nie toelaat dat ons moet omkom van die honger nie; daarom sal Hy vir ons van julle voedsel gee, al moet dit deur die swaard wees. Nou, sien dat julle die woord van God vervul.
- 36 Kyk, ek is Moroni, julle hoofkaptein. Ek soek nie na mag nie, maar om dit te beëindig. Ek soek nie na die eer van die wêreld nie, maar vir die heerlikheid van my God, en die vryheid en welsyn van my land. En so sluit ek my brief af.

Behold, I wait for assistance from you; and, except ye do administer unto our relief, behold, I come unto you, even in the land of Zarahemla, and smite you with the sword, insomuch that ye can have no more power to impede the progress of this people in the cause of our freedom.

For behold, the Lord will not suffer that ye shall live and wax strong in your iniquities to destroy his righteous people.

Behold, can you suppose that the Lord will spare you and come out in judgment against the Lamanites, when it is the tradition of their fathers that has caused their hatred, yea, and it has been redoubled by those who have dissented from us, while your iniquity is for the cause of your love of glory and the vain things of the world?

Ye know that ye do transgress the laws of God, and ye do know that ye do trample them under your feet. Behold, the Lord saith unto me: If those whom ye have appointed your governors do not repent of their sins and iniquities, ye shall go up to battle against them.

And now behold, I, Moroni, am constrained, according to the covenant which I have made to keep the commandments of my God; therefore I would that ye should adhere to the word of God, and send speedily unto me of your provisions and of your men, and also to Helaman.

And behold, if ye will not do this I come unto you speedily; for behold, God will not suffer that we should perish with hunger; therefore he will give unto us of your food, even if it must be by the sword. Now see that ye fulfil the word of God.

Behold, I am Moroni, your chief captain. I seek not for power, but to pull it down. I seek not for honor of the world, but for the glory of my God, and the freedom and welfare of my country. And thus I close mine epistle.

Alma 61

- 1 Kyk, nou het dit gebeur dat kort nadat Moroni sy brief gestuur het aan die hoofgoewerneur, het hy 'n brief ontvang van Pahoran, die hoofgoewerneur. En hierdie is die woorde wat hy ontvang het:
- 2 Ek, Pahoran, wat die hoofgoewerneur van hierdie land is, stuur hierdie woorde aan Moroni, die hoofkaptein oor die leër. Kyk, ek sê vir jou, Moroni, dat ek nie verheug is oor julle groot verdrukkinge nie, ja, dit bedroef my siel.
- 3 Maar kyk, daar is diegene wat wel verheug is oor jou verdrukkinge, ja, in soverre dat hulle in opstand gekom het teen my, en ook teen diegene van my volk wat vrymanne is, ja, en diegene wat in opstand gekom het, is uitermate talryk.
- 4 En dit is diegene wat gesoek het om die regterstoel van my weg te neem wat die oorsaak was van hierdie groot ongeregtheid; want hulle het baie vleitaal gebruik, en hulle het die harte van baie mense verlei, wat die oorsaak sal wees van bittere beproewing onder ons; hulle het ons voorrade teruggehou, en het ons vrymanne afgeskrik dat hulle nie na julle gekom het nie.
- 5 En kyk, hulle het my voor hulle uitgedryf, en ek het na die land Gideon gevlug met soveel manne as wat dit moontlik was wat ek kon kry.
- 6 En kyk, ek het 'n aankondiging gestuur dwarsdeur hierdie deel van die land; en kyk, hulle kom daagliks na ons aangestroom, om hulle wapens op te neem, ter verdediging van hul land en hul vryheid, en om ons onregte te wreek.
- 7 En hulle het na ons gekom, in soverre dat diegene wat in rebellie teen ons gekom het, teengestaan word, ja, in soverre dat hulle ons vrees, en nie durf om uit te kom teen ons om te veg nie.
- 8 Hulle het besit gekry van die land, of die stad, Zarahemla; hulle het 'n koning aangestel oor hulle, en hy het geskryf aan die koning van die Lamaniete, waarin hy 'n ooreenkoms met hom aangegaan het; 'n ooreenkoms waarin hy onderneem het om die stad Zarahemla te behou, welke behoud hy veronderstel die Lamaniete in staat sal stel om die orige gedeelte van die land te oorwin, en hy sal as koning aangestel word oor hierdie volk wanneer hulle oorwin sal word deur die Lamaniete.

Alma 61

Behold, now it came to pass that soon after Moroni had sent his epistle unto the chief governor, he received an epistle from Pahoran, the chief governor. And these are the words which he received:

I, Pahoran, who am the chief governor of this land, do send these words unto Moroni, the chief captain over the army. Behold, I say unto you, Moroni, that I do not joy in your great afflictions, yea, it grieves my soul.

But behold, there are those who do joy in your afflictions, yea, insomuch that they have risen up in rebellion against me, and also those of my people who are freemen, yea, and those who have risen up are exceedingly numerous.

And it is those who have sought to take away the judgment-seat from me that have been the cause of this great iniquity; for they have used great flattery, and they have led away the hearts of many people, which will be the cause of sore affliction among us; they have withheld our provisions, and have daunted our freemen that they have not come unto you.

And behold, they have driven me out before them, and I have fled to the land of Gideon, with as many men as it were possible that I could get.

And behold, I have sent a proclamation throughout this part of the land; and behold, they are flocking to us daily, to their arms, in the defence of their country and their freedom, and to avenge our wrongs.

And they have come unto us, insomuch that those who have risen up in rebellion against us are set at defiance, yea, insomuch that they do fear us and durst not come out against us to battle.

They have got possession of the land, or the city, of Zarahemla; they have appointed a king over them, and he hath written unto the king of the Lamanites, in the which he hath joined an alliance with him; in the which alliance he hath agreed to maintain the city of Zarahemla, which maintenance he supposeth will enable the Lamanites to conquer the remainder of the land, and he shall be placed king over this people when they shall be conquered under the Lamanites.

- 9 En nou, in jou brief het jy my veroordeel, maar dit maak nie saak nie; ek is nie vertoornd nie, maar verheug my in die grootheid van jou hart. Ek, Pahoran, soek nie na mag nie, behalwe slegs om my regterstoel te behou, sodat ek die regte en vryheid van my volk mag bewaar. My siel staan vas in daardie vryheid waarin God ons vrygemaak het.
- 10 En nou, kyk, ons sal boosheid weerstaan en wel tot bloedvergieting toe. Ons sal nie die bloed van die Lamaniete vergiet as hulle in hulle eie land sou bly nie.
- 11 Ons sal nie die bloed van ons broers vergiet as hulle nie in opstand teen ons sal kom, en die swaard opneem teen ons nie.
- 12 Ons sou ons onderwerp het aan die juk van slawerny as dit noodsaaklik is volgens die geregtigheid van God, of as Hy ons sou beveel om dit te doen.
- 13 Maar kyk, Hy beveel ons nie dat ons ons aan ons vyande moet onderwerp nie, maar dat ons ons vertrou in Hom moet stel, en Hy sal ons verlos.
- 14 Daarom, my geliefde broer, Moroni, laat ons boosheid weerstaan, en welke boosheid ons nie kan weerstaan met ons woorde nie, ja, soos rebellies en twiste, laat ons hulle weerstaan met ons swaarde, sodat ons ons vryheid mag behou, sodat ons ons kan verheug in die groot voorreg van ons kerk, en in die saak van ons Verlosser en ons God.
- 15 Daarom, kom spoedig na my met 'n paar van jou manne, en laat die oorblywendes onder die bevel van Lehi en Teankum; gee aan hulle mag om die oorlog te voer in daardie deel van die land, volgens die Gees van God, wat ook die Gees van vryheid is wat in hulle is.
- 16 Kyk, ek het 'n bietjie voorrade aan hulle gestuur, sodat hulle nie mag vergaan totdat jy na my kan kom nie.
- 17 Maak watter mag jy ook al kan bymekaar met jou opmars hierheen, en ons sal spoedig teen daardie afvalliges gaan, in die sterkte van ons God volgens die geloof wat in ons is.
- 18 En ons sal besit neem van die stad Zarahemla, sodat ons meer voedsel mag verkry om aan Lehi en Teankum te stuur; ja, ons sal uitgaan teen hulle in die sterkte van die Here, en ons sal 'n einde maak aan hierdie groot ongeregtigheid.

And now, in your epistle you have censured me, but it mattereth not; I am not angry, but do rejoice in the greatness of your heart. I, Pahoran, do not seek for power, save only to retain my judgment-seat that I may preserve the rights and the liberty of my people. My soul standeth fast in that liberty in the which God hath made us free.

And now, behold, we will resist wickedness even unto bloodshed. We would not shed the blood of the Lamanites if they would stay in their own land.

We would not shed the blood of our brethren if they would not rise up in rebellion and take the sword against us.

We would subject ourselves to the yoke of bondage if it were requisite with the justice of God, or if he should command us so to do.

But behold he doth not command us that we shall subject ourselves to our enemies, but that we should put our trust in him, and he will deliver us.

Therefore, my beloved brother, Moroni, let us resist evil, and whatsoever evil we cannot resist with our words, yea, such as rebellions and dissensions, let us resist them with our swords, that we may retain our freedom, that we may rejoice in the great privilege of our church, and in the cause of our Redeemer and our God.

Therefore, come unto me speedily with a few of your men, and leave the remainder in the charge of Lehi and Teancum; give unto them power to conduct the war in that part of the land, according to the Spirit of God, which is also the spirit of freedom which is in them.

Behold I have sent a few provisions unto them, that they may not perish until ye can come unto me.

Gather together whatsoever force ye can upon your march hither, and we will go speedily against those dissenters, in the strength of our God according to the faith which is in us.

And we will take possession of the city of Zarahemla, that we may obtain more food to send forth unto Lehi and Teancum; yea, we will go forth against them in the strength of the Lord, and we will put an end to this great iniquity.

19 En nou, Moroni, ek is verheug in die ontvangs van jou brief, want ek was ietwat bekommerd aangaande wat ons moet doen, of dit reg van ons sou wees om teen ons broers te gaan.

20 Maar jy het gesê, tensy hulle bekeer, het die Here jou beveel dat jy teen hulle moes gaan.

21 Sien dat jy Lehi en Teankum versterk in die Here; sê vir hulle om nie te vrees nie, want God sal hulle verlos, ja, en ook al diegene wat vasstaan in daardie vryheid waarmee God hulle vrygemaak het. En nou sluit ek my brief aan my geliefde broer, Moroni, af.

And now, Moroni, I do joy in receiving your epistle, for I was somewhat worried concerning what we should do, whether it should be just in us to go against our brethren.

But ye have said, except they repent the Lord hath commanded you that ye should go against them.

See that ye strengthen Lehi and Teancum in the Lord; tell them to fear not, for God will deliver them, yea, and also all those who stand fast in that liberty wherewith God hath made them free. And now I close mine epistle to my beloved brother, Moroni.

Alma 62

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe Moroni hierdie brief ontvang het, het sy hart moed geskep, en was vervul met uitermate groot vreugde vanweë die getrouheid van Pahoran, dat hy nie ook 'n verraaier van die vryheid en die saak van sy land was nie.
- 2 Maar hy het ook uitermate getreur vanweë die ongeregtigheid van diegene wat Pahoran van die regterstoel verdryf het, ja, kortom, vanweë diegene wat gebelleer het teen hulle land en ook hulle God.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat Moroni 'n klein aantal manne geneem het, volgens die begeerte van Pahoran, en het Lehi en Teankum bevel gegee oor die res van sy leër, en het sy opmars na die land Gídeon geneem.
- 4 En hy het die vaandel van vryheid gehys in watter plek hy ook al binnegegaan het, en het watter magte hy kon, bygekry, gedurende sy hele opmars na die land Gídeon.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat duisende na sy vaandel aangestroom het, en het hulle swaarde opgeneem ter verdediging van hulle vryheid, sodat hulle nie in slawerny sou kom nie.
- 6 En dus, nadat Moroni al die manne wat hy kon bymekaargemaak het gedurende sy hele opmars, het hy by die land Gídeon gekom; en toe hy sy magte verenig het met dié van Pahoran, het hulle uitermate sterk geword, selfs sterker as die manne van Pachus, wat die koning was van daardie afvalliges wat die vrymanne verdryf het uit die land Zarahemla, en besit geneem het van die land.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat Moroni en Pahoran met hulle leërs afgegaan het na die land Zarahemla, en het teen die stad opgetrek, en die manne van Pachus teëgekome, in soverre dat hulle slaags geraak het.
- 8 En kyk, Pachus is gedood en sy manne is gevange geneem, en Pahoran is herstel tot sy regterstoel.

Alma 62

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle his heart did take courage, and was filled with exceedingly great joy because of the faithfulness of Pahoran, that he was not also a traitor to the freedom and cause of his country.

But he did also mourn exceedingly because of the iniquity of those who had driven Pahoran from the judgment-seat, yea, in fine because of those who had rebelled against their country and also their God.

And it came to pass that Moroni took a small number of men, according to the desire of Pahoran, and gave Lehi and Teancum command over the remainder of his army, and took his march towards the land of Gideon.

And he did raise the standard of liberty in whatsoever place he did enter, and gained whatsoever force he could in all his march towards the land of Gideon.

And it came to pass that thousands did flock unto his standard, and did take up their swords in the defence of their freedom, that they might not come into bondage.

And thus, when Moroni had gathered together whatsoever men he could in all his march, he came to the land of Gideon; and uniting his forces with those of Pahoran they became exceedingly strong, even stronger than the men of Pachus, who was the king of those dissenters who had driven the freemen out of the land of Zarahemla and had taken possession of the land.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran went down with their armies into the land of Zarahemla, and went forth against the city, and did meet the men of Pachus, insomuch that they did come to battle.

And behold, Pachus was slain and his men were taken prisoners, and Pahoran was restored to his judgment-seat.

- 9 En die manne van Pachus het hulle verhoor ontvang, volgens die wet, en ook daardie koningsmanne wat geneem en in die gevangenis gewerp is; en hulle is tereggestel volgens die wet; ja, daardie manne van Pachus en daardie koningsmanne, wie ook al nie wapens wou opneem ter verdediging van hul land nie, maar wat daarteen wou stry, is gedood.
- 10 En so het dit noodsaaklik geword dat hierdie wet streng onderhou moes word vir die veiligheid van hul land; ja, en wie ook al gevind is wat hulle vryheid verloën, is spoedig tereggestel volgens die wet.
- 11 En so het die dertigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi geëindig; Moroni en Pahoran het vrede herstel in die land Zarahemla, onder hul eie volk, en het die doodstraf toegepas op diegene wat nie trou was aan die saak van vryheid nie.
- 12 En dit het gebeur aan die begin van die een en dertigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi, dat Moroni dadelik voorrade laat stuur het, en ook moes 'n leër van sesduisend manne gestuur word aan Helaman, om hom by te staan in die behoud van daardie deel van die land.
- 13 En hy het ook 'n leër van sesduisend manne, met voldoende hoeveelheid voedsel, laat stuur na die leërs van Lehi en Teankum. En dit het gebeur dat dit gedoen is om die land te versterk teen die Lamaniete.
- 14 En dit het gebeur dat Moroni en Pahoran 'n groot groep manne in die land Zarahemla agtergelaat het, hul opmars geneem het met 'n groot groep manne na die land Nefiha, omdat hulle vasberade was om die Lamaniete in daardie stad te verslaan.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat terwyl hulle gemarsjeer het na die land, het hulle 'n groot groep manne van die Lamaniete geneem, en baie van hulle doodgemaak, en hul voorrade en hulle wapens van oorlog afge-
neem.
- 16 En dit het gebeur nadat hulle hul geneem het, het hulle hul 'n verbond laat sluit dat hulle nie meer hul wapens van oorlog sou opneem teen die Nefiete nie.

And the men of Pachus received their trial, according to the law, and also those king-men who had been taken and cast into prison; and they were executed according to the law; yea, those men of Pachus and those king-men, whosoever would not take up arms in the defence of their country, but would fight against it, were put to death.

And thus it became expedient that this law should be strictly observed for the safety of their country; yea, and whosoever was found denying their freedom was speedily executed according to the law.

And thus ended the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; Moroni and Pahoran having restored peace to the land of Zarahemla, among their own people, having inflicted death upon all those who were not true to the cause of freedom.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Moroni immediately caused that provisions should be sent, and also an army of six thousand men should be sent unto Helaman, to assist him in preserving that part of the land.

And he also caused that an army of six thousand men, with a sufficient quantity of food, should be sent to the armies of Lehi and Teancum. And it came to pass that this was done to fortify the land against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran, leaving a large body of men in the land of Zarahemla, took their march with a large body of men towards the land of Nephiah, being determined to overthrow the Lamanites in that city.

And it came to pass that as they were marching towards the land, they took a large body of men of the Lamanites, and slew many of them, and took their provisions and their weapons of war.

And it came to pass after they had taken them, they caused them to enter into a covenant that they would no more take up their weapons of war against the Nephites.

17 En toe hulle hierdie verbond gesluit het, het hulle hul gestuur om te woon by die volk van Ammon, en hulle was in getal omtrent vierduisend wat nie gedood is nie.

18 En dit het gebeur dat toe hulle hul weggestuur het, het hulle hul opmars na die land Nefiha voortgesit. En dit het gebeur toe hulle by die stad Nefiha aangekom het, het hulle hul tente opgeslaan op die vlaktes van Nefiha, wat naby die stad Nefiha is.

19 Nou, Moroni was begerig dat die Lamaniete moes uitkom om teen hulle op die vlaktes te veg, maar die Lamaniete, omdat hulle geweet het van hulle uitermate groot moed, en die grootheid van hulle getalle waargeneem het, daarom het hulle nie gedurf om teen hulle te kom nie, daarom het hulle nie op daardie dag uitgekome om te veg nie.

20 En toe dit nag word, het Moroni uitgegaan in die donkerte van die nag, en bo-op die muur geklim om te kyk in watter gedeelte van die stad die Lamaniete gekamp het met hulle leër.

21 En dit het gebeur dat hulle aan die oostekant was, by die ingang; en hulle was almal aan die slaap. En nou het Moroni na sy leër teruggegaan en hulle inderhaas sterk toue en lere laat voorberei om neergelaat te word van bo van die muur af na die binnekant van die muur.

22 En dit het gebeur dat Moroni sy manne laat opmarsjeer het, en bo-op die muur laat kom het, en hulself laat afsak het in daardie deel van die stad, ja, en wel aan die westekant, waar die Lamaniete nie gekamp was met hulle leër nie.

23 En dit het gebeur dat hulle almal neergelaat is in die stad gedurende die nag, deur middel van hulle sterk toue en hulle lere; dus toe dit oggend word, was hulle almal binne die mure van die stad.

24 En nou toe die Lamaniete wakker word en sien dat die leërs van Moroni binne die mure was, was hulle uitermate beangs, in soverre dat hulle by die poort uitgevlug het.

And when they had entered into this covenant they sent them to dwell with the people of Ammon, and they were in number about four thousand who had not been slain.

And it came to pass that when they had sent them away they pursued their march towards the land of Nephihah. And it came to pass that when they had come to the city of Nephihah, they did pitch their tents in the plains of Nephihah, which is near the city of Nephihah.

Now Moroni was desirous that the Lamanites should come out to battle against them, upon the plains; but the Lamanites, knowing of their exceedingly great courage, and beholding the greatness of their numbers, therefore they durst not come out against them; therefore they did not come to battle in that day.

And when the night came, Moroni went forth in the darkness of the night, and came upon the top of the wall to spy out in what part of the city the Lamanites did camp with their army.

And it came to pass that they were on the east, by the entrance; and they were all asleep. And now Moroni returned to his army, and caused that they should prepare in haste strong cords and ladders, to be let down from the top of the wall into the inner part of the wall.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his men should march forth and come upon the top of the wall, and let themselves down into that part of the city, yea, even on the west, where the Lamanites did not camp with their armies.

And it came to pass that they were all let down into the city by night, by the means of their strong cords and their ladders; thus when the morning came they were all within the walls of the city.

And now, when the Lamanites awoke and saw that the armies of Moroni were within the walls, they were affrighted exceedingly, insomuch that they did flee out by the pass.

25 En nou toe Moroni sien dat hulle voor hom uitvlug, het hy sy manne teen hulle laat opmarsjeer, en baie gedood, en baie ander omsingel, en hulle gevangene geneem; en die res van hulle het gevlug na die land Moroni, wat aan die grense by die seekus was.

26 So het Moroni en Pahoran besit gekry van die stad Nefiha sonder die verlies van een siel; en daar was baie van die Lamaniete wat gedood is.

27 Nou het dit gebeur dat baie van die Lamaniete wat gevangenes was, begerig was om by die volk van Ammon aan te sluit en 'n vrye volk te word.

28 En dit het gebeur dat soveel as wat begerig was, aan hulle is volgens hul begeertes gegun.

29 Daarom het al die gevangenes van die Lamaniete aangesluit by die volk van Ammon, en het begin om uitermate te arbei, om die grond te bewerk, en allerhande graansoorte te kweek, en kleinvee en grootvee van elke soort; en so is die Nefiete verlig van 'n groot las; ja, in soverre dat hulle verlig was van al die gevangenes van die Lamaniete.

30 Nou het dit gebeur dat Moroni, nadat hy besit gekry het van die stad Nefiha, en nadat hy baie gevangenes geneem het, wat die leërs van die Lamaniete aansienlik verminder het, en nadat hy baie Nefiete teruggekry het wat gevange geneem was, wat die leër van Moroni uitermate versterk het; daarom het Moroni uit die land Nefiha getrek na die land Lehi.

31 En dit het gebeur dat toe die Lamaniete sien dat Moroni teen hulle kom, was hulle weer bevrees en het gevlug voor Moroni se leër.

32 En dit het gebeur dat Moroni en sy leër hulle agtervolg het van stad tot stad, totdat hulle ontmoet is deur Lehi en Teankum; en die Lamaniete het weggevlug van Lehi en Teankum, tot by die grense van die seekus, totdat hulle by die land Moroni gekom het.

33 En die leërs van die Lamaniete was almal byeen versamel, in soverre dat hulle almal in een groep was in die land Moroni. Nou Ammoron, die koning van die Lamaniete, was ook met hulle.

And now when Moroni saw that they were fleeing before him, he did cause that his men should march forth against them, and slew many, and surrounded many others, and took them prisoners; and the remainder of them fled into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

Thus had Moroni and Pahoran obtained the possession of the city of Nephihah without the loss of one soul; and there were many of the Lamanites who were slain.

Now it came to pass that many of the Lamanites that were prisoners were desirous to join the people of Ammon and become a free people.

And it came to pass that as many as were desirous, unto them it was granted according to their desires.

Therefore, all the prisoners of the Lamanites did join the people of Ammon, and did begin to labor exceedingly, tilling the ground, raising all manner of grain, and flocks and herds of every kind; and thus were the Nephites relieved from a great burden; yea, insomuch that they were relieved from all the prisoners of the Lamanites.

Now it came to pass that Moroni, after he had obtained possession of the city of Nephihah, having taken many prisoners, which did reduce the armies of the Lamanites exceedingly, and having regained many of the Nephites who had been taken prisoners, which did strengthen the army of Moroni exceedingly; therefore Moroni went forth from the land of Nephihah to the land of Lehi.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Moroni was coming against them, they were again frightened and fled before the army of Moroni.

And it came to pass that Moroni and his army did pursue them from city to city, until they were met by Lehi and Teancum; and the Lamanites fled from Lehi and Teancum, even down upon the borders by the seashore, until they came to the land of Moroni.

And the armies of the Lamanites were all gathered together, insomuch that they were all in one body in the land of Moroni. Now Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites, was also with them.

34 En dit het gebeur dat Moroni en Lehi en Teankum met hulle leërs rondom op die grense van die land Moroni gekamp het, in soverre dat die Lamaniete omring was op die grense naby die wildernis aan die suidekant, en op die grense naby die wildernis aan die oostekant.

35 En dus het hulle gekamp vir die nag. Want kyk, die Nefiete en ook die Lamaniete, was moeg as gevolg van die groot afstand van die opmars; daarom het hulle oor geen strategie gedurende die nag besinnie, behalwe Teankum; want hy was uitermate vertoornd op Ammoron, in soverre dat hy gereken het dat Ammoron, en Amalikia sy broer, die oorsaak was van hierdie groot en langdurige oorlog tussen hulle en die Lamaniete, wat die oorsaak was van soveel oorlog en bloedvergieting, ja, en soveel hongersnood.

36 En dit het gebeur dat Teankum in sy toorn uitgegaan het na die kamp van die Lamaniete, en homself neergelaat het oor die mure van die stad. En hy het met 'n tou van plek tot plek gegaan, in soverre dat hy die koning gevind het; en hy het hom met 'n spies gegooi, wat hom naby die hart deursteek het. Maar kyk, die koning het sy diensknegte wakker gemaak voordat hy gesterf het, in soverre dat hulle Teankum agternagesit, en hom gedood het.

37 Nou het dit gebeur dat toe Lehi en Moroni ontdek dat Teankum dood was, was hulle uitermate bedroef; want kyk, hy was 'n man wat dapper geveg het vir sy land, ja, 'n ware vriend van vryheid; en hy het vele uitermate sware verdrukkinge gely. Maar kyk, hy was dood, en het die weg van die ganse aarde gegaan.

38 Nou het dit gebeur dat Moroni die volgende dag uitgemarsjeer het en op die Lamaniete afgekom het, in soverre dat hulle hul met 'n groot slagting geslag het; en hulle het hulle uit die land verdryf; en hulle het gevlug, dat hulle nie in daardie tyd teruggekeer het teen die Nefiete nie.

39 En so het die een en dertigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi geëindig; en so het hulle oorloë, en bloedvergietinge gehad, en hongersnood, en verdrukking, vir 'n tydperk van baie jare.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Lehi and Teancum did encamp with their armies round about in the borders of the land of Moroni, insomuch that the Lamanites were encircled about in the borders by the wilderness on the south, and in the borders by the wilderness on the east.

And thus they did encamp for the night. For behold, the Nephites and the Lamanites also were weary because of the greatness of the march; therefore they did not resolve upon any stratagem in the night-time, save it were Teancum; for he was exceedingly angry with Ammoron, insomuch that he considered that Ammoron, and Amalickiah his brother, had been the cause of this great and lasting war between them and the Lamanites, which had been the cause of so much war and bloodshed, yea, and so much famine.

And it came to pass that Teancum in his anger did go forth into the camp of the Lamanites, and did let himself down over the walls of the city. And he went forth with a cord, from place to place, insomuch that he did find the king; and he did cast a javelin at him, which did pierce him near the heart. But behold, the king did awaken his servants before he died, insomuch that they did pursue Teancum, and slew him.

Now it came to pass that when Lehi and Moroni knew that Teancum was dead they were exceedingly sorrowful; for behold, he had been a man who had fought valiantly for his country, yea, a true friend to liberty; and he had suffered very many exceedingly sore afflictions. But behold, he was dead, and had gone the way of all the earth.

Now it came to pass that Moroni marched forth on the morrow, and came upon the Lamanites, insomuch that they did slay them with a great slaughter; and they did drive them out of the land; and they did flee, even that they did not return at that time against the Nephites.

And thus ended the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and thus they had had wars, and bloodsheds, and famine, and affliction, for the space of many years.

40 En daar was moorde, en twiste, en onenighede, en allerlei ongeregtighede onder die volk van Nefi ge-wees; nogtans, vir die regverdiges se ontwil, ja, ter wille van die gebede van die regverdiges, is hulle ge-spaar.

41 Maar kyk, vanweë die uitermate lang duurte van die oorlog tussen die Nefiete en die Lamaniete het baie verhard geword, vanweë die uitermate lang duurte van die oorlog; en baie is verteder vanweë hulle verdrukkinge, in soverre dat hulle hulself verootmoedig het voor God, en wel tot die dieptes van ootmoed.

42 En dit het gebeur dat nadat Moroni daardie dele van die land versterk het wat die meeste blootgestel is aan die Lamaniete, totdat hulle sterk genoeg was, het hy teruggekeer na die stad Zarahemla, en Helaman het ook teruggekeer na die plek van sy erfenis; en daar is weer eens vrede gevestig onder die volk van Nefi.

43 En Moroni het die bevel van sy leërs oorgegee in die hande van sy seun, wie se naam Moroniha was; en hy het na sy eie huis teruggetrek, sodat hy die res van sy dae in vrede mag deurbring.

44 En Pahoran het teruggekeer na sy regterstoel; en Helaman het dit weer op hom geneem om die woord van God te preek aan die volk; want as gevolg van so baie oorloë en twiste het dit noodsaaklik geword dat 'n verordening weer gemaak moes word in die kerk.

45 Daarom, Helaman en sy broers het uitgegaan, en die woord van God verkondig met groot krag tot die oortuiging van baie mense van hul boosheid, wat hulle van hul sondes laat bekeer het en om gedoop te word tot die Here hulle God.

46 En dit het gebeur dat hulle weer die kerk van God gevestig het, dwarsdeur die hele land.

47 Ja, en verordeninge is gemaak aangaande die wet. En hul regters, en hul hoofregters is gekies.

48 En die volk van Nefi het weer begin om voorspoedig te word in die land, en het begin om te vermeerder en weer uitermate sterk geword in die land. En hulle het begin om uitermate ryk te word.

And there had been murders, and contentions, and dissensions, and all manner of iniquity among the people of Nephi; nevertheless for the righteous' sake, yea, because of the prayers of the righteous, they were spared.

But behold, because of the exceedingly great length of the war between the Nephites and the Lamanites many had become hardened, because of the exceedingly great length of the war; and many were softened because of their afflictions, insomuch that they did humble themselves before God, even in the depth of humility.

And it came to pass that after Moroni had fortified those parts of the land which were most exposed to the Lamanites, until they were sufficiently strong, he returned to the city of Zarahemla; and also Helaman returned to the place of his inheritance; and there was once more peace established among the people of Nephi.

And Moroni yielded up the command of his armies into the hands of his son, whose name was Moronihah; and he retired to his own house that he might spend the remainder of his days in peace.

And Pahoran did return to his judgment-seat; and Helaman did take upon him again to preach unto the people the word of God; for because of so many wars and contentions it had become expedient that a regulation should be made again in the church.

Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth, and did declare the word of God with much power unto the convincing of many people of their wickedness, which did cause them to repent of their sins and to be baptized unto the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that they did establish again the church of God, throughout all the land.

Yea, and regulations were made concerning the law. And their judges, and their chief judges were chosen.

And the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to multiply and to wax exceedingly strong again in the land. And they began to grow exceedingly rich.

49 Maar nieteenstaande hul rykdom, of hul sterkte, of hul voorspoed, was hulle nie verhef in die hoogmoed van hul oë nie; nóg was hulle traag om die Here hulle God te onthou; maar hulle het hul uitermate verootmoedig voor Hom.

50 Ja, hulle het onthou watter groot dinge die Here vir hulle gedoen het, dat Hy hulle verlos het van die dood, en van gebondenheid, en van gevangnisse, en van allerlei verdrukkinge, en Hy het hulle verlos uit die hande van hul vyande.

51 En hulle het voortdurend gebid tot die Here hulle God, in soverre dat die Here hulle geseën het, volgens sy woord, sodat hulle sterk geword het en voorspoedig was in die land.

52 En dit het gebeur dat al hierdie dinge gedoen is. En Helaman het gesterwe in die vyf en dertigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi.

But notwithstanding their riches, or their strength, or their prosperity, they were not lifted up in the pride of their eyes; neither were they slow to remember the Lord their God; but they did humble themselves exceedingly before him.

Yea, they did remember how great things the Lord had done for them, that he had delivered them from death, and from bonds, and from prisons, and from all manner of afflictions, and he had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies.

And they did pray unto the Lord their God continually, insomuch that the Lord did bless them, according to his word, so that they did wax strong and prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that all these things were done. And Helaman died, in the thirty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alma 63

- 1 En dit het gebeur aan die begin van die ses en dertigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi, dat Sjiblon besit geneem het van daardie heilige dinge wat oorhandig is aan Helaman deur Alma.
- 2 En hy was 'n regverdige man, en hy het opreg gewandel voor God; en hy het gepoog om gedurigdeur goed te doen, om die gebooie te onderhou van die Here sy God; en ook so het sy broer gedoen.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat Moroni ook gesterf het. En so het die ses en dertigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters geëindig.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat in die sewe en dertigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters, was daar 'n groot groep van manne, en wel die getal van vyfduisend vierhonderd manne, met hul vroue en hul kinders, wat uit die land Zarahemla vertrek het na die land wat noordwaarts was.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat Hagot, omdat hy 'n uitermate weetgierige man was, daarom het hy uitgegaan en vir hom 'n uitermate groot skip gebou, op die grense van die land Oorvloed, by die land Verlatenheid, en het dit te water gelaat in die westelike see, by die smal strook wat na die land noordwaarts gelei het.
- 6 En kyk, daar was baie van die Nefiete wat dit binnegegaan het, en weggeseil het met veel voorrade, en ook baie vroue en kinders; en hulle het hul koers noordwaarts ingeslaan. En so het die sewe en dertigste jaar geëindig.
- 7 En in die agt en dertigste jaar het hierdie man ander skepe gebou. En die eerste skip het ook teruggekeer, en baie meer mense het dit binnegegaan; en hulle het ook baie voorrade saamgeneem, en weer weggeseil na die land noordwaarts.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat hulle nooit meer van gehoor is nie. En ons veronderstel dat hulle verdrink het in die dieptes van die see. En dit het gebeur dat nog 'n skip ook weggeseil het; en waarheen sy gegaan het, weet ons nie.
- 9 En dit het gebeur dat in hierdie jaar was daar baie mense wat uitgegaan het na die land noordwaarts. En so het die agt en dertigste jaar geëindig.

Alma 63

And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Shiblon took possession of those sacred things which had been delivered unto Helaman by Alma.

And he was a just man, and he did walk uprightly before God; and he did observe to do good continually, to keep the commandments of the Lord his God; and also did his brother.

And it came to pass that Moroni died also. And thus ended the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that in the thirty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, there was a large company of men, even to the amount of five thousand and four hundred men, with their wives and their children, departed out of the land of Zarahemla into the land which was northward.

And it came to pass that Hagoth, he being an exceedingly curious man, therefore he went forth and built him an exceedingly large ship, on the borders of the land Bountiful, by the land Desolation, and launched it forth into the west sea, by the narrow neck which led into the land northward.

And behold, there were many of the Nephites who did enter therein and did sail forth with much provisions, and also many women and children; and they took their course northward. And thus ended the thirty and seventh year.

And in the thirty and eighth year, this man built other ships. And the first ship did also return, and many more people did enter into it; and they also took much provisions, and set out again to the land northward.

And it came to pass that they were never heard of more. And we suppose that they were drowned in the depths of the sea. And it came to pass that one other ship also did sail forth; and whither she did go we know not.

And it came to pass that in this year there were many people who went forth into the land northward. And thus ended the thirty and eighth year.

10 En dit het gebeur in die nege en dertigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters, dat Sjiblon ook gesterf het, en Corianton het na die land noordwaarts in 'n skip uitgegaan, om voorrade weg te bring vir die mense wat na daardie land gegaan het.

11 Daarom het dit noodsaaklik geword vir Sjiblon om daardie heilige dinge voor sy dood oor te dra aan die seun van Helaman, wat Helaman genoem is, omdat hy vernoem is na sy vader.

12 Nou kyk, al daardie graverings wat in die besit was van Helaman, is geskryf en uitgestuur onder die kinders van mense dwarsdeur die hele land, behalwe daardie gedeeltes wat deur Alma beveel is nie uitgestuur moes word nie.

13 Nogtans, hierdie dinge moes heilig gehou word, en van een geslag na 'n ander oorgedra word; daarom is hulle in hierdie jaar oorgedra aan Helaman, voor die dood van Sjiblon.

14 En dit het ook gebeur in hierdie jaar dat daar sommige afvalliges was wat oorgegaan het na die Lamaniete; en hulle is weer opgestook tot toorn teen die Nefiete.

15 En ook in hierdie selfde jaar het hulle afgekom met 'n talryke leër om oorlog te maak teen die volk van Moroniha, of teen die leër van Moroniha, waarin hulle verslaan en weer teruggedryf is na hul eie lande, en het groot verliese gely.

16 En so het die nege en dertigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi geëindig.

17 En so het die kroniek van Alma geëindig, en Helaman sy seun, en ook Sjiblon, wat sy seun was.

And it came to pass in the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, Shiblon died also, and Corianton had gone forth to the land northward in a ship, to carry forth provisions unto the people who had gone forth into that land.

Therefore it became expedient for Shiblon to confer those sacred things, before his death, upon the son of Helaman, who was called Helaman, being called after the name of his father.

Now behold, all those engravings which were in the possession of Helaman were written and sent forth among the children of men throughout all the land, save it were those parts which had been commanded by Alma should not go forth.

Nevertheless, these things were to be kept sacred, and handed down from one generation to another; therefore, in this year, they had been conferred upon Helaman, before the death of Shiblon.

And it came to pass also in this year that there were some dissenters who had gone forth unto the Lamanites; and they were stirred up again to anger against the Nephites.

And also in this same year they came down with a numerous army to war against the people of Moronihah, or against the army of Moronihah, in the which they were beaten and driven back again to their own lands, suffering great loss.

And thus ended the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus ended the account of Alma, and Helaman his son, and also Shiblon, who was his son.

Die Boek van Helaman

'n Kroniek van die Nefiete. Hul oorloë en twistes, en hul onenigbede. En ook die profesieë van baie heilige profete, voor die koms van Christus, volgens die kronieke van Helaman, wat die seun van Helaman was, en ook volgens die kronieke van sy seuns, en wel tot by die koms van Christus. En ook baie van die Lamaniete word bekeer. 'n Kroniek van hul bekering. 'n Kroniek van die regverdigheid van die Lamaniete, en die boosheid en gruwels van die Nefiete, volgens die kroniek van Helaman en sy seuns, en wel tot by die koms van Christus, wat die boek van Helaman genoem word, ensovoorts.

Helaman 1

- 1 En nou kyk, dit het gebeur aan die begin van die veertigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi, het daar ernstige probleme onder die volk van die Nefiete gekom.
- 2 Want kyk, Pahoran het gesterwe, en die weg van die ganse aarde gegaan; daarom het daar 'n ernstige twis begin aangaande wie die regterstoel moes hê onder die broers, wat die seuns van Pahoran was.
- 3 Nou, hierdie is hul name wat gewedywer het om die regterstoel, wat ook die volk laat wedywer het: Pahoran, Paänchi en Pacumeni.
- 4 Nou hierdie is nie al die seuns van Pahoran nie (want hy het baie gehad), maar hierdie is hulle wat gewedywer het om die regterstoel; daarom, hulle het drie verdelings onder die volk veroorsaak.
- 5 Nogtans, dit het gebeur dat Pahoran aangestel is deur die stem van die volk om hoofregter te wees en 'n goewerneur oor die volk van Nefi.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat Pacumeni, toe hy sien dat hy nie die regterstoel kon verkry nie, het hy hom verenig met die stem van die volk.

The Book of Helaman

An account of the Nephites. Their wars and contentions, and their dissensions. And also the prophecies of many holy prophets, before the coming of Christ, according to the records of Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, and also according to the records of his sons, even down to the coming of Christ. And also many of the Lamanites are converted. An account of their conversion. An account of the righteousness of the Lamanites, and the wickedness and abominations of the Nephites, according to the record of Helaman and his sons, even down to the coming of Christ, which is called the book of Helaman, and so forth.

Helaman 1

And now behold, it came to pass in the commencement of the fortieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there began to be a serious difficulty among the people of the Nephites.

For behold, Pahoran had died, and gone the way of all the earth; therefore there began to be a serious contention concerning who should have the judgment-seat among the brethren, who were the sons of Pahoran.

Now these are their names who did contend for the judgment-seat, who did also cause the people to contend: Pahoran, Paanchi, and Pacumeni.

Now these are not all the sons of Pahoran (for he had many), but these are they who did contend for the judgment-seat; therefore, they did cause three divisions among the people.

Nevertheless, it came to pass that Pahoran was appointed by the voice of the people to be chief judge and a governor over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that Pacumeni, when he saw that he could not obtain the judgment-seat, he did unite with the voice of the people.

- 7 Maar kyk, Paänchi, en daardie gedeelte van die volk wat begerig was dat hy hul goewerneur moes wees, was uitermate vertoornd; daarom, hy het op die punt gestaan om met vleitaal daardie mense te verlei om op te staan in rebellie teen hulle broers.
- 8 En dit het gebeur terwyl hy op die punt gestaan het om dit te doen, kyk, hy is geneem en verhoor volgens die stem van die volk, en veroordeel tot die dood; want hy het opgestaan in rebellie en gesoek om die vryheid van die volk te vernietig.
- 9 Nou, toe daardie mense wat begerig was dat hy hul goewerneur moes wees, sien dat hy veroordeel is tot die dood, daarom was hulle kwaad, en kyk, hulle het ene Kiskumen uitgestuur, sover as tot by die regterstoel van Pahoran, en het Pahoran vermoor terwyl hy op die regterstoel gesit het.
- 10 En hy is agternagesit deur die diensknegte van Pahoran; maar kyk, so vinnig was die vlug van Kiskumen dat geen mens hom kon inhaal nie.
- 11 En hy het na diegene gegaan wat hom gestuur het, en hulle het almal 'n verbond gesluit, ja, en gesweer by hulle ewigdurende Maker, dat hulle geen mens sou vertel dat Kiskumen vir Pahoran vermoor het nie.
- 12 Daarom, Kiskumen was nie bekend onder die volk van Nephi nie, want hy was vermom ten tyde dat hy vir Pahoran vermoor het. En Kiskumen en sy bende, wat met hom 'n verbond gesluit het, het hulleself met die mense vermeng, op 'n wyse dat hulle almal nie gevind kon word nie; maar soveel as wat gevind is, is veroordeel tot die dood.
- 13 En nou kyk, Pacumeni is aangestel, volgens die stem van die volk, om 'n hoofregter en 'n goewerneur oor die volk te wees, om te heers in die plek van sy broer Pahoran; en dit was volgens sy reg. En dit alles is gedoen in die veertigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters; en dit het 'n einde gehad.
- 14 En dit het gebeur in die een en veertigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters, dat die Lamaniete 'n ontelbare leër van manne bymekaargemaak het, en hulle bewapen het met swaarde, en met sabels en met boë, en met pyle, en met helms, en met borsplaat, en met allerlei skilde van elke soort.

But behold, Paanchi, and that part of the people that were desirous that he should be their governor, was exceedingly wroth; therefore, he was about to flatter away those people to rise up in rebellion against their brethren.

And it came to pass as he was about to do this, behold, he was taken, and was tried according to the voice of the people, and condemned unto death; for he had raised up in rebellion and sought to destroy the liberty of the people.

Now when those people who were desirous that he should be their governor saw that he was condemned unto death, therefore they were angry, and behold, they sent forth one Kishkumen, even to the judgment-seat of Pahoran, and murdered Pahoran as he sat upon the judgment-seat.

And he was pursued by the servants of Pahoran; but behold, so speedy was the flight of Kishkumen that no man could overtake him.

And he went unto those that sent him, and they all entered into a covenant, yea, swearing by their everlasting Maker, that they would tell no man that Kishkumen had murdered Pahoran.

Therefore, Kishkumen was not known among the people of Nephi, for he was in disguise at the time that he murdered Pahoran. And Kishkumen and his band, who had covenanted with him, did mingle themselves among the people, in a manner that they all could not be found; but as many as were found were condemned unto death.

And now behold, Pacumeni was appointed, according to the voice of the people, to be a chief judge and a governor over the people, to reign in the stead of his brother Pahoran; and it was according to his right. And all this was done in the fortieth year of the reign of the judges; and it had an end.

And it came to pass in the forty and first year of the reign of the judges, that the Lamanites had gathered together an innumerable army of men, and armed them with swords, and with cimeters and with bows, and with arrows, and with head-plates, and with breastplates, and with all manner of shields of every kind.

15 En hulle het weer afgekom dat hulle mag stryd voer teen die Nefiete. En hulle is gelei deur 'n man wie se naam Coriantumr was; en hy was 'n afstameling van Zarahemla; en hy was 'n afvallige van die Nefiete; en hy was 'n groot en 'n magtige man.

16 Daarom het die koning van die Lamaniete, wie se naam Tubalot was, wat die seun was van Ammoron, veronderstel dat Coriantumr, omdat hy 'n magtige man was, kon staan teen die Nefiete, met sy krag en ook met sy groot wysheid, in soverre dat deur hom uit te stuur hy mag sou bekom oor die Nefiete—

17 Daarom het hy hulle opgestook tot toorn, en hy het sy leërs bymekaargemaak, en hy het Coriantumr aangestel om hulle leier te wees, en hulle laat marsjeer na die land Zarahemla om te veg teen die Nefiete.

18 En dit het gebeur dat vanweë soveel twis en soveel probleme in die regering, dat hulle nie voldoende wagte aangehou het in die land Zarahemla nie; want hulle het veronderstel dat die Lamaniete nie durf waag om in die hart van hulle lande te kom om daardie groot stad Zarahemla aan te val nie.

19 Maar dit het gebeur dat Coriantumr gemarsjeer het aan die hoof van sy groot leër, en afgekom het op die inwoners van die stad, en hul opmars was met sulke uitermate groot spoed, dat daar geen tyd was vir die Nefiete om hulle talryke leërskare bymekaar te maak nie.

20 Daarom het Coriantumr die wag neergevel by die ingang van die stad, en het marsjeer met sy hele leër in die stad in, en hulle het elkeen gedood wat hulle weerstaan het, in soverre dat hulle besit geneem het van die hele stad.

21 En dit het gebeur dat Pacumeni, wat die hoofregter was, uitgevlug het voor Coriantumr, tot by die mure van die stad. En dit het gebeur dat Coriantumr hom teen die muur geslaan het, in soverre dat hy gestorf het. En so het die dae van Pacumeni geëindig.

And they came down again that they might pitch battle against the Nephites. And they were led by a man whose name was Coriantumr; and he was a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was a dissenter from among the Nephites; and he was a large and a mighty man.

Therefore, the king of the Lamanites, whose name was Tubaloth, who was the son of Ammoron, supposing that Coriantumr, being a mighty man, could stand against the Nephites, with his strength and also with his great wisdom, insomuch that by sending him forth he should gain power over the Nephites—

Therefore he did stir them up to anger, and he did gather together his armies, and he did appoint Coriantumr to be their leader, and did cause that they should march down to the land of Zarahemla to battle against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that because of so much contention and so much difficulty in the government, that they had not kept sufficient guards in the land of Zarahemla; for they had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the heart of their lands to attack that great city Zarahemla.

But it came to pass that Coriantumr did march forth at the head of his numerous host, and came upon the inhabitants of the city, and their march was with such exceedingly great speed that there was no time for the Nephites to gather together their armies.

Therefore Coriantumr did cut down the watch by the entrance of the city, and did march forth with his whole army into the city, and they did slay every one who did oppose them, insomuch that they did take possession of the whole city.

And it came to pass that Pacumeni, who was the chief judge, did flee before Coriantumr, even to the walls of the city. And it came to pass that Coriantumr did smite him against the wall, insomuch that he died. And thus ended the days of Pacumeni.

- 22 En nou, toe Coriantumr sien dat hy in besit was van die stad Zarahemla, en sien dat die Nefiete voor hulle gevlug het, en gedood is, en geneem is, en in die gevangenis gewerp is, en dat hy die besit verkry het van die sterkste vesting in die hele land, het sy hart moed geskep in soverre dat hy op die punt gestaan het om uit te gaan teen die hele land.
- 23 En nou het hy nie vertoef in die land Zarahemla nie, maar hy het gemarsjeer met 'n groot leër, en wel na die stad Oorvloed; want dit was sy voorneme om uit te gaan en sy pad oop te sny met die swaard, sodat hy die noordelike dele van die land mag verkry.
- 24 En, veronderstellend dat hulle grootste krag in die middel van die land was, daarom het hy gemarsjeer, en hulle geen tyd gegun om hulself bymekaar te maak nie, behalwe as dit in klein groepies was; en op hierdie wyse het hulle op hul geval en hulle neergevel op die aarde.
- 25 Maar kyk, hierdie opmars van Coriantumr deur die middel van die land het Moroniha groot voordeel gegee oor hulle, nieteenstaande die grootheid van die aantal van die Nefiete wat gedood is.
- 26 Want kyk, Moroniha het veronderstel dat die Lamaniete nie durf kom in die middel van die land nie, maar dat hulle die stede sou aanval omliggend aan die grense, soos hulle tot dusver gedoen het; daarom het Moroniha hulle sterk leërs daardie dele laat beheer omliggend aan die grense.
- 27 Maar kyk, die Lamaniete was nie verskrik volgens sy begeerte nie, maar hulle het gekom tot in die middel van die land, en het die hoofstad geneem wat die stad Zarahemla was, en het gemarsjeer deur die belangrikste dele van die land, terwyl hulle die volk geslag het met 'n groot slagting, beide manne, vroue, en kinders, en besit geneem het van baie stede en van baie vestings.
- 28 Maar toe Moroniha dit ontdek het, het hy onmiddellik Lehi uitgestuur met 'n leër rondom om hulle te stuit voordat hulle in die land Oorvloed sou kom.

And now when Coriantumr saw that he was in possession of the city of Zarahemla, and saw that the Nephites had fled before them, and were slain, and were taken, and were cast into prison, and that he had obtained the possession of the strongest hold in all the land, his heart took courage insomuch that he was about to go forth against all the land.

And now he did not tarry in the land of Zarahemla, but he did march forth with a large army, even towards the city of Bountiful; for it was his determination to go forth and cut his way through with the sword, that he might obtain the north parts of the land.

And, supposing that their greatest strength was in the center of the land, therefore he did march forth, giving them no time to assemble themselves together save it were in small bodies; and in this manner they did fall upon them and cut them down to the earth.

But behold, this march of Coriantumr through the center of the land gave Moronihah great advantage over them, notwithstanding the greatness of the number of the Nephites who were slain.

For behold, Moronihah had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the center of the land, but that they would attack the cities round about in the borders as they had hitherto done; therefore Moronihah had caused that their strong armies should maintain those parts round about by the borders.

But behold, the Lamanites were not frightened according to his desire, but they had come into the center of the land, and had taken the capital city which was the city of Zarahemla, and were marching through the most capital parts of the land, slaying the people with a great slaughter, both men, women, and children, taking possession of many cities and of many strongholds.

But when Moronihah had discovered this, he immediately sent forth Lehi with an army round about to head them before they should come to the land Bountiful.

29 En so het hy gedoen; en hy het hulle gestuit voor-
dat hulle by die land Oorvloed gekom het, en hulle
die stryd aangesê, in soverre dat hulle begin het om
terug te trek na die land Zarahemla.

30 En dit het gebeur dat Moroniha hulle gestuit het in
hul aftog, en het hulle die stryd aangesê, in soverre
dat dit 'n uitermate bloedige geveg geword het; ja,
baie is gedood, en onder die aantal wat gedood is was
Coriantumr ook gevind.

31 En nou, kyk, die Lamaniete kon nie terugtrek na
enige kant toe nie, nóg aan die noorde, nóg aan die
suide, nóg aan die ooste, nóg aan die weste, want
hulle was omsingel aan elke kant deur die Nefiete.

32 En so het Coriantumr die Lamaniete gedompel in
die midde van die Nefiete, in soverre dat hulle in die
mag was van die Nefiete, en hy is self gedood; en die
Lamaniete het hulself oorgegee in die hande van die
Nefiete.

33 En dit het gebeur dat Moroniha weer besit geneem
het van die stad Zarahemla, en die Lamaniete wat ge-
vange geneem is laat vertrek uit die land in vrede.

34 En so het die een en veertigste jaar van die heer-
skappy van die regters geëindig.

And thus he did; and he did head them before they
came to the land Bountiful, and gave unto them bat-
tle, insomuch that they began to retreat back towards
the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that Moronihah did head them
in their retreat, and did give unto them battle, inso-
much that it became an exceedingly bloody battle;
yea, many were slain, and among the number who
were slain Coriantumr was also found.

And now, behold, the Lamanites could not retreat
either way, neither on the north, nor on the south,
nor on the east, nor on the west, for they were sur-
rounded on every hand by the Nephites.

And thus had Coriantumr plunged the Lamanites
into the midst of the Nephites, insomuch that they
were in the power of the Nephites, and he himself
was slain, and the Lamanites did yield themselves
into the hands of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that Moronihah took posses-
sion of the city of Zarahemla again, and caused that
the Lamanites who had been taken prisoners should
depart out of the land in peace.

And thus ended the forty and first year of the reign
of the judges.

Helaman 2

- 1 En dit het gebeur in die twee en veertigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters, nadat Moroniha weer vrede gevestig het tussen die Nefiete en die Lamaniete, kyk daar was geeneen om die regterstoel te beklee nie; daarom het daar weer 'n twis begin onder die mense aangaande wie die regterstoel moes beklee.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat Helaman, wat die seun was van Helaman, aangestel is om die regterstoel te beklee, deur die stem van die volk.
- 3 Maar kyk, Kiskumen, wat Pahoran vermoor het, het 'n strik gestel om Helaman ook te vernietig; en hy is deur sy bende gesteun, wat 'n verbond gesluit het dat niemand van sy boosheid moes weet nie.
- 4 Want daar was ene Gadianton, wat uitermate bedrewe was in baie woorde, en ook in sy lis, om die geheime werk van moord en van roof voort te sit; daarom het hy die leier geword van die bende van Kiskumen.
- 5 Daarom het hy hulle gelei, en ook Kiskumen, sodat as hulle hom sou plaas op die regterstoel, hy aan diegene wat aan sy bende behoort het sou gun dat hulle geplaas moes word in mag en gesag onder die volk; daarom het Kiskumen gesoek om Helaman te vernietig.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat terwyl hy uitgegaan het na die regterstoel om Helaman te vernietig, kyk een van die diensknegte van Helaman, wat gedurende die nag uit was, en wat deur hom te vermom, 'n kennis verkry het van daardie planne wat deur hierdie bende gesmee is om Helaman te vernietig—
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat hy Kiskumen teëgekome het, en hy het aan hom 'n teken gegee; daarom het Kiskumen die doel van sy begeerte aan hom bekend gemaak, en hy het begeer dat hy hom moes lei na die regterstoel sodat hy Helaman mag vermoor.
- 8 En toe die dienskneg van Helaman die hele hart van Kiskumen geken het, en hoedat dit sy bedoeling was om te moor, en ook dat dit die bedoeling was van al diegene wat aan sy bende behoort het, om te moor, en te roof, en om mag te verkry (en dit was hul geheime plan, en hulle komplot), het die dienskneg van Helaman aan Kiskumen gesê: Laat ons uitgaan na die regterstoel.

Helaman 2

And it came to pass in the forty and second year of the reign of the judges, after Moronihah had established again peace between the Nephites and the Lamanites, behold there was no one to fill the judgment-seat; therefore there began to be a contention again among the people concerning who should fill the judgment-seat.

And it came to pass that Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, by the voice of the people.

But behold, Kishkumen, who had murdered Pahoran, did lay wait to destroy Helaman also; and he was upheld by his band, who had entered into a covenant that no one should know his wickedness.

For there was one Gadianton, who was exceedingly expert in many words, and also in his craft, to carry on the secret work of murder and of robbery; therefore he became the leader of the band of Kishkumen.

Therefore he did flatter them, and also Kishkumen, that if they would place him in the judgment-seat he would grant unto those who belonged to his band that they should be placed in power and authority among the people; therefore Kishkumen sought to destroy Helaman.

And it came to pass as he went forth towards the judgment-seat to destroy Helaman, behold one of the servants of Helaman, having been out by night, and having obtained, through disguise, a knowledge of those plans which had been laid by this band to destroy Helaman—

And it came to pass that he met Kishkumen, and he gave unto him a sign; therefore Kishkumen made known unto him the object of his desire, desiring that he would conduct him to the judgment-seat that he might murder Helaman.

And when the servant of Helaman had known all the heart of Kishkumen, and how that it was his object to murder, and also that it was the object of all those who belonged to his band to murder, and to rob, and to gain power, (and this was their secret plan, and their combination) the servant of Helaman said unto Kishkumen: Let us go forth unto the judgment-seat.

9 Nou dit het Kiskumen uitermate verbly, want hy het veronderstel dat hy sy bedoeling sou uitvoer; maar kyk, die dienskneg van Helaman, terwyl hulle uitgegaan het na die regterstoel, het Kiskumen gestek en wel in die hart, dat hy dood neergeval het sonder 'n geluid. En hy het gehardloop en Helaman al die dinge vertel wat hy gesien, en gehoor, en gedoen het.

10 En dit het gebeur dat Helaman mense uitgestuur het om hierdie bende van rowers, en geheime moordenaars te vang, sodat hulle tereggestel mag word volgens die wet.

11 Maar kyk, toe Gadianton uitvind dat Kiskumen nie terugekom het nie, het hy gevrees dat hy vernietig sou word; daarom het hy sy bende hom laat volg. En hulle het hul vlug uit die land geneem, langs 'n geheime weg, die wildernis in; en dus toe Helaman uitgestuur het om hulle gevange te neem, kon hulle nêrens gevind word nie.

12 En meer aangaande hierdie Gadianton sal hierna gesê word. En so het die twee en veertigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi geëindig.

13 En kyk, aan die einde van hierdie boek sal julle sien dat hierdie Gadianton die oorsaak was van die omverwerping, ja, byna die algehele vernietiging van die volk van Nefi.

14 Kyk, ek bedoel nie die einde van die boek van Helaman nie, maar ek bedoel die einde van die boek van Nefi, waaruit ek die hele kroniek geneem het wat ek geskryf het.

Now this did please Kishkumen exceedingly, for he did suppose that he should accomplish his design; but behold, the servant of Helaman, as they were going forth unto the judgment-seat, did stab Kishkumen even to the heart, that he fell dead without a groan. And he ran and told Helaman all the things which he had seen, and heard, and done.

And it came to pass that Helaman did send forth to take this band of robbers and secret murderers, that they might be executed according to the law.

But behold, when Gadianton had found that Kishkumen did not return he feared lest that he should be destroyed; therefore he caused that his band should follow him. And they took their flight out of the land, by a secret way, into the wilderness; and thus when Helaman sent forth to take them they could nowhere be found.

And more of this Gadianton shall be spoken hereafter. And thus ended the forty and second year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And behold, in the end of this book ye shall see that this Gadianton did prove the overthrow, yea, almost the entire destruction of the people of Nephi.

Behold I do not mean the end of the book of Helaman, but I mean the end of the book of Nephi, from which I have taken all the account which I have written.

Helaman 3

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur in die drie en veertigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters, was daar geen twis onder die volk van Nephi nie, behalwe vir 'n bietjie hoogmoed wat in die kerk was, wat 'n paar geringe twiste onder die volk laat plaasvind het, welke sake opgelos was teen die einde van die drie en veertigste jaar.
- 2 En daar was geen twis onder die volk in die vier en veertigste jaar nie; nóg was daar veel twis in die vyf en veertigste jaar.
- 3 En dit het gebeur in die ses en veertigste jaar, ja, daar was baie twis en baie onenighede; as gevolg waarvan daar 'n uitermate groot menigte was wat uit die land Zarahemla vertrek het, en uitgegaan het na die land noordwaarts om die land te beërwe.
- 4 En hulle het 'n uitermate groot afstand gereis, in soverre dat hulle by groot massas water gekom het en baie riviere.
- 5 Ja, en hulle het selfs versprei na alle dele van die land, na welke dele wat nie verlate en sonder bosse gelaat is nie, vanweë die baie inwoners wat voorheen die land beërwe het.
- 6 En nou was geen deel van die land verlate nie, behalwe vir die bosse; maar vanweë die grootheid van die vernietiging van die volk wat voorheen die land bewoon het, is dit verlate genoem.
- 7 En omdat daar maar min bosse op die aangesig van die land was, daarom het die mense wat uitgegaan het, uitermate vaardig geword in die bewerking van sement; daarom het hulle huise gebou van sement, waarin hulle gewoon het.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat hulle vermenigvuldig en versprei het, en uitgegaan het van die land suidwaarts na die land noordwaarts, en versprei het in soverre dat hulle begin het om die aangesig van die hele aarde te bedek, van die see suid tot die see noord, van die see wes tot die see oos.

Helaman 3

And now it came to pass in the forty and third year of the reign of the judges, there was no contention among the people of Nephi save it were a little pride which was in the church, which did cause some little dissensions among the people, which affairs were settled in the ending of the forty and third year.

And there was no contention among the people in the forty and fourth year; neither was there much contention in the forty and fifth year.

And it came to pass in the forty and sixth, yea, there was much contention and many dissensions; in the which there were an exceedingly great many who departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and went forth unto the land northward to inherit the land.

And they did travel to an exceedingly great distance, insomuch that they came to large bodies of water and many rivers.

Yea, and even they did spread forth into all parts of the land, into whatever parts it had not been rendered desolate and without timber, because of the many inhabitants who had before inherited the land.

And now no part of the land was desolate, save it were for timber; but because of the greatness of the destruction of the people who had before inhabited the land it was called desolate.

And there being but little timber upon the face of the land, nevertheless the people who went forth became exceedingly expert in the working of cement; therefore they did build houses of cement, in the which they did dwell.

And it came to pass that they did multiply and spread, and did go forth from the land southward to the land northward, and did spread insomuch that they began to cover the face of the whole earth, from the sea south to the sea north, from the sea west to the sea east.

9 En die mense wat in die land noordwaarts was, het in tente gewoon, en in huise van sement, en hulle het toegelaat dat watter boom ook sou opkom op die aangesig van die land, dat dit moes opgroeï, sodat hulle mettertyd hout mag hê om hulle huise te bou, ja, hulle stede, en hulle tempels, en hulle sinagoges, en hulle heiligdomme, en allerlei soorte geboue.

10 En dit het gebeur dat, aangesien hout uitermate skaars was in die land noordwaarts, het hulle baie uitgestuur deur middel van skeepvaart.

11 En so het hulle die mense in staat gestel in die land noordwaarts dat hulle baie stede mag bou, beide van hout en van sement.

12 En dit het gebeur dat daar baie van die volk van Ammon was, wat Lamaniete van geboorte was, wat ook uitgegaan het in hierdie land.

13 En nou is daar baie kronieke bygehou van die handeling van hierdie volk, deur baie van die volk, wat noukeurig is en baie uitgebreid, aangaande hulle.

14 Maar kyk, 'n honderdste gedeelte van die handeling van hierdie volk, ja, die kroniek van die Lamaniete en van die Nefiete, en hulle oorloë, en twiste, en onenighede, en hulle prediking, en hulle profesieë, en hulle skeepvaart en hulle bou van skepe, en hulle bou van tempels, en van sinagoges en hulle heiligdomme, en hulle regverdigheid, en hulle boosheid, en hulle moorde, en hulle rowery, en hulle geplunder, en alle wyses van gruwels en hoererye, kan nie bevat word in hierdie boek nie.

15 Maar kyk, daar is baie boeke en baie kronieke van elke soort, en hulle is hoofsaaklik bygehou deur die Nefiete.

16 En hulle is oorgelewer van een geslag na die ander deur die Nefiete, en wel totdat hulle verval het in oortreding en vermoor, geplunder, en gejag is, en voortgedrywe is, en gedood, en versprei is oor die aangesig van die aarde, en vermeng is met die Lamaniete, totdat hulle nie langer Nefiete genoem is nie, omdat hulle boos geword het, en wild, en wreed, ja, en wel totdat hulle Lamaniete geword het.

And the people who were in the land northward did dwell in tents, and in houses of cement, and they did suffer whatsoever tree should spring up upon the face of the land that it should grow up, that in time they might have timber to build their houses, yea, their cities, and their temples, and their synagogues, and their sanctuaries, and all manner of their buildings.

And it came to pass as timber was exceedingly scarce in the land northward, they did send forth much by the way of shipping.

And thus they did enable the people in the land northward that they might build many cities, both of wood and of cement.

And it came to pass that there were many of the people of Ammon, who were Lamanites by birth, did also go forth into this land.

And now there are many records kept of the proceedings of this people, by many of this people, which are particular and very large, concerning them.

But behold, a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, yea, the account of the Lamanites and of the Nephites, and their wars, and contentions, and dissensions, and their preaching, and their prophecies, and their shipping and their building of ships, and their building of temples, and of synagogues and their sanctuaries, and their righteousness, and their wickedness, and their murders, and their robberings, and their plundering, and all manner of abominations and whoredoms, cannot be contained in this work.

But behold, there are many books and many records of every kind, and they have been kept chiefly by the Nephites.

And they have been handed down from one generation to another by the Nephites, even until they have fallen into transgression and have been murdered, plundered, and hunted, and driven forth, and slain, and scattered upon the face of the earth, and mixed with the Lamanites until they are no more called the Nephites, becoming wicked, and wild, and ferocious, yea, even becoming Lamanites.

17 En nou keer ek weer terug na my kroniek; daarom, wat ek gespreek het, het plaasgevind nadat daar groot twiste, en oproerighede, en oorloë, en onenighede onder die volk van Nefi was.

18 Die ses en veertigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters het geëindig;

19 En dit het gebeur dat daar steeds groot twis was in die land, ja, selfs in die sewe en veertigste jaar, en ook in die agt en veertigste jaar.

20 Nogtans, Helaman het die regterstoel beklee met geregtigheid en billikheid; ja, hy het gepoog om die insettinge en die verordeninge en die gebooie van God te onderhou; en hy het dit gedoen wat reg was in die oë van God, voortdurend; en hy het in die weë gewandel van sy vader, in soverre dat hy voorspoedig was in die land.

21 En dit het gebeur dat hy twee seuns gehad het. Hy het aan die oudste die naam van Nefi gegee, en aan die jongste, die naam van Lehi. En hulle het begin om groot te word tot die Here.

22 En dit het gebeur dat die oorloë en twiste begin het om op te hou, in 'n geringe mate, onder die volk van die Nefiete, teen die einde van die agt en veertigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi.

23 En dit het gebeur in die nege en veertigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters, is daar voortdurende vrede gevestig in die land, behalwe die geheime organisasies wat Gadianton die rower gestig het in die meer gevestigde dele van die land, wat in daardie tyd nie bekend was aan diegene wat aan die hoof was van die regering nie; daarom is hulle nie uit die land vernietig nie.

24 En dit het gebeur dat in hierdie selfde jaar was daar uitermate groot voorspoed in die kerk, in soverre dat daar duisende was wat hulleself by die kerk aangesluit het en gedoop is tot bekering.

25 En so groot was die voorspoed van die kerk, en so baie die seëninge wat uitgestort is oor die volk, dat selfs die hoëpriesters en die leraars hulleself uitermate verbaas het.

26 En dit het gebeur dat die werk van die Here voortgegaan het tot die doop en vereniging tot die kerk van God, baie siele, ja, en wel tienduisende.

And now I return again to mine account; therefore, what I have spoken had passed after there had been great contentions, and disturbances, and wars, and dissensions, among the people of Nephi.

The forty and sixth year of the reign of the judges ended;

And it came to pass that there was still great contention in the land, yea, even in the forty and seventh year, and also in the forty and eighth year.

Nevertheless Helaman did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did observe to keep the statutes, and the judgments, and the commandments of God; and he did do that which was right in the sight of God continually; and he did walk after the ways of his father, insomuch that he did prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that he had two sons. He gave unto the eldest the name of Nephi, and unto the youngest, the name of Lehi. And they began to grow up unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that the wars and contentions began to cease, in a small degree, among the people of the Nephites, in the latter end of the forty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the forty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace established in the land, all save it were the secret combinations which Gadianton the robber had established in the more settled parts of the land, which at that time were not known unto those who were at the head of government; therefore they were not destroyed out of the land.

And it came to pass that in this same year there was exceedingly great prosperity in the church, insomuch that there were thousands who did join themselves unto the church and were baptized unto repentance.

And so great was the prosperity of the church, and so many the blessings which were poured out upon the people, that even the high priests and the teachers were themselves astonished beyond measure.

And it came to pass that the work of the Lord did prosper unto the baptizing and uniting to the church of God, many souls, yea, even tens of thousands.

- 27 Dus kan ons sien dat die Here barmhartig is teen-
oor almal wat, in die opregtheid van hulle harte, sy
heilige Naam aanroep.
- 28 Ja, so sien ons dat die poort van die hemel oop is
vir almal, en wel vir diegene wat sal glo in die Naam
van Jesus Christus, wat die Seun van God is.
- 29 Ja, ons sien dat wie ook al wil, die woord van God
mag aangryp wat lewend en kragtig is, wat al die slu-
heid en die strikke en liste van die duiwel uitmekaar
sal breek, en die man van Christus op 'n eng en smal
pad sal lei oor daardie ewigdurende kloof van ellen-
de wat berei is om die goddelose te verswelg—
- 30 En hulle siele bring, ja, hulle onsterflike siele, tot
die regterhand van God in die koninkryk van die he-
mel, om te gaan sit met Abraham, en Isak, en met
Jakob, en met al ons heilige vaders, om nie meer uit
te gaan nie.
- 31 En in hierdie jaar was daar voortdurende gejubel
in die land Zarahemla, en in al die streke rondom, en
wel in die hele land wat deur die Nefiete besit is.
- 32 En dit het gebeur dat daar vrede was en uitermate
groot vreugde vir die res van die nege en veertigste
jaar; ja, ook was daar voortdurende vrede en groot
vreugde in die vyftigste jaar van die heerskappy van
die regters.
- 33 En in die een en vyftigste jaar van die heerskappy
van die regters was daar ook vrede, behalwe vir die
hoogmoed wat begin het om die kerk binne te kom—
nie in die kerk van God nie, maar in die harte van die
mense wat voorgegee het om aan die kerk van God te
behoort.
- 34 En hulle is opgehef in hoogmoed, en wel tot die
vervolging van baie van hulle broers. Nou, dit was 'n
groot boosheid, wat die meer nederige deel van die
volk baie groot vervolgings laat ly het, en om te wor-
stel deur baie verdrukking.
- 35 Nogtans het hulle dikwels gevas en gebid, en het
sterker en sterker geword in hul nederigheid, en vas-
ter en vaster in die geloof in Christus, tot die vervul-
ling van hul siele met vreugde en vertroosting, ja, en
wel tot die reiniging en heiligmaking van hulle har-
te, welke heiligmaking kom omdat hulle hul harte
oorgegee het aan God.

Thus we may see that the Lord is merciful unto all
who will, in the sincerity of their hearts, call upon
his holy name.

Yea, thus we see that the gate of heaven is open
unto all, even to those who will believe on the name
of Jesus Christ, who is the Son of God.

Yea, we see that whosoever will may lay hold upon
the word of God, which is quick and powerful,
which shall divide asunder all the cunning and the
snares and the wiles of the devil, and lead the man of
Christ in a strait and narrow course across that ever-
lasting gulf of misery which is prepared to engulf the
wicked—

And land their souls, yea, their immortal souls, at
the right hand of God in the kingdom of heaven, to
sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and with Jacob,
and with all our holy fathers, to go no more out.

And in this year there was continual rejoicing in
the land of Zarahemla, and in all the regions round
about, even in all the land which was possessed by
the Nephites.

And it came to pass that there was peace and ex-
ceedingly great joy in the remainder of the forty and
ninth year; yea, and also there was continual peace
and great joy in the fiftieth year of the reign of the
judges.

And in the fifty and first year of the reign of the
judges there was peace also, save it were the pride
which began to enter into the church—not into the
church of God, but into the hearts of the people who
professed to belong to the church of God—

And they were lifted up in pride, even to the perse-
cution of many of their brethren. Now this was a
great evil, which did cause the more humble part of
the people to suffer great persecutions, and to wade
through much affliction.

Nevertheless they did fast and pray oft, and did
wax stronger and stronger in their humility, and
firmer and firmer in the faith of Christ, unto the fill-
ing their souls with joy and consolation, yea, even to
the purifying and the sanctification of their hearts,
which sanctification cometh because of their yield-
ing their hearts unto God.

36 En dit het gebeur dat die twee en vyftigste jaar ook in vrede geëindig het, behalwe vir die uitermate groot hoogmoed wat ingekom het in die harte van die mense; en dit was vanweë hulle uitermate groot rykdom en hul voorspoed in die land; en dit het oor hulle toegeneem van dag tot dag.

37 En dit het gebeur in die drie en vyftigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters, het Helaman gesterf, en sy oudste seun Nephi het begin heers in sy plek. En dit het gebeur dat hy die regterstoel beklee het met geregtigheid en billikheid; ja, hy het die gebooie van God onderhou, en het in die weë van sy vader gewandel.

And it came to pass that the fifty and second year ended in peace also, save it were the exceedingly great pride which had gotten into the hearts of the people; and it was because of their exceedingly great riches and their prosperity in the land; and it did grow upon them from day to day.

And it came to pass in the fifty and third year of the reign of the judges, Helaman died, and his eldest son Nephi began to reign in his stead. And it came to pass that he did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did keep the commandments of God, and did walk in the ways of his father.

Helaman 4

- 1 En dit het gebeur in die vier en vyftigste jaar was daar baie onenighede in die kerk, en daar was ook 'n twis onder die volk, in soverre dat daar veel bloedvergieting was.
- 2 En die rebelse deel is gedood en uit die land gedryf, en hulle het na die koning van die Lamaniete gegaan.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat hulle gepoog het om die Lamaniete op te stook tot oorlog teen die Nefiete; maar kyk, die Lamaniete was uitermate bevrees, in soverre dat hulle nie wou ag slaan op die woorde van daardie afvalliges nie.
- 4 Maar dit het gebeur in die ses en vyftigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters, was daar afvalliges wat oorgegaan het van die Nefiete na die Lamaniete; en hulle het met daardie ander geslaag om hulle op te stook tot toorn teen die Nefiete; en hulle het almal daardie jaar voorberei vir oorlog.
- 5 En in die sewe en vyftigste jaar het hulle afgekom teen die Nefiete in die stryd, en hulle het die werk van die dood begin; ja, in soverre dat in die agt en vyftigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters het hulle geslaag om besit te verkry van die land Zarahemla; ja, en ook al die lande, tot by die land wat naby die land Oorvloed was.
- 6 En die Nefiete en die leërs van Moroniha is gedryf tot in die land Oorvloed;
- 7 En daar het hulle hul versterk teen die Lamaniete, vanaf die weste see, tot by die ooste; wat 'n dagreis was vir 'n Nefiet, op die lyn wat hulle versterk het en hulle leërs opgestel het om hul noordelike land te verdedig.
- 8 En so het daardie afvalliges onder die Nefiete, met die hulp van 'n talryke leër van die Lamaniete, besit gekry van al die besittings van die Nefiete wat in die land suidwaarts was. En dit alles is gedoen in die agt en vyftigste jaar en nege en vyftigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters.
- 9 En dit het gebeur in die sestigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters, het Moroniha geslaag met sy leërs om baie dele te verkry van die land; ja, hulle het baie stede herower wat in die hande van die Lamaniete geval het.

Helaman 4

And it came to pass in the fifty and fourth year there were many dissensions in the church, and there was also a contention among the people, insomuch that there was much bloodshed.

And the rebellious part were slain and driven out of the land, and they did go unto the king of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did endeavor to stir up the Lamanites to war against the Nephites; but behold, the Lamanites were exceedingly afraid, insomuch that they would not hearken to the words of those dissenters.

But it came to pass in the fifty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, there were dissenters who went up from the Nephites unto the Lamanites; and they succeeded with those others in stirring them up to anger against the Nephites; and they were all that year preparing for war.

And in the fifty and seventh year they did come down against the Nephites to battle, and they did commence the work of death; yea, insomuch that in the fifty and eighth year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in obtaining possession of the land of Zarahemla; yea, and also all the lands, even unto the land which was near the land Bountiful.

And the Nephites and the armies of Moronihah were driven even into the land of Bountiful;

And there they did fortify against the Lamanites, from the west sea, even unto the east; it being a day's journey for a Nephite, on the line which they had fortified and stationed their armies to defend their north country.

And thus those dissenters of the Nephites, with the help of a numerous army of the Lamanites, had obtained all the possession of the Nephites which was in the land southward. And all this was done in the fifty and eighth and ninth years of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass in the sixtieth year of the reign of the judges, Moronihah did succeed with his armies in obtaining many parts of the land; yea, they regained many cities which had fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

- 10 En dit het gebeur in die een en sestigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters het hulle daarin geslaag om tot die helfte van al hulle besittings te herower.
- 11 Nou, hierdie groot verlies van die Nefiete, en die groot slagting wat onder hulle was, sou nie gebeur het as dit nie was vir hulle boosheid en hul gruwels wat onder hulle was nie; ja, en dit was ook onder diegene wat voorgegee het om aan die kerk van God te behoort.
- 12 En dit was vanweë die hoogmoed van hulle harte, vanweë hulle uitermate rykdomme, ja, dit was vanweë hul verdrukking van die armes, die weerhouding van hulle voedsel van die hongeriges, die weerhouding van hulle kleding van die naaktes, en omdat hulle hul nederige broers op die wang geslaan het, en 'n bespotting gemaak het van dit wat heilig was, omdat hulle die gees van profesie en openbaring geloën het, omdat hulle gemoor, geplunder, gelieg, gesteel, egbreuk gepleeg het, omdat hulle opgekom het in groot twiste, en weggedros het na die land Nefi, onder die Lamaniete—
- 13 En vanweë hierdie, hulle groot boosheid, en hulle grootpraterij oor hul eie krag, is hulle aan hul eie krag oorgelaat; daarom was hulle nie voorspoedig nie, maar is verdruk en geslaan, en uitgedrywe voor die Lamaniete, totdat hulle besit verloor het van byna al hul lande.
- 14 Maar kyk, Moroniha het baie dinge tot die volk gepreek vanweë hul ongeregtheid, en ook Nefi en Lehi, wat die seuns was van Helaman, het baie dinge tot die volk gepreek, ja, en het baie dinge tot hulle geprofeteer aangaande hulle ongeregthede, en wat oor hulle sou kom as hulle nie bekeer van hul sondes nie.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat hulle bekeer het, en in soverre as wat hulle bekeer het, het hulle begin om voorspoedig te wees.
- 16 Want toe Moroniha sien dat hulle bekeer het, het hy gewaag om hulle van plek na plek uit te lei, en van stad na stad, totdat hulle die een helfte van hul besittings en die een helfte van al hul lande herwin het.
- 17 En so het die een en sestigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters geëindig.

And it came to pass in the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in regaining even the half of all their possessions.

Now this great loss of the Nephites, and the great slaughter which was among them, would not have happened had it not been for their wickedness and their abomination which was among them; yea, and it was among those also who professed to belong to the church of God.

And it was because of the pride of their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, yea, it was because of their oppression to the poor, withholding their food from the hungry, withholding their clothing from the naked, and smiting their humble brethren upon the cheek, making a mock of that which was sacred, denying the spirit of prophecy and of revelation, murdering, plundering, lying, stealing, committing adultery, rising up in great contentions, and deserting away into the land of Nephi, among the Lamanites—

And because of this their great wickedness, and their boastings in their own strength, they were left in their own strength; therefore they did not prosper, but were afflicted and smitten, and driven before the Lamanites, until they had lost possession of almost all their lands.

But behold, Moronihah did preach many things unto the people because of their iniquity, and also Nephi and Lehi, who were the sons of Helaman, did preach many things unto the people, yea, and did prophesy many things unto them concerning their iniquities, and what should come unto them if they did not repent of their sins.

And it came to pass that they did repent, and inasmuch as they did repent they did begin to prosper.

For when Moronihah saw that they did repent he did venture to lead them forth from place to place, and from city to city, even until they had regained the one-half of their property and the one-half of all their lands.

And thus ended the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges.

18 En dit het gebeur in die twee en sestigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters dat Moroniha geen besittings meer kon terugwin van die Lamaniete nie.

19 Daarom het hulle hul bedoeling laat vaar om die res van hul lande terug te win, want so talryk was die Lamaniete dat dit onmoontlik geword het vir die Nefiete om meer mag te verkry oor hulle; daarom het Moroniha al sy leërs gebruik om daardie dele wat hy ingeneem het te behou.

20 En dit het gebeur, vanweë die grootheid van die getalle van die Lamaniete, was die Nefiete in groot vrees dat hulle oorweldig en vertrap en gedood en vernietig sou word.

21 Ja, hulle het begin om die profesieë van Alma te onthou, en ook die woorde van Mosiah; en hulle het gesien dat hulle 'n hardnekkige volk was, en dat hulle die gebooe van God as niks geag het nie;

22 En dat hulle die wette van Mosiah verander en vertrap het onder hul voete, of dit wat die Here hom beveel het om aan die volk te gee; en hulle het gesien dat hul wette ontaard het, en dat hulle 'n goddelose volk geword het, in soverre dat hulle boos was net soos die Lamaniete.

23 En vanweë hul ongeregtheid het die kerk begin om te kwyn; en hulle het begin om nie te glo in die gees van profesie en in die gees van openbaring nie; en die oordele van God het hulle in die gesig gestaar.

24 En hulle het gesien dat hulle swak geword het, net soos hul broers, die Lamaniete, en dat die Gees van die Here hulle nie langer bewaar het nie; ja, dit het onttrek van hulle, omdat die Gees van die Here nie woon in onheilige tempels nie—

25 Daarom het die Here opgehou om hulle te bewaar deur sy wonderbaarlike en ongeëwenaarde krag, want hulle het verval in 'n toestand van ongeloof en verskriklike boosheid; en hulle het gesien dat die Lamaniete uitermate talryker was as hulle, en tensy hulle sou vaskleef aan die Here hulle God, moet hulle onvermydelik vergaan.

26 Want kyk, hulle het gesien dat die krag van die Lamaniete net so groot was soos hulle krag, en wel man vir man. En so het hulle in hierdie groot oortreding verval; ja, so het hulle swak geword, vanweë hul oortreding oor 'n tydperk van nie baie jare nie.

And it came to pass in the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges, that Moronihah could obtain no more possessions over the Lamanites.

Therefore they did abandon their design to obtain the remainder of their lands, for so numerous were the Lamanites that it became impossible for the Nephites to obtain more power over them; therefore Moronihah did employ all his armies in maintaining those parts which he had taken.

And it came to pass, because of the greatness of the number of the Lamanites the Nephites were in great fear, lest they should be overpowered, and trodden down, and slain, and destroyed.

Yea, they began to remember the prophecies of Alma, and also the words of Mosiah; and they saw that they had been a stiffnecked people, and that they had set at naught the commandments of God;

And that they had altered and trampled under their feet the laws of Mosiah, or that which the Lord commanded him to give unto the people; and they saw that their laws had become corrupted, and that they had become a wicked people, insomuch that they were wicked even like unto the Lamanites.

And because of their iniquity the church had begun to dwindle; and they began to disbelieve in the spirit of prophecy and in the spirit of revelation; and the judgments of God did stare them in the face.

And they saw that they had become weak, like unto their brethren, the Lamanites, and that the Spirit of the Lord did no more preserve them; yea, it had withdrawn from them because the Spirit of the Lord doth not dwell in unholy temples—

Therefore the Lord did cease to preserve them by his miraculous and matchless power, for they had fallen into a state of unbelief and awful wickedness; and they saw that the Lamanites were exceedingly more numerous than they, and except they should cleave unto the Lord their God they must unavoidably perish.

For behold, they saw that the strength of the Lamanites was as great as their strength, even man for man. And thus had they fallen into this great transgression; yea, thus had they become weak, because of their transgression, in the space of not many years.

Helaman 5

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat in hierdie selfde jaar, kyk, Nephi het die regterstoel oorgegee aan 'n man wie se naam Cezoram was.
- 2 Want omdat hul wette en hul regerings gevestig is deur die stem van die volk, en hulle wat boosheid gekies het talryker was as hulle wat die goeie gekies het, daarom het hulle ryp geword vir vernietiging, want die wette het ontaard.
- 3 Ja, en dit was nie al nie; hulle was 'n hardnekkige volk, in soverre dat hulle nie regeer kon word deur die wet of geregtigheid nie, behalwe tot hul vernietiging.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat Nephi moeg geword het vanweë hul ongeregtigheid; en hy het die regterstoel oorgegee, en het dit op hom geneem om die woord van God te preek die res van sy dae, en sy broer Lehi ook, al die res van sy dae;
- 5 Want hulle het die woorde onthou wat hul vader Helaman met hulle gespreek het. En hierdie is die woorde wat hy gespreek het:
- 6 Kyk, my seuns, ek begeer dat julle moet onthou om die gebooie van God te onderhou; en ek wil hê dat julle aan die volk hierdie woorde sal verkondig. Kyk, ek het aan julle die name gegee van ons eerste ouers wat uitgekam het uit die land Jerusalem; en dit het ek gedoen sodat wanneer julle jul name onthou, julle hulle mag onthou; en wanneer julle hulle onthou, julle hul werke mag onthou; en wanneer julle hul werke onthou, julle mag weet dat dit gesê, en ook geskrywe is, dat hulle goed was.
- 7 Daarom, my seuns, wil ek hê dat julle dit moet doen wat goed is, sodat dit van julle gesê mag word, en ook geskrywe word, net soos dit gesê en ook van hulle geskrywe is.
- 8 En nou, my seuns, kyk, ek het ietwat meer om van julle te begeer, welke begeerte is dat julle nie hierdie dinge mag doen sodat julle mag roem nie, maar dat julle hierdie dinge mag doen om vir julleself 'n skat weg te lê in die hemel, ja, wat ewig is, en wat nie verwelk nie; ja, sodat julle daardie kosbare gawe mag hê van die ewige lewe, wat ons rede het om te veronderstel dat dit aan ons vaders gegee is.

Helaman 5

And it came to pass that in this same year, behold, Nephi delivered up the judgment-seat to a man whose name was Cezoram.

For as their laws and their governments were established by the voice of the people, and they who chose evil were more numerous than they who chose good, therefore they were ripening for destruction, for the laws had become corrupted.

Yea, and this was not all; they were a stiffnecked people, insomuch that they could not be governed by the law nor justice, save it were to their destruction.

And it came to pass that Nephi had become weary because of their iniquity; and he yielded up the judgment-seat, and took it upon him to preach the word of God all the remainder of his days, and his brother Lehi also, all the remainder of his days;

For they remembered the words which their father Helaman spake unto them. And these are the words which he spake:

Behold, my sons, I desire that ye should remember to keep the commandments of God; and I would that ye should declare unto the people these words. Behold, I have given unto you the names of our first parents who came out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I have done that when you remember your names ye may remember them; and when ye remember them ye may remember their works; and when ye remember their works ye may know how that it is said, and also written, that they were good.

Therefore, my sons, I would that ye should do that which is good, that it may be said of you, and also written, even as it has been said and written of them.

And now my sons, behold I have somewhat more to desire of you, which desire is, that ye may not do these things that ye may boast, but that ye may do these things to lay up for yourselves a treasure in heaven, yea, which is eternal, and which fadeth not away; yea, that ye may have that precious gift of eternal life, which we have reason to suppose hath been given to our fathers.

- 9 O onthou, onthou, my seuns, die woorde wat koning Benjamin met sy volk gespreek het; ja, onthou dat daar geen ander weg of wyse is waardeur die mens gered kan word nie, behalwe deur die versoerende bloed van Jesus Christus, wat sal kom; ja, onthou dat Hy kom om die wêreld te verlos.
- 10 En onthou ook die woorde wat Amulek met Zeesrom gespreek het, in die stad Ammonihah; want hy het aan hom gesê dat die Here sekerlik sal kom om sy volk te verlos, maar dat Hy nie sou kom om hulle te verlos in hul sondes nie, maar om hulle te verlos van hulle sondes.
- 11 En aan Hom is krag gegee van die Vader om hulle te verlos van hulle sondes vanweë bekering; daarom het Hy sy engele gestuur om die tydings van die voorwaardes van bekering te verkondig, wat mense tot die krag van die Verlosser, tot die heil van hulle siele bring.
- 12 En nou, my seuns, onthou, onthou dat dit op die rots van ons Verlosser is, wat Christus is, die Seun van God, dat julle jul fondament moet bou; sodat wanneer die duiwel sy magtige winde sal uitstuur, ja, sy pyle in die warrelwind, ja, wanneer al sy hael en sy magtige storm op julle sal neerslaan, sal dit geen mag oor julle hê om julle af te trek na die kloof van smart en eindelose wee nie, vanweë die rots waarop julle gebou is, wat 'n sekere fondament is, 'n fondament waarop, as mense daarop bou, hulle nie kan val nie.
- 13 En dit het gebeur dat hierdie die woorde was wat Helaman aan sy seuns geleer het; ja, hy het hulle baie dinge geleer wat nie geskrywe is nie, en ook baie dinge wat geskrywe is.
- 14 En hulle het sy woorde onthou; en daarom het hulle uitgegaan, en het die gebooië van God onderhou, om die woord van God te onderrig onder die hele volk van Nefi, beginnende by die stad Oorvloed;
- 15 En van toe af na die stad Gid; en van die stad Gid na die stad Mulek;
- 16 En wel van een stad na 'n ander, totdat hulle uitgegaan het onder al die volk van Nefi wat in die land suidwaarts was; en van daar in die land Zarahemla in, onder die Lamaniete.

O remember, remember, my sons, the words which king Benjamin spake unto his people; yea, remember that there is no other way nor means whereby man can be saved, only through the atoning blood of Jesus Christ, who shall come; yea, remember that he cometh to redeem the world.

And remember also the words which Amulek spake unto Zeezrom, in the city of Ammonihah; for he said unto him that the Lord surely should come to redeem his people, but that he should not come to redeem them in their sins, but to redeem them from their sins.

And he hath power given unto him from the Father to redeem them from their sins because of repentance; therefore he hath sent his angels to declare the tidings of the conditions of repentance, which bringeth unto the power of the Redeemer, unto the salvation of their souls.

And now, my sons, remember, remember that it is upon the rock of our Redeemer, who is Christ, the Son of God, that ye must build your foundation; that when the devil shall send forth his mighty winds, yea, his shafts in the whirlwind, yea, when all his hail and his mighty storm shall beat upon you, it shall have no power over you to drag you down to the gulf of misery and endless wo, because of the rock upon which ye are built, which is a sure foundation, a foundation whereon if men build they cannot fall.

And it came to pass that these were the words which Helaman taught to his sons; yea, he did teach them many things which are not written, and also many things which are written.

And they did remember his words; and therefore they went forth, keeping the commandments of God, to teach the word of God among all the people of Nephi, beginning at the city Bountiful;

And from thenceforth to the city of Gid; and from the city of Gid to the city of Mulek;

And even from one city to another, until they had gone forth among all the people of Nephi who were in the land southward; and from thence into the land of Zarahemla, among the Lamanites.

- 17 En dit het gebeur dat hulle gepreek het met groot mag, in soverre dat hulle baie van daardie afvalliges beskaam het wat oorgegaan het van die Nefiete, in soverre dat hulle voortgekom en hulle sondes bely het en gedoop is tot bekering, en onmiddellik teruggekeer het na die Nefiete om te poog om aan hulle die kwaad wat hulle gedoen het te vergoed.
- 18 En dit het gebeur dat Nephi en Lehi tot die Lamaniete met sulke groot krag en gesag gepreek het, want krag en gesag is aan hulle gegee sodat hulle mag spreek, en dit is ook aan hulle gegee wat hulle moes spreek—
- 19 Daarom het hulle tot die groot verbasing van die Lamaniete gespreek om hulle te oortuig, in soverre dat daar agt duisend van die Lamaniete wat in die land Zarahemla en omstreke was wat gedoop is tot bekering, en oortuig was van die boosheid van die oorleweringe van hul vaders.
- 20 En dit het gebeur dat Nephi en Lehi daarvandaan vertrek het om na die land Nephi te gaan.
- 21 En dit het gebeur dat hulle deur 'n leër van die Lamaniete geneem is en in die gevangenis gewerp is; ja, en wel in daardie selfde gevangenis waarin Ammon en sy broers gewerp is deur die diensknegte van Limhi.
- 22 En nadat hulle baie dae lank in die gevangenis gewerp is sonder voedsel, kyk, het hulle in die gevangenis ingegaan om hulle te neem sodat hulle hul mag dood.
- 23 En dit het gebeur dat Nephi en Lehi omring was soos met vuur, en wel tot so 'n mate dat hulle nie gedurf het om hulle hande op hulle te lê nie, uit vrees dat hulle verbrand sou word. Nogtans, Nephi en Lehi is nie verbrand nie; en hulle was asof hulle gestaan het in die midde van die vuur en is nie verbrand nie.
- 24 En toe hulle sien dat hulle omring is deur 'n kolom van vuur, en dat dit hulle nie brand nie, het hulle harte moed geskep.
- 25 Want hulle het gesien dat die Lamaniete nie gedurf het om hulle hande op hulle te lê nie; nóg het hulle gedurf om naby hulle te kom, maar het gestaan asof hulle stomgeslaan is van verbasing.

And it came to pass that they did preach with great power, insomuch that they did confound many of those dissenters who had gone over from the Nephites, insomuch that they came forth and did confess their sins and were baptized unto repentance, and immediately returned to the Nephites to endeavor to repair unto them the wrongs which they had done.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did preach unto the Lamanites with such great power and authority, for they had power and authority given unto them that they might speak, and they also had what they should speak given unto them—

Therefore they did speak unto the great astonishment of the Lamanites, to the convincing them, insomuch that there were eight thousand of the Lamanites who were in the land of Zarahemla and round about baptized unto repentance, and were convinced of the wickedness of the traditions of their fathers.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did proceed from thence to go to the land of Nephi.

And it came to pass that they were taken by an army of the Lamanites and cast into prison; yea, even in that same prison in which Ammon and his brethren were cast by the servants of Limhi.

And after they had been cast into prison many days without food, behold, they went forth into the prison to take them that they might slay them.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi were encircled about as if by fire, even insomuch that they durst not lay their hands upon them for fear lest they should be burned. Nevertheless, Nephi and Lehi were not burned; and they were as standing in the midst of fire and were not burned.

And when they saw that they were encircled about with a pillar of fire, and that it burned them not, their hearts did take courage.

For they saw that the Lamanites durst not lay their hands upon them; neither durst they come near unto them, but stood as if they were struck dumb with amazement.

- 26 En dit het gebeur dat Nephi en Lehi na vore getree en begin het om met hulle te spreek, en gesê het: Vrees nie, want kyk, dit is God wat aan julle hierdie wonderlike ding getoon het, waardeur aan julle getoon word dat julle nie julle hande op ons kan lê om ons te dood nie.
- 27 En kyk, toe hulle hierdie woorde gesê het, het die aarde uitermate geskud, en die mure van die gevangenis het geskud asof hulle op die punt was om in te tuimel na die aarde toe, maar kyk, hulle het nie geval nie. En kyk, hulle wat in die gevangenis was, was Lamaniete en Nefiete wat afvalliges was.
- 28 En dit het gebeur dat hulle oorskadu was deur 'n wolk van duisternis, en 'n vreeslike doodse angs het oor hulle gekom.
- 29 En dit het gebeur dat daar 'n stem gekom het, asof dit bó die wolk van duisternis was, wat gesê het: Bekeer julle, bekeer julle, en soek nie meer om my diensknegte te vernietig wat Ek na julle gestuur het om goeie tydings te verkondig nie.
- 30 En dit het gebeur toe hulle hierdie stem gehoor het, en gewaar het dat dit nie 'n stem van donder was nie, nóg was dit 'n stem van 'n oproerige geraas, maar, kyk, dit was 'n stil stem van volmaakte teerheid, asof dit 'n fluistering was, en dit het deurgedring tot die diepte van die siel—
- 31 En nieteenstaande die teerheid van die stem, kyk, die aarde het uitermate geskud, en die mure van die gevangenis het weer gebewe, asof dit na die aarde toe wou tuimel; en kyk, die wolk van duisternis wat hulle oorskadu het, het nie verdwyn nie—
- 32 En kyk, die stem het weer gekom, en gesê: Bekeer julle, bekeer julle, want die koninkryk van die hemel is op hande; en soek nie meer om my diensknegte te vernietig nie. En dit het gebeur dat die aarde weer geskud het, en die mure het gebewe.
- 33 En ook weer die derde keer het die stem gekom, en het wonderbaarlike woorde met hulle gespreek wat nie geuiter kan word deur die mens nie; en die mure het weer gebewe, en die aarde het geskud asof dit op die punt gestaan het om uitmekaar te breek.
- 34 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete nie kon vlug vanweë die wolk van duisternis wat hulle oorskadu het nie; ja, en hulle was ook onbeweeglik vanweë die vrees wat oor hulle gekom het.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did stand forth and began to speak unto them, saying: Fear not, for behold, it is God that has shown unto you this marvelous thing, in the which is shown unto you that ye cannot lay your hands on us to slay us.

And behold, when they had said these words, the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison did shake as if they were about to tumble to the earth; but behold, they did not fall. And behold, they that were in the prison were Lamanites and Nephites who were dissenters.

And it came to pass that they were overshadowed with a cloud of darkness, and an awful solemn fear came upon them.

And it came to pass that there came a voice as if it were above the cloud of darkness, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, and seek no more to destroy my servants whom I have sent unto you to declare good tidings.

And it came to pass when they heard this voice, and beheld that it was not a voice of thunder, neither was it a voice of a great tumultuous noise, but behold, it was a still voice of perfect mildness, as if it had been a whisper, and it did pierce even to the very soul—

And notwithstanding the mildness of the voice, behold the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison trembled again, as if it were about to tumble to the earth; and behold the cloud of darkness, which had overshadowed them, did not disperse—

And behold the voice came again, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand; and seek no more to destroy my servants. And it came to pass that the earth shook again, and the walls trembled.

And also again the third time the voice came, and did speak unto them marvelous words which cannot be uttered by man; and the walls did tremble again, and the earth shook as if it were about to divide asunder.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites could not flee because of the cloud of darkness which did overshadow them; yea, and also they were immovable because of the fear which did come upon them.

35 Nou was daar een onder hulle wat 'n Nefiet van geboorte was, wat eens behoort het aan die kerk van God, maar wat afvallig geword het van hulle.

36 En dit het gebeur dat hy hom omgedraai het, en kyk, hy het deur die wolk van duisternis die gesigte van Nepi en Lehi gesien; en kyk, hulle het uitermate gestraal, net soos die gesigte van engele. En hy het gesien dat hulle hul oë opgehef het na die hemel; en hulle was in die houding asof hulle gepraat het of hulle stemme opgehef het na een of ander wese wat hulle gewaar het.

37 En dit het gebeur dat hierdie man tot die menigte geroep het, dat hulle mag omdraai en kyk. En kyk, daar is mag gegee aan hulle dat hulle omgedraai en gekyk het; en hulle het die gesigte van Nepi en Lehi gesien.

38 En hulle het aan die man gesê: Kyk, wat beteken al hierdie dinge, en wie is dit met wie hierdie manne spreek?

39 Nou, die man se naam was Ammínadab. En Ammínadab het aan hulle gesê: Hulle spreek met die engele van God.

40 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete aan hom gesê het: Wat sal ons doen, sodat hierdie wolk van duisternis weggeneem mag word wat ons oorskadu?

41 En Ammínadab het aan hulle gesê: Julle moet bekeer, en roep tot die stem, totdat julle geloof in Christus sal hê, wat aan julle verkondig is deur Alma, en Amulek, en Zeesrom; en wanneer julle dit sal doen, sal die wolk van duisternis weggeneem word wat julle oorskadu.

42 En dit het gebeur dat hulle almal begin het om te roep tot die stem van Hom wat die aarde geskud het; ja, hulle het geroep, totdat die wolk van duisternis weggeneem is.

43 En dit het gebeur dat toe hulle rondkyk, en sien dat die wolk van duisternis weggeneem is wat hulle oorskadu het, kyk, hulle het gesien dat hulle rondom omring was, ja, elke siel, deur 'n kolom van vuur.

Now there was one among them who was a Nephite by birth, who had once belonged to the church of God but had dissented from them.

And it came to pass that he turned him about, and behold, he saw through the cloud of darkness the faces of Nephi and Lehi; and behold, they did shine exceedingly, even as the faces of angels. And he beheld that they did lift their eyes to heaven; and they were in the attitude as if talking or lifting their voices to some being whom they beheld.

And it came to pass that this man did cry unto the multitude, that they might turn and look. And behold, there was power given unto them that they did turn and look; and they did behold the faces of Nephi and Lehi.

And they said unto the man: Behold, what do all these things mean, and who is it with whom these men do converse?

Now the man's name was Aminadab. And Aminadab said unto them: They do converse with the angels of God.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites said unto him: What shall we do, that this cloud of darkness may be removed from overshadowing us?

And Aminadab said unto them: You must repent, and cry unto the voice, even until ye shall have faith in Christ, who was taught unto you by Alma, and Amulek, and Zeezrom; and when ye shall do this, the cloud of darkness shall be removed from overshadowing you.

And it came to pass that they all did begin to cry unto the voice of him who had shaken the earth; yea, they did cry even until the cloud of darkness was dispersed.

And it came to pass that when they cast their eyes about, and saw that the cloud of darkness was dispersed from overshadowing them, behold, they saw that they were encircled about, yea every soul, by a pillar of fire.

44 En Nephi en Lehi was in die middel van hulle; ja, hulle was rondom omring; ja, hulle was asof in die middel van 'n vlammeende vuur, tog het dit hulle nie geskaad nie, nóg het dit vatplek gekry aan die mure van die gevangenis; en hulle was vervul met daardie vreugde wat onuitspreeklik en vol heerlijkheid is.

45 En kyk, die Heilige Gees van God het neergedal van die hemel af, en het hulle harte binnegedring, en hulle was vervul asof met vuur, en hulle kon wonderbaarlike woorde spreek.

46 En dit het gebeur dat daar 'n stem tot hulle gekom het, ja, 'n aangename stem, asof dit 'n fluistering was, wat sê:

47 Vrede, vrede vir julle, vanweë julle geloof in my Welbeminde, wat vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld is.

48 En nou, toe hulle dit hoor, het hulle hul oë opgeslaan asof hulle wou sien vanwaar die stem kom; en kyk, hulle het gesien die hemele open; en engele het uit die hemel afgekom en het hulle gedien.

49 En daar was omtrent driehonderd siele wat hierdie dinge gesien en gehoor het; en hulle is beveel om uit te gaan en nie verwonderd te wees nie, nóg moes hulle twyfel.

50 En dit het gebeur dat hulle uitgegaan en die volk onderrig het, en in al die streke rondomheen al die dinge verkondig het wat hulle gehoor en gesien het, in soverre dat die grootste gedeelte van die Lamaniete oortuig was van hulle, vanweë die grootheid van die getuienisse wat hulle ontvang het.

51 En soveel as wat oortuig was, het hulle wapens van oorlog neergelê, en ook hul haat en die oorlewering van hulle vaders.

52 En dit het gebeur dat hulle die lande van hul besitting aan die Nefiete oorgegee het.

And Nephi and Lehi were in the midst of them; yea, they were encircled about; yea, they were as if in the midst of a flaming fire, yet it did harm them not, neither did it take hold upon the walls of the prison; and they were filled with that joy which is unspeakable and full of glory.

And behold, the Holy Spirit of God did come down from heaven, and did enter into their hearts, and they were filled as if with fire, and they could speak forth marvelous words.

And it came to pass that there came a voice unto them, yea, a pleasant voice, as if it were a whisper, saying:

Peace, peace be unto you, because of your faith in my Well Beloved, who was from the foundation of the world.

And now, when they heard this they cast up their eyes as if to behold from whence the voice came; and behold, they saw the heavens open; and angels came down out of heaven and ministered unto them.

And there were about three hundred souls who saw and heard these things; and they were bidden to go forth and marvel not, neither should they doubt.

And it came to pass that they did go forth, and did minister unto the people, declaring throughout all the regions round about all the things which they had heard and seen, insomuch that the more part of the Lamanites were convinced of them, because of the greatness of the evidences which they had received.

And as many as were convinced did lay down their weapons of war, and also their hatred and the tradition of their fathers.

And it came to pass that they did yield up unto the Nephites the lands of their possession.

Helaman 6

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat toe die twee en sestigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters geëindig het, het al hierdie dinge gebeur, en die Lamaniete het, die grootste gedeelte van hulle, 'n regverdige volk geword, in soverre dat hul regverdigheid dié oortref het van die Nefiete, vanweë hul standvastigheid en onwankelbaarheid in die geloof.
- 2 Want kyk, daar was baie van die Nefiete wat verhard en onbekeerlik geword het, en uiters boos, in soverre dat hulle die woord van God verwerp het en al die prediking en profeteringe wat onder hulle gekom het.
- 3 Nogtans, die volk van die kerk het groot vreugde gehad vanweë die bekering van die Lamaniete, ja, vanweë die kerk van God, wat onder hulle gestig was. En hulle het as deelgenote die een met die ander verkeer en hulle het hul verbly, die een met die ander, en het groot vreugde gehad.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat baie van die Lamaniete afgekóm het in die land Zarahemla, en het aan die volk van die Nefiete die wyse van hul bekering meege-deel, en het hulle vermaan tot geloof en bekering.
- 5 Ja, en baie het gepreek met uitermate groot krag en gesag, tot die afbring van baie van hulle in die dieptes van ootmoed, om die nederige volgelingen van God en die Lam te wees.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat baie van die Lamaniete na die land noordwaarts gegaan het; en ook Nephi en Lehi het na die land noordwaarts gegaan, om te preek vir die mense. En so het die drie en sestigste jaar geëindig.
- 7 En kyk, daar was vrede in die hele land, in soverre dat die Nefiete na watter deel van die land hulle ook wou, gegaan het, hetsy onder die Nefiete of die Lamaniete.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete ook gegaan het waar ook al hulle wou, hetsy dit onder die Lamaniete of onder die Nefiete was; en so het hulle vrye omgang gehad een met die ander, om te koop en te verkoop, en om wins te maak, volgens hulle begeerte.

Helaman 6

And it came to pass that when the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges had ended, all these things had happened and the Lamanites had become, the more part of them, a righteous people, inso-much that their righteousness did exceed that of the Nephites, because of their firmness and their steadiness in the faith.

For behold, there were many of the Nephites who had become hardened and impenitent and grossly wicked, inso-much that they did reject the word of God and all the preaching and prophesying which did come among them.

Nevertheless, the people of the church did have great joy because of the conversion of the Lamanites, yea, because of the church of God, which had been established among them. And they did fellowship one with another, and did rejoice one with another, and did have great joy.

And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did come down into the land of Zarahemla, and did declare unto the people of the Nephites the manner of their conversion, and did exhort them to faith and repentance.

Yea, and many did preach with exceedingly great power and authority, unto the bringing down many of them into the depths of humility, to be the humble followers of God and the Lamb.

And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did go into the land northward; and also Nephi and Lehi went into the land northward, to preach unto the people. And thus ended the sixty and third year.

And behold, there was peace in all the land, inso-much that the Nephites did go into whatsoever part of the land they would, whether among the Nephites or the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did also go whithersoever they would, whether it were among the Lamanites or among the Nephites; and thus they did have free intercourse one with another, to buy and to sell, and to get gain, according to their desire.

- 9 En dit het gebeur dat hulle uitermate ryk geword het, beide die Lamaniete en die Nefiete; en hulle het 'n uitermate oorfloed gehad van goud, en van silwer, en van allerlei soorte kosbare metale, beide in die land suid en in die land noord.
- 10 Nou, die land suid is genoem Lehi, en die land noord is genoem Mulek, wat genoem is na die seun van Sedekia; want die Here het Mulek gebring na die land noord, en Lehi na die land suid.
- 11 En kyk, daar was allerlei soorte goud in beide hierdie lande, en van silwer, en van kosbare erts van elke soort; en daar was ook kundige werkliede, wat allerlei soorte erts bewerk het, en dit geraffineer het; en dus het hulle ryk geword.
- 12 Hulle het graan gekweek in oorfloed, beide in die noorde en in die suide; en hulle het uitermate floreer, beide in die noorde en in die suide. En hulle het vermenigvuldig en uitermate sterk geword in die land. En hulle het baie kleinvee en grootvee geteel, ja, baie vetgemaakte vee.
- 13 Kyk, hulle vroue het gearbei en gespin, en het allerlei soorte materiaal gemaak, van fyngeveefde linnene en materiaal van elke soort, om hulle naaktheid te bedek. En so het die vier en sestigste jaar verbygegaan in vrede.
- 14 En in die vyf en sestigste jaar het hulle ook groot vreugde en vrede gehad, ja, baie prediking en baie profesieë aangaande dit wat moes kom. En so het die vyf en sestigste jaar verbygegaan.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat in die ses en sestigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters, kyk, is Cezoram vermoor deur 'n onbekende hand terwyl hy op die regterstoel gesit het. En dit het gebeur in dieselfde jaar dat sy seun, wat aangestel is deur die volk in sy plek, ook vermoor is. En so het die ses en sestigste jaar geëindig.
- 16 En aan die begin van die sewe en sestigste jaar het die volk begin om weer uitermate boos te word.

And it came to pass that they became exceedingly rich, both the Lamanites and the Nephites; and they did have an exceeding plenty of gold, and of silver, and of all manner of precious metals, both in the land south and in the land north.

Now the land south was called Lehi, and the land north was called Mulek, which was after the son of Zedekiah; for the Lord did bring Mulek into the land north, and Lehi into the land south.

And behold, there was all manner of gold in both these lands, and of silver, and of precious ore of every kind; and there were also curious workmen, who did work all kinds of ore and did refine it; and thus they did become rich.

They did raise grain in abundance, both in the north and in the south; and they did flourish exceedingly, both in the north and in the south. And they did multiply and wax exceedingly strong in the land. And they did raise many flocks and herds, yea, many fatlings.

Behold their women did toil and spin, and did make all manner of cloth, of fine-twined linen and cloth of every kind, to clothe their nakedness. And thus the sixty and fourth year did pass away in peace.

And in the sixty and fifth year they did also have great joy and peace, yea, much preaching and many prophecies concerning that which was to come. And thus passed away the sixty and fifth year.

And it came to pass that in the sixty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, behold, Cezoram was murdered by an unknown hand as he sat upon the judgment-seat. And it came to pass that in the same year, that his son, who had been appointed by the people in his stead, was also murdered. And thus ended the sixty and sixth year.

And in the commencement of the sixty and seventh year the people began to grow exceedingly wicked again.

17 Want kyk, die Here het hulle só lank geseën met die rykdomme van die wêreld dat hulle nie beweeg was tot toorn, tot oorloë, nóg tot bloedvergieting; daarom het hulle begin om hulle harte te rig op hul rykdomme; ja, hulle het begin soek om rykdom te bekom sodat hulle verhef mag wees die een bo die ander; daarom het hulle begin om geheime moorde te pleeg, en om te roof en te plunder, sodat hulle rykdom mag bekom.

18 En nou, kyk, daardie moordenaars en plunderaars was 'n bende wat gevorm is deur Kiskumen en Gadianton. En nou het dit gebeur dat daar baie was, selfs onder die Nefiete, van Gadianton se bende. Maar kyk, hulle was talryker onder die goddeloser gedeelte van die Lamaniete. En hulle is genoem Gadianton-rowers en moordenaars.

19 En dit was hulle wat die hoofregter Cezoram en sy seun vermoor het, terwyl hulle op die regterstoel was; en kyk, hulle is nie gevind nie.

20 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe die Lamaniete vind dat daar rowers onder hulle was, was hulle uitermate bedroef; en hulle het elke middel in hulle mag gebruik om hulle te vernietig vanaf die aangesig van die aarde.

21 Maar kyk, Satan het die harte opgestook van die grootste deel van die Nefiete, in soverre dat hulle verenig het met daardie bendes van rowers, en met hulle verbonde en hulle ede gesluit het, dat hulle mekaar sou beskerm en behoed in welke moeilike omstandighede hulle ook al geplaas sou word, sodat hulle nie sou ly vir hulle moorde, en hulle geplunder, en hulle diefstalle nie.

22 En dit het gebeur dat hulle hul tekens gehad het, ja, hulle geheime tekens en hulle geheime woorde; en dit sodat hulle 'n broer kon onderskei wat die verbond gesluit het, sodat watter boosheid sy broer sou doen, hy nie kwaad aangedoen sou word deur sy broer nie, nóg deur diegene wat aan sy bende behoort het, wat hierdie verbond gesluit het.

23 En so mag hulle moor, en plunder, en steel, en hoererye pleeg, en allerlei booshede, teenstrydig met die wette van hul land en ook die wette van hul God.

For behold, the Lord had blessed them so long with the riches of the world that they had not been stirred up to anger, to wars, nor to bloodshed; therefore they began to set their hearts upon their riches; yea, they began to seek to get gain that they might be lifted up one above another; therefore they began to commit secret murders, and to rob and to plunder, that they might get gain.

And now behold, those murderers and plunderers were a band who had been formed by Kishkumen and Gadianton. And now it had come to pass that there were many, even among the Nephites, of Gadianton's band. But behold, they were more numerous among the more wicked part of the Lamanites. And they were called Gadianton's robbers and murderers.

And it was they who did murder the chief judge Cezoram, and his son, while in the judgment-seat; and behold, they were not found.

And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that there were robbers among them they were exceedingly sorrowful; and they did use every means in their power to destroy them off the face of the earth.

But behold, Satan did stir up the hearts of the more part of the Nephites, insomuch that they did unite with those bands of robbers, and did enter into their covenants and their oaths, that they would protect and preserve one another in whatsoever difficult circumstances they should be placed, that they should not suffer for their murders, and their plunderings, and their stealings.

And it came to pass that they did have their signs, yea, their secret signs, and their secret words; and this that they might distinguish a brother who had entered into the covenant, that whatsoever wickedness his brother should do he should not be injured by his brother, nor by those who did belong to his band, who had taken this covenant.

And thus they might murder, and plunder, and steal, and commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness, contrary to the laws of their country and also the laws of their God.

- 24 En wie ook al van diegene wat behoort het aan hulle bende, aan die wêreld van hulle boosheid en hul gruwels sou onthul, sou verhoor word, nie volgens die wette van hulle land nie, maar volgens die wette van hulle boosheid, wat gegee is deur Gadianton en Kishkumen.
- 25 Nou kyk, dit is hierdie geheime ede en verbonde wat Alma sy seun beveel het nie die wêreld moes ingaan nie, uit vrees dat hulle 'n middel sou wees om die volk af te bring tot vernietiging.
- 26 Nou kyk, daardie geheime ede en verbonde het nie na Gadianton gekom uit die kronieke wat aan Helaman oorhandig was nie; maar kyk, hulle is in die hart van Gadianton geplaas deur daardie selfde wese wat ons eerste ouers verlei het om van die verbode vrug te eet—
- 27 Ja, daardie selfde wese wat saamgesweer het met Kain, dat as hy sy broer Abel sou vermoor, dit nie bekend sou wees aan die wêreld nie. En hy het saamgesweer met Kain en sy volgelinge van daardie tyd af vorentoe.
- 28 En ook, dit is daardie selfde wese wat dit in die harte van die volk geplaas het om 'n toring te bou hoog genoeg dat hulle by die hemel mag kom. En dit was daardie selfde wese wat die mense oorgehaal het wat van daardie toring gekom het na hierdie land; wat die werke versprei het van die duisternis en gruwels oor die hele aangesig van die land, totdat hy die volk afgetrek het tot 'n algehele vernietiging, en tot 'n ewigdurende hel.
- 29 Ja, dit is daardie selfde wese wat dit in die hart van Gadianton geplaas het om nog die werk van die duisternis voort te sit, en van geheime moord; en hy het dit voortgebring van die begin van die mens af tot hierdie tyd.
- 30 En kyk, dit is hy wat die oorsprong van alle sonde is. En kyk, hy sit sy werke van duisternis en geheime moord voort, en lewer hul sameswerings oor, en hul ede, en hul verbonde, en hul planne van vreeslike boosheid, van geslag tot geslag, tot so 'n mate dat hy 'n houvas kan kry op die harte van die kinders van mense.

And whosoever of those who belonged to their band should reveal unto the world of their wickedness and their abominations, should be tried, not according to the laws of their country, but according to the laws of their wickedness, which had been given by Gadianton and Kishkumen.

Now behold, it is these secret oaths and covenants which Alma commanded his son should not go forth unto the world, lest they should be a means of bringing down the people unto destruction.

Now behold, those secret oaths and covenants did not come forth unto Gadianton from the records which were delivered unto Helaman; but behold, they were put into the heart of Gadianton by that same being who did entice our first parents to partake of the forbidden fruit—

Yea, that same being who did plot with Cain, that if he would murder his brother Abel it should not be known unto the world. And he did plot with Cain and his followers from that time forth.

And also it is that same being who put it into the hearts of the people to build a tower sufficiently high that they might get to heaven. And it was that same being who led on the people who came from that tower into this land; who spread the works of darkness and abominations over all the face of the land, until he dragged the people down to an entire destruction, and to an everlasting hell.

Yea, it is that same being who put it into the heart of Gadianton to still carry on the work of darkness, and of secret murder; and he has brought it forth from the beginning of man even down to this time.

And behold, it is he who is the author of all sin. And behold, he doth carry on his works of darkness and secret murder, and doth hand down their plots, and their oaths, and their covenants, and their plans of awful wickedness, from generation to generation according as he can get hold upon the hearts of the children of men.

31 En nou, kyk, hy het 'n groot houvas gekry op die harte van die Nefiete; ja, in soverre dat hulle uitermate boos geword het; ja, die grootste deel van hulle het weggedraai uit die weg van regverdigheid, en het die gebooie van God onder hulle voete vertrap, en het na hulle eie weë gedraai, en het vir hulleself afgode opgebou van hulle goud en hulle silwer.

32 En dit het gebeur dat al hierdie ongeregthede oor hulle gekom het binne die tydperk van nie baie jare nie, in soverre dat die grootste deel daarvan oor hulle gekom het in die sewe en sestigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi.

33 En hulle het toegeneem in hulle ongeregthede ook in die agt en sestigste jaar, tot die groot verdriet en weeklag van die regverdiges.

34 En so sien ons dat die Nefiete begin het om te kwyn in ongeloof, en toeneem in boosheid en gruwels, terwyl die Lamaniete uitermate begin toeneem het in die kennis van hulle God; ja, hulle het begin om sy insettinge en sy gebooie te onderhou, en om te wandel in waarheid en opregtheid voor Hom.

35 En so sien ons dat die Gees van die Here begin het om te onttrek van die Nefiete, vanweë die boosheid en die hardheid van hulle harte.

36 En so sien ons dat die Here begin het om sy Gees uit te stort op die Lamaniete, vanweë hulle meegaandheid en gewilligheid om in sy woorde te glo.

37 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete die bende rowers van Gadianton gejag het; en hulle het die woord van God gepreek onder die goddeloser deel van hulle, in soverre dat hierdie bende rowers heeltemal vernietig was onder die Lamaniete.

38 En dit het gebeur aan die ander kant, dat die Nefiete hulle opgebou het en hulle ondersteun het, beginnende by die goddeloser deel van hulle, totdat hulle die hele land van die Nefiete oordek het, en die grootste deel van die regverdiges verlei het, totdat hulle hul verlaag het om te glo in hulle werke en deel te hê aan hulle buit, en aan te sluit by hulle in hulle geheime moorde en komplotte.

And now behold, he had got great hold upon the hearts of the Nephites; yea, insomuch that they had become exceedingly wicked; yea, the more part of them had turned out of the way of righteousness, and did trample under their feet the commandments of God, and did turn unto their own ways, and did build up unto themselves idols of their gold and their silver.

And it came to pass that all these iniquities did come unto them in the space of not many years, insomuch that a more part of it had come unto them in the sixty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And they did grow in their iniquities in the sixty and eighth year also, to the great sorrow and lamentation of the righteous.

And thus we see that the Nephites did begin to dwindle in unbelief, and grow in wickedness and abominations, while the Lamanites began to grow exceedingly in the knowledge of their God; yea, they did begin to keep his statutes and commandments, and to walk in truth and uprightness before him.

And thus we see that the Spirit of the Lord began to withdraw from the Nephites, because of the wickedness and the hardness of their hearts.

And thus we see that the Lord began to pour out his Spirit upon the Lamanites, because of their easiness and willingness to believe in his words.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did hunt the band of robbers of Gadianton; and they did preach the word of God among the more wicked part of them, insomuch that this band of robbers was utterly destroyed from among the Lamanites.

And it came to pass on the other hand, that the Nephites did build them up and support them, beginning at the more wicked part of them, until they had overspread all the land of the Nephites, and had seduced the more part of the righteous until they had come down to believe in their works and partake of their spoils, and to join with them in their secret murders and combinations.

39 En so het hulle die alleenbestuur van die regering verkry, in soverre dat hulle onder hul voete vertrap het en geslaan en verskeur het en hulle rûe gekeer het op die armes en die sagmoediges, en die nederige volgelinge van God.

40 En so sien ons dat hulle in 'n verskriklike toestand was, en ryp geword het vir 'n ewigdurende vernietiging.

41 En dit het gebeur dat die agt en sestigste jaar geëindig het van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nephi.

And thus they did obtain the sole management of the government, insomuch that they did trample under their feet and smite and rend and turn their backs upon the poor and the meek, and the humble followers of God.

And thus we see that they were in an awful state, and ripening for an everlasting destruction.

And it came to pass that thus ended the sixty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

DIE PROFESIE VAN NEFI, DIE SEUN VAN HELAMAN—God waarsku die volk van Nefi dat Hy hulle sal besoek in sy toorn, tot hulle algebele vernietiging, tensy hulle bekeer van hulle boosheid. God tref die volk van Nefi met pestilensie; hulle bekeer en keer tot Hom. Samuel, 'n Lamaniet, profeteer vir die Nefiete.

Helaman 7

- 1 Kyk, nou het dit gebeur in die nege en sestigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van die Nefiete, dat Nefi, die seun van Helaman, terugkeer het na die land Zarahemla van die land noordwaarts.
- 2 Want hy het uitgegaan onder die mense wat in die land noordwaarts was, en het die woord van God aan hulle gepreek, en het baie dinge aan hulle geprofeteer;
- 3 En hulle het al sy woorde verwerp, in soverre dat hy nie onder hulle kon bly nie, maar het weer terugkeer na die land van sy geboorte.
- 4 En toe hy die volk sien in 'n toestand van sulke vreeslike boosheid, en daardie Gadianton-rowers wat die regterstoele beset—wat onregmatig die mag en die gesag oor die land toegeëien het; en die gebooie van God opsy gelê het, en nie in die geringste regverdig was voor Hom nie; en geen geregtigheid gedoen het aan die kinders van mense nie;
- 5 En die regverdiges veroordeel vanweë hulle regverdigheid; en die skuldiges en die bose ongestraf laat gaan vanweë hulle geld; en verder om hulle ampte te behou aan die hoof van die regering, om te heers en te doen volgens hulle wil, sodat hulle voordeel kan verkry en die eer van die wêreld; en verder, sodat hulle soveel makliker egbreuk mag pleeg, en steel, en doodmaak, en doen volgens hulle eie wil—
- 6 Nou hierdie groot ongeregtigheid het oor die Nefiete gekom, in 'n tydperk van nie baie jare nie; en toe Nefi dit sien, was sy hart geswel van verdriet in sy bors; en hy het uitgeroep in die angs van sy siel:

THE PROPHECY OF NEPHI, THE SON OF HELAMAN—God threatens the people of Nephi that he will visit them in his anger, to their utter destruction except they repent of their wickedness. God smiteth the people of Nephi with pestilence; they repent and turn unto him. Samuel, a Lamanite, prophesies unto the Nephites.

Helaman 7

Behold, now it came to pass in the sixty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of the Nephites, that Nephi, the son of Helaman, returned to the land of Zarahemla from the land northward.

For he had been forth among the people who were in the land northward, and did preach the word of God unto them, and did prophesy many things unto them;

And they did reject all his words, insomuch that he could not stay among them, but returned again unto the land of his nativity.

And seeing the people in a state of such awful wickedness, and those Gadianton robbers filling the judgment-seats—having usurped the power and authority of the land; laying aside the commandments of God, and not in the least aright before him; doing no justice unto the children of men;

Condemning the righteous because of their righteousness; letting the guilty and the wicked go unpunished because of their money; and moreover to be held in office at the head of government, to rule and do according to their wills, that they might get gain and glory of the world, and, moreover, that they might the more easily commit adultery, and steal, and kill, and do according to their own wills—

Now this great iniquity had come upon the Nephites, in the space of not many years; and when Nephi saw it, his heart was swollen with sorrow within his breast; and he did exclaim in the agony of his soul:

- 7 O, dat ek my dae kon gehad het in die dae toe my vader Nefi eers uit die land Jerusalem gekom het, dat ek kon jubel saam met hom in die beloofde land; toe was sy volk maklik om geleer te word, standvastig om die gebooie van God te onderhou, en stadig om gelei te word om ongeregtheid te doen; en hulle was gou om ag te slaan op die woorde van die Here—
- 8 Ja, as my dae in daardie dae kon gewees het, dan sou my siel vreugde gehad het in die regverdigheid van my broers.
- 9 Maar kyk, ek is toegewys dat hierdie my dae is, en dat my siel gevul sal word met verdriet vanweë hierdie, die boosheid van my broers.
- 10 En kyk, nou het dit gebeur dat dit op 'n toring was, wat in die tuin van Nefi was, wat langs die hoofweg was wat gelei het na die hoofmark, wat in die stad Zarahemla was; daarom, Nefi het homself neergebui op die toring wat in sy tuin was, welke toring ook naby die tuinhek was waarlangs die hoofweg gelei het.
- 11 En dit het gebeur dat daar sekere manne was wat verbygegaan het en Nefi gesien het terwyl hy besig was om sy siel uit te stort tot God bo-op die toring; en hulle het gehardloop en die mense vertel wat hulle gesien het, en die mense het bymekaargekom in skares sodat hulle die oorsaak kon weet van so groot 'n rouklag oor die boosheid van die volk.
- 12 En nou, toe Nefi opstaan, het hy die skare mense gesien wat byengekom het.
- 13 En dit het gebeur dat hy sy mond geopen het en aan hulle gesê het: Kyk, waarom het julle juisself bymekaar gebring? Dat ek julle mag vertel van julle ongeregtighede?
- 14 Ja, omdat ek op my toring geklim het sodat ek my siel mag uitstort tot my God, vanweë die uitermate verdriet van my hart, wat vanweë julle ongeregtighede is!
- 15 En vanweë my rou en weeklag het julle juisself bymekaar gebring en verwonder julle jul; ja, en julle het groot rede om julle te verwonder, ja, julle behoort julle te verwonder omdat julle toegegee het dat die duiwel so 'n groot houvas op julle harte gekry het.

Oh, that I could have had my days in the days when my father Nephi first came out of the land of Jerusalem, that I could have joyed with him in the promised land; then were his people easy to be entreated, firm to keep the commandments of God, and slow to be led to do iniquity; and they were quick to hearken unto the words of the Lord—

Yea, if my days could have been in those days, then would my soul have had joy in the righteousness of my brethren.

But behold, I am consigned that these are my days, and that my soul shall be filled with sorrow because of this the wickedness of my brethren.

And behold, now it came to pass that it was upon a tower, which was in the garden of Nephi, which was by the highway which led to the chief market, which was in the city of Zarahemla; therefore, Nephi had bowed himself upon the tower which was in his garden, which tower was also near unto the garden gate by which led the highway.

And it came to pass that there were certain men passing by and saw Nephi as he was pouring out his soul unto God upon the tower; and they ran and told the people what they had seen, and the people came together in multitudes that they might know the cause of so great mourning for the wickedness of the people.

And now, when Nephi arose he beheld the multitudes of people who had gathered together.

And it came to pass that he opened his mouth and said unto them: Behold, why have ye gathered yourselves together? That I may tell you of your iniquities?

Yea, because I have got upon my tower that I might pour out my soul unto my God, because of the exceeding sorrow of my heart, which is because of your iniquities!

And because of my mourning and lamentation ye have gathered yourselves together, and do marvel; yea, and ye have great need to marvel; yea, ye ought to marvel because ye are given away that the devil has got so great hold upon your hearts.

- 16 Ja, hoe kon julle toegegee het aan die verleiding van hom wat soek om julle siele weg te werp, af na ewigdurende smart en eindelose ellende?
- 17 O, bekeer julle, bekeer julle! Hoekom wil julle sterwe? Keer julle, keer julle tot die Here julle God. Waarom het Hy julle verlaat?
- 18 Dit is omdat julle jul harte verhard het; ja, julle wil nie ag slaan op die stem van die goeie herder nie; ja, julle het Hom opgesweep tot toorn teen julle.
- 19 En kyk, in stede van om julle te versamel, tensy julle sal bekeer, kyk, Hy sal julle verstrooi hiervandaan sodat julle vleis sal word vir honde en wilde diere.
- 20 O, hoe kon julle jul God vergeet het in dieselfde dag dat Hy julle verlos het?
- 21 Maar kyk, dit is om gewin te verkry, om geprys te word deur mense, ja, en sodat julle goud en silwer mag verkry. En julle het jul harte gerig op die rykdom en ydele dinge van hierdie wêreld, waarvoor julle moor, en plunder, en steel, en valse getuienis spreek teen julle naaste, en allerlei ongeregtighede doen.
- 22 En om hierdie rede sal wee oor julle kom tensy julle sal bekeer. Want as julle nie sal bekeer nie, kyk, hierdie groot stad, en ook al daardie groot stede wat rondom is, wat in die land van ons besitting is, sal weggeneem word dat julle geen plek sal hê in hulle nie; want kyk, die Here sal nie krag aan julle gun nie, soos Hy tot nou toe gedoen het, om te staan teen julle vyande nie.
- 23 Want kyk, so sê die Here: Ek sal nie aan die goddelose van my krag toon, aan die een meer as aan die ander nie, behalwe aan diegene wat bekeer van hul sondes, en ag slaan op my woorde. Nou daarom, ek wil dat julle moet sien, my broers, dat dit beter sal wees vir die Lamaniete as vir julle tensy julle sal bekeer.
- 24 Want kyk, hulle is meer regverdig as julle, want hulle het nie gesondig teen daardie groot kennis wat julle ontvang het nie; daarom sal die Here barmhartig wees teenoor hulle; ja, Hy sal hulle dae verleng en hulle saad vermeerder, naamlik wanneer julle heeltemal vernietig sal word, tensy julle sal bekeer.

Yea, how could you have given way to the enticing of him who is seeking to hurl away your souls down to everlasting misery and endless wo?

O repent ye, repent ye! Why will ye die? Turn ye, turn ye unto the Lord your God. Why has he forsaken you?

It is because you have hardened your hearts; yea, ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd; yea, ye have provoked him to anger against you.

And behold, instead of gathering you, except ye will repent, behold, he shall scatter you forth that ye shall become meat for dogs and wild beasts.

O, how could you have forgotten your God in the very day that he has delivered you?

But behold, it is to get gain, to be praised of men, yea, and that ye might get gold and silver. And ye have set your hearts upon the riches and the vain things of this world, for the which ye do murder, and plunder, and steal, and bear false witness against your neighbor, and do all manner of iniquity.

And for this cause wo shall come unto you except ye shall repent. For if ye will not repent, behold, this great city, and also all those great cities which are round about, which are in the land of our possession, shall be taken away that ye shall have no place in them; for behold, the Lord will not grant unto you strength, as he has hitherto done, to withstand against your enemies.

For behold, thus saith the Lord: I will not show unto the wicked of my strength, to one more than the other, save it be unto those who repent of their sins, and hearken unto my words. Now therefore, I would that ye should behold, my brethren, that it shall be better for the Lamanites than for you except ye shall repent.

For behold, they are more righteous than you, for they have not sinned against that great knowledge which ye have received; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them; yea, he will lengthen out their days and increase their seed, even when thou shalt be utterly destroyed except thou shalt repent.

- 25 Ja, wee julle vanweë daardie groot gruwel wat onder julle gekom het; en julle het juisself daarmee verenselwig, ja, met daardie geheime bende wat gestig is deur Gadianton!
- 26 Ja, wee sal kom oor julle vanweë daardie hoogmoed wat julle toegelaat het om in julle harte te kom, wat julle verhef het bo dit wat goed is, vanweë julle uitermate groot rykdom!
- 27 Ja, wee julle vanweë julle boosheid en gruwels!
- 28 En tensy julle bekeer, sal julle vergaan; ja, selfs julle lande sal van julle geneem word, en julle sal vernietig word vanaf die aangesig van die aarde.
- 29 Kyk nou, ek sê nie dat hierdie dinge sal wees uit myself nie, want dit is nie uit myself dat ek hierdie dinge weet nie; maar kyk, ek weet dat hierdie dinge waar is omdat die Here God hulle aan my bekend gemaak het, daarom getuig ek dat hulle sal wees.

Yea, wo be unto you because of that great abomination which has come among you; and ye have united yourselves unto it, yea, to that secret band which was established by Gadianton!

Yea, wo shall come unto you because of that pride which ye have suffered to enter your hearts, which has lifted you up beyond that which is good because of your exceedingly great riches!

Yea, wo be unto you because of your wickedness and abominations!

And except ye repent ye shall perish; yea, even your lands shall be taken from you, and ye shall be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

Behold now, I do not say that these things shall be, of myself, because it is not of myself that I know these things; but behold, I know that these things are true because the Lord God has made them known unto me, therefore I testify that they shall be.

Helaman 8

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe Nefi hierdie woorde gespreek het, kyk, was daar manne wat regters was, wat ook behoort het aan die geheime bende van Gadianton, en hulle was vertoornd, en hulle het uitgeroep teen hom, en gesê vir die volk: Waarom gryp julle nie hierdie man en bring hom uit sodat hy veroordeel mag word volgens die misdaad wat hy gepleeg het nie?
- 2 Hoekom sien julle hierdie man, en hoor hoe hy uitvaar teen hierdie volk en teen ons wet?
- 3 Want kyk, Nefi het met hulle gespreek aangaande die verdorwenheid van hulle wet; ja, baie dinge het Nefi gespreek wat nie geskryf kan word nie; en niks het hy gespreek wat teenstrydig was met die gebooie van God nie.
- 4 En daardie regters was vertoornd op hom omdat hy duidelik met hulle gespreek het aangaande hulle geheime werke van duisternis; nogtans, hulle het dit nie gedurf om hul eie hande op hom te lê nie, want hulle het die volk gevrees dat hulle teen hulle sou uitroep.
- 5 Daarom het hulle geroep tot die volk, en gesê: Hoekom laat julle hierdie man toe om uit te vaar teen ons? Want kyk, hy veroordeel hierdie hele volk, en wel tot vernietiging. Ja, en ook dat hierdie ons groot stede van ons weggeneem sal word, dat ons geen plek sal hê in hulle nie.
- 6 En nou weet ons dat dit onmoontlik is, want kyk, ons is magtig, en ons stede groot, daarom kan ons vyande geen mag oor ons hê nie.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat hulle so die volk opgestook het tot toorn teen Nefi, en twiste onder hulle gewek het; want daar was sommiges wat uitgeroep het: Laat hierdie man staan, want hy is 'n goeie man, en daardie dinge wat hy sê sal sekerlik gebeur tensy ons bekeer;
- 8 Ja, kyk, al die oordele sal oor ons kom waarvan hy aan ons getuig het; want ons weet dat hy eerlik getuig het aan ons aangaande ons ongeregthede. En kyk, hulle is baie, en hy weet alle dinge wat met ons sal gebeur net soos hy ons ongeregthede ken;

Helaman 8

And now it came to pass that when Nephi had said these words, behold, there were men who were judges, who also belonged to the secret band of Gadianton, and they were angry, and they cried out against him, saying unto the people: Why do ye not seize upon this man and bring him forth, that he may be condemned according to the crime which he has done?

Why seest thou this man, and hearest him revile against this people and against our law?

For behold, Nephi had spoken unto them concerning the corruptness of their law; yea, many things did Nephi speak which cannot be written; and nothing did he speak which was contrary to the commandments of God.

And those judges were angry with him because he spake plainly unto them concerning their secret works of darkness; nevertheless, they durst not lay their own hands upon him, for they feared the people lest they should cry out against them.

Therefore they did cry unto the people, saying: Why do you suffer this man to revile against us? For behold he doth condemn all this people, even unto destruction; yea, and also that these our great cities shall be taken from us, that we shall have no place in them.

And now we know that this is impossible, for behold, we are powerful, and our cities great, therefore our enemies can have no power over us.

And it came to pass that thus they did stir up the people to anger against Nephi, and raised contentions among them; for there were some who did cry out: Let this man alone, for he is a good man, and those things which he saith will surely come to pass except we repent;

Yea, behold, all the judgments will come upon us which he has testified unto us; for we know that he has testified aright unto us concerning our iniquities. And behold they are many, and he knoweth as well all things which shall befall us as he knoweth of our iniquities;

- 9 Ja, en kyk, as hy nie 'n profeet was nie, kon hy nie getuig het aangaande daardie dinge nie.
- 10 En dit het gebeur dat daardie mense wat gesoek het om Nephi te vernietig, verplig was, vanweë hulle vrees, om nie hul hande op hom te lê nie; daarom het hy weer begin om met hulle te spreek, toe hy sien dat hy guns gevind het in die oë van sommiges, in soverre dat die res van hulle gevrees het.
- 11 Daarom was hy genoop om meer met hulle te spreek, en het gesê: Kyk, my broers, het julle nie gelees dat God aan een man mag gegee het, naamlik Moses, om op die waters van die Rooi See te slaan, en hulle het hiernatoe en daarnatoe verdeel, in soverre dat die Israeliete, wat ons vaders was, deurgekom het op droë grond, en die waters het gesluit oor die leërs van die Egiptenare en het hulle opgesluk?
- 12 En nou kyk, as God aan hierdie man sulke mag gegee het, dan waarom sou julle twis onder mekaar, en sê dat Hy aan my geen mag gegee het waardeur ek mag weet aangaande die oordele wat oor julle sal kom, tensy julle bekeer nie?
- 13 Maar kyk, julle loën nie alleen my woorde nie, maar julle loën ook al die woorde wat deur ons vaders gespreek is, en ook die woorde wat gespreek is deur hierdie man, Moses, aan wie sulke groot mag gegee is, ja, die woorde wat hy gespreek het aangaande die koms van die Messias.
- 14 Ja, het hy nie getuienis gelewer dat die Seun van God sou kom nie? En soos hy die koperslang opgehef het in die woestyn, net so sal Hy wat sal kom, opgehef word.
- 15 En soveel as wat daardie slang sou aanskou, sou lewe, net so, soveel as wat die Seun van God sou aanskou in geloof, omdat hulle 'n verslae gees het, mag lewe, en wel tot daardie lewe wat ewig is.
- 16 En nou, kyk, Moses het nie alleen getuig van hierdie dinge nie, maar ook al die heilige profete, van sy dae selfs tot die dae van Abraham.
- 17 Ja, en kyk, Abraham het gesien aangaande sy koms, en is vervul met vreugde en het hom verheug.

Yea, and behold, if he had not been a prophet he could not have testified concerning those things.

And it came to pass that those people who sought to destroy Nephi were compelled because of their fear, that they did not lay their hands on him; therefore he began again to speak unto them, seeing that he had gained favor in the eyes of some, insomuch that the remainder of them did fear.

Therefore he was constrained to speak more unto them saying: Behold, my brethren, have ye not read that God gave power unto one man, even Moses, to smite upon the waters of the Red Sea, and they parted hither and thither, insomuch that the Israelites, who were our fathers, came through upon dry ground, and the waters closed upon the armies of the Egyptians and swallowed them up?

And now behold, if God gave unto this man such power, then why should ye dispute among yourselves, and say that he hath given unto me no power whereby I may know concerning the judgments that shall come upon you except ye repent?

But, behold, ye not only deny my words, but ye also deny all the words which have been spoken by our fathers, and also the words which were spoken by this man, Moses, who had such great power given unto him, yea, the words which he hath spoken concerning the coming of the Messiah.

Yea, did he not bear record that the Son of God should come? And as he lifted up the brazen serpent in the wilderness, even so shall he be lifted up who should come.

And as many as should look upon that serpent should live, even so as many as should look upon the Son of God with faith, having a contrite spirit, might live, even unto that life which is eternal.

And now behold, Moses did not only testify of these things, but also all the holy prophets, from his days even to the days of Abraham.

Yea, and behold, Abraham saw of his coming, and was filled with gladness and did rejoice.

- 18 Ja, en kyk, ek sê vir julle, dat Abraham nie alleen geweet het van hierdie dinge nie, maar daar was baie voor die dae van Abraham wat geroep is volgens die orde van God; ja, naamlik volgens die orde van sy Seun; en dit sodat dit getoon sou word aan die volk, baie duisende jare voor sy koms, dat selfs verlossing sou kom vir hulle.
- 19 En nou wil ek hê dat julle moet weet, dat selfs vanaf die dae van Abraham daar baie profete was wat getuig het van hierdie dinge; ja, kyk, die profeet Zenos het moedig getuig; waarvoor hy gedood is.
- 20 En kyk, ook Zenok, en ook Esias, en ook Jesaja, en Jeremia (Jeremia wat daardie selfde profeet was wat getuig het van die vernietiging van Jerusalem), en nou weet ons dat Jerusalem vernietig is volgens die woorde van Jeremia. O dan, hoekom sal die Seun van God nie kom, volgens sy profesie nie?
- 21 En nou sal julle twyfel dat Jerusalem verwoes is? Sal julle sê dat die seuns van Sedekía nie gedood is nie, almal behalwe Mulek? Ja, en sien julle nie dat die saad van Sedekía met ons is nie, en hulle is verdrywe uit die land Jerusalem? Maar kyk, dit is nie al nie—
- 22 Ons vader Lehi is verdrywe uit Jerusalem omdat hy getuig het van hierdie dinge. Nephi het ook getuig van hierdie dinge, en ook byna al ons vaders, selfs tot hierdie tyd; ja, hulle het getuig van die koms van Christus en het vooruitgesien, en het gejubel in sy dag wat sal kom.
- 23 En kyk, Hy is God, en Hy is met hulle, en Hy het Homself geopenbaar aan hulle, dat hulle verlos is deur Hom; en hulle het Hom verheerlik, vanweë dit wat moes kom.
- 24 En nou, aangesien julle hierdie dinge weet, en hulle nie kan ontken nie behalwe as julle sal lieg, daarom, hierin het julle gesondig, want julle het al hierdie dinge verwerp, niesteenstaande so baie bewyse wat julle ontvang het; ja, en julle het wel alle dinge ontvang, beide dinge in die hemel, en alle dinge wat op die aarde is, as 'n getuienis dat hulle waar is.

Yea, and behold I say unto you, that Abraham not only knew of these things, but there were many before the days of Abraham who were called by the order of God; yea, even after the order of his Son; and this that it should be shown unto the people, a great many thousand years before his coming, that even redemption should come unto them.

And now I would that ye should know, that even since the days of Abraham there have been many prophets that have testified these things; yea, behold, the prophet Zenos did testify boldly; for the which he was slain.

And behold, also Zenock, and also Ezias, and also Isaiah, and Jeremiah, (Jeremiah being that same prophet who testified of the destruction of Jerusalem) and now we know that Jerusalem was destroyed according to the words of Jeremiah. O then why not the Son of God come, according to his prophecy?

And now will you dispute that Jerusalem was destroyed? Will ye say that the sons of Zedekiah were not slain, all except it were Mulek? Yea, and do ye not behold that the seed of Zedekiah are with us, and they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem? But behold, this is not all—

Our father Lehi was driven out of Jerusalem because he testified of these things. Nephi also testified of these things, and also almost all of our fathers, even down to this time; yea, they have testified of the coming of Christ, and have looked forward, and have rejoiced in his day which is to come.

And behold, he is God, and he is with them, and he did manifest himself unto them, that they were redeemed by him; and they gave unto him glory, because of that which is to come.

And now, seeing ye know these things and cannot deny them except ye shall lie, therefore in this ye have sinned, for ye have rejected all these things, notwithstanding so many evidences which ye have received; yea, even ye have received all things, both things in heaven, and all things which are in the earth, as a witness that they are true.

25 Maar kyk, julle het die waarheid verwerp, en gerebelleer teen julle heilige God, en selfs op hierdie tyd, in stede van om vir julleself skatte weg te lê in die hemel, waar niks verniel nie, en waar niks kan kom wat onrein is nie, hoop julle vir julleself toorn op vir die dag van oordeel.

26 Ja, selfs in hierdie tyd word julle ryp, vanweë julle moorde en julle ontug en boosheid, vir ewigdurende vernietiging; ja, en tensy julle bekeer, sal dit gou na julle kom.

27 Ja, kyk, dit is nou selfs by julle deure; ja, gaan julle in na die regterstoel, en soek; en kyk, jul regter is vermoor, en hy lê in sy bloed; en hy is vermoor deur sy broer, wat soek om op die regterstoel te sit.

28 En kyk, hulle albei behoort aan julle geheime bande, wie se aanstigter Gadianton is, en die bose een wat soek om die siele van mense te vernietig.

But behold, ye have rejected the truth, and rebelled against your holy God; and even at this time, instead of laying up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where nothing doth corrupt, and where nothing can come which is unclean, ye are heaping up for yourselves wrath against the day of judgment.

Yea, even at this time ye are ripening, because of your murders and your fornication and wickedness, for everlasting destruction; yea, and except ye repent it will come unto you soon.

Yea, behold it is now even at your doors; yea, go ye in unto the judgment-seat, and search; and behold, your judge is murdered, and he lieth in his blood; and he hath been murdered by his brother, who seeketh to sit in the judgment-seat.

And behold, they both belong to your secret band, whose author is Gadianton and the evil one who seeketh to destroy the souls of men.

Helaman 9

- 1 Kyk, nou het dit gebeur dat toe Nefi hierdie woorde gespreek het, het sekere manne wat onder hulle was, gehardloop na die regterstoel; ja, waarlik daar was vyf wat gegaan het, en hulle het onder mekaar gesê, terwyl hulle gaan:
- 2 Kyk, nou sal ons vir seker weet of hierdie man 'n profeet is en God hom gebied het om sulke wonderbaarlike dinge te profeteer aan ons. Kyk, ons glo nie hy het nie; ja, ons glo nie dat hy 'n profeet is nie; nogtans, as hierdie ding wat hy gesê het aangaande die hoofregter waar is, dat hy dood is, dan sal ons glo dat die ander woorde wat hy gespreek het waar is.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat hulle gehardloop het met al hulle mag, en ingekom het by die regterstoel; en kyk, die hoofregter het op die aarde geval, en het in sy bloed gelê.
- 4 En nou kyk, toe hulle dit sien, was hulle uitermate verbaas, in soverre dat hulle neergeval het op die aarde; want hulle het nie die woorde geglo wat Nefi gespreek het aangaande die hoofregter nie.
- 5 Maar nou, toe hulle sien, het hulle geglo, en vrees het oor hulle gekom dat al die oordele wat Nefi gespreek het sou kom oor die volk; daarom het hulle gebewe, en het op die aarde neergeval.
- 6 Nou, onmiddellik toe die regter vermoor is—en hy is gesteeek deur sy broer onder 'n dekmantel van geheimsinnigheid, en hy het gevlug, en die diensknegte het gehardloop en die volk vertel, en die geroep van moord laat opgaan onder hulle;
- 7 En kyk, die volk het hulleself bymekaargemaak by die plek van die regterstoel—en kyk, tot hulle verbasing het hulle daardie vyf manne gesien wat op die aarde neergeval het.
- 8 En nou kyk, die volk het niks geweet aangaande die menigte wat bymekaar gekom het by die tuin van Nefi nie; daarom het hulle onder mekaar gesê: Hierdie manne is hulle wat die regter vermoor het, en God het hulle getref dat hulle nie van ons kon wegvlug nie.

Helaman 9

Behold, now it came to pass that when Nephi had spoken these words, certain men who were among them ran to the judgment-seat; yea, even there were five who went, and they said among themselves, as they went:

Behold, now we will know of a surety whether this man be a prophet and God hath commanded him to prophesy such marvelous things unto us. Behold, we do not believe that he hath; yea, we do not believe that he is a prophet; nevertheless, if this thing which he has said concerning the chief judge be true, that he be dead, then will we believe that the other words which he has spoken are true.

And it came to pass that they ran in their might, and came in unto the judgment-seat; and behold, the chief judge had fallen to the earth, and did lie in his blood.

And now behold, when they saw this they were astonished exceedingly, insomuch that they fell to the earth; for they had not believed the words which Nephi had spoken concerning the chief judge.

But now, when they saw they believed, and fear came upon them lest all the judgments which Nephi had spoken should come upon the people; therefore they did quake, and had fallen to the earth.

Now, immediately when the judge had been murdered—he being stabbed by his brother by a garb of secrecy, and he fled, and the servants ran and told the people, raising the cry of murder among them;

And behold the people did gather themselves together unto the place of the judgment-seat—and behold, to their astonishment they saw those five men who had fallen to the earth.

And now behold, the people knew nothing concerning the multitude who had gathered together at the garden of Nephi; therefore they said among themselves: These men are they who have murdered the judge, and God has smitten them that they could not flee from us.

- 9 En dit het gebeur dat hulle hul gegryp het, en hulle vasgebind en in die gevangenis gewerp het. En daar is 'n aankondiging ver en wyd gestuur dat die regter gedood is, en dat die moordenaars geneem is en in die gevangenis gewerp is.
- 10 En dit het gebeur dat op die volgende dag het die volk hulleself bymekaargemaak om te rou en te vas, by die begrafnis van die groot hoofregter wat gedood is.
- 11 En so ook het daardie regters wat by die tuin van Nefi was, en sy woorde gehoor het, ook bymekaargekom by die begrafnis.
- 12 En dit het gebeur dat hulle navraag gedoen het onder die volk, en gesê het: Waar is die vyf wat gestuur is om navraag te doen aangaande die hoofregter of hy dood is? En hulle het geantwoord en gesê: Aangaande hierdie vyf wat julle sê julle gestuur het, weet ons nie; maar daar is vyf wat die moordenaars is, wat ons in die gevangenis gewerp het.
- 13 En dit het gebeur dat die regters begeer het dat hulle gebring moes word; en hulle is gebring, en kyk hulle was die vyf wat gestuur is; en kyk die regters het by hulle navraag gedoen om te weet aangaande die saak, en hulle het hulle alles vertel wat hulle gedoen het, en het gesê:
- 14 Ons het gehardloop en by die plek van die regterstoel gekom, en toe ons alle dinge sien net soos Nefi getuig het, was ons verbaas, in soverre dat ons op die aarde geval het; en toe ons herstel het van ons verbasings, kyk het hulle ons in die gevangenis gewerp.
- 15 Nou, aangaande die moord van hierdie man, ons weet nie wie dit gedoen het nie; en ons weet net dit, ons het gehardloop en het gekom net soos julle gevra het, en sien hy was dood, volgens die woorde van Nefi.
- 16 En nou het dit gebeur dat die regters die saak uitgelê het aan die volk, en uitgeroep het teen Nefi, en gesê het: Kyk, ons weet dat hierdie Nefi met iemand moes ooreengekom het om die regter dood te maak, en dan sou hy dit aan ons verklaar, dat hy ons mag bekeer tot sy geloof, dat hy homself mag verhef om 'n groot man te wees, gekies deur God, en 'n profeet.

And it came to pass that they laid hold on them, and bound them and cast them into prison. And there was a proclamation sent abroad that the judge was slain, and that the murderers had been taken and were cast into prison.

And it came to pass that on the morrow the people did assemble themselves together to mourn and to fast, at the burial of the great chief judge who had been slain.

And thus also those judges who were at the garden of Nephi, and heard his words, were also gathered together at the burial.

And it came to pass that they inquired among the people, saying: Where are the five who were sent to inquire concerning the chief judge whether he was dead? And they answered and said: Concerning this five whom ye say ye have sent, we know not; but there are five who are the murderers, whom we have cast into prison.

And it came to pass that the judges desired that they should be brought; and they were brought, and behold they were the five who were sent; and behold the judges inquired of them to know concerning the matter, and they told them all that they had done, saying:

We ran and came to the place of the judgment-seat, and when we saw all things even as Nephi had testified, we were astonished insomuch that we fell to the earth; and when we were recovered from our astonishment, behold they cast us into prison.

Now, as for the murder of this man, we know not who has done it; and only this much we know, we ran and came according as ye desired, and behold he was dead, according to the words of Nephi.

And now it came to pass that the judges did expound the matter unto the people, and did cry out against Nephi, saying: Behold, we know that this Nephi must have agreed with some one to slay the judge, and then he might declare it unto us, that he might convert us unto his faith, that he might raise himself to be a great man, chosen of God, and a prophet.

17 En nou kyk, ons sal hierdie man ontmasker, en hy sal sy skuld beken en aan ons bekend maak die ware moordenaar van hierdie regter.

18 En dit het gebeur dat die vyf vrygelaat is op die dag van die begrafnis. Nogtans, hulle het die regters bestraf betreffende die woorde wat hulle gespreek het teen Nepi en het met hulle getwis een vir een, in soverre dat hulle hul verwar het.

19 Nogtans, hulle het vir Nepi laat neem en vasbind en laat bring voor die skare, en hulle het begin om hom uit te vra op verskillende maniere sodat hulle hom mag verstrik, sodat hulle hom mag beskuldig tot die dood—

20 En aan hom gesê het: Jy is 'n medepligtige; wie is die man wat hierdie moord gepleeg het? Nou vertel ons, en beken jou skuld; en gesê: Kyk, hier is geld; en ook sal ons jou jou lewe gun as jy ons sal vertel, en die ooreenkoms sal beken wat jy gemaak het met hom.

21 Maar Nepi het aan hulle gesê: O julle dwase, julle onbesnedenes van hart, julle blinde, en julle hardnekkige volk, weet julle hoe lank die Here julle God julle sal toelaat dat julle sal aangaan op hierdie julle weg van sonde?

22 O, julle behoort te begin om uit te roep en treur, vanweë die groot vernietiging wat julle op hierdie tyd afwag, tensy julle sal bekeer.

23 Kyk, julle sê dat ek ooreengekom het met 'n man dat hy Seezoram moes vermoor, ons hoofregter. Maar kyk, ek sê vir julle, dat dit is omdat ek getuig het aan julle sodat julle mag weet aangaande hierdie ding; ja, naamlik as 'n getuienis vir julle, dat ek weet het van die boosheid en gruwels wat onder julle is.

24 En omdat ek dit gedoen het, sê julle dat ek ooreengekom het met 'n man dat hy hierdie ding moes doen; ja, omdat ek aan julle hierdie teken getoon het, is julle kwaad vir my, en soek om my lewe te vernietig.

25 En nou kyk, ek sal aan julle 'n ander teken toon, en sien of julle in hierdie ding sal soek om my te vernietig.

26 Kyk, ek sê vir julle: Gaan na die huis van Seantum, wat die broer is van Seezoram, en sê vir hom—

And now behold, we will detect this man, and he shall confess his fault and make known unto us the true murderer of this judge.

And it came to pass that the five were liberated on the day of the burial. Nevertheless, they did rebuke the judges in the words which they had spoken against Nephi, and did contend with them one by one, insomuch that they did confound them.

Nevertheless, they caused that Nephi should be taken and bound and brought before the multitude, and they began to question him in divers ways that they might cross him, that they might accuse him to death—

Saying unto him: Thou art confederate; who is this man that hath done this murder? Now tell us, and acknowledge thy fault; saying, Behold here is money; and also we will grant unto thee thy life if thou wilt tell us, and acknowledge the agreement which thou hast made with him.

But Nephi said unto them: O ye fools, ye uncircumcised of heart, ye blind, and ye stiffnecked people, do ye know how long the Lord your God will suffer you that ye shall go on in this your way of sin?

O ye ought to begin to howl and mourn, because of the great destruction which at this time doth await you, except ye shall repent.

Behold ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should murder Seezoram, our chief judge. But behold, I say unto you, that this is because I have testified unto you that ye might know concerning this thing; yea, even for a witness unto you, that I did know of the wickedness and abominations which are among you.

And because I have done this, ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should do this thing; yea, because I showed unto you this sign ye are angry with me, and seek to destroy my life.

And now behold, I will show unto you another sign, and see if ye will in this thing seek to destroy me.

Behold I say unto you: Go to the house of Seantum, who is the brother of Seezoram, and say unto him—

27 Het Nefi, die sogenaamde profeet, wat soveel boosheid profeteer aangaande hierdie volk, met jou ooreengekom, waarvolgens jy Seezoram vermoor het, wat jou broer is?

28 En kyk, hy sal aan julle sê: Nee.

29 En julle sal aan hom sê: Het jy jou broer vermoor?

30 En hy sal staan met vrees, en nie weet wat om te sê nie. En kyk, hy sal dit ontken aan julle, en hy sal maak asof hy verbaas is; nogtans, hy sal aan julle verklaar dat hy onskuldig is.

31 Maar kyk, julle sal hom ondersoek, en julle sal bloed vind aan die soom van sy mantel.

32 En wanneer julle dit gesien het, sal julle sê: Van waar kom hierdie bloed? Weet ons nie dat dit die bloed is van jou broer nie?

33 En dan sal hy bewe, en sal bleek lyk, net asof die dood oor hom gekom het.

34 En dan sal julle sê: Vanweë hierdie vrees en hierdie bleekheid wat oor jou gesig gekom het, kyk, weet ons dat jy skuldig is.

35 En dan sal groter vrees oor hom kom; en dan sal hy aan julle beken, en nie meer ontken dat hy hierdie moord gepleeg het nie.

36 En dan sal hy aan julle sê dat ek, Nefi, niks weet aangaande die saak nie behalwe as dit aan my gegee is deur die krag van God. En dan sal julle weet dat ek 'n eerlike man is, en dat ek na julle gestuur is van God.

37 En dit het gebeur dat hulle gegaan en gedoen het, net soos Nefi aan hulle gesê het. En kyk, die woorde wat hy gesê het was waar; want volgens die woorde het hy ontken; en ook volgens die woorde het hy beken.

38 En hy is gebring om te bewys dat hy self die werklike moordenaar was, in soverre dat die vyf vrygelaat is, en ook was Nefi.

39 En daar was sommige van die Nefiete wat geglo het in die woorde van Nefi, en daar was sommige ook, wat geglo het vanweë die getuienis van die vyf, want hulle het tot bekering gekom terwyl hulle in die gevangenis was.

40 En nou was daar sommige onder die volk wat gesê het dat Nefi 'n profeet was.

Has Nephi, the pretended prophet, who doth prophesy so much evil concerning this people, agreed with thee, in the which ye have murdered Seezoram, who is your brother?

And behold, he shall say unto you, Nay.

And ye shall say unto him: Have ye murdered your brother?

And he shall stand with fear, and wist not what to say. And behold, he shall deny unto you; and he shall make as if he were astonished; nevertheless, he shall declare unto you that he is innocent.

But behold, ye shall examine him, and ye shall find blood upon the skirts of his cloak.

And when ye have seen this, ye shall say: From whence cometh this blood? Do we not know that it is the blood of your brother?

And then shall he tremble, and shall look pale, even as if death had come upon him.

And then shall ye say: Because of this fear and this paleness which has come upon your face, behold, we know that thou art guilty.

And then shall greater fear come upon him; and then shall he confess unto you, and deny no more that he has done this murder.

And then shall he say unto you, that I, Nephi, know nothing concerning the matter save it were given unto me by the power of God. And then shall ye know that I am an honest man, and that I am sent unto you from God.

And it came to pass that they went and did, even according as Nephi had said unto them. And behold, the words which he had said were true; for according to the words he did deny; and also according to the words he did confess.

And he was brought to prove that he himself was the very murderer, insomuch that the five were set at liberty, and also was Nephi.

And there were some of the Nephites who believed on the words of Nephi; and there were some also, who believed because of the testimony of the five, for they had been converted while they were in prison.

And now there were some among the people, who said that Nephi was a prophet.

41 En daar was ander wat gesê het: Kyk, hy is 'n god, want tensy hy 'n god is, kon hy nie geweet het van alle dinge nie. Want kyk, hy het ons die gedagtes van ons harte vertel, en het ons ook dinge vertel; en hy het selfs die ware moordenaar van ons hoofregter tot ons kennis gebring.

And there were others who said: Behold, he is a god, for except he was a god he could not know of all things. For behold, he has told us the thoughts of our hearts, and also has told us things; and even he has brought unto our knowledge the true murderer of our chief judge.

Helaman 10

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat daar 'n verdeling ontstaan het onder die volk, in soverre dat hulle hiernatoe en daarnatoe verdeel het, en hulle weë gegaan het, en vir Nefi alleen gelaat het terwyl hy in hulle midde gestaan het.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat Nefi sy weg gegaan het na sy eie huis, peinsend oor die dinge wat die Here aan hom getoon het.
- 3 En dit het gebeur terwyl hy aldus gepeins het—was hy baie terneergedruk vanweë die boosheid van die volk van die Nefiete, hulle geheime werke van duisternis, en hulle moorde, en hulle geplunder, en allerlei ongeregtighede—dit het gebeur terwyl hy aldus in sy hart gepeins het, kyk, 'n stem het na hom gekom wat sê:
 - 4 Geseënd is jy, Nefi, weens daardie dinge wat jy gedoen het; want Ek het gesien hoe jy onvermoeid die woord verkondig het, wat Ek aan jou gegee het, aan hierdie volk. En jy het hulle nie gevrees nie, en het nie jou eie lewe gesoek nie, maar het my wil gesoek, en om my gebooi te onderhou.
 - 5 En nou, omdat jy dit gedoen het met sulke onvermoeidheid, kyk, Ek sal jou seën vir ewig; en Ek sal jou magtig maak in woord en daad, in geloof en in werke; ja, totdat alle dinge vir jou gedoen sal word volgens jou woord, want jy sal nie dít vra wat teenstrydig is met my wil nie.
 - 6 Kyk, jy is Nefi, en Ek is God. Kyk, Ek verklaar dit aan jou in die teenwoordigheid van my engele, dat jy mag sal hê oor hierdie volk, en die aarde sal tref met hongersnood, en met pestilensie, en vernietiging, volgens die boosheid van hierdie volk.
 - 7 Kyk, Ek gee aan jou mag, dat wat jy ook al op aarde sal verseël, verseël sal wees in die hemel; en wat jy ook al sal losmaak op aarde, sal losgemaak wees in die hemel; en dus sal jy mag hê onder hierdie volk.
 - 8 En dus, as jy aan hierdie tempel sal sê dat dit in twee geskeur word, sal dit gedoen word.
 - 9 En as jy sal sê vir hierdie berg, Wees jy neergewerp en word gelyk, sal dit gedoen word.

Helaman 10

And it came to pass that there arose a division among the people, insomuch that they divided hither and thither and went their ways, leaving Nephi alone, as he was standing in the midst of them.

And it came to pass that Nephi went his way towards his own house, pondering upon the things which the Lord had shown unto him.

And it came to pass as he was thus pondering—being much cast down because of the wickedness of the people of the Nephites, their secret works of darkness, and their murderings, and their plunderings, and all manner of iniquities—and it came to pass as he was thus pondering in his heart, behold, a voice came unto him saying:

Blessed art thou, Nephi, for those things which thou hast done; for I have beheld how thou hast with unweariness declared the word, which I have given unto thee, unto this people. And thou hast not feared them, and hast not sought thine own life, but hast sought my will, and to keep my commandments.

And now, because thou hast done this with such unweariness, behold, I will bless thee forever; and I will make thee mighty in word and in deed, in faith and in works; yea, even that all things shall be done unto thee according to thy word, for thou shalt not ask that which is contrary to my will.

Behold, thou art Nephi, and I am God. Behold, I declare it unto thee in the presence of mine angels, that ye shall have power over this people, and shall smite the earth with famine, and with pestilence, and destruction, according to the wickedness of this people.

Behold, I give unto you power, that whatsoever ye shall seal on earth shall be sealed in heaven; and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven; and thus shall ye have power among this people.

And thus, if ye shall say unto this temple it shall be rent in twain, it shall be done.

And if ye shall say unto this mountain, Be thou cast down and become smooth, it shall be done.

- 10 En kyk, as jy sal sê dat God hierdie volk sal tref, sal dit gebeur.
- 11 En nou kyk, Ek gebied jou, dat jy sal gaan en aan hierdie volk verkondig, dat so sê die Here God, wat die Almagtige is: Tensy julle bekeer, sal julle geslaan word, tot vernietiging toe.
- 12 En kyk, nou het dit gebeur dat toe die Here hierdie woorde met Nefi gespreek het, het hy gestaan, en nie na sy eie huis gegaan nie, maar het teruggekeer na die skares wat verstrooi was oor die aangesig van die land, en begin om die woord van die Here aan hulle te verkondig wat met hom gespreek is, aangaande hul vernietiging as hulle nie bekeer nie.
- 13 Nou kyk, niteenstaande daardie groot wonderwerk wat Nefi gedoen het deur hulle te vertel aangaande die dood van die hoofregter, het hulle hul harte verhard en nie ag geslaan op die woorde van die Here nie.
- 14 Daarom het Nefi aan hulle die woord van die Here verkondig en gesê: Tensy julle bekeer, so sê die Here, sal julle geslaan word tot vernietiging toe.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat toe Nefi aan hulle die woord verkondig het, kyk, het hulle steeds hulle harte verhard en wou nie ag slaan op sy woorde nie; daarom het hulle hom uitgeskel, en het gesoek om hulle hande op hom te lê sodat hulle hom in die gevangenis kon werp.
- 16 Maar kyk, die krag van God was met hom, en hulle kon hom nie neem om hom in die gevangenis te werp nie, want hy is deur die Gees geneem en weggevoer uit hulle midde uit.
- 17 En dit het gebeur dat hy só uitgegaan het in die Gees, van skare tot skare, en die woord van God verkondig het, totdat hy dit aan hulle almal verkondig het, of dit uitgestuur het onder die hele volk.
- 18 En dit het gebeur dat hulle nie wou ag slaan op sy woorde nie; en daar het begin om twiste te ontstaan, in soverre dat hulle verdeeld was teen hulleself en begin het om mekaar dood te maak met die swaard.
- 19 En so het die een en sewentigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi geëindig.

And behold, if ye shall say that God shall smite this people, it shall come to pass.

And now behold, I command you, that ye shall go and declare unto this people, that thus saith the Lord God, who is the Almighty: Except ye repent ye shall be smitten, even unto destruction.

And behold, now it came to pass that when the Lord had spoken these words unto Nephi, he did stop and did not go unto his own house, but did return unto the multitudes who were scattered about upon the face of the land, and began to declare unto them the word of the Lord which had been spoken unto him, concerning their destruction if they did not repent.

Now behold, notwithstanding that great miracle which Nephi had done in telling them concerning the death of the chief judge, they did harden their hearts and did not hearken unto the words of the Lord.

Therefore Nephi did declare unto them the word of the Lord, saying: Except ye repent, thus saith the Lord, ye shall be smitten even unto destruction.

And it came to pass that when Nephi had declared unto them the word, behold, they did still harden their hearts and would not hearken unto his words; therefore they did revile against him, and did seek to lay their hands upon him that they might cast him into prison.

But behold, the power of God was with him, and they could not take him to cast him into prison, for he was taken by the Spirit and conveyed away out of the midst of them.

And it came to pass that thus he did go forth in the Spirit, from multitude to multitude, declaring the word of God, even until he had declared it unto them all, or sent it forth among all the people.

And it came to pass that they would not hearken unto his words; and there began to be contentions, insomuch that they were divided against themselves and began to slay one another with the sword.

And thus ended the seventy and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Helaman 11

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur in die twee en sewentigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters dat die twiste toegeneem het, in soverre dat daar oorloë was dwarsdeur die hele land onder die hele volk van Nefi.
- 2 En dit was hierdie geheime bende van rowers wat hierdie werk van vernietiging en boosheid voortgesit het. En hierdie oorlog het daardie hele jaar geduur; en in die drie en sewentigste jaar het dit ook geduur.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat in dié jaar het Nefi tot die Here geroep, en gesê:
 - 4 O, Here, moenie toelaat dat hierdie volk vernietig sal word deur die swaard nie; maar o Here, laat daar eerder 'n hongersnood wees in die land, om hulle aan te spoor om die Here hulle God te onthou, en miskien sal hulle bekeer en tot U keer.
 - 5 En so is dit gedoen, volgens die woorde van Nefi. En daar was 'n groot hongersnood oor die land, onder die hele volk van Nefi. En so in die vier en sewentigste jaar het die hongersnood voortgeduur, en die werk van vernietiging deur die swaard het opgehou maar het hewig geword deur hongersnood.
 - 6 En hierdie werk van vernietiging het ook voortgeduur in die vyf en sewentigste jaar. Want die aarde is getref sodat dit droog was, en het nie graan opgelewer in die seisoen van graan nie; en die hele aarde is getref, naamlik onder die Lamaniëte sowel as onder die Nefiëte, sodat hulle getref is dat hulle vergaan het in duisende in die meer goddelose dele van die land.
 - 7 En dit het gebeur dat die volk gesien het dat hulle op die punt was om om te kom van hongersnood, en hulle het begin om die Here hulle God te onthou; en hulle het begin om die woorde van Nefi te onthou.
 - 8 En die volk het begin om te pleit by hulle hoofregters en hulle leiers, dat hulle aan Nefi moes sê: Kyk, ons weet dat jy 'n man van God is, en daarom, roep tot die Here ons God dat Hy hierdie hongersnood van ons afwend, sodat al die woorde wat jy gespreek het aangaande ons vernietiging nie vervul word nie.

Helaman 11

And now it came to pass in the seventy and second year of the reign of the judges that the contentions did increase, insomuch that there were wars throughout all the land among all the people of Nephi.

And it was this secret band of robbers who did carry on this work of destruction and wickedness. And this war did last all that year; and in the seventy and third year it did also last.

And it came to pass that in this year Nephi did cry unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, do not suffer that this people shall be destroyed by the sword; but O Lord, rather let there be a famine in the land, to stir them up in remembrance of the Lord their God, and perhaps they will repent and turn unto thee.

And so it was done, according to the words of Nephi. And there was a great famine upon the land, among all the people of Nephi. And thus in the seventy and fourth year the famine did continue, and the work of destruction did cease by the sword but became sore by famine.

And this work of destruction did also continue in the seventy and fifth year. For the earth was smitten that it was dry, and did not yield forth grain in the season of grain; and the whole earth was smitten, even among the Lamanites as well as among the Nephites, so that they were smitten that they did perish by thousands in the more wicked parts of the land.

And it came to pass that the people saw that they were about to perish by famine, and they began to remember the Lord their God; and they began to remember the words of Nephi.

And the people began to plead with their chief judges and their leaders, that they would say unto Nephi: Behold, we know that thou art a man of God, and therefore cry unto the Lord our God that he turn away from us this famine, lest all the words which thou hast spoken concerning our destruction be fulfilled.

- 9 En dit het gebeur dat die regters aan Nepi gesê het, volgens die woorde wat begeer was. En dit het gebeur dat toe Nepi sien dat die volk bekeer het, en hulle verootmoedig het in 'n roukleed, het hy weer tot die Here geroep, en gesê:
- 10 O Here, kyk, hierdie volk bekeer hulle; en hulle het die bende van Gadianton weggee van onder hulle in soverre dat hulle uitgewis is, en hulle het hul geheime planne verberg in die aarde.
- 11 Nou, o Here, vanweë hierdie hulle ootmoed, sal U u toorn afwend, en laat u toorn bevredig word in die vernietiging van daardie goddelose manne wat U alreeds vernietig het.
- 12 O Here, sal U u toorn afwend, ja, u vurige toorn, en gee dat hierdie hongersnood mag ophou in hierdie land.
- 13 O Here, sal U ag slaan op my, en gee dat dit gedoen mag word volgens my woorde, en reën stuur op die aangesig van die aarde, dat sy haar vrug mag voortbring, en haar graan in die seisoen van graan.
- 14 O Here, U het ag geslaan op my woorde toe ek gesê het, Laat daar 'n hongersnood wees, sodat die pestilensie van die swaard mag ophou; en ek weet dat U sal, ook op hierdie tyd, ag slaan op my woorde, want U het gesê dat: As hierdie volk bekeer, sal Ek hulle spaar.
- 15 Ja, o Here, en U sien dat hulle bekeer het, vanweë die hongersnood en die pestilensie en die vernietiging wat oor hulle gekom het.
- 16 En nou, o Here, sal U u toorn afwend, en weer probeer om te sien of hulle U nie sal dien nie? En indien wel, o Here, kan U hulle seën volgens u woorde wat U gesê het.
- 17 En dit het gebeur dat in die ses en sewentigste jaar het die Here sy toorn afgewend van die volk, en gee dat reën sou val op die aarde, in soverre dat dit haar vrugte voortgebring het in die seisoen van haar vrugte. En dit het gebeur dat dit haar graan voortgebring het in die seisoen van haar graan.

And it came to pass that the judges did say unto Nephi, according to the words which had been desired. And it came to pass that when Nephi saw that the people had repented and did humble themselves in sackcloth, he cried again unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, behold this people repenteth; and they have swept away the band of Gadianton from amongst them insomuch that they have become extinct, and they have concealed their secret plans in the earth.

Now, O Lord, because of this their humility wilt thou turn away thine anger, and let thine anger be appeased in the destruction of those wicked men whom thou hast already destroyed.

O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, yea, thy fierce anger, and cause that this famine may cease in this land.

O Lord, wilt thou hearken unto me, and cause that it may be done according to my words, and send forth rain upon the face of the earth, that she may bring forth her fruit, and her grain in the season of grain.

O Lord, thou didst hearken unto my words when I said, Let there be a famine, that the pestilence of the sword might cease; and I know that thou wilt, even at this time, hearken unto my words, for thou saidst that: If this people repent I will spare them.

Yea, O Lord, and thou seest that they have repented, because of the famine and the pestilence and destruction which has come unto them.

And now, O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, and try again if they will serve thee? And if so, O Lord, thou canst bless them according to thy words which thou hast said.

And it came to pass that in the seventy and sixth year the Lord did turn away his anger from the people, and caused that rain should fall upon the earth, insomuch that it did bring forth her fruit in the season of her fruit. And it came to pass that it did bring forth her grain in the season of her grain.

- 18 En kyk, die volk het gejubel en God verheerlik, en die hele aangesig van die land was gevul met vreugde; en hulle het nie meer gesoek om Nefi te vernietig nie, maar hulle het hom geag as 'n groot profeet, en 'n man van God, aan wie groot mag en gesag gegee is deur God.
- 19 En kyk, Lehi, sy broer, was hom nie in die geringste agter wat betref dinge met betrekking tot regverdigheid nie.
- 20 En so het dit gebeur dat die volk van Nefi weer begin het om voorspoedig te wees in die land, en het begin om hulle puinhope op te bou, en het begin om te vermenigvuldig en te versprei, totdat hulle die hele aangesig van die land bedek het, beide aan die noordkant en aan die suidekant, vanaf die see wes na die see oos.
- 21 En dit het gebeur dat die ses en sewentigste jaar in vrede geëindig het. En die sewe en sewentigste jaar het begin in vrede; en die kerk het oral oor die aangesig van die hele land versprei; en die grootste gedeelte van die volk, beide die Nefiete en die Lamaniete, het aan die kerk behoort; en hulle het uitermate groot vrede gehad in die land; en so het die sewe en sewentigste jaar geëindig.
- 22 En ook het hulle vrede gehad in die agt en sewentigste jaar, behalwe vir 'n paar twiste aangaande die punte van die leerstelling wat neergelê is deur die profete.
- 23 En in die nege en sewentigste jaar het daar begin om baie onenigheid te wees. Maar dit het gebeur dat Nefi en Lehi, en baie van hulle broers wat geweet het van die ware punte van die leerstelling, omdat hulle daagliks baie openbaringe gehad het, daarom het hulle vir die volk gepreek, in soverre dat hulle 'n einde gemaak het aan hulle onenigheid in daardie selfde jaar.

And behold, the people did rejoice and glorify God, and the whole face of the land was filled with rejoicing; and they did no more seek to destroy Nephi, but they did esteem him as a great prophet, and a man of God, having great power and authority given unto him from God.

And behold, Lehi, his brother, was not a whit behind him as to things pertaining to righteousness.

And thus it did come to pass that the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to build up their waste places, and began to multiply and spread, even until they did cover the whole face of the land, both on the northward and on the southward, from the sea west to the sea east.

And it came to pass that the seventy and sixth year did end in peace. And the seventy and seventh year began in peace; and the church did spread throughout the face of all the land; and the more part of the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, did belong to the church; and they did have exceedingly great peace in the land; and thus ended the seventy and seventh year.

And also they had peace in the seventy and eighth year, save it were a few contentions concerning the points of doctrine which had been laid down by the prophets.

And in the seventy and ninth year there began to be much strife. But it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi, and many of their brethren who knew concerning the true points of doctrine, having many revelations daily, therefore they did preach unto the people, insomuch that they did put an end to their strife in that same year.

- 24 En dit het gebeur dat in die tagtigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nephi, was daar 'n sekere aantal van die afvalliges van die volk van Nephi, wat enkele jare vantevore oorgegaan het na die Lamaniete, en op hulleself die naam van Lamaniete geneem het, en ook 'n sekere aantal wat werklike afstammelinge van die Lamaniete was, omdat hulle tot toorn opgestook is deur hulle, of deur daardie afvalliges, daarom het hulle begin met 'n oorlog teen hulle broers.
- 25 En hulle het moord en roof gepleeg; en daarna het hulle teruggetrek in die berge in, en in die wildernis en geheime plekke in, en hulle sou wegkruip sodat hulle nie ontdek kon word nie, en het daaglik 'n toevoeging tot hulle getalle ontvang, in soverre dat daar afvalliges was wat uitgegaan het na hulle.
- 26 En so, met die tyd, ja, selfs binne die tydperk van nie baie jare nie, het hulle 'n uitermate groot bende rowers geword; en hulle het al die geheime planne van Gadianton nagespoor; en so het hulle rowers van Gadianton geword.
- 27 Nou kyk, hierdie rowers het groot verwoesting aangerig, ja, en wel tot groot vernietiging onder die volk van Nephi, en ook onder die volk van die Lamaniete.
- 28 En dit het gebeur dat dit noodsaaklik was dat daar 'n einde gemaak moes word aan hierdie werk van vernietiging; daarom het hulle 'n leër van sterk manne die wildernis in gestuur, en op die berge, om hierdie bende rowers op te spoor, en om hulle te vernietig.
- 29 Maar kyk, dit het gebeur dat in daardie selfde jaar is hulle teruggedryf, tot in hulle eie lande. En so het die tagtigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nephi geëindig.
- 30 En dit het gebeur dat aan die begin van die een en tagtigste jaar het hulle weer uitgegaan teen hierdie bende van rowers, en het baie vernietig; en hulle is ook besoek met baie vernietiging.
- 31 En hulle was weer verplig om terug te keer uit die wildernis en uit die berge na hulle eie lande, vanweë die uitermate grootheid van die getalle van daardie rowers wat die berge en die wildernis vervuil het.

And it came to pass that in the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were a certain number of the dissenters from the people of Nephi, who had some years before gone over unto the Lamanites, and taken upon themselves the name of Lamanites, and also a certain number who were real descendants of the Lamanites, being stirred up to anger by them, or by those dissenters, therefore they commenced a war with their brethren.

And they did commit murder and plunder; and then they would retreat back into the mountains, and into the wilderness and secret places, hiding themselves that they could not be discovered, receiving daily an addition to their numbers, inasmuch as there were dissenters that went forth unto them.

And thus in time, yea, even in the space of not many years, they became an exceedingly great band of robbers; and they did search out all the secret plans of Gadianton; and thus they became robbers of Gadianton.

Now behold, these robbers did make great havoc, yea, even great destruction among the people of Nephi, and also among the people of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that it was expedient that there should be a stop put to this work of destruction; therefore they sent an army of strong men into the wilderness and upon the mountains to search out this band of robbers, and to destroy them.

But behold, it came to pass that in that same year they were driven back even into their own lands. And thus ended the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the eighty and first year they did go forth again against this band of robbers, and did destroy many; and they were also visited with much destruction.

And they were again obliged to return out of the wilderness and out of the mountains unto their own lands, because of the exceeding greatness of the numbers of those robbers who infested the mountains and the wilderness.

- 32 En dit het gebeur dat hierdie jaar so geëindig het. En die rowers het steeds toegeneem en sterk geword, in soverre dat hulle al die leërs van die Nefiete geminag het, en ook van die Lamaniete; en hulle het groot vrees laat kom oor die volk op die hele aangesig van die land.
- 33 Ja, want hulle het die baie dele van die land besoek, en het groot verwoesting aan hulle aangerig; ja, het baie doodgemaak, en het ander weggevoer in slawerny die wildernis in, ja, en meer in besonder hulle vroue en hulle kinders.
- 34 Nou, hierdie groot boosheid, wat oor die volk gekom het vanweë hulle ongeregtigheid, het hulle weer opgewek ter gedagtenis aan die Here hulle God.
- 35 En so het die een en tagtigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters geëindig.
- 36 En in die twee en tagtigste jaar het hulle weer begin om die Here hulle God te vergeet. En in die drie en tagtigste jaar het hulle begin om sterk toe te neem in ongeregtigheid. En in die vier en tagtigste jaar het hulle nie hulle weë verander nie.
- 37 En dit het gebeur in die vyf en tagtigste jaar het hulle sterker en sterker geword in hulle hoogmoed, en in hulle boosheid; en so het hulle weer ryp geword vir vernietiging.
- 38 En so het die vyf en tagtigste jaar geëindig.

And it came to pass that thus ended this year. And the robbers did still increase and wax strong, inasmuch that they did defy the whole armies of the Nephites, and also of the Lamanites; and they did cause great fear to come unto the people upon all the face of the land.

Yea, for they did visit many parts of the land, and did do great destruction unto them; yea, did kill many, and did carry away others captive into the wilderness, yea, and more especially their women and their children.

Now this great evil, which came unto the people because of their iniquity, did stir them up again in remembrance of the Lord their God.

And thus ended the eighty and first year of the reign of the judges.

And in the eighty and second year they began again to forget the Lord their God. And in the eighty and third year they began to wax strong in iniquity. And in the eighty and fourth year they did not mend their ways.

And it came to pass in the eighty and fifth year they did wax stronger and stronger in their pride, and in their wickedness; and thus they were ripening again for destruction.

And thus ended the eighty and fifth year.

Helaman 12

- 1 En so kan ons sien hoe vals, en ook die onbestendigheid van die harte van die kinders van mense is; ja, ons kan sien dat die Here in sy groot oneindige goedheid diegene seën en voorspoedig maak wat hulle vertrou in Hom stel.
- 2 Ja, en ons mag sien dat in dieselfde tyd wanneer Hy sy volk voorspoedig maak, ja, in die aanwas van hulle lande, hulle kleinvee en hulle grootvee, en in goud en in silwer, en in allerlei soorte kosbare dinge van elke tipe en vakmanskap; deur hulle lewens te spaar, en hulle te verlos uit die hande van hulle vyande; deur die harte te versag van hulle vyande dat hulle nie oorloë sou verklaar teen hulle nie; ja, en kortom, alle dinge doen vir die welvaart en geluk van sy volk; ja, dan is dit die tyd dat hulle hul harte verhard, en die Here hulle God vergeet, en die Heilige Een onder hulle voete vertrap—ja, en dit vanweë hulle gemak, en hulle uitermate groot voorspoed.
- 3 En so sien ons dat tensy die Here sy volk kasty met baie verdrukkinge, ja, tensy Hy hulle besoek met die dood en met verskrikking, en met hongersnood en met allerhande soorte pestilensie, sal hulle Hom nie onthou nie.
- 4 O hoe dwaas, en hoe ydel, en hoe boos, en duiwels, en hoe gou om ongeregtheid te doen, en hoe traag om goed te doen, is die kinders van mense; ja, hoe gou om ag te slaan op die woorde van die bose een, en om hulle harte te rig op die ydele dinge van die wêreld!
- 5 Ja, hoe gou om opgehef te word in hoogmoed; ja, hoe gou om te roem, en om allerlei soorte van dit te doen wat ongereg is; en hoe traag is hulle om die Here hulle God te onthou, en om die oor te neig na sy raadgewinge, ja, hoe traag om te wandel in wysheid se weë!
- 6 Kyk, hulle begeer nie dat die Here hulle God, wat hulle geskape het, moes regeer en heers oor hulle nie; nieteenstaande sy groot barmhartigheid en sy genade teenoor hulle, ag hulle sy raadgewinge as niks, en hulle wil nie hê dat Hy hulle gids moet wees nie.
- 7 O, hoe groot is die nietigheid van die kinders van mense; ja, hulle is selfs minder as die stof van die aarde.

Helaman 12

And thus we can behold how false, and also the unsteadiness of the hearts of the children of men; yea, we can see that the Lord in his great infinite goodness doth bless and prosper those who put their trust in him.

Yea, and we may see at the very time when he doth prosper his people, yea, in the increase of their fields, their flocks and their herds, and in gold, and in silver, and in all manner of precious things of every kind and art; sparing their lives, and delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; softening the hearts of their enemies that they should not declare wars against them; yea, and in fine, doing all things for the welfare and happiness of his people; yea, then is the time that they do harden their hearts, and do forget the Lord their God, and do trample under their feet the Holy One—yea, and this because of their ease, and their exceedingly great prosperity.

And thus we see that except the Lord doth chasten his people with many afflictions, yea, except he doth visit them with death and with terror, and with famine and with all manner of pestilence, they will not remember him.

O how foolish, and how vain, and how evil, and devilish, and how quick to do iniquity, and how slow to do good, are the children of men; yea, how quick to hearken unto the words of the evil one, and to set their hearts upon the vain things of the world!

Yea, how quick to be lifted up in pride; yea, how quick to boast, and do all manner of that which is iniquity; and how slow are they to remember the Lord their God, and to give ear unto his counsels, yea, how slow to walk in wisdom's paths!

Behold, they do not desire that the Lord their God, who hath created them, should rule and reign over them; notwithstanding his great goodness and his mercy towards them, they do set at naught his counsels, and they will not that he should be their guide.

O how great is the nothingness of the children of men; yea, even they are less than the dust of the earth.

8 Want kyk, die stof van die aarde beweeg hiernatoe en daarnatoe, tot die uitmekearskeiding op die bevel van ons groot en ewige God.

9 Ja, kyk, deur sy stem sidder en bewe die heuwels en die berge.

10 En deur die krag van sy stem word hulle opgebreek en word gelykgemaak, ja, net soos 'n vallei.

11 Ja, deur die krag van sy stem skud die hele aarde;

12 Ja, deur die krag van sy stem skud die fundamente selfs tot in die middel.

13 Ja, en as Hy aan die aarde sê—Beweeg—dan word dit beweeg.

14 Ja, as Hy aan die aarde sê—Jy sal teruggaan, dat dit die dag met baie ure verleng—word dit gedoen.

15 En dus, volgens sy woord, gaan die aarde terug, en dit lyk vir die mens asof die son stilstaan; ja, en kyk, dit is so; want sekerlik is dit die aarde wat beweeg en nie die son nie.

16 En kyk, ook, as Hy aan die waters van die groot diepte sê—Wees julle opgedroog—word dit gedoen.

17 Kyk, as Hy aan hierdie berg sê—Lig jou op, en kom oor en val op daardie stad, sodat dit begrawe word—kyk, dit is gedoen.

18 En kyk, as 'n man 'n skat wegsteek in die aarde, en die Here sal sê—Laat dit vervloek wees, vanweë die ongeregtigheid van hom wat dit weggesteek het—kyk, dit sal vervloek wees.

19 En as die Here sal sê—Wees jy vervloek, sodat geen mens jou sal vind van nou af en vir ewig nie—kyk, geen mens kry dit van nou af en vir ewig nie.

20 En kyk, as die Here aan 'n man sal sê—Vanweë jou ongeregtighede, sal jy vir ewig vervloek wees—sal dit gedoen wees.

21 En as die Here sal sê—Vanweë jou ongeregtighede sal jy afgesny word van my teenwoordigheid—sal Hy gee dat dit so sal wees.

22 En wee hom aan wie Hy dit sal sê, want dit sal aan hom wees wat ongeregtigheid sal doen, en hy kan nie gered word nie; daarom, om hierdie rede, dat die mens gered mag word, is bekering verkondig.

For behold, the dust of the earth moveth hither and thither, to the dividing asunder, at the command of our great and everlasting God.

Yea, behold at his voice do the hills and the mountains tremble and quake.

And by the power of his voice they are broken up, and become smooth, yea, even like unto a valley.

Yea, by the power of his voice doth the whole earth shake;

Yea, by the power of his voice, do the foundations rock, even to the very center.

Yea, and if he say unto the earth—Move—it is moved.

Yea, if he say unto the earth—Thou shalt go back, that it lengthen out the day for many hours—it is done;

And thus, according to his word the earth goeth back, and it appeareth unto man that the sun standeth still; yea, and behold, this is so; for surely it is the earth that moveth and not the sun.

And behold, also, if he say unto the waters of the great deep—Be thou dried up—it is done.

Behold, if he say unto this mountain—Be thou raised up, and come over and fall upon that city, that it be buried up—behold it is done.

And behold, if a man hide up a treasure in the earth, and the Lord shall say—Let it be accursed, because of the iniquity of him who hath hid it up—behold, it shall be accursed.

And if the Lord shall say—Be thou accursed, that no man shall find thee from this time henceforth and forever—behold, no man getteth it henceforth and forever.

And behold, if the Lord shall say unto a man—Because of thine iniquities, thou shalt be accursed forever—it shall be done.

And if the Lord shall say—Because of thine iniquities thou shalt be cut off from my presence—he will cause that it shall be so.

And wo unto him to whom he shall say this, for it shall be unto him that will do iniquity, and he cannot be saved; therefore, for this cause, that men might be saved, hath repentance been declared.

- 23 Daaron, salig is hulle wat sal bekeer en ag slaan op die stem van die Here hulle God; want hierdie is hulle wat gered sal word.
- 24 En mag God gee, in sy groot volheid, dat die mens gebring mag word tot bekering en goeie werke, sodat hulle herstel mag word tot genade op genade, volgens hulle werke.
- 25 En ek wil hê dat alle mense gered mag word. Maar ons lees dat op die groot en laaste dag daar sommiges is wat uitgewerp sal word, ja, wat uitgewerp sal word uit die teenwoordigheid van die Here;
- 26 Ja, wat toegewys sal word tot 'n toestand van eindelose ellende, om die woorde te vervul wat sê: Hulle wat goed gedoen het, sal die ewigdurende lewe hê; en hulle wat boosheid gedoen het, sal ewigdurende verdoemenis hê. En so is dit. Amen.

Therefore, blessed are they who will repent and hearken unto the voice of the Lord their God; for these are they that shall be saved.

And may God grant, in his great fulness, that men might be brought unto repentance and good works, that they might be restored unto grace for grace, according to their works.

And I would that all men might be saved. But we read that in the great and last day there are some who shall be cast out, yea, who shall be cast off from the presence of the Lord;

Yea, who shall be consigned to a state of endless misery, fulfilling the words which say: They that have done good shall have everlasting life; and they that have done evil shall have everlasting damnation. And thus it is. Amen.

Die profesie van Samuel, die Lamaniet, aan die Nefiete.

Helaman 13

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur in die ses en tagtigste jaar, het die Nefiete nog steeds in boosheid verkeer, ja, in groot boosheid, terwyl die Lamaniete noulettend was om die gebooe van God te onderhou, volgens die wet van Moses.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat in hierdie jaar was daar ene Samuel, 'n Lamaniet, wat ingekom het in die land Zarahemla, en begin het om te preek tot die volk. En dit het gebeur dat hy gepreek het, baie dae lank, bekering tot die volk, en hulle het hom uitgewerp, en hy was op die punt om terug te keer na sy eie land.
- 3 Maar kyk, die stem van die Here het tot hom gekom, dat hy weer moes terugkeer, en tot die volk profeteer watter dinge ook al in sy hart sou kom.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat hulle nie wou toelaat dat hy die stad moes binnekom nie; daarom het hy gegaan en op die muur daarvan geklim, en sy hand uitgestrek en uitgeroep met 'n luide stem, en tot die volk geprofeteer watter dinge ook al die Here in sy hart geplaas het.
- 5 En hy het aan hulle gesê: Kyk, ek, Samuel, 'n Lamaniet, spreek die woorde van die Here wat Hy in my hart plaas; en kyk, Hy het dit in my hart geplaas om aan hierdie volk te sê dat die swaard van geregtigheid oor hierdie volk hang; en vierhonderd jaar sal nie verbygaan alvorens die swaard van geregtigheid op hierdie volk val nie.
- 6 Ja, swaar vernietiging wag op hierdie volk, en dit kom sekerlik oor hierdie volk, en niks kan hierdie volk red nie tensy dit bekering en geloof in die Here Jesus Christus is, wat sekerlik in die wêreld sal kom, en baie dinge sal ly en doodgemaak sal word vir sy volk.
- 7 En kyk, 'n engel van die Here het dit aan my verkondig, en hy het blye tydings vir my siel gebring. En kyk, ek is na julle gestuur om dit ook aan julle te verkondig, sodat julle blye tydings mag hê; maar kyk, julle wou my nie ontvang nie.

The prophecy of Samuel, the Lamanite, to the Nephites.

Helaman 13

And now it came to pass in the eighty and sixth year, the Nephites did still remain in wickedness, yea, in great wickedness, while the Lamanites did observe strictly to keep the commandments of God, according to the law of Moses.

And it came to pass that in this year there was one Samuel, a Lamanite, came into the land of Zarahemla, and began to preach unto the people. And it came to pass that he did preach, many days, repentance unto the people, and they did cast him out, and he was about to return to his own land.

But behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, that he should return again, and prophesy unto the people whatsoever things should come into his heart.

And it came to pass that they would not suffer that he should enter into the city; therefore he went and got upon the wall thereof, and stretched forth his hand and cried with a loud voice, and prophesied unto the people whatsoever things the Lord put into his heart.

And he said unto them: Behold, I, Samuel, a Lamanite, do speak the words of the Lord which he doth put into my heart; and behold he hath put it into my heart to say unto this people that the sword of justice hangeth over this people; and four hundred years pass not away save the sword of justice falleth upon this people.

Yea, heavy destruction awaiteth this people, and it surely cometh unto this people, and nothing can save this people save it be repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ, who surely shall come into the world, and shall suffer many things and shall be slain for his people.

And behold, an angel of the Lord hath declared it unto me, and he did bring glad tidings to my soul. And behold, I was sent unto you to declare it unto you also, that ye might have glad tidings; but behold ye would not receive me.

- 8 Daaron, so sê die Here: Vanweë die hardheid van harte van die volk van die Nefiete, tensy hulle bekeer, sal Ek my woord wegneem van hulle, en Ek sal my Gees onttrek van hulle, en Ek sal hulle nie langer verdra nie, en Ek sal die harte van hulle broers teen hulle keer.
- 9 En vierhonderd jaar sal nie verbygaan voordat Ek sal veroorsaak dat hulle getref word nie; ja, Ek sal hulle met die swaard en met hongersnood en met pestilensie besoek.
- 10 Ja, Ek sal hulle besoek in my vurige toorn, en daar sal diegene wees van die vierde geslag wat sal lewe van julle vyande, om julle algehele uitwissing te aanskou; en dit sal sekerlik kom tensy julle bekeer, sê die Here; en diegene van die vierde geslag sal julle vernietiging veroorsaak.
- 11 Maar as julle sal bekeer en tot die Here julle God terugkeer, sal Ek my toorn afwend, sê die Here; ja, so sê die Here, geseënd is hulle wat sal bekeer en na My keer, maar wee hom wat nie bekeer nie.
- 12 Ja, wee hierdie groot stad Zarahemla; want kyk, dit is vanweë diegene wat regverdig is dat dit gered word, ja, wee hierdie groot stad, want ek merk, sê die Here, dat daar baie is, ja, tot die grootste gedeelte van hierdie groot stad, wat hulle harte sal verhard teen my, sê die Here.
- 13 Maar geseënd is hulle wat sal bekeer, want hulle sal Ek spaar. Maar kyk, as dit nie was vir die regverdiges wat in hierdie groot stad is nie, kyk, sou Ek vuur uit die hemel laat kom en dit verwoes.
- 14 Maar kyk, dit is vir die regverdiges se ontwil dat dit gespaar is. Maar kyk, die tyd kom, sê die Here, dat wanneer julle die regverdiges sal uitwerp onder julle, dan sal julle ryp wees vir vernietiging; ja, wee hierdie groot stad, vanweë die boosheid en die gruwels wat in haar is.
- 15 Ja, en wee die stad Gídeon, weens die boosheid en gruwels wat in haar is.
- 16 Ja, en wee al die stede wat in die land rondom is, wat besit word deur die Nefiete, vanweë die boosheid en gruwels wat in hulle is.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord: Because of the hardness of the hearts of the people of the Nephites, except they repent I will take away my word from them, and I will withdraw my Spirit from them, and I will suffer them no longer, and I will turn the hearts of their brethren against them.

And four hundred years shall not pass away before I will cause that they shall be smitten; yea, I will visit them with the sword and with famine and with pestilence.

Yea, I will visit them in my fierce anger, and there shall be those of the fourth generation who shall live, of your enemies, to behold your utter destruction; and this shall surely come except ye repent, saith the Lord; and those of the fourth generation shall visit your destruction.

But if ye will repent and return unto the Lord your God I will turn away mine anger, saith the Lord; yea, thus saith the Lord, blessed are they who will repent and turn unto me, but wo unto him that repenteth not.

Yea, wo unto this great city of Zarahemla; for behold, it is because of those who are righteous that it is saved; yea, wo unto this great city, for I perceive, saith the Lord, that there are many, yea, even the more part of this great city, that will harden their hearts against me, saith the Lord.

But blessed are they who will repent, for them will I spare. But behold, if it were not for the righteous who are in this great city, behold, I would cause that fire should come down out of heaven and destroy it.

But behold, it is for the righteous' sake that it is spared. But behold, the time cometh, saith the Lord, that when ye shall cast out the righteous from among you, then shall ye be ripe for destruction; yea, wo be unto this great city, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

Yea, and wo be unto the city of Gideon, for the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

Yea, and wo be unto all the cities which are in the land round about, which are possessed by the Nephites, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in them.

17 En kyk, 'n vloek sal oor die land kom, sê die Here van die Leërskaer, vanweë die volk se dae wat in die land is, ja, vanweë hulle boosheid en hulle gruwels.

18 En dit sal gebeur, sê die Here van die Leërskaer, ja, ons groot en waaragtige God, dat wie ook al skatte in die aarde sal versteek, hulle nie meer sal vind nie, vanweë die groot vloek op die land, tensy hy 'n regverdige man is en dit sal versteek tot die Here.

19 Want, Ek wil, sê die Here, dat hulle hul skatte moet versteek tot My; en vervloek is hulle wat nie hulle skatte versteek tot My nie; want niemand versteek hulle skatte tot My nie behalwe die regverdiges; en hy wat nie sy skatte versteek tot My nie, vervloek is hy en ook die skat, en niemand sal dit terugwin nie vanweë die vloek op die land.

20 En die dag sal kom wanneer hulle hul skatte sal versteek, omdat hulle hul harte op hul rykdomme gerig het; en omdat hulle hul harte op hul rykdomme gerig het, en hulle skatte sal versteek wanneer hulle sal vlug voor hul vyande; omdat hulle hul nie sal versteek tot My nie, vervloek is hulle en ook hul skatte; en in daardie dag sal hulle getref word, sê die Here.

21 Kyk julle, die volk van hierdie groot stad, en slaan ag op my woorde; ja, slaan ag op die woorde wat die Here sê; want kyk, Hy sê dat julle vervloek is vanweë julle rykdomme, en ook is julle rykdomme vervloek omdat julle jul harte gerig het op hulle, en nie ag geslaan het op die woorde van Hom wat hulle aan julle gegee het nie.

22 Julle onthou nie die Here julle God in die dinge waarmee Hy julle geseën het nie, maar julle onthou altyd julle rykdomme, nie om die Here julle God vir hulle te dank nie; ja, julle harte is nie uitgestrek tot die Here nie, maar hulle swel van groot hoogmoed, tot roem, en tot groot geswel, naywer, onenigheid, afguns, vervolging, en moorde en allerlei ongeregtighede.

23 Om hierdie rede het die Here God veroorsaak dat 'n vloek oor die land moes kom, en ook op julle rykdomme, en dit vanweë julle ongeregtighede.

And behold, a curse shall come upon the land, saith the Lord of Hosts, because of the people's sake who are upon the land, yea, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

And it shall come to pass, saith the Lord of Hosts, yea, our great and true God, that whoso shall hide up treasures in the earth shall find them again no more, because of the great curse of the land, save he be a righteous man and shall hide it up unto the Lord.

For I will, saith the Lord, that they shall hide up their treasures unto me; and cursed be they who hide not up their treasures unto me; for none hideth up their treasures unto me save it be the righteous; and he that hideth not up his treasures unto me, cursed is he, and also the treasure, and none shall redeem it because of the curse of the land.

And the day shall come that they shall hide up their treasures, because they have set their hearts upon riches; and because they have set their hearts upon their riches, and will hide up their treasures when they shall flee before their enemies; because they will not hide them up unto me, cursed be they and also their treasures; and in that day shall they be smitten, saith the Lord.

Behold ye, the people of this great city, and hearken unto my words; yea, hearken unto the words which the Lord saith; for behold, he saith that ye are cursed because of your riches, and also are your riches cursed because ye have set your hearts upon them, and have not hearkened unto the words of him who gave them unto you.

Ye do not remember the Lord your God in the things with which he hath blessed you, but ye do always remember your riches, not to thank the Lord your God for them; yea, your hearts are not drawn out unto the Lord, but they do swell with great pride, unto boasting, and unto great swelling, envyings, strifes, malice, persecutions, and murders, and all manner of iniquities.

For this cause hath the Lord God caused that a curse should come upon the land, and also upon your riches, and this because of your iniquities.

- 24 Ja, wee hierdie volk, vanweë hierdie tyd wat gekom het, dat julle die profete uitwerp, en hulle bespot, en klippe gooi na hulle, en hulle doodmaak, en allerlei ongeregthede doen aan hulle, net soos hulle van ouds gedoen het.
- 25 En nou wanneer julle praat, sê julle: As ons dae in die dae van ons vaders van ouds was, sou ons nie die profete doodgemaak het nie; ons sou hulle nie gestenig, en uitgewerp het nie.
- 26 Kyk, julle is erger as hulle; want sowaar as die Here leef, as 'n profeet onder julle kom, en aan julle die woord van die Here verkondig, wat getuig van julle sondes en ongeregthede, is julle vertoornd op hom, en werp hom uit en soek allerlei weë om hom te vernietig, ja, julle sal sê dat hy 'n valse profeet is, en dat hy 'n sondaar is, en van die duiwel, omdat hy getuig dat julle dade boos is.
- 27 Maar kyk, as 'n man onder julle sal kom en sal sê: Doen dit, en daar is geen ongeregthede nie; doen dat en julle sal nie ly nie; ja, hy sal sê: Wandel agter die hoogmoed van julle eie harte aan; ja, wandel agter die hoogmoed van julle oë aan, en doen wat julle harte ook al begeer—en as 'n man onder julle sal kom en dit sê, sal julle hom ontvang, en sê dat hy 'n profeet is.
- 28 Ja, julle sal hom verhef, en julle sal vir hom van julle besittings gee; julle sal vir hom van julle goud, en van julle silwer gee, en julle sal hom klee met kostbare gewaad; en omdat hy vleierende woorde met julle spreek, en hy sê dat alles wel is, dan sal julle nie fout vind met hom nie.
- 29 O, julle goddelose en julle wederstrewige geslag; julle verharde en julle hardnekkige volk, hoe lank sal julle veronderstel dat die Here julle sal duld? Ja, hoe lank sal julle juisself toelaat om gelei te word deur dwase en blinde gidse? Ja, hoe lank sal julle duisternis kies eerder as lig?
- 30 Ja, kyk, die toorn van die Here is alreeds aangesteek teen julle, kyk, Hy het die land vervloek vanweë julle ongeregthede.
- 31 En kyk, die tyd kom dat Hy julle rykdomme vervloek, dat hulle glibberig word, dat julle hulle nie kan vashou nie; en in die dae van julle armoede kan julle hulle nie behou nie.

Yea, wo unto this people, because of this time which has arrived, that ye do cast out the prophets, and do mock them, and cast stones at them, and do slay them, and do all manner of iniquity unto them, even as they did of old time.

And now when ye talk, ye say: If our days had been in the days of our fathers of old, we would not have slain the prophets; we would not have stoned them, and cast them out.

Behold ye are worse than they; for as the Lord liveth, if a prophet come among you and declareth unto you the word of the Lord, which testifieth of your sins and iniquities, ye are angry with him, and cast him out and seek all manner of ways to destroy him; yea, you will say that he is a false prophet, and that he is a sinner, and of the devil, because he testifieth that your deeds are evil.

But behold, if a man shall come among you and shall say: Do this, and there is no iniquity; do that and ye shall not suffer; yea, he will say: Walk after the pride of your own hearts; yea, walk after the pride of your eyes, and do whatsoever your heart desireth—and if a man shall come among you and say this, ye will receive him, and say that he is a prophet.

Yea, ye will lift him up, and ye will give unto him of your substance; ye will give unto him of your gold, and of your silver, and ye will clothe him with costly apparel; and because he speaketh flattering words unto you, and he saith that all is well, then ye will not find fault with him.

O ye wicked and ye perverse generation; ye hardened and ye stiffnecked people, how long will ye suppose that the Lord will suffer you? Yea, how long will ye suffer yourselves to be led by foolish and blind guides? Yea, how long will ye choose darkness rather than light?

Yea, behold, the anger of the Lord is already kindled against you; behold, he hath cursed the land because of your iniquity.

And behold, the time cometh that he curseth your riches, that they become slippery, that ye cannot hold them; and in the days of your poverty ye cannot retain them.

32 En in die dae van julle armoede sal julle roep tot die Here; en tevergeefs sal julle roep, want julle verlatenheid het reeds oor julle gekom, en julle vernietiging is seker gemaak; en dan sal julle ween en kerm in daardie dag, sê die Here van die Leërskaar. En dan sal julle weeklaag, en sê:

33 O dat ek bekeer het, en nie die profete doodgemaak het nie, en hulle nie gestenig, en uitgewerp het nie. Ja, in daardie dag sal julle sê: O, dat ons die Here ons God onthou het in die dag toe Hy ons ons rykdomme gegee het, en dan sou hulle nie glibberig geword het dat ons hulle sou verloor nie; want kyk, ons rykdomme is weg van ons.

34 Kyk, ons lê 'n stuk gereedskap hier neer en die volgende dag is dit weg; en kyk, ons swaarde word van ons weggehaal op die dag toe ons hulle gesoek het vir die stryd.

35 Ja, ons het ons skatte versteek en hulle het van ons af weggeglip, vanweë die vloek op die land.

36 O, dat ons bekeer het in die dag toe die woord van die Here tot ons gekom het; want kyk, die land is vervloek, en alle dinge het glibberig geword, en ons kan hulle nie vashou nie.

37 Kyk, ons is omring deur bese geeste, ja, ons is omgewe deur die engele van hom wat gesoek het om ons siele te vernietig. Kyk, ons ongeregtighede is groot. O Here, kan U nie u toorn van ons afwend nie? En dit sal jul taal wees in daardie dae.

38 Maar kyk, julle dae van toetsing is verby; julle het die dag van julle heil uitgestel totdat dit vir ewig te laat is, en julle vernietiging is seker gemaak; ja, want julle het al die dae van julle lewe gesoek na dit wat julle nie kon verkry nie; en julle het gesoek na geluk deur ongeregtighede te doen, welke ding teenstrydig is met die aard van daardie regverdigheid wat in ons groot en Ewige Hoof is.

39 O, julle volk van die land, dat julle my woorde wou hoor! En ek bid dat die toorn van die Here van julle afgewend word, en dat julle sal bekeer en gered word.

And in the days of your poverty ye shall cry unto the Lord; and in vain shall ye cry, for your desolation is already come upon you, and your destruction is made sure; and then shall ye weep and howl in that day, saith the Lord of Hosts. And then shall ye lament, and say:

O that I had repented, and had not killed the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out. Yea, in that day ye shall say: O that we had remembered the Lord our God in the day that he gave us our riches, and then they would not have become slippery that we should lose them; for behold, our riches are gone from us.

Behold, we lay a tool here and on the morrow it is gone; and behold, our swords are taken from us in the day we have sought them for battle.

Yea, we have hid up our treasures and they have slipped away from us, because of the curse of the land.

O that we had repented in the day that the word of the Lord came unto us; for behold the land is cursed, and all things are become slippery, and we cannot hold them.

Behold, we are surrounded by demons, yea, we are encircled about by the angels of him who hath sought to destroy our souls. Behold, our iniquities are great. O Lord, canst thou not turn away thine anger from us? And this shall be your language in those days.

But behold, your days of probation are past; ye have procrastinated the day of your salvation until it is everlastingly too late, and your destruction is made sure; yea, for ye have sought all the days of your lives for that which ye could not obtain; and ye have sought for happiness in doing iniquity, which thing is contrary to the nature of that righteousness which is in our great and Eternal Head.

O ye people of the land, that ye would hear my words! And I pray that the anger of the Lord be turned away from you, and that ye would repent and be saved.

Helaman 14

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat Samuel, die Lamaniet, baie meer dinge geprofeteer het wat nie geskryf kan word nie.
- 2 En kyk, hy het aan hulle gesê: Kyk, ek gee aan julle 'n teken; want nog vyf jaar meer kom, en kyk, dan kom die Seun van God om al diegene te verlos wat in sy Naam sal glo.
- 3 En kyk, dit sal ek vir julle gee vir 'n teken ten tyde van sy koms; want kyk, daar sal groot ligte wees in die hemel, in so 'n mate dat in die nag voor Hy kom sal daar geen duisternis wees nie, in so 'n mate dat dit vir die mens sal lyk asof dit dag was.
- 4 Daarom, daar sal een dag wees en 'n nag en 'n dag, asof dit een dag was en daar geen nag was nie; en dit sal vir julle as 'n teken wees; want julle sal weet van die opkoms van die son en ook van sy ondergang; daarom sal hulle vir seker weet dat daar twee dae en 'n nag sal wees; nogtans, die nag sal nie verduister word nie; en dit sal die nag wees voordat Hy gebore word.
- 5 En kyk, daar sal 'n nuwe ster opkom, so 'n een soos julle nooit aanskou het nie; en dit sal ook 'n teken vir julle wees.
- 6 En kyk, dit is nie al nie, daar sal baie tekens en wonders in die hemel wees.
- 7 En dit sal gebeur dat julle almal verbaas sal wees, en wonder, tot so 'n mate dat julle sal neerval op die aarde.
- 8 En dit sal gebeur dat wie ook al sal glo in die Seun van God, dié een sal die ewigduurende lewe hê.
- 9 En kyk, so het die Here my beveel, deur sy engel, dat ek sal kom en dié ding aan julle vertel; ja, Hy het beveel dat ek hierdie dinge moet profeteer aan julle; ja, Hy het aan my gesê: Roep tot hierdie volk, bekeer en berei die weg van die Here.
- 10 En nou, omdat ek 'n Lamaniet is, en die woorde gespreek het met julle wat die Here my beveel het, en omdat dit hard teenoor julle was, is julle vertoornd op my en soek om my te vernietig, en het my uitgewerp van onder julle.

Helaman 14

And now it came to pass that Samuel, the Lamanite, did prophesy a great many more things which cannot be written.

And behold, he said unto them: Behold, I give unto you a sign; for five years more cometh, and behold, then cometh the Son of God to redeem all those who shall believe on his name.

And behold, this will I give unto you for a sign at the time of his coming; for behold, there shall be great lights in heaven, insomuch that in the night before he cometh there shall be no darkness, insomuch that it shall appear unto man as if it was day.

Therefore, there shall be one day and a night and a day, as if it were one day and there were no night; and this shall be unto you for a sign; for ye shall know of the rising of the sun and also of its setting; therefore they shall know of a surety that there shall be two days and a night; nevertheless the night shall not be darkened; and it shall be the night before he is born.

And behold, there shall a new star arise, such an one as ye never have beheld; and this also shall be a sign unto you.

And behold this is not all, there shall be many signs and wonders in heaven.

And it shall come to pass that ye shall all be amazed, and wonder, insomuch that ye shall fall to the earth.

And it shall come to pass that whosoever shall believe on the Son of God, the same shall have everlasting life.

And behold, thus hath the Lord commanded me, by his angel, that I should come and tell this thing unto you; yea, he hath commanded that I should prophesy these things unto you; yea, he hath said unto me: Cry unto this people, repent and prepare the way of the Lord.

And now, because I am a Lamanite, and have spoken unto you the words which the Lord hath commanded me, and because it was hard against you, ye are angry with me and do seek to destroy me, and have cast me out from among you.

- 11 En julle sal my woorde hoor, want vir hierdie doel het ek op die mure van hierdie stad opgekom, sodat julle mag hoor en weet van die oordele van God wat op julle wag vanweë julle ongeregtighede, en ook dat julle die voorwaardes van bekering mag weet;
- 12 En ook dat julle mag weet van die koms van Jesus Christus, die Seun van God, die Vader van hemel en van aarde, die Skepper van alle dinge vanaf die begin; en dat julle mag weet van die tekens van sy koms, met die doel dat julle in sy Naam mag glo.
- 13 En as julle glo in sy Naam, sal julle bekeer van al julle sondes, dat julle daardeur vergifnis mag hê van hulle deur sy verdienste.
- 14 En kyk, weer, 'n ander teken gee ek aan julle, ja, 'n teken van sy dood.
- 15 Want kyk, Hy moet sekerlik sterwe, dat heil mag kom; ja, dit word vereis van Hom en dit is noodsaaklik dat Hy sterwe, om die opstanding van die dode te weeg te bring, sodat die mens daardeur in die teenwoordigheid van die Here gebring mag word.
- 16 Ja, kyk, hierdie dood bring die opstanding te weeg, en verlos die hele mensdom van die eerste dood—daardie geestelike dood; want die hele mensdom, omdat hulle deur die val van Adam afgesny is van die teenwoordigheid van die Here, word beskou as dood, beide met betrekking tot die stoflike dinge en tot geestelike dinge.
- 17 Maar kyk, die opstanding van Christus verlos die mensdom, ja, en wel die hele mensdom, en bring hulle terug na die teenwoordigheid van die Here.
- 18 Ja, en dit bring die voorwaarde van bekering te weeg, dat wie ook al bekeer, dié een word nie afgekap en in die vuur gewerp nie; maar wie ook al nie bekeer nie word afgekap en in die vuur gewerp; en daar kom weer 'n geestelike dood oor hulle, ja, 'n tweede dood, want hulle word weer afgesny wat betref die dinge van regverdigheid.
- 19 Daarom, bekeer julle, bekeer julle, uit vrees dat as julle hierdie dinge weet en hulle nie doen nie, julle juisself sal toelaat om onder oordeel te kom, en julle afgebring word tot hierdie tweede dood toe.

And ye shall hear my words, for, for this intent have I come up upon the walls of this city, that ye might hear and know of the judgments of God which do await you because of your iniquities, and also that ye might know the conditions of repentance;

And also that ye might know of the coming of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and that ye might know of the signs of his coming, to the intent that ye might believe on his name.

And if ye believe on his name ye will repent of all your sins, that thereby ye may have a remission of them through his merits.

And behold, again, another sign I give unto you, yea, a sign of his death.

For behold, he surely must die that salvation may come; yea, it behooveth him and becometh expedient that he dieth, to bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, that thereby men may be brought into the presence of the Lord.

Yea, behold, this death bringeth to pass the resurrection, and redeemeth all mankind from the first death—that spiritual death; for all mankind, by the fall of Adam being cut off from the presence of the Lord, are considered as dead, both as to things temporal and to things spiritual.

But behold, the resurrection of Christ redeemeth mankind, yea, even all mankind, and bringeth them back into the presence of the Lord.

Yea, and it bringeth to pass the condition of repentance, that whosoever repenteth the same is not hewn down and cast into the fire; but whosoever repenteth not is hewn down and cast into the fire; and there cometh upon them again a spiritual death, yea, a second death, for they are cut off again as to things pertaining to righteousness.

Therefore repent ye, repent ye, lest by knowing these things and not doing them ye shall suffer yourselves to come under condemnation, and ye are brought down unto this second death.

- 20 Maar kyk, soos ek aan julle gesê het aangaande 'n ander teken, 'n teken van sy dood, kyk, op daardie dag wanneer Hy die dood sal ly, sal die son verduister word en weier om sy lig te gee aan julle; en ook die maan en die sterre; en daar sal geen lig wees op die aangesig van hierdie land nie, en wel vanaf die tyd dat Hy die dood sal ly, vir 'n tydperk van drie dae, tot die tyd dat Hy weer sal opstaan uit die dood.
- 21 Ja, op die tydstip dat Hy die gees sal gee, sal daar donder en weerlig wees vir 'n tydperk van baie ure, en die aarde sal skud en bewe; en die rotse wat op die aangesig van hierdie aarde is, wat beide bo-op die aarde en benede is, wat julle op hierdie tydstip weet solied is, of die grootste gedeelte daarvan een soliede massa is, sal opgebreek word.
- 22 Ja, hulle sal in twee geskeur word, en sal vir altyd daarna in splete en in barste gevind word, en in gebreekte stukke oor die aangesig van die hele aarde, ja, beide bo-op die aarde en benede.
- 23 En kyk, daar sal groot storms wees, en daar sal baie berge verlaag word, soos 'n vallei, en daar sal baie plekke wees wat nou valleie genoem word, wat berge sal word, welke hoogte groot is.
- 24 En baie hoofpaaie sal opgebreek word, en baie stede sal verlate word.
- 25 En baie grafte sal geopen word, en sal baie van hul dooies oorgee; en vele heiliges sal aan baie verskyn.
- 26 En kyk, so het die engel met my gespreek; want hy het vir my gesê dat daar donder en weerlig sal wees vir 'n tydperk van baie ure.
- 27 En hy het aan my gesê dat terwyl die donder en die weerlig duur, en die storm, dat hierdie dinge sal wees, en dat duisternis die aangesig van die hele aarde sal bedek vir 'n tydperk van drie dae.
- 28 En die engel het aan my gesê dat baie mense groter dinge sal sien as hierdie, met die doel dat hulle mag glo dat hierdie tekens en hierdie wonders moet gebeur oor die hele aangesig van hierdie land, met die doel dat daar geen rede sal wees vir ongeloof onder die kinders van mense nie—

But behold, as I said unto you concerning another sign, a sign of his death, behold, in that day that he shall suffer death the sun shall be darkened and refuse to give his light unto you; and also the moon and the stars; and there shall be no light upon the face of this land, even from the time that he shall suffer death, for the space of three days, to the time that he shall rise again from the dead.

Yea, at the time that he shall yield up the ghost there shall be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours, and the earth shall shake and tremble; and the rocks which are upon the face of this earth, which are both above the earth and beneath, which ye know at this time are solid, or the more part of it is one solid mass, shall be broken up;

Yea, they shall be rent in twain, and shall ever after be found in seams and in cracks, and in broken fragments upon the face of the whole earth, yea, both above the earth and beneath.

And behold, there shall be great tempests, and there shall be many mountains laid low, like unto a valley, and there shall be many places which are now called valleys which shall become mountains, whose height is great.

And many highways shall be broken up, and many cities shall become desolate.

And many graves shall be opened, and shall yield up many of their dead; and many saints shall appear unto many.

And behold, thus hath the angel spoken unto me; for he said unto me that there should be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours.

And he said unto me that while the thunder and the lightning lasted, and the tempest, that these things should be, and that darkness should cover the face of the whole earth for the space of three days.

And the angel said unto me that many shall see greater things than these, to the intent that they might believe that these signs and these wonders should come to pass upon all the face of this land, to the intent that there should be no cause for unbelief among the children of men—

29 En dit met die doel dat wie ook al sal glo, gered mag word, en dat wie ook al nie sal glo nie, 'n regverdige oordeel oor hulle mag kom, en ook as hulle veroordeel word, bring hulle op hulself hul eie oordeel.

30 En nou onthou, onthou, my broers, dat wie ook al vergaan, vergaan vanweë homself, en wie ook al ongeregtigheid doen, doen dit aan homself; want kyk, julle is vry; julle word toegelaat om te handel vir julleself; want kyk, God het aan julle 'n kennis gegee en Hy het julle vrygemaak.

31 Hy het aan julle gegee dat julle die goeie van die bose mag onderskei, en Hy het aan julle gegee dat julle die lewe of die dood mag kies; en julle kan goed doen en herstel word tot dit wat goed is, of dit wat goed is kan aan julle herstel word; of julle kan boosheid doen, en dit wat boos is, kan aan julle herstel word.

And this to the intent that whosoever will believe might be saved, and that whosoever will not believe, a righteous judgment might come upon them; and also if they are condemned they bring upon themselves their own condemnation.

And now remember, remember, my brethren, that whosoever perisheth, perisheth unto himself; and whosoever doeth iniquity, doeth it unto himself; for behold, ye are free; ye are permitted to act for yourselves; for behold, God hath given unto you a knowledge and he hath made you free.

He hath given unto you that ye might know good from evil, and he hath given unto you that ye might choose life or death; and ye can do good and be restored unto that which is good, or have that which is good restored unto you; or ye can do evil, and have that which is evil restored unto you.

Helaman 15

- 1 En nou, my geliefde broers, kyk, ek verklaar aan julle dat tensy julle sal bekeer, sal julle huise vir julle verlate gelaat word.
- 2 Ja, tensy julle bekeer, sal julle vroue groot rede hê om te rouklaag in die dag wat hulle sal soog; want julle sal probeer om te vlug en daar sal geen plek wees as toevlug nie; ja, en wee hulle wat met kind is, want hulle sal swaar wees en kan nie vlug nie; daarom, hulle sal vertrap word en gelaat word om te vergaan.
- 3 Ja, wee hierdie volk wat genoem word die volk van Nepi, tensy hulle sal bekeer, wanneer hulle al hierdie tekens en wonders sal sien wat getoon sal word aan hulle; want kyk, hulle was 'n uitverkore volk van die Here; ja, die volk van Nepi het Hy liefgehad, en ook het Hy hulle gekasty; ja; in die dae van hulle ongeregtighede het Hy hulle gekasty omdat Hy hulle liefgehad het.
- 4 Maar kyk, my broers, die Lamaniete het Hy gehaat omdat hulle dade voortdurend boos was, en dit vanweë die ongeregtigheid van die oorlewering van hulle vaders. Maar kyk, heil het tot hulle gekom deur die prediking van die Nefiete; en met hierdie doel het die Here hulle dae verleng.
- 5 En ek wil hê dat julle moet sien dat die grootste gedeelte van hulle op die weg van hulle plig is, en hulle wandel versigtig voor God, en hulle het gepoog om sy geboorte en sy insettinge en sy verordeninge volgens die wet van Moses te onderhou.
- 6 Ja, ek sê vir julle, dat die grootste gedeelte van hulle dit doen, en hulle werk met onvermoeide ywer dat hulle die res van hulle broers mag bring tot die kennis van die waarheid; daarom is daar baie wat daagliks by hulle getalle bygevoeg word.
- 7 En kyk, julle weet vir julleself, want julle was getuie daarvan, dat soveel van hulle as wat gebring word tot die kennis van die waarheid, en om te weet van die goddelose en gruwelike oorleweringe van hulle vaders, en gelei word om die heilige skrifte te glo, ja, die profesieë van die heilige profete, wat geskrywe is, wat hulle lei tot geloof in die Here, en tot bekering, welke geloof en bekering 'n verandering van hart teweeg bring in hulle—

Helaman 15

And now, my beloved brethren, behold, I declare unto you that except ye shall repent your houses shall be left unto you desolate.

Yea, except ye repent, your women shall have great cause to mourn in the day that they shall give suck; for ye shall attempt to flee and there shall be no place for refuge; yea, and wo unto them which are with child, for they shall be heavy and cannot flee; therefore, they shall be trodden down and shall be left to perish.

Yea, wo unto this people who are called the people of Nephi except they shall repent, when they shall see all these signs and wonders which shall be showed unto them; for behold, they have been a chosen people of the Lord; yea, the people of Nephi hath he loved, and also hath he chastened them; yea, in the days of their iniquities hath he chastened them because he loveth them.

But behold my brethren, the Lamanites hath he hated because their deeds have been evil continually, and this because of the iniquity of the tradition of their fathers. But behold, salvation hath come unto them through the preaching of the Nephites; and for this intent hath the Lord prolonged their days.

And I would that ye should behold that the more part of them are in the path of their duty, and they do walk circumspectly before God, and they do observe to keep his commandments and his statutes and his judgments according to the law of Moses.

Yea, I say unto you, that the more part of them are doing this, and they are striving with unwearied diligence that they may bring the remainder of their brethren to the knowledge of the truth; therefore there are many who do add to their numbers daily.

And behold, ye do know of yourselves, for ye have witnessed it, that as many of them as are brought to the knowledge of the truth, and to know of the wicked and abominable traditions of their fathers, and are led to believe the holy scriptures, yea, the prophecies of the holy prophets, which are written, which leadeth them to faith on the Lord, and unto repentance, which faith and repentance bringeth a change of heart unto them—

- 8 Daaron, soveel as wat hiertoe gekom het, julle weet vir julleself, is ferm en standvastig in die geloof, en in die dinge waardeur hulle vrygemaak is.
- 9 En julle weet ook dat hulle hul wapens van oorlog begrawe het, en hulle vrees om hulle op te neem, uit vrees dat hulle op een of ander wyse sal sondig, ja, julle kan sien dat hulle vrees om te sondig—want kyk, hulle sal hulself toelaat om vertrap en deur hulle vyande gedood te word, en sal nie hulle swaarde ophef teen hulle nie, en dit vanweë hulle geloof in Christus.
- 10 En nou, vanweë hulle standvastigheid wanneer hulle glo in daardie ding waarin hulle glo, want vanweë hulle fermheid wanneer hulle eers eenmaal verlig is, kyk, die Here sal hulle seën en hulle dae verleng, niesteenstaande hulle ongeregtheid—
- 11 Ja, al sou hulle kwyn in ongeloof, sal die Here hulle dae verleng, totdat die tyd sal kom waarvan ons vaders gesprek het, en ook deur die profeet Zenos, en baie ander profete, aangaande die herstelling van ons broers, die Lamaniete, weer tot die kennis van die waarheid—
- 12 Ja, ek sê vir julle, dat in die laaste tye die beloftes van die Here aangebied is aan ons broers, die Lamaniete; en niesteenstaande die vele verdrukkinge wat hulle sal hê, en niesteenstaande hulle heen en weer gedryf sal word op die aangesig van die aarde, en gejag word, en geslaan en ver en wyd verstrooi sal word, en geen plek van toevlug sal hê nie, sal die Here barmhartig wees teenoor hulle.
- 13 En dit is volgens die profesie, dat hulle weer gebring sal word tot die ware kennis, wat die kennis is van hulle Verlosser, en hulle groot en ware Herder, en gereken sal word onder sy skape.
- 14 Daaron sê ek aan julle, dit sal beter wees vir hulle as vir julle, tensy julle bekeer.
- 15 Want kyk, as die magtige werke getoon was aan hulle wat aan julle getoon is, ja, aan hulle wat in ongeloof gekwyn het vanweë die oorleweringe van hulle vaders, kan julle vir julleself sien dat hulle nooit weer sou gekwyn het in ongeloof nie.

Therefore, as many as have come to this, ye know of yourselves are firm and steadfast in the faith, and in the thing wherewith they have been made free.

And ye know also that they have buried their weapons of war, and they fear to take them up lest by any means they should sin; yea, ye can see that they fear to sin—for behold they will suffer themselves that they be trodden down and slain by their enemies, and will not lift their swords against them, and this because of their faith in Christ.

And now, because of their steadfastness when they do believe in that thing which they do believe, for because of their firmness when they are once enlightened, behold, the Lord shall bless them and prolong their days, notwithstanding their iniquity—

Yea, even if they should dwindle in unbelief the Lord shall prolong their days, until the time shall come which hath been spoken of by our fathers, and also by the prophet Zenos, and many other prophets, concerning the restoration of our brethren, the Lamanites, again to the knowledge of the truth—

Yea, I say unto you, that in the latter times the promises of the Lord have been extended to our brethren, the Lamanites; and notwithstanding the many afflictions which they shall have, and notwithstanding they shall be driven to and fro upon the face of the earth, and be hunted, and shall be smitten and scattered abroad, having no place for refuge, the Lord shall be merciful unto them.

And this is according to the prophecy, that they shall again be brought to the true knowledge, which is the knowledge of their Redeemer, and their great and true shepherd, and be numbered among his sheep.

Therefore I say unto you, it shall be better for them than for you except ye repent.

For behold, had the mighty works been shown unto them which have been shown unto you, yea, unto them who have dwindled in unbelief because of the traditions of their fathers, ye can see of yourselves that they never would again have dwindled in unbelief.

16 Daaron, sê die Here: Ek sal hulle nie heeltemal vernietig nie, maar Ek sal veroorsaak dat in die dag van my wysheid hulle weer sal terugkeer na My, sê die Here.

17 En nou, kyk, sê die Here, aangaande die volk van die Nefiete: As hulle nie bekeer en onderhou om my wil te doen nie, sal Ek hulle heeltemal vernietig, sê die Here, vanweë hulle ongeloof, nieteenstaande die vele magtige werke wat Ek gedoen het onder hulle; en sowaar as die Here leef sal hierdie dinge wees, sê die Here.

Therefore, saith the Lord: I will not utterly destroy them, but I will cause that in the day of my wisdom they shall return again unto me, saith the Lord.

And now behold, saith the Lord, concerning the people of the Nephites: If they will not repent, and observe to do my will, I will utterly destroy them, saith the Lord, because of their unbelief notwithstanding the many mighty works which I have done among them; and as surely as the Lord liveth shall these things be, saith the Lord.

Helaman 16

- 1 En nou, dit het gebeur dat daar baie was wat die woorde gehoor het van Samuel, die Lamaniet, wat hy gespreek het op die mure van die stad. En soveel as wat in sy woorde geglo het, het uitgegaan en na Nepi gesoek; en toe hulle uitgekom het en hom gevind het, het hulle hul sondes aan hom bely en nie ontken nie, en begeer om gedoop te word tot die Here.
- 2 Maar soveel as wat daar was wat nie geglo het in die woorde van Samuel nie, was vertoornd op hom; en hulle het klippe na hom op die muur gegooi, en ook baie het pyle na hom geskiet terwyl hy op die muur gestaan het; maar die Gees van die Here was met hom, in soverre dat hulle hom nie met hulle klippe kon tref nie, nóg met hulle pyle.
- 3 Nou, toe hulle sien dat hulle hom nie kon tref nie, was daar baie meer wat in sy woorde geglo het, in soverre dat hulle weggegaan het na Nepi om gedoop te word.
- 4 Want kyk, Nepi het gedoop, en geprofeteer, en gepreek, en die volk tot bekering geroep, en tekens en wonders getoon, en wonderwerke verrig onder die volk, dat hulle mag weet dat die Christus binnekort moes kom—
- 5 En hy het hulle vertel van dinge wat binnekort moes kom, dat hulle mag weet en onthou ten tyde van hulle koms dat dit vooraf aan hulle bekend maak is met die bedoeling dat hulle mag glo; daarom het soveel as wat in die woorde van Samuel geglo het, uitgegaan na hom om gedoop te word, want hulle het gekom met bekering en belydenis van hulle sondes.
- 6 Maar die grootste deel van hulle het nie geglo in die woorde van Samuel nie; daarom, toe hulle sien dat hulle hom nie kon tref met hulle klippe en hulle pyle nie, het hulle tot hulle kapteins geroep, en gesê: Neem hierdie man en bind hom, want kyk, hy het 'n duiwel; en vanweë die krag van die duiwel wat in hom is, kan ons hom nie tref met ons klippe en ons pyle nie; daarom, neem hom en bind hom, en weg met hom.

Helaman 16

And now, it came to pass that there were many who heard the words of Samuel, the Lamanite, which he spake upon the walls of the city. And as many as believed on his word went forth and sought for Nephi; and when they had come forth and found him they confessed unto him their sins and denied not, desiring that they might be baptized unto the Lord.

But as many as there were who did not believe in the words of Samuel were angry with him; and they cast stones at him upon the wall, and also many shot arrows at him as he stood upon the wall; but the Spirit of the Lord was with him, insomuch that they could not hit him with their stones neither with their arrows.

Now when they saw that they could not hit him, there were many more who did believe on his words, insomuch that they went away unto Nephi to be baptized.

For behold, Nephi was baptizing, and prophesying, and preaching, crying repentance unto the people, showing signs and wonders, working miracles among the people, that they might know that the Christ must shortly come—

Telling them of things which must shortly come, that they might know and remember at the time of their coming that they had been made known unto them beforehand, to the intent that they might believe; therefore as many as believed on the words of Samuel went forth unto him to be baptized, for they came repenting and confessing their sins.

But the more part of them did not believe in the words of Samuel; therefore when they saw that they could not hit him with their stones and their arrows, they cried unto their captains, saying: Take this fellow and bind him, for behold he hath a devil; and because of the power of the devil which is in him we cannot hit him with our stones and our arrows; therefore take him and bind him, and away with him.

7 En toe hulle uitgaan om hulle hande op hom te lê, kyk, het hy homself van die muur afgewerp, en uit hulle lande gevlug, ja, en wel na sy eie land, en het begin om onder sy eie mense te preek en te profeteer.

8 En kyk, hy is nooit meer van gehoor onder die Nefiete nie; en so was die sake van die volk.

9 En so het die ses en tagtigste jaar geëindig van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi.

10 En so het ook die sewe en tagtigste jaar geëindig van die heerskappy van die regters, terwyl die grootste gedeelte van die volk in hulle hoogmoed en boosheid gebly het, en die kleinste gedeelte meer versigtig gewandel het voor God.

11 En dit was ook die toestande in die agt en tagtigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters.

12 En daar was maar min verandering in die sake van die volk, behalwe dat dit was dat die volk begin het om meer verhard te word in ongeregtheid, en meer en meer dit gedoen het wat teenstrydig was met die gebooe van God, in die nege en tagtigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters.

13 Maar dit het gebeur in die negentigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters, is daar groot tekens aan die volk gegee, en wonders; en die woorde van die profete het begin om vervul te word.

14 En engele het verskyn aan mense, wyse manne, en het aan hulle blye tydings van groot vreugde verkondig; dus in dié jaar het die skrifture begin om vervul te word.

15 Nogtans, die volk het hulle harte begin verhard, almal, behalwe vir die grootste gelowige gedeelte onder hulle, beide onder die Nefiete en ook onder die Lamaniete, en het begin om op hulle eie krag en op hul eie wysheid te steun, en het gesê:

16 Sommige dinge mag hulle reg geraai het, onder so baie; maar kyk, ons weet dat al hierdie groot en wonderbaarlike werke nie kan geskied, waarvan gespreek is nie.

17 En hulle het begin om te redeneer en te stry onder mekaar, en het gesê:

And as they went forth to lay their hands on him, behold, he did cast himself down from the wall, and did flee out of their lands, yea, even unto his own country, and began to preach and to prophesy among his own people.

And behold, he was never heard of more among the Nephites; and thus were the affairs of the people.

And thus ended the eighty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus ended also the eighty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, the more part of the people remaining in their pride and wickedness, and the lesser part walking more circumspectly before God.

And these were the conditions also, in the eighty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

And there was but little alteration in the affairs of the people, save it were the people began to be more hardened in iniquity, and do more and more of that which was contrary to the commandments of God, in the eighty and ninth year of the reign of the judges.

But it came to pass in the ninetieth year of the reign of the judges, there were great signs given unto the people, and wonders; and the words of the prophets began to be fulfilled.

And angels did appear unto men, wise men, and did declare unto them glad tidings of great joy; thus in this year the scriptures began to be fulfilled.

Nevertheless, the people began to harden their hearts, all save it were the most believing part of them, both of the Nephites and also of the Lamanites, and began to depend upon their own strength and upon their own wisdom, saying:

Some things they may have guessed right, among so many; but behold, we know that all these great and marvelous works cannot come to pass, of which has been spoken.

And they began to reason and to contend among themselves, saying:

- 18 Dat dit nie redelik is dat so 'n wese soos 'n Christus sal kom nie; indien wel, en as Hy die Seun van God is, die Vader van hemel en aarde, soos dit gespreek is, waarom sal Hy Homself nie aan ons sowel as aan hulle wat by Jerusalem sal wees toon nie?
- 19 Ja, waarom sal Hy Homself nie toon in hierdie land sowel as in die land Jerusalem nie?
- 20 Maar kyk, ons weet dat dit 'n goddelose oorlewering is, wat oorgelewer is aan ons deur ons vaders, om ons te laat glo in een of ander groot en wonderbaarlike ding wat sou gebeur, maar nie onder ons nie, maar in 'n land wat verafgeleë is, 'n land wat ons nie ken nie; daarom kan hulle ons in onkunde hou, want ons kan nie met ons eie oë getuig dat hulle waar is nie.
- 21 En hulle sal, deur die sluwe en verborge kunste van die bose een, een of ander groot verborgenheid bewerkstellig wat ons nie kan verstaan nie, wat ons onder sal hou, om diensknegte van hulle woorde te wees, en ook diensknegte aan hulle, want ons is afhanklik van hulle om ons die woord te leer; en so sal hulle ons in onkunde hou as ons onself aan hulle sal onderwerp, al die dae van ons lewe.
- 22 En baie meer dinge het die volk hulle verbeeld in hulle harte, wat dwaas en ydel was; en hulle was baie verontrus, want Satan het hulle aangespoor om gedurigdeur ongeregtheid te doen; ja, hy het rondgegaan en gerugte en twiste oor die hele aangesig van die land versprei sodat hy die harte mag verhard van die volk teen dit wat goed was en teen dit wat sou kom.
- 23 En nieteenstaande die tekens en wonders wat onder die volk van die Here verrig is, en die baie wonderwerke wat hulle gedoen het, het Satan groot houvas verkry op die harte van die mense op die hele aangesig van die land.
- 24 En so het die negentigste jaar van die heerskappy van die regters oor die volk van Nefi geëindig.
- 25 En so het die boek van Helaman geëindig, volgens die kroniek van Helaman en sy seuns.

That it is not reasonable that such a being as a Christ shall come; if so, and he be the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, as it has been spoken, why will he not show himself unto us as well as unto them who shall be at Jerusalem?

Yea, why will he not show himself in this land as well as in the land of Jerusalem?

But behold, we know that this is a wicked tradition, which has been handed down unto us by our fathers, to cause us that we should believe in some great and marvelous thing which should come to pass, but not among us, but in a land which is far distant, a land which we know not; therefore they can keep us in ignorance, for we cannot witness with our own eyes that they are true.

And they will, by the cunning and the mysterious arts of the evil one, work some great mystery which we cannot understand, which will keep us down to be servants to their words, and also servants unto them, for we depend upon them to teach us the word; and thus will they keep us in ignorance if we will yield ourselves unto them, all the days of our lives.

And many more things did the people imagine up in their hearts, which were foolish and vain; and they were much disturbed, for Satan did stir them up to do iniquity continually; yea, he did go about spreading rumors and contentions upon all the face of the land, that he might harden the hearts of the people against that which was good and against that which should come.

And notwithstanding the signs and the wonders which were wrought among the people of the Lord, and the many miracles which they did, Satan did get great hold upon the hearts of the people upon all the face of the land.

And thus ended the ninetyeth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus ended the book of Helaman, according to the record of Helaman and his sons.

Derde Nefi

Die Boek van Nefi

Die Seun van Nefi, Wat die Seun Was van Helaman

En Helaman was die seun van Helaman, wat die seun was van Alma, wat die seun was van Alma, wat 'n afstammeling was van Nefi wat die seun was van Lebi, wat uit Jerusalem gekom het in die eerste jaar van die heerskappy van Sedekia, die koning van Juda.

3 Nefi 1

- 1 Nou het dit gebeur dat die een en negentigste jaar verbygegaan het en dit was seshonderd jaar vanaf die tyd dat Lehi Jerusalem verlaat het; en dit was in die jaar dat Lachoneüs die hoofregter was en die goewerneur oor die land.
- 2 En Nefi, die seun van Helaman, het vertrek uit die land Zarahemla, en het opdrag gegee aan sy seun Nefi, wat sy oudste seun was, aangaande die plate van brons, en al die kronieke wat bygehou is, en al daardie dinge wat heilig gehou is, vanaf die vertrek van Lehi uit Jerusalem.
- 3 Toe het hy vertrek uit die land, en waarheen hy gegaan het, weet geen mens nie; en sy seun Nefi het die kronieke bygehou in sy plek, ja, die kroniek van hierdie volk.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat aan die begin van die twee en negentigste jaar, kyk, die profesieë van die profete het begin om meer ten volle vervul te word; want daar het begin om groter tekens en groter wonderwerke verrig te word onder die volk.
- 5 Maar daar was sommige wat begin het om te sê dat die tyd verby was vir die woorde om vervul te word, wat gespreek is deur Samuel, die Lamaniet.
- 6 En hulle het hul begin verheug oor hul broers, en gesê: Kyk, die tyd is verby, en die woorde van Samuel is nie vervul nie; daarom, julle vreugde en julle geloof aangaande hierdie ding was ydel.

Third Nephi

The Book of Nephi

the Son of Nephi, Who Was the Son of Helaman

And Helaman was the son of Helaman, who was the son of Alma, who was the son of Alma, being a descendant of Nephi who was the son of Lehi, who came out of Jerusalem in the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, the king of Judah.

3 Nephi 1

Now it came to pass that the ninety and first year had passed away and it was six hundred years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; and it was in the year that Lachoneus was the chief judge and the governor over the land.

And Nephi, the son of Helaman, had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, giving charge unto his son Nephi, who was his eldest son, concerning the plates of brass, and all the records which had been kept, and all those things which had been kept sacred from the departure of Lehi out of Jerusalem.

Then he departed out of the land, and whither he went, no man knoweth; and his son Nephi did keep the records in his stead, yea, the record of this people.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the ninety and second year, behold, the prophecies of the prophets began to be fulfilled more fully; for there began to be greater signs and greater miracles wrought among the people.

But there were some who began to say that the time was past for the words to be fulfilled, which were spoken by Samuel, the Lamanite.

And they began to rejoice over their brethren, saying: Behold the time is past, and the words of Samuel are not fulfilled; therefore, your joy and your faith concerning this thing hath been vain.

- 7 En dit het gebeur dat hulle 'n groot oproer gemaak het dwarsdeur die land; en die mense wat geglo het, het begin om baie bedroef te word, uit vrees dat enige van daardie dinge wat gespreek is, nie mag gebeur nie.
- 8 Maar kyk, hulle het standvastig uitgesien na daardie dag en daardie nag en daardie dag wat sou wees soos een dag asof daar geen nag was nie, sodat hulle mag weet dat hulle geloof nie ydel was nie.
- 9 Nou het dit gebeur dat daar 'n dag bepaal is deur die ongelowiges, waarop diegene wat geglo het in daardie oorleweringe doodgemaak sou word tensy die teken sou plaasvind, wat gegee is deur Samuel die profet.
- 10 Nou het dit gebeur dat toe Nephi, die seun van Nephi, hierdie boosheid gesien het van sy volk, was sy hart uitermate bedroef.
- 11 En dit het gebeur dat hy uitgegaan het en homself neergebuig het op die aarde, en kragtig geroep het tot sy God ten behoeve van sy volk, ja, diegene wat op die punt was om vernietig te word vanweë hul geloof in die oorlewering van hulle vaders.
- 12 En dit het gebeur dat hy kragtig tot die Here geroep het daardie hele dag, en kyk, die stem van die Here het tot hom gekom, en gesê:
- 13 Rig op jou hoof en hou goeie moed; want kyk, die tyd is op hande, en in hierdie nag sal die teken gegee word, en môre kom Ek in die wêreld, om te toon aan die wêreld dat Ek dit alles sal vervul wat Ek laat spreek het by monde van my heilige profete.
- 14 Kyk, Ek kom na my eie, om alle dinge te vervul wat Ek bekend gemaak het aan die kinders van mense vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld, en om die wil te doen, beide van die Vader en van die Seun—van die Vader vanweë My, en van die Seun vanweë my vlees. En kyk, die tyd is op hande, en hierdie nag sal die teken gegee word.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat die woorde wat tot Nephi gekom het, vervul is net soos hulle gespreek is; want kyk, met die ondergaan van die son, was daar geen donkerte nie; en die volk het begin om verbaas te wees omdat daar geen duisternis was toe die nag gekom het nie.

And it came to pass that they did make a great uproar throughout the land; and the people who believed began to be very sorrowful, lest by any means those things which had been spoken might not come to pass.

But behold, they did watch steadfastly for that day and that night and that day which should be as one day as if there were no night, that they might know that their faith had not been vain.

Now it came to pass that there was a day set apart by the unbelievers, that all those who believed in those traditions should be put to death except the sign should come to pass, which had been given by Samuel the prophet.

Now it came to pass that when Nephi, the son of Nephi, saw this wickedness of his people, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

And it came to pass that he went out and bowed himself down upon the earth, and cried mightily to his God in behalf of his people, yea, those who were about to be destroyed because of their faith in the tradition of their fathers.

And it came to pass that he cried mightily unto the Lord all that day; and behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, saying:

Lift up your head and be of good cheer; for behold, the time is at hand, and on this night shall the sign be given, and on the morrow come I into the world, to show unto the world that I will fulfil all that which I have caused to be spoken by the mouth of my holy prophets.

Behold, I come unto my own, to fulfil all things which I have made known unto the children of men from the foundation of the world, and to do the will, both of the Father and of the Son—of the Father because of me, and of the Son because of my flesh. And behold, the time is at hand, and this night shall the sign be given.

And it came to pass that the words which came unto Nephi were fulfilled, according as they had been spoken; for behold, at the going down of the sun there was no darkness; and the people began to be astonished because there was no darkness when the night came.

16 En daar was baie, wat nie die woorde geglo het van die profete nie, wat neergeval het op die aarde en geword het asof hulle dood was, want hulle het geweet dat die groot plan van vernietiging wat hulle gesmee het vir diegene wat geglo het in die woorde van die profete, verydel is; want die teken wat gegee was, was reeds op hande.

17 En hulle het begin om te weet dat die Seun van God binnekort moes verskyn; ja, kortom, al die mense op die aangesig van die hele aarde, van die weste tot die ooste, beide in die land noord en in die land suid, was so uitermate verbaas dat hulle neergeval het op die aarde.

18 Want hulle het geweet dat die profete getuig het van hierdie dinge vir baie jare, en dat die teken wat gegee was, reeds op hande was; en hulle het begin om te vrees vanweë hulle ongeregtheid en hulle ongelooft.

19 En dit het gebeur dat daar geen donkerte was gedurende daardie hele nag nie, maar dit was so lig asof dit middag was. En dit het gebeur dat die son weer opgekom het in die môre, volgens sy aangewese orde; en hulle het geweet dat dit die dag was dat die Here gebore sou word, vanweë die teken wat gegee was.

20 En dit het gebeur, ja, alle dinge, elke gedeelte, volgens die woorde van die profete.

21 En dit het ook gebeur dat 'n nuwe ster verskyn het, volgens die woord.

22 En dit het gebeur dat vanaf hierdie tyd daar begin is om leuens uitgestuur te word onder die volk, deur Satan, om hulle harte te verhard, met die bedoeling dat hulle nie sou glo in daardie tekens en wonders wat hulle gesien het nie; maar nieteenstaande hierdie leuens en bedriërye, het die grootste gedeelte van die volk geglo, en is bekeer tot die Here.

23 En dit het gebeur dat Nephi uitgegaan het onder die volk en ook baie ander, en gedoop het tot bekering, waarin daar 'n groot vergifnis van sondes was. En so het die volk weer begin om vrede te hê in die land.

And there were many, who had not believed the words of the prophets, who fell to the earth and became as if they were dead, for they knew that the great plan of destruction which they had laid for those who believed in the words of the prophets had been frustrated; for the sign which had been given was already at hand.

And they began to know that the Son of God must shortly appear; yea, in fine, all the people upon the face of the whole earth from the west to the east, both in the land north and in the land south, were so exceedingly astonished that they fell to the earth.

For they knew that the prophets had testified of these things for many years, and that the sign which had been given was already at hand; and they began to fear because of their iniquity and their unbelief.

And it came to pass that there was no darkness in all that night, but it was as light as though it was midday. And it came to pass that the sun did rise in the morning again, according to its proper order; and they knew that it was the day that the Lord should be born, because of the sign which had been given.

And it had come to pass, yea, all things, every whit, according to the words of the prophets.

And it came to pass also that a new star did appear, according to the word.

And it came to pass that from this time forth there began to be lyings sent forth among the people, by Satan, to harden their hearts, to the intent that they might not believe in those signs and wonders which they had seen; but notwithstanding these lyings and deceivings the more part of the people did believe, and were converted unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that Nephi went forth among the people, and also many others, baptizing unto repentance, in the which there was a great remission of sins. And thus the people began again to have peace in the land.

- 24 En daar was geen twiste nie, behalwe vir 'n paar wat begin het om te preek, wat gepoog het om te bewys deur die skrifteure dat dit nie meer noodsaaklik was om die wet van Moses te onderhou nie. Nou, in hierdie ding het hulle gefouteer, omdat hulle nie die skrifteure verstaan het nie.
- 25 Maar dit het so gebeur dat hulle spoedig tot bekeering gekom het, en was oortuig van die dwaling waarin hulle was, want dit is bekend gemaak aan hulle dat die wet nog nie vervul was nie, en dat dit vervul moet word in elke opsig, ja, die woord het tot hulle gekom dat dit vervul moet word; ja, dat nie een jota of tittel sou verbygaan totdat dit alles vervul sou word nie, daarom, in dieselfde jaar is hulle gebring tot 'n kennis van hulle dwaling, en het hulle foute bely.
- 26 En so het die twee en negentigste jaar verbygegaan, wat blye tydings gebring het aan die volk vanweë die tekens wat gebeur het, volgens die woorde van die profesie van al die heilige profete.
- 27 En dit het gebeur dat die drie en negentigste jaar ook verbygegaan het in vrede, behalwe vir die Gadianton-rowers, wat in die berge gewoon het, wat die land vervuil het; want so sterk was hulle vestings en hulle geheime plekke dat die volk hulle nie kon oorrompel nie; daarom het hulle baie moorde gepleeg, en het baie slagting onder die volk aangerig.
- 28 En dit het gebeur dat in die vier en negentigste jaar het hulle begin om te vermeerder in 'n groot mate, omdat daar baie afvalliges was van die Nefiete wat na hulle gevlug het, wat groot droefheid veroorsaak het vir daardie Nefiete wat oorgebly het in die land.
- 29 En daar was ook 'n rede tot veel droefheid onder die Lamaniete; want kyk, hulle het baie kinders gehad wat groot geword en begin het om toe te neem in jare, dat hulle onafhanklik geword het, en weggelei is deur sommiges wat Zoramiete was, deur hulle leuens en hulle vleierende woorde, om aan te sluit by daardie Gadianton-rowers.
- 30 En so is die Lamaniete ook gekwel, en het begin om te kwyn in hul geloof en regverdigheid, vanweë die boosheid van die opkomende geslag.

And there were no contentions, save it were a few that began to preach, endeavoring to prove by the scriptures that it was no more expedient to observe the law of Moses. Now in this thing they did err, having not understood the scriptures.

But it came to pass that they soon became converted, and were convinced of the error which they were in, for it was made known unto them that the law was not yet fulfilled, and that it must be fulfilled in every whit; yea, the word came unto them that it must be fulfilled; yea, that one jot or tittle should not pass away till it should all be fulfilled; therefore in this same year were they brought to a knowledge of their error and did confess their faults.

And thus the ninety and second year did pass away, bringing glad tidings unto the people because of the signs which did come to pass, according to the words of the prophecy of all the holy prophets.

And it came to pass that the ninety and third year did also pass away in peace, save it were for the Gadianton robbers, who dwelt upon the mountains, who did infest the land; for so strong were their holds and their secret places that the people could not overpower them; therefore they did commit many murders, and did do much slaughter among the people.

And it came to pass that in the ninety and fourth year they began to increase in a great degree, because there were many dissenters of the Nephites who did flee unto them, which did cause much sorrow unto those Nephites who did remain in the land.

And there was also a cause of much sorrow among the Lamanites; for behold, they had many children who did grow up and began to wax strong in years, that they became for themselves, and were led away by some who were Zoramites, by their lyings and their flattering words, to join those Gadianton robbers.

And thus were the Lamanites afflicted also, and began to decrease as to their faith and righteousness, because of the wickedness of the rising generation.

3 Nefi 2

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat die vyf en negentigste jaar ook so verbygegaan het, en die volk het begin om daardie tekens en wonders te vergeet wat hulle gehoor het, en het begin om minder en minder verbaas te word oor 'n teken of 'n wonder van die hemel, in soverre dat hulle begin het om verhard te word in hulle harte, en blind in hulle verstand, en het begin om alles wat hulle gehoor en gesien het te wantrou—
- 2 Terwyl hulle hul 'n soort ydele ding begin verbeel het in hul harte, dat dit verrig is deur die mens en deur die mag van die duiwel, om die harte van die volk weg te lei en te bedrieg; en so het Satan weer besit gekry van die harte van die volk, in soverre dat hy hulle oë verblind het en hulle weggelei het om te glo dat die leer van Christus 'n dwase en 'n ydele ding was.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat die volk sterk begin word het in boosheid en gruwels; en hulle het nie geglo dat daar nog enige tekens en wonders gegee sou word nie; en Satan het rondgegaan, en die harte van die volk weggelei, en hulle versoek en groot gruwels laat doen in die land.
- 4 En so het die ses en negentigste jaar verbygegaan; en ook die sewe en negentigste jaar; en ook die agt en negentigste jaar; en ook die nege en negentigste jaar;
- 5 En ook 'n honderd jaar het verbygegaan vanaf die dae van Mosia, wat koning was oor die volk van die Nefiete.
- 6 En seshonderd en nege jaar het verbygegaan vandat Lehi Jerusalem verlaat het.
- 7 En nege jaar het verbygegaan vanaf die tyd toe die teken gegee is, waarvan deur die profete gespreek is, dat Christus sou kom in die wêreld.
- 8 Nou het die Nefiete begin om hul tyd te reken vanaf hierdie tydperk toe die teken gegee is, of vanaf die koms van Christus; daarom, nege jaar het verbygegaan.
- 9 En Nepi, wat die vader was van Nepi, wat die verantwoordelikheid gehad het vir die kronieke, het nie teruggekeer na die land Zarahemla nie, en kon nêrens gevind word in die hele land nie.

3 Nephi 2

And it came to pass that thus passed away the ninety and fifth year also, and the people began to forget those signs and wonders which they had heard, and began to be less and less astonished at a sign or a wonder from heaven, insomuch that they began to be hard in their hearts, and blind in their minds, and began to disbelieve all which they had heard and seen—

Imagining up some vain thing in their hearts, that it was wrought by men and by the power of the devil, to lead away and deceive the hearts of the people; and thus did Satan get possession of the hearts of the people again, insomuch that he did blind their eyes and lead them away to believe that the doctrine of Christ was a foolish and a vain thing.

And it came to pass that the people began to wax strong in wickedness and abominations; and they did not believe that there should be any more signs or wonders given; and Satan did go about, leading away the hearts of the people, tempting them and causing them that they should do great wickedness in the land.

And thus did pass away the ninety and sixth year; and also the ninety and seventh year; and also the ninety and eighth year; and also the ninety and ninth year;

And also an hundred years had passed away since the days of Mosiah, who was king over the people of the Nephites.

And six hundred and nine years had passed away since Lehi left Jerusalem.

And nine years had passed away from the time when the sign was given, which was spoken of by the prophets, that Christ should come into the world.

Now the Nephites began to reckon their time from this period when the sign was given, or from the coming of Christ; therefore, nine years had passed away.

And Nepi, who was the father of Nepi, who had the charge of the records, did not return to the land of Zarahemla, and could nowhere be found in all the land.

10 En dit het gebeur dat die volk steeds volgehou het in boosheid, nieteenstaande die baie prediking en profetering wat onder hulle gestuur is; en so het die tiende jaar ook verbygegaan; en die elfde jaar het ook verbygegaan in ongeregtheid.

11 En dit het gebeur in die dertiende jaar het daar oorloë en twiste begin ontstaan dwarsdeur die hele land; want die Gadianton-rowers het so talryk geword, en het so baie van die mense doodgemaak, en het soveel stede vernietig, en het soveel dood en slagting versprei dwarsdeur die land, dat dit noodsaaklik geword het dat al die mense, beide die Nefiete en die Lamaniete, wapens moes opneem teen hulle.

12 Daarom, al die Lamaniete wat tot die Here bekeer het, het met hulle broers, die Nefiete, verenig en is genoodsaak, ter wille van die veiligheid van hulle lewens en hul vroue en hul kinders, om wapens op te neem teen daardie Gadianton-rowers, ja, en ook om hulle regte te handhaaf, en die voorregte van hulle kerk en van hulle aanbidding, en hulle vryheid en hulle onafhanklikheid.

13 En dit het gebeur dat voordat hierdie dertiende jaar verbygegaan het, is die Nefiete bedreig deur algehele vernietiging vanweë hierdie oorlog, wat uitermate smartlik geword het.

14 En dit het gebeur dat daardie Lamaniete wat verenig het met die Nefiete, gereken is onder die Nefiete;

15 En hulle vloek is weggeneem van hulle, en hulle vel het wit geword soos die Nefiete;

16 En hulle jong manne en hulle dogters het uitermate mooi geword, en hulle is onder die Nefiete gereken, en is Nefiete genoem. En so het die dertiende jaar geëindig.

17 En dit het gebeur aan die begin van die veertiende jaar, het die oorlog tussen die rowers en die volk van Nepi voortgeduur en het uitermate smartlik geword; nogtans, die volk van Nepi het 'n mate van voordeel oor die rowers behaal, in soverre dat hulle hul teruggedryf het uit hulle lande, in die berge en in hulle geheime plekke in.

And it came to pass that the people did still remain in wickedness, notwithstanding the much preaching and prophesying which was sent among them; and thus passed away the tenth year also; and the eleventh year also passed away in iniquity.

And it came to pass in the thirteenth year there began to be wars and contentions throughout all the land; for the Gadianton robbers had become so numerous, and did slay so many of the people, and did lay waste so many cities, and did spread so much death and carnage throughout the land, that it became expedient that all the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, should take up arms against them.

Therefore, all the Lamanites who had become converted unto the Lord did unite with their brethren, the Nephites, and were compelled, for the safety of their lives and their women and their children, to take up arms against those Gadianton robbers, yea, and also to maintain their rights, and the privileges of their church and of their worship, and their freedom and their liberty.

And it came to pass that before this thirteenth year had passed away the Nephites were threatened with utter destruction because of this war, which had become exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that those Lamanites who had united with the Nephites were numbered among the Nephites;

And their curse was taken from them, and their skin became white like unto the Nephites;

And their young men and their daughters became exceedingly fair, and they were numbered among the Nephites, and were called Nephites. And thus ended the thirteenth year.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the fourteenth year, the war between the robbers and the people of Nephi did continue and did become exceedingly sore; nevertheless, the people of Nephi did gain some advantage of the robbers, insomuch that they did drive them back out of their lands into the mountains and into their secret places.

18 En so het die veertiende jaar geëindig. En in die vyftiende jaar het hulle uitgekom teen die volk van Nefi; en vanweë die boosheid van die volk van Nefi, en hulle baie twiste en onenighede, het die Gadianton-rowers baie voordele oor hulle behaal.

19 En so het die vyftiende jaar geëindig, en so was die volk in 'n toestand van baie verdrukkinge; en die swaard van vernietiging het oor hulle gehang, in so verre dat hulle op die punt was om neergevel te word daardeur, en dit vanweë hulle ongeregtigheid.

And thus ended the fourteenth year. And in the fifteenth year they did come forth against the people of Nephi; and because of the wickedness of the people of Nephi, and their many contentions and dissensions, the Gadianton robbers did gain many advantages over them.

And thus ended the fifteenth year, and thus were the people in a state of many afflictions; and the sword of destruction did hang over them, insomuch that they were about to be smitten down by it, and this because of their iniquity.

3 Nefi 3

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat in die sestende jaar vanaf die koms van Christus, het Lachoneüs die goewerneur van die land, 'n brief ontvang van die leier en die goewerneur van hierdie bende van rowers; en hierdie is die woorde wat geskrywe was, wat sê:
- 2 Lachoneüs, hoogedele en hoofgoewerneur van die land, kyk, ek skryf hierdie brief aan u en gee aan u uitermate groot lof vanweë u standvastigheid, en ook die standvastigheid van u volk, in die handhawing van dit wat julle veronderstel julle reg en vryheid te wees; ja, julle staan goed, asof julle gesteun is deur die hand van 'n god, in die verdediging van julle vryheid, en julle eiendom, en julle land, of dit wat julle so noem.
- 3 En dit blyk vir my 'n jammerte te wees, hoogedele Lachoneüs, dat u so dwaas en ydel sou wees om te veronderstel dat julle kan staan teen soveel dapper manne wat onder my bevel is, wat nou op hierdie oomblik onder die wapen staan en wag met groot gretigheid vir die woord—Gaan af op die Nefiete en vernietig hulle.
- 4 En ek, omdat ek weet van hulle onoorwinlike gees, omdat ek hulle beproef het op die slagveld, en omdat ek weet van hulle ewigdurende haat teenoor julle vanweë die baie onregte wat julle aan hulle gedoen het, daarom, as hulle sou afkom teen julle, sal hulle julle besoek met algehele vernietiging.
- 5 Daarom het ek hierdie brief geskrywe, en dit verseël met my eie hand, omdat ek begaan is oor julle welsyn, vanweë julle standvastigheid in dit wat julle glo is reg, en julle edele gees op die slagveld.
- 6 Daarom skryf ek aan jou, en verlang dat julle sal oorgee aan hierdie, my volk, jul stede, jul lande, en jul besittings, eerder as dat hulle julle sou besoek met die swaard en dat vernietiging oor julle sou kom.
- 7 Of, met ander woorde, gee julleself oor aan ons, en verenig met ons, en word vertrou met ons geheime werke, en word ons broers, sodat julle soos ons mag wees—nie ons slawe nie, maar ons broers en deelgenote van al ons besittings.

3 Nephi 3

And now it came to pass that in the sixteenth year from the coming of Christ, Lachoneus, the governor of the land, received an epistle from the leader and the governor of this band of robbers; and these were the words which were written, saying:

Lachoneus, most noble and chief governor of the land, behold, I write this epistle unto you, and do give unto you exceedingly great praise because of your firmness, and also the firmness of your people, in maintaining that which ye suppose to be your right and liberty; yea, ye do stand well, as if ye were supported by the hand of a god, in the defence of your liberty, and your property, and your country, or that which ye do call so.

And it seemeth a pity unto me, most noble Lachoneus, that ye should be so foolish and vain as to suppose that ye can stand against so many brave men who are at my command, who do now at this time stand in their arms, and do await with great anxiety for the word—Go down upon the Nephites and destroy them.

And I, knowing of their unconquerable spirit, having proved them in the field of battle, and knowing of their everlasting hatred towards you because of the many wrongs which ye have done unto them, therefore if they should come down against you they would visit you with utter destruction.

Therefore I have written this epistle, sealing it with mine own hand, feeling for your welfare, because of your firmness in that which ye believe to be right, and your noble spirit in the field of battle.

Therefore I write unto you, desiring that ye would yield up unto this my people, your cities, your lands, and your possessions, rather than that they should visit you with the sword and that destruction should come upon you.

Or in other words, yield yourselves up unto us, and unite with us and become acquainted with our secret works, and become our brethren that ye may be like unto us—not our slaves, but our brethren and partners of all our substance.

8 En kyk, ek sweer vir jou, as jy dit sal doen, met 'n eed, sal julle nie vernietig word nie; maar as jy dit nie sal doen nie, sweer ek vir jou met 'n eed, dat ek volgende maand sal beveel dat my leërs sal afkom teen julle en hulle sal nie hul hand terughou nie en sal nie spaar nie, maar sal julle doodmaak, en sal die swaard laat val op julle totdat julle uitgewis sal word.

9 En kyk, ek is Giddianhi; en ek is die goewerneur van hierdie, die geheime organisasie van Gadianton; welke organisasie en die werke daarvan ek weet goed is; en hulle is van die voortyd en hulle is oorgelewer aan ons.

10 En ek skryf hierdie brief aan jou, Lachoneüs, en ek hoop dat julle jul lande en julle besittings sal oorgee sonder die vergieting van bloed, dat hierdie, my volk, hulle regte en regering mag terugwin, wat afvallig geword het van julle vanweë julle boosheid om van hulle hul regte tot regering terug te hou, en tensy julle dit doen, sal ek hulle onregte wreek. Ek is Giddianhi.

11 En nou het dit gebeur toe Lachoneüs hierdie brief ontvang het, was hy uitermate verbaas vanweë die voorbarigheid van Giddianhi om die besitneming van die land van die Nefiete te eis, en ook om die volk te dreig en om die onregte te wreek van diegene wat geen onreg ontvang het nie, behalwe dat hulle hulself veronreg het deur oor te loop na daardie goddelose en gruwelike rowers.

12 Nou kyk, hierdie Lachoneüs, die goewerneur, was 'n regverdige man, en kon nie bang gemaak word deur die eise en dreigemente van 'n rower nie; daarom het hy nie ag geslaan op die brief van Giddianhi, die goewerneur van die rowers nie, maar hy het sy volk tot die Here laat roep om krag vir die tyd wanneer die rowers sou afkom teen hulle.

13 Ja, hy het 'n aankondiging onder die hele volk gestuur dat hulle hul vroue bymekaar moes maak, en hulle kinders, hulle grootvee en hulle kleinvee, en al hulle besittings, behalwe hulle land, op een plek.

And behold, I swear unto you, if ye will do this, with an oath, ye shall not be destroyed; but if ye will not do this, I swear unto you with an oath, that on the morrow month I will command that my armies shall come down against you, and they shall not stay their hand and shall spare not, but shall slay you, and shall let fall the sword upon you even until ye shall become extinct.

And behold, I am Giddianhi; and I am the governor of this the secret society of Gadianton; which society and the works thereof I know to be good; and they are of ancient date and they have been handed down unto us.

And I write this epistle unto you, Lachoneus, and I hope that ye will deliver up your lands and your possessions, without the shedding of blood, that this my people may recover their rights and government, who have dissented away from you because of your wickedness in retaining from them their rights of government, and except ye do this, I will avenge their wrongs. I am Giddianhi.

And now it came to pass when Lachoneus received this epistle he was exceedingly astonished, because of the boldness of Giddianhi demanding the possession of the land of the Nephites, and also of threatening the people and avenging the wrongs of those that had received no wrong, save it were they had wronged themselves by dissenting away unto those wicked and abominable robbers.

Now behold, this Lachoneus, the governor, was a just man, and could not be frightened by the demands and the threatenings of a robber; therefore he did not hearken to the epistle of Giddianhi, the governor of the robbers, but he did cause that his people should cry unto the Lord for strength against the time that the robbers should come down against them.

Yea, he sent a proclamation among all the people, that they should gather together their women, and their children, their flocks and their herds, and all their substance, save it were their land, unto one place.

14 En hy het versterkings laat oprig rondom hulle, en die sterkte daarvan moes uitermate groot wees. En hy het veroorsaak dat die leërs, beide van die Nefiete en van die Lamaniete, of van hulle almal wat onder die Nefiete gereken is, as wagte geplaas moes word rondomheen, om hulle dop te hou, en hulle te beveilig teen die rowers dag en nag.

15 Ja, hy het aan hulle gesê: Sowaar as die Here leef, tensy julle bekeer van al julle ongeregthede, en roep tot die Here, sal julle geensins verlos word uit die hande van daardie Gadianton-rowers nie.

16 En só groot en wonderbaarlik was die woorde en profesieë van Lachoneüs dat hulle vrees laat kom het oor die hele volk; en hulle het hulself ingespan met hul mag om te handel ooreenkomstig die woorde van Lachoneüs.

17 En dit het gebeur dat Lachoneüs hoofkapteins aangestel het oor al die leërs van die Nefiete, om hulle aan te voer op die tydstip wanneer die rowers sou afkom uit die wildernis teen hulle.

18 Nou, die vernaamste onder al die hoofkapteins en die opperbevelvoerder oor al die leërs van die Nefiete is aangestel, en sy naam was Gidgiddoni.

19 Nou, dit was die gebruik onder al die Nefiete om as hulle hoofkapteins aan te stel, (behalwe in hulle tye van boosheid) iemand wat die gees van openbaring gehad het en ook profesie; daarom, hierdie Gidgiddoni was 'n groot profeet onder hulle, so ook was die hoofregter.

20 Nou, die volk het aan Gidgiddoni gesê: Bid tot die Here, en laat ons optrek na die berge en die wildernis in, dat ons die rowers kan aanval en hulle vernietig in hul eie lande.

21 Maar Gidgiddoni het aan hulle gesê: Die Here verbied; want as ons sou optrek teen hulle sal die Here ons uitlewer in hulle hande; daarom, ons sal onself voorberei in die middel van ons lande, en ons sal al ons leërs bymekaarmaak, en ons sal nie teen hulle optrek nie, maar ons sal wag totdat hulle teen ons sal optrek; daarom, sowaar as die Here leef, as ons dit doen sal Hy hulle in ons hande uitlewer.

And he caused that fortifications should be built round about them, and the strength thereof should be exceedingly great. And he caused that armies, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites, or of all them who were numbered among the Nephites, should be placed as guards round about to watch them, and to guard them from the robbers day and night.

Yea, he said unto them: As the Lord liveth, except ye repent of all your iniquities, and cry unto the Lord, ye will in nowise be delivered out of the hands of those Gadianton robbers.

And so great and marvelous were the words and prophecies of Lachoneus that they did cause fear to come upon all the people; and they did exert themselves in their might to do according to the words of Lachoneus.

And it came to pass that Lachoneus did appoint chief captains over all the armies of the Nephites, to command them at the time that the robbers should come down out of the wilderness against them.

Now the chieftest among all the chief captains and the great commander of all the armies of the Nephites was appointed, and his name was Gidgiddoni.

Now it was the custom among all the Nephites to appoint for their chief captains, (save it were in their times of wickedness) some one that had the spirit of revelation and also prophecy; therefore, this Gidgiddoni was a great prophet among them, as also was the chief judge.

Now the people said unto Gidgiddoni: Pray unto the Lord, and let us go up upon the mountains and into the wilderness, that we may fall upon the robbers and destroy them in their own lands.

But Gidgiddoni saith unto them: The Lord forbid; for if we should go up against them the Lord would deliver us into their hands; therefore we will prepare ourselves in the center of our lands, and we will gather all our armies together, and we will not go against them, but we will wait till they shall come against us; therefore as the Lord liveth, if we do this he will deliver them into our hands.

22 En dit het gebeur in die sewentiende jaar, teen die laaste gedeelte van die jaar, het die aankondiging van Lachoneüs uitgegaan oor die aangesig van die hele land, en hulle het hul perde geneem, en hul waens, en hul diere, en al hulle kleinvee, en hulle grootvee, en hulle graan, en al hulle besittings, en het uitgemaarsjeer in duisende en in tienduisende, totdat hulle almal uitgegaan het na die plek wat bepaal was waar hulle hul moes bymeekaarmaak, om hulleself te verdedig teen hulle vyande.

23 En die land wat aangewys is, was die land Zarahemla, en die land wat tussen die land Zarahemla en die land Oorvloed was, ja, tot aan die grens wat tussen die land Oorvloed en die land Verlatenheid was.

24 En daar was baie duisende mense wat Nefiete genoem is, wat hulleself bymeekaargemaak het in hierdie land. Nou, Lachoneüs het hulle laat bymeekaarkom in die land suidwaarts, vanweë die groot vloek wat oor die land noordwaarts was.

25 En hulle het hulself versterk teen hul vyande; en hulle het gewoon in een land, en in een groep, en hulle het die woorde wat deur Lachoneüs gespreek is gevrees, in soverre dat hulle bekeer het van al hulle sondes; en hulle het hul gebede laat opgaan na die Here hulle God, dat Hy hulle sou verlos in die tyd wat hulle vyande sou afkom teen hulle in die stryd.

26 En hulle was uitermate bedroef vanweë hulle vyande. En Gidgiddoni het hulle wapens van oorlog van elke soort laat maak, en hulle moes sterk wees met wapenrusting, en met skilde, en met beukelaars, volgens die wyse van sy opdrag.

And it came to pass in the seventeenth year, in the latter end of the year, the proclamation of Lachoneus had gone forth throughout all the face of the land, and they had taken their horses, and their chariots, and their cattle, and all their flocks, and their herds, and their grain, and all their substance, and did march forth by thousands and by tens of thousands, until they had all gone forth to the place which had been appointed that they should gather themselves together, to defend themselves against their enemies.

And the land which was appointed was the land of Zarahemla, and the land which was between the land Zarahemla and the land Bountiful, yea, to the line which was between the land Bountiful and the land Desolation.

And there were a great many thousand people who were called Nephites, who did gather themselves together in this land. Now Lachoneus did cause that they should gather themselves together in the land southward, because of the great curse which was upon the land northward.

And they did fortify themselves against their enemies; and they did dwell in one land, and in one body, and they did fear the words which had been spoken by Lachoneus, insomuch that they did repent of all their sins; and they did put up their prayers unto the Lord their God, that he would deliver them in the time that their enemies should come down against them to battle.

And they were exceedingly sorrowful because of their enemies. And Gidgiddoni did cause that they should make weapons of war of every kind, and they should be strong with armor, and with shields, and with bucklers, after the manner of his instruction.

3 Nefi 4

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat in die laaste gedeelte van die agtiende jaar het daardie leërs van rowers hul voorberei vir die stryd, en het begin om af te kom en om skielik uit die heuwels te kom, en uit die berge, en die wildernis, en hulle vestings, en hulle geheime plekke, en het begin om besit te neem van die lande, beide wat in die land suid en wat in die land noord was, en het begin om besit te neem van al die lande wat verlaat is deur die Nefiete, en die stede wat verlate gelaat is.
- 2 Maar kyk, daar was geen wilde diere nóg wild in daardie lande wat verlaat is deur die Nefiete, en daar was geen wild vir die rowers nie, behalwe in die wildernis.
- 3 En die rowers kon nie bestaan nie, behalwe in die wildernis weens gebrek aan voedsel; want die Nefiete het hulle lande verlate gelaat, en het hul kleinvee en hul grootvee en al hul besittings byme-kaargemaak, en hulle was in een groep.
- 4 Daarom, daar was geen kans vir die rowers om te plunder en om voedsel te bekom nie, behalwe om openlik op te kom in die stryd teen die Nefiete; en die Nefiete wat in een groep was, en omdat hulle so 'n groot getal gehad het, en vir hulself voorrade opge-gaar het, en perde en beeste, en kleinvee van alle soorte, sodat hulle mag bestaan vir 'n tydperk van sewe jaar, in welke tyd hulle gehoop het om die rowers te vernietig vanaf die aangesig van die land; en so het die agtiende jaar verbygegaan.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat in die negentiende jaar het Giddianhi gevind dat dit noodsaaklik was dat hy moes optrek in die stryd teen die Nefiete, want daar was geen manier dat hulle kon bestaan nie, behalwe deur te plunder en te roof en te moor.
- 6 En hulle het nie gedurf om hulle te versprei oor die aangesig van die land, in soverre dat hulle graan kon kweek nie, uit vrees dat die Nefiete op hulle sou afkom en hulle doodmaak; daarom het Giddianhi aan sy leërs bevel gegee dat hulle in hierdie jaar moes optrek in die stryd teen die Nefiete.

3 Nephi 4

And it came to pass that in the latter end of the eighteenth year those armies of robbers had prepared for battle, and began to come down and to sally forth from the hills, and out of the mountains, and the wilderness, and their strongholds, and their secret places, and began to take possession of the lands, both which were in the land south and which were in the land north, and began to take possession of all the lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and the cities which had been left desolate.

But behold, there were no wild beasts nor game in those lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and there was no game for the robbers save it were in the wilderness.

And the robbers could not exist save it were in the wilderness, for the want of food; for the Nephites had left their lands desolate, and had gathered their flocks and their herds and all their substance, and they were in one body.

Therefore, there was no chance for the robbers to plunder and to obtain food, save it were to come up in open battle against the Nephites; and the Nephites being in one body, and having so great a number, and having reserved for themselves provisions, and horses and cattle, and flocks of every kind, that they might subsist for the space of seven years, in the which time they did hope to destroy the robbers from off the face of the land; and thus the eighteenth year did pass away.

And it came to pass that in the nineteenth year Giddianhi found that it was expedient that he should go up to battle against the Nephites, for there was no way that they could subsist save it were to plunder and rob and murder.

And they durst not spread themselves upon the face of the land insomuch that they could raise grain, lest the Nephites should come upon them and slay them; therefore Giddianhi gave commandment unto his armies that in this year they should go up to battle against the Nephites.

7 En dit het gebeur dat hulle opgekom het in die stryd; en dit was in die sesde maand; en kyk, groot en vreeslik was die dag toe hulle opgekom het in die stryd; en hulle was omgord volgens die wyse van rovers; en hulle het 'n lamsvel om hulle lendene gedra, en hulle was gekleur met bloed, en hulle koppe was geskeer, en hulle het helms op hulle gehad; en groot en vreeslik was die voorkoms van die leërs van Giddianhi, vanweë hul wapenrusting en omdat hulle gekleur was met bloed.

8 En dit het gebeur dat die leërs van die Nefiete, toe hulle die voorkoms van Giddianhi se leërs sien, het hulle almal neergeval op die aarde, en hulle gepleit laat opgaan na die Here hulle God, dat Hy hulle sou spaar en hulle verlos uit die hande van hulle vyande.

9 En dit het gebeur dat toe die leërs van Giddianhi dit sien, het hulle begin roep met 'n harde stem, vanweë hulle vreugde, want hulle het veronderstel dat die Nefiete neergeval het uit vrees, vanweë die verskrikking van hulle leërs.

10 Maar in hierdie ding was hulle teleurgestel, want die Nefiete het hulle nie gevrees nie; maar hulle het hul God gevrees en het Hom gesmeek om beskerming; daarom, toe die leërs van Giddianhi op hulle afstorm, was hulle voorbereid om hulle te ontmoet; ja, in die sterkte van die Here het hulle hul ontvang.

11 En die stryd het 'n aanvang geneem in hierdie die sesde maand; en groot en vreeslik was die stryd daarvan, ja, groot en vreeslik was die slagting daarvan, in soverre dat daar nooit so 'n groot slagting onder al die volk van Lehi bekend was vandat hy Jerusalem verlaat het nie.

12 En niesteenstaande die dreigemente en die ede wat Giddianhi gemaak het, kyk, die Nefiete het hulle oorwin, in soverre dat hulle teruggeval het van voor hulle.

13 En dit het gebeur dat Gidgiddoni bevel gegee het dat sy leërs hulle moes agternasit so ver as die grense van die wildernis, en dat hulle niemand moes spaar wat in hulle hande sou val langs die pad nie; en so het hulle hul agternagesit en gedood, tot by die grense van die wildernis, en wel totdat hulle die bevel uitgevoer het van Gidgiddoni.

And it came to pass that they did come up to battle; and it was in the sixth month; and behold, great and terrible was the day that they did come up to battle; and they were girded about after the manner of robbers; and they had a lamb-skin about their loins, and they were dyed in blood, and their heads were shorn, and they had head-plates upon them; and great and terrible was the appearance of the armies of Giddianhi, because of their armor, and because of their being dyed in blood.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites, when they saw the appearance of the army of Giddianhi, had all fallen to the earth, and did lift their cries to the Lord their God, that he would spare them and deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

And it came to pass that when the armies of Giddianhi saw this they began to shout with a loud voice, because of their joy, for they had supposed that the Nephites had fallen with fear because of the terror of their armies.

But in this thing they were disappointed, for the Nephites did not fear them; but they did fear their God and did supplicate him for protection; therefore, when the armies of Giddianhi did rush upon them they were prepared to meet them; yea, in the strength of the Lord they did receive them.

And the battle commenced in this the sixth month; and great and terrible was the battle thereof, yea, great and terrible was the slaughter thereof, insomuch that there never was known so great a slaughter among all the people of Lehi since he left Jerusalem.

And notwithstanding the threatenings and the oaths which Giddianhi had made, behold, the Nephites did beat them, insomuch that they did fall back from before them.

And it came to pass that Gidgiddoni commanded that his armies should pursue them as far as the borders of the wilderness, and that they should not spare any that should fall into their hands by the way; and thus they did pursue them and did slay them, to the borders of the wilderness, even until they had fulfilled the commandment of Gidgiddoni.

- 14 En dit het gebeur dat Giddianhi, wat gestaan en veg het met onverskrokkenheid, is agternagesit terwyl hy vlug; en omdat hy afgemat was weens sy vele gevegte, is hy ingehaal en doodgemaak. En so was die einde van Giddianhi die rower.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat die leërs van die Nefiete weer teruggetrek het na hulle plek van veiligheid. En dit het gebeur dat hierdie negentiende jaar verbygegaan het, en die rowers het nie weer gekom om te veg nie; nóg het hulle weer gekom in die twintigste jaar.
- 16 En in die een en twintigste jaar het hulle nie tot die stryd opgekom nie, maar hulle het opgekom van alle kante om die volk van Nepi rondom te beleër; want hulle het veronderstel dat as hulle die volk van Nepi sou afsny van hulle lande, en hulle sou inperk aan elke kant, en as hulle hul sou afsny van al hulle buite aktiwiteite, dat hulle hulself kon laat oorgee volgens hulle wense.
- 17 Nou het hulle vir hulself 'n ander leier aangestel, wie se naam Zemnariha was; daarom was dit Zemnariha wat hierdie beleg laat plaasvind het.
- 18 Maar kyk, dit was 'n voordeel vir die Nefiete; want dit was onmoontlik vir die rowers om die beleg lank genoeg vol te hou om enige uitwerking te hê op die Nefiete, vanweë hul baie voorrade wat hulle opgeberg het,
- 19 En vanweë die skaarsheid aan voorrade onder die rowers; want kyk, hulle het niks gehad nie behalwe vleis vir hulle bestaan, welke vleis hulle bekom het in die wildernis;
- 20 En dit het gebeur dat die wild skaars begin word het in die wildernis, in soverre dat die rowers op die punt was om om te kom van honger.
- 21 En die Nefiete het aanhoudend bedags en snags gemarsjeer, en hulle leërs aangeval, en hulle gedood by duisende en by tienduisende.
- 22 En so het dit die begeerte geword van die volk van Zemnariha om te onttrek van hulle voorneme, vanweë die groot vernietiging wat bedags en snags oor hulle gekom het.

And it came to pass that Giddianhi, who had stood and fought with boldness, was pursued as he fled; and being weary because of his much fighting he was overtaken and slain. And thus was the end of Giddianhi the robber.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites did return again to their place of security. And it came to pass that this nineteenth year did pass away, and the robbers did not come again to battle; neither did they come again in the twentieth year.

And in the twenty and first year they did not come up to battle, but they came up on all sides to lay siege round about the people of Nephi; for they did suppose that if they should cut off the people of Nephi from their lands, and should hem them in on every side, and if they should cut them off from all their outward privileges, that they could cause them to yield themselves up according to their wishes.

Now they had appointed unto themselves another leader, whose name was Zemnarihah; therefore it was Zemnarihah that did cause that this siege should take place.

But behold, this was an advantage to the Nephites; for it was impossible for the robbers to lay siege sufficiently long to have any effect upon the Nephites, because of their much provision which they had laid up in store,

And because of the scantiness of provisions among the robbers; for behold, they had nothing save it were meat for their subsistence, which meat they did obtain in the wilderness;

And it came to pass that the wild game became scarce in the wilderness insomuch that the robbers were about to perish with hunger.

And the Nephites were continually marching out by day and by night, and falling upon their armies, and cutting them off by thousands and by tens of thousands.

And thus it became the desire of the people of Zemnarihah to withdraw from their design, because of the great destruction which came upon them by night and by day.

23 En dit het gebeur dat Zemnariha bevel gegee het aan sy volk dat hulle hulself moes onttrek van die beleg, en na die verste dele van die land noordwaarts marsjeer.

24 En nou, Gidgiddoni omdat hy bewus was van hulle voorneme, en omdat hy geweet het van hulle swakheid vanweë die gebrek aan voedsel, en die groot slagting wat gemaak is onder hulle, daarom het hy sy leërs uitgestuur gedurende die nag, en het die weg van hulle terugtog afgesny, en het sy leërs in die weg van hulle terugtog geplaas.

25 En dit het hulle gedoen gedurende die nag, en het op hulle opmars verby die rowers gegaan, sodat die volgende dag, toe die rowers hulle opmars begin het, is hulle ontmoet deur die leërs van die Nefiete beide op hulle front en op hulle agterhoede.

26 En die rowers wat aan die suide was, is ook afgesny in hulle plekke van terugtog. En al hierdie dinge is gedoen op bevel van Gidgiddoni.

27 En daar was baie duisende wat hulle oorgegee het as gevangenes aan die Nefiete, en die res van hulle is gedood.

28 En hulle leier, Zemnariha, is geneem en opgehang aan 'n boom, ja, en wel aan die top daarvan totdat hy dood was. En toe hulle hom gehang het totdat hy dood was, het hulle die boom neergevel tot teen die aarde, en het uitgeroep met 'n luide stem, en gesê:

29 Mag die Here sy volk bewaar in regverdigheid en in heiligheid van hart, dat hulle neergevel mag word tot op die aarde almal wat sal soek om hulle te dood vanweë mag en geheime organisasies, net soos hierdie man tot die grond neergevel is.

30 En hulle het gejubel en weer uitgeroep met een stem, en gesê: Mag die God van Abraham, en die God van Isak, en die God van Jakob, hierdie volk beskerm in regverdigheid, solank as hulle die Naam van hulle God vir beskerming sal aanroep.

31 En dit het gebeur dat hulle almal saam begin sing het, en hulle God geloof het vir die groot ding wat Hy vir hulle gedoen het, deur hulle te bewaar om in die hande van hulle vyande te val.

32 Ja, hulle het uitgeroep: Hosanna aan die Allerhoogste God. En hulle het uitgeroep: Prys die Naam van die Here God Almagtig, die Allerhoogste God.

And it came to pass that Zemnariha did give command unto his people that they should withdraw themselves from the siege, and march into the furthest parts of the land northward.

And now, Gidgiddoni being aware of their design, and knowing of their weakness because of the want of food, and the great slaughter which had been made among them, therefore he did send out his armies in the night-time, and did cut off the way of their retreat, and did place his armies in the way of their retreat.

And this did they do in the night-time, and got on their march beyond the robbers, so that on the morrow, when the robbers began their march, they were met by the armies of the Nephites both in their front and in their rear.

And the robbers who were on the south were also cut off in their places of retreat. And all these things were done by command of Gidgiddoni.

And there were many thousands who did yield themselves up prisoners unto the Nephites, and the remainder of them were slain.

And their leader, Zemnariha, was taken and hanged upon a tree, yea, even upon the top thereof until he was dead. And when they had hanged him until he was dead they did fell the tree to the earth, and did cry with a loud voice, saying:

May the Lord preserve his people in righteousness and in holiness of heart, that they may cause to be felled to the earth all who shall seek to slay them because of power and secret combinations, even as this man hath been felled to the earth.

And they did rejoice and cry again with one voice, saying: May the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, protect this people in righteousness, so long as they shall call on the name of their God for protection.

And it came to pass that they did break forth, all as one, in singing, and praising their God for the great thing which he had done for them, in preserving them from falling into the hands of their enemies.

Yea, they did cry: Hosanna to the Most High God. And they did cry: Blessed be the name of the Lord God Almighty, the Most High God.

33 En hulle harte het uitgeswel van vreugde, tot die uitstorting van vele tranes, vanweë die groot goedheid van God om hulle te verlos uit die hande van hulle vyande; en hulle het geweet dit was vanweë hulle bekering en hulle ootmoed dat hulle verlos was van 'n ewigdurende vernietiging.

And their hearts were swollen with joy, unto the gushing out of many tears, because of the great goodness of God in delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; and they knew it was because of their repentance and their humility that they had been delivered from an everlasting destruction.

3 Nefi 5

- 1 En nou kyk, daar was nie 'n lewende siel onder die hele volk van die Nefiete wat in die minste die woorde van al die heilige profete wat gespreek is, betwyfel het nie; want hulle het geweet dat dit noodsaaklik was dat hulle vervul moes word.
- 2 En hulle het geweet dat dit noodsaaklik was dat Christus gekom het, vanweë die baie tekens wat gegee was, volgens die woorde van die profete; en vanweë die dinge wat alreeds gebeur het, het hulle geweet dat dit noodsaaklik was dat alle dinge moes gebeur volgens dit wat gespreek was.
- 3 Daarom het hulle al hul sondes versaak, en hulle gruwels, en hulle hoererye, en het God gedien met alle ywer dag en nag.
- 4 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe hulle al die rowers gevange geneem het, in soverre dat nie een ontsnap het wat nie gedood was nie, het hulle hul gevangenes in die gevangenis gewerp, en het die woord van God laat preek aan hulle; en soveel as wat wou bekeer van hulle sondes en 'n verbond gesluit het dat hulle nie meer sal moor nie, is vrygelaat.
- 5 Maar soveel as wat daar was wat nie 'n verbond gesluit het nie, en wat steeds aangehou het om daardie geheime moorde in hulle harte te hê, ja, soveel as wat gevind is wat dreigemente uitgeblaas het teenoor hulle broers, is veroordeel en gestraf volgens die wet.
- 6 En so het hulle 'n einde gemaak aan al daardie goddelose, en geheime, en gruwelike organisasies, waarin daar soveel boosheid was, en soveel moorde gepleeg is.
- 7 En so het die twee en twintigste jaar verbygegaan, en die drie en twintigste jaar ook, en die vier en twintigste; en die vyf en twintigste; en so het vyf en twintig jaar verbygegaan.
- 8 En daar het baie dinge gebeur wat, in die oë van sommiges, groot en wonderbaarlik sou wees; nogtans, hulle kan nie almal geskrywe word in hierdie boek nie; ja, hierdie boek kan nie eers 'n honderdste deel bevat van wat gedoen is onder so baie mense in die tydperk van vyf en twintig jaar nie;

3 Nephi 5

And now behold, there was not a living soul among all the people of the Nephites who did doubt in the least the words of all the holy prophets who had spoken; for they knew that it must needs be that they must be fulfilled.

And they knew that it must be expedient that Christ had come, because of the many signs which had been given, according to the words of the prophets; and because of the things which had come to pass already they knew that it must needs be that all things should come to pass according to that which had been spoken.

Therefore they did forsake all their sins, and their abominations, and their whoredoms, and did serve God with all diligence day and night.

And now it came to pass that when they had taken all the robbers prisoners, insomuch that none did escape who were not slain, they did cast their prisoners into prison, and did cause the word of God to be preached unto them; and as many as would repent of their sins and enter into a covenant that they would murder no more were set at liberty.

But as many as there were who did not enter into a covenant, and who did still continue to have those secret murders in their hearts, yea, as many as were found breathing out threatenings against their brethren were condemned and punished according to the law.

And thus they did put an end to all those wicked, and secret, and abominable combinations, in the which there was so much wickedness, and so many murders committed.

And thus had the twenty and second year passed away, and the twenty and third year also, and the twenty and fourth, and the twenty and fifth; and thus had twenty and five years passed away.

And there had many things transpired which, in the eyes of some, would be great and marvelous; nevertheless, they cannot all be written in this book; yea, this book cannot contain even a hundredth part of what was done among so many people in the space of twenty and five years;

- 9 Maar kyk, daar is kronieke wat al die handeling van hierdie volk bevat; en 'n korter maar juiste kroniek is gegee deur Nephi.
- 10 Daarom het ek my kroniek gemaak van hierdie dinge volgens die kroniek van Nephi, wat gegraveer is op die plate wat genoem is die plate van Nephi.
- 11 En kyk, ek maak die kroniek op plate wat ek gemaak het met my eie hande.
- 12 En kyk, ek word Mormon genoem, omdat ek vernoem is na die land Mormon, die land waarin Alma die kerk gestig het onder die volk, ja, die eerste kerk wat gestig is onder hulle ná hulle oortreding.
- 13 Kyk, ek is 'n dissipel van Jesus Christus, die Seun van God. Ek is geroep deur Hom om sy woord te verkondig onder sy volk, sodat hulle die ewigdurende lewe mag hê.
- 14 En dit het raadsaam geword dat ek, volgens die wil van God, sodat die gebede van diegene wat heengegaan het, wat die heiliges was, vervul moes word volgens hulle geloof, 'n kroniek moes maak van hierdie dinge wat gedoen is—
- 15 Ja, 'n klein kroniek van dit wat plaasgevind het vanaf die tyd dat Lehi Jerusalem verlaat het, en wel tot die huidige tyd.
- 16 Daarom maak ek my kroniek van die verslae wat gegee is deur diegene wat voor my was, tot by die aanvang van my dag;
- 17 En dan maak ek 'n kroniek van die dinge wat ek gesien het met my eie oë.
- 18 En ek weet dat die kroniek wat ek maak, 'n getroue en 'n juiste kroniek is; nogtans, daar is baie dinge wat, vanweë ons taal, ons nie in staat is om te skryf nie.
- 19 En nou maak ek 'n einde aan my woorde, wat van myself is, en gaan voort om my kroniek te gee van die dinge wat voor my was.
- 20 Ek is Mormon, en 'n direkte afstammeling van Lehi. Ek het rede om my God en my Saligmaker Jesus Christus te loof, omdat Hy ons vaders gebring het uit die land Jerusalem, (en geeneen het dit geweet nie, behalwe Hyself en diegene wat Hy gebring het uit daardie land) en omdat Hy my en my volk soveel kennis gegee het tot die heil van ons siele.

But behold there are records which do contain all the proceedings of this people; and a shorter but true account was given by Nephi.

Therefore I have made my record of these things according to the record of Nephi, which was engraved on the plates which were called the plates of Nephi.

And behold, I do make the record on plates which I have made with mine own hands.

And behold, I am called Mormon, being called after the land of Mormon, the land in which Alma did establish the church among the people, yea, the first church which was established among them after their transgression.

Behold, I am a disciple of Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I have been called of him to declare his word among his people, that they might have everlasting life.

And it hath become expedient that I, according to the will of God, that the prayers of those who have gone hence, who were the holy ones, should be fulfilled according to their faith, should make a record of these things which have been done—

Yea, a small record of that which hath taken place from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem, even down until the present time.

Therefore I do make my record from the accounts which have been given by those who were before me, until the commencement of my day;

And then I do make a record of the things which I have seen with mine own eyes.

And I know the record which I make to be a just and a true record; nevertheless there are many things which, according to our language, we are not able to write.

And now I make an end of my saying, which is of myself, and proceed to give my account of the things which have been before me.

I am Mormon, and a pure descendant of Lehi. I have reason to bless my God and my Savior Jesus Christ, that he brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, (and no one knew it save it were himself and those whom he brought out of that land) and that he hath given me and my people so much knowledge unto the salvation of our souls.

- 21 Waarlik Hy het die huis van Jakob geseën, en was barmhartig teenoor die saad van Josef.
- 22 En in soverre die kinders van Lehi sy gebooie onderhou het, het Hy hulle geseën en hulle voorspoedig gemaak volgens sy woord.
- 23 Ja, en waarlik sal Hy weer 'n oorblyfsel van die saad van Josef bring tot die kennis van die Here hulle God.
- 24 En sowaar as die Here leef, sal Hy versamel vanaf die vier hoeke van die aarde die hele oorblyfsel van die saad van Jakob, wat ver en naby verstrooi is oor die hele aangesig van die aarde.
- 25 En aangesien Hy 'n verbond gesluit het met die hele huis van Jakob, daarom sal die verbond wat Hy gesluit het met die huis van Jakob vervul word in sy eie bepaalde tyd, tot die herstelling van die hele huis van Jakob tot die kennis van die verbond wat Hy met hulle gesluit het.
- 26 En dan sal hulle hul Verlosser ken, wat Jesus Christus is, die Seun van God; en dan sal hulle versamel word van die vier hoeke van die aarde na hulle eie lande, vanwaar hulle verstrooi was; ja, sowaar as die Here leef, so sal dit wees. Amen.

Surely he hath blessed the house of Jacob, and hath been merciful unto the seed of Joseph.

And insomuch as the children of Lehi have kept his commandments he hath blessed them and prospered them according to his word.

Yea, and surely shall he again bring a remnant of the seed of Joseph to the knowledge of the Lord their God.

And as surely as the Lord liveth, will he gather in from the four quarters of the earth all the remnant of the seed of Jacob, who are scattered abroad upon all the face of the earth.

And as he hath covenanted with all the house of Jacob, even so shall the covenant wherewith he hath covenanted with the house of Jacob be fulfilled in his own due time, unto the restoring all the house of Jacob unto the knowledge of the covenant that he hath covenanted with them.

And then shall they know their Redeemer, who is Jesus Christ, the Son of God; and then shall they be gathered in from the four quarters of the earth unto their own lands, from whence they have been dispersed; yea, as the Lord liveth so shall it be. Amen.

3 Nefi 6

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat die volk van die Nefiete almal teruggekeer het na hulle eie lande in die ses en twintigste jaar, elke man, met sy gesin, sy kleinvee en sy grootvee, sy perde en sy beeste, en alle dinge wat ook al aan hulle behoort het.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat hulle nie al hulle voorrade opgeëet het nie; daarom het hulle alles met hulle saamgeneem wat hulle nie verorber het nie, van al hulle graan van elke soort, en hulle goud, en hulle silwer, en al hulle kosbare dinge, en hulle het teruggekeer na hulle eie lande en hulle besittings, beide in die noorde en in die suide, beide na die land noordwaarts en na die land suidwaarts.
- 3 En hulle het aan daardie rowers wat 'n verbond gesluit het om die vrede van die land te bewaar, wat begerig was om Lamaniete te bly, lande gegee volgens hulle getalle, sodat hulle mag hê, met hulle arbeid, om van te lewe; en so het hulle vrede gevestig in die hele land.
- 4 En hulle het weer begin om voorspoedig te wees en om magtig te word; en die ses en sewe en twintigste jaar het verbygegaan, en daar was groot eenheid in die land; en hulle het hul wette gevorm volgens billikheid en geregtigheid.
- 5 En nou was daar niks in die hele land om die volk te verhoed om voortdurend voorspoedig te wees nie, tensy hulle sou verval in oortreding.
- 6 En nou was dit Gidgiddoni, en die regter, Lachoneüs, en diegene wat aangestel was as leiers, wat hierdie groot vrede gevestig het in die land.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat daar baie stede was wat opnuut gebou is, en daar was baie ou stede wat herstel is.
- 8 En daar was baie hoofweë gebou, en baie paaie gemaak, wat gelei het van stad tot stad, en van land tot land, en van plek tot plek.
- 9 En so het die agt en twintigste jaar verbygegaan, en die volk het voortdurende vrede gehad.
- 10 Maar dit het gebeur in die nege en twintigste jaar het daar begin om sekere twistes te wees onder die volk; en sommiges is opgehef tot hoogmoed en grootpraterij vanweë hulle uitermate groot rykdomme, ja, tot groot vervolging.

3 Nephi 6

And now it came to pass that the people of the Nephites did all return to their own lands in the twenty and sixth year, every man, with his family, his flocks and his herds, his horses and his cattle, and all things whatsoever did belong unto them.

And it came to pass that they had not eaten up all their provisions; therefore they did take with them all that they had not devoured, of all their grain of every kind, and their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and they did return to their own lands and their possessions, both on the north and on the south, both on the land northward and on the land southward.

And they granted unto those robbers who had entered into a covenant to keep the peace of the land, who were desirous to remain Lamanites, lands, according to their numbers, that they might have, with their labors, wherewith to subsist upon; and thus they did establish peace in all the land.

And they began again to prosper and to wax great; and the twenty and sixth and seventh years passed away, and there was great order in the land; and they had formed their laws according to equity and justice.

And now there was nothing in all the land to hinder the people from prospering continually, except they should fall into transgression.

And now it was Gidgiddoni, and the judge, Lachoneus, and those who had been appointed leaders, who had established this great peace in the land.

And it came to pass that there were many cities built anew, and there were many old cities repaired.

And there were many highways cast up, and many roads made, which led from city to city, and from land to land, and from place to place.

And thus passed away the twenty and eighth year, and the people had continual peace.

But it came to pass in the twenty and ninth year there began to be some disputings among the people; and some were lifted up unto pride and boastings because of their exceedingly great riches, yea, even unto great persecutions;

- 11 Want daar was baie handelaars in die land, en ook baie regsgeleerdes en baie amptenare.
- 12 En die volk het begin om onderskei te word deur klasse, volgens hulle rykdomme en hulle kanse op geleerdheid; ja, sommiges was onkundig vanweë hulle armoede, en ander het groot geleerdheid bekom vanweë hulle rykdomme.
- 13 Sommiges is opgehef tot hoogmoed, en ander was uitermate nederig; sommiges het skeltaal met skeltaal beantwoord, terwyl andere skeltaal en vervolging sou verduur en allerlei verdrukkinge, en wou nie omdraai en weer beledig nie, maar was nederig en berouvol voor God.
- 14 En so het daar 'n groot ongelykheid gekom in die hele land, in soverre dat die kerk begin het om te verbrokkel; ja, in soverre dat in die dertigste jaar die kerk verbrokkel het in die hele land behalwe onder 'n paar van die Lamaniete wat bekeer was tot die ware geloof; en hulle wou nie daarvan afwyk nie, want hulle was ferm, en standvastig, en onbeweeglik, gewillig met alle ywer om die gebooi te onderhou van die Here.
- 15 Nou die oorsaak van hierdie ongeregtigheid van die volk was dit—Satan het groot mag gehad, tot die aansporing van die volk om allerlei ongeregtighede te doen, en om hulle op te blaas met hoogmoed, en om hulle te verlei om te soek na mag, en gesag, en rykdom, en die ydele dinge van die wêreld.
- 16 En so het Satan die harte van die volk weggelei om allerlei ongeregtighede te doen; daarom het hulle slegs 'n paar jaar vrede geniet.
- 17 En so, aan die begin van die dertigste jaar—nadat die volk oorgelewer was vir 'n lang tydperk om rondgelei te word deur die versoeking van die duiwel, waarheen ook al hy begeer het om hulle te neem, en om welke ongeregtigheid hy begeer het dat hulle moes doen, te doen—en so, aan die begin van hierdie, die dertigste jaar, was hulle in 'n toestand van verskriklike boosheid.
- 18 Nou, hulle het nie uit onkunde gesondig nie, want hulle het die wil van God geken aangaande hulle, want dit is aan hulle geleer; daarom het hulle opsetlik teen God gerebelleer.

For there were many merchants in the land, and also many lawyers, and many officers.

And the people began to be distinguished by ranks, according to their riches and their chances for learning; yea, some were ignorant because of their poverty, and others did receive great learning because of their riches.

Some were lifted up in pride, and others were exceedingly humble; some did return railing for railing, while others would receive railing and persecution and all manner of afflictions, and would not turn and revile again, but were humble and penitent before God.

And thus there became a great inequality in all the land, insomuch that the church began to be broken up; yea, insomuch that in the thirtieth year the church was broken up in all the land save it were among a few of the Lamanites who were converted unto the true faith; and they would not depart from it, for they were firm, and steadfast, and immovable, willing with all diligence to keep the commandments of the Lord.

Now the cause of this iniquity of the people was this—Satan had great power, unto the stirring up of the people to do all manner of iniquity, and to the puffing them up with pride, tempting them to seek for power, and authority, and riches, and the vain things of the world.

And thus Satan did lead away the hearts of the people to do all manner of iniquity; therefore they had enjoyed peace but a few years.

And thus, in the commencement of the thirtieth year—the people having been delivered up for the space of a long time to be carried about by the temptations of the devil whithersoever he desired to carry them, and to do whatsoever iniquity he desired they should—and thus in the commencement of this, the thirtieth year, they were in a state of awful wickedness.

Now they did not sin ignorantly, for they knew the will of God concerning them, for it had been taught unto them; therefore they did wilfully rebel against God.

- 19 En nou was dit in die dae van Lachoneüs, die seun van Lachoneüs, want Lachoneüs het die stoel beklee van sy vader en het die volk daardie jaar regeer.
- 20 En daar het begin om manne te wees wat geïnspireer is vanuit die hemel en uitgestuur is, en onder die mense gestaan het in die hele land, en gepreek het en onbevrees getuig het van die sondes en die ongeregthede van die volk, en getuig het aan hulle aangaande die verlossing wat die Here sou teweeg bring vir sy volk, of met ander woorde, die opstanding van Christus; en hulle het onbevrees getuig van sy dood en lyding.
- 21 Nou was daar baie van die volk wat uitermate vertoornd was vanweë diegene wat getuig het van hierdie dinge; en diegene wat vertoornd was, was hoofsaaklik die hoofregters, en hulle wat hoëpriesters en regsgeleerdes was; ja, al diegene wat regsgeleerdes was, was vertoornd met diegene wat van hierdie dinge getuig het.
- 22 Nou was daar geen regsgeleerde nóg regter, nóg hoëpriester wat die mag gehad het om enigeen ter dood te veroordeel tensy hulle vonnis geteken was deur die goewerneur van die land nie.
- 23 Nou was daar baie van diegene wat getuig het van die dinge met betrekking tot Christus, wat onbevrees getuig het, wat gevange geneem en in die geheim om die lewe gebring is deur die regters, sodat die kennis van hulle dood nie tot die goewerneur van die land gekom het tot na hulle dood nie.
- 24 Nou kyk, dit was teenstrydig met die wette van die land, dat enige mens om die lewe gebring sou word tensy hulle mag gehad het van die goewerneur van die land—
- 25 Daarom het daar 'n klagte opgekom na die land Zarahemla, na die goewerneur van die land, teen hierdie regters wat die profete van die Here ter dood veroordeel het, nie volgens die wet nie.
- 26 Nou het dit gebeur dat hulle geneem en voor die regter gebring is, om geoordeel te word vir die misdaad wat hulle gepleeg het, volgens die wet wat deur die volk gegee was.

And now it was in the days of Lachoneus, the son of Lachoneus, for Lachoneus did fill the seat of his father and did govern the people that year.

And there began to be men inspired from heaven and sent forth, standing among the people in all the land, preaching and testifying boldly of the sins and iniquities of the people, and testifying unto them concerning the redemption which the Lord would make for his people, or in other words, the resurrection of Christ; and they did testify boldly of his death and sufferings.

Now there were many of the people who were exceedingly angry because of those who testified of these things; and those who were angry were chiefly the chief judges, and they who had been high priests and lawyers; yea, all those who were lawyers were angry with those who testified of these things.

Now there was no lawyer nor judge nor high priest that could have power to condemn any one to death save their condemnation was signed by the governor of the land.

Now there were many of those who testified of the things pertaining to Christ who testified boldly, who were taken and put to death secretly by the judges, that the knowledge of their death came not unto the governor of the land until after their death.

Now behold, this was contrary to the laws of the land, that any man should be put to death except they had power from the governor of the land—

Therefore a complaint came up unto the land of Zarahemla, to the governor of the land, against these judges who had condemned the prophets of the Lord unto death, not according to the law.

Now it came to pass that they were taken and brought up before the judge, to be judged of the crime which they had done, according to the law which had been given by the people.

27 Nou het dit gebeur dat daardie regters baie vriende en verwante gehad het; en die res, ja, selfs byna al die regsgeleerdes en die hoëpriesters, het hulleself bymekaargemaak, en verenig met die verwante van daardie regters wat moes teregstaan volgens die wet.

28 En hulle het 'n verbond gesluit die een met die ander, ja, naamlik daardie verbond wat aan hulle gegee is deur hulle van ouds, welke verbond gegee is en toegepas is deur die duiwel, om saam te span teen alle geregtigheid.

29 Daarom het hulle saamgespan teen die volk van die Here, en 'n verbond gesluit om hulle te vernietig, en om diegene te bevry wat skuldig was aan moord uit die greep van regverdigheid, wat op die punt was om uitgevoer te word volgens die wet.

30 En hulle het die wette en die regte van hulle land geminag; en hulle het met mekaar 'n verbond gesluit om die goewerneur te vernietig, en om 'n koning oor die land aan te stel, sodat die land nie meer vry sou wees nie, maar onderdanig sou wees aan konings.

Now it came to pass that those judges had many friends and kindreds; and the remainder, yea, even almost all the lawyers and the high priests, did gather themselves together, and unite with the kindreds of those judges who were to be tried according to the law.

And they did enter into a covenant one with another, yea, even into that covenant which was given by them of old, which covenant was given and administered by the devil, to combine against all righteousness.

Therefore they did combine against the people of the Lord, and enter into a covenant to destroy them, and to deliver those who were guilty of murder from the grasp of justice, which was about to be administered according to the law.

And they did set at defiance the law and the rights of their country; and they did covenant one with another to destroy the governor, and to establish a king over the land, that the land should no more be at liberty but should be subject unto kings.

3 Nefi 7

- 1 Nou kyk, ek sal aan julle toon dat hulle nie 'n koning oor die land gevestig het nie; maar in hierdie selfde jaar, ja, die dertigste jaar, het hulle op die regterstoel vernietig, ja, het hulle die hoofregter van die land vermoor.
- 2 En die volk was verdeeld, een teen die ander; en hulle het afgeskei, een van die ander in stamme, elke man volgens sy familie en sy verwante en vriende; en so het hulle die regering van die land vernietig.
- 3 En elke stam het 'n hoof of 'n leier aangestel oor hulle; en so het hulle stamme geword en leiers van stamme.
- 4 Nou kyk, daar was geen man onder hulle nie of hy het baie familie gehad en baie verwante en vriende; daarom het hulle stamme uitermate groot geword.
- 5 Nou, dit alles is gedoen, en daar was geen oorlog tot dusver onder hulle nie; en al hierdie ongeregtheid het oor die volk gekom omdat hulle hulself oorgegeef het aan die mag van Satan.
- 6 En die verordeninge van die regering is vernietig, vanweë die geheime organisasie van die vriende en verwante van diegene wat die profete vermoor het.
- 7 En hulle het 'n groot twis in die land veroorsaak, in soverre dat die meer regverdige deel van die volk byna almal boos geword het; ja, daar was maar min regverdige mense onder hulle.
- 8 En so, ses jaar het nie verbygegaan vandat die grootste gedeelte van die volk hulle weggedraai het van hul regverdigheid nie, soos 'n hond na sy braaksel, of soos die sog na haar gerol in die modder nie.
- 9 Nou hierdie geheime organisasie, wat sulke groot ongeregtheid oor die volk gebring het, het hulleself bymekaar gemaak, en het aan hulle hoof 'n man geplaas wat hulle Jakob genoem het;
- 10 En hulle het hom hul koning genoem; daarom het hy koning geword oor hierdie goddelose bende; en hy was een van die vernaamstes wat sy stem verhef het teen die profete wat getuig het van Jesus.

3 Nephi 7

Now behold, I will show unto you that they did not establish a king over the land; but in this same year, yea, the thirtieth year, they did destroy upon the judgment-seat, yea, did murder the chief judge of the land.

And the people were divided one against another; and they did separate one from another into tribes, every man according to his family and his kindred and friends; and thus they did destroy the government of the land.

And every tribe did appoint a chief or a leader over them; and thus they became tribes and leaders of tribes.

Now behold, there was no man among them save he had much family and many kindreds and friends; therefore their tribes became exceedingly great.

Now all this was done, and there were no wars as yet among them; and all this iniquity had come upon the people because they did yield themselves unto the power of Satan.

And the regulations of the government were destroyed, because of the secret combination of the friends and kindreds of those who murdered the prophets.

And they did cause a great contention in the land, insomuch that the more righteous part of the people had nearly all become wicked; yea, there were but few righteous men among them.

And thus six years had not passed away since the more part of the people had turned from their righteousness, like the dog to his vomit, or like the sow to her wallowing in the mire.

Now this secret combination, which had brought so great iniquity upon the people, did gather themselves together, and did place at their head a man whom they did call Jacob;

And they did call him their king; therefore he became a king over this wicked band; and he was one of the chiefest who had given his voice against the prophets who testified of Jesus.

11 En dit het gebeur dat hulle nie so sterk in getal was as die stamme van die volk wat saam verenig was nie, behalwe dat dit hul leiers was wat hulle wette vasgestel het, elkeen volgens sy stam; nogtans was hulle vyande; nieteenstaande hulle nie 'n regverdige volk was nie, tog was hulle verenig in die haat van diegene wat 'n verbond gesluit het om die regering te vernietig.

12 Daarom, Jakob, omdat hy gesien het dat hulle vyande talryker was as hulle, omdat hy die koning was van die bende, daarom het hy sy volk beveel dat hulle moes vlug na die noordelikste deel van die land, en daar vir hulleself 'n koninkryk opbou, totdat afvalliges by hulle aangesluit het (want hy het hulle gelei dat daar baie afvalliges sou wees) en hulle voldoende sterk word om te veg teen die stamme van die volk; en hulle het so gemaak.

13 En so vinnig was hulle opmars dat dit nie gestuit kon word totdat hulle weggegaan het buite die bereik van die volk nie. En so het die dertigste jaar geëindig; en so was die sake van die volk van Nepi.

14 En dit het gebeur in die een en dertigste jaar dat hulle verdeel was in stamme, elke man volgens sy familie, verwante en vriende; nogtans het hulle tot 'n ooreenkoms gekom dat hulle nie oorlog sou voer die een teen die ander nie; maar hulle was nie verenig met betrekking tot hulle wette nie, en hulle wyse van regering, want hulle is vasgestel volgens die denke van diegene wat hulle hoofde en hulle leiers was. Maar hulle het baie streng wette vasgestel dat een stam nie sou oortree teen 'n ander nie, in soverre dat hulle tot 'n sekere mate vrede gehad het in die land; nogtans, hulle harte was weggedraai van die Here hulle God, en hulle het die profete gestenig en het hulle uitgewerp onder hulle.

15 En dit het gebeur dat Nepi—omdat hy besoek is deur engele en ook die stem van die Here, daarom, omdat hy engele gesien het, en omdat hy ooggetuie was, en omdat mag aan hom gegee is sodat hy mag weet aangaande die bediening van Christus, en ook omdat hy ooggetuie was van hulle spoedige terugkeer van regverdigheid na hulle boosheid en gruwels;

And it came to pass that they were not so strong in number as the tribes of the people, who were united together save it were their leaders did establish their laws, every one according to his tribe; nevertheless they were enemies; notwithstanding they were not a righteous people, yet they were united in the hatred of those who had entered into a covenant to destroy the government.

Therefore, Jacob seeing that their enemies were more numerous than they, he being the king of the band, therefore he commanded his people that they should take their flight into the northernmost part of the land, and there build up unto themselves a kingdom, until they were joined by dissenters, (for he flattered them that there would be many dissenters) and they become sufficiently strong to contend with the tribes of the people; and they did so.

And so speedy was their march that it could not be impeded until they had gone forth out of the reach of the people. And thus ended the thirtieth year; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the thirty and first year that they were divided into tribes, every man according to his family, kindred and friends; nevertheless they had come to an agreement that they would not go to war one with another; but they were not united as to their laws, and their manner of government, for they were established according to the minds of those who were their chiefs and their leaders. But they did establish very strict laws that one tribe should not trespass against another, insomuch that in some degree they had peace in the land; nevertheless, their hearts were turned from the Lord their God, and they did stone the prophets and did cast them out from among them.

And it came to pass that Nephi—having been visited by angels and also the voice of the Lord, therefore having seen angels, and being eye-witness, and having had power given unto him that he might know concerning the ministry of Christ, and also being eye-witness to their quick return from righteousness unto their wickedness and abominations;

- 16 Daarom, omdat hy bedroef was oor die hardheid van hulle harte en die blindheid van hulle verstand—het hy uitgegaan onder hulle in daardie selfde jaar, en het begin om te getuig, onverskrokke, bekering en vergifnis van sondes deur geloof in die Here Jesus Christus.
- 17 En hy het baie dinge vir hulle geleer; en alles daarvan kan nie geskryf word nie, en ’n gedeelte daarvan sou nie voldoen nie, daarom word hulle nie geskrywe in hierdie boek nie. En Nephi het geleer met krag en met groot gesag.
- 18 En dit het gebeur dat hulle toornig was op hom, naamlik omdat hy groter mag gehad het as hulle, want dit was nie moontlik dat hulle sy woorde nie kon glo nie, want so groot was sy geloof in die Here Jesus Christus, dat engele hom daagliks bedien het.
- 19 En in die naam van Jesus het hy duiwels uitgewerp en onreine geeste; en selfs sy broer het hy opgewek uit die dode, nadat hy gestenig en gedood is deur die volk.
- 20 En die volk het dit gesien, en was getuie daarvan, en was toornig op hom vanweë sy mag; en hy het ook baie meer wonderwerke voor die oë van die volk gedoen in die naam van Jesus.
- 21 En dit het gebeur dat die een en dertigste jaar verbygegaan het, en daar was net ’n paar wat bekeer is tot die Here; maar soveel as wat bekeer is, het waarlik te kenne gegee aan die volk dat hulle besoek was deur die krag en Gees van God, wat in Jesus Christus was, in wie hulle geglo het.
- 22 En soveel as wat duiwels uit hulle uitgewerp gehad het, en genees is van hulle siektes en hulle krankhede, het waarlik aan die volk verklaar dat hulle beïnvloed is deur die Gees van God, en genees is; en hulle het ook tekens getoon, en het sommige wonderwerke gedoen onder die volk.
- 23 So het die twee en dertigste jaar ook verbygegaan. En Nephi het tot die volk geroep aan die begin van die drie en dertigste jaar; en hy het aan hulle bekering en vergifnis van sondes gepreek.
- 24 Nou wil ek hê dat julle ook moet onthou, dat daar niemand was wat tot bekering gebring is wat nie met water gedoop is nie.

Therefore, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds—went forth among them in that same year, and began to testify, boldly, repentance and remission of sins through faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

And he did minister many things unto them; and all of them cannot be written, and a part of them would not suffice, therefore they are not written in this book. And Nephi did minister with power and with great authority.

And it came to pass that they were angry with him, even because he had greater power than they, for it were not possible that they could disbelieve his words, for so great was his faith on the Lord Jesus Christ that angels did minister unto him daily.

And in the name of Jesus did he cast out devils and unclean spirits; and even his brother did he raise from the dead, after he had been stoned and suffered death by the people.

And the people saw it, and did witness of it, and were angry with him because of his power; and he did also do many more miracles, in the sight of the people, in the name of Jesus.

And it came to pass that the thirty and first year did pass away, and there were but few who were converted unto the Lord; but as many as were converted did truly signify unto the people that they had been visited by the power and Spirit of God, which was in Jesus Christ, in whom they believed.

And as many as had devils cast out from them, and were healed of their sicknesses and their infirmities, did truly manifest unto the people that they had been wrought upon by the Spirit of God, and had been healed; and they did show forth signs also and did do some miracles among the people.

Thus passed away the thirty and second year also. And Nephi did cry unto the people in the commencement of the thirty and third year; and he did preach unto them repentance and remission of sins.

Now I would have you to remember also, that there were none who were brought unto repentance who were not baptized with water.

25 Daaron, daar is manne deur Nefi geordineer tot hierdie bediening, sodat al diesulkes wat na hulle sou kom, gedoop moes word met water, en dit as 'n getuienis en 'n betuiging voor God, en aan die volk, dat hulle bekeer het en 'n vergifnis ontvang het van hulle sondes.

26 En daar was baie aan die begin van hierdie jaar wat gedoop is tot bekering; en so het die grootste gedeelte van die jaar verbygegaan.

Therefore, there were ordained of Nephi, men unto this ministry, that all such as should come unto them should be baptized with water, and this as a witness and a testimony before God, and unto the people, that they had repented and received a remission of their sins.

And there were many in the commencement of this year that were baptized unto repentance; and thus the more part of the year did pass away.

3 Nefi 8

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat volgens ons kroniek, en ons weet dat ons kroniek waar is, want kyk, dit was 'n regverdige man wat die kroniek bygehou het—want hy het waarlik baie wonderwerke gedoen in die naam van Jesus; en daar was geen mens wat 'n wonderwerk kon doen in die naam van Jesus tensy hy gereinig is in elke opsig van sy ongeregtigheid nie—
- 2 En nou het dit gebeur, indien daar geen fout gemaak is deur hierdie man in die berekening van ons tyd nie, het die drie en dertigste jaar verbygegaan;
- 3 En die volk het begin uitsien met groot erns na die teken wat gegee is deur die profeet Samuel, die Lamaniet, ja, na die tyd wanneer daar duisternis vir 'n tydperk van drie dae oor die aangesig van die land sou wees;
- 4 En daar het begin om groot twyfel en twiste te wees onder die volk, nieteenstaande so baie tekens gegee was.
- 5 En dit het gebeur in die vier en dertigste jaar, in die eerste maand, op die vierde dag van die maand, het daar 'n groot storm opgekom, so een soos daar nog nooit geken was in die hele land nie.
- 6 En daar was ook 'n groot en vreeslike stormwind; en daar was vreeslike donderweer, in soverre dat dit die hele aarde geskud het asof dit op die punt was om uitmekaar te breek.
- 7 En daar was uitermate skerp weerligte, soos nog nooit geken was in die hele land nie.
- 8 En die stad Zarahemla het aan die brand geslaan.
- 9 En die stad Moroni het weggesink in die dieptes van die see, en die inwoners daarvan het verdrink.
- 10 En die aarde is opgestoot oor die stad Moroniha, dat in die plek van die stad daar 'n groot berg ontstaan het.
- 11 En daar was 'n groot en vreeslike vernietiging in die land suidwaarts.
- 12 Maar kyk, daar was 'n groter en vreesliker vernietiging in die land noordwaarts; want kyk, die hele aangesig van die land is verander, vanweë die stormwind en die warrelwinde, en die donderweer, en die weerligte, en die uitermate groot geskud van die hele aarde;

3 Nephi 8

And now it came to pass that according to our record, and we know our record to be true, for behold, it was a just man who did keep the record—for he truly did many miracles in the name of Jesus; and there was not any man who could do a miracle in the name of Jesus save he were cleansed every whit from his iniquity—

And now it came to pass, if there was no mistake made by this man in the reckoning of our time, the thirty and third year had passed away;

And the people began to look with great earnestness for the sign which had been given by the prophet Samuel, the Lamanite, yea, for the time that there should be darkness for the space of three days over the face of the land.

And there began to be great doubtings and disputations among the people, notwithstanding so many signs had been given.

And it came to pass in the thirty and fourth year, in the first month, on the fourth day of the month, there arose a great storm, such an one as never had been known in all the land.

And there was also a great and terrible tempest; and there was terrible thunder, insomuch that it did shake the whole earth as if it was about to divide asunder.

And there were exceedingly sharp lightnings, such as never had been known in all the land.

And the city of Zarahemla did take fire.

And the city of Moroni did sink into the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof were drowned.

And the earth was carried up upon the city of Moronihah, that in the place of the city there became a great mountain.

And there was a great and terrible destruction in the land southward.

But behold, there was a more great and terrible destruction in the land northward; for behold, the whole face of the land was changed, because of the tempest and the whirlwinds, and the thunderings and the lightnings, and the exceedingly great quaking of the whole earth;

13 En die hoofweë is opgebreek, en die gelyk paaie is beskadig, en baie gladde plekke het ru geword.

14 En baie groot en belangrike stede het weggesink, en baie is verbrand, en baie is geskud totdat die geboue daarvan op die aarde neergestort het, en die inwoners daarvan gedood is, en die plekke verlate gelaat is.

15 En daar was sommige stede wat oorgebly het; maar die skade daarvan was uitermate groot, en daar was baie in hulle wat gedood is.

16 En daar was sommige wat weggevoer is in die warrelwind; en waarheen hulle gegaan het weet geen mens nie, behalwe dat hulle weet dat hulle weggevoer is.

17 En so het die aangesig van die hele aarde vervorm geword vanweë die stormwinde en die donderweer, en die weerligte, en die geskud van die aarde.

18 En kyk, die rotse is in twee geskeur; hulle is opgebreek op die aangesig van die hele aarde, in soverre dat hulle gevind is in gebreekte stukke, en in splete en barste, op die hele aangesig van die land.

19 En dit het gebeur dat toe die donderweer, en die weerligte, en die storm, en die stormwind, en die skuddings van die aarde opgehou het—want kyk, hulle het geduur vir ongeveer ’n tydperk van drie uur; en dit is gesê deur sommige dat die tyd langer was; nogtans, al hierdie groot en vreeslike dinge is gedoen in ongeveer ’n tydperk van drie uur—en toe, kyk, daar was duisternis op die aangesig van die land.

20 En dit het gebeur dat daar ’n digte duisternis was op die hele aangesig van die land, in soverre dat die inwoners daarvan wat nie omgekome het nie, die mis van die duisternis kon voel;

21 En daar kon geen lig wees nie, vanweë die duisternis, nóg kerse, nóg fakkels; nóg kon daar vuur aangesteek word met hulle fyn en uitermate droë hout, sodat daar geen lig hoegenaamd kon wees nie;

22 En daar is geen lig gesien nie, nóg vuur, nóg skynsel, nóg die son, nóg die maan, nóg die sterre, want so groot was die miswolke van duisternis wat op die aangesig van die land was.

And the highways were broken up, and the level roads were spoiled, and many smooth places became rough.

And many great and notable cities were sunk, and many were burned, and many were shaken till the buildings thereof had fallen to the earth, and the inhabitants thereof were slain, and the places were left desolate.

And there were some cities which remained; but the damage thereof was exceedingly great, and there were many in them who were slain.

And there were some who were carried away in the whirlwind; and whither they went no man knoweth, save they know that they were carried away.

And thus the face of the whole earth became deformed, because of the tempests, and the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the quaking of the earth.

And behold, the rocks were rent in twain; they were broken up upon the face of the whole earth, insomuch that they were found in broken fragments, and in seams and in cracks, upon all the face of the land.

And it came to pass that when the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the storm, and the tempest, and the quakings of the earth did cease—for behold, they did last for about the space of three hours; and it was said by some that the time was greater; nevertheless, all these great and terrible things were done in about the space of three hours—and then behold, there was darkness upon the face of the land.

And it came to pass that there was thick darkness upon all the face of the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof who had not fallen could feel the vapor of darkness;

And there could be no light, because of the darkness, neither candles, neither torches; neither could there be fire kindled with their fine and exceedingly dry wood, so that there could not be any light at all;

And there was not any light seen, neither fire, nor glimmer, neither the sun, nor the moon, nor the stars, for so great were the mists of darkness which were upon the face of the land.

- 23 En dit het gebeur dat dit geduur het vir 'n tydperk van drie dae dat daar geen lig gesien is nie; en daar was voortdurend groot rouklag en gekerm en geweën onder die hele volk; ja, groot was die gekreun van die volk, vanweë die duisternis en die groot vernietiging wat oor hulle gekom het.
- 24 En op een plek is hulle geroep gehoor, wat sê: O dat ons bekeer het voor hierdie groot en vreeslike dag, en dan sou ons broers gespaar gewees het, en hulle sou nie verbrand gewees het in daardie groot stad Zarahemla nie.
- 25 En op 'n ander plek is hulle geroep gehoor en gerouklag, wat sê: O dat ons bekeer het voor hierdie groot en vreeslike dag, en nie die profete gedood en gestenig het, en hulle uitgewerp het nie; dan sou ons moeders en ons mooi dogters, en ons kinders gespaar gewees het, en nie begrawe gewees het in daardie groot stad Moroniha nie. En so was die gekerm van die volk groot en vreeslik.

And it came to pass that it did last for the space of three days that there was no light seen; and there was great mourning and howling and weeping among all the people continually; yea, great were the groanings of the people, because of the darkness and the great destruction which had come upon them.

And in one place they were heard to cry, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and then would our brethren have been spared, and they would not have been burned in that great city Zarahemla.

And in another place they were heard to cry and mourn, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and had not killed and stoned the prophets, and cast them out; then would our mothers and our fair daughters, and our children have been spared, and not have been buried up in that great city Moronihah. And thus were the howlings of the people great and terrible.

3 Nefi 9

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat daar 'n stem gehoor is onder al die inwoners van die aarde, op die hele aangesig van hierdie land, wat roep:
- 2 Wee, wee, wee hierdie volk; wee die inwoners van die hele aarde tensy hulle hul sal bekeer; want die duiwel lag, en sy engele juig, vanweë die gesneuweldes van die skone seuns en dogters van my volk; en dit is vanweë hulle ongeregtigheid en gruwels dat hulle gedood is!
- 3 Kyk, daardie groot stad Zarahemla het Ek verbrand met vuur, en die inwoners daarvan.
- 4 En kyk, daardie groot stad Moroni het Ek laat wegsink in die dieptes van die see, en die inwoners daarvan laat verdrink.
- 5 En kyk, daardie groot stad Moroniha het Ek bedek met grond, en die inwoners daarvan, om hulle ongeregtigheid en hulle gruwels te verberg van voor my aangesig, sodat die bloed van die profete en die heiliges nie meer na My sal kom teen hulle nie.
- 6 En kyk, die stad Gilgal het Ek laat wegsink, en die bewoners daarvan om begrawe te word in die dieptes van die aarde;
- 7 Ja, en die stad Oniha en die inwoners daarvan, en die stad Mokum en die inwoners daarvan, en die stad Jerusalem en die inwoners daarvan; en waters het Ek laat opkom in die plek daarvan, om hulle boosheid en gruwels te verberg van voor my aangesig, sodat die bloed van die profete en die heiliges nie meer na My sal opkom teen hulle nie.
- 8 En kyk, die stad Gadiandi, en die stad Gadiomna, en die stad Jakob, en die stad Gimgimno, al hierdie het Ek laat wegsink, en het heuwels en valleie in die plekke daarvan gemaak; en die inwoners daarvan het Ek begrawe in die dieptes van die aarde, om hulle boosheid en gruwels te verberg van voor my aangesig, sodat die bloed van die profete en die heiliges nie meer na My sal opkom teen hulle nie.

3 Nephi 9

And it came to pass that there was a voice heard among all the inhabitants of the earth, upon all the face of this land, crying:

Wo, wo, wo unto this people; wo unto the inhabitants of the whole earth except they shall repent; for the devil laugheth, and his angels rejoice, because of the slain of the fair sons and daughters of my people; and it is because of their iniquity and abominations that they are fallen!

Behold, that great city Zarahemla have I burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof.

And behold, that great city Moroni have I caused to be sunk in the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof to be drowned.

And behold, that great city Moronihah have I covered with earth, and the inhabitants thereof, to hide their iniquities and their abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come any more unto me against them.

And behold, the city of Gilgal have I caused to be sunk, and the inhabitants thereof to be buried up in the depths of the earth;

Yea, and the city of Onihah and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Mocum and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Jerusalem and the inhabitants thereof; and waters have I caused to come up in the stead thereof, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come up any more unto me against them.

And behold, the city of Gadiandi, and the city of Gadiomnah, and the city of Jacob, and the city of Gimgimno, all these have I caused to be sunk, and made hills and valleys in the places thereof; and the inhabitants thereof have I buried up in the depths of the earth, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up any more unto me against them.

9 En kyk, daardie groot stad Jakobugat, wat bewoon is deur die volk van koning Jakob, het Ek laat verbrand met vuur vanweë hulle sondes en hulle boosheid, wat bo al die boosheid van die hele aarde was, vanweë hulle geheime moorde en organisasies; want dit was hulle wat die vrede van my volk en die regering van die land vernietig het; daarom het Ek hulle laat verbrand, om hulle te vernietig van voor my aangesig, sodat die bloed van die profete en die heiliges nie meer na My sal opkom teen hulle nie.

10 En kyk, die stad Laman, en die stad Jos, en die stad Gad, en die stad Kiskumen, het ek laat brand met vuur, en die inwoners daarvan, vanweë hulle boosheid in die uitwerping van die profete, en die steniging van diegene wat Ek gestuur het om aan hulle aangaande hulle boosheid en hulle gruwels te verkondig.

11 En omdat hulle hul almal uitgewerp het, dat daar geen regverdiges onder hulle was nie, het Ek vuur afgestuurd en hulle vernietig, sodat hulle boosheid en gruwels verberg mag word van voor my aangesig, dat die bloed van die profete en die heiliges wat Ek onder hulle gestuur het nie mag roep tot My van die grond af teen hulle nie.

12 En baie groot vernietigings het Ek laat kom oor hierdie land, en oor hierdie volk, vanweë hulle boosheid en hulle gruwels.

13 O julle almal wat gespaar is omdat julle meer regverdig was as hulle, sal julle nie nou terugkeer na My, en bekeer van julle sondes, en tot inkeer kom, sodat Ek julle mag genees nie?

14 Ja, waarlik Ek sê vir julle, as julle na My sal kom, sal julle die ewige lewe hê. Kyk, my arm van barmhartigheid is uitgestrek na julle, en wie ook al wil kom, hom sal Ek ontvang; en geseënd is hulle wat na My kom.

15 Kyk, Ek is Jesus Christus, die Seun van God. Ek het die hemele en die aarde geskape, en alle dinge wat in hulle is. Ek was met die Vader van die begin af. Ek is in die Vader, en die Vader in My; en in My het die Vader sy Naam verheerlik.

16 Ek het na my eie gekom, en my eie het My nie ontvang nie. En die skrifture aangaande my koms is vervul.

And behold, that great city Jacobugath, which was inhabited by the people of king Jacob, have I caused to be burned with fire because of their sins and their wickedness, which was above all the wickedness of the whole earth, because of their secret murders and combinations; for it was they that did destroy the peace of my people and the government of the land; therefore I did cause them to be burned, to destroy them from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up unto me any more against them.

And behold, the city of Laman, and the city of Josh, and the city of Gad, and the city of Kishkumen, have I caused to be burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof, because of their wickedness in casting out the prophets, and stoning those whom I did send to declare unto them concerning their wickedness and their abominations.

And because they did cast them all out, that there were none righteous among them, I did send down fire and destroy them, that their wickedness and abominations might be hid from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints whom I sent among them might not cry unto me from the ground against them.

And many great destructions have I caused to come upon this land, and upon this people, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

O all ye that are spared because ye were more righteous than they, will ye not now return unto me, and repent of your sins, and be converted, that I may heal you?

Yea, verily I say unto you, if ye will come unto me ye shall have eternal life. Behold, mine arm of mercy is extended towards you, and whosoever will come, him will I receive; and blessed are those who come unto me.

Behold, I am Jesus Christ the Son of God. I created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are. I was with the Father from the beginning. I am in the Father, and the Father in me; and in me hath the Father glorified his name.

I came unto my own, and my own received me not. And the scriptures concerning my coming are fulfilled.

- 17 En soveel as wat My ontvang het, aan hulle het Ek gegun om die seuns van God te word; en net so sal Ek gee aan soveel wat sal glo in my Naam, want kyk, deur My kom verlossing, en in My is die wet van Moses vervul.
- 18 Ek is die lig en die lewe van die wêreld. Ek is Alfa en Omega, die begin en die einde.
- 19 En julle sal nie meer die vergieting van bloed aan My offer nie; ja, julle offerandes en julle brandoffers sal weggedoen word, want Ek sal geen van julle offerandes en julle brandoffers aanvaar nie.
- 20 En julle sal as offerande aan My'n gebroke hart en 'n verslae gees offer. En wie ook al na My kom met 'n gebroke hart en 'n verslae gees, hom sal Ek doop met vuur en met die Heilige Gees, net soos die Lamaniete, vanweë hulle geloof in My ten tyde van hulle bekering, gedoop is met vuur en die Heilige Gees, en dit nie geweet het nie.
- 21 Kyk, Ek het na die wêreld gekom om verlossing te bring aan die wêreld, om die wêreld te red van sonde.
- 22 Daarom, wie ook al bekeer en na My toe kom soos 'n klein kindjie, hom sal Ek ontvang, want aan sulkes behoort die koninkryk van God. Kyk, vir sulkes het Ek my lewe neergelê, en het dit weer opgeneem; daarom bekeer, en kom na My julle eindes van die aarde, en word gered.

And as many as have received me, to them have I given to become the sons of God; and even so will I to as many as shall believe on my name, for behold, by me redemption cometh, and in me is the law of Moses fulfilled.

I am the light and the life of the world. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end.

And ye shall offer up unto me no more the shedding of blood; yea, your sacrifices and your burnt offerings shall be done away, for I will accept none of your sacrifices and your burnt offerings.

And ye shall offer for a sacrifice unto me a broken heart and a contrite spirit. And whoso cometh unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, him will I baptize with fire and with the Holy Ghost, even as the Lamanites, because of their faith in me at the time of their conversion, were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and they knew it not.

Behold, I have come unto the world to bring redemption unto the world, to save the world from sin.

Therefore, whoso repenteth and cometh unto me as a little child, him will I receive, for of such is the kingdom of God. Behold, for such I have laid down my life, and have taken it up again; therefore repent, and come unto me ye ends of the earth, and be saved.

3 Nefi 10

- 1 En nou kyk, dit het gebeur dat al die mense van die land hierdie woorde gehoor het, en daarvan getuig het. En na hierdie woorde was daar stilte in die land vir 'n tydperk van baie ure.
- 2 Want so groot was die verbasing van die volk dat hulle opgehou het om te weeklaag en te kerm oor die verlies van hulle verwante wat gedood is; daarom was daar stilte in die hele land vir 'n tydperk van baie ure.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat daar weer 'n stem gekom het na die volk, en al die mense het gehoor, en het getuig daarvan, en gesê:
- 4 O julle volk van hierdie groot stede wat geval het, wat afstammeling is van Jakob, ja, wat van die huis van Israel is, hoe dikwels het Ek julle bymekaar maak soos 'n hen haar kuikens bymekaar maak onder haar vlerke, en het julle gevoed.
- 5 En verder, hoe dikwels wou Ek julle bymekaar maak soos 'n hen haar kuikens bymekaar maak onder haar vlerke, ja, o julle volk van die huis van Israel, wat geval het; ja, o julle volk van die huis van Israel, julle wat in Jerusalem woon, sowel as julle wat geval het; ja, hoe dikwels wou Ek julle bymekaar maak soos 'n hen haar kuikens bymekaar maak, en julle wou nie.
- 6 O julle huis van Israel wat Ek gespaar het, hoe dikwels sal Ek julle bymekaar maak soos 'n hen haar kuikens bymekaar maak onder haar vlerke, as julle sal bekeer en terugkeer na My met volle voorneme van hart.
- 7 Maar indien nie, o huis van Israel, sal die plekke van julle wonings verlate word tot die tyd van die vervulling van die verbond met julle vaders.
- 8 En nou het dit gebeur dat nadat die volk hierdie woorde gehoor het, kyk, het hulle begin om weer te ween en kerm vanweë die verlies van hulle verwante en vriende.
- 9 En dit het gebeur dat die drie dae so verbygegaan het. En dit was in die môre, en die duisternis het verbygegaan van die aangesig van die land, en die aarde het opgehou om te bewe, en die rotse het opgehou om te skeur, en die verskriklike gekreun het opgehou, en al die rumoere het opgehou.

3 Nephi 10

And now behold, it came to pass that all the people of the land did hear these sayings, and did witness of it. And after these sayings there was silence in the land for the space of many hours;

For so great was the astonishment of the people that they did cease lamenting and howling for the loss of their kindred which had been slain; therefore there was silence in all the land for the space of many hours.

And it came to pass that there came a voice again unto the people, and all the people did hear, and did witness of it, saying:

O ye people of these great cities which have fallen, who are descendants of Jacob, yea, who are of the house of Israel, how oft have I gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and have nourished you.

And again, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, who have fallen; yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, ye that dwell at Jerusalem, as ye that have fallen; yea, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens, and ye would not.

O ye house of Israel whom I have spared, how oft will I gather you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, if ye will repent and return unto me with full purpose of heart.

But if not, O house of Israel, the places of your dwellings shall become desolate until the time of the fulfilling of the covenant to your fathers.

And now it came to pass that after the people had heard these words, behold, they began to weep and howl again because of the loss of their kindred and friends.

And it came to pass that thus did the three days pass away. And it was in the morning, and the darkness dispersed from off the face of the land, and the earth did cease to tremble, and the rocks did cease to rend, and the dreadful groanings did cease, and all the tumultuous noises did pass away.

- 10 En die aarde het weer aanmekaar gekleef, dat dit gestaan het; en die rouklag, en die geweene, en die weeklag van die mense wat lewendig gespaar is het opgehou; en hulle rouklaag is verander in vreugde, en hulle klaagliedere in lof en danksegging aan die Here Jesus Christus, hulle Verlosser.
- 11 En so ver is die skrifture vervul wat deur die profete gespreek is.
- 12 En dit was die meer regverdige deel van die mense wat gered is, en dit was hulle wat die profete ontvang het en hulle nie gestenig het nie; en dit was hulle wat nie die bloed van die heiliges vergiet het nie, wat gespaar is—
- 13 En hulle is gespaar en is nie weggesink en begrawe in die aarde nie; en hulle is nie verdrink in die dieptes van die see nie; en hulle is nie verbrand deur vuur nie, nóg is daar op hulle geval en hulle vergruis tot die dood toe; en hulle is nie weggevoer in die warrelwind nie; nóg is hulle oorweldig deur die rookmis en die duisternis.
- 14 En nou, wie ook al lees, laat hom verstaan; hy wat die skrifture het, laat hom hulle ondersoek, en kyk en aanskou of al hierdie sterftes en vernietigings deur vuur, en deur rook, en deur stormwinde, en deur warrelwinde, en deur die oopmaak van die aarde om hulle te ontvang, en al hierdie dinge nie is tot die vervulling van die profesieë van baie van die heilige profete nie.
- 15 Kyk, ek sê vir julle, Ja, baie het getuig van hierdie dinge tydens die koms van Christus, en is gedood omdat hulle getuig het van hierdie dinge.
- 16 Ja, die profeet Zenos het getuig van hierdie dinge, en ook Zenok het gespreek aangaande hierdie dinge, omdat hulle in besonder getuig het aangaande ons, wat die oorblyfsel is van hulle saad.
- 17 Kyk, ons vader Jakob het ook getuig aangaande 'n oorblyfsel van die saad van Josef. En kyk, is ons nie 'n oorblyfsel van die saad van Josef nie? En hierdie dinge wat getuig van ons, is hulle nie geskrywe op die plate van brons wat ons vader Lehi uit Jerusalem gebring het nie?

And the earth did cleave together again, that it stood; and the mourning, and the weeping, and the wailing of the people who were spared alive did cease; and their mourning was turned into joy, and their lamentations into the praise and thanksgiving unto the Lord Jesus Christ, their Redeemer.

And thus far were the scriptures fulfilled which had been spoken by the prophets.

And it was the more righteous part of the people who were saved, and it was they who received the prophets and stoned them not; and it was they who had not shed the blood of the saints, who were spared—

And they were spared and were not sunk and buried up in the earth; and they were not drowned in the depths of the sea; and they were not burned by fire, neither were they fallen upon and crushed to death; and they were not carried away in the whirlwind; neither were they overpowered by the vapor of smoke and of darkness.

And now, whoso readeth, let him understand; he that hath the scriptures, let him search them, and see and behold if all these deaths and destructions by fire, and by smoke, and by tempests, and by whirlwinds, and by the opening of the earth to receive them, and all these things are not unto the fulfilling of the prophecies of many of the holy prophets.

Behold, I say unto you, Yea, many have testified of these things at the coming of Christ, and were slain because they testified of these things.

Yea, the prophet Zenos did testify of these things, and also Zenock spake concerning these things, because they testified particularly concerning us, who are the remnant of their seed.

Behold, our father Jacob also testified concerning a remnant of the seed of Joseph. And behold, are not we a remnant of the seed of Joseph? And these things which testify of us, are they not written upon the plates of brass which our father Lehi brought out of Jerusalem?

18 En dit het gebeur dat aan die einde van die vier en dertigste jaar, kyk, ek sal aan julle toon dat die volk van Nepi wat gespaar is, en ook diegene wat Lamaniete genoem is, wat gespaar is, groot gunste bewys is, en groot seëninge uitgestort is op hulle hoofde, in soverre dat kort na die opvaart van Christus na die hemel het Hy homself waarlik geopenbaar aan hulle—

19 Deur sy liggaam te toon aan hulle, en hulle te dien; en 'n kroniek van sy bediening sal gegee word hierna. Daarom, vir hierdie oomblik maak ek 'n einde aan my woorde.

And it came to pass that in the ending of the thirty and fourth year, behold, I will show unto you that the people of Nephi who were spared, and also those who had been called Lamanites, who had been spared, did have great favors shown unto them, and great blessings poured out upon their heads, inso-much that soon after the ascension of Christ into heaven he did truly manifest himself unto them—

Showing his body unto them, and ministering unto them; and an account of his ministry shall be given hereafter. Therefore for this time I make an end of my sayings.

Jesus Christus het Homself getoon aan die volk van Nefi, terwyl die skare in die land Oorvloed was, en het hulle gedien; en op hierdie wyse het Hy Homself getoon aan hulle.

3 Nefi 11

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat daar 'n groot skare byeen was, van die volk van Nefi, rondom die tempel wat in die land Oorvloed was; en hulle was verbaas en verwonderd die een met die ander, en het gewys, een aan die ander, die groot en wonderbaarlike verandering wat plaasgevind het.
- 2 En hulle het ook oor hierdie Jesus Christus gespreek, van wie die teken gegee is aangaande sy dood.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat terwyl hulle aldus besig was om te spreek die een met die ander, het hulle 'n stem gehoor asof dit gekom het uit die hemel; en hulle het rondgekyk, want hulle het nie die stem verstaan wat hulle gehoor het nie; en dit was nie 'n skerp stem nie, nóg was dit 'n luide stem; nogtans, en nieteenstaande dit 'n sagte stem was, het dit hulle wat dit gehoor het tot in hulle binneste deurdring, in soverre dat daar geen deel van hulle gestalte was wat dit nie laat beef het nie; ja, dit het hulle deurdring tot die diepte van die siel, en hulle harte laat brand.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat hulle weer die stem gehoor het, en hulle het dit nie verstaan nie.
- 5 En weer die derde keer het hulle die stem gehoor, en hulle het hul ore oopgemaak om dit te hoor; en hulle oë was gerig na die klank daarvan; en hulle het voortdurend na die hemel gekyk, van waar die klank gekom het.
- 6 En kyk, die derde keer het hulle die stem verstaan wat hulle gehoor het; en dit het aan hulle gesê:
- 7 Kyk, my geliefde Seun, in wie Ek 'n welbehae het, in wie Ek my Naam verheerlik het—luister julle na Hom.

Jesus Christ did show himself unto the people of Nephi, as the multitude were gathered together in the land Bountiful, and did minister unto them; and on this wise did he show himself unto them.

3 Nephi 11

And now it came to pass that there were a great multitude gathered together, of the people of Nephi, round about the temple which was in the land Bountiful; and they were marveling and wondering one with another, and were showing one to another the great and marvelous change which had taken place.

And they were also conversing about this Jesus Christ, of whom the sign had been given concerning his death.

And it came to pass that while they were thus conversing one with another, they heard a voice as if it came out of heaven; and they cast their eyes round about, for they understood not the voice which they heard; and it was not a harsh voice, neither was it a loud voice; nevertheless, and notwithstanding it being a small voice it did pierce them that did hear to the center, insomuch that there was no part of their frame that it did not cause to quake; yea, it did pierce them to the very soul, and did cause their hearts to burn.

And it came to pass that again they heard the voice, and they understood it not.

And again the third time they did hear the voice, and did open their ears to hear it; and their eyes were towards the sound thereof; and they did look steadfastly towards heaven, from whence the sound came.

And behold, the third time they did understand the voice which they heard; and it said unto them:

Behold my Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased, in whom I have glorified my name—hear ye him.

- 8 En dit het gebeur, toe hulle verstaan het, het hulle hul oë weer hemelwaarts gerig; en kyk, hulle het 'n Man sien neerdaal uit die hemel; en Hy was geklee in 'n wit gewaad; en Hy het afgekom en gaan staan in hulle midde; en die oë van die hele skare was na Hom gedraai, en hulle het dit nie gedurf om hulle monde oop te maak nie, selfs nie die een teenoor die ander nie, en het nie geweet wat dit beteken nie, want hulle het gedink dit was 'n engel wat aan hulle verskyn het.
- 9 En dit het gebeur dat Hy sy hand uitgestrek en met die volk gespreek het, en gesê het:
- 10 Kyk, Ek is Jesus Christus, van wie die profete getuig het in die wêreld sal kom.
- 11 En kyk, Ek is die lig en die lewe van die wêreld; en Ek het gedrink uit daardie bitter beker wat die Vader My gegee het, en het die Vader verheerlik deur die sondes van die wêreld op My te neem, waardeur Ek my onderwerp het aan die wil van die Vader in alle dinge vanaf die begin.
- 12 En dit het gebeur dat toe Jesus hierdie woorde gespreek het, het die hele skare neergeval op die aarde; want hulle het onthou dat dit geprofeteer was onder hulle dat Christus homself aan hulle sou toon ná sy opvaart na die hemel.
- 13 En dit het gebeur dat die Here met hulle gespreek, en gesê het:
- 14 Staan op en kom na My, dat julle jul hande in my sy kan steek, en ook dat julle die merke van die spykers in my hande en voete kan voel, sodat julle mag weet dat Ek die God van Israel is, en die God van die hele aarde, en gedood is vir die sondes van die wêreld.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat die skare vorentoe gegaan het, en hulle hande in sy sy gesteek het, en die merke van die spykers in sy hande en in sy voete gevoel het; en dit het hulle gedoen, en vorentoe gekom, een vir een totdat hulle almal vorentoe gegaan het, en met hulle oë gesien en met hulle hande gevoel het, en geweet het met 'n sekerheid, en getuienis gelewer het, dat dit Hy was, van wie dit geskrywe is deur die profete, wat sou kom.
- 16 En toe hulle almal vorentoe gegaan het en vir hulleself gesien het, het hulle eenparig uitgeroep, en gesê:

And it came to pass, as they understood they cast their eyes up again towards heaven; and behold, they saw a Man descending out of heaven; and he was clothed in a white robe; and he came down and stood in the midst of them; and the eyes of the whole multitude were turned upon him, and they durst not open their mouths, even one to another, and wist not what it meant, for they thought it was an angel that had appeared unto them.

And it came to pass that he stretched forth his hand and spake unto the people, saying:

Behold, I am Jesus Christ, whom the prophets testified shall come into the world.

And behold, I am the light and the life of the world; and I have drunk out of that bitter cup which the Father hath given me, and have glorified the Father in taking upon me the sins of the world, in the which I have suffered the will of the Father in all things from the beginning.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words the whole multitude fell to the earth; for they remembered that it had been prophesied among them that Christ should show himself unto them after his ascension into heaven.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto them saying:

Arise and come forth unto me, that ye may thrust your hands into my side, and also that ye may feel the prints of the nails in my hands and in my feet, that ye may know that I am the God of Israel, and the God of the whole earth, and have been slain for the sins of the world.

And it came to pass that the multitude went forth, and thrust their hands into his side, and did feel the prints of the nails in his hands and in his feet; and this they did do, going forth one by one until they had all gone forth, and did see with their eyes and did feel with their hands, and did know of a surety and did bear record, that it was he, of whom it was written by the prophets, that should come.

And when they had all gone forth and had witnessed for themselves, they did cry out with one accord, saying:

17 Hosanna! Prys die Naam van die Allerhoogste God! En hulle het neergeval aan die voete van Jesus, en het Hom aanbid.

18 En dit het gebeur dat Hy met Nefi gespreek het (want Nefi was onder die skare) en Hy het hom be-
veel om na vore te kom.

19 En Nefi het opgestaan en na vore gegaan, en hom-
self neergebuig voor die Here en het sy voete gesoen.

20 En die Here het hom gebied dat hy moes opstaan.
En hy het opgestaan en voor Hom gaan staan.

21 En die Here het aan hom gesê: Ek gee aan jou mag
dat jy hierdie volk sal doop wanneer Ek weer opge-
vaar het na die hemel.

22 En weer het die Here ander geroep, en het aan
hulle dieselfde gesê; en Hy het aan hulle mag gegee
om te doop. En Hy het aan hulle gesê: Volgens hier-
die wyse sal julle doop; en daar sal geen twiste onder
julle wees nie.

23 Voorwaar Ek sê vir julle, dat wie ook al bekeer van
sy sondes deur julle woorde, en begeer om gedoop te
word in my Naam, op hierdie wyse sal julle hulle
doop—Kyk, julle sal afgaan en in die water staan, en
in my Naam sal julle hulle doop.

24 En nou kyk, hierdie is die woorde wat julle sal sê,
en hulle by hul naam noem, en sal sê:

25 Deur die gesag aan my gegee deur Jesus Christus,
doop ek u in die Naam van die Vader, en van die
Seun, en van die Heilige Gees. Amen.

26 En dan sal julle hulle onder die water dompel, en
weer uitkom uit die water.

27 En volgens hierdie wyse sal julle doop in my
Naam; want kyk, voorwaar Ek sê vir julle, dat die
Vader, en die Seun, en die Heilige Gees een is; en Ek
is in die Vader, en die Vader in my, en die Vader en Ek
is een.

28 En volgens wat Ek julle gebied het, so sal julle
doop. En daar sal geen twiste wees onder julle nie,
soos daar tot dusver was nie; nóg sal daar twiste on-
der julle wees aangaande die punte van my leer, soos
daar tot dusver was.

Hosanna! Blessed be the name of the Most High
God! And they did fall down at the feet of Jesus, and
did worship him.

And it came to pass that he spake unto Nephi (for
Nephi was among the multitude) and he commanded
him that he should come forth.

And Nephi arose and went forth, and bowed him-
self before the Lord and did kiss his feet.

And the Lord commanded him that he should
arise. And he arose and stood before him.

And the Lord said unto him: I give unto you power
that ye shall baptize this people when I am again as-
cended into heaven.

And again the Lord called others, and said unto
them likewise; and he gave unto them power to bap-
tize. And he said unto them: On this wise shall ye
baptize; and there shall be no disputations among
you.

Verily I say unto you, that whoso repenteth of his
sins through your words, and desireth to be baptized
in my name, on this wise shall ye baptize them—
Behold, ye shall go down and stand in the water, and
in my name shall ye baptize them.

And now behold, these are the words which ye
shall say, calling them by name, saying:

Having authority given me of Jesus Christ, I bap-
tize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son,
and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.

And then shall ye immerse them in the water, and
come forth again out of the water.

And after this manner shall ye baptize in my
name; for behold, verily I say unto you, that the
Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost are one; and
I am in the Father, and the Father in me, and the
Father and I are one.

And according as I have commanded you thus
shall ye baptize. And there shall be no disputations
among you, as there have hitherto been; neither
shall there be disputations among you concerning
the points of my doctrine, as there have hitherto
been.

29 Want voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, hy wat die gees van twis het, is nie van My nie, maar is van die duiwel, wat die vader van twis is, en hy spoor die harte van mense aan om met toorn te veg, die een teen die ander.

30 Kyk, dit is nie my leer, om die harte van mense op te stook met toorn, die een teen die ander nie, maar dit is my leer, dat sulke dinge weggedoen moet word.

31 Kyk, voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, Ek sal my leer verkondig aan julle.

32 En dit is my leer, en dit is die leer wat die Vader aan My gegee het; en Ek lewer getuienis van die Vader, en die Vader lewer getuienis van My, en die Heilige Gees lewer getuienis van die Vader en My; en Ek getuig dat die Vader alle mense, oral, gebied om te bekeer en in My te glo.

33 En wie ook al in My glo, en gedoop word, diesulkes sal gered word; en dit is hulle wat die koninkryk van God sal beërwe.

34 En wie ook al nie in My glo nie, en nie gedoop word nie, sal verdoem word.

35 Voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, dat dit my leer is, en Ek lewer getuienis daarvan van die Vader; en wie ook al in My glo, glo ook in die Vader; en aan hom sal die Vader getuienis lewer van My, want Hy sal hom besoek met vuur en met die Heilige Gees.

36 En so sal die Vader getuienis lewer van My, en die Heilige Gees sal getuienis lewer aan Hom van die Vader en My, want die Vader, en Ek, en die Heilige Gees is een.

37 En verder sê Ek aan julle, julle moet bekeer, en soos 'n klein kindjie word, en gedoop word in my Naam, of julle kan geensins hierdie dinge ontvang nie.

38 En verder sê Ek aan julle, julle moet bekeer, en gedoop word in my Naam, en word soos 'n klein kindjie, of julle kan geensins die koninkryk van God beërwe nie.

39 Voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, dat dit my leer is, en wie ook al hierop bou, bou op my rots, en die poorte van die hel sal nie oor hulle seëvier nie.

For verily, verily I say unto you, he that hath the spirit of contention is not of me, but is of the devil, who is the father of contention, and he stirreth up the hearts of men to contend with anger, one with another.

Behold, this is not my doctrine, to stir up the hearts of men with anger, one against another; but this is my doctrine, that such things should be done away.

Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, I will declare unto you my doctrine.

And this is my doctrine, and it is the doctrine which the Father hath given unto me; and I bear record of the Father, and the Father beareth record of me, and the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and I bear record that the Father commandeth all men, everywhere, to repent and believe in me.

And whoso believeth in me, and is baptized, the same shall be saved; and they are they who shall inherit the kingdom of God.

And whoso believeth not in me, and is not baptized, shall be damned.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and I bear record of it from the Father; and whoso believeth in me believeth in the Father also; and unto him will the Father bear record of me, for he will visit him with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

And thus will the Father bear record of me, and the Holy Ghost will bear record unto him of the Father and me; for the Father, and I, and the Holy Ghost are one.

And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and become as a little child, and be baptized in my name, or ye can in nowise receive these things.

And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and be baptized in my name, and become as a little child, or ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and whoso buildeth upon this buildeth upon my rock, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against them.

40 En wie ook al meer of minder as dit sal verkondig,
en dit as my leer vestig, diesulkes kom van die bouse,
en is nie gebou op my rots nie; maar hy bou op 'n
sanderige fondament, en die poorte van die hel staan
oop om diesulkes te ontvang wanneer die vloede
kom en die winde teen hulle slaan.

41 Daarom, gaan uit na hierdie volk, en verkondig
die woorde wat Ek gespreek het, tot aan die eindes
van die aarde.

And whoso shall declare more or less than this,
and establish it for my doctrine, the same cometh of
evil, and is not built upon my rock; but he buildeth
upon a sandy foundation, and the gates of hell stand
open to receive such when the floods come and the
winds beat upon them.

Therefore, go forth unto this people, and declare
the words which I have spoken, unto the ends of the
earth.

3 Nefi 12

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat toe Jesus hierdie woorde met Nefi gespreek het, en tot diegene wat geroepe was (nou die getal van hulle wat geroep was, en mag en gesag ontvang het om te doop, was twaalf) en kyk, Hy het sy hand uitgestrek na die skare, en tot hulle geroep, en gesê: Salig is julle as julle sal ag slaan op die woorde van hierdie twaalf wat Ek onder julle gekies het om julle te dien, en om julle diensknegte te wees; en aan hulle het Ek mag gegee sodat hulle julle mag doop met water; en nadat julle gedoop is met water, kyk, sal Ek julle doop met vuur en met die Heilige Gees; daarom, geseënd is julle as julle in My sal glo en gedoop word, nadat julle My gesien het en weet dat Ek is.
- 2 En verder, nog saliger is hulle wat sal glo in julle woorde omdat julle sal getuig dat julle My gesien het, en dat julle weet dat Ek is. Ja, geseënd is hulle wat sal glo in julle woorde, en afdaal tot in die dieptes van ootmoed en gedoop word, want hulle sal besoek word met vuur en met die Heilige Gees, en sal 'n vergifnis ontvang van hulle sondes.
- 3 Ja, geseënd is die armes van Gees wat na My kom, want hulle s'n is die koninkryk van die hemel.
- 4 En verder, geseënd is almal wat treur, want hulle sal vertroos word.
- 5 En geseënd is die sagmoediges, want hulle sal die aarde beërwe.
- 6 En geseënd is hulle almal wat honger en dors na regverdigheid, want hulle sal vervul word met die Heilige Gees.
- 7 En geseënd is die barmhartiges, want hulle sal barmhartigheid ontvang.
- 8 En geseënd is al die reines van hart, want hulle sal God sien.
- 9 En geseënd is al die vredemakers, want hulle sal die kinders van God genoem word.
- 10 En geseënd is hulle almal wat vervolgd word om my Naams ontwil, want hulle s'n is die koninkryk van die hemel.

3 Nephi 12

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto Nephi, and to those who had been called, (now the number of them who had been called, and received power and authority to baptize, was twelve) and behold, he stretched forth his hand unto the multitude, and cried unto them, saying: Blessed are ye if ye shall give heed unto the words of these twelve whom I have chosen from among you to minister unto you, and to be your servants; and unto them I have given power that they may baptize you with water; and after that ye are baptized with water, behold, I will baptize you with fire and with the Holy Ghost; therefore blessed are ye if ye shall believe in me and be baptized, after that ye have seen me and know that I am.

And again, more blessed are they who shall believe in your words because that ye shall testify that ye have seen me, and that ye know that I am. Yea, blessed are they who shall believe in your words, and come down into the depths of humility and be baptized, for they shall be visited with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and shall receive a remission of their sins.

Yea, blessed are the poor in spirit who come unto me, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

And again, blessed are all they that mourn, for they shall be comforted.

And blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth.

And blessed are all they who do hunger and thirst after righteousness, for they shall be filled with the Holy Ghost.

And blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy.

And blessed are all the pure in heart, for they shall see God.

And blessed are all the peacemakers, for they shall be called the children of God.

And blessed are all they who are persecuted for my name's sake, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

11 En geseënd is julle wanneer die mense julle sal beledig en vervolg, en allerlei soorte boosheid valslik teen julle sal spreek, om my ontwil;

12 Want julle sal groot vreugde hê en uitermate verheug wees, want groot sal julle loon wees in die hemel; want so het hulle die profete vervolg wat voor julle was.

13 Voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, Ek gee aan julle om die sout te wees van die aarde; maar as die sout sy smaak sal verloor, waarmee sal die aarde gesout word? Die sout sal daarna vir niks deug nie, maar om uitgewerp en vertrap te word onder die voete van mense.

14 Voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, Ek gee aan julle om die lig te wees van hierdie volk. 'n Stad wat geleë is bo-op 'n berg kan nie verberg word nie.

15 Kyk, steek mense 'n kers op en plaas dit onder 'n maatemmer? Nee, maar op 'n staander, en dit gee lig aan almal wat in die huis is;

16 Daarom, laat julle lig so skyn voor hierdie volk, sodat hulle julle goeie werke mag sien en julle Vader verheerlik wat in die hemel is.

17 Moenie dink dat Ek gekom het om die wet of die profete te vernietig nie. Ek het nie gekom om te vernietig nie, maar om te vervul;

18 Want voorwaar Ek sê vir julle, een jota nóg een tittel het nie verbygegaan van die wet nie, maar in My is dit alles vervul.

19 En kyk, Ek het julle die wet en die gebooie gegee van my Vader, sodat julle in My sal glo, en sodat julle sal bekeer van julle sondes, en na My kom met 'n gebroke hart en 'n verslae gees. Kyk, julle het die gebooie voor julle, en die wet is vervul.

20 Daarom, kom na My en word julle gered; want voorwaar Ek sê vir julle, dat tensy julle my gebooie sal onderhou, wat Ek julle gebied het op hierdie tyd-stip, sal julle onder geen omstandighede die koninkryk van die hemel binnegaan nie.

21 Julle het gehoor dat dit gesê is deur hulle van die ou tyd, en dit is ook geskrywe voor julle, dat julle nie mag doodslaan nie, en wie ook al sal doodslaan sal in gevaar wees van die oordeel van God;

And blessed are ye when men shall revile you and persecute, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake;

For ye shall have great joy and be exceedingly glad, for great shall be your reward in heaven; for so persecuted they the prophets who were before you.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the salt of the earth; but if the salt shall lose its savor wherewith shall the earth be salted? The salt shall be thenceforth good for nothing, but to be cast out and to be trodden under foot of men.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the light of this people. A city that is set on a hill cannot be hid.

Behold, do men light a candle and put it under a bushel? Nay, but on a candlestick, and it giveth light to all that are in the house;

Therefore let your light so shine before this people, that they may see your good works and glorify your Father who is in heaven.

Think not that I am come to destroy the law or the prophets. I am not come to destroy but to fulfil;

For verily I say unto you, one jot nor one tittle hath not passed away from the law, but in me it hath all been fulfilled.

And behold, I have given you the law and the commandments of my Father, that ye shall believe in me, and that ye shall repent of your sins, and come unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit. Behold, ye have the commandments before you, and the law is fulfilled.

Therefore come unto me and be ye saved; for verily I say unto you, that except ye shall keep my commandments, which I have commanded you at this time, ye shall in no case enter into the kingdom of heaven.

Ye have heard that it hath been said by them of old time, and it is also written before you, that thou shalt not kill, and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment of God;

22 Maar Ek sê vir julle, dat wie ook al vertoornd is op sy broer, sal in gevaar wees van sy oordeel. En wie ook al vir sy broer sal sê, Raka, sal in gevaar wees van die raad; en wie ook al sal sê, Jou dwaas, sal in gevaar wees van die helse vuur.

23 Daarom, as julle na My sal kom, of sal begeer om na My toe te kom, en onthou dat jul broer iets teen julle het—

24 Gaan dan jou weg na jou broer, en word eers versoen met jou broer, en kom dan na My met volle voorneme van hart, en Ek sal julle ontvang.

25 Wees gou versoen met jou teenstander terwyl jy onderweg is met hom, uit vrees dat hy julle ter eniger tyd sal kry, en julle in die gevangenis gewerp sal word.

26 Voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, julle sal geen-sins daar uitkom totdat julle die uiterste senien betaal het nie. En terwyl julle in die gevangenis is, kan julle selfs een senien betaal? Voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, Nee.

27 Kyk, dit is geskrywe deur hulle van die ou tyd, dat julle nie egbreuk mag pleeg nie;

28 Maar Ek sê vir julle, dat wie ook al na 'n vrou kyk om haar te begeer, het reeds egbreuk in sy hart gepleeg.

29 Kyk, Ek gee aan julle 'n gebod, dat julle nie een van hierdie dinge toelaat om julle hart binne te gaan nie;

30 Want dit is beter dat julle julself hierdie dinge sou ontsê, waarin julle jul kruis sal opneem, as dat julle in die hel gewerp sou word.

31 Daar is geskrywe, dat wie ook al sy vrou sal skei, laat hom vir haar 'n skrywe van egskeiding gee.

32 Voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, dat wie ook al sy vrou sal skei, behalwe omrede van ontug, laat haar egbreuk pleeg; en wie ook al met haar sal trou wat geskei is, pleeg egbreuk.

33 En verder, daar is geskrywe, julle sal nie vals sweer nie, maar sal julle ede aan die Here nakom;

34 Maar voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, sweer hoegenaamd nie; nóg by die hemel, want dit is God se troon;

35 Nóg by die aarde, want dit is sy voetbank;

But I say unto you, that whosoever is angry with his brother shall be in danger of his judgment. And whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council; and whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.

Therefore, if ye shall come unto me, or shall desire to come unto me, and rememberest that thy brother hath aught against thee—

Go thy way unto thy brother, and first be reconciled to thy brother, and then come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I will receive you.

Agree with thine adversary quickly while thou art in the way with him, lest at any time he shall get thee, and thou shalt be cast into prison.

Verily, verily, I say unto thee, thou shalt by no means come out thence until thou hast paid the uttermost senine. And while ye are in prison can ye pay even one senine? Verily, verily, I say unto you, Nay.

Behold, it is written by them of old time, that thou shalt not commit adultery;

But I say unto you, that whosoever looketh on a woman, to lust after her, hath committed adultery already in his heart.

Behold, I give unto you a commandment, that ye suffer none of these things to enter into your heart;

For it is better that ye should deny yourselves of these things, wherein ye will take up your cross, than that ye should be cast into hell.

It hath been written, that whosoever shall put away his wife, let him give her a writing of divorcement.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that whosoever shall put away his wife, saving for the cause of fornication, causeth her to commit adultery; and whoso shall marry her who is divorced committeth adultery.

And again it is written, thou shalt not forswear thyself, but shalt perform unto the Lord thine oaths;

But verily, verily, I say unto you, swear not at all; neither by heaven, for it is God's throne;

Nor by the earth, for it is his footstool;

36 Nóg sal julle sweer by julle hoofde, want julle kan
nie een haar swart of wit maak nie;

37 Maar laat julle mededeling wees Ja, ja; Nee, nee;
want wat ook al kom van meer as hierdie, is boos.

38 En kyk, daar is geskrywe, 'n oog vir 'n oog, en 'n
tand vir 'n tand;

39 Maar Ek sê vir julle, dat julle julle nie teen die bo-
se moet verset nie, maar wie ook al julle op die reg-
terwang sal slaan, draai na hom die ander ook;

40 En as enigeen jou voor die gereg wil daag en jou
onderkleed wegneem, laat hom jou bokleed ook kry;

41 En wie ook al julle sal dwing om 'n myl te gaan,
gaan met hom twee.

42 Gee aan hom wat julle vra, en van hom wat van
julle wil leen, draai julle nie weg nie.

43 En kyk daar is ook geskrywe, dat julle jul naaste
sal liefhê en jul vyand haat;

44 Maar kyk Ek sê vir julle, wees lief vir julle vyande,
seën hulle wat julle vervloek, doen goed aan hulle
wat julle haat, en bid vir hulle wat julle met minag-
ting misbruik en julle vervolg;

45 Sodat julle die kinders mag wees van julle Vader
wat in die hemel is; want Hy laat sy son opgaan oor
die bose en oor die goeies.

46 Daarom, daardie dinge wat van die ou tyd was,
wat onder die wet was, is almal in My vervul.

47 Ou dinge is weggedoen, en alle dinge het nuut ge-
word.

48 Daarom, Ek wil hê dat julle volmaak moet wees
net soos Ek, of julle Vader wat in die hemel is, vol-
maak is.

Neither shalt thou swear by thy head, because
thou canst not make one hair black or white;

But let your communication be Yea, yea; Nay, nay;
for whatsoever cometh of more than these is evil.

And behold, it is written, an eye for an eye, and a
tooth for a tooth;

But I say unto you, that ye shall not resist evil, but
whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn
to him the other also;

And if any man will sue thee at the law and take
away thy coat, let him have thy cloak also;

And whosoever shall compel thee to go a mile, go
with him twain.

Give to him that asketh thee, and from him that
would borrow of thee turn thou not away.

And behold it is written also, that thou shalt love
thy neighbor and hate thine enemy;

But behold I say unto you, love your enemies,
bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate
you, and pray for them who spitefully use you and
persecute you;

That ye may be the children of your Father who is
in heaven; for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil
and on the good.

Therefore those things which were of old time,
which were under the law, in me are all fulfilled.

Old things are done away, and all things have be-
come new.

Therefore I would that ye should be perfect even
as I, or your Father who is in heaven is perfect.

3 Nefi 13

- 1 Voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê dat Ek wil dat julle aan die armes aalmoese moet gee; maar pas op dat julle nie julle aalmoese voor die mense gee om gesien te word deur hulle nie; anders het julle geen beloning van julle Vader wat in die hemel is nie.
- 2 Daarom, wanneer julle jul aalmoese gee, moenie 'n trompet blaas voor julle nie, soos die huigelaars sal gee in die sinagoges en op die strate, sodat hulle lof mag hê van die mense. Voorwaar Ek sê vir julle, hulle het hulle beloning.
- 3 Maar wanneer julle aalmoese gee, laat julle linkerhand nie weet wat julle regterhand doen nie;
- 4 Sodat jul aalmoese in die geheim mag wees; en jul Vader, wat in die geheim sien, Hy sal julle openlik beloon.
- 5 En wanneer julle bid, moet julle nie doen soos die huigelaars nie, want hulle is lief om te bid, en staan in die sinagoges en op die hoeke van die strate, sodat hulle gesien mag word deur mense. Voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, hulle het hulle beloning.
- 6 Maar julle, wanneer julle bid, gaan in jul binnekamer in, en wanneer julle jul deur gesluit het, bid tot jul Vader wat in die verborgenheid is, en jul Vader, wat in die geheim sien, sal julle openlik beloon.
- 7 Maar wanneer julle bid, gebruik nie ydele herhalings, soos die heidene nie, want hulle dink dat hulle gehoor sal word vanweë hulle baie woorde.
- 8 Wees julle daarom nie soos hulle nie, want julle Vader weet watter dinge julle nodig het nog voordat julle Hom vra.
- 9 Volgens hierdie wyse moet julle daarom bid: Onse Vader wat in die hemel is, laat u Naam geheilig word;
- 10 Laat U wil geskied op aarde soos dit is in die hemel.
- 11 En vergeef ons ons skulde, soos ons ons skuldenaars vergewe.
- 12 En laat ons nie in versoeking gelei word nie, maar verlos ons van die bese.
- 13 Want aan U behoort die koninkryk, en die mag, en die heerlikheid, vir ewig. Amen.
- 14 Want, as julle mense hulle oortredings vergewe, sal julle Hemelse Vader ook julle vergewe;

3 Nephi 13

Verily, verily, I say that I would that ye should do alms unto the poor; but take heed that ye do not your alms before men to be seen of them; otherwise ye have no reward of your Father who is in heaven.

Therefore, when ye shall do your alms do not sound a trumpet before you, as will hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may have glory of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But when thou doest alms let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth;

That thine alms may be in secret; and thy Father who seeth in secret, himself shall reward thee openly.

And when thou prayest thou shalt not do as the hypocrites, for they love to pray, standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the streets, that they may be seen of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

But when ye pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen, for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking.

Be not ye therefore like unto them, for your Father knoweth what things ye have need of before ye ask him.

After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father who art in heaven, hallowed be thy name.

Thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven.

And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors.

And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil.

For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, forever. Amen.

For, if ye forgive men their trespasses your heavenly Father will also forgive you;

15 Maar as julle nie mense hulle oortredings vergewe nie, nóg sal julle Vader julle oortredings vergewe.

16 Verder, wanneer julle vas, moenie wees soos die huigelaars, met 'n treurige gelaat nie, want hulle mismak hulle gesigte sodat dit mag voorkom vir die mense dat hulle vas. Voorwaar Ek sê vir julle, hulle het hulle beloning.

17 Maar julle, wanneer julle vas, self jul hoof, en was jul gesig;

18 Sodat julle nie vir mense voorkom dat julle vas nie, maar vir julle Vader, wat in die verborgenheid is; en jul Vader, wat in die geheim sien, sal julle openlik beloon.

19 Moenie vir julle skatte weglê op die aarde, waar mot en roes vernietig, en waar diewe inbreek en steel nie;

20 Maar lê vir julle self skatte weg in die hemel, waar nóg mot nóg roes vernietig, en waar diewe nie inbreek nie, nóg steel.

21 Want waar julle skat is, daar sal julle hart ook wees.

22 Die lig van die liggaam is die oog; daarom, as jul oog opreg is, sal julle hele liggaam vol lig wees.

23 Maar as julle oog boos is, sal julle hele liggaam vol donkerheid wees. As, daarom, die lig wat in julle is, duisternis is, hoe groot is daardie duisternis!

24 Geen mens kan twee meesters dien nie; want óf hy sal die een haat en die ander liefhê, óf anders sal hy die een aanhang en die ander verag. Julle kan nie God en Mammon dien nie.

25 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe Jesus hierdie woorde gespreek het, het Hy na die twaalf gekyk wat Hy gekies het, en aan hulle gesê: Onthou die woorde wat Ek gespreek het. Want kyk, julle is diegene wat Ek gekies het om hierdie mense te dien. Daarom sê Ek aan julle, bekommer julle nie oor julle lewe nie, wat julle sal eet, of wat julle sal drink nie; nóg oor julle liggaam, wat julle sal aantrek. Is die lewe nie meer as voedsel, en die liggaam as klere nie?

26 Kyk na die voëls van die lug, want hulle saai nie, nóg maai hulle nóg bring hulle bymekaar in skure; tog voed julle hemelse Vader hulle. Is julle nie baie beter as hulle nie?

But if ye forgive not men their trespasses neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.

Moreover, when ye fast be not as the hypocrites, of a sad countenance, for they disfigure their faces that they may appear unto men to fast. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But thou, when thou fastest, anoint thy head, and wash thy face;

That thou appear not unto men to fast, but unto thy Father, who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust doth corrupt, and thieves break through and steal;

But lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and where thieves do not break through nor steal.

For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.

The light of the body is the eye; if, therefore, thine eye be single, thy whole body shall be full of light.

But if thine eye be evil, thy whole body shall be full of darkness. If, therefore, the light that is in thee be darkness, how great is that darkness!

No man can serve two masters; for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will hold to the one and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and Mammon.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked upon the twelve whom he had chosen, and said unto them: Remember the words which I have spoken. For behold, ye are they whom I have chosen to minister unto this people. Therefore I say unto you, take no thought for your life, what ye shall eat, or what ye shall drink; nor yet for your body, what ye shall put on. Is not the life more than meat, and the body than raiment?

Behold the fowls of the air, for they sow not, neither do they reap nor gather into barns; yet your heavenly Father feedeth them. Are ye not much better than they?

- 27 Wie van julle, deur daaraan te dink kan een el
voeg by sy lengte?
- 28 En waarom dink julle aan klere? Let op die lelies
van die veld, hoe hulle groei; hulle arbei nie, nóg
spin hulle;
- 29 En tog sê Ek aan julle, dat selfs Salomo, in al sy
heerlikheid, nie geklee was soos een van hierdie nie.
- 30 Daarom, as God die gras van die veld so klee, wat
vandag is, en môre in 'n oond gewerp word, net so
sal Hy julle klee, as julle nie kleingelowig is nie.
- 31 Daarom dink nie daaraan, en sê, Wat sal ons eet?
of, Wat sal ons drink? of, Waarmee sal ons geklee
word nie?
- 32 Want julle hemelse Vader weet dat julle al hierdie
dinge nodig het.
- 33 Maar soek julle eers die koninkryk van God en sy
regverdigheid, en al hierdie dinge sal tot julle byge-
voeg word.
- 34 Dink julle daarom nie oor môre nie, want môre sal
hom bekommer oor sy eie dinge. Genoegsaam is die
dag aan sy eie boosheid.

Which of you by taking thought can add one cubit
unto his stature?

And why take ye thought for raiment? Consider
the lilies of the field how they grow; they toil not,
neither do they spin;

And yet I say unto you, that even Solomon, in all
his glory, was not arrayed like one of these.

Wherefore, if God so clothe the grass of the field,
which today is, and tomorrow is cast into the oven,
even so will he clothe you, if ye are not of little faith.

Therefore take no thought, saying, What shall we
eat? or, What shall we drink? or, Wherewithal shall
we be clothed?

For your heavenly Father knoweth that ye have
need of all these things.

But seek ye first the kingdom of God and his right-
eousness, and all these things shall be added unto
you.

Take therefore no thought for the morrow, for the
morrow shall take thought for the things of itself.
Sufficient is the day unto the evil thereof.

3 Nefi 14

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe Jesus hierdie woorde gespreek het, het Hy weer na die skare gedraai, en het weer sy mond tot hulle geopen, en gesê: Voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, Oordeel nie, sodat julle nie geoordeel word nie.
- 2 Want met welke oordeel julle oordeel, sal julle geoordeel word; en met welke maat julle meet, sal weer vir julle gemeet word.
- 3 En waarom sien jy die splinter wat in jou broer se oog is, maar merk nie die balk wat in jou eie oog is nie?
- 4 Of hoe sal jy vir jou broer sê: Laat my die splinter uit jou oog trek—en kyk, ’n balk is in jou eie oog?
- 5 Jou huigelaar, haal eers die balk uit jou eie oog; en dan sal jy duidelik sien om die splinter uit jou broer se oog te haal.
- 6 Gee nie dit wat heilig is aan die honde nie, nóg werp julle jul pêrels voor die varke, sodat hulle hul nie vertrap onder hulle voete, en omdraai en julle verskeur nie.
- 7 Vra, en dit sal gegee word aan julle; soek, en julle sal vind; klop, en dit sal vir julle oopgemaak word.
- 8 Want elkeen wat vra, ontvang; en hy wat soek, vind; en vir hom wat klop, sal dit oopgemaak word.
- 9 Of watter mens is daar onder julle, wat, as sy seun brood vra, hom ’n klip sal gee?
- 10 Of as hy ’n vis vra, sal hy hom ’n slang gee?
- 11 As julle dan, wat boos is, weet hoe om goeie gawes aan julle kinders te gee, hoeveel te meer sal julle Vader wat in die hemel is, goeie dinge gee aan hulle wat Hom vra?
- 12 Daarom, alle dinge wat ook al julle wil hê dat mense aan julle moet doen, doen julle net so aan hulle; want dit is die wet en die profete.
- 13 Gaan julle in deur die eng poort; want wyd is die poort, en breed is die weg, wat lei na vernietiging, en baie is daar wat daar ingaan;
- 14 Want eng is die poort, en smal is die weg, wat lei na die lewe, en daar is min wat dit vind.

3 Nephi 14

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he turned again to the multitude, and did open his mouth unto them again, saying: Verily, verily, I say unto you, Judge not, that ye be not judged.

For with what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged; and with what measure ye mete, it shall be measured to you again.

And why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother’s eye, but considerest not the beam that is in thine own eye?

Or how wilt thou say to thy brother: Let me pull the mote out of thine eye—and behold, a beam is in thine own eye?

Thou hypocrite, first cast the beam out of thine own eye; and then shalt thou see clearly to cast the mote out of thy brother’s eye.

Give not that which is holy unto the dogs, neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you.

Ask, and it shall be given unto you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.

For every one that asketh, receiveth; and he that seeketh, findeth; and to him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

Or what man is there of you, who, if his son ask bread, will give him a stone?

Or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent?

If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father who is in heaven give good things to them that ask him?

Therefore, all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them, for this is the law and the prophets.

Enter ye in at the strait gate; for wide is the gate, and broad is the way, which leadeth to destruction, and many there be who go in thereat;

Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.

15 Pas op vir valse profete, wat na julle in skaapsklere kom, maar van binne is hulle roofsgtige wolwe.

16 Julle sal hulle ken aan hulle vrugte. Oes mense druiwe van dorings, of vye van distels?

17 Net so bring elke goeie boom goeie vrugte voort; maar 'n slegte boom bring slegte vrugte voort.

18 'n Goeie boom kan nie slegte vrugte voortbring nie, nóg kan 'n slegte boom goeie vrugte voortbring.

19 Elke boom wat nie goeie vrugte voortbring nie word afgekap, en in die vuur gewerp.

20 Daarom, aan hulle vrugte sal julle hulle ken.

21 Nie elkeen wat aan My sê, Here, Here, sal ingaan in die koninkryk van die hemel nie; maar hy wat die wil doen van my Vader wat in die hemel is.

22 Baie sal aan my sê op daardie dag: Here, Here, het ons nie geprofeteer in u Naam, en in u Naam duiwels uitgewerp, en in u Naam baie wonderlike werke gedoen nie?

23 En dan sal Ek aan hulle verklaar: Ek het julle nooit geken nie; gaan weg van My, julle wat die ongeregtigheid werk!

24 Daarom, wie ook al hierdie woorde van My hoor en hulle doen, hom sal Ek vergelyk met 'n verstandige man, wat sy huis op 'n rots gebou het—

25 En die reën het geval, en die vloede het gekom, en die winde het gewaai, en geslaan teen daardie huis; en dit het nie geval nie, want dit was gevestig op 'n rots.

26 En elkeen wat hierdie woorde van my hoor en hulle nie doen nie, sal vergelyk word met 'n dwase man, wat sy huis op die sand gebou het—

27 En die reën het geval, en die vloede het gekom, en die winde het gewaai, en geslaan teen daardie huis; en dit het geval, en groot was die val daarvan.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves.

Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles?

Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit.

A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit.

Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.

Wherefore, by their fruits ye shall know them.

Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father who is in heaven.

Many will say to me in that day: Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name, and in thy name have cast out devils, and in thy name done many wonderful works?

And then will I profess unto them: I never knew you; depart from me, ye that work iniquity.

Therefore, whoso heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, who built his house upon a rock—

And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell not, for it was founded upon a rock.

And every one that heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them not shall be likened unto a foolish man, who built his house upon the sand—

And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell, and great was the fall of it.

3 Nefi 15

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe Jesus hierdie woorde beëindig het, het Hy rondomheen gekyk oor die skare, en aan hulle gesê: Kyk, julle het die dinge gehoor wat Ek geleer het voordat Ek opgevaar het na my Vader; daarom, wie ook al hierdie woorde van my onthou en hulle doen, hom sal Ek opwek op die laaste dag.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat toe Jesus hierdie woorde gesê het, het Hy opgemerk dat daar sommiges onder hulle was wat verwonderd was, en gewonder het wat Hy wou aangaande die wet van Moses; want hulle het nie die gesegde verstaan dat ou dinge verbygegaan het, en dat alle dinge nuut geword het nie.
- 3 En Hy het aan hulle gesê: Verwonder julle nie dat Ek aan julle gesê het dat ou dinge verbygegaan het, en dat alle dinge nuut geword het nie.
- 4 Kyk, Ek sê vir julle dat die wet vervul is wat aan Moses gegee is.
- 5 Kyk, Ek is Hy wat die wet gegee het, en Ek is Hy wat die verbond gesluit het met my volk Israel; daarom, die wet is in My vervul, want Ek het gekom om die wet te vervul; daarom het dit 'n einde.
- 6 Kyk, Ek vernietig nie die profete nie, want soveel as wat nie in My vervul is nie, voorwaar Ek sê vir julle, sal alles vervul word.
- 7 En omdat Ek aan julle gesê het dat ou dinge verbygegaan het, vernietig Ek nie dit wat gespreek is aangaande dinge wat moet kom nie.
- 8 Want kyk, die verbond wat Ek met my volk gesluit het is nie alles vervul nie; maar die wet wat gegee is aan Moses, het 'n einde in My.
- 9 Kyk, Ek is die wet, en die lig. Vertrou op My, en volhard tot die einde, en julle sal lewe; want aan hom wat volhard tot die einde sal Ek die ewige lewe gee.
- 10 Kyk, Ek het aan julle die gebooie gegee; daarom, onderhou my gebooie. En dit is die wet en die profete, want hulle het waarlik getuig van My.
- 11 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe Jesus hierdie woorde gespreek het, het Hy vir daardie twaalf wat Hy gekies het gesê:

3 Nephi 15

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and said unto them: Behold, ye have heard the things which I taught before I ascended to my Father; therefore, whoso remembereth these sayings of mine and doeth them, him will I raise up at the last day.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he perceived that there were some among them who marveled, and wondered what he would concerning the law of Moses; for they understood not the saying that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

And he said unto them: Marvel not that I said unto you that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

Behold, I say unto you that the law is fulfilled that was given unto Moses.

Behold, I am he that gave the law, and I am he who covenanted with my people Israel; therefore, the law in me is fulfilled, for I have come to fulfil the law; therefore it hath an end.

Behold, I do not destroy the prophets, for as many as have not been fulfilled in me, verily I say unto you, shall all be fulfilled.

And because I said unto you that old things have passed away, I do not destroy that which hath been spoken concerning things which are to come.

For behold, the covenant which I have made with my people is not all fulfilled; but the law which was given unto Moses hath an end in me.

Behold, I am the law, and the light. Look unto me, and endure to the end, and ye shall live; for unto him that endureth to the end will I give eternal life.

Behold, I have given unto you the commandments; therefore keep my commandments. And this is the law and the prophets, for they truly testified of me.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he said unto those twelve whom he had chosen:

12 Julle is my dissipels; en julle is 'n lig vir hierdie volk, wat 'n oorblyfsel is van die huis van Josef.

13 En kyk, dit is die land van julle erfenis; en die Vader het dit aan julle gegee.

14 En nooit te eniger tyd het die Vader my 'n bevel gegee dat Ek dit aan julle broers by Jerusalem moet vertel nie.

15 Nóg te eniger tyd het die Vader My bevel gegee dat Ek aan hulle moet vertel aangaande die ander stamme van die huis van Israel, wat die Vader weggelei het uit die land nie.

16 Dit het die Vader My gebied, dat ek aan hulle moet sê:

17 Dat Ek ander skape het wat nie van hierdie kudde is nie; hulle ook moet Ek bring, en hulle sal my stem hoor; en daar sal een kudde wees, en een Herder.

18 En nou, vanweë hardnekkigheid en ongeloof het hulle my woord nie verstaan nie; daarom is Ek gebied om niks meer aangaande hierdie dinge van die Vader aan hulle te sê nie.

19 Maar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, dat die Vader My gebied het, en Ek vertel dit aan julle, dat julle afgeskei is vanuit hulle midde vanweë hulle ongeregtheid; daarom is dit vanweë hulle ongeregtheid dat hulle nie weet van julle nie.

20 En voorwaar, Ek sê weer aan julle dat die Vader die ander stamme afgeskei het van hulle; en dit is vanweë hulle ongeregtheid dat hulle nie van hulle weet nie.

21 En voorwaar Ek sê vir julle, dat julle hulle is van wie Ek gesê het: Ander skape het Ek wat nie van hierdie kudde is nie; hulle ook moet Ek bring, en hulle sal my stem hoor; en daar sal een kudde wees, en een Herder.

22 En hulle het My nie verstaan nie, want hulle het veronderstel dat dit die nie-Jode was; want hulle het nie verstaan dat die nie-Jode bekeer sou word deur hulle prediking nie.

23 En hulle het My nie verstaan toe Ek gesê het dat hulle my stem sal hoor nie; en hulle het My nie verstaan dat die nie-Jode nooit te eniger tyd my stem sou hoor nie—dat Ek My nie sou openbaar aan hulle, tensy dit deur die Heilige Gees was nie.

Ye are my disciples; and ye are a light unto this people, who are a remnant of the house of Joseph.

And behold, this is the land of your inheritance; and the Father hath given it unto you.

And not at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell it unto your brethren at Jerusalem.

Neither at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell unto them concerning the other tribes of the house of Israel, whom the Father hath led away out of the land.

This much did the Father command me, that I should tell unto them:

That other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

And now, because of stiffneckedness and unbelief they understood not my word; therefore I was commanded to say no more of the Father concerning this thing unto them.

But, verily, I say unto you that the Father hath commanded me, and I tell it unto you, that ye were separated from among them because of their iniquity; therefore it is because of their iniquity that they know not of you.

And verily, I say unto you again that the other tribes hath the Father separated from them; and it is because of their iniquity that they know not of them.

And verily I say unto you, that ye are they of whom I said: Other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

And they understood me not, for they supposed it had been the Gentiles; for they understood not that the Gentiles should be converted through their preaching.

And they understood me not that I said they shall hear my voice; and they understood me not that the Gentiles should not at any time hear my voice—that I should not manifest myself unto them save it were by the Holy Ghost.

24 Maar kyk, julle het beide my stem gehoor, en My gesien; en julle is my skape, en julle word gereken onder diegene wat die Vader My gegee het.

But behold, ye have both heard my voice, and seen me; and ye are my sheep, and ye are numbered among those whom the Father hath given me.

3 Nefi 16

- 1 En voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle dat Ek ander skape het, wat nie van hierdie land is nie, nóg van die land Jerusalem, nóg in enige dele van daardie land rondom waarheen Ek gegaan het om te dien.
- 2 Want hulle van wie Ek spreek is hulle wat nog nie my stem gehoor het nie; nóg het Ek my ooit te eniger tyd aan hulle geopenbaar.
- 3 Maar Ek het 'n bevel ontvang van die Vader dat Ek na hulle sal gaan, en dat hulle my stem sal hoor, en gereken sal word onder my skape, dat daar een kudde en een herder mag wees; daarom gaan Ek om Myself aan hulle te toon.
- 4 En ek gebied julle dat julle hierdie woorde sal skryf nadat Ek weggegaan het, sodat indien dit so sal wees dat my volk by Jerusalem, hulle wat My gesien het en by My was in my bediening, nie die Vader in my Naam vra nie, sodat hulle 'n kennis mag ontvang van julle deur die Heilige Gees, en ook van die ander stamme van wie hulle nie weet nie, sodat hierdie woorde wat julle sal skryf, behou sal word en openbaar sal word aan die nie-Jode, sodat deur die volheid van die nie-Jode, die oorblyfsel van hul saad, wat verstrooi sal word oor die aangesig van die aarde vanweë hul ongeloof, ingebring mag word, of gebring mag word tot 'n kennis van My, hulle Verlosser.
- 5 En dan sal Ek hulle bymekaarmaak van die vier hoeke van die aarde; en dan sal Ek die verbond vervul wat die Vader gesluit het met al die mense van die huis van Israel.
- 6 En geseënd is die nie-Jode, vanweë hulle geloof in My, in en deur die Heilige Gees, wat getuig aan hulle van My en van die Vader.
- 7 Kyk, vanweë hulle geloof in My, sê die Vader, en vanweë die ongeloof van julle, o huis van Israel, in die laaste dae sal die waarheid na die nie-Jode kom, sodat die volheid van hierdie dinge bekend gemaak sal word aan hulle.
- 8 Maar wee, sê die Vader, oor die ongelowiges van die nie-Jode—want nieteenstaande hulle verskyn het op die aangesig van hierdie land, en my volk verstrooi het wat van die huis van Israel is; en my volk wat van die huis van Israel is, is uitgewerp onder hulle, en is vertrap onder hulle voete;

3 Nephi 16

And verily, verily, I say unto you that I have other sheep, which are not of this land, neither of the land of Jerusalem, neither in any parts of that land round about whither I have been to minister.

For they of whom I speak are they who have not as yet heard my voice; neither have I at any time manifested myself unto them.

But I have received a commandment of the Father that I shall go unto them, and that they shall hear my voice, and shall be numbered among my sheep, that there may be one fold and one shepherd; therefore I go to show myself unto them.

And I command you that ye shall write these sayings after I am gone, that if it so be that my people at Jerusalem, they who have seen me and been with me in my ministry, do not ask the Father in my name, that they may receive a knowledge of you by the Holy Ghost, and also of the other tribes whom they know not of, that these sayings which ye shall write shall be kept and shall be manifested unto the Gentiles, that through the fulness of the Gentiles, the remnant of their seed, who shall be scattered forth upon the face of the earth because of their unbelief, may be brought in, or may be brought to a knowledge of me, their Redeemer.

And then will I gather them in from the four quarters of the earth; and then will I fulfil the covenant which the Father hath made unto all the people of the house of Israel.

And blessed are the Gentiles, because of their belief in me, in and of the Holy Ghost, which witnesses unto them of me and of the Father.

Behold, because of their belief in me, saith the Father, and because of the unbelief of you, O house of Israel, in the latter day shall the truth come unto the Gentiles, that the fulness of these things shall be made known unto them.

But wo, saith the Father, unto the unbelieving of the Gentiles—for notwithstanding they have come forth upon the face of this land, and have scattered my people who are of the house of Israel; and my people who are of the house of Israel have been cast out from among them, and have been trodden under feet by them;

9 En vanweë die barmhartigheid van die Vader aan die nie-Jode, en ook die oordele van die Vader oor my volk wat van die huis van Israel is, voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, dat na dit alles, en Ek het my volk wat van die huis van Israel is, laat slaan, en laat kwel, en doodslaan, en uitwerp van onder hulle, en laat haat deur hulle, en 'n bespotting en 'n smaad laat word onder hulle—

10 En so gebied die Vader dat Ek aan julle moet sê: Op daardie dag wanneer die nie-Jode sal sondig teen my evangelie, en die volheid sal verwerp van my evangelie, en verhef sal wees in die hoogmoed van hulle harte bo alle nasies, en bo al die volke van die hele aarde, en gevul sal wees met allerlei soorte leuens, en bedrieërye, en kwaadstigting, en allerlei soorte huigelary, en moorde, en priesterliste, en hoererye, en van geheime gruwels; en as hulle al daardie dinge sal doen, en die volheid sal verwerp van my evangelie, kyk, sê die Vader, sal Ek die volheid van my evangelie neem van onder hulle.

11 En dan sal Ek my verbond onthou wat Ek met my volk gesluit het, o huis van Israel, en Ek sal my evangelie na hulle bring.

12 En Ek sal aan julle wys, o huis van Israel, dat die nie-Jode nie mag sal hê oor julle nie; maar Ek sal my verbond met julle onthou, o huis van Israel, en julle sal kom tot die kennis van die volheid van my evangelie.

13 Maar as die nie-Jode sal bekeer en terugkeer na My, sê die Vader, kyk, hulle sal gereken word onder my volk, o huis van Israel.

14 En Ek sal nie my volk toelaat, wat van die huis van Israel is, om deur te gaan onder hulle, en hulle te vertrap nie, sê die Vader.

15 Maar as hulle nie na My keer nie, en ag slaan op my stem nie, sal Ek hulle toelaat, ja, Ek sal my volk toelaat, o huis van Israel, dat hulle sal deurgaans onder hulle, en hulle sal hulle vertrap, en hulle sal wees soos sout wat sy smaak verloor het, wat daarna vir niks deug nie behalwe om uitgegooi te word, en om vertrap te word onder die voete van my volk, o huis van Israel.

And because of the mercies of the Father unto the Gentiles, and also the judgments of the Father upon my people who are of the house of Israel, verily, verily, I say unto you, that after all this, and I have caused my people who are of the house of Israel to be smitten, and to be afflicted, and to be slain, and to be cast out from among them, and to become hated by them, and to become a hiss and a byword among them—

And thus commandeth the Father that I should say unto you: At that day when the Gentiles shall sin against my gospel, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, and shall be lifted up in the pride of their hearts above all nations, and above all the people of the whole earth, and shall be filled with all manner of lyings, and of deceits, and of mischiefs, and all manner of hypocrisy, and murders, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, and of secret abominations; and if they shall do all those things, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, behold, saith the Father, I will bring the fulness of my gospel from among them.

And then will I remember my covenant which I have made unto my people, O house of Israel, and I will bring my gospel unto them.

And I will show unto thee, O house of Israel, that the Gentiles shall not have power over you; but I will remember my covenant unto you, O house of Israel, and ye shall come unto the knowledge of the fulness of my gospel.

But if the Gentiles will repent and return unto me, saith the Father, behold they shall be numbered among my people, O house of Israel.

And I will not suffer my people, who are of the house of Israel, to go through among them, and tread them down, saith the Father.

But if they will not turn unto me, and hearken unto my voice, I will suffer them, yea, I will suffer my people, O house of Israel, that they shall go through among them, and shall tread them down, and they shall be as salt that hath lost its savor, which is thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of my people, O house of Israel.

16 Voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, so het die Vader my gebied—dat Ek aan hierdie volk hierdie land moet gee as hulle erfenis.

17 En dan sal die woorde van die profeet Jesaja vervul word, wat sê:

18 Julle wagte sal die stem verhef; met die stem tesa-me sal hulle sing, want hulle sal sien oog tot oog wanneer die Here weer Sion sal bring.

19 Breek uit in gejubel, sing saam, julle puinhope van Jerusalem; want die Here het sy volk vertroos, Hy het Jerusalem verlos.

20 Die Here het sy heilige arm ontbloot voor die oë van al die nasies; en al die eindes van die aarde sal die heil van God sien.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, thus hath the Father commanded me—that I should give unto this people this land for their inheritance.

And then the words of the prophet Isaiah shall be fulfilled, which say:

Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing, for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of God.

3 Nefi 17

- 1 Kyk, nou het dit gebeur dat toe Jesus hierdie woorde gespreek het, het Hy weer rondomheen gekyk na die skare, en hy het aan hulle gesê: Kyk, my tyd is op hande.
- 2 Ek merk dat julle swak is, dat julle nie al my woorde kan verstaan wat Ek deur die Vader gebied is om met julle te spreek op hierdie tyd nie.
- 3 Daarom, gaan julle na julle huise, en peins oor die dinge wat Ek gesê het, en vra vir die Vader, in my Naam, sodat julle mag verstaan, en berei julle gedagtes voor vir môre, en Ek kom weer na julle.
- 4 Maar nou gaan Ek na die Vader, en ook om Myself te toon aan die verlore stamme van Israel, want hulle is nie verlore vir die Vader nie, want Hy weet waarheen Hy hulle geneem het.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat toe Jesus so gespreek het, het Hy weer rondomheen gekyk oor die skare, en gesien dat hulle in trane was, en standvastig na Hom gekyk het asof hulle Hom wou vra om nog 'n rukkie langer te bly by hulle.
- 6 En Hy het aan hulle gesê: Kyk, my binneste is gevul met ontferming teenoor julle.
- 7 Het julle eniges onder julle wat siek is? Bring hulle hierheen. Het julle eniges wat lam is, of blind, of mank, of vermink, of melaats, of wat verdor is, of wat doof is, of wat op enige manier gekwel is? Bring hulle hierheen en Ek sal hulle genees, want Ek ontferm My oor julle; my binneste is gevul met barmhartigheid.
- 8 Want Ek merk dat julle begeer dat Ek aan julle moet toon wat Ek vir julle broers by Jerusalem gedoen het, want Ek sien dat julle geloof voldoende is dat Ek julle kan genees.
- 9 En dit het gebeur dat toe Hy so gespreek het, het die hele skare saam uitgegaan, met hulle siekes en hulle gekweldes, en hulle verlamdes, en met hulle blindes, en met hulle stommes, en met hulle almal wat gekwel is op enige wyse; en Hy het hulle elkeen genees soos hulle vorentoe gebring is na Hom.

3 Nephi 17

Behold, now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked round about again on the multitude, and he said unto them: Behold, my time is at hand.

I perceive that ye are weak, that ye cannot understand all my words which I am commanded of the Father to speak unto you at this time.

Therefore, go ye unto your homes, and ponder upon the things which I have said, and ask of the Father, in my name, that ye may understand, and prepare your minds for the morrow, and I come unto you again.

But now I go unto the Father, and also to show myself unto the lost tribes of Israel, for they are not lost unto the Father, for he knoweth whither he hath taken them.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus spoken, he cast his eyes round about again on the multitude, and beheld they were in tears, and did look steadfastly upon him as if they would ask him to tarry a little longer with them.

And he said unto them: Behold, my bowels are filled with compassion towards you.

Have ye any that are sick among you? Bring them hither. Have ye any that are lame, or blind, or halt, or maimed, or leprous, or that are withered, or that are deaf, or that are afflicted in any manner? Bring them hither and I will heal them, for I have compassion upon you; my bowels are filled with mercy.

For I perceive that ye desire that I should show unto you what I have done unto your brethren at Jerusalem, for I see that your faith is sufficient that I should heal you.

And it came to pass that when he had thus spoken, all the multitude, with one accord, did go forth with their sick and their afflicted, and their lame, and with their blind, and with their dumb, and with all them that were afflicted in any manner; and he did heal them every one as they were brought forth unto him.

10 En hulle het almal, beide hulle wat genees is en hulle wat gesond was, neergebuig aan sy voete, en het Hom aanbid; en soveel as wat kon kom ten spyte van die skare, het sy voete gesoen, in soverre dat hulle sy voete natgemaak het met hulle tranes.

11 En dit het gebeur dat Hy gebied het dat hulle klein kindertjies gebring moes word.

12 Dus het hulle hul klein kindertjies gebring en hulle neergesit op die grond rondom Hom, en Jesus het in die middel gestaan; en die skare het plek gemaak totdat hulle almal na Hom gebring is.

13 En dit het gebeur dat nadat hulle almal gebring is, en Jesus in die middel gestaan het, het Hy die skare gebied dat hulle moes neerkniel op die grond.

14 En dit het gebeur dat toe hulle neergekniel het op die grond, het Jesus bewoë geword, en gesê: Vader, Ek is verontrus vanweë die boosheid van die volk van die huis van Israel.

15 En toe Hy hierdie woorde gesê het, het Hy self ook gekniel op die aarde; en kyk, Hy het gebid tot die Vader, en die dinge wat Hy gebid het kan nie geskrywe word nie, en die skare het getuienis gelewer wat Hom gehoor het.

16 En op hierdie wyse lewer hulle getuienis: Die oog het voorheen nooit gesien, nóg het die oor gehoor, sulke groot en wonderbaarlike dinge soos wat ons gesien en gehoor het wat Jesus spreek het tot die Vader nie;

17 En geen tong kan spreek, nóg kan daar geskryf word deur enige mens, nóg kan die harte van mense sulke groot en wonderbaarlike dinge indink, as wat ons beide gesien en gehoor het Jesus spreek; en niemand kan indink die vreugde wat ons siele gevul het ten tyde dat ons Hom gehoor bid het vir ons tot die Vader nie.

18 En dit het gebeur dat toe Jesus 'n einde gemaak het om te bid tot die Vader, het Hy opgestaan; maar so groot was die vreugde van die skare dat hulle oorweldig was.

19 En dit het gebeur dat Jesus tot hulle spreek het en hulle gebied het om op te staan.

20 En hulle het opgestaan van die aarde, en Hy het aan hulle gesê: Geseënd is julle vanweë julle geloof. En nou kyk, my vreugde is vol.

And they did all, both they who had been healed and they who were whole, bow down at his feet, and did worship him; and as many as could come for the multitude did kiss his feet, insomuch that they did bathe his feet with their tears.

And it came to pass that he commanded that their little children should be brought.

So they brought their little children and set them down upon the ground round about him, and Jesus stood in the midst; and the multitude gave way till they had all been brought unto him.

And it came to pass that when they had all been brought, and Jesus stood in the midst, he commanded the multitude that they should kneel down upon the ground.

And it came to pass that when they had knelt upon the ground, Jesus groaned within himself, and said: Father, I am troubled because of the wickedness of the people of the house of Israel.

And when he had said these words, he himself also knelt upon the earth; and behold he prayed unto the Father, and the things which he prayed cannot be written, and the multitude did bear record who heard him.

And after this manner do they bear record: The eye hath never seen, neither hath the ear heard, before, so great and marvelous things as we saw and heard Jesus speak unto the Father;

And no tongue can speak, neither can there be written by any man, neither can the hearts of men conceive so great and marvelous things as we both saw and heard Jesus speak; and no one can conceive of the joy which filled our souls at the time we heard him pray for us unto the Father.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying unto the Father, he arose; but so great was the joy of the multitude that they were overcome.

And it came to pass that Jesus spake unto them, and bade them arise.

And they arose from the earth, and he said unto them: Blessed are ye because of your faith. And now behold, my joy is full.

21 En toe Hy hierdie woorde gesê het, het Hy ge-
ween, en die skare het daarvan getuienis gelewer, en
Hy het hulle klein kindertjies geneem, een vir een,
en hulle geseën, en tot die Vader gebid vir hulle.

22 En toe Hy dit gedoen het, het Hy weer geweën;

23 En Hy het met die skare gespreek, en aan hulle ge-
sê: Aanskou julle klein kindertjies.

24 En toe hulle kyk om te sien, het hulle hul oë he-
melwaarts gerig, en hulle het die hemele sien oop-
gaan, en hulle het engele sien neerdaal uit die hemel
as't ware te midde van vuur; en hulle het neergedaal
en daardie klein kindertjies omring, en hulle was
omring met vuur; en die engele het hulle gedien.

25 En die skare het gesien en gehoor en getuienis ge-
lewer; en hulle weet dat hulle getuienis waar is, want
hulle almal het gesien en gehoor, elke man vir hom-
self; en hulle was in getal omtrent tweeduisend vyf-
honderd siele; en hulle het bestaan uit mans, vroue
en kinders.

And when he had said these words, he wept, and
the multitude bare record of it, and he took their lit-
tle children, one by one, and blessed them, and
prayed unto the Father for them.

And when he had done this he wept again;

And he spake unto the multitude, and said unto
them: Behold your little ones.

And as they looked to behold they cast their eyes
towards heaven, and they saw the heavens open, and
they saw angels descending out of heaven as it were
in the midst of fire; and they came down and encir-
cled those little ones about, and they were encircled
about with fire; and the angels did minister unto
them.

And the multitude did see and hear and bear
record; and they know that their record is true for
they all of them did see and hear, every man for him-
self; and they were in number about two thousand
and five hundred souls; and they did consist of men,
women, and children.

3 Nefi 18

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat Jesus sy dissipels gebied het dat hulle brood en wyn na Hom moes bring.
- 2 En terwyl hulle weg was om brood en wyn te gaan haal, het Hy die skare gebied dat hulle moes gaan sit op die grond.
- 3 En toe die dissipels gekom het met brood en wyn, het Hy van die brood geneem en dit gebreek en geseën; en Hy het aan die dissipels gegee en gebied dat hulle moes eet.
- 4 En toe hulle geëet het en gevul was, het Hy gebied dat hulle moes gee aan die skare.
- 5 En toe die skare geëet het en gevul was, het Hy aan die dissipels gesê: Kyk, daar sal een onder julle geordineer word, en aan hom sal Ek mag gee dat hy brood sal breek en dit seën en dit gee aan die mense van my kerk, aan al diegene wat sal glo en gedoop word in my Naam.
- 6 En dit sal julle altyd nastreef om te doen, net soos Ek gedoen het, net soos Ek brood gebreek het en dit geseën het en dit gegee het aan julle.
- 7 En dit sal julle doen ter gedagtenis van my liggaam, wat Ek getoon het aan julle. En dit sal 'n getuigenis wees tot die Vader dat julle My altyd onthou. En as julle My altyd onthou, sal julle my Gees hê om met julle te wees.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat toe Hy hierdie woorde gesê het, het Hy sy dissipels gebied dat hulle van die wyn van die beker moes neem en daarvan drink, en dat hulle ook aan die skare moes gee sodat hulle daarvan mag drink.
- 9 En dit het gebeur dat hulle dit gedoen het, en daarvan gedrink het en gevul is; en hulle het aan die skare gegee, en hulle het gedrink, en hulle is gevul.
- 10 En toe die dissipels dit gedoen het, het Jesus aan hulle gesê: Geseënd is julle vanweë hierdie ding wat julle gedoen het, want dit is 'n vervulling van my gebooe, en dit getuig aan die Vader dat julle gewillig is om dit te doen wat Ek julle gebied het.

3 Nephi 18

- And it came to pass that Jesus commanded his disciples that they should bring forth some bread and wine unto him.
- And while they were gone for bread and wine, he commanded the multitude that they should sit themselves down upon the earth.
- And when the disciples had come with bread and wine, he took of the bread and brake and blessed it; and he gave unto the disciples and commanded that they should eat.
- And when they had eaten and were filled, he commanded that they should give unto the multitude.
- And when the multitude had eaten and were filled, he said unto the disciples: Behold there shall one be ordained among you, and to him will I give power that he shall break bread and bless it and give it unto the people of my church, unto all those who shall believe and be baptized in my name.
- And this shall ye always observe to do, even as I have done, even as I have broken bread and blessed it and given it unto you.
- And this shall ye do in remembrance of my body, which I have shown unto you. And it shall be a testimony unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.
- And it came to pass that when he said these words, he commanded his disciples that they should take of the wine of the cup and drink of it, and that they should also give unto the multitude that they might drink of it.
- And it came to pass that they did so, and did drink of it and were filled; and they gave unto the multitude, and they did drink, and they were filled.
- And when the disciples had done this, Jesus said unto them: Blessed are ye for this thing which ye have done, for this is fulfilling my commandments, and this doth witness unto the Father that ye are willing to do that which I have commanded you.

- 11 En dit sal julle altyd doen aan diegene wat bekeer en gedoop word in my Naam; en julle sal dit doen ter gedagtenis van my bloed, wat Ek gestort het vir julle, sodat julle mag getuig aan die Vader dat julle My altyd onthou. En as julle My altyd onthou, sal julle my Gees hê om met julle te wees.
- 12 En Ek gee aan julle 'n gebod dat julle hierdie dinge sal doen. En as julle altyd hierdie dinge sal doen, geseënd is julle, want julle is gebou op my rots.
- 13 Maar wie ook al onder julle meer of minder sal doen as hierdie dinge is nie gebou op my rots nie, maar is gebou op 'n sanderige fondament; en wanneer die reën val, en die vloede kom, en die winde waai, en teen hulle slaan, sal hulle val, en die poorte van die hel is reeds oop om hulle te ontvang.
- 14 Daarom, geseënd is julle as julle my gebooe sal onderhou, wat die Vader My gebied het dat Ek aan julle moet gee.
- 15 Voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, julle moet altyd waak en bid, sodat julle nie versoek word deur die duiwel nie, en julle gevange weggevoer word deur hom nie.
- 16 En soos Ek onder julle gebid het, net so moet julle bid in my kerk, onder my volk wat bekeer en gedoop word in my Naam. Kyk, Ek is die lig; Ek het 'n voorbeeld gestel vir julle.
- 17 En dit het gebeur dat toe Jesus hierdie woorde met sy dissipels gespreek het, het Hy weer na die skare gedraai en aan hulle gesê:
- 18 Kyk, voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, julle moet altyd waak en bid sodat julle nie in die versoeking kom nie; want Satan begeer om julle te hê, sodat Hy julle kan sif soos koring.
- 19 Daarom, julle moet altyd bid tot die Vader in my Naam;
- 20 En wat ook al julle die Vader sal vra in my Naam, wat reg is, en glo dat julle sal ontvang, kyk, dit sal aan julle gegee word.
- 21 Bid in julle gesinne tot die Vader, altyd in my Naam, sodat julle vroue en julle kinders geseënd mag wees.
- 22 En kyk, julle moet dikwels bymekaar kom; en julle sal geen mens verbied om na julle te kom wanneer julle bymekaar sal kom nie, maar laat hulle toe om na julle te kom en verbied hulle nie;

And this shall ye always do to those who repent and are baptized in my name; and ye shall do it in remembrance of my blood, which I have shed for you, that ye may witness unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

And I give unto you a commandment that ye shall do these things. And if ye shall always do these things blessed are ye, for ye are built upon my rock.

But whoso among you shall do more or less than these are not built upon my rock, but are built upon a sandy foundation; and when the rain descends, and the floods come, and the winds blow, and beat upon them, they shall fall, and the gates of hell are ready open to receive them.

Therefore blessed are ye if ye shall keep my commandments, which the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always, lest ye be tempted by the devil, and ye be led away captive by him.

And as I have prayed among you even so shall ye pray in my church, among my people who do repent and are baptized in my name. Behold I am the light; I have set an example for you.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto his disciples, he turned again unto the multitude and said unto them:

Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always lest ye enter into temptation; for Satan desireth to have you, that he may sift you as wheat.

Therefore ye must always pray unto the Father in my name;

And whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is right, believing that ye shall receive, behold it shall be given unto you.

Pray in your families unto the Father, always in my name, that your wives and your children may be blessed.

And behold, ye shall meet together oft; and ye shall not forbid any man from coming unto you when ye shall meet together, but suffer them that they may come unto you and forbid them not;

23 Maar julle sal bid vir hulle, en sal hulle nie uitwerp nie; en as dit so is dat hulle dikwels na julle kom, sal julle bid vir hulle tot die Vader, in my Naam.

24 Daarom, hou julle lig omhoog sodat dit mag skyn vir die wêreld. Kyk, Ek is die lig wat julle sal omhoog hou—dit wat julle My sien doen het. Kyk, julle sien dat Ek gebid het tot die Vader, en julle almal het gesien.

25 En julle sien dat Ek gebied het dat niemand van julle moet weggaan nie, maar het eerder gebied dat julle tot My moet kom, sodat julle mag voel en sien; net so moet julle doen aan die wêreld; en wie ook al hierdie gebod verbreek, laat homself toe om in versoeking gelei te word.

26 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe Jesus hierdie woorde gespreek het, het Hy weer sy oë gekeer na die dissipels wat hy gekies het, en het aan hulle gesê:

27 Kyk voorwaar, voorwaar Ek sê vir julle, Ek gee aan julle 'n ander gebod, en dan moet Ek na my Vader gaan sodat Ek ander gebooië mag vervul wat Hy My gegee het.

28 En nou kyk, hierdie is die gebod wat Ek aan julle gee, dat julle niemand bewustelik sal toelaat om onwaardiglik te neem van my vlees en bloed wanneer julle dit sal bedien nie;

29 Want wie ook al my vlees en bloed onwaardiglik eet en drink, eet en drink verdoemenis tot sy siel; daarom, as julle weet dat 'n man onwaardig is om te eet en drink van my vlees en bloed, sal julle hom verbied.

30 Nogtans, julle sal hom nie uitwerp van onder julle nie, maar julle sal hom dien en sal vir hom bid tot die Vader, in my Naam; en as dit so is dat hy bekeer en gedoop word in my Naam, dan sal julle hom ontvang, en sal aan hom van my vlees en bloed bedien.

31 Maar as hy nie bekeer nie, sal hy nie gereken word onder my volk nie, sodat hy my volk nie vernietig nie, want kyk ek ken my skape, en hulle is getel.

But ye shall pray for them, and shall not cast them out; and if it so be that they come unto you oft ye shall pray for them unto the Father, in my name.

Therefore, hold up your light that it may shine unto the world. Behold I am the light which ye shall hold up—that which ye have seen me do. Behold ye see that I have prayed unto the Father, and ye all have witnessed.

And ye see that I have commanded that none of you should go away, but rather have commanded that ye should come unto me, that ye might feel and see; even so shall ye do unto the world; and whosoever breaketh this commandment suffereth himself to be led into temptation.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he turned his eyes again upon the disciples whom he had chosen, and said unto them:

Behold verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you another commandment, and then I must go unto my Father that I may fulfil other commandments which he hath given me.

And now behold, this is the commandment which I give unto you, that ye shall not suffer any one knowingly to partake of my flesh and blood unworthily, when ye shall minister it;

For whoso eateth and drinketh my flesh and blood unworthily eateth and drinketh damnation to his soul; therefore if ye know that a man is unworthy to eat and drink of my flesh and blood ye shall forbid him.

Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out from among you, but ye shall minister unto him and shall pray for him unto the Father, in my name; and if it so be that he repenteth and is baptized in my name, then shall ye receive him, and shall minister unto him of my flesh and blood.

But if he repent not he shall not be numbered among my people, that he may not destroy my people, for behold I know my sheep, and they are numbered.

32 Nogtans, julle sal hom nie uitwerp uit julle sinagoges, of julle plekke van aanbidding nie, want diesulkes sal julle aanhou om te dien; want julle weet nie of hulle sal terugkom en bekeer, en na My kom met volle voorneme van hart nie, en Ek sal hulle genees; en julle sal die middel wees om heil na hulle te bring.

33 Daarom, onderhou hierdie woorde wat Ek julle gebied het, sodat julle nie onder oordeel kom nie, want wee hom vir wie die Vader veroordeel.

34 En Ek gee julle hierdie gebooie vanweë die twiste wat onder julle was. En geseënd is julle as julle geen twiste onder julle het nie.

35 En nou gaan Ek na die Vader, want dit is raadsaam dat Ek na die Vader gaan om julle onthalwe.

36 En dit het gebeur dat toe Jesus 'n einde gemaak het aan hierdie woorde, het Hy met sy hand die dissipels aangeraak wat Hy gekies het, een vir een, totdat Hy hulle almal aangeraak het, en het met hulle gespreek terwyl Hy hulle aangeraak het.

37 En die skare het nie die woorde gehoor wat Hy gespreek het nie, daarom het hulle nie getuienis gelewer nie; maar die dissipels het getuienis gelewer dat Hy hulle mag gegee het om die Heilige Gees te skenk. En ek sal aan julle toon dat hierdie getuienis waar is.

38 En dit het gebeur dat toe Jesus hulle almal aangeraak het, het daar 'n wolk gekom en die skare oorskadu dat hulle Jesus nie kon sien nie.

39 En terwyl hulle oorskadu was, het Hy weggegaan van hulle, en het opgevaar in die hemel. En die dissipels het gesien en getuienis gelewer dat Hy weer opgevaar het in die hemel.

Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out of your synagogues, or your places of worship, for unto such shall ye continue to minister; for ye know not but what they will return and repent, and come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I shall heal them; and ye shall be the means of bringing salvation unto them.

Therefore, keep these sayings which I have commanded you that ye come not under condemnation; for wo unto him whom the Father condemneth.

And I give you these commandments because of the disputations which have been among you. And blessed are ye if ye have no disputations among you.

And now I go unto the Father, because it is expedient that I should go unto the Father for your sakes.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of these sayings, he touched with his hand the disciples whom he had chosen, one by one, even until he had touched them all, and spake unto them as he touched them.

And the multitude heard not the words which he spake, therefore they did not bear record; but the disciples bare record that he gave them power to give the Holy Ghost. And I will show unto you hereafter that this record is true.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had touched them all, there came a cloud and overshadowed the multitude that they could not see Jesus.

And while they were overshadowed he departed from them, and ascended into heaven. And the disciples saw and did bear record that he ascended again into heaven.

3 Nefi 19

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat nadat Jesus opgevaar het in die hemel, het die skare uiteengegaan en elke man het sy vrou en sy kinders geneem en het na sy eie huis teruggekeer.
- 2 En dit is onmiddellik ver en wyd onder die volk bekendgemaak, voordat dit nog donker was, dat die skare Jesus gesien het, en dat Hy hulle gedien het, en dat Hy ook Homself die volgende dag aan die skare sou toon.
- 3 Ja, en wel deur die hele nag is dit ver en wyd bekend gemaak aangaande Jesus; en in so 'n mate het hulle aan die volk uitgestuur met die gevolg dat daar baie was, ja, 'n uitermate groot getal, het uitermate hard gewerk daardie hele nag sodat hulle die volgende dag op die plek mag wees waar Jesus Homself aan die skare sou toon.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat die volgende dag, toe die skare bymekaargekom het, kyk, Nefi en sy broer wat hy opgewek het uit die dood, wie se naam Timótheüs was, en ook sy seun, wie se naam Jonas was, en ook Mathoni, en Mathoniha, sy broer, en Kumen, en Kumenonhi, en Jeremia, en Semnon, en Jonas, en Sedekía, en Jesaja—nou hierdie was die name van die dissipels wat Jesus gekies het—en dit het gebeur dat hulle uitgegaan en in die midde van die skare gaan staan het.
- 5 En kyk, die skare was so groot met die gevolg dat hulle hul in twaalf groepe laat verdeel het.
- 6 En die twaalf het die skare onderrig; en kyk, hulle het die skare laat neerkniel op die aangesig van die aarde, en laat bid tot die Vader in die Naam van Jesus.
- 7 En die dissipels het ook gebid tot die Vader in die Naam van Jesus. En dit het gebeur dat hulle opgestaan het en die volk gedien het.
- 8 En toe hulle daardie selfde woorde bedien het wat Jesus gespreek het—sonder afwyking van die woorde wat Jesus gespreek het—kyk, het hulle weer gekniel en gebid tot die Vader in die Naam van Jesus.

3 Nephi 19

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ascended into heaven, the multitude did disperse, and every man did take his wife and his children and did return to his own home.

And it was noised abroad among the people immediately, before it was yet dark, that the multitude had seen Jesus, and that he had ministered unto them, and that he would also show himself on the morrow unto the multitude.

Yea, and even all the night it was noised abroad concerning Jesus; and insomuch did they send forth unto the people that there were many, yea, an exceedingly great number, did labor exceedingly all that night, that they might be on the morrow in the place where Jesus should show himself unto the multitude.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, when the multitude was gathered together, behold, Nephi and his brother whom he had raised from the dead, whose name was Timothy, and also his son, whose name was Jonas, and also Mathoni, and Mathonihah, his brother, and Kumen, and Kumenonhi, and Jeremiah, and Shemnon, and Jonas, and Zedekiah, and Isaiah—now these were the names of the disciples whom Jesus had chosen—and it came to pass that they went forth and stood in the midst of the multitude.

And behold, the multitude was so great that they did cause that they should be separated into twelve bodies.

And the twelve did teach the multitude; and behold, they did cause that the multitude should kneel down upon the face of the earth, and should pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus.

And the disciples did pray unto the Father also in the name of Jesus. And it came to pass that they arose and ministered unto the people.

And when they had ministered those same words which Jesus had spoken—nothing varying from the words which Jesus had spoken—behold, they knelt again and prayed to the Father in the name of Jesus.

- 9 En hulle het gebid om dit wat hulle die meeste be-
geer het; en hulle het begeer dat die Heilige Gees aan
hulle gegee moes word.
- 10 En nadat hulle so gebid het, het hulle afgegaan na
die waterkant, en die skare het hulle gevolg.
- 11 En dit het gebeur dat Nephi afgegaan het in die wa-
ter in en gedoop is.
- 12 En hy het opgekom uit die water en het begin om
te doop. En hy het al diegene gedoop wat deur Jesus
gekies is.
- 13 En dit het gebeur nadat hulle almal gedoop is en
opgekom het uit die water, het die Heilige Gees op
hulle geval, en hulle is gevul met die Heilige Gees en
met vuur.
- 14 En kyk, hulle is omring soos met vuur; en dit het
neergedaal van die hemel, en die skare het dit gesien,
en het getuienis gelever; en engele het neergedaal
uit die hemel en hulle gedien.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat terwyl die engele die dissi-
pels gedien het, kyk, het Jesus gekom en gestaan in
hul midde en hulle gedien.
- 16 En dit het gebeur dat Hy met die skare gespreek
het, en hulle gebied het dat hulle weer moes neer-
kniel op die aarde, en ook dat sy dissipels moes neer-
kniel op die aarde.
- 17 En dit het gebeur dat toe hulle almal neergekniel
het op die aarde, het Hy sy dissipels gebied dat hulle
moes bid.
- 18 En kyk, hulle het begin om te bid; en hulle het ge-
bid tot Jesus, en Hom hulle Here en hulle God ge-
noem.
- 19 En dit het gebeur dat Jesus weggegaan het uit hul-
le midde, 'n entjie van hulle af gegaan het en homself
neergebuig het op die aarde, en Hy het gesê:
- 20 Vader, Ek dank U dat U die Heilige Gees gegee het
aan diegene wat Ek gekies het; en dit is vanweë hulle
geloof in My dat Ek hulle gekies het uit die wêreld.
- 21 Vader, Ek bid U dat U die Heilige Gees sal gee aan
al diegene wat in hulle woorde sal glo.

And they did pray for that which they most de-
sired; and they desired that the Holy Ghost should be
given unto them.

And when they had thus prayed they went down
unto the water's edge, and the multitude followed
them.

And it came to pass that Nephi went down into the
water and was baptized.

And he came up out of the water and began to bap-
tize. And he baptized all those whom Jesus had cho-
sen.

And it came to pass when they were all baptized
and had come up out of the water, the Holy Ghost
did fall upon them, and they were filled with the
Holy Ghost and with fire.

And behold, they were encircled about as if it were
by fire; and it came down from heaven, and the mul-
titude did witness it, and did bear record; and angels
did come down out of heaven and did minister unto
them.

And it came to pass that while the angels were
ministering unto the disciples, behold, Jesus came
and stood in the midst and ministered unto them.

And it came to pass that he spake unto the multi-
tude, and commanded them that they should kneel
down again upon the earth, and also that his disci-
ples should kneel down upon the earth.

And it came to pass that when they had all knelt
down upon the earth, he commanded his disciples
that they should pray.

And behold, they began to pray; and they did pray
unto Jesus, calling him their Lord and their God.

And it came to pass that Jesus departed out of the
midst of them, and went a little way off from them
and bowed himself to the earth, and he said:

Father, I thank thee that thou hast given the Holy
Ghost unto these whom I have chosen; and it is be-
cause of their belief in me that I have chosen them
out of the world.

Father, I pray thee that thou wilt give the Holy
Ghost unto all them that shall believe in their words.

22 Vader, U het hulle die Heilige Gees gegee omdat hulle in My glo; en U sien dat hulle in My glo omdat U hulle hoor, en hulle bid tot My; en hulle bid tot My omdat Ek met hulle is.

23 En nou Vader, Ek bid tot U vir hulle, en ook vir al diegene wat in hulle woorde sal glo, sodat hulle in My mag glo, sodat Ek in hulle mag wees soos U, Vader, in My is, sodat ons een mag wees.

24 En dit het gebeur dat nadat Jesus so gebid het tot die Vader, het Hy na sy dissipels gekom, en kyk, hulle het nog aangehou, sonder ophou, om te bid tot Hom; en hulle het nie baie woorde gebruik nie, want dit is gegee aan hulle wat hulle moes bid, en hulle was gevul met begeerte.

25 En dit het gebeur dat Jesus hulle geseën het terwyl hulle tot Hom gebid het; en sy gelaat het vir hulle geglimlag, en die lig van sy gelaat het geskyn op hulle, en kyk, hulle was so wit soos die gelaat en ook die kleding van Jesus; en kyk die witheid daarvan het al die witheid oortref, ja, waarlik kon daar niks op aarde wees so wit as die witheid daarvan nie.

26 En Jesus het aan hulle gesê: Bid sonder ophou; en hulle het nie ophou om te bid nie.

27 En Hy het weer van hulle af weggedraai, en 'n entjie weggegaan en Homself neergebuig op die aarde; en Hy het weer gebid tot die Vader, en gesê:

28 Vader, Ek dank U dat U diegene gereinig het wat Ek gekies het, vanweë hulle geloof, en Ek bid vir hulle, en ook vir hulle wat sal glo in hulle woorde, sodat hulle gereinig mag word in My, deur geloof in hulle woorde, net soos hulle gereinig word in My.

29 Vader, Ek bid nie vir die wêreld nie, maar vir diegene wat U My gegee het uit die wêreld, vanweë hulle geloof, dat hulle gereinig mag word in My, dat Ek in hulle mag wees soos U, Vader, in My is, dat ons een mag wees, dat Ek verheerlik mag word in hulle.

30 En toe Jesus hierdie woorde gespreek het, het Hy weer na sy dissipels gekom; en kyk, hulle het standvastig gebid, sonder ophou, tot Hom; en Hy het weer vir hulle geglimlag; en kyk hulle was wit, net soos Jesus.

Father, thou hast given them the Holy Ghost because they believe in me; and thou seest that they believe in me because thou hearest them, and they pray unto me; and they pray unto me because I am with them.

And now Father, I pray unto thee for them, and also for all those who shall believe on their words, that they may believe in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus prayed unto the Father, he came unto his disciples, and behold, they did still continue, without ceasing, to pray unto him; and they did not multiply many words, for it was given unto them what they should pray, and they were filled with desire.

And it came to pass that Jesus blessed them as they did pray unto him; and his countenance did smile upon them, and the light of his countenance did shine upon them, and behold they were as white as the countenance and also the garments of Jesus; and behold the whiteness thereof did exceed all the whiteness, yea, even there could be nothing upon earth so white as the whiteness thereof.

And Jesus said unto them: Pray on; nevertheless they did not cease to pray.

And he turned from them again, and went a little way off and bowed himself to the earth; and he prayed again unto the Father, saying:

Father, I thank thee that thou hast purified those whom I have chosen, because of their faith, and I pray for them, and also for them who shall believe on their words, that they may be purified in me, through faith on their words, even as they are purified in me.

Father, I pray not for the world, but for those whom thou hast given me out of the world, because of their faith, that they may be purified in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one, that I may be glorified in them.

And when Jesus had spoken these words he came again unto his disciples; and behold they did pray steadfastly, without ceasing, unto him; and he did smile upon them again; and behold they were white, even as Jesus.

- 31 En dit het gebeur dat Hy weer 'n entjie weggegaan
het en gebid het tot die Vader;
- 32 En tong kan nie die woorde spreek wat Hy gebid
het nie, nóg kan geskryf word deur die mens die
woorde wat Hy gebid het.
- 33 En die skare het gehoor en getuienis gelewer; en
hulle harte was oop en hulle het in hul harte die
woorde begryp wat Hy gebid het.
- 34 Nogtans, so groot en wonderbaarlik was die woor-
de wat Hy gebid het, dat hulle nie geskrywe kan
word nie, nóg kan hulle geuiter word deur die mens.
- 35 En dit het gebeur dat toe Jesus 'n einde gemaak het
om te bid, het Hy weer na die dissipels gekom, en aan
hulle gesê: Sulke groot geloof het Ek nooit gesien on-
der al die Jode nie; daarom kon Ek nie aan hulle sul-
ke groot wonderwerke toon nie, vanweë hulle onge-
loof.
- 36 Voorwaar Ek sê vir julle, daar is niemand van hul-
le wat sulke groot dinge gesien het as wat julle gesien
het nie; nóg het hulle sulke groot dinge gehoor as
wat julle gehoor het.

And it came to pass that he went again a little way
off and prayed unto the Father;

And tongue cannot speak the words which he
prayed, neither can be written by man the words
which he prayed.

And the multitude did hear and do bear record;
and their hearts were open and they did understand
in their hearts the words which he prayed.

Nevertheless, so great and marvelous were the
words which he prayed that they cannot be written,
neither can they be uttered by man.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an
end of praying he came again to the disciples, and
said unto them: So great faith have I never seen
among all the Jews; wherefore I could not show unto
them so great miracles, because of their unbelief.

Verily I say unto you, there are none of them that
have seen so great things as ye have seen; neither
have they heard so great things as ye have heard.

3 Nefi 20

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat Hy die skare gebied het dat hulle moes ophou om te bid, en ook sy dissipels. En Hy het hulle gebied dat hulle nie moes ophou om te bid in hulle harte nie.
- 2 En Hy het hulle gebied dat hulle moes opstaan en op hulle voete staan. En hulle het opgestaan en op hulle voete gestaan.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat Hy weer brood gebreek het en dit geseën het, en gegee het aan die dissipels om te eet.
- 4 En toe hulle geëet het, het Hy hulle gebied dat hulle brood moes breek, en aan die skare gee.
- 5 En toe hulle aan die skare gegee het, het Hy hulle ook wyn gegee om te drink, en hulle gebied dat hulle aan die skare moes gee.
- 6 Nou, daar was geen brood, nóg wyn, gebring deur die dissipels, nóg deur die skare;
- 7 Maar Hy het waarlik aan hulle brood gegee om te eet, en ook wyn om te drink.
- 8 En Hy het aan hulle gesê: Hy wat hierdie brood eet, eet van my liggaam tot sy siel; en hy wat drink van hierdie wyn, drink van my bloed tot sy siel; en sy siel sal nooit honger nóg dors, maar sal gevul wees.
- 9 Nou, toe die skare almal geëet en gedrink het, kyk, is hulle vervul deur die Gees; en hulle het uitgeroep met een stem, en Jesus geloof, vir wie hulle beide gesien en gehoor het.
- 10 En dit het gebeur dat toe hulle almal Jesus geloof het, het Hy aan hulle gesê: Kyk, nou volbring Ek die gebod wat die Vader My gebied het aangaande hierdie volk, wat 'n oorblyfsel is van die huis van Israel.
- 11 Julle onthou dat Ek met julle gespreek het, en gesê het dat wanneer die woorde van Jesaja vervul sou word—kyk, hulle is geskrywe, julle het hulle voor julle, daarom, ondersoek hulle—
- 12 En voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, dat wanneer hulle vervul sal word, dan is die vervulling van die verbond wat die Vader gesluit het met sy volk, o huis van Israel.

3 Nephi 20

And it came to pass that he commanded the multitude that they should cease to pray, and also his disciples. And he commanded them that they should not cease to pray in their hearts.

And he commanded them that they should arise and stand up upon their feet. And they arose up and stood upon their feet.

And it came to pass that he brake bread again and blessed it, and gave to the disciples to eat.

And when they had eaten he commanded them that they should break bread, and give unto the multitude.

And when they had given unto the multitude he also gave them wine to drink, and commanded them that they should give unto the multitude.

Now, there had been no bread, neither wine, brought by the disciples, neither by the multitude;

But he truly gave unto them bread to eat, and also wine to drink.

And he said unto them: He that eateth this bread eateth of my body to his soul; and he that drinketh of this wine drinketh of my blood to his soul; and his soul shall never hunger nor thirst, but shall be filled.

Now, when the multitude had all eaten and drunk, behold, they were filled with the Spirit; and they did cry out with one voice, and gave glory to Jesus, whom they both saw and heard.

And it came to pass that when they had all given glory unto Jesus, he said unto them: Behold now I finish the commandment which the Father hath commanded me concerning this people, who are a remnant of the house of Israel.

Ye remember that I spake unto you, and said that when the words of Isaiah should be fulfilled—behold they are written, ye have them before you, therefore search them—

And verily, verily, I say unto you, that when they shall be fulfilled then is the fulfilling of the covenant which the Father hath made unto his people, O house of Israel.

- 13 En dan sal die oorblyfsels, wat ver en wyd ver-
strooi sal wees op die aangesig van die aarde, byme-
kaar gemaak word van die ooste en van die weste, en
van die suide en van die noorde; en hulle sal gebring
word tot die kennis van die Here hulle God, wat hul-
le verlos het.
- 14 En die Vader het My gebied dat Ek aan julle hier-
die land moet gee, as julle erfenis.
- 15 En Ek sê vir julle, dat as die nie-Jode nie bekeer na
die seëning wat hulle sal ontvang nie, nadat hulle my
volk verstrooi het—
- 16 Dan sal julle, wat 'n oorblyfsel is van die huis van
Jakob, uitgaan onder hulle; en julle sal in die midde
wees van hulle wat baie sal wees; en julle sal onder
hulle wees soos 'n leeu onder die diere van die woud,
en soos 'n jong leeu onder die skaapkuddes, wat, as
hy deurgaen, beide vertrap en in stukke verskeur, en
niemand kan verlos nie.
- 17 Julle hand sal opgelig wees teen julle teenstanders,
en al julle vyande sal afgesny wees.
- 18 En Ek sal my volk bymekaarmaak soos 'n man sy
gerwe bymekaarmaak op die vloer.
- 19 Want Ek sal my volk maak met wie die Vader 'n
verbond gesluit het, ja, Ek sal julle horing yster
maak, en Ek sal julle hoewe brons maak. En julle sal
baie volke in stukke slaan; en Ek sal hulle wins toe-
wy aan die Here, en hulle besittings aan die Here van
die hele aarde. En kyk, Ek is Hy wat dit doen.
- 20 En dit sal gebeur, sê die Vader, dat die swaard van
my geregtigheid oor hulle sal hang op daardie dag;
en tensy hulle bekeer, sal dit op hulle val, sê die
Vader, ja, en wel op al die nasies van die nie-Jode.
- 21 En dit sal gebeur dat Ek my volk sal vestig, o huis
van Israel.
- 22 En kyk, hierdie volk sal Ek vestig in hierdie land,
ter vervulling van die verbond wat Ek gesluit het met
julle vader Jakob; en dit sal 'n Nuwe Jerusalem wees.
En die magte van die hemel sal in die midde van
hierdie volk wees; ja, waarlik, Ek sal in julle midde
wees.

And then shall the remnants, which shall be scat-
tered abroad upon the face of the earth, be gathered
in from the east and from the west, and from the
south and from the north; and they shall be brought
to the knowledge of the Lord their God, who hath re-
deemed them.

And the Father hath commanded me that I should
give unto you this land, for your inheritance.

And I say unto you, that if the Gentiles do not re-
pent after the blessing which they shall receive, after
they have scattered my people—

Then shall ye, who are a remnant of the house of
Jacob, go forth among them; and ye shall be in the
midst of them who shall be many; and ye shall be
among them as a lion among the beasts of the forest,
and as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who,
if he goeth through both treadeth down and teareth
in pieces, and none can deliver.

Thy hand shall be lifted up upon thine adver-
saries, and all thine enemies shall be cut off.

And I will gather my people together as a man
gathereth his sheaves into the floor.

For I will make my people with whom the Father
hath covenanted, yea, I will make thy horn iron, and
I will make thy hoofs brass. And thou shalt beat in
pieces many people; and I will consecrate their gain
unto the Lord, and their substance unto the Lord of
the whole earth. And behold, I am he who doeth it.

And it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that the
sword of my justice shall hang over them at that day;
and except they repent it shall fall upon them, saith
the Father, yea, even upon all the nations of the
Gentiles.

And it shall come to pass that I will establish my
people, O house of Israel.

And behold, this people will I establish in this
land, unto the fulfilling of the covenant which I
made with your father Jacob; and it shall be a New
Jerusalem. And the powers of heaven shall be in the
midst of this people; yea, even I will be in the midst
of you.

- 23 Kyk, Ek is Hy van wie Moses gespreek het, wat gesê het: 'n Profeet sal die Here julle God vir julle uit julle broers verwek, net soos ek; Hom sal julle hoor in alle dinge wat Hy ook al met julle sal spreek. En dit sal gebeur dat elke siel wat nie daardie profeet sal hoor nie, afgesny sal word van onder die volk.
- 24 Voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, ja, en al die profete van Samuel en diegene wat daarna volg, soveel as wat gespreek het, het getuig van My.
- 25 En kyk, julle is die kinders van die profete; en julle is van die huis van Israel; en julle is van die verbond wat die Vader gesluit het met julle vaders, wat aan Abraham sê: En in jou saad sal al die stamme van die aarde geseën word.
- 26 Die Vader het My opgewek, eerste vir julle, en het My gestuur om julle te seën deur elkeen van julle weg te draai van sy ongeregtighede; en dit omdat julle die kinders van die verbond is—
- 27 En nadat julle geseën is, dan vervul die Vader die verbond wat Hy met Abraham gesluit het, wat sê: In jou saad sal al die stamme van die aarde geseën word—tot die uitstorting van die Heilige Gees deur My op die nie-Jode, welke seëning op die nie-Jode hulle magtig sal maak bo almal, tot die verstrooiing van my volk, o huis van Israel.
- 28 En hulle sal 'n gésel wees vir die volk van hierdie land. Nogtans, wanneer hulle die volheid van my evangelie sal ontvang het, dan, as hulle hul harte sal verhard teen My, sal Ek hulle ongeregtighede terugbring op hulle eie hoofde, sê die Vader.
- 29 En Ek sal die verbond onthou wat Ek gesluit het met my volk; en Ek het met hulle 'n verbond gesluit dat Ek hulle sal bymeekaarmaak in my eie bepaalde tyd, dat Ek weer aan hulle die land van hulle vaders as hulle erfdeel sal gee, wat die land Jerusalem is, wat die beloofde land is vir hulle vir ewig, sê die Vader.
- 30 En dit sal gebeur dat die tyd kom, wanneer die volheid van my evangelie gepredik sal word aan hulle;
- 31 En hulle sal in My glo, dat Ek Jesus Christus is, die Seun van God, en sal bid tot die Vader in my Naam.

Behold, I am he of whom Moses spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that every soul who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

Verily I say unto you, yea, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have testified of me.

And behold, ye are the children of the prophets; and ye are of the house of Israel; and ye are of the covenant which the Father made with your fathers, saying unto Abraham: And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

The Father having raised me up unto you first, and sent me to bless you in turning away every one of you from his iniquities; and this because ye are the children of the covenant—

And after that ye were blessed then fulfilleth the Father the covenant which he made with Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed—unto the pouring out of the Holy Ghost through me upon the Gentiles, which blessing upon the Gentiles shall make them mighty above all, unto the scattering of my people, O house of Israel.

And they shall be a scourge unto the people of this land. Nevertheless, when they shall have received the fulness of my gospel, then if they shall harden their hearts against me I will return their iniquities upon their own heads, saith the Father.

And I will remember the covenant which I have made with my people; and I have covenanted with them that I would gather them together in mine own due time, that I would give unto them again the land of their fathers for their inheritance, which is the land of Jerusalem, which is the promised land unto them forever, saith the Father.

And it shall come to pass that the time cometh, when the fulness of my gospel shall be preached unto them;

And they shall believe in me, that I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and shall pray unto the Father in my name.

32 Dan sal hulle wagte hul stemme verhef, en met die stem tesame sal hulle sing; want hulle sal oog tot oog sien.

33 Dan sal die Vader hulle weer bymeekaarmaak, en aan hulle Jerusalem gee as die land van hulle erfenis.

34 Dan sal hulle uitbreek in gejubel—Sing saam, julle verwoeste plekke van Jerusalem; want die Vader het sy volk vertroos, Hy het Jerusalem verlos.

35 Die Vader het sy heilige arm ontbloot voor die oë van al die nasies; en al die eindes van die aarde sal die heil van die Vader sien; en die Vader en Ek is een.

36 En dan sal dit teweeggebring word wat geskrywe is: Ontwaak, ontwaak weer, en beklee jou met sterkte, o Sion, trek jou sierlike klere aan, o Jerusalem, die heilige stad, want voortaan sal daar nie meer in jou die onbesnedenes en die onreines kom nie.

37 Skud jousef los van die stof; staan op, gaan sit, o Jerusalem; maak jousef los van die bande van jou nek, o gevange dogter van Sion.

38 Want so sê die Here: Julle het julsef verkoop vir niks, en julle sal verlos word sonder geld.

39 Voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, dat my volk my Naam sal ken; ja, op daardie dag sal hulle weet dat Ek Hy is wat spreek.

40 En dan sal hulle sê: Hoe lieflik op die berge is die voete van hom wat goeie tydings bring vir hulle, wat vrede verkondig; wat goeie tydings van die goeie aan hulle bring, wat heil verkondig; wat sê vir Sion: Jou God heers!

41 En dan sal 'n geroep opgaan: Vertrek julle, vertrek julle, gaan julle uit daarvandaan, raak dit nie aan wat onrein is nie; gaan julle uit haar midde uit, wees julle rein wat die heilige voorwerpe van die Here dra.

42 Want julle sal nie uitgaan met haas nie, nóg gaan deur te vlug; want die Here sal uitgaan voor julle, en die God van Israel sal julle agterhoede wees.

43 Kyk, my dienskneg sal wyslik optree; Hy sal verheewe wees en geëer en baie verhoog.

Then shall their watchmen lift up their voice, and with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye.

Then will the Father gather them together again, and give unto them Jerusalem for the land of their inheritance.

Then shall they break forth into joy—Sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Father hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Father hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of the Father; and the Father and I are one.

And then shall be brought to pass that which is written: Awake, awake again, and put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city, for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.

Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

For thus saith the Lord: Ye have sold yourselves for naught, and ye shall be redeemed without money.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that my people shall know my name; yea, in that day they shall know that I am he that doth speak.

And then shall they say: How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings unto them, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings unto them of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!

And then shall a cry go forth: Depart ye, depart ye, go ye out from thence, touch not that which is unclean; go ye out of the midst of her; be ye clean that bear the vessels of the Lord.

For ye shall not go out with haste nor go by flight; for the Lord will go before you, and the God of Israel shall be your rearward.

Behold, my servant shall deal prudently; he shall be exalted and extolled and be very high.

44 Net so baie was verstom oor U—sy gelaat was so misvorm, meer as enige mens, en sy liggaam meer as die seuns van mense—

45 So sal Hy baie nasies besprinkel; die konings sal hulle monde toemaak vanweë Hom; want dit wat nie aan hulle vertel is nie, sal hulle sien; en dit wat hulle nie gehoor het nie, sal hulle begryp.

46 Voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, al hierdie dinge sal sekerlik kom, net soos die Vader My gebied het. Dan sal hierdie verbond wat die Vader gesluit het met sy volk vervul word; en dan sal Jerusalem weer bewoon word deur my volk, en dit sal die land wees van hulle erfenis.

As many were astonished at thee—his visage was so marred, more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men—

So shall he sprinkle many nations; the kings shall shut their mouths at him, for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, all these things shall surely come, even as the Father hath commanded me. Then shall this covenant which the Father hath covenanted with his people be fulfilled; and then shall Jerusalem be inhabited again with my people, and it shall be the land of their inheritance.

3 Nefi 21

- 1 En voorwaar Ek sê vir julle, Ek gee aan julle 'n teken, sodat julle die tyd mag weet wanneer hierdie dinge op die punt sal wees om plaas te vind—dat Ek hulle sal bymekaarmaak, van hulle lang verstrooiing, my volk, o huis van Israel, en weer my Sion onder hulle sal vestig;
- 2 En kyk, dit is die ding wat Ek aan julle sal gee vir 'n teken—want voorwaar Ek sê vir julle dat wanneer hierdie dinge wat Ek aan julle verkondig, en wat Ek hierna self aan julle sal verkondig, en deur die mag van die Heilige Gees wat gegee sal word aan julle deur die Vader, sal bekendgemaak word aan die nie-Jode sodat hulle mag weet aangaande hierdie volk wat 'n oorblyfsel is van die huis van Jakob, en aangaande hierdie, my volk, wat verstrooi sal word deur hulle;
- 3 Voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, wanneer hierdie dinge bekend gemaak sal word aan hulle deur die Vader, en sal uitgaan van die Vader, van hulle na julle;
- 4 Want dit is wysheid in die Vader dat hulle gevestig moet word in hierdie land, en daargestel word as 'n vrye volk deur die krag van die Vader, dat hierdie dinge van hulle mag uitgaan na 'n oorblyfsel van julle saad, sodat die verbond van die Vader vervul mag word wat Hy met sy volk gesluit het, o huis van Israel;
- 5 Daarom, wanneer hierdie werke en die werke wat verrig sal word onder julle hierna sal uitgaan van die nie-Jode na julle saad wat sal kwyn in ongeloof vanweë ongeregtigheid;
- 6 Want so behaag dit die Vader dat dit sal uitgaan van die nie-Jode, sodat Hy sy krag mag toon aan die nie-Jode, met die doel dat die nie-Jode, as hulle nie hulle harte sal verhard nie, dat hulle mag bekeer en na My kom en gedoop word in my Naam en weet van die ware punte van my leer, sodat hulle gereken kan word onder my volk, o huis van Israel;

3 Nephi 21

And verily I say unto you, I give unto you a sign, that ye may know the time when these things shall be about to take place—that I shall gather in, from their long dispersion, my people, O house of Israel, and shall establish again among them my Zion;

And behold, this is the thing which I will give unto you for a sign—for verily I say unto you that when these things which I declare unto you, and which I shall declare unto you hereafter of myself, and by the power of the Holy Ghost which shall be given unto you of the Father, shall be made known unto the Gentiles that they may know concerning this people who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, and concerning this my people who shall be scattered by them;

Verily, verily, I say unto you, when these things shall be made known unto them of the Father, and shall come forth of the Father, from them unto you;

For it is wisdom in the Father that they should be established in this land, and be set up as a free people by the power of the Father, that these things might come forth from them unto a remnant of your seed, that the covenant of the Father may be fulfilled which he hath covenanted with his people, O house of Israel;

Therefore, when these works and the works which shall be wrought among you hereafter shall come forth from the Gentiles, unto your seed which shall dwindle in unbelief because of iniquity;

For thus it behooveth the Father that it should come forth from the Gentiles, that he may show forth his power unto the Gentiles, for this cause that the Gentiles, if they will not harden their hearts, that they may repent and come unto me and be baptized in my name and know of the true points of my doctrine, that they may be numbered among my people, O house of Israel;

- 7 En wanneer hierdie dinge geskied dat jou saad sal begin om hierdie dinge te weet—sal dit 'n teken wees vir hulle, dat hulle mag weet dat die werk van die Vader alreeds begin het ter vervulling van die verbond wat Hy gesluit het met die volk wat van die huis van Israel is.
- 8 En wanneer daardie dag sal kom, sal dit gebeur dat konings hulle monde sal toemaak; want dit wat nie aan hulle vertel is nie, sal hulle sien; en dit wat hulle nie gehoor het nie sal hulle verstaan.
- 9 Want in daardie dag, om my ontwil, sal die Vader 'n werk verrig, wat 'n groot en wonderlike werk sal wees onder hulle; en daar sal onder hulle diegene wees wat dit nie sal glo nie, alhoewel 'n man dit aan hulle sal verkondig.
- 10 Maar kyk, die lewe van my dienskneg sal in my hand wees; daarom sal hulle hom nie beseer nie, alhoewel hy misvorm sal word vanweë hulle. Tog sal ek hom genees, want ek sal aan hulle toon dat my wysheid groter is as die geslepenheid van die duiwel.
- 11 Daarom, dit sal gebeur dat wie ook al nie in my woorde glo nie, wat Jesus Christus is, wat die Vader Hom sal laat bring aan die nie-Jode, en aan Hom mag sal gee dat Hy hulle sal uitbring tot die nie-Jode, (dit sal gedoen word net soos Moses gesê het) hulle afgesny sal word van onder my volk wat van die verbond is.
- 12 En my volk wat 'n oorblyfsel is van Jakob sal onder die nie-Jode wees, ja, in hulle midde soos 'n leeu onder die diere van die woud, soos 'n jong leeu onder die skaapkuddes, wat, as hy deurgaans, beide vertrap en in stukke verskeur, en niemand kan verlos nie.
- 13 Hulle hand sal opgelig word teen hulle teenstanders, en al hulle vyande sal afgesny word.
- 14 Ja, wee die nie-Jode tensy hulle bekeer; want dit sal gebeur in daardie dag, sê die Vader, dat Ek julle perde sal afsny uit julle midde, en Ek sal julle strydwaens vernietig;
- 15 En Ek sal die stede afsny van julle land, en al julle vestings omvergooi;
- 16 En Ek sal towerye afsny uit julle land, en julle sal nie meer waarsêers hê nie;

And when these things come to pass that thy seed shall begin to know these things—it shall be a sign unto them, that they may know that the work of the Father hath already commenced unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the people who are of the house of Israel.

And when that day shall come, it shall come to pass that kings shall shut their mouths; for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

For in that day, for my sake shall the Father work a work, which shall be a great and a marvelous work among them; and there shall be among them those who will not believe it, although a man shall declare it unto them.

But behold, the life of my servant shall be in my hand; therefore they shall not hurt him, although he shall be marred because of them. Yet I will heal him, for I will show unto them that my wisdom is greater than the cunning of the devil.

Therefore it shall come to pass that whosoever will not believe in my words, who am Jesus Christ, which the Father shall cause him to bring forth unto the Gentiles, and shall give unto him power that he shall bring them forth unto the Gentiles, (it shall be done even as Moses said) they shall be cut off from among my people who are of the covenant.

And my people who are a remnant of Jacob shall be among the Gentiles, yea, in the midst of them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he go through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.

Their hand shall be lifted up upon their adversaries, and all their enemies shall be cut off.

Yea, wo be unto the Gentiles except they repent; for it shall come to pass in that day, saith the Father, that I will cut off thy horses out of the midst of thee, and I will destroy thy chariots;

And I will cut off the cities of thy land, and throw down all thy strongholds;

And I will cut off witchcrafts out of thy land, and thou shalt have no more soothsayers;

17 Julle gesnede beelde sal Ek ook afsny, en jul staande beelde uit jul midde, en julle sal nie meer die werke van jul hande aanbid nie;

18 En Ek sal julle heilige boomstamme uitpluk uit jul midde; net so sal Ek julle stede vernietig.

19 En dit sal gebeur dat alle leuentaal, en bedriërye, en afguns, en onenighede, en priesterliste, en hoererye, weggedoen sal word.

20 Want dit sal gebeur, sê die Vader, dat op daardie dag, wie ook al nie sal bekeer en kom na my Geliefde Seun nie, hulle sal Ek afsny van onder my volk, o huis van Israel;

21 En Ek sal wraak en woede op hulle uitoefen, net soos op die heidene, soos hulle nog nie gehoor het nie.

22 Maar as hulle sal bekeer en ag slaan op my woorde, en hulle harte nie verhard nie, sal Ek my kerk vestig onder hulle, en hulle sal toetree tot die verbond en gereken word onder hierdie die oorblyfsel van Jakob, aan wie Ek hierdie land gegee het vir hulle erfenis;

23 En hulle sal my volk bystaan, die oorblyfsel van Jakob, en ook soveel van die huis van Israel as wat sal kom, sodat hulle 'n stad mag bou, wat die Nuwe Jerusalem genoem sal word.

24 En dan sal hulle my volk bystaan sodat hulle versamel mag word, wat verstrooi is oor die hele aangesig van die land, na die nuwe Jerusalem.

25 En dan sal die krag van die hemel afkom onder hulle; en Ek sal ook in die midde wees.

26 En dan sal die werk van die Vader op daardie dag begin, naamlik wanneer hierdie evangelie onder die oorblyfsel van hierdie volk gepreek sal word. Voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, op daardie dag sal die werk van die Vader begin onder al die verstrooides van my volk, ja, naamlik die stamme wat verlore was, wat die Vader uit Jerusalem weggelei het.

27 Ja, die werk sal begin onder al die verstrooides van my volk, met die Vader om die weg te berei waardeur hulle na My mag kom, sodat hulle die Vader in my Naam mag aanroep.

28 Ja, en dan sal die werk begin, met die Vader onder alle nasies om die weg voor te berei waardeur sy volk huis toe versamel mag word na die land van hulle erfenis.

Thy graven images I will also cut off, and thy standing images out of the midst of thee, and thou shalt no more worship the works of thy hands;

And I will pluck up thy groves out of the midst of thee; so will I destroy thy cities.

And it shall come to pass that all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, shall be done away.

For it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that at that day whosoever will not repent and come unto my Beloved Son, them will I cut off from among my people, O house of Israel;

And I will execute vengeance and fury upon them, even as upon the heathen, such as they have not heard.

But if they will repent and hearken unto my words, and harden not their hearts, I will establish my church among them, and they shall come in unto the covenant and be numbered among this the remnant of Jacob, unto whom I have given this land for their inheritance;

And they shall assist my people, the remnant of Jacob, and also as many of the house of Israel as shall come, that they may build a city, which shall be called the New Jerusalem.

And then shall they assist my people that they may be gathered in, who are scattered upon all the face of the land, in unto the New Jerusalem.

And then shall the power of heaven come down among them; and I also will be in the midst.

And then shall the work of the Father commence at that day, even when this gospel shall be preached among the remnant of this people. Verily I say unto you, at that day shall the work of the Father commence among all the dispersed of my people, yea, even the tribes which have been lost, which the Father hath led away out of Jerusalem.

Yea, the work shall commence among all the dispersed of my people, with the Father to prepare the way whereby they may come unto me, that they may call on the Father in my name.

Yea, and then shall the work commence, with the Father among all nations in preparing the way whereby his people may be gathered home to the land of their inheritance.

29 En hulle sal uitgaan vanuit alle nasies; en hulle sal nie uitgaan in haas nie, nóg gaan deur te vlug, want Ek sal uitgaan voor hulle, sê die Vader, en Ek sal hulle agterhoede wees.

And they shall go out from all nations; and they shall not go out in haste, nor go by flight, for I will go before them, saith the Father, and I will be their rearward.

3 Nefi 22

- 1 En dan sal dit wat geskrywe is, gebeur: Sing, o onvrugbare, jy wat nie gebaar het nie; breek uit in gesang, en roep hard uit, jy wat geen barensnood gehad het nie; want meer is die kinders van die kinderslose as die kinders van die getroude vrou, sê die Here.
- 2 Vergroot die plek van jou tent, en laat hulle die doeke uitstrek van jou wonings; moet nie verhinder nie; verleng jou toue en versterk jou penne;
- 3 Want jy sal uitbreek aan die linkerkant en aan die regterkant, en jou saad sal die nie-Jode beërwe en verlate stede bewoonbaar maak.
- 4 Vrees nie, want jy sal nie beskaamd wees nie; nóg sal jy verslaan wees, want jy sal nie tot skande gebring word nie; want jy sal die skande van jou jeug vergeet, en sal nie die smaad van jou jeug onthou nie, en sal nie meer die smaad van jou weduweeskap onthou nie.
- 5 Want jou Maker, jou Man; die Here van die Leërskaar is sy Naam; en jou Verlosser, die Heilige Een van Israel—die God van die hele aarde sal Hy genoem word.
- 6 Want die Here het jou geroep net soos 'n vrou verlate en bedroef van gees, en 'n jong vrou, toe jy verwerp was, sê jou God.
- 7 Vir 'n klein oomblik het Ek jou verlaat, maar met groot genade sal Ek jou bymeekaarmaak.
- 8 In 'n bietjie toorn het Ek my aangesig verberg van jou vir 'n oomblik, maar met ewigduerende goedertierenheid sal Ek barmhartigheid teenoor jou hê, sê die Here jou Verlosser.
- 9 Vir hierdie, die waters van Noag vir My, want net soos Ek gesweer het dat die waters van Noag nie meer sou gaan oor die aarde nie, so het Ek gesweer dat Ek nie toornig sal wees op jou nie.
- 10 Want die berge sal wyk en die heuwels sal verwyder word, maar my goedertierenheid sal nie weggaan van jou nie, nóg sal die verbond van my vrede verwyder word, sê die Here wat barmhartigheid teenoor jou het.
- 11 O jy gekwelde, geslinger deur stormwinde, en ongetroosde! Kyk, Ek sal jou stene lê in helder kleure, en jou fundamente uitlê met saffiere.

3 Nephi 22

And then shall that which is written come to pass: Sing, O barren, thou that didst not bear; break forth into singing, and cry aloud, thou that didst not travail with child; for more are the children of the desolate than the children of the married wife, saith the Lord.

Enlarge the place of thy tent, and let them stretch forth the curtains of thy habitations; spare not, lengthen thy cords and strengthen thy stakes;

For thou shalt break forth on the right hand and on the left, and thy seed shall inherit the Gentiles and make the desolate cities to be inhabited.

Fear not, for thou shalt not be ashamed; neither be thou confounded, for thou shalt not be put to shame; for thou shalt forget the shame of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more.

For thy maker, thy husband, the Lord of Hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel—the God of the whole earth shall he be called.

For the Lord hath called thee as a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit, and a wife of youth, when thou wast refused, saith thy God.

For a small moment have I forsaken thee, but with great mercies will I gather thee.

In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment, but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the Lord thy Redeemer.

For this, the waters of Noah unto me, for as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth, so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee.

For the mountains shall depart and the hills be removed, but my kindness shall not depart from thee, neither shall the covenant of my peace be removed, saith the Lord that hath mercy on thee.

O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted! Behold, I will lay thy stones with fair colors, and lay thy foundations with sapphires.

- 12 En ek sal jou vensters maak van agate, en jou poorte van robyne, en al jou stadsmure van kosbare stene.
- 13 En al jou kinders sal geleer word deur die Here; en groot sal die vrede van jou kinders wees.
- 14 In regverdigheid sal jy gevestig word; jy sal verwees van verdrukking want jy sal nie vrees nie, en van verskrikking, want dit sal nie naby jou kom nie.
- 15 Kyk, hulle sal sekerlik vergader teen jou, nie deur My nie; wie ook al sal vergader teen jou, sal val om jou onthalwe.
- 16 Kyk, Ek het die smid geskape wat die kole aanblaas in die vuur, en wat gereedskap voortbring vir sy werk; en Ek het die verderwer geskape om te vernietig.
- 17 Geen wapen wat teen jou gevorm word sal suksesvol wees nie; en elke tong wat teen jou sal uitvaar in oordeel sal jy veroordeel. Dit is die erfenis van die diensknegte van die Here, en hulle regverdigheid is van My, sê die Here.

And I will make thy windows of agates, and thy gates of carbuncles, and all thy borders of pleasant stones.

And all thy children shall be taught of the Lord; and great shall be the peace of thy children.

In righteousness shalt thou be established; thou shalt be far from oppression for thou shalt not fear, and from terror for it shall not come near thee.

Behold, they shall surely gather together against thee, not by me; whosoever shall gather together against thee shall fall for thy sake.

Behold, I have created the smith that bloweth the coals in the fire, and that bringeth forth an instrument for his work; and I have created the waster to destroy.

No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue that shall revile against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the Lord, and their righteousness is of me, saith the Lord.

3 Nefi 23

- 1 En nou, kyk, Ek sê vir julle, dat julle hierdie dinge behoort te ondersoek. Ja, 'n gebod gee Ek aan julle dat julle hierdie dinge ywerig ondersoek; want groot is die woorde van Jesaja.
- 2 Want waarlik hy het gesprek rakende alle dinge aangaande my volk wat van die huis van Israel is; daarom is dit noodsaaklik dat hy ook met die nie-Jode moet spreek.
- 3 En alle dinge wat hy gesprek het, was gewees en sal wees, en wel volgens die woorde wat hy gesprek het.
- 4 Daarom, slaan ag op my woorde; skryf die dinge wat Ek julle vertel het; en volgens die tyd en die wil van die Vader sal hulle uitgaan na die nie-Jode.
- 5 En wie ook al sal ag slaan op my woorde en bekeer en gedoop word, hulle sal gered word. Ondersoek die profete, want baie is daar wat getuig van hierdie dinge.
- 6 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe Jesus hierdie woorde gesê het, het Hy weer aan hulle gesê, nadat Hy al die skrifte uitgelê het aan hulle wat hulle ontvang het, het Hy aan hulle gesê: Kyk, ander skrifte wil Ek hê dat julle moet skryf, wat julle nie het nie.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat Hy aan Nefi gesê het: Bring die kroniek uit wat jy bygehou het.
- 8 En toe Nefi die kronieke uitgebring het, en hulle neergelê het voor Hom, het Hy sy oë na hulle laat kyk, en gesê:
- 9 Voorwaar Ek sê vir julle, Ek het my dienskneg Samuel, die Lamaniet, gebied dat hy moes getuig aan hierdie volk, dat op die dag dat die Vader sy naam sou verheerlik in My dat daar baie heiliges was wat sou opstaan uit die dood, en sou verskyn aan baie, en hulle moes dien. En Hy het aan hulle gesê: Was dit nie so nie?
- 10 En sy dissipels het Hom geantwoord en gesê: Ja, Here, Samuel het geprofeteer volgens u woorde, en hulle is almal vervul.
- 11 En Jesus het aan hulle gesê: Hoe is dit dat julle nie hierdie ding neergeskryf het nie, dat baie heiliges opgestaan en aan baie verskyn en hulle gedien het nie?

3 Nephi 23

And now, behold, I say unto you, that ye ought to search these things. Yea, a commandment I give unto you that ye search these things diligently; for great are the words of Isaiah.

For surely he spake as touching all things concerning my people which are of the house of Israel; therefore it must needs be that he must speak also to the Gentiles.

And all things that he spake have been and shall be, even according to the words which he spake.

Therefore give heed to my words; write the things which I have told you; and according to the time and the will of the Father they shall go forth unto the Gentiles.

And whosoever will hearken unto my words and repenteth and is baptized, the same shall be saved. Search the prophets, for many there be that testify of these things.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he said unto them again, after he had expounded all the scriptures unto them which they had received, he said unto them: Behold, other scriptures I would that ye should write, that ye have not.

And it came to pass that he said unto Nephi: Bring forth the record which ye have kept.

And when Nephi had brought forth the records, and laid them before him, he cast his eyes upon them and said:

Verily I say unto you, I commanded my servant Samuel, the Lamanite, that he should testify unto this people, that at the day that the Father should glorify his name in me that there were many saints who should arise from the dead, and should appear unto many, and should minister unto them. And he said unto them: Was it not so?

And his disciples answered him and said: Yea, Lord, Samuel did prophesy according to thy words, and they were all fulfilled.

And Jesus said unto them: How be it that ye have not written this thing, that many saints did arise and appear unto many and did minister unto them?

- 12 En dit het gebeur dat Nephi onthou het dat hierdie ding nie geskrywe was nie.
- 13 En dit het gebeur dat Jesus gebied het dat dit geskrywe moes word; daarom is dit geskrywe volgens wat Hy gebied het.
- 14 En nou dit het gebeur dat toe Jesus al die skrifture uitgelê het in een, wat hulle geskryf het, het Hy hulle gebied dat hulle die dinge moes onderrig wat Hy uitgelê het aan hulle.

And it came to pass that Nephi remembered that this thing had not been written.

And it came to pass that Jesus commanded that it should be written; therefore it was written according as he commanded.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had expounded all the scriptures in one, which they had written, he commanded them that they should teach the things which he had expounded unto them.

3 Nefi 24

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat Hy hulle gebied het dat hulle die woorde moes skrywe wat die Vader aan Maleági gegee het, wat hy aan hulle moes vertel. En dit het gebeur dat nadat hulle geskrywe is, het Hy hulle uitgelê. En hierdie is die woorde wat hy aan hulle vertel het, en gesê het: So het die Vader gesê vir Maleági—Kyk, Ek sal My boodskapper stuur, en hy sal die weg voor My berei, en die Here wat julle soek sal skielik kom na sy tempel, naamlik die boodskapper van die verbond, in wie julle jul verheug; kyk, Hy sal kom, sê die Here van die Leërskaare.
- 2 Maar wie sal die dag van sy koms verdra, en wie sal standhou wanneer Hy verskyn? Want Hy is soos 'n smelter se vuur, en soos 'n bleiker se seep.
- 3 En Hy sal sit as 'n smelter en 'n suiweraar van silwer; en Hy sal die seuns van Levi reinig, en hulle louter soos goud en silwer, sodat hulle 'n offerande in regverdigheid aan die Here mag offer.
- 4 Dan sal die offerande van Juda en Jerusalem aangenaam wees vir die Here, soos in die ou dae, en soos die jare van die voortyd.
- 5 En Ek sal na aan julle kom tot oordeel; en Ek sal 'n snelle getuie wees teen die towenaars, en teen die egbrekers, en teen valse sweeders, en teen diegene wat die dagloner verdruk in sy lone, die weduwee en die wees, en wat die vreemdeling opsytoot, en My nie vrees nie, sê die Here van die Leërskaare.
- 6 Want Ek is die Here, Ek verander nie; daarom word julle seuns van Jakob nie verteer nie.
- 7 Selfs van die dae van julle vaders het julle my ordinsies verwerp, en het hulle nie onderhou nie. Keer terug tot My, en Ek sal terugkeer tot julle, sê die Here van die Leërskaare. Maar julle sê: Waarin sal ons terugkeer?
- 8 Sal 'n mens God beroof? Tog het julle My beroof. Maar julle sê: Waarin het ons U beroof? In tiendes en offerandes.
- 9 Julle is vervloek met 'n vloek, want julle het My beroof, en wel hierdie hele nasie.

3 Nephi 24

And it came to pass that he commanded them that they should write the words which the Father had given unto Malachi, which he should tell unto them. And it came to pass that after they were written he expounded them. And these are the words which he did tell unto them, saying: Thus said the Father unto Malachi—Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me, and the Lord whom ye seek shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in; behold, he shall come, saith the Lord of Hosts.

But who may abide the day of his coming, and who shall stand when he appeareth? For he is like a refiner's fire, and like fuller's soap.

And he shall sit as a refiner and purifier of silver; and he shall purify the sons of Levi, and purge them as gold and silver, that they may offer unto the Lord an offering in righteousness.

Then shall the offering of Judah and Jerusalem be pleasant unto the Lord, as in the days of old, and as in former years.

And I will come near to you to judgment; and I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers, and against the adulterers, and against false swearers, and against those that oppress the hireling in his wages, the widow and the fatherless, and that turn aside the stranger, and fear not me, saith the Lord of Hosts.

For I am the Lord, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.

Even from the days of your fathers ye are gone away from mine ordinances, and have not kept them. Return unto me and I will return unto you, saith the Lord of Hosts. But ye say: Wherein shall we return?

Will a man rob God? Yet ye have robbed me. But ye say: Wherein have we robbed thee? In tithes and offerings.

Ye are cursed with a curse, for ye have robbed me, even this whole nation.

10 Bring julle al die tiendes na die voorraadskuur, so-
dat daar spys mag wees in my huis; en beproef My
nou hierin, sê die Here van die Leërskaer, of Ek nie
vir julle die vensters van die hemel sal oopmaak, en
'n seëning uitstort op julle dat daar nie genoeg ruim-
te sal wees om dit te ontvang nie.

11 Ek sal die verorberaar bestraf om julle onthalwe,
en hy sal nie die vrugte van julle grond vernietig nie;
nóg sal julle wingerdstok haar vrugte voor die tyd
neerwerp op die lande, sê die Here van die
Leërskaer.

12 En alle nasies sal julle geseënd noem, want julle
sal 'n vrugbare land wees, sê die Here van die
Leërskaer.

13 Julle woorde was sterk teen My, sê die Here. Tog sê
julle: Wat het ons teen U gespreek?

14 Julle het gesê: Dit is tevergeefs om God te dien, en
wat baat dit dat ons sy ordinansies onderhou het en
dat ons berouvol gewandel het voor die Here van die
Leërskaer?

15 En nou noem ons die hoogmoediges gelukkig; ja,
hulle wat boosheid bewerk is voorspoedig, ja, hulle
wat God versoek is inderdaad gespaar!

16 Toe het hulle wat die Here gevrees het dikwels met
mekaar gepraat; en die Here het ag geslaan en ge-
hoor; en 'n boek van herinnering is geskrywe voor
Hom vir diegene wat die Here gevrees het, en sy
Naam eerbiedig het.

17 En hulle sal myne wees, sê die Here van die
Leërskaer, op daardie dag wat Ek my juwele byme-
kaarmaak; en Ek sal hulle spaar soos 'n man sy eie
seun spaar wat hom dien.

18 Dan sal julle terugkeer en onderskei tussen die
regverdige en die goddelose, tussen hom wat God
dien, en hom wat Hom nie dien nie.

Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that
there may be meat in my house; and prove me now
herewith, saith the Lord of Hosts, if I will not open
you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a
blessing that there shall not be room enough to re-
ceive it.

And I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes, and
he shall not destroy the fruits of your ground; neither
shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the
fields, saith the Lord of Hosts.

And all nations shall call you blessed, for ye shall
be a delightsome land, saith the Lord of Hosts.

Your words have been stout against me, saith the
Lord. Yet ye say: What have we spoken against thee?

Ye have said: It is vain to serve God, and what doth
it profit that we have kept his ordinances and that we
have walked mournfully before the Lord of Hosts?

And now we call the proud happy; yea, they that
work wickedness are set up; yea, they that tempt God
are even delivered.

Then they that feared the Lord spake often one to
another, and the Lord hearkened and heard; and a
book of remembrance was written before him for
them that feared the Lord, and that thought upon his
name.

And they shall be mine, saith the Lord of Hosts, in
that day when I make up my jewels; and I will spare
them as a man spareth his own son that serveth him.

Then shall ye return and discern between the
righteous and the wicked, between him that serveth
God and him that serveth him not.

3 Nefi 25

- 1 Want kyk, die dag kom wat sal brand soos 'n oond; en al die trotsaards, ja, en almal wat booslik handel, sal stoppels wees; en die dag wat kom sal hulle verbrand, sê die Here van die Leërskaer, dat dit hulle nóg wortel nóg tak sal oorlaat.
- 2 Maar vir julle wat my Naam eerbiedig, sal die Seun van Regverdigheid opstaan met genesing in sy vleuels; en julle sal uitgaan en opgroei soos kalwers in die stal.
- 3 En julle sal die bose vertrap; want hulle sal as wees onder die sole van julle voete op die dag wat Ek dit sal doen, sê die Here van die Leërskaer.
- 4 Onthou julle die wet van Moses, my dienskneg, wat Ek aan hom gebied het op Horeb vir die hele Israel, saam met die insettinge en verordeninge.
- 5 Kyk, Ek sal vir julle Elia die profeet stuur voor die koms van die groot en vreeslike dag van die Here;
- 6 En hy sal die hart van die vaders draai tot die kinders, en die hart van die kinders tot hulle vaders, sodat Ek nie sal kom en die aarde tref met 'n vloek nie.

3 Nephi 25

For behold, the day cometh that shall burn as an oven; and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble; and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch.

But unto you that fear my name, shall the Son of Righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth and grow up as calves in the stall.

And ye shall tread down the wicked; for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this, saith the Lord of Hosts.

Remember ye the law of Moses, my servant, which I commanded unto him in Horeb for all Israel, with the statutes and judgments.

Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord;

And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse.

3 Nefi 26

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat toe Jesus hierdie dinge vertel het, het Hy hulle uitgelê aan die skare; en Hy het alle dinge uitgelê aan hulle, beide groot en klein.
- 2 En Hy het gesê: Hierdie skrifture, wat julle nie gehad het by julle nie, het die Vader gebied dat Ek aan julle moes gee; want dit was wysheid in Hom dat hulle gegee moes word aan toekomstige geslagte.
- 3 En Hy het alle dinge uitgelê vanaf die begin tot die tyd dat Hy in sy heerlikheid sou kom—ja, en wel alle dinge wat sal kom op die aangesig van die aarde, tot die elemente sal smelt met vurige hitte, en die aarde sal inmekaar gerol word soos ’n boekrol, en die hemele en die aarde sal verbygaan;
- 4 En tot die groot en laaste dag, wanneer alle volke, en alle stamme, en alle nasies en tonge voor God sal staan, om geoordeel te word volgens hulle werke, of hulle goed en of hulle boos is—
- 5 As hulle goed is, tot die opstanding van die ewig-durende lewe; en as hulle boos is, tot die opstanding van verdoemenis; wat parallel is, die een aan die een kant en die ander aan die ander kant, volgens die barmhartigheid, en die geregtigheid, en die heiligheid wat in Christus is, wat was voordat die wêreld begin het.
- 6 En nou kan daar nie in hierdie boek selfs ’n honderdste gedeelte geskrywe word van die dinge wat Jesus waarlik geleer het aan die volk nie;
- 7 Maar kyk, die plate van Nefi bevat die grootste gedeelte van die dinge wat Hy die volk geleer het.
- 8 En hierdie dinge het ek geskrywe, wat ’n mindere gedeelte is van die dinge wat Hy die volk geleer het; en ek het hulle geskrywe met die doel dat hulle weer gebring mag word tot hierdie volk, van die nie-Jode, volgens die woorde wat Jesus gespreek het.
- 9 En wanneer hulle dit sal ontvang, wat raadsaam is dat hulle dit eerste sal hê, om hulle geloof te toets, en as dit so sal wees dat hulle hierdie dinge sal glo, dan sal die groter dinge openbaar gemaak word aan hulle.

3 Nephi 26

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had told these things he expounded them unto the multitude; and he did expound all things unto them, both great and small.

And he saith: These scriptures, which ye had not with you, the Father commanded that I should give unto you; for it was wisdom in him that they should be given unto future generations.

And he did expound all things, even from the beginning until the time that he should come in his glory—yea, even all things which should come upon the face of the earth, even until the elements should melt with fervent heat, and the earth should be wrapt together as a scroll, and the heavens and the earth should pass away;

And even unto the great and last day, when all people, and all kindreds, and all nations and tongues shall stand before God, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

If they be good, to the resurrection of everlasting life; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of damnation; being on a parallel, the one on the one hand and the other on the other hand, according to the mercy, and the justice, and the holiness which is in Christ, who was before the world began.

And now there cannot be written in this book even a hundredth part of the things which Jesus did truly teach unto the people;

But behold the plates of Nephi do contain the more part of the things which he taught the people.

And these things have I written, which are a lesser part of the things which he taught the people; and I have written them to the intent that they may be brought again unto this people, from the Gentiles, according to the words which Jesus hath spoken.

And when they shall have received this, which is expedient that they should have first, to try their faith, and if it shall so be that they shall believe these things then shall the greater things be made manifest unto them.

- 10 En as dit so is dat hulle nie hierdie dinge sal glo nie, dan sal die groter dinge weerhou word van hulle, tot hulle veroordeling.
- 11 Kyk, ek was op die punt om hulle te skrywe, alles wat gegraveer was op die plate van Nephi, maar die Here het dit verbied, en gesê: Ek sal die geloof beproef van my volk.
- 12 Daarom skryf ek, Mormon, die dinge wat my gebied is deur die Here. En nou maak ek, Mormon, 'n einde aan my woorde, en gaan voort om die dinge te skrywe wat my gebied is.
- 13 Daarom, ek wil dat julle moet sien dat die Here waarlik die volk geleer het, vir 'n tydperk van drie dae; en daarna het Hy Hom dikwels aan hulle getoon, en het dikwels brood gebreek, en dit geseën en aan hulle gegee.
- 14 En dit het gebeur dat Hy die kinders van die skare van wie gespreek is, geleer en gedien het, en Hy het hulle tonge losgemaak, en hulle het tot hulle vaders groot en wonderbaarlike dinge gespreek, selfs groter as wat Hy aan die volk geopenbaar het; en Hy het hulle tonge losgemaak sodat hulle kon uiter.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat nadat Hy opgevaar het na die hemel—die tweede keer dat Hy Homself aan hulle getoon het, en gegaan het na die Vader, nadat Hy al hulle krankes genes het, en hulle verlamdes, en die oë geopen het van hulle blindes en die ore oopgemaak het van die dowes, en waarlik alle soorte genesings gedoen het onder hulle, en 'n man opgewek het uit die dood, en sy krag getoon het aan hulle, en opgevaar het na die Vader—
- 16 Kyk, dit het die volgende dag gebeur dat die skare hulleself bymekaar gemaak het, en hulle het beide hierdie kinders gesien en gehoor; ja, selfs babas het hulle monde oopgemaak en wonderbaarlike dinge geuiter; en die dinge wat hulle geuiter het was verbode dat geen mens hulle sou neerskryf nie.
- 17 En dit het gebeur dat die dissipels wat Jesus gekies het, begin het om vanaf daardie tyd te doop en te leer soveel as wat na hulle gekom het; en soveel as wat gedoop is in die Naam van Jesus, is vervul met die Heilige Gees.
- 18 En baie van hulle het onuitspreeklike dinge gesien en gehoor, wat nie geoorloof is om te skryf nie.

And if it so be that they will not believe these things, then shall the greater things be withheld from them, unto their condemnation.

Behold, I was about to write them, all which were engraven upon the plates of Nephi, but the Lord forbade it, saying: I will try the faith of my people.

Therefore I, Mormon, do write the things which have been commanded me of the Lord. And now I, Mormon, make an end of my sayings, and proceed to write the things which have been commanded me.

Therefore, I would that ye should behold that the Lord truly did teach the people, for the space of three days; and after that he did show himself unto them oft, and did break bread oft, and bless it, and give it unto them.

And it came to pass that he did teach and minister unto the children of the multitude of whom hath been spoken, and he did loose their tongues, and they did speak unto their fathers great and marvelous things, even greater than he had revealed unto the people; and he loosed their tongues that they could utter.

And it came to pass that after he had ascended into heaven—the second time that he showed himself unto them, and had gone unto the Father, after having healed all their sick, and their lame, and opened the eyes of their blind and unstopped the ears of the deaf, and even had done all manner of cures among them, and raised a man from the dead, and had shown forth his power unto them, and had ascended unto the Father—

Behold, it came to pass on the morrow that the multitude gathered themselves together, and they both saw and heard these children; yea, even babes did open their mouths and utter marvelous things; and the things which they did utter were forbidden that there should not any man write them.

And it came to pass that the disciples whom Jesus had chosen began from that time forth to baptize and to teach as many as did come unto them; and as many as were baptized in the name of Jesus were filled with the Holy Ghost.

And many of them saw and heard unspeakable things, which are not lawful to be written.

19 En hulle het geleer, en het mekaar gedien; en hulle het almal alle dinge in gemeen gehad onder hulle, elke mens het regverdig gehandel, die een met die ander.

20 En dit het gebeur dat hulle alle dinge gedoen het net soos Jesus hulle gebied het.

21 En hulle wat gedoop is in die Naam van Jesus, is genoem die kerk van Christus.

And they taught, and did minister one to another; and they had all things common among them, every man dealing justly, one with another.

And it came to pass that they did do all things even as Jesus had commanded them.

And they who were baptized in the name of Jesus were called the church of Christ.

3 Nefi 27

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat terwyl die dissipels van Jesus gereis het en die dinge gepreek het wat hulle beide gesien en gehoor het, en gedoop het in die Naam van Jesus, het dit gebeur dat die dissipels bymekaargekom het en verenig was in kragtige gebed en vas.
- 2 En Jesus het homself weer aan hulle getoon, want hulle het gebid tot die Vader in sy Naam; en Jesus het gekom en in hulle midde gaan staan, en aan hulle gesê: Wat wil julle hê dat Ek aan julle moet gee?
- 3 En hulle het aan Hom gesê: Here, ons wil hê dat U aan ons moet sê wat die naam van die kerk moet wees; want daar is redekawelings onder die volk aangaande hierdie saak.
- 4 En die Here het aan hulle gesê: Voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, hoekom is dit dat die volk murmureer en twis vanweë hierdie ding?
- 5 Het hulle nie die skrifture gelees, wat sê dat julle die Naam van Christus op julle moet neem nie, wat my Naam is? Want ooreenkomstig hierdie Naam sal julle genoem word op die laaste dag;
- 6 En wie ook al my Naam op hom neem, en volhard tot die einde toe, hy sal gered word op die laaste dag.
- 7 Daarom, wat julle ook al sal doen, sal julle dit in my Naam doen; daarom sal julle die kerk na my Naam noem, en julle sal tot die Vader in my Naam roep dat Hy die kerk sal seën om my ontwil.
- 8 En hoe kan dit my kerk wees tensy dit na my Naam vernoem is? Want as 'n kerk vernoem word na Moses se naam, dan is dit Moses se kerk; of as dit vernoem word na die naam van 'n man, dan is dit die kerk van 'n man; maar as dit vernoem word na my Naam, dan is dit my kerk, as dit so is dat hulle gebou is op my evangelie.
- 9 Voorwaar Ek sê vir julle, dat julle gebou is op my evangelie; daarom sal julle noem watter dinge ook al julle noem, na my Naam; daarom, as julle die Vader aanroep, vir die kerk, as dit in my Naam is, sal die Vader julle hoor;
- 10 En as dit so is dat die kerk gebou is op my evangelie, dan sal die Vader sy eie werke toon daarin.

3 Nephi 27

And it came to pass that as the disciples of Jesus were journeying and were preaching the things which they had both heard and seen, and were baptizing in the name of Jesus, it came to pass that the disciples were gathered together and were united in mighty prayer and fasting.

And Jesus again showed himself unto them, for they were praying unto the Father in his name; and Jesus came and stood in the midst of them, and said unto them: What will ye that I shall give unto you?

And they said unto him: Lord, we will that thou wouldst tell us the name whereby we shall call this church; for there are disputations among the people concerning this matter.

And the Lord said unto them: Verily, verily, I say unto you, why is it that the people should murmur and dispute because of this thing?

Have they not read the scriptures, which say ye must take upon you the name of Christ, which is my name? For by this name shall ye be called at the last day;

And whoso taketh upon him my name, and endureth to the end, the same shall be saved at the last day.

Therefore, whatsoever ye shall do, ye shall do it in my name; therefore ye shall call the church in my name; and ye shall call upon the Father in my name that he will bless the church for my sake.

And how be it my church save it be called in my name? For if a church be called in Moses' name then it be Moses' church; or if it be called in the name of a man then it be the church of a man; but if it be called in my name then it is my church, if it so be that they are built upon my gospel.

Verily I say unto you, that ye are built upon my gospel; therefore ye shall call whatsoever things ye do call, in my name; therefore if ye call upon the Father, for the church, if it be in my name the Father will hear you;

And if it so be that the church is built upon my gospel then will the Father show forth his own works in it.

- 11 Maar as dit nie gebou is op my evangelie nie, en gebou is op die werke van mense, of op die werke van die duiwel, voorwaar Ek sê vir julle, hulle het vreugde in hulle werke vir 'n tydperk, en weldra kom die einde, en hulle word uitgekap en in die vuur gewerp, waarvandaan daar geen terugkeer is nie.
- 12 Want hulle werke volg hulle, want dit is vanweë hulle werke dat hulle uitgekap word; daarom, onthou die dinge wat Ek julle vertel het.
- 13 Kyk, Ek het aan julle my evangelie gegee, en dit is die evangelie wat Ek aan julle gegee het—dat Ek in die wêreld gekom het om die wil van my Vader te doen, omdat my Vader My gestuur het.
- 14 En my Vader het My gestuur sodat Ek opgehef mag word op die kruis; en nadat Ek opgehef was op die kruis, dat Ek almal na My mag trek, sodat net soos Ek opgehef was deur die mense, net so hoort die mense opgehef te word deur die Vader, om voor My te staan, om geoordeel te word volgens hulle werke, of hulle goed en of hulle boos is—
- 15 En om hierdie rede is Ek opgehef; daarom, volgens die krag van die Vader sal Ek alle mense na My toe trek, sodat hulle geoordeel mag word volgens hulle werke.
- 16 En dit sal gebeur, dat wie ook al bekeer en gedoop word in my Naam, gevul sal word; en as hy volhard tot die einde toe, kyk, hom sal Ek skuldeloos hou voor my Vader in daardie dag wanneer Ek sal staan om die wêreld te oordeel.
- 17 En hy wat nie volhard tot die einde toe nie, is hy wat ook uitgekap en in die vuur gewerp word, vanwaar hulle nie meer kan terugkeer nie, vanweë die geregtigheid van die Vader.
- 18 En dit is die woord wat Hy gegee het aan die kinders van mense. En om hierdie rede vervul Hy die woorde wat Hy gegee het, en Hy lieg nie, maar vervul al sy woorde.
- 19 En geen onrein ding kan sy koninkryk binnegaan nie; daarom, niks gaan sy rus binne nie behalwe as dit diegene is wat hulle kleding gewas het in my bloed, vanweë hulle geloof, en die bekering van al hulle sondes, en hulle getrouheid tot die einde.

But if it be not built upon my gospel, and is built upon the works of men, or upon the works of the devil, verily I say unto you they have joy in their works for a season, and by and by the end cometh, and they are hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence there is no return.

For their works do follow them, for it is because of their works that they are hewn down; therefore remember the things that I have told you.

Behold I have given unto you my gospel, and this is the gospel which I have given unto you—that I came into the world to do the will of my Father, because my Father sent me.

And my Father sent me that I might be lifted up upon the cross; and after that I had been lifted up upon the cross, that I might draw all men unto me, that as I have been lifted up by men even so should men be lifted up by the Father, to stand before me, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

And for this cause have I been lifted up; therefore, according to the power of the Father I will draw all men unto me, that they may be judged according to their works.

And it shall come to pass, that whoso repenteth and is baptized in my name shall be filled; and if he endureth to the end, behold, him will I hold guiltless before my Father at that day when I shall stand to judge the world.

And he that endureth not unto the end, the same is he that is also hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence they can no more return, because of the justice of the Father.

And this is the word which he hath given unto the children of men. And for this cause he fulfilled the words which he hath given, and he lieth not, but fulfilled all his words.

And no unclean thing can enter into his kingdom; therefore nothing entereth into his rest save it be those who have washed their garments in my blood, because of their faith, and the repentance of all their sins, and their faithfulness unto the end.

20 Nou, dit is die gebod: Bekeer, al julle eindes van die aarde, en kom na My en word gedoop in my Naam, sodat julle geheilig mag word deur die ontvangs van die Heilige Gees, sodat julle vlekkeloos mag staan voor My op die laaste dag.

21 Voorwaar, voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, dit is my ewangelie; en julle weet die dinge wat julle moet doen in my kerk; want die werke wat julle My sien doen het, dit sal julle ook doen; want dit wat julle My sien doen het, naamlik dit sal julle doen;

22 Daarom, as julle hierdie dinge doen, geseënd is julle, want julle sal verhef word op die laaste dag.

23 Skryf die dinge wat julle gesien en gehoor het, behalwe dit wat verbode is.

24 Skryf die werke van hierdie volk, wat sal wees, net soos geskrywe is, van dit wat was.

25 Want kyk, uit die boeke wat geskrywe is, en wat geskrywe sal word, sal hierdie volk geoordeel word, want deur hulle sal hulle werke bekend wees aan die mense.

26 En kyk, alle dinge word geskrywe deur die Vader; daarom, uit die boeke wat geskrywe sal word, sal die wêreld geoordeel word.

27 En weet julle dat julle regters sal wees van hierdie volk, volgens die oordeel wat Ek aan julle sal gee, wat regverdig sal wees. Daarom, watter soort manne behoort julle te wees? Voorwaar, Ek sê vir julle, net soos Ek is.

28 En nou, Ek gaan na die Vader. En voorwaar Ek sê vir julle, watter dinge julle ook al die Vader in my Naam sal vra, sal aan julle gegee word.

29 Daarom, vra, en julle sal ontvang; klop, en dit sal oopgemaak word vir julle; want hy wat vra, ontvang; en vir hom wat klop, sal dit oopgemaak word.

30 En nou, kyk, my vreugde is groot, tot volheid toe, vanweë julle, en ook hierdie geslag; ja, en ook die Vader jubel, en ook al die heilige engele, vanweë julle en hierdie geslag; want geeneen van hulle is verlore nie.

31 Kyk, Ek wil hê dat julle moet verstaan; want Ek bedoel hulle wat nou lewend is van hierdie geslag; en nie een van hulle is verlore nie; en in hulle het Ek volheid van vreugde.

Now this is the commandment: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me and be baptized in my name, that ye may be sanctified by the reception of the Holy Ghost, that ye may stand spotless before me at the last day.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, this is my gospel; and ye know the things that ye must do in my church; for the works which ye have seen me do that shall ye also do; for that which ye have seen me do even that shall ye do;

Therefore, if ye do these things blessed are ye, for ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

Write the things which ye have seen and heard, save it be those which are forbidden.

Write the works of this people, which shall be, even as hath been written, of that which hath been.

For behold, out of the books which have been written, and which shall be written, shall this people be judged, for by them shall their works be known unto men.

And behold, all things are written by the Father; therefore out of the books which shall be written shall the world be judged.

And know ye that ye shall be judges of this people, according to the judgment which I shall give unto you, which shall be just. Therefore, what manner of men ought ye to be? Verily I say unto you, even as I am.

And now I go unto the Father. And verily I say unto you, whatsoever things ye shall ask the Father in my name shall be given unto you.

Therefore, ask, and ye shall receive; knock, and it shall be opened unto you; for he that asketh, receiveth; and unto him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

And now, behold, my joy is great, even unto fulness, because of you, and also this generation; yea, and even the Father rejoiceth, and also all the holy angels, because of you and this generation; for none of them are lost.

Behold, I would that ye should understand; for I mean them who are now alive of this generation; and none of them are lost; and in them I have fulness of joy.

32 Maar kyk, dit bedroef My vanweë die vierde geslag van hierdie geslag af, want hulle word gevange weggevoer deur hom net soos die seun van die verderf was; want hulle sal My verkoop vir silwer en vir goud, en vir dit wat die mot vernietig en waardeur die we kan inbreek en steel. En in daardie dag sal Ek hulle besoek, en wel deur hulle werke op hulle eie hoofde te keer.

33 En dit het gebeur dat toe Jesus hierdie woorde beëindig het, het Hy aan sy dissipels gesê: Gaan julle in deur die eng poort; want eng is die poort, en smal is die weg wat lei na die lewe, en min is daar wat dit vind; maar breed is die poort en wyd die weg wat lei na die dood; en baie is daar wat daarop reis, totdat die nag kom, waarin geen mens kan werk nie.

But behold, it sorroweth me because of the fourth generation from this generation, for they are led away captive by him even as was the son of perdition; for they will sell me for silver and for gold, and for that which moth doth corrupt and which thieves can break through and steal. And in that day will I visit them, even in turning their works upon their own heads.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he said unto his disciples: Enter ye in at the strait gate; for strait is the gate, and narrow is the way that leads to life, and few there be that find it; but wide is the gate, and broad the way which leads to death, and many there be that travel therein, until the night cometh, wherein no man can work.

3 Nefi 28

- 1 En dit het gebeur toe Jesus hierdie woorde gesê het, het Hy met sy dissipels gespreek, een vir een, en vir hulle gesê: Wat is dit wat julle van My begeer, nadat Ek na die Vader gegaan het?
- 2 En hulle het almal gespreek, behalwe drie, en gesê: Ons begeer dat nadat ons geleef het tot die jare van die mens, dat ons bediening, waartoe U ons geroep het, 'n einde mag hê, sodat ons spoedig mag kom na U in u koninkryk.
- 3 En Hy het aan hulle gesê: Geseënd is julle omdat julle hierdie ding van My begeer het; daarom, nadat julle twee en sewentig jaar oud geword het, sal julle na My in my koninkryk kom; en met My sal julle rus vind.
- 4 En nadat Hy met hulle gespreek het, het Hy Homself na die drie gedraai, en aan hulle gesê: Wat wil julle hê dat Ek vir julle moet doen, wanneer Ek na die Vader gegaan het?
- 5 En hulle was bedroef in hulle harte, want hulle durf nie die ding spreek met Hom wat hulle begeer het nie.
- 6 En Hy het aan hulle gesê: Kyk, Ek ken julle gedagtes, en julle het die ding begeer wat Johannes, my geliefde, wat by My was in my bediening, voordat Ek opgehef is deur die Jode, begeer het van My.
- 7 Daarom, meer geseënd is julle, want julle sal nooit die dood smaak nie; maar julle sal lewe om al die handeling te sien van die Vader met die kinders van mense, totdat alle dinge vervul sal word volgens die wil van die Vader, wanneer Ek sal kom in my heerlijkheid met die magte van die hemel.
- 8 En julle sal nooit die pyn van die dood ervaar nie; maar wanneer Ek in my heerlijkheid sal kom, sal julle verander word binne 'n oogwink van sterflikheid na onsterflikheid; en dan sal julle geseënd wees in die koninkryk van my Vader.
- 9 En verder, julle sal nie pyn hê terwyl julle in die vlees sal woon nie, nóg droefheid, behalwe vir die sondes van die wêreld; en dit alles sal Ek doen vanweë die ding wat julle begeer het van My, want julle het begeer dat julle die siele van mense na My mag bring, terwyl die wêreld sal bestaan.

3 Nephi 28

And it came to pass when Jesus had said these words, he spake unto his disciples, one by one, saying unto them: What is it that ye desire of me, after that I am gone to the Father?

And they all spake, save it were three, saying: We desire that after we have lived unto the age of man, that our ministry, wherein thou hast called us, may have an end, that we may speedily come unto thee in thy kingdom.

And he said unto them: Blessed are ye because ye desired this thing of me; therefore, after that ye are seventy and two years old ye shall come unto me in my kingdom; and with me ye shall find rest.

And when he had spoken unto them, he turned himself unto the three, and said unto them: What will ye that I should do unto you, when I am gone unto the Father?

And they sorrowed in their hearts, for they durst not speak unto him the thing which they desired.

And he said unto them: Behold, I know your thoughts, and ye have desired the thing which John, my beloved, who was with me in my ministry, before that I was lifted up by the Jews, desired of me.

Therefore, more blessed are ye, for ye shall never taste of death; but ye shall live to behold all the doings of the Father unto the children of men, even until all things shall be fulfilled according to the will of the Father, when I shall come in my glory with the powers of heaven.

And ye shall never endure the pains of death; but when I shall come in my glory ye shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye from mortality to immortality; and then shall ye be blessed in the kingdom of my Father.

And again, ye shall not have pain while ye shall dwell in the flesh, neither sorrow save it be for the sins of the world; and all this will I do because of the thing which ye have desired of me, for ye have desired that ye might bring the souls of men unto me, while the world shall stand.

- 10 En om hierdie rede sal julle volheid van vreugde hê; en julle sal in die koninkryk van my Vader sit; ja, julle vreugde sal vol wees, net soos die Vader vir My volheid van vreugde gegee het; en julle sal wees net soos Ek is, en Ek is net soos die Vader; en die Vader en Ek is een;
- 11 En die Heilige Gees lewer getuienis van die Vader en My; en die Vader gee die Heilige Gees aan die kinders van mense, vanweë My.
- 12 En dit het gebeur dat nadat Jesus hierdie woorde gespreek het, het Hy elkeen van hulle aangeraak met sy vinger behalwe die drie wat sou bly, en toe het Hy weggegaan.
- 13 En kyk, die hemele is geopen, en hulle is weggevoer na die hemel, en het onuitspreeklike dinge gesien en gehoor.
- 14 En dit is hulle verbied dat hulle sou uiter; nóg is aan hulle die mag gegee dat hulle die dinge kon uiter wat hulle gesien en gehoor het;
- 15 En of hulle in die liggaam was of buite die liggaam, kon hulle nie sê nie; want dit het gelyk vir hulle soos 'n transfigurasie van hulle, dat hulle verander is van hierdie liggaam van vlees na 'n onsterflike toestand, sodat hulle die dinge van God kon aanskou.
- 16 Maar dit het gebeur dat hulle weer gedien het op die aangesig van die aarde; nogtans het hulle nie gespreek oor die dinge wat hulle gehoor en gesien het nie, vanweë die bevel wat hulle in die hemel gegee is.
- 17 En nou, of hulle sterflik of onsterflik was, vanaf die dag van hulle transfigurasie, weet ek nie;
- 18 Maar dít weet ek, volgens die verslag wat gegee is—hulle het uitgegaan op die aangesig van die land, en al die mense gedien, en soveel met die kerk verenig as wat in hulle prediking wou glo; deur hulle te doop, en soveel as wat gedoop is, het die Heilige Gees ontvang.
- 19 En hulle is in die gevangenis gewerp deur hulle wat nie aan die kerk behoort het nie. En die gevangnisse kon hulle nie hou nie, want hulle is in twee geskeur.

And for this cause ye shall have fulness of joy; and ye shall sit down in the kingdom of my Father; yea, your joy shall be full, even as the Father hath given me fulness of joy; and ye shall be even as I am, and I am even as the Father; and the Father and I are one;

And the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and the Father giveth the Holy Ghost unto the children of men, because of me.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he touched every one of them with his finger save it were the three who were to tarry, and then he departed.

And behold, the heavens were opened, and they were caught up into heaven, and saw and heard unspeakable things.

And it was forbidden them that they should utter; neither was it given unto them power that they could utter the things which they saw and heard;

And whether they were in the body or out of the body, they could not tell; for it did seem unto them like a transfiguration of them, that they were changed from this body of flesh into an immortal state, that they could behold the things of God.

But it came to pass that they did again minister upon the face of the earth; nevertheless they did not minister of the things which they had heard and seen, because of the commandment which was given them in heaven.

And now, whether they were mortal or immortal, from the day of their transfiguration, I know not;

But this much I know, according to the record which hath been given—they did go forth upon the face of the land, and did minister unto all the people, uniting as many to the church as would believe in their preaching; baptizing them, and as many as were baptized did receive the Holy Ghost.

And they were cast into prison by them who did not belong to the church. And the prisons could not hold them, for they were rent in twain.

20 En hulle is neergewerp in die aarde; maar hulle het die aarde getref met die woord van God, in soverre dat deur sy krag hulle uitgelewer is uit die dieptes van die aarde; en daarom kon hulle nie putte grawe genoegsaam om hulle te hou nie.

21 En driekeer is hulle gewerp in 'n vuuroond en is nie beseer nie.

22 En tweekeer is hulle gewerp in 'n kuil van wilde diere; en kyk hulle het gespeel met die diere soos 'n kind met 'n sogende lammetjie, en is nie beseer nie.

23 En dit het gebeur dat hulle so uitgegaan het onder die hele volk van Nefi, en het die evangelie van Christus gepredik aan al die mense op die aangesig van die land; en hulle is bekeer tot die Here, en is verenig met die kerk van Christus, en so is die mense geseën van daardie geslag, volgens die woord van Jesus.

24 En nou ek, Mormon, maak 'n einde daaraan om te spreek aangaande hierdie dinge vir 'n tydperk.

25 Kyk, ek was op die punt om die name neer te skryf van diegene wat nooit die dood sou smaak nie, maar die Here het dit verbied; daarom skryf ek hulle nie, want hulle is verborge van die wêreld.

26 Maar kyk, ek het hulle gesien, en hulle het my gedien.

27 En kyk hulle sal onder die nie-Jode wees, en die nie-Jode sal hulle nie ken nie.

28 Hulle sal ook onder die Jode wees, en die Jode sal hulle nie ken nie.

29 En dit sal gebeur, wanneer die Here dit goeddink in sy wysheid dat hulle al die verstrooide stamme van Israel sal dien, en alle nasies, stamme, tale en volke, en uit hulle baie siele sal bring tot Jesus, sodat hulle begeerte vervul mag word, en ook vanweë die oortuigende krag van God wat in hulle is.

30 En hulle is soos die engele van God, en as hulle sal bid tot die Vader in die Naam van Jesus, kan hulle hulleself toon aan watter mens hulle dit ook al goed ag.

31 Daarom, groot en wonderbaarlike werke sal verrig word deur hulle, voor die groot en toekomstige dag wanneer alle mense sekerlik moet staan voor die regterstoel van Christus;

And they were cast down into the earth; but they did smite the earth with the word of God, insomuch that by his power they were delivered out of the depths of the earth; and therefore they could not dig pits sufficient to hold them.

And thrice they were cast into a furnace and received no harm.

And twice were they cast into a den of wild beasts; and behold they did play with the beasts as a child with a suckling lamb, and received no harm.

And it came to pass that thus they did go forth among all the people of Nephi, and did preach the gospel of Christ unto all people upon the face of the land; and they were converted unto the Lord, and were united unto the church of Christ, and thus the people of that generation were blessed, according to the word of Jesus.

And now I, Mormon, make an end of speaking concerning these things for a time.

Behold, I was about to write the names of those who were never to taste of death, but the Lord forbade; therefore I write them not, for they are hid from the world.

But behold, I have seen them, and they have ministered unto me.

And behold they will be among the Gentiles, and the Gentiles shall know them not.

They will also be among the Jews, and the Jews shall know them not.

And it shall come to pass, when the Lord seeth fit in his wisdom that they shall minister unto all the scattered tribes of Israel, and unto all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, and shall bring out of them unto Jesus many souls, that their desire may be fulfilled, and also because of the convincing power of God which is in them.

And they are as the angels of God, and if they shall pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus they can show themselves unto whatsoever man it seemeth them good.

Therefore, great and marvelous works shall be wrought by them, before the great and coming day when all people must surely stand before the judgment-seat of Christ;

32 Ja, selfs onder die nie-Jode sal daar 'n groot en wonderbaarlike werk verrig word deur hulle, voor daardie oordeelsdag.

33 En as julle al die skrifture gehad het wat 'n kroniek gee van al die wonderbaarlike werke van Christus, sou julle, volgens die woorde van Christus, weet dat hierdie dinge sekerlik moet kom.

34 En wee hom wat nie sal ag slaan op die woorde van Jesus nie, en ook hulle wat Hy gekies het en gestuur het onder hulle; want wie ook al nie die woorde van Jesus ontvang nie en die woorde van hulle wat Hy gestuur het, ontvang Hom nie; en daarom sal Hy hulle nie ontvang op die laaste dag nie;

35 En dit sou beter wees vir hulle as hulle nie gebore was nie. Want veronderstel julle dat julle ontslae kan raak van die geregtigheid van 'n beledigde God, wat vertrap is onder die voete van mense, dat heil daardeur mag kom?

36 En nou kyk, soos ek gespreek het aangaande diegene wat die Here gekies het, ja, naamlik drie wat opgeneem is in die hemele, dat ek nie geweet het of hulle gereinig is van sterflikheid tot onsterflikheid nie—

37 Maar kyk, vandat ek geskrywe het, het ek navraag gedoen by die Here, en Hy het dit geopenbaar aan my dat daar noodwendig 'n verandering bewerkstellig moet word in hulle liggame, of anders is dit noodwendig dat hulle die dood moet smaak;

38 Daarom, sodat hulle nie die dood mag smaak nie, is daar 'n verandering bewerkstellig in hulle liggame, sodat hulle nie pyn of droefheid mag verduur nie, behalwe vir die sondes van die wêreld.

39 Nou, hierdie verandering was nie gelyk aan dit wat sal plaasvind op die laaste dag nie; maar daar was 'n verandering in hulle bewerkstellig, in soverre dat Satan geen mag kon hê oor hulle nie, dat hy hulle nie kon versoek nie, en hulle is geheilig in die vlees, dat hulle heilig was, en dat die magte van die aarde hulle nie kon hou nie.

40 En in hierdie toestand sou hulle bly tot die oordeelsdag van Christus; en op daardie dag sou hulle 'n groter verandering ontvang, en om ontvang te word in die koninkryk van die Vader om nie meer uit te gaan nie, maar om met God vir ewig in die hemele te woon.

Yea even among the Gentiles shall there be a great and marvelous work wrought by them, before that judgment day.

And if ye had all the scriptures which give an account of all the marvelous works of Christ, ye would, according to the words of Christ, know that these things must surely come.

And wo be unto him that will not hearken unto the words of Jesus, and also to them whom he hath chosen and sent among them; for whoso receiveth not the words of Jesus and the words of those whom he hath sent receiveth not him; and therefore he will not receive them at the last day;

And it would be better for them if they had not been born. For do ye suppose that ye can get rid of the justice of an offended God, who hath been trampled under feet of men, that thereby salvation might come?

And now behold, as I spake concerning those whom the Lord hath chosen, yea, even three who were caught up into the heavens, that I knew not whether they were cleansed from mortality to immortality—

But behold, since I wrote, I have inquired of the Lord, and he hath made it manifest unto me that there must needs be a change wrought upon their bodies, or else it needs be that they must taste of death;

Therefore, that they might not taste of death there was a change wrought upon their bodies, that they might not suffer pain nor sorrow save it were for the sins of the world.

Now this change was not equal to that which shall take place at the last day; but there was a change wrought upon them, insomuch that Satan could have no power over them, that he could not tempt them; and they were sanctified in the flesh, that they were holy, and that the powers of the earth could not hold them.

And in this state they were to remain until the judgment day of Christ; and at that day they were to receive a greater change, and to be received into the kingdom of the Father to go no more out, but to dwell with God eternally in the heavens.

3 Nefi 29

- 1 En nou kyk, ek sê vir julle dat wanneer die Here dit sal goeddink, in sy wysheid, dat hierdie woorde tot die nie-Jode sal kom volgens sy woord, dan mag julle weet dat die verbond wat die Vader gesluit het met die kinders van Israel, aangaande hulle herstelling tot die lande van hulle erfenis, alreeds begin om vervul te word.
- 2 En julle mag weet dat die woorde van die Here, wat gespreek is deur die heilige profete, sal alles vervul word; en julle hoef nie te sê dat die Here sy koms vertraag tot die kinders van Israel nie.
- 3 En julle hoef julle nie te verbeeld in julle harte dat die woorde wat gespreek is tevergeefs is nie, want kyk, die Here sal sy verbond onthou wat Hy gesluit het met sy volk van die huis van Israel.
- 4 En wanneer julle hierdie woorde sal sien verskyn onder julle, dan hoef julle nie langer die handeling van die Here te versmaai nie, want die swaard van sy geregtigheid is in sy regterhand; en kyk, op daardie dag, as julle sy handeling sal versmaai, sal Hy veroorsaak dat dit julle gou inhaal.
- 5 Wee hom wat die handeling van die Here versmaai; ja, wee hom wat die Christus sal loën en sy werke!
- 6 Ja, wee hom wat die openbaring van die Here sal loën, en wat sal sê dat die Here nie langer deur openbaring werk nie, of deur profesie, of deur gawes, of deur tonge, of deur genesings, of deur die mag van die Heilige Gees nie!
- 7 Ja, en wee hom wat op daardie dag sal sê, om gewin te verkry, dat daar geen wonderwerk verrig kan word deur Jesus Christus nie; want hy wat dit doen sal word soos die seun van die verderf, vir wie daar geen barmhartigheid is nie, volgens die woord van Christus!
- 8 Ja, en julle hoef nie langer die Jode te spot nie, nóg te versmaai, nóg belaglik te maak, nóg enige van die oorblyfsels van die huis van Israel; want kyk, die Here onthou sy verbond met hulle, en Hy sal aan hulle doen volgens dit wat Hy gesweer het.

3 Nephi 29

And now behold, I say unto you that when the Lord shall see fit, in his wisdom, that these sayings shall come unto the Gentiles according to his word, then ye may know that the covenant which the Father hath made with the children of Israel, concerning their restoration to the lands of their inheritance, is already beginning to be fulfilled.

And ye may know that the words of the Lord, which have been spoken by the holy prophets, shall all be fulfilled; and ye need not say that the Lord delays his coming unto the children of Israel.

And ye need not imagine in your hearts that the words which have been spoken are vain, for behold, the Lord will remember his covenant which he hath made unto his people of the house of Israel.

And when ye shall see these sayings coming forth among you, then ye need not any longer spurn at the doings of the Lord, for the sword of his justice is in his right hand; and behold, at that day, if ye shall spurn at his doings he will cause that it shall soon overtake you.

Wo unto him that spurneth at the doings of the Lord; yea, wo unto him that shall deny the Christ and his works!

Yea, wo unto him that shall deny the revelations of the Lord, and that shall say the Lord no longer worketh by revelation, or by prophecy, or by gifts, or by tongues, or by healings, or by the power of the Holy Ghost!

Yea, and wo unto him that shall say at that day, to get gain, that there can be no miracle wrought by Jesus Christ; for he that doeth this shall become like unto the son of perdition, for whom there was no mercy, according to the word of Christ!

Yea, and ye need not any longer hiss, nor spurn, nor make game of the Jews, nor any of the remnant of the house of Israel; for behold, the Lord remembereth his covenant unto them, and he will do unto them according to that which he hath sworn.

9 Daaron, julle hoof nie te veronderstel dat julle die regterhand van die Here na links kan draai, sodat Hy nie oordeel mag uitvoer ter vervulling van die verbond wat Hy met die huis van Israel gesluit het nie.

Therefore ye need not suppose that ye can turn the right hand of the Lord unto the left, that he may not execute judgment unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel.

3 Nefi 30

- 1 Slaan ag, o julle nie-Jode, en hoor die woorde van Jesus Christus, die Seun van die lewende God, wat Hy my gebied het dat ek moes spreek aangaande julle, want, kyk Hy gebied my dat ek moet skrywe, en het gesê:
- 2 Draai weg, al julle nie-Jode, van julle goddelose weë; en bekeer van julle bose handelinge, van julle leuens en bedrieërye, en van julle hoererye, en van julle geheime gruwels, en julle afgoderye, en van julle moorde, en julle priesterliste, en julle afguns, en julle onenighede, en van al julle boosheid en gruwels, en kom na My, en word gedoop in my Naam, sodat julle 'n vergifnis mag ontvang van julle sondes, en vervul kan word met die Heilige Gees, sodat julle gereken kan word onder my volk wat van die huis van Israel is.

3 Nephi 30

Hearken, O ye Gentiles, and hear the words of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God, which he hath commanded me that I should speak concerning you, for, behold he commandeth me that I should write, saying:

Turn, all ye Gentiles, from your wicked ways; and repent of your evil doings, of your lyings and deceivings, and of your whoredoms, and of your secret abominations, and your idolatries, and of your murders, and your priestcrafts, and your envyings, and your strifes, and from all your wickedness and abominations, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, that ye may receive a remission of your sins, and be filled with the Holy Ghost, that ye may be numbered with my people who are of the house of Israel.

Vierde Nefi

Die Boek van Nefi

Wat die Seun is van Nefi—Een van die Dissipels van Jesus Christus

'n Kroniek van die volk van Nefi, volgens sy verslag.

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat die vier en dertigste jaar verbygegaan het, en ook die vyf en dertigste, en kyk, die dissipels van Jesus het 'n kerk van Christus gestig in al die lande rondomheen. En soveel as wat na hulle gekom het, en waarlik bekeer het van hulle sondes, is gedoop in die Naam van Jesus; en hulle het ook die Heilige Gees ontvang.
- 2 En dit het gebeur in die ses en dertigste jaar, is die mense almal bekeer tot die Here, op die hele aangesig van die land, beide Nefiete en Lamaniete, en daar was geen twiste of redekawelings onder hulle nie, en elke mens het regverdig gehandel die een met die ander.
- 3 En hulle het alle dinge in gemeen gehad onder hulle; daarom was daar nie ryk en arm, slaaf en vryman nie, maar hulle is almal vrygemaak, en deelgenote van die hemelse gawe.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat die sewe en dertigste jaar ook verbygegaan het, en vrede het nog voortgeduur in die land.
- 5 En daar is groot en wonderbaarlike werke verrig deur die dissipels van Jesus, in soverre dat hulle die siekes genees het, en die dooies opgewek het, en die verlamdes laat loop het, en blindes hulle sig laat ontvang, en die dowes laat hoor; en allerlei soorte wonderwerke het hulle verrig onder die kinders van mense; en in niks het hulle wonderwerke verrig nie behalwe in die Naam van Jesus.
- 6 En so het die agt en dertigste jaar verbygegaan, en ook die nege en dertigste, en een en veertigste, en die twee en veertigste, ja, en wel tot nege en veertig jaar verbygegaan het, en ook die een en vyftigste en die twee en vyftigste; ja, en tot nege en vyftig jaar verbygegaan het.

Fourth Nephi

The Book of Nephi

Who Is the Son of Nephi—One of the Disciples of Jesus Christ

An account of the people of Nephi, according to his record.

And it came to pass that the thirty and fourth year passed away, and also the thirty and fifth, and behold the disciples of Jesus had formed a church of Christ in all the lands round about. And as many as did come unto them, and did truly repent of their sins, were baptized in the name of Jesus; and they did also receive the Holy Ghost.

And it came to pass in the thirty and sixth year, the people were all converted unto the Lord, upon all the face of the land, both Nephites and Lamanites, and there were no contentions and disputations among them, and every man did deal justly one with another.

And they had all things common among them; therefore there were not rich and poor, bond and free, but they were all made free, and partakers of the heavenly gift.

And it came to pass that the thirty and seventh year passed away also, and there still continued to be peace in the land.

And there were great and marvelous works wrought by the disciples of Jesus, insomuch that they did heal the sick, and raise the dead, and cause the lame to walk, and the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear; and all manner of miracles did they work among the children of men; and in nothing did they work miracles save it were in the name of Jesus.

And thus did the thirty and eighth year pass away, and also the thirty and ninth, and forty and first, and the forty and second, yea, even until forty and nine years had passed away, and also the fifty and first, and the fifty and second; yea, and even until fifty and nine years had passed away.

7 En die Here het hulle uitermate voorspoedig maak in die land; ja, in soverre dat hulle weer stede gebou het waar daar stede verbrand was.

8 Ja, selfs ook daardie groot stad Zarahemla het hulle weer laat bou.

9 Maar daar was baie stede wat weggesink het en waters het opgekom in die plek daarvan; daarom kon hierdie stede nie vernuwe word nie.

10 En nou, kyk, dit het gebeur dat die volk van Nepi sterk geword het, en uitermate vinnig vermeerder het, en 'n uitermate mooi en aangename volk geword het.

11 En hulle is getroud, en is uitgegee in die huwelik, en is geseën volgens die menigte beloftes wat die Here aan hulle gemaak het.

12 En hulle het nie meer gewandel volgens die handeling en ordinansies van die wet van Moses nie; maar hulle het gewandel volgens die gebooie wat hulle ontvang het van hulle Here en hulle God, en hulle het volgehou met vas en gebed, en om dikwels byeen te kom, beide om te bid en om die woord van die Here aan te hoor.

13 En dit het gebeur dat daar geen twis onder die hele volk in die hele land was nie; maar daar is magtige wonderwerke verrig onder die dissipels van Jesus.

14 En dit het gebeur dat die een en sewentigste jaar verbygegaan het, en ook die twee en sewentigste jaar, ja, en kortom, totdat die nege en sewentigste jaar verbygegaan het; ja, en wel 'n honderd jaar het verbygegaan, en die dissipels van Jesus, wat Hy gekies het, het almal na die paradys van God gegaan, behalwe die drie wat sou vertoef; en daar is ander dissipels in hulle plek geordineer; en ook baie van daardie geslag het heengegaan.

15 En dit het gebeur dat daar geen onenigheid in die land was nie vanweë die liefde van God wat in die harte van die volk gewoon het.

16 En daar was geen afguns nie, nóg onenighede, nóg rumoer, nóg hoerery, nóg leuens, nóg moorde, nóg enige soort wellustigheid; en waarlik kon daar nie 'n gelukkiger volk wees onder al die mense wat geskape is deur die hand van God nie.

And the Lord did prosper them exceedingly in the land; yea, insomuch that they did build cities again where there had been cities burned.

Yea, even that great city Zarahemla did they cause to be built again.

But there were many cities which had been sunk, and waters came up in the stead thereof; therefore these cities could not be renewed.

And now, behold, it came to pass that the people of Nephi did wax strong, and did multiply exceedingly fast, and became an exceedingly fair and delightful people.

And they were married, and given in marriage, and were blessed according to the multitude of the promises which the Lord had made unto them.

And they did not walk any more after the performances and ordinances of the law of Moses; but they did walk after the commandments which they had received from their Lord and their God, continuing in fasting and prayer, and in meeting together oft both to pray and to hear the word of the Lord.

And it came to pass that there was no contention among all the people, in all the land; but there were mighty miracles wrought among the disciples of Jesus.

And it came to pass that the seventy and first year passed away, and also the seventy and second year, yea, and in fine, till the seventy and ninth year had passed away; yea, even an hundred years had passed away, and the disciples of Jesus, whom he had chosen, had all gone to the paradise of God, save it were the three who should tarry; and there were other disciples ordained in their stead; and also many of that generation had passed away.

And it came to pass that there was no contention in the land, because of the love of God which did dwell in the hearts of the people.

And there were no envyings, nor strifes, nor tumults, nor whoredoms, nor lyings, nor murders, nor any manner of lasciviousness; and surely there could not be a happier people among all the people who had been created by the hand of God.

- 17 Daar was geen rowers nie, nóg moordenaars, nóg was daar Lamaniete, nóg enige ander soort -iete; maar hulle was een, die kinders van Christus, en erfgename van die koninkryk van God.
- 18 En hoe geseënd was hulle! Want die Here het hulle geseën in al hulle doen en late; ja, en wel is hulle geseën en was voorspoedig tot 'n honderd en tien jaar verbygegaan het; en die eerste geslag na Christus het heengegaan, en daar was geen twis in die hele land nie.
- 19 En dit het gebeur dat Nephi, hy wat hierdie laaste kroniek bygehou het, (en hy het dit gehou op die plate van Nephi) gesterwe het, en sy seun Amos het dit gehou in sy plek; en hy het dit ook op die plate van Nephi bygehou.
- 20 En hy het dit vier en tagtig jaar bygehou, en daar was nog steeds vrede in die land, behalwe vir 'n klein gedeelte van die volk wat afvallig geword het van die kerk en die naam van Lamaniete op hulle geneem het; daarom het daar weer begin om Lamaniete te wees in die land.
- 21 En dit het gebeur dat Amos ook gesterwe het, (en dit was 'n honderd vier en negentig jaar vanaf die koms van Christus) en sy seun Amos het die kroniek in sy plek bygehou; en hy het dit ook bygehou op die plate van Nephi; en dit is ook geskrywe in die boek van Nephi, wat hierdie boek is.
- 22 En dit het gebeur dat tweehonderd jaar verbygegaan het; en die tweede geslag het almal heengegaan behalwe vir 'n paar.
- 23 En nou ek, Mormon, wil hê dat julle moet weet dat die volk vermeerder het, in soverre dat hulle versprei is oor die hele aangesig van die land, en dat hulle uitermate ryk geword het vanweë hulle voorspoed in Christus.
- 24 En nou, in hierdie tweehonderd en eerste jaar het daar onder hulle diegene begin wees wat verhef was in hoogmoed, soos die dra van duur kleding, en allerlei soorte voortreflike pèrels, en van die mooi dinge van die wêreld.
- 25 En van daardie tyd af aan het hulle hul besittings en hul goed nie meer in gemeen gehad nie.

There were no robbers, nor murderers, neither were there Lamanites, nor any manner of -ites; but they were in one, the children of Christ, and heirs to the kingdom of God.

And how blessed were they! For the Lord did bless them in all their doings; yea, even they were blessed and prospered until an hundred and ten years had passed away; and the first generation from Christ had passed away, and there was no contention in all the land.

And it came to pass that Nephi, he that kept this last record, (and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi) died, and his son Amos kept it in his stead; and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi also.

And he kept it eighty and four years, and there was still peace in the land, save it were a small part of the people who had revolted from the church and taken upon them the name of Lamanites; therefore there began to be Lamanites again in the land.

And it came to pass that Amos died also, (and it was an hundred and ninety and four years from the coming of Christ) and his son Amos kept the record in his stead; and he also kept it upon the plates of Nephi; and it was also written in the book of Nephi, which is this book.

And it came to pass that two hundred years had passed away; and the second generation had all passed away save it were a few.

And now I, Mormon, would that ye should know that the people had multiplied, insomuch that they were spread upon all the face of the land, and that they had become exceedingly rich, because of their prosperity in Christ.

And now, in this two hundred and first year there began to be among them those who were lifted up in pride, such as the wearing of costly apparel, and all manner of fine pearls, and of the fine things of the world.

And from that time forth they did have their goods and their substance no more common among them.

26 En hulle het begin om verdeel te word in klasse; en hulle het begin om kerke op te bou vir hulleself om gewin te verkry, en het begin om die ware kerk van Christus te loën.

27 En dit het gebeur dat toe tweehonderd en tien jaar verbygegaan het, was daar baie kerke in die land; ja, daar was baie kerke wat voorgegee het om die Christus te ken, en tog het hulle die grootste gedeelte van sy evangelie geloën, in soverre dat hulle allerlei booshede toegelaat het, en dit wat heilig was bedien het aan hom vir wie dit verbied is weens onwaardigheid.

28 En hierdie kerk het uitermate vermeerder weens ongeregtigheid, en weens die mag van Satan wat 'n houvas gekry het op hulle harte.

29 En verder, daar was 'n ander kerk wat die Christus geloën het; en hulle het die ware kerk van Christus vervolg, vanweë hulle ootmoed en hulle geloof in Christus; en hulle het hulle verag weens die baie wonderwerke wat onder hulle verrig is.

30 Daarom het hulle mag en gesag uitgeoefen oor die dissipels van Jesus wat vertoef het by hulle, en hulle het hulle in die gevangenis gewerp; maar deur die krag van die woord van God, wat in hulle was, is die gevangenis in twee geskeur, en hulle het uitgegaan en magtige wonderwerke onder hulle gedoen.

31 Nogtans, en nieteenstaande al hierdie wonderwerke, het die mense hulle harte verhard, en het gesoek om hulle dood te maak, net soos die Jode in Jerusalem gesoek het om Jesus dood te maak, volgens sy woord.

32 En hulle het hulle in oonde van vuur gewerp, en hulle het uitgekom sonder om enige letsel op te doen.

33 En hulle het hulle ook in kuile met wilde diere gewerp, en hulle het gespeel met die wilde diere net soos 'n kind met 'n lammetjie; en hulle het uitgekom onder hulle, sonder om enige letsel op te doen.

And they began to be divided into classes; and they began to build up churches unto themselves to get gain, and began to deny the true church of Christ.

And it came to pass that when two hundred and ten years had passed away there were many churches in the land; yea, there were many churches which professed to know the Christ, and yet they did deny the more parts of his gospel, insomuch that they did receive all manner of wickedness, and did administer that which was sacred unto him to whom it had been forbidden because of unworthiness.

And this church did multiply exceedingly because of iniquity, and because of the power of Satan who did get hold upon their hearts.

And again, there was another church which denied the Christ; and they did persecute the true church of Christ, because of their humility and their belief in Christ; and they did despise them because of the many miracles which were wrought among them.

Therefore they did exercise power and authority over the disciples of Jesus who did tarry with them, and they did cast them into prison; but by the power of the word of God, which was in them, the prisons were rent in twain, and they went forth doing mighty miracles among them.

Nevertheless, and notwithstanding all these miracles, the people did harden their hearts, and did seek to kill them, even as the Jews at Jerusalem sought to kill Jesus, according to his word.

And they did cast them into furnaces of fire, and they came forth receiving no harm.

And they also cast them into dens of wild beasts, and they did play with the wild beasts even as a child with a lamb; and they did come forth from among them, receiving no harm.

- 34 Nogtans, die volk het hulle harte verhard, want hulle is gelei deur baie priesters en valse profete om baie kerke op te bou, en om allerlei ongeregthede te doen. En hulle het die volk van Jesus geslaan, maar die volk van Jesus het nie weer teruggeslaan nie. En so het hulle gekwyn in ongeloof en in boosheid, van jaar tot jaar, totdat tweehonderd en dertig jaar verbygegaan het.
- 35 En nou het dit gebeur in hierdie jaar, ja, in die tweehonderd een en dertigste jaar, was daar 'n groot verdeeldheid onder die volk.
- 36 En dit het gebeur dat in hierdie jaar het daar 'n volk tot stand gekom wat die Nefiete genoem is, en hulle was ware gelowiges in Christus; en onder hulle was daar diegene wat deur die Lamaniete genoem is—Jakobiete, en Josefiete, en Zoramiete;
- 37 Daarom is die ware gelowiges in Christus, en die ware aanbidders van Christus, (onder wie die drie dissipels van Jesus was wat sou vertoef) genoem Nefiete, en Jakobiete, en Josefiete, en Zoramiete.
- 38 En dit het gebeur dat hulle wat die evangelie verwerp het, is Lamaniete, en Lemueliete, en Ismaeliete genoem; en hulle het nie gekwyn in ongeloof nie, maar hulle het moedswillig gerebelleer teen die evangelie van Christus; en hulle het hulle kinders geleer dat hulle nie moes glo nie, net soos hulle voorvaders van die begin af gekwyn het.
- 39 En dit was weens die boosheid en gruwels van hulle vaders, net soos dit in die begin was. En hulle is geleer om die kinders van God te haat, net soos die Lamaniete geleer is om die kinders van Nepi te haat van die begin af.
- 40 En dit het gebeur dat tweehonderd vier en veertig jaar verbygegaan het; en so was die sake van die volk. En die goddeloser gedeelte van die volk het sterk geword, en het uitermate talryker geword as wat die volk van God was.
- 41 En hulle het steeds volgehou om kerke op te bou vir hulleself, en hulle te versier met allerlei soorte kosbare dinge.

Nevertheless, the people did harden their hearts, for they were led by many priests and false prophets to build up many churches, and to do all manner of iniquity. And they did smite upon the people of Jesus; but the people of Jesus did not smite again. And thus they did dwindle in unbelief and wickedness, from year to year, even until two hundred and thirty years had passed away.

And now it came to pass in this year, yea, in the two hundred and thirty and first year, there was a great division among the people.

And it came to pass that in this year there arose a people who were called the Nephites, and they were true believers in Christ; and among them there were those who were called by the Lamanites—Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites;

Therefore the true believers in Christ, and the true worshipers of Christ, (among whom were the three disciples of Jesus who should tarry) were called Nephites, and Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites.

And it came to pass that they who rejected the gospel were called Lamanites, and Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites; and they did not dwindle in unbelief, but they did wilfully rebel against the gospel of Christ; and they did teach their children that they should not believe, even as their fathers, from the beginning, did dwindle.

And it was because of the wickedness and abomination of their fathers, even as it was in the beginning. And they were taught to hate the children of God, even as the Lamanites were taught to hate the children of Nephi from the beginning.

And it came to pass that two hundred and forty and four years had passed away, and thus were the affairs of the people. And the more wicked part of the people did wax strong, and became exceedingly more numerous than were the people of God.

And they did still continue to build up churches unto themselves, and adorn them with all manner of precious things. And thus did two hundred and fifty years pass away, and also two hundred and sixty years.

42 En so het tweehonderd en vyftig jaar verbygegaan, en ook tweehonderd en sestig jaar. En dit het gebeur dat die goddeloser gedeelte van die volk begin het om weer die geheime ede en organisasies van Gadianton te vestig.

43 En ook die volk wat die volk van Nefi genoem is, het begin om hoogmoedig te word in hulle harte, vanweë hulle uitermate rykdom, en het ydel geword soos hulle broers, die Lamaniete.

44 En van hierdie tyd af het die dissipels begin om te treur oor die sondes van die wêreld.

45 En dit het gebeur dat toe driehonderd jaar verbygegaan het, het beide die volk van Nefi en die Lamaniete uitermate boos geword, die een net soos die ander.

46 En dit het gebeur dat die rowers van Gadianton versprei het oor die hele aangesig van die land; en daar was niemand wat regverdig was nie behalwe die dissipels van Jesus. En goud en silwer het hulle weggeleë in oorfloed, en het in allerlei soorte goedere handel gedrywe.

47 En dit het gebeur dat nadat driehonderd en vyf jaar verbygegaan het, (en die volk het steeds in boosheid verkeer) het Amos gesterf; en sy broer Ammaron het die kroniek bygehou in sy plek.

48 En dit het gebeur dat toe driehonderd en twintig jaar verbygegaan het, het Ammaron, omdat hy gedwing was deur die Heilige Gees, die kronieke weggebêre wat heilig was—ja, selfs al die heilige kronieke wat oorgelewer is van geslag tot geslag, wat heilig was—naamlik tot die driehonderd en twintigste jaar vanaf die koms van Christus.

49 En hy het hulle weggebêre tot die Here sodat hulle weer mag kom tot die oorblyfsel van die huis van Jakob, volgens die profesieë en die beloftes van die Here. En aldus is die einde van die kroniek van Ammaron.

And it came to pass that the wicked part of the people began again to build up the secret oaths and combinations of Gadianton.

And also the people who were called the people of Nephi began to be proud in their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, and become vain like unto their brethren, the Lamanites.

And from this time the disciples began to sorrow for the sins of the world.

And it came to pass that when three hundred years had passed away, both the people of Nephi and the Lamanites had become exceedingly wicked one like unto another.

And it came to pass that the robbers of Gadianton did spread over all the face of the land; and there were none that were righteous save it were the disciples of Jesus. And gold and silver did they lay up in store in abundance, and did traffic in all manner of traffic.

And it came to pass that after three hundred and five years had passed away, (and the people did still remain in wickedness) Amos died; and his brother, Ammaron, did keep the record in his stead.

And it came to pass that when three hundred and twenty years had passed away, Ammaron, being constrained by the Holy Ghost, did hide up the records which were sacred—yea, even all the sacred records which had been handed down from generation to generation, which were sacred—even until the three hundred and twentieth year from the coming of Christ.

And he did hide them up unto the Lord, that they might come again unto the remnant of the house of Jacob, according to the prophecies and the promises of the Lord. And thus is the end of the record of Ammaron.

Die Boek van Mormon

Mormon 1

- 1 En nou ek, Mormon, maak 'n kroniek van die dinge wat ek beide gesien en gehoor het, en noem dit die Boek van Mormon.
- 2 En omtrent die tyd dat Ammaron die kronieke weggebêre het tot die Here, het hy na my gekom, (ek was omtrent tien jaar oud, en ek het begin om geleerd te word in 'n mate volgens die wyse van die geleerdheid van my volk) en Ammaron het aan my gesê: Ek bemerk dat jy 'n ernstige kind is, en vlug van begrip;
- 3 Daarom, wanneer jy omtrent vier en twintig jaar oud is, wil ek hê dat jy die dinge moet onthou wat jy waargeneem het aangaande hierdie volk; en wanneer jy daardie ouderdom is, gaan na die land Antum, na 'n heuwel wat Sim genoem sal word; en daar het ek al die heilige graverings weggebêre tot die Here aangaande hierdie volk.
- 4 En kyk, jy sal die plate van Nepi vir jouself neem, en die res sal jy laat in die plek waar hulle is; en jy sal al die dinge wat jy waargeneem het aangaande hierdie volk graveer op die plate van Nepi.
- 5 En ek, Mormon, omdat ek 'n afstammeling is van Nepi, (en my vader se naam was Mormon) het die dinge onthou wat Ammaron my beveel het.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat ek, toe ek elf jaar oud was, weggeneem is deur my vader na die land suidwaarts, en wel na die land Zarahemla.
- 7 Die hele aangesig van die land was oortrek met geboue, en die volk was byna so talryk, as't ware, soos die sand van die see.
- 8 En dit het gebeur in hierdie jaar het daar 'n oorlog begin ontstaan tussen die Nefiete, wat bestaan het uit die Nefiete en die Jakobiete, en die Josefiete en die Zoramiete; en hierdie oorlog was tussen die Nefiete, en die Lamaniete en die Lemueliete en die Ismaeliete.
- 9 Nou, die Lamaniete en die Lemueliete en die Ismaeliete is Lamaniete genoem, en die twee groepe was Nefiete en Lamaniete.

The Book of Mormon

Mormon 1

And now I, Mormon, make a record of the things which I have both seen and heard, and call it the Book of Mormon.

And about the time that Ammaron hid up the records unto the Lord, he came unto me, (I being about ten years of age, and I began to be learned somewhat after the manner of the learning of my people) and Ammaron said unto me: I perceive that thou art a sober child, and art quick to observe;

Therefore, when ye are about twenty and four years old I would that ye should remember the things that ye have observed concerning this people; and when ye are of that age go to the land Antum, unto a hill which shall be called Shim; and there have I deposited unto the Lord all the sacred engravings concerning this people.

And behold, ye shall take the plates of Nephi unto yourself, and the remainder shall ye leave in the place where they are; and ye shall engrave on the plates of Nephi all the things that ye have observed concerning this people.

And I, Mormon, being a descendant of Nephi, (and my father's name was Mormon) I remembered the things which Ammaron commanded me.

And it came to pass that I, being eleven years old, was carried by my father into the land southward, even to the land of Zarahemla.

The whole face of the land had become covered with buildings, and the people were as numerous almost, as it were the sand of the sea.

And it came to pass in this year there began to be a war between the Nephites, who consisted of the Nephites and the Jacobites and the Josephites and the Zoramites; and this war was between the Nephites, and the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites.

Now the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites were called Lamanites, and the two parties were Nephites and Lamanites.

- 10 En dit het gebeur dat die oorlog onder hulle begin ontstaan het langs die grense van Zarahemla, by die waters van Sidon.
- 11 En dit het gebeur dat die Nefiete 'n groot getal manne bymekaar gemaak het, wat die getal van dertigduisend oorskry het. En dit het gebeur dat hulle in dieselfde jaar 'n aantal veldslae gehad het, waarin die Nefiete die Lamaniete verslaan het, en baie van hulle gedood het.
- 12 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete afgesien het van hulle plan, en daar is vrede gestig in die land; en die vrede het geduur vir 'n tydperk van omtrent vier jaar, dat daar geen bloedvergieting was nie.
- 13 Maar boosheid het geheers oor die aangesig van die hele land, in soverre dat die Here sy geliefde dissipels weggeneem het, en die werk van wonders en genesing het opgehou vanweë die ongeregtigheid van die volk.
- 14 En daar was geen gawes van die Here nie, en die Heilige Gees het nie oor enigeen gekom nie, vanweë hul boosheid en ongelooft.
- 15 En ek, toe ek vyftien jaar oud was, en omdat ek ietwat ernstig van geaardheid was, daarom is ek besoek deur die Here, en het van die goedheid van Jesus gesmaak en geweet.
- 16 En ek het gepoog om te preek vir hierdie volk, maar my mond is gesluit, en ek is verbied dat ek vir hulle sou preek; want kyk, hulle het moedswillig gerebelleer teen hulle God; en die geliefde dissipels is weggeneem uit die land, vanweë hulle ongeregtigheid.
- 17 Maar ek het onder hulle gebly, maar ek is verbied om vir hulle te preek, vanweë die hardheid van hulle harte; en vanweë die hardheid van hulle harte was die land vervloek om hulle ontwil.
- 18 En hierdie Gadianton-rowers, wat onder die Lamaniete was, het die land vervuil, tot so 'n mate dat die inwoners daarvan begin het om hulle skatte weg te bêre in die aarde; en hulle het glibberig geword, omdat die Here die land vervloek het, dat hulle hul nie kon hou nie, nóg hulle weer behou.

And it came to pass that the war began to be among them in the borders of Zarahemla, by the waters of Sidon.

And it came to pass that the Nephites had gathered together a great number of men, even to exceed the number of thirty thousand. And it came to pass that they did have in this same year a number of battles, in which the Nephites did beat the Lamanites and did slay many of them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites withdrew their design, and there was peace settled in the land; and peace did remain for the space of about four years, that there was no bloodshed.

But wickedness did prevail upon the face of the whole land, insomuch that the Lord did take away his beloved disciples, and the work of miracles and of healing did cease because of the iniquity of the people.

And there were no gifts from the Lord, and the Holy Ghost did not come upon any, because of their wickedness and unbelief.

And I, being fifteen years of age and being somewhat of a sober mind, therefore I was visited of the Lord, and tasted and knew of the goodness of Jesus.

And I did endeavor to preach unto this people, but my mouth was shut, and I was forbidden that I should preach unto them; for behold they had wilfully rebelled against their God; and the beloved disciples were taken away out of the land, because of their iniquity.

But I did remain among them, but I was forbidden to preach unto them, because of the hardness of their hearts; and because of the hardness of their hearts the land was cursed for their sake.

And these Gadianton robbers, who were among the Lamanites, did infest the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the earth; and they became slippery, because the Lord had cursed the land, that they could not hold them, nor retain them again.

19 En dit het gebeur dat daar towery, en heksery, en towerkuns was; en die mag van die bose een was werksaam oor die hele aangesig van die land, en wel tot die vervulling van al die woorde van Abinadi, en ook Samuel die Lamaniet.

And it came to pass that there were sorceries, and witchcrafts, and magics; and the power of the evil one was wrought upon all the face of the land, even unto the fulfilling of all the words of Abinadi, and also Samuel the Lamanite.

Mormon 2

- 1 En dit het gebeur in daardie selfde jaar het daar weer 'n oorlog begin ontstaan tussen die Nefiete en die Lamaniete. En nieteenstaande ek jonk was, was ek groot van gestalte; daarom het die volk van Nepi my aangestel dat ek hulle leier moes wees, of die leier van hulle leërs.
- 2 Daarom het dit gebeur dat in my sestiede jaar het ek uitgegaan aan die hoof van 'n leër van die Nefiete, teen die Lamaniete; daarom, driehonderd ses en twintig jaar het verbygegaan.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat in die driehonderd sewe en twintigste jaar het die Lamaniete opgekom teen ons met aansienlike groot krag, in soverre dat hulle my leërs verskrik het; daarom wou hulle nie veg nie, en hulle het begin om terug te trek na die noordelike lande.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat ons by die stad Angola gekom het, en ons het besit geneem van die stad, en voorbereidings gemaak om onself te verdedig teen die Lamaniete. En dit het gebeur dat ons die stad versterk het met al ons mag; maar nieteenstaande al ons versterkings het die Lamaniete op ons afgekom en het ons verdryf uit die stad.
- 5 En hulle het ons ook verdryf uit die land Dawid.
- 6 En ons het uitgemarsjeer en gekom by die land Josua, wat aan die grense wes was, by die seekus.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat ons ons mense bymekaar begin maak het so vinnig as wat moontlik was, sodat ons hulle bymekaar kon kry in een groep.
- 8 Maar kyk, die land was gevul met rowers en met Lamaniete; en ten spyte van die groot vernietiging wat oor my volk gehang het, het hulle nie bekeer van hulle bose dade nie; daarom was daar bloed en slagting versprei dwarsoor die hele aangesig van die land, beide aan die kant van die Nefiete en ook aan die kant van die Lamaniete; en dit was een volslae revolusie dwarsoor die hele aangesig van die land.

Mormon 2

And it came to pass in that same year there began to be a war again between the Nephites and the Lamanites. And notwithstanding I being young, was large in stature; therefore the people of Nephi appointed me that I should be their leader, or the leader of their armies.

Therefore it came to pass that in my sixteenth year I did go forth at the head of an army of the Nephites, against the Lamanites; therefore three hundred and twenty and six years had passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and twenty and seventh year the Lamanites did come upon us with exceedingly great power, insomuch that they did frighten my armies; therefore they would not fight, and they began to retreat towards the north countries.

And it came to pass that we did come to the city of Angola, and we did take possession of the city, and make preparations to defend ourselves against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did fortify the city with our might; but notwithstanding all our fortifications the Lamanites did come upon us and did drive us out of the city.

And they did also drive us forth out of the land of David.

And we marched forth and came to the land of Joshua, which was in the borders west by the seashore.

And it came to pass that we did gather in our people as fast as it were possible, that we might get them together in one body.

But behold, the land was filled with robbers and with Lamanites; and notwithstanding the great destruction which hung over my people, they did not repent of their evil doings; therefore there was blood and carnage spread throughout all the face of the land, both on the part of the Nephites and also on the part of the Lamanites; and it was one complete revolution throughout all the face of the land.

- 9 En nou, die Lamaniete het 'n koning gehad, en sy naam was Aäron; en hy het teen ons opgekom met 'n leër van vier en veertigduisend. En kyk, ek het hom weerstaan met twee en veertigduisend. En dit het gebeur dat ek hom verslaan het met my leër, sodat hy voor my gevlug het. En kyk, dit alles is gedoen, en driehonderd en dertig jaar het verbygegaan.
- 10 En dit het gebeur dat die Nefiete begin het om te bekeer van hulle ongeregtheid, en begin het om uit te roep net soos geprofeteer is deur Samuel die profeet; want kyk, geen mens kon dit behou wat sy eie was nie, weens die diewe, en die rowers, en die moordenaars, en die towerkuns, en die heksery wat in die land was.
- 11 So het daar begin om 'n rouklag en 'n weeklag te wees oor die hele land vanweë hierdie dinge, en meer in besonder onder die volk van Nefi.
- 12 En dit het gebeur dat toe ek, Mormon, hulle ge-weeklaag en hulle rouklaag gesien het en hulle droefheid voor die Here, het my hart begin jubel in my, omdat ek geweet het van die barmhartigheid en die lankmoedigheid van die Here, daarom het ek veronderstel dat Hy barmhartig sou wees teenoor hulle sodat hulle weer 'n regverdige volk sou word.
- 13 Maar kyk, hierdie vreugde van my was vergeefs, want hulle droefheid was nie tot bekering, vanweë die goedheid van God nie; maar dit was eerder die droefheid van die verdoemdes, omdat die Here hulle nie altyd sou toelaat om geluk te vind in sonde nie.
- 14 En hulle het nie na Jesus gekom met gebroke harte en verslae geeste nie, maar hulle het God vervloek, en gewens om te sterwe. Nogtans sou hulle veg met die swaard vir hulle lewens.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat my droefheid weer terugkeer het na my, en ek het gesien dat die dag van genade vir hulle verbygegaan het, beide stoflik en geestelik; want ek het duisende van hulle gesien wat neergevel is in openlike rebellie teen hulle God, en opgehoop is soos mis op die aangesig van die land. En so het driehonderd vier en veertig jaar verbygegaan.
- 16 En dit het gebeur dat in die driehonderd vyf en veertigste jaar het die Nefiete begin om te vlug voor die Lamaniete; en hulle is agtervolg totdat hulle by die land Jason gekom het, voor dit moontlik was om hulle te stuit in hulle vlug.

And now, the Lamanites had a king, and his name was Aaron; and he came against us with an army of forty and four thousand. And behold, I withstood him with forty and two thousand. And it came to pass that I beat him with my army that he fled before me. And behold, all this was done, and three hundred and thirty years had passed away.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began to repent of their iniquity, and began to cry even as had been prophesied by Samuel the prophet; for behold no man could keep that which was his own, for the thieves, and the robbers, and the murderers, and the magic art, and the witchcraft which was in the land.

Thus there began to be a mourning and a lamentation in all the land because of these things, and more especially among the people of Nefhi.

And it came to pass that when I, Mormon, saw their lamentation and their mourning and their sorrow before the Lord, my heart did begin to rejoice within me, knowing the mercies and the long-suffering of the Lord, therefore supposing that he would be merciful unto them that they would again become a righteous people.

But behold this my joy was vain, for their sorrowing was not unto repentance, because of the goodness of God; but it was rather the sorrowing of the damned, because the Lord would not always suffer them to take happiness in sin.

And they did not come unto Jesus with broken hearts and contrite spirits, but they did curse God, and wish to die. Nevertheless they would struggle with the sword for their lives.

And it came to pass that my sorrow did return unto me again, and I saw that the day of grace was passed with them, both temporally and spiritually; for I saw thousands of them hewn down in open rebellion against their God, and heaped up as dung upon the face of the land. And thus three hundred and forty and four years had passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and forty and fifth year the Nephites did begin to flee before the Lamanites; and they were pursued until they came even to the land of Jashon, before it was possible to stop them in their retreat.

- 17 En nou, die stad Jason was naby die land waar Ammaron die kronieke tot die Here weggebêre het, sodat hulle nie vernietig mag word nie. En kyk, ek het gehandel volgens die woord van Ammaron, en die plate van Nephi geneem, en het 'n kroniek gemaak volgens die woorde van Ammaron.
- 18 En op die plate van Nephi het ek 'n volledige kroniek gemaak van al die boosheid en gruwels; maar op hierdie plate het ek my daarvan weerhou om 'n volledige kroniek te maak van hulle boosheid en gruwels, want kyk, 'n voortdurende toneel van boosheid en gruwels was voor my oë vandat ek in staat was om die weë van die mens te aanskou.
- 19 En wee my vanweë hulle boosheid; want my hart was gevul met droefheid vanweë hulle boosheid, al my dae; nogtans, ek weet dat ek op die laaste dag verhef sal word.
- 20 En dit het gebeur dat in hierdie jaar is die volk van Nephi weer gejaag en verdryf. En dit het gebeur dat ons uitgedryf is totdat ons noordwaarts gekom het tot by die land wat Sem genoem is.
- 21 En dit het gebeur dat ons die stad Sem versterk het, en ons het ons mense bymekaar gemaak soveel as wat moontlik was, sodat ons hulle miskien kon red van vernietiging.
- 22 En dit het gebeur in die driehonderd ses en veertigste jaar het hulle begin om weer op ons af te kom.
- 23 En dit het gebeur dat ek met my volk gespreek het, en hulle aangespoor het met groot krag, dat hulle dapper voor die Lamaniete moes staan, en veg vir hulle vroue, en hulle kinders, en hulle huise, en hulle wonings.
- 24 En my woorde het hulle ietwat opgewek tot lewenskrag, in so 'n mate dat hulle nie voor die Lamaniete gevlug het nie, maar met dapperheid teen hulle bly staan het.
- 25 En dit het gebeur dat ons geveg het met 'n leër van dertigduisend teen 'n leër van vyftigduisend. En dit het gebeur dat ons voor hulle gestaan het met sodanige vasberadenheid dat hulle voor ons gevlug het.

And now, the city of Jashon was near the land where Ammaron had deposited the records unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed. And behold I had gone according to the word of Ammaron, and taken the plates of Nephi, and did make a record according to the words of Ammaron.

And upon the plates of Nephi I did make a full account of all the wickedness and abominations; but upon these plates I did forbear to make a full account of their wickedness and abominations, for behold, a continual scene of wickedness and abominations has been before mine eyes ever since I have been sufficient to behold the ways of man.

And wo is me because of their wickedness; for my heart has been filled with sorrow because of their wickedness, all my days; nevertheless, I know that I shall be lifted up at the last day.

And it came to pass that in this year the people of Nephi again were hunted and driven. And it came to pass that we were driven forth until we had come northward to the land which was called Shem.

And it came to pass that we did fortify the city of Shem, and we did gather in our people as much as it were possible, that perhaps we might save them from destruction.

And it came to pass in the three hundred and forty and sixth year they began to come upon us again.

And it came to pass that I did speak unto my people, and did urge them with great energy, that they would stand boldly before the Lamanites and fight for their wives, and their children, and their houses, and their homes.

And my words did arouse them somewhat to vigor, insomuch that they did not flee from before the Lamanites, but did stand with boldness against them.

And it came to pass that we did contend with an army of thirty thousand against an army of fifty thousand. And it came to pass that we did stand before them with such firmness that they did flee from before us.

26 En dit het gebeur dat toe hulle gevlug het, het ons hulle met ons leërs agternagesit, en het hulle weer die stryd aangesê, en het hulle verslaan; nogtans was die krag van die Here nie met ons nie; ja, ons is oorgelaat aan onself, dat die Gees van die Here nie in ons vertoef het nie; daarom het ons swak geword net soos ons broers.

27 En my hart het getreur vanweë hierdie groot ramp van my volk, vanweë hulle boosheid en hulle gruwels. Maar kyk, ons het uitgegaan teen die Lamaniete, en die rowers van Gadianton, totdat ons weer besit geneem het van die lande van ons erfenis.

28 En die driehonderd nege en veertigste jaar het verbygegaan. En in die driehonderd en vyftigste jaar het ons 'n verdrag gesluit met die Lamaniete en die rowers van Gadianton, waarin ons die lande van ons erfenis verdeel gekry het.

29 En die Lamaniete het aan ons die land noordwaarts gegee, ja, en wel tot by die smal strook wat gelei het na die land suidwaarts. En ons het aan die Lamaniete die hele land suidwaarts gegee.

And it came to pass that when they had fled we did pursue them with our armies, and did meet them again, and did beat them; nevertheless the strength of the Lord was not with us; yea, we were left to ourselves, that the Spirit of the Lord did not abide in us; therefore we had become weak like unto our brethren.

And my heart did sorrow because of this the great calamity of my people, because of their wickedness and their abominations. But behold, we did go forth against the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, until we had again taken possession of the lands of our inheritance.

And the three hundred and forty and ninth year had passed away. And in the three hundred and fiftieth year we made a treaty with the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, in which we did get the lands of our inheritance divided.

And the Lamanites did give unto us the land northward, yea, even to the narrow passage which led into the land southward. And we did give unto the Lamanites all the land southward.

Mormon 3

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete nie weer tot die stryd oorgegaan het voordat nog tien jaar verbygegaan het nie. En kyk, ek het my volk, die Nefiete, besig gehou om hulle lande en hulle wapens voor te berei in geval van oorlog.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat die Here aan my gesê het: Roep tot hierdie volk—Bekeer julle, en kom na My toe, en laat julle doop, en bou weer my kerk op, en julle sal gespaar word.
- 3 En ek het geroep tot hierdie volk, maar dit was tevergeefs; en hulle het nie besef dat dit die Here was wat hulle gespaar het, en aan hulle 'n kans gegun het om te bekeer nie; en kyk, hulle het hul harte verhard teen die Here hulle God.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat nadat hierdie tiende jaar verbygegaan het, wat altesame driehonderd en sestig jaar gemaak het vanaf die koms van Christus, het die koning van die Lamaniete 'n brief gestuur aan my, wat my laat weet het dat hulle voorberei het om weer op te ruk in die stryd teen ons.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat ek my volk hulself laat bymeekaarmaak het by die land Verlatenheid, by 'n stad wat binne die grens was, by die smal strook wat na die land suidwaarts gelei het.
- 6 En daar het ons ons leërs geplaas, sodat ons die leërs van die Lamaniete mag stuit, sodat hulle nie besit mag kry van enige van ons lande nie; daarom het ons ons versterk teen hulle met al ons mag.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat in die driehonderd een en sestigste jaar het die Lamaniete afgekom na die stad Verlatenheid om teen ons te veg; en dit het gebeur dat in daardie jaar het ons hulle verslaan, in soverre dat hulle weer teruggekeer het na hulle eie lande.
- 8 En in die driehonderd twee en sestigste jaar het hulle weer afgekom in die stryd. En ons het hulle weer verslaan, en het 'n groot aantal van hulle gedood, en hulle dooies is in die see gewerp.
- 9 En nou, vanweë hierdie groot ding wat my volk, die Nefiete gedoen het, het hulle begin roem in hulle eie krag, en begin om te sweer voor die hemele dat hulle hul sou wreek oor die bloed van hulle broers wat gedood is deur hul vyande.

Mormon 3

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did not come to battle again until ten years more had passed away. And behold, I had employed my people, the Nephites, in preparing their lands and their arms against the time of battle.

And it came to pass that the Lord did say unto me: Cry unto this people—Repent ye, and come unto me, and be ye baptized, and build up again my church, and ye shall be spared.

And I did cry unto this people, but it was in vain; and they did not realize that it was the Lord that had spared them, and granted unto them a chance for repentance. And behold they did harden their hearts against the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that after this tenth year had passed away, making, in the whole, three hundred and sixty years from the coming of Christ, the king of the Lamanites sent an epistle unto me, which gave unto me to know that they were preparing to come again to battle against us.

And it came to pass that I did cause my people that they should gather themselves together at the land Desolation, to a city which was in the borders, by the narrow pass which led into the land southward.

And there we did place our armies, that we might stop the armies of the Lamanites, that they might not get possession of any of our lands; therefore we did fortify against them with all our force.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and first year the Lamanites did come down to the city of Desolation to battle against us; and it came to pass that in that year we did beat them, insomuch that they did return to their own lands again.

And in the three hundred and sixty and second year they did come down again to battle. And we did beat them again, and did slay a great number of them, and their dead were cast into the sea.

And now, because of this great thing which my people, the Nephites, had done, they began to boast in their own strength, and began to swear before the heavens that they would avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren who had been slain by their enemies.

- 10 En hulle het gesweer by die hemele, en ook by die troon van God, dat hulle sou optrek in die stryd teen hulle vyande, en hulle sou afsny vanaf die aangesig van die land.
- 11 En dit het gebeur dat ek, Mormon, vanaf daardie tyd volstrek geweier het om 'n bevelvoerder en 'n leier te wees van hierdie volk, vanweë hulle boosheid en gruwels.
- 12 Kyk, ek het hulle gelei, niesteenstaande hulle boosheid het ek hulle baie keer gelei in die stryd, en het hulle liefgehad, volgens die liefde van God wat in my was, met my hele hart; en my siel is uitgestort in gebed voor my God die hele dag lank vir hulle; nogtans, dit was sonder geloof, vanweë die hardheid van hulle harte.
- 13 En driekeer het ek hulle verlos uit die hande van hulle vyande, en hulle het nie bekeer van hul sondes nie.
- 14 En nadat hulle gesweer het by alles wat hulle verbied was deur ons Here en Saligmaker Jesus Christus, dat hulle sou opgaan na hulle vyande om te veg, en hulleself te wreek oor die bloed van hulle broers, kyk, die stem van die Here het na my gekom, en gesê:
- 15 Wraak is Myne, en Ek sal vergeld; en omdat hierdie volk nie bekeer het nadat Ek hulle verlos het nie, kyk, hulle sal afgesny word van die aangesig van die aarde.
- 16 En dit het gebeur dat ek volstrek geweier het om op te trek teen my vyande; en ek het gedoen net soos die Here my gebied het; en ek het as 'n omstander gestaan om aan die wêreld die dinge te openbaar wat ek gesien en gehoor het, volgens die openbarings van die Gees wat getuig het van die dinge wat moes kom.
- 17 Daarom skryf ek aan julle, nie-Jode, en ook aan julle, huis van Israel, wanneer die werk sal begin, dat julle op die punt staan om voor te berei om terug te keer na die land van julle erfenis;
- 18 Ja, kyk, ek skryf aan al die eindes van die aarde; ja, aan julle, twaalf stamme van Israel, wat geoordeel sal word volgens julle werke deur die twaalf wat Jesus gekies het om sy dissipels te wees in die land Jerusalem.

And they did swear by the heavens, and also by the throne of God, that they would go up to battle against their enemies, and would cut them off from the face of the land.

And it came to pass that I, Mormon, did utterly refuse from this time forth to be a commander and a leader of this people, because of their wickedness and abomination.

Behold, I had led them, notwithstanding their wickedness I had led them many times to battle, and had loved them, according to the love of God which was in me, with all my heart; and my soul had been poured out in prayer unto my God all the day long for them; nevertheless, it was without faith, because of the hardness of their hearts.

And thrice have I delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and they have repented not of their sins.

And when they had sworn by all that had been forbidden them by our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, that they would go up unto their enemies to battle, and avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren, behold the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying:

Vengeance is mine, and I will repay; and because this people repented not after I had delivered them, behold, they shall be cut off from the face of the earth.

And it came to pass that I utterly refused to go up against mine enemies; and I did even as the Lord had commanded me; and I did stand as an idle witness to manifest unto the world the things which I saw and heard, according to the manifestations of the Spirit which had testified of things to come.

Therefore I write unto you, Gentiles, and also unto you, house of Israel, when the work shall commence, that ye shall be about to prepare to return to the land of your inheritance;

Yea, behold, I write unto all the ends of the earth; yea, unto you, twelve tribes of Israel, who shall be judged according to your works by the twelve whom Jesus chose to be his disciples in the land of Jerusalem.

- 19 En ek skryf ook aan die oorblyfsel van hierdie volk, wat ook geoordeel sal word deur die twaalf wat Jesus gekies het in hierdie land; en hulle sal geoordeel word deur die ander twaalf wat Jesus gekies het in die land Jerusalem.
- 20 En hierdie dinge openbaar die Gees aan my; daarom skryf ek aan julle almal. En om hierdie rede skryf ek aan julle, sodat julle mag weet dat julle almal moet staan voor die regterstoel van Christus, ja, elke siel wat behoort aan die hele mensegeslag van Adam; en julle moet staan om geoordeel te word oor julle werke, of hulle goed of boos is;
- 21 En ook dat julle die evangelie van Jesus Christus mag glo, wat julle sal hê onder julle; en ook dat die Jode, die verbondsvolk van die Here, 'n ander getuie mag hê behalwe Hom vir wie hulle gesien en gehoor het, dat Jesus, vir wie hulle doodgemaak het, die ware Christus was en die ware God.
- 22 En ek wens dat ek al julle eindes van die aarde kon oorreed om te bekeer en voor te berei om te staan voor die regterstoel van Christus.

And I write also unto the remnant of this people, who shall also be judged by the twelve whom Jesus chose in this land; and they shall be judged by the other twelve whom Jesus chose in the land of Jerusalem.

And these things doth the Spirit manifest unto me; therefore I write unto you all. And for this cause I write unto you, that ye may know that ye must all stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, yea, every soul who belongs to the whole human family of Adam; and ye must stand to be judged of your works, whether they be good or evil;

And also that ye may believe the gospel of Jesus Christ, which ye shall have among you; and also that the Jews, the covenant people of the Lord, shall have other witness besides him whom they saw and heard, that Jesus, whom they slew, was the very Christ and the very God.

And I would that I could persuade all ye ends of the earth to repent and prepare to stand before the judgment-seat of Christ.

Mormon 4

- 1 En nou het dit gebeur dat in die driehonderd drie en sestigste jaar, het die Nefiete opgetrek met hulle leërs om te veg teen die Lamaniete, vanuit die land Verlatenheid.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat die leërs van die Nefiete weer teruggedryf is na die land Verlatenheid. En terwyl hulle nog moeg was, het 'n vars leër van die Lamaniete op hulle afgekom; en hulle het 'n hewige stryd gevoer, in soverre dat die Lamaniete besit geneem het van die stad Verlatenheid en baie van die Nefiete gedood het, en baie gevangenes geneem het.
- 3 En die oorblywendes het gevlug en aangesluit by die inwoners van die stad Teankum. Nou het die stad Teankum gelê aan die grens van die seekus; en dit was ook naby die stad Verlatenheid.
- 4 En dit was omdat die leërs van die Nefiete opgetrek het teen die Lamaniete, dat hulle begin om verslaan te word; want as dit nie daarvoor was nie, kon die Lamaniete geen mag oor hulle gehad het nie.
- 5 Maar, kyk, die oordele van God sal die bose inhaal; en dit is deur die bose dat die bose gestraf word; want dit is die bose wat die harte van die kinders van mense opstook tot bloedvergieting.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete voorbereidings gemaak het om teen die stad Teankum op te trek.
- 7 En dit het gebeur in die driehonderd vier en sestigste jaar het die Lamaniete opgetrek teen die stad Teankum, dat hulle ook besit mag neem van die stad Teankum.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat hulle afgeweer en teruggedrywe is deur die Nefiete. En toe die Nefiete sien dat hulle die Lamaniete teruggedrywe het, het hulle weer geroem in hulle eie krag; en hulle het uitgegaan in hulle eie mag en die stad Verlatenheid weer in besit geneem.
- 9 En nou is al hierdie dinge gedoen, en daar is duisende gedood aan beide kante, beide die Nefiete en die Lamaniete.

Mormon 4

And now it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and third year the Nephites did go up with their armies to battle against the Lamanites, out of the land Desolation.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites were driven back again to the land of Desolation. And while they were yet weary, a fresh army of the Lamanites did come upon them; and they had a sore battle, insomuch that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and did slay many of the Nephites, and did take many prisoners.

And the remainder did flee and join the inhabitants of the city Teancum. Now the city Teancum lay in the borders by the seashore; and it was also near the city Desolation.

And it was because the armies of the Nephites went up unto the Lamanites that they began to be smitten; for were it not for that, the Lamanites could have had no power over them.

But, behold, the judgments of God will overtake the wicked; and it is by the wicked that the wicked are punished; for it is the wicked that stir up the hearts of the children of men unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did make preparations to come against the city Teancum.

And it came to pass in the three hundred and sixty and fourth year the Lamanites did come against the city Teancum, that they might take possession of the city Teancum also.

And it came to pass that they were repulsed and driven back by the Nephites. And when the Nephites saw that they had driven the Lamanites they did again boast of their own strength; and they went forth in their own might, and took possession again of the city Desolation.

And now all these things had been done, and there had been thousands slain on both sides, both the Nephites and the Lamanites.

10 En dit het gebeur dat die driehonderd ses en ses-
tigste jaar verbygegaan het, en die Lamaniete het
weer teen die Nefiete opgekóm in die stryd; en tog
het die Nefiete nie bekeer van die boosheid wat hulle
gedoen het nie, maar voortdurend volgehóu met hul-
le boosheid.

11 En dit is onmoontlik vir die tong om dit te beskry-
we, of vir die mens om 'n volledige beskrywing te gee
van die aaklige toneel van die bloed en slagting wat
onder die volk was, beide onder die Nefiete en onder
die Lamaniete; en elke hart is verhard, sodat hulle
hul verheug het in die voortdurende bloedvergieting.

12 En daar was nooit so 'n groot boosheid onder al
die kinders van Lehi gewees nie, nóg selfs onder die
hele huis van Israel, volgens die woorde van die
Here, as wat daar onder hierdie volk was nie.

13 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete besit geneem
het van die stad Verlatenheid, en dit omdat hulle ge-
talle die getalle van die Nefiete oortref het.

14 En hulle het ook gemarsjeer na die stad Teankum,
en het die inwoners uit haar gedryf, en het baie ge-
vangenes geneem, beide vroue en kinders, en het
hulle geoffer as offerandes aan hulle afgode.

15 En dit het gebeur dat in die driehonderd sewe en
sestigste jaar, omdat die Nefiete kwaad was omdat
die Lamaniete hulle vroue en kinders geoffer het, dat
hulle teen die Lamaniete opgetrek het met uitermate
groot toorn, in soverre dat hulle weer die Lamaniete
verslaan het, en hulle verdryf het uit hulle lande.

16 En die Lamaniete het nie weer opgetrek teen die
Nefiete tot die driehonderd vyf en sewentigste jaar
nie.

17 En in hierdie jaar het hulle teen die Nefiete met al
hulle magte afgekóm; en hulle is nie getel nie van-
weë die grootheid van hulle aantal.

18 En van hierdie tyd af het die Nefiete geen mag ver-
kry oor die Lamaniete nie, maar het begin om weg-
gegee te word deur hulle, net soos die dou voor die
son.

19 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete afgekóm het
teen die stad Verlatenheid; en daar was 'n uitermate
groot stryd gevoer in die land Verlatenheid, waarin
hulle die Nefiete verslaan het.

And it came to pass that the three hundred and
sixty and sixth year had passed away, and the
Lamanites came again upon the Nephites to battle;
and yet the Nephites repented not of the evil they
had done, but persisted in their wickedness continu-
ally.

And it is impossible for the tongue to describe, or
for man to write a perfect description of the horrible
scene of the blood and carnage which was among the
people, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites;
and every heart was hardened, so that they delighted
in the shedding of blood continually.

And there never had been so great wickedness
among all the children of Lehi, nor even among all
the house of Israel, according to the words of the
Lord, as was among this people.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did take
possession of the city Desolation, and this because
their number did exceed the number of the Nephites.

And they did also march forward against the city
Teancum, and did drive the inhabitants forth out of
her, and did take many prisoners both women and
children, and did offer them up as sacrifices unto
their idol gods.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and
sixty and seventh year, the Nephites being angry be-
cause the Lamanites had sacrificed their women and
their children, that they did go against the Lamanites
with exceedingly great anger, insomuch that they did
beat again the Lamanites, and drive them out of their
lands.

And the Lamanites did not come again against the
Nephites until the three hundred and seventy and
fifth year.

And in this year they did come down against the
Nephites with all their powers; and they were not
numbered because of the greatness of their number.

And from this time forth did the Nephites gain no
power over the Lamanites, but began to be swept off
by them even as a dew before the sun.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come
down against the city Desolation; and there was an
exceedingly sore battle fought in the land
Desolation, in the which they did beat the Nephites.

- 20 En hulle het weer gevlug voor hulle, en hulle het by die stad Boas gekom; en daar het hulle teen die Lamaniete gestaan met uitermate moed, in soverre dat die Lamaniete hulle nie verslaan het nie, totdat hulle weer die tweede keer gekom het.
- 21 En toe hulle die tweede keer gekom het, is die Nefiete verdryf en geslag met 'n uitermate groot slagting; hulle vroue en hulle kinders is weer geoffer aan afgode.
- 22 En dit het gebeur dat die Nefiete weer voor hulle gevlug het, en het al die inwoners met hulle saamge- neem, beide in dorpe en gehugte.
- 23 En nou ek, Mormon, omdat ek gesien het dat die Lamaniete op die punt gestaan het om die land te oorrompel, daarom het ek na die heuwel Sim ge- gaan, en het al die kronieke geneem wat Ammaron weggebêre het tot die Here.

And they fled again from before them, and they came to the city Boaz; and there they did stand against the Lamanites with exceeding boldness, in- somuch that the Lamanites did not beat them until they had come again the second time.

And when they had come the second time, the Nephites were driven and slaughtered with an ex- ceedingly great slaughter; their women and their children were again sacrificed unto idols.

And it came to pass that the Nephites did again flee from before them, taking all the inhabitants with them, both in towns and villages.

And now I, Mormon, seeing that the Lamanites were about to overthrow the land, therefore I did go to the hill Shim, and did take up all the records which Ammaron had hid up unto the Lord.

Mormon 5

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat ek uitgegaan het onder die Nefiete, en het die eed herroep wat ek geneem het dat ek hulle nie meer sou bystaan nie; en hulle het my weer bevel gegee oor hulle leërs, want hulle het my beskou asof ek hulle kon red uit hulle verdrukkinge.
- 2 Maar kyk, ek was sonder hoop, want ek het geweet van die oordele van die Here wat oor hulle sou kom; want hulle het nie bekeer van hulle ongeregtighede nie, maar het geworstel om hulle lewens, sonder om te roep tot daardie Wese wat hulle geskape het.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat die Lamaniete teen ons opgekom het toe ons gevlug het na die stad Jordaan; maar kyk, hulle is teruggedryf dat hulle nie die stad op daardie tydstip ingeneem het nie.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat hulle weer teen ons opgekom het, en ons het die stad beheer. En daar was ook ander stede wat beheer is deur die Nefiete, welke vestings hulle afgesny het dat hulle nie in die land kom wat voor ons lê nie, om die inwoners van ons land te vernietig nie.
- 5 Maar dit het gebeur dat watter lande ons ook al verbygegaan het, en die inwoners daarvan nie ingebring is nie, is vernietig deur die Lamaniete, en hulle dorpe, en gehugte, en stede is verbrand met vuur; en so het driehonderd nege en sewentig jaar verbygegaan.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat in die driehonderd en tagtigste jaar het die Lamaniete weer teen ons opgekom om te veg, en ons het moedig teen hulle gestaan; maar dit was alles tevergeefs, want so groot was hulle getalle dat hulle die volk van die Nefiete onder hulle voete vertrap het.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat ons weer op die vlug geslaan het, en diegene wie se vlug vinniger was as die Lamaniete, het ontsnap, en diegene wie se vlug nie die Lamaniete oortref het nie, is weggevee en vernietig.

Mormon 5

And it came to pass that I did go forth among the Nephites, and did repent of the oath which I had made that I would no more assist them; and they gave me command again of their armies, for they looked upon me as though I could deliver them from their afflictions.

But behold, I was without hope, for I knew the judgments of the Lord which should come upon them; for they repented not of their iniquities, but did struggle for their lives without calling upon that Being who created them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come against us as we had fled to the city of Jordan; but behold, they were driven back that they did not take the city at that time.

And it came to pass that they came against us again, and we did maintain the city. And there were also other cities which were maintained by the Nephites, which strongholds did cut them off that they could not get into the country which lay before us, to destroy the inhabitants of our land.

But it came to pass that whatsoever lands we had passed by, and the inhabitants thereof were not gathered in, were destroyed by the Lamanites, and their towns, and villages, and cities were burned with fire; and thus three hundred and seventy and nine years passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and eightieth year the Lamanites did come again against us to battle, and we did stand against them boldly; but it was all in vain, for so great were their numbers that they did tread the people of the Nephites under their feet.

And it came to pass that we did again take to flight, and those whose flight was swifter than the Lamanites' did escape, and those whose flight did not exceed the Lamanites' were swept down and destroyed.

8 En nou kyk, ek, Mormon, begeer nie om die siele van mense te verskeur deur aan hulle so 'n vreeslike toneel van bloed en slagting te beskryf as wat voor my oë gelê is nie; maar ek, omdat ek geweet het dat hierdie dinge sekerlik bekend moet word, en dat alle dinge wat verborge is, bekend gemaak moet word vanaf die huise se dakke—

9 En ook dat 'n kennis van hierdie dinge moet kom na die oorblyfsel van hierdie volk, en ook na die nie-Jode, wat die Here gesê het hierdie volk sal verstrooi, en hierdie volk sal as niks geag word onder hulle nie—daarom skryf ek 'n klein verkorting, omdat ek nie durf om 'n volle kroniek te gee van die dinge wat ek gesien het nie, vanweë die gebod wat ek ontvang het, en ook sodat julle nie te veel droefheid mag hê vanweë die boosheid van hierdie volk nie.

10 En nou kyk, dit spreek ek met hulle saad, en ook met die nie-Jode wat besorgd is oor die huis van Israel, wat besef en weet waarvandaan hulle seëninge kom.

11 Want ek weet dat sodaniges bedroef sal wees oor die onheil van die huis van Israel; ja, hulle sal bedroef wees oor die vernietiging van hierdie volk; hulle sal bedroef wees dat hierdie volk nie bekeer het nie, dat hulle omsluit mag word in die arms van Jesus.

12 Nou hierdie dinge is geskrywe aan die oorblyfsel van die huis van Jakob; en hulle is geskrywe volgens hierdie wyse, want dit is deur God bekend dat boosheid hulle nie sal uitbring aan hulle nie; en hulle moet weggebêre word tot die Here sodat hulle na vore mag kom in sy eie bepaalde tyd.

13 En dit is die gebod wat ek ontvang het; en kyk, hulle sal na vore kom volgens die gebod van die Here, wanneer Hy dit geskik ag, in sy wysheid.

And now behold, I, Mormon, do not desire to harrow up the souls of men in casting before them such an awful scene of blood and carnage as was laid before mine eyes; but I, knowing that these things must surely be made known, and that all things which are hid must be revealed upon the housetops—

And also that a knowledge of these things must come unto the remnant of these people, and also unto the Gentiles, who the Lord hath said should scatter this people, and this people should be counted as naught among them—therefore I write a small abridgment, daring not to give a full account of the things which I have seen, because of the commandment which I have received, and also that ye might not have too great sorrow because of the wickedness of this people.

And now behold, this I speak unto their seed, and also to the Gentiles who have care for the house of Israel, that realize and know from whence their blessings come.

For I know that such will sorrow for the calamity of the house of Israel; yea, they will sorrow for the destruction of this people; they will sorrow that this people had not repented that they might have been clasped in the arms of Jesus.

Now these things are written unto the remnant of the house of Jacob; and they are written after this manner, because it is known of God that wickedness will not bring them forth unto them; and they are to be hid up unto the Lord that they may come forth in his own due time.

And this is the commandment which I have received; and behold, they shall come forth according to the commandment of the Lord, when he shall see fit, in his wisdom.

14 En kyk, hulle sal uitgaan na die ongelowiges onder die Jode; en vir hierdie doel sal hulle uitgaan—dat hulle oorreed mag word dat Jesus die Christus is, die Seun van die lewende God; sodat die Vader deur sy mees Geliefde, sy groot en ewige doel mag teweegbring, deur die Jode te herstel, of die hele huis van Israel, tot die land van hulle erfenis, wat die Here hulle God hulle gegee het, tot die vervulling van sy verbond;

15 En ook dat die saad van hierdie volk ten volle mag glo in sy evangelie, wat sal uitgaan na hulle vanaf die nie-Jode; want hierdie volk sal verstrooi word, en sal 'n donker, 'n vieslike, en 'n verfoeilike volk word, erger as dit wat ooit onder ons was, ja, selfs dit wat onder die Lamaniete was, en dit vanweë hulle ongeloof en afgodery.

16 Want kyk, die Gees van die Here het alreeds opgehou om te werk met hulle vaders; en hulle is sonder Christus en God in die wêreld; en hulle word verdrywe soos kaf voor die wind.

17 Hulle was eenmaal 'n behaaglike volk, en hulle het Christus gehad as hulle herder; ja, hulle is gelei en wel deur God die Vader.

18 Maar nou kyk, hulle word rondgelei deur Satan, net soos kaf verdryf word voor die wind, of soos 'n skip rondgegooi word op die golwe, sonder seil of anker, of sonder enigiets waarmee sy gestuur kan word; en net soos sy is, so is hulle.

19 En kyk, die Here het hulle seëninge teruggehou, wat hulle mag ontvang het in die land, vir die nie-Jode wat die land sal besit.

20 Maar kyk, dit sal gebeur dat hulle verdryf en verstrooi sal word deur die nie-Jode, en nadat hulle verdryf en verstrooi is deur die nie-Jode, kyk, dan sal die Here die verbond onthou wat Hy gesluit het met Abraham en met die hele huis van Israel.

21 En ook sal die Here die gebede onthou van die regverdiges, wat aan Hom opgestuur is vir hulle.

22 En dan, o julle nie-Jode, hoe kan julle staan voor die krag van God, tensy julle sal bekeer en wegkeer van julle bose weë?

And behold, they shall go unto the unbelieving of the Jews; and for this intent shall they go—that they may be persuaded that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God; that the Father may bring about, through his most Beloved, his great and eternal purpose, in restoring the Jews, or all the house of Israel, to the land of their inheritance, which the Lord their God hath given them, unto the fulfilling of his covenant;

And also that the seed of this people may more fully believe his gospel, which shall go forth unto them from the Gentiles; for this people shall be scattered, and shall become a dark, a filthy, and a loathsome people, beyond the description of that which ever hath been amongst us, yea, even that which hath been among the Lamanites, and this because of their unbelief and idolatry.

For behold, the Spirit of the Lord hath already ceased to strive with their fathers; and they are without Christ and God in the world; and they are driven about as chaff before the wind.

They were once a delightful people, and they had Christ for their shepherd; yea, they were led even by God the Father.

But now, behold, they are led about by Satan, even as chaff is driven before the wind, or as a vessel is tossed about upon the waves, without sail or anchor, or without anything wherewith to steer her; and even as she is, so are they.

And behold, the Lord hath reserved their blessings, which they might have received in the land, for the Gentiles who shall possess the land.

But behold, it shall come to pass that they shall be driven and scattered by the Gentiles; and after they have been driven and scattered by the Gentiles, behold, then will the Lord remember the covenant which he made unto Abraham and unto all the house of Israel.

And also the Lord will remember the prayers of the righteous, which have been put up unto him for them.

And then, O ye Gentiles, how can ye stand before the power of God, except ye shall repent and turn from your evil ways?

23 Weet julle nie dat julle in die hande van God is nie? Weet julle nie dat Hy alle mag het, en dat op sy groot bevel die aarde opgerol sal word soos 'n boekrol nie?

24 Daarom, bekeer julle, en verootmoedig julle voor Hom, sodat Hy nie in geregtigheid sal uitkom teen julle nie—sodat 'n oorblyfsel van die saad van Jakob nie onder julle sal uitgaan soos 'n leeu, en julle in stukke skeur, en daar niemand is om te verlos nie.

Know ye not that ye are in the hands of God? Know ye not that he hath all power, and at his great command the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll?

Therefore, repent ye, and humble yourselves before him, lest he shall come out in justice against you—lest a remnant of the seed of Jacob shall go forth among you as a lion, and tear you in pieces, and there is none to deliver.

Mormon 6

- 1 En nou voltooi ek my kroniek aangaande die vernietiging van my volk, die Nefiete. En dit het gebeur dat ons voor die Lamaniete uitgemarsjeer het.
- 2 En ek, Mormon, het 'n brief geskryf aan die koning van die Lamaniete, en het van hom begeer dat hy aan ons moes gun dat ons ons volk bymekaar mag maak by die land Cumora, by 'n heuwel wat Cumora genoem is, en daar kon ons hulle die stryd aansê.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat die koning van die Lamaniete my die ding gegun het wat ek begeer het.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat ons uitgemarsjeer het na die land Cumora, en ons het ons tente opgeslaan rondom die Cumora-heuwel; en dit was in 'n land van baie waters, riviere, en fonteine; en hier het ons hoop gehad om die voordeel te behaal oor die Lamaniete.
- 5 En toe driehonderd vier en tagtig jaar verbygegaan het, het ons al die oorblywendes van ons volk bymekaargemaak in die land Cumora.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat toe ons al ons volk in een groep bymekaar gemaak het na die land Cumora, kyk, ek, Mormon, het begin om oud te word; en omdat ek geweet het dat dit die laaste stryd sou wees van my volk, en omdat ek gebied is deur die Here dat ek nie die kronieke wat oorhandig is deur ons vaders, wat heilig was, in die hande moes laat val van die Lamaniete nie, (want die Lamaniete sou hulle vernietig) daarom het ek hierdie kroniek gemaak uit die plate van Nefi, en het in die Cumora-heuwel al die kronieke weggebêre wat aan my toevertrou is deur die hand van die Here, behalwe hierdie paar plate wat ek gegee het aan my seun Moroni.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat my volk, met hulle vroue en hulle kinders, nou die leërs van die Lamaniete sien opmarsjeer het na hulle; en met daardie aaklige vrees vir die dood wat die boesems vul van alle bose, het hulle gewag om hulle aan te val.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat hulle gekom het om te veg teen ons, en elke siel was gevul met vrees vanweë die grootheid van hul getalle.

Mormon 6

And now I finish my record concerning the destruction of my people, the Nephites. And it came to pass that we did march forth before the Lamanites.

And I, Mormon, wrote an epistle unto the king of the Lamanites, and desired of him that he would grant unto us that we might gather together our people unto the land of Cumorah, by a hill which was called Cumorah, and there we could give them battle.

And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites did grant unto me the thing which I desired.

And it came to pass that we did march forth to the land of Cumorah, and we did pitch our tents around about the hill Cumorah; and it was in a land of many waters, rivers, and fountains; and here we had hope to gain advantage over the Lamanites.

And when three hundred and eighty and four years had passed away, we had gathered in all the remainder of our people unto the land of Cumorah.

And it came to pass that when we had gathered in all our people in one to the land of Cumorah, behold I, Mormon, began to be old; and knowing it to be the last struggle of my people, and having been commanded of the Lord that I should not suffer the records which had been handed down by our fathers, which were sacred, to fall into the hands of the Lamanites, (for the Lamanites would destroy them) therefore I made this record out of the plates of Nefi, and hid up in the hill Cumorah all the records which had been entrusted to me by the hand of the Lord, save it were these few plates which I gave unto my son Moroni.

And it came to pass that my people, with their wives and their children, did now behold the armies of the Lamanites marching towards them; and with that awful fear of death which fills the breasts of all the wicked, did they await to receive them.

And it came to pass that they came to battle against us, and every soul was filled with terror because of the greatness of their numbers.

- 9 En dit het gebeur dat hulle my volk aangeval het met die swaard, en met die boog, en met die pyl, en met die byl, en met allerlei soorte wapens van oorlog.
- 10 En dit het gebeur dat my manne neergevel is, ja, en wel my tienduisend wat by my was, en ek het gewond neergeval in die midde; en hulle het by my verbygegaan dat hulle nie 'n einde gemaak het aan my lewe nie.
- 11 En toe hulle deurgegaan het en al my manne neergevel het behalwe vir vier en twintig van ons, (onder wie my seun Moroni was) en ons wat die gesneuweldes van ons volk oorlewe het, het die volgende dag gesien, toe die Lamaniete teruggekeer het na hulle kampe, vanaf die kruin van die Cumora-heuwel, die tienduisend van my volk wat neergevel is, wat van voor deur my gelei is.
- 12 En ons het ook die tienduisend gesien van my volk wat deur my seun Moroni gelei is.
- 13 En kyk, die tienduisend van Gidgiddona het geval en ook hy in die middel.
- 14 En Lama het geval met sy tienduisend; en Gilgal het geval met sy tienduisend; en Limha het geval met sy tienduisend; en Jeneum het geval met sy tienduisend; en Cumeniha, en Moroniha, en Antionum, en Sjiblom, en Sem, en Jos, het geval met hulle tienduisend elk.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat daar nog tien was wat geval het deur die swaard, met hulle tienduisend elk; ja en wel my hele volk, behalwe daardie vier en twintig wat by my was, en ook 'n paar wat ontsnap het na die suidelike lande, en 'n paar wat gedros het na die Lamaniete, het geval; en hulle vlees, en beendere, en bloed het gelê op die aangesig van die aarde, en dit is agtergelaat deur die hande van diegene wat hulle gedood het, om te vergaan op die land, en om te verkrummel en om terug te keer tot hulle moederaarde.
- 16 En my siel is verskeur deur smart, vanweë die gesneuweldes van my volk, en ek het uitgeroep:
- 17 O julle skones, hoe kon julle afgewyk het van die weë van die Here! O julle skones, hoe kon julle daardie Jesus verwerp het, wat met ope arms gestaan het om julle te ontvang!

And it came to pass that they did fall upon my people with the sword, and with the bow, and with the arrow, and with the ax, and with all manner of weapons of war.

And it came to pass that my men were hewn down, yea, even my ten thousand who were with me, and I fell wounded in the midst; and they passed by me that they did not put an end to my life.

And when they had gone through and hewn down all my people save it were twenty and four of us, (among whom was my son Moroni) and we having survived the dead of our people, did behold on the morrow, when the Lamanites had returned unto their camps, from the top of the hill Cumorah, the ten thousand of my people who were hewn down, being led in the front by me.

And we also beheld the ten thousand of my people who were led by my son Moroni.

And behold, the ten thousand of Gidgiddonah had fallen, and he also in the midst.

And Lamah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Gilgal had fallen with his ten thousand; and Limhah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Jeneum had fallen with his ten thousand; and Cumenihah, and Moronihah, and Antionum, and Shiblom, and Shem, and Josh, had fallen with their ten thousand each.

And it came to pass that there were ten more who did fall by the sword, with their ten thousand each; yea, even all my people, save it were those twenty and four who were with me, and also a few who had escaped into the south countries, and a few who had deserted over unto the Lamanites, had fallen; and their flesh, and bones, and blood lay upon the face of the earth, being left by the hands of those who slew them to molder upon the land, and to crumble and to return to their mother earth.

And my soul was rent with anguish, because of the slain of my people, and I cried:

O ye fair ones, how could ye have departed from the ways of the Lord! O ye fair ones, how could ye have rejected that Jesus, who stood with open arms to receive you!

- 18 Kyk, as julle dit nie gedoen het nie, sou julle nie geval het nie. Maar kyk, julle het geval, en ek betreur julle verlies.
- 19 O julle skone seuns en dogters, julle vaders en moeders, julle mans en vroue, julle skones, hoe is dit dat julle kon geval het!
- 20 Maar kyk, julle is heen, en my droefhede kan julle nie terugbring nie.
- 21 En die dag kom gou wanneer julle sterflike met onsterflikheid belee moet word, en hierdie liggame wat nou vergaan tot verderf, moet spoedig onverganklike liggame word; en dan moet julle staan voor die regterstoel van Christus, om geoordeel te word volgens julle werke; en as dit so is dat julle regverdig is, dan is julle geseën met julle vaders wat julle voorgedaan het.
- 22 O dat julle bekeer het voor hierdie groot vernietiging oor julle gekom het. Maar kyk, julle is weg, en die Vader, ja, die Ewige Vader van die hemel, ken julle toestand; en Hy doen met julle volgens sy geregtigheid en barmhartigheid.

Behold, if ye had not done this, ye would not have fallen. But behold, ye are fallen, and I mourn your loss.

O ye fair sons and daughters, ye fathers and mothers, ye husbands and wives, ye fair ones, how is it that ye could have fallen!

But behold, ye are gone, and my sorrows cannot bring your return.

And the day soon cometh that your mortal must put on immortality, and these bodies which are now mouldering in corruption must soon become incorruptible bodies; and then ye must stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, to be judged according to your works; and if it so be that ye are righteous, then are ye blessed with your fathers who have gone before you.

O that ye had repented before this great destruction had come upon you. But behold, ye are gone, and the Father, yea, the Eternal Father of heaven, knoweth your state; and he doeth with you according to his justice and mercy.

Mormon 7

- 1 En nou, kyk, ek wil ietwat spreek tot die oorblyfsel van hierdie volk wat gespaar is, as dit so is dat God my woorde aan hulle mag gee, sodat hulle mag weet van die dinge van hulle vaders; ja, ek spreek met julle, julle oorblyfsel van die huis van Israel; en dit is die woorde wat ek spreek:
- 2 Weet julle dat julle van die huis van Israel is.
- 3 Weet julle dat julle tot bekering moet kom, of julle kan nie gered word nie.
- 4 Weet julle dat julle jul wapens van oorlog moet neerlê, en nie meer behae skeep in die vergieting van bloed nie, en hulle nie weer opneem nie, behalwe as God julle sal gebied.
- 5 Weet julle dat julle moet kom tot die kennis van julle vaders, en bekeer van al julle sondes en ongeregtighede, en glo in Jesus Christus, dat Hy die Seun van God is, en dat Hy gedood is deur die Jode, en deur die krag van die Vader het Hy weer opgestaan, waardeur Hy die oorwinning behaal het oor die graf; en ook in Hom is die angel van die dood opgesluk.
- 6 En Hy bring die opstanding van die dode teweeg, waardeur die mens opgerig moet word om te staan voor sy regterstoel.
- 7 En Hy het die verlossing van die wêreld teweeg gebring, waardeur hy wat skuldeloos bevind word voor Hom op die oordeelsdag, dit aan hom gegee is om te woon in die teenwoordigheid van God in sy koninkryk, om onophoudelik lof te sing met die kore daar bo, aan die Vader, en aan die Seun, en aan die Heilige Gees, wat een God is, in 'n toestand van geluk wat geen einde het nie.
- 8 Daarom, bekeer, en word gedoop in die Naam van Jesus, en gryp die evangelie van Christus aan, wat aan julle voorgehou sal word, nie net in hierdie kroniek nie, maar ook in die kroniek wat na die nie-Jode sal kom van die Jode, welke kroniek van die nie-Jode sal kom na julle.
- 9 Want kyk, dit word geskrywe met die doel dat julle dit mag glo; en as julle dit glo, sal julle dié ook glo; en as julle dit glo, sal julle weet aangaande julle vaders en ook die wonderbaarlike werke wat tot stand gebring is deur die krag van God onder hulle.

Mormon 7

And now, behold, I would speak somewhat unto the remnant of this people who are spared, if it so be that God may give unto them my words, that they may know of the things of their fathers; yea, I speak unto you, ye remnant of the house of Israel; and these are the words which I speak:

Know ye that ye are of the house of Israel.

Know ye that ye must come unto repentance, or ye cannot be saved.

Know ye that ye must lay down your weapons of war, and delight no more in the shedding of blood, and take them not again, save it be that God shall command you.

Know ye that ye must come to the knowledge of your fathers, and repent of all your sins and iniquities, and believe in Jesus Christ, that he is the Son of God, and that he was slain by the Jews, and by the power of the Father he hath risen again, whereby he hath gained the victory over the grave; and also in him is the sting of death swallowed up.

And he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead, whereby man must be raised to stand before his judgment-seat.

And he hath brought to pass the redemption of the world, whereby he that is found guiltless before him at the judgment day hath it given unto him to dwell in the presence of God in his kingdom, to sing ceaseless praises with the choirs above, unto the Father, and unto the Son, and unto the Holy Ghost, which are one God, in a state of happiness which hath no end.

Therefore repent, and be baptized in the name of Jesus, and lay hold upon the gospel of Christ, which shall be set before you, not only in this record but also in the record which shall come unto the Gentiles from the Jews, which record shall come from the Gentiles unto you.

For behold, this is written for the intent that ye may believe that; and if ye believe that ye will believe this also; and if ye believe this ye will know concerning your fathers, and also the marvelous works which were wrought by the power of God among them.

10 En julle sal ook weet dat julle 'n oorblyfsel is van die saad van Jakob; daarom word julle gereken onder die volk van die eerste verbond; en as dit so is dat julle in Christus glo, en gedoop word, eers met water, dan met vuur en met die Heilige Gees, in navolging van die voorbeeld van ons Saligmaker, volgens dit wat Hy ons gebied het, dan sal dit goed gaan met julle op die dag van oordeel. Amen.

And ye will also know that ye are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; therefore ye are numbered among the people of the first covenant; and if it so be that ye believe in Christ, and are baptized, first with water, then with fire and with the Holy Ghost, following the example of our Savior, according to that which he hath commanded us, it shall be well with you in the day of judgment. Amen.

Mormon 8

- 1 Kyk, ek, Moroni, voltooi die kroniek van my vader, Mormon. Kyk, ek het net 'n paar dinge om te skrywe, welke dinge ek beveel is deur my vader.
- 2 En nou het dit gebeur dat ná die groot en ontsetende slag van Cumora, kyk, is die Nefiete wat ontsnap het na die land suidwaarts, gejag deur die Lamaniete, totdat hulle almal vernietig is.
- 3 En my vader is ook gedood deur hulle, en net ek bly alleen oor om die droewige verhaal te skryf van die vernietiging van my volk. Maar kyk, hulle is weg, en ek vervul die gebod van my vader. En of hulle my sal doodmaak, weet ek nie.
- 4 Daarom sal ek skryf en die kronieke wegbêre in die aarde; en waarheen ek gaan, maak nie saak nie.
- 5 Kyk, my vader het hierdie kroniek geskryf, en hy het die doel daarvan neergeskryf. En kyk, ek sou dit ook skryf as ek plek gehad het op die plate, maar ek het nie; en erts het ek nie, want ek is alleen. My vader is gedood in die stryd, en al my verwante, en ek het nóg vriende nóg iewers om heen te gaan; en hoe lank die Here sal toelaat dat ek mag lewe, weet ek nie.
- 6 Kyk, vierhonderd jaar het verbygegaan sedert die koms van ons Here en Saligmaker.
- 7 En kyk, die Lamaniete het my volk, die Nefiete, gejag, van stad tot stad, en van plek tot plek, totdat hulle nie meer is nie; en groot was hulle val; ja, groot en wonderbaarlik is die vernietiging van my volk, die Nefiete.
- 8 En kyk, dit is die hand van die Here wat dit gedoen het. En kyk ook, die Lamaniete voer oorlog teen mekaar; en die hele aangesig van hierdie land is een eindelose kringloop van moord en bloedvergieting; en nie een ken die einde van die oorlog nie.
- 9 En nou kyk, ek sê niks meer aangaande hulle nie, want daar is niemand behalwe die Lamaniete en rovers wat bestaan op die aangesig van die land nie.
- 10 En daar is niemand wat die ware God ken nie behalwe die dissipels van Jesus, wat vertoef het in die land totdat die boosheid van die volk so groot was dat die Here hulle nie wou toelaat om by die mense te bly nie; en of hulle op die aangesig van die land is, weet geen mens nie.

Mormon 8

Behold I, Moroni, do finish the record of my father, Mormon. Behold, I have but few things to write, which things I have been commanded by my father.

And now it came to pass that after the great and tremendous battle at Cumorah, behold, the Nephites who had escaped into the country southward were hunted by the Lamanites, until they were all destroyed.

And my father also was killed by them, and I even remain alone to write the sad tale of the destruction of my people. But behold, they are gone, and I fulfil the commandment of my father. And whether they will slay me, I know not.

Therefore I will write and hide up the records in the earth; and whither I go it mattereth not.

Behold, my father hath made this record, and he hath written the intent thereof. And behold, I would write it also if I had room upon the plates, but I have not; and ore I have none, for I am alone. My father hath been slain in battle, and all my kinsfolk, and I have not friends nor whither to go; and how long the Lord will suffer that I may live I know not.

Behold, four hundred years have passed away since the coming of our Lord and Savior.

And behold, the Lamanites have hunted my people, the Nephites, down from city to city and from place to place, even until they are no more; and great has been their fall; yea, great and marvelous is the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

And behold, it is the hand of the Lord which hath done it. And behold also, the Lamanites are at war one with another; and the whole face of this land is one continual round of murder and bloodshed; and no one knoweth the end of the war.

And now, behold, I say no more concerning them, for there are none save it be the Lamanites and robbers that do exist upon the face of the land.

And there are none that do know the true God save it be the disciples of Jesus, who did tarry in the land until the wickedness of the people was so great that the Lord would not suffer them to remain with the people; and whether they be upon the face of the land no man knoweth.

- 11 Maar kyk, my vader en ek het hulle gesien, en hulle het ons gedien.
- 12 En wie ook al hierdie kroniek ontvang, en dit nie sal veroordeel vanweë die onvolmaakthede wat daarin is nie, hy sal weet van groter dinge as hierdie. Kyk, ek is Moroni; en as dit moontlik was, sou ek alle dinge bekendmaak aan julle.
- 13 Kyk, ek maak 'n einde om te spreek aangaande hierdie volk. Ek is die seun van Mormon, en my vader was 'n afstammeling van Nefi.
- 14 En ek is hy wat hierdie kroniek wegbêre tot die Here; die plate daarvan is van geen waarde nie, vanweë die gebod van die Here. Want Hy sê waarlik dat geeneen hulle sal hê om wins te verkry nie; maar die kroniek daarop is van groot waarde; en wie ook al dit aan die lig sal bring, vir hom sal die Here seën.
- 15 Want niemand kan mag hê om dit aan die lig te bring, tensy dit aan hom gegee word deur God nie; want God wil hê dat dit gedoen word met 'n oog enkel gerig op sy heerlikheid, of tot die welsyn van die antieke en lankal verstrooide verbondsvolk van die Here.
- 16 En geseënd is hy wat hierdie ding aan die lig sal bring; want dit sal uit die duisternis gebring word tot die lig, volgens die woord van God; ja, dit sal gebring word uit die aarde, en dit sal skyn uit die duisternis, en kom tot die kennis van die volk; en dit sal gedoen word deur die krag van God.
- 17 En as daar foute is, is hulle die foute van 'n mens. Maar kyk, ons weet van geen fout nie; nogtans, God weet alle dinge; daarom, hy wat veroordeel, laat hom op sy hoede wees uit vrees dat hy in gevaar sal verkeer van die helse vuur.
- 18 En hy wat sê: Toon aan my, of jy sal geslaan word—laat hom op sy hoede wees dat hy nie dít baie veel wat verbied is deur die Here nie.
- 19 Want kyk, hy wat haastig oordeel, sal weer haastig geoordeel word; want volgens sy werke sal sy loon wees; daarom, hy wat slaan, sal weer deur die Here geslaan word.
- 20 Kyk wat die skrif sê—die mens sal nie slaan nie, nóg sal hy oordeel; want die oordeel is myne, sê die Here, en die wraak is ook myne, en Ek sal vergeld.

But behold, my father and I have seen them, and they have ministered unto us.

And whoso receiveth this record, and shall not condemn it because of the imperfections which are in it, the same shall know of greater things than these. Behold, I am Moroni; and were it possible, I would make all things known unto you.

Behold, I make an end of speaking concerning this people. I am the son of Mormon, and my father was a descendant of Nephi.

And I am the same who hideth up this record unto the Lord; the plates thereof are of no worth, because of the commandment of the Lord. For he truly saith that no one shall have them to get gain; but the record thereof is of great worth; and whoso shall bring it to light, him will the Lord bless.

For none can have power to bring it to light save it be given him of God; for God wills that it shall be done with an eye single to his glory, or the welfare of the ancient and long dispersed covenant people of the Lord.

And blessed be he that shall bring this thing to light; for it shall be brought out of darkness unto light, according to the word of God; yea, it shall be brought out of the earth, and it shall shine forth out of darkness, and come unto the knowledge of the people; and it shall be done by the power of God.

And if there be faults they be the faults of a man. But behold, we know no fault; nevertheless God knoweth all things; therefore, he that condemneth, let him be aware lest he shall be in danger of hell fire.

And he that saith: Show unto me, or ye shall be smitten—let him beware lest he commandeth that which is forbidden of the Lord.

For behold, the same that judgeth rashly shall be judged rashly again; for according to his works shall his wages be; therefore, he that smiteth shall be smitten again, of the Lord.

Behold what the scripture says—man shall not smite, neither shall he judge; for judgment is mine, saith the Lord, and vengeance is mine also, and I will repay.

- 21 En hy wat toorn en onenigheid uitblaas teen die werk van die Here, en teen die verbondsvolk van die Here, wat die huis van Israel is, en sal sê: Ons sal die werk van die Here vernietig, en die Here sal nie sy verbond onthou wat Hy gesluit het met die huis van Israel nie, hy staan gevaar om afgekap en in die vuur gewerp te word;
- 22 Want die ewige doeleindes van die Here sal voortrol, totdat al sy beloftes vervul sal word.
- 23 Ondersoek die profesieë van Jesaja. Kyk, ek kan hulle nie skryf nie. Ja, kyk, ek sê vir julle, dat daardie heiliges wat my voorgegaan het, wat hierdie land besit het, sal roep, ja, en wel uit die stof sal hulle roep tot die Here; en sowaar as die Here leef, Hy sal die verbond onthou wat Hy met hulle gesluit het.
- 24 En Hy ken hulle gebede, dat hulle ten behoeve van hulle broers was; en Hy ken hulle geloof, want in sy Naam kon hulle berge versit; en in sy Naam kon hulle die aarde laat skud; en deur die krag van sy woord het hulle gevangenis laat intuïmel op die aarde; ja, selfs die vurige oond kon hulle nie leed aandoen nie, nóg wilde diere, nóg giftige slange, vanweë die krag van sy woord.
- 25 En kyk, hulle gebede was ook ten behoeve van hom wat die Here sal toelaat om hierdie dinge te voorskyn te bring.
- 26 En niemand hoef te sê dat hulle nie sal kom nie, want hulle sal sekerlik, want die Here het dit gespreek; want uit die aarde sal hulle kom, deur die hand van die Here, en niemand kan dit keer nie; en dit sal kom op 'n dag wanneer dit gesê sal word dat wonderwerke weggedoen is; en dit sal kom net asof een sou spreek uit die dood.
- 27 En dit sal kom op 'n dag wanneer die bloed van heiliges sal roep tot die Here, vanweë geheime organisasies en die werke van die duisternis.
- 28 Ja, dit sal kom op 'n dag wanneer die krag van God geloën sal word, en kerke verontreinig sal word, en verhef sal wees in die hoogmoed van hulle harte; ja, en wel op 'n dag wanneer leiers van kerke en leraars verhef sal wees in die hoogmoed van hulle harte, tot afguns van hulle wat behoort aan hulle kerke.

And he that shall breathe out wrath and strifes against the work of the Lord, and against the covenant people of the Lord who are the house of Israel, and shall say: We will destroy the work of the Lord, and the Lord will not remember his covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel—the same is in danger to be hewn down and cast into the fire;

For the eternal purposes of the Lord shall roll on, until all his promises shall be fulfilled.

Search the prophecies of Isaiah. Behold, I cannot write them. Yea, behold I say unto you, that those saints who have gone before me, who have possessed this land, shall cry, yea, even from the dust will they cry unto the Lord; and as the Lord liveth he will remember the covenant which he hath made with them.

And he knoweth their prayers, that they were in behalf of their brethren. And he knoweth their faith, for in his name could they remove mountains; and in his name could they cause the earth to shake; and by the power of his word did they cause prisons to tumble to the earth; yea, even the fiery furnace could not harm them, neither wild beasts nor poisonous serpents, because of the power of his word.

And behold, their prayers were also in behalf of him that the Lord should suffer to bring these things forth.

And no one need say they shall not come, for they surely shall, for the Lord hath spoken it; for out of the earth shall they come, by the hand of the Lord, and none can stay it; and it shall come in a day when it shall be said that miracles are done away; and it shall come even as if one should speak from the dead.

And it shall come in a day when the blood of saints shall cry unto the Lord, because of secret combinations and the works of darkness.

Yea, it shall come in a day when the power of God shall be denied, and churches become defiled and be lifted up in the pride of their hearts; yea, even in a day when leaders of churches and teachers shall rise in the pride of their hearts, even to the envying of them who belong to their churches.

- 29 Ja, dit sal kom op 'n dag wanneer daar gehoor sal word van brande, en storms, en rookmis ook in vreemde lande;
- 30 En daar sal ook gehoor word van oorloë, gerugte van oorloë, en aardbewings op verskillende plekke.
- 31 Ja, dit sal kom op 'n dag wanneer daar groot besoe-delings sal wees op die aangesig van die aarde; daar sal moorde wees, en roof, en leuens, en bedrieërye, en hoererye, en allerlei soorte gruwels; wanneer daar baie sal wees wat sal sê: Doen dit of doen dat, en dit maak nie saak nie, want die Here sal diesulkes ondersteun op die laaste dag. Maar wee diesulkes, want hulle is in die gal van bitterheid en in die bande van ongeregtigheid.
- 32 Ja, dit sal kom op 'n dag wanneer daar kerke gebou sal word wat sê: Kom na my, en vir julle geld sal julle vergewe word van julle sondes.
- 33 O julle bose en wederstrewige en hardnekkige volk, hoekom het julle vir julleself kerke opgebou om gewin te verkry? Hoekom het julle die heilige woord van God verander, dat julle verdoemenis oor julle siele mag bring? Kyk, vertrou op die openbarings van God; want kyk, die tyd kom op daardie dag wanneer al hierdie dinge vervul moet word.
- 34 Kyk, die Here het aan my groot en wonderbaarlike dinge getoon aangaande dit wat binnekort moet kom, op daardie dag wanneer hierdie dinge te voorskyn sal kom onder julle.
- 35 Kyk, ek spreek met julle asof julle teenwoordig is, en tog is julle nie. Maar kyk, Jesus Christus het julle aan my getoon, en ek ken julle dade.
- 36 En ek weet dat julle wandel in die hoogmoed van julle harte; en daar is niemand behalwe 'n paar wat hulle nie ophief in die hoogmoed van hulle harte nie, om baie pronkerige kleding te dra, wat lei tot afguns, en onenighede, en haatdraendheid, en vervolginge, en allerlei ongeregtighede; en julle kerke, ja, en wel elke een, het besoedel geword vanweë die hoogmoed van julle harte.
- 37 Want kyk, julle het geld lief, en julle besittings, en julle pronkerige kleding, en die versiering van julle kerke, meer as wat julle die armes en behoeftiges, die siekes en die verdruktes liefhet.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be heard of fires, and tempests, and vapors of smoke in foreign lands;

And there shall also be heard of wars, rumors of wars, and earthquakes in divers places.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be great pollutions upon the face of the earth; there shall be murders, and robbing, and lying, and deceivings, and whoredoms, and all manner of abominations; when there shall be many who will say, Do this, or do that, and it mattereth not, for the Lord will uphold such at the last day. But wo unto such, for they are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be churches built up that shall say: Come unto me, and for your money you shall be forgiven of your sins.

O ye wicked and perverse and stiffnecked people, why have ye built up churches unto yourselves to get gain? Why have ye transfigured the holy word of God, that ye might bring damnation upon your souls? Behold, look ye unto the revelations of God; for behold, the time cometh at that day when all these things must be fulfilled.

Behold, the Lord hath shown unto me great and marvelous things concerning that which must shortly come, at that day when these things shall come forth among you.

Behold, I speak unto you as if ye were present, and yet ye are not. But behold, Jesus Christ hath shown you unto me, and I know your doing.

And I know that ye do walk in the pride of your hearts; and there are none save a few only who do not lift themselves up in the pride of their hearts, unto the wearing of very fine apparel, unto envying, and strifes, and malice, and persecutions, and all manner of iniquities; and your churches, yea, even every one, have become polluted because of the pride of your hearts.

For behold, ye do love money, and your substance, and your fine apparel, and the adorning of your churches, more than ye love the poor and the needy, the sick and the afflicted.

- 38 O julle besoedeldes, julle skynheiliges, julle le-
raars, wat julleself verkoop vir dit wat sal verweer,
hoekom het julle die heilige kerk van God besoedel?
Hoekom is julle skaam om op julle die Naam van
Christus te neem? Hoekom dink julle nie dat die
waarde groter is van 'n eindelose geluk as die smart
wat nooit sterwe nie—vanweë die lof van die wêreld?
- 39 Hoekom versier julle juisself met dit wat geen lewe
het nie, en laat tog toe dat die hongrigeres, en die be-
hoeftiges, en die naaktes, en die siekes en die ver-
drukte by julle verbygaan, en gewaar hulle nie?
- 40 Ja, waarom bou julle jul geheime gruwels om ge-
win te verkry, en om weduwees te laat treur voor die
Here, en ook om wese te laat treur voor die Here, en
ook om die bloed van hulle vaders en hulle mans te
laat roep tot die Here vanaf die grond, om wraak oor
julle hoofde?
- 41 Kyk, die swaard van vergelding hang oor julle; en
die tyd kom spoedig dat Hy die bloed van die heiliges
op julle wreek, want Hy sal hulle geroep nie langer
verduur nie.

O ye pollutions, ye hypocrites, ye teachers, who
sell yourselves for that which will canker, why have
ye polluted the holy church of God? Why are ye
ashamed to take upon you the name of Christ? Why
do ye not think that greater is the value of an endless
happiness than that misery which never dies—be-
cause of the praise of the world?

Why do ye adorn yourselves with that which hath
no life, and yet suffer the hungry, and the needy, and
the naked, and the sick and the afflicted to pass by
you, and notice them not?

Yea, why do ye build up your secret abominations
to get gain, and cause that widows should mourn be-
fore the Lord, and also orphans to mourn before the
Lord, and also the blood of their fathers and their
husbands to cry unto the Lord from the ground, for
vengeance upon your heads?

Behold, the sword of vengeance hangeth over you;
and the time soon cometh that he avengeth the blood
of the saints upon you, for he will not suffer their
cries any longer.

Mormon 9

- 1 En nou, ek spreek ook aangaande diegene wat nie in Christus glo nie.
- 2 Kyk, sal julle glo in die dag van julle besoeking—kyk, wanneer die Here sal kom, ja, en wel daardie groot dag wanneer die aarde opgerol sal word soos 'n boekrol, en die elemente sal smelt met vurige hitte, ja, in daardie groot dag wanneer julle gebring sal word om te staan voor die Lam van God—sal julle dan sê dat daar geen God is nie?
- 3 Sal julle dan langer die Christus loën, of kan julle die Lam van God aanskou? Veronderstel julle dat julle by Hom sal woon onder 'n bewustheid van julle skuld? Veronderstel julle dat julle gelukkig kan wees om te woon by daardie heilige Wese, wanneer julle siele gemartel word deur 'n bewustheid van skuld, dat julle altyd sy wette oortree het?
- 4 Kyk, ek sê vir julle dat julle ellendiger sal wees om te woon by 'n heilige en regverdige God, onder 'n bewustheid van julle vieslikheid voor Hom, as wat julle sou woon by die verdoemde siele in die hel.
- 5 Want kyk, wanneer julle gebring sal word om julle naaktheid te sien voor God, en ook die heerlijkheid van God, en die heiligheid van Jesus Christus, sal dit 'n vlam aansteek van onblusbare vuur in julle.
- 6 O dan julle ongelowiges, wend julle tot die Here; roep kragtig tot die Vader in die Naam van Jesus, dat julle miskien vlekkeloos, rein, en skoon, en wit bevind mag word, omdat julle gereinig is deur die bloed van die Lam, op daardie groot en laaste dag.
- 7 En verder spreek ek met julle wat die openbarings van God loën, en sê dat hulle weggedoen is, dat daar geen openbarings is, nóg profesieë, nóg gawes, nóg genesing, nóg spreek in tonge, en die uitleg van tonge;
- 8 Kyk, ek sê vir julle, hy wat hierdie dinge loën, ken nie die evangelie van Christus nie; ja, hy het nie die skrifture gelees nie; indien wel, verstaan hy hulle nie.
- 9 Want lees ons nie dat God dieselfde is gister, vandag, en vir ewig nie, en in Hom is daar geen veranderlikheid of skaduwee van ommekeer nie?

Mormon 9

And now, I speak also concerning those who do not believe in Christ.

Behold, will ye believe in the day of your visitation—behold, when the Lord shall come, yea, even that great day when the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, yea, in that great day when ye shall be brought to stand before the Lamb of God—then will ye say that there is no God?

Then will ye longer deny the Christ, or can ye behold the Lamb of God? Do ye suppose that ye shall dwell with him under a consciousness of your guilt? Do ye suppose that ye could be happy to dwell with that holy Being, when your souls are racked with a consciousness of guilt that ye have ever abused his laws?

Behold, I say unto you that ye would be more miserable to dwell with a holy and just God, under a consciousness of your filthiness before him, than ye would to dwell with the damned souls in hell.

For behold, when ye shall be brought to see your nakedness before God, and also the glory of God, and the holiness of Jesus Christ, it will kindle a flame of unquenchable fire upon you.

O then ye unbelieving, turn ye unto the Lord; cry mightily unto the Father in the name of Jesus, that perhaps ye may be found spotless, pure, fair, and white, having been cleansed by the blood of the Lamb, at that great and last day.

And again I speak unto you who deny the revelations of God, and say that they are done away, that there are no revelations, nor prophecies, nor gifts, nor healing, nor speaking with tongues, and the interpretation of tongues;

Behold I say unto you, he that denieth these things knoweth not the gospel of Christ; yea, he has not read the scriptures; if so, he does not understand them.

For do we not read that God is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and in him there is no variable-ness neither shadow of changing?

10 En nou, as julle vir julle 'n god voorgestel het wat verander, en in wie daar 'n skaduwee van ommekeer is, dan het julle vir julle 'n god voorgestel wat nie 'n God van wonderwerke is nie.

11 Maar kyk, ek sal aan julle 'n God toon van wonderwerke, en wel die God van Abraham, en die God van Isak, en die God van Jakob; en dit is daardie selfde God wat die hemele en die aarde geskape het, en alle dinge wat in hulle is.

12 Kyk, Hy het vir Adam geskape, en deur Adam het die val van die mens gekom. En vanweë die val van die mens het Jesus Christus gekom, en wel die Vader en die Seun; en vanweë Jesus Christus het die verlossing van die mens gekom.

13 En vanweë die verlossing van die mens, wat gekom het deur Jesus Christus, word hulle teruggebring na die teenwoordigheid van die Here; ja, dit is waardeur alle mense verlos word, omdat die dood van Christus die opstanding teweegbring, wat 'n verlossing teweegbring uit 'n eindelose slaap, uit welke slaap alle mense opgewek sal word deur die krag van God wanneer die trompet sal blaas; en hulle sal te voorskyn kom, beide klein en groot, en almal sal staan voor sy regbank, verlos en bevry van hierdie ewige band van die dood, welke dood 'n tydelike dood is.

14 En dan kom die oordeel van die Heilige Een oor hulle; en dan kom die tyd dat hy wat vieslik is, steeds vieslik sal wees; en hy wat regverdig is, sal steeds regverdig wees; hy wat gelukkig is, sal steeds gelukkig wees, en hy wat ongelukkig is, sal steeds ongelukkig wees.

15 En nou, o julle almal wat vir julle 'n god voorgestel het wat geen wonderwerke kan verrig nie, ek wil vir julle vra, het al hierdie dinge verbygegaan, waarvan ek gespreek het? Het die einde al gekom? Kyk, ek sê vir julle, Nee; en God het nie opgehou om 'n God van wonderwerke te wees nie.

16 Kyk, is die dinge wat God verrig het, nie wonderbaarlik in ons oë nie? Ja, en wie kan die wonderbaarlike werke van God begryp?

And now, if ye have imagined up unto yourselves a god who doth vary, and in whom there is shadow of changing, then have ye imagined up unto yourselves a god who is not a God of miracles.

But behold, I will show unto you a God of miracles, even the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and it is that same God who created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are.

Behold, he created Adam, and by Adam came the fall of man. And because of the fall of man came Jesus Christ, even the Father and the Son; and because of Jesus Christ came the redemption of man.

And because of the redemption of man, which came by Jesus Christ, they are brought back into the presence of the Lord; yea, this is wherein all men are redeemed, because the death of Christ bringeth to pass the resurrection, which bringeth to pass a redemption from an endless sleep, from which sleep all men shall be awakened by the power of God when the trump shall sound; and they shall come forth, both small and great, and all shall stand before his bar, being redeemed and loosed from this eternal band of death, which death is a temporal death.

And then cometh the judgment of the Holy One upon them; and then cometh the time that he that is filthy shall be filthy still; and he that is righteous shall be righteous still; he that is happy shall be happy still; and he that is unhappy shall be unhappy still.

And now, O all ye that have imagined up unto yourselves a god who can do no miracles, I would ask of you, have all these things passed, of which I have spoken? Has the end come yet? Behold I say unto you, Nay; and God has not ceased to be a God of miracles.

Behold, are not the things that God hath wrought marvelous in our eyes? Yea, and who can comprehend the marvelous works of God?

- 17 Wie sal sê dat dit nie 'n wonderwerk was dat deur sy woord die hemel en die aarde sou wees nie, en dat deur die krag van sy woord is die mens geskape uit die stof van die aarde; en deur die krag van sy woord is wonderwerke verrig?
- 18 En wie sal sê dat Jesus Christus nie baie magtige wonderwerke gedoen het nie? En daar is baie magtige wonderwerke verrig deur die hande van die apostels.
- 19 En as daar toe wonderwerke verrig is, hoekom het God opgehou om 'n God van wonderwerke te wees, en tog 'n onveranderlike Wese te bly? En kyk, ek sê vir julle, Hy verander nie; indien wel, sal Hy ophou om God te wees; en Hy hou nie op om God te wees nie, en is 'n God van wonderwerke.
- 20 En die rede waarom Hy ophou om wonderwerke te doen onder die kinders van mense, is omdat hulle kwyn in ongeloof, en afwyk van die regte weg, en nie die God ken op wie hulle behoort te vertrou nie.
- 21 Kyk, ek sê vir julle dat wie ook al in Christus glo, en glad nie twyfel nie, wat hy ook al die Vader sal vra in die Naam van Christus, dit sal aan hom gegee word; en hierdie belofte is aan almal, en wel tot aan die eindes van die aarde.
- 22 Want kyk, so sê Jesus Christus, die Seun van God, aan sy dissipels wat sou vertoef, ja, en ook aan al sy dissipels, ten aanhore van die skare: Gaan julle die hele wêreld in, en preek die evangelie aan elke skeepsel;
- 23 En hy wat glo en gedoop word, sal gered word, maar hy wat nie glo nie, sal verdoem word;
- 24 En hierdie tekens sal hulle volg wat glo—in my Naam sal hulle duiwels uitwerp; hulle sal in nuwe tonge spreek; hulle sal slange opneem; en as hulle enige dodelike ding drink, sal dit hulle nie kwaad doen nie; hulle sal die hande lê op die siekes en hulle sal herstel;
- 25 En wie ook al in my Naam sal glo, en glad nie twyfel nie, aan hom sal Ek al my woorde bevestig, en wel tot aan die eindes van die aarde.

Who shall say that it was not a miracle that by his word the heaven and the earth should be; and by the power of his word man was created of the dust of the earth; and by the power of his word have miracles been wrought?

And who shall say that Jesus Christ did not do many mighty miracles? And there were many mighty miracles wrought by the hands of the apostles.

And if there were miracles wrought then, why has God ceased to be a God of miracles and yet be an unchangeable Being? And behold, I say unto you he changeth not; if so he would cease to be God; and he ceaseth not to be God, and is a God of miracles.

And the reason why he ceaseth to do miracles among the children of men is because that they dwindle in unbelief, and depart from the right way, and know not the God in whom they should trust.

Behold, I say unto you that whoso believeth in Christ, doubting nothing, whatsoever he shall ask the Father in the name of Christ it shall be granted him; and this promise is unto all, even unto the ends of the earth.

For behold, thus said Jesus Christ, the Son of God, unto his disciples who should tarry, yea, and also to all his disciples, in the hearing of the multitude: Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature;

And he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved, but he that believeth not shall be damned;

And these signs shall follow them that believe—in my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick and they shall recover;

And whosoever shall believe in my name, doubting nothing, unto him will I confirm all my words, even unto the ends of the earth.

- 26 En nou, kyk, wie kan die werke van die Here weerstaan? Wie kan sy woorde loën? Wie sal opstaan teen die almagtige mag van die Here? Wie sal die werke van die Here verag? Wie sal die kinders van Christus verag? Kyk, julle almal wat veragters is van die werke van die Here, want julle sal wonder en vergaan.
- 27 O dan, verag nie, en wonder nie, maar slaan ag op die woorde van die Here, en vra die Vader in die Naam van Jesus vir welke dinge julle ook al nodig sal hê. Twyfel nie, maar wees gelowig, en begin soos in die dae van die voortyd, en kom na die Here met julle hele hart, en werk julle eie heil uit met vrees en bewing voor Hom.
- 28 Wees wys in die dae van julle toetsing; stroop julle self van alle onreinheid; vra nie, sodat julle dit nie mag deurbring in julle welluste nie, maar vra met standvastige onwankelbaarheid, dat julle nie sal swig voor enige versoeking nie, maar dat julle die waaragtige en lewende God sal dien.
- 29 Sorg dat julle nie onwaardig gedoop word nie; sorg dat julle nie onwaardig die nagmaal van Christus gebruik nie; maar sorg dat julle alle dinge doen in waardigheid, en doen dit in die Naam van Jesus Christus, die Seun van die lewende God; en as julle dit doen, en volhard tot die einde toe, sal julle geensins uitgewerp word nie.
- 30 Kyk, ek spreek met julle asof ek uit die dode gespreek het, want ek weet dat julle my woorde sal hê.
- 31 Veroordeel my nie vanweë my onvolmaaktheid nie, nóg my vader, vanweë sy onvolmaaktheid, nóg hulle wat geskrywe het voor hom; maar gee eerder dank aan God dat Hy aan ons ons onvolmaakte de geopenbaar het, sodat julle mag leer om wyser te wees as wat ons was.
- 32 En nou kyk, ons het hierdie kroniek geskryf volgens ons kennis, in die karakters wat onder ons bekend staan as hervormde Egipties, wat oorgelewer is en gewysig is deur ons volgens ons spreekwyse.
- 33 En as ons plate groot genoeg was, sou ons in Hebreeus geskryf het; maar die Hebreeus is ook gewysig deur ons; en as ons in Hebreeus kon geskryf het, kyk, sou julle geen onvolmaakte gehad het in ons kroniek nie.

And now, behold, who can stand against the works of the Lord? Who can deny his sayings? Who will rise up against the almighty power of the Lord? Who will despise the works of the Lord? Who will despise the children of Christ? Behold, all ye who are despisers of the works of the Lord, for ye shall wonder and perish.

O then despise not, and wonder not, but hearken unto the words of the Lord, and ask the Father in the name of Jesus for what things soever ye shall stand in need. Doubt not, but be believing, and begin as in times of old, and come unto the Lord with all your heart, and work out your own salvation with fear and trembling before him.

Be wise in the days of your probation; strip yourselves of all uncleanness; ask not, that ye may consume it on your lusts, but ask with a firmness unshaken, that ye will yield to no temptation, but that ye will serve the true and living God.

See that ye are not baptized unworthily; see that ye partake not of the sacrament of Christ unworthily; but see that ye do all things in worthiness, and do it in the name of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God; and if ye do this, and endure to the end, ye will in nowise be cast out.

Behold, I speak unto you as though I spake from the dead; for I know that ye shall have my words.

Condemn me not because of mine imperfection, neither my father, because of his imperfection, neither them who have written before him; but rather give thanks unto God that he hath made manifest unto you our imperfections, that ye may learn to be more wise than we have been.

And now, behold, we have written this record according to our knowledge, in the characters which are called among us the reformed Egyptian, being handed down and altered by us, according to our manner of speech.

And if our plates had been sufficiently large we should have written in Hebrew; but the Hebrew hath been altered by us also; and if we could have written in Hebrew, behold, ye would have had no imperfection in our record.

34 Maar die Here ken die dinge wat ons geskryf het, en ook dat geen ander volk ons taal ken nie; daarom, en omdat geen ander volk ons taal ken nie, daarom het Hy middele berei vir die vertolking daarvan.

35 En hierdie dinge word geskryf sodat ons ons kleding mag reinig van die bloed van ons broers, wat gekwyn het in ongeloof.

36 En kyk, hierdie dinge wat ons begeer het aangaande ons broers, ja, naamlik hulle herstel tot die kennis van Christus, is volgens die gebede van al die heiliges wat in die land gewoon het.

37 En mag die Here Jesus Christus gun dat hulle gebede verhoor mag word volgens hulle geloof; en mag God die Vader die verbond onthou wat Hy gesluit het met die huis van Israel; en mag Hy hulle seën vir ewig, deur geloof in die Naam van Jesus Christus. Amen.

But the Lord knoweth the things which we have written, and also that none other people knoweth our language; and because that none other people knoweth our language, therefore he hath prepared means for the interpretation thereof.

And these things are written that we may rid our garments of the blood of our brethren, who have dwindled in unbelief.

And behold, these things which we have desired concerning our brethren, yea, even their restoration to the knowledge of Christ, are according to the prayers of all the saints who have dwelt in the land.

And may the Lord Jesus Christ grant that their prayers may be answered according to their faith; and may God the Father remember the covenant which he hath made with the house of Israel; and may he bless them forever, through faith on the name of Jesus Christ. Amen.

Die Boek van Ether

Die kroniek van die Ferediete, geneem van die vier en twintig plate wat gevind is deur die volk van Limbi in die dae van Koning Mosia.

Ether 1

- 1 En nou, ek, Moroni, gaan voort om 'n kroniek te gee van daardie antieke inwoners wat vernietig is deur die hand van die Here op die aangesig van hierdie noordelike land.
- 2 En ek neem my verslag van die vier en twintig plate wat gevind is deur die volk van Limhi, wat genoem word die Boek van Ether.
- 3 En omdat ek veronderstel dat die eerste deel van hierdie kroniek, wat spreek aangaande die skepping van die wêreld, en ook van Adam, en 'n verslag vanaf daardie tyd tot by die groot toring, en watter dinge gebeur het onder die kinders van mense tot daardie tyd, besit word deur die Jode—
- 4 Daarom skryf ek nie daardie dinge wat gebeur het vanaf die dae van Adam tot daardie tyd nie; maar hulle is op die plate; en wie hulle ook al vind, hy sal mag hê, dat hy die volledige verslag mag verkry.
- 5 Maar kyk, ek gee nie die volledige verslag nie, maar 'n deel van die verslag gee ek, vanaf die toring totdat hulle vernietig is.
- 6 En op hierdie wyse gee ek die verslag. Hy wat hierdie kroniek geskryf het, was Ether, en hy was 'n afstammeling van Coriantor.
- 7 Coriantor was die seun van Moron.
- 8 En Moron was die seun van Etem.
- 9 En Etem was die seun van Aha.
- 10 En Aha was die seun van Set.
- 11 En Set was die seun van Sjiblon.
- 12 En Sjiblon was die seun van Com.
- 13 En Com was die seun van Coriantum.
- 14 En Coriantum was die seun van Amnigadda.
- 15 En Amnigadda was die seun van Aäron.
- 16 En Aäron was 'n afstammeling van Het, wat die seun was van Heartom.

The Book of Ether

The record of the Jaredites, taken from the twenty-four plates found by the people of Limbi in the days of King Mosiah.

Ether 1

- And now I, Moroni, proceed to give an account of those ancient inhabitants who were destroyed by the hand of the Lord upon the face of this north country.
- And I take mine account from the twenty and four plates which were found by the people of Limhi, which is called the Book of Ether.
- And as I suppose that the first part of this record, which speaks concerning the creation of the world, and also of Adam, and an account from that time even to the great tower, and whatsoever things transpired among the children of men until that time, is had among the Jews—
- Therefore I do not write those things which transpired from the days of Adam until that time; but they are had upon the plates; and whoso findeth them, the same will have power that he may get the full account.
- But behold, I give not the full account, but a part of the account I give, from the tower down until they were destroyed.
- And on this wise do I give the account. He that wrote this record was Ether, and he was a descendant of Coriantor.
- Coriantor was the son of Moron.
And Moron was the son of Ethem.
And Ethem was the son of Ahah.
And Ahah was the son of Seth.
And Seth was the son of Shiblon.
And Shiblon was the son of Com.
And Com was the son of Coriantum.
And Coriantum was the son of Amnigaddah.
And Amnigaddah was the son of Aaron.
And Aaron was a descendant of Heth, who was the son of Hearthom.

17 En Heartom was die seun van Lib.
18 En Lib was die seun van Kis.
19 En Kis was die seun van Corom.
20 En Corom was die seun van Levi.
21 En Levi was die seun van Kim.
22 En Kim was die seun van Morianton.
23 En Morianton was 'n afstammeling van Riplakis.
24 En Riplakis was die seun van Sez.
25 En Sez was die seun van Het.
26 En Het was die seun van Com.
27 En Com was die seun van Coriantum.
28 En Coriantum was die seun van Emer.
29 En Emer was die seun van Omer.
30 En Omer was die seun van Sule.
31 En Sule was die seun van Kib.
32 En Kib was die seun van Oriha, wat die seun was van Jared;
33 Welke Jared uitgekom het met sy broer en hulle gesinne, met sommige ander en hulle gesinne, van die groot toring, in die tyd toe die Here die taal van die volk verwar het, en gesweer het in sy toorn dat hulle verstrooi sou word oor die hele aangesig van die aarde; en ooreenkomstig die woord van die Here is die volk verstrooi.
34 En die broer van Jared, omdat hy 'n groot en sterk man was, en 'n man wat hoog begunstig was deur die Here, Jared, sy broer, het aan hom gesê: Roep tot die Here, dat Hy ons nie sal verwar sodat ons nie ons woorde sal verstaan nie.
35 En dit het gebeur dat die broer van Jared geroep het tot die Here, en die Here het Hom ontferm oor Jared; daarom het Hy nie die taal verwar van Jared nie; en Jared en sy broer is nie verwar nie.
36 Toe het Jared aan sy broer gesê: Roep weer tot die Here, en dit mag wees dat Hy sy toorn sal afwend van hulle wat ons vriende is, sodat Hy hulle taal nie verwar nie.
37 En dit het gebeur dat die broer van Jared geroep het tot die Here, en die Here het Hom ontferm oor hulle vriende en hul gesinne ook, sodat hulle nie verwar is nie.

And Hearthom was the son of Lib.
And Lib was the son of Kish.
And Kish was the son of Corom.
And Corom was the son of Levi.
And Levi was the son of Kim.
And Kim was the son of Morianton.
And Morianton was a descendant of Riplakish.
And Riplakish was the son of Shez.
And Shez was the son of Heth.
And Heth was the son of Com.
And Com was the son of Coriantum.
And Coriantum was the son of Emer.
And Emer was the son of Omer.
And Omer was the son of Shule.
And Shule was the son of Kib.
And Kib was the son of Orihah, who was the son of Jared;
Which Jared came forth with his brother and their families, with some others and their families, from the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, and swore in his wrath that they should be scattered upon all the face of the earth; and according to the word of the Lord the people were scattered.
And the brother of Jared being a large and mighty man, and a man highly favored of the Lord, Jared, his brother, said unto him: Cry unto the Lord, that he will not confound us that we may not understand our words.
And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon Jared; therefore he did not confound the language of Jared; and Jared and his brother were not confounded.
Then Jared said unto his brother: Cry again unto the Lord, and it may be that he will turn away his anger from them who are our friends, that he confound not their language.
And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon their friends and their families also, that they were not confounded.

- 38 En dit het gebeur dat Jared weer met sy broer gespreek het, en gesê het: Gaan en vra vir die Here of Hy ons sal verdryf uit die land, en as Hy ons sal verdryf uit die land, roep tot Hom waarheen ons sal gaan. En wie weet, of die Here ons sal uitlei na 'n land wat uitverkore is bo die hele aarde? En as dit so is, laat ons getrou wees aan die Here, sodat ons dit mag ontvang as ons erfenis.
- 39 En dit het gebeur dat die broer van Jared tot die Here geroep het volgens dit wat gespreek is by monde van Jared.
- 40 En dit het gebeur dat die Here die broer van Jared gehoor het, en Hom ontferm het oor hom, en aan hom gesê het:
- 41 Gaan heen, en maak jou kuddes bymekaar, beide mannetjie en wyfie, van elke soort; en ook van die saad van die aarde van elke soort, en jou gesinne; en ook Jared jou broer, en sy gesin; en ook jou vriende en hulle gesinne, en die vriende van Jared en hulle gesinne.
- 42 En wanneer jy dit gedoen het, sal jy aan die hoof van hulle gaan, af na die vallei wat noordwaarts is. En daar sal Ek jou ontmoet, en Ek sal voor jou uitgaan na 'n land wat uitverkore is bo al die lande van die aarde.
- 43 En daar sal Ek jou en jou saad seën, en vir My voortbring van jou saad, en van die saad van jou broer, en hulle wat saam met jou sal gaan, 'n groot nasie. En daar sal geen een groter wees as die nasie wat Ek sal voortbring vir My uit jou saad, op die hele aangesig van die aarde nie. En aldus sal Ek aan jou doen omdat jy dié lang tyd tot My geroep het.

And it came to pass that Jared spake again unto his brother, saying: Go and inquire of the Lord whether he will drive us out of the land, and if he will drive us out of the land, cry unto him whither we shall go. And who knoweth but the Lord will carry us forth into a land which is choice above all the earth? And if it so be, let us be faithful unto the Lord, that we may receive it for our inheritance.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord according to that which had been spoken by the mouth of Jared.

And it came to pass that the Lord did hear the brother of Jared, and had compassion upon him, and said unto him:

Go to and gather together thy flocks, both male and female, of every kind; and also of the seed of the earth of every kind; and thy families; and also Jared thy brother and his family; and also thy friends and their families, and the friends of Jared and their families.

And when thou hast done this thou shalt go at the head of them down into the valley which is northward. And there will I meet thee, and I will go before thee into a land which is choice above all the lands of the earth.

And there will I bless thee and thy seed, and raise up unto me of thy seed, and of the seed of thy brother, and they who shall go with thee, a great nation. And there shall be none greater than the nation which I will raise up unto me of thy seed, upon all the face of the earth. And thus I will do unto thee because this long time ye have cried unto me.

Ether 2

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat Jared en sy broer, en hulle gesinne, en ook die vriende van Jared en sy broer en hulle gesinne, afgegaan het in die vallei wat noordwaarts was, (en die naam van die vallei was Nimrod, omdat dit genoem is na die magtige jagter) met hul kuddes wat hulle bymekaargemaak het, mannetjie en wyfie, van elke soort.
- 2 En hulle het ook valstrikke gestel en voëls van die lug gevang; en hulle het ook 'n houer berei, waarin hulle saam met hulle die visse van die waters gedra het.
- 3 En hulle het ook saamgedra met hulle, deseret, wat, as dit vertaal word, 'n heuningby is; en so het hulle met hulle saamgedra swerms bye, en allerlei soorte van dít wat op die aangesig van die land was, sade van elke soort.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat toe hulle afgekom het in die vallei van Nimrod, het die Here neergedaal en met die broer van Jared gespreek; en Hy was in 'n wolk, en die broer van Jared het Hom nie gesien nie.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat die Here hulle gebied het dat hulle moes uitgaan in die wildernis, ja, na daardie gebied waar 'n mens nog nooit was nie. En dit het gebeur dat die Here voor hulle uitgegaan het en met hulle gespreek het terwyl Hy gestaan het in 'n wolk, en aanwysings gegee het waarheen hulle moes reis.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat hulle gereis het in die wildernis, en bote gebou het, waarin hulle baie waters oorgesteek het, en hulle was gedurig gelei deur die hand van die Here.
- 7 En die Here wou nie toelaat dat hulle moes stop anderkant die see in die wildernis nie; maar Hy wou hê dat hulle verder moes gaan na die land van belofte, wat uitverkore was bo alle ander lande, wat die Here God bewaar het vir 'n regverdige volk.
- 8 En Hy het gesweer in sy toorn vir die broer van Jared, dat wie ook al hierdie land van belofte sou besit, van daardie tyd af en vir ewig, Hom moes dien, die ware en enigste God, of hulle sou weggevee word wanneer die volheid van sy toorn oor hulle sou kom.

Ether 2

And it came to pass that Jared and his brother, and their families, and also the friends of Jared and his brother and their families, went down into the valley which was northward, (and the name of the valley was Nimrod, being called after the mighty hunter) with their flocks which they had gathered together, male and female, of every kind.

And they did also lay snares and catch fowls of the air; and they did also prepare a vessel, in which they did carry with them the fish of the waters.

And they did also carry with them deseret, which, by interpretation, is a honey bee; and thus they did carry with them swarms of bees, and all manner of that which was upon the face of the land, seeds of every kind.

And it came to pass that when they had come down into the valley of Nimrod the Lord came down and talked with the brother of Jared; and he was in a cloud, and the brother of Jared saw him not.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded them that they should go forth into the wilderness, yea, into that quarter where there never had man been. And it came to pass that the Lord did go before them, and did talk with them as he stood in a cloud, and gave directions whither they should travel.

And it came to pass that they did travel in the wilderness, and did build barges, in which they did cross many waters, being directed continually by the hand of the Lord.

And the Lord would not suffer that they should stop beyond the sea in the wilderness, but he would that they should come forth even unto the land of promise, which was choice above all other lands, which the Lord God had preserved for a righteous people.

And he had sworn in his wrath unto the brother of Jared, that whoso should possess this land of promise, from that time henceforth and forever, should serve him, the true and only God, or they should be swept off when the fulness of his wrath should come upon them.

9 En nou, ons kan die bevele van God sien aangaande hierdie land, dat dit 'n land van belofte is; en watter nasie ook al dit sal besit, God sal dien, of hulle sal weggee word wanneer die volheid van sy toorn oor hulle sal kom. En die volheid van sy toorn kom oor hulle wanneer hulle ryp is in ongeregtigheid.

10 Want kyk, dit is 'n land wat uitverkore is bo alle ander lande; daarom, hy wat dit besit, sal God dien, of sal weggee word; want dit is die ewigdurende bevel van God. En dit is nie tot die volheid van ongeregtigheid onder die kinders van die land, dat hulle weggee word nie.

11 En dit kom na julle, o julle nie-Jode, sodat julle die bevele van God mag ken—sodat julle mag bekeer en nie voortgaan in julle ongeregtighede totdat die volheid kom nie, sodat julle nie oor julle die volheid van die toorn van God mag afbring soos die inwoners van die land tot dusver gedoen het nie.

12 Kyk, hierdie is 'n uitverkore land, en watter nasie dit ook al besit, sal vry wees van gebondenheid en van slawerny, en van alle ander nasies onder die hemel, as hulle maar net die God van die land sal dien wat Jesus Christus is, wat geopenbaar is deur die dinge wat ons geskryf het.

13 En nou gaan ek voort met my kroniek; want kyk, dit het gebeur dat die Here vir Jared en sy broers uitgebring het tot by daardie groot see wat die lande skei. En toe hulle by die see gekom het, het hulle hul tente opgeslaan; en het die naam van die plek Moriancumer genoem; en hulle het in tente gewoon, en het in tente gewoon op die strand vir 'n tydperk van vier jaar.

14 En dit het gebeur aan die einde van vier jaar dat die Here weer gekom het na die broer van Jared, en in 'n wolk gestaan het en met hom gespreek het. En vir 'n tydperk van drie ure het die Here met die broer van Jared gespreek en hom gekasty omdat hy nie onthou het om die Naam van die Here aan te roep nie.

And now, we can behold the decrees of God concerning this land, that it is a land of promise; and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall serve God, or they shall be swept off when the fulness of his wrath shall come upon them. And the fulness of his wrath cometh upon them when they are ripened in iniquity.

For behold, this is a land which is choice above all other lands; wherefore he that doth possess it shall serve God or shall be swept off; for it is the everlasting decree of God. And it is not until the fulness of iniquity among the children of the land, that they are swept off.

And this cometh unto you, O ye Gentiles, that ye may know the decrees of God—that ye may repent, and not continue in your iniquities until the fulness come, that ye may not bring down the fulness of the wrath of God upon you as the inhabitants of the land have hitherto done.

Behold, this is a choice land, and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall be free from bondage, and from captivity, and from all other nations under heaven, if they will but serve the God of the land, who is Jesus Christ, who hath been manifested by the things which we have written.

And now I proceed with my record; for behold, it came to pass that the Lord did bring Jared and his brethren forth even to that great sea which divideth the lands. And as they came to the sea they pitched their tents; and they called the name of the place Moriancumer; and they dwelt in tents, and dwelt in tents upon the seashore for the space of four years.

And it came to pass at the end of four years that the Lord came again unto the brother of Jared, and stood in a cloud and talked with him. And for the space of three hours did the Lord talk with the brother of Jared, and chastened him because he remembered not to call upon the name of the Lord.

- 15 En die broer van Jared het bekeer van die boosheid wat hy gedoen het, en het die Naam van die Here aangeroop namens sy broers wat by hom was. En die Here het aan hom gesê: Ek sal jou en jou broers vergewe van hulle sondes; maar jy sal nie meer sondig nie, want julle sal onthou dat my Gees nie altyd met die mens sal werk nie; daarom, as julle sal sondig totdat julle heeltemal ryp is, sal julle afgesny word van die teenwoordigheid van die Here. En dit is my gedagtes oor die land wat Ek julle as julle erfenis sal gee; want dit sal 'n uitverkore land wees bo alle ander lande.
- 16 En die Here het gesê: Gaan te werk en bou, volgens die wyse van bote, wat julle tot hiertoe gebou het. En dit het gebeur dat die broer van Jared begin het om te werk, en ook sy broers, en het bote gebou volgens die wyse wat hulle gebou het, volgens die aanwysings van die Here. En hulle was klein, en hulle was lig op die water, net soos die ligtheid van 'n voël op die water.
- 17 En hulle is gebou op so 'n wyse dat hulle uitermate dig was, sodat hulle water kon hou soos 'n skottel; en die bodem daarvan was dig soos 'n skottel; en die kante daarvan was dig soos 'n skottel; en die kante daarvan was gepunt; en die bokant daarvan was dig soos 'n skottel; en die lengte daarvan was die lengte van 'n boom; en die deur daarvan, wanneer dit toege-
maak was, was dig soos 'n skottel.
- 18 En dit het gebeur dat die broer van Jared tot die Here geroep het, en gesê het: O Here, ek het die werk afgehandel wat U my gebied het, en ek het die bote gemaak soos U my gewys het.
- 19 En kyk, o Here, in hulle is daar geen lig nie; waarheen sal ons stuur? En ons sal ook omkom, want in hulle kan ons nie asemhaal nie, behalwe vir die lug wat in hulle is; daarom sal ons omkom.
- 20 En die Here het aan die broer van Jared gesê: Kyk, jy sal 'n gat bo-in maak, en ook in die bodem; en wanneer jy lug sal kortkom, sal jy die gat oopmaak en lug ontvang. En as dit so is dat die water inkom op jou, kyk, jy sal die opening toemaak, sodat jy nie omkom in die vloed nie.
- 21 En dit het gebeur dat die broer van Jared so gedoen het, volgens wat die Here hom gebied het.

And the brother of Jared repented of the evil which he had done, and did call upon the name of the Lord for his brethren who were with him. And the Lord said unto him: I will forgive thee and thy brethren of their sins; but thou shalt not sin any more, for ye shall remember that my Spirit will not always strive with man; wherefore, if ye will sin until ye are fully ripe ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And these are my thoughts upon the land which I shall give you for your inheritance; for it shall be a land choice above all other lands.

And the Lord said: Go to work and build, after the manner of barges which ye have hitherto built. And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did go to work, and also his brethren, and built barges after the manner which they had built, according to the instructions of the Lord. And they were small, and they were light upon the water, even like unto the lightness of a fowl upon the water.

And they were built after a manner that they were exceedingly tight, even that they would hold water like unto a dish; and the bottom thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the sides thereof were tight like unto a dish; and the ends thereof were peaked; and the top thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the length thereof was the length of a tree; and the door thereof, when it was shut, was tight like unto a dish.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, I have performed the work which thou hast commanded me, and I have made the barges according as thou hast directed me.

And behold, O Lord, in them there is no light; whither shall we steer? And also we shall perish, for in them we cannot breathe, save it is the air which is in them; therefore we shall perish.

And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt make a hole in the top, and also in the bottom; and when thou shalt suffer for air thou shalt unstop the hole and receive air. And if it be so that the water come in upon thee, behold, ye shall stop the hole, that ye may not perish in the flood.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did so, according as the Lord had commanded.

- 22 En hy het weer tot die Here geroep, en gesê: O Here, kyk, ek het gedoen net soos U my gebied het; en ek het die vaartuie voorberei vir my volk, en kyk, daar is geen lig in hulle nie. Kyk, o Here, sal U toelaat dat ons hierdie groot water sal oorsteek in die donker?
- 23 En die Here het aan die broer van Jared gesê: Wat wil julle hê moet Ek doen dat julle lig mag hê in julle vaartuie? Want kyk, julle kan nie vensters hê nie, want hulle sal in stukke geslaan word; nóg sal julle vuur saam met julle neem, want julle sal nie reis met die lig van vuur nie.
- 24 Want kyk, julle sal wees soos 'n walvis in die middel van die see; want die bergagtige golwe sal teen julle slaan. Nóg, Ek sal julle weer bring uit die dieptes van die see; want die winde het uitgegaan uit my mond, en ook die reëns en die vloede het Ek gestuur.
- 25 En kyk, Ek berei julle voor teen hierdie dinge; want julle kan nie hierdie groot diepte oorsteek tensy Ek julle voorberei teen die golwe van die see, en die winde wat uitgegaan het, en die vloede wat sal kom nie. Daarom, wat wil julle hê dat Ek vir julle moet berei sodat julle lig mag hê wanneer julle verswelg word in die dieptes van die see?

And he cried again unto the Lord saying: O Lord, behold I have done even as thou hast commanded me; and I have prepared the vessels for my people, and behold there is no light in them. Behold, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that we shall cross this great water in darkness?

And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: What will ye that I should do that ye may have light in your vessels? For behold, ye cannot have windows, for they will be dashed in pieces; neither shall ye take fire with you, for ye shall not go by the light of fire.

For behold, ye shall be as a whale in the midst of the sea; for the mountain waves shall dash upon you. Nevertheless, I will bring you up again out of the depths of the sea; for the winds have gone forth out of my mouth, and also the rains and the floods have I sent forth.

And behold, I prepare you against these things; for ye cannot cross this great deep save I prepare you against the waves of the sea, and the winds which have gone forth, and the floods which shall come. Therefore what will ye that I should prepare for you that ye may have light when ye are swallowed up in the depths of the sea?

Ether 3

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat die broer van Jared, (nou die getal van die vaartuie wat voorberei was, was agt) na die berg gegaan het, wat hulle genoem het die berg Selem, vanweë sy uitermate hoogte, en het sestien klein klippies uit 'n rots gesmelt; en hulle was wit en helder, net soos deurskynende glas; en hy het hulle gedra in sy hande na die kruin van die berg, en het weer tot die Here geroep, en gesê:
- 2 O Here, U het gesê dat ons omring moet wees deur die vloede. Nou kyk, o Here, en wees nie toornig op u dienskneg vanweë sy swakheid voor U nie; want ons weet dat U heilig is en woon in die hemele, en dat ons onwaardig is voor U; vanweë die val het ons van nature boos geword voortdurend; nogtans, o Here, U het ons 'n gebod gegee dat ons U moet aanroep, sodat ons van U mag ontvang volgens ons begeertes.
- 3 Kyk, o Here, U het ons geslaan vanweë ons onge-regtigheid, en het ons voortgedryf, en vir hierdie baie jare was ons in die wildernis; nogtans was U barmhartig jeens ons. O Here, sien op my neer met mede-lye, en wend u toorn af van hierdie, u volk, en laat nie toe dat hulle sal uitgaan oor hierdie woeste diepte in die donker nie; maar aanskou hierdie dinge wat ek gesmelt het uit die rots.
- 4 En ek weet, o Here, dat U alle krag het; en kan doen wat U ook al wil tot die voordeel van die mens; daarom, raak hierdie klippe aan, o Here, met u vin-ger, en berei hulle voor sodat hulle mag skyn in die donker; en hulle sal skyn vir ons in die vaartuie wat ons voorberei het, sodat ons lig mag hê terwyl ons die see sal oorsteek.
- 5 Kyk, o Here, U kan dit doen. Ons weet dat U in staat is om groot krag te toon, wat klein lyk vir die begrip van die mens.

Ether 3

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared, (now the number of the vessels which had been prepared was eight) went forth unto the mount, which they called the mount Shelem, because of its exceeding height, and did molten out of a rock sixteen small stones; and they were white and clear, even as transparent glass; and he did carry them in his hands upon the top of the mount, and cried again unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, thou hast said that we must be encom-passed about by the floods. Now behold, O Lord, and do not be angry with thy servant because of his weakness before thee; for we know that thou art holy and dwellest in the heavens, and that we are un-worthy before thee; because of the fall our natures have become evil continually; nevertheless, O Lord, thou hast given us a commandment that we must call upon thee, that from thee we may receive according to our desires.

Behold, O Lord, thou hast smitten us because of our iniquity, and hast driven us forth, and for these many years we have been in the wilderness; never-theless, thou hast been merciful unto us. O Lord, look upon me in pity, and turn away thine anger from this thy people, and suffer not that they shall go forth across this raging deep in darkness; but behold these things which I have molten out of the rock.

And I know, O Lord, that thou hast all power, and can do whatsoever thou wilt for the benefit of man; therefore touch these stones, O Lord, with thy finger, and prepare them that they may shine forth in dark-ness; and they shall shine forth unto us in the vessels which we have prepared, that we may have light while we shall cross the sea.

Behold, O Lord, thou canst do this. We know that thou art able to show forth great power, which looks small unto the understanding of men.

- 6 En dit het gebeur dat toe die broer van Jared hierdie dinge gesê het, kyk, het die Here sy hand uitgestrek en die klippe een vir een aangeraak met sy vinger. En die sluier is weggeneem vanaf die oë van die broer van Jared, en hy het die vinger van die Here gesien; en dit was soos die vinger van 'n mens, soos vlees en bloed; en die broer van Jared het neergeval voor die Here, want hy is getref deur vrees.
- 7 En die Here het gesien dat die broer van Jared neergeval het op die aarde; en die Here het aan hom gesê: Staan op, hoekom het jy neergeval?
- 8 En hy sê vir die Here: Ek het die vinger van die Here gesien, en ek was bang dat Hy my sou slaan; want ek het nie geweet dat die Here vlees en bloed het nie.
- 9 En die Here het aan hom gesê: Vanweë jou geloof het jy gesien dat Ek op My vlees en bloed sal neem; en nog nooit het 'n mens voor My gekom met sulke uitermate geloof soos wat jy het nie; want as dit nie so was nie, kon jy nie my vinger gesien het nie. Het jy meer as dit gesien?
- 10 En hy het geantwoord: Nee; Here, toon Uself aan my.
- 11 En die Here het aan hom gesê: Glo jy die woorde wat Ek sal spreek?
- 12 En hy het geantwoord: Ja, Here, ek weet dat U die waarheid spreek, want U is 'n God van waarheid, en kan nie lieg nie.
- 13 En toe hy hierdie woorde gesê het, kyk, die Here het Hom aan hom getoon, en gesê: Omdat jy hierdie dinge weet, is jy verlos van die val; daarom word jy teruggebring in my teenwoordigheid; daarom toon Ek myself aan jou.
- 14 Kyk, Ek is Hy wat voorberei was vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld om my volk te verlos. Kyk, Ek is Jesus Christus. Ek is die Vader en die Seun. In My sal die hele mensdom lewe hê, en dit ewiglik, naamlik hulle wat sal glo in my Naam; en hulle sal my seuns en my dogters word.
- 15 En nooit het Ek Myself getoon aan die mens wat Ek geskape het nie, want nooit het die mens in My geglo soos jy nie. Sien jy dat jy geskape is na my eie beeld? Ja, en wel alle mense is geskape in die begin na my eie beeld.

And it came to pass that when the brother of Jared had said these words, behold, the Lord stretched forth his hand and touched the stones one by one with his finger. And the veil was taken from off the eyes of the brother of Jared, and he saw the finger of the Lord; and it was as the finger of a man, like unto flesh and blood; and the brother of Jared fell down before the Lord, for he was struck with fear.

And the Lord saw that the brother of Jared had fallen to the earth; and the Lord said unto him: Arise, why hast thou fallen?

And he saith unto the Lord: I saw the finger of the Lord, and I feared lest he should smite me; for I knew not that the Lord had flesh and blood.

And the Lord said unto him: Because of thy faith thou hast seen that I shall take upon me flesh and blood; and never has man come before me with such exceeding faith as thou hast; for were it not so ye could not have seen my finger. Sawest thou more than this?

And he answered: Nay; Lord, show thyself unto me.

And the Lord said unto him: Believest thou the words which I shall speak?

And he answered: Yea, Lord, I know that thou speakest the truth, for thou art a God of truth, and canst not lie.

And when he had said these words, behold, the Lord showed himself unto him, and said: Because thou knowest these things ye are redeemed from the fall; therefore ye are brought back into my presence; therefore I show myself unto you.

Behold, I am he who was prepared from the foundation of the world to redeem my people. Behold, I am Jesus Christ. I am the Father and the Son. In me shall all mankind have life, and that eternally, even they who shall believe on my name; and they shall become my sons and my daughters.

And never have I showed myself unto man whom I have created, for never has man believed in me as thou hast. Seest thou that ye are created after mine own image? Yea, even all men were created in the beginning after mine own image.

- 16 Kyk, hierdie liggaam, wat jy nou aanskou, is die liggaam van my Gees; en die mens het Ek geskape na die liggaam van my Gees; en net soos Ek aan jou verskyn in die Gees, net so sal Ek verskyn aan my volk in die vlees.
- 17 En nou, omdat ek, Moroni, gesê het dat ek nie 'n volledige verslag van hierdie dinge kon maak wat geskrywe is nie, daarom is dit voldoende vir my om te sê dat Jesus Hom getoon het aan hierdie man in die Gees, en wel op dieselfde wyse en in die gelykenis van dieselfde liggaam, net soos Hy Homself getoon het aan die Nefiete.
- 18 En Hy het hom gedien net soos Hy die Nefiete gedien het; en dit alles, sodat hierdie man mag weet dat Hy God was, vanweë die baie groot werke wat die Here aan hom getoon het.
- 19 En vanweë die kennis van hierdie man kon hy nie daarvan weerhou word om binne die sluier te sien nie; en hy het die vinger van Jesus gesien, wat, toe hy gesien het, het hy van vrees neergeval; want hy het geweet dat dit die vinger was van die Here; en hy het nie langer geloof gehad nie, want hy het geweet, sonder twyfel.
- 20 Daarom, omdat hy hierdie volmaakte kennis van God gehad het, kon hy nie weerhou word van binne die sluier nie; daarom het hy Jesus gesien; en hy het Hom gedien.
- 21 En dit het gebeur dat die Here aan die broer van Jared gesê het: Kyk, jy sal nie toelaat dat hierdie dinge wat jy gesien en gehoor het uitgaan in die wêreld nie, totdat die tyd kom dat Ek my Naam sal verheerlik in die vlees; daarom, jy sal die dinge wat jy gesien en gehoor het veilig wegbêre en dit aan geen mens toon nie.
- 22 En kyk, wanneer jy na My sal kom, sal jy hulle skryf en sal hulle verseël, sodat geeneen hulle kan vertolk nie; want jy sal hulle in 'n taal skryf sodat hulle nie gelees kan word nie.
- 23 En kyk, Ek sal hierdie twee stene aan jou gee, en jy sal hulle ook verseël saam met die dinge wat jy sal skryf.
- 24 Want kyk, die taal wat jy sal skryf het Ek verwar; daarom sal Ek in my eie bepaalde tyd toelaat dat hierdie stene die dinge wat jy sal skryf, sal verhelder aan die oë van mense.

Behold, this body, which ye now behold, is the body of my spirit; and man have I created after the body of my spirit; and even as I appear unto thee to be in the spirit will I appear unto my people in the flesh.

And now, as I, Moroni, said I could not make a full account of these things which are written, therefore it sufficeth me to say that Jesus showed himself unto this man in the spirit, even after the manner and in the likeness of the same body even as he showed himself unto the Nephites.

And he ministered unto him even as he ministered unto the Nephites; and all this, that this man might know that he was God, because of the many great works which the Lord had showed unto him.

And because of the knowledge of this man he could not be kept from beholding within the veil; and he saw the finger of Jesus, which, when he saw, he fell with fear; for he knew that it was the finger of the Lord; and he had faith no longer, for he knew, nothing doubting.

Wherefore, having this perfect knowledge of God, he could not be kept from within the veil; therefore he saw Jesus; and he did minister unto him.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt not suffer these things which ye have seen and heard to go forth unto the world, until the time cometh that I shall glorify my name in the flesh; wherefore, ye shall treasure up the things which ye have seen and heard, and show it to no man.

And behold, when ye shall come unto me, ye shall write them and shall seal them up, that no one can interpret them; for ye shall write them in a language that they cannot be read.

And behold, these two stones will I give unto thee, and ye shall seal them up also with the things which ye shall write.

For behold, the language which ye shall write I have confounded; wherefore I will cause in my own due time that these stones shall magnify to the eyes of men these things which ye shall write.

25 En toe die Here hierdie woorde gespreek het, het Hy aan die broer van Jared al die inwoners van die aarde getoon wat was, en ook almal wat sou wees; en Hy het hulle nie weerhou van sy sig, tot aan die einde van die aarde nie.

26 Want Hy het vantevore aan hom gesê, dat as hy in Hom sou glo dat Hy alle dinge aan hom kon toon—dit aan hom getoon sou word; daarom kon die Here niks van hom weerhou nie, want hy het geweet dat die Here hom alle dinge kon toon.

27 En die Here het vir hom gesê: Skryf hierdie dinge en verseël hulle; en Ek sal hulle in my eie bepaalde tyd aan die kinders van mense toon.

28 En dit het gebeur dat die Here hom gebied het dat hy die twee stene moes verseël wat hy ontvang het, en hulle nie toon nie, totdat die Here hulle sou toon aan die kinders van mense.

And when the Lord had said these words, he showed unto the brother of Jared all the inhabitants of the earth which had been, and also all that would be; and he withheld them not from his sight, even unto the ends of the earth.

For he had said unto him in times before, that if he would believe in him that he could show unto him all things—it should be shown unto him; therefore the Lord could not withhold anything from him, for he knew that the Lord could show him all things.

And the Lord said unto him: Write these things and seal them up; and I will show them in mine own due time unto the children of men.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that he should seal up the two stones which he had received, and show them not, until the Lord should show them unto the children of men.

Ether 4

- 1 En die Here het die broer van Jared gebied om af te gaan van die berg van die teenwoordigheid van die Here, en die dinge te skrywe wat hy gesien het; en hulle was verbied om na die kinders van mense te kom tot ná Hy opgehef sou word op die kruis; en om hierdie rede het koning Mosia hulle gehou, sodat hulle nie na die wêreld sou kom tot ná Christus Homself aan sy volk sou toon nie.
- 2 En nadat Christus Hom waarlik aan sy volk getoon het, het Hy gebied dat hulle openbaar gemaak moes word.
- 3 En nou, daarna, het hulle almal gekwyn in ongelooft; en daar is niemand behalwe vir die Lamaniete nie, en hulle het die evangelie van Christus verwerp, daarom word ek gebied dat ek hulle weer moet weg-bêre in die aarde.
- 4 Kyk, ek het op hierdie plate die juiste dinge geskryf wat die broer van Jared gesien het; en daar is nog nooit groter dinge geopenbaar as dié wat openbaar gemaak is aan die broer van Jared nie.
- 5 Daarom het die Here my gebied om hulle te skrywe; en ek het hulle geskrywe. En Hy het my gebied dat ek hulle moes verseël; en Hy het my ook gebied dat ek die vertolking daarvan moet verseël; daarom het ek die vertolkers verseël, volgens die gebod van die Here.
- 6 Want die Here het aan my gesê: Hulle sal nie uitgaan na die nie-Jode nie tot die dag dat hulle sal bekeer van hul ongeregtheid, en rein word voor die Here.
- 7 En in daardie dag dat hulle geloof sal beoefen in My, sê die Here, net soos die broer van Jared gedoen het, sodat hulle geheilig mag word in My, dan sal Ek aan hulle die dinge openbaar wat die broer van Jared gesien het, tot die ontvouing aan hulle van al my openbarings, sê Jesus Christus, die Seun van God, die Vader van die hemele en van die aarde, en alle dinge wat daarin is.
- 8 En hy wat wil stry teen die woord van die Here, laat hom vervloek wees; en hy wat hierdie dinge sal loën, laat hom vervloek wees; want aan hulle sal Ek geen groter dinge toon nie, sê Jesus Christus; want Ek is Hy wat spreek.

Ether 4

And the Lord commanded the brother of Jared to go down out of the mount from the presence of the Lord, and write the things which he had seen; and they were forbidden to come unto the children of men until after that he should be lifted up upon the cross; and for this cause did king Mosiah keep them, that they should not come unto the world until after Christ should show himself unto his people.

And after Christ truly had showed himself unto his people he commanded that they should be made manifest.

And now, after that, they have all dwindled in unbelief; and there is none save it be the Lamanites, and they have rejected the gospel of Christ; therefore I am commanded that I should hide them up again in the earth.

Behold, I have written upon these plates the very things which the brother of Jared saw; and there never were greater things made manifest than those which were made manifest unto the brother of Jared.

Wherefore the Lord hath commanded me to write them; and I have written them. And he commanded me that I should seal them up; and he also hath commanded that I should seal up the interpretation thereof; wherefore I have sealed up the interpreters, according to the commandment of the Lord.

For the Lord said unto me: They shall not go forth unto the Gentiles until the day that they shall repent of their iniquity, and become clean before the Lord.

And in that day that they shall exercise faith in me, saith the Lord, even as the brother of Jared did, that they may become sanctified in me, then will I manifest unto them the things which the brother of Jared saw, even to the unfolding unto them all my revelations, saith Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of the heavens and of the earth, and all things that in them are.

And he that will contend against the word of the Lord, let him be accursed; and he that shall deny these things, let him be accursed; for unto them will I show no greater things, saith Jesus Christ; for I am he who speaketh.

- 9 En op my bevel word die hemele geopen en word gesluit; en op my woord sal die aarde skud; en op my bevel sal die inwoners daarvan omkom, en wel soos deur vuur.
- 10 En hy wat nie my woorde glo nie, glo nie my dissipels nie; en as dit so is dat Ek nie spreek nie, oordeel julle; want julle sal weet dat dit Ek is wat spreek, op die laaste dag.
- 11 Maar hy wat hierdie dinge glo wat Ek gespreek het, hóm sal Ek besoek met openbarings van my Gees, en hy sal weet en getuienis lewer. Want vanweë my Gees sal hy weet dat hierdie dinge waar is; want dit oorreed mense om goed te doen.
- 12 En watter ding mense ook al oorreed om goed te doen, is van My; want die goeie kom van niemand nie behalwe van My. Ek is Hy wat die mense lei na alle goedheid; hy wat nie my woorde sal glo nie, sal My nie glo nie—dat Ek is; en hy wat My nie sal glo nie, sal nie die Vader glo wat My gestuur het nie. Want kyk, Ek is die Vader, Ek is die lig, en die lewe, en die waarheid van die wêreld.
- 13 Kom na My, o julle nie-Jode, en Ek sal aan julle die groter dinge toon, die kennis wat weggebêre is vanweë ongeloof.
- 14 Kom na My, o julle huis van Israel, en dit sal openbaar gemaak word aan julle watter groot dinge die Vader weggebêre het vir julle, vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld; en dit het nie na julle gekom nie, as gevolg van ongeloof.
- 15 Kyk, wanneer julle daardie sluier van ongeloof sal skeur wat julle in julle aaklige toestand van boosheid, en hardheid van hart, en blindheid van verstand laat bly, dan sal die groot en wonderbaarlike dinge wat verberg is van julle vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld—ja, wanneer julle die Vader sal aanroep in my Naam, met 'n gebroke hart en 'n verslae gees, dan sal julle weet dat die Vader die verbond onthou het wat Hy gesluit het met julle vaders, o huis van Israel.
- 16 En dan sal my openbarings wat Ek laat skryf het deur my dienskneg Johannes ontvou word voor die oë van die hele volk. Onthou, wanneer julle hierdie dinge sien, sal julle weet dat die tyd op hande is dat hulle in der waarheid openbaar gemaak sal word.

And at my command the heavens are opened and are shut; and at my word the earth shall shake; and at my command the inhabitants thereof shall pass away, even so as by fire.

And he that believeth not my words believeth not my disciples; and if it so be that I do not speak, judge ye; for ye shall know that it is I that speaketh, at the last day.

But he that believeth these things which I have spoken, him will I visit with the manifestations of my Spirit, and he shall know and bear record. For because of my Spirit he shall know that these things are true; for it persuadeth men to do good.

And whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do good is of me; for good cometh of none save it be of me. I am the same that leadeth men to all good; he that will not believe my words will not believe me—that I am; and he that will not believe me will not believe the Father who sent me. For behold, I am the Father, I am the light, and the life, and the truth of the world.

Come unto me, O ye Gentiles, and I will show unto you the greater things, the knowledge which is hid up because of unbelief.

Come unto me, O ye house of Israel, and it shall be made manifest unto you how great things the Father hath laid up for you, from the foundation of the world; and it hath not come unto you, because of unbelief.

Behold, when ye shall rend that veil of unbelief which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness, and hardness of heart, and blindness of mind, then shall the great and marvelous things which have been hid up from the foundation of the world from you—yea, when ye shall call upon the Father in my name, with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, then shall ye know that the Father hath remembered the covenant which he made unto your fathers, O house of Israel.

And then shall my revelations which I have caused to be written by my servant John be unfolded in the eyes of all the people. Remember, when ye see these things, ye shall know that the time is at hand that they shall be made manifest in very deed.

17 Daaron, wanneer julle hierdie kroniek sal ontvang, mag julle weet dat die werk van die Vader begin het op die hele aangesig van die land.

18 Daaron, bekeer al julle eindes van die aarde, en kom na My, en glo in my evangelie, en word gedoop in my Naam; want hy wat glo en gedoop word, sal gered word; maar hy wat nie glo nie, sal verdoem word; en tekens sal hulle volg wat in my Naam glo.

19 En geseënd is hy wat getrou bevind word aan my Naam op die laaste dag, want hy sal verhef word om te woon in die koninkryk wat vir hom berei is vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld. En kyk, dit is Ek wat dit gespreek het. Amen.

Therefore, when ye shall receive this record ye may know that the work of the Father has commenced upon all the face of the land.

Therefore, repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and believe in my gospel, and be baptized in my name; for he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned; and signs shall follow them that believe in my name.

And blessed is he that is found faithful unto my name at the last day, for he shall be lifted up to dwell in the kingdom prepared for him from the foundation of the world. And behold it is I that hath spoken it. Amen.

Ether 5

- 1 En nou ek, Moroni, het die woorde geskryf wat my gebied is, volgens my geheue; en ek het julle die dinge vertel wat ek verseël het; daarom raak hulle nie aan met die doel dat julle mag vertaal nie; want daardie ding is julle verbied, tensy dit weldra wysheid sal wees in God.
- 2 En kyk, jy mag bevoorreg wees dat jy die plate mag toon aan diegene wat sal help om hierdie werk te voorskyn te bring.
- 3 En aan drie sal hulle getoon word deur die krag van God; daarom sal hulle vir seker weet dat hierdie dinge waar is.
- 4 En in die mond van drie getuies sal hierdie dinge bevestig word; en die getuienis van drie, en hierdie werk, waarin die krag van God getoon sal word en ook sy woord, waarvan die Vader, en die Seun, en die Heilige Gees getuienis lewer—en dit alles sal staan as ’n getuienis teen die wêreld op die laaste dag.
- 5 En as dit so is dat hulle bekeer en kom na die Vader in die Naam van Jesus, sal hulle ontvang word in die koninkryk van God.
- 6 En nou, as ek geen gesag het aangaande hierdie dinge nie, oordeel julle; want julle sal weet dat ek gesag het wanneer julle my sal sien, en ons sal staan voor God op die laaste dag. Amen.

Ether 5

And now I, Moroni, have written the words which were commanded me, according to my memory; and I have told you the things which I have sealed up; therefore touch them not in order that ye may translate; for that thing is forbidden you, except by and by it shall be wisdom in God.

And behold, ye may be privileged that ye may show the plates unto those who shall assist to bring forth this work;

And unto three shall they be shown by the power of God; wherefore they shall know of a surety that these things are true.

And in the mouth of three witnesses shall these things be established; and the testimony of three, and this work, in the which shall be shown forth the power of God and also his word, of which the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost bear record—and all this shall stand as a testimony against the world at the last day.

And if it so be that they repent and come unto the Father in the name of Jesus, they shall be received into the kingdom of God.

And now, if I have no authority for these things, judge ye; for ye shall know that I have authority when ye shall see me, and we shall stand before God at the last day. Amen.

Ether 6

- 1 En nou ek, Moroni, gaan voort om die kroniek te gee van Jared en sy broer.
- 2 Want dit het gebeur nadat die Here die klippe berei het wat die broer van Jared na die berg opgedra het, het die broer van Jared afgekom van die berg en hy het die klippe geplaas in die vaartuie wat voorberei was, een aan elke punt daarvan; en kyk, hulle het lig gegee aan die vaartuie.
- 3 En so het die Here die klippe laat skyn in die donker, om lig te gee aan manne, vroue en kinders, sodat hulle nie die groot waters in die donker hoef oor te steek nie.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat toe hulle allerlei soorte voedsel voorberei het, sodat hulle daardeur mag bestaan op die water, en ook voedsel vir hulle kleinvee en grootvee, en watter soort vee of dier of voël wat hulle ook al met hulle sou saamneem—En dit het gebeur dat toe hulle hierdie dinge gedoen het, het hulle aan boord gegaan van hulle vaartuie of bote, en op die see uitgevaar, en het hulle hulself toevertrou aan die Here hulle God.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat die Here God 'n sterk wind laat waai het oor die aangesig van die waters, na die beloofde land; en so is hulle geslinger op die golwe van die see voor die wind.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat hulle baie keer begrawe is in die dieptes van die see, vanweë die bergagtige golwe wat oor hulle gebreek het, en ook die groot en verskriklike storms wat veroorsaak is deur die woestheid van die wind.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat toe hulle begrawe is in die dieptes, was daar geen water wat hulle kon skade aandoen nie, omdat hulle vaartuie so dig was soos 'n skottel, en ook hulle was dig soos die ark van Noag; daarom, toe hulle omgewe is deur die baie waters, het hulle tot die Here geroep, en Hy het hulle weer uitbring bo-op die waters.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat die wind nooit opgehou het om te waai na die beloofde land terwyl hulle op die waters was nie; en so is hulle voortgedrywe voor die wind.

Ether 6

And now I, Moroni, proceed to give the record of Jared and his brother.

For it came to pass after the Lord had prepared the stones which the brother of Jared had carried up into the mount, the brother of Jared came down out of the mount, and he did put forth the stones into the vessels which were prepared, one in each end thereof; and behold, they did give light unto the vessels.

And thus the Lord caused stones to shine in darkness, to give light unto men, women, and children, that they might not cross the great waters in darkness.

And it came to pass that when they had prepared all manner of food, that thereby they might subsist upon the water, and also food for their flocks and herds, and whatsoever beast or animal or fowl that they should carry with them—and it came to pass that when they had done all these things they got aboard of their vessels or barges, and set forth into the sea, commending themselves unto the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that the Lord God caused that there should be a furious wind blow upon the face of the waters, towards the promised land; and thus they were tossed upon the waves of the sea before the wind.

And it came to pass that they were many times buried in the depths of the sea, because of the mountain waves which broke upon them, and also the great and terrible tempests which were caused by the fierceness of the wind.

And it came to pass that when they were buried in the deep there was no water that could hurt them, their vessels being tight like unto a dish, and also they were tight like unto the ark of Noah; therefore when they were encompassed about by many waters they did cry unto the Lord, and he did bring them forth again upon the top of the waters.

And it came to pass that the wind did never cease to blow towards the promised land while they were upon the waters; and thus they were driven forth before the wind.

9 En hulle het lofliedere gesing tot die Here; ja, die broer van Jared het lofliedere gesing tot die Here, en hy het die Here gedank en geloof die hele dag lank; en toe dit nag word, het hulle nie opgehou om die Here te loof nie.

10 En so is hulle voortgedrywe; en geen monster van die see kon hulle breek nie, nóg walvis wat hulle kon skaad; en hulle het voortdurend lig gehad, hetsy dit bo-op die water was of onder die water.

11 En so is hulle voortgedrywe, driehonderd vier en veertig dae op die water.

12 En hulle het op die kus van die beloofde land geland. En toe hulle hul voete op die kus van die beloofde land gesit het, het hulle hulself neergebuig op die aangesig van die aarde, en hulle verootmoedig voor die Here, en trane van blydschap voor die Here gestort vanweë die menigvuldigheid van sy tere barmhartighede oor hulle.

13 En dit het gebeur dat hulle uitgegaan het oor die aangesig van die land, en begin het om die grond te bewerk.

14 En Jared het vier seuns gehad; en hulle is genoem Jacom, en Gilga, en Maha, en Oriha.

15 En die broer van Jared het ook seuns en dogters gehad.

16 En die vriende van Jared en sy broer was in getal omtrent twee en twintig siele; en hulle het ook seuns en dogters gehad voordat hulle na die beloofde land gekom het; en daarom het hulle begin om baie te word.

17 En hulle is geleer om voor die Here te wandel; en hulle is ook geleer van Omhoog.

18 En dit het gebeur dat hulle begin het om te versprei oor die aangesig van die land, en om te vermenigvuldig en die aarde te bewerk; en hulle het sterk geword in die land.

19 En die broer van Jared het begin om oud te word, en het gesien dat hy spoedig moes afgaan na die graf; daarom het hy aan Jared gesê: Laat ons ons volk bymekaarmaak sodat ons hulle mag tel, sodat ons van hulle kan verneem wat hulle van ons wil hê voordat ons afgaan na ons grafte.

And they did sing praises unto the Lord; yea, the brother of Jared did sing praises unto the Lord, and he did thank and praise the Lord all the day long; and when the night came, they did not cease to praise the Lord.

And thus they were driven forth; and no monster of the sea could break them, neither whale that could mar them; and they did have light continually, whether it was above the water or under the water.

And thus they were driven forth, three hundred and forty and four days upon the water.

And they did land upon the shore of the promised land. And when they had set their feet upon the shores of the promised land they bowed themselves down upon the face of the land, and did humble themselves before the Lord, and did shed tears of joy before the Lord, because of the multitude of his tender mercies over them.

And it came to pass that they went forth upon the face of the land, and began to till the earth.

And Jared had four sons; and they were called Jacom, and Gilgah, and Mahah, and Orihah.

And the brother of Jared also begat sons and daughters.

And the friends of Jared and his brother were in number about twenty and two souls; and they also begat sons and daughters before they came to the promised land; and therefore they began to be many.

And they were taught to walk humbly before the Lord; and they were also taught from on high.

And it came to pass that they began to spread upon the face of the land, and to multiply and to till the earth; and they did wax strong in the land.

And the brother of Jared began to be old, and saw that he must soon go down to the grave; wherefore he said unto Jared: Let us gather together our people that we may number them, that we may know of them what they will desire of us before we go down to our graves.

20 En dienooreenkomstig is die volk bymekaarge-
maak. Nou was die getal van die seuns en die dogters
van die broer van Jared twee en twintig siele; en die
getal seuns en dogters van Jared was twaalf, en hy
het vier seuns gehad.

21 En dit het gebeur dat hulle hul mense getel het; en
nadat hulle hul getel het, het hulle van hulle ver-
neem van dié dinge wat hulle wou hê hul moes doen
voordat hulle na hul grafte afgaan.

22 En dit het gebeur dat die volk hulle gevra het dat
hulle een van hul seuns moes salf om 'n koning te
wees oor hulle.

23 En nou kyk, dit was verontrustend vir hulle. En
die broer van Jared het aan hulle gesê: Waarlik, hier-
die ding lei tot slawerny.

24 Maar Jared het aan sy broer gesê: Laat hulle toe
dat hulle 'n koning mag hê. En daarom het hy aan
hulle gesê: Kies julle onder ons seuns 'n koning uit,
wie julle ook al wil.

25 En dit het gebeur dat hulle naamlik die eersgebo-
rene gekies het van die broer van Jared; en sy naam
was Pagag. En dit het gebeur dat hy geweier het en
wou nie hulle koning wees nie. En die volk wou hê
dat sy vader hom moes noop, maar sy vader wou nie;
en hy het hulle beveel dat hulle geen mens moes
noop om hulle koning te wees nie.

26 En dit het gebeur dat hulle al die broers van Pagag
gekies het, en hulle wou nie.

27 En dit het gebeur dat nie een van die seuns van
Jared wou nie, en wel almal behalwe een, en Oriha is
gesalf om koning te wees oor die volk.

28 En hy het begin om te heers, en die volk het begin
om voorspoedig te word; en hulle het uitermate ryk
geword.

29 En dit het gebeur dat Jared gesterf het, en ook sy
broer.

30 En dit het gebeur dat Oriha nederig gewandel het
voor die Here, en het onthou watter groot dinge die
Here vir sy vader gedoen het, en het ook sy volk ge-
leer watter groot dinge die Here vir hulle vaders ge-
doen het.

And accordingly the people were gathered to-
gether. Now the number of the sons and the daugh-
ters of the brother of Jared were twenty and two
souls; and the number of sons and daughters of
Jared were twelve, he having four sons.

And it came to pass that they did number their
people; and after that they had numbered them, they
did desire of them the things which they would that
they should do before they went down to their
graves.

And it came to pass that the people desired of them
that they should anoint one of their sons to be a king
over them.

And now behold, this was grievous unto them.
And the brother of Jared said unto them: Surely this
thing leadeth into captivity.

But Jared said unto his brother: Suffer them that
they may have a king. And therefore he said unto
them: Choose ye out from among our sons a king,
even whom ye will.

And it came to pass that they chose even the first-
born of the brother of Jared; and his name was
Pagag. And it came to pass that he refused and would
not be their king. And the people would that his fa-
ther should constrain him, but his father would not;
and he commanded them that they should constrain
no man to be their king.

And it came to pass that they chose all the brothers
of Pagag, and they would not.

And it came to pass that neither would the sons of
Jared, even all save it were one; and Orihah was
anointed to be king over the people.

And he began to reign, and the people began to
prosper; and they became exceedingly rich.

And it came to pass that Jared died, and his
brother also.

And it came to pass that Orihah did walk humbly
before the Lord, and did remember how great things
the Lord had done for his father, and also taught his
people how great things the Lord had done for their
fathers.

Ether 7

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat Oriha oordeel gevel het in regverdigheid oor die land al sy dae, wie se dae uitermate baie was.
- 2 En hy het seuns en dogters verwek; ja, hy het een en dertig verwek, waaronder drie en twintig seuns was.
- 3 En dit het gebeur dat hy ook Kib verwek het in sy oudag. En dit het gebeur dat Kib geheers het in sy plek; en Kib het Corihor verwek.
- 4 En toe Corihor twee en dertig jaar oud was, het hy gerebelleer teen sy vader, en het oorgegaan en gewoon in die land Nehor; en hy het seuns en dogters verwek, en hulle het uitermate mooi geword; daarom het Corihor baie mense weggelok agter hom aan.
- 5 En toe hy 'n leër versamel het, het hy opgekom na die land Moron, waar die koning gewoon het, en hom gevange geneem, wat die woord van die broer van Jared vervul het dat hulle na slawerny gebring sou word.
- 6 Nou die land Moron, waar die koning gewoon het, was naby die land wat Verlatenheid genoem is deur die Nefiete.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat Kib in slawerny gewoon het, en sy volk onder Corihor sy seun, totdat hy uitermate oud geword het; nogtans het Kib vir Sule verwek op sy oudag, terwyl hy nog in slawerny was.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat Sule toornig was op sy broer; en Sule het sterk geword, en het magtig geword volgens die krag van 'n man; en hy was ook magtig in oordeel.
- 9 Daarom, het hy by die heuwel Efraim gekom, en hy het uit die heuwel gesmelt, en het swaarde gemaak van staal vir diegene wat hy weggelok het saam met hom; en nadat hy hulle bewapen het met swaarde, het hy teruggekeer na die stad Nehor, en teen sy broer Corihor geveg, deur welke wyse hy die koninkryk verkry het, en het dit herstel aan sy vader Kib.
- 10 En nou vanweë die ding wat Sule gedoen het, het sy vader aan hom die koninkryk gegee; daarom het hy begin om te heers in die plek van sy vader.

Ether 7

And it came to pass that Orihah did execute judgment upon the land in righteousness all his days, whose days were exceedingly many.

And he begat sons and daughters; yea, he begat thirty and one, among whom were twenty and three sons.

And it came to pass that he also begat Kib in his old age. And it came to pass that Kib reigned in his stead; and Kib begat Corihor.

And when Corihor was thirty and two years old he rebelled against his father, and went over and dwelt in the land of Nehor; and he begat sons and daughters, and they became exceedingly fair; wherefore Corihor drew away many people after him.

And when he had gathered together an army he came up unto the land of Moron where the king dwelt, and took him captive, which brought to pass the saying of the brother of Jared that they would be brought into captivity.

Now the land of Moron, where the king dwelt, was near the land which is called Desolation by the Nephites.

And it came to pass that Kib dwelt in captivity, and his people under Corihor his son, until he became exceedingly old; nevertheless Kib begat Shule in his old age, while he was yet in captivity.

And it came to pass that Shule was angry with his brother; and Shule waxed strong, and became mighty as to the strength of a man; and he was also mighty in judgment.

Wherefore, he came to the hill Ephraim, and he did molten out of the hill, and made swords out of steel for those whom he had drawn away with him; and after he had armed them with swords he returned to the city Nehor, and gave battle unto his brother Corihor, by which means he obtained the kingdom and restored it unto his father Kib.

And now because of the thing which Shule had done, his father bestowed upon him the kingdom; therefore he began to reign in the stead of his father.

11 En dit het gebeur dat hy oordeel gevel het in reg-
verdigheid; en hy het sy koninkryk versprei oor die
hele aangesig van die land, want die mense het uiter-
mate talryk geword.

12 En dit het gebeur dat Sule ook baie seuns en dog-
ters verwek het.

13 En Corihor het bekeer van die baie booshede wat
hy gedoen het; daarom het Sule hom mag gegee in sy
koninkryk.

14 En dit het gebeur dat Corihor baie seuns en dog-
ters gehad het. En onder die seuns van Corihor was
daar een wie se naam Noag was.

15 En dit het gebeur dat Noag gerebelleer het teen
Sule, die koning, en ook sy vader, Corihor, en Cohor
sy broer weggeklok het, en ook al sy broers en baie
van die volk.

16 En hy het vir Sule, die koning, die stryd aangesê,
waardeur hy besit van die land van hulle eerste erfe-
nis verkry het; en hy het 'n koning geword oor daar-
die deel van die land.

17 En dit het gebeur dat hy weer vir Sule, die koning,
die stryd aangesê het; en hy het Sule, die koning, ge-
neem, hom gevang en weggevoer na Moron.

18 En dit het gebeur toe hy op die punt was om hom
dood te maak, het die seuns van Sule gedurende die
nag Noag se huis binnegesluit en hom gedood, en
die deur van die gevangenis afgebreek en hulle vader
uitgebring, en hom op sy troon geplaas in sy eie ko-
ninkryk.

19 Daarom, die seun van Noag het sy koninkryk op-
gebou in sy plek; nogtans het hulle nie meer mag ge-
kry oor Sule die koning nie, en die volk wat onder die
regering van Sule die koning was, het uitermate
voorspoedig en groot geword.

20 En die land was verdeel; en daar was twee konink-
ryke, die koninkryk van Sule, en die koninkryk van
Cohor, die seun van Noag.

21 En Cohor, die seun van Noag, het sy volk vir Sule
die stryd laat aansê, waarin Sule hulle verslaan het
en Cohor gedood het.

And it came to pass that he did execute judgment
in righteousness; and he did spread his kingdom
upon all the face of the land, for the people had be-
come exceedingly numerous.

And it came to pass that Shule also begat many
sons and daughters.

And Corihor repented of the many evils which he
had done; wherefore Shule gave him power in his
kingdom.

And it came to pass that Corihor had many sons
and daughters. And among the sons of Corihor there
was one whose name was Noah.

And it came to pass that Noah rebelled against
Shule, the king, and also his father Corihor, and
drew away Cohor his brother, and also all his
brethren and many of the people.

And he gave battle unto Shule, the king, in which
he did obtain the land of their first inheritance; and
he became a king over that part of the land.

And it came to pass that he gave battle again unto
Shule, the king; and he took Shule, the king, and
carried him away captive into Moron.

And it came to pass as he was about to put him to
death, the sons of Shule crept into the house of Noah
by night and slew him, and broke down the door of
the prison and brought out their father, and placed
him upon his throne in his own kingdom.

Wherefore, the son of Noah did build up his king-
dom in his stead; nevertheless they did not gain
power any more over Shule the king, and the people
who were under the reign of Shule the king did pros-
per exceedingly and wax great.

And the country was divided; and there were two
kingdoms, the kingdom of Shule, and the kingdom
of Cohor, the son of Noah.

And Cohor, the son of Noah, caused that his peo-
ple should give battle unto Shule, in which Shule did
beat them and did slay Cohor.

- 22 En nou Cohor het 'n seun gehad wat genoem was Nimrod; en Nimrod het die koninkryk van Cohor oorgegee aan Sule, en hy het guns verkry in die oë van Sule; daarom het Sule baie gunste aan hom bewys, en hy het gedoen in die koninkryk van Sule volgens sy begeertes.
- 23 En ook gedurende die heerskappy van Sule het daar profete gekom onder die volk wat gestuur is deur die Here, wat geprofeteer het dat die boosheid en afgodery van die volk 'n vloek gebring het oor die land, en hulle vernietig moes word as hulle nie sou bekeer nie.
- 24 En dit het gebeur dat die volk die profete beledig en hulle bespot het. En dit het gebeur dat koning Sule oordeel gevel het teen al diegene wat die profete beledig het.
- 25 En hy het 'n wet dwarsdeur die land uitgevaardig wat mag gegee het aan die profete dat hulle kon gaan waar hulle ook al wou; en vanweë hiervan is die volk tot bekering gebring.
- 26 En omdat die volk bekeer het van hul ongeregtighede en afgoderye het die Here hulle gespaar, en hulle het weer begin om voorspoedig te wees in die land. En dit het gebeur dat Sule seuns en dogters verwek het op sy oudag.
- 27 En daar was nie meer oorloë in die dae van Sule nie; en hy het die groot dinge wat die Here vir sy vaders gedoen het onthou deur hulle oor die groot dieptes na die beloofde land te bring; daarom het hy oordeel gevel in regverdigheid al sy dae.

And now Cohor had a son who was called Nimrod; and Nimrod gave up the kingdom of Cohor unto Shule, and he did gain favor in the eyes of Shule; wherefore Shule did bestow great favors upon him, and he did do in the kingdom of Shule according to his desires.

And also in the reign of Shule there came prophets among the people, who were sent from the Lord, prophesying that the wickedness and idolatry of the people was bringing a curse upon the land, and they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

And it came to pass that the people did revile against the prophets, and did mock them. And it came to pass that king Shule did execute judgment against all those who did revile against the prophets.

And he did execute a law throughout all the land, which gave power unto the prophets that they should go whithersoever they would; and by this cause the people were brought unto repentance.

And because the people did repent of their iniquities and idolatries the Lord did spare them, and they began to prosper again in the land. And it came to pass that Shule begat sons and daughters in his old age.

And there were no more wars in the days of Shule; and he remembered the great things that the Lord had done for his fathers in bringing them across the great deep into the promised land; wherefore he did execute judgment in righteousness all his days.

Ether 8

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat hy Omer verwek het, en Omer het in sy plek geheers. En Omer het Jered verwek; en Jered het seuns en dogters verwek.
- 2 En Jered het gerebelleer teen sy vader, en het gekom en in die land Het gewoon. En dit het gebeur dat hy baie mense gevei het, as gevolg van sy sluwe woorde, totdat hy die helfte van die koninkryk verkry het.
- 3 En toe hy die helfte van die koninkryk verkry het, het hy sy vader die stryd aangesê, en hy het sy vader weggevoer in slawerny, en hom maak dien in slawerny;
- 4 En nou, in die dae van die heerskappy van Omer was hy in slawerny die helfte van sy dae. En dit het gebeur dat hy seuns en dogters verwek het, onder wie Esrom en Coriantumr was.
- 5 En hulle was uitermate toornig vanweë die doernighede van Jered hul broer, in soverre dat hulle 'n leër op die been gebring het en vir Jered die stryd aangesê het. En dit het gebeur dat hulle hom die stryd aangesê het in die nag.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat toe hulle die leër van Jered doodgemaak het, was hulle op die punt om hom ook dood te maak; en hy het gepleit by hulle dat hulle hom nie moes doodmaak nie, en hy sou die koninkryk afstaan aan sy vader. En dit het gebeur dat hulle hom sy lewe gegun het.
- 7 En nou het Jered uitermate bedroef geword vanweë die verlies van die koninkryk, want hy het sy hart gestel op die koninkryk en op die eer van die wêreld.
- 8 Nou was die dogter van Jered uitermate skrande en omdat sy die droefhede van haar vader gesien het, het sy gedink om 'n plan te beraam waardeur sy die koninkryk aan haar vader kon herstel.
- 9 Nou, die dogter van Jered was uitermate mooi. En dit het gebeur dat sy met haar vader gespreek het, en aan hom gesê het: Waarom het my vader soveel droefheid? Het hy nie die kroniek gelees wat ons vaders gebring het oor die groot diepte nie? Kyk, is daar nie 'n verslag aangaande hulle van ouds, dat hulle deur hul geheime planne koninkryke verkry het en groot eer nie?

Ether 8

And it came to pass that he begat Omer, and Omer reigned in his stead. And Omer begat Jared; and Jared begat sons and daughters.

And Jared rebelled against his father, and came and dwelt in the land of Heth. And it came to pass that he did flatter many people, because of his cunning words, until he had gained the half of the kingdom.

And when he had gained the half of the kingdom he gave battle unto his father, and he did carry away his father into captivity, and did make him serve in captivity;

And now, in the days of the reign of Omer he was in captivity the half of his days. And it came to pass that he begat sons and daughters, among whom were Esrom and Coriantumr;

And they were exceedingly angry because of the doings of Jared their brother, insomuch that they did raise an army and gave battle unto Jared. And it came to pass that they did give battle unto him by night.

And it came to pass that when they had slain the army of Jared they were about to slay him also; and he pled with them that they would not slay him, and he would give up the kingdom unto his father. And it came to pass that they did grant unto him his life.

And now Jared became exceedingly sorrowful because of the loss of the kingdom, for he had set his heart upon the kingdom and upon the glory of the world.

Now the daughter of Jared being exceedingly expert, and seeing the sorrows of her father, thought to devise a plan whereby she could redeem the kingdom unto her father.

Now the daughter of Jared was exceedingly fair. And it came to pass that she did talk with her father, and said unto him: Whereby hath my father so much sorrow? Hath he not read the record which our fathers brought across the great deep? Behold, is there not an account concerning them of old, that they by their secret plans did obtain kingdoms and great glory?

- 10 En nou, daarom, laat my vader vir Akis laat haal, die seun van Kimnor; en kyk, ek is mooi, en ek sal voor hom dans, en ek sal hom behaag, sodat hy my sal begeer tot vrou; daarom, as hy van u wil hê dat u aan hom my tot vrou sal gee, dan sal u sê: Ek sal haar gee as jy vir my die hoof sal bring van my vader, die koning.
- 11 En nou, Omer was 'n vriend van Akis; daarom, toe Jared vir Akis laat haal het, het die dogter van Jared voor hom gedans sodat sy hom behaag het, in soverre dat hy haar begeer het tot vrou. En dit het gebeur dat hy aan Jared gesê het: Gee haar vir my tot vrou.
- 12 En Jared het aan hom gesê: Ek sal haar vir jou gee, as jy vir my die hoof sal bring van my vader, die koning.
- 13 En dit het gebeur dat Akis in die huis van Jared al sy verwante bymekaar gebring het, en aan hulle gesê het: Sal julle vir my sweer dat julle getrou sal wees aan my in die ding wat ek van julle sal begeer?
- 14 En dit het gebeur dat hulle almal vir hom gesweer het, by die God van die hemel, en ook by die hemele, en ook by die aarde, en by hulle hoofde, dat wie ook al sou afwyk van die hulp wat Akis begeer het, sy kop sou verloor; en wie ook al sou onthul wat Akis ook al aan hulle bekendgemaak het, sou sy lewe verloor.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat hulle só met Akis ooreengekom het. En Akis het hulle die ede laat aflê wat gegee is deur hulle van ouds wat ook na mag gesoek het, wat oorgelewer is en wel vanaf Kain, wat 'n moordenaar was vanaf die begin.
- 16 En hulle is in stand gehou deur die mag van die duiwel om hierdie ede deur die volk te laat aflê, om hulle in duisternis te hou, om diesulkes te help wat gesoek het om mag te verkry, en om te moor, en om te plunder, en om te lieg, en om allerlei booshede en hoererye te pleeg.
- 17 En dit was die dogter van Jared wat dit in sy hart gelê het om hierdie dinge van ouds op te soek; en Jared het dit in die hart van Akis gelê; daarom, Akis het dit deur sy verwante en vriende laat aflê; en hulle weggelei deur mooi beloftes om te doen wat hy ook al wou hê.

And now, therefore, let my father send for Akish, the son of Kimnor; and behold, I am fair, and I will dance before him, and I will please him, that he will desire me to wife; wherefore if he shall desire of thee that ye shall give unto him me to wife, then shall ye say: I will give her if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.

And now Omer was a friend to Akish; wherefore, when Jared had sent for Akish, the daughter of Jared danced before him that she pleased him, insomuch that he desired her to wife. And it came to pass that he said unto Jared: Give her unto me to wife.

And Jared said unto him: I will give her unto you, if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.

And it came to pass that Akish gathered in unto the house of Jared all his kinsfolk, and said unto them: Will ye swear unto me that ye will be faithful unto me in the thing which I shall desire of you?

And it came to pass that they all swore unto him, by the God of heaven, and also by the heavens, and also by the earth, and by their heads, that whoso should vary from the assistance which Akish desired should lose his head; and whoso should divulge whatsoever thing Akish made known unto them, the same should lose his life.

And it came to pass that thus they did agree with Akish. And Akish did administer unto them the oaths which were given by them of old who also sought power, which had been handed down even from Cain, who was a murderer from the beginning.

And they were kept up by the power of the devil to administer these oaths unto the people, to keep them in darkness, to help such as sought power to gain power, and to murder, and to plunder, and to lie, and to commit all manner of wickedness and whoredoms.

And it was the daughter of Jared who put it into his heart to search up these things of old; and Jared put it into the heart of Akish; wherefore, Akish administered it unto his kindred and friends, leading them away by fair promises to do whatsoever thing he desired.

- 18 En dit het gebeur dat hulle 'n geheime organisasie gevorm het, net soos hulle van ouds, welke organisasie die gruwelikste en boosste is bo alles in die oë van God;
- 19 Want die Here werk nie deur geheime organisasies nie, nóg gebied Hy dat die mens bloed moet vergiet, maar het in alle dinge dit verbied, vanaf die begin van die mens.
- 20 En nou, ek, Moroni, skryf nie die aard van hulle e-de en organisasies nie, want dit is aan my bekendgemaak dat hulle onder alle volke te vinde is, en hulle is te vinde onder die Lamaniete.
- 21 En hulle het die vernietiging veroorsaak van hierdie volk van wie ek nou spreek, en ook die vernietiging van die volk van Nefi.
- 22 En watter nasie ook al sulke geheime organisasies sal ondersteun, om mag en gewin te verkry, totdat hulle sal versprei oor die nasie, kyk, hulle sal vernietig word; want die Here sal nie toelaat dat die bloed van sy heiliges, wat vergiet sal word deur hulle, altyd tot Hom sal roep vanaf die grond om wraak oor hulle en nogtans wreek Hy hulle nie.
- 23 Daarom, o julle nie-Jode, dit is wysheid in God dat hierdie dinge aan julle getoon moet word, sodat julle daardeur mag bekeer van julle sondes, en nie toelaat dat hierdie moorddadige organisasies oor julle sal kom, wat opgebou is om mag en gewin te verkry nie—en die werk, ja, en wel die werk van vernietiging kom op julle, ja, en wel die swaard van die geregtigheid van die Ewige God sal op julle val, tot julle ondergang en vernietiging as julle sal toelaat dat hierdie dinge gebeur.
- 24 Daarom, die Here gebied julle, wanneer julle hierdie dinge onder julle sal sien kom, dat julle sal ontwaak tot 'n besef van julle vreeslike toestand, vanwege hierdie geheime organisasie wat onder julle sal wees; of wee daaroor vanwege die bloed van hulle wat gedood is; want hulle roep uit die stof om wraak daaroor, en ook oor hulle wat dit opgebou het.

And it came to pass that they formed a secret combination, even as they of old; which combination is most abominable and wicked above all, in the sight of God;

For the Lord worketh not in secret combinations, neither doth he will that man should shed blood, but in all things hath forbidden it, from the beginning of man.

And now I, Moroni, do not write the manner of their oaths and combinations, for it hath been made known unto me that they are had among all people, and they are had among the Lamanites.

And they have caused the destruction of this people of whom I am now speaking, and also the destruction of the people of Nephi.

And whatsoever nation shall uphold such secret combinations, to get power and gain, until they shall spread over the nation, behold, they shall be destroyed; for the Lord will not suffer that the blood of his saints, which shall be shed by them, shall always cry unto him from the ground for vengeance upon them and yet he avenge them not.

Wherefore, O ye Gentiles, it is wisdom in God that these things should be shown unto you, that thereby ye may repent of your sins, and suffer not that these murderous combinations shall get above you, which are built up to get power and gain—and the work, yea, even the work of destruction come upon you, yea, even the sword of the justice of the Eternal God shall fall upon you, to your overthrow and destruction if ye shall suffer these things to be.

Wherefore, the Lord commandeth you, when ye shall see these things come among you that ye shall awake to a sense of your awful situation, because of this secret combination which shall be among you; or wo be unto it, because of the blood of them who have been slain; for they cry from the dust for vengeance upon it, and also upon those who built it up.

25 Want dit gebeur dat wie ook al dit opbou, soek om die vryheid van alle lande omver te werp, nasies en streke; en dit bring die vernietiging van alle volke te weeg, want dit is opgebou deur die duiwel, wat die vader is van alle leuens; en wel daardie selfde leuenaar wat ons eerste ouers bedrieg het, ja, en wel daardie selfde leuenaar wat die mens laat moord pleeg het vanaf die begin, wat die harte van mense verhard het sodat hulle die profete vermoor het, en hulle gestenig het, en hulle uitgewerp het vanaf die begin.

26 Daarom, ek, Moroni, word gebied om hierdie dinge te skrywe sodat die bose weggedoen mag word, en sodat die tyd mag kom dat Satan geen mag sal hê oor die harte van die kinders van mense nie, maar dat hulle oorreed mag word om gedurigdeur goed te doen, sodat hulle mag kom na die fontein van alle regverdigheid en gered word.

For it cometh to pass that whoso buildeth it up seeketh to overthrow the freedom of all lands, nations, and countries; and it bringeth to pass the destruction of all people, for it is built up by the devil, who is the father of all lies; even that same liar who beguiled our first parents, yea, even that same liar who hath caused man to commit murder from the beginning; who hath hardened the hearts of men that they have murdered the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out from the beginning.

Wherefore, I, Moroni, am commanded to write these things that evil may be done away, and that the time may come that Satan may have no power upon the hearts of the children of men, but that they may be persuaded to do good continually, that they may come unto the fountain of all righteousness and be saved.

Ether 9

- 1 En nou gaan ek, Moroni, voort met my kroniek. Daarom, kyk, dit het gebeur dat as gevolg van die geheime organisasies van Akis en sy vriende, kyk, het hulle die koninkryk van Omer omvergewerp.
- 2 Nogtans, die Here was barmhartig teenoor Omer, en ook jeens sy seuns en jeens sy dogters wat nie sy vernietiging gesoek het nie.
- 3 En die Here het vir Omer gewaarsku in 'n droom dat hy moes vertrek uit die land; daarom het Omer vertrek uit die land met sy gesin, en het baie dae gereis, en het oorgekom en verby die heuwel van Sim gekom, en het oorgekom by die plek waar die Nefiete vernietig was, en vandaar af ooswaarts, en het by 'n plek gekom wat Ablom genoem is, aan die seekus, en daar het hy sy tent opgeslaan, en ook sy seuns en sy dogters, en sy hele huishouding, behalwe Jared en sy gesin.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat Jared as koning gesalf is oor die volk, deur die hand van boosheid; en hy het vir Akis sy dogter as vrou gegee.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat Akis die lewe gesoek het van sy skoonvader; en hy het by diegene aangeklop wat hy die eed van die mense van die voortyd laat sweer het, en hulle het die hoof van sy skoonvader verkry, terwyl hy op sy troon gesit het, terwyl hy sy volk te woord gestaan het.
- 6 Want so groot was die verspreiding van hierdie goddelose en geheime organisasie, dat dit die harte verlei het van die hele volk; daarom is Jared vermoor op sy troon en Akis het in sy plek geheers.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat Akis jaloers geword het op sy seun, daarom het hy hom toegesluit in die gevangenis, en hom op min of geen kos gehou totdat hy die dood gely het.
- 8 En nou, die broer van die een wat die dood gely het (en sy naam was Nimra) was toornig op sy vader oor dit wat sy vader aan sy broer gedoen het.
- 9 En dit het gebeur dat Nimra 'n klein getal manne bymekaargemaak het, en gevlug het uit die land, en oorgekom en by Omer gebly het.

Ether 9

And now I, Moroni, proceed with my record. Therefore, behold, it came to pass that because of the secret combinations of Akish and his friends, behold, they did overthrow the kingdom of Omer.

Nevertheless, the Lord was merciful unto Omer, and also to his sons and to his daughters who did not seek his destruction.

And the Lord warned Omer in a dream that he should depart out of the land; wherefore Omer departed out of the land with his family, and traveled many days, and came over and passed by the hill of Shim, and came over by the place where the Nephites were destroyed, and from thence eastward, and came to a place which was called Ablom, by the seashore, and there he pitched his tent, and also his sons and his daughters, and all his household, save it were Jared and his family.

And it came to pass that Jared was anointed king over the people, by the hand of wickedness; and he gave unto Akish his daughter to wife.

And it came to pass that Akish sought the life of his father-in-law; and he applied unto those whom he had sworn by the oath of the ancients, and they obtained the head of his father-in-law, as he sat upon his throne, giving audience to his people.

For so great had been the spreading of this wicked and secret society that it had corrupted the hearts of all the people; therefore Jared was murdered upon his throne, and Akish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Akish began to be jealous of his son, therefore he shut him up in prison, and kept him upon little or no food until he had suffered death.

And now the brother of him that suffered death, (and his name was Nimrah) was angry with his father because of that which his father had done unto his brother.

And it came to pass that Nimrah gathered together a small number of men, and fled out of the land, and came over and dwelt with Omer.

10 En dit het gebeur dat Akis ander seuns verwek het, en hulle het die harte van die volk gewen, nie teenstaande hulle tot hom gesweer het om allerlei ongeregtighede te doen volgens dit wat hy verlang het.

11 Nou was die volk van Akis begerig om gewin te verkry, net soos Akis begerig was om mag; daarom, die seuns van Akis het vir hulle geld aangebied, waardeur hulle die grootste deel van die volk aangelok het agter hulle aan.

12 En daar het 'n oorlog begin tussen die seuns van Akis en Akis, wat vir 'n tydperk van baie jare geduur het, ja, tot die vernietiging van byna al die mense in die koninkryk, ja, en wel almal behalwe dertig siele, en hulle wat gevlug het met die huis van Omer.

13 Daarom, Omer is weer herstel in die land van sy erfenis.

14 En dit het gebeur dat Omer oud begin word het; nogtans, in sy hoë ouderdom het hy Emer verwek; en hy het vir Emer gesalf om koning te wees om in sy plek te heers.

15 En nadat hy Emer as koning gesalf het, het hy vrede in die land gesien vir 'n tydperk van twee jaar, en hy het gesterf, nadat hy uitermate baie dae gesien het, wat vol droefheid was. En dit het gebeur dat Emer in sy plek geheers het, en die voetspore van sy vader gevolg het.

16 En die Here het weer begin om die vloek van die land weg te neem, en die huis van Emer het uitermate voorspoedig geword onder die heerskappy van Emer; en binne 'n tydperk van twee en sestig jaar het hulle uitermate sterk geword, tot so 'n mate dat hulle baie ryk geword het—

17 En hulle het alle soorte vrugte gehad, en graan, en sistowwe, en fyn linne, en goud, en silwer en kosbare dinge;

18 En ook allerlei soorte vee, osse, en koeie, en skape, en varke, en bokke en ook baie ander soorte diere wat nuttig was as voedsel vir die mens.

19 En hulle het ook perde gehad, en esels, en daar was olifante en kureloms en kumoms; almal wat nuttig was vir die mens, en meer spesifiek die olifante en die kureloms en kumoms.

And it came to pass that Akish begat other sons, and they won the hearts of the people, notwithstanding they had sworn unto him to do all manner of iniquity according to that which he desired.

Now the people of Akish were desirous for gain, even as Akish was desirous for power; wherefore, the sons of Akish did offer them money, by which means they drew away the more part of the people after them.

And there began to be a war between the sons of Akish and Akish, which lasted for the space of many years, yea, unto the destruction of nearly all the people of the kingdom, yea, even all, save it were thirty souls, and they who fled with the house of Omer.

Wherefore, Omer was restored again to the land of his inheritance.

And it came to pass that Omer began to be old; nevertheless, in his old age he begat Emer; and he anointed Emer to be king to reign in his stead.

And after that he had anointed Emer to be king he saw peace in the land for the space of two years, and he died, having seen exceedingly many days, which were full of sorrow. And it came to pass that Emer did reign in his stead, and did fill the steps of his father.

And the Lord began again to take the curse from off the land, and the house of Emer did prosper exceedingly under the reign of Emer; and in the space of sixty and two years they had become exceedingly strong, insomuch that they became exceedingly rich—

Having all manner of fruit, and of grain, and of silks, and of fine linen, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things;

And also all manner of cattle, of oxen, and cows, and of sheep, and of swine, and of goats, and also many other kinds of animals which were useful for the food of man.

And they also had horses, and asses, and there were elephants and cureloms and cumoms; all of which were useful unto man, and more especially the elephants and cureloms and cumoms.

20 En so het die Here sy seëninge uitgestort oor hierdie land, wat uitverkore was bo alle ander lande; en Hy het gebied dat wie ook al die land sou besit, dit sou besit tot die Here, of hulle sou vernietig word wanneer hulle ryp geword het in ongeregtheid; want oor diesulkes, sê die Here: Ek sal die volheid van my toorn uitstort.

21 En Emer het in regverdigheid oordeel gevel al sy dae, en hy het baie seuns en dogters verwek; en hy het Coriantum verwek, en hy het vir Coriantum gesalf om in sy plek te heers.

22 En nadat hy vir Coriantum gesalf het om in sy plek te heers, het hy vier jaar gelewe, en hy het vrede gesien in die land; ja, en hy het selfs die Seun van Regverdigheid gesien, en het hom verheug en geroem in sy dag; en hy het in vrede gesterf.

23 En dit het gebeur dat Coriantum gewandel het in die voetspore van sy vader, en het baie magtige stede gebou, en het dit voorsien wat goed was vir sy volk in al sy dae. En dit het gebeur dat hy geen kinders gehad het nie, totdat hy uitermate oud was.

24 En dit het gebeur dat sy vrou gesterwe het toe sy een honderd en twee jaar oud was. En dit het gebeur dat Coriantum vir hom 'n vrou geneem het, op sy oudag, 'n jong meisie, en het seuns en dogters verwek; daarom het hy gelewe tot hy honderd twee en veertig jaar oud was.

25 En dit het gebeur dat hy Com verwek het, en Com het in sy plek geheers; en hy het nege en veertig jaar geheers, en hy het Het verwek; en hy het ook ander seuns en dogters verwek.

26 En die volk het weer oor die hele aangesig van die land versprei, en daar het weer 'n uitermate groot boosheid begin wees oor die aangesig van die land, en Het het weer begin om die geheime planne van ouds aan te neem, om sy vader te vernietig.

27 En dit het gebeur dat hy sy vader onttroon het, want hy het hom gedood met sy eie swaard; en hy het in sy plek heers.

28 En daar het weer profete in die land gekom, en bekering tot hulle geroep—dat hulle die weg van die Here moes berei, of daar sou 'n vloek kom oor die aangesig van die land; ja, daar sou naamlik 'n groot hongersnood wees, waardeur hulle vernietig sou word as hulle nie bekeer nie.

And thus the Lord did pour out his blessings upon this land, which was choice above all other lands; and he commanded that whoso should possess the land should possess it unto the Lord, or they should be destroyed when they were ripened in iniquity; for upon such, saith the Lord: I will pour out the fulness of my wrath.

And Emer did execute judgment in righteousness all his days, and he begat many sons and daughters; and he begat Coriantum, and he anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead.

And after he had anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead he lived four years, and he saw peace in the land; yea, and he even saw the Son of Righteousness, and did rejoice and glory in his day; and he died in peace.

And it came to pass that Coriantum did walk in the steps of his father, and did build many mighty cities, and did administer that which was good unto his people in all his days. And it came to pass that he had no children even until he was exceedingly old.

And it came to pass that his wife died, being an hundred and two years old. And it came to pass that Coriantum took to wife, in his old age, a young maid, and begat sons and daughters; wherefore he lived until he was an hundred and forty and two years old.

And it came to pass that he begat Com, and Com reigned in his stead; and he reigned forty and nine years, and he begat Heth; and he also begat other sons and daughters.

And the people had spread again over all the face of the land, and there began again to be an exceedingly great wickedness upon the face of the land, and Heth began to embrace the secret plans again of old, to destroy his father.

And it came to pass that he did dethrone his father, for he slew him with his own sword; and he did reign in his stead.

And there came prophets in the land again, crying repentance unto them—that they must prepare the way of the Lord or there should come a curse upon the face of the land; yea, even there should be a great famine, in which they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

- 29 Maar die volk het nie die woorde geglo van die profete nie, maar hulle het hulle uitgewerp; en sommige van hulle het hulle in putte gegooi en hulle gelaat om te vergaan. En dit het gebeur dat hulle al hierdie dinge gedoen het volgens die bevel van die koning, Heth.
- 30 En dit het gebeur dat daar 'n groot hongersnood begin kom het oor die land, en die inwoners het begin om uitermate gou vernietig te word vanweë die hongersnood, want daar was geen reën op die aangesig van die aarde nie.
- 31 En daar het giftige slange uitgekam ook op die aangesig van die land, en het baie mense vergiftig. En dit het gebeur dat hulle kuddes begin het om te vlug voor die giftige slange na die land suidwaarts, wat genoem is deur die Nefiete, Zarahemla.
- 32 En dit het gebeur dat daar baie van hulle was wat omgekam het langs die pad; nogtans, daar was sommige wat gevlug het na die land suidwaarts.
- 33 En dit het gebeur dat die Here die slange hulle nie meer laat agtervolg het nie, maar dat hulle die pad moes versper sodat die volk nie kon verbygaan nie, sodat wie ook al sou probeer om verby te kom, mag beswyk as gevolg van die giftige slange.
- 34 En dit het gebeur dat die volk die spoor van die diere gevolg het, en die karkasse verorber het van hulle wat langs die pad omgekam het, totdat hulle hul almal verorber het. Nou toe die volk sien dat hulle moes vergaan, het hulle begin om te bekeer van hulle ongeregtighede en tot die Here te roep.
- 35 En dit het gebeur dat toe hulle hul voldoende vrotmoedig het voor die Here, het Hy reën gestuur oor die aangesig van die aarde; en die volk het weer begin om te herlewe, en daar het begin om vrugte te wees in die noordelike lande, en in al die lande rondomheen. En die Here het sy krag getoon aan hulle deur hulle te bewaar van hongersnood.

But the people believed not the words of the prophets, but they cast them out; and some of them they cast into pits and left them to perish. And it came to pass that they did all these things according to the commandment of the king, Heth.

And it came to pass that there began to be a great dearth upon the land, and the inhabitants began to be destroyed exceedingly fast because of the dearth, for there was no rain upon the face of the earth.

And there came forth poisonous serpents also upon the face of the land, and did poison many people. And it came to pass that their flocks began to flee before the poisonous serpents, towards the land southward, which was called by the Nephites Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that there were many of them which did perish by the way; nevertheless, there were some which fled into the land southward.

And it came to pass that the Lord did cause the serpents that they should pursue them no more, but that they should hedge up the way that the people could not pass, that whoso should attempt to pass might fall by the poisonous serpents.

And it came to pass that the people did follow the course of the beasts, and did devour the carcasses of them which fell by the way, until they had devoured them all. Now when the people saw that they must perish they began to repent of their iniquities and cry unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that when they had humbled themselves sufficiently before the Lord he did send rain upon the face of the earth; and the people began to revive again, and there began to be fruit in the north countries, and in all the countries round about. And the Lord did show forth his power unto them in preserving them from famine.

Ether 10

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat Sez, wat 'n afstammeling was van Het—want Het het omgekome deur die hongersnood, en sy hele huishouding, behalwe Sez—daarom het Sez weer begin om 'n gebroke volk op te bou.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat Sez die vernietiging van sy vaders onthou het, en hy het 'n regverdige koninkryk opgebou; want hy het onthou wat die Here gedoen het toe Hy Jared en sy broer oor die dieptes gebring het; en hy het in die weë van die Here gewandel; en hy het seuns en dogters verwek.
- 3 En sy oudste seun, wie se naam Sez was, het teen hom gerebelleer; nogtans, Sez is getref deur die hand van 'n rower, vanweë sy uitermate rykdomme, wat weer vrede gebring het vir sy vader.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat sy vader baie stede opgebou het op die aangesig van die land, en die volk het weer begin om versprei te word oor die hele aangesig van die land. En Sez het gelewe tot 'n uitermate hoë ouderdom; en hy het Riplakis verwek. En hy het gesterwe, en Riplakis het geheers in sy plek.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat Riplakis nie dit gedoen het wat reg was in die oë van die Here nie, want hy het baie vroue en byvroue gehad, en hy het dit gelê op die skouers van die mense wat swaar was om te verdra; ja, hy het hulle belas met swaar belastings; en met die belastings het hy baie ruim geboue gebou.
- 6 En hy het vir hom 'n uitermate mooi troon opgerig; en hy het baie gevangnisse gebou, en wie ook al hul nie wou onderwerp aan belastings nie, het hy in die gevangenis gewerp; en wie ook al nie in staat was om belasting te betaal nie, het hy in die gevangenis gewerp; en hy het hulle voortdurend laat arbei vir hulle onderhoud; en wie ook al geweier het om te arbei, het hy laat doodmaak.
- 7 Daarom het hy al sy keurige werk verkry, ja, naamlik sy suiwer goud het hy laat raffineer in die gevangenis; en alle soorte fyn vakmanskap het hy laat bewerk in die gevangenis. En dit het gebeur dat hy die volk verdruk het met sy hoererye en gruwels.

Ether 10

And it came to pass that Shez, who was a descendant of Heth—for Heth had perished by the famine, and all his household save it were Shez—wherefore, Shez began to build up again a broken people.

And it came to pass that Shez did remember the destruction of his fathers, and he did build up a righteous kingdom; for he remembered what the Lord had done in bringing Jared and his brother across the deep; and he did walk in the ways of the Lord; and he begat sons and daughters.

And his eldest son, whose name was Shez, did rebel against him; nevertheless, Shez was smitten by the hand of a robber, because of his exceeding riches, which brought peace again unto his father.

And it came to pass that his father did build up many cities upon the face of the land, and the people began again to spread over all the face of the land. And Shez did live to an exceedingly old age; and he begat Riplakish. And he died, and Riplakish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Riplakish did not do that which was right in the sight of the Lord, for he did have many wives and concubines, and did lay that upon men's shoulders which was grievous to be borne; yea, he did tax them with heavy taxes; and with the taxes he did build many spacious buildings.

And he did erect him an exceedingly beautiful throne; and he did build many prisons, and whoso would not be subject unto taxes he did cast into prison; and whoso was not able to pay taxes he did cast into prison; and he did cause that they should labor continually for their support; and whoso refused to labor he did cause to be put to death.

Wherefore he did obtain all his fine work, yea, even his fine gold he did cause to be refined in prison; and all manner of fine workmanship he did cause to be wrought in prison. And it came to pass that he did afflict the people with his whoredoms and abominations.

8 En toe hy geheers het vir 'n tydperk van twee en veertig jaar, het die volk opgestaan in rebellie teen hom; en daar het weer oorlog in die land begin, insoverre dat Riplakis gedood is, en sy afstammeling is verdryf uit die land.

9 En dit het gebeur dat na 'n tydperk van baie jare het Morianton, (hy wat 'n afstammeling van Riplakis was), 'n leër van uitgeworpenes bymekaar gemaak en uitgegaan om die volk die stryd aan te sê; en hy het mag verkry oor baie stede; en die oorlog het uitermate hevig geword en het geduur vir 'n tydperk van baie jare; en hy het mag verkry oor die hele land, en het homself gevestig as koning oor die hele land.

10 En nadat hy homself gevestig het as koning, het hy die volk se las verlig, waardeur hy guns verkry het in die oë van die volk, en hulle het hom gesalf om hulle koning te wees.

11 En hy het geregtigheid bewys aan die volk, maar nie aan homself nie vanweë sy baie hoererye; daarom is hy afgesny van die teenwoordigheid van die Here.

12 En dit het gebeur dat Morianton baie stede opgebou het, en die volk het uitermate ryk geword onder sy heerskappy, beide in geboue, en in goud en silwer, en om graan te kweek, en in kleinvee, en grootvee, en sodanige dinge wat herstel was aan hulle.

13 En Morianton het geleef tot 'n uitermate hoë ouderdom, en toe het hy Kim verwek; en Kim het in die plek van sy vader geheers; en hy het agt jaar geheers, en sy vader het gesterf. En dit het gebeur dat Kim nie in regverdigheid geheers het nie, daarom is hy nie begunstig deur die Here nie.

14 En sy broer het in rebellie teen hom opgestaan, waardeur hy hom in slawerny gebring het; en hy het in slawerny gebly al sy dae; en hy het seuns en dogters verwek in slawerny, en op sy oudag het hy Levi verwek; en hy het gesterwe.

15 En dit het gebeur dat Levi in gevangenskap gedien het na die dood van sy vader, vir 'n tydperk van twee en veertig jaar. En hy het oorlog gevoer teen die koning van die land, waardeur hy vir homself die koningskap verkry het.

And when he had reigned for the space of forty and two years the people did rise up in rebellion against him; and there began to be war again in the land, insomuch that Riplakish was killed, and his descendants were driven out of the land.

And it came to pass after the space of many years, Morianton, (he being a descendant of Riplakish) gathered together an army of outcasts, and went forth and gave battle unto the people; and he gained power over many cities; and the war became exceedingly sore, and did last for the space of many years; and he did gain power over all the land, and did establish himself king over all the land.

And after that he had established himself king he did ease the burden of the people, by which he did gain favor in the eyes of the people, and they did anoint him to be their king.

And he did do justice unto the people, but not unto himself because of his many whoredoms; wherefore he was cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And it came to pass that Morianton built up many cities, and the people became exceedingly rich under his reign, both in buildings, and in gold and silver, and in raising grain, and in flocks, and herds, and such things which had been restored unto them.

And Morianton did live to an exceedingly great age, and then he begat Kim; and Kim did reign in the stead of his father; and he did reign eight years, and his father died. And it came to pass that Kim did not reign in righteousness, wherefore he was not favored of the Lord.

And his brother did rise up in rebellion against him, by which he did bring him into captivity; and he did remain in captivity all his days; and he begat sons and daughters in captivity, and in his old age he begat Levi; and he died.

And it came to pass that Levi did serve in captivity after the death of his father, for the space of forty and two years. And he did make war against the king of the land, by which he did obtain unto himself the kingdom.

16 En nadat hy vir homself die koningskap verkry het, het hy dit gedoen wat reg was in die oë van die Here, en die volk was voorspoedig in die land; en hy het geleef tot 'n goeie ouderdom en het seuns en dogters verwek; en hy het ook vir Corom verwek, vir wie hy as koning gesalf het in sy plek.

17 En dit het gebeur dat Corom dit gedoen het wat goed was in die oë van die Here al sy dae; en hy het baie seuns en dogters verwek; en nadat hy baie dae gesien het, het hy gesterwe, net soos die res van die aarde; en Kis het in sy plek geheers.

18 En dit het gebeur dat Kis ook gesterwe het, en Lib het in sy plek geheers.

19 En dit het gebeur dat Lib ook dit gedoen het wat goed was in die oë van die Here. En in die dae van Lib is die giftige slange vernietig. Daarom het hulle die land suidwaarts ingegaan, om te jag vir voedsel vir die volk van die land, want die land was oortrek van die diere van die bos. En Lib het self ook 'n groot jagter geword.

20 En hulle het 'n groot stad gebou by die smal strook land naby die plek waar die see die land verdeel.

21 En hulle het die land suidwaarts bewaar as 'n wildernis, om wild te verkry. En die hele aangesig van die land noordwaarts was oortrek met inwoners.

22 En hulle was uitermate vlytig, en hulle het gekoop en verkoop en handel gedryf met mekaar, sodat hulle wins mag verkry.

23 En hulle het gewerk met allerlei soorte erts, en hulle het goud gemaak, en silwer, en yster, en brons, en allerlei soorte metale; en hulle het dit uit die aarde gegrawe; daarom, hulle het groot hope grond opgehoop om erts te kry, van goud, en van silwer, en van yster, en van koper. En hulle het alle soorte keurige werk bewerk.

24 En hulle het sy gehad, en fyngeweefde linne; en hulle het allerlei soorte materiaal bewerk, sodat hulle hulself kon klee om hulle naaktheid te bedek.

25 En hulle het allerlei soorte gereedskap gemaak om die aarde te bewerk, beide om te ploeg en te saai, te maai en te skoffel, en ook om te dors.

26 En hulle het allerlei soorte gereedskap gemaak waarmee hulle hul diere laat werk het.

And after he had obtained unto himself the kingdom he did that which was right in the sight of the Lord; and the people did prosper in the land; and he did live to a good old age, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Corom, whom he anointed king in his stead.

And it came to pass that Corom did that which was good in the sight of the Lord all his days; and he begat many sons and daughters; and after he had seen many days he did pass away, even like unto the rest of the earth; and Kish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Kish passed away also, and Lib reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Lib also did that which was good in the sight of the Lord. And in the days of Lib the poisonous serpents were destroyed. Wherefore they did go into the land southward, to hunt food for the people of the land, for the land was covered with animals of the forest. And Lib also himself became a great hunter.

And they built a great city by the narrow neck of land, by the place where the sea divides the land.

And they did preserve the land southward for a wilderness, to get game. And the whole face of the land northward was covered with inhabitants.

And they were exceedingly industrious, and they did buy and sell and traffic one with another, that they might get gain.

And they did work in all manner of ore, and they did make gold, and silver, and iron, and brass, and all manner of metals; and they did dig it out of the earth; wherefore, they did cast up mighty heaps of earth to get ore, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of copper. And they did work all manner of fine work.

And they did have silks, and fine-twined linen; and they did work all manner of cloth, that they might clothe themselves from their nakedness.

And they did make all manner of tools to till the earth, both to plow and to sow, to reap and to hoe, and also to thrash.

And they did make all manner of tools with which they did work their beasts.

- 27 En hulle het allerlei soorte wapens van oorlog gemaak. En hulle het allerlei soorte werk verrig van uitermate noukeurige vakmanskap.
- 28 En nooit kon 'n volk meer geseënd gewees het as wat hulle was nie, en meer voorspoedig gemaak deur die hand van die Here. En hulle was in 'n land wat uitverkore was bo alle lande, want die Here het dit gespreek.
- 29 En dit het gebeur dat Lib baie jare gelewe het, en seuns en dogters verwek het; en hy het ook Heartom verwek.
- 30 En dit het gebeur dat Heartom in die plek van sy vader geheers het. En toe Heartom vier en twintig jaar geheers het, kyk, is die koninkryk van hom weg-geneem. En hy het baie jare in slawerny gedien, ja, en wel die res van sy dae.
- 31 En hy het Het verwek, en Het het in slawerny gewoon, al sy dae. En Het het Aäron verwek, en Aäron het in slawerny gebly al sy dae; en hy het Amnigadda verwek, en Amnigadda het ook in slawerny gebly al sy dae; en hy het Coriantum verwek, en Coriantum het in slawerny gebly al sy dae; en hy het Com verwek.
- 32 En dit het gebeur dat Com die helfte van die koninkryk agter hom aangelok het. En hy het geheers oor die helfte van die koninkryk twee en veertig jaar; en hy het opgegaan om te veg teen die koning, Amgid, en hulle het geveg vir 'n tydperk van baie jare, gedurende welke tyd Com die mag verkry het oor Amgid, en mag verkry het oor die res van die koninkryk.
- 33 En in die dae van Com het daar rowers begin wees in die land; en hulle het die ou planne aangeneem, en het ede afgelê volgens die wyse van die mense van die voortyd, en het weer gesoek om die koninkryk te vernietig.
- 34 Nou, Com het baie teen hulle geveg; nogtans, hy kon hulle nie oorwin nie.

And they did make all manner of weapons of war. And they did work all manner of work of exceedingly curious workmanship.

And never could be a people more blessed than were they, and more prospered by the hand of the Lord. And they were in a land that was choice above all lands, for the Lord had spoken it.

And it came to pass that Lib did live many years, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Hearthom.

And it came to pass that Hearthom reigned in the stead of his father. And when Hearthom had reigned twenty and four years, behold, the kingdom was taken away from him. And he served many years in captivity, yea, even all the remainder of his days.

And he begat Heth, and Heth lived in captivity all his days. And Heth begat Aaron, and Aaron dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Amnigaddah, and Amnigaddah also dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Coriantum, and Coriantum dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Com.

And it came to pass that Com drew away the half of the kingdom. And he reigned over the half of the kingdom forty and two years; and he went to battle against the king, Amgid, and they fought for the space of many years, during which time Com gained power over Amgid, and obtained power over the remainder of the kingdom.

And in the days of Com there began to be robbers in the land; and they adopted the old plans, and administered oaths after the manner of the ancients, and sought again to destroy the kingdom.

Now Com did fight against them much; nevertheless, he did not prevail against them.

Ether 11

- 1 En daar het ook in die dae van Com baie profete gekom, en geprofeteer van die vernietiging van daardie groot volk, tensy hulle sou bekeer, en na die Here keer, en hul moorde en goddeloosheid versaak.
- 2 En dit het gebeur dat die profete verwerp is deur die volk, en hulle het gevlug na Com vir beskerming, want die volk het gesoek om hulle te vernietig.
- 3 En hulle het vir Com baie dinge geprofeteer; en hy is geseën gedurende die res van sy dae.
- 4 En hy het geleef tot 'n goeie ouderdom, en Sjiblom verwek; en Sjiblom het geheers in sy plek. En die broer van Sjiblom het gerebelleer teen hom, en daar het 'n uitermate groot oorlog ontstaan in die hele land.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat die broer van Sjiblom al die profete wat geprofeteer het van die vernietiging van die volk, laat doodmaak het;
- 6 En daar was groot onheil in die hele land, want hulle het getuig dat 'n groot vloek op die land sou kom, en ook op die volk, en dat daar 'n groot vernietiging sou wees onder hulle, soos wat daar nog nooit was op die aangesig van die aarde nie, en hulle beendere sou word soos hope grond op die aangesig van die land, tensy hulle sou bekeer van hul boosheid.
- 7 En hulle het nie ag geslaan op die stem van die Here nie, vanweë hulle goddelose organisasies; daarom het oorloë en twiste begin ontstaan in die hele land, en ook baie hongersnode en pestilensies, in soverre dat daar 'n groot vernietiging was, soos wat nooit tevore geken was op die aangesig van die aarde nie; en dit alles het gebeur in die dae van Sjiblom.
- 8 En die volk het begin om te bekeer van hulle onge-regtigheid; en in soverre hulle dit gedoen het, het die Here barmhartigheid gehad jeens hulle.
- 9 En dit het gebeur dat Sjiblom gedood is, en Set is in slawerny gebring, en het in slawerny gebly al sy dae.

Ether 11

And there came also in the days of Com many prophets, and prophesied of the destruction of that great people except they should repent, and turn unto the Lord, and forsake their murders and wickedness.

And it came to pass that the prophets were rejected by the people, and they fled unto Com for protection, for the people sought to destroy them.

And they prophesied unto Com many things; and he was blessed in all the remainder of his days.

And he lived to a good old age, and begat Shiblom; and Shiblom reigned in his stead. And the brother of Shiblom rebelled against him, and there began to be an exceedingly great war in all the land.

And it came to pass that the brother of Shiblom caused that all the prophets who prophesied of the destruction of the people should be put to death;

And there was great calamity in all the land, for they had testified that a great curse should come upon the land, and also upon the people, and that there should be a great destruction among them, such an one as never had been upon the face of the earth, and their bones should become as heaps of earth upon the face of the land except they should repent of their wickedness.

And they hearkened not unto the voice of the Lord, because of their wicked combinations; wherefore, there began to be wars and contentions in all the land, and also many famines and pestilences, inso-much that there was a great destruction, such an one as never had been known upon the face of the earth; and all this came to pass in the days of Shiblom.

And the people began to repent of their iniquity; and inasmuch as they did the Lord did have mercy on them.

And it came to pass that Shiblom was slain, and Seth was brought into captivity, and did dwell in captivity all his days.

- 10 En dit het gebeur dat Aha, sy seun, die koninkryk verkry het; en hy het oor die volk geheers al sy dae. En hy het allerlei ongeregtighede gedoen in sy dae, waardeur hy die vergieting van baie bloed veroorsaak het; en min was sy dae.
- 11 En Etem, omdat hy 'n afstammeling was van Aha, het die koninkryk verkry; en hy het ook dit gedoen wat boos was in sy dae.
- 12 En dit het gebeur dat in die dae van Etem het daar baie profete gekom, en het weer geprofeteer vir die volk; ja, hulle het geprofeteer dat die Here hulle heeltemal sou vernietig van die aangesig van die aarde tensy hulle bekeer van hul ongeregtighede.
- 13 En dit het gebeur dat die volk hulle harte verhard het, en wou nie ag slaan op hulle woorde nie; en die profete het getreur en hulle onttrek van onder die volk.
- 14 En dit het gebeur dat Etem oordeel gevel het in boosheid al sy dae; en hy het Moron verwek. En dit het gebeur dat Moron geheers het in sy plek; en Moron het dit gedoen wat boos was voor die Here.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat daar 'n rebellie ontstaan het onder die volk, vanweë daardie geheime organisasie wat opgebou is om mag en gewin te verkry; en daar het 'n magtige man opgestaan onder hulle in ongeregtigheid, en het Moron die stryd aangesê, waarin hy die helfte van die koninkryk omvergewerp het; en hy het die helfte van die koninkryk behou vir baie jare.
- 16 En dit het gebeur dat Moron hom omvergewerp het, en weer die koningskap verkry het.
- 17 En dit het gebeur dat daar 'n ander magtige man opgestaan het; en hy was 'n afstammeling van die broer van Jered.
- 18 En dit het gebeur dat hy Moron omvergewerp en die koninkryk verkry het; daarom, Moron het in slawerny gebly die res van sy dae; en hy het Coriantor verwek.
- 19 En dit het gebeur dat Coriantor in slawerny gebly het al sy dae.

And it came to pass that Ahah, his son, did obtain the kingdom; and he did reign over the people all his days. And he did do all manner of iniquity in his days, by which he did cause the shedding of much blood; and few were his days.

And Ethem, being a descendant of Ahah, did obtain the kingdom; and he also did do that which was wicked in his days.

And it came to pass that in the days of Ethem there came many prophets, and prophesied again unto the people; yea, they did prophesy that the Lord would utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth except they repented of their iniquities.

And it came to pass that the people hardened their hearts, and would not hearken unto their words; and the prophets mourned and withdrew from among the people.

And it came to pass that Ethem did execute judgment in wickedness all his days; and he begat Moron. And it came to pass that Moron did reign in his stead; and Moron did that which was wicked before the Lord.

And it came to pass that there arose a rebellion among the people, because of that secret combination which was built up to get power and gain; and there arose a mighty man among them in iniquity, and gave battle unto Moron, in which he did overthrow the half of the kingdom; and he did maintain the half of the kingdom for many years.

And it came to pass that Moron did overthrow him, and did obtain the kingdom again.

And it came to pass that there arose another mighty man; and he was a descendant of the brother of Jared.

And it came to pass that he did overthrow Moron and obtain the kingdom; wherefore, Moron dwelt in captivity all the remainder of his days; and he begat Coriantor.

And it came to pass that Coriantor dwelt in captivity all his days.

20 En in die dae van Coriantor het daar ook baie profete gekom, en geprofeteer van groot en wonderbaarlike dinge, en bekering geroep tot die volk, en tensy hulle sou bekeer, sou die Here God oordeel vel oor hulle tot hulle algehele vernietiging;

21 En dat die Here God 'n ander volk sou stuur of voortbring om die land te besit, deur sy krag, op dieselfde wyse waarop Hy hulle vaders gebring het.

22 En hulle het al die woorde verwerp van die profete, vanweë hulle geheime organisasies en goddelose gruwels.

23 En dit het gebeur dat Coriantor Ether verwek het, en hy het gesterf, nadat hy in slawerny gebly het al sy dae.

And in the days of Coriantor there also came many prophets, and prophesied of great and marvelous things, and cried repentance unto the people, and except they should repent the Lord God would execute judgment against them to their utter destruction;

And that the Lord God would send or bring forth another people to possess the land, by his power, after the manner by which he brought their fathers.

And they did reject all the words of the prophets, because of their secret society and wicked abominations.

And it came to pass that Coriantor begat Ether, and he died, having dwelt in captivity all his days.

Ether 12

- 1 En dit het gebeur dat die dae van Ether in die dae van Coriantumr was; en Coriantumr was koning oor die hele land.
- 2 En Ether was 'n profeet van die Here; daarom het Ether uitgekom in die dae van Coriantumr, en het begin om vir die volk te profeteer, want hy kon nie gekeer word nie, vanweë die Gees van die Here wat in hom was.
- 3 Want hy het uitgeroep van die oggend tot die ondergaan van die son, en die volk vermaan om in God te glo tot bekering anders sou hulle vernietig word, en aan hulle gesê dat deur geloof word alle dinge vervul—
- 4 Daarom, wie ook al in God glo mag met sekerheid hoop op 'n beter wêreld, ja, en wel 'n plek aan die regterhand van God, welke hoop kom van geloof, en 'n anker maak vir die siele van mense, wat hulle sterk en standvastig sal maak, en altyd goeie werke doen, wat gelei word om God te verheerlik.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat Ether groot en wonderbaarlike dinge geprofeteer het vir die volk, wat hulle nie geglo het nie, omdat hulle hul nie gesien het nie.
- 6 En nou ek, Moroni, wil ietwat spreek aangaande hierdie dinge; ek wil aan die wêreld toon dat geloof dinge is waarop gehoop word en nie gesien word nie; daarom, twyfel nie omdat julle nie sien nie, want julle ontvang geen getuienis tot ná die beproewing van julle geloof nie.
- 7 Want dit was deur geloof dat Christus Hom aan ons vaders getoon het, nadat Hy opgestaan het uit die dood; en Hy het Hom nie getoon aan hulle tot nadat hulle geloof gehad het in Hom nie; daarom, dit moet noodwendig wees dat sommige geloof gehad het in Hom, want Hy het Homself nie getoon aan die wêreld nie.
- 8 Maar vanweë die geloof van die mens het Hy Homself aan die wêreld getoon, en die Naam van die Vader verheerlik, en 'n weg berei sodat andere daardeur deelgenote kan wees van die hemelse gawe, sodat hulle mag hoop op daardie dinge wat hulle nie gesien het nie.
- 9 Daarom, mag julle ook hoop hê, en deelgenote wees van die gawe, as julle net geloof het.

Ether 12

And it came to pass that the days of Ether were in the days of Coriantumr; and Coriantumr was king over all the land.

And Ether was a prophet of the Lord; wherefore Ether came forth in the days of Coriantumr, and began to prophesy unto the people, for he could not be restrained because of the Spirit of the Lord which was in him.

For he did cry from the morning, even until the going down of the sun, exhorting the people to believe in God unto repentance lest they should be destroyed, saying unto them that by faith all things are fulfilled—

Wherefore, whoso believeth in God might with surety hope for a better world, yea, even a place at the right hand of God, which hope cometh of faith, maketh an anchor to the souls of men, which would make them sure and steadfast, always abounding in good works, being led to glorify God.

And it came to pass that Ether did prophesy great and marvelous things unto the people, which they did not believe, because they saw them not.

And now, I, Moroni, would speak somewhat concerning these things; I would show unto the world that faith is things which are hoped for and not seen; wherefore, dispute not because ye see not, for ye receive no witness until after the trial of your faith.

For it was by faith that Christ showed himself unto our fathers, after he had risen from the dead; and he showed not himself unto them until after they had faith in him; wherefore, it must needs be that some had faith in him, for he showed himself not unto the world.

But because of the faith of men he has shown himself unto the world, and glorified the name of the Father, and prepared a way that thereby others might be partakers of the heavenly gift, that they might hope for those things which they have not seen.

Wherefore, ye may also have hope, and be partakers of the gift, if ye will but have faith.

10 Kyk, dit was deur geloof dat hulle van ouds geroep is volgens die heilige orde van God.

11 Daarom, deur geloof is die wet van Moses gegee. Maar in die gawe van sy Seun het God 'n uitnemender weg berei; en dit is deur geloof dat dit vervul is.

12 Want as daar geen geloof is onder die kinders van mense nie, kan God geen wonderwerk verrig onder hulle nie; daarom, Hy het Homself nie getoon tot ná hulle geloof nie.

13 Kyk, dit was die geloof van Alma en Amulek wat die gevangenis laat intuimel het op die aarde.

14 Kyk, dit was die geloof van Nephi en Lehi wat die verandering onder die Lamaniete bewerkstellig het, dat hulle gedoop is met vuur en met die Heilige Gees.

15 Kyk, dit was die geloof van Ammon en sy broers wat so 'n groot wonderwerk verrig het onder die Lamaniete.

16 Ja, en wel hulle almal wat wonderwerke verrig het, het hulle verrig deur geloof, selfs hulle wat voor Christus was, en ook hulle wat daarna was.

17 En dit was deur geloof dat die drie dissipels 'n belofte verkry het dat hulle nie die dood sou smaak nie; en hulle het nie die belofte verkry tot ná hulle geloof nie.

18 En nóg op enige tyd het enigeen wonderwerke verrig tot ná hulle geloof; daarom het hulle eers geglo in die Seun van God.

19 En daar was baie wie se geloof só uitermate sterk was, selfs voordat Christus gekom het, wat nie teruggehou kon word van binne die sluier nie, maar werklik met hulle eie oë die dinge gesien het wat hulle aanskou het met 'n oog van geloof, en hulle was bly.

20 En kyk, ons het gesien in hierdie kroniek dat een van hulle die broer van Jared was; want só groot was sy geloof in God, dat toe God sy vinger uitgesteek het, Hy dit nie kon verberg van die sig van die broer van Jared nie, vanweë sy woord wat Hy met hom gespreek het, welke woord hy verkry het deur geloof.

21 En nadat die broer van Jared die vinger van die Here gesien het, vanweë die belofte wat die broer van Jared deur geloof verkry het, kon die Here nie enigiets weerhou van sy sig nie; daarom het Hy hom alle dinge getoon, want hy kon nie langer buite die sluier gehou word nie.

Behold it was by faith that they of old were called after the holy order of God.

Wherefore, by faith was the law of Moses given. But in the gift of his Son hath God prepared a more excellent way; and it is by faith that it hath been fulfilled.

For if there be no faith among the children of men God can do no miracle among them; wherefore, he showed not himself until after their faith.

Behold, it was the faith of Alma and Amulek that caused the prison to tumble to the earth.

Behold, it was the faith of Nephi and Lehi that wrought the change upon the Lamanites, that they were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

Behold, it was the faith of Ammon and his brethren which wrought so great a miracle among the Lamanites.

Yea, and even all they who wrought miracles wrought them by faith, even those who were before Christ and also those who were after.

And it was by faith that the three disciples obtained a promise that they should not taste of death; and they obtained not the promise until after their faith.

And neither at any time hath any wrought miracles until after their faith; wherefore they first believed in the Son of God.

And there were many whose faith was so exceedingly strong, even before Christ came, who could not be kept from within the veil, but truly saw with their eyes the things which they had beheld with an eye of faith, and they were glad.

And behold, we have seen in this record that one of these was the brother of Jared; for so great was his faith in God, that when God put forth his finger he could not hide it from the sight of the brother of Jared, because of his word which he had spoken unto him, which word he had obtained by faith.

And after the brother of Jared had beheld the finger of the Lord, because of the promise which the brother of Jared had obtained by faith, the Lord could not withhold anything from his sight; wherefore he showed him all things, for he could no longer be kept without the veil.

22 En dit is deur geloof dat my vaders die belofte verkry het dat hierdie dinge na hulle broers sou kom deur die nie-Jode; daarom het die Here my gebied, ja, naamlik Jesus Christus.

23 En ek het aan Hom gesê: Here, die nie-Jode sal spot met hierdie dinge, vanweë ons swakheid om te skryf; want Here, U het ons magtig gemaak in die woord deur geloof, maar U het ons nie magtig gemaak om te skryf nie; want U het hierdie hele volk gemaak sodat hulle veel kon spreek, vanweë die Heilige Gees wat U hulle gegee het;

24 En U het ons gemaak sodat ons maar min kon skryf, vanweë die onbeholpenheid van ons hande. Kyk, U het ons nie magtig gemaak in skryf soos die broer van Jared nie, want U het hom gemaak sodat die dinge wat hy geskryf het magtig was net soos U, tot die oorweldiging van die mens om hulle te lees.

25 U het ook ons woorde kragtig en groot gemaak, tot so 'n mate dat ons hulle nie kan skryf nie; daarom, wanneer ons skryf, sien ons ons swakheid, en struikel vanweë die plasing van ons woorde; en ek vrees dat die nie-Jode sal spot met ons woorde.

26 En toe ek dit gesê het, het die Here met my gespreek, en gesê: Dwase spot, maar hulle sal treur; en my genade is voldoende vir die sagmoediges, sodat hulle nie misbruik sal maak van julle swakheid nie;

27 En as mense na My kom, sal Ek aan hulle hul swakheid toon. Ek gee aan mense swakheid sodat hulle nederig mag wees; en my genade is genoeg vir alle mense wat hulself verootmoedig voor My; want as hulle hulself verootmoedig voor My, en geloof het in My, dan sal Ek swak dinge sterk laat word vir hulle.

28 Kyk, Ek sal aan die nie-Jode hulle swakheid toon, en Ek sal aan hulle toon dat geloof, hoop, en naasteliefde hulle na My toe bring—die fontein van alle regverdigheid.

29 En ek, Moroni, nadat ek hierdie woorde gehoor het, was getroos, en het gesê: O Here, laat U regverdige wil geskied, want ek weet dat U met die kinders van mense werk volgens hulle geloof;

30 Want die broer van Jared het aan die berg Serin gesê: Gaan weg—en dit het weggegaan. En as hy nie geloof gehad het nie, sou dit nie beweeg het nie; daarom, U werk nadat die mens geloof het.

And it is by faith that my fathers have obtained the promise that these things should come unto their brethren through the Gentiles; therefore the Lord hath commanded me, yea, even Jesus Christ.

And I said unto him: Lord, the Gentiles will mock at these things, because of our weakness in writing; for Lord thou hast made us mighty in word by faith, but thou hast not made us mighty in writing; for thou hast made all this people that they could speak much, because of the Holy Ghost which thou hast given them;

And thou hast made us that we could write but little, because of the awkwardness of our hands. Behold, thou hast not made us mighty in writing like unto the brother of Jared, for thou madest him that the things which he wrote were mighty even as thou art, unto the overpowering of man to read them.

Thou hast also made our words powerful and great, even that we cannot write them; wherefore, when we write we behold our weakness, and stumble because of the placing of our words; and I fear lest the Gentiles shall mock at our words.

And when I had said this, the Lord spake unto me, saying: Fools mock, but they shall mourn; and my grace is sufficient for the meek, that they shall take no advantage of your weakness;

And if men come unto me I will show unto them their weakness. I give unto men weakness that they may be humble; and my grace is sufficient for all men that humble themselves before me; for if they humble themselves before me, and have faith in me, then will I make weak things become strong unto them.

Behold, I will show unto the Gentiles their weakness, and I will show unto them that faith, hope and charity bringeth unto me—the fountain of all righteousness.

And I, Moroni, having heard these words, was comforted, and said: O Lord, thy righteous will be done, for I know that thou workest unto the children of men according to their faith;

For the brother of Jared said unto the mountain Zerin, Remove—and it was removed. And if he had not had faith it would not have moved; wherefore thou workest after men have faith.

- 31 Want so het U Uself getoon aan u dissipels; want nadat hulle geloof gehad het, en in u Naam gespreek het, het U Uself getoon aan hulle met groot krag.
- 32 En ek onthou ook dat U gesê het dat U 'n woning berei het vir die mens, ja, en wel onder die wonings van u Vader, waarin die mens 'n uitnemender hoop mag hê; daarom moet die mens hoop, of hy kan nie 'n erfenis ontvang in die plek wat U berei het nie.
- 33 En verder, ek onthou dat U gesê het dat U die wêreld liefgehad het, tot die neerlegging van U lewe vir die wêreld, dat U dit weer mag opneem om 'n plek te berei vir die kinders van mense.
- 34 En nou weet ek dat hierdie liefde wat U gehad het vir die kinders van mense, naasteliefde is; daarom, tensy die mens naasteliefde het, kan hulle nie daardie plek beërwe wat U berei het in die wonings van u Vader nie.
- 35 Daarom, ek weet weens hierdie ding wat U gesê het, dat as die nie-Jode nie naasteliefde het nie, vanweë ons swakheid, dat U hulle sal beproef, en hulle talent wegneem, ja, en wel dit wat hulle ontvang het, en aan hulle gee wat meer oorvloedig sal hê.
- 36 En dit het gebeur dat ek gebid het tot die Here sodat Hy aan die nie-Jode genade sal gee, dat hulle naasteliefde mag hê.
- 37 En dit het gebeur dat die Here aan my gesê het: As hulle nie naasteliefde het nie, maak dit nie vir jou saak nie, jy was getrou; daarom, jou kleding sal gereinig word. En omdat jy jou swakheid gesien het, sal jy sterk gemaak word, totdat jy kan sit in die plek wat Ek berei het in die wonings van my Vader.
- 38 En nou ek, Moroni, sê vaarwel aan die nie-Jode, ja, en ook aan my broers vir wie ek liefhet, totdat ons sal ontmoet voor die regterstoel van Christus, waar alle mense sal weet dat my kleding nie bevlek is met julle bloed nie.

For thus didst thou manifest thyself unto thy disciples; for after they had faith, and did speak in thy name, thou didst show thyself unto them in great power.

And I also remember that thou hast said that thou hast prepared a house for man, yea, even among the mansions of thy Father, in which man might have a more excellent hope; wherefore man must hope, or he cannot receive an inheritance in the place which thou hast prepared.

And again, I remember that thou hast said that thou hast loved the world, even unto the laying down of thy life for the world, that thou mightest take it again to prepare a place for the children of men.

And now I know that this love which thou hast had for the children of men is charity; wherefore, except men shall have charity they cannot inherit that place which thou hast prepared in the mansions of thy Father.

Wherefore, I know by this thing which thou hast said, that if the Gentiles have not charity, because of our weakness, that thou wilt prove them, and take away their talent, yea, even that which they have received, and give unto them who shall have more abundantly.

And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord that he would give unto the Gentiles grace, that they might have charity.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: If they have not charity it mattereth not unto thee, thou hast been faithful; wherefore, thy garments shall be made clean. And because thou hast seen thy weakness thou shalt be made strong, even unto the sitting down in the place which I have prepared in the mansions of my Father.

And now I, Moroni, bid farewell unto the Gentiles, yea, and also unto my brethren whom I love, until we shall meet before the judgment-seat of Christ, where all men shall know that my garments are not spotted with your blood.

39 En dan sal julle weet dat ek Jesus gesien het, en dat Hy met my gespreek het van aangesig tot aangesig, en dat Hy my in duidelike ootmoed vertel het, net soos 'n mens 'n ander vertel, in my eie taal aangaande hierdie dinge;

40 En slegs 'n paar dinge het ek geskryf vanweë my swakheid om te skryf.

41 En nou, ek wil julle vermaan om hierdie Jesus te soek van wie die profete en die apostels geskryf het, sodat die genade van God die Vader, en ook die Here Jesus Christus, en die Heilige Gees, wat getuig van hulle, met julle mag wees en in julle bly vir ewig. Amen.

And then shall ye know that I have seen Jesus, and that he hath talked with me face to face, and that he told me in plain humility, even as a man telleth another in mine own language, concerning these things;

And only a few have I written, because of my weakness in writing.

And now, I would commend you to seek this Jesus of whom the prophets and apostles have written, that the grace of God the Father, and also the Lord Jesus Christ, and the Holy Ghost, which beareth record of them, may be and abide in you forever. Amen.

Ether 13

- 1 En nou ek, Moroni, gaan voort om my kroniek te voltooi aangaande die vernietiging van die volk van wie ek besig was om te skrywe.
- 2 Want kyk, hulle het al die woorde van Ether verwerp; want hy het hulle waarlik vertel van alle dinge, vanaf die begin van die mens; en dat nadat die waters teruggetrek het vanaf die aangesig van hierdie land, het dit 'n uitverkore land geword, bo alle ander lande, 'n uitverkore land van die Here; daarom wou die Here hê dat alle mense Hom moet dien wat woon op die aangesig daarvan.
- 3 En dat dit die plek was van die Nuwe Jerusalem, wat sou neerdaal uit die hemel, en die gewyde heiligdom van die Here.
- 4 Kyk, Ether het die dae van Christus gesien, en hy het gespreek aangaande 'n Nuwe Jerusalem op hierdie land.
- 5 En hy het ook gespreek aangaande die huis van Israel, en die Jerusalem waarvandaan Lehi sou kom—nadat dit vernietig sou word, sou dit weer opgebou word, 'n heilige stad vir die Here; daarom, dit kon nie 'n nuwe Jerusalem wees nie, want dit was uit die ou tyd; maar dit sou weer opgebou word, en 'n heilige stad word vir die Here; en dit sou gebou word vir die huis van Israel.
- 6 En dat 'n Nuwe Jerusalem gebou sou word op hierdie land, vir die oorblyfsel van die saad van Josef, van welke dinge daar 'n voorafskaduwing was.
- 7 Want net soos Josef sy vader afgebring het na die land Egipte, net so het hy daar gesterwe; daarom, die Here het 'n oorblyfsel van die saad van Josef uit die land Jerusalem gebring, sodat Hy barmhartig mag wees teenoor die saad van Josef, sodat hulle nie sou omkom nie, net soos Hy barmhartig was teenoor die vader van Josef sodat hy nie sou omkom nie.
- 8 Daarom, die oorblyfsel van die huis van Josef sal gebou word op hierdie land; en dit sal 'n land van hulle erfenis wees; en hulle sal 'n heilige stad vir die Here bou, soos die Jerusalem van ouds; en hulle sal nie meer vermeng word, totdat die einde kom, wanneer die aarde sal verbygaan nie.

Ether 13

And now I, Moroni, proceed to finish my record concerning the destruction of the people of whom I have been writing.

For behold, they rejected all the words of Ether; for he truly told them of all things, from the beginning of man; and that after the waters had receded from off the face of this land it became a choice land above all other lands, a chosen land of the Lord; wherefore the Lord would have that all men should serve him who dwell upon the face thereof;

And that it was the place of the New Jerusalem, which should come down out of heaven, and the holy sanctuary of the Lord.

Behold, Ether saw the days of Christ, and he spake concerning a New Jerusalem upon this land.

And he spake also concerning the house of Israel, and the Jerusalem from whence Lehi should come—after it should be destroyed it should be built up again, a holy city unto the Lord; wherefore, it could not be a new Jerusalem for it had been in a time of old; but it should be built up again, and become a holy city of the Lord; and it should be built unto the house of Israel—

And that a New Jerusalem should be built up upon this land, unto the remnant of the seed of Joseph, for which things there has been a type.

For as Joseph brought his father down into the land of Egypt, even so he died there; wherefore, the Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Joseph out of the land of Jerusalem, that he might be merciful unto the seed of Joseph that they should perish not, even as he was merciful unto the father of Joseph that he should perish not.

Wherefore, the remnant of the house of Joseph shall be built upon this land; and it shall be a land of their inheritance; and they shall build up a holy city unto the Lord, like unto the Jerusalem of old; and they shall no more be confounded, until the end come when the earth shall pass away.

- 9 En daar sal 'n nuwe hemel en 'n nuwe aarde wees; en hulle sal wees soos die oue, behalwe dat die oue verbygegaan het, en alle dinge nuut geword het.
- 10 En dan kom die Nuwe Jerusalem; en geseënd is hulle wat daarin woon, want dit is hulle wie se kleding wit is deur die bloed van die Lam; en dit is hulle wat gereken word onder die oorblyfsel van die saad van Josef, wat van die huis van Israel was.
- 11 En dan ook kom die Jerusalem van ouds; en die inwoners daarvan, geseënd is hulle, want hulle is gewas deur die bloed van die Lam; en dit is hulle wat verstrooi was en teruggebring is uit die vier hoeke van die aarde, en van die noordelike lande, en deelgenote is van die vervulling van die verbond wat God gesluit het met hulle vader, Abraham.
- 12 En wanneer hierdie dinge kom, word die skriftuur vervul wat sê; daar is hulle wat eerste was, wat laaste sal wees; en daar is hulle wat laaste was, wat eerste sal wees.
- 13 En ek was op die punt om meer te skrywe, maar ek word verbied; maar groot en wonderbaarlik was die profesieë van Ether; maar hulle het hom as niks beskou nie, en het hom uitgewerp; en hy het hom versteek in die holte van 'n rots bedags, en snags het hy uitgegaan en die dinge aanskou wat oor die volk sou kom.
- 14 En terwyl hy in die holte van 'n rots gebly het, het hy die res van hierdie kroniek geskryf, terwyl hy die vernietiging aanskou het wat oor die volk gekom het in die nag.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat in daardie selfde jaar waarin hy uitgewerp is onder die volk, het daar 'n groot oorlog begin ontstaan onder die volk, want daar was baie wat opgestaan het, wat magtige mans was, en wat gesoek het om Coriantumr te vernietig deur hulle geheime planne van boosheid, waarvan gespreek is.
- 16 En nou Coriantumr, wat self gestudeer het in al die kunste van oorlog en al die listigheid van die wêreld, daarom het hy hulle die stryd aangesê wat gesoek het om hom te vernietig.

And there shall be a new heaven and a new earth; and they shall be like unto the old save the old have passed away, and all things have become new.

And then cometh the New Jerusalem; and blessed are they who dwell therein, for it is they whose garments are white through the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who are numbered among the remnant of the seed of Joseph, who were of the house of Israel.

And then also cometh the Jerusalem of old; and the inhabitants thereof, blessed are they, for they have been washed in the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who were scattered and gathered in from the four quarters of the earth, and from the north countries, and are partakers of the fulfilling of the covenant which God made with their father, Abraham.

And when these things come, bringeth to pass the scripture which saith, there are they who were first, who shall be last; and there are they who were last, who shall be first.

And I was about to write more, but I am forbidden; but great and marvelous were the prophecies of Ether; but they esteemed him as naught, and cast him out; and he hid himself in the cavity of a rock by day, and by night he went forth viewing the things which should come upon the people.

And as he dwelt in the cavity of a rock he made the remainder of this record, viewing the destructions which came upon the people, by night.

And it came to pass that in that same year in which he was cast out from among the people there began to be a great war among the people, for there were many who rose up, who were mighty men, and sought to destroy Coriantumr by their secret plans of wickedness, of which hath been spoken.

And now Coriantumr, having studied, himself, in all the arts of war and all the cunning of the world, wherefore he gave battle unto them who sought to destroy him.

17 Maar hy het nie bekeer nie, ook nie sy skone seuns en dogters nie; ook nie die skone seuns en dogters van Cohor nie; ook nie die skone seuns en dogters van Corihor nie; en kortom, daar was geen van die skone seuns en dogters op die aangesig van die hele aarde, wat bekeer het van hulle sondes nie.

18 Daarom, dit het gebeur dat in die eerste jaar wat Ether in die holte van 'n rots gebly het, was daar baie mense wat gedood is deur die swaard van daardie geheime organisasies, terwyl hulle geveg het teen Coriantumr sodat hulle die koninkryk mag verkry.

19 En dit het gebeur dat die seuns van Coriantumr baie geveg en baie gebloei het.

20 En in die tweede jaar het die woord van die Here tot Ether gekom, dat hy moes gaan en profeteer vir Coriantumr dat, as hy sou bekeer, en sy hele huishouding, sou die Here aan hom sy koninkryk gee en die volk spaar—

21 Anders sou hulle vernietig word, en sy hele huishouding behalwe hyself. En hy sou slegs lewe om die vervulling van die profesieë te sien wat gespreek is aangaande 'n ander volk wat die land sou ontvang vir hulle erfenis; en Coriantumr sou begrawe word deur hulle; en elke siel sou vernietig word behalwe Coriantumr.

22 En dit het gebeur dat Coriantumr nie bekeer het nie, nóg sy huishouding, nóg die volk; en die oorloë het nie opgehou nie; en hulle het gesoek om Ether dood te maak, maar hy het voor hulle uitgevlug en het weer in die holte van die rots geskuil.

23 En dit het gebeur dat Sared opgestaan het, en hy het ook vir Coriantumr die stryd aangesê; en hy het hom verslaan, in soverre dat hy hom in die derde jaar in slawerny gebring het.

24 En die seuns van Coriantumr, in die vierde jaar, het vir Sared verslaan, en het weer die koninkryk vir hulle vader verkry.

25 Nou het daar 'n oorlog begin ontstaan op die hele aangesig van die land, en elke man het met sy bende geveg vir dit wat hy begeer het.

26 En daar was rowers, en kortom, allerlei booshede op die hele aangesig van die land.

But he repented not, neither his fair sons nor daughters; neither the fair sons and daughters of Cohor; neither the fair sons and daughters of Corihor; and in fine, there were none of the fair sons and daughters upon the face of the whole earth who repented of their sins.

Wherefore, it came to pass that in the first year that Ether dwelt in the cavity of a rock, there were many people who were slain by the sword of those secret combinations, fighting against Coriantumr that they might obtain the kingdom.

And it came to pass that the sons of Coriantumr fought much and bled much.

And in the second year the word of the Lord came to Ether, that he should go and prophesy unto Coriantumr that, if he would repent, and all his household, the Lord would give unto him his kingdom and spare the people—

Otherwise they should be destroyed, and all his household save it were himself. And he should only live to see the fulfilling of the prophecies which had been spoken concerning another people receiving the land for their inheritance; and Coriantumr should receive a burial by them; and every soul should be destroyed save it were Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr repented not, neither his household, neither the people; and the wars ceased not; and they sought to kill Ether, but he fled from before them and hid again in the cavity of the rock.

And it came to pass that there arose up Shared, and he also gave battle unto Coriantumr; and he did beat him, insomuch that in the third year he did bring him into captivity.

And the sons of Coriantumr, in the fourth year, did beat Shared, and did obtain the kingdom again unto their father.

Now there began to be a war upon all the face of the land, every man with his band fighting for that which he desired.

And there were robbers, and in fine, all manner of wickedness upon all the face of the land.

- 27 En dit het gebeur dat Coriantumr uitermate toornig was op Sared, en hy het teen hom opgetrek met sy leërs in die stryd; en hulle het in groot toorn bymekaargekom; en hulle het bymekaargekom in die dal van Gilgal; en die stryd het uitermate hewig geword.
- 28 En dit het gebeur dat Sared geveg het teen hom vir 'n tydperk van drie dae. En dit het gebeur dat Coriantumr hom verslaan het, en hom agternagesit het totdat hy op die vlaktes van Heshlon gekom het.
- 29 En dit het gebeur dat Sared hom weer die stryd aangesê het op die vlaktes; en kyk, hy het vir Coriantumr verslaan, en het hom weer teruggedryf na die dal van Gilgal.
- 30 En Coriantumr het vir Sared weer die stryd aangesê in die dal van Gilgal, waarin hy vir Sared verslaan het en hom doodgemaak het.
- 31 En Sared het vir Coriantumr in sy dy gewond, sodat hy nie weer opgegaan het in die stryd vir 'n tydperk van twee jaar nie, gedurende welke tyd die hele volk op die aangesig van die land bloed vergiet het, en daar was niemand om hulle te keer nie.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr was exceedingly angry with Shared, and he went against him with his armies to battle; and they did meet in great anger, and they did meet in the valley of Gilgal; and the battle became exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that Shared fought against him for the space of three days. And it came to pass that Coriantumr beat him, and did pursue him until he came to the plains of Heshlon.

And it came to pass that Shared gave him battle again upon the plains; and behold, he did beat Coriantumr, and drove him back again to the valley of Gilgal.

And Coriantumr gave Shared battle again in the valley of Gilgal, in which he beat Shared and slew him.

And Shared wounded Coriantumr in his thigh, that he did not go to battle again for the space of two years, in which time all the people upon the face of the land were shedding blood, and there was none to restrain them.

Ether 14

- 1 En nou het daar 'n groot vloek oor die hele land begin ontstaan vanweë die ongeregtigheid van die volk; tot so 'n mate, as 'n man sy gereedskap of sy swaard op sy rak sou neersit, of op die plek waar hy dit wil hou, kyk, die volgende dag, kon hy dit nie vind nie, so groot was die vloek oor die land.
- 2 Daarom het elke man vasgeklou aan dit wat sy eie was, met sy hande, en wou nie leen nie, nóg wou hy uitleen; en elke man het die hef van sy swaard in sy regterhand gehou, ter verdediging van sy besittings en sy eie lewe en van sy vroue en kinders.
- 3 En nou, na 'n tydperk van twee jaar, en na die dood van Sared, kyk, het die broer van Sared opgestaan, en hy het Coriantumr die stryd aangesê, waarin Coriantumr hom verslaan het en hom agternagesit het tot die wildernis van Akis.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat die broer van Sared hom die stryd aangesê het in die wildernis van Akis; en die stryd het uitermate hewig geword, en baie duisende het geval deur die swaard.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat Coriantumr die wildernis beleër het; en die broer van Sared het gedurende die nag uit die wildernis gemarsjeer, en het 'n deel van die leër van Coriantumr gedood terwyl hulle dronk was.
- 6 En hy het uitgekom na die land Moron, en homself op die troon van Coriantumr geplaas.
- 7 En dit het gebeur dat Coriantumr met sy leër in die wildernis gebly het vir 'n tydperk van twee jaar, waarin hy groot versterkings vir sy leër gekry het.
- 8 Nou die broer van Sared, wie se naam Gilead was, het ook groot versterkings gekry vir sy leër, vanweë geheime organisasies.
- 9 En dit het gebeur dat sy hoëpriester hom vermoor het terwyl hy op sy troon gesit het.
- 10 En dit het gebeur dat iemand van die geheime organisasies hom vermoor het in 'n geheime deurgang, en vir homself die koninkryk verkry het; en sy naam was Lib; en Lib was 'n man van groot gestalte, groter as enige ander man onder die hele volk.

Ether 14

And now there began to be a great curse upon all the land because of the iniquity of the people, in which, if a man should lay his tool or his sword upon his shelf, or upon the place whither he would keep it, behold, upon the morrow, he could not find it, so great was the curse upon the land.

Wherefore every man did cleave unto that which was his own, with his hands, and would not borrow neither would he lend; and every man kept the hilt of his sword in his right hand, in the defence of his property and his own life and of his wives and children.

And now, after the space of two years, and after the death of Shared, behold, there arose the brother of Shared and he gave battle unto Coriantumr, in which Coriantumr did beat him and did pursue him to the wilderness of Akish.

And it came to pass that the brother of Shared did give battle unto him in the wilderness of Akish; and the battle became exceedingly sore, and many thousands fell by the sword.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr did lay siege to the wilderness; and the brother of Shared did march forth out of the wilderness by night, and slew a part of the army of Coriantumr, as they were drunken.

And he came forth to the land of Moron, and placed himself upon the throne of Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr dwelt with his army in the wilderness for the space of two years, in which he did receive great strength to his army.

Now the brother of Shared, whose name was Gilead, also received great strength to his army, because of secret combinations.

And it came to pass that his high priest murdered him as he sat upon his throne.

And it came to pass that one of the secret combinations murdered him in a secret pass, and obtained unto himself the kingdom; and his name was Lib; and Lib was a man of great stature, more than any other man among all the people.

11 En dit het gebeur dat in die eerste jaar van Lib, het Coriantumr opgekom na die land Moron en vir Lib die stryd aangesê.

12 En dit het gebeur dat hy geveg het met Lib, waarin Lib hom geslaan het op sy arm sodat hy gewond was; nogtans, die leër van Coriantumr het vorentoe gebeur na Lib, sodat hy gevlug het na die grense by die seekus.

13 En dit het gebeur dat Coriantumr hom agternagesit het; en Lib het hom die stryd aangesê by die seekus.

14 En dit het gebeur dat Lib die leër van Coriantumr verslaan het, dat hulle weer na die wildernis van Akis gevlug het.

15 En dit het gebeur dat Lib hom agternagesit het totdat hy gekom het by die vlakke van Agos. En Coriantumr het die hele volk met hom geneem toe hy gevlug het voor Lib in daardie deel van die land waarheen hy gevlug het.

16 En toe hy by die vlaktes van Agos gekom het, het hy vir Lib die stryd aangesê, en hy het hom geslaan totdat hy gesterf het; nogtans, die broer van Lib het teen Coriantumr gekom in die plek van Lib; en die stryd het uitermate hewig geword, waarvan Coriantumr weer gevlug het voor die leër van die broer van Lib.

17 Nou, die naam van die broer van Lib was Siz. En dit het gebeur dat Siz vir Coriantumr agternagesit het, en hy het baie stede verower, en hy het beide vroue en kinders gedood, en hy het die stede verbrand.

18 En daar het 'n vrees vir Siz uitgegaan dwarsdeur die hele land; ja, 'n geroep het uitgegaan deur die land—Wie kan staan voor die leër van Siz? Kyk, hy vee die aarde voor hom!

19 En dit het gebeur dat die volk begin het om in leërs bymekaar te kom, dwarsoor die hele aangesig van die land.

20 En hulle is verdeel; en 'n deel van hulle het gevlug na die leër van Siz, en 'n deel van hulle het gevlug na die leër van Coriantumr.

21 En so groot en langdurig was die oorlog, en so lank was die toneel van bloedvergieting en slagting, dat die hele aangesig van die land bedek was deur die liggame van die dooies.

And it came to pass that in the first year of Lib, Coriantumr came up unto the land of Moron, and gave battle unto Lib.

And it came to pass that he fought with Lib, in which Lib did smite upon his arm that he was wounded; nevertheless, the army of Coriantumr did press forward upon Lib, that he fled to the borders upon the seashore.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr pursued him; and Lib gave battle unto him upon the seashore.

And it came to pass that Lib did smite the army of Coriantumr, that they fled again to the wilderness of Akish.

And it came to pass that Lib did pursue him until he came to the plains of Agosh. And Coriantumr had taken all the people with him as he fled before Lib in that quarter of the land whither he fled.

And when he had come to the plains of Agosh he gave battle unto Lib, and he smote upon him until he died; nevertheless, the brother of Lib did come against Coriantumr in the stead thereof, and the battle became exceedingly sore, in the which Coriantumr fled again before the army of the brother of Lib.

Now the name of the brother of Lib was called Shiz. And it came to pass that Shiz pursued after Coriantumr, and he did overthrow many cities, and he did slay both women and children, and he did burn the cities.

And there went a fear of Shiz throughout all the land; yea, a cry went forth throughout the land—Who can stand before the army of Shiz? Behold, he sweepeth the earth before him!

And it came to pass that the people began to flock together in armies, throughout all the face of the land.

And they were divided; and a part of them fled to the army of Shiz, and a part of them fled to the army of Coriantumr.

And so great and lasting had been the war, and so long had been the scene of bloodshed and carnage, that the whole face of the land was covered with the bodies of the dead.

- 22 En so kort en haastig was die oorlog dat daar niemand oor was om die dooies te begrawe nie, maar hulle het gemarsjeer van die vergieting van bloed na die vergieting van bloed, en die liggame van beide manne, vroue en kinders verstrooid gelaat oor die aangesig van die land, om 'n prooi te word vir die wurms van die vlees.
- 23 En die reuk daarvan het uitgegaan oor die aangesig van die land, ja, en wel oor die hele aangesig van die land; daarom is die volk gekwel bedags en snags vanweë die reuk daarvan.
- 24 Nogtans, Siz het nie opgehou om vir Coriantumr agterna te sit nie; want hy het gesweer om homself te wreek op Coriantumr vir die bloed van sy broer, wat gedood is, en die woord van die Here wat tot Ether gekom het dat Coriantumr nie sou val deur die swaard nie.
- 25 En so sien ons dat die Here hulle besoek het in die volheid van sy toorn, en hulle boosheid, en gruwels het 'n weg berei vir hulle ewigdurende vernietiging.
- 26 En dit het gebeur dat Siz vir Coriantumr ooswaarts agternagesit het, so ver as die grense van die seekus, en daar het hy Siz die stryd aangesê vir 'n tydperk van drie dae.
- 27 En so vreeslik was die vernietiging onder die leërs van Siz, dat die volk begin het om bang te word, en begin het om te vlug voor die leërs van Coriantumr; en hulle het gevlug na die land Corihor, en die inwoners weggegee voor hulle, en al diegene wat nie wou aansluit by hulle nie.
- 28 En hulle het hul tente opgeslaan in die dal van Corihor; en Coriantumr het sy tente opgeslaan in die dal van Sur. Nou, die dal van Sur was naby die heuwel Comnor; daarom, Coriantumr het sy leërs bymeekaar gemaak op die heuwel Comnor; en hy het 'n trompet geblaas vir die leërs van Siz om hulle uit te daag tot die stryd.
- 29 En dit het gebeur dat hulle uitgekome het, maar is weer verdrywe; en hulle het die tweede keer gekom, en hulle is weer verdrywe die tweede keer. En dit het gebeur dat hulle weer die derde keer gekom het, en die stryd het uitermate hewig geword.

And so swift and speedy was the war that there was none left to bury the dead, but they did march forth from the shedding of blood to the shedding of blood, leaving the bodies of both men, women, and children strewed upon the face of the land, to become a prey to the worms of the flesh.

And the scent thereof went forth upon the face of the land, even upon all the face of the land; wherefore the people became troubled by day and by night, because of the scent thereof.

Nevertheless, Shiz did not cease to pursue Coriantumr; for he had sworn to avenge himself upon Coriantumr of the blood of his brother, who had been slain, and the word of the Lord which came to Ether that Coriantumr should not fall by the sword.

And thus we see that the Lord did visit them in the fulness of his wrath, and their wickedness and abominations had prepared a way for their everlasting destruction.

And it came to pass that Shiz did pursue Coriantumr eastward, even to the borders by the seashore, and there he gave battle unto Shiz for the space of three days.

And so terrible was the destruction among the armies of Shiz that the people began to be frightened, and began to flee before the armies of Coriantumr; and they fled to the land of Corihor, and swept off the inhabitants before them, all them that would not join them.

And they pitched their tents in the valley of Corihor; and Coriantumr pitched his tents in the valley of Shurr. Now the valley of Shurr was near the hill Comnor; wherefore, Coriantumr did gather his armies together upon the hill Comnor, and did sound a trumpet unto the armies of Shiz to invite them forth to battle.

And it came to pass that they came forth, but were driven again; and they came the second time, and they were driven again the second time. And it came to pass that they came again the third time, and the battle became exceedingly sore.

30 En dit het gebeur dat Siz vir Coriantumr geslaan
het sodat hy hom baie diep wonde gegee het; en
Coriantumr, omdat hy sy bloed verloor het, het flou
geword, en is weggedra asof hy dood was.

31 Nou, die verlies aan manne, vroue en kinders aan
beide kante was so groot dat Siz sy manne beveel het
dat hulle nie die leërs van Coriantumr moes agterna-
sit nie, daarom het hulle teruggekeer na hul kamp.

And it came to pass that Shiz smote upon
Coriantumr that he gave him many deep wounds;
and Coriantumr, having lost his blood, fainted, and
was carried away as though he were dead.

Now the loss of men, women and children on both
sides was so great that Shiz commanded his people
that they should not pursue the armies of
Coriantumr; wherefore, they returned to their camp.

Ether 15

- 1 En dit het gebeur toe Coriantumr herstel het van sy wonde, het hy begin om die woorde te onthou wat Ether met hom gespreek het.
- 2 Hy het gesien dat daar alreeds byna twee miljoen van sy volk gedood is deur die swaard, en hy het begin om te treur in sy hart; ja, daar is twee miljoen magtige manne gedood, en ook hulle vroue en hul kinders.
- 3 Hy het begin om te bekeer van die boosheid wat hy gedoen het; hy het begin om die woorde te onthou wat gespreek is by monde van al die profete, en hy het hulle gesien dat hulle vervul is tot dusver, elke gedeelte; en sy siel het getreur en het geweier om getroos te word.
- 4 En dit het gebeur dat hy 'n brief aan Siz geskryf het om hom te vra om die volk te spaar, en hy sou die koninkryk prysgee ter wille van die lewens van die volk.
- 5 En dit het gebeur dat toe Siz sy brief ontvang het, het hy 'n brief geskryf aan Coriantumr, dat as hy homself sou oorgee, sodat hy hom mag dood met sy eie swaard, dat hy die lewens sou spaar van die volk.
- 6 En dit het gebeur dat die volk nie bekeer het van hulle ongeregtheid nie; en die volk van Coriantumr was opgestook tot toorn teen die volk van Siz; en die volk van Siz is opgestook tot toorn teen die volk van Coriantumr; daarom, die volk van Siz het die volk van Coriantumr die stryd aangesê.
- 7 En toe Coriantumr sien dat hy op die punt was om te val, het hy weer gevlug voor die volk van Siz.
- 8 En dit het gebeur dat hy gekom het by die waters van Ripliancum, wat, as dit vertolk word, groot beteken, of om alles te oortref; daarom, toe hulle by hierdie waters gekom het, het hulle hul tente opgeslaan; en Siz het ook sy tente opgeslaan naby hulle; en daarom op die volgende dag het hulle die stryd begin.
- 9 En dit het gebeur dat hulle 'n uitermate hewige stryd geveg het, waarin Coriantumr weer gewond is, en hy het flou geword weens die verlies van bloed.

Ether 15

And it came to pass when Coriantumr had recovered of his wounds, he began to remember the words which Ether had spoken unto him.

He saw that there had been slain by the sword already nearly two millions of his people, and he began to sorrow in his heart; yea, there had been slain two millions of mighty men, and also their wives and their children.

He began to repent of the evil which he had done; he began to remember the words which had been spoken by the mouth of all the prophets, and he saw them that they were fulfilled thus far, every whit; and his soul mourned and refused to be comforted.

And it came to pass that he wrote an epistle unto Shiz, desiring him that he would spare the people, and he would give up the kingdom for the sake of the lives of the people.

And it came to pass that when Shiz had received his epistle he wrote an epistle unto Coriantumr, that if he would give himself up, that he might slay him with his own sword, that he would spare the lives of the people.

And it came to pass that the people repented not of their iniquity; and the people of Coriantumr were stirred up to anger against the people of Shiz; and the people of Shiz were stirred up to anger against the people of Coriantumr; wherefore, the people of Shiz did give battle unto the people of Coriantumr.

And when Coriantumr saw that he was about to fall he fled again before the people of Shiz.

And it came to pass that he came to the waters of Ripliancum, which, by interpretation, is large, or to exceed all; wherefore, when they came to these waters they pitched their tents; and Shiz also pitched his tents near unto them; and therefore on the morrow they did come to battle.

And it came to pass that they fought an exceedingly sore battle, in which Coriantumr was wounded again, and he fainted with the loss of blood.

- 10 En dit het gebeur dat die leërs van Coriantumr die leërs van Siz só hewig aangeval het dat hulle hul ver- slaan het, sodat hulle hul voor hulle laat vlug het; en hulle het suidwaarts gevlug, en het hul tente opge- slaan op 'n plek wat Ogat genoem was.
- 11 En dit het gebeur dat die leër van Coriantumr hul- le tente opgeslaan het by die heuwel Rama; en dit was dieselfde heuwel waar my vader Mormon die kronieke weggebêre het tot die Here, wat heilig was.
- 12 En dit het gebeur dat hulle die hele volk byme- kaargemaak het oor die hele aangesig van die land, wat nie gedood is nie, behalwe Ether.
- 13 En dit het gebeur dat Ether al die handeling ge- sien het van die volk; en hy het gesien dat die volk wat vir Coriantumr was, bymekaargekom het met die leërs van Coriantumr; en die volk wat vir Siz was, het bymekaargekom met die leërs van Siz.
- 14 Daarom, hulle was besig vir 'n tydperk van vier jaar om die volk bymekaar te maak, sodat hulle almal mag kry wat op die aangesig van die land was, en so- dat hulle al die versterkings mag kry wat moontlik was om te kry.
- 15 En dit het gebeur dat toe hulle almal bymekaar was, elkeen met die leër waar hy wou wees, met hul- le vroue en hulle kinders—beide manne, vroue en kinders wat bewapen was met wapens van oorlog, en skilde gehad het, en borsplate, en helms, en gekleed was volgens die wyse van oorlog—het hulle uitge- marsjeer die een teen die ander in die stryd; en hulle het geveg daardie hele dag, en het nie oorwin nie.
- 16 En dit het gebeur dat toe dit nag was, was hulle moeg, en het teruggetrek na hul kampe; en nadat hulle teruggetrek het na hulle kampe, het hulle be- gin huil en weeklaag oor die verlies van die gesneu- weldes van hulle volk, en so groot was hulle geroep, hulle gehuil en geweeklag, dat hulle die lug uiterma- te verskeur het.
- 17 En dit het gebeur dat hulle die volgende dag weer gaan veg het, en groot en verskriklik was daardie dag; nogtans, hulle het nie oorwin nie, en toe dit weer nag word het hulle die lug verskeur met hulle geroep, en hulle gehuil, en hulle geweeklag, oor die verlies van die gesneuweldes van hulle volk.

And it came to pass that the armies of Coriantumr did press upon the armies of Shiz that they beat them, that they caused them to flee before them; and they did flee southward, and did pitch their tents in a place which was called Ogath.

And it came to pass that the army of Coriantumr did pitch their tents by the hill Ramah; and it was that same hill where my father Mormon did hide up the records unto the Lord, which were sacred.

And it came to pass that they did gather together all the people upon all the face of the land, who had not been slain, save it was Ether.

And it came to pass that Ether did behold all the doings of the people; and he beheld that the people who were for Coriantumr were gathered together to the army of Coriantumr; and the people who were for Shiz were gathered together to the army of Shiz.

Wherefore, they were for the space of four years gathering together the people, that they might get all who were upon the face of the land, and that they might receive all the strength which it was possible that they could receive.

And it came to pass that when they were all gath- ered together, every one to the army which he would, with their wives and their children—both men, women and children being armed with weapons of war, having shields, and breastplates, and head- plates, and being clothed after the manner of war— they did march forth one against another to battle; and they fought all that day, and conquered not.

And it came to pass that when it was night they were weary, and retired to their camps; and after they had retired to their camps they took up a howl- ing and a lamentation for the loss of the slain of their people; and so great were their cries, their howlings and lamentations, that they did rend the air exceed- ingly.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they did go again to battle, and great and terrible was that day; nevertheless, they conquered not, and when the night came again they did rend the air with their cries, and their howlings, and their mournings, for the loss of the slain of their people.

18 En dit het gebeur dat Coriantumr weer 'n brief geskryf het aan Siz, om te vra dat hy nie weer tot die stryd moes oorgaan nie, maar dat hy die koninkryk moes neem, en die lewens spaar van die volk.

19 Maar kyk, die Gees van die Here het opgehou om met hulle te werk, en Satan het volle mag oor die harte van die volk gehad; want hulle is oorgegee aan die hardheid van hulle harte, en die blindheid van hulle verstand sodat hulle vernietig mag word; daarom het hulle weer tot die stryd oorgegaan.

20 En dit het gebeur dat hulle daardie hele dag geveg het, en toe dit nag word, het hulle op hul swaarde geslaap.

21 En op die volgende dag het hulle geveg tot dit nag geword het.

22 En toe dit nag geword het, was hulle dronk van toorn, net soos 'n man wat dronk is van wyn; en hulle het weer op hul swaarde geslaap.

23 En op die volgende dag het hulle weer geveg; en toe dit nag geword het, het almal deur die swaard geval behalwe twee en vyftig van die volk van Coriantumr, en nege en sestig van die volk van Siz.

24 En dit het gebeur dat hulle geslaap het op hulle swaarde daardie nag, en die volgende dag het hulle weer geveg, en hulle het geveg met hulle mag met hulle swaarde en met hulle skilde, daardie hele dag.

25 En toe dit nag geword het, was daar twee en dertig van die volk van Siz, en sewe en twintig van die volk van Coriantumr.

26 En dit het gebeur dat hulle geëet en geslaap het, en voorberei het op die dood die volgende dag. En hulle was groot en magtige manne wat betref die krag van manne.

27 En dit het gebeur dat hulle vir 'n tydperk van drie ure geveg het, en hulle het flou geword weens die verlies van bloed.

28 En dit het gebeur dat toe die manne van Coriantumr voldoende krag ontvang het sodat hulle kon loop, was hulle op die punt om te vlug vir hulle lewens; maar kyk, Siz het opgestaan, en ook sy manne, en hy het in sy toorn gesweer dat hy Coriantumr sou doodmaak of hy sou omkom deur die swaard.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr wrote again an epistle unto Shiz, desiring that he would not come again to battle, but that he would take the kingdom, and spare the lives of the people.

But behold, the Spirit of the Lord had ceased striving with them, and Satan had full power over the hearts of the people; for they were given up unto the hardness of their hearts, and the blindness of their minds that they might be destroyed; wherefore they went again to battle.

And it came to pass that they fought all that day, and when the night came they slept upon their swords.

And on the morrow they fought even until the night came.

And when the night came they were drunken with anger, even as a man who is drunken with wine; and they slept again upon their swords.

And on the morrow they fought again; and when the night came they had all fallen by the sword save it were fifty and two of the people of Coriantumr, and sixty and nine of the people of Shiz.

And it came to pass that they slept upon their swords that night, and on the morrow they fought again, and they contended in their might with their swords and with their shields, all that day.

And when the night came there were thirty and two of the people of Shiz, and twenty and seven of the people of Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that they ate and slept, and prepared for death on the morrow. And they were large and mighty men as to the strength of men.

And it came to pass that they fought for the space of three hours, and they fainted with the loss of blood.

And it came to pass that when the men of Coriantumr had received sufficient strength that they could walk, they were about to flee for their lives; but behold, Shiz arose, and also his men, and he swore in his wrath that he would slay Coriantumr or he would perish by the sword.

- 29 Daaron, hy het hulle agternagesit, en op die volgende dag het hy hulle ingehaal; en hulle het weer geveg met die swaard. En dit het gebeur dat nadat hulle almal geval het deur die swaard, behalwe vir Coriantumr en Siz, kyk, Siz het flou geword weens die verlies van bloed.
- 30 En dit het gebeur dat toe Coriantumr op sy swaard geleun het, sodat hy 'n bietjie kon rus, het hy die kop van Siz afgekap.
- 31 En dit het gebeur dat nadat hy die kop van Siz afgekap het, het Siz hom opgelig op sy hande en geval; en nadat hy geworstel het om asem, het hy gesterf.
- 32 En dit het gebeur dat Coriantumr neergeval het op die grond, en geword het asof hy geen lewe gehad het nie.
- 33 En die Here het met Ether gespreek, en aan hom gesê: Gaan heen. En hy het heengegaan, en gesien dat die woorde van die Here almal vervul was; en hy het sy kroniek voltooi (en die honderdste gedeelte het ek nie geskrywe nie); en hy het hulle weggebêre op 'n wyse dat die volk van Limhi hulle gevind het.
- 34 Nou, die laaste woorde wat geskryf is deur Ether, is hierdie: Of die Here wil dat ek getransformeer word, of dat ek die wil van die Here ondergaan in die vlees, dit maak nie saak nie, as dit so is dat ek gered is in die koninkryk van God. Amen.

Wherefore, he did pursue them, and on the morrow he did overtake them; and they fought again with the sword. And it came to pass that when they had all fallen by the sword, save it were Coriantumr and Shiz, behold Shiz had fainted with the loss of blood.

And it came to pass that when Coriantumr had leaned upon his sword, that he rested a little, he smote off the head of Shiz.

And it came to pass that after he had smitten off the head of Shiz, that Shiz raised up on his hands and fell; and after that he had struggled for breath, he died.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr fell to the earth, and became as if he had no life.

And the Lord spake unto Ether, and said unto him: Go forth. And he went forth, and beheld that the words of the Lord had all been fulfilled; and he finished his record; (and the hundredth part I have not written) and he hid them in a manner that the people of Limhi did find them.

Now the last words which are written by Ether are these: Whether the Lord will that I be translated, or that I suffer the will of the Lord in the flesh, it mattereth not, if it so be that I am saved in the kingdom of God. Amen.

Die Boek van Moroni

Moroni 1

- 1 Nou ek, Moroni, nadat ek 'n einde gemaak het met die verkorting van die verslag van die volk van Jared, het ek veronderstel om nie meer te geskryf het nie, maar ek het nog nie omgekom nie; en ek maak myself nie bekend aan die Lamaniete nie, uit vrees dat hulle my sou vernietig.
- 2 Want kyk, hulle oorloë is uitermate fel onder hulleself; en vanweë hul haat, maak hulle elke Nefiet dood wat nie die Christus sal loën nie.
- 3 En ek, Moroni, sal nie die Christus loën nie; daarom, ek dwaal waar ook al ek kan vir die veiligheid van my eie lewe.
- 4 Daarom, ek skryf nog 'n paar dinge, in teenstelling met dit wat ek veronderstel het; want ek het veronderstel om nie meer te skryf nie; maar ek skryf nog 'n paar dinge meer, sodat hulle miskien van waarde mag wees vir my broers, die Lamaniete, in een of ander toekomstige tyd, volgens die wil van die Here.

The Book of Moroni

Moroni 1

Now I, Moroni, after having made an end of abridging the account of the people of Jared, I had supposed not to have written more, but I have not as yet perished; and I make not myself known to the Lamanites lest they should destroy me.

For behold, their wars are exceedingly fierce among themselves; and because of their hatred they put to death every Nephite that will not deny the Christ.

And I, Moroni, will not deny the Christ; wherefore, I wander whithersoever I can for the safety of mine own life.

Wherefore, I write a few more things, contrary to that which I had supposed; for I had supposed not to have written any more; but I write a few more things, that perhaps they may be of worth unto my brethren, the Lamanites, in some future day, according to the will of the Lord.

Moroni 2

- 1 Die woorde van Christus, wat Hy met sy dissipels gespreek het, die twaalf wat Hy gekies het, toe Hy sy hande op hulle gelê het—
- 2 En Hy het hulle by die naam genoem, en gesê: Julle sal die Vader aanroep in my Naam, in magtige gebed; en nadat julle dit gedoen het, sal julle mag hê dat aan hom op wie julle jul hande sal lê, julle die Heilige Gees sal gee; en in my Naam sal julle dit gee, want aldus doen my apostels.
- 3 Nou het Christus hierdie woorde gespreek met hulle ten tyde van sy eerste verskyning; en die skare het dit nie gehoor nie, maar die dissipels het dit gehoor; en op soveel as wat hulle die hande gelê het, het die Heilige Gees geval.

Moroni 2

The words of Christ, which he spake unto his disciples, the twelve whom he had chosen, as he laid his hands upon them—

And he called them by name, saying: Ye shall call on the Father in my name, in mighty prayer; and after ye have done this ye shall have power that to him upon whom ye shall lay your hands, ye shall give the Holy Ghost; and in my name shall ye give it, for thus do mine apostles.

Now Christ spake these words unto them at the time of his first appearing; and the multitude heard it not, but the disciples heard it; and on as many as they laid their hands, fell the Holy Ghost.

Moroni 3

- 1 Die wyse waarop die dissipels, wat genoem is die ouderlinge van die kerk, priesters en leraars geordineer het—
- 2 Nadat hulle tot die Vader gebid het in die Naam van Christus, het hulle hul hande op hulle gelê, en gesê:
- 3 In die Naam van Jesus Christus ordineer ek u om 'n priester te wees (of, as hy 'n leraar is, ordineer ek u om 'n leraar te wees) om bekering te preek en vergifnis van sondes deur Jesus Christus, deur die volharding in die geloof in sy Naam tot die einde. Amen.
- 4 En volgens hierdie wyse het hulle priesters en leraars geordineer, volgens die gawes en roepinge van God aan die mens; en hulle het hulle geordineer deur die krag van die Heilige Gees, wat in hulle was.

Moroni 3

The manner which the disciples, who were called the elders of the church, ordained priests and teachers—

After they had prayed unto the Father in the name of Christ, they laid their hands upon them, and said:

In the name of Jesus Christ I ordain you to be a priest (or if he be a teacher, I ordain you to be a teacher) to preach repentance and remission of sins through Jesus Christ, by the endurance of faith on his name to the end. Amen.

And after this manner did they ordain priests and teachers, according to the gifts and callings of God unto men; and they ordained them by the power of the Holy Ghost, which was in them.

Moroni 4

- 1 Die wyse waarop hulle ouderlinge en priesters die vlees en bloed van Christus aan die kerk bedien; en hulle het dit bedien volgens die gebooie van Christus; daarom weet ons dat dié wyse juis is; en die ouderling of priester het dit bedien—
- 2 En hulle het neergekniel saam met die kerk, en gebid tot die Vader in die Naam van Christus, en gesê:
- 3 O God, die Ewige Vader, ons vra U in die naam van u Seun, Jesus Christus, om hierdie brood te seën en te heilig aan die siele van al diegene wat daarvan gebruik; dat hulle mag eet ter gedagtenis aan die liggaam van u Seun, en getuig voor U, o God, die Ewige Vader, dat hulle gewillig is om op hulle die naam van u Seun te neem, en Hom altyd te onthou en sy gebooie te onderhou wat Hy hulle gegee het, sodat hulle altyd sy Gees mag hê om met hulle te wees. Amen.

Moroni 4

The manner of their elders and priests administering the flesh and blood of Christ unto the church; and they administered it according to the commandments of Christ; wherefore we know the manner to be true; and the elder or priest did minister it—

And they did kneel down with the church, and pray to the Father in the name of Christ, saying:

O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this bread to the souls of all those who partake of it; that they may eat in remembrance of the body of thy Son, and witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they are willing to take upon them the name of thy Son, and always remember him, and keep his commandments which he hath given them, that they may always have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

Moroni 5

- 1 Die wyse waarop die wyn bedien word—Kyk, hulle het die beker geneem, en gesê:
- 2 O God, die Ewige Vader, ons vra U, in die naam van u Seun, Jesus Christus, om hierdie wyn te seën en te heilig aan die siele van al diegene wat daarvan drink, dat hulle dit mag doen ter gedagtenis aan die bloed van u Seun, wat vir hulle gestort is; dat hulle mag getuig voor U, o God, die Ewige Vader, dat hulle Hom altyd onthou, sodat hulle sy Gees mag hê om met hulle te wees. Amen.

Moroni 5

The manner of administering the wine—Behold, they took the cup, and said:

O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee, in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this wine to the souls of all those who drink of it, that they may do it in remembrance of the blood of thy Son, which was shed for them; that they may witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they do always remember him, that they may have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

Moroni 6

- 1 En nou spreek ek aangaande die doop. Kyk, ouderlinge, priesters, en leraars is gedoop; en hulle is nie gedoop nie tensy hulle gepaste vrugte voortgebring het dat hulle dit waardig was nie.
- 2 Ook het hulle niemand aanvaar vir die doop nie, tensy hulle gekom het met 'n gebroke hart en 'n verslae gees, en getuig het aan die kerk dat hulle waarlik bekeer het van al hulle sondes.
- 3 En niemand is aanvaar vir die doop nie tensy hulle op hulle die Naam van Christus geneem het, en 'n vasberadenheid gehad het om Hom te dien tot die einde toe.
- 4 En nadat hulle aanvaar is vir die doop, en beïnvloed en gereinig is deur die mag van die Heilige Gees, is hulle gereken onder die volk van die kerk van Christus; en hul name is geneem, sodat hulle onthou en gevoed mag word deur die goeie woord van God, om hulle te hou op die regte weg, om hulle gedurig waaksaam te hou in gebed, terwyl hulle alleenlik staatmaak op die verdienste van Christus, wat die oorsprong en voleinder van hul geloof is.
- 5 En die kerk het dikwels bymekaargekom, om te vas en te bid, en om met mekaar te spreek aangaande die welsyn van hulle siele.
- 6 En hulle het dikwels bymekaargekom om van die brood en die wyn te gebruik, ter gedagtenis aan die Here Jesus.
- 7 En hulle was streng om daarop te let dat daar geen ongeregtigheid sou wees onder hulle nie; en wie ook al gevind is wat ongeregtigheid pleeg, en drie getuies van die kerk het hulle veroordeel voor die ouderlinge, en as hulle nie bekeer het nie, en nie bely het nie, is hulle name uitgewis, en hulle is nie gereken onder die volk van Christus nie.
- 8 Maar so dikwels as hulle bekeer het en vergifnis gesoek het, met opregte bedoeling, is hulle vergewe.
- 9 En hulle vergaderings is gelei deur die kerk volgens die werking van die Gees, en deur die krag van die Heilige Gees; want soos die mag van die Heilige Gees hulle gelei het, hetsy om te preek, of te vermaan, of te bid, of te versoek, of te sing, so is dit gedoen.

Moroni 6

And now I speak concerning baptism. Behold, elders, priests, and teachers were baptized; and they were not baptized save they brought forth fruit meet that they were worthy of it.

Neither did they receive any unto baptism save they came forth with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, and witnessed unto the church that they truly repented of all their sins.

And none were received unto baptism save they took upon them the name of Christ, having a determination to serve him to the end.

And after they had been received unto baptism, and were wrought upon and cleansed by the power of the Holy Ghost, they were numbered among the people of the church of Christ; and their names were taken, that they might be remembered and nourished by the good word of God, to keep them in the right way, to keep them continually watchful unto prayer, relying alone upon the merits of Christ, who was the author and the finisher of their faith.

And the church did meet together oft, to fast and to pray, and to speak one with another concerning the welfare of their souls.

And they did meet together oft to partake of bread and wine, in remembrance of the Lord Jesus.

And they were strict to observe that there should be no iniquity among them; and whoso was found to commit iniquity, and three witnesses of the church did condemn them before the elders, and if they repented not, and confessed not, their names were blotted out, and they were not numbered among the people of Christ.

But as oft as they repented and sought forgiveness, with real intent, they were forgiven.

And their meetings were conducted by the church after the manner of the workings of the Spirit, and by the power of the Holy Ghost; for as the power of the Holy Ghost led them whether to preach, or to exhort, or to pray, or to supplicate, or to sing, even so it was done.

Moroni 7

- 1 En nou ek, Moroni, skryf 'n paar van die woorde van my vader, Mormon, wat hy gespreek het aangaande geloof, hoop en naasteliefde; want volgens hierdie wyse het hy met die volk gespreek, terwyl hy hulle geleer het in die sinagoge wat hulle gebou het as die plek van aanbidding.
- 2 En nou ek, Mormon, spreek met julle, my geliefde broers; en dit is deur die genade van God die Vader, en ons Here Jesus Christus, en sy heilige wil, vanweë die gawe van sy roeping aan my, dat ek toegelaat word om met julle te spreek op hierdie tydstip.
- 3 Daarom, ek wil met julle spreek wat van die kerk is, wat die vreedsame volgelinge van Christus is, en wat 'n voldoende hoop verkry het waardeur julle die rus van die Here kan binnegaan, vanaf hierdie tyd voortaan totdat julle sal rus by Hom in die hemel.
- 4 En nou my broers, ek oordeel hierdie dinge oor julle vanweë jul vreedsame wandel met die kinders van mense.
- 5 Want ek onthou die woord van God wat sê, aan hulle werke sal julle hulle ken; want as hulle werke goed is, dan is hulle ook goed.
- 6 Want kyk, God het gesê 'n mens wat boos is, kan nie dit doen wat goed is nie; want as hy 'n gawe offer, of bid tot God, tensy hy dit sal doen met opregte bedoeling, baat dit hom niks nie.
- 7 Want kyk, dit word hom nie toegereken as geregtigheid nie.
- 8 Want kyk, as 'n mens wat boos is, 'n gawe gee, doen hy dit onwillig; daarom word dit vir hom toegereken dieselfde asof hy die gawe behou het; daarom word hy as boos beskou voor God.
- 9 En net so word dit as boosheid vir 'n mens gereken, as hy sal bid maar nie met opregte bedoeling van sy hart nie; ja, en dit baat hom niks, want God ontvang nie sulkes nie.
- 10 Daarom, 'n mens wat boos is, kan nie dit doen wat goed is nie; nóg sal hy 'n goeie gawe gee.

Moroni 7

And now I, Moroni, write a few of the words of my father Mormon, which he spake concerning faith, hope, and charity; for after this manner did he speak unto the people, as he taught them in the synagogue which they had built for the place of worship.

And now I, Mormon, speak unto you, my beloved brethren; and it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, and his holy will, because of the gift of his calling unto me, that I am permitted to speak unto you at this time.

Wherefore, I would speak unto you that are of the church, that are the peaceable followers of Christ, and that have obtained a sufficient hope by which ye can enter into the rest of the Lord, from this time henceforth until ye shall rest with him in heaven.

And now my brethren, I judge these things of you because of your peaceable walk with the children of men.

For I remember the word of God which saith by their works ye shall know them; for if their works be good, then they are good also.

For behold, God hath said a man being evil cannot do that which is good; for if he offereth a gift, or prayeth unto God, except he shall do it with real intent it profiteth him nothing.

For behold, it is not counted unto him for righteousness.

For behold, if a man being evil giveth a gift, he doeth it grudgingly; wherefore it is counted unto him the same as if he had retained the gift; wherefore he is counted evil before God.

And likewise also is it counted evil unto a man, if he shall pray and not with real intent of heart; yea, and it profiteth him nothing, for God receiveth none such.

Wherefore, a man being evil cannot do that which is good; neither will he give a good gift.

- 11 Want kyk, 'n bitter fontein kan nie goeie water voortbring nie; nóg kan 'n goeie fontein bitter water voortbring; daarom, 'n mens wat 'n dienskneg van die duiwel is, kan Christus nie volg nie; en as hy Christus volg, kan hy nie 'n dienskneg van die duiwel wees nie.
- 12 Daarom, alle dinge wat goed is, kom van God; en dit wat boos is, kom van die duiwel; want die duiwel is 'n vyand van God, en veg teen Hom gedurigdeur, en nooi uit en verlok tot sonde, en om dit te doen wat boos is gedurigdeur.
- 13 Maar kyk, dit wat van God is, nooi uit en verlok om goed te doen gedurigdeur; daarom, elke ding wat uitnooi en verlok om goed te doen, en om God lief te hê, en Hom te dien, word geïnspireer deur God.
- 14 Daarom, sien toe, my geliefde broers, dat julle nie oordeel dat dit wat boos is, van God is nie, of dit wat goed is en van God is, om van die duiwel te wees nie.
- 15 Want kyk, my broers, dit word aan julle gegee om te oordeel, sodat julle goed van kwaad mag onderskei; en die wyse om te oordeel is ewe duidelik, sodat julle mag weet met 'n volmaakte kennis, soos die daglig verskil van die donker nag.
- 16 Want kyk, die Gees van Christus word gegee aan elke mens, sodat hy goed mag onderskei van kwaad; daarom, ek toon aan julle die wyse om te oordeel; want elke ding wat uitnooi om goed te doen, en om te oorreed om te glo in Christus, word uitgestuur deur die krag en gawe van Christus; daarom mag julle weet met 'n volmaakte kennis dat dit van God is.
- 17 Maar watter ding ook al 'n mens oorreed om boosheid te doen, en nie in Christus te glo nie, en Hom loën, en God nie dien nie, dan mag julle weet met 'n volmaakte kennis dat dit van die duiwel is; want volgens hierdie wyse werk die duiwel, want hy oorreed geen mens om goed te doen nie, nee, nie een nie; nóg sy engele; nóg hulle wat hulle aan hom onderwerp.
- 18 En nou, my broers, aangesien julle die lig ken waardeur julle mag oordeel, welke lig die lig van Christus is, sorg dat julle nie verkeerdelik oordeel nie; want met daardie selfde oordeel waarmee julle oordeel, sal julle ook geoordeel word.

For behold, a bitter fountain cannot bring forth good water; neither can a good fountain bring forth bitter water; wherefore, a man being a servant of the devil cannot follow Christ; and if he follow Christ he cannot be a servant of the devil.

Wherefore, all things which are good cometh of God; and that which is evil cometh of the devil; for the devil is an enemy unto God, and fighteth against him continually, and inviteth and enticeth to sin, and to do that which is evil continually.

But behold, that which is of God inviteth and enticeth to do good continually; wherefore, every thing which inviteth and enticeth to do good, and to love God, and to serve him, is inspired of God.

Wherefore, take heed, my beloved brethren, that ye do not judge that which is evil to be of God, or that which is good and of God to be of the devil.

For behold, my brethren, it is given unto you to judge, that ye may know good from evil; and the way to judge is as plain, that ye may know with a perfect knowledge, as the daylight is from the dark night.

For behold, the Spirit of Christ is given to every man, that he may know good from evil; wherefore, I show unto you the way to judge; for every thing which inviteth to do good, and to persuade to believe in Christ, is sent forth by the power and gift of Christ; wherefore ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of God.

But whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do evil, and believe not in Christ, and deny him, and serve not God, then ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of the devil; for after this manner doth the devil work, for he persuadeth no man to do good, no, not one; neither do his angels; neither do they who subject themselves unto him.

And now, my brethren, seeing that ye know the light by which ye may judge, which light is the light of Christ, see that ye do not judge wrongfully; for with that same judgment which ye judge ye shall also be judged.

- 19 Daaron, ek versoek julle, broers, dat julle ywerig sal soek in die lig van Christus dat julle goed van kwaad mag onderskei; en as julle sal vasgryp aan elke goeie ding, en dit nie veroordeel nie, sal julle sekerlik 'n kind van Christus wees.
- 20 En nou, my broers, hoe is dit moontlik om vas te gryp aan elke goeie ding?
- 21 En nou kom ek by daardie geloof, waarvan ek gesê het dat ek sou spreek; en ek sal julle vertel van die wyse waardeur julle mag vasgryp aan elke goeie ding.
- 22 Want kyk, God weet alle dinge, omdat Hy van ewigdurendheid tot ewigdurendheid is, kyk, Hy het engele gestuur om die kinders van mense te dien, om aangaande die koms van Christus te openbaar; en deur Christus sou elke goeie ding kom.
- 23 En God het ook verkondig aan profete, deur sy eie mond, dat Christus sou kom.
- 24 En kyk, daar was verskeie wyses waarop Hy dinge geopenbaar het aan die kinders van mense, wat goed was; en alle dinge wat goed is kom van Christus; anders was die mens gevalle, en kon daar geen goeie ding na hulle kom nie.
- 25 Daaron, deur die bediening van engele, en deur elke woord wat uitgaan uit die mond van God, het die mens begin om geloof te beoefen in Christus; en so deur geloof, het hulle vasgegryp aan elke goeie ding; en so was dit tot die koms van Christus.
- 26 En nadat Hy gekom het, is die mens ook gered deur geloof in sy Naam; en deur geloof word hulle die seuns van God. En so sekerlik as Christus lewe het Hy hierdie woorde met ons vaders gespreek, en gesê: Watter ding ook al julle die Vader sal vra in my Naam, wat goed is, in geloof en glo dat julle sal ontvang, kyk, dit sal vir julle gedoen word.
- 27 Daaron, my geliefde broers, het wonderwerke opgehou omdat Christus opgevaar het na die hemel, en gaan sit het aan die regterhand van God, om van die Vader sy reg op barmhartigheid te eis wat hy oor die kinders van mense het?

Wherefore, I beseech of you, brethren, that ye should search diligently in the light of Christ that ye may know good from evil; and if ye will lay hold upon every good thing, and condemn it not, ye certainly will be a child of Christ.

And now, my brethren, how is it possible that ye can lay hold upon every good thing?

And now I come to that faith, of which I said I would speak; and I will tell you the way whereby ye may lay hold on every good thing.

For behold, God knowing all things, being from everlasting to everlasting, behold, he sent angels to minister unto the children of men, to make manifest concerning the coming of Christ; and in Christ there should come every good thing.

And God also declared unto prophets, by his own mouth, that Christ should come.

And behold, there were divers ways that he did manifest things unto the children of men, which were good; and all things which are good cometh of Christ; otherwise men were fallen, and there could no good thing come unto them.

Wherefore, by the ministering of angels, and by every word which proceeded forth out of the mouth of God, men began to exercise faith in Christ; and thus by faith, they did lay hold upon every good thing; and thus it was until the coming of Christ.

And after that he came men also were saved by faith in his name; and by faith, they become the sons of God. And as surely as Christ liveth he spake these words unto our fathers, saying: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is good, in faith believing that ye shall receive, behold, it shall be done unto you.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased because Christ hath ascended into heaven, and hath sat down on the right hand of God, to claim of the Father his rights of mercy which he hath upon the children of men?

28 Want Hy het voldoen aan die eise van die wet, en Hy maak aanspraak op diegene wat geloof het in Hom; en hulle wat geloof het in Hom, sal vashou aan elke goeie ding; daarom bepleit Hy die saak van die kinders van mense; en Hy woon ewiglik in die hemele.

29 En omdat Hy dit gedoen het, my geliefde broers, het wonderwerke opgehou? Kyk, ek sê vir julle, Nee; nóg het engele opgehou om die kinders van mense te dien.

30 Want kyk, hulle is onderworpe aan Hom, om te dien volgens die woord van sy bevel, en toon hulleself aan hulle met 'n sterk geloof en 'n onwrikbare gees in elke gedaante van godsaligheid.

31 En die amp van hulle bediening is om mense te roep tot bekering, en om te vervul en om die werk te doen van die verbonde van die Vader, wat Hy gesluit het met die kinders van mense, om die weg te berei onder die kinders van mense, deur die woord van Christus te verkondig aan die uitverkore diensknegte van die Here, sodat hulle van Hom mag getuig.

32 En deur so te doen, berei die Here God die weg sodat die res van die mense geloof mag hê in Christus, dat die Heilige Gees plek mag hê in hulle harte, volgens die krag daarvan; en volgens hierdie wyse bring die Vader die verbonde teweeg wat Hy gesluit het met die kinders van mense.

33 En Christus het gesê: As julle geloof in My sal hê, sal julle mag hê om te doen watter ding ook al raadzaam is vir My.

34 En Hy het gesê: Bekeer, al julle eindes van die aarde, en kom na My en word gedoop in my Naam, en glo in My dat julle gered mag word.

35 En nou, my geliefde broers, as dit die geval is dat hierdie dinge waar is wat ek met julle gespreek het, en God aan julle sal toon, met krag en groot heerlikheid op die laaste dag dat hulle waar is, en as hulle waar is, het die dag van wonderwerke opgehou?

36 Of het engele opgehou om te verskyn aan die kinders van mense? Of het Hy die mag van die Heilige Gees weerhou van hulle? Of sal Hy, solank as tyd sal bestaan, of die aarde sal staan, of daar een mens op die aangesig daarvan sal wees om gered te word?

For he hath answered the ends of the law, and he claimeth all those who have faith in him; and they who have faith in him will cleave unto every good thing; wherefore he advocateth the cause of the children of men; and he dwelleth eternally in the heavens.

And because he hath done this, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased? Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither have angels ceased to minister unto the children of men.

For behold, they are subject unto him, to minister according to the word of his command, showing themselves unto them of strong faith and a firm mind in every form of godliness.

And the office of their ministry is to call men unto repentance, and to fulfil and to do the work of the covenants of the Father, which he hath made unto the children of men, to prepare the way among the children of men, by declaring the word of Christ unto the chosen vessels of the Lord, that they may bear testimony of him.

And by so doing, the Lord God prepareth the way that the residue of men may have faith in Christ, that the Holy Ghost may have place in their hearts, according to the power thereof; and after this manner bringeth to pass the Father, the covenants which he hath made unto the children of men.

And Christ hath said: If ye will have faith in me ye shall have power to do whatsoever thing is expedient in me.

And he hath said: Repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, and have faith in me, that ye may be saved.

And now, my beloved brethren, if this be the case that these things are true which I have spoken unto you, and God will show unto you, with power and great glory at the last day, that they are true, and if they are true has the day of miracles ceased?

Or have angels ceased to appear unto the children of men? Or has he withheld the power of the Holy Ghost from them? Or will he, so long as time shall last, or the earth shall stand, or there shall be one man upon the face thereof to be saved?

37 Kyk, ek sê vir julle, Nee; want dit is deur geloof dat wonderwerke verrig word; en dit is deur geloof dat engele verskyn en die mense dien; daarom, as hierdie dinge opgehou het, wee die kinders van mense, want dit is vanweë ongeloof, en alles is tevergeefs.

38 Want geen mens kan gered word, volgens die woorde van Christus nie, tensy hulle geloof sal hê in sy Naam; daarom, as hierdie dinge opgehou het, dan het geloof ook opgehou; en vreeslik is die toestand van die mens, want hulle is asof daar geen verlossing gedoen is nie.

39 Maar kyk, my geliefde broers, ek oordeel beter dinge van julle, want ek oordeel dat julle geloof het in Christus vanweë jul sagmoedigheid; want as julle nie geloof in Hom het nie, dan is julle nie geskik om gereken te word onder die volk van sy kerk nie.

40 En verder, my geliefde broers, ek wil met julle spreek aangaande hoop. Hoe is dit dat julle geloof kan verkry, tensy julle hoop sal hê?

41 En wat is dit waarvoor julle sal hoop? Kyk ek sê vir julle dat julle hoop sal hê deur die versoening van Christus en die krag van sy opstanding, om opgewek te word tot die ewige lewe, en dit vanweë julle geloof in Hom volgens die belofte.

42 Daarom, as 'n mens geloof het, moet hy noodwendig hoop hê; want sonder geloof kan daar geen hoop wees nie.

43 En verder, kyk, ek sê vir julle dat hy nie geloof en hoop kan hê, tensy hy sagmoedig en nederig van hart is nie.

44 Indien wel, is sy geloof en hoop tevergeefs, want niemand is aanneemlik voor God nie, behalwe die sagmoediges en nederiges van hart; en as 'n man sagmoedig en nederig van hart is, en bely deur die mag van die Heilige Gees dat Jesus die Christus is, moet hy noodwendig naasteliefde hê; want as hy nie naasteliefde het nie, is hy niks nie; daarom moet hy noodwendig naasteliefde hê.

45 En naasteliefde is lankmoedig, en is vriendelik, en is nie jaloers nie, en is nie opgeblase nie, soek nie haar eie belang nie, word nie gou vertoornd nie, bedink nie die bose nie, en verbly haar nie in ongeregtheid nie, maar verbly haar in die waarheid, verdra alle dinge, glo alle dinge, hoop alle dinge, verduur alle dinge.

Behold I say unto you, Nay; for it is by faith that miracles are wrought; and it is by faith that angels appear and minister unto men; wherefore, if these things have ceased wo be unto the children of men, for it is because of unbelief, and all is vain.

For no man can be saved, according to the words of Christ, save they shall have faith in his name; wherefore, if these things have ceased, then has faith ceased also; and awful is the state of man, for they are as though there had been no redemption made.

But behold, my beloved brethren, I judge better things of you, for I judge that ye have faith in Christ because of your meekness; for if ye have not faith in him then ye are not fit to be numbered among the people of his church.

And again, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you concerning hope. How is it that ye can attain unto faith, save ye shall have hope?

And what is it that ye shall hope for? Behold I say unto you that ye shall have hope through the atonement of Christ and the power of his resurrection, to be raised unto life eternal, and this because of your faith in him according to the promise.

Wherefore, if a man have faith he must needs have hope; for without faith there cannot be any hope.

And again, behold I say unto you that he cannot have faith and hope, save he shall be meek, and lowly of heart.

If so, his faith and hope is vain, for none is acceptable before God, save the meek and lowly in heart; and if a man be meek and lowly in heart, and confesses by the power of the Holy Ghost that Jesus is the Christ, he must needs have charity; for if he have not charity he is nothing; wherefore he must needs have charity.

And charity suffereth long, and is kind, and envieth not, and is not puffed up, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil, and rejoiceth not in iniquity but rejoiceth in the truth, beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things.

- 46 Daaron, my geliefde broers, as julle nie naasteliefde het nie, is julle niks, want naasteliefde faal nooit. Daaron, hou vas aan naasteliefde, wat die grootste van alles is, want alle dinge moet faal—
- 47 Maar naasteliefde is die suiwere liefde van Christus, en dit duur vir ewig; en wie ook al gevind word wat dit besit op die laaste dag, dit sal goed gaan met hom.
- 48 Daaron, my geliefde broers, bid tot die Vader met al die energie van julle harte, dat julle vervul mag word met hierdie liefde, wat Hy gegee het aan almal wat ware volgelingen is van sy Seun, Jesus Christus; sodat julle die seuns van God mag word; sodat wanneer Hy sal verskyn, ons soos Hy sal wees, want ons sal Hom sien soos Hy is; sodat ons hierdie hoop mag hê; sodat ons gereinig mag word, net soos Hy rein is. Amen.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, if ye have not charity, ye are nothing, for charity never faileth. Wherefore, cleave unto charity, which is the greatest of all, for all things must fail—

But charity is the pure love of Christ, and it endureth forever; and whoso is found possessed of it at the last day, it shall be well with him.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, pray unto the Father with all the energy of heart, that ye may be filled with this love, which he hath bestowed upon all who are true followers of his Son, Jesus Christ; that ye may become the sons of God; that when he shall appear we shall be like him, for we shall see him as he is; that we may have this hope; that we may be purified even as he is pure. Amen.

Moroni 8

- 1 'n Brief van my vader Mormon, geskryf aan my, Moroni; en dit is geskryf aan my kort na my roeping tot die bediening. En op hierdie wyse het hy aan my geskryf, en gesê:
- 2 My geliefde seun, Moroni, ek jubel uitermate dat jou Here Jesus Christus aan jou gedink het, en jou geroep het tot sy bediening, en tot sy heilige werk.
- 3 Ek dink gedurig aan jou in my gebede, en ek bid gedurig tot God die Vader in die Naam van sy Heilige Kind, Jesus, dat Hy, deur sy eindelose goedheid en genade, jou sal bewaar deur die volharding van geloof in sy Naam tot die einde toe.
- 4 En nou, my seun, ek spreek met jou aangaande dit wat my uitermate bedroef; want dit bedroef my dat daar twiste sal ontstaan onder julle.
- 5 Want, as ek die waarheid geleer het, was daar twiste onder julle aangaande die doop van julle klein kindertjies.
- 6 En nou, my seun, ek wil hê dat julle ywerig moet werk, dat hierdie groot fout uitgewis moet word onder julle; want om hierdie rede het ek hierdie brief geskrywe.
- 7 Want onmiddellik nadat ek hierdie dinge van julle geleer het, het ek by die Here verneem aangaande die saak. En die woord van die Here het tot my gekom deur die mag van die Heilige Gees, en gesê:
- 8 Slaan ag op die woorde van Christus, julle Verlosser, julle Here en jul God. Kyk, Ek het in die wêreld ingekom, nie om die regverdiges te roep nie, maar sondaars tot bekering; die gesondes benodig geen geneesheer nie, maar hulle wat siek is; daarom, klein kindertjies is rein, want hulle is nie in staat om sonde te pleeg nie; daarom word die vloek van Adam weggeneem van hulle in My, dat dit geen mag het oor hulle nie; en die wet van die besnydenis is weggedoen in My.
- 9 En volgens hierdie wyse het die Heilige Gees die woord van God aan my geopenbaar; daarom, my geliefde seun, ek weet dat dit 'n ernstige bespotting voor God is dat julle klein kindertjies sou doop.

Moroni 8

An epistle of my father Mormon, written to me, Moroni; and it was written unto me soon after my calling to the ministry. And on this wise did he write unto me, saying:

My beloved son, Moroni, I rejoice exceedingly that your Lord Jesus Christ hath been mindful of you, and hath called you to his ministry, and to his holy work.

I am mindful of you always in my prayers, continually praying unto God the Father in the name of his Holy Child, Jesus, that he, through his infinite goodness and grace, will keep you through the endurance of faith on his name to the end.

And now, my son, I speak unto you concerning that which grieveth me exceedingly; for it grieveth me that there should disputations rise among you.

For, if I have learned the truth, there have been disputations among you concerning the baptism of your little children.

And now, my son, I desire that ye should labor diligently, that this gross error should be removed from among you; for, for this intent I have written this epistle.

For immediately after I had learned these things of you I inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And the word of the Lord came to me by the power of the Holy Ghost, saying:

Listen to the words of Christ, your Redeemer, your Lord and your God. Behold, I came into the world not to call the righteous but sinners to repentance; the whole need no physician, but they that are sick; wherefore, little children are whole, for they are not capable of committing sin; wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them in me, that it hath no power over them; and the law of circumcision is done away in me.

And after this manner did the Holy Ghost manifest the word of God unto me; wherefore, my beloved son, I know that it is solemn mockery before God, that ye should baptize little children.

- 10 Kyk, ek sê vir julle dat julle hierdie ding sal leer—bekering en doop aan diegene wat toerekenbaar en in staat is om sonde te pleeg; ja, leer ouers dat hulle moet bekeer en gedoop word, en hulleself verootmoedig soos hulle klein kindertjies, en hulle sal almal gered word saam met hulle klein kindertjies.
- 11 En hulle klein kindertjies het geen bekering nodig nie, nóg die doop. Kyk, die doop is tot bekering ter vervulling van die gebooie tot die vergifnis van sondes.
- 12 Maar klein kindertjies is lewend in Christus, vanaf die grondlegging van die wêreld; as dit nie so is nie, is God 'n partydige God, en ook 'n veranderlike God, en 'n aannemer van persone; want hoeveel klein kindertjies het gesterwe sonder die doop!
- 13 Daarom, as klein kindertjies nie gered kon word sonder die doop nie, moes diesulkes gegaan het na 'n eindelose hel.
- 14 Kyk, ek sê vir julle, dat hy wat veronderstel dat klein kindertjies die doop nodig het, is in die gal van bitterheid en in die bande van ongeregtigheid, want hy het nóg geloof, hoop, nóg naasteliefde; daarom, as hy afgesny sou word met dit in sy gedagtes, moet hy afgaan na die hel.
- 15 Want vreeslik is die ongeregtigheid om te veronderstel dat God een kind red vanweë die doop, en dat die ander moet vergaan omdat hy nie gedoop is nie.
- 16 Wee hulle wat die weë van die Here sal verdraai volgens hierdie wyse, want hulle sal vergaan tensy hulle bekeer. Kyk, ek spreek met vrymoedigheid, omdat ek gesag het van God; en ek vrees nie wat die mens kan doen nie; want volmaakte liefde dryf alle vrees uit.
- 17 En ek is vervul met naasteliefde, wat ewigdurende liefde is; daarom, alle kinders is vir my dieselfde; daarom, ek is lief vir klein kindertjies met 'n volmaakte liefde; en hulle is almal dieselfde en deelgenote aan heil.
- 18 Want ek weet dat God nie 'n partydige God is nie, nóg 'n veranderlike Wese; maar Hy is onveranderlik van alle ewigheid tot alle ewigheid.
- 19 Klein kindertjies kan nie bekeer nie; daarom, dit is vreeslike boosheid om die suiwere barmhartighede van God aan hulle te weier, want hulle is almal lewend in Hom vanweë sy barmhartigheid.

Behold I say unto you that this thing shall ye teach—repentance and baptism unto those who are accountable and capable of committing sin; yea, teach parents that they must repent and be baptized, and humble themselves as their little children, and they shall all be saved with their little children.

And their little children need no repentance, neither baptism. Behold, baptism is unto repentance to the fulfilling the commandments unto the remission of sins.

But little children are alive in Christ, even from the foundation of the world; if not so, God is a partial God, and also a changeable God, and a respecter to persons; for how many little children have died without baptism!

Wherefore, if little children could not be saved without baptism, these must have gone to an endless hell.

Behold I say unto you, that he that supposeth that little children need baptism is in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; for he hath neither faith, hope, nor charity; wherefore, should he be cut off while in the thought, he must go down to hell.

For awful is the wickedness to suppose that God saveth one child because of baptism, and the other must perish because he hath no baptism.

Wo be unto them that shall pervert the ways of the Lord after this manner, for they shall perish except they repent. Behold, I speak with boldness, having authority from God; and I fear not what man can do; for perfect love casteth out all fear.

And I am filled with charity, which is everlasting love; wherefore, all children are alike unto me; wherefore, I love little children with a perfect love; and they are all alike and partakers of salvation.

For I know that God is not a partial God, neither a changeable being; but he is unchangeable from all eternity to all eternity.

Little children cannot repent; wherefore, it is awful wickedness to deny the pure mercies of God unto them, for they are all alive in him because of his mercy.

20 En hy wat sê dat klein kindertjies die doop nodig het, loën die barmhartighede van Christus, en ag die versoening van Hom en die krag van sy verlossing as nietig.

21 Wee diesulkes, want hulle is in gevaar van die dood, hel, en 'n eindelose pyniging. Ek spreek dit met vrymoedigheid; God het my gebied. Luister na hulle en slaan ag, of hulle staan teen julle by die regterstoel van Christus.

22 Want kyk, alle klein kindertjies is lewend in Christus, en ook hulle wat sonder die wet is. Want die krag van verlossing kom oor hulle almal wat geen wet het nie; daarom, hy wat nie veroordeel is nie, of hy wat onder geen veroordeling staan nie, kan nie bekeer nie; en vir diesulkes baat die doop niks—

23 Maar dit is 'n bespotting voor God, en loën die barmhartighede van Christus, en die krag van sy Heilige Gees, en plaas vertrou in dooie werke.

24 Kyk, my seun, hierdie ding behoort nie te wees nie; want bekering is vir hulle wat onder veroordeling staan en onder die vloek van 'n gebroke wet.

25 En die eerstevrugte van bekering is die doop; en die doop kom deur geloof ter vervulling van die gebooie; en die vervulling van die gebooie bring vergifnis van sondes;

26 En die vergifnis van sondes bring sagmoedigheid, en nederigheid van hart; en vanweë die sagmoedigheid en nederigheid van hart kom die besoeking van die Heilige Gees, welke vertrooster vervul met hoop en volmaakte liefde, welke liefde volhard deur ywer in die gebed, totdat die einde sal kom, wanneer al die heiliges by God sal woon.

27 Kyk, my seun, ek sal weer vir jou skryf as ek nie gou teen die Lamaniete optrek nie. Kyk, die hoogmoed van hierdie nasie, of die volk van die Nefiete, het geblyk hulle ondergang te wees, tensy hulle sou bekeer.

28 Bid vir hulle, my seun, dat bekering tot hulle mag kom. Maar kyk, ek vrees dat die Gees opgehou het om met hulle te werk; en in hierdie deel van die land soek hulle ook om alle mag en gesag wat van God af kom omver te werp; en hulle loën die Heilige Gees.

And he that saith that little children need baptism denieth the mercies of Christ, and setteth at naught the atonement of him and the power of his redemption.

Wo unto such, for they are in danger of death, hell, and an endless torment. I speak it boldly; God hath commanded me. Listen unto them and give heed, or they stand against you at the judgment-seat of Christ.

For behold that all little children are alive in Christ, and also all they that are without the law. For the power of redemption cometh on all them that have no law; wherefore, he that is not condemned, or he that is under no condemnation, cannot repent; and unto such baptism availeth nothing—

But it is mockery before God, denying the mercies of Christ, and the power of his Holy Spirit, and putting trust in dead works.

Behold, my son, this thing ought not to be; for repentance is unto them that are under condemnation and under the curse of a broken law.

And the first fruits of repentance is baptism; and baptism cometh by faith unto the fulfilling the commandments; and the fulfilling the commandments bringeth remission of sins;

And the remission of sins bringeth meekness, and lowliness of heart; and because of meekness and lowliness of heart cometh the visitation of the Holy Ghost, which Comforter filleth with hope and perfect love, which love endureth by diligence unto prayer, until the end shall come, when all the saints shall dwell with God.

Behold, my son, I will write unto you again if I go not out soon against the Lamanites. Behold, the pride of this nation, or the people of the Nephites, hath proven their destruction except they should repent.

Pray for them, my son, that repentance may come unto them. But behold, I fear lest the Spirit hath ceased striving with them; and in this part of the land they are also seeking to put down all power and authority which cometh from God; and they are denying the Holy Ghost.

29 En nadat hulle so 'n groot kennis verwerp het, my seun, moet hulle gou vergaan, ter vervulling van die profesieë wat gespreek is deur die profete, sowel as die woorde van ons Saligmaker self.

30 Vaarwel, my seun, totdat ek weer vir jou sal skrywe, of jou weer sal ontmoet. Amen.

And after rejecting so great a knowledge, my son, they must perish soon, unto the fulfilling of the prophecies which were spoken by the prophets, as well as the words of our Savior himself.

Farewell, my son, until I shall write unto you, or shall meet you again. Amen.

Moroni 9

- 1 My geliefde seun, ek skryf weer aan jou sodat jy mag weet dat ek nog lewe; maar ek skryf ietwat aangaande dit wat verontrustend is.
- 2 Want kyk, ek het 'n fel stryd gehad met die Lamaniete, waarin ons nie oorwin het nie; en Archeantus het geval deur die swaard, en ook Luram en Emron; ja, en ons het 'n groot getal van ons uitverkore manne verloor.
- 3 En nou kyk, my seun, ek vrees dat die Lamaniete hierdie volk sal vernietig, want hulle bekeer nie, en Satan stook hulle gedurig op tot toorn teen mekaar.
- 4 Kyk, ek arbei gedurig met hulle; en wanneer ek die woord van God spreek met skerpheid, bewe hulle en raak toornig teen my; en wanneer ek geen skerpheid gebruik nie, verhard hulle hul harte daarteen; daarom, ek vrees dat die Gees van die Here opgehou het om met hulle te werk.
- 5 Want so uitermate word hulle toornig dat dit vir my voorkom dat hulle geen vrees het vir die dood nie; en hulle het hul liefde verloor, die een teenoor die ander; en hulle dors voortdurend na bloed en wraak.
- 6 En nou, my geliefde seun, nieteenstaande hul hardheid, laat ons ywerig arbei; want as ons sou op hou om te arbei, sou ons gebring word onder veroordeling; want ons het 'n arbeid om te verrig terwyl in hierdie tabernakel van klei, sodat ons die vyand van alle regverdigheid mag oorwin, en ons siele rus in die koninkryk van God.
- 7 En nou skryf ek ietwat aangaande die lyding van hierdie volk. Want volgens die kennis wat ek ontvang het van Amoron, kyk, die Lamaniete het baie gevangenes, wat hulle geneem het van die toring van Serriza; en daar was manne, vroue, en kinders.
- 8 En die mans en vaders van daardie vroue en kinders het hulle gedood; en hulle voed die vroue met die vlees van hul mans, en die kinders op die vlees van hul vaders; en geen water nie, behalwe 'n bietjie, gee hulle vir hulle.

Moroni 9

My beloved son, I write unto you again that ye may know that I am yet alive; but I write somewhat of that which is grievous.

For behold, I have had a sore battle with the Lamanites, in which we did not conquer; and Archeantus has fallen by the sword, and also Luram and Emron; yea, and we have lost a great number of our choice men.

And now behold, my son, I fear lest the Lamanites shall destroy this people; for they do not repent, and Satan stirreth them up continually to anger one with another.

Behold, I am laboring with them continually; and when I speak the word of God with sharpness they tremble and anger against me; and when I use no sharpness they harden their hearts against it; wherefore, I fear lest the Spirit of the Lord hath ceased striving with them.

For so exceedingly do they anger that it seemeth me that they have no fear of death; and they have lost their love, one towards another; and they thirst after blood and revenge continually.

And now, my beloved son, notwithstanding their hardness, let us labor diligently; for if we should cease to labor, we should be brought under condemnation; for we have a labor to perform whilst in this tabernacle of clay, that we may conquer the enemy of all righteousness, and rest our souls in the kingdom of God.

And now I write somewhat concerning the sufferings of this people. For according to the knowledge which I have received from Amoron, behold, the Lamanites have many prisoners, which they took from the tower of Sherrizah; and there were men, women, and children.

And the husbands and fathers of those women and children they have slain; and they feed the women upon the flesh of their husbands, and the children upon the flesh of their fathers; and no water, save a little, do they give unto them.

9 En nieteenstaande hierdie groot gruwel van die Lamaniete, oortref dit nie dít van ons volk in Moriantum nie. Want kyk, baie van die dogters van die Lamaniete het hulle gevange geneem; en nadat hulle hul ontnem het van dít wat dierbaarste en kosbaarste was bo alle dinge, wat kuisheid en reinheid is—

10 En nadat hulle hierdie ding gedoen het, het hulle hul vermoor op die wreedaardigste wyse, deur hul liggame te martel tot die dood; en nadat hulle dit gedoen het, het hulle hul vlees verorber soos wilde diere, vanweë die hardheid van hul harte; en hulle doen dit as ’n teken van dapperheid.

11 O my geliefde seun, hoe kan ’n volk soos hierdie, wat sonder beskawing is—

12 (En net ’n paar jaar het verbygegaan, sedert hulle ’n beskaafde en aangename volk was)—

13 Maar o my seun, hoe kan ’n volk soos hierdie, wie se genot in soveel gruwels is—

14 Hoe kan ons verwag dat God sy hand sal terughou in oordeel teen ons?

15 Kyk, my hart roep uit: Wee hierdie volk. Kom uit in oordeel, o God, en verberg hulle sondes, en boosheid en gruwels van voor u aangesig!

16 En verder, my seun, daar is baie weduwees en hul dogters wat agterbly in Serriza; en daardie deel van die voorrade wat die Lamaniete nie weggedra het nie, kyk, dit het die leër van Zenefi weggedra, en hulle agtergelaat om rond te dwaal waar hulle ook al kan vir voedsel; en baie ou vroue val flou langs die pad en sterwe.

17 En die leër wat by my is, is swak; en die leërs van die Lamaniete is tussen Serriza en my; en soveel as wat gevlug het na die leër van Aäron, het die prooi geword van hulle vreeslike wreedaardigheid.

18 O, die verdorwenheid van my volk! Hulle is sonder orde en sonder barmhartigheid. Kyk, ek is slegs ’n man, en ek het slegs die krag van ’n man en ek kan nie langer my bevele afdwing nie.

And notwithstanding this great abomination of the Lamanites, it doth not exceed that of our people in Moriantum. For behold, many of the daughters of the Lamanites have they taken prisoners; and after depriving them of that which was most dear and precious above all things, which is chastity and virtue—

And after they had done this thing, they did murder them in a most cruel manner, torturing their bodies even unto death; and after they have done this, they devour their flesh like unto wild beasts, because of the hardness of their hearts; and they do it for a token of bravery.

O my beloved son, how can a people like this, that are without civilization—

(And only a few years have passed away, and they were a civil and a delightsome people)

But O my son, how can a people like this, whose delight is in so much abomination—

How can we expect that God will stay his hand in judgment against us?

Behold, my heart cries: Wo unto this people. Come out in judgment, O God, and hide their sins, and wickedness, and abominations from before thy face!

And again, my son, there are many widows and their daughters who remain in Sherrizah; and that part of the provisions which the Lamanites did not carry away, behold, the army of Zenephi has carried away, and left them to wander whithersoever they can for food; and many old women do faint by the way and die.

And the army which is with me is weak; and the armies of the Lamanites are betwixt Sherrizah and me; and as many as have fled to the army of Aaron have fallen victims to their awful brutality.

O the depravity of my people! They are without order and without mercy. Behold, I am but a man, and I have but the strength of a man, and I cannot any longer enforce my commands.

19 En hulle het sterk geword in hul goddeloosheid; en hulle is almal ewe wreed, en spaar niemand, nóg oud, nóg jonk; en hulle skep behae in alles behalwe dit wat goed is; en die lyding van ons vroue en ons kinders op die hele aangesig van hierdie land oortref alles; ja, die tong kan nie vertel nie, nóg kan dit geskrywe word.

20 En nou, my seun, ek talm nie langer by hierdie verskriklike toneel nie. Kyk, jy ken die boosheid van hierdie volk; jy weet dat hulle sonder beginsel is, en gevoelloos; en hulle boosheid oortref dié van die Lamaniete.

21 Kyk, my seun, ek kan hulle nie by God aanbeveel nie, uit vrees dat Hy my sou slaan.

22 Maar kyk, my seun, ek beveel jou aan by God, en ek vertrou op Christus dat jy gered sal word; en ek bid tot God dat hy jou lewe sal spaar, om te getuig van die terugkeer van sy volk tot Hom, of hulle algehele vernietiging; want ek weet dat hulle moet vergaan tensy hulle bekeer en terugkeer tot Hom.

23 En as hulle vergaan, sal dit wees soos met die Jerediete, vanweë die moedswilligheid van hul harte, en hulle soeke na bloed en wraak.

24 En as dit so is dat hulle vergaan, weet ons dat baie van ons broers oorgeloop het na die Lamaniete, en baie meer sal ook oorgaan na hulle; daarom, skryf so 'n paar dinge, as jy gespaar bly en ek omkom en jou nie sien nie; maar ek vertrou dat ek jou spoedig sal sien; want ek het heilige kronieke wat ek aan jou wil oorhandig.

25 My seun, wees getrou in Christus; en mag die dinge wat ek geskryf het, jou nie bedroef, om jou terneer te druk tot die dood toe nie; maar mag Christus jou ophef, en mag sy lydings en dood en die toon van sy liggaam aan ons vaders, en sy barmhartigheid en lankmoedigheid, en die hoop vir sy heerlikheid en vir die ewige lewe, vir ewig in jou gedagtes rus.

26 En mag die genade van God die Vader, wie se troon hoog in die hemele is, en ons Here Jesus Christus, wat sit aan die regterhand van sy krag, tot dat alle dinge onderworpe aan Hom sal wees, en ewig met jou wees en bly. Amen.

And they have become strong in their perversion; and they are alike brutal, sparing none, neither old nor young; and they delight in everything save that which is good; and the suffering of our women and our children upon all the face of this land doth exceed everything; yea, tongue cannot tell, neither can it be written.

And now, my son, I dwell no longer upon this horrible scene. Behold, thou knowest the wickedness of this people; thou knowest that they are without principle, and past feeling; and their wickedness doth exceed that of the Lamanites.

Behold, my son, I cannot recommend them unto God lest he should smite me.

But behold, my son, I recommend thee unto God, and I trust in Christ that thou wilt be saved; and I pray unto God that he will spare thy life, to witness the return of his people unto him, or their utter destruction; for I know that they must perish except they repent and return unto him.

And if they perish it will be like unto the Jaredites, because of the wilfulness of their hearts, seeking for blood and revenge.

And if it so be that they perish, we know that many of our brethren have deserted over unto the Lamanites, and many more will also desert over unto them; wherefore, write somewhat a few things, if thou art spared and I shall perish and not see thee; but I trust that I may see thee soon; for I have sacred records that I would deliver up unto thee.

My son, be faithful in Christ; and may not the things which I have written grieve thee, to weigh thee down unto death; but may Christ lift thee up, and may his sufferings and death, and the showing his body unto our fathers, and his mercy and long-suffering, and the hope of his glory and of eternal life, rest in your mind forever.

And may the grace of God the Father, whose throne is high in the heavens, and our Lord Jesus Christ, who sitteth on the right hand of his power, until all things shall become subject unto him, be, and abide with you forever. Amen.

Moroni 10

- 1 Nou ek, Moroni, skryf ietwat soos wat ek goeddink. En ek skryf aan my broers, die Lamaniete; ek wil hê dat hulle moet weet dat meer as vierhonderd en twintig jaar verbygegaan het vandat die teken gegee is van die koms van Christus.
- 2 En ek verseël hierdie kronieke, nadat ek 'n paar woorde gespreek het by wyse van vermaning tot julle.
- 3 Kyk, ek wil julle vermaan dat wanneer julle hierdie dinge sal lees, as dit wysheid is in God dat julle hulle sal lees, dat julle sal onthou hoe barmhartig die Here was jeens die kinders van mense, vanaf die skepping van Adam tot die tyd dat julle hierdie dinge sal ontvang, en dit in julle harte bepeins.
- 4 En wanneer julle hierdie dinge sal ontvang, wil ek julle vermaan dat julle God sal vra, die Ewige Vader, in die Naam van Christus, of hierdie dinge nie waar is nie; en as julle sal vra met 'n opregte hart, met opregte begeerte, en met geloof in Christus, sal Hy die waarheid daarvan openbaar aan julle, deur die mag van die Heilige Gees.
- 5 En deur die mag van die Heilige Gees mag julle die waarheid weet van alle dinge.
- 6 En watter ding ook al goed is, is juis en waar; daarom, niks wat goed is loën die Christus nie, maar erken dat Hy is.
- 7 En julle mag weet dat Hy is, deur die mag van die Heilige Gees; daarom wil ek julle vermaan dat julle nie die krag van God loën nie; want Hy werk deur krag, volgens die geloof van die kinders van mense, dieselfde vandag en môre, en vir ewig.
- 8 En verder, ek vermaan julle, my broers, dat julle nie die gawes van God loën nie, want hulle is baie; en hulle kom van dieselfde God. En daar is verskillende wyses waarop hierdie gawes toegewys word, maar dit is dieselfde God wat alles in almal werk; en hulle word gegee deur die openbarings van die Gees van God aan die mens, om hulle te bevoordeel.
- 9 Want kyk, aan een word gegee die Gees van God, dat hy die woord van wysheid mag onderrig;
- 10 En aan 'n ander, dat hy die woord van kennis mag onderrig deur dieselfde Gees;

Moroni 10

Now I, Moroni, write somewhat as seemeth me good; and I write unto my brethren, the Lamanites; and I would that they should know that more than four hundred and twenty years have passed away since the sign was given of the coming of Christ.

And I seal up these records, after I have spoken a few words by way of exhortation unto you.

Behold, I would exhort you that when ye shall read these things, if it be wisdom in God that ye should read them, that ye would remember how merciful the Lord hath been unto the children of men, from the creation of Adam even down until the time that ye shall receive these things, and ponder it in your hearts.

And when ye shall receive these things, I would exhort you that ye would ask God, the Eternal Father, in the name of Christ, if these things are not true; and if ye shall ask with a sincere heart, with real intent, having faith in Christ, he will manifest the truth of it unto you, by the power of the Holy Ghost.

And by the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things.

And whatsoever thing is good is just and true; wherefore, nothing that is good denieth the Christ, but acknowledgeth that he is.

And ye may know that he is, by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore I would exhort you that ye deny not the power of God; for he worketh by power, according to the faith of the children of men, the same today and tomorrow, and forever.

And again, I exhort you, my brethren, that ye deny not the gifts of God, for they are many; and they come from the same God. And there are different ways that these gifts are administered; but it is the same God who worketh all in all; and they are given by the manifestations of the Spirit of God unto men, to profit them.

For behold, to one is given by the Spirit of God, that he may teach the word of wisdom;

And to another, that he may teach the word of knowledge by the same Spirit;

11 En aan 'n ander, uitermate groot geloof; en aan 'n ander, die gawes van genesing deur dieselfde Gees;

12 En verder, aan 'n ander, dat hy magtige wonderwerke mag verrig;

13 En verder, aan 'n ander, dat hy mag profeteer aangaande alle dinge;

14 En verder, aan 'n ander, die aanskouing van engele en dienende geeste;

15 En verder, aan 'n ander, alle soorte van tonge;

16 En verder, aan 'n ander, die uitlegging van tale en van verskillende soorte tonge.

17 En al hierdie gawes kom deur die Gees van Christus; en hulle kom na elke mens afsonderlik, soos Hy wil.

18 En ek wil julle vermaan, my geliefde broers, dat julle onthou dat elke goeie gawe van Christus kom.

19 En ek wil julle vermaan, my geliefde broers, dat julle onthou dat Hy dieselfde is gister, vandag en vir ewig, en dat al hierdie gawes waarvan ek gespreek het, wat geestelik is, nooit weggedoen sal word so lank as die wêreld sal staan nie, slegs ooreenkomstig die ongeloof van die kinders van mense.

20 Daarom, daar moet geloof wees; en as daar geloof moet wees, moet daar ook hoop wees; en as daar hoop moet wees, moet daar ook naasteliefde wees.

21 En tensy julle naasteliefde het, kan julle geensins gered word in die koninkryk van God nie; ook kan julle nie gered word in die koninkryk van God as julle nie geloof het nie; nóg kan julle, as julle geen hoop het nie.

22 En as julle geen hoop het nie, moet julle noodwendig in wanhoop wees; en wanhoop kom as gevolg van ongeregtigheid.

23 En Christus het waarlik aan ons vaders gesê: As julle geloof het kan julle alle dinge doen wat vir My raadsaam is.

24 En nou spreek ek met al die eindes van die aarde—dat as die dag kom dat die krag en gawes van God weggedoen sal word onder julle, sal dit wees vanweë ongeloof.

And to another, exceedingly great faith; and to another, the gifts of healing by the same Spirit;

And again, to another, that he may work mighty miracles;

And again, to another, that he may prophesy concerning all things;

And again, to another, the beholding of angels and ministering spirits;

And again, to another, all kinds of tongues;

And again, to another, the interpretation of languages and of divers kinds of tongues.

And all these gifts come by the Spirit of Christ; and they come unto every man severally, according as he will.

And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that every good gift cometh of Christ.

And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that he is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and that all these gifts of which I have spoken, which are spiritual, never will be done away, even as long as the world shall stand, only according to the unbelief of the children of men.

Wherefore, there must be faith; and if there must be faith there must also be hope; and if there must be hope there must also be charity.

And except ye have charity ye can in nowise be saved in the kingdom of God; neither can ye be saved in the kingdom of God if ye have not faith; neither can ye if ye have no hope.

And if ye have no hope ye must needs be in despair; and despair cometh because of iniquity.

And Christ truly said unto our fathers: If ye have faith ye can do all things which are expedient unto me.

And now I speak unto all the ends of the earth—that if the day cometh that the power and gifts of God shall be done away among you, it shall be because of unbelief.

- 25 En wee die kinders van mense as dit die geval is; want daar sal niemand wees wat goed doen onder julle nie, nee nie een nie. Want as daar een is onder julle wat goeddoen, sal hy werk deur die krag en gawes van God.
- 26 En wee hulle wat hierdie dinge sal wegdoen, en sterf, want hulle sterf in hul sondes, en hulle kan nie gered word in die koninkryk van God nie; en ek spreek dit volgens die woorde van Christus; en ek lieg nie.
- 27 En ek vermaan julle om hierdie dinge te onthou; want die tyd kom spoedig dat julle sal weet dat ek nie lieg nie, want julle sal my sien by die regbank van God; en die Here God sal vir julle sê: Het Ek nie my woorde aan julle verkondig, wat geskryf is deur hierdie man, net soos een wat roep uit die dode, ja, net soos een wat spreek uit die stof nie?
- 28 Ek verkondig hierdie dinge ter vervulling van die profesieë. En kyk, hulle sal uitgaan uit die mond van die ewige God; en sy woord sal voortsis van geslag tot geslag.
- 29 En God sal aan julle toon dat dit wat ek geskryf het, waar is.
- 30 En verder wil ek julle vermaan dat julle na Christus moet kom, en vasgryp aan elke goeie gawe, en die bose gawe nie aanraak nie, nóg die onreine ding.
- 31 En ontwaak, en staan op uit die stof, o Jerusalem, ja, en trek jou mooi klere aan, o dogter van Sion; en versterk jou penne en vergroot jou grense vir ewig, dat jy nie langer vermeng mag wees nie, dat die verbonde van die Ewige Vader wat Hy gesluit het met julle, o huis van Israel, vervul mag word.
- 32 Ja, kom na Christus, en word vervolmaak in Hom, en onthou julleself van alle goddeloosheid; en as julle jul sal onthou van alle goddeloosheid, en God sal liefhê met al julle mag, verstand en krag, dan is sy genade genoeg vir julle, dat deur sy genade julle volmaak mag wees in Christus; en as julle deur die genade van God volmaak is in Christus, kan julle geensins die krag van God loën nie.

And wo be unto the children of men if this be the case; for there shall be none that doeth good among you, no not one. For if there be one among you that doeth good, he shall work by the power and gifts of God.

And wo unto them who shall do these things away and die, for they die in their sins, and they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God; and I speak it according to the words of Christ; and I lie not.

And I exhort you to remember these things; for the time speedily cometh that ye shall know that I lie not, for ye shall see me at the bar of God; and the Lord God will say unto you: Did I not declare my words unto you, which were written by this man, like as one crying from the dead, yea, even as one speaking out of the dust?

I declare these things unto the fulfilling of the prophecies. And behold, they shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the everlasting God; and his word shall hiss forth from generation to generation.

And God shall show unto you, that that which I have written is true.

And again I would exhort you that ye would come unto Christ, and lay hold upon every good gift, and touch not the evil gift, nor the unclean thing.

And awake, and arise from the dust, O Jerusalem; yea, and put on thy beautiful garments, O daughter of Zion; and strengthen thy stakes and enlarge thy borders forever, that thou mayest no more be confounded, that the covenants of the Eternal Father which he hath made unto thee, O house of Israel, may be fulfilled.

Yea, come unto Christ, and be perfected in him, and deny yourselves of all ungodliness; and if ye shall deny yourselves of all ungodliness, and love God with all your might, mind and strength, then is his grace sufficient for you, that by his grace ye may be perfect in Christ; and if by the grace of God ye are perfect in Christ, ye can in nowise deny the power of God.

33 En verder, as julle deur die genade van God vol-
maak is in Christus, en sy krag nie loën nie, dan
word julle geheilig in Christus deur die genade van
God, deur die vergieting van die bloed van Christus,
wat in die verbond is van die Vader tot die vergifnis
van julle sondes, dat julle heilig word, sonder smet.

34 En nou sê ek aan almal, vaarwel. Ek gaan spoedig
om te rus in die paradys van God, totdat my gees en
liggaam weer sal verenig, en ek triomfantlik gebring
word deur die lug, om julle te ontmoet voor die aan-
gename regbank van die groot Jehova, die Ewige
Regter van beide die lewende en die dode. Amen.

Die Einde

And again, if ye by the grace of God are perfect in
Christ, and deny not his power, then are ye sancti-
fied in Christ by the grace of God, through the shed-
ding of the blood of Christ, which is in the covenant
of the Father unto the remission of your sins, that ye
become holy, without spot.

And now I bid unto all, farewell. I soon go to rest
in the paradise of God, until my spirit and body shall
again reunite, and I am brought forth triumphant
through the air, to meet you before the pleasing bar
of the great Jehovah, the Eternal Judge of both quick
and dead. Amen.

The End